

# The History of the Marine Corps

By Bud Hannings

## Introduction

On November 10, 1775, the Continental Congress passed a resolution stating that: Resolved, That two Battalions of Marines be raised, consisting of one Colonel, two Lieutenant Colonels, two Majors, and other officers as usual in other regiments; and that they consist of an equal number of privates with other battalions; that particular care be taken, that no persons be appointed to office, or insisted into said battalions, but such as are good seamen, or so acquainted with maritime affairs as to be able to serve to advantage by sea when required: that they be insisted and commissioned to serve for and during the present war between Great Britain and the colonies, unless dismissed by order of Congress: that they be distinguished by the names of the first and second battalions of American Marines, and that they be considered as part of the number which the continental Army before Boston is ordered to consist of. "two battalions of Marines be raised" for service as landing forces with the fleet. This established the Continental Marines and marked the birth of the United States Marine Corps. Serving on land and at sea, early Marines distinguished themselves in a number of important operations, including their first amphibious raid on foreign soil in the Bahamas in March 1776, under the command of the Corps' first commandant, Capt. Samuel Nicholas. They also returned to the Bahamas during January 1778 and captured the island and two forts without firing a shot.

The Treaty of Paris in 1783 terminated the Revolutionary War and the Continental Navy and Marines disbanded. The Marine Corps was re-established on 11 July, 1798, and they fought in conflicts with France (Quasi-War With France) and they went to war against the Barbary coast pirates, which brought them to Derne, Tripoli in 1805. Lt. Presley O'Bannon led the Marine contingent and mercenaries from Alexandria, Egypt. They completely surprised the dey. By mid-day they controlled the city and hoisted Old Glory for the first time over a captured city of the Old World. The capture of Derne, Tripoli terminates the war with Tripoli that had lasted about four years. It also ends Tripoli's practice of extorting tribute from the United States. For America, it is a great victory; however, for the Barbary pirates it was an end to an era. The Barbary Coast pirates from this point forward begin to fear the power of the United States.

During the War of 1812, Marines participated in operations, including the defense of Washington at Bladensburg, Maryland and the defense of Baltimore. They also fought alongside Andrew Jackson at the defense of New Orleans.

The Marines then, following the War of 1812, defended U. S. interests in the Falkland Islands, Sumatra and against the Creeks and the elusive Seminole Indians in the Florida Indian Wars.

Marines also participated in the Mexican War. They were seizing seaports on both coasts, while they also joined General Winfield Scott during his advance on Mexico City.

Marine Corps history during the Civil War was confined principally to serving with the U. S. Navy, however, a battalion did fight at Bull Run. The Marines at the start of the Civil War seemed to go in different directions with some staying with the North and others going to the South. Following the Civil War, the Marines head for Korea in 1871, to demand an apology for the massacre of a U. S. Navy survey team. No apology is forthcoming and the Marines land and destroy the forts, including the Citadel.

The Marines also fought in the Spanish American War, the Philippine Insurrection, the Boxer Rebellion in China, in the Nicaragua, Panama, the Dominican Republic, and Haiti.

The Marines fought in World War I, and they distinguished themselves on the battlefields of France. While on their way to Belleau Wood, the Marines encountered retreating French Soldiers as they themselves are advancing. A French Officer stops momentarily to advise the Marines to follow the French in retreat, because the Germans were coming. A Marine Officer without hesitation, responded: "RETREAT HELL! WE JUST GOT HERE." They earned the title of "Devil dogs" for their actions at Belleau Wood when the Germans thought the Marines were firing machine guns, rather than rifles. They also participated at Soissons, St. Michiel, Blanc Mont and the last Muesse-Argonne offensive. The Marines introduced aviation for the first time in 1912. They flew in close-air support during the war.

After the First World War, the Marines were involved in what are referred to as "The Banana Wars;" the Marines were deployed in the Dominican Republic, Haiti, Nicaragua and Honduras.

World War II started for the United States with the surprise attack against Pearl Harbor. The Japanese after bombing Pearl Harbor invaded the Philippines, Wake Island and Guam.

The Marines finally struck back with the Battle of the Coral Sea and the Battle of Midway in which Marine pilots participate. Then the Marines took the offensive and invaded Guadalcanal.

The battle for Guadalcanal was hard fought and finally in February 1943, it was the Marines who prevailed.

The Marines invaded Bougainville, Tarawa and Betio, New Britain, Eniwetok, Saipan, Tinian, Peleliu, and the Battle of Iwo Jima, and then they invaded Okinawa. They were not involved with the return to the Philippines due to General MacArthur's insistence that the Marines would not be involved; however, the Marines did participate with pilots and there was a Marine gunnery outfit with the invasion force.

The Marine outfits were units were taking part in the post-war occupation of Japan and North China, And the position of Korea was not a priority for the Allies. In August 1949, the North Koreans attacked the South Korean Ongjin peninsula, but the South Korean were able to push them beyond the 38th Parallel. The U. S. Was winding down in Korea, but the Communists were ramping up. The U. S. Secretary of state proclaimed that Japan, the Philippines and Okinawa would be defended. Korea was eliminated by omission which would signal to the Russians that Korea was an easy target. In April 1950, the Communists ordered all North Koreans living within three miles of the 38th Parallel to abandon their homes. Shortly thereafter, North Korean troops were moving into the abandoned homes. By June, it was apparent that North Korea was planning an invasion and on 25 June it was launched.

The Marines arrived in Korea during early August 1950 and they were taunted by the other service members, but in less than a week, their detractors were singing their praises. The Army was nearly pushed back into the sea, but the Marines stopped the Communist surge and the Army was able to rebound and fight the way they were supposed to fight.

The Marines landed at Inchon, thought impossible by some and they continued to battle their way to Seoul. After they recaptured Seoul, the Marines advanced to the Chosin Reservoir and they learned the hard way that the Chinese Communists had entered the war. The Marines were trapped at the reservoir, but they fought their way out. The Marines settled in and fought for the hills until an armistice was signed on 27 July 1953.

During July 1958, a brigade-size force of Marines landed in Lebanon to restore order. In October

1962, during the Cuban Missile Crisis a massive amphibious force of Marines was formed, but it did not have to land and in April 1965, the Marines landed in the Dominican Republic to protect U. S. interests and evacuate the Americans who wanted to leave.

In 1954, the United States sent its first advisor to Vietnam. The president of the U.S., Dwight D. Eisenhower stated in a letter, dated 24 October, 1954, to the president of South Vietnam that American assistance would be given directly to South Viet Nam rather than the French authorities. The election of 1960 made John F. Kennedy president of the U. S. He decided to increase aid to the South Vietnamese. The landing of the 3rd Battalion, 9th Marines, 3rd Marine Division of the 9th Marine Expeditionary Brigade, commanded by Brigadier General Frederick L. March arrives at Da Nang to become the first U. S. Ground troops to deploy in South Vietnam.

The Communists initiated the Tet Offensive early in 1968. The offensive was a defeat for the Communists, but in the U. S. the media played it as a victory. After the offensive, in the summer of 1968, the Marines began to take a larger part in the fighting. During 1969, the Marines began to depart from Vietnam and in June 1971, the ground Marines had departed from the country.

On 25 August 1982, the Marines, about 800, landed in Beirut, Lebanon as part of the peace-keeping force and they remain in country until 31 July 1984. While there they faced opposition from insurgents. The 1st Battalion, 8th Marines was attacked in October 1983 by a suicide bomber in Beirut. The explosion which occurred while the battalion slept, kills 220 and wounds about 70 more. Eighteen navy and 3 Army personnel are also killed in the blast

In August 1990, the Marines landed in Kuwait and many others deployed to the Persian Gulf as part of Operation Desert Shield. An air campaign (Operation Desert Storm) began in January 1991 and it was followed by the 1st and 2nd Marine Divisions advanced into Iraq-occupied Kuwait. The defenders believed it was the main allied attack. Meanwhile, other allied forces attacked from the rear. At the same time, Marines of the 4th and 5th Marine Expeditionary Brigades who were afloat in the Persian Gulf kept the Iraqi troops pinned down because the Iraqi troops were expecting an amphibious landing. The U. S. and its allies defeated the Iraqi forces in 100 hours.

Marines and sailors, about 2000, attached to the 26th Marine Expeditionary Force in 1999, deployed in Kosovo to act as peace-keepers in support of Operation Allied Force.

Terrorists attacked the World Trade Center and the Pentagon on 11 September 2001. Shortly afterward, Marine units deploy to the Arabian Sea. Afterward, they establish a forward operating base in southern Afghanistan as part of Operation Enduring Freedom.

The Marines release responsibility for the security of Al Anbar province to Iraqi security forces in September 2008. And the final 3,000 Marines based in Fallujah are pulled out of the city on 14 November 2008.

In 2011, the death of Osama Bin Laden, by a Special Forces raid, dealt a blow to Al-Qaeda and it took a while for them to rejuvenate, but they have adjusted. Osama bin Laden was the leader of the terrorists who were responsible for the attacks on the U. S. On September 11, 2001.

About 20,000 U. S. Marines were conducting combat operations in Afghanistan during 2012, but they are scheduled to withdraw from the country at the end of 2014.

## Chronology of the United States Marine Corps

**August 24 1775- In naval activity:** The *Hannah*, a 78-ton coastal schooner, is the first ship to enter the Continental fleet of George Washington. The vessel is manned by the usual officers, sailors and a contingent of Marines totaling fifty men. The Marine Corps is unofficial until November 10, but it is traditional to have Marines on board ships. This is the first of a number of small vessels in New England, which become known as “Washington’s Fleet.” Prior to the Colonial Navy’s establishment, each state had its own navy, except New Jersey and Delaware. These two colonies relied on privateers.

**May 20 1775—In New York:** Following the attack on St. Johns, Colonel Benedict Arnold arrives back at Ticonderoga with the newest addition to his fleet, the *George III*, now known as the *Enterprise*. The ship will later be armed with six carriage guns and six swivels. With two ships, the *Enterprise* and the *Liberty*, Arnold finds himself with a lack of Marines and seamen for the vessels. The crew is composed of 4 officers, 10 seamen and 17 Marines. Of these, seven men under the command of Captain Herrick either volunteer or are drafted by Arnold to serve as Marines aboard the *Enterprise*. From his base at Crown Point, Arnold leads frequent cruises along Lake Champlain, but within a few weeks, his authority to command comes under question.

**August 24 1775-In naval activity:** The *Hannah*, a 78-ton coastal schooner, is the first ship to enter the Continental fleet of George Washington. The vessel is manned by the usual officers, sailors and a contingent of Marines totaling fifty men. The Marine Corps is unofficial until November 10, but it is traditional to have Marines on board ships. This is the first of a number of small vessels in New England, which become known as “Washington’s Fleet.” Prior to the Colonial Navy’s establishment, each state had its own navy, except New Jersey and Delaware. These two colonies relied on privateers.

**October 2 1775-In Connecticut:** The legislature authorizes the construction of Fort Trumbull. During April of the following year, Commodore Esek Hopkins is urged to deploy there the guns the Marines had earlier captured in the Bahamas.

**October 5 1775-**Based on a letter written by John Adams dated 24 January 1813, Captain John Manley had requested authorization from General Washington to arm vessels to intercept and seize the merchant vessels that had been receiving no interruptions in the voyages to deliver arms to the British in the colonies. Washington referred the matter to Congress, which passed a resolution: Resolved, That a letter be sent by Express to Genl Washington, to inform him, that they (Congress) having recd certain intelligence of the sailing of two north country built Brigs, of no force, from England, on the 11 of August last, loaded with arms, powder, and other stores, for Quebec, without a convoy, which it being of importance to intercept, that he apply to the council of Massachusetts bay, for the two armed vessels in their service, and despatch the same, with a sufficient number of people, stores, &c. particularly a number of oars, in order, if possible, to intercept sd two Brigs and their cargoes, and secure the same for the use of the continent; Also, any other transports laden with ammunition, clothing, or other stores, for the use of the ministerial army or navy in America, and secure them in the most convenient places for the purpose abovementioned; that he give the commander or commanders such instructions as are necessary, as also proper encouragement to the

marines and seamen, that shall be sent on this enterprize, which instructions, &c., are to be delivered to the commander or commanders sealed up, with orders not to open the same until out of sight of land, on account of secrecy.

**November 10 1775 In Philadelphia:** During a Friday session of Congress, the Marine Corps is created (later, United States Marine Corps): Resolved, That two Battalions of Marines be raised, consisting of one Colonel, two Lieutenant Colonels, two Majors, and other officers as usual in other regiments; and that they consist of an equal number of privates with other battalions; that particular care be taken, that no persons be appointed to office, or insisted into said battalions, but such as are good seamen, or so acquainted with maritime affairs as to be able to serve to advantage by sea when required: that they be insisted and commissioned to serve for and during the present war between Great Britain and the colonies, unless dismissed by order of Congress: that they be distinguished by the names of the first and second battalions of American Marines, and that they be considered as part of the number which the continental Army before Boston is ordered to consist of.

**November 20 1775** — Two vessels attached to Washington's Navy, the *Franklin* and the *Hancock*, which had shortly before landed Marines and Soldiers at Charlottetown, Prince Edward's Island, without opposition, now attack Canso Harbor in Nova Scotia. Also, Congress commissions Samuel Nicholas as the first officer (Captain of Marines) in the Marine Corps. During December a few others are enlisted: Captain Joseph Shoemaker, Lieutenant Isaac Craig, Captain John Welsh and Lieutenants John Fitzpatrick, Robert Cunningham, James Hood Wilson, Henry Dayton, and others.

**November 23 1775-In naval activity:** The brigantine *Washington* and the schooner *Harrison* embark on a cruise in search of British vessels operating between Cape Cod and Cape Ann. Shortly thereafter, the HMS *Tartar*, a frigate, and two transports are spotted within three leagues from shore. The British, in turn, observe the American warships and flee. A chase ensues, but in the process the American vessels lose sight of each other. The *Washington* continues pursuit until the evening without catching any of the British ships.

The *Washington* and *Harrison* fail to rejoin, but the *Washington* seizes the sloop *Britannia* on the 25th and returns to base until the 28th, when she departs again only to encounter a nasty storm. The crew, described as undisciplined, prompts the captain to return to shore at Plymouth on the following day. Some of the crew has become unsettled due to having been drafted from the army to serve as marines and they are equally upset due to the lack of winter clothing. While at Plymouth, the crew receives proper clothing and by the 3rd of December, it embarks on another cruise, its final one.

**November 27 1775**-Congress receives a letter from General Washington, dated 19 November, which includes a letter from Colonel Benedict Arnold dated 27 October. The letter contains Washington's opinion that the two battalions of Marines to be raised should not be drawn from the Continental Army. He also states that he is aware of the necessity of the expedition into Canada, but he notes that his forces must be increased. Washington indicates that the Marines should be drawn from New York and Philadelphia "where there must be now numbers of Sailors unemployed."

**November 28 1775—In Massachusetts:** General Washington writes to John Hancock (president of Congress) to inform him that it is "impossible" to enlist men for the duration of the war and that it will be an obstacle in raising the two battalions of marines. Nevertheless, Washington informs Hancock that he will continue the work to reorganize the army and afterwards fill the battalions "out of the Whole."

**November 29 1775-** Congress commissions Samuel Nicholas as the first officer (Captain of Marines) in the Marine Corps. During December a few others are enlisted: Captain Joseph

Shoemaker, Lieutenant Isaac Craig, Captain John Welsh and Lieutenants John Fitzpatrick, Robert Cunningham, James Hood Wilson, Henry Dayton, and others.

**November 29 1775-** William Watson reports to General Washington that the crew of the brigantine *Washington* refuses to serve, claiming that they “Inlisted to Serve in the Army & not as Marines.”

**November 30 1775-In Philadelphia:** During a Thursday session, Congress directs by resolution that the committee assigned to arming the warships endeavor to “engage seamen on the best terms in their power not exceeding six dollars and two thirds for the best able bodied seamen per month.” Also, Congress resumes consideration of a letter from General Washington of the 19th and resolves “that the General be directed to suspend the raising two battalions of Marines out of his present army. Resolved, That the two battalions of marines be raised, independent of the army already ordered for the service in Massachusetts bay.”

**December 2 1775** - In Pennsylvania, elements of the newly formed Marine Corps begin to relieve the 1st Pennsylvania Battalion, which has been guarding the ships in the harbor at Philadelphia. The Marines remain as guard until 3 January 1776, when the fleet sails.

**December 5 1775-In Philadelphia:** During a Tuesday session, Congress takes action regarding the enlistment terms for sailors and Marines and resolves “that the seamen and Marines be engaged for the first of January, 1777, unless sooner discharged by Congress.” Earlier, in a letter of 19 November, General Washington had informed Congress of the great difficulties in trying to enlist men from the army to serve as Marines for the full term of the conflict. It being suggested that the resolution of Congress, passed the 2d instant, regarding Captain Jenkins, “was grounded on a mistake with regard to facts: Resolved, That a Committee of three be appointed to take the matter into consideration, enquire into facts, and make report thereon to Congress.” The members chosen are John Adams, Thomas Cushing and Thomas M’Kean.

**December 8 1775-**In France: King Louis XVI’s decision to renew the prohibition of shipping arms from French ports, first issued during the previous October, is announced by the French foreign minister, Count de Vergennes. Nonetheless, the Americans have been and continue to receive clandestine shipments of arms through French ports.

**December 22 1775** — The rank of commander-in-chief of the fleet is equal to that of General Washington’s rank in the Continental Army. In conjunction, sailors and Marines (in the newly created Marine Corps) are on board at attention as guns fire the salute when John Paul Jones boards the *Alfred* as 2nd lieutenant (he refused a captain’s commission) and begins framing the crew in the absence of Captain Saltonstall. Jones raises the American flag and according to legend, remarks: “I hoisted with my own hands, the flag of freedom the first time it was displayed on board the *Alfred*.” Sailors and Marines (newly created Marine Corps) are on board at attention as guns fire the salute.

**December 27 1775** -The Marines receive some arms, but the 100 provincial muskets and 100 bayonets are not a sufficient amount of arms for the five companies. Consequently, the Pennsylvania Council of Safety, on 30 December, issues an urgent call to the county committees to gather more arms and speed them to Philadelphia.

**December 31 1775** -The enlistment terms of the sailors and Marines (Washington’s fleet) expire on this day. Recruiting activity acquires new crews for the ships, each of which also receives a new captain. The new commanders are Daniel Waters (*Lee*); Samuel Tucker (*Franklin*); Charles Dyar (*Harrison*); William Burke (*Warren*) and John Ayers, assigned as captain of the newest addition to the fleet, the *Lynch*. General Washington appoints John Manley commodore to command the fleet. Manley is also assigned the *Hancock*. This fleet, unlike the other vessels in the service of the navy,

is not governed by the naval regulations; rather it is governed by “army regulations.” Although the commanders and the crews change, the mission remains the same: to search for and capture British vessels. The fleet maintains its surveillance cruises throughout the winter months of 1776, which parallels the British occupation of Boston. In conjunction with the abandonment of Boston by the British during March, the fleet undergoes some changes. Command passes to General Artemus Ward upon the departure of Washington from Massachusetts to New York. Commodore John Manley at about the same time is given command of one of the new frigates being constructed by order of Congress. Consequently, Samuel Tucker receives command of the *Hancock*, and James Mugford assumes temporary command of the *Franklin*.

**January 2 1776 —In Pennsylvania:** The Marines receive additional weapons, but the 50 stands of arms (usually 1 musket, 1 bayonet and at times a cartridge box and belt) are still not sufficient to arm all the Marines in the five companies. On 3 January, an additional 86 muskets will be ordered and by about mid-January all Marines will have received their muskets. Although the newly established Marine corps will be armed and fully prepared to go to sea, the men still have no uniforms.

**January 3 1776—In Pennsylvania:** The Marines board ships in Philadelphia and the fleet sails, but the Marines are unaware of the destination. Marines that had been standing guard at the harbor since 2 December of the previous year are relieved by elements of the 1st Pennsylvania Battalion.

**January 5 1776 —In Pennsylvania:** At Liberty Island south of Philadelphia, the Continental Navy continues to prepare to move out to the open seas, while it simultaneously gathers crewmen who didn't board prior to departing Philadelphia on the previous day. Ship's boats had remained at the Philadelphia wharves to shuttle late-arriving crewmen to the fleet. The *Alfred*, flagship of Esek Hopkins, carries a contingent of 60 Marines, including Captain Samuel Nicholas and his lieutenants, Matthew Parke and John Fitzpatrick. The *Columbus* also carries about 60 Marines, commanded by Captain Joseph Shoemaker and his lieutenants, James Dickinson and Robert Cummings.

Also, the *Andrew Doria* holds a contingent of 44 Marines led by Lieutenant Isaac Craig, but upon departure from the city, only 38 had boarded. And the *Cabot* carries 44 Marines commanded by Captain John Welsh and Lieutenant James Hood Wilson. The *Providence*, not yet at sea, is assigned 14 men raised by Lieutenant Wilson and another 6 of Lieutenant Craig's command. The *Fly*, assigned as a tender and still in the city, is not assigned any Marines.

The fleet remains acutely short of arms. On this day, the Committee of Safety (Pennsylvania) delivers 37 muskets and 135 bayonets to the Marines aboard the *Andrew Doria* and another 67 muskets, along with 60 bayonets, 50 scabbards and 200 pounds of musket balls to the *Alfred*. But still the Marines fall far short of having the required arms for a successful mission. Later, on 9 January, the council instructs the commissary agent, John Cadwalader, to provide as many arms as can be spared to the Marines with the fleet.

Meanwhile, prior to embarkation, the Marines receive more arms and supplies and a surprise shipment of “brilliantly colored” hussar uniforms, including “caps, coats, waistcoats, and trousers.”

**January 9 1776** -An ad appears in the Pennsylvania *Evening Post*, inserted by Captain John Welsh, in which he offers a \$2 reward for the return of one of his Marines, Peter M'Tagart.

**January 14 1776-In Maryland-** The convention authorizes raising a company of state Marines. The privates are to receive 5<sup>1</sup>/<sub>33</sub> dollars pay per month and the drummers and fifers are to be paid 6 dollars per month. Officers' pay is to be decided later. The company of Marines is to serve aboard the *Defense*, still under construction at this time at Baltimore. The project is being overseen by

Captain James Nicholson

**January 17 1776 —In Pennsylvania:** The Continental fleet, which has been at Liberty Island south of Philadelphia since 4 January, receives a slight and temporary reprieve from the frozen Delaware River; it is allowed to move farther south to Reedy Island. By this time, the *Providence* (Captain John Hazard) and the *Fly* (Lieutenant Hoysteed Hacker) have joined with the main body. Nevertheless, once at the new positions, the elements again turn nasty and the river becomes impassable, which compels Commodore Hopkins to remain there until 11 February, when the ice begins to break up.

This period of frozen isolation tries the patience of the men and the officers. The officers have no fear of any attack by the British, but they are forced to maintain constant watch to prevent desertion by those whose patriotism has surrendered to the frigid weather and the horrid conditions. Nevertheless, desertions increase at a dangerous pace. Some are brought back by local residents and militia on the New Jersey side of the river; others who try to reach Philadelphia are snagged and jailed or caught by contingents of Marines.

**January 25 1776 -In naval activity:** The *Hancock*, while prowling the waters of Massachusetts Bay, encounters two British ships, *Happy Return* and *Norfolk*. Sailors and Marines of the *Hancock* capture both vessels.

**February 13 1776-In naval activity:** In Delaware, the *Hornet* (Captain William Stone) and the *Wasp* (Captain William Hallock) arrive at Cape Henlopen from Baltimore to bolster Esek Hopkins' fleet, bringing it to eight vessels. In related activity, due to the absence of Lieutenant James Dickinson of the *Columbus*, John Travett of the *Andrew Doria* is promoted to lieutenant of Marines and transferred to the *Columbus*.

**February 17 1776-In naval activity:** The first fleet of the Continental navy enters the Atlantic Ocean for the first time. The eight ships' cruise begins uneventfully with fair skies and no sign of the enemy. However, on the second day at sea, the tranquil ocean and the clear skies suddenly are transformed into unruly seas and an ominous sky as the fleet is struck by a tremendous storm that imperils it and its mission. Many of the crew receive their first taste of being aboard a vessel rocked by unceasing high waves that maul even the heaviest of warships. To add to the trepidation, the combination of the gales and poor visibility increases the possibility of fatal collisions. The storm lasts only a short while, but once it passes, only six ships are in the formation. All contact with the *Fly* and the *Hornet* had been lost and despite a constant watch, the fate of the two vessels remains unknown for the remainder of the journey. The remaining six ships proceed on course to the Bahamas, again on an uneventful voyage until more than two weeks at sea, when two British coastal sloops are spotted and captured, preserving the presence of the fleet from the British on New Providence. After the seizures, the fleet completes its voyage and anchors on the southwest shore of the island.

Meanwhile, the *Fly* and the *Hornet*, which had collided during the storm, had safely returned to their home port. After receiving repairs the *Hornet* rejoins the fleet and participates in the mission. The Marines attack the British at New Providence on 3 March, in what becomes the first amphibious invasion of the Marine Corps and the first time that an American flag flies over a foreign land.

The fleet launched on 17 February includes Esek Hopkins' flagship, the *Alfred* (Captain Dudley Saltonstall), with its twenty 9-pounders, ten 6-pounders and a crew of 160 seamen and 63 Marines; the *Columbus* (Captain Abraham Whipple), with its eighteen 9-pounders, ten 6-pounders and crew of 150 seamen and 63 Marines; the brigantine *Cabot* (Captain John B. Hopkins), with its fourteen

6-pounders and crew of 90 seamen and 43 Marines; the brigantine *Andrew Doria* (Captain Nicholas Biddle) with its sixteen 6-pounders and crew of 65 seamen and 39 Marines; the sloop *Providence* (Captain John Hazard) with its twelve 4-pounders and crew of 62 seamen and 21 Marines; the sloop *Hornet* (Captain William Stone) with its ten 4-pounders and crew of 70 seamen; the schooner *Fly* (Lt. Hoysteed Hacker) with its six 9-pounders and 30 seamen; and the schooner *Wasp* (Captain William Hallock) with its eight 2-pounders, 43 seamen and 5 Marines.

Under fair winds from the northeast, the fleet weighs anchor and glides past Cape Henlopen and into the ocean. The Marine commanding officers aboard the fleet are: *Alfred*, Captain Samuel Nicholas; *Columbus*, Captain Joseph Shoemaker; *Cabot*, Captain John Welsh; *Andrew Doria*, Lt. Isaac Craig; *Providence*, Lt. Henry Dayton; *Hornet*, Lt. John Martin Strobagh; and *Wasp*, Lt. William Huddle. No Marines are assigned to the *Fly*.

**March 2 1776 In naval activity:** The American fleet under Commodore Hopkins remains anchored off Great Abaco, but subsequent to gaining some valuable intelligence from the captains of the two captured vessels out of New Providence, Hopkins orders final preparations for the attack to proceed immediately, against what Hopkins now suspects is an undefended British possession. Shortly thereafter, the muskets, swords and ammunition are issued to the Marines, while the seamen plunge into the task of preparing the ships' guns.

The entire fleet becomes animated as the operation begins to unfold. The Marines are shifted from their respective ships to the *Providence* and the two captured sloops. Hopkins' master plan is further unveiled as the fleet advances later in the day to positions from which the attack can be sprung at dawn on the following day.

**March 3 1776-INVASION OF NEW PROVIDENCE IN THE BAHAMAS** Prior to dawn on a Sunday morning, the American fleet begins its approach toward New Providence. The harbor is protected on the north by the diminutive Hog Island, leaving two approaches from the east and the west, both of which are protected by forts. The western approach is defended by Fort Nassau and the eastern entrance, often referred to as the back door, is guarded by Fort Montagu.

Fort Nassau was initially built by the British during the latter part of the 1600s, but it had been destroyed by a combined French-Spanish force during 1703 and later reconstructed during the 1740s. Fort Montagu had also been built during the 1740s. The rebuilt Fort Nassau has a complement of 46 guns (12-pounders and 18-pounders) that fiercely face any approaching vessel; however, unknown to the Americans, the fort's condition is extremely poor.

Governor Browne was warned during the previous year that the fort was unable to sustain an attack and if the guns were fired, it was highly possible the walls would collapse. To avoid such a calamity, the governor had ordered that a 6-pounder be deployed outside the gates of the fort, a square stone structure with two bastions, for the purpose of sounding an alarm or to fire a salute. At the other approach, Fort Montagu, a smaller fortification also constructed with stone, contains seventeen guns, composed of 12-pounders and 18-pounders. The fleet meets north of Nassau, beyond the horizon, where Hopkins orders the attack to commence. The *Providence* and the two sloops take the lead as planned; however, Hopkins' plan is self-foiled.

Rather than remaining out of sight, the entire fleet closes on the island, which eliminates the element of surprise. The fleet is easily spotted by the harbor pilot at about the stroke of dawn and he instantly informs the governor. Browne reacts with equal speed and in a flash, he opens the door and, still in his night clothes, he sees the American warships as they reach the entrance to the harbor.

Council is summoned and in less than twenty minutes, most are in attendance. Alarms are to be

sounded by three guns, but the situation is steadily deteriorating. While the fleet closes, the cannon is fired to signal the distress, and afterwards only one gun remains in place. The other two collapse. Meanwhile, the drummers beat the long roll to call the militia to arms, while the governor has yet to dress.

By about 0700, a member of council, Samuel Gambier, arrives at the fort and finds the governor slightly disoriented. In a sign of desperation, Browne is pondering whether to place the island's gunpowder aboard a vessel in the harbor laden with lumber to keep it from falling into the hands of the Americans; however, Gambier insists that the ammunition must remain for the defense of the court. In the meantime, the Americans continue to close, unaware of the state of panic on the island and most probably curious as to the reason for no signs of defense from the forts.

Captain William Chambers, in command of the lumber ship, is instructed to venture out to attempt to gather intelligence on the fleet, but his mission is aborted once the vessel *Mississippi Packet* encounters strong winds and high seas. Unable to gather the intelligence, the British return their focus to the militia, but, here too, they fare badly. Only about thirty of the militia have responded to the alarm. Of these, some have no weapons, and those who do find that most are inoperable.

By 0900, the militia under Lieutenant John Pratt advances toward Fort Montagu. At about the same time, Governor Browne, more composed, returns to Government House to finish dressing.

While the defenders rush to gain positions to resist the invaders, the Americans are encountering the same weather that forced Captain Chambers back to shore, and although Hopkins is still unaware of the conditions on the ground, he realizes he has lost all surprise since the sound of the three cannon. While Hopkins decides how to proceed, the winds have swept the fleet farther east and deeper penetration of the harbor would place his ships in great jeopardy from the guns at the fort. Hopkins changes his plans and by 1000, the fleet halts in Hanover Sound, slightly more than five miles from Nassau.

Hopkins calculates his options and considers landing the Marines at Fort Montagu, but there is no road leading from that sector of the island. Additional information acquired from the captured pilots proves accurate and by a suggestion of Lieutenant John Paul Jones, initially declined by Hopkins, the fleet moves to a safe position guided by the pilot. But still, the decision of where to land remains unsettled. Finally, after consultation with the various captains, Fort Montagu, the "back door" to Nassau, becomes the objective.

To bolster the attack, based on the difficulty anticipated, 50 seamen commanded by 2nd Lt. Thomas Weaver (*Cabot*) are added to the 234 Marines led by Captain Samuel Nicholas. While the main body of the fleet holds in place, the *Wasp* covers the *Providence* and the two sloops as they move toward the shore to unleash the first amphibious landing of the Continental Marines.

The operation unfolds quickly and at slightly after noon, the Marines and sailors bolt ashore at a point known as "the Creek," about two miles from Fort Montagu, against no resistance. Although the landing force encounters no opposition, the landing is not uneventful.

A village, New Guinea, in close proximity to where the Americans land, is inhabited by free slaves and mulattoes. As they observe the landing, the people become overwhelmed with fear that the troops are Spanish in search of gaining them as slaves. By 1400, the entire landing force is ashore and the villagers have relaxed. Unfortunately for the Americans, Hopkins neglects to seal the main entrance, a mistake that later aids the British. While warships stand by off Fort Montagu, the main body remains at Hanover Sound, leaving an escape hatch open at the Nassau harbor.

Since landing, the force has been preparing to advance to gain the fort, while the militia has slightly

increased its numbers to about sixty men at Fort Montagu. Lieutenant Pratt dispatches a party composed of about thirty militia under the command of Lieutenants Burke and Judkin, with instruction to move to the beach to see if it is possible to halt the invasion and to gather intelligence. The small contingent reaches the beach, but soon realizes it would not be possible to take action. Lt. Burke sends a man under a white flag to make an inquiry to determine the reason for the landing and to identify the nationality of the troops. The man is informed that the force is American, dispatched by the Congress of the United Colonies to confiscate the gunpowder and ammunition of the King of England. The messenger returns and relays the answers provided to him by the Americans and afterward, the officers with the party order the men back to the fort. No shots are fired by either side. In the meantime, the landing force initiates the advance to take Fort Montagu, while militia reinforcements also move to bolster the troops under Lts. Burke and Judkin the form the only defense line in front of the Marines and sailors. By this time, the circumstance point toward a confrontation, but the reinforcing militia led by Governor Browne hears no gunfire as it encounters the militia under Burke and Judkin, which is retiring.

The dilemma for Browne expands quickly. Fort Montagu is ordered evacuated and Browne instructs the militia to spike the cannon. At the same time, the Americans continue to advance along a primitive path that is bordered by the sea on one side and heavy woods on the other, unhindered by artillery, ambush or open defensive fire. Ironically, the primary objective is to confiscate the supposed large stores of arms and ammunition and yet several hours into the operation not one round has been fired at the Americans. Back in the town, anxiety continues to grow and still the decisions of Browne are less than courageous. Once he orders the fort to be abandoned, he leads the way back to town on the only horse available. Upon his return to Government House, his main concern seems to be the two hundred barrels of powder at the remaining fortification, Fort Nassau, rather than his militia or townspeople.

At about midnight, the British load much of the gunpowder from Fort Nassau aboard the two vessels in port, the *Mississippi Packet* and the *St. John*, which receive 10 and 43 barrels respectively. During the loading operation, Captain Chambers' crew tosses its cargo of lumber over the *Mississippi Packet*. During the early morning hours of Monday, 4 March, both vessels safely evade the fleet and scamper to the open sea, heading towards East Florida with orders to deliver the powder to the governor, Patrick Tonyn at St. Augustine.

Meanwhile, despite no hostilities throughout the night, the situation at Fort Nassau continues to deteriorate. Many of the militia have by this time deserted, yet Browne insists that the fort be defended. Once word spreads about the departure of the ammunition, only about twenty-five percent of the militia still stands at the ready. A contingent that had been dispatched to protect Government House is recalled to Fort Nassau, but once it arrives is informed of what had occurred during the night, the men proclaim that they by themselves could not properly defend the fort. The council concurs with the militia, but Browne still insists that he will defend Fort Nassau "as long as a man would stand by him." By dawn, the fort is abandoned.

As Fort Nassau is being abandoned, the Marines and sailors, after an uninterrupted night, are up and on the march prior to dawn. By the time the sun rises, the advance gains about one mile to reach the eastern fringe of the town and still no opposing forces appear. However, another messenger is sent out to confer with the Americans. After a short discussion, essentially identical to the one with the first messenger on the previous day, the spokesman informs Captain Nicholson that Fort Nassau is prepared for the arrival and that he can march there at his pleasure.

Nicholson does not immediately advance, but within about one hour, the Marines and sailors march directly down the main street of Nassau. En route to the fort, Captain Nicholson pauses at Government House and demands that he receive the keys to the Fort. Quite expeditiously, they are handed to him. Nicholson and his guard move to rejoin the column. Once at the fort, the Americans find 40 cannon, each loaded and prepared to fire, but no crews are there. Without incident, the fort is taken and the British colors are brought down and replaced by the American flag. This is the first time the American flag flies over a foreign land.

With the island's forts and the town of Nassau secured, word is sent out to the fleet to inform Commodore Hopkins of the success and to state that it is safe for the fleet to move through the harbor. The success of the landing is soon overshadowed by the loss of the powder that slipped through the harbor aboard the two vessels. Hopkins receives a full report of the captured stores almost as soon as he steps onto land. His immediate task is to get the arms and equipment aboard the ships; however, there are more items than available space. Hopkins hires the *Endeavor* to transport some of the extra stores. A meeting is held between Hopkins and Governor Browne, but the meeting is quite cool.

During the Americans' stay on the island, Browne spends some time confined in prison under Marine guards, but otherwise there is little interruption in everyday life of the inhabitants. One of the most serious problems arises due to a lack of provisions for the ground force and later, a huge problem develops due to sickness. The fleet had departed in winter weather, but now the troops find themselves suffering under a tropical sun and outbreaks of smallpox and fever. The invasion force that sustained no casualties will fall victim to the sickness and by the time the fleet returns to the colonies during early April, a few men will have succumbed to disease and 140 others wind up in hospitals.

The loading operation continues until 16 March. On the following day, the fleet departs, taking Governor Browne along on the voyage back to the colonies. Aside from letting much of the British stores of ammunition escape on the two ships, the operation had been a huge success. The British could no longer proclaim that the rebellion was confined to some rebel discontents, and they could no longer assume the conflict would be confined to the colonies. Rather, England is compelled to come to the realization that with the birth of the Colonial Navy and the accompanying striking power of amphibious invasions by the Marines, no British post could be considered safe from harm. Just as the defiant Minute Men had proved that the Americans could hold their own against the British, the success at New Providence raises the conflict to a new level by internationalizing the war and presenting an unexpected challenge to the Royal Navy, perceived as the ruler of the seas. In conjunction, the Marines had begun a tradition with the amphibious landing at New Providence that continues to modern times. Since the inception of the Marine Corps, no invasion force composed of American Marines has ever been driven back to the sea.

**March 9 1776- In Maryland:** The *Defence* is launched at Baltimore. The vessel is to carry a crew of 180 men, including state Marines, and it is to contain four months' provisions. Earlier, the state had authorized a company of Marines to serve aboard the ship. During the latter part of this year, Captain George Cook assumes command of the ship and initiates a successful cruise to the West Indies. Most of the states have some armed vessels separate from the Continental Navy during the war. Massachusetts also has a vessel named *Defence*.

**March 13 1776-In Philadelphia:** During a Wednesday session, a post rider delivers an urgent message from the Provincial Council of New York regarding the HMS *Phoenix*. Congress, after

consideration of the letter, resolves “that the marine committee be directed to purchase the armed vessel now in the river Delaware, on the most reasonable terms, for the service of the continent, and that her destination be left to the said marine committee.” The resolution comes about in an effort to intercept and destroy the *Phoenix*’s tender. The resolution is marked secret and the ship that the committee is authorized to acquire is the armed brigadier *Wild Duck* out of Maryland. It had recently arrived in port with a cargo of gunpowder from St. Eustatius.

The assigned committee travels to the docks to examine the vessel, presently commanded by Captain James Tibbett, and discovers it to be slightly larger than the *Cabot*. Soon after, the Maryland delegates are contacted and with their concurrence, the 16-gun vessel is brought into the continental service and renamed *Lexington*. Command of the newest vessel in the Continental Navy goes to Captain John Barry.

Measures are immediately taken to acquire arms for the ship and for commissioned officers. The men chosen by the Marine Committee within several days after acquiring the vessel are 1st Lieutenant Luke Matthewman, 2nd Lieutenant Robert Scott and Abraham Boyce, captain of Marines. In addition, the committee appoints a lieutenant of Marines; however, his name remains unknown.

**March 13 1776-In Philadelphia:** During a Wednesday session, a post rider delivers an urgent message from the Provincial Council of New York regarding the HMS *Phoenix*. Congress, after consideration of the letter, resolves “that the marine committee be directed to purchase the armed vessel now in the river Delaware, on the most reasonable terms, for the service of the continent, and that her destination be left to the said marine committee.” The resolution comes about in an effort to intercept and destroy the *Phoenix*’s tender. The resolution is marked secret and the ship that the committee is authorized to acquire is the armed brigadier *Wild Duck* out of Maryland. It had recently arrived in port with a cargo of gunpowder from St. Eustatius.

The assigned committee travels to the docks to examine the vessel, presently commanded by Captain James Tibbett, and discovers it to be slightly larger than the *Cabot*. Soon after, the Maryland delegates are contacted and with their concurrence, the 16-gun vessel is brought into the continental service and renamed *Lexington*. Command of the newest vessel in the Continental Navy goes to Captain John Barry.

Measures are immediately taken to acquire arms for the ship and for commissioned officers. The men chosen by the Marine Committee within several days after acquiring the vessel are 1st Lieutenant Luke Matthewman, 2nd Lieutenant Robert Scott and Abraham Boyce, captain of Marines. In addition, the committee appoints a lieutenant of Marines; however, his name remains unknown.

**March 16 1776** - Commodore Hopkins’ forces complete the loading of supplies and armaments at Nassau. The Marines and sailors are ordered to board the ships and prepare to leave the following day.

**March 28 1776 - In naval activity:** Anxiety continues to build in Philadelphia due to the recent intelligence concerning the penetration of Delaware Bay by a British warship, the frigate HMS *Roebuck* and its tender. A small contingent of row galleys had been dispatched on the previous day, and during the previous night, arms and supplies had been rushed to the *Lexington* to enable Captain John Barry to weigh anchor and move to bolster the galleys and intercept the *Roebuck*. Although the *Lexington* remains short of its Marine contingent, Barry decides that the ship must sail. It departs the city during the early morning hours without Captain Boyce and his newly recruited contingent

of Marines. The *Lexington* sails down the Delaware and advances beyond Reedy Island, passing the row galleys there, but Captain Barry, in an attempt to avoid a direct confrontation with the HMS *Roebuck*, maneuvers around Cape May and into the Atlantic without incident and from there he sails into Egg Harbor, outside of present-day Atlantic City, on 3 April.

**April 5 1776 - In naval activity:** The American fleet under Esek Hopkins, which has been on Block Island since 3 April, adds another vessel to its list of prizes when the HMS *Bolton*, a bomb brigantine, is seized. The *Bolton* is armed with 8 carriage guns and ten swivels and carries a crew of 48, including seamen and British Marines. Later this day, several smaller ships are seized at points south of Block Island, while the fleet scours the seas in search of a few new prizes before heading to port. The remainder of the day is uneventful, but the tranquility begins to diminish while most of the men are asleep.

At about 0100 on the 6th, lookouts spot two sails to the southeast and the vessels are identified as a probable frigate with its tender. All hands are called to stations and the Marines are roused from their bunks and ordered to form for battle. Captain Samuel Nicholas leads a contingent of his Marines to the quarterdeck of the *Alfred*, while Lieutenant Matthew Parke, with the main body, climbs aboard the barge on the main deck. Meanwhile, the *Cabot* moves against the encroaching ships and closes. The intruder at a short distance becomes identified when a voice from the deck of the 20-gun frigate proclaims that she is the HMS *Glasgow*. The British press to know the identities of the other vessels with the *Cabot* and the captain replies that they are the *Columbus* and the *Alfred*. The British then receive an unexpected reply when Captain John B. Hopkins' response is followed by a hand grenade that descends from the *Cabot*'s main mast. It lands with a blast that disturbs the night air but causes no harm.

Before the British can react, the *Cabot* delivers seven broadsides, which sparks the British guns to action. The *Glasgow* returns fire, which causes damage and inflicts casualties, including fatalities. The fatalities include the ship's master (Sinclair Seymour) and two Marines (Patrick Kaine and George Kennedy). The return fire also wounds eight, including the captain and Lieutenant John Hood Wilson, a Marine.

By this time, the overpowering 9-pounders of the *Glasgow* compel the distressed *Cabot* to retire, while the *Alfred* moves into the fray with her twenty 9-pounders and ten 6-pounders to neutralize the *Glasgow*'s guns. The two opposing frigates pound each other with broadsides, but it is the *Alfred* that sustains a blow that knocks her out of action. A fortuitous shot from the *Glasgow* simultaneously hits the *Alfred*'s wheel block and the lines running to the tiller. For a while the *Alfred* remains totally uncontrollable, but the crew struggles and corrects the problem. In the meantime, other American ships close, but the *Providence* is unwilling to move within the range of the *Glasgow*, leaving the bulk of the struggle to the *Andrew Doria* and the *Columbus*. However, neither is able to strike a killing blow.

The *Andrew Doria*, the first to arrive, gets off a few shots, but in the process she also receives several hits that inflict damage to her hull and rigging. In the meantime, the *Columbus*, which had been able to get a few shots off in the beginning of the contest, moves back into the fight, but she, too, is unable to score any success. All the while, the captain of the *Glasgow*, unaware of the situation with the American fleet, remains concerned about being boarded, rechecks his plans and orders that all dispatches be thrown into the sea.

At about the same time, British Captain Tyringham Howe changes course and begins to head for Newport with the Americans in pursuit. The *Glasgow* had sustained heavy damage, but the chase

to catch the disabled vessel ends at dawn with the cripple able to outrun the Americans and safely make it to Newport.

Following the night-long slug-fest, the American ships at about noon on the 6th rendezvous and then move toward New London to turn in their prizes, including the newest addition, the tender of the *Glasgow*. After battling the *Glasgow*, the fleet encounters another perilous fog that unfolded at Long Island Sound and by 1800 permeates the skies northwest of Block Island. No contact is made with any enemy vessels, but at the break of dawn on the 7th, the *Andrew Doria* and the *Cabot* suddenly discover that the remainder of the fleet, including the prizes, has vanished. The pair sets sail for New London and by about noon, the *Cabot* and the *Andrew Doria* sail into the Thames River, after passing the New London lighthouse, and drop their anchors to await Commodore Hopkins and the main body of the fleet. Subsequent to dusk, the friendly sails are spotted and after an uneventful night, the *Alfred* leads the fleet and the prizes up the river to New London.

The tone and ferocity of the battle is unrecognizable by the statistics alone, which are as follows: the *Alfred*, 5 killed and 7 wounded; the *Cabot*, 4 killed and 7 wounded; the *Columbus*, 1 wounded; the *Andrew Doria*, 1 wounded. Also, the U.S. Continental Marines sustain their first officer fatalities at this battle. Seven officers are either killed or wounded.

After securing the forts at New Providence and occupying the island for a short time, the fleet soon paid a high cost in casualties through sickness, which literally depleted large numbers of the Marines and seamen. This caused the crews to lose some effectiveness, and no one was spared due to rank. Even the doctors were struck by the sickness.

Shortly after the fleet's arrival in New London, it is discovered that of the initial number (about 1,000) of seamen and Marines, about 250 are suffering from what is described as a "new malignant fever" and have to be hospitalized. Another factor is that in the process of savoring the victory and having confiscated some spirits during the cruise, those not sick spent some time celebrating, which contributed little to the gunners' marksmanship.

The victorious fleet is initially greeted with accolades for the success of the New Providence Expedition, but in a while, due in great part to the failure to overpower the HMS *Glasgow*, criticism slowly emerges. It comes as early as a congratulatory letter from the president of Congress, John Hancock, who rings praise upon Hopkins for the actions of the men, yet finds space to emphasize the escape of the *Glasgow*. Street talk even springs up in New London with frequent criticism of the commodore. Finally, inquiries lead to in-depth investigations into the conduct of Hopkins, which conclude with his dismissal by Congress on 27 March 1777.

**April 6th 1776** — The HMS *Glasgow* intercepts the fleet of Esek Hopkins which is returning from their victory in the Bahamas off the coast of Long Island. The British, under Captain Howe devastate the Fleet and escape unharmed. It is his skill in this battle which causes John Paul Jones to be placed in command of the USS *Providence*. The first American Continental Marine Officers killed occur here (17 killed or wounded).

**April 9 1776 -In naval activity:** The *Lexington* arrives back at Egg Harbor, following the victory over the HMS *Edward* on 7 April. While it is undergoing repairs, orders arrive from the Marine Committee instructing Captain John Barry to move to Cape May, New Jersey to rendezvous with the sloop *Betsy*, which is under orders to transport Silas Deane, the recently appointed minister to France, and escort the ship to its destination. Once the repairs are completed, the *Lexington* sails and arrives at Cape May on 15 April. Also, Barry receives some welcome news. The Marines under Captain Boyce, left at Philadelphia when Barry departed hurriedly, are to be picked up when he

arrives at Cape May.

**April 13 1776 - In naval activity:** The *Lexington* arrives back at Egg Harbor, following the victory over the HMS *Edward* on 7 April. While it is undergoing repairs, orders arrive from the Marine Committee instructing Captain John Barry to move to Cape May, New Jersey to rendezvous with the sloop *Betsy*, which is under orders to transport Silas Deane, the recently appointed minister to France, and escort the ship to its destination. Once the repairs are completed, the *Lexington* sails and arrives at Cape May on 15 April. Also, Barry receives some welcome news. The Marines under Captain Boyce, left at Philadelphia when Barry departed hurriedly, are to be picked up when he arrives at Cape May.

**April 15 1776 - In naval activity:** Captain John Barry, aboard the *Lexington*, pursuant to orders, arrives at Cape May from Egg Harbor to rendezvous with the *Betsy* and to receive his complement of Marines under Captain Boyce. Barry is able to send boats to pick up the Marines, but he is informed that the *Betsy* had departed without protection on the 13th. In an attempt to provide the protection as ordered, despite the time delay, the *Lexington* weighs anchor just after collecting the small contingent of Marines under Captain Boyce. After reaching a point near Bermuda, without any sight of the *Betsy*, Barry discontinues the chase, reverses the course and sails northward.

**May 8 1776 - In Philadelphia:** On this Wednesday, thirteen row galleys from the Pennsylvania Navy and the *Reprisal* converge on Hog Island prior to dawn and afterward they move south along the Delaware River; however, the *Reprisal* is unable to proceed past the obstruction, compelling it to remain above the barrier with the *Montgomery* to essentially form a second line of defense against approaching British warships. New orders arrive from the Pennsylvania Committee of Safety that direct both vessels to move past the obstruction and join with the lead galleys. The vessels cannot comply due to the tides and unkind weather, but at the break of dawn, another futile attempt to pass the barrier is made.

By about 1400, a new report indicates that the HMS *Roebuck* and her forty guns along with her tender, the 28-gun HMS *Liverpool*, had reached positions above New Castle, Delaware. In the meantime, the British, who had remained in place throughout the night, are still holding due to fog, but at 1300, as the fog begins to dissipate, the British spot the American vessels that are closing.

The force is composed of the thirteen galleys that departed Philadelphia before dawn. Each of the galleys contains one gun. Some have 18-pounders, while others have 24-pounders and the remainder carry 32-pounders. In addition, the Americans are bolstered by a sloop outfitted as a fire ship and a floating battery. Also, the company of Marines under Captain Pennington (attached to the *Reprisal*) accompany the galleys.

The clash ignites when the Americans open fire from afar without inflicting any damage. Return fire follows as the British weigh anchor and close to within several hundred yards to maintain a steady barrage. Nevertheless, neither side is able to inflict damage during the two-hour slug-fest. All the while, citizens had gathered along the river to watch the spectacle. Some of the spectators are members of Colonel Samuel Miles' militia battalion. The *Roebuck* runs aground, but the Americans fail to take advantage and instead, they disengage and sail back up the river to Chester.

After the smoke clears, the crew of the *Roebuck* maintains watch while operations get underway to free the vessel. No attempts are made to attack the stranded ship, but it does not break loose until about 0400 on the 5th. Once freed, the *Roebuck*, under Captain Andrew Hammond, moves into the channel and drops anchor.

At about 0230, news regarding the clash between the galleys and the British warships on the Delaware on the previous day reaches the *Reprisal* and the vessel *Montgomery* when an express arrives at their positions above the barrier south of Philadelphia. Shortly thereafter, as requested, powder is loaded on a boat and dispatched to the galleys at Chester, Pennsylvania. Shortly thereafter supplies are ferried to Chester and although the *Lexington* remains under repair, its captain, John Barry, and his crew arrive in the *Hornet* to bolster the forces at Chester against the British threat on the river.

The *Reprisal*, by about noon, is able to pass the barrier, but complications develop when the *Montgomery* maneuvers to follow and the pilot runs the vessel ashore. In the process, the *Montgomery* slams into the *Reprisal*, causing damage to the *Reprisal*. A decision is made for the *Reprisal* not to proceed.

In the meantime, the galleys and the British warships *Roebuck* and *Liverpool* reinitiate the contest and again, neither side is able to claim victory. The two sides continue in a running battle as the British try to drag the galleys into deeper water where they could more easily be liquidated, but the plan fails. By nightfall, the galleys drop anchor at New Castle, while the British halt for the night several miles below them. Unlike the previous day's contest, the *Roebuck* and the *Liverpool* each sustain serious damage.

In other activity, the *Wasp* encounters and engages the brigantine HMS Betsy off the coast of Delaware. The *Wasp*'s crew of sailors and Marines take the initiative and seize the British warship at Christiana Creek.

**May 18 1776 In naval activity:** The *Lexington*, having completed repairs at Philadelphia, arrives at Chester, Pennsylvania, to join with the *Hornet* and *Reprisal*. In related activity, recruiting for the Marine Corps has greatly improved, which alleviates the shortages aboard the continental vessels. The *Lexington* with the windfall now has a crew of more than more than 100, including officers, seamen and Marines. Coincidentally, one new Marine, a sergeant, is also named John Barry, and he too is from Ireland, but not thought to be related to Captain John Barry. The three continental ships are ordered to sail to Cape May, New Jersey. In other naval activity, the schooner *Franklin*, commanded by Captain James Mugford, is cruising east of Boston harbor and suddenly spots a British transport as it unwittingly heads for the harbor, no longer controlled by the British Navy. A quick glance informs the *Franklin*'s crew that the ship is fully loaded and in all probability unwilling to offer resistance. The assumption proves true; the *Franklin* closes and takes her without incident even though British warships are in close proximity at Nantasket Roads. The ship's cargo includes 1,000 carbines and 75 tons of gunpowder, some of which is distributed to the Marines of the fleet.

**May 19 1776 -In naval activity:** The *Andrew Doria* and the *Cabot* embark on a one month cruise. Prior to departure, the ships each receive new Marine lieutenants. Lieutenant John Karr (Kerr) is assigned to the *Cabot* in place of Lieutenant James Hood Wilson, who had been killed during the contest with the *Glasgow* in early April. Karr comes under the command of Captain John Welsh. The *Andrew Doria*, which at this time carries only 12 Marines under Lieutenant Isaac Craig, receives Lt. Trevett and 17 additional Marines drawn from the *Alfred*, the flagship of Commodore Esek Hopkins. The voyage does not remain uneventful for long. Shortly after sailing, the ships encounter the HMS *Cerberus*, a frigate that ignites flight. The *Cabot* swerves eastward to evade the frigate while the *Andrew Doria* speeds southward with the British in pursuit; however, Captain Biddle is able to maintain the lead and by dusk on the following day, the *Cerberus* terminates its chase.

**May 29 1776 - In naval activity:** On the *Andrew Doria*, which is cruising alone at a point south of

Boston, a lookout spots movement on the horizon to the north and reports it to Captain Biddle, who orders the ship to reverse course and initiate pursuit of two unidentified vessels. Within about one hour, the *Andrew Doria* closes and the ships are identified as British transports, the *Crawford* and the *Oxford*.

To the surprise of the crew, neither ship is armed and both are carrying fresh troops to Halifax. One hundred men, a company of the 42nd Royal Highlanders, are aboard the *Oxford*. The *Crawford* is also transporting a company composed of about 100 troops attached to the British 71st Regiment. As the saga unfolds, it is learned that the vessels had been part of a huge convoy, composed of 32 ships, but during a nasty storm in the Atlantic, the transports lost contact with the main body.

The capture brings a combination of good fortune and a colossal dilemma for Captain Biddle, due to the great number of British troops and his much smaller contingent of Marines. Biddle considers the problem, examines his options and shortly afterward comes up with what could be described as one of the early examples of American naval ingenuity. He orders all of the British arms transferred to the *Andrew Doria* to eliminate one problem and then he orders all officers, navy and army, to be confined on the *Crawford*, leaving the troops to the custody of the Americans on the *Oxford*. Biddle's plan keeps the naval crews from their leaders and separates the enlisted men from their officers to prevent the British from overwhelming their captors and regaining control of their ships. All three ships sail for Providence.

All goes well; no enemy warships are sighted and the weather remains fair, but the situation changes drastically on 11 June, when the trio crosses paths with five British warships cruising about sixty miles south of Martha's Vineyard.

**June 3 1776 - In naval activity:** The frigate *Boston* (Captain Hector McNeill) is launched and during the following month, a second frigate, built in Massachusetts, the *Hancock*, is launched. Captain John Ford, a veteran of Bunker Hill, requests to become captain of Marines and stipulates that he will enlist all of his men; however, his offer is declined. In August naval agent Thomas Cushing, pressed by John Hancock of Massachusetts, recommends Richard Palms as captain of Marines for the *Boston*. In addition, Benjamin Thompson is recommended as lieutenant of Marines on the *Boston*. Congress approves of Palms' commission on 23 July, with Thompson receiving his on the following day. Cushing delays a recommendation for Marine officers on the *Hancock* until October, which ignites a confrontation with John Hancock.

**June 11 1776 - In naval activity:** The *Andrew Doria*, while en route back to Providence with two prizes and about 300 captives, including 200 British soldiers, encounters five British warships at positions south of Martha's Vineyard. The *Andrew Doria*'s guns are no match against such a large force and the captured vessels, the *Oxford* and the *Crawford*, are both unarmed and manned only by prize crews. At first sight of the enemy armada, the ships scatter and try to outrun their respective pursuers to ignite three separate sea chases with three different results and a couple of surprises for the British in the end. The quickest conclusion occurs when the agile *Andrew Doria* sets the pace as she races east, while the *Crawford* sails south and the *Oxford* moves to the west. The British react accordingly and begin pursuit.

The British lose the race with the *Andrew Doria* as she leaves the British in her wake and makes it to Newport. The *Crawford*, commanded by Lieutenant James Josiah (prize-master) of the Colonial Navy, makes a clear break, but the British follow relentlessly and on the following morning, the *Oxford* is caught and seized. The British direct the tender of the HMS *Cerberus* to escort the *Crawford* and its American prisoners to Long Island. En route, the British voyage is unexpectedly

interrupted by the appearance of one of the sloops of General Washington's recently created New York fleet. The *Sculler* recaptures the *Crawford* on 19 June off Fire Island. In the meantime, at the beginning of the chase, the *Oxford* and its crew of 11 men led by Marine Lieutenant John McDougall (prize master) is unable to maintain control over such a large force and before the vessel even loses sight of the *Andrew Doria*, the British overwhelm the crew and retake the ship.

Despite the lack of an experienced navigator, the British aboard the *Oxford* decide to sail to Virginia to join with Governor Dunmore at Hampton Roads. Unlike the *Crawford*, the *Oxford* heads south without being intercepted and completes the journey when it arrives at the Virginia Capes on 20 June. The British once there seek information on the exact location of Dunmore and after an inquiry, they are informed he is at a place about forty miles up the James River. The response draws a round of cheers from the jubilant troops as they weigh anchor and get underway, unaware they had received erroneous information.

Governor Dunmore, at this time, is positioned with his forces to the north in Chesapeake Bay. Jubilant from the news on Dunmore, the British move up the James River with high hopes, only to encounter two armed American craft attached to the Virginia Navy. Although the *Oxford* holds several hundred British troops (enlisted soldiers and seamen), they lack arms and their officers had been transferred to the *Crawford*, leaving them no options. The Virginia Navy seizes the ship and within a short while, Virginia infantry, described by one of the former American captives, Marine Lt. Trevett, as "the finest (infantry) I ever saw," appear and oversee the British troops.

The company of Virginians marches them toward Richmond, with lieutenants John Trevett, USMC, and John McDougall, USN, accompanying them. At Williamsburg, the Marine officers break off from the column and afterward, with financial help they receive in Williamsburg, they return to Rhode Island.

**June 12 1776 - In naval activity:** The sloop *Providence*, commanded by Captain John Paul Jones, having delivered the continental troops to New York, returns to Newport, Rhode Island. The visit is short. On the following day, Jones receives orders to escort ships between Narragansett Bay and Long Island Sound. The *Providence* also receives a new contingent of Marines. Lieutenant Alpheus Rice reports for duty this day and the 22 Marines he had recruited from the Rhode Island Brigade follow two days later. Upon boarding, they double the size of the Marines aboard.

**June 18 1776 - In naval activity:** Following the seizure of two British ships on the 16th, Washington's New England fleet (now commanded by Artemus Ward) scores another victory when a British transport is seized. The diminutive fleet continues to operate in the waters off New England until early 1777, when Congress orders it disbanded; however, the officers and men, including sailors and Marines, are transferred into the Continental service.

In other naval activity, John Paul Jones, at Newport, receives new orders that cancel out his recent orders to escort vessels in Narragansett Bay. Jones is ordered to sail the sloop *Providence* to Boston. Jones departs on the 20th and upon arrival, the *Providence* is given responsibility to escort a convoy of transports, laden with coal, to Delaware Bay. The convoy arrives safely on 1 August.

**June 25 1776-** In Philadelphia: During a Tuesday session of Congress, action is taken to raise Marine officers for the four brigantines under construction in Philadelphia and the vicinity of the city. The Marine Committee recommends: Captain Samuel Nicholas, to be advanced to major of marines; Andrew Porter (28-gun frigate *Effingham*), Joseph Hardy (Remains on *Columbus*), Samuel Shaw (32-gun frigate *Randolph*), Benjamin Deane (32-gun frigate *Washington*), and Robert Mullin

(24-gun frigate *Delaware*), to be captains of marines; Daniel Henderson (*Effingham*), David Love (*Delaware*), Franklin Reed (*Randolph*), and Peregrine Brown (*Washington*), to be first lieutenants of marines; James M'Clure (*Effingham*), William Gilmore (Ship assignment unknown), Abel Morgan (*Washington*), and Hugh Montgomery (*Delaware*), to be second lieutenants of marines; John Stewart to be captain; Thomas Pownal, first lieutenant, and Richard Harrison, second lieutenant, of marines, for the frigate building in Maryland.: John Langdon, Esqr as agent of prizes for the Colony of New Hampshire. After consideration, Congress resolves "that the gentlemen recommended be approved, and that commissions be granted to them accordingly."

Congress also resolves "that the Secret Committee be directed to sell to John Maxwell Nesbit & Co. 125 lb. of powder, for the use of the privateer fitting out by them." In addition, it is resolved "that the committee appointed to contract for making musquets, be directed to consider on a bounty, or other means, for encouraging the making of musquets." Major Samuel Nicholas, appointed as first captain of the Marines during the previous November, who had recently completed a cruise aboard the *Alfred*, had tired of being ashore and requested sea duty.

Nevertheless, during a meeting with John Hancock, he was informed that he is being detached from the *Alfred*. Afterwards, he is informed by the Marine Committee that he is to remain in Philadelphia to "discipline" the "four Companies of Men being then raising for the Frigates on the Stocks."

**June 28 1776 -In naval activity:** The British blockade of the Delaware Capes continues to fence in the American ships at Cape May, New Jersey. The *Reprisal* is anxious to break out to escort a merchant convoy of thirteen ships and to deliver a passenger, William Bingham, the newly appointed American agent for Martinique. At about dusk, the *Nancy*, an American merchant brigantine, comes into sight east of Cape May. The *Lexington* and the *Wasp* move out to lend some assistance to the merchant ship, but darkness interrupts the operation and after a while, the ships return to port without finding the *Nancy*.

On the following morning, contact is again made by sight, but in addition to the *Nancy*, the HMS *Orpheus* comes into view as she gives chase to the *Nancy*. The American vessels, upon sight of the *Orpheus*, return to port. Nevertheless, the Americans remain determined to aid the struggling merchant vessel. Lieutenant Richard Wickes, the brother of Captain Lambert Wickes, attached to the *Reprisal*, forms a party of seamen and Marines and moves to board the *Nancy*, but once on deck, it becomes apparent that there is no way to raise sufficient resistance against the closing 32-gun frigate. Lt. Wickes, aware of the cargo of powder and arms, runs the ship aground rather than allow the British to gain the stores.

Soon after, Captain Barry of the *Lexington* and a party from his crew join the disabled *Nancy* on the beach and participate in unloading the cargo. The risky operation succeeds in removing nearly all of the ammunition and arms before the British arrive. About 100 barrels of powder are left aboard when the *Orpheus* and *Kingfisher* move in and commence fire. Barry and the others at that point abandon the improvised salvage operation and prepare to retire, but as they depart, the *Nancy* is set afire as a farewell gift to the British, who by now are loitering in close proximity to the vessel.

As the Americans move out, boats from the British warships move in and the parties board the burning ship, unaware that her cargo includes gunpowder. Within about five minutes, while the boarding party is still on board, a horrific explosion occurs when the flames ignite the gunpowder. While the British lose a prize and sustain the tragic loss of some of their men, the incident opens the gates of the Capes. The British frigates retire from the area on 3 July and while the *Orpheus* and *Kingfisher* sail northward, the *Reprisal* finally sails for Martinique with her passenger, William

Bingham, and the thirteen merchant ships. During the operation to aid the *Nancy*, Lieutenant Wickes is killed.

**July 1 1776 -In naval activity:** The Connecticut Navy succeeds against the British when the vessel *Defence* engages and captures the brigantine HMS *John*. The *Defence* is a state chartered vessel, but Marines are on board and assist it in its conquest.

**July 11 1776 - In naval activity:** The *Reprisal*, while en route to Martinique, encounters and seizes a 240-ton British merchant ship, the *Friendship*. A few days later, the *Reprisal* encounters two other British merchant vessels, the schooner *Peter* and the brigantine *Neptune*. Both are seized. Captain Lambert Wickes assigns prize crews composed of sailors and Marines on each of the British ships, and they afterward sail the prizes back to the colonies.

Also, the *Andrew Doria* encounters and captures a British merchant ship, the *Nathaniel and Elizabeth*, while on patrol in the Atlantic. Once the ship is secured and a prize crew designated, Captain Biddle orders it taken to port along with its cargo of rum and sugar. Afterward, Biddle re-initiates the cruise, but within a few additional uneventful days, he returns to Newport. After arriving there, Captain Biddle receives news from the Marine Committee that he is to command a new frigate, the *Randolph*. New orders are then given to Biddle directing him to again embark on a cruise with a final destination of Philadelphia. After the short pause at Newport, the *Andrew Doria*, along with the *Columbus*, departs during early August.

**July 13 1776 -In naval activity:** The *Reprisal* encounters the schooner HMS *Peter* and, after a confrontation, takes it as a prize of the American Navy. The *Reprisal* subsequently seizes the HMS *Neptune*, and an Irish ship, the *Duchess of Leinster*, before month's end. In other naval activity, the American vessel *Wildcat* seizes a British schooner, *Egmont*, but on the following day, the British ship *Surprise* seizes the *Wildcat*.

**July 21 1776 -In New York:** At Fort Ticonderoga, Lt. Colonel Thomas Hartly (6th Pennsylvania Battalion) informs the commander, General Horatio Gates, that there is a serious shortage of Marines for the naval vessels. One man, Robert Hop(e)s, wounded at Trois Rivieres during the Canadian Campaign, is recognized for his bravery during the campaign and is recommended to General Arnold. Afterward, he is commissioned as a lieutenant of Marines and assigned to the Royal Savage to lead a contingent of twenty-five Marines. However, two problems develop, the shortage of Marines and Hop(e)s' decision to decline his commission. General Gates solves the former by ordering the draft of seamen and Marines from the Northern Army. The latter problem is eliminated by the appointment of Ensign James Calderwood. The draft continues into September. By mid-August, about 400 men are drafted, but by the following month, the shortage becomes less of a problem and the draftees are reduced by about ninety percent.

**Early August 1776- In naval activity:** Captain Biddle prepares to depart with the *Andrew Doria* pursuant to orders to sail into Philadelphia. Biddle, subsequent to this mission, relinquishes command and then assumes command of a new frigate, the *Randolph*. Prior to departure, Biddle receives a pleasant surprise when Lieutenants John McDougall of the Navy and John Trevett, a Marine, rejoin the ship following their capture while attempting to bring in a prize, the *Oxford*, a British merchantman. The *Andrew Doria*, along with the *Columbus*, both weigh anchor at Newport, but they later separate to act on their own. Subsequent to parting ways, the *Andrew Doria* encounters a British merchant ship, the *Molly*, which soon becomes a prize. Within about twenty four hours, another British merchant ship, the *Lawrence*, also a brigantine, is seized. These seizures are followed by two additional ships that are taken within the next two days, giving Biddle a string of prizes prior

to arriving at Philadelphia. Two others are gained prior to arriving at Chester on the Delaware River, just south of Philadelphia on 17 September.

After a short pause, the *Andrew Doria* moves up the river to the Philadelphia Navy Yard, where it is left for repairs. Although Captain Biddle has completed his final mission on the ship, the Marine contingent remains with the brigantine, except for Lieutenant Isaac Craig. He is promoted to captain and assigned to the *Champion*, a galley.

**August 12 1776 -In naval activity:** The HMS *Repulse* and 25 sails of the British convoy arrive at Staten Island. British Captain Davis, in a dispatch to Philip Stevens, notes that no troops are lost during the voyage and that all are in good health. Later, British Commodore William Hotham arrives with the remainder of the fleet. During the voyage from England, many of the Hessian mercenaries experience sickness. Also, Captain George Jerry Osborne, a Marine, arrives on the frigate *Raleigh* at Portsmouth, New Hampshire. He will be joined on 21 August by 1st Lt. Stephen Meads and 2nd Lt. Thwing. In total about ninety Marines are assigned to the ship.

**August 14 1776 - In Naval Activity,** 1st Lt. Franklin Reed of Captain Samuel Shaw's company of Marines, aboard the *Randolph*, reports the first desertion. Reed offers a reward of 30 shillings and expenses for the return of Angus Cameron of Ireland, but no one responds to his advertisement.

**August 21 1776 - In naval activity:** The *Providence*, commanded by Captain John Paul Jones, leaves Delaware Bay on its initial cruise with Jones as captain. Jones' crew had undertaken some changes as prior to departure on 12 August. Lieutenant Rice, a Marine, is dismissed due to a confrontation between him and the master, William Hopkins. The altercation is settled between the two men, but Jones refuses to have quarrels between his officers. Rice had been replaced by Edmund Arrowsmith. Nevertheless, on 29 August, Rice receives a commission as lieutenant of Marines aboard the brigantine *Hampden*. After about one week at sea, Jones' crew seizes the brigantine HMS *Britannia*. The prize is sailed back to Philadelphia while the *Providence* continues its cruise by sailing toward the Bermuda latitudes, where it encounters the HMS *Solebay* on 1 September.

**August 22 1776 -In naval activity:** The Continental navy continues to build its force of Marines for the ships, but an acute shortage of weapons hinders the four companies of Marines; however, on this day, congress moves to alleviate the crisis. The resolution: "That the Secret Committee be directed to deliver to Major Nicholas, a number of musquets, sufficient to arm the marines raising under his command in this city." In conjunction, complications develop on the 29th when Congress resolves to supply arms to the German Battalion and if necessary to draw such arms from those intended for the Marines. Nonetheless, the Marines retain the arms and although there is no specific reason, it is thought that only the presence of Major Samuel Nicholas, and support of friends there, that the Marines did not lose their weapons.

**August 29 1776 -In Philadelphia:** During a Thursday session, Congress, after considering a recommendation of the Marine committee for Alpheus Rice to be appointed first lieutenant of Marines aboard the brigantine *Hampden*, concurs and grants the commission. The *Hampden* is commanded by Hoysteed Hacker. Also, Congress considers a letter from General Lee, at Charleston, that includes an intercepted letter. Afterward it resolves "that Mr. J. Mease be directed to provide proper cloathing for the German battalion, and also for the two batallions of Virginians on their march to New York, the cost of the same cloathing to be deducted out of the pay of the men by stoppages." It also resolves "that the Secret Committee be directed to provide proper arms for the German battalion; and, in case they cannot otherways provide arms, that they be empowered to apply to this purpose the arms ordered to be put into the hands of the marines." The resolution

directing arms for the German Battalion, endangers the earlier requisition of arms for the Marines. **September 4 1776 -In New York:** In accordance with an earlier agreement reached between General Washington and British General William Howe, the Americans and the English initiate an exchange of prisoners. General John Sullivan is exchanged for British General Richard Prescott. General Sullivan will later succeed General Charles Lee (December 1776). In other activity, Lord Dunmore, who had been forced to flee Virginia, writes to Lord Germain in London that he is in New York, where he claims to be in position to help the British gain intelligence on the southern colonies. Dunmore mentions that his force had been greatly decreased to only 108 men due to sickness and the lack of places where he could access fresh drinking water. Also, 33 troops attached to Colonel Asa Whitcomb's regiment are drafted into the Marine Corps and ordered to report to the fleet to serve under the command of Lieutenant Calderwood. Colonel Arnold remarked regarding the Marines and sailors with the fleet: "We have a wretched motley Crew; the Marines, the Refuse of every regiment and the Seamen, few of them, ever wet with salt Water."

**September 6 1776-In naval activity:** John Paul Jones' *Providence* engages the sloop HMS *Favourite* and easily captures it. The *Providence* is then intercepted by the HMS *Milford* off Nova Scotia. The see-saw chase lasts for more than eight hours. The elusive *Providence* contains the *Milford*, while the Americans continue to harass her gunners. Despite incessant fire, the British fail to hit the *Providence*. Only a solitary Marine in the top sails can return fire against the British cannon. Jones and the *Providence* get away without harm and continue their voyage toward the Bay of Canso in Canada. On the 22nd, Jones' men raid Canso Harbor and then the fishing town of Isle Madame. The rebels take some vessels as prizes only to lose them during a nasty storm.

**September 20 1776-In naval activity:** The *Providence* stands off Cape Sable (southwestern tip of Nova Scotia) between it and the mainland, while John Paul Jones' crew takes a breather. While the crew is engaged in a little fishing, a lookout spots the 28-gun HMS *Milford*. The fishing lines are quickly tossed and all hands rush to stations, but Jones waits as the frigate rushes toward the *Providence* and at the appropriate moment, in synchronization with the *Milford* reaching cannon range, the *Providence* makes full sail and absconds, with the *Milford* in fast pursuit.

It becomes a perplexing chase for the English as the *Providence* continually outmaneuvers her throughout an eight hour period. The *Milford*, to the delight of Jones, expends a large amount of ammunition, all to no avail, as the *Providence* glides in, around and about without harm as British cannon pound the waves with fire. None of the whizzing shots even impugn the dignity of the *Providence*. However, Jones, impressed with the unimpressiveness of the marksmanship and his opponents as a whole, exhibits even more defiance toward the end of the day. As the *Milford* rounds to give a broadside, Jones orders Lieutenant Arrowsmith, a Marine, to "return the salute with only a single musket shot."

**September 21 1776- In naval activity:** The sloop *Providence*, interrupted on the previous day by the HMS *Milford*, at dawn finds that the British frigate remains in the area, west of the *Providence*'s position off Nova Scotia. The Americans, however, are not pursued. Jones takes the ship to Canso to get some supplies, including fresh water and wood, but while there, the *Providence* increases its number as new Canadian recruits come aboard. While moored, Jones receives information that merchant ships from New Jersey had been detected nearby at Ile Madame. Jones acts quickly. He sends a detachment of seamen and Marines to the area and the intelligence proves true. Nonetheless, the men from New Jersey show no signs of resistance upon the arrival of the detachment in Jones' boat and a tender; they capitulate without incident.

While there at Ile Madame, the seamen and Marines destroy three boats and release several others. Before the *Providence* can weigh anchor, a violent storm rolls into the region, which confines Jones to the harbor at Canso until the weather clears. On the 26th, the *Providence* departs for Narragansett Bay, arriving on 8 October.

**September 28 1776 -In naval activity:** Captain John Barry, who had returned to Philadelphia aboard the *Lexington* on 26 September, relinquishes his command. Barry is succeeded by Captain William Hallock. The contingent of Marines under Captain Abraham Boyce remains attached to the ship.

**October 1776 - In naval activity:** The *Lexington*, commanded by Captain Hallock, who succeeded John Barry, weighs anchor and departs Philadelphia on a clandestine mission to acquire arms in the West Indies, ordered by the Secret Committee (separate from the Committee of Secret Correspondence). The brigantine safely reaches her destination and receives the cargo; however, during December, while en route back to America, the *Lexington* is intercepted by the British and seized by the frigate HMS *Pearl* off the coast of Delaware. The British, after capturing the ship, discover that its cargo is rum. The American officers are confined, but the enlisted men are not. The British crew, composed of only seven men, delight in the captured cargo and indulge in celebration. Meanwhile, Captain Abraham Boyce, a Marine, and the other captives (seamen and Marines) easily take advantage of the inebriated crew and recapture their vessel. The *Lexington* then safely sails to Baltimore, Maryland, where it remains until the following February.

**October 11 1776 -BATTLE OF LAKE CHAMPLAIN** During the early morning hours, the British fleet—which includes the HMS *Inflexible*, the *Lady Mary*, the *Carleton*, the *Thunderer* (floating battery), two schooners and more than 200 other vessels, among them gunboats and transports, is spotted moving up Lake Champlain to sweep aside General Arnold's fleet of sixteen vessels. Once the British fleet is spotted by one of Arnold's guard boats, it fires the prearranged signal to sound the alarm and call the fleet to battle stations.

Arnold's three schooners, two sloops, three galleys and eight gunboats receive word of the approach of the fleet and soon the huge armada is sighted as it passes the southwestern tip of Valcour Island. The American fleet carries a total of seventy guns and the British warships hold ninety, with many much heavier than those aboard the American vessels. Arnold had deployed between the mainland and Valcour Island at a spot south of the mouth of the Saranac River and is positioned so that the fleet is not easily spotted by the British sail to permit the possibility of surprise.

The Americans strike first when the schooner *Royal Savage* and three of the galleys commence fire, but the British guns overwhelm the Americans and the ships quickly retire. The *Royal Savage* becomes grounded while retiring, but the crew is able to escape harm before the ship is destroyed. The British continue to press and after the first encounter, the warships spread out in a straight line as they move to sweep the lake and clear the opposition. The British had also deployed large numbers of troops on land to snag any of the American seamen that might reach shore.

Nevertheless, Arnold's flimsy fleet refuses to collapse. The ships also form a line and meet the charging Royal Navy, exchanging blows without flinching and in fact, causing sufficient damage to the British to unexpectedly prolong what the British expected to be a short duel. The battle continues to rage throughout the day and by dusk, the American fleet remains afloat. The British had failed to demolish the improvised navy. Nonetheless, the Americans had sustained great damage and high casualties, but it is the British fleet that pulls back at dusk. Arnold, aboard the *Congress*, assesses the massive damage and after dark, a war council is held aboard the vessel.

During the day's fighting, the *Congress* had been badgered and sustained high casualties. The *Washington* and the *New York* also sustained heavy damage and casualties. Two of the vessels had been lost and the others that remain afloat are near collapse. In addition, about eighty men had been lost out of Arnold's force of 500. A decision is made to retreat; however, the solution to the problem is much more elusive, as the path to escape is filled with British warships that are moored between the American warships and the American-controlled land on the lake.

The order to retire is sounded and the ships manage to move safely through the British positions in single file without detection. Arnold's mangled fleet reaches Sculler's Island slightly more than ten miles from the British armada by about the time the British discover what had occurred. Arnold's navy, however, by this time hangs only by a thin thread and those ships still afloat continue to leak badly. Two gondolas had been sunk and the *Washington*, commanded by Brigadier General David Waterbury, had surrendered, leaving Arnold with only thirteen vessels.

On the following day, the 12th, Arnold's navy continues to carry the fight, but the odds continue to mount against success and the inevitable remains only a few broadsides away. Despite the dire circumstances, the Americans take the pounding and they return equally tenacious fire for about four hours. By this time, the *Congress* is transformed into perforated floating rubble and the remainder of the fleet fares no better.

With no options remaining, Arnold runs the ship upon a creek and grounds it. After the Marines debark, the surviving crew members follow and the *Congress* is burned to prevent it from being taken by the British. Although the British prevail, they are unable to seize any of Arnold's fleet. In addition, the extremely costly delaying action succeeded in holding up the arrival of Carleton's 13,000 troops and prevented them from linking up with General William Howe. The British occupy Crown Point, but afterward, they retire to Canada without ever advancing against Ticonderoga.

During 1775, General Waterbury had been offered command of the regiment formerly commanded by General Arnold, but he declined. Later, during 1776, he accepted a commission from Connecticut as a brigadier general and at the time of the Battle of Lake Champlain, he had been in command of the troops at Skenesborough. As a colonel of a Connecticut regiment during the Canadian Campaign of the previous year, Waterbury had been upset at not being able to acquire a commission in the Continental Army. He apparently sought assistance from Eliphalet Dyer, who attempted to get Waterbury a blank commission, but that ignited a congressional investigation regarding blank commissions being distributed by General Sculler and by the New York Committee of Safety during 1775.

**October 27 1776- In New York:** At White Plains, General Washington issues a general order in which the troops are promised \$100 for every British soldier captured. General Israel Putnam is ordered by General Washington to lead a force of 1,500 men toward the British lines on a reconnaissance mission. By about 0200, the column arrives without being discovered. From there it moves toward White Plains, New York, arriving about 0900. By about 1100, a British cavalry force of about 800 men is sighted on a nearby ridge south of the "River Bronx." Shortly thereafter, General Henry Knox orders his artillery to fire, causing the British to veer left at a point about one mile from Putnam's supplies, which are being held along the main road. In the interim, the supplies are moved to safer positions.

At about noon, the British cavalry assemble for an attack (Battle of White Plains). Soon after, the fight is ignited and it continues until dusk. During the battle, Lieutenant William Jennison (lieutenant of Marines, serving in army as volunteer with Captain Foster's unit), along on the

mission, notes in his diary that “a remarkable instance of Providence happened to Genl. Washington when riding on another ridge N. of the Brook a shot came from the enemy & struck directly under his Horse’s belly when on full gallop,— but did him no injury.”

After dark, the Americans retire into the woods, where they remain for nearly two weeks, without any encounters with the British. At that time, they move to the vicinity of Croton Heights. Jennison, who had served with the Continental Marines during spring of 1776 and previously with the Continental Army (1775), after this time, decides never to serve again on land. He joins the frigate *Boston* on 11 January as lieutenant of Marines.

**October 30 1776** -Congress considers the report of the Marine Committee and resolves “that the rank of officers of marines be the same as officers of similar commissions in the land service: That the commanders, officers, seamen, and marines in the continental navy, be entitled to one half of merchantmen, transports, and store ships by them taken, from and after the first day of November, 1776, to be divided amongst them in the shares and proportions fixed by former resolutions of Congress: That the commanders, officers, seamen and marines, in the continental navy, be entitled to the whole value of all ships and vessels of war belonging to the Crown of Great Britain, by them made prize of, and all privateers authorized by his Britannic Majesty to war against these states, to be divided as aforesaid.”

**November 1 1776 -In naval activity:** Captain John Paul Jones, now in command of the *Alfred* after succeeding Captain Saltonstall (reassigned), departs along with the *Providence* from Rhode Island upon orders of Commodore Hopkins to execute a raid against Cape Breton (formerly Isle Royale). The cruise had initially been ordered to commence earlier, but at the time, one of the two vessels involved in the operation, the *Hampden*, became damaged in Narragansett Bay and could not continue, prompting the mission to be postponed. In the meantime, several changes occurred within the fleet, including transfers of men.

When taking control of the *Alfred*, John Paul Jones acquired the seamen and Marines, including Lieutenant Arrowsmith from the *Providence*. Those Marines joined with the ones already aboard, including two sergeants (William Hamilton and Alexander Neilson), recently promoted to lieutenants of Marines. Also, Lieutenant John Trevett, a Marine, arrives back in Rhode Island with his prize and is assigned to the *Hampden*. Nonetheless, with the *Hampden* crippled, its contingent of Marines also boards the *Alfred*.

En route to Cape Breton, Jones pauses at the Elizabeth Islands off Cape Cod and encounters a privateer out of Rhode Island, the *Eagle*. Prior to resuming the cruise, Jones, convinced that deserters had been part of the crew, dispatches a contingent of Marines under Lieutenants Trevett and Arrowsmith to the sloop to examine it. The *Eagle* is seized and all aboard are detained and hauled aboard the *Alfred*, to the later disdain of Commodore Hopkins, who disapproves of the action. Subsequent to seizing the *Eagle*, Jones with the *Alfred* and the *Providence* reinstate the mission and sail toward Cape Breton.

While at sea on 10 November, a British merchant ship, the brigantine *Active*, crosses the path of the Americans as it travels to Halifax from Liverpool. Its cargo of dry goods fails to reach its destination and the vessel becomes the prize of the *Alfred*.

Soon after, on the 12th, another British vessel is encountered and unknown to the Continental Army, the troops are about to receive some unexpected clothing. The *Alfred* had spotted the *Mellish*, a 350-ton armed transport. The *Alfred* intercepts and seizes it along with its cargo, which according to a later report from Lieutenant Trevett includes “10,000 suits of Soldiers Clothing, ready made 1 set

light horse accoutrements with carbines and a valuable invoice of medicine chests! ... trunks of Silk gowns and dry goods suitable for General Burgoyne's army at Quebec." John Paul Jones notes: "Her capture will make Burgoyne shake a cloth in the wind and check his progress on the lakes." George Washington's troops become the recipients of all the captured military clothing.

A few days later, the *Alfred* and *Providence*, the captain of the latter being less inclined to fight, part ways. Benedict Arnold, in his memoirs, mentions that "it was rather a pity he [Jones] captured them [British uniforms], because otherwise, we might have gained them ourselves...."

**November 2 1776-In naval activity:** American Captain John Paul Jones, anxious to do battle with the British, departs port aboard the *Alfred*. Another vessel, the *Providence*, commanded by the doubtful Captain Hoysteed Hacker, a political crony of Esek Hopkins, departs with Jones. The seas become unyielding in the vicinity of Cape Cod, but Jones remains undeterred as he dashes toward the HMS *Active*. The *Active* is captured by the *Alfred*. Jones continues his exploits by following this victory with the seizure of the HMS *Mellish*. Captain Hacker, lacking a real desire to fight, decides to part company with John Paul Jones. His departure from the scene leaves the *Alfred* to singlehandedly head for Cape Breton. When Jones reaches the vicinity of Cape Breton, he discovers that the waterway leading to the British port is frozen. Jones abandons the effort to attack and returns to the colonies.

While en route back to America, he captures more British prizes, four fishing vessels and a ship that is equipped with ten guns. The colonial sailor Jones has some difficulty when the *Alfred* is spotted by the HMS *Milford* near St. George's Bank. Captain Jones once again humiliates the king's finest. Jones escapes and leaves the British to search in vain for the *Alfred*. Afterward, the *Alfred* arrives back in port during December and the prizes captured during the cruise are also brought home.

**November 4 1776-In Philadelphia:** During a Monday session, Congress receives a letter delivered by George Mason of Fairfax County, Virginia. It includes a resolution that stipulates that if the state of Virginia did not appoint officers for the "new, long-term army," General Washington would be directed to appoint officers of his own choosing, and he is to recruit men for the force. Washington is himself having severe problems with enlistments in addition to trying to end the high numbers of desertions. In other activity, Congress receives a letter from Thomas Cushing regarding the Marines in Philadelphia; it is read and afterward acted upon. By this time, Major Samuel Nicholas has molded a disciplined group of Marines at Philadelphia, despite an alarming rate of desertions. The Marines are housed in excellent quarters on Second Street (present-day Northern Liberties section) slightly outside the city limits, placing them near the wharves, where they have been protecting the ships since the previous September. However, some of the Marines have become ill, and Congress, having considered the committee report on Cushing's letter, resolves: "that Doctr. (Benjamin) Rush be desired to take them under his care, and see them properly provided for."

**November 10 1776 -In naval-marine activity:** The Marines aboard the *Providence* and the *Alfred* celebrate the first birthday of the Marine Corps and participate in the capture of the HMS *Active*, a British brigantine, seized on the coast of Cape Breton on 11 November. The Americans then continue toward the English coast. In other activity, some reports on the Battle of White Plains arrive in Philadelphia and in addition to details on casualties, the reports also describe British General Howe's troops as having plundered the area.

**November 14 1776 -**Congress directs the Board of War to meet with the Pennsylvania Committee of Safety to plan a strategy to defend Philadelphia. And it orders the Marine Committee to deploy the naval forces in such fashion that the British threat can be met on the Delaware River.

Nonetheless, the danger becomes a false alarm. The fleet that had been detected had actually been composed of empty transports and it was en route to England.

**November 15 1776** - Congress directs the Marine Committee to contact the Pennsylvania Council of Safety to acquire “1,500 24 lb. 1,800 18 lb. cannon shot, and 500 bar shot.” The items and 6 tons of gunpowder are to be transported to South Carolina to be used for its defense and for the defense of North Carolina. Additionally, it is announced in Congress that contents of the cargo that had arrived on the *Hancock & Adams* includes “72 chests of arms, 311 barrels of gunpowder, 338 pigs of lead, 9 casks of gun flints, 1 case of pins, 133 barrels of tin plates, 5 cases of iron wire, 70 casks of salt petre, and 10 bales of merchandise.” It is decided to unload the cargo at Bedford, New Hampshire, where it is to be secured at a safe place prior to distribution. In other activity, pursuant to a report from the Marine Committee, with regard to the pay of Marines, it is resolved that a bounty of 20 dollars be paid to the commanders, officers, and men of such continental ships or vessels of war, as shall make prize of any British ships or vessels of war, for every cannon mounted on board each prize, at the time of such capture, and 8 dollars per head for every man then on board and belonging to such prize: That the rank of the naval officers be to the rank of officers in the land service, as follows: Admiral equal to General; Vice Admiral equal to Lieutenant general; Rear Admiral equal to Major general; Commodore equal to Brigadier general; Captain of a ship of 4 guns and upwards equal to Colonel; Captain of 20 to 40 guns equal to Lieutenant colonel; Captain of 10 to 20 guns equal to Major; Lieutenant in the navy equal to Captain....That the pay of all officers and men in the American navy, from the date of the new commissions, under the free and independent states of America, be as follows (per calendar month)....Resolved “That vessels, under ten guns, to be commanded by lieutenants: That the pay of the officers in such vessels be: Lieutenant commanding (30 dollars); Mates (15 dollars); Boatswain (12 dollars); Gunner (12 dollars); Carpenter (12 dollars). The other officers and men the same as in vessels from 10 to 20 guns: Marine officers: Captain (30 dollars); Lieutenant (20 dollars); Non-commissioned officers and soldiers the same as in the land service.”

**November 22 1776- In naval activity:** The *Alfred*, commanded by Captain John Paul Jones, cruising alone since separating from the *Providence*, arrives off Canso, Nova Scotia, and Jones dispatches a contingent of armed boats to shore. The landing party succeeds in capturing a small schooner to make up for the absence of the *Providence*. In addition, the seamen and Marines come upon a grounded transport, which they destroy by fire, and before returning to the *Alfred*, they demolish an oil warehouse. The returning boats contain a passenger who has information for Jones. The intelligence puts the *Alfred* on the alert when it becomes known that three British warships are scouring the area for her. However, Jones remains unconcerned and reinitiates the cruise.

**November 24 1776—In Pennsylvania:** At Philadelphia, a Marine private, one of the few deserters to return, gives up in Philadelphia and after a court martial, he receives fifty lashes as punishment. The Marine, Henry Hassan, returns to duty, but after serving slightly more than one month, Hassan again deserts.

**December 11 1776- In New Jersey:** During the predawn hours, Count Carl EU Von Donor leads a contingent of the Jagger Corps (Hesse-Cassel) from Trenton en route to occupy Borden town and Burlington, New Jersey. After encountering some mild resistance from militia, the advance extends across the river. The Hessian force encroaches Bustleton and encounters the scouting party of riflemen earlier dispatched to Dunk’s Ferry by Washington. The riflemen hold the ground and compel the Hessian force to re-cross the Delaware and return to Burlington.

Once there, Donor becomes the recipient of another of Washington's earlier actions. The galley he had requested is positioned on the river at Burlington with Commodore Seymour (Pennsylvania Navy) aboard and he has brought extra galleys with him. Von Donor is informed that the galleys are preparing to bombard the town unless he retires with his force. A party from the town, on the suggestion of Donor, confers with the commodore, but in the meantime Hessian soldiers are spotted on patrol in the town.

Donor receives a reply as soon as his troops are spotted on patrol. The galley opens up with a bombardment and the committee is told unambiguously that if the Hessian troops remained, "he would have no mercy on the place." The response is forwarded to the count and without too much consideration, the Hessian force abandons Burlington and heads back to Borden town. On the following day, new occupants would arrive at Burlington: U.S. Marines.

**December 12 1776-In New Jersey:** An American privateer, the *Hancock*, commanded by Captain William Shippin, moves up the Delaware River to Burlington, which had been temporarily occupied by on the previous day by Hessian troops. The contingent of Marines debarks and occupies the town in the event another visit from General Howe's force occurs. In addition, the Marines give Washington a position within New Jersey from which the British positions can be struck. In related activity, the reconnaissance mission of the scouts (Pennsylvania riflemen) and reports from the galleys of the Pennsylvania Navy at Burlington provide sufficient information for Washington to conclude that he must deploy his forces south along the river to defend against the British, as he anticipated. General Philemon Dickinson is deployed at Yardley's Ferry with instructions to lean southward to link with the forces of Brigadier General James Ewing's sector less than three miles south of the ferry. In addition, General Ewing is ordered to deploy in the vicinity of Hoop's Mill on Biles Creek and establish a line from there to the Borden town Ferry. Beyond Ewing's positions, Colonel Cadwalader's militia hold the line as far south as Dunk's Ferry, with Cadwalader's headquarters at Bristol.

**December 13 1776 -In Pennsylvania:** General Washington continues to fortify his defenses along the Delaware River to meet any attempt by the British to ford the river south of Trenton. Colonel Cadwalader (Pennsylvania militia) establishes his headquarters at Bristol. Many in the brigade are housed in public places and some in private homes. Marines involved with the operation under Major Samuel Nicholas are quartered at the local Quaker Meeting House and Nicholas is housed at Bessonet's Tavern.

Robert Morris, concerned about the *Delaware* due to the imminent threat from the British, writes to General Washington requesting that Charles Alexander, captain of the *Delaware*, and a contingent of Marines at Bristol supporting Colonel Cadwalader be permitted to return to Philadelphia to board the *Delaware* to get it to open seas. Washington forwards the letter to Cadwalader.

Shortly thereafter, some quick changes are made among the Marine officers. A formation of 20 Marines are selected to return with Captain Alexander. Meanwhile, Sergeant James Coakley is promoted to the rank of temporary lieutenant to replace Lt. David Love, while another departing officer, Hugh Montgomery, is replaced by Peter Bedford, a friend of Robert Mullan. In addition, Daniel Henderson is replaced by 2nd Lt. James McClure, which leaves only a vacancy for Lt. McClure, which is not filled.

Nevertheless, while Alexander and the Marines depart for the *Delaware*, Cadwalader's forces sustain no disadvantage as the winter is settling in and the British are too. The 130 Marines that remain under Major Nicholas continue to maintain their sector of the line and when possible, to

harass the enemy. Captain Isaac Craig joins with Nicholas as adjutant.

**December 14 1776- In Pennsylvania:** The *Hornet* and the *Randolph* sail from Philadelphia to escape harm from the British. The *Hornet*, fully manned, including seamen and Marines, had only recently arrived from Baltimore, but with its full complement, it is ordered to break for open seas and head for South Carolina and once there, change course to Martinique in search of arms. Captain Biddle of the *Randolph* receives separate orders than those given to Captain James Nicholson of the *Hornet*. The *Randolph* is to break out of the Delaware Capes and patrol the coast in search of transports attempting to journey to New York.

**December 17 1776-In naval activity:** Captain George Cook, of the Maryland Navy, having recently returned from a cruise to the West Indies, on this day departs Baltimore in the *Defence* moving to the Head of Elk from where he is to sail to Philadelphia. Cook's crew of about 60 to 70, including its state Marines, is under orders to protect the vessels in port there, as well as the stores. A company of militia, commanded by Captain Samuel Smith, is aboard to bolster the Marines. The Maryland Marines attached to the vessel include 4 officers (Captain Garrett Brown. Lt. Thomas Walker, Lt. Joseph Smith and Lt. William Morris), 3 sergeants, 3 corporals, 34 privates and one drummer.

**December 25 1776-In Pennsylvania:** On this Christmas Day, the Continental Army breaks camp and moves toward McKonkey's Ferry where the troops will then prepare to launch a surprise attack against British-held Trenton. Prior to the march, General Washington writes several letters, including one to Robert Morris, in which he ends the letter with "I hope the next Christmas will prove happier than the present to you and Dear Sir."

In the meantime, the two supporting forces under Colonel Cadwalader and Brigadier General James Ewing fail to make the crossing, cutting the size of Washington's attack force. At Bristol, Cadwalader's force moves out to Neshaminy with a battalion of Pennsylvania riflemen under Colonel Timothy Matlack at the head of the column, trailed by light infantry, militia and the Marine contingent.

Matlack's force boards boats and crosses, followed by the remainder of the column. With the bulk of the 1st and 3rd Battalions of Philadelphia Associators across, the weather deteriorates and more ice forms. Cadwalader, fearful of losing the artillery during the crossing, recalls his force to the Pennsylvania side of the river. Ewing's force makes no attempt to cross. Afterwards, Cadwalader sends a report to Washington that reaches him on the night of the 26th after he is already back in Pennsylvania. The report informs Washington that another crossing will be attempted.

**December 28 1776 -In New Jersey:** Colonel Cadwalader's force, which crossed into New Jersey on the previous day, departs Burlington at about 0400 and marches through the ice and snow toward Borden town, below Trenton, where it is thought some Hessian troops might be intercepted. Upon reaching the town, only supplies left by the Hessian troops are discovered. No food had been left behind, but a trail of devastation had shadowed their route of retreat.

Having encountered no opposition since the landing, Cadwalader continues his advance and traverses about four more miles northeast to Crosswicks. No Hessian forces are encountered; however, Cadwalader is able to procure food for his column. He remains at Crosswicks overnight, but scouts are sent forward to Allentown, about 4 miles distant, to gather intelligence. Once there with no signs of the enemy, the party moves an additional 15 miles to Cranbury and again no contact is made with the Hessian or British forces.

During the next several days, other patrols are dispatched. One of these, executed by Major Nicholas' Marines, comes upon a man who turns out to be a British sympathizer who has what

appears to be good intelligence. The man is seized and returned to camp. Cadwalader is informed that about 70 Loyalists had been gathered at Monmouth Court House by the former sheriff, Colonel John Lawrence. The Marines request authorization to move out and seize Colonel Lawrence, but the request is rejected by Cadwalader.

Meanwhile, across the river, Washington plots his next move, prompted in great part by Cadwalader's movements. Washington's force, due to enlistment expirations is reduced from about 2,400 to 1,500, the latter having agreed to reenlist for an additional six weeks for a bonus of \$10. On the following day, Washington reinitiates his offensive. By the 3<sup>rd</sup>, Washington's force increases to more than 3,300 troops.

**January 2 1777-THE SECOND BATTLE OF TRENTON In New Jersey:** The British attempt to retake Trenton with a force of about 6,000 troops, but the fast thinking of General Washington foils the attempt. By the time the pickets detect the British, the forces under Colonel Cadwalader had arrived in the town but had not yet gotten settled. When the alarms sound, some are still finishing breakfast. The reinforcements are a welcome sight but they get no time to pause. Washington directs his force to deploy along the southern bank of Assunpink Creek, with General Hugh Mercer's brigade posted about two miles farther up the creek at Phillips' Ford.

Washington deploys Cadwalader's units below the main body in an open field. To the east, General Arthur St. Clair's brigade deploys in the high ground about one mile from the town. In the meantime, the British had been closing in three columns and passed through Maidenhead about noon. Shortly thereafter, as the British converge on Sabakunk Creek, they encounter a contingent of Americans that Washington dispatched to intercept and delay them.

Colonel Edward Hand, leading the Patriots' resistance at the creek, oversees a vigorous contest that holds the British at bay despite the lopsided numbers. Following a standoff that continues for about three hours, the Americans pull back, but not in disarray, rather to prearranged positions from which to forestall the major assault against the town. Hand's contingent continues to retain discipline at his positions at the northern tip of the town and deliver effective fire to prevent a breakthrough.

The heavy skirmish continues for about one additional hour until the British are finally able to compel the line to give. Hand, at this point, pulls back farther to prevent the British from outflanking his positions, but the unit, Hitchcock's Brigade, assigned by Washington to move up and cover the retreat across the Assunpink Creek, collapses when struck by a combination of Hessian grenadiers plowing straight ahead while light infantry drives into the right flank. The command scatters in a race to reach the bridge.

Nearby, Washington observes the panic-stricken retreat, but simultaneously he focuses on the light infantry funneling unopposed toward the creek just below the bridge. The shattered brigade is quickly reformed and it prepares to move back into the battle, but in the meantime, Washington's reliable artillerymen had blocked the advance with an artillery barrage that seals the route and forces the light infantry to abort the advance.

Nonetheless, the British seek another route across the creek and speed to the bridge to sprint across there. But here, too, Washington outmaneuvers the enemy. While the Hessian grenadiers speed to the span, Cadwalader's command, including the attached Marines under Major Samuel Nicholas, is ordered "to fly to the support of that important post." Upon the order to "fly," the command is on the move, more quickly than the Hessians, and the force holds the bridge and turns back the attack to terminate the British advance.

After the skirmishing ends the fighting continues from opposing artillery, which exchanges barrages

well into the evening. While the barrages continue to harass both sides, General Lord Charles Cornwallis leans toward another attack, but he is convinced by his general to postpone it until the following morning. Cornwallis concurs and sets Phillips' Ford as the first objective.

While British strategy is being formed, General Washington receives secret intelligence regarding Cornwallis' intentions. A retreat to the south is considered, rather than face the huge British force. But the Americans realize that to hold and wait for the assault could be disastrous and it is believed that an attempt to re-cross the Delaware River to reach Pennsylvania would be more hazardous.

During the council of war, the deployment of the British comes under discussion and an observation comes out in the discussion about Cornwallis having the bulk of his forces at Trenton. Afterward, Princeton comes into the discussion and a decision is made to neither defend nor retreat. Washington orders an attack on Princeton on the assumption that it is only lightly defended. Washington and his generals elevate their optimism and draw up an additional plan to strike Brunswick if Princeton is gained.

Washington chooses to execute another ruse to outwit the British. The Americans display an exaggerated show of strength, but after the sun sets, the main body abandons its positions. The troops redeploy in conspicuous positions from where they can maneuver themselves to a point that lies behind the British lines at Princeton, New Jersey.

All the while, unknown to the British, preparations for the attack continue against vacant positions. During the night maneuver, Washington also dispatches boats to transport all additional supplies southward for a short distance to Burlington. The troops designated to deceive the British maintain their positions at Trenton, where the campfires burn to give the illusion of a full encampment, and a specially selected group of troops is sent as a "fatigue party" to initiate conspicuous work on entrenchments at a mill, well within the hearing of the British troops. Washington, prior to moving the main body at 0100 on the 3rd, also directs that the normal patrols move out to further confuse the British. Meanwhile, the skeleton force's noisy work at the entrenchment seems reassuring to the British, who expect to take over the positions at dawn.

Elsewhere in New Jersey, a Loyalist artillery unit under Colonel John Morris is intercepted by Patriot forces in the vicinity of Freehold and a skirmish develops. The Loyalists lose about four killed and more than twenty-five captured.

**January 3 1777-THE BATTLE OF PRINCETON** At about midnight (2nd-3rd), the main body initiates the move to take Princeton and by 0100, it is well underway on a circuitous route to Princeton to spring the attack. Prior to departure, Washington orders the heavier baggage to be taken to Burlington. Shortly after the march commences and the column moves through some woods that parallel Mirty Run and lead to Quaker Road, the troops become convinced that Divine providence has again come to their aid. The weather, which has been unseasonably warm, wet and foggy, has kept the roads in terrible condition and disadvantaged the English, but suddenly, as the column emerges from the woods, strong winds develop and the temperatures drop dramatically. Soon after, the fresh frost transforms the soggy roads into rock solid highways.

At the same time that the deep chill arrives, the spirits of the Americans begin to warm. The column advances under clear but ominous black skies, void of stars and even a glimpse of the moon, but as the column moves silently to avoid detection, the skies act as added camouflage. As the column moves forward, the confidence of the troops builds and an aura of enthusiasm begins to roll down the line.

Then suddenly, some trepidation comes about when the column reaches a point about midway

between Trenton and Princeton. An anonymous yell that the column had been surrounded is heard, weakening the stamina of some of General Mifflin's militia and they take off, but the spine of the column remains intact and continues to advance. As it turns out, the rumor had been erroneous. When the column reaches positions near Stony Brook Bridge at about dawn, General Washington splits his force into two columns under Generals Nathanael Greene and John Sullivan. The brigades of General Hugh Mercer and Colonel Cadwalader (militia, Marines and Pennsylvania riflemen) continue along Quaker Road to secure the bridge that controls the primary route between Princeton and Trenton. The column under Sullivan moves onto Saw Mill Road to maneuver his forces to be in position to strike Princeton from the east. The combined strength of the two columns gives Washington about 6,000 troops closing against the town from a distance of about three miles. Meanwhile, at Trenton, British General Charles Cornwallis, who had been prepared to attack Washington's positions, becomes extremely disappointed when he discovers that the Americans had vanished during the night. His displeasure is conspicuous, but before he can decide on strategy for pursuit, he is greeted by the annoying sounds of artillery flying down from the vicinity of Princeton. The booming sounds of the artillery fire ends the mystery of where the Americans had gone. Cornwallis initiates a return march toward Brunswick to forestall any possibility that the Americans might seize it, too. Cornwallis' main forces are still at Trenton, but he has three other regiments at Princeton.

Lt. Colonel Charles Mawhood initiates the advance, pursuant to orders, on this day, to join with Cornwallis for the attack against George Washington's force at Trenton, but the plans, unknown to Mawhood, have been totally disrupted. The 40th Regiment of Foot remains at Princeton to guard against any Patriot incursions, but no attack is anticipated. Mawhood's force jumps off slightly before dawn with two of the regiments, the 17th and 55th Regiments of Foot, accompanied by one troop of the British 15th Dragoons. In the meantime, the Americans are near the advancing column and neither expects to encounter the other. However, Washington's forces are now at positions between Cornwallis and Mawhood.

Soon after crossing Stony Brook, the British observe a contingent of troops to the south moving out of the woods, and they aren't dressed in British uniforms. Instantly, Lt. Colonel Mawhood assumes that Cornwallis had routed Washington and that his force would snag a few prisoners in flight. He sends out a mounted dragoon to investigate.

Soon Mawhood discovers that his route to Trenton is unexpectedly blocked. The American militia under General Mercer is equally surprised when eye contact is made. Mercer, upon spotting the group of Redcoats, decides it is a scouting or foraging party. The Americans move to some nearby high ground from which Mercer believes he can intercept the British party and prevent it from getting back to Princeton. In the meantime, Mawhood, aware that he has encountered the spearhead of Washington's army, sends the 55th Regiment back to bolster the 40th at Princeton while he returns to the opposite bank of the creek and establishes positions behind some high ground there. When Mercer's group makes its descent, it remains unaware that a large force awaits it. The British spring from their positions, fire and then pull back to prepare for the next round. By the time the Patriots position themselves and commence firing, the British are on the attack. The bayonet charge succeeds in striking just after the Americans had fired and Mercer's contingent is overrun.

The rapid movement by the British enables them to surround some of Americans and General Mercer is among the group that is compelled to surrender, but during the struggle, General Mercer receives a mortal wound. Meanwhile, the other Americans, still in fast retreat, encounter their

commander-in-chief, General Washington, who is leading the advance to bolster the left wing that had just been jolted into retreat.

While Washington rallies the troops, including Mercer's battered brigade, Colonel Cadwalader, after following the sounds of the guns, arrives at the scene of the rout. From some high ground he observes the final stage of collapse of the brigade. Cadwalader moves to hold the ground. Colonel Jacob Morgan's battalion swings to the left flank, while Matlack's riflemen, bolstered by the Marines, pour onto the right flank. Once positioned, the two contingents advance with orders to fire at will; however, the first volleys are far too distant to inflict any harm upon the British. Nonetheless, the Patriots reinitiate their advance and reload as they move, but this too, has no effect as the British are at this point reloaded and awaiting the rush. When the Patriots hit a spot about fifty yards from the British, they hit a hurricane of impassable fire that forces the troops to withdraw about forty yards and leave an artillery piece behind.

By this time, the British have become more confident, while Colonel Cadwalader unsuccessfully works to regroup his men. In the meantime, General Washington has advanced to the skirmish line and gets a close-up look at the turmoil. At about this time, the circumstances begin to take a dramatic turn. Washington's presence instills instant confidence in some of the troops, but the task of regrouping remains difficult. While at the front, Washington finds himself between the opposing forces, but despite the exchange of fire, no harm comes to him. While the struggle to reorganize continues and the British remain unable to vanquish the Patriots, a two-gun battery, commanded by Captain Joseph Moulder and perched in the high ground, helps to neutralize the British 17th Regiment by pounding it with a continuous ring of fire.

Before the British can execute an attack or compel Washington to retreat, reinforcements from General John Sullivan's division arrive from the rear, and soon after an attack is ordered. Mawhood's left flank is hit hard by the riflemen under Colonel Hand, while his right is struck by two forces, those of Colonel Cadwalader and Major Israel Angell. The combined thrusts bend the British line and finally collapse it as the British are pushed back and overwhelmed. The British 17th Regiment heads back toward Princeton after it is scattered. Meanwhile, Lt. Colonel Mawhood, with his staff, tries to evade capture and get back to Princeton, but no passage is available. Mawhood and stragglers from the 17th Regiment manage to escape and hook up with the rear guard of General Cornwallis' army at Maidenhead, but they leave their artillery for Washington's army.

With the victory on the field, the Americans advance toward Princeton and encounter the 55th Regiment of Foot as it attempts to advance to join the 17th, but it is intercepted by General Sullivan's force. After a brisk contest, the British regiment is vanquished by Sullivan's Continentals, leaving the road to Princeton wide open. As Sullivan's troops enter the town, the remnants the 55th Regiment converge on Nassau Hall to form a defense, but upon the arrival of the Continental Army, the British capitulate without offering any resistance.

The British, subsequent to this battle, which has cost them heavy losses, retreat northward toward New Brunswick, New Jersey. This decisive victory of Washington over Cornwallis becomes a large morale booster for the American cause, but the cheers are clouded by the mortal wound sustained by General Hugh Mercer. He is rescued by Washington, but due to the severity of his wound, Mercer succumbs on the 12th at Princeton.

The British casualties at this battle amount to about 100 killed and about 300 captured. The Americans sustain the loss of about 30 killed, including several officers. The officers known to have been killed are General Hugh Mercer (mortal wound); Colonel John Haslet; Captain Daniel Niel,

Ensign Anthony Morris, Jr., and Captain William Shippin (Pennsylvania privateer Marine).

Plans drawn prior to the attack on Princeton had been to continue on to attack the stronghold at Brunswick, but the battle had exhausted both sides. The Americans, too fatigued to advance, retire toward Morristown, New Jersey. Once Cornwallis realizes that the Americans evacuated their positions, he changes plans and moves to Princeton. The British trail the column, but from a distance. No attacks occur.

Along the route, the Americans pass over a bridge that spans the Millstone River. In an effort to receive a breather and afford the British a similar pause, once his exhausted force crosses the span, Washington orders a detail to disassemble the bridge. The Americans reach Somerset Courthouse by about dusk and establish night positions there.

**January 2 1777-In naval activity:** Commodore Esek Hopkins, upon word that the HMS *Diamond* had grounded in Narragansett Bay in the vicinity of Warwick Neck, acts on a suggestion by Lt. Trevett, of the U.S. Continental Marines, and decides to seize it. Because of the dangers of shallow water, Hopkins, rather than risk damage to his flagship, takes a contingent from it and boards the sloop *Providence*. A contingent from the *Columbus* also boards the *Providence*, and Hopkins places Captain Whipple in command.

In early afternoon the *Diamond* spots the approach of the American sloop. The British, although grounded, make no attempt to surrender. While the *Providence* passes at close range, she is greeted by the British guns. Meanwhile, artillery pieces on shore are brought to bear against the *Diamond*, but still no capitulation. The exchange of fire slows after dusk when the *Diamond* halts its firing. While the British work to free their vessel from the shoal, Hopkins is taken to shore to meet with the militia. Later he returns to the beach, but the boat fails to return to retrieve him, leaving him ashore for the night. All the while the British retain their defiance and when the tide rises, the *Diamond* becomes free and sails safely away, damaged by a few hits but seaworthy.

**January 4 1777** -Although the U. S. Continental Marines was formed to fight alongside the U.S. Navy, a battalion of Marines under Major Nicholas had accompanied George Washington and participated at the Battles of Trenton and at Princeton. On this day the Marines are recuperating with the Continental Army and militia. Washington had established camp at Somerset Courthouse on the previous night. At dawn, the march to Morristown is reinitiated, but as the column reaches Pluckemin, it halts to await stragglers, about 1,000 men who had been too exhausted to maintain the pace and were forced to spend the night in the mountains with neither blankets nor food. During the past two days, food had been scarce. Washington remains encamped at Pluckemin until 6 January.

**January 6 1777-In New Jersey:** The Continental Army breaks camp at Pluckemin and moves to establish winter quarters in the Watchung Mountains, in the vicinity of Morristown, New Jersey, about 30 miles from British headquarters in New York. The site is strategically located and well protected from an unannounced attack. Washington positions his troops in a strategic place that enables him to utilize natural obstacles. The rough hills permit no easy access and to his rear an excellent terrain would permit an expeditious trek to the Delaware River if necessary. The Americans have instilled a new fear in the British, one that only a short while ago would have been scorned. The British no longer believe the rag-tag peasants will fold and run, nor do they believe the Redcoats will easily dislodge the drums of liberty. Washington's troops will dominate East and West Jersey, which leaves the British masters of only Amboy, Brunswick and Newark.

When the Continental Army and accompanying militia reaches its winter headquarters, the Marine detachment under Major Samuel Nicholas is still attached to Colonel Cadwalader's brigade. Some

minor difficulties arise when they arrive and get separated from the brigade. The Marines march to Sweets Town about two miles outside Morristown and receive lodging. Major Nicholas and his three companies (131 Marines) volunteered for the campaign during early December 1776. By this time, due to deaths, desertions and transfers to other duty, his force stands at 90 Marines. They remain with Washington until the latter part of February, when they are ordered to return to the fleet at Philadelphia.

**January 25 1777-In naval activity:** The state of Maryland has been working to increase the number of small vessels in its navy and in conjunction with the ongoing operation, it is necessary to enlist seamen and Marines to serve aboard the galleys. On this day, the Maryland Council of Safety appoints John Stevenson as lieutenant of Marines on the row galley *Independence*, commanded by Captain Bennett Matthews.

**February 1 1777-In naval activity:** The three companies of Continental Marines are transferred to artillery while still with the Continental Army at Morristown. During the previous month, when enlistments in the army expired and troops departed for home, those in artillery turned back the weapons and ammunition, leaving an excessive amount of unattended cannon.

**February 3 1777-In Philadelphia:** The *Randolph* leaves port on its initial voyage. The *Hornet* and *Fly* depart at the same time. They move down the Delaware River and by 6 February pass around Cape Henlopen while escorting a flotilla of merchant ships. The convoy remains tight until 15 February, when it separates. The *Randolph* stays with the ships that sail for France, while the remainder sails toward the West Indies.

The *Randolph* afterward charts a northern course in search of the HMS *Milford*, which has been terrorizing American merchants, but instead it discovers what turns out to be a French vessel. After the vessel is permitted to continue on its way, the *Randolph* again sets out to find and destroy the *Milford*, but the frigate loses its foremast and then its mainmast, compelling Captain Biddle to speed to the coast of South Carolina.

Prior to reaching a safe port, an outbreak of fever erupts and the ship is also faced with mutiny by the British captives who have been used as part of the crew. Although the mutiny erupts, no violence occurs due to the quick action of Captain Samuel Shaw's company of Marines who assemble on the quarter deck. The mutineers choose not to take on the armed Marines and the mutiny is quelled. The *Randolph* anchors at Charleston on 11 March. Once in port, the ill members of the crew are taken into the city. Repairs are made, but by the time the mast is replaced and the spars repaired, the ship does not sail until early June.

**February 5 1777-In naval activity:** The *Reprisal*, commanded by Captain Lambert Wickes, which had previously transported Benjamin Franklin to France and remained there for refitting, departs during the latter part of January. A few days later, she encounters and captures three merchant ships. Prize crews are placed aboard and the vessels are taken to France. On this day, lookouts spot another British vessel that turns out to be the *Swallow*. Despite rough seas, the *Reprisal* moves swiftly to cross the mouth of the channel to engage the 16-gun royal mail packet. Following a rugged chase, both ships exchange broadsides. Aboard the *Reprisal*, one of the guns explodes and kills one man and wounds one; the latter, Navy Lieutenant Robert Harris, loses part of his left arm. Neither ship is able to inflict severe damage upon the other.

Nonetheless, the two vessels continue to slug it out on the heavy and unruly seas and close upon each other to within musket range. Two men aboard the *Swallow* are injured when their ammunition cartridges explode. The accident creates a larger problem when the ignited powder starts a fire that

spread across the deck. The British continue to resist the Americans while they work to extinguish the flames.

By this time, the Americans are within touching distance. A boarding party carries the fight onto the *Swallow* to terminate a 45-minute battle. Soon after the Americans board the vessel, the captain capitulates and the colors are struck. The captives are transferred to the *Reprisal* and a prize crew takes over the *Swallow*. During the exchange of small arms fire, Lt. John Elliott is struck by a musket ball in his wrist and a few of his Marines also sustain injuries. Prior to arriving back at France, the *Reprisal* spots another British merchant ship, the *Betsy*, laden with a cargo of “Brandy, Claret & Hoops.” The Americans capture the vessel and add it their prizes. The *Reprisal* arrives back at France on 13 February.

**February 20 1777—In New Jersey:** At Morristown, Colonel George Weedon, U.S. Army, directs Captain Mullan, U.S. Marines, to take command of a detail and escort 25 British prisoners to Philadelphia.

**April 1 1777-In naval activity:** The Continental Marine Corps sustains another serious setback. The company of Marines under Captain Mullan that returned recently from attachment with the Continental Army with British prisoners vanishes this day. It remains unknown whether Captain Mullan sailed with the *Delaware* when it departed.

During mid-March, both Isaac Craig and Andrew Porter resigned their commissions as officers of Marines and accepted commissions with the Continental Army in the artillery service. Craig serves with Colonel Thomas Proctor’s Pennsylvania artillery regiment and Porter serves with General Henry Knox. Also, Captain Benjamin Dean’s company of Marines, which had been assigned as artillerymen while with General Washington, are released this day. The company returns to Philadelphia to join the fleet to be assigned to the *Washington*, but when the enlistment of his men expires during June, Dean resigns his commission. He is replaced by 1st Lieutenant Abel Morgan. Major Samuel Nicholas and his three companies joined with the Continental Army during December of the previous year, but the attachment accomplishes little for the Marine Corps. At this time the concept of a separate and independent corps of Marines slips away. For the duration, the Marines are used as detachments on ships and the leader, equivalent to modern day commandants, is essentially reduced to a “high ranking officer, without assignment.” The third company of Marines, under Captain Porter, remain with General Washington until 28 April.

**April 8 1777 -In naval activity:** The *Delaware* receives orders to depart from Philadelphia. The company of Marines under Captain Mullan disappeared on 1 April. It is thought that Captain Mullan departs with the *Delaware*, but there is no record. The ship weighs anchor on 9 April and Captain Alexander Charles moves south to Fort Island and remains there in the channel to halt desertions. At this time the entire navy has difficulty with seamen and Marines who receive an advance on their wages after enlisting and with cash in hand, jump ship. The thought of jumping into the channel impedes the practice.

**April 10 1777-In naval activity:** The Continental Navy, plagued with desertions, writes to the Pennsylvania Committee of Safety to request that the committee direct the four ferries along the “Schulkyll” (Schuylkill) River to prevent any seamen or Marines from crossing without an authorized pass, issued by the committee.

**April 28 1777-In New Jersey:** Captain Andrew Porter’s company of Marines, still attached to the Continental Army in artillery, serve their last day, as the artillery company is disbanded. Porter

began the campaign during the previous December with a company of 35 Marines. Now only nine, including his lieutenant, James McClure, remain with him.

**May 17 1777-In naval activity:** The Maryland Council of Safety appoints John Crapper as 2nd lieutenant of Marines (Maryland state) to serve aboard the row galley *Baltimore*. On the following day, the *Baltimore* receives a second Marine officer when the council appoints James Boyle as 1st lieutenant of Marines.

**May 19 1777-In naval activity** elsewhere, following a delay in port due to a shortage of crewmen, the *Lexington* sails from Bordeaux, France. John Carr, a former captive of the British seized when the *Cabot* was lost, had escaped to France and on the 8th of May, he joined the *Lexington* to become lieutenant of Marines. While en route to the Loire to join the *Dolphin* and *Reprisal*, the *Lexington* changes course after mistaking another vessel for the 90-gun *Foudroyant* and does not reach its destination until 22 May. Within a few hours of arrival, Carr is discharged, leaving only two Marines aboard the ship, Lt. John Connelly and Sergeant John Barry.

The *Lexington* (Captain Henry Johnson), *Dolphin* (Captain James Nicholson) and the *Reprisal* (Captain Lambert Wickes) join together for a cruise to intercept merchant ships of what is dubbed the “Irish linen fleet” that operates out of Dublin, Ireland. The *Reprisal* carries a full contingent of Marines, numbering about 490 men under Captain Miles Pennington and Lieutenant John Elliott, but the *Dolphin*, similarly to the *Lexington*, suffers from a lack of Marines. Of its 35-man crew, only eight are Marines. It is thought that some of the French crewmen who enlisted at Bordeaux served aboard the *Lexington* as Marines. On 23 May, Captain Wickes, commander of the squadron, issues orders for the cruise. On the 28th, the three ships set sail for the Irish Sea.

**June 4 1777-In naval activity:** The HMS *Ariadne* captures the American vessel *Mosquito*, a ship in the Virginia Navy. Also, the Maryland Council of Safety appoints James McCabe as lieutenant of Marines to serve aboard the vessel *Chester*, a galley.

**June 7 1777-In naval activity:** The *Hancock* (32 guns) and the *Boston* (24 guns), two new American frigates commanded by Commodore John Manly and Captain Hector McNeill respectively, encounter the HMS *Fox*, a 28-gun frigate commanded by Captain Patrick Fotheringham. At first contact, Fotheringham chooses to engage, but soon after, he decides to make full sail. Both American ships give chase. The *Hancock* catches up with the vessel after a few hours and a brief exchange of fire occurs. In less than one hour, the *Boston* closes and squeezes the *Fox* in close against the *Hancock*. With the Americans on either side, Captain Fotheringham orders the colors down.

With the British ship in hand and all prisoners secured by about 1500, Captain Hector McNeill, the last to arrive, dispatches his 1st lieutenant to board the English prize, to the surprise of the crew on the *Hancock*. Following a strong disagreement, Captain (Commodore) Manly prevails and McNeill’s 1st lieutenant is called back. Nonetheless, the two Marines, 2nd Lieutenants John Harris and Robert McNeill, remain aboard. McNeill promotes William Jennison as acting lieutenant of Marines aboard the *Boston*.

The crews of the *Boston* and *Hancock* subsequently debate whether to head to Charleston to join the *Randolph* and move from there to join the West Indies Fleet. Manly agrees to head for Charleston, but within a short while, he decides otherwise. The two vessels and their prize continue to cruise together without encountering any enemy ships until 6 July.

**June 14 1777-**During the early part of this year, John Paul Jones received command of a squadron (*Alfred*, *Cabot*, *Columbus*, *Hampden* and the sloop *Providence*) on orders of the Marine Committee;

however, the mission was scrapped due to the opposition of Esek Hopkins. Afterwards, Jones was to receive another command, one of the ships being acquired by Congress at Boston, but he did not receive it and during the previous May, Jones again lost a command when the captain refused to relinquish the vessel. The *Ranger*, similarly to the other ships in the Navy, suffers from a shortage of crew members and the officers chosen by local committees, which brings about more nepotism. The *Ranger's* appointed 1st lieutenant is Thomas Simpson (brother-in-law of John Langdon, an American agent for construction of the vessel). Other connected citizens who receive appointment as 2nd lieutenants are Elijah Hall and David Cullam. Also, Samuel Wallingford is appointed captain of Marines aboard the ship.

**July 6 1777-In naval activity:** The *Hancock*, while cruising east of Cape Sable, encounters a British sloop transporting a cargo of coal picked up at Louisbourg. Afterward, the *Hancock*, *Boston* and the two prizes sail southwest. During the afternoon, lookouts spot three sail that appear to be giving chase. Nevertheless, the *Hancock* continues to sail with the coal-laden transport in tow, causing the squadron, including the prizes, to slow the pace. The unidentified ships carry a combined 94 guns. The flotilla is pursued by the ship of the line, HMS *Rainbow* (44 guns), a frigate, the 32-gun *Flora*, and the HMS *Victor*, a 16-gun brigantine.

The day passes without incident, but the slow speed of the American vessels presents a lucrative set of targets for the British. By dawn on the following day, the British had gained on the squadron. At first light, the *Boston*, commanded by Captain Hector McNeill, spots the *Flora* to its front and the *Rainbow* and *Victor* on her lee and stern respectively. While the *Hancock* stands southward, Commodore Manly orders the coal transport to be burned and moves to resist the British, but the odds are overwhelming and the Americans have no equalizer against so many guns. Following the first volley of broadsides, the Americans begin to run in an attempt to evade capture. In an instant, the *Hancock*, *Boston* and *Fox* are heading south, north and east, respectively. The *Boston* evades a fight and capture. She outruns the British and sails to a spot on the coast of Maine and moves into the mouth of the Sheepscott River, where she drops anchor and remains for a few weeks. While there the British maintain a blockade off the coast, but in vain, as the *Boston* does not venture out until the British depart the area during late July.

In the meantime, the *Fox* and the *Hancock* continue to try to outrun the British, with the *Flora* behind the *Fox* and the *Rainbow* to the rear of the *Hancock*. The *Fox*, manned only by a prize crew, engages the *Flora* and during the fighting she runs aground. The crew, including two Marines (Lieutenants Harris and McNeill) are seized and carried to Halifax, where they are held until January 1778, when they are exchanged.

The *Rainbow* swings southward and chases the *Hancock*, which attempts to lose the pursuer in a fog that drifts in and out. The *Rainbow* gains an advantage when the *Hancock* shifts weight forward, drastically cutting her speed. Nevertheless, it becomes a prolonged flight that continues into the night of the 7th-8th. At about 0400, the darkness is shattered momentarily when the *Rainbow*, under Commodore Sir George Collier, commences fire with its bow chasers and broadsides. The British continue to press and at about 0830, Commodore Manley receives an ultimatum to either strike his colors or receive no quarter. While the British await a response, the *Hancock* during those few minutes takes advantage of a fresh wind that whips up. Manley reinitiates the chase by breaking away with the *Rainbow* following after serving up an additional broadside. The *Hancock* stays in the lead for a while, but eventually she is overtaken.

The guns of the *Rainbow* bellow incessant barrages against the *Hancock*, while the gunners of the

*Hancock* attempt to return fire. The *Hancock* holds well for a while, but another devastating blow severs the foremast, and burning sailcloth follows to end the 39 hour chase. Commodore Manley, out of options and fog banks, strikes the colors to the double-decker and her 44 guns. The *Hancock* becomes the first U.S. frigate to strike her colors to a British ship. The British rename her the HMS *Iris*. Commodore Manley, his naval officers and two Marine officers, (Captain Seth Baxter and Lt. William Bubier) are taken aboard the *Rainbow* and carried to Halifax, from where they are transferred to New York and detained there until exchanged during the following year.

**July 25 1777**-Congress reacts to the changing circumstances in Philadelphia since the recent departure of the British fleet from New York. It resolves “that the Marine Committee be empowered to put a stop to the building of such of the continental ships of war already ordered by this Congress to be built, as they shall judge proper, and to resume the building of them again when they shall find it consistent with the interest of the United States so to do.” Other resolutions include “that the commanders of continental vessels of war of ten guns and upwards, be allowed 5<sup>1</sup>/<sub>3</sub> dollars per week, for subsistence whilst in domestick or foreign ports: That commanders of vessels under ten guns be allowed 4 dollars per week for subsistence whilst in domestic or foreign ports: That commanders of continental vessels of war of ten guns and upwards, be allowed, whilst at sea, 2<sup>2</sup>/<sub>3</sub> dollars per week for cabin expences: That lieutenants, surgeons, captains of marines and chaplains, be allowed 4 dollars per week subsistence in domestic ports, during such time as the ships they respectively belong to are not in condition to receive them on board.”

**July 27 1777-In naval activity:** The *Ranger* continues to remain in Portsmouth, still short of a full crew. Captain John Paul Jones orders Captain Parke, a Marine, to depart Providence and attempt to increase enlistments at Boston. Nonetheless, enlistments move at a slow pace. The *Ranger* does not sail until 1 November.

**August 31 1777-In Maryland:** The Council of Safety reports that the state navy has up this day only two row galleys fitted, and the report includes a grim statistic regarding the British, who have sufficient warships to “block them up separately.” The Maryland Navy continues to struggle. By the end of this year, the *Defence*, which had been launched during March of the previous year, is considered expendable by the General Assembly, which puts it up for sale. The Marines aboard at the time receive options, to either transfer to a galley or to an artillery unit. The Navy never elevates to a prominent place during the war.

**September 2 1777-In naval activity:** The *Raleigh* and *Alfred*, commanded by Captain Tom Thompson and Captain Elisha Hinman respectively, having been ordered to depart Portsmouth for Europe during the previous month, finally got underway during the latter part of the month. About three days out, a British schooner, en route to Halifax and carrying little cargo and about \$4,000 in counterfeit currency (Continental and Massachusetts), is seized and afterward set ablaze. On this day, an enemy snow is seized and the Americans receive a bonanza. The ship’s captain possesses the shipping orders of the fleet and its signal book. The captured snow had been part of a fleet until it got separated on the previous day. The prize is taken to a friendly port.

After securing their prize, the *Raleigh* and *Alfred* continue the cruise and locate the British convoy on the following day. The fleet stands at great distance when it is spotted by lookouts, but just prior to dusk, the Americans are close and see 60 sail bearing east by north. The *Raleigh* leads, with the slower paced *Alfred* trailing.

In the meantime, Captain Thompson informs Captain Hinman aboard the *Alfred* that he intends to move right into the fleet using the captured British signals and launch an attack on the following

day. Hinman is directed to hold back until the *Raleigh* moves abreast the English commodore's vessel and at that time, to come up on the opposite side to strike simultaneously.

While the night passes the winds change and by dawn the two American vessels have been pushed leeward. Instead of being positioned in close proximity, both ships are compelled to fight the wind from a distance of about 6 miles behind the convoy. For the *Raleigh*, it is not a difficult maneuver, but the *Alfred* is unable to close quickly, prompting Thompson to conclude that the *Raleigh* would attack singlehandedly.

The ruse unfolds without detection and the British signals permit the vessel to close without challenge. As the Americans encroach the *Druid*, a 14-gun sloop, the ports are opened and the guns come out just as the American flag is hoisted. In concert, the crew of the *Druid* is told to strike the colors just prior to the first broadside. The *Druid* is blasted by consecutive point-blank broadsides that sever her masts and cause massive confusion among the crew. And the Marine marksmen that ring musket fire upon the British only escalate the predicament. During the bombardment, the captain of the *Druid* is killed.

Meanwhile, the *Raleigh*, commanded by Captain Thompson, fails to quickly strike the decisive blow, which allows another British vessel to move up and charge the *Raleigh*. Captain Thompson becomes indecisive. Unwilling to fight the closing corvette and concerned about being cut off by the other British ships, Thompson disengages and the *Raleigh* makes a run toward the *Alfred*. Three British warships pursue, but by dusk, the chase is terminated. The British escorts return to protect the convoy.

Following the encounter, the Americans again shadow the convoy, but the British no longer perceive them as friendly. The convoy continues in close formation and the warships do not venture out to engage the two American ships. After several days, the *Raleigh* and the *Alfred* change course and sail toward France. In addition to the *Druid*, the British escorts include the *Camel*, *Grasshopper* and *Weazel*.

**September 2 1777-In naval activity:** The *Raleigh* and *Alfred*, commanded by Captain Tom Thompson and Captain Elisha Hinman respectively, having been ordered to depart Portsmouth for Europe during the previous month, finally got underway during the latter part of the month. About three days out, a British schooner, en route to Halifax and carrying little cargo and about \$4,000 in counterfeit currency (Continental and Massachusetts), is seized and afterward set ablaze. On this day, an enemy snow is seized and the Americans receive a bonanza. The ship's captain possesses the shipping orders of the fleet and its signal book. The captured snow had been part of a fleet until it got separated on the previous day. The prize is taken to a friendly port.

After securing their prize, the *Raleigh* and *Alfred* continue the cruise and locate the British convoy on the following day. The fleet stands at great distance when it is spotted by lookouts, but just prior to dusk, the Americans are close and see 60 sail bearing east by north. The *Raleigh* leads, with the slower paced *Alfred* trailing. In the meantime, Captain Thompson informs Captain Hinman aboard the *Alfred* that he intends to move right into the fleet using the captured British signals and launch an attack on the following day. Hinman is directed to hold back until the *Raleigh* moves abreast the English commodore's vessel and at that time, to come up on the opposite side to strike simultaneously.

While the night passes the winds change and by dawn the two American vessels have been pushed leeward. Instead of being positioned in close proximity, both ships are compelled to fight the wind

from a distance of about 6 miles behind the convoy. For the *Raleigh*, it is not a difficult maneuver, but the *Alfred* is unable to close quickly, prompting Thompson to conclude that the *Raleigh* would attack singlehandedly.

The ruse unfolds without detection and the British signals permit the vessel to close without challenge. As the Americans encroach the *Druid*, a 14-gun sloop, the ports are opened and the guns come out just as the American flag is hoisted. In concert, the crew of the *Druid* is told to strike the colors just prior to the first broadside. The *Druid* is blasted by consecutive point-blank broadsides that sever her masts and cause massive confusion among the crew. And the Marine marksmen that ring musket fire upon the British only escalate the predicament. During the bombardment, the captain of the *Druid* is killed.

Meanwhile, the *Raleigh*, commanded by Captain Thompson, fails to quickly strike the decisive blow, which allows another British vessel to move up and charge the *Raleigh*. Captain Thompson becomes indecisive. Unwilling to fight the closing corvette and concerned about being cut off by the other British ships, Thompson disengages and the *Raleigh* makes a run toward the *Alfred*. Three British warships pursue, but by dusk, the chase is terminated. The British escorts return to protect the convoy.

Following the encounter, the Americans again shadow the convoy, but the British no longer perceive them as friendly. The convoy continues in close formation and the warships do not venture out to engage the two American ships. After several days, the *Raleigh* and the *Alfred* change course and sail toward France. In addition to the *Druid*, the British escorts include the *Camel*, *Grasshopper* and *Weazel*.

**September 19 1777 -In naval activity-** The *Lexington*, en route from France to America, is encountered by the HMS *Alert* (10 guns) while she is in the vicinity of the mouth of the English Channel off Assigned, a French island. The *Alert*, renowned for the accuracy of its gunners, gives short life to the *Lexington*, which battles valiantly for the better part of an hour before sustaining major damage to the rigging that prevents her from attempting to outrun the British. The Americans continue to match the British blow for blow until the crew exhausts all of the ammunition. The British gunners then capitalize and force the beleaguered ship to strike the colors.

During the tenacious battle, the *Lexington* loses 7 killed and 11 wounded, including Lt. Connelly, a Marine. The British transfer Captain Henry Johnson and some of the crew to the *Alert*, and it takes them into Plymouth where they are detained at Mill Prison. Subsequently, a few of the men, including Captain Johnson and his sergeant of Marines, John Barry, escape.

**September 24 1777-In Pennsylvania:** At Philadelphia, while the British close, efforts are still underway to get vessels out of the port. Some Marine detachments also remain in the city. Lieutenants James Coakley and Able Morgan assemble their separate guard detachments and board their ships. Able moves to the *Washington* and Coakley leads his contingent to the *Effingham*. Both vessels afterward head north toward the Bristol (Pennsylvania) and Burlington (New Jersey) sector of the river. All other vessels in port are sent south to bolster the naval forces of the Pennsylvania fleet under Commodore John Hazelwood.

**September 27 1777-In naval activity:** While the British solidify their positions in Philadelphia and take precautions to prevent the Americans from launching an attack on the river, the Continental Navy captains and the captains of the Pennsylvania Navy confer at Fort Mifflin to plot their strategy to defend the river. During the meeting a decision is made to initiate a raid. The *Delaware*, the schooner *Fly*, the *Montgomery* (Pennsylvania Navy) and five galleys assemble off Gloucester Point

and move up the river.

Meanwhile, the British, having established defenses, stand ready at the lower battery, but the crew is under orders not to fire until it comes under fire. The American vessels approach and as the Delaware closes from a distance of about 400 yards from the artillery, the British guns initiate the battle with the first volley, followed by return fire from Captain Alexander's guns aboard the Delaware and the remainder of the American ships as they advance.

British fire strikes the Delaware and ignites a blaze. While the fire spreads, chaos abounds and the discipline of the crew vanishes. By the time the vessel advances about 150 yards more, she runs aground on a point known as Windmill Island, leaving her stranded in the channel. The colors are afterward struck.

While sailors and Marines aboard the paralyzed ship begin to lower boats to escape to the New Jersey bank, the trailing vessels abort the advance. The *Montgomery* and the galleys reverse course and head back toward Gloucester Point. The *Fly* cuts over to a Jersey bank. All the while, the British are preparing to board the frigate. Most of the crew is seized, but some of the crew under Lieutenant Neilson, a Marine, succeeds in using boats to reach the Jersey bank, escaping the British Marine grenadiers that board and seize the vessel. The British incorporate the captured *Delaware* into their service.

**October 5 1777**-Thomas Burke, James Duane, Joseph Jones, Richard Law and George Walton. And Congress repeals a resolution passed during March 1776 and passes a new one: "Resolved, That so much of the resolution of the 23d day of March, 1776, as directs that the wages of seamen and mariners taken on board British merchant vessels, be paid and deducted out of the prize money, be repealed and made null and void. Resolved, That all masters, officers and mariners, and all subjects of the king of Great Britain, taken on board any prize made by ally continental vessel of war, be hereafter considered as prisoners of war, and treated as such; and that the seamen and mariners of such prize be confined in the gaols or some other secure place in the State to which the prize shall be carried; and it is recommended to the several states to consider and treat all captains, officers and mariners, and all subjects of the king of Great Britain, taken on board any prize made by any vessel fitted out by, or carried into, any State by any privateer or letter of marque, as prisoners of war."

**October 6 1777**-Congress elects a committee of Indian affairs: Thomas Burke, James Duane, Joseph Jones, Richard Law and George Walton. And Congress repeals a resolution passed during March 1776 and passes a new one: "Resolved, That so much of the resolution of the 23d day of March, 1776, as directs that the wages of seamen and mariners taken on board British merchant vessels, be paid and deducted out of the prize money, be repealed and made null and void. Resolved, That all masters, officers and marines, and all subjects of the king of Great Britain, taken on board any prize made by ally continental vessel of war, be hereafter considered as prisoners of war, and treated as such; and that the seamen and marines of such prize be confined in the gaols or some other secure place in the State to which the prize shall be carried; and it is recommended to the several states to consider and treat all captains, officers and marines, and all subjects of the king of Great Britain, taken on board any prize made by any vessel fitted out by, or carried into, any State by any privateer or letter of marque, as prisoners of war."

**November 1777-In naval activity:** The sloop *Providence*, at port in New Bedford since the previous August, weighs anchor and sails southward toward the Carolinas. Once in the vicinity of Charleston, after cruising for weeks, the *Providence* during December encounters a British privateer near the bar and the privateer demands that the colors be lowered in surrender and commences fire.

Captain Rathburn responds tersely. He orders a broadside to ignite a sea battle. The encounter, which had occurred after midnight, continues till dawn with the *Providence* in pursuit of the privateer.

Afterward, the two ships pass at close range and the lieutenant aboard the privateer fires at the *Providence* and provokes two of the Marine officers, Lieutenants Trevett and Molten. Both reach for their muskets and fire three shots; the lieutenant is slain. Afterward, with her colors still flying, the *Providence* sends a boarding party and the privateer is taken into Georgetown, South Carolina. The *Providence* remains in port there until the end of the year. During the following month it departs from Charleston for the Bahamas.

**1 November 1777-In naval activity**-Captain John Paul Jones, after months of being stalled in the harbor at Portsmouth, finally has a full crew, composed of about 150 seamen and Marines. The vessel sails down the Piscataqua River, enters the open seas and heads for Europe, carrying some good news if it encounters any other American vessels. Word of the surrender of the British under General Burgoyne at Saratoga had reached Jones prior to his departure.

The *Ranger*'s mission is to attack the coastal towns of England and to harass British vessels. While raising the new U.S. flag over the *Ranger*, he states (according to legend): "That flag and I are twins born in the same hour from the same womb of destiny. We cannot be parted in life or death. So long as we can float, we shall float together. If we must sink, we shall go down as one."

The *Ranger* is the first warship to fly the Stars and Stripes. The *Ranger* seizes two British vessels while Jones is en route to France. The journey ends on 2 December when the *Ranger* arrives off the coast of Lower Brittany during the early morning hours. The *Ranger* then proceeds up the Loire and during the evening, anchors off Paimboeuf, the deep water port at Nantes, France.

Soon after, Jones travels to confer with Franklin and the other minister regarding the *L'Indien*, the ship he was to receive. Nevertheless, he receives only platitudes and no substantive answers. The ministers, essentially, refuse Jones and hand the ship to the French. Subsequently, Jones suggests the *Ranger* should embark on a cruise and the ministers, after some time, authorize it on 16 January. Afterward, Jones returns to his ship and makes repairs. The *Ranger* departs during early February. Previously, Jones had on several occasions exhibited his displeasure with the procedures for appointing officers in the U.S. Navy. Political cronies of the Marine Committee have constantly appointed captains unsuitable for the serious business of defeating such a great world power as England. Jones, with magnificent foresight, sends a letter to emphasize the need for qualified leaders.

One such expression of his personal requirements exemplifies the new modern United States Navy. The letter states, in part: "It is by no means enough that an officer of the Navy should be a capable mariner. He should be a gentleman of liberal education, refined manners, punctilious courtesy and the nicest sense of personal honor." It is apparent that Jones is acutely aware that this was not the case in many instances during the Revolution.

During Jones' exploits against the British in their own waters, he comes to exemplify his own preferences. At one point, while attempting to capture a British nobleman, members of his crew indulge in confiscating some personal property of a countess. Jones, at great personal risk, insures the items are returned, to the dismay of his crew.

**December 12 1777**-Captain James Willing, the brother of the business partner of Robert Morris at Philadelphia, arrives on the frontier at Fort Pitt. He is under orders to carry dispatches to New Orleans and to seize British property. The American contact in New Orleans is Oliver Polluck, who

is a representative of General Washington at Spanish controlled New Orleans. Pollock, an Irish merchant, is also quite friendly with Governor Bernardo de Galvez.

Captain Willing leads a contingent of Continental Marines on the mission. While at the fort, the search for Marines is quite spectacular; men there are anxious to find relief from the monotonous garrison duty and an opportunity to find riches and action, as promised by Willing, during the expedition. Prior to departure, 20 troops of the 13th Virginia Regiment volunteer to join the company and another 14 from the other regiments join. Robert George is appointed 1st lieutenant and Robert Elliott is appointed 2nd lieutenant of Marines. The expedition departs on 10 January.

**Mid-December 1777-In South Carolina-**At this time the state Navy consists of four vessels (two brigantines, both comparatively small in size; a schooner and a sloop), supported by a few pilot boats. The government of South Carolina leans upon the Continental Navy to assist it. By this time, four British warships, released from convoy duty, have been blockading the port of Charleston subsequent to carrying troops to the Head of Elk in the Chesapeake.

The president of South Carolina, John Rutledge, confers with Captain Nicholas Biddle of the *Randolph* to solicit his help. With the British frigates off Charleston, shipping is literally brought to a close. The *Randolph* has been in Charleston since returning from a cruise during the previous September and it has been able to gain a full crew of about 250 men. Some difficulties, however, came about with the complement of Marines due to a leadership crisis. Lt. Franklin Reed had resigned his commission about one year ago and Lt. Panatiere de la Falconniere, subsequent to the cruise, had been placed under arrest and sent to Congress, leaving Captain Samuel Shaw as the sole Marine officer.

Nonetheless, Captain Biddle accepts the offer and challenge to eliminate the British blockading force. Rutledge also assures Biddle that he will secure Continental troops to serve as Marines during the mission. Biddle, soon after, assumes command of a naval task force composed of the *Randolph* and a group of South Carolina vessels. The Privy Council, in cooperation with Rutledge, orders the vessels *Volunteer* and the *General Moultrie* into service of the state. Then the council orders the brigantine *Notre Dame* to prepare for a cruise.

Also, after negotiations with Major General Robert Howe, the council is able to acquire the Continental troops promise to Biddle by Rutledge. The operation to clear the sea path from Charleston gets underway on February 14, 1778.

**December 26 1777-In naval activity:** Lieutenant William Jennison receives orders to report aboard the *Boston* to serve as lieutenant of Marines. Subsequently, Jennison is granted a short furlough. While away, he recruits 3 privates and 1 corporal. Jennison returns to the *Boston* on 12 January, 1778. The vessel moves to Nantasket Roads on 1 February.

**January 10 1778-In naval activity:** Captain James Willing of the Navy departs Fort Pitt with a company of Marines. Although there had been a great deal of apprehension regarding the weather, particularly on the part of General Hand, the waters had not frozen and the expedition begins after dusk. The Marines' vessel, an armed boat, the *Rattletrap*, assigned to Willing upon his arrival, jumps off. This becomes the first time a Marine contingent ventures upon the western waters. After the *Rattletrap*, traveling down the Ohio River, moves past the point where the Wabash converges with the Ohio, the Marines encounter and seize the "Becquet brothers" and confiscate their oversize bateau to relieve them of the cargo of pelts. The Marines also seize another Frenchman and his cargo, a plentiful supply of rum.

News of the presence of the *Rattletrap* and its company of Marines spreads quickly and causes concern as far as Kaskaskia, where the British begin to ponder whether a larger force of Americans follows. The Marines continue toward New Orleans. Nonetheless, within a few months, the British are greeted by other Americans when George Rogers Clark seizes Kaskaskia (Illinois). The acquisition of pelts and rum eases the ruggedness of the journey.

Meanwhile, Willing has succeeded in safely passing British outposts along the Ohio River. Before the Marines reach the Mississippi, Willing acquires some additional recruits when ten men join and add their canoes to Willing's growing naval force. One of the ten, George Girty, is a brother of the infamous Girty brothers (James and Simon). Once the *Rattletrap* moves onto the Mississippi River, it continues towards Natchez and pauses at the Spanish post at the mouth of the Arkansas River. Afterward, on 19 February, the Marines arrive at a plantation located along the river slightly above Natchez.

Captain Willing, having resided in Natchez, is familiar with the terrain and aware that the plantation is owned by a Loyalist, Anthony Hutchins. During the short pause there, the Marines confiscate valuables and seize Hutchins along with his slaves. Rather than sail directly into Natchez, Willing decides to use the two canoes he picked up earlier. Two contingents board the canoes, one-half of the troops led by Robert George and the remainder under Thomas McIntyre. Acting as vanguard, the two canoes later this day reach Natchez to startle the people in the settlement when the armed Marines step ashore and begin to seize it. The settlers, a combination of Americans, French and English, choose not to resist.

On the following day, Captain Willing arrives with the main body. After a meeting with representatives of the townspeople and getting their pledge not to raise arms against the United States or provide assistance to the British, Willing accepts their word and prepares to continue toward New Orleans. He directs the single men in the settlement to join with him and the married men to move to the Spanish territory within 15 days. Nevertheless, by then Willing is long gone from Natchez.

One of the new additions to the force is named Richard Harrison, who is appointed a lieutenant. Once back on the Mississippi, Willing's force halts at various British-owned plantations located below Natchez, but they receive no opportunity to negotiate. The expeditionary force ravages the terrain at each stop. British crops are destroyed and their livestock liquidated. The respective properties are left in ruins while the houses are destroyed by fire. Some of the British are seized, but many others succeed in jumping the river to reach Spanish territory; most had been familiar with Willing while he resided in Natchez. Nonetheless, to Willing, the Loyalists and their property justify the massive destruction. While conducting the operation, other plantations and homes, those of the Patriots, remain unscathed and sustain neither damage nor plunder.

By the 23rd, Willing's main body remains to the rear, while a small contingent at the point moves down the river and flotilla encounters a British sloop, which had been dispatched to intercept the *Rattletrap* and eliminate the American threat. To the surprise of the British, their vessel, the *Rebecca*, and her 16 guns become part of Willing's fleet. The Marine vanguard, composed of 18 men commanded by Lieutenants McIntyre and Harrison, seizes the ship and controls the river for the remainder of the uneventful journey to New Orleans.

The *Rebecca* arrives in the city, is transformed into a cruiser and renamed the *Morris*, which will be commanded by Captain William Pickles of the Navy. On 1 April, Robert Elliott is appointed captain of Marines on the ship.

**January 12 1778-In naval activity:** Preparations continue to speed along the highly anticipated embarkation of Captain Biddle's task force to clear the sea of the British blockading force and reopen Charleston's port. On his day, the captains and subalterns of the South Carolina regiments assigned as Marines converge on the recently constructed barracks in Charleston to determine which ship the units would be assigned to. After the draw, the company from the 1st South Carolina Regiment finds that it is assigned to the *Randolph* with Captain Biddle.

**January 15 1778—In South Carolina:** Fire breaks out within the city of Charleston. The flames are observed by sailors and Marines aboard the *Randolph*, which is in the harbor. The fire is not caused by the enemy; rather, it originates in a bakery. Nevertheless, the damage equals what might have been caused by bombardment. The flames jump from the bakery to adjacent buildings and then rapidly spreads from rooftop to rooftop in the region southwest of Queen and East Bay Streets. Wild winds from the northeast add to the crisis.

Marines and sailors from the *Randolph* speed to the area to help fight the colossal conflagration, which destroys 253 houses before it is finally extinguished. The sweeping flames leave the city decimated, but the consequences reach much further; provisions and other supplies, including military items, are destroyed. A huge number of people are left with no homes or personal items. The loss of the stores also creates a problem with the anticipated cruise of Captain Biddle. The mission is delayed due to the lack of sufficient supplies, but more importantly, the crew remains to assist the distressed townspeople.

**January 20 1778-In naval activity-**While the *Boston* remains in port at Boston awaiting completion of refitting, the Marines aboard receive a set of guidelines which are received by Captain Richard Palms (reinstated as captain of Marines) from Captain Samuel Tucker, the ship's new commanding officer, who succeeded Captain Hector McNeill. Palms' orders are the initial orders that lay out the responsibilities and duties of Marines aboard the ships of the Continental Navy.

**January 27 1778-THE SECOND INVASION OF NEW PROVIDENCE** Captain Rathburn departs Charleston, South Carolina, with the sloop *Providence* during the first part of January and heads for British Fort Nassau in the Bahamas (the same location that caused an embarrassment to the British when the U.S. Navy and Marines captured the fort and its supplies during March 1776). Shortly after the *Providence* breaks into the open seas, three British vessels spot her and initiate pursuit. The *Providence*, which holds the lead, continues to stay out in front, but adds some insurance. Captain Rathburn orders the crew to toss many items, including essentials, such as water and provisions, into the sea to lessen the weight and gather more speed from the winds. The dangerous calculation succeeds and Rathburn's strategy apparently considered that if the British had caught him, there would have been no need for the food and water.

After dusk, with the British still in search of the American vessel, they blindly scour the area while the *Providence* lays quietly with its sails brought in and all lights extinguished. Later this same night, the absolute silence aboard the sloop is broken when the British swoop past and never notice the inanimate ship. The British maintain the chase at full sail and vanish into the darkness. Following the harrowing experience, the crew reinitiates the journey without incident and reaches the island of Abaco after a few more days at sea. The *Providence* anchors there, about fifty miles from its objective, the forts at New Providence.

Captain Rathburn sends a party ashore to acquire fresh water while other men prepare the guns and check the rigging. Prior to departure, Rathburn's crew also builds a ladder to scale the walls of the

forts. With preparations finished, the *Providence* weighs anchor on 27 January and sails southeast. Rathburn and his crafty crew disguise their weapons and leisurely sail past the guns of Fort Nassau, posing as a merchant vessel prior to midnight (27th-28th). The ruse works perfectly. The Americans sail under the darkened skies and arrive off Fort Nassau.

The landing force, unable to board the small boat as a whole, splits up. Initially, 15 men led by Lt. Michael Molten hit the beach and pause there while the boat returns to the *Providence* to pick up Captain John Trevett and the remaining eleven Marines. With both parties ashore and still not discovered, the *Providence* remains nearby off the western tip of Hog Island.

Meanwhile, the British, although not anticipating an attack, had made preparations following the humbling experience of being surprised and vanquished during March of 1776. Fort Nassau at this time is bolstered by sixteen guns: four 18-pounders, four 9-pounders, four 6-pounders and four 4-pounders. Outer defenses that protect the stone fortress include a stretch of formidable wood pickets along three sides.

Nevertheless, as in the previous invasion, the British fail to discover the approaching Americans as they begin the one-mile march. Captain Trevett, having been with Captain Nicholson when the first attack occurred, encroaches the pointed pickets and recalls that in the first invasion dismantled part of the obstacle. He heads back to that point and to his surprise discovers that the pickets remain unrepaired.

While the column holds in place, Trevett slivers through the pickets and soon after is greeted by the voice of an enemy sentinel, who yells "All is well." And soon after, two identical calls are heard. One bellows from a ship off shore and the other from another sentry at the opposite end of Fort Nassau.

As silence again prevails, Trevett returns to his Marines and the contingent silently passes through the opening and carries the scaling ladder along. Within a short time, while Trevett is poised for the attack, another call of "All is well" rings out, followed by similar responses from the sentry aboard the vessels and the guard at the other part of the fort.

Once the sentry closest to the Marines moves back into the fort, the signal to attack is given by Trevett. The ladder is placed and a line of Marines ascends it and bolts over the wall, under strict orders not to fire any weapons for fear of sounding the alarm in Nassau. Once they drop into the fort, the Marines speed to the barracks and seize one man. After questioning him, they discover they have captured fifty percent of the garrison, leaving only the other sentry to complete the first phase of the mission.

Afterward, a few Marines work their way to the opposite side of the fort and quickly relieve the guard of his sentry duties. He is replaced by a Marine. Meanwhile, as two Marines initiate their watch in place of the British guard, the other Marines learn of their good fortune. The fort, if not taken without a shot, would have most probably caused the mission to fail and they would have become reluctant guests of the British. According to the first man captured, the forts are slimly garrisoned because a pre-arranged signal had been in place—at the sound of a single cannon, about 500 men would respond.

Trevett, at the thought of being overrun, immediately informs his Marines of the danger, but it does not deter him from continuing to pull off the capture of both forts. A small detachment of three Marines led by Lt. Molten is dispatched to Fort Montagu at the opposite end of the island, about four miles distant, to seize its garrison and the two sentinels posted there.

Prior to departure, Molten is informed of non-existent reinforcements, which Trevett has added to

his company. The three-man detachment is instructed to pull off another silent seizure and inform the guards there that Fort Nassau is occupied by 230 Americans, poised to advance. As ordered, Molten's party dashes through the woods, reaches the fort, demands immediate surrender and proclaims the news of the huge force already in control of their other fort. The ruse immediately succeeds. The two guards capitulate without resistance and no warning shots are fired.

Back at Fort Nassau, Captain Trevett, once informed of the possibility of 500 men moving against his Marines, directs his force to rearrange the cannon to redirect their fire. The main streets of Nassau, from where an attack would begin, are targeted. Other artillery is repositioned to bombard particular ships in the harbor. In the meantime, during this rapidly unfolding operation, the Marines face severe danger about one-half hour after taking the fort, when a Marine calls out "all is well" and receives a response from the other Marine at the far end of the fort: "All is well." The tension intensifies, then collapses when a voice from the ship in the harbor responds to the pretending sentinels, "All is well." Trevett remains in absolute agreement, at least with regard to his Marines. Having gotten past the first security check, Trevett also becomes concerned about fresh food and provisions, none of which had come ashore with the landing force. Trevett again improvises and works to also feed his invisible forces. By about this time, with both forts under American control, dawn emerges and the colors are soon raised, but not the British ensign. The Marines hoist the Stars and Stripes high atop the mast to be seen across the island.

Afterward, a messenger is dispatched to contact a man who formerly resided in Rhode Island, a merchant named James Gould. After receiving Trevett's message, Gould takes the short trip to the fort and Trevett goes back over the wall and down the ladder to meet Gould and acquire food. Trevett, when asked by Gould from which fleet he had arrived, with a straight-face and an aura of bold confidence replies that the invasion force arrived with the fleet under Captain Nicholas Biddle and its sole purpose was to seize the privateer *Mary* and arms. Nicholas assures Gould that the property of the private citizens is to be left undisturbed. Gould also learns of the huge force (created out of thin air) that controls the fort. Trevett, with a tinge of a condescending tone, tells Gould that his force of 200 men is well supplied with provisions and then adds: "But I must have Breakfast Got for My thirty officers."

After a brief period of time, an inconspicuous delivery of fresh bread, along with a generous supply of butter and coffee, arrives at the fort. The Marines then indulge in a delightful breakfast, intended for Trevett's imaginary officer corps, prior to completing the remainder of their mission to seize the *Mary* and relieve the British of her 16 guns.

Trevett, by this time, has gained four American sailors, freed from captivity. The seamen, along with a midshipman from the *Providence*, move down to a dock without incident and abscond with a boat under the keen observation of Captain Trevett, who watches from the fort as they row up to the ship. Trevett becomes impatient as he notices that the men are prevented from boarding. Taking matters into his own hands, he calls out from his position, and his English, although perfect, contains language seldom heard at the dinner table. The threats accompanying the blistering words of the one-sided conversation actually prompt the ship to surrender. The five Americans are granted permission to board and the ship is taken, still without one shot being fired. The lieutenant in command while the captain is ashore and ill and the crew are taken aboard the boat. The arms are transferred to the fort while the midshipman singlehandedly holds fast on the *Mary*, which is carrying a cargo of coffee, sugar and rum.

Prior to noon, Captain Trevett dispatches boarding parties composed of his Marines and the freed

seamen to take the remaining four vessels, which had only recently been brought into port by a British privateer. While Trevett retains control of the forts and Captain Rathburn's intended target, the *Mary*, plus the four retaken ships in port, the *Providence* weighs anchor at Hog Island and enters the harbor after sighting a British sail, a six-gun privateer, the *Gayton*.

After arriving and conferring with Captain Trevett, the Americans decide to continue the devious strategy that has so far gained immense success. Rathburn and the captain order both forts to haul down the Stars and Stripes to unfold yet another ruse. In concert with the hoisting of the British colors, the Americans lower the colors on the *Providence* to provide the appearance that all is well at New Providence.

The *Gayton* unsuspectingly moves toward the trap while misinterpreting signals being sent from the shore by locals who have become aware of the plot. The *Gayton*, believing the people are cheering, advances until a party boards a boat and rows out to forewarn the privateer of the danger ahead. Immediately, its captain, William Chambers, swerves away from the impending disaster and sails toward Hog Island and from there to the waters off Fort Montagu. The Americans fire to halt the vessel and its hull is struck, but with no crippling damage inflicted, she makes her escape.

The inhabitants, once aware of the consequences of the dazzling success of Rathburn's raid during the night, are astonished at how effortlessly the Americans had seized their fortresses. Although still perplexed, at the sight of the *Gayton* and the knowledge that the Marines' numbers are much less than they believed, the people begin to build their confidence.

Nonetheless, the Marines ashore continue to retain their confidence. Captain Trevett adjusts his strategy to meet the new crisis, including the possibility of an attack by the militia. He orders Lt. Molten and the two Marines under him to destroy the ammunition at Fort Montagu and disable its guns, then sprint back to Fort Nassau. Meanwhile, the *Providence* remains moored just off the town of Nassau, but Trevett sees no reason to request support from the remainder of the crew.

Subsequent to evading capture in Rathburn's trap, the *Gayton*, after maneuvering around Hog Island, passes through the eastern entrance of the harbor and drops anchor off Fort Montagu. Captain Chambers moves to shore and is informed of the crisis. Afterward, while some of the inhabitants favor an attack, the council decides that the Americans hold too great an advantage and that insufficient arms and ammunition would ensure failure.

All the while, the American Marines hold Fort Nassau and nonchalantly prepare for dinner rather than to defend against an attack. Thanks to the graciousness of some of the island's prominent women, the Marines enjoy a tasty dinner of turtle meat served to them on china. The day passes without any hostile action; however, the earlier decision by council to not order an assault does not resonate with many of the inhabitants, who become more frustrated by dawn (29th), with the Stars and Stripes still hovering atop Fort Nassau and the *Providence* in the harbor.

After daylight on the 29th, Captain Rathburn, with the *Mary* and other prizes, makes preparations to sail; however, some unexpected but not surprising complications begin to develop. While the landing party encountered no difficulty at Fort Nassau, large numbers of the inhabitants had converged in the hills to the rear of the fort, and other large congregations had gathered at Government House. None of the activity interferes with Trevett's task and he exhibits total confidence, as if oblivious to the approaching storm.

The collective gatherings and innumerable opinions on how and what to attack continues among the townspeople until at some point, the crowd advances toward the fort and reaches well within pistol shot, but no violence erupts. As the suspense builds, someone at the front of the mob spots Captain

Trevett, who had apparently left a deep impression on the man. Pointing to Trevett, he vociferously proclaims: "There is that Dam Bucherer Come Again that Carred away Governor Browne." As all eyes in the overly excited crowd focus upon Captain Trevett, they detect no signs of emotion, as his movement neither confirms nor denies the charge. Meanwhile, as the Marines remained prepared for whatever is about to unfold, the crowd begins to shift to make way for a new delegation, which is more stoic than those in the gathering as it pushes to the front to speak with the Americans.

Captain Trevett, unmoved by the increasing numbers of people milling about, totally disregards any threat to himself and climbs atop the fort's wall and descends the Marines' scaling ladder to meet the delegation. In response to their inquiry regarding the intent of the invasion, he reiterates what he had told James Gould on the previous day, emphasizing that private property would remain undisturbed. The brief conference ends with Trevett directing the delegation to take charge and instruct the crowd to return to their homes. He informs the men that they are to gather supplies for the four vessels and deliver them to Fort Nassau. While the delegation ponders the demands, Captain Trevett ascends the ladder and moves back into the fort. After waiting for about one hour, Trevett becomes impatient at the non-response to his demands for supplies and the order to disperse the crowds. He decides to venture alone to get his answers.

The scaling ladder, being used much more than anticipated, is again put in place and Captain Trevett descends it without any accompanying escorts, then marches directly through the mob as if they don't even exist, a brazen move by any standard. His bold action apparently stuns the crowd, which makes no moves to inflict harm or attempt to seize him; rather an unimpeded path opens as he advances toward Government House. Unknown to the crowd, Trevett had left specific orders that if any of the men that stood in his way moved to attack, Lt. Molten was to commence fire. Once again, without bloodshed, this small band of Marines continues to dominate the situation.

Meanwhile, the inhabitants become more infuriated with the impertinent Marine, but they are unable to harness their emotions into a strong enough force to react with violence. As Trevett continues toward Government House, he is intercepted by one man from the delegation, Robert Hunt. At this time, Trevett discovers that the governor had blinked and acquiesced to his demands, and in fact, Hunt proposes that they immediately move to the location of the supplies. By about dusk, all the vessels are in possession of the provisions.

The Marines at Fort Nassau remain on the alert throughout the night (29th-30th) and their lack of sleep continues. As one Marine is relieved at his post, he moves to another station to maintain the illusion of inflated numbers. Nevertheless, no opposition emerges, providing a quiet night under tranquil skies. On the morning of the 30th, Captain Rathburn comes ashore at the fort and confers with Captain Trevett to complete the final details before embarking. While the Americans prepare to leave the island, a group of disgruntled men remain determined to attack. Captain Chambers of the privateer *Gayton* and his followers prepare to a scheme to retaliate and humble the Americans. At about the same time Rathburn is informing Trevett that the *Providence* will be ready to sail on the following day, and that he will require three pilots to safely pass to the open sea, some of the islanders are beginning to move artillery to deploy it on the high ground to the rear of the fort in preparation for a synchronized attack executed by land forces and the privateer.

After his conference with Rathburn, Captain Trevett again is compelled to fabricate another ruse to enable the *Providence* to acquire pilots to guide it to the open sea. To trick the pilots into showing themselves, Trevett announces that his Marines will hold an auction and uses 27 barrels of rice as the ploy. The auction is scheduled for the following day, just prior to the planned departure. All the

while, the islanders and Chambers plot their next move and begin to execute the first phase of the attack.

During the noon hour, Captain Trevett and James Gould are enjoying their lunch when it is interrupted by a Marine who had been running at full speed toward Gould's house with the distressing news that a contingent of men had debarked the privateer and landed near the fort. The luncheon is abruptly halted. Trevett moves back to the fort and Gould gathers his family and prepares to depart Nassau for Hog Island.

As Gould and his family are passing the fort, Trevett moves out to speak to him and inquires whether he is fearful. Gould replies that he has no fear, but he did not expect to see Trevett again due to the imminent attack. Once again, showing no trepidation and espousing a certain amount of swagger, Trevett merely smiles and tells Gould that if he would come by on the following morning, they would see each other again, as the Marines would still hold the fort.

Despite his unshakeable confidence in his Marines' ability to hold the fort, Trevett continues to search for measures to retain a psychological advantage over the islanders' great numerical advantage, while he continues to depend on his primary defense, the fort's cannon. While the enthusiasm and confidence continues to build as the people see the cannon redeployed and the nearby privateer, Trevett counterstrikes without firing a shot. He directs one of his Marines, after inquiring if he is agile enough to climb the flagpole, to stand by and await his order to ascend, carrying a hammer and nail and using a harness.

Meanwhile, Trevett dispatches a message to Governor Gambier, in which the governor is told he has fifteen minutes to clear the hills of the crowd and artillery or face imminent bombardment. The message is underscored with Trevett's intent to neither give nor ask quarter. While the message is being delivered at Government House, Scranton, the Marine ascending the pole, in clear view from all points nails the Stars and Stripes to the pole.

Impatience to attack begins to simmer. Scranton's action signals an ominous message. The Marines had defiantly declared that they would defend to the death of the last man. Without any ambiguity, the message is clearly translated and Trevett's strategy brings about almost immediate results. In less than one half hour, the hills become pristine.

By dusk (30th), activity across the town ceases and after dark, the streets become deserted to create an eerie aura that appears surreal for this island community. But for some, the insatiable thirst to drive out the Marines is unquenchable. Lights still glow at the opposite end of the island where the vision of a grand victory still lingers at Fort Montagu, where Captain Chambers had established positions. While the Marines remain vigilant and prepare for the big auction, the prelude to embarkation, Chambers finalizes his plan to strike the Marines and regain glory for New Providence. At about one hour before midnight, Captain Chambers sets sail to strike the *Providence* while most of its crew would be asleep, in concert with the land forces that are to advance to retake the fort. Shortly after the *Gayton* weighs anchor, the dark of night immediately disrupts the amphibious part of the operation. The *Gayton*, guided by an inexperienced pilot, runs aground. The attack is abruptly aborted and New Providence experiences yet another humbling incident. Meanwhile, the Americans continue to maintain their schedule uninterrupted by the self-foiled amphibious attack.

By the crack of dawn on the 31st, all military items in the fort are destroyed or disabled, the powder and ammunition is aboard the *Providence* and the Marines, despite their fatigue, roll out the 27 barrels for Trevett's final ruse of the expedition, the grand auction. Captain Trevett, accompanied by a drummer who beats cadence, marches smartly toward the market place. The rice is set up while

Trevett proclaims to the crowd, which had gathered by about 0800, that he would sell the rice at an inexpensive price. However, he adds that those barrels not sold would be tossed into the water. While the townspeople traverse, the Marines peer in search of the pilots.

In the meantime, Trevett begins to distribute rice to the children in the market to maintain interest and to provide time to nab those needed to get the ships through the bay. Soon after, the three pilots, requested by Captain Rathburn, are selected and informed that they had volunteered to act as pilots. By this time, Trevett no longer has reason to sell his rice. In a parting gesture, the rice, never intended for the harbor, is distributed to the people.

The *Providence* and its prizes prepare to weigh anchor, while only a few Marines still remain ashore at about 1000. While waiting for the boat to pick him up, Trevett is visited by one of Chambers' crew, who delivers an invitation for the captain of Marines to join Chambers at a pub to share some punch, with assurances of no "treachery." Trevett, suspicious of Chambers' motives and anxious to set sail, declines the invitation, but cordially responds to the captain with a personal invitation for Chambers to join him. Trevett proposes that Chambers come out in the bay with the *Gayton* and "take the sloop *Providence*, then I would have some punch." The Americans set sail and Chambers had apparently declined Captain Trevett's invitation. The *Gayton* remains in the harbor.

The *Providence* releases the temporary captives, the pilots, prior to entering the open sea and pauses at Abaco Island. From there, after a well-deserved rest, particularly for Trevett's Marines, the vessels sail for home. From Abaco, both ships head for New Bedford, Massachusetts, but they sail separately. The *Providence* returns to port on 17 January, undergoes repairs and returns to sea during mid-May.

In the meantime, Captain Trevett takes command of the *Mary*. Once back in the States, the prize crew of the *Mary* is deeply disappointed when the Eastern Navy Board rules that the *Mary* was a merchant ship rather than a British warship. Captain Trevett travels to York to convince Congress to overrule the decision, but it declines and agrees with the board. Upon his return to New Bedford, Captain Trevett is informed of worse news. In his absence, a British fleet raided the town and the *Mary* was destroyed by fire. The cargo aboard had also been lost.

Captain Trevett also discovers that his command had been lost. While he was on his journey to plead with Congress to overrule the Eastern Naval Board's ruling, it decides to discard him, despite his faithful service to his country. William Vernon, one of the members of the board, had been delegated to select a captain of Marines in place of Trevett. The name of Trevett's successor remains a mystery.

**February 1778**-By the first week in February, pursuant to orders from the Marine Committee, Captain John Barry sets out from Borden town, New Jersey, on a mission to harass the British. Captain John Barry, having formed a force of forty men and acquiring two boats from the frigates *Effingham* and *Washington*, still stalled above Philadelphia since it was taken by the British, rows silently down the Delaware to avoid detection. Barry commands the operation and Lieutenant James Coakley, a Marine, is aboard as his mate. The other boat is commanded by Lieutenant Luke Matthewman of the Navy.

Barry's primary mission is to seize supplies and destroy enemy transports encountered on the river, but first his men must pass the heavily guarded city and its batteries. Barry is also instructed to rendezvous with five other boats south of the city and proceed to Wilmington, Delaware, and extricate General Anthony Wayne's beleaguered brigade by ferrying it to Salem, New Jersey, for a cattle roundup.

Utilizing muffled oars, Barry's boats creep past Philadelphia on the far side of the river and are not discovered by sentries or the battery crews on the Philadelphia side of the river. Once the miniature flotilla moves beyond the batteries, it is soon joined by five additional boats, manned by seamen and some privateers. The seven boats, having only one artillery piece, a 4-pounder, continue the journey without incident and encounter Wayne's brigade prior to noon on the 19th.

After transporting the soldiers to Salem, the naval part of the operation holds in Salem Creek. Within a few days, Wayne's troops have scoured the area and gathered about 1,000 head of cattle, which creates a major dilemma. Barry's task in getting safely past the British guns had been difficult, but as they observe the cattle during the afternoon of the 23rd, it becomes obvious that they aren't going to be ferried. The problem is solved when it is decided to drive the cattle north to Burlington, New Jersey, and cross there.

The soldiers turned cowboys begin the cattle drive while Barry's boats work in concert with General Wayne. The boats, after moving north to Mantua Creek, then reverse course and head south again, torching all the hay along the Jersey side of the river. The diversion succeeds. While the British focus on the fires, Wayne gets the cattle across the river at Burlington. Barry remains south of the city and on 7 March, his force encounters enemy vessels.

**March 7 1778-In naval activity:** The *Randolph*, leading a task force, encounters the HMS *Yarmouth*, a British 64-gun ship of the line, while sailing between the states and the West Indies at a point about 120 miles east of Barbados. A lookout detects the British warship in the distance during the afternoon. The *Volunteer*, *General Moultrie*, *Fair American* and *Polly* remain close together while the *Randolph*, at the lead, lingers to await the British vessel, which had been ordered from Antigua to locate the Americans. The *General Moultrie* also is able to hold, but the remaining three ships in the fleet are carried on by the winds.

A close encounter occurs at about one hour subsequent to dusk, when the *Yarmouth* swings abreast of the *Randolph*, unaware that the ship is American. The British hail the *Randolph* and demand identification; the *Randolph* complies. Biddle orders the colors hoisted, and as the Stars and Stripes ascends the staff, Biddle orders a broadside to introduce the flag and ignite the battle. The guns of the colossal *Yarmouth* initiate return fire while the *Randolph* continues its string of broadsides. Flashes of light bounce from the opposing ports while the cannon fire appears in the night air to be continuous strings of stinging fire.

Amid the thunderous bombardments, the ships remain at such close quarters that the frequent sounds of exploding hand grenades pierce the opposing vessels with equally serious consequences. Despite the advantage in guns, the marksmanship of the Americans acts as an equalizer. The *Yarmouth* sustains hits that cut away its topmast and shred its rigging. Its crew is under constant musket fire from the Marines and their supporting troops from the 1st South Carolina Regiment, serving as Marines.

Within the first fifteen minutes of the gruesome contest, the *Randolph* also sustains damages, and Captain Biddle becomes one of the casualties after receiving a serious wound in his leg. Biddle receives medical care, but rather than remain out of the action, he orders a chair to be brought, and from there he continues to command. Shortly thereafter, as the *Randolph* maintains its discipline and keeps pace with the larger *Yarmouth*, the battle comes to an unanticipated conclusion when a horrific explosion occurs in the *Randolph*'s magazine.

In an instant, the warship is transformed into a huge ball of fire. The *Randolph* is blown into pieces. Its entire crew, composed of 305 men, including seamen, Marines and the company of the 1st South

Carolina Regiment, is essentially wiped out. Only four sailors survive. The explosion on the *Randolph* creates problems on the *Yarmouth* as the fiery debris flies upon the decks. The immediate task of the crew is to repair the damages and keep the *Yarmouth* from being destroyed by fire. Consequently, it is unable to focus on the remaining vessels that had been with the *Randolph*, permitting the four South Carolina vessels to return to Charleston.

The *Yarmouth* sustains 5 killed and 12 wounded. Although it is thought that the accidental explosion aboard the *Randolph* had been caused by a spark in the magazine, the actual cause has never been revealed. In other naval activity, the *Ranger* arrives at Cameret, France, about eight miles from its destination, Brest. Once in port, Captain John Paul Jones dismisses Captain Parke, a Marine who had on the 19th of February requested a discharge. Parke had originally signed on in expectation of serving aboard the *L'Indien*, which Jones had been promised but did not receive. The American ministers broke the promise and gave it to the French government subsequent to the arrival of Jones in France during the previous December.

While in France, Jones' crew complained about having a captain on board a ship with less than 20 guns. Jones' agreement to discharge Parke is done reluctantly. In place of Parke, Jones appoints Lieutenant Jean Meijer of the Swedish Army as lieutenant of Marines. While at Brest in northern France, Jones finalizes his plans for the attacks against England and ponders which parts of the English coast he would strike.

A French fleet under the command of Lt. General le Comte d'Orvilliers is also at Cameret. Jones confers with the commander to detail his plans and afterward moves to Brest, where the *Ranger* remains at anchor until 4 April. While at Brest, the crew enjoys liberty while the ship undergoes the same problems that plague the rest of the U.S. Navy. Desertions begin to increase. Some are captured and returned to the *Ranger*.

Also, Captain John Barry, following his successful mission to support General Anthony Wayne's brigade by ferrying them across the Delaware on 19 February and remaining until their task was finished, on this day, while still operating on the Delaware River south of British-held Philadelphia, encounters three vessels off port Penn, en route to the city to deliver supplies to the British army. Barry's force, operating in boats rather than ships, captures all three—two ships and one schooner. However, on the 9th, a British flotilla is detected moving up Delaware Bay. The Americans set the transports afire after removing the cargo, but Barry preserves the schooner to make his escape. The schooner fails to provide the required speed to guarantee safety. Barry runs the vessel aground on New Castle, Delaware, and the crew and the cargo escape the clutches of the British navy. Meanwhile, the British continue to build their strength on the river. Captain Barry, his small force and his boats remain stranded at Wilmington, Delaware, until June.

**March 9 1778-In naval activity-**The *Alfred* and *Raleigh* encounter two British sail at about 0600 as they cruise toward the West Indies. Captain Thomas Thompson aboard the *Raleigh* orders his vessel to "hove to" while he directs Captain Elisha Hinman to venture alone to investigate. By about 1000, the observations become clearer from a distance of about five miles and the ships are identified as British warships. The *Alfred*, commanded by the able Captain Hinman, engages the enemy, but the combined strength of the HMS *Ariadne* (20 guns) and the HMS *Ceres* (16 guns) overpowers the *Alfred*. While the *Alfred* is engaged in heated battle, the *Raleigh*, which had sailed off, continues to flee.

After seizing the *Alfred*, the British pursue the *Raleigh*. While she runs, Captain Thompson orders

many items, including lumber, to be thrown overboard to help gain distance. The chase continues for about nineteen hours before the British decide to abort pursuit. The vessel arrives safely at port, but Thompson receives a court-martial due to his cowardice under fire. Thompson had claimed that the British held a superior force, but the *Raleigh* and the *Alfred* combined held 56 guns against 36 enemy guns. Captain Thompson is dismissed from the service.

After Captain Hinman is compelled to strike the colors, the British confine the crew. The naval officers, including Captain Hinman and the Marine officers, Captain John Welsh, 1st Lt. William Hamilton and 2nd Lt. Nathaniel Richards, are transported to Barbados. All except Richards are taken aboard the HMS *Yarmouth*, which transports them to England. By mid-July, the American officers are confined at Forton Prison in Portsmouth.

Richards is detained at Barbados. Due to familiarity with British Captain Thompson of the *Yarmouth* and his family, Richards receives parole and permission to travel home. En route aboard the brigantine *Charming Betty*, the British seize it and Richards is transported to Halifax, Nova Scotia. Finally, after delay, he arrives back in the United States on 28 July.

**March 14 1778—In Louisiana**—The success of Captain Willing and his force of Marines has accelerated the concern of the British and on this day, the Spanish governor, Bernardo de Galvez, is informed by Captain John Fergusson of the Royal Navy that the Spanish hospitality afforded the Americans borders on an act of war against the British and that the Spanish actions are in violation of a treaty between the British and Spain. On this same day, the governor responds by refuting the charge. Fergusson had recently arrived on the Mississippi aboard his sloop, the *Sylph*.

**March 19 1778-In naval activity**—The British in control of West Florida remain infuriated that the American forces of Marines under Captain Willing of the Navy are receiving protection from the Spanish in New Orleans. On this day, a British contingent, composed of about fifty men, launch a surprise attack during the predawn hours against a small American garrison at Manchac. Two Americans are killed and about eight or ten are wounded. One woman is slain and the British seize 14 prisoners. After being informed of the attack, Captain Willing dispatches a contingent to retake the outpost and regains it without opposition.

During the following month, a detachment of Willing's command gets snagged in an ambush in the vicinity of Natchez as the troops under Lieutenant Harrison are advancing to investigate whether the settlers are maintaining their earlier oath to remain neutral. The Loyalists, led by Anthony Hutchins, that spring the ambush also outnumber the small detachment. Five of Willing's men are killed and a few are captured. The remainder returns to New Orleans.

**March 27 1778-In naval activity:** The *Columbus* attempts to run the British naval blockade of Narragansett Bay. After reaching a point about five miles below Providence, the guns and provisions are unloaded to prevent them from being seized if the vessel is intercepted. The items are to be taken overland and reloaded at New London, Connecticut. With fair winds during the evening, the *Columbus* weighs anchor. On this same day a merchant ship is spotted by the British and soon after, the HMS *Maidstone* and the HMS *Sphinx* sail to intercept it; however, instead they encounter the *Columbus* and bar passage. Captain Hacker, choosing not to surrender and having no path to escape, runs the ship aground in the vicinity of Point Judith, Rhode Island.

At this time, the guns had been removed and *Columbus* carries only 25 men, but the figure includes Marines under Captain Joseph Hardy. After grounding the ship, the crew and a group of residents from the area work to strip the vessel. On the afternoon of the 28th, the British dispatch a contingent

of sailors and British Marines, but once they land to seize the crippled vessel, they are fired upon and compelled to return to the sea. Later, prior to dusk, the British return and the *Columbus* is set on fire by the party.

**March 30 1778-In naval activity-**The frigate *Virginia*, commanded by Captain James Nicholson, a political appointee, weighs anchor at Annapolis after deciding to again make a move to break through the British naval blockade, but the journey is against the advice of the Maryland Council of Safety. Nicholson, during the prolonged stay in Maryland, had lost many of his original troops due to expiration of enlistments and desertions, but his contingent of Marines had not been weakened. Some changes occurred, but replacements were swiftly acquired.

By this time, Captain of Marines James Disney had resigned his commission and was succeeded by 2nd Lt. Thomas Plunkett. Lt. Plunkett is replaced by recently arrived William Barney, who is appointed 2nd lieutenant. Meanwhile, a veteran officer, Lieutenant Thomas Pownall, remains with the crew. Nicholson also receives a group of seamen from the *Andrew Doria* who arrived with Barney's brother, Joshua. The voyage jumps off hurriedly, so quickly that the tender and nineteen men under Captain Plunkett and 2nd Lieutenant Joshua Fanning of the Navy are stranded at Annapolis. By the following morning the ship encounters trouble.

At about 0300 on the 31st, the *Virginia*, not yet 24 hours away from the dock at Annapolis, strikes a shoal and within a short while loses her rudder. Captain Nicholson decides to await dawn to begin repairs. At the first signs of daylight, the crew spots two British vessels. The ship's captain, James Nicholson, immediately issues his first order of the day, to lower his barge. At about the same time, he calls for volunteers—not to fight, but to join him in flight. Nicholson boards the barge so hurriedly to escape that he leaves without destroying the intelligence aboard, disabling the guns or tossing the supplies and ammunition overboard.

Meanwhile, Navy Lt. Joshua Barney attempts to save the vessel and proposes to the other officers aboard the ship that they sever the cable, which might permit the ship to be carried to Cape Henry by the currents. His idea is rejected.

Barney turns his attention to maintaining order, but with the captain in a fleeing rowboat and more than 300 men aboard, many of whom had begun to hit the ship's stores and indulge, it becomes an impossible task. The crew remains oblivious to the closing threat and the British seem slightly lackadaisical, making no swift move to encroach the ship and seize it.

By 1000, the British board and seize the *Virginia*. Captain Nicholson had reached the safety of the beach, but by the time he debarked, it became obvious how quickly he jumped ship. His pants remained back on the *Virginia* in custody of the British. Once the British take control of the *Virginia*, they separate the ship's officers, including the Marines.

On the following day, Captain Nicholson, flying a white flag, is rowed out to his former ship to request negotiations for a parole of the crew and to have his personal items, including his trousers. Naval Lieutenant Joshua Barney and Marine Lieutenant Pownall are transferred to the HMS *Emerald* and while there, they are treated well. Marine Lieutenant William Barney is exchanged quickly.

Later, as summer begins, the number of prisoners held by the British Chesapeake Squadron becomes too high and many of the American captives are transported to New York. Once there, Lt. Pownall is transferred to the HMS *Ardent*, the flagship of Admiral John Byron. Soon after, by the latter part of August, Lt. Pownall is exchanged for a British officer, captured on the frigate *Mermaid* after it runs aground during an encounter with d'Estaing's French fleet off Maryland.

**April 2 1778-In naval activity-**The *Boston* off Bordeaux remains in anchor since its arrival on the

previous day. John Adams and the three children accompanying him are taken to shore and along with Captain Richard Palms, a Marine, proceed to Paris. Palms carries the instructions of Captain Tucker, commander of the *Boston*, and his signals. Later the *Boston* weighs anchor and moves down the Gironde River to Lormont and receives repairs, including a new main mast, which had been damaged during a storm while the ship journeyed to France. Following repairs, the frigate moves back up the river to Bordeaux on the 10th.

**April 22 1778-In naval activity**-Following a few days of seeking sanctuary from a storm at the south shore of Scotland, the crew of the *Ranger* as dawn emerges has no difficulty in locating snow, as it blankets the Isle of Man and the opposite sides of Solway Firth in accompaniment with very cold weather, but the crew also finds clear skies. Using the opportunity of good sailing weather, Captain John Paul Jones sets his plan to attack Whitehaven, a place with which he is familiar, into motion.

It was from Whitehaven that Jones first sailed to America when he was about thirteen. The target, however, had also been selected based on intelligence that positioned an abundance of ships in the harbor there. Nevertheless, the cantankerous crew continues to complicate the mission by bickering and attempting to make the decision on what to attack and what not to attack. The obstinance is instigated by naval lieutenants Elijah Hall and Thomas Simpson. The *Ranger*'s progress slows as the winds dissipate later in the day.

By midnight (22nd-23rd) Whitehaven remains a distant objective. Undaunted, Jones calls for volunteers. Both lieutenants, Hall and Simpson, claim fatigue and decline the mission. However, Lt. Meijer of the Swedish Army, acting as lieutenant of Marines, accompanies Jones on the boat that he boards, while a second boat of volunteers contains Lieutenant Wallingford of the Marines and Midshipman Benjamin Hill. Both parties are carrying combustibles to be used against the ships in the harbor. The Americans, following a strenuous trek through frigid night air, enter the outer pier of the harbor in concert with the first signs of dawn. Jones dispatches Wallingford's boat to the far end of the harbor, where about 150 merchant ships are moored, with instructions to strike quickly and burn the vessels.

Meanwhile, Jones leads a contingent to a potent battery in the harbor. The party successfully scales the walls without detection and effortlessly seizes the four men posted there. They are rudely awakened and then captured. During the operation at the fort, Jones' men spike the fort's guns to permit the *Ranger* an easier exit. Afterward, Jones is stunned when he returns to his boat and observes no burning ships. Wallingford's boat had returned with the report that their fire had extinguished prior to executing the orders. Coincidentally, and suspiciously, the fire carried by his own crew had also burned out.

Meanwhile, time is quickly passing and the sun is rapidly rising. At this time, Jones moves to a nearby building and acquires a new light and promptly moves to the southern section of the harbor, the location of about 70 to 100 grounded vessels. In quick time, Jones orders that the largest vessel there, a collier, the *Thompson*, be set ablaze. Jones also directs that the men toss a barrel of tar into the fire to help spread it to the nearby ships.

While the volunteers complete their mission, one of them deserts and begins to alert the residents of Whitehaven, who are roused from their sleep to learn of Jones' visit. By this time, at about one hour after dawn, Jones is ordering everyone back in the boats. The English, however, are dashing to the beach and others are preparing artillery, but to no avail. The boats are unscathed by the fire and arrive back at the *Ranger* by 0700.

Without delay Jones heads for St. Mary's Isle, where it is thought that Lord Selkirk might be captured. By about 1000, the *Ranger* passes Solway Firth and encroaches Little Ross an island situated at the entrance to Kircudbright Bay, the sea path to St. Mary's Isle. Jones remains infuriated with the methods of the British regarding American captives imprisoned in England and believes that if captured, Lord Selkirk could be exchanged for more humane treatment of the Americans, or at least to gain the release of some of them for the lord's return.

The *Ranger* arrives at St. Mary's and Jones and two officers, along with a party of about 12 volunteers (seamen and Marines), board the *Ranger's* cutter, which is lowered and proceeds to shore. Jones leads the contingent to the property of Lord Selkirk and during the march, the gardener is encountered. The gardener is informed that the group is a contingent from the Royal Navy in search of volunteers, which encourages him to continue in conversation. In turn, the gardener informs Jones that Lord Selkirk is away at London.

The troops in the landing party, when informed that their prey had been lost, are reluctant to return to the boat without first raiding the house for booty. Permission is granted to confiscate the silverware only, but the men indulge in much more thievery from the countess, who loses some valuables. The countess observes the Americans as they surround the residence. Her guests and the children are hustled upstairs for safety, while Lady Selkirk and the butler handle the intrusion, quite bravely, considering they face an armed man at every entrance. While the guards remain at the doors, Lt. Cullam and Wallingford enter the house and inform Lady Selkirk of their identity and that they are there to confiscate the silverware.

After some attempts by the butler to hide some of the items, the countess instructs him to give it to the Americans. She actually asks for a receipt and as Lt. Wallingford begins to write one for her, the pen fails to write. Wallingford almost apologetically informs her that it will soon be known even without the receipt that they had been to her home. Prior to leaving, both men are offered a glass of wine, which they accept.

Captain Jones once again becomes infuriated when he learns that the countess had lost some additional valuables. He demands that the items be returned. In direct compliance and without hesitation, the confiscated items are sent expeditiously to the rightful owner with an apology to the countess for the ungentlemanly deed. Jones' visit to Whitehaven and to St. Mary's Isle, neither of which proved profitable for the crew, succeeds in planting apprehension throughout England, which can no longer consider its ports safe from attack by the American Navy. In a belated response to the *Ranger's* port calls, the HMS *Stag* is ordered to pursue and intercept the "Yankee pirates."

The *Ranger*, rather than return to the shores of France, returns to the vicinity of Carrickfergus near Belfast Lough to attack the sloop HMS *Drake*. On 24 April, Jones' plan is nearly disrupted by his crew.

**April 24 1778-THE BATTLE BETWEEN THE *RANGER* AND THE HMS *DRAKE*** *In naval activity:* The *Ranger*, following two recent successful raids against the British, arrives back at the Belfast Lough to seek out the HMS *Drake*. In the meantime, the crew, at the instigation of naval lieutenants Cullam and Simpson, secretly balks at making an attack. While mutiny simmers below the surface, it is exposed by Lt. Meijer (Swedish Army), acting as captain of Marines, who accidentally learns of the mutinous activity and speeds word of it to John Paul Jones.

Soon after, Master Cullam, expecting to surprise Jones and overwhelm him to ignite the mutiny, receives an unpleasant surprise himself. Cullam lunges at Jones, who calmly reacts by reaching for his pistol at the instant of Cullam's charge and neatly places it against his head. The loaded pistol

pressing against Cullam's head brings an abrupt end to the mutiny. Almost nonchalantly, Jones returns to the business of taking the *Drake*. The exploits of the *Ranger* had already reached the captain of the *Drake*, but at this time, the identity of the *Ranger* remains unknown as it sails near Kilroot Point and is detected by the *Drake*.

Unable to pinpoint the nationality of the approaching vessel and unwilling to accept it as friendly, the *Drake* dispatches a boat to investigate. All the while, the *Drake* closes, without any outward signs of facing an American warship. Jones had ordered the guns camouflaged and the crew was to remain below deck, with the *Ranger*'s stern facing the *Drake* to ignite curiosity. While awaiting a reaction aboard the *Drake*, the boat is observed as it moves without incident and comes alongside the tranquil sloop, still unaware of the Americans.

The British boarding party exudes confidence as it moves alongside the vessel to investigate. A lieutenant among the party, the first to board, becomes the first to be informed that he and his crew had become prisoners of the United States Navy. As the *Ranger* tows the British boat back toward the channel, the *Drake* remains uncertain about the identify of the ship that is departing with part of its crew. The *Drake* moves to intercept the vessel and encounters hostile winds that slow progress in the Carrickfergus Bay, while the *Ranger* maneuvers in the channel to position itself at a favorable vantage point from which to gain the remainder of the *Drake*'s crew.

Jones maintains his position sheepishly, still showing no signs of the *Ranger*'s 18 guns, nor visible signs of his hidden crew. The *Drake* closes, but the *Ranger* fails to run, permitting the Americans to continue the ruse of not being a warship in flight from the British Navy. The *Drake* moves unimpeded to within hailing range. As expected, the *Drake* hails the *Ranger* and the captain demands that the *Ranger* hoist the British colors. Shortly thereafter, as the British keenly observe a flag being hoisted, they are introduced to the Stars and Stripes. The captain of the *Drake*, George Burdon, somewhat puzzled, exclaims in a demand, "What ship is this?" And from the deck of the *Ranger*, Master Cullam snaps back in a terse response: "The American Continental ship *Ranger*." While the British come to grips with what turns out to be the enemy, only about one hour remains before sunset, and Jones signals to initiate the attack. The *Ranger* still has the *Drake* to its stern as it repositions to a point directly to the front of the *Drake* and opposite its bow. It delivers a powerful broadside that propels a volley of grape that sweeps across the deck of the *Drake* and ignites a furious sea battle at close range.

Many of the British shells fall short, as the seamanship of Jones is too much for the *Drake* to overcome. Jones' *Ranger* moves in swiftly and delivers stunning blows, then zig-zags out of harm's way, while additional British cannon volleys follow and often fall short of hitting their mark. Jones moves in again with a deadly blow, throwing everything at one time.

The British come under fire from muskets and grenades along with the cannon. The *Drake* by this time has sustained five dead, including Captain Burdon, and its rigging has been shot away. The remainder of the crew, including nineteen wounded, make a call for quarters. The colors are struck and the crew capitulates, bringing the tenacious engagement to a close after one hour and four minutes of incessant fire.

Aboard the victorious *Ranger*, three men had been killed, including two seamen and Marine Lt. Samuel Wallingford, a trusted officer. Five other crewmen are wounded. Jones places Sergeant Ricker in command of the Marine contingent until another officer can be acquired. The *Drake*, engaged and captured off the coast of Northern Ireland, becomes the first major British warship to be captured by the Americans since the beginning of the war. On the following day, Jones focuses

on making repairs to both vessels before departing the area.

**April 27 1778-In naval activity-**While the frigate *Boston* remains at Bordeaux, its captain of Marines, Richard Palms, returns from Paris and delivers secret orders to Captain Samuel Tucker that direct him to sail with the frigate to the Baltic or other “distended seas” to search for lucrative targets to gain “ample Profits to themselves as well as acquiring the honor of serving their country.” However, much to the dismay of Tucker and his Marines, the ministers also direct Tucker to make up the shortage of crewmen by enlisting Frenchmen at Bordeaux. Reluctantly, the order is obeyed and later, as anticipated, the French add little and create huge problems, beginning with false rumors that one enlistee is being held aboard ship against his will. The perplexing complaint lodged by the wife of Jean Morel, who eagerly signed up, turns many at Bordeaux against the Americans aboard the frigate. Subsequently, on 6 June, the vessel weighs anchor and the French soon after become detrimental to the ship. Their actions rise to mutiny.

**May 1 1778-In naval activity:** The *Providence*, confined to the Providence River due to the British blockade, finally weighs anchor and is able to make it to the open sea to sail to France on a mission to acquire ammunition, cannon and other military items. In addition to the impediments supplied by the British, the ship also suffered from a lack of sufficient manpower. The initial Marine officers had resigned by the early part of 1778 and Whipple had to struggle to accumulate a crew sufficient in number to sail. The effort failed to enlist a full crew, but the ship sails.

Prior to embarkation, William Jones receives a commission of Marines. Later, Jonathan Woolworth arrives at Providence accompanied by twenty other men, each wishing to sign up with Whipple as Marines. The group is accepted and Woolworth is commissioned as a lieutenant of Marines. And just prior to departure, William Waterman receives a commission, on 29 April, as lieutenant of Marines.

While passing through Narragansett Bay, the ship encounters the British frigate *Lark*. A brief fight ensues as the frigate *Providence* engages it while running toward the open sea. Whipple, afterward, reports that the *Providence* had been able to score sufficient damage to cripple the *Lark* and permit him to proceed unhindered. About four days out of port, the *Providence* encounters yet another British warship, but no engagement occurs. The *Providence* arrives at France at Nantes on 26 May, accompanied by a prize, a British merchant ship that had been transporting a cargo of British wine.

**May 26 1778-In naval activity:** The frigate *Providence* arrives at Nantes, France, from Providence, Rhode Island, subsequent to a 21-day journey. Later, during July, it is joined by the *Boston*. Meanwhile, the frigate undergoes repairs on her mast and hull. Soon after dropping anchor, Captain William Jones, a Marine, is summoned to meet with the American ministers at Paris. Jones is informed that the *Providence*'s mission is to return to the States with a cargo to include arms and clothing for the Continental Army.

Captain Jones remains in Paris for a while and returns to the *Providence* during the middle of June, where he becomes somewhat surprised with his new responsibility, that of supervising the repairs. Jones, following about three weeks of overseeing the repairs, remains perplexed by the slow-paced workers and makes known his thought. He remarks: “Me thinks that if the almighty had been as long making Such a number of Frenchmen as they that are finishing out our mast, he might have had Business for ages to come.... May he who Superintend the Universe Deliver us from the hands of those infernal souls.” The *Providence* is sea ready by mid-July.

**June 7 1778-In naval activity-**The frigate *Boston*, pursuant to orders from the American

commissioners at Paris, departs Bordeaux on a cruise with a convoy escorted by a French frigate. The convoy includes a lugger and 40 merchant ships. The *Boston*, carrying a contingent of Frenchmen enlisted as Marines, remains at sea until 3 July.

**July 3 1778-In naval activity-**The *Boston*, a frigate commanded by Captain Samuel Tucker, returns to LORIENT, France, following a one month cruise, in which it had seized several enemy vessels as prizes. The frigate had anchored off the Isle de Groin on the 1st and moved to Port Louis, about four miles below LORIENT, late on the night of the 2nd. The crew's stay in port is uncomfortable due to a new crisis created by the French who had volunteered to serve as Marines. By 8 July, the Frenchmen cause a huge problem that brings about intervention by the French military and the American ministers.

**July 4 1778-**On the frontier, George Rogers Clark's American force completes its journey, which had begun during the spring. A strategic point to land on the banks of the Ohio River is spotted and shortly thereafter, the force moves to shore, conceals the boats and advances toward the British garrison (Fort Gage or Fort Kaskaskia) at Kaskaskia (Ohio County, Illinois), located at the convergence of the Mississippi and Kaskaskia Rivers. The town had been relinquished to the British by the French as a term of settlement during the peace treaty of 1763, and due to its location it is dependent upon Canada.

Clark's force from these Illinois shores marches overland and attempts to remain undiscovered as it treks through the woods. The troops arrive within striking distance by evening, but the attack is suspended until about midnight, when the British troops are at rest. And then without warning they bolt from their positions and overwhelm the garrison and seize the governor, Philip Rocheblave, while he sleeps. His wife, also asleep, is unharmed. During the incident, the governor's wife is able to destroy some of his documents; however, some are salvaged and they are especially valued. The contents describe British strategy and include information that exposes the British cooperation with and incitement of the Indians against the Americans.

The British post is taken without casualties to either side. Clark soon after appoints a guard to escort the governor and his papers back to Williamsburg, Virginia. Rocheblave is then paroled and afterward, he manages to escape and flee to British positions in New York. The inhabitants of Kaskaskia, mostly French, quickly accept the rule of Virginia.

Clark had been able to inform the Frenchmen that France had entered the war on the side of the Americans. Another trump card he held was that the French in Illinois had been told by the British that the Longknives, the Americans as dubbed by the Indians, acted as cannibals.

Fort Kaskaskia is renamed Fort Clark. The victory gives the Americans control of Kaskaskia, the capital of Illinois. Soon after, the Indians become anxious to make peace; Colonel Clark had waited patiently for them to come forward. Treaties are signed at Cahokia during the following September.

**July 8 1778-In naval activity-**Captain Samuel Tucker, aboard the frigate *Boston* in the harbor at LORIENT, France, is informed by Captain Palms of the Marines that eight of the French volunteers have defied orders by refusing to serve sentry duty. The action ignites a reaction by Palms, who proposes that their wages and prize money be forfeited. He urges Tucker to post only U.S. Marines as guards, with all other responsibilities being removed, but the contingent is composed only of three noncoms, a sergeant and two corporals bolstered by 12 privates.

In the meantime, Tucker permits the disgruntled Frenchmen to take liberty. Once ashore, the erroneous complaints build, as they claim to have been pressed into service and that they and other Frenchmen have been mistreated. Against vociferous protests from Tucker, a French general boards,

and after inquiring and receiving additional false information, he orders the remaining 24 French Marines and 23 French sailors to debark, gutting Tucker's crew. The French officer is shown proof of their voluntary service but it is ignored.

When the matter is brought to the American commissioners, they also refuse to acknowledge the validity of Tucker's information and let the entire matter fade away rather than antagonize the French government. Nevertheless, unlike John Paul Jones, Captain Tucker retains command and debarks with his skeleton crew on 1 August.

**July 14 1778-In naval activity-**Captain Willing and his force of Continental Marines remain in New Orleans. Willing had been refused authorization from the Spanish governor to move north through Spanish territory, and British forces and Loyalists prevent a return through Natchez. However, on this day, Governor de Galvez grants permission for Captain Willing and the Marines to depart through his territory. The route is determined to be too hazardous and the plan is canceled. During the following month, Lt. Robert George and Lieutenant Harrison receive permission to lead the Marines north after they pledge to leave the British settlers unharmed. The force departs and by the following June, the contingent completes the journey and joins with George Rogers Clark. After the departure of the contingent under Lt. Robert George, other Marines remain in New Orleans.

The vessel that brought the Marines to New Orleans, the *Rattletrap*, is condemned during August. The loss of the *Rattletrap* leaves only the armed vessel, the *Morris* (formerly the British sloop *Rebecca*), in the region. Oliver Pollock works tirelessly to get the ship refitted and out to sea in the Atlantic, but the vessel is not prepared to cruise until July of the following year. Nonetheless, prior to embarkation, a vicious hurricane sweeps through the area and decimates the *Morris*.

**July 18 1778-In naval activity-**American naval Captain Elisha Hinman and some other officers captured on 9 March aboard the *Alfred* are imprisoned at Forton Prison in Portsmouth. Within one week, Hinman manages to escape. Two Marine officers, seized at the same time, later escape and make it to France and from there back to America.

**September 25 1778-In naval activity:** Captain John Barry, at Boston since the latter part of June, had assumed command of the frigate *Raleigh* in place of Captain Thomas Thompson, but until a full crew had been secured, the *Raleigh* remained stranded in the harbor. By this time, Barry has a full complement of 235 officers and men. Of these, fifty British captives sign on to serve as American Marines.

On this day at 0600, the *Raleigh* sails from Boston harbor. By the noon hour, the frigate comes within sight of two British sail, but not potential prizes as the crew had expected. The vessels are warships; the HMS *Experiment* carries 50 guns and the other, the HMS *Unicorn*, holds 22 guns, and both initiate an encounter off the coast of Maine.

Commodore Barry, outmatched and outgunned, maneuvers his ship to a speed northward. Meanwhile, the British vessels give chase with the frigate *Experiment* in the lead. The pursuit continues throughout the day, but later, with no sight of the British, Captain Barry modifies his northern course and heads east-southeast and afterwards, to avoid Cape Sable, the southernmost point of Nova Scotia. The night passes without incident and at dawn (following day), the *Raleigh* again finds itself alone. Under the fair skies and favorable winds, she continues the cruise.

At about 0900, the lookouts spot two sails. And suddenly it becomes evident that the British had not been outrun. The *Experiment* and the *Unicorn* are back on the trail. Within about three hours, aided by a change in the winds, the *Raleigh's* lead had been cut and the *Unicorn*, after passing the *Experiment*, begins to close fast. At about 1700, the chase terminates and the battle unfolds.

The *Raleigh*, with all hands on stations, passes the *Unicorn* and hoists the colors while adjusting the sails. All the while, the *Unicorn* had been maneuvering for position and at about the same time, the British unfurl her colors. While the two flags are hoisted, the *Raleigh* initiates action and fires a broadside, which is followed immediately by one from the British. A second broadside is propelled from the *Unicorn*. It strikes effectively and rips away the fore top mast and mizzen top mast. Despite the severe damage and temporarily an out of control ship, the crew works relentlessly to clear the debris and simultaneously continue the contest. While the Americans remain in the fight and regain some control of their battered vessel, the sun begins to fade as the *Unicorn* darts to bring the tenacious confrontation to a close.

As the British prepare to nudge closer and rake the *Raleigh*, Captain Barry attempts to peel away, but the *Unicorn*, still fully operational, foils the move and drop astern of the *Raleigh*. The Americans, handicapped by the damages that had been inflicted, still refuse to capitulate, which extends the slug-fest well past dusk. Meanwhile, the HMS *Experiment* reaches a point from which she is about to plunge into the fight with her fifty guns. The arrival of the frigate severs any chances of an escape by the *Raleigh* due to the damaged rigging, broken masts and punctured sails.

Nonetheless, the *Raleigh*, facing even greater odds since the second broadside and on the brink of being captured or sunk, refuses to strike the colors. After a quick assessment of the grim situation by the officers, it is decided to make a break for the beach rather than surrender.

At about midnight (25th-26th), the *Unicorn* inadvertently provides the *Raleigh* with an opportunity. The British vessel, having itself sustained damage and four men killed and a large number wounded, breaks off to await the *Experiment*, which by this time is in close proximity. Shortly thereafter, the *Raleigh* becomes the intended recipient of a steady series of broadsides, and immediately the *Experiment* receives a hearty response from the running *Raleigh*, which returns fire just prior to running aground in the vicinity of the mouth of the Penobscot River.

The stranded ship comes under severe bombardment from both British vessels, and then, about fifteen minutes later, a sudden silence emerges as the British guns cease fire. However, no boats move against the *Raleigh* to take possession. The British, confident that the *Raleigh* is not able to escape their trap, hold back further action to await the rising sun, which will further ease their task of taking charge of the vessel. The Americans, however, show no inclination to surrender at dawn. As the cannon rest, Barry initiates the complicated task of debarking and reaching a nearby island (Wooden Ball Island). Without interruption by fire, yet imperiled by the sea during the darkness, Barry orders the ship's boats lowered. The crew abandons the ship and within about two hours, still before dawn, all are safely on the beach. Fifteen of the 235-man crew are missing and presumed killed during the fighting.

Once ashore, it is immediately determined that the island is indefensible. Plans are laid to jump to the mainland and destroy the *Raleigh* to keep it from falling into the hands of the Royal Navy. A contingent of about fifty men, including wounded, depart with Captain Barry and Captain Osborne, a Marine, in an attempt to reach the coast of Maine. A contingent is to return to evacuate the main body. Prior to his departure, Barry sends a boat back to the grounded frigate with orders to the detachment to set it afire before the British arrive at dawn. At first light on the 26th, while the detail instructed to burn the *Raleigh* is aboard, the British reinitiate bombardment of the stranded vessel. Nearly in cadence with the British barrages, Midshipman Jeacocks, in defiance of orders, strikes the colors and no fires are set aboard the ship. Shortly thereafter, the British dispatch a boat under a white flag to the island. The troops there who had not yet been evacuated are compelled to surrender

due to the cowardly action of Jeacocks. His treachery also permits an American frigate to be seized by the English. The *Raleigh* survives, and at high tide, it becomes a floating British prize that is later taken into British service. The troops who made it to the mainland had survived the fiercely fought nine-hour battle, and along with Captain Barry, they make their way to Boston.

**November 8 1778-In Connecticut:** The Continental Navy receives a new addition to its fleet. The 32-gun frigate *Confederacy*, constructed in Norwich, is launched on this day. The vessel is towed to New London to receive the finishing touches prior to sailing from the Thames to the open sea. However, the brigantine does not have a full crew. The usual tedious task of forming a crew begins, but competition from the much higher wages of privateers hinders recruiting. And of the present crew members, the Navy remains plagued with desertions, compelling the commanding officer, Captain Seth Harding, to frequently dispatch patrols to retrieve the deserters.

A captain of Marines is acquired when the position is given to Joseph Hardy, who was captain of Marines aboard the *Columbus* until it grounded the previous March. The vessel also gains a lieutenant of Marines. The position is given to the grandson of the agent (Major Joshua Huntington) who had overseen the construction of the *Confederacy*. Gurdon Bill receives a commission as first lieutenant. Another of Huntington's grandchildren, Gurdon's younger brother, Ephraim, later receives a commission of second lieutenant aboard the *Confederacy*.

Congress had also added to the fleet the frigate *Alliance*, and named a Frenchman, Pierre Landais, as its captain during the previous June, but neither vessel sails until the following year. Congress had also acquired the *Deane*, which had been built in France. Captain Samuel Nicholson commanded it on its voyage to the United States during the previous May. The fourth and final new addition to the fleet for this year is the *Queen of France*, an old, worn vessel also purchased in France. It arrived in Boston under the command of Captain John Green.

Both the *Deane* and the *Queen of France*, the latter commanded by Captain John Green, a Philadelphian, had delivered cargoes of clothing and other items for the Continental Army. None of the four vessels is able to depart Massachusetts until the following year.

Although four vessels are added, the Continental Navy has sustained heavy losses to the British. As winter settles over the northern part of the nation and the year comes to a close, the Continental Navy has four vessels not able to sail, and it has lost the vessels *Alfred* (ship), *Columbus* (ship), *Effingham* (frigate), *Raleigh* (frigate), *Randolph* (frigate), and the *Virginia* (frigate). In addition, the Marines' numbers had become dangerously depleted. At the end of this year, the only Continental vessels that still contain Marine detachments are the frigates *Boston*, *Deane*, *Providence*, *Trumbull* and *Warren* and the sloops *Providence* and *Ranger*.

**November 27 1779- In Philadelphia:** During a Friday session, Congress receives a large number of letters and other correspondence. They include a memorial from Abraham Whipple and some other naval commanders and a memorial from some officers of Marines, in addition to a copy of a memorial from twenty-seven naval officers. The memorials are referred to the Marine Committee. Other correspondence includes a letter from John Adams regarding the family of the late Lieutenant Barron. It, too, is referred to the Marine Committee.

**January 15 1779-In Philadelphia:** the Marine Committee delivers a report relating to the letters from the governors of Maryland and Virginia regarding the expedition to East Florida. It states that the condition of the Maryland galleys, including size and construction, is too poor to safely make the voyage, and in the event that the vessels reach their destination, it would require about three months to reduce the fortress at St. Augustine. To add to the reasons for suspending the operation, the report

indicates an acute shortage of sailors and Marines, with only fifteen sailors and eighteen Marines attached to the *Maryland*, and it states the impracticality of equipping the force in such time as to enable the troops to work in concert with the ground force. Subsequent to consideration, Congress resolves “that considering the danger and risque of a sea voyage at this season, the impracticability of manning in time, and the probable difficulty of supplying the *Maryland Gallies* with provisions during the blockade, the design of employing them be laid aside.”

**February 3 1779-In naval activity-**The *Alliance*, on a voyage from Boston to France, encounters a threat from within on this day when part of the crew, English and Irish, are about to ignite mutiny until their plan is discovered. Initial investigations, including a search of their belongings, find no immediate evidence; but later, following an investigation, the leaders are exposed. They include John Savage, master-at-arms and sergeant of Marines, William Murray, in collaboration with about 70 others. Part of the plan included the seizing of Lafayette and delivering him to England. Thirty-eight men are placed in irons and for the remainder of the voyage; they are accompanied by an armed Marine guard. The *Alliance*, which left Boston on 14 January, reaches Brest in northern France on 6 February.

**April 13 1779-In naval activity-**The *General Gates* concludes a cruise that began during the previous December when it arrives in Boston from the West Indies. While out at sea under Captain Daniel Waters, it had a friendly encounter with the brigantine *Hazard* of the Massachusetts Navy. Together, they seize a brigantine, but it carries neither arms, ammunition nor spirits; rather, its cargo is fish. After inspection, it is determined that the vessel is not seaworthy and repairs would be fruitless. The ship is sold. Its captain of Marines, Lieutenant Richard McClure, loses his command in the process.

The frigates *Providence* and *Boston* (Captain Samuel Tucker), along with the sloop *Providence* depart from Boston harbor. The captain of Marines assigned to the *Boston* is Seth Baxter. Also, Captain William Jones and lieutenants Zebediah Farnham and William Waterman, all Marines, are assigned to the frigate *Providence*. Their mission—to clear the coast of enemy vessels reported to have departed from New York to harass the coastal towns of Massachusetts—is to last for ten days. During the cruise, no enemy sail are discovered. Afterward, the frigate *Providence* returns to port, while the other two ships of the squadron sail south to the Delaware Capes to acquire a cargo of bread.

**April 29 1779-In naval activity-**While the *Boston* remains in port at Boston Harbor, Lieutenant William Jennison (Continental Marines) receives permission to join the privateer *Resolution* for a short cruise. Subsequently, the *Resolution* is seized by the HMS *Blonde* on 8 May. Williams is among the prisoners; however, on 17 May, Williams and seventeen others are taken ashore at Halifax and placed in a “gaol” known as the Stone Jug. They then encounter 23 crewmen from the schooner *Fly*. Jennison and others are later transferred to Georges Island and confined there.

**May 7 1779-In naval activity-**The sloop *Providence*, while operating off New York, spots the brigantine HMS *Diligent* sailing alone. The *Providence*, under Captain Hacker’s command, maneuvers to attack and shortly thereafter, on Sandy Hook, a brief but tenacious contest ensues. Broadside from the *Providence* and extremely effective fire from the Marine company inflict severe damage and casualties upon the British vessel and she is forced to capitulate. The British sustain 8 killed and 10 wounded prior to striking the colors. Aboard the *Providence*, two men are killed and 12 wounded. Two of the wounded, Marine Lieutenant John Chilton and James Rogers (sailing master), later succumb from their wounds.

The *Providence* moves back to port at New Bedford with the HMS *Diligent* and a recaptured sloop, but to ensure its crew does not end its service prematurely, the *Providence*, while in the bay, is ordered back to sea. Subsequent to Robert Davis (former officer, Continental Army) coming aboard as lieutenant of Marines in place of the late Lieutenant Chilton, the *Providence* and the captured *Diligent* sail to Nantucket to rendezvous with two vessels of the Massachusetts Navy. After embarking on a second short cruise, the *Providence* returns to Boston on 10 June with three recaptured vessels, two sloops and a French sloop.

Upon his return, Captain Hacker is offered command of the *Diligent*, but he chooses to retain command of the sloop *Providence*. The prize, HMS *Diligent*, is purchased by the Continental Navy for the astonishing price of 26,000 pounds. First Lieutenant Philip Brown of the *Providence* receives command of the *Diligent*.

The frigate *Boston*, which sailed to pick up cargo, afterward sailed to Philadelphia. From there, it and the frigate *Confederacy* move down the Delaware River to the Delaware Capes during the first week in June to protect merchant ships and escort them into ports on the Chesapeake and Delaware Bays. Toward the latter part of June, the frigates seize three prizes, including a British privateer, the *Pole*, which carries 16 guns. Lieutenant William Cooper, a Marine, commands the prize crew that sails back to Philadelphia while the *Confederacy* and *Boston* resume the cruise and later encounter the *Deane*, which sails from Philadelphia after a prolonged stay to join with the other two frigates.

**May 13 1779-In France:** John Adams, the American commissioner to France, upon invitation by Captain John Paul Jones, dines with Jones and other officers at the L'Epe Royale on the waterfront of LORIENT. Subsequent to dinner, John Adams reviews Jones' contingent of Marines, each described as being "dressed in the English Uniform, red and white." Adams is somewhat distressed upon seeing the uniforms. Nonetheless, Adams' opinion of Jones from the previous years apparently remains unchanged, his perception being that Jones is "impertinent and ambitious."

Despite the British uniforms worn by the enlisted men, the majority of the officers are wearing the green jackets as ordered by Congress. The officers however, are neither French or American; rather they are Irish, formerly of the Infanterie Irlandaise Regiment de Walsh-Serant. Captain Fitz-Maurice of the Irish Regiment recommends two of his officers, each anxious to side with the American cause against the British. Lieutenant Eugene Robert McCarthy and Lieutenant Edward Stack receive commissions in the Continental Navy, and toward the latter part of June, Lieutenant James Gerald O'Kelly transfers from the Irish Regiment to join with his fellow officers under John Paul Jones. All three commissions are authorized by Benjamin Franklin and John Hancock.

Jones becomes enthusiastic about his new lieutenants, after first being reluctant to accept non-Americans, but with regard to the captain of Marines, he holds fast, insisting upon an American. Alexander Dick is appointed, but unlike the Irishmen, he does not receive a commission. Subsequently, Dick resigns, after paying high tribute to Jones, but noting the lack of manners and poor behavior of "sea officers." Dick is later replaced by two French lieutenant colonels, Paul de Chamillard de Varville and Antoine-Felix Wuibert de Mezieres. Both Frenchmen serve with honor, but like Dick, they receive no commissions.

**July 18 In naval activity-**The American squadron under Captain Whipple suddenly finds itself sailing blindly when it is caught by a huge fog bank off Newfoundland. Caution becomes the immediate concern, to avoid a collision. While the three vessels—the frigate *Providence*, the ship *Queen of France* and the sloop *Ranger*—proceed prudently, the distinct sounds of ships' bells are

heard not too far distant. Whipple is acutely aware that the sounds are not originating from his squadron; however, later, as the fog begins to dissipate, the Americans suddenly discover they are amid a convoy of about sixty sail, under escort by several British warships.

Fortunately for the *Queen of France*, the British vessel near enough to exchange greetings takes no notice of the inadvertent intruder. A boat from the *Queen of France* is thought by those on the British transport to be a friendly frigate; they welcome the party aboard. In turn, the American boarding party, without incident or notice by the British warships, takes control of the vessel and continues in the convoy.

The ploy works so successfully that the Americans, masquerading as British crews aboard warships, continue the ruse for the remainder of the day, picking off selected vessels one by one without being discovered. By dusk, Whipple's squadron, having been increased in number to thirteen vessels without the assistance of a fog bank, terminates the operation and drifts silently away from the Jamaica fleet that continues, unaware that it had been relieved of ten of its vessels. Subsequently, eight of the ten prizes reach friendly ports and the other two are recaptured by the British. The combined value of the cargo, composed of coffee, cotton, rum and sugar, seized this day amounts to more than one million dollars. The seamen and Marines are handsomely compensated after the squadron arrives back at Boston on 2! August.

**July 25 1779-THE PENOBSCOT EXPEDITION** The American Expeditionary force in Penobscot Bay initiates its offensive action against the British at their newly established positions in the vicinity of Castine, Maine, on the Penobscot peninsula, just after dawn on the 25th, a quiet Sunday morning. Several hours later, the *Diligent* is ordered to take the point and scout the bay for the enemy fleet while focusing attention on the banks during the advance.

Shortly thereafter, Lieutenant Philip Brown, commanding the *Diligent*, spots several men along the banks waving to draw attention. Taking no chances, he sends an armed party to investigate; however, his apprehension had been unnecessary. The men are Patriots, and they flagged the vessel to inform the captain of the British positions. Brown receives positive intelligence and sends the party back to the *Warren* to deliver the information to Captain Saltonstall.

After being informed that the British had hardly made progress on their fort and that the force had been estimated by one of the three men to be at about 450–500 troops, Captain Saltonstall remains much less enthusiastic than Lieutenant Brown about an immediate attack. Although Brown proposes a quick strike to catch the British off guard.

Saltonstall chooses to wait and gather more intelligence. The precaution later proves to have been an extremely costly decision. Nonetheless, the reconnaissance parties begin to gather more intelligence prior to Saltonstall ordering the assault. By mid-afternoon, the fleet is off Castine with the Continental ships and the privateers that are shepherding the transports just to the rear of the protective umbrella. Meanwhile, the British fleet forms a protective gate across the harbor's entrance.

While the Americans had injected caution into the plan of attack, the intelligence gained becomes obsolete, as the British reinforce their defenses and modify the line by greatly extending the height of the walls, then building platforms from which to fire upon any approaching columns. All the while, as the attack remains stalled, the British continue to improvise to strengthen their lines. Cannon are removed from the starboard side of the warships in the harbor, creating no disadvantage and leaving no outward signs of their absence from the ports. The ships are also stripped of men to increase the number of defenders in the fortification.

Although Saltonstall's plan is to launch the primary assault in three days on the 28th, he begins the preliminaries on this day at dusk. The *Charming Sally*, *Hazard* and *Tyranicide* provide support to a landing party; however, due to a sudden change in the winds, the boats are recalled and the attack is aborted.

On the following day, the 26th, the British protective line in the harbor exchanges volleys sporadically with Saltonstall's fleet, but by sunset, none of the expended ammunition inflicts any serious damage. After tiring of the sea skirmish, the British warships weigh anchor and retire, but only a short distance to a point where they permit some access to the harbor, then redraw their protective line closer to the transports. After the jousting subsides, Saltonstall convenes a war council and it is decided to occupy an island at the entrance to the harbor. The citizens of Belfast in the high ground on the eastern side of the harbor are able to observe the fighting.

At about 1800, under cover of the sloop *Providence* and the privateers *Pallas* and *Defence*, Marines land on the island. One contingent has about thirty from the sloop *Providence* and about an equal number is from the *Defence*, but the precise number that participates is unknown. They land without incident. The 20-man British detachment departs upon the arrival of the Marines, but their four artillery pieces are not withdrawn. Once ashore, the Marines toil through the remainder of the night to establish positions to deploy three heavier artillery pieces, (two 18-pounders and one 12-pounder). Early on the 27th, the Marines proclaim their presence on Banks Island when they commence firing. Subsequently, a British round strikes the Marines' positions and inflicts two fatalities. Three other Marines are wounded. Later in the morning, while Major Daniel Littlefield (York County, Massachusetts Militia) and two other men are rowing to shore, they are hit by a British shell, which kills all three.

Meanwhile, operations continue on the island, and on occasion, the Marines reinitiate firing, primarily to distract the British. The British make no immediate move to dislodge the new inhabitants, but the Marine artillery compels the British ships in the harbor to again pull back and draw another defensive line out of range of the cannon. Later, the main body returns to the ships, while a contingent remains ashore to retain control of the island.

Back with the American fleet, the final agreed upon strategy by the commanders for the attack remains unresolved. At the meetings there is no lack of confidence about the ability to destroy the British, but the way to accomplish the mission brings about dissension and a major clash on how to execute the assault. Captain Saltonstall vehemently opposes a direct attack against the three warships in the harbor due to the British artillery at the fort, which he believes could decimate the fleet. However, the army commanders, General Peleg Wadsworth and General Solomon Lovell, express an equally determined position that the land forces, including the Marines, could more easily reduce the defenses, once the ships are liquidated by the Navy.

All the while, the British continue to fortify their positions and draw their lines tighter to galvanize their defense. In the meantime, while the superior officers of the Army and Navy argue strategy, Saltonstall finds himself with additional problems: officers on the privateers have become disgruntled. They have grown weary from lingering in the bay and crave action. Thirty-two officers from eleven ships sign a petition requesting that Captain Saltonstall take immediate action and attack the ships in the harbor.

Captain Saltonstall convenes another war council and the final plan is agreed upon. Saltonstall prevails. The landing will proceed prior to the advance of the fleet. Saltonstall sets the time of the attack at midnight, with the army and militia numbering slightly more than 850 men in support of

the Continental Marines and Massachusetts state Marines. In addition to support from the naval guns, the landing force will be bolstered by eighty cannoneers attached to Lt. Colonel Paul Revere's artillery unit.

As the day progresses, the final preparations for the assault against Fort George continue. Although in theory the plan had been perfected, the practical application quickly begins to run behind schedule. The force, separated into three divisions, experiences difficulties while boarding the boats. Many of those boarding first find themselves crammed into the overcrowded flat-bottoms with no place to rest. All aboard the boats find themselves still standing hours later, while the boats continue to bob in the bay. When midnight (27th-28th) arrives, the exhausting operation still is not completed. Finally at 0300, with an over-exhausted landing force, the fleet is formed for the assault under the darkness of the night, slightly beyond the range of the British muskets ashore.

At about 0500 on the 28th, the boats close upon the shore. Shortly thereafter, in concert with the emerging light of dawn, the Americans bolt from the boats under heavy fire from the British. The incessant streams of musket fire hinder the troops on the beach and prevent the landing force from quickly regrouping. Following some chaos on the beach, the troops find cover from the enfilade and prepare to initiate the steep ascent to the top of the cliff and reach the plateau. Afterward, the Marines are in position on the right and receiving the brunt of the enemy fire, while the third division under (Cumberland County regiment of militia) Colonel Jonathan Mitchell holds the left. Meanwhile, the British maintain their fire, causing more havoc. The troops climbing the slope are unable to return fire until atop the cliff. The British, however, are not able to prevent the Americans from reaching the plateau.

On the left, the British 82nd Regiment, an untried unit, is more easily pushed back, but the rear guard on the right, composed of about twenty men, initially gets driven back by the Marines' surge; however, with strong encouragement by their leader, Lieutenant John Moore, the force rebounds and meets the Marines' attack from close range. Their return fire again becomes fierce. The Marines, however, maintain their momentum and pound their opposition as they work to encircle the British. By this time, the British positions at the battery become untenable. Moore orders a withdrawal.

The Marines' commanding officer, Captain John Welsh, had been killed during the fighting. The British had inflicted 32 casualties, either killed or captured. Of these, eight Continental Marine privates had been killed. In addition, Marine Lieutenant William Hamilton had been gravely wounded while still at the bottom of the precipice.

Nevertheless, the ground forces have succeeded in conquering the nearly insurmountable cliff, driving the British to the brink of surrender, and positioning themselves for the final thrust to victory once the fleet eliminates the potent British naval fire still threatening them from the sea.

Out in the bay, the fleet makes no move to eliminate the British warships. Faced with the fierce resistance from the British ground troops and aware of the threat from the British Navy, the American commanders are reluctant to attempt a major thrust to reduce the fort.

British General McLean, convinced the attack is imminent, prepares to strike the colors, but the Americans fail to take the offensive. Instead, the troops are directed to establish defensive positions. By this time, orders are issued to bring the cannon ashore. The 2nd Division, composed of Colonel Samuel McCobb's Massachusetts militia and Paul Revere's artillery, had not participated in the attack. It formed the reserve.

In the meantime, the British make use of the suspension of the attack by reorganizing their defenses

at Fort George, while their fleet awaits the naval attack that had not yet commenced. Soon after, during the latter part of the afternoon, Captain Saltonstall finally orders the attack to commence. The *Warren* and three brigantines move to the harbor's entrance to take out the naval protection, but after the two sides begin to exchange blows, the *Warren* sustains four damaging hits, two of which strike her mainmast. The long awaited confrontation terminates within about one-half hour, when the *Warren*, trailed by the brigantines, retires to positions outside the harbor. This indecisiveness, followed by Saltonstall's absence of boldness under fire, leaves the ground forces in a precarious position.

Following Captain Saltonstall's failure to capitalize on the success of the ground troops, a lull in the battle develops. The British warships hold their defensive line, but make no attempt to move out of the harbor. In turn, the American fleet refuses to reenter the harbor.

In the meantime, the American ground forces continue the siege, but no major skirmishes occur. Inactivity becomes yet another problem for the commanders on the ground. The troops, many of whom are totally unaccustomed to prolonged periods of boredom in military life and equally unfamiliar with the restrictions of military discipline, soon see their enthusiasm vanish.

All the while, Captain Saltonstall remains hesitant to make a daring move to terminate the stalemate. On the 29th of July, a war council is convened, but no decision to initiate a naval attack is agreed upon; however, it is decided to construct a fort within the perimeter held by the Army and Marines atop the plateau. The task is delegated to Captains Salter and Thomas of the *Hampden* and *Vengeance*, respectively. Detachments of eight men and one officer from each of the vessels are drawn to undertake the project.

And still, by 5 August, no orders have been given to initiate an assault. Each passing day adds to the dangers of inaction and the greater possibility of British reinforcements arriving before the fort falls. Saltonstall's reticence is nudged by General Lovell on the 5th, when he pens a letter of inquiry about when or if the fleet would reenter the harbor to engage and destroy the warships there. Lovell has also been forwarding the progress or lack thereof (of the expedition) back to Boston, giving the government there the only information regarding the situation at British-held Fort George. No reports had been dispatched to Boston by Saltonstall since his arrival in the bay.

In the meantime, the situation offshore remains unchanged. Saltonstall holds the fleet outside the harbor, with scout vessels outside the bay, maintaining a vigil for approaching enemy vessels. The Americans maintain the siege, but despite frequent conferences, no concrete agreement comes about between the Army and Navy. On 6 August, nine days after landing, General Lovell awaits an answer to his letter of the previous day to Captain Saltonstall. Rather than responding directly to Lovell, Saltonstall, essentially stalls and convenes a war council. Subsequent to the council, Lovell is informed that the land forces would have to first reduce the fort, to remove the threat of artillery from destroying the fleet.

The response is received with tremendous bitterness. The army commanders, after a war council, conclude that to advance under the Navy's plan would lead to disaster. Consequently, a three-way stalemate emerges. Meanwhile, the British continue to prepare for the attacks by land and sea that inexplicably, from the British vantage point, do not materialize.

On 13 August, movement by the American fleet finally occurs; however, it is not initiated by Captain Saltonstall. The *Active* and the *Diligent*, on patrol and operating in a thick fog on this Friday morning, sail with poor visibility. Nothing unusual appears in their paths. Similarly to the previous days on patrol since the siege began, all is quiet outside the bay. Suddenly, as the lingering fog lifts,

the Americans spot an advancing British fleet led by a 64-gun vessel. The tables turn and the near-inevitable victory begins to fade away. The entire expeditionary force becomes imperiled.

While the Americans had debated how to attack, the British at New York, informed of the American threat against Fort George on 28 July, had immediately taken steps to reinforce Brigadier General McLean. Admiral George Collier begins to close against Saltonstall's fleet, now caught between the approaching squadron and the protective line in the harbor.

In the meantime, the British squadron—the 64-gun *Raisonable*, the frigates *Blonde* and *Virginia*, each carrying 32 guns, the *Greyhound* with 28 guns, the *Camilla* and *Galatea*, both armed with 28 guns, and the *Otter*, a 14-gun sloop—prepare for action. Collier's force carries 1,530 men, all experienced. Once the enemy is spotted, the *Active* lingers while the *Diligent* speeds to sound the alarm. Usually, when a staggering fog lifts, seamen also see their spirits rise, but once Saltonstall learns of the looming threat, the Americans' confidence begins to plummet despite holding a superior force on both land and sea. With the appearance of the British squadron, the siege terminates and the hunters ashore are positioned to become the prey. Fair skies and favorable winds bring about high spirits aboard the British ships, while the elements bring about a nightmare scenario for Captain Saltonstall and the expeditionary force.

After receiving word of the approaching British fleet, decisive action is taken, but not to attack. All artillery ashore is ordered back to the fleet and the ground forces are recalled, leaving Fort George unmolested. During the withdrawal operation, a squall strikes the area, buying extra time for the American retreat. Later, the fog bank that had dissipated earlier this day is replaced by another, affording the Americans yet more time to get back aboard the ships. Darkness arrives before any action is initiated by either side in the bay. Captain Saltonstall, during the night, prepares his fleet for a fighting retreat.

At dawn on Saturday, the 14th, Saltonstall's strategy receives little opportunity to succeed. Although the fog has again vanished, the winds impede the fleet's ability to galvanize its battle line and break through the closing British force. Collier's squadron continues to advance, and as they close for battle, the American fleet collapses. Many of the armed vessels shoot upstream to evade the British and find hiding places in the inlets, where it is natural to head in advance of a storm. The transports, left to defend themselves, follow suit, but Collier orders pursuit. The American fleet is decimated. By dusk, nearly the entire fleet is either self-destroyed or seized by the British.

Relentlessly, the British continue to search throughout the night for those remaining ships that had eluded destruction. As they sweep the inlets, the American crews destroy their respective ships once the British encroach their positions. By the following day, the morning of the 16th, the militia, seamen and Marines have only one mode of transportation left, a long rugged march through the Maine wilderness to reach Boston. Meanwhile, the banks of the Penobscot River are dotted with burning debris as the ships are reduced to ashes. Following the debacle, the ground forces begin to filter back into Boston during early September.

The loss of the fleet is another serious blow to the American cause, but for the state of Massachusetts, it is a colossal calamity. Investigations begin to fix blame on the leaders responsible. Courts-martial essentially acquit the army officers, General Solomon Lovell and Peleg Wadsworth, of all charges and place no blame upon either for the failure of the mission. However, the case of Captain Dudley Saltonstall, an officer of the Continental Navy, is handled by a separate board, composed of Navy Board members. Saltonstall is convicted and found unfit for command in the Continental Navy. Another of the American officers, Lt. Colonel Paul Revere, is acquitted of all

charges.

The British naval commander, Admiral Collier, following the victory, returns to New York and transfers his command to Admiral Arbuthnot, who had recently arrived from England. The British retain Castine until 1783. When they depart, it is of their own accord. The British garrison at the supply depot (Fort George) sustains the loss of 13 men. The exact figure for American casualties is unknown, but the estimate ranges from more than 100 to about 400. During the haphazard retreat, General Wadsworth had ordered troops to establish defenses at Belfast, but due to the utter confusion, his orders were ignored. Meanwhile, the town was abandoned.

**August 6 1779**-The Marine Committee orders that a company of Marines be raised to guard British prisoners aboard prison ships. The number of British captives has overwhelmed the prison capacity and Congress had earlier directed that prison ships be provided to alleviate the problem. Two days later, the Navy Board (Middle District) instructs Captain Samuel Nicholas “to have a Company of Marines raised at this place (Philadelphia) to consist of fifty Men including non commissioned Officers, to be inlisted during the war on the usual Terms and this to be done as expeditiously as possible.”

By the end of the month, 28 Marines are enlisted, followed by 24 others, all recruited by Captain Mullan from his headquarters near the wharves at Front and Pine Streets (present-day center city, Philadelphia). Nevertheless, by about the middle of October, 28 men desert the corps. The desertions, compounded by the loss of troops to sickness and death, leave Mullan with a final count of fifteen Marines. Subsequently, on 12 November, Congress authorizes the Marine Committee to abandon the idea and release the vessel that had been selected to be the prison ship. Following this action by Congress, the remaining fifteen Marines are paid for their service. Captains Nicholas and Mullan retire from the Marine Corps. Nicholas had not had a command since his return from Morristown after serving with the Continental Army.

**August 14 1779-In naval activity**-Captain John Paul Jones departs France on the *Bonhomme Richard* with his free-spirited crew in search of the British. Jones’ crew, according to his recorded figures, includes 380 officers, men and boys, among them 137 Marine soldiers, 36 landsmen and 32 boys. The *Bonhomme Richard* is accompanied by the four French vessels. The *Alliance* is captained by Pierre Landais, who had earlier rammed the *Bonhomme Richard*. Landais is in the service of the United States and holds a commission in the Continental Navy.

Despite the absence of American naval captains aboard the ships in his squadron, Jones sails toward England, accompanied also by the *Le Cerf* (Ensign Joseph Varage), *Vengeance* (Lieutenant Philippe-Nicholas Ricot), *Pallas* (Captain Denis-Nicholas Cottineau de Kerloguen) and two additional privateers, the *Monsieur* and the *La Granville*, which had recently been added to Jones’ force. However, the *Granville* apparently decides to separate after a short while.

**August 18 1779-In Louisiana**-An extremely powerful hurricane strikes and literally wipes out a large part of the region. At New Orleans, the vessel *Morris*, formerly the British sloop *Rebecca*, is destroyed. Most of the Spanish vessels, including warships, are also destroyed. The storm is ill-timed for the Spanish, who by this time have declared war against England. Prior to the storm, the Spanish had been planning to strike British-held Baton Rouge. The winds are so overwhelming that crops are ripped out, buildings collapse and some of the vessels are afterward found far from the harbor in the woods. One of the Spanish vessels, the *El Volante*, survives the storm.

Many of the Continental Marines who arrived with Captain Willing during the previous year had

already departed New Orleans, many to join George Rogers Clark and others through desertion, but some still remain. Subsequent to the loss of the *Morris*, Captain Robert Elliot, a survivor of the hurricane, departs the city and journeys to Kaskaskia and afterward returns to Philadelphia. Lieutenant Daniel Longstreet remains behind and assumes control of the detachment that otherwise would have sailed on the *Morris*.

**August 23 1779-In naval activity-**While off Ireland, John Paul Jones' squadron, operating in the vicinity of Great Skellig Island, located at the southern entrance to Dingle Bay, spots the British brigantine *Fortune* at about 600. Soon after, two boats from the *Bonhomme Richard* board the vessel and seize it and find that it is carrying a cargo of fish oil. A prize crew sails it to France.

Afterward, the *Bonhomme Richard* gets snagged by a drastic change in the winds. The vessel gets sucked toward the Irish coast by the currents, endangering the ship. Jones orders a boat lowered to extricate the ship by towing it out of harm's way. However, the party in the boat, a group of the Irish crewmen, decide to return home. The boat heads for shore. Another boat is dispatched to catch the deserters, but it vanishes when a quick rolling fog permeates the area.

In an attempt to locate the second boat, manned by Marines, and nab the deserters, the *Le Cerf* is sent to retrieve both, but she, too, is overcome by the fog. Neither of the boats is found, but to complicate the situation, the *Le Cerf* loses all contact with the squadron. Subsequently, the *Le Cerf*, sailing alone, encounters a British warship, but she is able to evade capture and make it back to France during the early part of the following month. Meanwhile, the diminishing squadron encounters new difficulties on 26 August.

**September 10 1779-In Louisiana-**A large force commanded by Spanish governor Bernardo de Galvez had departed New Orleans during the latter part of August to seize British positions at Manchac along Lake Pontchartrain. In addition to the Spanish troops, de Galvez has some Indians with him and a contingent of Americans, but in anticipation of facing English naval vessels, he had transferred the *El Volante*, the only Spanish vessel to survive the hurricane of the previous month, to Oliver Pollock (American agent) for use by the Americans. The hurricane had also destroyed the *Morris*, the only American ship in the region. Its crew and Marine detachment on this day encounter and engage an armed British sloop, the *West Florida*, on the lake. Captain Pickles, following a heavily contested sea battle, vanquishes the British in less than one-half hour. The British crew of 30, commanded by Captain James Payne, capitulates. Meanwhile, de Galvez continues his advance.

**September 11 1779-In naval activity-**A cartel ship from Boston arrives at Georges Island with 340 prisoners. Lieutenant William Jennison (Continental Marines), having been captured during spring of 1779, is among those to be exchanged. The American prisoners are ordered to board the cartel at 1800, but it does not depart until the 17th. After arriving back at Boston, Lt. Jennison returns to the *Boston* on 29 September.

**September 21 1779-In Louisiana-**The British sustain losses in Louisiana, known at this time as Western Florida. The Spanish seize Manchac on Lake Pontchartrain. Other British posts that fall to the Spanish include Baton Rouge. The British also relinquish Natchez (Mississippi) and several other British outposts scattered along the Mississippi River.

In related activity, the Americans under Naval Captain Pickles, aboard the recently captured British sloop *West Florida* operating on Lake Pontchartrain, arrives at an area that contains British settlements. A contingent of Marines under Lieutenant Daniel Longstreet lands and seizes them. A detachment remains to guard against Indian attacks or other intruders, but Captain Pickles sails back

to New Orleans. The seizure becomes a foundation of the American claims on West Florida and its intent to guarantee open shipping along the Mississippi River.

**September 23 1779-BATTLE BETWEEN THE *BONHOMME RICHARD* AND THE HMS *SERAPIS***-At dawn, Captain John Paul Jones leads his four-ship squadron and two captured pilot boats on the remainder of the voyage to Flamborough Head, where it is thought that the squadron would discover British targets. About mid-afternoon, lookouts spot a sail. Captain Jones, believing it to be the vessel he forced to beach the day before, sends one of the pilot boats and a Marine detachment to seize it. But, shortly thereafter, the targeted brigantine receives a reprieve. A more lucrative target comes into view. A convoy of 41 sail is spotted.

Jones moves quickly. The signal to initiate pursuit is hoisted. Meanwhile, when the squadron is detected by the British merchant ships, all head toward shore, leaving the escorts to handle the intrusion. The defenders' two warships, the *Serapis*, a new frigate thought to carry 44 guns but armed with 50, and the *Countess of Scarborough*, a 20 gun sloop of war, maneuver to engage the Americans. As both sides decide how to gain the advantage, the British display no outward signs of wavering against their foe, which is twice their size.

At about dusk, Captain Jones makes the first move. He directs the squadron to assemble in battle formation, but his order is ignored by the three French captains. The *Alliance*, at the point, veers off, while the *Vengeance*, holding in the rear, sails aimlessly, unwilling to engage either of the enemy warships. In the meantime, the *Bonhomme Richard* finds itself facing the *Serapis* and its fifty guns, without the support of the *Alliance*. However, the *Pallas* does move to engage the *Countess of Scarborough*.

Back on the *Bonhomme Richard*, while its 40 guns (six 18-pounders, twenty-eight 12-pounders and six 9-pounders) are ready for battle, the remainder of the crewmen, including the Marines, are rushing to reach their respective battle stations. Lieutenant Colonel Wuibert, a Frenchman, stands on the quarterdeck with John Paul Jones. Lt. Colonel Paul Chamillard (also a Frenchman), Lieutenant James O'Kelly and twenty Marines hold positions on the poop, a raised deck on the stern of the ship. Other Marines under Naval Lieutenant Richard Dale protect the gun deck and the ship's main battery, while yet others hold the magazine.

On the main top, the defenders include Marine Lt. Edward Stack, along with 15 of his Marines and four sailors. Jones' defenders on the foretop include one midshipman, three seamen and 10 Marines. Still other defenders hold positions on the mizzen top. It holds one midshipman, two seamen and six Marines. Jones' orders to the Marines and seamen in the masts, prior to the battle are clear and unambiguous. Eliminate the British "tops," and once cleared, commence firing on the enemy's decks.

By this time, although the sun has slipped into slumber for the night, both ships become quite visible to each other as the brilliance of the moon, as it rises, streams its illumination upon the opposing ships and adds an unnoticed sparkle to the sea, which is as smooth as silk and absent the slightest of ripples until suddenly, both ships are side by side.

Captain Pearson, aboard the *Serapis*, hails the still unidentified *Bonhomme Richard*: "What ship is that?" Pearson receives an immediate response, but not exactly what he had anticipated. The answer comes back in the form of a taunt: "Come a little nearer and I will tell you." Pearson, ignoring the reply, then makes a further inquiry about the cargo being carried. A response is spoken: "Round, grape and double-headed shot," and at the same time the cannon roar. Both ships simultaneously fire broadsides and neither intends to give quarter.

Seconds later, the tranquil sea begins to shake as the two vessels open their guns in a symphony of deadly cannon shot at extremely close range. The tremendous exchange of fire shifts the vessels, as if raising them out of the water. While the opposing volleys continue incessantly, the Marines and seamen in the rigging, masts and decks aboard the *Bonhomme Richard* focus their fire on the British scattered about the masts on the *Serapis*.

During the first crucial moments of the sea battle, Captain Jones loses one-half of his 18-pounders when three of them explode and kill the gunners at each of the positions. Soon after, the *Serapis* moves swiftly to gain a position across the bow or stern from which to rake the *Bonhomme Richard*, and it does gain some advantage due to the inability of Jones' flagship to maneuver easily, but the *Bonhomme Richard*, despite the temporary disadvantage, is able to elude most of the shelling and remain in the fight.

At about this time, Jones completely changes his strategy. Rather than continue to exchange broadsides, which eventually would lead to the demise of his ship, Jones takes a more direct path to what he perceives to be the route to victory. He orders the sails dropped, and the *Bonhomme Richard* slams into the starboard quarter of the *Serapis*. Once the ramming occurs, an attempt to board the British ship is launched, but repelled.

The *Bonhomme Richard* maneuvers to break off and the *Serapis* again moves to cross the bow of the *Bonhomme Richard* to rake her, and she again fails to inflict serious harm. Then suddenly, the two ships become nearly clipped together when the bowsprit of the *Serapis* tumbles to lean upon the *Bonhomme Richard*. Due to the positioning of the tangled vessels, the winds push the stern of the *Serapis* against the *Bonhomme Richard* to essentially lock them together and add even more ferocity to the fighting. The winds neutralize the British guns by pressing them against the side of Jones' vessel. In turn, the *Bonhomme Richard*'s cannon are jammed tightly against the *Serapis*, leaving the struggle for conquest to the close-quartered combat of the opposing crews.

Despite the unexpected predicament, Captain Pearson remains confident of vanquishing Jones, just after he extricates his ship and reactivates his guns. He is equally confident that the Americans will be unable to board because of his two covered gun decks. Pearson orders his crew to sever the grappling hooks, however, they are covered by Marine sharpshooters. As the British sailors move to cut the hooks, Marine fire takes them out. What initially appears to be a momentary detail turns into a major crisis.

Back on the *Bonhomme Richard*, similar problems have emerged. Jones' 18-pounders had blown up and his 12-pounders are inoperable as they hug those of the *Serapis*. Another problem had developed when French Lt. Colonel de Chamillard abandoned his post soon after the battle erupted. Jones does have two 6-pounders on the quarterdeck, but his main offense is the Marines and seamen. They have continued to fire their muskets throughout the entire contest, eliminating the defenders on the British tops, one by one. Subsequently their fire is, as ordered, directed against the decks and their accuracy delivers devastating results.

While Jones is focusing on vanquishing the more powerful copper-bottomed frigate, and the *Pallas* is engaging the *Countess of Scarborough*, the *Alliance*, which had intentionally drifted away to leave Jones on his own, moves forward, as if to join the battle. By this time, the *Bonhomme Richard* is under severe stress and the old, shabby vessel is near the point of its demise from the violent beating it is sustaining. It is actually the *Serapis* that is keeping the defiant *Richard* afloat while they are tightly locked together. The Americans aboard the battered vessel press harder to prevent defeat and the Marines' fire forestalls what seems to be inevitable.

Soon after, as the tide of battle seems to be shifting to Jones' crew, the *Alliance* moves in fast to the boisterous cheers of the Americans, who begin to pick up the scent of victory.

The Americans begin to raise another cheer just as the *Alliance* closes to point-blank range, but when Landais' guns commence firing, they unload a nasty broadside into the *Bonhomme Richard*, to the amazement and dismay of the Americans. After the horrendous bombardment, the *Alliance* pulls back, leaving the *Bonhomme Richard* to her fate and the word surrender is mentioned among the crew.

Meanwhile, the British captain becomes convinced that the burning *Bonhomme Richard* had reached the point of capitulation. Captain Pearson yells to Jones instructing him to surrender, but an unflappable Jones responds with his immortal inspiring words: "I have not yet begun to fight."

As the bloody battle rages, the situation worsens further for the battered *Richard*. The *Alliance* had again moved into the battle to remove all doubt as to whether her deadly broadside was accidental. She cruises alongside the dying *Bonhomme Richard* and releases another tremendous broadside that staggers the skeleton ship and murders more of the diminishing crew. At about the same time, secured British prisoners break from their captivity, but Jones quickly and quite effectively subdues them with his quick thinking.

Meanwhile, he simultaneously continues to battle the English, entertaining no thoughts of capitulation under any circumstances. Amazingly, the *Bonhomme Richard* is still afloat, and her Patriots are fighting more feverishly than ever to grasp victory from the British lion of the sea, when the unexpected happens.

By about 2200, the *Bonhomme Richard* is about to collapse, having been pounded by the *Serapis* for nearly four hours, followed by the broadsides from French Captain Landais' *Alliance*, the latter having inflicted hits below the water line. Some aboard propose striking the colors. Jones, however is more persuaded by his Marines and seamen in the masts, who continue to maul the British.

One Marine, Lt. William Hamilton, already precariously positioned, crawls out the yardarm, which at this time extends over the *Serapis* directly atop one of its open hatches. Hamilton, who had dragged a supply of hand grenades and a live match with him, escapes harm from the British musket fire and successfully plunks a grenade straight through the open hatch. The solitary grenade ignites powder cartridges and the explosion kills about twenty crewmen. At nearly the same time, the *Serapis*' main mast begins to shake terribly as a direct result of the explosion.

The guns of the *Serapis* remain squashed against the *Bonhomme Richard*, unable to pull victory from defeat. Hamilton's grenade concludes the fierce contest. Captain Pearson, stunned and demoralized, who only moments before had assured himself of victory, reluctantly and in complete disbelief of what has happened to his ship, yells "surrender" through the roaring fire and smoke. Pearson personally strikes the British ensign, giving a hard fought victory to the unwavering John Paul Jones off the eastern coast of England.

Jones directs Naval Lieutenant Dale, to board the *Serapis*. After taking possession of the ship, Captain Pearson is brought aboard the decimated but victorious *Bonhomme Richard*. Captain John Paul Jones accepts Pearson's sword and afterward, they move to Jones' ruined cabin to share some wine from a bottle that survived the horrific conflagration.

The *Bonhomme Richard*, however, holds its final meeting between Jones and Pearson. The British frigate, like the *Bonhomme Richard*, emerges from the battle in deplorable condition. Nonetheless, the *Serapis* remains operable, despite the endless damage and debris. The *Bonhomme Richard*, flooded in the hold by no less than about five feet of water, has lost its rudder as well as its rigging,

and its sails have been shredded. The devastation leaves little aboard unscathed. Nevertheless, work parties continue to attempt to save her, but in vain. The *Bonhomme Richard* sinks on the 26th.

While the *Serapis* and the *Bonhomme Richard* continued their deadly confrontation, the *Pallas* had been able to exchange blows with the *Countess of Scarborough* for just under one-half hour, but at that time, the French captain disengages, leaving the *Countess of Scarborough* to aid the *Serapis*. The vessel moves to assist, but the crew is unable to distinguish between the two ships that had become locked together. In the meantime, the *Pallas* reinitiates action with the *Countess* and compels her commander, Captain Piercy, to strike the colors.

The casualties aboard the *Bonhomme Richard*, according to an estimate of Captain John Paul Jones, amounts to about 150, including killed and wounded, from his crew of about 300 seamen and Marines. The force under British Captain Pearson, estimated at 400, sustains about 100 killed, with the remainder, including wounded being captured. Both Captain Pearson of the *Serapis* and Captain Piercy of the *Countess of Scarborough* are among the captured British troops.

Following the victory, a massive repair effort gets underway to make the *Serapis* seaworthy as quickly as possible before a British fleet can discover the location of the squadron. By the 30th, the squadron, now composed of five vessels, receives the orders from Jones to set sail on an eastward course toward France, but yet again, the French instigate trouble.

Jones intends to sail across the North Sea and anchor at Dunkirk in northern France to deliver his prizes to a port with French jurisdiction. The French captains immediately insist upon maintaining the original orders issued to the squadron to seek port at Texel in the Netherlands. The squadron, now composed of the *Serapis*, *Alliance*, *Countess of Scarborough*, *Pallas* and the *Vengeance*, arrives at the Texel on 3 October. The *Serapis*, Jones' flagship for the journey, carries about 500 British prisoners, but Jones, upon taking possession of the vessel, had inherited some unwelcome guests. The ship's hold, where the captives are held, is inundated with rats.

Captain John Paul Jones eventually arrives at Groiz on Roads on 10 February 1780. While in France, he loses his command. Jones is further humiliated when Pierre Landais sails the *Alliance* to America while Jones is stranded in France without any command. Later, after a delayed stay in France, Jones finally gets a ship, the *Ariel*, with which he sails to the United States during September of the following year to claim the warship *America*, the new double-decker promised to him, but yet again, another promise by Congress to Jones does not materialize.

Upon its completion, the *America* is given to the French by a vote of the Continental Congress. This decision by Congress is just one more action among many that have so often through the conflict perplexed the leaders in both the Continental Army and Navy.

John Paul Jones, an astute leader and brilliant tactician, remains without a squadron command, while Congress celebrates giving the French a warship that is desperately needed by its nearly extinct Continental Navy. Consequently, the man who gave his all to the service of his country is broken by his countrymen. John Paul Jones subsequently decides to go to Russia to join the Russian Navy and assist Catherine the Great, but after his arrival there, it doesn't take too long for him to dislike the Russians and their tactics. He departs Russia for France, where he later dies in obscurity.

John Paul Jones, the father of the United States Navy, is buried penniless in France. His body remains there until the year 1905, when a vigorous search, at the request of President Theodore Roosevelt, for the location of his remains ends successfully. The remains of John Paul Jones are extricated and returned to the United States. He now rests at the United States Naval Academy in Annapolis, Maryland, and he is no longer alone. A reverent watch is maintained 24 hours a day at

his tomb. French Captain Pierre Landais sails the *Alliance* to America during the following year and goes insane during the voyage.

**October 14 1779-In naval activity-**While Captain John Paul Jones remains in port at Texel (Netherlands) awaiting completion of repairs so he can return to France, British captives who had signed on as crew members, only to escape their dismal captivity in the hold of the captured *Serapis*, unfold their plan to escape on this day. At about 1400, while the officers and crewmen are dining, a group of 26 men, former prisoners, make their move to reach shore in a boat. The escape is soon detected by a Marine sentry, who fires at the boat and sounds the alarm. Shortly thereafter, other Marines board a boat and pursue the deserters. The British, aware of the closing detachment, abandon their boat prior to reaching shore, turning the escape into a major tragedy. Armed only with knives, the British escapees attempt to resist, but following a volley, some surrender. Of the 26 men who attempted to escape, four succeed. The others either drowned or are captured.

**October 26 1799-In naval activity-**The *Confederacy*, which had recently left the vicinity of Philadelphia commanded by Captain Seth Harding, passes the Delaware Capes and reaches the sea without interference. It sails towards France to deliver French Minister Gerard back to his country. John Jay, American minister to Spain, is also aboard. While en route, the vessels sustains severe damage during a severe storm on 7 November. The rough seas and powerful winds ravage the bowsprit and all her masts within just a few minutes; the rudder also sustains heavy damage. The *Confederacy* diverts to Martinique, and finally on 18 December, arrives at St. Pierre. Once at Martinique, Monsieur Gerard and John Jay gain passage on a French ship and resume their voyage. Marine Captain Joseph Hardy and Lieutenants Gurdon Bill and Samuel Holt had been aboard with the Marine detachment.

**November 23 1799-In naval activity-**The frigate *Boston*, ship *Queen of France*, frigate *Providence* and the sloop *Ranger* depart Boston under orders to sail to South Carolina and once at Charleston “persue the orders of the Commanding Officer at that place.” Captain Abraham Whipple is the commanding officer during the cruise. The frigate *Deane* remains at Boston due to a lack of a full crew. Its two Marine officers, Samuel Gamage and Samuel Pritchard, both resign. Aboard the *Boston*, Captain Richard Palmes commands the company of Marines. He had succeeded Seth Baxter, who resigned. In conjunction, the diary of Lieutenant William Jennison notes that on the 23rd, the vessels sail at 1100 and as the convoy passes the lighthouse, a crewman intentionally jumps from the frigate *Providence* and drowns.

**January 14 1780-THE SPANISH ATTACK AGAINST FORT CHARLOTTE AT MOBILE In Louisiana-**A Spanish force composed of about 750 men departs from New Orleans this day en route to rendezvous with another Spanish fleet from Cuba. De Galvez’s force arrives at the rendezvous point and waits until 4 March, but the expected fleet fails to show. De Galvez then reinitiates the mission, but within two days, the fleet is struck by strong winds that force four ships to become grounded between Dauphin Island and Mobile Point. However, all troops make it to shore safely.

Later, on the 15th, De Galvez gets his artillery ashore at a point slightly below Mobile and afterward continues to get his forces in position for an attack against British-held Fort Charlotte. By the following day, the Spanish complete preparation for the assault and launch it at 0800 on the 17th, with some booming artillery barrages from within about one-quarter of a mile distant. By 1600, the British hoist a white flag and surrender the fort. After the Spanish take possession, it is renamed Fort

Charlotta.

Captain Pickles and his crew, including the Marines under Lt. Daniel Longstreet aboard the captured British sloop *West Florida*, participate as one of De Galvez's 13-ship fleet. Subsequent to the seizure, the Americans sail the vessel to Philadelphia, along with another captured sloop taken during the mission to seize Fort Charlotte. Following this success, the Spanish prepare to seize British-held Pensacola, Florida.

**February 14 1780-In South Carolina:** Governor John Rutledge directs Captain Abraham Whipple to destroy the beacon and lighthouse to impede British operation at Charleston. A detachment of about 20 seamen and Marines under Captain Thomas Simpson and an identical number under Captain Samuel Tucker, both Naval officers, execute the mission. On this day after dusk, both captains are directed by Whipple to reduce Fort Johnston. In conjunction, on the 16th, Marines are dispatched to destroy the remnants of the fort.

**February 16 1780-In South Carolina:** Acting upon orders issued by Captain Abraham Whipple on the night of the 14th, a contingent of Continental Marines in escort of seamen moves to James Island in Charleston Harbor to destroy Fort Johnston. The Marines deploy around the position while the seamen enter it and set the charges and detonate them to deprive the British of a formidable defensive position. Once the operation is completed, the contingent moves back across the harbor to Charleston.

**March 1 1780-**Congress, in conjunction with a report of the Board of Admiralty, resolves "that any interest the United States may have in the capture of the brigantine *Betsey*, by the sloop, *Argo*, Silas Talbot, commander, be relinquished to the said Captain Talbot, and the officers, seamen, and marines under his command at the time of the capture."

**March 16 1780-In South Carolina:** Marine Lieutenant William Jennison, attached to the *Boston*, notes in his diary that on this day a man named Balentine is hanged for collaborating with the enemy in an attempt to betray American positions.

**March 22 1780-In South Carolina:** By about this time, the Marines and seamen of Captain Whipple's squadron are no longer needed aboard the ships since the retreat up the Cooper River. They redeploy at Charleston to bolster the batteries. A contingent of Marines under Captain Palmes is split between Craven's Battery and Granville Bastion, both standing along the Cooper River. Gibbs' Battery, along the Ashley River, is augmented by Marines under Captain Edmund Arrowsmith. The Marine detachment aboard the frigate *Providence* deploys at Broughton's Battery and the Exchange Battery.

Additional orders are prepared for when the alarm is sounded. At that signal, the Marines are to redeploy with ground forces and take positions between Mr. Livingston's residence and Gibbs' Wharf. Nonetheless, the order to redeploy is apparently never issued; the Marines in each detachment apparently remain at their original posts with the artillery throughout the British siege.

**March 25 1780-In South Carolina:** Silas Deval (Devol), captain of Marines, and other seamen and Marines, including Lieutenant William Jennison of Captain Whipple's naval squadron, are ordered to deploy at a fort on Governor's Bridge.

**April 10 1780-**At the Humphrey shipyards in Philadelphia, the sloop *Saratoga* is launched, and immediately thereafter, the admiralty board, despite its lack of funds, moves to outfit the vessel. Subsequently, Abraham Van Dyke, formerly a lieutenant of Marines (French and Indian War) who raised a militia company in New York during 1776, is recommended by General George Washington as captain of Marines aboard the *Saratoga*. Van Dyke at this time is 61 years old, but his age has not

hindered him, despite a prolonged captivity in New York after he had been captured during Washington's retreat from Manhattan. Nevertheless, Congress receives his application for a commission and returns it unsigned. Later, on 24 July, Congress agrees to an appointment as lieutenant of Marines, effective 7 July. Van Dyke joins the *Saratoga* to serve under its commander, Captain John Young, and Marine Captain Joseph Hardy.

**April 20 1780-In Philadelphia:** During a Thursday session, Congress receives two letters from General Washington, both dated 17 April. The Board of Admiralty delivers a form for a commission in the U.S. Navy, which is agreed to as follows: "The United States of America in Congress assembled to Greeting: We, reposing especial trust and confidence in your valour, conduct and fidelity, do by these presents constitute and appoint you to be in the navy of the United States, to take rank from the You are therefore carefully and diligently to discharge the duties by doing and performing all manner of things thereunto belonging. And we do strictly charge and require all officers, marines, and seamen under your command to be obedient to your orders. And you are to observe and follow such orders and directions, from time to time, as you shall receive from Congress, a committee of the states, the Board of Admiralty, Commander in Chief, for the time being, of the navy of the United States, or any other your superior officer, according to the rules and discipline of the navy, and the usage of the sea. This commission to continue in force until revoked by Congress or a committee of the states. Witness, President of the Congress of the United States of America, at the day of in the year of our Lord and in the year of our independence."

**May 12 1780-THE FALL OF CHARLESTON In South Carolina:** The British decisively defeat the Americans in Charleston (Fort Moultrie having fallen on the 7th). This is unquestionably the worst defeat of the entire war for the Americans. American General Benjamin Lincoln surrenders his 5,466-man Army, which includes ten Continental regiments, three artillery battalions (more than 400 artillery pieces are surrendered) and Continental seamen and Marines. The British also capture the military arsenal, two American frigates, the sloop *Ranger* and several French ships.

General Henry Clinton and Admiral Marriott Arbuthnot accept the American surrender and place harsh demands on the Americans. General Charles Lord Cornwallis does not attend the surrender. He is across the river with his command. The Americans are forced to march out of the fort with their colors encased and they are forbidden to permit their drummers to play a British tune. Once out of the fort, they are directed to lay down their arms.

Within about five days after capitulation, Naval Captain Abraham Whipple, along with his captains (Hoysteed Hacker, John Peck Rathburn, Samuel Tucker and Thomas Simpson), petition British Admiral Arbuthnot for parole for themselves and all their Naval and Marine officers to return to New England, but not to participate in any military activity until an exchange is arranged. Arbuthnot agrees to the parole. The officers soon sail for Philadelphia in a cartel vessel. However, the seamen and Marines remain behind in Charleston until the following June, when they sail north in three cartel ships. With the capture of Whipple's squadron (frigate *Boston*, frigate *Providence* and sloop *Ranger*) and its three Marine detachments, only five Continental vessels afloat contain Marine detachments, the frigates *Alliance*, *Confederacy*, *Deane* and *Trumbull* and the sloop *Saratoga*. One of the captured American officers, Colonel Laurens, will later be designated by Washington to negotiate the surrender of the British at Yorktown.

When John Jay receives word of the loss of Charleston, he informs the Spanish government, but instead of support, the U.S. representative receives a diplomatic cold shoulder. Jay, under pressure

from the United States to gain Spanish recognition, will be instructed to offer America's promise to abort any future plans of navigating the Mississippi River if Spain will officially recognize the U.S. and join in the alliance. Still, Spain remains mute.

General Henry Clinton, having Charleston in his control and no longer concerned with General Lincoln's force, begins to focus on expanding the British domination by planning expeditions toward Georgia at the Savannah River, as well as dispatching troops toward Ninety Six, South Carolina. In addition, Clinton will dispatch another contingent to attempt to intercept a party of Americans led by Colonel Buford, which is retreating toward North Carolina.

The British experience some unexpected jubilation from the inhabitants in the area; they suddenly lose their thirst for liberty and flock to the British cause, offering to join with the British against the Americans. Consequently, even in once defiant Charleston, the residents eagerly espouse the British cause. Many of these newly reformed Loyalists begin to betray Patriots who had only a short while ago been their protectors and turn them over to the Redcoats.

General Lachlan McIntosh is among the officers who participated in the defense of the city and was captured. He is released during a prisoner exchange of February 1782. General James Hogan is also caught in the net, but he does not survive captivity. Hogan succumbs during early January 1781. Another general officer, Brigadier General William Woodford of the Continental Virginia Line, is also captured. The British later transport Woodford to New York and he succumbs while in captivity during November 1780.

The British lose about 250 killed and wounded. British General Henry Clinton will, on 4 June, depart for New York. General Lord Charles Cornwallis assumes command of the British forces upon Clinton's departure. In conjunction, one of the Patriots captured, Isaac Hayne, the owner of an iron works and a rice plantation, is later coerced to join with the Loyalists, but he refuses and instead rejoins the militia with the rank of colonel. During August of the following year, he is twice caught and then hanged as a spy.

Lyman Hall, a signer from Georgia, departed Charleston before the city fell; however, three others, Thomas Heyward, Jr., Arthur Middleton and Edward Rutledge are seized and transported to St. Augustine, Florida, where they languish in prison until 1781.

**June 1 1780-In naval activity-**The *Trumbull*, which had been stranded at New London until its captain, James Nicholson, was ordered to sea during the latter part of the previous month, encounters a British 36-gun letter of marque, the *Watt*, at about 1300. The encounter ignites a gruesome battle in which the vessels clobber one another for about two and one-half hours. The *Trumbull* is decimated, having lost its rigging, its fore mast, mizzen mast and jigger mast during the ferocious sea duel fought from about pistol range.

During the first minutes of the tenacious slug-fest, Marine Lieutenant David Bill is struck and instantly killed by a fragment of a langrage (shot packed with nuts, bolts and nails to damage sails), which severs the top of his head. Another Marine, Captain Gilbert Saltonstall, sustains eleven wounds, ranging from buckshot to splinters from the guns and a few near misses of shots that pierce his brim of his hat but cause no further harm. The grim struggle nearly turns both vessels into floating debris, as their opposing decks are destroyed and bloodied. The thunderclap of cannon fire in concert with the muskets and pistols is deafening and the choking smoke of burning nets adds to the intensity of the combat, but neither side relents until about two and one-half hours passes.

At about 1530, the *Watt* manages to break away, leaving the confrontation to essentially end in stalemate. One of the survivors aboard the *Trumbull*, Captain Gilbert Saltonstall, in a letter to his

father, notes, "It is beyond my power to give an adequate idea of the carnage, slaughter, havoc, and destruction that ensued. Let your imagination do its best; it will fall short. We were literally cut to pieces." Captain Saltonstall, in another letter to his father, states that the guns on the main deck and quarter deck combined "expended 388 rounds, 86 of which were fired on the quarter-deck; the Marines fired pistols during the engagement exclusive of which they fired near 1,200 rounds."

Although the *Trumbull* had been battered, on the following day, the weather turns nasty and again the ships receive punishing blows that topple the main mast and mizzen mast, followed by more winds that take out the fore topmasts, leaving only the wobbly foremast.

Nonetheless, the *Trumbull* is able to hobble back to Nantasket on the 14th and enter the harbor on the following day. The crippled *Watt* arrives at New York on 11 June. The Americans sustain 13 killed, including officers and men. Those killed include Marine Lts. David Bill, Jabez Smith and Daniel Star, and Marine Sergeant Ezekial Hyatt. Marine Captain Trevett loses one eye and sustains another wound during the battle. Subsequent to the war, Captain Trevett works as a carpenter until blindness and other illnesses force him to retire.

**June 10 1780-In South Carolina**-Commissioned American naval officers at Charleston, having received permission to charter a cartel, depart at 1800 for Rhode Island. Lieutenant William Jennison of the Continental Marines departs as part of a three-ship cartel that arrives at Chester, Pennsylvania, on 23 June. ***In naval activity:*** In France, the results of a pernicious plot against Captain John Paul Jones succeeds today. It had been conceived by French Captain Pierre Landais, who holds a commission in the United States Navy, in collusion with American minister Arthur Lee and an officer of the South Carolina Navy, Commodore Alexander Gillon. Earlier, unknown to Jones, 115 men, including officers aboard the *Alliance*, most unhappy with the discipline instilled by Jones, had agreed to sign a petition, which had been forwarded to Benjamin Franklin, accusing Jones of ignoring their concerns regarding prize money. The petition also states that the crew will raise anchor only under Landais.

At 1400, Landais boards the vessel and takes command. Arthur Lee, the American minister, is a passenger aboard during the episode. Earlier this day, Jones had been aboard and after inquiring if the crew had any problems, no one responded with a complaint. Landais orders the crew to resist with arms any attempt to board. Captain of Marines Matthew Parke and Marine Lieutenant James Warren, Jr., both refuse to sign the petition. However, Parke accepts Landais' claims, presented by a reading of his congressional commission. All officers not accepting Landais as captain and the officers from the *Bonhomme Richard* that had been aboard since a transfer from the *Serapis* are ordered off the vessel.

Captain Jones, rather than attempt to retake the ship, travels to Paris to seek support from Franklin, which he receives. He returns to L'Orient, but Landais has moved to Port Louis. The French government orders a boom to block passage and issues orders to a battery to commence fire if the *Alliance* attempts to pass. In addition, French warships receive orders to fire if necessary. After pondering about the situation and looking ahead at the potential unintended consequences if the *Alliance* is blown from the water, John Paul Jones decides to abort the attempt to retake his ship. The French then allow the *Alliance* to sail.

Captain Parke is arrested aboard ship prior to its sailing and he is imprisoned for eleven days for not signing an oath to support Landais. Subsequent to this demeaning action, Landais continues to act strangely. Crew members from the *Bonhomme Richard* who refuse to accept Landais as captain are also imprisoned. Finally, Landais' mental stability comes into question and action is taken on 11

August to bring the terror voyage to a close.

John Paul Jones with regard to his actions, later notes: "As the English could have considered this circumstance as arising from disagreements between France and America, and as in any case these ill effects would have dishonored the American flag, I was glad to show my moderation, not being able to consent to the spilling of American or French blood in order to give me a command."

**July 24 1780-In Philadelphia:** During a Monday session, Congress, following a recommendation of General Washington, resolves "that Abraham Vandyke be appointed a lieutenant of marines, and that his commission bear date the 7th of this month, from which time he has acted in that capacity, by order of the Board of Admiralty, on board the *Saratoga* sloop of war."

**August 11 1780- In naval activity-**While the *Alliance* continues its journey from France to America with a cargo of arms and clothing, the captain, Pierre Landais, a Frenchman holding a commission in the Continental Navy, finds that his command has suddenly become invalid. Since leaving port on 8 July, Landais' mental condition has steadily deteriorated. The crew that had given him three cheers as he came aboard now prepare to place him in irons. One of the passengers, Arthur Lee, had assisted Landais in the plot to gain control of the *Alliance* from John Paul Jones.

At 1600, the mutiny begins. The ship's quartermaster, James Pratt, moves to the quarterdeck to instantly become a very temporary commodore. Once there, Pratt calls for two lieutenants of Marines, Lt. Eldridge (Elwood) and Lt. Warren, the latter the son of James Warren, Sr. (Navy Board) of Boston, Massachusetts. The lieutenants and a detachment are dispatched to arrest Landais and confine him to his quarters.

Pratt soon issues a second order by directing the two Marine lieutenants to escort Lt. James A. Diggs (Degge) to the quarterdeck. In a short while, Diggs arrives and requests his orders, then receives Pratt's final order as commodore: "I now give you Charge of this ship & you are to observe one thing, that you are to Carry her into Boston & that Should you be engaged by any ship what Ever, you are to sink before you strike the Colours." After issuing his third order of the day, to the third captain of this day, the commodore relinquishes command and resumes his duty as quartermaster. The *Alliance* resumes the journey and arrives safely at Boston. Landais is forcefully removed from the ship and replaced by Captain John Barry. Subsequently, much testimony is given at his court-martial in the autumn and winter attesting that the Frenchman is insane. He is found to be unfit for command and dismissed from the Continental Navy. Landais' trial lasts about seven weeks.

Captain John Barry receives command of the *Alliance*. During early February, the frigate will depart Boston. On 8 January, Lieutenant James A. Degge's trial begins. He, like Landais, is dismissed from the service at the conclusion of his trial, which lasts about three weeks.

**August 27 1780-In Pennsylvania-**At a point along the Schuylkill River about thirty miles above Reading, a detachment of Marines and civilian workmen out of Philadelphia are engaged in cutting down trees for lumber to be used as masts for American and French ships. On this day, Captain Dennis Leary receives a report that Indians had attacked a house within about one mile from his logging camp. Immediately, Leary leads a ten-man Marine contingent to the house and discovers a grim scene, the bodies of the father and two of his three children.

The Marines, on the following day, attempt to pursue the Indians who massacred the family and retrieve the young girl they had abducted. The detachment is soon reinforced when Captain Balty and Colonel Michael Lindenmuth supply Marine Captain Leary with about fifty additional men from their Pennsylvania militia. The chase fails to find the elusive Indians and the effort is aborted on 31 August.

Although the Indians escape, the situation at the camp does not remain uneventful. A new report arrives regarding the abduction of a young boy, the son of Mr. Shurr. On 1 September Captain Leary requests support from the Pennsylvania Council. In addition, about 50–60 troops are dispatched to the nearby settlements to provide some protection for the residents.

Other intrigue emerges after a man and his wife, who identify themselves as the Hamiltons, arrive at the Marines' encampment. John Hamilton purports to be a carpenter seeking employment; however, his wife secretly informs Leary that John Hamilton is a fictitious name and that his actual name is Niel Tye. As it turns out, the supposed carpenter is only interested in carving Leary's scalp from his head. Tye succeeds only in becoming acquainted with a detachment of Marines who take him to the jail at Reading. The incident fails even to ruffle Leary, but it makes him more cognizant of a strong possibility of future threats.

To ensure the success of the logging operation, Captain Leary requests more troops to bolster the camp. The Board of Admiralty, once informed of the danger to the operation, immediately requests an additional contingent of about fifty or sixty troops to augment Leary's force of Marines. The Pennsylvania authorities receive the request, but instead of about fifty, they dispatch a force composed of about 300 men to protect the camp and the frontier. No new incursions occur.

**December 5 1780-In naval activity:** The *Confederacy* weighs anchor at Philadelphia, and its short-handed crew has been filled out with felons released from prison and most probably impressed seamen and those selected to serve as Marines. Within a few additional days, the sloop *Saratoga*, commanded by Captain John Young, having accumulated its crew using similar tactics, sails to join the frigate. Both vessels remain off Reedy Island until 20 December and at that time initiate the cruise.

**February 18 1781-**Captain John Paul Jones arrives back in the United States from France. He arrives at Philadelphia aboard a vessel loaned from the French, subsequent to losing his command aboard the *Alliance*, which had been seized by the French Captain Pierre Landais. Jones expects to receive command of the new double decker, the *America*, but yet again, another promise is broken. While in Philadelphia, Captain Jones recommends that William Nicholson's appointment as captain of Marines be confirmed by the Continental Congress. Congress, along with the Board of Admiralty, confer and decide to scrutinize all commissions having been awarded by the American ministers. A report of the findings is delivered on 16 July.

**March 18 1781-**A convoy of eighty French merchant ships, escorted by three American warships, which had departed Cape Francois (West Indies), separates on this day, with about half moving toward France and the remainder heading for America. While the formation shifts, the *Saratoga* spots two merchant ships and initiates pursuit. The *Confederacy* and the *Deane*, however, continue the cruise toward the United States. Once the *Saratoga* departs, it is the last time she is seen, and the reason for her disappearance and that of her crew remains unknown. Following the loss of the *Saratoga*, Marine detachments remain only on four ships of the Continental Navy, the frigates *Confederacy* and *Deane*, with the convoy, the *Trumbull* at anchor in Philadelphia and the frigate *Alliance* at sea under the command of Captain John Barry.

**April 17 1781-**Marine Captain Richard Palmes is appointed by the Navy Board to serve aboard the *Deane*, which had not had a "competent" officer aboard since Lieutenant Pritchard was reassigned to the *Alliance* on 20 October of the previous year. Nonetheless, the repairs continue throughout the summer and fall. Despite being ready for sea by October, the *Deane* remains in port until 10 March 1782. In the meantime, the effort to enlist a new crew continues.

**May 27–29 In naval activity**-The *Alliance*, partially immobilized due to severe storm damage, continues its journey toward America. While off Newfoundland this day, it encounters two British warships, the *Atalanta*, a 16-gun (6 pounders) ship manned by a crew of 125 men and the *Trepassey*, a 14-gun (6 pounders) brigantine with a crew of 125 men. The *Atalanta*, commanded by Captain Sampson Edwards, and the *Trepassey*, commanded by Captain Smith, remain at some distance, but at dawn on the following day, the British colors are raised to announce the prelude to battle.

The *Alliance*, although disadvantaged due to the condition of its masts, becomes a whirlpool of activity as the crew takes to their stations while the British do the same to the beat of their drummers. The weather, having been exceedingly horrible for most of the voyage, is extremely favorable, with calm seas and fair winds, rather than the unruly winds and high seas that have ravaged the *Alliance* since it departed France. By about 1100, the less agile *Alliance* begins the donnybrook with the initial broadside providing the Stars and Stripes with the first blast, but with the odds at two to one, it remains uncertain which side will gain the victory.

Barry's broadside is quickly answered, while one of the lighter sloops strikes from across the stern and the quarters. The maneuver prevents the *Alliance* from using one-half of its guns. Nonetheless, the remainder maintain a steady stream of fire, accompanied by fire from the Marines in the masts and upon the decks. The British, in turn, propel equal devastating fire upon the *Alliance*, resulting in carnage aboard each of the vessels, while huge spiraling clouds of choking smoke permeate the decks and obscure vision of the opposing men attempting to use their muskets. However, the lack of a clear view does not lessen the intensity of the fight; the blind firing continues to inflict more damage and casualties.

Aboard the *Alliance*, the quarterdeck is raked by grape and pounded by musket fire, transforming it into a cauldron of fire. Marine Lieutenant Samuel Pritchard is struck by a six-pound shell that inflicts a mortal wound. The fire also inflicts a severe wound upon Lieutenant James Warren, who later has his leg amputated, and another, Sergeant David Brewer, is killed when a British musket ball scores a direct hit to his head. Despite the battering and rising casualties, the *Alliance* continues to defy the odds. The two British sloops are unable to compel Captain Barry to strike the colors.

At about 1400, the crews aboard the *Trepassey* and the *Atalanta* become ecstatic and cheers are raised above the sound of the cannon when they see the colors aboard the *Alliance* being hauled down. Nonetheless, the scent of victory is premature. Although the Stars and Stripes had been struck, it is not intended as a prelude to the raising of the king's ensign. At that moment, Captain Barry had been hit by grape shot and had descended below deck. The colors had been lowered in concert with the gunners' efforts to reload after firing their broadsides.

During the momentary lull, the British relax in anticipation of taking possession of the Americans and their ship, but in a flash, the *Alliances'* guns are readied, then in synchronization with the Stars and Stripes being propelled by a missen-brail, used as an improvised halyard, the British are greeted by the colors and a broadside simultaneously, catching the British totally off-guard and ruining their vision of collecting the vanquished Americans.

Shortly after the reappearance of the colors, the winds change, and as Old Glory snaps vigorously in the breeze, the winds by about 1500 sweep the *Alliance* and rotate her into a position that finally increases her fire power. The guns that had not been fired are suddenly free from their isolated ports, and in unison, every gun on the starboard battery catapults its shells into the two previously agile sloops. The devastating blows change the tide of battle.

Following the first broadside, the *Trepassey* is knocked out of the fight. With the odds cut to one-on-

one, the *Alliance* takes the momentum and fails to relinquish it. The *Atalanta*, however, remains intent on continuing the fight, and the *Alliance* confidently accommodates the British crew by initiating a fresh broadside to deflate their confidence. Shortly thereafter, her colors are struck. The Americans become enthusiastic, having vanquished the British and acquired two prizes, but Captain John Barry, equally enthused by the victory and uplifted with pride in his crew, has no time to celebrate.

With the victory, he also becomes encumbered with 200 additional prisoners to add to those already being held. Fearing an uprising and mutiny, Barry transfers Captain Sampson and some other officers to the *Atalanta*, then transforms the *Trepassey* into a cartel ship by stripping it of all weapons except one, to be used if necessary for signals.

Captain Barry places all the prisoners aboard the *Trepassey*, which then sails to Halifax as a cartel to be used for a prisoner exchange to retrieve American captives. Naval Lieutenant Hezekiah Welch is placed in charge of the prize crew and ordered to sail the *Atalanta* to Boston. However, the voyage gets interrupted after about three weeks when it is intercepted by the British and recaptured. The *Alliance*, still badly crippled, arrives at Boston on 6 June.

**May 29 1781 -In naval activity-**Captain John Barry's *Alliance* engages two British warships off the coast of Nova Scotia. Captain Barry is injured during the clash but he continues to lead his men to victory, capturing the *Atalanta* and the *Trepassey*. Barry orders the badly damaged *Atalanta* towed into Boston. As the ship is being taken into port, the British recapture it. U. S Marines participate in the battle.

**July 16 1781 -In Philadelphia-**A committee report regarding commissions granted by the American ministers is delivered to Congress. The inquiry instituted by Congress and the Board of Admiralty had been ignited in conjunction with a proposal by Captain John Paul Jones that William Nicholson's commission as captain of Marines be confirmed by Congress. The report essentially eradicates all commissions awarded by the minister in Europe: "Commissions heretofore granted by the Ministers of these United States at foreign Courts or any of them having been granted for temporary purposes are to be considered as temporary Brevets and nor giving rank in the Navy or Marine of these States and that therefore all such commissions be and are hereby revoked." Afterwards, a second resolution is passed, in which Congress appoints William Nicholson as a lieutenant in the Marine Corps. Nicholson, unimpressed with his demotion by Congress, declines the appointment and sails back to France.

**September 6 1781 -In naval activity-**The *Congress*, a Pennsylvania 24-gun privateer commanded by Captain George Geddes, encounters the HMS *Savage*, the ship that had earlier raided Mount Vernon, George Washington's residence along the Potomac. The enemy craft, commanded by Captain Charles Stirling, is engaged at about 1030, and within about one-half hour the vessels are within musket range. The opposing cannon blast their rounds incessantly, inflicting heavy damage aboard both vessels, but the *Savage* loses her braces and her bow lines, leaving no rope to trim her sails. The *Congress* maneuvers to rake the decks of the crippled *Savage*, creating a few minutes of silence from the thundering cannon, but during the interim, the crew of the *Congress* continues to stream fire from its privateer-Marines, leaving little opportunity for the British to regain any momentum.

From its position astern of the *Savage*, the *Congress* maneuvers to nearly press against its opponent, increasing the gruesomeness of the horrific fire. By this time, the *Savage* loses its mizzen-mast, and its main-mast is precariously standing, ready to break away from its foundation. All the while, the

American muskets maintain effective fire. The British are also being bombarded by hand grenades. The *Savage* attempts to continue its resistance, but the rising casualties and scattered fires, combined with the loss of maneuverability, compels Captain Stirling to capitulate at about 1500.

Following the vicious confrontation, the *Savage* and the Congress remain to make repairs, which takes about five days for the former and three for the latter. The *Savage* sustains 8 killed and 31 wounded. The *Congress* sustains about 11 killed and 30 wounded. While the prize is being taken to port, another British vessel, the HMS *Solebay*, intercepts it and retakes the sloop.

**November 22 In Philadelphia-**During a Thursday session, Congress, subsequent to consideration of a committee report regarding a letter of General Washington, dated 27 October, resolves “that Congress approve of the early and unremitting attention of General Washington, to the liberation of the southern states from the power of the enemy, and of his communication of the success of the allied arms, to the foreign ministers of the United States.” It is also resolved “that the establishment of the Post Office as agreed to, on the 19 of October last, take place on the first day of January next, and that the resolution directing its commencement on the first day of December next, be, and hereby is repealed.” In addition, Congress resolves “that Major Nicholas’s (Major of Continental Marines) accounts be settled up to the 25 day of August, 1781, at which time he be considered as retiring from service.”

**December 10 1781-In Massachusetts-**The Marquis de Lafayette arrives in Boston and from there he is to be transported to France aboard the *Alliance*, commanded by Captain John Barry. At this time, the *Alliance* is one of only two remaining frigates in the Continental Navy. Barry’s orders restrict him from engaging any enemy vessels en route to France, which adds little to the morale of the crew, which will be prevented from gaining any prizes. The orders, however, permit Barry, after delivering Lafayette to France, some time for a short cruise to search for prizes. Nevertheless, he is to have the *Alliance* back in France by 1 March 1782 to pick up dispatches for Congress.

The *Alliance* holds far less than a full crew, prompting Barry, on the 18th, to request forty men from Captain Samuel Nicholson of the *Deane*. Barry’s request is not enthusiastically received by the officers and men aboard the *Deane*, and Nicholson’s response gives no promise of supplying the men. On the 20th, Barry presses further and demands the crewmen. Nevertheless, on the 22nd, only 22 men, rather than the requested 40, arrive. Of these, eleven are Marines, one of which is a drummer. Barry also acquires 37 French seamen to fill out the crew, composed of 255 men. The total Marine detachment amounts to about 45 men. The *Alliance* moves to Nantasket Roads and on Christmas Day, she sails to the open sea en route to France.

**March 1 1782-In Massachusetts:** At Boston the frigate *Deane* is making final preparation for a cruise. By this date, the ship’s Marine detachment, which had been down to 23 men during the previous December, now stands at 66 men. The ship sails on 10 March on a voyage to the West Indies.

**April 7 1782-**Captain Joshua Barney (promoted for this victory) in command of the *Hydor Ally*, a privateer commissioned by Congress, moves down Delaware Bay to Cape May Road in company with a convoy of merchant ships. On the following day, she encounters the HMS *General Monk* and the privateer *Fair American* in Delaware Bay.

The *Hydor Ally* carries a crew of 20, including a detachment of privateer-Marines (not Continental). The British attempt to chase and close as the *Hydor Ally* heads up the bay. From a distance of about 100 yards the *General Monk* fires two broadsides without inflicting any harm.

Meanwhile, the Americans maneuver to a position from which to rake the *General Monk*, while the

British move to do the same, causing both vessels to be separated at about pistol range. The contest turns to a battle of muskets and the British guns are not positioned to do damage. However, the American fire rips into the masts, decks and tops to inflict devastating damage. All the while, the other British vessel, the *Fair American*, makes no move to support the *General Monk*. The tenacious exchange ceases after about ten minutes, when Captain Rogers strikes the colors. Much of the credit for Barney's victory is given to the riflemen under Captain Scull (Bucks County, Pennsylvania, militia) who serve aboard the vessel as Marines.

**May 1782**-Subsequent to authorization by Virginia Governor Benjamin Harrison, who believes that river boats would enhance Virginia's efforts in the war, Brigadier General George Rogers Clark (Virginia militia) has been engaged in getting the boats prepared to patrol the Ohio River, primarily in the areas near the mouths of the Miami River and Licking Creek. By this time, Clark reports that he has two gondolas ready to receive their guns. Clark also states that a galley is less than one month from completion. The vessels are under construction at Fort Nelson (Louisville, Kentucky) at the Falls of the Ohio, but the weaponry Clark had been promised by the governor has not yet arrived. The militia is also building a fort.

Marines commanded by Captain Jacob Pyeatt (formerly an officer in the Illinois Regiment) serve with George Rogers Clark during the summer of 1782. The Marines (Virginia state) become the gun crew of the *Miami*, in addition to the guards of the ship's magazine. Clark finally receives the cannon, which had been delivered to Redstone (later Brownsville), Pennsylvania, and from there transported down the Monongahela River to Fort Nelson. The vessel, never officially named, patrols the Ohio River Valley near Shawnee Territory. The gondolas had proved to be ambush-prone and their service was of no value.

General Clark is preparing for attacks by the Indians who are expected to assault Wheeling in the Ohio Territory. Nonetheless, the Indian force of about 1,000 braves led by two British officers, Captain William Caldwell and Captain Alexander McKee (both based at Detroit), become alarmed at the presence of the *Miami* and its crew.

They postpone the attack and return to prepare to defend their territory from Clark. The *Miami* is reported to have been sunk on or about 1 September 1782 near Louisville, Kentucky. The remaining Virginia Marines transfer to the Illinois Regiment, where they serve until the close of the war.

**May 16 1782-In Connecticut**-At New London, the crew of the *Alliance*, forbidden from receiving liberty and not having been paid, initiates a revolt at 0900 as a boat comes aside to deliver fresh meat for the crew. Marine Captain Matthew Parke moves quickly to get the other officers armed, and together the rioters are compelled to pull back from the deck. By the latter part of the afternoon, Captain Barry, ashore during the mutiny, returns. The turmoil is shortly terminated. The instigators, sixteen crewmen, are arrested and placed in irons. Subsequently, the meat is finally unloaded.

On this same day, Captain Barry writes to Robert Morris in Philadelphia to report on the mission and cruise and includes an inquiry regarding the mutiny. Barry informs Morris that there are no officers available to hold a court-martial and requests instructions on how to handle the mutineers. Marine Lieutenant William Morris is dispatched on the following day with orders to deliver the letter (and some other dispatches) to Robert Morris. Lieutenant Morris arrives in Philadelphia on the 22nd after riding horseback for more than 220 miles.

**November 5 1782-In New Hampshire**-The *America*, a 74-gun frigate authorized by Congress on 20 November 1776 and promised but not given to Captain John Paul Jones, is launched on this day.

Congress decides to give the ship to France in place of the French vessel *Magnifique* (Marquis de Vaudreuil's squadron), which had been lost in Boston harbor. George Jerry Osborne, through the recommendation of Captain John Barry, had been appointed captain of Marines for the *America* on 20 November 1779, but he resigned his commission. Subsequently, Captain Samuel Nicholson attempts to get the position. Later, the Board of War proposes that Congress appoint Nicholson, but without explanation takes back its recommendation.

**November 18 1782-In naval activity-**At LORIENT, France, the officers of the *Alliance* write a letter in which they agree to make Captain John Barry their agent regarding the prize money for the four ships captured during the recent cruise. Barry responds by telling the officers that he would need more specific details. Barry adds that the specifics must be provided quickly, as the *Alliance* is about to sail. The officers also seek Barry's support for their back pay. Although incomprehensible during modern times, some officers have received little pay for the past four years. Two of the Marine officers aboard, Captain Matthew Parke and Lieutenant Thomas Elwood, are among those not having been paid their full wages.

About four days pass without any word from the officers, but he is informed that six of his seven officers had gone ashore. Two days later, on the 24th, Captain Parke arrives back at the *Alliance* and tests Barry's stamina, stating that none of the officers (excluding Lt. Elwood, who remained aboard) would return without first receiving two-thirds of their wages. Barry responds by telling Parke that he has until 1600 to be back at his post. Captain Parke remains in L'Orient until the following morning, when a detachment from the ship arrives and arrests him. Shortly thereafter, the other officers, excluding Naval Lieutenant Hezekiah Welch and Marine Lieutenant Thomas Elwood are placed in irons. The arrested officers are informed by Captain Barry that until they receive a court-martial in the United States, they are disassociated with the *Alliance*.

Within a few days, the *Alliance* sails. On the 9th of December, Captain Barry weighs anchor and heads to the West Indies on a circuitous route by crossing the Bay of Biscay, and from there he proceeds along the coasts of Portugal and Africa. He arrives at Martinique on 9 January. The court-martial for the insubordinate officers are postponed for an unspecified time. When Captain Barry departed L'Orient, he left the officers in France with a suggestion that they find their own way home. Barry, in a letter to Robert Morris regarding the officers, states that he told them to "get to America, as well as they Can, where I hope they will be Try'd by a Court Martial and Meet their deserts."

**January 9 1783-In naval activity-**Captain John Manley, aboard the *Hague*, encounters a British warship several hundred miles east of Antigua (Lesser Antilles). The contact is made during the predawn hours, and Manley, who ran when encountered by a British warship during 1777, again chooses to run rather than engage the 44-gun HMS *Dolphin*. By the following morning, the *Dolphin* is joined by four other ships-of-the-line. Meanwhile, the *Hague* maintains some distance during the chase, which ensues for about thirty-six hours. Captain Manley remains confident that he will outrun the pursuers and end the harrowing marathon by reaching the French port at Guadelupe (French Antilles) and receiving protection from the French forts that stand guard over Baie Mahault on the east coast of Guadelupe.

However, the *Hague* gets snagged prior to reaching port, not by the British; rather, by a coral reef. While the frigate remains entrapped, the British maintain a bombardment, but due to the shallow water, they are unable to close and take the *Hague*. After a grueling twenty-four hours, the crew, having forestalled disaster with effective return fire, manages to free the ship. Once afloat, Manley

is able to safely run the vessel through the deeper water to reach the port and terminate the British efforts to capture them.

The *Hague* remains in port until the latter part of the month. It resumes its cruise and returns to America during the early part of May 1783. The vessel, having returned from her final voyage as a Continental frigate, docks near Hancock's Wharf in Boston. The crew is shortly thereafter discharged. On 2 October of this year, the *Hague* is sold at public auction. During the cruise U.S. Marines boarded the British ship *Baille* in the West Indies, capturing her. This is the Marines' last major action at sea during the Revolution.

In other naval activity, the *Alliance* arrives at St. Pierre, Martinique, from L'Orient, France. Shortly after his arrival, Captain John Barry goes ashore, carrying the news of the preliminary peace treaty signed by representatives of the United States and a representative of England on the 30th of November at Paris. Although Barry's information clearly states preliminary treaty, as the word spreads, including to the United States (by the latter part of February), the information is embellished and becomes erroneous. The *Boston Evening Post* claims that the Articles of Peace had been signed on 22 December and that Captain John Barry, aboard the *Alliance*, returned to America on a British passport.

**January 13 1783-In naval activity-**The *Alliance*, following a few days in port at St. Pierre, Martinique, to receive repairs sustained during a storm the previous December, departs. Captain John Barry sails, under new orders received at St. Pierre, toward Havana, Cuba, to pick up "specie" and transport it to Philadelphia to deliver it to Congress. Captain Barry takes a route that runs northward and passes Dominica, Guadeloupe and beyond. From there, the ship cruises along the southern coasts of Puerto Rico and Santo Domingo prior to crossing the Windward Passage. Finally on 31 January, the *Alliance* sails past the Spanish guns of Morro Castle near Havana harbor.

**January 31 1783-In naval activity-**The *Alliance*, under Captain John Barry, arrives at Havana, Cuba, but its intended cargo has already been assigned to another vessel, the 20-gun *Duc de Lauzun*. Rather than transport the "specie," Barry again receives new orders, this time to sail as escort for the newly acquired vessel purchased for the Continental Navy by Robert Morris. After a five-week wait, Captain Barry weighs anchor on 6 March.

**March 31 1783-In Rhode Island-**At Petuxet, the *Alliance* remains in port following its return to America on the 20th of March. On this day, word that the war with England had ended reaches the crew. Shortly thereafter, with the new nation independent and at peace, most of the *Alliance*'s crew is discharged, including 33 of its 41 Marines. By about the middle of May, the remaining eight Marines receive their discharge, leaving only Marine Lieutenant Thomas Elwood as a member of Captain John Barry's skeleton crew. It had been through Barry's insistence that Elwood remain on ship, as stated by Barry, to keep up "the appearance of a public Ship."

Toward the latter part of June, the *Alliance* is directed to embark on a short cruise to pick up a cargo of tobacco, destined from Amsterdam, Holland. During the initial part of the cruise, the *Alliance* sustains damage, which compels Captain Barry to sail to Philadelphia for repairs. This becomes the ship's final port call in the service of the United States Navy. Congress dispatches a committee to examine the vessel, and afterward, it is decided that the ship is unsalvageable.

The conclusion, however, is not without opposition. The *Alliance* becomes suspended between the halls of Congress and the open sea. Congress, during May of 1785, concurs with a committee report that recommends the sale of the *Alliance*. One of the most dependable Continental ships throughout the late conflict with England is sold during August 1785.

**April 1 1783**-The Marines on board the *Alliance* muster out of the service. The *Alliance*, the lone remaining frigate in the American Navy, is docked at Petuxet, near Providence, Rhode Island. Thirty-three of the last 41 Marines are mustered out after their long cruise back from France. Six months later, Marine Lieutenant Elwood is discharged and the Continental Marines are totally disbanded after more than seven years of fighting against the British. Many years later, during 1839, James Fenimore Cooper states: "At no period of the naval history of the world, is it probable that marines were more important than during the war of the revolution." During the war, about 131 officers held Continental Marine commissions. The approximate number of non-commissioned officers and enlisted men is not precise, but the figure probably was less than 2,000.

**July 31 1783-In naval activity**-The *Bourbon*, a 36-gun frigate authorized by Congress on 20 November 1776, is launched on this day in Connecticut. Congress puts the frigate up for sale in September. Prior to Congress unloading the vessel, Lieutenant Zebadiah Farnham applies for the position of captain of Marines aboard the *Bourbon*, but he is informed by Robert Morris that the position would not be filled until the ship was fitted out for sea.

**September 3 In France**-The U.S. and England sign the Treaty of Paris, formally terminating the conflict and, in effect, England acknowledges the existence of a new and independent nation, the United States of America. The treaty is signed on behalf of King George by David Hartley. On behalf of the United States it is signed by John Adams, Benjamin Franklin and John Jay. France concurs with the treaty, which is identical to the preliminary document signed in Paris on November 30, 1782.

**July 11 1795**-The United States Marine Corps is re-established by Congress.

**April 25 1805-(Thursday)-In Tripoli**, a 7-man contingent of Marines and Midshipman George Mann, commanded by Lt. Presley O'Bannon, U.S. Marine Corps, bolstered by Greek and Arab mercenaries, arrives at Derne, Tripoli, from Alexandria, Egypt. The contingent had traveled 500 miles since they departed Alexandria the previous November. O'Bannon launches the attack in synchronization with a bombardment from U.S. naval vessels. The forces of the dey, which have prevented the U.S. from penetrating their fortress from the sea, are caught by total surprise. By midday, the Marines control the city. Lt. O'Bannon hoists the Stars and Stripes, which becomes the first American flag to fly over a captured fort in the Old World. The Marines reinstall the rightful ruler, Pasha Yusuf's brother. O'Bannon is presented with a Mameluk sword. To this day, United States Marines continue to carry this symbolic sword. The capture of Derne, Tripoli, terminates the war with Tripoli that lasted about four years and simultaneously, it ends Tripoli's practice of extorting tribute from the United States. For America, it is a great victory; however, for the Barbary pirates it was an end to an era. The Barbary Coast pirates from this point forward begin to fear the power of the United States.

**June 4 (Tuesday) 1805**-The United States and Tripoli sign a peace treaty ending the Barbary Coast War. The U.S. pays approximately \$60,000 for the release of the crew from the captured vessel *Philadelphia*. The treaty is ratified by Congress on April 12, 1806. The Marines depart from Tripoli on 12 June; however, the squadron does not return to the U.S. due to problems with other Barbary pirates. The Americans move against the Bey of Tunis, who continues to be defiant. The navy arrives off Tunis on 1 August.

**January 1811-In Louisiana** at New Orleans, a contingent of U.S. Marines, commanded by Major Daniel Carmick, moves out from their barracks in search of "Negro insurgents" operating in the

county of German Coast slightly outside of New Orleans. The encounter is short-lived. The insurgents flee at the first of approach of the Marines and afterward, when they decide to launch an attack, the insurgents fire momentarily, then again they vanish.

**August 24 (Saturday) 1811-In Louisiana** at New Orleans, Major Daniel Carmick, a U.S. Marine, in a letter to the commandant, Lieutenant Colonel Franklin Wharton, mentions that the plague is taking the lives of five people a day in the city of New Orleans; however, he notes that his Marine contingent has “been more fortunate.” Nevertheless, the next month, the Marines lose two officers, 1st Lt. Francis Thornton, and 2nd Lt. Robert B. Ridle, and 16 enlisted men. In October, 16 additional men are killed by the disease. On 18 October, the commander of the Marines in New Orleans states in a letter: “The fever still rages here. It is almost certain death for a stranger to enter the city.”

**March 18 (Wednesday) 1811-In Florida**, the Georgians (Patriots) who entered Florida on the previous day and seized Amelia Island hold a formal ceremony regarding the captured island. The leader of the Patriot Army, composed of fewer than 200 men, John H. McIntosh, acting on his authority as the leader of the new government, delivers a thunderous speech in which he proposes to cede the island to the United States government. Brigadier General George Matthews of Georgia, the U.S. commissioner, also delivers a rousing speech, and he accepts the island on behalf of the United States. Afterward, Lt. Colonel Thomas A. Smith, U.S. Army, assumes command of the troops in Florida.

In related activity, U.S. troops, including Army and Marine Corps contingents, move into Florida via the St. Mary River. This venture is known as the “Patriot’s War.” An unsuccessful attack will be launched against the Spanish at St. Augustine, but the Americans will seize Fort San Nicholas (1812) along the St. Johns River during the attack against St. Augustine. The Americans remain in Florida until 6 May 1813. As the U.S. is being intimidated by the British, who have been imprisoning American seamen, the Americans are also pressured by the Spanish in Florida, who are inciting Indians. There is serious concern about Spanish intentions of seizing Georgia while the United States is facing still another threat from Britain. At this time, Spain remains an ally of the British.

The Americans hold a base (Battery at Point Peter) at Kings Bay about sixty miles north of Savannah. It had been constructed during the 1790s, but now it could be jeopardized by either the Spanish or the British.

**March 19 (Thursday) 1811-In Florida**, General Mathews, with a contingent of Marines led by Captain Williams and army regulars under Lt. Colonel Thomas A. Smith, take control of Amelia Island and Fernandina. Afterward, Lt. Colonel Smith departs from the island and moves toward St. Augustine. Meanwhile, the Marine contingent remains in place to hold the ground.

**April 21 (Tuesday) 1811**-Secretary of the Navy Paul Hamilton, displeased with the ongoing activity in East Florida, orders Captain Williams to abandon Amelia Island and lead his Marine contingent back to Cumberland Island. However, contrasting orders, issued by Governor Mitchell on 16 May, are received by Williams and they direct him to hold Amelia Island. Williams holds his Marines in place.

**Mid-June 1812-In Florida**, by this date, Captain Williams, U.S. Marine Corps, and his 60-man contingent continue to hold Fernandina (Amelia Island). Colonel Thomas A. Smith is operating from the old Spanish post, Fort Mose (Moosa), that was garrisoned by Negroes during the early 1700s. The fort is just outside St. Augustine. A Spanish schooner approaches the fort and launches an attack, which compels Smith to withdraw to Pass Navarro (Four Mile Creek), where Smith’s

regulars remain. Meanwhile, the Patriots withdraw to the St. Johns River and establish Camp New Hope. Seminole Indians led by Chief Bowlegs offer to support the Americans, but the offer is declined. Chief Bowlegs, insulted by the refusal of his help, decides to fight alongside the Spanish. All the while, the Marines at Fernandina are assigned responsibility to maintain communications with the army at Four Mile Creek and the Patriots at Camp New Hope. The Marines move to Camp New Hope and take responsibility for guarding supply trains and convoys that move between the two camps.

**July 3 (Friday) 1812-In Canada,** a French Canadian, Lieutenant Rolette (Provincial Marine) pulls off a major upset this day when his 8-man contingent pulls alongside an American schooner and successfully boards it. The vessel, in addition to the crew, is transporting General William Hull's baggage and personal papers. Rolette directs that the vessel, already close to the Canadian shore, be moved in closer under the guns of a British battery. Shortly thereafter, a small contingent led by an officer arrives in a batteaux to ensure the prize is kept. Meanwhile, after the astonishing discovery of having gained Hull's papers, the British find themselves with a treasure trove of intelligence, including Hull's plans and strategy.

**July 11 (Saturday) 1812-In Naval Activity,** the USS *Essex*, commanded by Captain David D. Porter, while operating in the West Indies spots a convoy of seven British vessels off Bermuda. After dusk the *Essex* closes on the convoy and snatches one of the transports. The *Essex*, acquired by the Navy during 1799, had participated in the Quasi-war with France and the Barbary Coast War. It had been at Tripoli during 1805 when U.S. Marines captured the pirate stronghold. Afterward, when it returned to the United States during 1806, it laid in reserve until February 1809, when it was re-commissioned. The *Essex* continues its cruise after seizing the transport, and on 13 August, it encounters the HMS *Alert*.

**July 30 (Thursday) 1812-In Florida,** Lt. Colonel Thomas A. Smith, in a letter to the U.S. Adjutant and Inspector (Brigadier General) Thomas H. Cushing, dated this day at Point Peter, informs the adjutant that he had ordered the companies at Fort Hawkins (Macon, Bibb County, Georgia) to repair to his camp; however, he also informs the adjutant that he did not believe an order from him to summon a contingent in South Carolina would be accepted as proper. Also, Smith informs the adjutant of the recent Indian depredations and of his orders from Governor Mitchell to take action. After mentioning that the governor (Mitchell of Georgia) has directed about 200 volunteers to join his command, Smith closes his letter: "I am making arrangements for that purpose & expect by the end of August to have destroyed all their towns in East Florida."

Also this day, Colonel Smith writes to Major General Thomas Pinckney to bring him up to date. Smith informs Pinckney of his orders to deal with the recent Indian raids and his orders to hold his positions unless "compelled to retire by a superior force." The letter also mentions his intent to dispatch Colonel Daniel (Neil) Newman and his force of Marines and volunteers to attack the Indian strong points within about 100 miles of the St. Johns River. Smith's concern is that the villages contain a few hundred fugitive slaves and if the problem is not immediately eliminated, new arrivals from Georgia and Florida will greatly increase their numbers and make the task too difficult for his small force. Although Colonel Newman's contingent is a disciplined unit, they had recently arrived in Florida "lacking shoes, canteens, or camp equipage of any kind."

**August 1-29 1812-**The United States is employing its navy as well as can be expected against the armadas of the British Royal Navy, which are closing against the U.S. waters from various parts of the globe. The privateer *Yankee*, still off Newfoundland, encounters and engages the HMS *Royal*

*Bounty* and the brigantine *New Liverpool*. The USS *Essex*, stalking the waters of the Atlantic, sends its guns into action and seizes the British vessel *Brothers*, then victimizes the HMS *King George* after a heated battle on the 8th. The following day, the *Essex* takes the HMS *Mary*. Another American vessel, the frigate *Constitution*, which sailed from Boston on 2 August, sees vicious action as it encounters the brigantine HMS *Lady Warren* off Cape Race (Newfoundland). Sailors and Marines on board the *Constitution* successfully capture the *Lady Warren*. The *Constitution* afterward, on the 11th, seizes the HMS *Adeona* in the Gulf of St. Lawrence. HMS *Harriet* also falls prey to the *Constitution*.

On the 19th, Commodore Isaac Hull's *Constitution* encounters and engages the British frigate *Guerriere* in a memorable battle not soon forgotten by the British. Also, the Americans on the USS *President* recapture the Sloop *Betsey* after encountering it under the British flag in the North Sea on the 25th.

In other activity, in late August, the United States focuses on the British naval forces operating on the Great Lakes. Captain Isaac Chauncey, in command of the Brooklyn navy yard, is selected as commander-in-chief on the Great Lakes. He arrives at Sackets Harbor during October. Chauncey selects the *Oneida*, already at Sackets Harbor, as his flagship. Commodore Chauncey, a veteran of the Barbary Coast War, had commanded the USS *John Adams* during that conflict.

**August 9 (Sunday) 1812-In Louisiana**, a violent hurricane rips through New Orleans. The U.S. Navy vessels in port suffer greatly. The USS *Enterprise* is literally blown ashore and the "Shear Hulk *Etna*" is sunk, costing the lives of the sailors and Marines aboard. Another vessel, the brigantine *Viper*, sustains damage but survives. On 31 August, Major Carmick, U.S. Marine, in a letter to Commandant (Lt. Colonel) Franklin Wharton, states that "one gunboat had been lost and two were 'up in the weeds,' that the brig *Siren* was safe-chased into Pass Christian by a British Frigate. She had lost two men, however, one of them a corporal of Marines." During the storm with its ongoing confusion, some Negroes along with Indians, incited by whites, threaten rebellion.

**August 15 (Saturday) 1812-In Florida**, a force of Georgia volunteers and a contingent of U.S. Marines under Colonel Daniel (Neil) Newman arrive at the St. Johns River en route to strike the Lotchway (Seminole) and Alligator Indian strongholds in East Florida.

**August 19 (Wednesday) In Naval Activity**, the 56-gun USS *Constitution*, which sailed from Boston on 2 August, while cruising off Nova Scotia, spots a ship in the distance at about 1400. Captain Isaac Hull issues the order to pursue, and in about one and one-half hours, the distance closes sufficiently to discover that the target is a British frigate. The British, with their usual confidence, adjust their sails to permit the *Constitution* to come into range, while they prepare to engage and dispose of the pursuer. The British, in general, have neither fear nor respect for the young navy of the United States. The *Guerriere* is flying an extra flag, intended to imply its superiority. The words on the flag: "Not the Little Belt." The *Little Belt* had been in a contest with the USS *President* during July 1811.

Earlier, the *Constitution* was described in an English journal as "a bunch of pine boards, under a bit of striped bunting." The *London Courier* had proclaimed the invincibility of the 44-gun *Guerriere* (some reports list 48 guns), the target of the *Constitution*, stating: "There is not a frigate in the American navy able to cope with the *Guerriere*." At this time, neither commander is aware of the identity of his foe; however, British Captain James Richard Dacres is convinced that his opponent is either an American or a French warship. Captain Dacres hands American Captain William Orne, his prisoner, his spyglass and requests his opinion. Orne replies that the ship which is closing fast

is an American frigate, which prompts Dacres to state that he thought it came down too boldly for an American, but soon after added: "The better he behaves, the more honor we shall gain by taking him."

The crewmen on the *Guerriere* prepare for action. To increase the confidence of his men, Captain Dacres has a flag planted on each masthead. Meanwhile, Dacres remains intent to wait for the closing frigate to commence firing before the British guns go into action. At about 1700, while the *Constitution* remains several miles out, Captain Dacres, while speaking to American captain Orne, states: "Captain Orne, as I suppose you do not wish to fight against your own countrymen, you are at liberty to go below the waterline." At that time, Captain Orne leaves the quarter deck and repairs to the cock-pit, unaware of any first-hand knowledge of the battle until after the guns fall silent.

The *Constitution* closes to a distance of about fifty yards before it commences fire. The broadside plows into the *Guerriere* and inflicts devastating damage, including the loss of its mizzen mast. Meanwhile, the British had delivered successive broadsides, but the *Constitution* absorbs the fire without sustaining any damage that prevents the crew from returning fire. Nevertheless, it does not immediately return fire. The British apparently believe the silence is weakness. Their guns continue to catapult broadside after broadside without receiving return fire. Meanwhile, the gunners on the *Constitution* are anxious to get the order to return fire. During this crucial period, one officer informs Captain Hull twice that two men had been killed at their positions while waiting to return fire, but Hull continues to wait for the right moment. It comes shortly after 1700. Suddenly, the guns roar and broadside after broadside is propelled toward the *Guerriere*.

The *Constitution*, carrying a crew of 476 men, including U.S. Marines, while maneuvering to gain a position from where the British could be pummeled with a raking fire, misses the mark and British gunners score a huge hit that ignites a fire in the cabin. Nevertheless, panic is avoided by the actions of Lieutenant B.V. Hoffman. Maintaining a calm demeanor, Hoffman gets the fire extinguished before it spreads. At about the same time, American fire takes out the gun that inflicted the damage. All the while, U.S. Marines who are posted high in the ship's rigging continue to take out British crewmen with their effective musket fire. Within about fifteen minutes, the *Guerriere*, commanded by Captain Dacres, becomes unmanageable after its mizzen mast is severed and the decks riveted with destructive fire. Still, as the two ships become nearly joined and each crew attempts to board the opponent's ship, the Marines maintain incessant fire to pick off potential intruders. During the attempt to board the *Guerriere*, Lt. Bush, a Marine, sustains a mortal wound.

After determining that boarding the *Guerriere* is not possible, Hull orders the *Constitution* to bolt forward. During this maneuver, the *Guerriere*, already badly damaged, is struck by more devastation when its foremast is severed. As it plunges toward the deck, it crashes into the main mast and severs it. Suddenly, British Captain James R. Dacres is the commander of a crippled frigate. The incessant fighting succinctly terminates because the *Guerriere* is totally uncontrollable. The *Guerriere*, the pride of the Royal Navy, lies paralyzed, while the crew of the *Constitution* is able to repair its damages without coming under fire. The scene aboard the *Guerriere* is described by American Captain Orne:

At about six o'clock, when I heard a tremendous explosion from the opposing frigate, the effect of her shot seemed to make the *Guerriere* reel, and tremble as though she had received the shock of an earthquake. Immediately after this, I heard a tremendous crash on deck, and was told the mizzen-mast was shot away. In a few moments afterward, the cock-pit was filled with wounded men. At about half-past six o'clock in the evening, after the firing had ceased, I went on deck, and there

beheld, a scene which it would be difficult to describe: all the *Guerriere's* masts were shot away, and as she had no sails to steady her, she lay rolling like a log in the trough of the sea. Many of the men were employed in throwing the dead overboard. The decks were covered with blood, and had the appearance of a butcher's slaughterhouse; the gun tackles were not made fast, and several of the guns got loose, and were surging to and fro from one side to the other. Some of the petty officers and seamen, after the action, got liquor, and were intoxicated; and what with the groans of the wounded, the noise and confusion of the enraged survivors on board of the ill-fated ship, rendered the whole scene a perfect hell.

Nevertheless, the English colors are still hoisted. Captain Hull, at about 1900, moves back into a position from which he intends to resume firing. However, before the guns return to action, Captain Dacres orders the English colors, which are affixed to the remaining part of the severed mizzenmast, to be lowered. Captain Hull later remarks: "In thirty minutes after we got fairly alongside of the enemy, she surrendered, and had not a spar standing, and her hull, above and below water, so shattered, that a few more broadsides must have carried her down."

Captain Isaac Hull sends a boarding party aboard the *Guerriere* but awaits daylight before taking any further action. The *Guerriere*, however, is not out of danger. Rough seas increase the level of jeopardy, as the ship's hull is taking on water. By the following morning, the *Guerriere's* hull contains about four feet of water and the ship is close to plummeting to the bottom. Captain Hull orders all of his prisoners to be transferred to the *Constitution*. After all of the British crewmen are aboard, the U.S. prize crew departs from the imperiled *Guerriere* and reboards the *Constitution*. When the operation is complete, the *Guerriere* is set afire. Within fifteen minutes, the flames spread to the ship's magazine and in a flash, the explosion blows the *Guerriere* into oblivion, while those aboard the *Constitution* watch its demise.

British Captain Dacres' offers his sword to Captain Hull, who declines. However, Hull quickly states: "But I'll trouble you, Sir, for that hat!" Captain Dacres had earlier boasted that he "could beat any American warship in fifteen minutes of fighting."

The U.S. sustains seven men killed and seven wounded. The deceased are Lt. William S. Bush, a Marine, and six seamen: James Ashford, Robert Brice, John Brown, James Read, Jacob Sago and Caleb Smith. The British aboard the *Guerriere*, with a crew of about 300, according to a report by Captain Dacres, sustains 15 killed and 63 wounded, including Dacres, who was struck in his back. In addition, 24 men are reported missing.

Following the victory, the *Constitution* sails back to Boston and the crew is received with jubilation. Captain Hull and his crew become the guests of Boston at a banquet in their honor. Praise is also showered upon the victors by Congress, which presents Captain Isaac Hull with a gold medal. His officers receive silver medals and in addition, Congress awards \$50,000 in prize money to each member of the crew.

Back in England, when word arrives regarding the defeat of the *Guerriere*, it is received in disbelief. The British initially find it incomprehensible that the *Guerriere* could have been defeated. For Captain Dacres, the son of Vice Admiral James Richard Dacres, there are no parades in his honor; rather he receives a court-martial. The military trial is held on 2 October of this year aboard the HMS *Africa* at Halifax. Vice Admiral Herbert Sawyer presides. At the conclusion of the trial, Captain Dacres is acquitted.

In the meantime, the superlative action of the crew aboard the *Constitution* injects a boost in the morale of the Americans, while in England, the British begin to wonder about their belief that the

Yankee navy is inferior.

In his official after-action report, Captain Isaac Hull states: “It gives me great pleasure to say that, from the smallest boy in the ship to the oldest seaman, not a look of fear was seen. They all went into action giving three cheers, and requesting to be laid close alongside the enemy.”

The *London Times* reports: “It is not merely that an English frigate has been taken, after what we are free to confess may be called a brave resistance, but that it has been taken by a new enemy, an enemy unaccustomed to such triumphs, and likely to be rendered insolent and confident by them. He must be a weak politician who does not see how important the first triumph is, in giving a tone and character to the war. Never before in the history of the world did an English frigate strike to an American and though we cannot say that Captain Dacres, under all circumstances, is punishable for this act, yet we do say there are commanders in the English navy who would a thousand times have rather gone down with their colors flying than have set their brother officers so fatal an example.” The *Guerriere*, thought to be unconquerable, had been destroyed by the *Constitution*, which was described as “a bunch of pine boards, under a bit of striped bunting.” It becomes the undefeated pride of the U.S. Navy, and although it no longer engages any adversaries, the USS *Constitution* becomes better known by the nickname this battle earned it in the U.S., *Old Ironsides*. It is still afloat and on active duty in Boston harbor and still carries a crew, which out of respect for *Old Ironsides* and pride in its service wears uniforms from the War of 1812 era.

**August 21 (Friday) 1812-In Florida**, near St. Augustine, Colonel Thomas A. Smith of the U.S. Army issues orders to Colonel Daniel (Niel) Newman, U.S. Marine Corps, to launch an attack against the hostile Indians in East Florida. At this time, about one-half of his force (250 men including Georgia volunteers and a contingent of U.S. Marines) have become ill. The sickness, which has also struck Newman, delays the push-off.

While making final preparations to launch an attack against the hostile Indians, Newman receives an urgent message from Smith explaining that his (Smith’s) wagons and the escort had been attacked and that he has only 70 troops which are “fit for duty.” Smith orders Newman to move immediately with 90 troops and every available horse and carriage to assist Smith’s command by removing the baggage and artillery, as well as the sick troops. Colonel Newman assembles a contingent, composed of 130 men and 25 horses.

Newman speeds to the aid of Colonel Smith and supports him in a move to a blockhouse at David’s Creek. Nonetheless, Newman’s scheduled attack jump-off is again postponed for several days. However, the string of delays has also caused other complications. The term of enlistment for Newman’s force is nearing expiration, which is endangering the expedition of Newman against the Lotchaway (Seminole) and Alligator Indians. Colonel Smith, aware that Newman’s force has only six or seven days remaining, sends another message to Newman, who had returned to his camp with a request to speak with his command in an effort to persuade the men to extend their service for an additional fifteen to twenty days to prevent the expedition from being aborted.

Colonel Newman, after receiving the request, calls his contingent together and asks that they extend their service by three weeks. The men respond. Eighty-four troops, including officers, step forward to re-enlist and Newman also receives 23 volunteers from Smith’s command, along with nine Patriots under Captain Cone. The expedition resumes on 24 September.

**August 31 (Monday) 1812-In Florida**, Colonel Daniel Newman, U.S. Marine Corps, at New Switzerland Plantation in western St. Johns County, responds to recent letters from Lt. Colonel Thomas A. Smith. He informs Smith that his force is also suffering from illness, leaving him short

of 37 able-bodied troops, and he has also become ill with fever. Colonel Newman tells of their shortage of rations and of his disdain for the contractor, stating: "Had it not been for our own endeavors, we would have been left without anything to eat—in fact, ever since we left the block house the Contractor has been useless to us."

Newman also informs Smith that he did not go to Picolata after learning that all the cattle in the area had been driven away by Captain Cone's contingent. Newman remains concerned because many of the men will be heading home in about four weeks due to the expiration of their enlistments. Meanwhile, Newman still intends to strike the Indians; however, he needs pack horses, and large numbers of troops remain sick, but yet another problem is that no cavalry reinforcements are going to arrive.

**September 11 (Friday)-In Florida**, a contingent of 20 Marines and Georgia militiamen under Captain John Williams and Captain Fort, respectively, are escorting supply wagons from the Patriots Army camp at St. Augustine to the blockhouse at Davis Creek, a distance of about 22 miles. The armed escort (Captain Williams, Captain Fort, four officers and 19 privates) is caught off guard at Twelve Mile Swamp and a heavy skirmish develops when Indians and Negroes under a free black man, Prince, spring their attack during the darkness of night. The convoy is moving without lanterns to avoid being spotted and the drivers are familiar with the routes; however, the incessant fire kills some of the horses, which leads to the path being blocked. Captain Williams becomes wounded at the first burst of fire but refuses to relinquish command. The enemy outnumbers the Americans by about four to one. Nonetheless, neither the Marines nor the militia flee the murderous fire. The attackers move in close with their tomahawks, and the Marines initiate a charge that expeditiously drives the enemy back and opens an opportunity for the Americans to extricate themselves. However, in the meantime, the indomitable Captain Williams has been hit seven more times, forcing him to turn command over to Captain Fort of the Milledgeville militia.

Captain Williams, after the ambush, remains with the wounded and a small guard while he dispatches the remainder of the force to Davis Creek to get reinforcements. On the following day, a contingent arrives. They discover Captain Williams in critical condition but still alive. His "right leg broken, his right hand shot through with three balls, his left arm broken, his left leg shot through, a ball in his left thigh near the groin, and another through the bottom of his belly." In a letter to his commandant, Captain Williams wrote: "You may expect that I am in a dreadful situation, though I yet hope I shall recover in a few months."

The Marines are part of the American force dispatched to East Florida in an attempt to annex the Spanish Territory to prevent Britain from using it as a stepping stone for an invasion. The ambush ends with one Marine being stripped and scalped and six others wounded. This was the first Marine killed in action since the Marines captured Tripoli in the early 1800s. This action soon prompts the end of America's attempt to annex East Florida with armed troops. The Marines learn from the experience and they become more adapted to the tactics of the Indians.

Captain John Williams, the commanding officer, having been mortally wounded, dies on 29 September. Captain Williams becomes the first Marine Corps officer killed in action since the American Revolution.

Marines will hook up with Army troops during February of 1813 to destroy two Indian villages. Captain Williams is initially interred at Christ Church; later his remains are re-interred at Arlington National Cemetery. Also, there is some confusion with the date of the ambush. The Marine Corps Historical Division lists it as 11 September and other sources give the date as 12 September.

**September 24 (Thursday) 1812-In Florida,** Colonel Daniel Newman, U.S. Marine Corps, departs from his camp along the St. Johns River to strike the hostile Lotchaw, Seminole and Alligator Indians in Spanish East Florida. However, due to the expiration of the force's terms of enlistment, his manpower is reduced from 250 troops to only 117. Newman later states in his report: "I was determined to proceed to the nation and give those merciless savages, at least, one battle; and I was emboldened in this determination, by the strong expectation of being succored by a body of cavalry, from St. Mary's [Florida]; and which, it has since appeared, did assemble at Colerain, but proceeded no further."

The column advances from Colerain on this day, the 24th. Captain Humphrey's company of riflemen is at the front of the column, but it trails a small vanguard, followed by Lt. Fanuir's company and Captain Coleman's company. The rear of the column is held by a contingent under Lt. Broadnax and similarly to the front of the column, a small guard trails it. On the fourth day out, the 27th, contact is made with the enemy.

**September 27 (Sunday) 1812-In Florida,** an American contingent composed of volunteers and a detachment of Marines under Colonel Niel Newman are en route to attack the towns of the Lotchway (Seminole) and Alligator Indians. At about 1200, the force fords the St. Johns River at Picolata and advances toward Payne's Town. Less than ten miles from the objective at a point near the Great Allachua Savannah (later Lake Levy) and Lake Pithlachocoo (later Newman's Lake), the column comes under attack by about 150 Indians led by Chief Payne and Chief Bowlegs when the two sides are about 130 yards apart. The Americans push the Indians back more than one mile to the beginning of a swamp. The skirmish continues for about two hours, and during the opening of the contest, Payne and a few other Indians are slain, while the Americans lose one man killed. During the tenacious skirmish, the Indians attempt to turn the flanks of Newman's lines, but it is tried without success.

The Americans, despite being hit by surprise, hold formidable positions. Their left is protected by a swamp and their right is protected by a pond. Meanwhile, the center of the line contains fallen pine trees that provide excellent protection. After about two hours, the Americans appear to be retreating; however, it is ruse. Suddenly the Indians, having been reinforced, reinitiate the battle about one-half hour before dusk. The Indians and their Negro allies seemingly in unison begin to yell as a number of chiefs lead the attack under the howls that imitate the various noises of the animals that inhabit the woods. At a point about 200 yards from the column, the charge comes to a halt and the column comes under a hurricane of fire.

The Americans, as ordered, retain their discipline and remain perfectly silent and prepared to fire from their positions behind fallen logs and standing trees. The enemy suspects the silence to have been inflicted by fear, which encourages them to advance. The advance encounters a wall of effective fire created by the silent riflemen. The powerful barrage instantly causes the Indians to retreat back to their original positions by the swamp. Newman holds off ordering a charge because he had, by this time, sent about half of his force back to the camp to protect it. The Indians, despite their superior numbers, fail to dislodge Newman's command, which maintains its positions and repels repeated assaults until 2000, when the Indians and Negroes are totally repulsed.

By daylight on the following day, Newman's lines are intact. The force had sustained two killed and one wounded. During the following two days (28th–29th), the Indians remain concealed; however, Newman had in the meantime built breastworks with port holes added. By the night of the 30th, the fortification comes under fire; however, the enemy remains far from close range. Nonetheless, the

incoming fire inflicts neither harm nor injuries. Newman's command, however, still faces perilous times. The surgeon accompanied a party that returned to the camp and the provisions had reached critical levels while waiting for a relief force.

Meanwhile, Newman refuses to move out of the breastworks due to the high probability that the Indians had received reinforcements from St. Augustine or from the Makasukie tribe. The original force was accompanied by twelve horses, and rather than risk tragedy by leaving their fortification, one of the horses is slain for food. During the siege, Newman is informed that one of his companies is losing its spirit and is preparing to depart from the breastworks, and the officers also inform him that some of the men have given up hope that a relief party will arrive. Those troops are ready to begin deserting Newman to avoid death or capture by the Indians and Negroes.

All the while, Newman is also burdened by an increasing number of sick troops, which is adding to the mounting peril. Newman concludes that he must break out and make it back to the camp at the St. Johns River.

At about 2100 under the cover of darkness, Newman begins to abandon the breastworks. Five of his men are carried on litters and another few require help to make the march. After traveling about eight miles, the entire contingent has reached the point of complete exhaustion, making it impossible to continue to carry the wounded. To further complicate matters, a 25-man mounted relief force arrived with provisions and ammunition; however, they traveled on a separate road. Rather than attempt to catch up with Newman's contingent, the relief force turns back and returns to St. Johns. Colonel Newman dispatches Sergeant Major Reese to Picolata to discover what occurred to keep the supplies from reaching his command, while he remains in place; however, the mood of his forlorn troops compels him to resume the march at 1500. By this time, Newman has become one of the sick and his fever makes walking extremely difficult. After struggling to advance about five miles, the vanguard discovers Indians to the front. At nearly the same time, four men are shot. One man dies instantly and two others are fatally wounded. Colonel Newman, not intending to offer his troops as sacrifice to the enemy, orders a detachment to charge at the first sounds of the guns. The Indians are reluctant to stand and fight, giving Newman's fatigued troops an unexpected advantage. After about fifteen minutes, the Indians are soundly defeated. Many of the attacking force drop their weapons before they scatter. The victory does little to rejuvenate the troops; however, the flight of the Indians does permit the troops to get some rest. Camp is established and once again, breastworks are built to provide protection if the enemy returns. On the following day, the column moves out at 1000 and advances about five more miles without incident. A new camp is established and in the meantime, the situation remains critical. Colonel Newman, in his report, says his men were "living upon gophers, alligators and Palmetto stocks."

The Indians do not reappear, but morale improves when Sergeant Major Reese arrives with the provisions and fourteen horses. Afterward, Colonel Newman's force completes its journey to the St. Johns River, where a gunboat is awaiting the arrival of the beleaguered column. The troops are transported to Colonel Thomas Smith's encampment, where they receive excellent care.

In Colonel Newman's report to Georgia's governor, David B. Mitchell, he estimates the enemy's losses: "The number of Indians, in the first engagement, from every circumstance that appeared, must have been from 75 to 100. In the second engagement, their number must have been double our's; and, in the third engagement, there appeared to be 50, which was nearly equal to our force, deducting sick and wounded. I believe the loss of the enemy was fifty."

**October 6 (Tuesday) 1812-In New York, Captain Isaac Chauncey arrives at Sackets Harbor. He**

is acting under orders to form a fleet. The USS *Oneida* under Commander Woolsey and the schooner *Julia* are there at the time of his arrival. Chauncey's fleet, built around the *Oneida*, includes other schooners—*Conquest*, *Fair American*, *Growler*, *Pert*, *Scourge*, *Governor Tompkins*, and *Hamilton*—which are armed with swivel guns at Sackets Harbor. Chauncey's party also includes about 100 sailors, including officers and about 40 ships' carpenters.

The fleet will carry 40 guns and about 430 men, including U.S. Marines. After he completes the task of readying his fleet, Captain Chauncey prepares to attack the batteries at Kingston (Canada), along with the HMS *Royal George* and other British vessels that operate on the lakes. The *Governor Tompkins*, until its purchase this month at Oswego, had been the merchant ship, *Charles and Ann*. It is named in honor of Daniel D. Tompkins, governor of New York (1807, 1810, 1813 and 1816) and later 6th vice president of the United States (1817–1825, under President James Monroe).

**October 16 (Friday) 1812-In Washington, D.C.**, the commandant of the Marine Corps, unaware of the recent death of Captain John Williams at Twelve Mile Swamp, Florida, directs Lt. Alexander Sevier, who is on leave from Williams' command, to repair to St. Mary's, Georgia, and from there he is to report to Captain Williams at the camp of Colonel Smith, U.S. Army, or in his absence to report to Colonel Smith. Sevier is to take command of the Marines during the absence of Williams. Nevertheless, after word of the death of Williams reaches Washington, Sevier's orders are changed. On 19 October, new orders are cut. The commandant's letter states: "The official report of the death of Williams was received. You must now consider yourself as the officer detailed under the orders of the Department to receive the Command, late Williams, of the Marines, and will so proceed to the Camp near St. Augustine and report to Colonel Smith."

**November 8 (Sunday) 1812-In New York**, Captain Isaac Chauncey, having recently put his squadron together at Sackets Harbor, departs from there to cruise on Lake Ontario in search of the British squadron, including the HMS *Royal George*. The *Royal George* (260-man crew) is en route from Fort George to Kingston, Canada. It is accompanied by the 18-gun *Earl of Moira* (200-man crew), and the schooners 18-gun *Prince Regent* (150-man crew), 14-gun *Duke of Gloucester* (80-man crew), 12-gun *Simcoe* (76-man crew) and the 4-gun *Seneca* (40-man crew). Commodore Chauncey's squadron includes the *Oneida* (Lt. Woolsey), *Conquest* (Lt. Elliot), *Hamilton* (Lt. McPherson), *Governor Tompkins* (Lt. Brown), *Pert* (sailing master Arundel), *Julia* (sailing master Trant), and *Growler* (sailing master Mix). Commodore Chauncey's squadron carries a total of forty guns and the combined crews total 430 men, including Marine contingents.

The British warship is detected off False Duck Island during the afternoon. A chase ensues; however, the *Royal George* manages to enter the Bay of Quinte and under cover of darkness it evades the American squadron. Nonetheless, contact is again made on the following day.

**December 29–30 1812-In Naval Activity**, the USS *Constitution*, commanded by Captain William Bainbridge, while operating off the coast of Brazil, encounters two unidentified vessels. Bainbridge notes in his journal:

"At nine, A.M. [29th], discovered two strange sails on the weather bow. At ten, discovered the strange sails to be ships; one of them stood in for the land—the other stood offshore, in a direction toward us. At forty-five minutes past ten, A.M., we tacked ship to the northward and westward, and stood for the sail standing toward us. At eleven, A.M., tacked to the southward and eastward—hailed up the mainsail, and took in the royals. At thirty minutes past eleven, made the private signal for the day, which was not answered, and then set the mainsail and royals, to draw the strange sail off from the neutral coast, and separate her from the sail in company."

Bainbridge doesn't know it yet, but the unidentified vessel is a British warship, the 38-gun HMS *Java*, which is transporting General Thomas Hislop and some other officers, including his staff, to the East Indies. On the 30th, Bainbridge discovers the ship's origin. He notes in his journal:

At twenty-six minutes past one, p.m., being sufficiently from the land, and finding the ship to be an English frigate, took in the mainsail and royals, tacked ship, and stood for the enemy. At fifty minutes past one, P.M., the enemy bore down with an intention of raking us, which we avoided by wearing. At two, P.M., the enemy being within half a mile of us, and to windward, and having hauled down his colours, except the union Jack, at the mizenmast head, induced me to give orders to the officer of the third division, to fire a gun ahead of the enemy, to make him show his colours, which being done, brought on a fire from us of the whole broadside, on which the enemy hoisted his colours, It immediately returned our fire. A general action, grape then commenced.

The British warship under Captain Henry Lambert initially is bolstered by the winds; however, at about 1350, when the encounter turns violent, the two vessels exchange heavy fire. The *Java* maneuvers to gain a position from which to pound the bow of the *Constitution*; however, the *Constitution*'s movements foil the maneuver. Nonetheless, the *Java* persists and continues to gain an advantage to rake the Americans. After about thirty minutes of vicious fighting the wheel of the *Constitution* is destroyed, which severely affects the ship's steering; still the *Constitution* prevents the *Java* from properly positioning itself. By this time the *Java* loses the advantage, as the *Constitution* rakes it with a hurricane of fire.

During the fighting at close-quarters, at 1450, the jibboom of the *Java* becomes entangled with the *Constitution*'s mizzen rigging, making it impossible to break away. It also prevents the British from their attempt to board. Within ten minutes the gunners aboard the *Constitution* sever the *Java*'s bowsprit and jibboom; however, the fire does not slacken, and by 1505, the *Java*, which is undergoing a devastating pounding, loses its foremast. All the while during this violent combat, Marine sharpshooters positioned in the *Constitution*'s main topmast pick off some in the boarding party, including Captain Lambert, who sustains a mortal wound. Lieutenant Chadds assumes command of the battered vessel; however, the *Java* receives no reprieve. It remains under incessant fire from the guns of the *Constitution* and the punishment continues unabated.

Afterward, for a short period, the two antagonists become separated, but only momentarily. As they come back alongside of one another broadsides are catapulted by both vessels at about 1540. When the smoke clears, it becomes evident that the *Java* sustains the heaviest of the damage, having had its mizzen mast blasted away, leaving it with only its main mast. By 1555, the British guns fall silent and Bainbridge, still in command despite a severe wound to his thigh, sees no colors flying. He pulls back to make repairs.

After the *Constitution* completes repairs, it bolts forward and prepares to pound the bow of the *Java* at 1725. Nevertheless, before Bainbridge can complete the total destruction, the British lower the colors. After the tenacious duel which had lasted just under two hours, the *Java* becomes the prize of the Americans, delivering yet another unexpected blow to the Royal Navy.

Captain Bainbridge soon discovers that the prize is unsalvageable. For a while, he ponders whether to tow the *Java* to port at Bahia in Brazil, but aware that the Brazilians are pro-English, he orders it to be sunk. Within a couple of days, the Americans, after transferring their prisoners to the *Constitution*, destroy the *Java*.

Subsequent to the striking of the colors, Captain Bainbridge sends Lt. Parker in one of only two remaining boats to claim the prize, which the Americans discover is the HMS *Java*, commanded by

Captain Lambert, who had been mortally wounded. After boarding the *Java*, Parker is unable to get an accurate account of the ship's complement due to the reluctance of the officers to provide true numbers. Nonetheless, at 1900, Parker's party returns to the *Constitution* and brings British officers, including 1st Lt. Chads, Lt. General Hislop (governor of Bombay), Major Walker, and Captain Wood. Captain Lambert's wound had been too severe, preventing any attempt to transfer him to the *Constitution*. Later, the Americans return to the *Java* to transfer the prisoners, including Captain Marshall of the Royal Navy, who had been en route to the East Indies. General Hislop and his staff had been en route to Bombay.

Captain Bainbridge, despite two wounds—a musket ball in his hip and a fragment of langrange in the thigh—refuses to leave the deck even after the victory. He does not retire from the deck until 2300. The langrange remains in Bainbridge's thigh for some days and symptoms of tetanus emerge; however, the ship's surgeon, Doctor Evans, brings him back to excellent health.

Through the good fortune of the capture, Captain Bainbridge seizes dispatches that are addressed to officials at St. Helena, the Cape of Good Hope, as well as every post or station in India and the China Seas. Captain Bainbridge notes in his journal some other items gained: "There was copper for a seventy-four, and two brigs, building at Bombay, and a great many other valuables, but every thing was blown up in her, except the officers' baggage."

Also during the ordeal, after British Captain Lambert had been transferred to the *Constitution*, Captain Bainbridge, himself wounded and assisted by two of his officers, stopped by Lambert's cot on the quarterdeck. Bainbridge returned Lambert's sidearms and said: "I return your sword, my dear sir, with my sincerest wish that you will recover, and wear it as you have hitherto done, with honour to yourself and country."

Exact numbers of British casualties are never determined. Estimates vary from 22 killed and 101 wounded (about 25 percent of the men on board, including those with General Hislop) and from there the numbers rise. Captain Bainbridge reports that 60 of the British had been killed. In addition, about 100 British are wounded. The Americans sustain 9 killed and 21 wounded, including Captain Bainbridge. Also, on the 29th Lieutenant Aylwin dies of his wounds. John Cheever, a sailor from Marblehead, who himself is wounded, is lying next to a dead seaman. He hears that the British had struck their colors and finds the strength to raise himself up by his left hand, gives three rousing cheers and then expires. Before departing from the area, Captain Bainbridge sails into the harbor at Bahia, Brazil, and releases his prisoners on parole. The *Hornet* is there to greet the crew of the *Constitution*, and it remains in place to blockade the HMS *Bonne Citoyenne*.

On 3 January 1813 at St. (San) Salvador, Bainbridge writes to Secretary of the Navy Paul Hamilton regarding casualties: "The action lasted 1 hour and 55 minutes, in which time the enemy was completely dismasted, not having a spar of any kind standing. The loss on board the *Constitution*, was 9 killed and 25 wounded, as per enclosed list. The enemy had 60 killed, and 101 wounded, certainly; (among the latter, Capt. Lambert, mortally,) but, by the enclosed letter, written on board this ship, (by one of the officers of the *Java*,) and accidentally found, it is evident that the enemy's wounded must have been much greater than as above stated, and who must have died of their wounds, previously to their being removed—the letter states, 60 killed, and 170 wounded."

While at San Salvador, Captain Bainbridge releases all of the crew and others (about 100 supernumerary officers and sailors en route to the East Indies) aboard the *Java*. They are paroled and transported back to England, where they are to remain until exchanged.

Back in London, once the news of a third major naval loss arrives, the *Times* reacts with the

following:

“The public will learn, with sentiments which we shall not presume to anticipate, that a third British frigate has struck to an American.... This is an occurrence that calls for serious reflection—this and the fact stated in our paper of yesterday, that Lloyd’s list contains notices of upward of five hundred British vessels captured in seven months by the Americans. Five hundred merchantmen and three frigates! Can these statements be true? And can the English people hear them unmoved? Any one who had predicted such a result of an American war this time last year would have been treated as a madman or a traitor. He would have been told, if his opponents had condescended to argue with him, that long ere seven months had elapsed the American flag would have been swept from the seas, the contemptible navy of the United States annihilated, and their marine arsenals rendered a heap of ruins. Yet down to this moment not a single American frigate has struck her flag.”

The USS *Constitution* arrives at Boston during February 1813. The Bostonians greet Captain Bainbridge and the crew in similar fashion as Captains Hull and Stephen Decatur had earlier received from other cheering Americans. Congress later presents Captain Bainbridge and his officers similar medals, and it authorizes \$50,000 in prize money for the crew.

Back in England, the successive defeats have still not convinced the British to give credit to the naval skills of the Americans. The British, including later historians, seem to lean toward discovering new reasons and theories to rationalize the embarrassing defeats rather than recognize that the U.S. Navy had gained their successes through skilled seamanship and the quality of the American gunners.

The most often used defense for the British losses are accusations that the Americans would list a vessel as a frigate, although it is actually carrying 74 guns, along with a claim that the British crews had been undermanned and primarily unseasoned.

General Winfield Scott, while attending dinner in London, encounters a young British naval officer who inquires of Scott whether the Americans have “continued to build a line-of-battle ships, and to call them frigates.” General Scott retorts: “We have borrowed a great many excellent things from the mother country, and some that discredit both parties. Among the latter is the practice in question. Thus when you took from France the *Guerriere*, she mounted forty-nine guns, and you instantly rated her on your list a thirty-six-gun frigate, but when we captured her from you, we found on board the same number, forty-nine guns.”

Some prominent Englishmen had not discounted the validity of the U.S. Navy, and among them is Admiral Lord Nelson. While observing a U.S. squadron under Captain Richard Dale in the bay of Gibraltar, it was reported that while in conversation with an American who was aboard his flagship, Nelson made an observation that “there was in those transatlantic ships a nucleus of trouble for the maritime power of Great Britain. We have nothing to fear from anything on this side of the Atlantic; but the manner in which those ships [American] are handled makes me think that there may be a time when we shall have trouble from the other (side of the Atlantic).”

As the year closes out, the U.S. Navy and the American privateers have carved a remarkable record against the British. Since the war began the previous June, the Americans defeated more than 50 armed vessels and captured about 250 merchant ships. During that same period, several thousand British subjects were captured. The British, unaccustomed to defeat on the high seas, have difficulty accepting that the U.S. Navy has in six months proven to be a formidable force that eagerly challenges the British for superiority.

In other naval activity, the USS *Essex*, off Rio de Janeiro, Brazil, encounters the British schooner

*Elizabeth* and successfully engages and captures it.

**February 1813-In Naval Activity**, Captain David Porter, U.S. Navy, who failed to hook up with Commodore Bainbridge, alters his plans and sails toward Chile in the Pacific in search of British whalers. The ship experiences inclement weather and tumultuous seas as it rounds Cape Horn. On his day Porter's ship nearly sinks from heavy damage and high seas. He notes in his report: "But the wind freshened up to a gale, and by noon had reduced us to our storm stay-sail and close-reefed maintop-sail. In the afternoon it hauled around to the westward, and blew with a fury far exceeding anything we had yet experienced, bringing with it such a tremendous sea as to threaten us every moment with destruction." Porter also notes "our pumps had become choked by the shingle ballast, which, from the violent rolling of the ship, had got into them, and the sea had increased to such a height as to threaten to swallow us at every instant. The whole ocean was one continual foam of breakers, and the heaviest squall that I ever experienced had not equaled in violence the most moderate intervals of this tremendous hurricane." Porter falls three times and is injured during the harrowing fight against the sea.

On 3 February, the *Essex* continues to encounter horrific weather. Porter states: "We had shipped several heavy seas, that would have proved destructive to almost any other ship. About three o'clock of the morning of the 3d, the watch only being on deck, an enormous sea broke over the ship, and for an instant destroyed every hope. Our gun-deck ports were burst in, both boats on the quarter stove, our spare spars washed from the chains, our head-rails washed away, and hammock stanchions burst in,—and the ship perfectly deluged and water-logged. Immediately after this tremendous shock, which threw the crew into consternation, the gale began to abate, and in the morning we were enabled to set our reefed foresail."

During the struggle to remain afloat, Lewis Price, a U.S. Marine, dies. He is buried at sea; however, the crew is not permitted to be on deck due to fears that the weight of the men would cause the ship to overturn. The seas finally relent and the *Essex* arrives at Valparaiso during March. Commodore Bainbridge, who was operating off Brazil, returns to Boston this month due to the severe damage sustained while defeating the USS *Java*.

**February 9 (Tuesday) 1813-Florida**, American troops, including men from the army and a Marine Corps contingent (led by Lt. Sevier), commanded by Colonel Newman, are engaged in destroying the Indian strongholds of East Florida. The Indian village of Payne is struck and ruined on this day. The next day, the column moves to Bowlegs, and it too is reduced.

**February 13 (Saturday) 1813-Naval activity**, the USS *Essex*, under Captain David Porter, arrives about 35 miles from Cape St. John's, the eastern section of Staten Island; however, visibility is limited to about one mile. The weather worsens as the day passes and for a while, it is feared that the ship might be lost. Nevertheless, Captain Porter takes every precaution and by 1830, realizes that safety is not yet assured. He is very close to the breakers but knows "with the hope of weathering them, that we had not room to wear; there was a tremendous sea running, the ship driving fore-castle under; no chance of weathering the land, which could now be seen." He relates that the "only hope of safety was in getting the ship in stays; the mainsail was set with the utmost expedition, and we were so fortunate as to succeed: after getting the ship about, the jib and spauker were set, and the top-gallant yards sent down; but, in a few moments, the jib was blown to pieces." Nonetheless, the current changes, the seas calm and suddenly whales begin to come alongside of the *Essex*. Shortly thereafter land is sighted about one mile distant.

By the 14th, the weather clears sufficiently to enable the crew to see the horizon, but great dangers

continue to lurk. At Cape Horn, the weather again worsens, but despite the heavy seas and horrific winds that nearly destroy the ship, again it escapes disaster. On the 18th, with no land in sight, torrential rains and high winds strike. Day after day, the ship remains imperiled, then on 1 March even worse weather descends on the area. For three days, the ship is pummeled by the sea and the winds without mercy. Captain Porter is among those who sustain injuries during the nightmarish encounter. He is tossed several times as if he were a rag doll and the falls incapacitate him, making it impossible for him to go up to the deck.

During the early morning of the 3rd, shock strikes the *Essex* when a monstrous wave or possibly waves breaks over it, bringing instant thoughts of disaster upon the crew. Initially, hope for survival is lost, but only temporarily; the *Essex*, seemingly having a protective shield over it, remains afloat despite the powerful blow. Captain Porter describes the harrowing moments: “Our gun-deck ports were burst in; both boats on the quarters stove; our spars washed from the chains; our head-rails washed away, hammock-taunchions burst in, and the ship perfectly deluged and water-logged, immediately after this tremendous shock.” The force of the wave had also created additional panic when one of the British prisoners from the vessel *Nocton* proclaimed that “the broadside was stove in, and that she was sinking.”

During the night, a Marine, Lewis Price, having been long on the sick list due to a problem with his lungs, expires. He is given a burial at sea. The crew is not allowed to attend the ceremony due to the violent seas and the fear that their weight on the deck during the precarious circumstances could cause the ship to overturn. Once the *Essex* regains its stability, Captain Porter rewards the sailors at the wheel for their courage, particularly while the prisoner’s false rumor had inflicted much fear in some of those unaware of the true situation. The individuals are promoted up one rank, however, others who failed to uphold the standards of Porter during the crisis are, as Porter related, “rebuked.”

**April 12 1813**-Lt. John Brooks, U.S. Marine Corps, departs from Washington with a small party composed of “a sergeant, two corporals, two privates, a fifer, and a drummer.” Brooks is en route to Erie, Pennsylvania, to enlist Marines to bolster Commodore Perry’s force on Lake Erie. While en route, some Marines are enlisted, and after reaching Pittsburgh, Lt. Brooks remains there for a while, but he sends Sergeant James McClure, also a Marine, to continue to Erie to report to Commodore Perry. On 18 May, Brooks arrives with his detachment of only 18 Marines. Later more men are recruited and the Marines also receive some Kentucky volunteers who are dubbed “Horse Marines” by the sailors.

**April 15 (Thursday) 1813-In Alabama**, Spanish Fort Carlotta (formerly Fort Charlotte under the British) at Mobile is attacked by about 600 troops under General James Wilkinson. The force had been transported by Commodore Shaw’s squadron, which sailed from New Orleans on 29 March. The U.S. Army is bolstered by U.S. Navy gunboats with Marine units aboard. After landing, apparently during the night of the 14th-15th, the Americans prepare to seize the post. At about noon on the 15th, while the Americans are deployed in the woods to the immediate front of the fort, General Wilkinson dispatches his aide-de-camp, Major Pierre, to issue the ultimatum to surrender. The Spanish had known the Americans were close by because they were able to hear their drums while Mobile was seized.

The Spanish governor, Don Gayetano (Coyeltano) Perez, agrees to capitulate and the fort is gained without a fight. The Americans quickly hoist the American flag and soon discard the French name Carlotta in favor of Fort Charlotte, the previous name when the British received it from the Spanish

during 1763. The Spanish post had been armed with 62 artillery pieces. The governor and the garrison are transported to Pensacola by U.S. transports. Militia under Colonel John Bowyer participate.

Also, Wilkinson dispatches a contingent with nine pieces of artillery to Mobile Point, where a battery is established. Meanwhile, Wilkinson moves to the west bank of the Perdido River to instill fear into the Indians who have been incited by the Spanish to initiate hostilities against Americans. At a point along the road to Pensacola, Bowyer is ordered to construct a stockade on the west bank of the river; however, it is later abandoned. Two days later, on the 17th, the Americans seize a minor Spanish post on the Perdido River. The detachment there, one sergeant and seven troops, repair to Pensacola. Nevertheless, Wilkinson moves back to Mobile. Captain Chamberlain is dispatched to Mobile Point with instructions to erect a fort, which is completed in about two years. The post is named Fort Bowyer. General Jackson's force was in Natchez and was unable to participate in the victory.

Fort Charlotte is subsequently named Fort Mobile. It remains active until 1819. The French had initially established Fort Conde here during 1711, when Mobile was the capital of French Louisiana. At this time, there is no Spanish minister to the United States who is recognized and there is no American minister in Spain. Meanwhile in Spain there is a contest for power between Ferdinand VII and Joseph Bonaparte. Ferdinand VII, the son of Charles IV (renounced his throne to Napoleon) and Queen Maria Louisa, had been imprisoned in France by Napoleon, who raised his brother Joseph to the throne of Spain during the Peninsular War.

**April 29 (Thursday) 1813-In Naval Activity**, the USS *Essex*, in the Pacific off South America, dispatches a contingent of sailors and Marines in assault boats to capture the HMS *Montezuma*. The vessel is boarded and captured. Also this day, the *Essex* seizes the British vessel *Essex Junior* (formerly a whaler, the *Atlantic*) off the Galapagos Islands. The *Essex Jr.* is afterward transformed into a U.S. cruiser under the command of Commander John Downes.

**May 13 (Thursday) 1813-In Florida**, on or about this day, the remaining American troops at Fernandina evacuate the post. The Marines under Plan of operations at the mouth of the Niagara River. Lt. Sevier number only 49 men. The Marines accompany the army during the move to Point Peter, Georgia. Upon his arrival, General Pinckney had become so impressed with Sevier's handling of the artillery (two guns), he orders him to remain with the southern army. Nonetheless, Pinckney is soon disappointed when Sevier receives orders from Secretary of the Navy Jones to move with his entire detachment to Beaufort, South Carolina, and from there to Norfolk.

**May 28 Friday 1813-In Naval Activity**, the HMS *Victorious* and other warships of the Chesapeake blockading squadron seize the schooner *Nancy*. Other vessels of the same name captured are: a ship, 17 August 1812; a schooner, 28 June 1813; a sloop, 28 July 1814; a brigantine, about 1–18 September 1814; and a brigantine, 13 September 1814.

In other naval activity, lookouts on the *Essex* spot a hostile sail. At the time of detection, the *Essex* is towing the *Montezuma*, a prize. Nevertheless, Captain Porter leaves the *Montezuma* and gives chase. By about dusk, the prey remains in the lead and Captain David Porter concentrates on not losing it. He dispatches a contingent under Lieutenant Wilmer to head back to the *Montezuma* in three fast-moving boats.

Once there, Wilmer is to take the command of three of the *Montezuma*'s boats and proceed to a point astern of the unidentified vessel from where he can dispatch a message to the *Montezuma*, which will be forwarded to the *Essex*. Porter, intent on taking the vessel by surprise, orders Wilmer not to

attack unless “it is perfectly calm.” He also instructs Wilmer that the boarding party carries “no other arms than a pistol, cutlass, and boarding-axe, each.” Soon after, the *Essex*, flying English colors, pulls alongside of the vessel (letter of marque *Atlantic*) and the captain is ordered to come aboard the *Essex*. At the same time, the *Essex* spots yet another unidentified sail.

Meanwhile, the *Montezuma* moves up to the *Essex* and a contingent under Lieutenant McKnight is placed on the *Atlantic*, with Captain Porter aboard. The *Atlantic* loses sight of the vessel after dark, but only temporarily. Porter has “night-glasses,” which permits him to relocate the vessel, which is convinced it is safe in the darkness. The ship is seized and identified as the 10-gun letter of marque *Greenwich*. Obadiah Wier, the captain of the *Atlantic*, is an American out of Nantucket, and upon his entrance onto the *Essex*, he is pleased to state that he is happy to meet a British frigate, unaware that the British ensign is a ruse. Captain Porter remains extraordinarily congenial, while Captain Wier proclaims his ability to evade American privateers.

Captain Porter also listens attentively as Wier tells him that he had no second thoughts on his activity, because “although he was born in America, he was an Englishman at heart.” Meanwhile, Captain Porter, while outwardly expressing great interest in Wier’s tales and pretending to have great empathy, permits Wier to continue talking freely. Captain Wier’s confidence eventually deflates in conjunction with the disappearance of his British security blanket after Captain Porter caps the informative discussion by having Wier introduced to two other reluctant guests aboard the *Essex*, British captains of the *Montezuma* and the *Georgiana*.

Captain Porter begins to assess his circumstances regarding the increase of prisoners as well as additional vessels. One of his more pleasant surprises occurs when he is informed that the *Atlantic* is carrying the item most needed by the Americans, fresh water. The *Atlantic* is carrying 100,000 tons of water. The *Essex* also, thanks to its prizes, accumulates a bonanza of provisions capable of serving each of the crews of Porter’s flotilla for one month. At this time the following vessels are with Porter and the prizes are manned by volunteers: the 46-gun *Essex*, the 16-gun *Georgiana*, the 6-gun *Atlantic*, the 10-gun *Greenwich*, the 2-gun *Montezuma*, and the *Policy*, which carries no guns. The prisoners, numbering 80, are spit into small groups and distributed among the flotilla’s vessels. The Americans, excluding one midshipman and six men aboard another vessel, the *Barclay*, number 333 men. Captain Porter places a U.S. Marine officer, Lt. Gamble, in command of the *Greenwich*. Porter, however, aware of Lt. Gamble’s inexperience, appoints two skilled seamen as mates. Also, the British prisoners are given freedom of movement, as long as they contribute to the work. They do, and even when they go ashore at Charles Island, none desert.

**May 28–29 BATTLE OF SACKETS HARBOR 1813**—In New York, a British fleet arrives off Sackets Harbor from Kingston, Canada, from where it sailed on the 27th, coincidentally, the day that the Americans seized York. It includes the 24-gun HMS *Wolf*, 24-gun HMS *Royal George*, 18-gun HMS *Earl Moria*, HMS *Prince Regent*, a brigantine, two schooners and two flat-bottomed gunboats, commanded by Sir James Lucas Yeo.

The American post there has been a consistent threat, particularly since it has become a station for Captain Chauncey’s fleet and a large naval supply depot. The fleet is transporting an expeditionary force estimated by the Americans at about 1,300 men, including Indians under General George Prevost. British sources place the number at about 750 men and the units they name are a grenadier company of the 100th regiment, a contingent of the Royal Scots, two companies of the 8th Regiment, four companies of the 104th Regiment, one company of the Glendarry Regiment, two companies of the Canadian Voltigeurs and a contingent of the Royal Newfoundland Regiment.

The launching of the assault is timed to the absence of Captain Chauncey's fleet, which has transported General Dearborn's force to the west end of Lake Erie to attack British-held Fort George at the mouth of the Niagara River in Canada. The fleet is sighted by about noon on the 28th by the *Lady of the Lake*. Lt. Wolcott Chauncey, the brother of Captain Isaac Chauncey, returns to the harbor and fires the pre-approved signal to sound the alarm. Meanwhile, the Americans on shore begin preparation for raising a stiff defense. Shortly thereafter it becomes evident that the landing craft are about to move to shore, and then suddenly all the troops aboard the boats are recalled to the surprise of the men, particularly the Indians, who become frustrated with the aborted landing. The fleet then begins to retire. No explanation for the recall ever emerges.

While the British initiate their retirement, nearly twenty boats transporting American reinforcements are observed as they approach the south shore. The sight of the reinforcements gives the Indians a reason to ignore the order to reboard the ships. Instead, they begin to row toward the boats to strike the reinforcements. The action complicates the fleet's withdrawal. An order is given to reverse course to provide support for the impetuous Indians. Nonetheless, while the ships maneuver to get back in proper positioning, the Indians reach shore and barely miss a struggle. They seize twelve of the boats but none of the troops, who safely make into some woods. Nevertheless, some English historians claim the Indians capture about 70 dragoons who surrender under a white flag. The remaining seven boats arrive in the harbor uninterrupted. The boldness on the part of the Indians affects the thinking of General George Prevost, who countermands his previous order to abort the attack and decides to resume the operation and land his force.

By the time the second phase begins, the Americans remain poised to meet the invaders. In addition to the volunteers from Oswego, General Brown had arrived on scene during the early morning with about 500 militia, bolstering the diminutive command of Lt. Colonel Electus Backus' regulars. Brown confers with Colonel Backus and Lt. Chauncey on how to best defend the town. The slim number of artillerymen is deployed at Fort Tompkins and Fort Volunteer, while Lt. Chauncey concentrates on supporting and fortifying Navy Point, where he is in command of the guns. General Brown deploys the militia where he expects the British to land, Horse Island, just west of the village of Sackets Harbor. The regulars are deployed near their encampment and other volunteers, augmented by one artillery piece, are posted to the right of the militia. Nonetheless, the remainder of the day passes without a major landing.

During the night (28th-29th), however, a detachment of about 40 Indians under British Lt. Anderson disembark on the mainland at Henderson Bay with orders to strike the militia from the rear. Before dawn, the militia is ordered to withdraw from the island and redeploy on the opposite shore. The militia, about 400 strong under Colonel Mills (Albany volunteers), redeploy on shore opposite the island and their orders mandate that fire must be held until the British are within pistol shot. Meanwhile, other militia deploy in the woods, and nearby, the dragoons under Colonel Backus hold at the woods that adjoin the town. Backus' orders direct him to await the landing of the British, and at that instant rush toward Horse Island. Another force under Colonel Aspinwall holds the ground to the left of Backus' dragoons. Brown's one artillery piece is anchored at Fort Tompkins.

On the following morning (29th), General Prevost signals the attack; however, due to the calmness of the wind, the ships are prevented from moving in close to shore. The 33 boats move toward shore and their selected landing spot is precisely where General Brown expected it. The men in the boats are greeted while still in the water by volleys from militia and from the volunteers to their right, but the landing on the island is unopposed. In turn, the two British gunboats assigned to protect the

landing force commence fire to try to break up the defensive line. The gunboats are unable to quiet the militia. During this period, the boats, unwilling to brave additional close-range fire, are rerouted by the crews who move instead to Horse Island, where the troops debark and initiate their advance upon the village. The route takes the soldiers across a small causeway that terminates at the mainland near the mouth of the harbor.

The British column, after reaching the mainland, advances toward a ridge, and as they encroach it, they are struck with yet another volley from the militia, which then abandons the position, leaving a gun on the field while they begin to scatter into the woods. One of the officers, Colonel Mills of the Albany Volunteers, is killed while trying to stop the stampede.

Afterward, General Brown persuades fewer than 100 of them to regroup and stand against the attackers. He deploys them on the fringes of an open field where they use a fallen tree for cover. All the while, the British press forward, seemingly unconcerned about the militia. As they march into range, the militia resumes its fire, then it delivers several more volleys, but still, the troops are unwilling to enter into hand-to-hand combat. The militia again retreats, permitting the British to continue its advance; however, the volunteers on the right do not falter so quickly. They raise tenacious and effective opposition until compelled to withdraw and even then, while under fire from the gunboats, the troops continue to fight, and they pull back in disciplined fashion until they finally arrive near the position of Backus' regulars. During their retreat they received some detachments of regulars who bolstered the confidence of the volunteers, while their sharpshooters increased the number of British casualties.

At the next line of defense, essentially the remaining complete line of defense, Backus' regulars hold the center, with a contingent of light dragoons (dismounted) on the right and the volunteers on the left. The British maintain their advance with high morale. After unceremoniously disposing of the militia, they sense a quick kill. Unexpectedly, a minor work, referred to as Fort Tompkins, is introduced to the British when it fires upon the formation to instill some shock into the column and display the audacity of the defenders. At about the same time, the British plunge against the right flank, and again, they are met by fire, not a collapsed flank. The British launch successive assaults to crush the line with each attempt being violently repelled as the dragoons remain calm and refuse to surrender their ground. The line holds for about one hour until the Americans are compelled, due to facing far superior numbers, to withdraw.

Further to the rear, while the British continue to advance, part of the command regroups at a barracks built from logs to draw yet another formidable line of defense. This third defensive position is threatened by a confident contingent led by Colonel Gray (quartermaster general). Gray is at the front when the British encroach the barracks and his quest to quickly vanquish his remaining foe does not come to fruition. Gray is at the point walking backwards as he encourages his troops, shouting: "Come on, boys; the day is ours! Remember York!" At that exact time, one of the defenders, a young drummer boy, drops his drum, grabs a rifle and then, acting as a seasoned veteran, he fires and strikes Colonel Gray and the colonel is instantly killed. A recuperating American officer, Lieutenant Fanning, ignores his wounds and takes command of an artillery piece. Fanning propels three shots into the British formation and his accuracy bursts the enthusiasm of the Redcoats. Rather than initiate a charge to dislodge the defenders, the British, minus their usual swagger, lose their momentum. The British begin to fall back; however, the Americans are far from victory.

General Prevost still holds a far superior force and the Americans, in addition to being squeezed into a confined area, had sustained a grievous loss when Colonel Backus was fatally wounded during Gray's assault. His loss helps to drain the stamina of the defenders; however, beyond that, the officer in command, Lt. Chauncey, thinking that Fort Tompkins is lost, orders the stores to be burned. The defenders at the Marine barracks unexpectedly observe the smoke, which is billowing from the burning supplies (those captured at York) at Navy Point. The situation becomes more grim and while the troops are still anticipating a major assault.

In the meantime, General Brown, who initially believes the fire was started by the British, rushes to it. He is told of why the fire began and is relieved to know that it was not done by the British. Aware that the British are still only on one side, he encourages Lieutenant Ketchum at Fort Tomkins to continue firing at the British fleet. He receives the response: "General, I cannot discharge this gun again, the flame from the Marine barracks is so hot that my men cannot exist here." After listening to Ketchum, Brown encourages Ketchum to do the best he can, then he departs from the fort.

Meanwhile, pursuant to previous instructions from General Brown, Lt. Chauncey is to move his men from Navy point to join with Brown at Fort Volunteer on the high ground. General Brown at about this time learns that Lt. Chauncey had not ordered the ship to be burned and those under him who did had told Chauncey that "all was lost on the right of our line of battle." General Brown sends Major Brown with a message to Chauncey that "all was safe on the right & that Victory was ours." Slightly afterward, General Brown spots about 100 militia troops far from the fighting near the intersection of the "Brownville, Midale & Adams roads." At the same time Major Swan rides up to the general to inform him that "the fixed ammunition was expended." Brown does not buy the story and says to the major: "It may be so. I do not believe it—but if it is so, tell no man." Brown, having been with the militia when the British landed, realizes that many of them never fired a shot. He is acutely aware of the minimum abilities of his militia against British regulars, and of General Prevost's strengths and liabilities. Brown focuses on one of Prevost's liabilities, which he describes as "timidity." He orders the gathered militia to advance toward the British right flank in a maneuver to get them positioned in the woods if Prevost would order an advance. Meanwhile, he directs Major Luckett to advance with his dragoons to positions between the British and the ship, and afterward, Brown joins with the regulars who continue to hold their line.

Meanwhile, General Prevost realizes that he might get encircled and be unable to reach the boats. General Prevost, while on the brink of victory, orders a retreat, which surprises the beleaguered Americans, who are bracing for what they expect to be their final defense. Cunningly, General Brown's instincts regarding General Prevost's timidity proves true. Prevost, greatly alarmed by the maneuvering of the militia, which he believes are regulars under Colonel Tuttle and the dragoons, cause the British to retire hurriedly, so quickly that they leave their wounded behind.

After the departure of the British, the Americans receive some additional surprises. Although the fires have caused major losses, without interference from the British troops the fires are extinguished in time to preserve some of the supplies and provisions. Nature also lends a hand. The U.S. ship *Pike*, which had recently been constructed, did not burn quickly due to the wood being green. Lt. Talman, aware of the dangers, boards the Duke of Gloucester to extinguishes the fires before the powder explodes. He moves the ship away from the nearby burning buildings. Two other vessels, (schooners *Fair American* and *Pert*), are able to cut their cables and move farther up the river.

In the meantime, the battle that ended embarrassingly for General Prevost causes him to try to redeem himself. While back aboard ship, he decides to make another return to the village. Prevost

dispatches a party under a white flag to issue an ultimatum to General Brown to surrender the post and the entire village to the British. Upon receipt of the ultimatum, General Brown wastes no time in returning a response. He immediately declines. The response is taken back to the fleet, while the Americans wait for Prevost's next move and ponder whether he might launch yet another assault. The reaction of the general is soon known when another party arrives under a white flag. There is no second ultimatum offered, nor is there an attack. The second message from General Prevost is a request that the Americans provide care for his wounded and provide the British dead with proper burials. Prevost is assured that his troops will be cared for properly. The response officially terminates the battle for Sackets Harbor.

Once General Prevost receives his answer, Commodore Yeo departs with the fleet. The Americans sustain about 156 casualties, including killed, wounded or missing. The fatalities include Colonel Mills, who had been slain in the opening part of the battle. Colonel Backus (1st Light Dragoons) survives for eight days. The British sustain an estimated 260 casualties. British reports place 29 killed in the field and 22 wounded, but these numbers exclude casualties in the boats. British fatalities include Colonel Gray (adjutant general), Colonel Moody, Major Edwards and one captain. Also, three captains, one ensign and 32 men are captured. The British make no further attempts to seize Sackets Harbor; however, their naval forces on Lake Ontario continue to interfere with American vessels.

General Prevost, upon his return to Canada, issues his report on the engagement at Sackets Harbor which is distributed to the Canadian people. Copies are forwarded to the government in England. Prevost's account of the battle portrays a "brilliant and unparalleled victory." He also claims that he had driven the Americans back for three hours and left them defeated, but reluctantly ordered retreat because of the coordination between his force and the fleet had not been well synchronized. Despite his attempts to embellish his failure, Prevost's reputation never recovers. One Canadian source referred to Prevost as "the evil genius of the campaign."

Following General Brown's victory, he states in a report to Governor Tompkins that Lt. Colonel Tuttle (regulars) had attempted to reach the battlefield in time, but although he arrived late, Brown assured the governor that Tuttle's troops were prepared to fight. His remarks on the militia are less kind: "The noble men both officers and soldiers of the Regular Army & some few, precious few Citizen Soldiers who nobly resisted the Shock of the Foe of Basswood Cantonment are the men who merit the honor of this Victory. Sir they must have it. Of the precious few Citizen Soldiers who distinguished themselves Mr. Channing stands conspicuous." Also, subsequent to the battle, Captain Benjamin Forsyth is promoted to major.

**June 1 (Tuesday) 1813-In Naval Activity**, the USS *Chesapeake*, commanded by Captain James Lawrence, is being prepared to embark on a cruise to confront the British whaling vessels operating off Greenland. On this day, the HMS *Shannon* is spotted offshore as part of the blockading force. Captain Lawrence sails from Boston harbor to engage, but many in his crew are not thoroughly trained, and there are some seasoned but disgruntled crew members, upset over not yet having received their shares of prize money that is due them. And yet others had been in Boston drinking just before the ship departs. Lawrence is also concerned because some of his officers are on shore due to sickness and unable to sail.

The *Shannon*'s commander, Captain Philip Bowes Vere Broke, has sent a challenge daring the *Chesapeake* to come out and fight; however, the *Chesapeake* sails before Broke's message arrives. The challenge reads: "I doubt not that you, equally confident of success, will feel convinced that it

is only by repeated triumphs in even combats that your little navy can now hope to console your country for the loss of that trade it can no longer protect.”

By about 1700, both ships are within range of the other's guns and the fireworks begin with the *Shannon* firing the first shot. The *Chesapeake* does not immediately respond; rather it remains sheepish while maneuvering into position from which it can deliver a broadside. Shortly thereafter, the *Chesapeake* begins to unleash a broadside and suddenly, the cannon roar and ignite a savage duel. The British fire damages the rigging of the *Chesapeake*, and due to the closeness of the antagonists, the fore-chains of the *Shannon* get tangled with the *Chesapeake*'s mizzen rigging. While the crew of the *Chesapeake* struggles to regain control of their ship, British guns pour riveting fire into the upper deck.

By this time, the *Chesapeake* has sustained severe casualties, including fatalities. The sailing master, Mr. White, falls from the first shot. Some others—including the ship's first lieutenant, fourth lieutenant (Mr. Ballard), the boatswain and the Marine commander—sustain mortal wounds. Captain Lawrence also becomes wounded after being hit in his leg. Nonetheless, Captain Lawrence continues to hold command. He orders his bugler to signal for the boarding party to board the *Shannon*. The bugler, however, apparently terrified by the gruesome scenes on the decks, had hidden under a launch, creating additional problems. After a quick search, the bugler is located and brought out of his hiding place. He remains frozen with fear; unable to give the signal. The bugler had been aboard in place of a drummer. Consequently, the order to board is passed on man-to-man, but due to the ongoing confusion of the battle, there is no clarity and the order to board fails to get executed. The plight of the Americans becomes graver. As Captain Lawrence issues his verbal boarding party orders, a British shell inflicts a fatal wound. All the while the gunners are exchanging blows. By this time, British fire has killed the man at the helm and successively two others, leaving the ship's steering unsteady. Consequently, the anchor gets snared in one of the ship's afterports, placing the *Chesapeake* at an even greater disadvantage. The crew is unable to maneuver the ship into a position from which it can pound the *Shannon*. All the while, the *Shannon* continues to pour riveting fire upon the *Chesapeake*. The men on the upper deck are bludgeoned, and to add more grief to the situation, the quarterdeck is struck by a grenade. It ignites several musket cartridges, but the damage was not severe.

About 20 of Lawrence's crew, anxious to attain victory and end the horrendous shelling that is wrecking the *Chesapeake* and killing large numbers, boards the *Shannon* without orders. Lawrence displays his courage and his will to continue the fight, but it comes too late to rally the crew. While he is issuing the order to board, a musket ball lodges in his intestines. This wound is mortal. At nearly the same time, the British swarm aboard the *Chesapeake*.

Meanwhile, Lieutenant Cox responds to Lawrence's call to board, but as he rushes forward he arrives next to the captain just as he is hit. While moving to carry Lawrence below deck, British captain Broke, leading the British boarding party, crashes onto the *Chesapeake*. Resistance is raised during a wild clash that lasts only a short time. Samuel Livermore, the ship's chaplain, seeks revenge for the mortal wounding of Lawrence. He takes a shot at Captain Broke, but misses the mark, then becomes a target of Broke. Captain Broke swings his sword at Livermore's head. Livermore escapes harm, but only momentarily. While he protects his head by diverting the sword, he sustains a deep cut in his arm. By this time, Lawrence's officers on the upper deck, except one, Lt. Ludlow, have been knocked out of action. Ludlow is also wounded, multiple times, and too severely to resist, leaving the men without an officer to lead them. Nevertheless, the savage fighting continues.

Meanwhile the British are finally able to gain control. Troops under Lt. Budd attempt to ascend to the upper deck, but the British easily overwhelm them before they reach the deck.

Confusion abounds as the fighting becomes more desperate. One officer, Lt. Cox, inadvertently finds himself among what he believes to be part of the crew; however, he is in the middle of a British group. The mistake is costly. He is quickly slashed by their swords. Meanwhile, Captain Lawrence, although below deck and dying, remains conscious. He directs the ship's surgeon to go on deck to deliver an order: "Fight on to the last, and never to strike the colours. They shall wave, while I live." Nonetheless, by that time, the British have prevailed. The crew resisted tenaciously; however, further fighting was in vain. Lt. Ludlow had surrendered the ship. Astonishingly, after Ludlow surrenders, an Englishman strikes him in the head with a sword and fractures his skull. Lt. Ludlow dies from the wound.

Due to the death of nearly every officer early in the fight, the British encounter bitter resistance; however, it is disorganized. The British boarding party completes the seizure by firing at anyone spotted, and they fire down the hatches to increase the number of casualties. The battle, which had lasted only about fifteen minutes, leaves large numbers of wounded men on both vessels. The Americans sustain about 47 or 48 killed and 97 or 98 wounded (the Naval Historical Center gives the number killed as more than 60, which might include those who were mortally wounded).

Captain Lawrence, having sustained a fatal wound, remains aboard the *Chesapeake*. He succumbs, according to the U.S. Navy Historical Center, on 4 June and is later buried at Halifax, Nova Scotia, on the 7th. The British sustain about 23 or 24 killed and 56 or 58 wounded. Captain Broke receives a serious wound while he is aboard the *Chesapeake*, but he survives.

After the battle both vessels are in wretched condition. The wounded are tended, the American captives are secured and the deceased are buried at sea. The *Shannon* and the captured *Chesapeake* sail to Halifax, and when the ships enter the harbor, it becomes evident that the *Shannon* had prevailed. The *Chesapeake* is flying the British colors, with the Stars and Stripes directly underneath. Captain Lawrence dies during the journey, but his remains are taken to Halifax. The ships arrive within sight of the harbor on 6 June at about 1530. Word of the victory spreads rapidly and within minutes many who had gathered at church begin to stream out of the pews before the ships are actually at anchor.

At Halifax, excitement fills the air and some of the people still have no idea what has caused the jubilation. Citizens rush for a spot from where they can witness the spectacle. Suddenly the rooftops are overcrowding at just about the time both vessels are in sight as they reach Georges Island. The crowds at the docks increase, and shortly thereafter, the people raise cheer after cheer. In turn the band aboard the *Shannon* begins to play "Rule Britannia," and one of their favorites from the American Revolution, "Yankee Doodle." Until this victory at sea, the more experienced Royal Navy had not fared well against the American warships in either seamanship or gunnery. The defeat of the *Chesapeake* propels British and Canadian morale sky high.

When word of the victory over the *Chesapeake* arrives in London, Parliament is in session. The British revel over the news, which temporarily removes the shadow of gloom which had been hovering due to the Royal Navy's inability to quash the American naval forces. Captain Broke is given a rare honor, the "freedom of the city" solely because he had been victorious "over an American [ship] of equal force."

Captain Lawrence's words "don't give up the ship" become immortal as the rallying cry of the United States Navy. Captain Lawrence is interred by the British at Halifax, and he is given the full

honors of war. Also, one American, Lt. W.S. Cox, later receives a court-martial for deserting his post under fire during the battle. However, during 1952, the United States Navy reinstates Cox's good name, when they agree with his descendants' claims that he had been under orders to carry Captain Lawrence below deck.

Along with the loss of the *Chesapeake*, the United States also sustains a devastating loss with regard to intelligence. The British receive a bonanza, the code book for America's naval signals. Secretary of the Navy William Jones delegates Commodores William Bainbridge, Stephen Decatur and Isaac Hull as the board to write a new code book. At this time, Decatur and Hull are involved with other duties. Bainbridge designs the new signals by himself and forwards the completed project to the Navy Department. The new naval signals are afterward considered foolproof, "except for treachery." The "numerical, private, day, night and fog signals were highly approved of, and were immediately introduced into the navy." Also, the U.S. officers killed include Peter Adams, Edward J. Ballard, James Broome and William Augustus White. Wounded officers include Lieutenants Budd, Cox and Samuel Livermore.

In other naval activity, a British squadron operating off Connecticut encounters a squadron, composed of the *Hornet* (Captain James Biddle), *Macedonia* (Captain Jacob Jones) and the *United States*, under Commodore Stephen Decatur. The Americans had been attempting to get out of New York and onto the open seas by running the blockade between Montauk Point and Block Island. Initially, Decatur anticipated only the *Ramillies*; but suddenly, just before entering into an engagement, the battleship *Valiant* and two frigates, the *Acasta* and the *Orpheus*, move out from beyond Montauk Point. The British maneuver to block the Americans from entering the mouth of the harbor. Nonetheless, the British force, too powerful to engage, fails to intercept Decatur's squadron, which makes it back to the harbor at New London.

The British blockading force off New London is particularly effective, due in great part to shore signals from an unidentified source. Each time Decatur attempts to sail, unidentified persons signal the British by using "blue lights." Meanwhile, the British, once alerted, take preventive action that keeps Decatur's naval force tied up in New London.

However, soon after arriving there, Decatur authorizes a raid upon British positions on Gardiner's Island. A contingent moving in one boat avoids detection and safely lands on the island. The troops set a trap by lurking in the woods along the path to the manor house, and the plan appears to be auspicious. A short while later a party of British, including some officers from one of the warships, comes ashore. While they leisurely walk toward the home, the Americans burst from the woods and corral the entire group without causing a stir. The British, stunned by the unexpected appearance of the Yankees, get no opportunity to escape or resist. They are prodded into the boat and carried to Connecticut.

Meanwhile, the British who control the island become infuriated by the incident. They take immediate action to prevent any further incursions by sending out barges to patrol around the island. In addition, the British, convinced that the lord of the manor (6th), John Lyon Gardiner, had conspired with Decatur's contingent, dispatch a detachment to arrest him. However, the British underestimate his wife, Sarah Griswold Gardiner, who outwits the British with a bold and daring plan. John retires to the green room under the pretense of being extremely ill, and the color scheme of the room aids in the ruse. The bedroom's color scheme including green curtains reflect a ghostly green coloring on his skin that creates an illusion that totally fools the troops who had barged into the residence. Sarah enhanced the scheme by placing bottles of medicine, some glasses and even

spoons on a small bedside table.

After gaining entrance, the troops demand to confront her husband. With crocodile tears flowing down her cheeks, Sarah pleads with the officers to tread lightly and remain as quiet as possible so her ill husband will not be unduly disturbed. The British are escorted into the room and their belligerent demeanor crumbles as they peer at the bed at what appears to be a fragile man at death's door. His skin has a ghastly green tint. Suddenly, the British officers are transformed. They decide that it would not be advisable to take Gardiner aboard their ship. Instead, they decide to take his oldest son hostage. Nonetheless, David, only ten years old, is away at school, leaving the British empty handed.

Commodore Hardy was convinced that Gardiner had not been involved with the raid. Sarah learns that her ruse worked when a letter from Commodore Hardy to John Gardiner, dated 31 July, arrives at the residence: As it is probable that the government of the United States may call you to account for permitting refreshments to be taken by the British squadron from your place, I think it necessary for your satisfaction, and to prevent your experiencing the censure of your government, for me to assure you, that had you not complied with my wishes as you have done, I should certainly have made use of force, and the consequences would have been the destruction of your property, yourself a prisoner-of-war, and whatever was in the possession of your dependents taken without payment. But it is not my wish to distress individuals on the coast of the United States who may be in the power of the British squadron.

During April 1814, Decatur and his men depart New London and move by land to New York. The frigates are afterward dismantled and the rest of the ships make it to sea in November 1814. Some people blame the Federalist Party for the treachery; however, the militia in Connecticut is primarily composed of Federalists, and it is the militia that bars the British ships from entering the harbor to capture or destroy Decatur's squadron. Commodore Decatur holds the opinion that the treachery is undertaken by traitors. Another theory is that the British had landed spies to maintain communication.

While Connecticut and other states to the south remain under steady blockading by the British, the Massachusetts coastline is not blockaded. Nonetheless, pressure is rapidly mounting because British fleets are receiving provisions and supplies from vessels departing from Massachusetts' ports. Also, it is reported that a brigantine, the *Active*, chartered by the Revenue Service, had operated as part of a flotilla off New London, but it became trapped by the blockade. The Navy has no records that it ever served as an official U.S. Navy vessel and no documentation regarding details on its service has ever been discovered.

In other naval activity, a fresh British squadron under Admiral Warren arrives in the Chesapeake to bolster Admirals Cockburn and Beresford. The squadron is transporting a force of British soldiers and Royal Marines under the command of Sir Sidney Beckwith. With the arrival of Warren's squadron, the British naval force, excluding smaller vessels, includes eight ships of the line and twelve frigates.

**June 22 (Tuesday) 1813-In Virginia**, a British fleet encroaches Craney Island, a defensive position of the Americans for the protection of Norfolk. American defenders on the island, including those who arrived on the 21st, include 400 infantry of the line, a contingent of riflemen led by Captain Roberts of Winchester, and two companies of artillery, commanded by Captain Arthur Emerson and Captain Richardson. Lt. Colonel H. Beatty retains overall command, supported by Major Wagner,

an infantry officer and Major Falkner, an artillery officer. Other units that arrive on the 21st include a 30-man contingent of regulars from Fort Norfolk and a 30-man contingent of militia from Isle of Wight County under Lt. Atkinson of Culpeper County. Other reinforcements include a contingent of about 150 sailors and U.S. Marines attached to the U.S. *Constellation*, which is blockaded; however, its guns continue to protect Craney Island. **In Naval Activity**, the American privateer *Yankee* intercepts the British sloop *Earl Camden* just off the coast of Ireland. The vessel is captured and taken into a French port. Within about one week, the *Yankee* intercepts another vessel, the brigantine *Elizabeth*, which is also caught just off the coast. The prize and its cargo of cotton are taken into a French port, and on the same day, the *Yankee* captures yet another vessel, the brigantine *Watson*, also transporting a cargo of cotton. The value of the two cotton cargoes is about \$140,000. About 100 seamen under Lt. Neale and about one-half that number of Marines under Lt. Breckenridge, deployed on the island, open fire on the barges, which are transporting about 2,500 troops, including sailors and Royal Marines. The American fire is bolstered by the guns of the USS *Constellation* and creates havoc on the sea. Effective fire rips into the closing flotilla and casualties begin to rapidly rise. Admiral Warren is aboard one of the larger barges, the *Centipede*. American fire becomes so horrific that the vessel is essentially shredded, leaving only a short time for the troops aboard and the admiral to abandon it. Finally, the British realize that the American fire is too intense. The boats abort the landing and row back to the ships.

In the meantime, another British contingent of about 800 troops is debarked at a point from which they can advance against Norfolk from the ground. However, here, too, the British encounter unexpected stiff resistance. Virginians patiently observe the landing, and before the entire contingent touches Virginia soil, they are struck by an avalanche of effective fire from six separate guns deployed as a battery. The thunderclap prompts the Redcoats to retreat; however, some deploy in a nearby house. By then an American gunboat arrives to augment the battery. Incoming 24-pounders descend on the targeted house and it is immediately abandoned. The British head for their boats. In a flash they are also returning to the ships. The British boats had been commanded by Captain John M. Hanchett (natural son of King George III) of the HMS *Diadem*. Hanchett receives a serious wound to his thigh.

The failure to take Norfolk infuriates the British, who quickly select a new objective, Hampton, less than 20 miles distant. The British intend to redeem their honor by seizing Hampton, thereby severing communications between Hampton and the upper region of Virginia. At the time, Georgia militia are stationed at Norfolk and they observe the action but do not participate. Brigadier General Joseph F. Dickinson of Hertford County holds responsibility for the levies at Norfolk. Also, General Robert Williams of Surry County, as adjutant-general of the state, holds responsibilities of Norfolk's defenses.

After the British leave Chesapeake, the Georgians return to their home state. British casualties are estimated at about 200, excluding prisoners taken and a number of deserters. The Americans sustain no casualties.

**July 14–19 1813-In Naval Activity**, the USS *Essex*, *Georgiana* and *Greenwich* (storeship), off the island of Albemarle, spot three ships off Banks' Bay at about 1100. The *Essex* initiates pursuit of the ship sailing in the center. Meanwhile, the remaining two ships appear to be in the process of trying to evade capture. The *Greenwich* heaves to, permitting the *Georgiana* to speed up. Shortly thereafter, the prize is seized. It is the a 10-gun British ship *Charlton*. Captain Porter is informed by its captain that one of the other two vessels is the *Seringapatam*, manned by 40 men and carrying

14 guns. Porter also learns that the remaining ship is the 8-gun *New Zealander*. The *Seringapatam*, a whaling ship operating as a privateer without a commission, is intercepted by the *Greenwich* (a prize of the *Essex*) commanded by U.S. Marine Corps Lieutenant Gamble off Tumbez, Peru. The prize adds yet another vessel to Porter's flotilla. Master's Mate James Terry is appointed prize master of the *Seringapatam* and it continues on the cruise with the *Essex* and the other vessels. Later, during the following September, Captain Porter will set a course for Nuka Hiva (Marquesas Islands) to receive repairs. Four of his prizes, including the prize captured this day, will accompany him on the voyage of about 3,000 miles.

The *Greenwich* and the *Seringapatam* exchange broadsides. The latter sustains devastating damage. It lowers its colors; however, despite being crippled, it attempts to run. The *Greenwich* gives further chase and after a while, the British crew realizes escape is impossible, particularly after they see the USS *Essex* closing fast. After taking possession of the *Seringapatam*, crew members of the *Greenwich* take control of it, while the *Essex* moves to seize the remaining vessel, the *New Zealander*, and succeeds in about one hour. Captain Porter later professes that "the capture of this ship gave me more pleasure than that of any other which fell into my hands; for, besides being the finest British ship in those seas, her commander had the character of being a man of great enterprise, and had already captured the American whale-ship *Edward*, of Nantucket, and might have done great injury to the American commerce in those seas."

Captain Porter requests that Captain Stavers present his commission, but he has none. Captain Porter identifies him as clearly a pirate and decides that the entire crew will be kept in irons; however, after speaking to American prisoners held aboard the *Seringapatam*, he discovers that they had received fine treatment by the crew. Porter countermands his own order and gives the crew of the *Seringapatam* the same privileges as the other prisoners. Nonetheless, Captain Stavers remains in irons. Following the operation, Captain Porter sets a course for James Island. While en route, the winds change drastically and the squadron is being pushed northwest, hindering progress and ensuring that it will not be a short voyage. Captain Porter returns the *Charlton* to its captain on the condition that he takes it into Rio De Janeiro to land all of the prisoners. All its guns and other military items are transferred to the *Seringapatam*.

On the 19th, the *Charlton* sails off with 48 prisoners, but not without incident. According to Captain Porter, "the mates and sailors, however, expressed their determination not to go to Rio de Janeiro with the ship, for fear of being pressed on board a British man of war. They were very solicitous that I would allow them whale-boats, and let them take their chances in them, declaring that any fate, however dreadful, would be preferable to a servitude in his Majesty's navy." Porter refuses to give his consent and for a while he is leaning toward using force. Nevertheless, after explaining their own misconduct to them, he relents. As the *Charlton* sails off the crew cries out loudly with three cheers and good wishes that the Americans get safely back to the States.

Meanwhile, Captain Porter directs the crew on the *Seringapatam* to expedite their work to complete the modifications. Within several days, 20 guns are mounted and ready for action if necessary. Porter places Mr. Terry (master's mate) in command, and he gives command of the *New Zealander* to the purser, Mr. Shaw. All the while, the ships are struggling against the winds to reach the southeast. During the voyage, they come upon Wenam's Island and Culpepper's Island.

**July 30 (Friday) 1813-In Canada**, Commodore Chauncey arrives near Burlington Heights from Niagara during the morning. A force of several hundred troops, including sailors and U.S. Marines, under Lt. Colonel Scott, debarks. About 150 British under Major Maule raise stiff resistance. The

Americans seize some prisoners (civilians, possibly militia in the town) and return to the ships.

**July 31 (Saturday) 1813-In Naval Activity**, the 2-gun privateer *Wasp* engages the 10-gun HMS *Bream*, an 18-gun schooner. Despite the superior firepower of the *Bream*, the *Wasp* exchanges blows for about nine hours. The two ships spend the final 45 minutes badgering each other from close range. The *Wasp*, by this time, is incapable of further resistance, which compels it to capitulate. In other activity, Commodore Chauncey arrives off York with the *General Pike*, the *Madison* and the *Oneida*. The ships are escorting nine schooners carrying a force under Lt. Colonel Scott, which is augmented by the U.S. Marines of the fleet. Based on information recently gathered during a raid on Burlington Heights, the troops land as expected; the town is undefended. The Americans free some prisoners held in the jail and they also enter the hospital, where they parole some patients. Before departing the town at about 2300, the troops also confiscate a few hundred barrels of flour, which are placed aboard vessels and are taken back to New York. The Americans return to York on the following day. Two boats carry a landing party which moves about in search of stores and arms. The raiders destroy some artillery and boats and confiscate supplies and ammunition before returning to New York.

**August 8 (Sunday) 1813-In Maryland**, a British naval force—three ships of the line, five frigates, three brigantines and two schooners, supported by a number of smaller craft—is spotted off Baltimore. The defenders quickly move into action. Colonel Jamison's regiment (attached to the Baltimore County Brigade) deploys in some high ground about seven miles outside the city from where they can dominate a narrow pass near North Point, while another contingent, including the Marine Artillery Company, moves to high ground east of the city and deploys about 40 artillery pieces. Meanwhile, Captain Stiles takes command of the Marine Battery on the waterfront at Fort McHenry. The British linger offshore, but no attack is launched. Afterward, the squadron moves toward Annapolis, but the defense is prepared here as well. A force composed of 220 sailors and about 100 Marines are deployed to meet a landing force if it debarks. The British, after evaluating the situation, depart from Annapolis to seek weaker targets.

**August 12 (Thursday) 1813**-There is concern for Annapolis, Maryland. U.S. Marines are rushed there from Washington to fortify it against an anticipated British assault.

**September 10 (Friday) 1813-BATTLE OF LAKE ERIE**-At this time, American successes on land have been few. Now the crisis is becoming more grave. The British, who have already bottled up most of the harbors and taken U.S. territory along the Great Lakes, are poised to storm Lake Erie to devastate General William Henry Harrison's positions. The British realize that once they finish with the rag-tag navy under Captain Oliver Hazard Perry and chase the meek defenders into the woods, they can roll through the land. The British already occupy Illinois, Michigan and Minnesota. From there it will be easy to seize Wisconsin and Ohio, then break through Pennsylvania to New Jersey and New York. Only one ingredient is missing: they must crush what they perceive as the cardboard fleet of Oliver Hazard Perry, whose ships are held together only by the sailors manning the guns.

At about 0800, while Perry's squadron is at Put-in-Bay, a lookout on the top-mast spots the British fleet, which had remained evasive since the previous month. The fleet is approaching from the northwest and battle appears inevitable. While the British continue to bear down on the American squadron, there is no confusion or indecision. Perry had already issued his instructions and his commanders are prepared to engage. Perry's force weighs anchor near an island in the western part of the lake and sails toward the oncoming British warships. By about 0900, the American squadron

is moving out of the bay en route to meet its foe.

The winds are from the southwest, presenting a challenge for the Americans; however, Captain Perry, having little time to spare, advances without having gotten the weather gage. Within a short while, the disadvantage suddenly vanishes when the winds unexpectedly change to the southeast. While Perry has acquired the weather gage, Commodore Barclay's fleet has been unable to receive it despite his repeated maneuvers. By about 1000, the two forces are shaving the distance separating them to less than ten miles. When Perry's squadron closes confront the British, he assesses Barclay's battle formation, then issues orders to his commanders. Perry directs two of his schooners take the point as vanguard, followed by the *Lawrence*, *Caledonia* and the *Niagara*, with his remaining ships to the rear.

The British line, being prepared for battle with the respective crews at their stations, receives the signal to attack just before noon. The booming sound of the bugle call ignites rousing cheers from deck to deck throughout the fleet. And just after the ringing ovations, there comes another boisterous sound when British Captain Barclay's flagship fires at the approaching USS *Lawrence* to ignite the battle. The shot is ineffective. Nonetheless, it is answered by the USS *Scorpion*, commanded by Captain Stephen Champlin (Perry's first cousin).

The confident British armada, with the Union Jack fluttering from the top masts like peacocks on parade and the band playing "Rule, Britannia! Britannia, rule the waves!" focuses primarily on Perry's flagship. The Americans are equally determined to halt the British juggernaut. Perry's seagoing Kentuckians are anxious to match their rifles against the king's heavy cannon. The HMS *Detroit*, commanded by Captain Barclay, is trailed by the formidable *Queen Charlotte* (Lieutenant Robert Finnis), the *Lady Prevost* and the *Hunter* with a combined total of more than sixty guns. Other ships in the fleet include the HMS *Chippewa* and the HMS *Little Belt*. A few reserve vessels trail close behind the main body.

The British expect to destroy the *Lawrence* and then dispose of the remaining resistance by compelling the Americans to strike their colors. Nonetheless, the *Lawrence*, lacking long-range guns, presses ahead with its challenge. As the battle intensifies, the British gain even more confidence as they observe the *Lawrence* being pummeled. During this tenacious exchange that has lasted nearly two hours, the *Lawrence* is still afloat, but barely. Many of its guns are out of action and most of its crew have been killed or wounded. The British firepower has inflicted devastating damage, and among the *Lawrence*'s crew of about 100 men, fewer than 20 have escaped injury or death. Nonetheless, while the *Lawrence* is being shredded, Commodore Perry gives no indication he is willing to capitulate.

Meanwhile, the USS *Caledonia* drops back and the *Niagara* moves up behind the *Lawrence*. Finally, the British sense victory as the *Lawrence* is compelled to fall out of the battle formation. They are jubilant when they see Perry's flag being lowered, giving them the satisfaction of victory. However, back on the *Lawrence*, which is also flying a flag which carries the words, "Don't Give Up the Ship," there are no thoughts of capitulation.

While the British await a quick termination, Commodore Perry is transferring his flag to the *Niagara*, commanded by Captain Elliott. Through the gloom of battle smoke and silent guns covered with fallen heroes and sails crimson with American blood, the colors are lowered in a disciplined fashion. The few remaining men, following the orders of Perry, board the rowboat, and as the British await surrender, Perry races across the lake as if powered by machine instead of ten exhausted men. The *Lawrence* had been lost in glory to the sea, but its spirit lives on through Perry, who takes

command of the *Niagara*.

Shortly thereafter, to the astonishment of the British, who had ceased fire in preparation for accepting surrender; instead, discover that their thought on the demise of Perry's squadron had been premature. Perry's flag reappears on the mast of the *Niagara*, which effectively subdues the British cheers that had been ringing out from Barclay's fleet, while simultaneously the fluttering flag reinvigorates the beleaguered but undaunted American crews.

Once aboard the *Niagara*, Captain Perry resumes command. Captain Elliott delivers orders from Perry to each of the respective captains: "Close up and attack the enemy at half pistolshot with grape and canister." The entire American squadron begins to close to engage. British countermaneuvers to be positioned to deliver potent broadsides fail to unfold properly, which causes Barclay's formation to become disorderly. While the British struggle to untangle the confusion, the *Niagara* moves into the gap and finds itself at near point-blank range with British vessels on either side.

The *Niagara* plunges through the middle of the British formation with all of its guns blazing. The gunners receive an opportunity to propel powerful broadsides that pummel the ships on either side, while the Kentucky sharpshooters (about 150 troops, drawn primarily from the regiments of Colonel William E. Boswell and Colonel R.M. Johnson) deliver ferocious fire upon the British on the decks as well as those in the rigging.

The *Niagara* maintains its swift pace as it passes by the respective bows to deliver more punishing fire. In the meantime, the remaining ships in the squadron, all having reached close range positions, join in the thunderous bombardment. The overwhelming menacing fire jolts the British, who are unable to recover from the incessant blows. Within about one-half hour, it is the Americans who sense victory, first signaled by the HMS *Queen Charlotte*. At nearly the same time a white flag is hoisted on the *Queen Charlotte*, the Americans spot the colors being lowered on several other British ships. The remaining two vessels, the *Chippeway* and the *Little Belt*, break for safety; however Perry orders pursuit. The USS *Scorpion* and the USS *Trippe* give chase and both British vessels are intercepted and seized, giving Perry's squadron total victory.

Following this action, the *Scorpion* participates in the support of General Harrison's force along the Thames. After remaining in Presques Isle for the winter, the *Scorpion* cruises on Lake Erie and Lake Huron from May through September 1814, and during that duty, it cooperates with the American troops in the region; however, it also blockades the British at Lake Simcoe and at the Nottawasaga River. This is the only action in which the *Trippe* is a participant. The *Trippe* was initially a merchant sloop named *Contractor* that was converted to a warship during 1812 and renamed.

The mighty *Detroit* had succumbed to the United States Navy. Its commander, Captain Barclay, who had lost the use of his left arm during an earlier engagement, survives the battle; however, injuries during this ferocious engagement cost him the use of his other arm. The commander of the HMS *Hunter* is killed during the battle. As the smoke begins to clear and the cannon fire terminates, the Stars and Stripes remains the only flag above sea level. The British threat ends in a victory for Perry and his men. General William Henry Harrison can now continue the fight against the remainder of the British army without fear of the Royal Navy controlling the Great Lakes.

Perry, who achieves this momentous victory at the age of 27, sends the following message to General William Harrison: "We have met the enemy and they are ours: two ships, two brigs, one schooner, and one sloop." General Harrison, through the efforts of Governor Isaac Shelby of Kentucky and Governor Return Meigs of Ohio, had been able during the summer to build his army to about 7,000 troops. Perry also sends a similar letter to the secretary of the Navy: "It has pleased

the ALMIGHTY, to give to the ARMS OF THE U. STATES a signal victory over their enemies, on this lake.... The British Squadron, consisting of TWO SHIPS, TWO BRIGS, ONE SLOOP, and ONE SCHOONER, have, this moment, surrendered to the Force under my command after a sharp conflict.”

The Americans sustain 27 killed and 96 wounded. The squadron surgeon, Doctor Horsely, having become ill, caused the responsibility of tending the wounded to fall upon the youthful Doctor Usher Parsons. Parsons had to amputate six legs from the wounded; of the 96 wounded, three men died. Perry’s force has just over 100 who were not actively engaged due to cholera and dysentery.

Lt. John Brooks, U.S. Marine Corps, is among the fatalities. Brooks was the son of General John Brooks (Revolutionary War general and governor of Massachusetts). Marine Lt John Brooks was hit by a shot that shattered his hip and pelvis. Other Marines were also killed including Corporal Philip Sharpley, and Privates Jesse Harlan and Abner Williams. Marines also suffered non-fatal wounds including Sergeant James Tull who was hit in the ankle by a musket ball and Private David Christie's received a splinter in his shoulder which moved to his hip joint. Sergeant William Baggs received a threatening wound to the thigh. Private John Garwood was hit on the back of his skull while handling a 32-pounder by a back-stay block which hit him as it fell. Privates James Bird, William Burnett and Henry Vanpool were also seriously wounded. Other Marines were wounded less seriously and yet others were Numerous others suffered minor wounds or were caused to become deaf by the incessant cannonading. The British sustain 41 killed and 94 wounded. Officer casualties amount to 12 sustained by each side. In addition to the captured troops, the Americans discover a most unusual prisoner, a bear that had been kept as a pet by one of the crews, and they also capture several Indians who are discovered in hiding places down in the hold. Initially, the Indians were posted in the rigging from where they could pick off U.S. officers; however, by the time the American fleet had come into close range, the incoming artillery had prompted them to seek shelter.

The brigantine *Hunter* was originally built during 1806 for the Canadian Provincial Marine and named *General Hunter*. It is taken into service by the Navy. It remains in service on Lake Erie for the duration, and after the war it is sold. Also, more than 300 British seamen and Marines are captured. They are transported to Ohio where General Harrison directs that they be marched to Chillicothe to be confined in an encampment along the Scioto River which becomes known as Camp Bull, a play on the name John Bull, a personification of the British much like Uncle Sam in the U.S. The prisoners remain there until 16 July 1814. While there, the prisoners witness the execution of six American troops whom were sentenced to death for desertion.

**September 14 1813 (Monday)-In Naval Activity**, the New Englanders are not too enthusiastic about the conflict with the British since it has stifled their commerce. New England goes so far as raise the possibility of withdrawal from the Union. Meanwhile, the U.S. is holding well against the British on the high seas. After the American victory on Lake Erie, the Navy is still patrolling the waters in search of British vessels. The *Essex*, in the South Pacific, encounters the HMS *Sir Andrew Hammond*, under a letter of marque in the vicinity of the Marquesas, and successfully engages and captures the British warship. The *Essex*, under Porter, remains in the locality for some time, and during the stay natives manage to raid and steal property. Lieutenant Gamble, U.S. Marine Corps, under Porter’s command, leads a force of men late in December, landing on Nookaheevah Island, Marquesas Islands, taking retaliatory measures against the natives and reclaiming the stolen property. The *Essex* after departure will encounter two British warships during March 1814, when

the valiant ship is defeated.

**October 1813-In Naval Activity**, Commodore Porter lands at Nukahiva, in the Pacific, founding the first American overseas naval base (Madisonville). He then sails for Valparaiso, leaving Lieutenant John Gamble, U.S. Marine Corps, and a detachment of U.S. sailors with four captured ships to hold the base.

**October 25 (Monday) 1813-In Naval Activity**, Commodore Perry transfers command of the upper lakes to Captain Elliot. Also, the American squadron under Captain David Porter, having arrived at Nooaheevah (called Madison's Island by the Americans) on the previous day, observes a boat approaching. Porter notes that the occupants are three white men: "One of them is perfectly naked, with the exception of a cloth about his loins; and as his body was all over tattooed, I could not doubt his having been a long time on this or some other island." The boat is turned back by Porter, and afterward, with a contingent of Marines, Porter lands. During the trip to shore, the natives abscond. One of the three white men approaches and to Porter's surprise, he is a midshipman, John M. Maury of the U.S. Navy. He had been stranded before the war erupted. Until the arrival of Porter's squadron, he remained unaware that war had begun. The man who approached the ship without wearing any clothes is named Wilson, an Englishman. He had been there for years and now speaks the native language. Despite Captain Porter's initial feelings to dislike and distrust him, he later finds Wilson "indispensably necessary to us, and without his aid I should have succeeded badly on the island." Porter again changes his opinion of Wilson and describes him as "a consummate hypocrite and villain."

Meanwhile, after Porter reaches shore, he inquires about various groups of natives in the mountainsides that encircle the village. He is informed that they are hostile and have come to the opposite side of the mountain and for a few weeks have been raiding the friendly villages in the valley. A raid was expected on the day Porter's squadron arrived but did not materialize because of the appearance of the ships. Once informed of the belligerents, Captain Porter moves to quash the turmoil. Porter, aware that his ships are quite visible to those on the mountain, sends one of the natives to inform the hostile people of his intent, which he later recounts as to "tell them that I had come with a force sufficiently strong to drive them from the island, and if they presume to enter the valley while I remained there, I should send a body of men to chastise them; to warn them to cease all hostilities so long as I remained among them; and say that if they had hogs or fruit to dispose of, they might come and trade freely with us, as I should not permit the natives of the valley to injure or molest them." Also, during the morning, the Americans discover the island of Rooahooga, which they name Adams' Island (Washington Group).

**October 29 to December 9 1813-In naval activity** at Nooaheevah, Captain David Porter's force selected to drive the belligerents from the mountains is composed of his detachment of Marines and the crewmen from the *Essex Jr*. The troops advance from the valley to drive the Happaahs from the mountains that surround the town. About 40 men total, with natives carrying their weapons and provisions to the heights of the mountains, bolt from one height to another to clear the ridges of the hostile warriors. During the operation, one of the valley people is carrying the Stars and Stripes. The advance, which begins at 1100, runs out of opposition about one hour after the Americans reach the top. At about 1600 the hostile tribe reappears descending the mountain with five corpses hanging from poles. The American contingent arrives at the base of the mountain with each man thoroughly exhausted. The commander, Lieutenant Downes, reports that they were initially successful in driving the Happaahs from one place to another in the heights until they converged on one fortress with

somewhere between three thousand and four thousand warriors. From there they taunted the Americans, daring them to attack. Downes, infuriated by the actions, defiantly ordered a charge. During the ascent, a stone from one warrior's slingshot struck Downes in his stomach and laid him out breathless for a while. At nearly the same time, a thrown spear strikes another in the neck to essentially force a pause in the assault. The Happahs were jubilant as the attacking contingent began to falter. Retreat was the as the next step, and by now, the valley natives were convinced that the Americans had plenty of bluster but nothing to back up their words.

The Happahs, according to Downes' report to Captain Porter, began "exposing their posteriors to us." By this time, Downes realized that the Happahs must be dislodged particularly because of the people in the valley were losing their respect. Downes, having regained his breath and his composure, had no thoughts of retreating. He ordered another assault and in a flash, the sailors and Marines bolted forward, dodging a hail of spears and stones descending upon them. Their agility paid dividends, and they reached the fort, then burst inside. Five of the defenders died suddenly and another refused to yield until he was struck by the muzzle of a musket which "was presented to his forehead, when the top of his head was entirely blown off." Suddenly, the greatly outnumbered Americans controlled the fortress and the enemy had vanished, leaving no one to further taunt Porter's troops.

Meanwhile, the villagers in the valley are terrified that they would be the next victims. Captain Porter moves to visit the leader, Gattanewa, king of the Taeehs, to inform him that his enemies had retreated; however, when he arrives, he hears a horrific type of shouting that mystifies him before he can deliver the pleasant news. He inquires of Gattanewa's wife as to the reason for the alarm. She responds that the villagers are expecting to be Porter's next victims, and she continues speaking to Captain Porter. He said she grasped his hand, "which she kissed, and moistened with her tears: then placing it on her head, [she] knelt to kiss my feet." She also informs Captain Porter that the villagers "were willing to be our slaves, to serve us, that their houses, their lands, their hogs, and everything belonging to them were ours." During this unnecessary plea, she "begged that I [Porter] would have mercy on her, her children, and her family, and not put them to death." Moving quickly to end the fear that had overtaken the villagers, Captain Porter eases the woman up from her submissive position and explains that the Americans are their friends and that no one will be harmed in any way, paving the way for the terror-filled villagers to become overjoyed.

Porter's squadron, while on the island, works with the villagers to construct a fort beginning on 3 November. About 4,000 natives from nearly every tribe arrives at the camp to assist. By nightfall of the 4th, a house for Captain Porter and another house for the officers are completed. The various tribes have no chiefs and no government; however, they are diligent and anxious to do fine work. Gattanewa, obviously a leader, according to Captain Porter is more like a father with his children. Nevertheless, he does hold privilege, and it is considered a sacrilege by the natives "to touch the top of his head, or any thing that touched his head." He has servants, but they come and go as they please. It is forbidden to have a closed gateway or a house with a door, to ensure that Gattanewa or his family members never pass a closed gate or a closed door. The mat on which Gattanewa sleeps cannot "be touched by a female, not even his wife."

By the time the fort is completed, the crews had removed everything from the frigate and transferred all of the provisions and powder to Captain Porter's prizes. Afterward, according to Captain Porter's subsequent description, "the ship had been thoroughly smoked with charcoal, to destroy the rats, which on opening the hatches, were found in great numbers dead about the large pots in which the

fires were made. Several tubs full of them were collected and thrown overboard and it was supposed that, exclusive of the young, which were killed in the nests, and could not be found, we had not destroyed a less number than from twelve to fifteen hundred.”

Meanwhile, one tribe, the Typees, are lagging behind in their commitments and making false accusations about the Happaahs, claiming they could not gain passage through the Happaahs' valley. Nevertheless, Porter discerns the truth and he threatens war. Suddenly, Porter's force numbers about 5,000 men. The force advances against the Typees and hits solid resistance. The Americans rapidly run out of most of their ammunition and the Typees remain behind a sevenfoot-high barrier with their flanks protected by thicket too dense to penetrate.

Meanwhile, Porter's makeshift army has dwindled to less than a platoon, excluding one tribe, the Mouina. The others had retreated. Of the nineteen Americans, three had been injured by stones from slingshots. Suddenly, while the Americans are pulling back, the Typees charge. The Indians, yelling wildly as they charge, are struck by effective fire, and those close behind who attempt to carry them away are also hit and wounded. Nonetheless, Porter continues to head to the opposite bank of the river before his command is overrun. They do make it across, but those Typees, using their slingshots, continue to catapult stones across the river. Captain Porter is once again faced with an insurmountable task. He realizes he must regroup and plan a new attack to forestall disaster, which would occur once the friendly Indians believe the Americans had been defeated. It is a normal practice for the Indians to switch sides and join the winning force.

On the following day, Captain Porter renews his attack, but he relies on his squadron, 200 men from the *Essex* and the recently arrived *Essex Jr.*, along with men from the prizes. Porter awaits darkness and the operation is unfolded quietly to avoid alerting the Indians. Nevertheless, problems arise when it is determined that the boats leak badly and will not carry the men. Undaunted and determined to undo the previous day's failure, Porter advances on land. The march continues without incident and the guides prove to be useful. The Typees remain unaware of the presence of the sailors and Marines until they receive a volley just before dawn. Unexpectedly, Porter finds that some Indians had joined with him to increase his numbers. From the top of a ridge, the troops initiate a quick descent into the valley and the accompanying Indians begin to shout loudly while the beating of their drums creates wild noises that are enjoined by squealing hogs and women and children who begin to scream and cry. The force moves into the village and remains there; however, the Happaahs retire. The Typees remain throughout the night with the Americans and strong guards keep a vigil until dawn.

At daybreak, Captain Porter moves out. Shortly thereafter, the Typees, on the opposite bank of the river, dare the Americans and their allies to descend and attack. Suddenly, the troops descend the slope; it is difficult terrain which causes some exhaustion. Acting pragmatically, Porter calls a halt at the foot of the slope to permit the rear to join the main body and to grab some rest before crossing the river. All the while, slingshots continue to be used to propel stones upon the attackers. Having become accustomed to the incoming stones, the Americans more easily figure out how to avoid becoming a casualty. Once the rear catches up, Porter orders the advance.

By the time, the rear gets across the river, the vanguard had already seized the fortified village. Afterward, a contingent engages defenders at another fort and seizes it, but the Typees launch a strong assault and regain it within about one-half hour, compelling the American contingent to return to the main body. In the meantime, the Typees strike the fort that had been captured by pushing past

a contingent under Lieutenant McKnight. At the time, large numbers of Typees and Happaahs are in and around the fort, but they all vanish. Although the Typees threaten, the first volley compels them to hurriedly retreat. The Americans continue to fire, but no Typees are killed during their withdrawal. Afterward, the Americans proceed deeper into the valley, aware that their foes are formidable.

They reach and destroy three villages before the main bastion is reached; the advance is gained nearly yard by yard. The Typees tenaciously defend their capital; however, American firepower prevails and the capital falls. Captain Porter is impressed with the Typee fortifications as well as their valor, which causes him to reluctantly out of necessity burn the capital. Captain Porter later states: "The beauty and regularity of this place was such, as to strike every spectator with astonishment, and to their grand site, or public square, was far superior to any other we had met with." During the destruction of the capital, many of their goods are destroyed, along with large numbers of war canoes that had not yet been used.

Meanwhile, the Indians accompanying Porter fail to run away. They are too focused on plunder. Meanwhile, the valley recently described as beautiful resembles a continuing line of burning debris. Despite having been driven from their valley, the Typees are happy when word reaches them that Captain Porter continues to desire peace with them. They eagerly accept the proposal and the terms which include making peace with all the tribes allied with the Americans, and they agree to provide four hundred hogs in exchange for presents. With peace having returned, Captain Porter returns to readying his ships. By 9 December, he sails, leaving a small contingent behind.

**January 11 (Tuesday) 1814-In New York**, Marines and sailors bolster their positions at Fort Tompkins at Sackets Harbor to prepare for an anticipated assault by the British. Shipbuilding has been continuing through the bitter winter that has taken a severe toll on equipment and men. Today, Henry Eckford, supervisor of the shipbuilding, and Naval Master Commandant William Crane check the planking of the nearly finished Brigantine *Jefferson*. Two other vessels, the *Jones* and *Superior*, are also under construction. The British plan to attack is aborted and the *Jefferson* and *Jones* are seaworthy by early April. The frigate *Superior* joins the other two on the Great Lakes during the summer, participating with the lake squadron against the British at Kingston and Niagara.

**January 18–20 1814-In Naval Activity**, the USS *Enterprise*, supported by the brigantine *Rattlesnake*, seizes the Spanish brigantine *Isabella* from the British who had claimed the vessel as a prize. The two American vessels with their sailor and Marine contingents board and seize a Swedish vessel, the *Sincerity*, engaged in transporting British cargoes across the Atlantic.

**February 7 (Monday) 1814-In Naval Activity**, at Valparaiso, Chile, Captain David D. Porter entertains the governor and other prominent citizens on board the *Essex*. Porter, however, remains on the alert in the event a British warship appears. The *Essex Jr.* is anchored near the *Essex*, but positioned from where Lt. Downes' lookouts have a full view of the sea. At about midnight (7th-8th), Lt. Downes returns to his vessel and moves back out beyond the harbor to resume his patrol. Shortly thereafter, Porter gets an urgent message: "Two enemy's ships in sight."

The arrival of the British interrupts the ongoing celebration aboard the *Essex*. Porter focuses on preserving his ships. About one-half of the crew is still on shore and those men are recalled. Porter directs Downes to position his vessel near the *Essex* so they can support each other. Within about an hour and a half, the crews of both American ships are at their respective battle stations. On the morning of the 8th, at 0800, the British warships *Cherub* and *Phoebe*, both frigates, enter the harbor.

The HMS *Phoebe*, commanded by Captain Hillyar, slides in between the *Essex Jr.* and the *Essex* and pulls alongside of the *Essex*. Coincidentally, Porter and Hillyar had become acquaintances at Gibraltar way before the war erupted. Greetings are exchanged; however, the *Phoebe* begins to come even closer, prompting Porter to remind Hillyar that he was not in compliance with the laws of neutrality and underscores his complaint by informing Hillyar that the *Essex* is prepared to commence fire, but only if attacked. Hillyar's response reeks of condescension: "Oh sir, I have no intention of getting on board of you." Porter again cautions Hillyar, stating that if the *Phoebe* does "fall foul of the *Essex*, there would be much blood shed."

By this point, Porter is becoming increasingly annoyed by both Hillyar's tone and his cavalier attitude. At about the same time, the jib boom of the *Phoebe* swings across the forecastle of the *Essex*. Porter's annoyance increases to infuriation. He bellows an order to his boarding party, directing them to board the *Phoebe* at the instant its hull touches the hull of the *Essex*. Captain Porter is acutely aware that the *Phoebe* is poorly positioned and is unable to fire upon either the *Essex* or the *Essex Jr.*, while both American ships are poised to rivet the decks of the *Phoebe*. He also realizes that the HMS *Cherub* is too distant to provide any support.

Captain Hillyar is caught totally off guard. Before barging in on the *Essex*, he had been informed by a separate British ship in the port that Porter's crew was unprepared for a fight because Porter was throwing a large party aboard the ship and many of his crew members were celebrating onshore. Nevertheless, it is Hillyar that is unprepared as well as astonished—Americans are their battle stations and the boarding party is armed and anxious to move aboard his ship. Captain Hillyar's sly and cunning scheme, having been foiled, prompts him to vehemently protest, while he repeatedly states that he has no intentions of trying to seize the *Essex*, while exclaiming that the contact with the *Essex* had been accidental.

Porter, to the amazement of the government officials and other citizens of Valparaiso, spares the *Phoebe*. Afterward, the British frigate manages to slip free and move back beyond the range of the guns of the *Essex*. When questioned, Porter maintains that he was duty bound to "respect the neutrality of the port." The British, while maintaining their ruse of peaceful intent while at the neutral port, meet with Porter on the night of the 8th when they call on him at the home of Mr. Blanco, where he is staying while in Valparaiso. Captain Porter later visits Captain Hillyar.

While the days pass at Valparaiso, the two sides remain friendly but with some taunting. However, Hillyar is under orders to destroy the *Essex* wherever it is discovered, even if it is a neutral port. Meanwhile, the British even use flags to taunt the Americans. Soon after its arrival, the *Phoebe* hoists a flag which displays the words "God and Country, British Sailors' Best Rights, Traitors Offend Both." That flag receives a response from the *Essex*, which hoists a flag at the masthead: "God, Our Country and Liberty, Tyrants Offend Them." Another nerve-rubbing incident occurs when Captain Hillyar inquires what Porter will do with his prizes and receives the response that at the first opportunity, the prizes would be burned. Hillyar in turn dares Porter to do it when the *Phoebe* is nearby, but Porter, not to be outdone, retorts: "We will see."

In other activity, the enterprising *Enterprise* and *Rattlesnake* continue their exploits and engage the HMS *Rambler*, a brigantine, defeating and capturing the British vessel after a sea battle in the Caribbean. Later in the month, these two daring vessels confront and capture two more British vessels, the letter of marque schooner *Mars* and the *Eliza*. On 25 February, an unidentified British warship is spotted. The *Rattlesnake* and the *Enterprise*, after determining the enemy ship is too

strong, separate. The *Enterprise* tosses many of its guns overboard to gain speed and it succeeds in outrunning the British ship. It arrives at Wilmington, North Carolina, on 9 March.

Afterward, the *Enterprise* serves off the coast of Charleston for the duration. It remains in service until July 1823, when it gets wrecked on Little Curacao Island in the West Indies. The crew sustains no casualties. The *Enterprise* had been built during 1799 and served during the Quasi-war with France and the Barbary Coast War. The *Rattlesnake* also arrives back at Wilmington on 9 March. Shortly afterward, the *Rattlesnake* embarks on another cruise. Heading for La Rochelle, it encounters a well-armed British transport, the *Mary*, and after an engagement of about 20 minutes, the British strike their colors. The *Mary*'s voyage to England is cut short in the Bay of Biscay, to the delight of about 60 Frenchmen held on board as prisoners. A prize crew sails it into a French port, where the French prisoners debark in their home country. The British sustain three killed, including the captain and three others wounded. The Americans sustain one man wounded, a Marine officer. The *Rattlesnake* also moves into La Rochelle, but its timing is less than impeccable. It evades the British blockade ships. The wounded Marine declines the medical advice to have his leg amputated, which becomes a fatal mistake. He dies within a few weeks. The prize *Mary* is later recaptured by the British.

**March 4–5 1814 In Naval Activity**—The USS *Adams*, a sloop patrolling the waters in the vicinity of Africa and the West Indies, encounters the HMS *Nayntine Fairy*. The Marines and sailors on board the *Adams* seize the British vessel. The *Adams* consequently takes successful actions against the British vessels *Roebuck* and *Woodbridge*, capturing both.

**April 1814-In Connecticut**, a British contingent of seamen and Royal Marines is carried up the Connecticut River. The troops debark just above Saybrook at Pettepaug Point. The British destroy some shipping there and afterward they destroy other vessels at Brockway's Ferry. The raiders then retire and pursuit is initiated by militia, bolstered by a detachment of U.S. Marines from the fleet, but no contact is made. The British damage caused during this raid is estimated at about \$200,000.

**In Naval Activity**, a part of Captain David D. Porter's squadron prepares to embark. They have been at Nuka Hiva in the Marquesas Islands in Polynesia since the previous October. The commander of the force, Lt. Gamble, U.S. Marine Corps, is confronted by mutiny incited by his crew of mostly British seamen captured on whaling ships. Once Gamble detects the signs of the mutiny, he transfers all the arms onto his ship, the *Greenwich*. Nonetheless, the mutineers seize the *Seringapatam* on 7 May, and during the struggle, Lt. Gamble is wounded in his arm. After yet another attack by the mutineers, Gamble, his force reduced to 8 men, succeeds in getting to sea with the Sir Andrew Hammond. The ship sails toward Hawaii about 2,000 miles distant. The vessels arrive safely at the Sandwich Islands only to be captured by the HMS *Cherub* on 19 June 1814.

Also, Britain now blockades the New England ports, causing severe shortages in America. The United States reacts immediately and orders American ships to attack and seize British ships off England's coast. Their efforts are fruitful, capturing an enormous amount of British vessels by the summer. This type of concerted British pressure is straining the American cause. New Englanders, natural seafarers, are argumentative, and there has been talk of throwing in with the British, but it never materializes.

In other activity, the privateer *America* arrives back at Portsmouth to culminate a cruise that began during December 1813. During its time at sea, the *America* captured 12 prizes, including the 10-gun brigantine *Margaret*, which was cornered while sailing from Cadiz to Newfoundland with a cargo of salt. After its capture, the *Margaret* was taken into port at Salem. Other prizes include the

*Sovereign*, a 300-ton brigantine that was taken into port at Portsmouth, New Hampshire; the brigantine *Brothers*, rerouted to a Spanish port; the 250-ton brigantine *Apollo*; the schooner *Hope*; and the schooner *Sylph*. A few of the prizes were destroyed at sea and several others became cartels to transport paroled prisoners. During the cruise, the *America* was commanded by Captain James Chever, who succeeded Captain Joseph Ropes.

Elsewhere, Captain George Coggeshall remains in France after ordering his privateer, the *David Porter*, to return to the United States. He had been there since the previous March to carry out some personal business for the owners of the privateer. At present, France is less than stable due to the political circumstances and the advancing British Army, making it hard to find an American vessel, though a few are scattered around. The *Lion*, a schooner, is at L'Orient, along with the schooner *Spencer* and the *Leo*. The Americans in France are familiar with Captain Coggeshall, and they expeditiously work to find a swift vessel to get Coggeshall back to the States. All of the Americans still in France have concerns, including that France is expected to devise reasons to prevent American vessels from leaving. With that in mind, Captain Coggeshall works the crew around the clock to make it possible to get out of the country before the French interfere. On 6 November, the *Leo* prepares to sail.

**June 8–10 1814-FIRST BATTLE OF ST. LEONARD'S CREEK In Maryland**, the British, having recently failed to destroy Joshua Barney's squadron on the Chesapeake Bay, initiate a tumultuous bombardment of Barney's force at St. Leonard's Creek. The British force, composed of about 20 barges and two schooners, use everything in their arsenal including rockets, but the Americans fail to yield despite the battering of the 8th and 9th. On the 10th, the British increase the intensity of their attacks. Moving under the sounds of British martial music, twenty-one barges, a schooner and a rocket boat move into the creek, and the craft are carrying about 800 troops intent on demolishing Barney's makeshift squadron, composed of two gunboats, 13 barges and his sloop, with a combined force of about 500 men. His two gunboats remain at anchor slightly above his squadron due to their inability to operate in the shoal water.

The British schooners fire first, but the Americans immediately return fire. Barney's son, Major William B. Barney, defies the danger while he remains in a small boat and rows from vessel to vessel passing out his father's orders. Despite the British superiority, without explanation, after a prolonged duel, the British begin to disengage and sail back to the ships that are covering the attacking contingent. Enthusiasm builds within the American force as it gives pursuit trying to intercept the retiring force before it reaches the protection of the ships at the mouth of the creek. Nonetheless, the enthusiasm suddenly dissipates when an 18-gun schooner blocks further progress. Barney remains undaunted and orders his squadron to concentrate their fire upon the schooner. The powerful barrages force the schooner to withdraw under the guns of a frigate and a sloop of war. It makes it to its protectors; however, Barney's gunners had severely damaged it, which compels the British to run it ashore before it sinks.

By this time, the British aboard the frigate and sloop of war have become infuriated. Both ships open fire to destroy Barney's force and avenge the loss of their schooner. Barney's squadron is struck by a cyclone of fire in which the British propel at least 700 shots toward the squadron. Nonetheless, they fail to inflict any serious damage. During the furious bombardment, the rest of the British attack-craft arrive back under the protection of the ships' guns; however, Barney's guns are not silenced. They continue to return fire while the enemy returns to the ships. Afterward, Barney

disengages and returns to his position in the creek.

On the following day, in his official report to Secretary of the Navy William Jones, Barney states: “The large schooner was nearly destroyed, having several shot through it at the water’s edge; its deck torn up, guns dismantled, and mainmast nearly cut off about half way up, and rendered unserviceable. It was otherwise much cut; they ran her ashore to prevent its sinking. The commodore’s boat was cut in two; a shot went through the rocket boat; one of the small schooners carrying two thirty-two pounders had a shot which raked her from aft forward; the boats generally suffered, but I have not ascertained what loss they sustained in men...On Saturday evening, they burnt the property of Mr. Patterson and Skinner.”

Following the engagement, the British made no further attempts to dislodge Barney from the creek; however, they continue their terrifying mischief by striking plantations and burning property, along with constant plunder. The secretary of the Navy takes action. He dispatches 100 U.S. Marines and with three artillery pieces under Captain Samuel Miller to “relieve Commodore Barney from the blockade.” Another contingent of artillery with two 18-pounders under Colonel Wadsworth and about 100 regulars are also sent to aid Barney. In the meantime, General Philip Stuart had called out militia, and they are en route to support Barney.

**June 24–26 1814-In Maryland,** Colonel Decius Wadsworth arrives at St. Leonard’s Creek on 24 June. He confers with Commodore Barney and Captain Samuel Miller, U.S. Marine Corps, to decide on the strategy to deal with the British blockading squadron. They conclude that a battery must be constructed on a bluff lying between the creek and the Patuxent River, and that the position would also require a furnace to heat the shot. It is also decided that Wadsworth’s two 18-pounders on traveling carriages will be deployed on the bluff. The guns are to support an attack by the flotilla, scheduled for the morning of the 26th. Commodore Barney assigns twenty of his men and Sailing Master Geoghan under Colonel Wadsworth to manage the battery. The project runs on schedule and the attack is launched at daybreak on the 26th.

Barney’s barges and Wadsworth’s battery simultaneously commence fire upon the British vessels anchored about 400 yards distant. The British react quickly, and return fire is catapulted toward Barney’s squadron. The battle continues for about two hours, when unexpectedly, Wadsworth’s battery falls silent. The crew spikes the two guns and abandons the position, leaving Barney’s squadron in great peril, well within range of the British grape shot and without support fire while facing a far superior force with numerous barges and more importantly, two frigates, a brigantine and two schooners. Barney’s options are stand and face annihilation or run. He chooses the latter, and the decision is made within several minutes.

The British, following Barney’s hurried departure, also retire due to their apprehension that Barney’s land battery might still harass or even devastate the squadron. The squadron redeploys near Point Patience. Following the absence of the blockaders, Barney moves out of the creek and up the Patuxent River. He repositions his squadron along the Western Branch close to Upper Marlborough. During the engagement, Barney’s command, according to his report, sustains three killed, including Midshipman Asquith, and eight wounded.

**June 26 (Sunday) 1814- In Naval Activity,** the USS *Wasp* (fifth) intercepts and captures the vessel *Orange Boven*, while operating in the vicinity of the English Channel. The Americans destroy the prize. Elsewhere, Commodore Joshua Barney’s naval force, bolstered by a detachment of artillery and a contingent of Marines, engages a British blockading flotilla in St. Leonard’s Creek. The Americans compel the British to end the blockade, permitting Barney to advance farther up the

Patuxent River.

**June 28 (Tuesday) 1814-In Naval Activity**, the USS *Wasp* (fifth) commanded by Johnston Blakely, spots the HMS *Reindeer* around 0400 at a point about 225 miles west of Plymouth, England. The volatile encounter ignites a fury-filled duel from a distance of only about 60 yards when the *Wasp* initiates fire that rivets the British vessel. The British return heavy fire, and as the two vessels maneuver for advantage, the British twice are repelled from boarding the *Wasp*. The Marines aboard the *Wasp* add the pernicious sting of their fire to inflict heavy casualties upon the *Reindeer*'s crew. Nevertheless, for about 20 minutes the antagonists trade incessant fire until finally, the Yanks succeed in boarding the *Reindeer* and compelling the British to surrender. Although the *Wasp* prevails, it also sustains severe damage, including about six hits to its hull and heavy damage to its rigging and sails. Meanwhile, the *Reindeer*'s crew is transferred to the *Wasp*. Afterward, the Americans destroy the *Reindeer* by setting it on fire.

After seeing the *Reindeer* explode, the Americans, with their prisoners aboard the *Wasp*, set sail for L'Orient, France. En route the *Wasp* captures two more vessels. According to the commander's report, the Americans sustain five killed and 21 wounded. The British aboard the *Reindeer* sustain 25 killed and 42 wounded.

**July 1814**-As the war persists into its last months of confrontation, U.S. vessels maintain their standards as a new and fighting fleet and score further successes against the mighty Royal Navy. The Marines, who play a gallant part in support of the Navy in confiscating British vessels, participate in the capture of the British brigantine *Regulator*, which is defeated handily by the *Wasp* on the 4th. The USS *Peacock* takes the advantage the following day, seizing four British vessels in English waters. While American diplomats wait in Ghent to begin peace talks with representatives from Great Britain, a huge force of British reinforcements, no longer needed by Wellington against Napoleon, who has been defeated and sent into exile, is en route to the United States. The coy British anticipate news of further progress which they can use to dictate terms rather than negotiate a settlement. Finally, on August 8, the British negotiators arrive and the talks begin.

**August 1814-In Naval Activity**, the USS *Peacock*, during a mission in the waters off the coasts of England and Ireland, scores success with the capture of several British vessels, including the sloops HMS *William and Ann*, HMS *Leith Passket*, and the HMS *Peggy and Jane*. The *Peacock*, assisted by its Marine contingent, also seizes the *Sir Edward Pellen* off the Irish coast, as well as the vessel *William*. The USS *Adams* and the USS *Wasp*, both operating in waters in the vicinity of England and Europe, achieve success with victories over the British vessels *Paris* and the *Maria* by the *Adams*, a sloop. The *Wasp* continues its victory streak by catching and capturing the British brigantine *Lettice* on the 30th, followed by success and victory over the brigantine *Bon Accord* the following day. Two additional brigantines, including the HMS *Triton*, fall to the Yankee crew of the *Peacock* on the 21st and 23rd. Also, the American privateer *Harrison* out of Baltimore arrives at Savannah. Under its commander, H. Perry, the *Harrison* embarks on a second cruise during 1815. It seizes a total of six prizes.

**August 4 (Thursday) 1814-In Michigan**, Colonel George Croghan leads a force of soldiers and Marines in an attack against Fort George (Fort Michilimackinac). During the assault, Major Andrew Holmes is killed. Initially, the attack progresses as the landing succeeds; however, as the column advances toward the fort, a force of British and Indians, holding concealed positions, unleashes an ambush. Croghan is compelled to retire. The Americans regain the post the next year and rename it Fort Holmes.

**August 19–24 1814-In Maryland,** American units begin to converge upon Bladensburg. The American forces at or near there on the 23rd include a brigade from D.C. of about 1,070 men, composed of two regiments (militia and volunteer companies of Washington and Georgetown) commanded by Colonel Magruder and Colonel William Brent. The D.C. regiments are supported by two light artillery companies, commanded by Major George Peter and Captain Benjamin Burch, supported by two rifle companies commanded by Captains Doughty and Stull, and General Walter Smith, of Georgetown. Also in the area are a brigade of about 500 men under General Robert Young, also from D.C., composed of companies drawn from Alexandria and the surrounding area, a cavalry company under Captain Thornton, and one company of light artillery commanded by Captain Marsteller; however, Young's brigade does not participate because it was deployed to defend Fort Washington; a brigade out of Baltimore under General Tobias Stansbury, composed of a 550-man regiment under Lt. Colonel Ragan (formerly captain in U.S. Rifles) and a regiment of about 850 men under Lt. Colonel Schutz; a contingent under Lt. Colonel Sterett, composed of the 5th Baltimore Regiment (volunteers), a rifle battalion under Major William Pinckney and two volunteer artillery companies from Baltimore under Captain Meyers and Captain Magruder; two regiments composed of about 750 men under Colonel William D. Beall, a veteran of the American Revolution, and Colonel Hall; a 240-man contingent under Colonel Kramer; two battalions totaling about 150 men, commanded by Majors Maynard and Waring; Virginia militia under Colonel George Minor, composed of a regiment of about 600 men and a 100-man contingent of cavalry; several hundred infantrymen (regulars) and one company of about 80 men of the U.S. 12th Regiment, under Lt. Colonel William Scott; and Commodore Barney's force composed of about 400 seamen and 150 Marines, the latter accompanied by two 18-pounders.

Other units include about 300 Maryland cavalrymen under Lt. Colonel Tilghman, Major Otho H. Williams and Major Charles Sterett; the Bladensburg Troop of Horse, commanded by Captain J.C. Herbert; and a 125-man contingent of U.S. Cavalry, commanded by Lt. Colonel Lavel. Also, pursuant to orders from President Madison, General Samuel Smith at Baltimore has a third brigade at the ready, prepared to march at a moment's notice. The total American force, including some who arrive on the 24th and 25th, stands at about 7,000 troops.

**August 19–25 1814-THE BATTLE OF BLADENSBURG-**The British are coming, but not to Concord. This time, after landing on the 19th, they intend to march right into the White House and their intent is not to take tea with the Madisons. The trepidation is great for the citizenry as the Redcoats in fine attire accompanied by regimental music move swiftly through Maryland, the band filling the air with melodious tunes as they march in cadence against the anticipated defenders. In Washington, preliminary action is taken; however, not defensive. Pursuant to orders from the Secretary of War John Armstrong, the magazines and the vessels are destroyed to prevent capture. General William H. Winder establishes his headquarters at the Eastern Branch bridge. He dispatches a succinct note to John Armstrong suggesting that the situation upriver is "threatening." He proposes that Commodore Barney's contingent should move to Greenleaf's Point to command the batteries there and also occupy the Washington Navy Yard. If that is not possible, another contingent should be ordered there. Armstrong said he "saw no necessity for ordering Barney to Greenleaf's Point or Navy Yard—advised the Commodore to join the army at Bladensburg, and ordered Minor's regiment to that place." Cavalry patrols move out in all directions to shadow the British and to gather intelligence as the Redcoats continue their advance to the capital. In addition, plans are made to destroy the bridge if necessary.

British General Ross, in an attempt to prevent the anticipated heat of the day from interfering with his advance, sets out from his camp at Melwood during the early predawn hours. By 0400, the columns are passing near the American camp at Old Fields. Duplicating his ruse used at Nottingham, the army reaches the fork in the road about two miles past the American camp. Ross orders the column to take the fork running westward directly to Washington, which lies about seven miles distant; however, after advancing only a short distance, leaving time for any American patrols to observe the rear echelon to turn at the fork, General Ross cunningly reverses directions and advances northward heading directly toward Bladensburg, about ten miles distant.

On the 22nd, Commodore Barney had been ordered to destroy his fleet and afterward move to Nottingham. Upon his arrival there on the morning of the 24th, General William H. Winder directed Barney to lead his force of about 500 sailors and Marines, with the latter under the command of Captain Samuel Miller, to positions along the main road where Barney's two 18-pounders are deployed, between the forces of Colonel Beall and Colonel Hood. Beall had just arrived following a grueling 16-mile march. General Winder places Barney's battalion in command of the guns, which are manned by his seamen, while the Marines and Barney's remaining seamen, under Captain Samuel Miller, acting as infantry, form a protective ring around the artillery.

A militia battalion under Colonel Kramer deploys off in the woods to the front of Barney's position and those of Beall and Hood. Another regiment, under Colonel Brent, along with Major Waring's battalion and a few other units deploy as the left flank of the second line at a point in the rear of Major George Peter's artillery.

Meanwhile, the regulars under Lt. Colonel Scott form their line in front of Magruder's artillery, which leans from the left toward Peter's artillery. The artillery (six 6-pounders) under Magruder and Meyers hold ground at a makeshift breastworks that dominates the road and the bridge. Near the artillery, a battalion of riflemen deploy on the right and hold positions close to the river near the intersection of the two roads.

On the left of the artillery, Major Pinckney deploys the remainder of his riflemen behind a barn near the Georgetown Road, and they are bolstered by two militia companies under Captain Gorsuch and Captain Ducker (Colonel Schutz's regiment). To the rear of Pinckney's positions, Colonel Ragan posts his command, with his right leaning against the Georgetown Road. The line continues with the remainder of Schutz's regiment; however, a small gap exists between Ragan's position and that of Schutz. The far left flank of the infantry is held by Colonel Sterrett's regiment.

On the morning of the 24th, General Stansbury's command deploys in some heights close to the old bridge between the old post road and the Washington Road. All of the positions are complete by about noon on the 24th. Meanwhile, militia troops out of Baltimore under General Tobias arrive, and they are directed to deploy near present-day Cottage City, along the Bladensburg-Washington Road. Initially, General Winder had deployed his forces at Wood Yard, anticipating the British columns would march straight into his positions; however, General Ross advanced to Nottingham, then swerved to the right, taking his force toward Marlborough to link with Admiral Cockburn, who is accompanied by seamen and Royal Marines. At about 1100, General Winder, receives word at his headquarters that the British are closing on Bladensburg.

After leaving a small artillery to demolish the bridge at the Eastern Branch, Winder orders his entire force to advance to the town. As soon as he arrives, Winder confers with General Stansbury and Colonel Monroe, and he informs them that he "approved the dispositions which had been made." The British can be seen on a hill opposite their positions, and the general also sees President

Madison, who arrives with a party that includes Secretary of War Armstrong, and a lawyer, Francis Scott Key, a volunteer in Major Peter's artillery. Key had received permission from President Madison to go out to the fleet to try to secure the release of a prominent physician from Marlborough, Doctor Beanes. Congressman Alexander McKim arrives on his horse and proclaims that he had voted for the war and "he could not find it in his conscience, if not to fight for it, at least to stand by those who did."

General Winder, who is staring at the enemy as the column is moving into Bladensburg, begins to receive strong suggestions on where to redeploy his troops from the visitors. The arm-chair suggestions work on Winder's demeanor; however, he remains calm and realizes there is no time to realign his positions even if the secretary of war was among those making the suggestions.

In line with the British route change, General Winder had initially retired to the Battalion Old Fields before sprinting to Bladensburg. The trek for the British, despite having no opposition, is dreadful due to the blistering heat, which punishes the troops and causes a large number to falter from exhaustion. Nevertheless, the column arrives at Bladensburg at about 1200 on the 24th.

Meanwhile, the British, while approaching, spot a huge cloud of dust, and shortly thereafter, they spot the American army just as the column passes a plantation. The Americans are formed in three lines along a hill, with their flanks protected by the Anacostia River and a steep ravine. The site of the defenses is solid, advantageous high ground, with an array of artillery that dominates the approaches and the bridge. In addition to the three lines, the cavalry is posted nearby in a field.

However, the British remain unsure whether the town itself also contains troops. The column is halted to permit a reconnaissance patrol to determine the American strength within the town. Upon its return, the patrol reports that Bladensburg is free of troops, and those who were there had also been redeployed on the opposite bank of the river.

The advance is resumed, and within a short while, the British enter into the range of the American artillery, then suddenly, the Americans observe a sea of red descending Downes' Hill. It is an overwhelming sight to the militia posted west of the Anacostia River. The British press forward with the usual rigidity of British regulars, and they come under heavy fire. Initially, the British spread out and take positions in and around some houses, but they only pause there while General Ross assesses the situation. It is determined that a delay in finding a ford would be more costly, and that the only practical route is to cross the bridge. By about 1300, the British move at double-quick toward the bridge that spans the Anacostia River.

The attackers hit a hurricane of fire from artillery on their left and afterward from a two gun battery which holds its fire until the British are on the bridge. The British take severe casualties and their attack stalls. By this time American riflemen deployed in the woods open fire to inflict more casualties; however, the artillery fire becomes less effective. At this time the light brigade advances toward the bridge and pushes across, passing over and around dead and wounded comrades who fell during the charge. They succeed in gaining a foothold on the opposite bank. Once across, the brigade strikes the first line of defense and compels the defenders to retreat without firing a shot. The hasty retreat leaves two guns in the field for the British.

Despite having no backup troops, the vanguard disposes of their "knapsacks and haversacks" and lunges forward to collapse the second line, but as the impetuous advance begins, General Winder observes that the remainder of the enemy force is still on the opposite bank. He orders the 5th Baltimore regiment to counterattack, and the regiment is joined by regiments of Ragan and Schutz, who align on the right and center of the line. With the support of artillery, the British are pushed

back, and at the same time, the Americans advance with fixed bayonets. Meanwhile, the British line had been too widely extended, which prevents them from being able to hold their positions. They are pushed to the river bank, but the attack fails to drive them back across the river. Shortly thereafter, General Ross succeeds in pushing a brigade across the bridge to reinforce the vanguard and take the point. With a more solid force on the opposite bank, Ross sends the 44th Regiment to strike Winder's left. The attack is synchronized with a rocket attack which inflicts terror into the militia, which is receiving its baptism under fire. The militia troops, not realizing the rockets are pyrotechnics, panic and take flight. Major Pinckney is wounded during the fighting at the bridge, but he is able to rally his men, who reform and fight alongside the 5th Baltimore Regiment. All the while, the British fire upon the retreating Americans.

The militia on the left flank vanish in quick retreat; however, for a while, Winder is able to hold his ground on the right until the British 4th Regiment arrives to bolster the attack. Shortly thereafter the American line there falters when more British troops join the attack. To their left, the Americans observe the entire line had collapsed, and then they see the attacking British 44th Regiment closing upon their rear, causing the right to follow suit. The militia retreats haphazardly, permitting the British regulars to turn the other flank to place Winder in an untenable position while he orders a retreat. Sterett's riflemen hold their ground to provide cover fire for the troops under Ragan and Schutz. The regiment, bolstered by Burch's artillery, succeeds in pushing back the British light brigade. At about the same time, reinforcements from Annapolis arrive from the east. Nonetheless, they become fearful of not getting any support from Winder's force. Consequently they end up in the rear. By this time, the British are close to surrounding Sterett's 5th Regiment and Burch's artillery. Winder orders both units to retreat in order to reform. Nonetheless, the epidemic of panic overcomes the regiment when they sense they will be surrounded. Discipline vanishes and a stampede begins. Colonel Sterett's efforts to halt the flight and restore order are in vain. The British, after forcing Winder to relinquish more ground, turn their attention on the remainder of the American force, the second line.

Colonel Kramer's militia takes the brunt of the attack and they resist tenaciously, but only for a short time. Outnumbered by about two to one and with no signs of any reinforcements on the move, they are shoved back. Meanwhile, General Walter Smith's force—composed of the Georgetown militia, the Washington militia and the regulars commanded by Lt. Colonel Scott—up to this point has remained in place to the rear of the second line. The British on the opposite side (left) of the road advance to turn Scott's flank, protected by Colonel Brent. They are met by Magruder's artillery; however, the barrage is ineffective and the British maintain the pace.

The British prepare to advance to seize the capital, expecting no more opposition, except for one stubborn group that remains in place at the guns. While the British pause on the right side of the road in a field, the artillery under Major Peter begins to bombard the field; however, it does not deter the British. The British left wing, commanded by Colonel Thornton, pushes down the road directly toward Barney's position, which contains two 18-pounders. Commodore Barney, along with his seamen and contingent of Marines, had not been frightened of the Redcoats or their rockets. The guns had been stinging the British throughout the battle and now as the final strong point, the British receive unexpected effective fire that stuns the British who had so easily overrun the army and now find themselves under fire by troops that refuse to surrender an inch. Nevertheless, when the militia absconded, the teamsters joined in the race to the rear still hitched to the ammunition wagons, leaving Barney's sailors and Marines with only a small amount of ammunition. Commodore

Barney's command, however, soon convinces the British that they are not moving against militia. Commodore Barney and Captain Samuel Miller, U.S. Marine Corps, lead the troops during a spectacular example of engaging a superior force. The British are pounded by the guns of the defiant band. Repeatedly, the British lunge forward and each time they are handily repulsed.

The sailors and Marines boldly engage the attackers and hold their ground, and then mount a counterattack that drives the British back. Nevertheless, after the militia under Beall had fled, Barney's force loses its flank protection, giving the British the opening to eventually encircle the Spartan force. Up until just before the dubious retreat of the army, President Madison, John Armstrong and James Monroe had been at the scene of the battle until President Madison directed the party to leave and let the army handle the British. General Armstrong and James Monroe, himself an officer during the Revolution, had actually interfered by having Winder rearranges some of his forces.

As the capital is being abandoned, First Lady Dolly Madison refuses to leave the White House until the president returns. It is Mrs. Madison who shows strength in this time of desperation. With the Army gone, it is Mrs. Madison who saves George Washington's portrait. At about 1500, two messages arrive at the White House. Both warn of the pending disaster, and Mrs. Madison is urged to depart immediately, but she ignores the danger. Earlier, George Washington Parke Custis arrived at the White House. He was extremely concerned about the portrait of George Washington, which would certainly become a prize of the British. Just before she departs to escape, with no time to spare, she directs a servant to pull the frame from the wall. The canvas is removed from the frame and Washington's portrait, painted by Stuart, is taken to safety at Georgetown. She carries it herself as she departs the deserted capital. Mrs. Madison also saves an original copy of the Declaration of Independence.

Back at Bladensburg, by the time encirclement becomes imminent, Commodore Barney had received a debilitating wound, but still, he has not lost his fighting spirit. Barney orders his men to disable the guns and break away. He also refuses to allow his troops to carry him off. Before retiring under orders of Barney, his battalion had felled about 225 British troops. Commodore Barney is no stranger to the British. During the Revolution, the indomitable commodore had literally been captured four times, including once when he escaped from the infamous Mill Prison at Plymouth and outwitted the British to escape from England and make it back to the United States. Having an apparent propensity to be a guest of the British, Barney was again seized by them during 1793, and as improbable as it seems, Commodore Barney, who retired after the Revolution, was reactivated during 1812 and captured again at that time.

The British, after to seizing Commodore Barney for the seventh time, hold him only for a short while. Although he has a wound to his thigh and continues to carry the ball, he resumes command of his squadron during October 1814 and remains in command until his squadron is deactivated during October 1815. In 1818, Commodore Barney is preparing to move to Kentucky, but dies in Pittsburgh on 1 December.

General Robert Ross wins a decisive victory over the Americans under General Winder at Bladensburg, but not without cost. British Colonel William Thornton's brigade, which pursues the Americans, has high casualties. The British seize at least half of the American guns and many muskets. They also capture 120 prisoners. The Americans sustain about 150 casualties. According to a British officer's report, the British lose about 500 killed or wounded. Colonel Thornton, commanding officer of the light brigade, is seriously wounded; Lt. Colonel Wood of the 85th

Regiment is also gravely wounded along with another officer, Major Brown, who commanded the advance guard. General Ross escapes injury; however, his horse was shot from under him. The United States Army and American governmental officers evacuate Washington, taking with them important documents, including secret journals of Congress. President Madison and his cabinet had been emphasizing the Canadian campaign, yet unwittingly they did not properly prepare a defense of the capital.

During the American retreat, after pulling back about 500 or 600 yards, the column halts and reforms; however, they are ordered to resume the retreat. Winder then orders for his entire force to converge on the high ground west of the turnpike gate less than two miles from the capital. While General Smith and other officers begin to gather the scattered troops, the Virginia regiment, commanded by Colonel George Minor, delayed due to a snafu in acquiring weapons, arrives to join Smith. Colonel Minor's fresh regiment is delegated to provide cover fire for the army as it retreats. Nevertheless, although it is Winder's intent to march to Washington to defend the city, the militia had scattered with most fleeing toward Montgomery Court House, Maryland. He confers with Secretary Armstrong and it becomes obvious that Washington cannot be defended. A decision is made to assemble the troops in the heights of Georgetown. However, it is soon determined that that militia is too widely scattered. By the following day (25th), the orders are changed and the army is instead to be assembled at Montgomery Courthouse.

British troops led by Admiral Sir George Cockburn and General Ross occupy Washington, D.C., against no opposition on the 24th. They move to the White House and set it afire. They also burn the capitol building and many other structures. Only bad weather prompts the British to call off the attack and return to their ships on the Patuxent River. A sudden storm as frightening to the British as the British fireworks were to the defenders of Bladensburg saves Washington and the cause. In addition, the British occupy Fort Washington at Greenleaf's Point, which had been self-destructed by the Americans. An accidental explosion occurs while demolition crews are destroying the powder, killing quite a few British troops and wounding many more.

The British spare very few buildings in the capital. Doctor Thornton persuades the British to spare the patent office, which also contains the post office, on the grounds that the building contains items and documents that have "value for the whole scientific world." Other buildings that escape harm include the jail, one hotel and several private homes. The British also capture the Marine Corps barracks; however, the British also spare it and the commandant's house. It is uncertain why, but the two reasons most talked about were the British respect for the Marines' actions at Bladensburg and because the British had initially intended to permanently occupy the city and use the barracks. The British, pushed out of Washington by the storm, leave their fires burning on the night of the 25th to divert the Americans' attention and march back to the ships at Benedict along the Patuxent River. The British had set the USS *Boston* afire, while in D.C., but it had been moored at the navy yard since 1802, and due to being in poor condition, it was not scheduled to participate in the conflict. The Americans have little to celebrate following the rout at Bladensburg, but in retrospect, the federal government had done little to prepare for the invasion and the government's expectations of having untrained militia hold off a seasoned British army was folly. One of the British officers who chronicled the battle stated: "The fact is, that, with the exception of a party of sailors from the gunboats, under the command of Commodore Barney, no troops could behave worse than they did. The skirmishers were driven in as soon as attack[ed], the first line gave way without offering the slightest resistance, and the left of the main body was broken in within half an hour after it was

seriously engaged. Of the sailors, however, it would be injustice not to speak in the terms which their conduct merits. They were employed as gunners, and not only did they serve their guns with a quickness and precision which astonish their assailants, but they stood till some of them were actually bayoneted, with fuses in their hands: nor was it till their leader was wounded and taken and they saw themselves deserted on all sides by the soldiers, that they quitted the field.”

The British savor the victory, while plans are being readied for the capture of Washington, Baltimore and Fort McHenry, which they believe is probably defended only by militia. With this multiple thrust, which includes the capture of Lake Champlain by Commodore Downie and domination of New York by General Prevost, who is coordinating with Downie, the British expect the Americans to fold. The full fury of the Crown must crumble Fort McHenry and humble Baltimore, while the Royal Navy drains Lake Champlain of the Yankee impersonation of a genuine fleet. Once Baltimore is taken, they expect Philadelphia to fall along with New York, and the war shall quickly cease, and all this by September if the British have their way.

This exciting news of the victory and the burning of the capital is dispatched to London, which prompts new messages to be delivered to the British negotiators in Ghent. They are instructed to prepare to demand that Britain shall retain all territory that it presently occupies as a condition of a settlement. The representatives are informed that much more good news is about to unfold, as other British victories are close at hand. The news is disheartening to the Americans, who anxiously await some positive word from the battlefields of the United States.

**August 21 (Sunday) 1814-In Maryland**, during the morning, General William H. Winder’s militia force assembles. Later this day, U.S. Marines under Captain Miller arrive to join with the army. Winder is also reinforced by the U.S. 86th and 88th Regiments, which arrive at the Wood Yard between Upper Marlborough and Washington, about five miles in front of the main body and about ten or twelve miles from Upper Marlborough. Meanwhile, Commodore Joshua Barney is informed that the British had landed a force at Benedict and that they are advancing toward Washington, D.C. Barney, accompanied by most of his officers and about 400 men, speeds to join with the other American defenders. Lt. Frazier is left in charge of the flotilla and a small contingent with orders to destroy the vessels if the British approach in force. He arrives at Upper Marlborough during the evening, and on the following day, he is instructed by General Levin Winder to join him at the Wood Yard. Barney’s force arrives there at about noon.

Winder receives intelligence in a letter from Colonel Monroe that he had reconnoitered the British near Benedict and that he “enumerated 27 square rigged vessels, some bay craft and barges.” A second letter from Monroe urges Winder to dispatch 500 or 600 troops to launch an attack. During the night, Monroe and another officer, Colonel Beall, arrive at Winder’s camp and provide him with more details. Colonel Beall reports that he had observed about 4,000 troops; however, he emphasizes that he had not seen the entire force. Winder’s report from Colonel Monroe is not reassuring. Monroe estimates the British force at 6,000; however, that is high. The Americans in or around Bladensburg total about 7,000 and the British force totals about 4,500.

**August 29–30 1814-In Maryland**, a British squadron arrives at Annapolis on a journey to Washington. The inhabitants offer no resistance, and on the following day, the town surrenders. The British demand supplies, provisions and even vessels, and the citizens acquiesce. Afterward, in Washington, the U.S. forces take action to halt the squadron from acting at will without challenge. Sailors are assembled and placed under the command of Commodores John Rodgers, Oliver H. Perry and David D. Porter and Captain Creighton. Three fire boats and four barges are also

committed to ensure the British do not continue to have free passage in the region. According to design of the recently established force, the rear of the British squadron comes under continual harassment. Meanwhile, Commodore Porter, supported by Captain Creighton and other naval officers oversee the construction of a battery along the Potomac (west bank) at the White House (separate from the president's residence in the capital). The battery is built by sailors and U.S. Marines. The position is also bolstered by Virginia militia (General John P. Hungerford's brigade) and other units. Meanwhile, on the east bank of the river, Commodore Perry and Lt. Reed, U.S. Navy, oversee the construction of a battery at Indian Head.

**September 3 1814-In Naval Activity**, the American Commodore Rodgers, in pursuit of a British fleet, pauses while passing Alexandria, Virginia. He is incensed that the townspeople have not yet re-hoisted the Stars and Stripes. In other naval activity, a British expeditionary force composed of about 1,000 men, dispatched from Castine, Maine, arrives at Hampden, which is about 35 miles from the British base. Their objective is the USS *Adams*, which had recently completed a cruise in European waters. The British intend to capture the *Adams* while it is receiving repairs. The ship's commander, Captain Morris, in anticipation of a British attack, had ordered the construction of batteries. He gathers militia, but the troops lack weapons. Morris uses the ship's supply to provide the militia with muskets. Nonetheless, as soon as the British regulars come into view, the militia abandons its positions and scatters. The flight of the militia makes it impossible for Captain Morris' seamen and Marines to repulse the Redcoats who have arrived in great numbers; however, Morris does not consider surrender. He orders the crew and his Marines, except for a small detachment, to escape. After the men depart, Morris and the others who remain behind set up the *Adams* for destruction by lighting a slow-match. The British by this time have posted men at the bridge to cut off escape. Undaunted, Morris and the others jump in the water and swim to safety to deny the British their prisoners. The British at about the same time have also failed to capture the frigate, which suddenly explodes, leaving them no options except to return to Castine.

On 8 January, a court of inquiry is held regarding the action of the militia commander General John Blake (1st Brigade and 10th Division), a veteran of the Revolutionary War, and Lt. Colonel Andrew Grant. Major General Henry Sewall acts as president of the inquiry. It ends with a decision that the charges do not appear to warrant a court-martial.

Also, in Michigan, near Fort Michilimackinac, where the USS *Tigress* and *Scorpion* have been assigned blockade duty since the previous August to prevent supplies and provisions from reaching the garrison at Mackinaw, a British force awaits darkness, then creeps up and by total surprise, captures the *Tigress*. Keeping the American flag flying, the British now on the *Tigress* come alongside the *Scorpion* and board it.

**September 6 (Tuesday) 1814-In Maryland**, American guns are entrenched at Indian Head as the British fleet passes en route to Baltimore, but they escape unharmed. Gordon's British fleet is still around to aid the assault against Fort McHenry and Baltimore. Meanwhile, at Baltimore, work on fortifying the city continues for the attack that is expected. Even British newspapers and politicians have been boasting about the doom intended for the city. One statesman proclaimed that Baltimore is "the great depository of the hostile spirit of the United States against England." One of the newspapers in London printed: "The American navy must be annihilated; their arsenals and dock yards must be consumed; and the truculent inhabitants of Baltimore must be tamed with the weapons which shook the wooden turrets of Copenhagen." And another newspaper in London had declared its opinion by printing: "If any towns are to suffer, they should be the objects, in order to crush a

large body of privateer shipping in Baltimore, and in Washington to destroy a pretty well supplied arsenal, and thus prevent Congress meeting there again, an event much and generally wished for by the people of New York, Philadelphia and the Eastern States.”

Nonetheless, in Baltimore, the inhabitants had galvanized. The military and civilian volunteers have been working non-stop to guarantee that the British do not establish winter quarters in Baltimore as General Ross had proclaimed; rather that they do not even spend a night in the city. The fortifications include two lines of breastworks that stretch northward from Harris Creek to a point beyond Loudenslager’s Hill (known also as Hamstead’s Hill). The length of the line is about one mile, and at close intervals, half-moon batteries are erected in which artillery pieces on field carriages are deployed. Slightly behind the two lines on higher ground, the Americans construct several other batteries, one of which becomes known as Rodger’s Bastion, which stands above Fort McHenry on the harbor side of Paterson Park. On the north side of the city, the border line is dotted with rifle pits. Nearby other bastions and batteries are built to provide protection for the riflemen. The defensive measures also include the water approaches. Batteries are located at Lazaretto Point and Canton, as well as another between Canton and the fort. Other precautions include having vessels intentionally sunk at the mouth of the harbor off what later becomes Winan’s Point. The approach to the rear of the fort is guarded by two redoubts, Fort Covington (named in honor of Brigadier General Leonard Covington, killed on 13 November 1813) and the City Battery. The defenses there are further bolstered by another battery (Circular Battery) of seven guns, deployed in the rear of the two redoubts on high ground near the foot of Light Street (later Battery Square). And yet other precautions are taken, including Water Battery directly in front of Fort McHenry. The 42-pounder guns at the Water Battery had been acquired on loan from the French consul.

Nonetheless, the fate of Baltimore still rests upon the ability of the Americans to hold the above mentioned defenses. Commodore Rodgers, commander of the batteries and entrenchments, states in his official reports:

“In the general distribution of the forces employed in the defence of Baltimore, with the concurrence of the commanding general, I stationed Lieutenant Gamble, first of the *Guerriere*, with about one hundred seamen, in command of a seven-gun battery, on the line between the roads leading from Philadelphia and Sparrow’s Point. Sailing-Master De La Zouch of the *Erie* and Midshipman Field of the *Guerriere*, with twenty seaman, command a two-gun battery fronting the road leading from Sparrow’s Point. Sailing Master Ramage of the *Guerriere*, with twenty seamen, in command of a five-gun battery, to the right of the Sparrow’s Point Road. And Midshipman Salter, with twelve seamen, in command of a one-gun battery, a little to the right of Mr. Ramage. Lieutenant Kuhn, with the detachment of marines belonging to the *Guerriere*, was posted in the entrenchment between the batteries occupied by Lieutenant Gamble and Sailing-Master Ramage. Lieutenant Newcomb, third of the *Guerriere*, with eighty seamen, occupied Fort Covington, on the Ferry Branch, a little below Spring Gardens. Sailing-Master Webster, of the flotilla, with fifty seamen of that corps, occupied a six-gun battery on the Ferry Branch known by the name of Babcock. Lieutenant Frazier, of the flotilla, with forty-five seamen of the same corps, occupied a three-gun battery near the Lazaretto.”

**September 16 (Friday) 1814-In Louisiana**, a naval squadron under Commodore Patterson attacks Grand Terre Island, Louisiana, the headquarters of Jean Lafitte and his buccaneers. Lafitte had recently informed Governor Claiborne of the British plan to attack and seize New Orleans; however, his story was not believed. The Americans have orders to destroy the pirates’ cove at Baratavia. A contingent of Americans including Marines land at the objective, but few of Lafitte’s men are there.

Lafitte is also away at the time of the attack. Commodore Patterson reports the capture of 8 schooners, six of which had no flag and two sailing under flags of the Cartagena Republic. The force also seizes one brigantine and one felucca. Before departing with their several prisoners, the Americans set the stronghold on fire. Afterward, Lafitte and his men remain in hiding until General Jackson arrives in New Orleans during early December.

**September 26 (Monday) 1814-In Naval Activity**, the privateer *General Armstrong*, manned by about 90 men including officers, while in the neutral port of Fayal in the Azores to acquire supplies, is confronted by a nasty and well armed British armada commanded by British Commodore Lloyd. At about noon, the *General Armstrong* anchors. Captain Samuel Reid meets with the American consul, John B. Dabney. The consul takes care of getting fresh water delivered to the *General Armstrong*. He also assures Reid that the British squadron that arrived will inflict no harm while his ship is moored in neutral waters under the jurisdiction of Portugal. Captain Reid anticipates weighing anchor on the following morning; however, the British under Commodore Lloyd have their eyes on the privateer with intent to seize it and use it in the campaign to seize New Orleans. Before dusk, Reid, Dabney and a few other men leave shore and move out to the *General Armstrong*. After a while, the British squadron appears in the distance and Reid observes six warships.

The British ships anchor in the roads and their positioning totally cuts off any escape route of the *General Armstrong*, with its seven guns. It faces a total force of about 2,000 men who are en route to join Admiral Cochrane at Jamaica. Three of the British vessels, the flagship *Plantagenet* (Captain Robert Lloyd), the brigantine *Carnation*, and the frigate *Rota* (Captain Philip Somerville), combined carry 136 guns. Commodore Lloyd's eagerness to seize the *General Armstrong* overrides the international law that requires the neutrality of a nation to be respected. Three of his warships close upon the American vessel and the British demand surrender. The British expect the Americans to immediately comply due to the overwhelming firepower lurking close enough to decimate their vessel; however, the British receive a totally unexpected response: "Surrender Hell!"

Reid's response seems to reverberate throughout the British squadron. The British, flabbergasted by the audaciousness of the Yanks, prepare to board and seize the obstinate crew and the ship by sheer force; however, with some respect for the neutrality of the Azores, Lloyd's guns remain silent. He remains confident that with a lightning-quick strike, the boarders will take the ship and raise the British colors aboard it.

After darkness blankets the harbor, the British move in to surprise the Americans, but Reid's crew is prepared and lying in wait for the four British boats under Lt. Robert Faussett to creep up on them. With the assistance of the moonlight, Lloyd's actions are observed by Reid. Calmly and quietly, the Americans prepare their guns and the rest of the crew are all at their battle stations waiting to greet the boarders. Essentially, Reid's crew has established an ambush. At about 2000, four British boats carrying about 160 men approach the *General Armstrong*.

Once they are spotted, the *General Armstrong*, which had been moving, drops anchor. The boats are hailed several times; however, the British ignore the calls. The boats approach the *General Armstrong*, which by this time had maneuvered closer to the castle. Captain Reid, in a low voice, instructs his crew: "Hold your fire until I give the word, boys. Wait till they get within range, and then teach 'em better manners."

Just as the British begin to board, Reid bellows: "Now, boys! Let 'em have it for the honor of the flag!" At that instant, the Marine detachment opens fire and instantly, rather than gaining the deck, the British receive withering effective fire, turning their visions of an easy kill into a tragic nightmare.

Even the ship's cook, a Negro and his assistant, join in the fighting. The two men team up and dump boiling water upon the boarding party. The British attempt to overcome the resistance, and for a while, the fighting becomes vicious, but the British thrust is soon quashed. The British are thrown back and the survivors call for quarter. The boats pull away to return to the ships, but they too get pummeled. During the attack, one American is killed and Reid's 1st officer is wounded. The *Armstrong's* guns commence firing just as the boats pull away, and in a flash of thunderous fire, the harbor is filled with debris from the shattered vessels.

The British commander becomes more determined to take the prize. Simultaneously, Captain Lloyd's impatience to get his flotilla to New Orleans increases along with his anger. He decides to assault in force. During the lull, the governor of Fayal dispatches a strong message to Commodore Lloyd to inform him that the American vessel is under the protection of Portugal. Lloyd's frustration by this point is overwhelming. He answers the governor by stating that if the guns of the castle intervene, the British warships would bombard the town. Meanwhile, the illumination from a full moon has permitted the townspeople to watch. The shoreline is jammed with apprehensive but curious spectators.

Back on the *General Armstrong*, neither the spectators nor the British are able to determine the situation. It remains seemingly dead in the water. No crewmen are visible and no sounds are detected. Meanwhile, the British remain aware of their casualties from the first attack, but do not know how badly the Americans had suffered. The *General Armstrong* could easily be identified as a death-ship. By about 2100, once again, British boats are seen approaching the *General Armstrong*. The force totaling about 400 troops carried by 12 or 14 boats closes as one tightly linked line, and as the distance is rapidly decreasing, British confidence rebuilds after receiving no fire. Just as the attacking boats move into point-blank range, they are bombarded by the *General Armstrong's* long tom and the fire of Marine sharpshooters. The deluge descends upon the boats continuously. The British remain oblivious to the cascading shells, while they return fire and converge to mount their next attack. At about midnight (26th-27th), Lloyd launches his second attack with a huge boarding party. Initially, the flotilla heads for a tiny reef of rocks, and once there the boats form in single file as if forming a spear. From the decks of the *General Armstrong*, there is only absolute silence until the boats are hailed.

Captain Reid's calls, having been ignored, brings his crew to life. The silence is broken as the men bolt from their concealed positions and commence firing. The British are jolted by the thunderclap that batters the advancing column. Nonetheless, the British recover from the shock and fire is returned. The boats come alongside the *General Armstrong* and with their craft having encircled the privateer, the distinct sound of "no quarter" rings out as Redcoats begin to climb aboard from all points. They are greeted as before. The American fire riddles the boarders, and Captain Reid, left-handed, is not a spectator.

He fires pistols (handed to him by a group of powder boys) with his right hand, while he skillfully uses a cutlass with his left hand to fend off the enemy. The close quartered bloody combat ensues for about forty minutes. Lt. Williams is killed and Lieutenants Worth and Johnson sustain wounds; however Reid is in the thick of the donnybrook from start to finish. Despite the determination of the British and their undaunted persistence, they are repulsed at every point, unable to sustain a foothold on the decks. At one point, the British make it onto the deck, but Reid leads an attack to bolster the faltering line and the British are pushed back over the sides.

The price paid for the failed attack is exorbitant and the ramifications for the British are far reaching.

During the hard-fought second attempt to board the *General Armstrong*, British casualties skyrocket. Three of their boats are sunk, and in one of the boats, which carried fifty men, only one officer evades death. Some of the remaining boats are left with only a few rowers and some others have lost all of their rowers. The area in the vicinity of the battle is ghastly. Four of the British boats are washed ashore by the surf and each of them contains only dead troops. Even the *General Armstrong* had become consumed with British dead and wounded.

In what becomes known as an astonishing feat, the crew of the *General Armstrong* had repulsed two attacks and inflicted more than 300 casualties upon the British. The American casualties figures are initially hard to believe: two killed, including Lieutenant Williams, and seven wounded. One Englishman, an eyewitness to the battle, later wrote: "God deliver us from our enemies, if this is the way they fight."

On the morning of the 27th, Captain Lloyd, still unable gain his prize, orders the brigantine *Carnation* to pulverize the *General Armstrong*. The guns are unleashed; however, the *General Armstrong*, which is beginning to look invincible, returns fire, and when the guns cease, Lloyd suffers yet another failure. The privateer remains afloat, while the battered and riddled *Carnation* is compelled to withdraw for repairs. By this time, Captain Reid concludes that the *General Armstrong* cannot be saved. Nevertheless, he remains unwilling to let the British take it. The crew scuttles the ship and heads for shore. Afterward, the British set it afire.

Commodore Lloyd, still stinging from his failure to gain his prize, threatens the governor. He delivers an ultimatum to turn over the Americans or face an invasion. Lloyd informs the governor that he will land 500 troops to take them. His demand is declined. Meanwhile, Captain Reid and the crew had moved to an ancient convent and demolished its drawbridge to bolster their defensive position if attacked. Lloyd, however, had issued a hollow threat. His casualties had been too severe and include many of his officers. The threat is not carried out. Meanwhile, back at Fayal, the bodies of British troops continue to be washed ashore by the surf. The squadron is delayed for ten days.

Later, two British sloops of war, the HMS *Thais* and the HMS *Calypso*, arrive. They pick up fifty wounded and take them back to England; however, the captains are ordered not to mention the engagement with the *General Armstrong*. Reid's crew had held up the squadron, which is anxiously awaited by Admiral Cochrane. When Lloyd finally arrives in Jamaica and Cochrane is informed that one privateer had delayed the voyage and caused horrific casualties, Commodore Lloyd is censured by Cochrane. In contrast, the extraordinary heroism of Reid's crew receives praise throughout the States, and the *General Armstrong* receives credit for aiding the defenders in New Orleans by their courageous feat in the Azores. Captain Reid later learns from the British consul that the second assault to seize the *General Armstrong* cost the English 120 killed and about 130 wounded. Captain Lloyd was among the wounded. He sustained a severe leg wound that required amputation. The English killed include 1st Lt. William Matterface (*Rota*) and 3rd Lt. Charles R. Norman (*Rota*); the wounded include 2nd Lt. Richard Rawle (*Rota*); 1st Lt. Thomas Park (*Rota*); and Purser William Benge Basden (*Rota*).

**December 14 (Wednesday) 1814 In Louisiana**, Catesby Jones' naval detachment remains stranded in a channel separating the mainland from Malheureux. At dawn, spotters observe the British flotilla at anchor less than ten miles from Jones' gunboats. The British troops are leisurely relaxing following their long journey and enjoying their morning meal before the rowers once again set out to capture or destroy the American gunboats.

The view from the channel is overpowering, and it would neither be ungallant nor cowardly for Jones

to avoid calamity by scuttling his vessels and escaping to shore. Jones, however, possesses no thoughts of avoiding a fight. He summons his officers and once they are together on his ship, the officers are given the battle plan. Without dissent, the officers return to their respective vessels and prepare for the floating army under Captain Lockyer, whose flotilla is composed of about 45 boats carrying no fewer than 1,000 seamen and Royal Marines. The British force is bolstered by more than 40 guns.

In the meantime, the British, having finished their breakfasts, prepare to dispose of Jones' pesky blockade. While the Americans can see the movement of the flotilla, Lockyer is able to observe the activity in the channel. Lockyer, commanding an overwhelmingly superior force, is disappointed when he does not spot the Americans attempting to escape the inevitable. Instead, he sees bristling activity as they are forming for battle rather than taking flight. For the British the astonishing sight looks more suicidal than courageous. Nonetheless, Jones' commanders are anchoring their respective sterns with springs on the cables. Five gunboats, No. 156, Jones' flagship, No. 5, No. 169 and No. 163, alone stand against the advancing flotilla, which is aligned in near perfect formation stretching from bank to bank.

The British wave moves forward, but still, the Americans show no signs of flinching; however, the British Commander Lockyer undergoes a period of deciding the risk of attacking such an audacious band that displays an obvious willingness to fight to the last man. Meanwhile, Jones' gunners are poised to fire as the barges are just coming into range. Nonetheless, they observe something unexpected. A detachment of the boats begins to break away and row westwardly, arousing the curiosity of Jones' men. Soon it becomes obvious. A sail is spotted and it becomes the target of the British. Another U.S. vessel, the *Alligator*, is desperately attempting to evade the British and join Jones in the channel. Lockyer, on the other hand sees an easy kill. The *Alligator*, not quite a ship of the line, is a small tender. Nonetheless, its commander, sailing master Richard S. Sheppard, and his crew expect to help hold the line in the channel.

Four of the barges, transporting about 400 troops, move against the *Alligator*. At about the same time, the British get some outside assistance when the winds vanish and the *Alligator* gets stalled, leaving it stranded. The British move in quickly and seize it, along with its solitary gun and 8-man crew. The prize brings jubilation to Lockyer, who, having earlier been repelled at Fort Bowyer, shares his jubilation with the men in the entire flotilla. While totally ignoring Jones' floating barricade, he halts his advance. He orders his force to take a meal, permitting each of them to receive an extra portion of rum to relax them before returning to the task of bulldozing through the obstacles in the channel. In his after action report, Captain Lockyer lists the *Alligator* as an armed sloop. The vessel *Alligator* had been acquired and commissioned by the navy at New Orleans during 1813. There is no record of the *Alligator* after being seized by the British.

By about 1030, the flotilla resumes its advance and the deep red uniforms become more brilliantly colored by the descending rays of the sun. The absence of overcast skies also causes the Marines' bayonets to sparkle, and in totality the British force creates a picture of a colossal killing machine. Nonetheless, as the flotilla advances, the Americans seemingly are oblivious to the might of the force that is about to pounce on them.

The British are poised for a most devastating thrust and the vagabonds in the gunboats remain unnerved. To the British, they appear docile and lifeless, as if the decks are manned by scarecrows. The crews of the gunboats display no signs of igniting a battle, nor any visible signals that the gunboats are being self-destroyed. Lockyer begins to believe that the Americans had realized the

futility of raising opposition and would capitulate without raising resistance; however, Lockyer's thought process is suddenly jolted and everyone aboard each of the barges becomes wide-eyed as the motionless gunboats spring to life and propel a devastating series of shots that soar on a trajectory that batters the perfectly formed line of barges, causing the British line to expeditiously become rather irregular and infuriated after being greeted initially by the 32-pounder on Gunboat No. 23. Following Lt. Isaac McKeever's opening barrage from that gunboat, the other vessels commence fire. The raking fire causes damage to the barges; however, the shelling also inflicts casualties and interferes with Lockyer's quick kill. He faces only five gunboats; however, it is evident that the commanders (Lt. Catesby Jones, No. 156; Sailingmaster John D. Ferris, No. 5; Lt. Isaac McKeever, No. 23; Sailing Master Ulrick, No. 163, and Lt. Robert Spedden, No. 169) have galvanized their entire force to create formidable resistance.

The British quickly realize that despite their slim numbers, the Americans hold dominating positions from which the American guns can pulverize the barges. Captain Lockyer observes that two of the gunboats are out farther than the other three. He devises a plan to crack the line. He forms his flotilla into three separate divisions and afterward begins his advance. The gunboat at the point is approached by four barges and two gigs; however, its commander, Catesby Jones, remains prepared.

His gunners find the range and propel successive rounds that rivet the barges in concert with streams of musket fire that rake the troops. Suddenly the four attack-barges shrink to two. The two barges that sustain fatal damage capsize, and it takes a Herculean effort by other barges to save the survivors. The British aboard the barges sustain horrific casualties; however, Lockyer intends to prevail. Nevertheless, Jones' remains afloat and he continues to dole out punishing fire. Lockyer resumes the attack to clear the channel and Jones' gunboat comes under yet another attack.

Undaunted, Catesby Jones is in the forefront standing brashly on the deck as a conspicuous target and unwilling to give the British victory. Shells and bullets soar back and forth from close range. Jones spots a British officer who appears to be the one directing the fire of both the seaman and the Marines. The barge is extremely close to Jones' gunboat. While Jones himself is dodging bullets, he takes aim with his pistol and strikes the officer, inflicting a mortal wound. The death of the officer, Lt. Pratt, injects more intensity into the firestorm. At about the same time Pratt is killed, Captain Lockyer, who is standing nearby, receives one of his three wounds.

The British seek instant retaliation. Jones becomes the recipient of a savage burst of fire from a large number of troops aboard Lockyer's barge who fire in unison. Most of the shots miss the mark; however, one of the troops scores and wounds Jones in his shoulder. The wound is serious but not fatal. Jones is unable to continue the fight due to the excessive pain. Crewmen manage to get him below deck. Later, it is determined that the British officer shot by Jones had been with the force under General Ross that moved into the capital. By the time Jones is taken below deck, the heroic fight in the channel is almost over. Lt. Parker assumes command and he hears Jones yell, "Keep up the fight" and responds affirmatively. Nevertheless, a British bullet takes him out before he actually takes command.

The British ramp up the effort to seize Gunboat No. 56, and despite the valiant defense, unbreakable nerves and absolute defiance, the British troops pour upon the deck from various points to overwhelm the crew. Nonetheless, the capture of Jones' flagship had been at high cost. The British sustain heavy casualties and even their commander, Captain Lockyer, had sustained three separate wounds which cause him to bleed profusely. Shortly after taking possession of the U.S. gunboat, Lockyer collapses from loss of blood. Troops rush to his side and he too is carried below deck and placed right next to

Lt. Jones. Meanwhile, the other divisions concentrate on the remaining for gunboats. British Lt. James Barnwell Tatnall assumes command of the battered division. In the meantime, Jones' other gunships become heavily embattled. The second division under Captain Henry Montresor closes against Lt. Ulrick's gunboat (No. 163) and here, too, the British encounter murderous fire which prevents the British from closing and boarding. Ulrick's crew remains calm under fire and relentless in their quest to forestall the British advance. After being stymied, Tatnall is reinforced by the remaining division under Captain Samuel Roberts. The combined pressure succeeds in gaining Ulrick's gunboat, but yet again at high cost, as the resistance is stubborn and the defenders remain cantankerous.

Relentlessly, the Americans catapult incessant effective fire, despite the British having increased their firepower. Suddenly, British gunners aboard the two captured gunboats direct their fire toward the three holdouts that continue to bar passage. The British focus on Gunboat 169, commanded by Lt. Spedden. Two British barges launch their attack, but yet again, despite the exhaustion of his crew, the Yanks become rejuvenated rather than submissive at the sight of the closing craft. Whatever fears might be lurking among the crew on Lt. Spedden's ship are well concealed. Spedden's men, while under heavy attack, remain oblivious to the streaming shells and continue returning fire. The hurricane of flying steel forces the British to move their barges to the rear of the captured vessels to prevent disaster.

Nonetheless, the mounting carnage does not cancel out the British insistence that they will crush the remaining force regardless of cost. The two British divisions coordinate a combined attack. During the tenacious attack, Lt. Spedden sustains a wound as he and his crew attempt to exchange blows; however, his craft is besieged by more than ten barges. Spedden, similarly to Catesby Jones, leads from the point of the battle. He boldly bellows orders from his position on the deck, to the dismay of the British. Royal Marines target him. Having already lost the use of his left arm after being hit by grapeshot, he is struck by musket fire in his right shoulder. Suddenly, Spedden is standing in a pool of his own blood and he no longer has use of either of his arms. Still he refuses to strike the colors.

Nonetheless, the British swarm onto the gunboat and overpower the crew. Spedden, however, despite his inability to defend himself with his sword or pistol, refuses to cooperate with his captors, who forcibly get him below deck.

The British use their captured guns to finish off the remaining gunboats, No. 5, commanded by Sailing-master John D. Ferris, and No. 23, commanded by Lt. Isaac McKeever, the latter having been the first to fire upon the flotilla. McKeever, the last to remain in the fight, is finally compelled to surrender at about 1230 to terminate the fiercely contested battle on Lake Borgne. About one-third of Catesby Jones' force is either killed or wounded and four of the five commanders are among the wounded. Only Lt. Ulrick evades injury. The British sustain 17 killed and 77 wounded.

Following the victory, the flotilla returns to Ship Island to prepare for the next phase of the campaign, the seizure of New Orleans. The flotilla is met on its return with resounding cheers and tremendous jubilation; however, the men aboard the barges are subdued because of the cries of anguish and pain coming from the wounded. Captain Lockyer, however, had cleared the waterway into New Orleans and his victory assures Admiral Alexander Cochran that no U.S. naval vessels stand between him and his objective. Once back at Ship Island later this day, all wounded, including the American prisoners, are transferred to the HMS *Gorgon*.

While Lt. Catesby Jones and his fellow captives burden themselves with the thought of the loss of

New Orleans, which appears imminent, the British ready the final steps in the campaign. The ground troops afterward begin to land on Pea Island; however, the island is ill suited for a landing. The British immediately encounter difficulties due to the shallow waterways. The landing operation takes an inordinately long time. Most troops are finally landed by December 22. From the landing place, the troops proceed to the Villere Plantation, where the British establish quarters for the strike against Jackson at New Orleans.

Once word of the demise of the squadron reaches New Orleans, Commodore Patterson sends two men—Mr. Shields, a purser in the U.S. Navy, and Doctor Murrell—under a white flag to reach the British fleet to request permission to treat the U.S. wounded. Admiral Cochrane is less than overjoyed when introduced to them off Cat Island. The Americans' request is declined, but worse, Cochrane informs them that they will be detained. The action by Cochrane is appalling; however, the men have no options.

Cochrane detains them on his flagship where he places a guard at their cabin. Subsequently, the reluctant guests of the admiral use every opportunity to feed the British inflated information regarding the defenses at New Orleans, with the intent of placing doubts in the mind of the admiral and other high ranking officers. Both American captives remain in British custody on 12 January 1815.

The naval battle on Lake Borgne was assisted by 35 Marines. Three Marines died and two others were wounded.

**December 23 (Friday) 1814-THE NIGHT BATTLE In Louisiana**, after arriving outside New Orleans, the British debark and advance toward the Villere Plantation. The route is unprotected, permitting the British to effortlessly approach and surround the main house. Major Gabriel Villere, the son of General Villere, while resting on his porch, spots the British in motion down by the river. Stunned by the unexpected visitors and lacking troops, Villere darts to the rear of his house in an attempt to escape capture and rush into the city to sound the alarm. Nonetheless, the British by that time have the property encircled. Villere, after reaching his back door, discovers a line of Redcoats awaiting his exit. Colonel Thornton, himself, with his sword drawn, calls for the major to surrender. After he is seized, Gabriel Villere also discovers that his brother Celestin had been seized. Both men are confined to the house under heavy guard. General Keane arrives at the plantation at about 1030; however, Major Villere, despite his desperate situation, remains determined to break out. Villere, in addition to being concerned about New Orleans, is also overly concerned that if he remains a captive, some will perceive that the Creoles lack faith in the cause.

While the British relax their concentration momentarily, Villere impetuously dashes to a window by barreling over a few of the unsuspecting guards, flies through the opening and races toward a tall picket fence, while bullets are whistling by his ears. He bolts over the fence, to the astonishment of a large number of Redcoats who could not have duplicated his feat. The British immediately chase Villere; however, Villere's familiarity with the terrain works to his advantage. He darts into the cypress forest that adjoins a swamp and for a while, he stays out in front. The British continue the hunt and nearly stumble upon him. Villere's dog had spotted him when he bolted through the window and over the fence, but Villere was unaware of the dog's chase until he discovers the dog as it comes beside him. The arrival of his dog brings about an extremely difficult moment. Realizing that the dog would innocently reveal his location if he hides in a tree, he realizes that the dog must be slain. Afterward, he descends the cypress tree and the British abort the chase. Villere reaches a nearby plantation, where he encounters an officer, Colonel de la Ronde. Major Villere and the colonel

acquire a boat, which they row to the opposite bank of the Mississippi. There they encounter P.S. Dussau de la Croix, an official of New Orleans. In a flash, the three men mount horses and gallop in the direction of the city to inform General Jackson that the British had landed. The riders are spotted by General Keane, and from the rising dust, Keane has no doubt of their destination. Nonetheless, Villere's escape compels General Keane to accelerate his plan.

General Keane deploys his vanguard in a field to the front of the plantation house. Those three regiments spread out and hold positions between the road and the river. Other troops are pushed farther along the road that leads into the city. The troops deploy along a fence and a protective ditch. Keane utilizes his rocket contingent to protect his rear by positioning it along the bank of the river. The Villere Plantation house is selected by Colonel Thornton as headquarters, and to fortify it, the British post three light artillery pieces outside. All the while, scouts are dispatched in search of any advancing American troops. All returning patrols report no U.S. activity; however, General Keane, having been fed intelligence from some Americans that had been earlier detained, continues to fret about the size of Jackson's force. Nevertheless, the British are prepared to meet an attack, yet Keane is unwilling to launch an assault against the city. At this time, the main body of the British force had not yet arrived.

Back at New Orleans, General Andrew Jackson, after being informed that the British had landed at Villere Plantation, states: "By the eternal, they shall not sleep on our soil." Immediately thereafter, Jackson assembles his force to launch an attack. The decision to attack the British to some seems imprudent, but Jackson is convinced that an attack is imperative and must be carried out before the British can overrun the defenses.

Jackson's forces are scattered about the area. The battalion under Major Francis Plauche stands about two miles from Jackson's headquarters at Bayou St. John, and Jackson's regulars are two places, the barracks within the city and at Fort St. Charles (San Carlos) in present-day French Quarter, where a U.S. Mint is later built (400 block of Esplanade). The remaining troops include those under Generals Coffee and William Carroll.

Coffee's force, which had arrived the night before, is dispatched to Bienvue Bayou to block passage there. Meanwhile, Coffee's command is camped at the Avart Plantation. The Louisiana militia and about one-half of the free colored battalion are posted along the Gentilly Road. General Coffee's command, the dragoons under Major Hind, the Orleans Rifles and the battalions under Plauche and Dacquin receive orders to break their encampments and converge upon Montreuil's plantation just below the city. Once there, the combined commands are to link with Jackson's regulars. The scenes all along the lines display non-stop motion; however, there are no signs of desperation despite the graveness of the threat.

The uniforms of the militia and volunteers are neither inspiring nor do they in any way instill even the slightest fear into the hearts of the British, who continue to maintain a condescending attitude; however, the American militia and volunteers who don peculiar looking clothes have not been awestruck by the presence of the British with their impeccable, resplendent crimson uniforms, glistening bayonets and their awesome reputation of being skilled warriors who humbled Napoleon. The attire of the Kentuckians and Tennesseans is perhaps best described by Alexander Walker, author of *Jackson and New Orleans*: "Their appearance, however, was not very military. In their woollen hunting-shirts, of dark or dingy color, and copperas-dyed pantaloons, made, both cloth and garments, at home, by their wives, mothers and sisters, with slouching wool hats, some composed of the skins of raccoons and foxes, the spoils of the chase, to which they were addicted almost from

infancy—with belts of untanned deer-skin, in which were stuck huntingknives and tomahawks—with their long unkempt hair and unshorn faces.” Nonetheless, the troops realize they arrived not to attend a British ball; rather to assure victory for Jackson and the citizens of New Orleans. Their quest is to best those who had vanquished Napoleon and terminate once and for all King George’s obsession with regaining his lost colonies.

The clanging bells of St. Louis Cathedral signal the 3 P.M. hour as the various units, including a contingent of Choctaw Indians led by Captain Jugeat, converge upon Fort St. Charles, from where they will move as one force toward the plantation. The volunteers join with the regulars and there is great contrast in their dress as well as their military behavior; however, the finely dressed regulars enthusiastically welcome the volunteers and militia. There is an overwhelming aura of confidence as they eagerly advance to meet the foe.

The vanguard, which had advanced earlier, includes Peire’s 7th Infantry composed of more than 325 men, a 60-man contingent of U.S. Marines and an artillery detachment. They hold the road slightly below the city. Jackson had also dispatched a New Orleans volunteer company (Beale’s Rifles) of skilled marksmen, who went out in front of the vanguard. During the initial part of the advance, clouds of rising dust could be seen in the distance. Shortly thereafter, as the dust encroaches Jackson’s force, the cause becomes visible. The long column of dragoons which had sped from the opposite part of the city arrives to add more strength to the force, Major Hinds’ Mississippians and their proud steeds and another column of horsemen are close behind, those of General Coffee’s mounted Tennesseans.

In a flash, Coffee’s column comes to a halt, and after he and Jackson exchange a few words, the general is off again. The Tennesseans move out at a full gallop, creating yet another cloud of dust. By this time, Jackson’s chest is about to burst from the pride he possesses regarding these men who selflessly and knowingly are riding and marching into a cauldron to intercept what at the time is considered the world’s finest army. Nonetheless, while Jackson is momentarily touched by the magnificent sight, yet again his emotions rise even higher when he spots the Creole battalion racing at full speed to join the column. At about the same time, the column bulges even more as the battalion of freemen arrives.

The troops depart with an added incentive to transform the British invasion into a brief and deadly sojourn. In a city about to be attacked or be placed under siege, the women and children are usually evacuated to a place of safety; however, the women in New Orleans adamantly oppose any such action. They line the streets and peer through windows with tear-filled eyes while the men march out to engage the British; however, they intend to be there to greet them upon their return. The courage and determination of the stout-hearted women silently transmits a canopy of resoluteness that hovers over the column.

The Creoles under Plauche and the freemen of color under Dacquin, holding the rear, march out of the city. Soon after, the final element of Jackson’s strategy appears when the USS *Carolina* is spotted as it maneuvers into position. At about the same time, General Jackson mounts his horse and jumps off in a gallop to reach the head of his column. He is accompanied by his staff.

Back in the city, there is some apprehension due to the insufficient defenses that have been hurriedly erected; however, the spectacle of the moving column and in particular, the presence of Jackson overrides the fears of the citizens who believe that with Jackson in command, they will prevail. One of the women had a question and it was delivered to Jackson: “What were [we] to do, in case the city was attacked?” The general immediately responded: “No British soldier shall enter the city as an

enemy, unless over my dead body.”

The British at the Villere Plantation remain on high alert; however, up to this point none of the numerous patrols sent out to reconnoiter had reported even a detachment. The various approaches to the camp are guarded by pickets, and they report no enemy activity. Meanwhile, a strong contingent of the British 95th Rifles are way out in front, but they too detect no signs of an imminent attack. The tranquility is eerie. Nevertheless, British General Keane remains short two brigades that have not yet arrived due to difficulties with the boats in the canal. Nonetheless, Colonel Thornton, still irritated because the commander had halted rather than driven directly into New Orleans, is convinced that by halting, their camp had become vulnerable. Thornton is also convinced that despite the fact that no Americans had been spotted, that the encampment would be struck before dawn.

While the British troops continue to establish their camp, parties are authorized to ride throughout the area in search of private homes where they can confiscate food and spirits. The troops return with food for a feast after pillaging, and the items from plantations ensure a fine meal, particularly for the officers, who choose for themselves before the food is distributed to the rank and file. After the meals are finished, the troops are prepared to finally get some rest. Nonetheless, off in the distance, a sentry at one of the outposts spots some dust from a small detachment of horsemen. The guards conceal themselves, and as the riders approach close range, they are fired upon. It is reported that one man is killed and two others wounded; however, none are captured. The detachment hurriedly retires. The riders involved are attached to the Feliciana Dragoons, an elite Louisiana unit. Nonetheless, the incident makes it clear that another restless night is at hand. For a while there are no further interruptions. But after about an hour passes, the British discover more of the elusive Americans when a sizable column is spotted as it advances smartly and in conspicuous view.

The British temporarily are unsure of the purpose of exposing themselves, when suddenly, Major Hinds gives his order and the column spreads out like a fan and the British become startled to see the dragoons charging their outpost positions. The defenders are easily driven from their positions as the cavalry maintains its charge and closes on the main British line, where the 95th Rifles are waiting for the horses to come into range. Unexpectedly, Hinds calls a halt to the charge at a distance of about 100 yards from the rifles, to the disappointment of the British marksmen. After a brief pause, the dragoons raise the dust as the troops gallop back toward General Jackson. The British are amused at the apparent cowardice of the American cavalrymen who retreat rather than engage. However, unknown to the British, the daring mission succeeds.

One of the riders with Hinds had been Colonel Arthur P. Hayne, Jackson’s inspector general. His task is to scan the British positions and determine the size of their force and to absorb as much information on their defenses as possible. After the dragoons retire, the British begin to relax and enjoy their evening meal. Nevertheless, for many, exhaustion has taken a toll and those troops skip the meal to get some sleep. British thoughts of a perfectly quiet night get interrupted at about 1900, when several officers notice a vessel cruising down the river. The sense of danger begins to lessen when the British mistake the USS *Carolina* for a British warship and their confidence rises sharply thinking that naval support had arrived and was placidly nudging close to camp. Some suspense builds when repeated requests to respond are ignored by the crew. The crew also ignores a burst of rifle fire. The darkness only deepens the mystery, yet no alarms are set off. After swinging into position close to shore, the British finally get a response. Lighted matches on deck sparkle and the flashes are followed by an officer bellowing: “Give this for the honor of America!”

Simultaneously, the *Carolina* delivers a broadside and the riflemen aboard the vessel shower the

camp with shot after shot. The storm of fire strikes blindly in the darkness; however, the air is so thick with flying shot and shell that casualties, including many who are sleeping, mount quickly. The killing fire of unknown origin creates pandemonium and the circumstances prevent any quick restoration to order; however, Colonel Thornton orders the troops to evacuate the camp to seek safety under the levy. While they suffer from the hurricane of fire, the British remain unaware that the guns of the *Carolina* had ignited Jackson's land attack.

After restoring calm and discipline to his force, Colonel Thornton begins to react to the attack. Reinforcements (85th and 95th Regiments) speed to bolster the pickets, while Thornton orders the 4th Regiment to establish a line to the front of headquarters (Villere house) to maintain communications between the plantation and the lake, while remaining in reserve until needed at any point. Nevertheless, while the British are rebounding from the initial shock of the attack, they are still greatly hindered by the darkness and the inability to assess the size of the attack or from where the next barrage will originate. Major Gubbins of the 85th maintains order on the right, while Major Mitchell holds command on the left without either of them knowing what might be next to descend upon them.

While the British brace for the unknown, Jackson's force had already arrived at the Rodriguez Canal no more than two miles from the British lines, and his forces had dug out a ditch running at an angle of about ninety degrees that extends from the river to the swamp. Simultaneously, the wing under General Coffee had swung into motion, and it is advancing on the left directly toward the swamp to a point between the Lacoste Plantation and the La Ronde Plantation, the pre-appointed place to leave their horses. Although the Americans are also impeded by darkness, the enthusiasm continues to build, while the anxiety increases along the British lines. The suspense on the part of the British is due in great part to the fact that General Keane has not been able to determine Jackson's strength, which he believes could be as many as 20,000, according to unverifiable information.

The wing under General Coffee is poised to maneuver his Tennesseans toward the British right flank, from where they can plunge into the rear. While Coffee moves into position, Jackson advances to launch a direct frontal assault. The moves are coordinated and the two forces are set to attack on the signal, which is to be fired by the USS *Carolina*. At 0700, with Commodore Patterson aboard, the *Carolina*, commanded by Captain Henry, initiates its fire to set the attacks in motion. While the naval barrage interrupts the activity in the British camp, General Coffee's brigade, deployed near the swamp, springs into action. The Tennesseans, augmented by Beall's Rifles, plunge forward to batter the rear while simultaneously working to sever communications between the camp and the lake. However, the dragoons are held back on the La Ronde Plantation after it is decided the terrain contains too many obstacles such as fences and ditches, making it impossible for the horses to operate freely.

Meanwhile, the forces under Jackson—composed of his regulars, the battalions of Plauche and Daquin, MacRea's artillery and the Marine contingent—drill straight ahead from their positions on a narrow strip between the Mississippi and the morass to pound General Keane's frontal defenses. Both forces had the added element of being guided by men familiar with the terrain. Major Villere accompanies Jackson, and Coffee is guided by Colonel De La Ronde.

Shells pound the camp in a bitter contest which is fought nearly blindly due to the conditions. The sky is starless and the heavy overcast of thick, ominous clouds conceals the moonlight. The two sides are confined to bludgeoning each other in stark darkness. Often it is impossible to tell friend from foe, and at times, as one party encounters another, friends mistake each other as the enemy. The fighting

becomes close-quartered and vicious. The British regulars, well seasoned from the Napoleonic Wars, are skilled with their bayonets; however, the Americans are armed with only a few bayonets. Nonetheless, many of the Kentuckians and the Tennesseans are armed with long-knives, which inflict equally gruesome wounds. Conditions are so poor that if either side ventures forth in search of the opposing side and if the encounters ignite a contest, other units are restricted from rushing to provide support. Nevertheless, neither side relents, and the bloody confrontation continues for about three hours under illumination provided solely from the flashes of the guns. Even the artificial light is obscured by suffocating smoke.

On the British right, the suspense terminates rather quickly when about 800 men (dismounted) under Coffee arrive near the British line. After leaving about 100 men with the horses, the remaining 700 smash into the flank. Reaction is immediate as the British deploy to repulse the nearly invisible foe. While the right line tightens and the crackle of small arms intensifies, the night air carries and amplifies the sounds to also inform Jackson that Coffee's part of the operation is underway.

Coffee's contingent is able to successfully maneuver themselves into positions from which they can drive straight ahead to strike at the heart of the British positions. Swiftly and silently, during the initial moments, the Tennesseans, under orders to withhold their fire until at nearly pointblank range, encounter and eliminate a few guards at the outposts before the British realize they are under attack in the rear. The Americans, by the time they are discovered, are in the process of slicing through the camp itself. Meanwhile, elements of the elite 85th Regiment arrive to block any further passage. The Tennesseans, however, refuse to be humbled by the Redcoats, and the British intend to eliminate the pesky backwoodsmen. Nevertheless, the British soon possess a new and reluctant opinion of the Tennesseans when the donnybrook ignites. Coffee's long guns equal and overmatch the British sharpshooters, while at close-quarters, the British are introduced to the Tennesseans' tomahawks and long-knives.

The British are unable to maintain a rigid formation in the darkness, giving the less disciplined Tennesseans extra leverage, and they are also able to instill respect for their long guns. The British can attest to the effectiveness of the fire. Several of the British officers are victimized, including Brigade Major Harris. The contest more resembles a series of street brawls than a usual skirmish, and the savageness is escalated due to the grim blackness of the sky. Both sides are compelled to use trickery to attempt to discern friend from foe, but the method is less than foolproof, making it impossible to know how many casualties come from friendly fire.

While Coffee's Tennesseans continue to pressure the rear, they pick up familiar sounds that command their attention. One segment of Coffee's force is snarled by a steady line of fire originating from the area containing the quarters of the Negroes. The distinctive sound is the unique crack of the British Rifles. Once the exact origin of the fire is determined, the Tennesseans in a snap converge on the objective. Lieutenant Colonel Lauderdale is killed during the attack. The British bolt from their concealed positions and a tenacious struggle ensues when the antagonists become so closely intertwined that hand-to-hand combat determines the victor.

The British find their rifles to be perfect clubs; however, the Tennesseans' savage weapons of choice during this gruesome encounter are their tomahawks and long-knives, both of which inflict horrific wounds. After sustaining a severe battering, the British Rifles are compelled to withdraw from the grove in the Lacoste Plantation to regroup, while the Tennesseans maintain their romp through the British encampment. Coffee's progress has carried his force well into the range of the guns of the USS *Carolina* and at the newly formed British line, but not without cost.

During the final thrust, a large contingent of his force, Beall's Rifles and about 200 of his Tennesseans commanded by Colonel Gibson and Colonel Dyer, respectively, lose contact with Coffee. Despite the darkness, the British detect the gap created when the separation occurs. They grasp the opportunity and funnel troops into the hole. Shortly thereafter, Dyer moves to reinitiate contact; however, when he is asked the identity of his unit, he responds, "The Second Division of Tennesseans." At about the same time, it becomes obvious that the inquiry had come from the British. Dyer and Gibson immediately reverse course and break for the river while under a storm of fire.

During the rush to the river, Colonel Gibson trips and is immediately pounced upon by a British soldier who jabs him with a bayonet. Gibson, suffering only a superficial wound, relieves the soldier of his rifle and delivers a powerful blow that leaves the trooper in Gibson's recent prone position and hurries off to rejoin the retreat. For Dyer, the retreat is also harrowing. British fire had wounded him and his horse. As the horse tumbles, Dyer is unable to free himself. Other Tennesseans directed by Dyer halt their retreat and deliver a volley toward the pursuing British.

The Tennesseans effectively compel the British to suspend the chase, and in those few desperate moments, the men extricate Dyer and the retreat resumes. Soon they are reunited with General Coffee. The other isolated unit, a large part of Beale's Rifles, became separated during the intense struggle in the heart of the British camp, when General Coffee had swung his force toward the right. The Rifles on the far left fail to notice the shift and get themselves stranded in the middle of the camp. The troops scatter in small detachments and attempt to use the darkness to help them reach their lines, but the British are able to capture many by deception.

By this time, General Coffee has reached a point by which any further penetration will endanger his command. He faces vicious British fire, however further progress will carry his troops straight into the range of the guns of the *Carolina*, which continue to bombard the British positions.

Rather than risk calamity, Coffee sends word to Jackson regarding the situation, and he receives a quick response in which Jackson orders him to cancel his attack and rejoin Jackson's division. In Jackson's sector, his force (right division or wing) had advanced briskly and confidently. The lead company of the 7th Regiment under Lt. McClelland becomes the first unit to plow into the British lines. From its position on Jackson's far right, McClelland's command reaches the point dividing the Lacoste and La Ronde Plantations and the troops cross into the latter, where they encounter severe fire from elements (about 80 troops) of the British 95th Regiment. The British, commanded by Captain Hallem, hold solid positions at the outpost, and they fire from within a ditch that is behind a fence. Nevertheless, the Americans become irritated, not because of coming under fire; rather because Colonel Piatt with the company is unable to prod the defenders to extricate themselves from the ditch to meet his force in close-quartered fighting. Undaunted, the company (7th Regiment) drills ahead, evicts the defenders after some ferocious fighting and then they occupy the outpost. During the fierce exchange, Lt. McClelland and a sergeant are killed and Colonel Piatt, while at the head of the command, sustains a wound in his leg.

In the meantime, the situation at the captured outpost remains fluid. The British, their pride bent after being shoved out of the outpost, have regrouped to mount a counterattack to reclaim the coveted position. At the same time, Lt. Bellevue's Marine contingent is escorting the artillery as it nears the outpost. While the guns begin to pound other British outposts, the counterattack gets underway and once again, the near-zero visibility adds confusion to the confrontation. The British focus on capturing the guns at all hazards, while the artillerymen and the Marines are attempting to recover from the intense fire that has wounded some of the artillery horses.

Nearby, General Jackson, unable to see the combatants, rushes to the sounds of the guns to discover the British had effectively broken the cohesion of the artillerymen and the Marines. Having already crashed through a raging fight without being harmed by the streams of shells, Jackson remains oblivious to the danger while he rallies the men. Jackson bellows: "Save the guns, my boys at every sacrifice." He and his aides suddenly find that the unit recovers from the temporary shock and the Marines and one company of the 7th Regiment reform as a galvanized unit.

The British fail to seize the guns. All the while, the British, while defending the points under assault, continue to try to out-think Jackson by fortifying their lines thought to be the next target. Jackson's other forces, including the remaining troops of the 7th Regiment and the 44th Regiment deployed to the left of the 7th, relentlessly shove their way through the darkness and arrive at the river to transform the sporadic fire fights into a huge conflagration.

Both sides exchange steady and heavy fire from their opposing positions, each formed in a perpendicular line. The flanks of both sides have only one protective element, darkness, leaving either side the opportunity to turn their opponent's flank. The Americans' left flank becomes vulnerable when the British extend their line to provide maneuverability for them to strike the rear of the 44th Regiment. Pressure forces the 44th Regiment to swing its line to the left at about the same time as the Creole and Freemen battalions are arriving on scene. Both advancing battalions encounter extremely heavy fire, but the advance continues. As the Creoles begin to deploy to the left of the 44th, a part of the battalion detects the positions of the 44th and mistakenly believes them to be British. The Creoles inadvertently fire upon the 44th and inflict casualties.

A catastrophe is averted by Major Francis Plauche's quick action. He untangles the confusion before the 44th and the Creoles annihilate each other. Plauche then leads his battalion straight through heavy fire and into the British line. The thrust begins to gain momentum and the freemen under Colonel D'Aquin who are trailing closely maintain the pace. The advance is also reinforced by the 44th, which has recovered from the friendly fire incident. As the British line begins to falter, the Americans' confidence soars and they are eager to mount a full scale charge to dismantle the continuity of the British defenses and permit the Americans to isolate a segment of the British army. Nevertheless, Colonel Ross, commander of the volunteers, inexplicably directs Plauche to cancel the charge and hold his position. The order, considered imprudent, eliminates any possibility of the two divisions linking up to cut off the entire left side of the British force.

During the fast-moving action as the battle winds down, the British themselves, not immune to misidentification, have some difficulty recognizing an approaching unit. Major Samuel Mitchell of the 95th Regiment moves to ensure that the troops are part of the 93rd, which he is awaiting. After nearing the advancing column, he asks whether the troops are part of the 93rd, and he is greeted with a response, "Of course." Nonetheless, he fails to detect a Southern accent, and shortly afterward he is encircled by Americans who take him as a prisoner.

Although the ongoing fighting seems to have lasted for days, it is only about 2000, when the British (on the right) on their own volition decide to withdraw to their initial positions at the plantation.

At about the same time a dense fog rolls into the region. The battle essentially terminates as General Jackson orders a retreat. The Americans withdraw to a point about four miles from the city. The British positions remain fixed on the plantation; however, headquarters is abandoned and the Villere house becomes a hospital. Casualties for the Americans are reported as 24 killed, 115 wounded and 74 missing. The British under General Keane, according to his official report, sustain 46 killed, 167 wounded and 64 missing. However, an account of the battle written by British lieutenant Glieg states:

“Not less than five hundred men had fallen, many of whom were our finest soldiers and best officers; and yet we could not but consider ourselves fortunate in escaping from the toils, even at the expense of so great a sacrifice.” The Americans later recover a journal, retrieved from a dead British officer who participated at the battle. The journal lists the number of British casualties as “two hundred and twenty-four killed, and an immense number wounded.”

After the battle, the British troops get little rest. The weather is nasty and the area comes under a dense fog, leaving the troops who have no shelter to sleep under intolerable circumstances. In addition, the sounds coming from the pain-stricken wounded adds to already trying conditions.

For the next several days, Jackson continues to bolster his defenses. Fresh British reinforcements arrive, commanded by General Gibbs and General Edward Pakenham. After debarking, General Pakenham examines the terrain of the British positions, and he becomes highly concerned after discerning that the troops have settled upon a dreaded morass. He is equally dismayed at the sight of the American fortifications to their front which appear to him to become stronger as the hours pass, but his displeasure does not stop with the soggy ground and poor defenses. Pakenham takes note that there are no British warships on the river to support the army.

The flat ground upon which the British must advance appears to Pakenham as a quagmire waiting to snare his force. The terrain upon which the encampment had been made, however, has protection, swampland on the right and the river on the left. Nonetheless, his positions remain vulnerable to attack from naval vessels and also by artillery posted on the opposite bank of the river.

While the British lack naval support, two American vessels, the USS *Louisiana* and the USS *Carolina*, maintain a steady bombardment of the British lines. The British positions are also harassed by the elements. While the naval barrages continue unabated, the troops are pelted by pesky rain and penetrating frost. Nonetheless, Pakenham unfolds his strategy by ordering a contingent to bring up heavy artillery and a furnace. The items are transported during darkness, deployed on a levee and prepared for action.

**December 24 TREATY OF GHENT ENDS THE WAR** The Treaty of Ghent is signed by American and British officials, ending the War of 1812. This news does not reach America in time to prevent the siege of New Orleans. The agreement is received in the United States with celebration, but in England, the British press smacks the English commissioners with a bloody cat-o-nine tails, lashing out at the results and branding it as a sellout.

However, at the time of the scathing press articles, the British are still unaware of Jackson’s spectacular victory at New Orleans. For the Americans, the British have agreed to put off the talks about fishing rights and British navigational rights on the Mississippi. The treaty does not cover nor even mention the rights of neutral shipping, nor the impressment of American seamen, the principle cause of the American declaration of war. However, the latter point has become moot since the elimination of Napoleon. Essentially, both sides have fought to a point of overexhaustion, permitting the treaty to proclaim a truce beneficial to both antagonists. The Americans, subsequent to their upcoming triumph at New Orleans, proclaim victory and the administration does not attempt to change the people’s opinion. The British had held the upper hand, but were unable, despite superior numbers in ships and men, to subdue the Americans, due in great part to the astonishing achievements of privateers.

**December 29 (Thursday) 1814- In New Orleans**, the Americans continue to maintain their defenses while the British, having again been repulsed on the previous day, remain exasperated. During the night (29th-30th), snipers continued to harass the British outposts. The British have convinced

themselves that the city can still be taken, once they deploy additional firepower acquired from the fleet that is capable of knocking out Jackson's artillery. The British are confident that Jackson's left is the most vulnerable spot along the line. However, Jackson, once again instinctively convinced that the British will strike his left, modifies his line and redeploys some artillery to dominate the suspected route of advance.

Two 12-pounders under Lt. Spotts are placed near the woods, and another piece, also a 12-pounder, is deployed between the previously mentioned guns and the center of the line. Jackson directs a volunteer, French General Garrique, to command the latter piece, and he also brings in two additional guns (6-pounder and 18-pounder) under Colonel Perry, who places his guns in the same general area. More strength is put in place when Commodore Patterson unloads a 24-pounder and two 12-pounders from the USS *Louisiana* and establishes his Marine battery on the west bank of the Mississippi River at Jourdan's Plantation at a spot to the rear of the levee, providing Jackson with artillery placed to dominate the frontal approaches to the line. Patterson designates some of his crew to handle the battery. To further bolster his force, Patterson dispatches Lt. Thompson into the city to round up anyone who even looks like a seaman. Thompson expeditiously sweeps into the city and jumps from one boarding house to another until he finds sufficient manpower. Not one man speaks English. Despite the language barrier, the battery is tested on the following day.

**January 7 (Saturday) In Louisiana,** the British are completing the final steps before launching their major full-scale attack to reduce the American redoubts which continue to bar passage into New Orleans. There are no thoughts of failure, only of adding to the laurels of the regiments, but still, there remains one seemingly perpetual stumbling block, the indefatigable General Andrew Jackson, who has molded a hardened army out of raw militia and volunteers in little more than one month. Jackson has repeatedly repulsed some of the finest troops in the British army. Although the greater part of the people in New Orleans continue to have absolute confidence in the general, a small minority, including some crony politicians, are beginning to worry more about themselves than of the fate of the city; however, it is only a minority, and reports to the contrary are due more to the imagination of the authors who perceived genuine opposition against Jackson. The general is still constantly observing the British movements from his battered headquarters.

By this day, Jackson has received more reinforcements, including about 500 men (militia) under General Philemon Thomas, who arrived on 1 January. Since the arrival on 3 January of about 1,500 Kentuckians under General John Thomas who mostly lack weapons and proper clothing, the women of New Orleans have worked tirelessly to sew the clothing for the men. The legislature authorizes \$16,000 for them and people in the region raise \$100,000. One source that does not contribute is the U.S. Congress.

The Kentuckians had traveled on their own for the sole purpose of doing their part to save New Orleans. They get their opportunity on the following morning, but for the present, there is still an enormous amount of preparation for the upcoming attack. Jackson, having learned the British plan from prisoners on the previous day, spends his entire day ensuring that troops are prepared and that his defenses can continue to withstand the British attacks.

The American line is not uniform from one end to the other. The height and thickness of the walls varies, leaving some weak spots; however, the walls for the entire length have been built solely with Louisiana soil. There are no cotton bales at any point. The lines extend from the river to the woods and from the latter, the line is pushed into the swamp. Colonel Humphrey's artillery is placed on the road less than 75 yards from the river near the levee. His regulars dominate the road and provide

protection for the flank of the redoubt with their pair of brass 12-pounders, manned a U.S. artillery contingent, and one 6-pounder, manned by dragoons attached to Major St. Geme. The other batteries are spaced out along the line as follows: Battery No. 2, manned by crew men of the USS *Carolina* under Lt. Norris, contains one 24-pounder, which is deployed less than 100 yards from Humphrey's battery; Battery No. 3, manned by Dominique You and the Frenchman Bluche, along with a detachment of Baritarians and a contingent of French privateers, contains two 24-pounders; Cominique's battery stands only about 50 yards from the guns of Battery No. 2; and Battery No. 4, manned by crew members of the USS *Carolina* under Lt. Crawley, contains one 32-pounder and is nearly within touching distance of Battery No. 3.

The remaining batteries along the line—No. 5, No. 6, No. 7 and No. 8—are separated by just under 200 yards. Battery No. 5, commanded by Colonel Perry and Lt. Kerr, contains one 18-pounder and two 6-pounders. Next along the line, Battery No. 6, which contains one brass 12-pounder, is manned by a contingent of the D'Orleans Battalion, led by Lt. Berbel and under the overall command of General Garrigue. The French general had fought against the English during the Napoleonic Wars. Garrigue's battery stands only about 35 yards from Battery No. 5; however, a large gap exists between it and Battery No. 7, which is deployed just under 200 yards distant. Battery No. 7, commanded by Lt. Spotts and Chameau, contains one long brass 18-pounder and one 6-pounder, whose commands are attached to the U.S. Artillery. About sixty yards beyond Battery No. 7, a small carronade is posted; however, it had been poorly mounted and little is expected of it. The battery is commanded by an artillery corporal and manned by a contingent of General William Carroll's force. General Jackson's remaining artillery is under Commodore Patterson and deployed on the opposite (right) bank. Patterson's Marine Battery contains nine artillery pieces. Combined, Jackson has 25 artillery pieces, and he is depending on the continuing effectiveness of the Marine battery, which is charged with flanking the British on the left bank. Jackson, thinking ahead, has also chosen to establish a safety net in the event the British might penetrate his redoubts. A new line is established less than two miles from the primary defenses to provide a back-up defensive position in front of the city. Jackson utilizes those in his force who remain either poorly armed or those who have no weapons to hold that position. They will defend their position with axes, shovels, and their personal knives. The shovel brigade is reinforced by the cavalry under Major Hinds, which continues to be confined to reconnaissance raids due to the lay of the land, which is not suited for usual cavalry operations. Nevertheless, Hinds' command is prepared to race forward at the instant the British penetrate. Jackson has Hinds in reserve to beat back the British and cover the withdrawal, if necessary, as the defenders pull back to the second line of defense. And still, Jackson had ordered yet a third line established on the outskirts for added insurance against any of the British being able to plow their way into the city.

Jackson's ground troops are deployed all along the redoubt and beyond. To the extreme right, a 30-man contingent of Beale's Rifles is posted between Colonel Humphrey's battery and the river bank. Back at the far right of the redoubt, Lt. Ross is deployed with one company of the 7th Regiment, and there is also a detachment of the 44th Regiment led by Lt. Marant in the redoubt. The main body of the 7th under Major Peire is posted to the left of Beale's Rifles and covers the ground from there to Battery No. 3, to provide protection for the guns of Colonel Humphrey and those of Lt. Norris, but also to guard the magazine in that sector. The line stretching between the two guns of Battery No. 3 is protected by a company of the carboneers and a contingent of Plauche's Orleans Battalion. Next in line, the battalion of free men of color are posted between Batteries No. 3 and 4. Battery No. 5 is

under the protection of the 44th Regiment under Captain Baker.

Nearly all of the remaining line is under the protection of General Carroll's command; however, this day, General John Thomas Adair arrives with a command of 1,000 more Kentuckians to complete General Thomas's division. Adair, a native South Carolinian, had relocated to Kentucky. Of the new arrivals, 600 of the troops are commanded by Colonel Gabriel Slaughter (later, during 1816, governor of Kentucky) and the remaining 400 are under Major Harrison. Adair's command eases the strain of Carroll's responsibility on the line. One other unit, a 50 man Marine contingent led by Lt. Bellvue, is posted to the right of Battery No. 7. Finally, beyond the Marines, General Coffee's command holds responsibility for Jackson's extreme left and the conditions there are deplorable. Coffee's troops are surely going to be cantankerous. Their positions force them to remain standing in the water, and for sleep, the only available beds are floating logs that are trapped and tied to trees.

The remaining American troops are scattered about. Major Hind's squadron is posted at Delery's Plantation and another cavalry unit of 50 men under Ogden is deployed close to Jackson's headquarters. To the rear of the American lines, the Louisiana militia battalion under Colonel Young is deployed close to Pierna's canal to intercept any British unit that might attempt to attack by that route, while other detachments are holding outposts about 500 yards to the front. Jackson's force, which holds the line in front of New Orleans on the east bank of the river, includes only about 800 regulars; however, his militia forces and volunteers have been performing as well as regulars. About 3,200 of his 4,000 troops are actually deployed along the line. The consolidated report in the adjutant general's office gives Jackson, on 8 January, a force of 5,045 on the left bank of the river, not including Major Harrison's Kentucky battalion of about 400 troops.

Throughout the day on the 7th General Jackson appears to be indefatigable; however, the responsibility of preserving the city as well as the weight of preserving his army is taking a toll on his health. As he dashes from unit to unit to prepare his forces for the attack, he does not have intelligence on the number of British troops preparing to demolish his line. However, he is aware that General Pakenham has recently received more reinforcements. Jackson is relying heavily on his commanders, Acting Brigadier General Ross, who controls the line from right to left of the 44th, and Major General Carroll and Brigadier General Coffee, on his left. The Americans continue to work on their defenses; however, the next phase, the ignition of the battle, depends upon Pakenham's readiness to launch his assault. Jackson expects the offensive will begin at dawn on the 8th.

Back in the British camp, the assault force continues to become more restless as they anxiously await the order to attack. Except for the recently arrived reinforcements, the British are still determined to avenge their successive failures and prove their superiority in the field. The British plan is not completely on schedule because of the tedious task of bringing up the boats, which will play a primary role in the operation. Nonetheless, as the day passes, the suspense and anxiety increases for both antagonists. The British ponder their calculations regarding the weak points in Jackson's lines, and they remain deeply concerned about having all of the boats in place in time to strike Commodore Patterson's battery. Meanwhile, Jackson, aware of the non-stop activity within the British lines, is not yet sure where the main attack will strike. He deliberates whether his weak right side is the target or if the British have been emboldened sufficiently to strike his positions on both banks simultaneously with their full strength. Reconnaissance patrols are dispatched to discover the plan. Colonel John R. Grimes, while scouting British lines at the Villere Plantation, easily spots activity which indicates the British intent to cross the river, but he simultaneously concludes that General Morgan must redeploy his force at the levee across from the Villere Plantation, which will have his

troops in place to intercept the boats before the troops can land. Morgan, however, essentially ignores the advice of Grimes. He retains his main body in place and pushes his vanguard, composed of about 120 militia troops, ahead but not to a strategic point; rather at a point at least three hundred yards from when the boats will touch shore, but still directly to the front of Morgan's positions.

After dusk, Commodore Patterson, accompanied by R.D. Shepherd, a volunteer serving as an aide, creep down the right bank of the river and from their positions directly opposite from where the British intend to cross the river, they are able to observe the activity. Patterson can hear the noise of boats being dropped into the water and even some of the orders being given by officers. While returning to his battery, Patterson confers with General Morgan and informs the general that his positions are vulnerable. Patterson and Morgan have concluded the main attack would be against the right bank. Patterson sends his aide to Jackson's headquarters with the intelligence and an urgent request for reinforcements for Morgan. Shepherd makes it to Jackson's headquarters and delivers the message.

Jackson had been resting, but not sleeping like his staff. After listening to Richardson, General Jackson instructs him to head back to General Morgan's positions and tell him that he is mistaken. "The main attack will be on this side, and I have no men to spare." Shepherd is also directed to inform Morgan that he "must maintain his position at all hazards." Before Shepherd departs, General Jackson glances at his watch, sees that it is past 0100 and in a flash, his staff, spread out on the floor, gets the word: "Gentlemen, we have slept enough. Arise. The enemy will be upon us in a few minutes; I must go and see Coffee."

**January 7-8 1815 BATTLE OF NEW ORLEANS-In Louisiana**, the Americans holding the line outside the city are bracing for what is expected to be the most powerful assault by the British since their arrival in Louisiana in early December. Technically, the city is under siege, but General Jackson and his commanders and troops have repeatedly and handily stopped the British from gaining entry to the city. Consequently, the British invaders have depleted most of their supplies, and they still lack even tents. Many of the troops are also suffering from dysentery. Nonetheless, throughout this day (7th), General Pakenham is finalizing details before ordering the attack. The ground troops have discarded their somberness. The gloom which has hovered over the camp dissipated with the arrival of two additional seasoned regiments that had participated in the Napoleonic Wars. Thanks to the arrival of fresh food supplies, the troops even celebrate with a grand feast to lift their spirits. Strangely, however, the British band continues to remain uncharacteristically silent.

Music has been absent in the British camp since Pakenham's forces arrived in the United States. Back at the American lines, the troops await the assault. Based on acquired intelligence, Jackson is aware that the British will launch a two-pronged assault, and there is some question as to where the primary attack will strike. The general, who has so far outfought and out-thought the British at every turn, is convinced the positions on the opposite bank of the Mississippi will be struck by a diversionary attack to draw attention away from his main positions. Nonetheless, requests from Commodore Patterson and General David Bannister Morgan for reinforcements had been rejected by Jackson, who assured both officers that their positions were not the main objective. Jackson does order about 500 troops to bolster the opposite bank.

As midnight (7th behind schedule) approached, water levels in the canal had dropped and the walls at certain points collapse, which makes it necessary for the seamen to drag and pull the boats. Colonel Thornton, charged with crossing the river and capturing the Marine battery under Commodore Patterson and turning the guns on Jackson's positions, is paramount to the success of the operation.

By about 0300 on the 8th, Thornton realizes that he is short about 75 percent of his boats. The lack of the proper number of boats compels Thornton to prepare to embark with only about one-half of the troops assigned to the mission. With about 700 men, including a contingent of seamen and one company of Royal Marines, Thornton gives the signal for Captain Roberts to shove off. From shore the river appears extremely calm, and as the crews begin rowing, the flotilla encounters an unexpected surprise. The current, although appearing tranquil, is too strong for the rowers to maintain control. Rather than the short jump to the right bank, the ole Mississippi sweeps the entire flotilla downstream until finally the crews are able to get the boats to shore. However, they are more than one mile from where they expected to debark. The setback is costly, because the force loses the darkness of the night. As the troops bolt from the boats, the first signs of dawn have already arrived. At about 0400, Thornton's boats finally reach shore. The troops move ashore without encountering any resistance. Under the protection of a flotilla of gunboats commanded by Captain Roberts, the column moves toward General Morgan's positions. Once the column approaches the advanced line, a contingent of the 85th is separated from the main body and directed to strike the positions of Tessier, while the remainder of the column drills directly toward Davis, coming under fire by carronades aboard Captain Roberts' gunboats. The unseasoned Kentuckians under Tessier abscond almost as quickly as the British begin to fire. Shortly thereafter, Thornton's column (sailors, Royal Marines and the 85th Regiment) initiate a charge. The small detachment hurriedly abandons the line and races back toward Morgan's main body. The retreat is haphazard, and Morgan hears the commotion. He advances on horseback and intercepts Colonel Davis, then instructs him to post his troops to the right of the Louisiana militia. Morgan prepares his line for the imminent attack with his force of only about 600 troops. The advancing force under Thornton comes into full view in a line of the 85th stretched across the plain, along with the contingent of sailors on the road and the Royal Marines under Major Adair being held in reserve.

The 85th under Colonel Gubbins and the sailors led by Captain Money initiate the charge at the sound of the bugle, while the waiting Americans meet the sailors with their guns, a 12-pounder under Philibert along with two 6-pounders under the adjutant-general, John Nixon. The fire is effective and the sailors sustain casualties, including Captain Money, who is hit while leading the assault. Captain Money's command is slowed by the heavy fire; however, Colonel Thornton observes the faltering sailors and pushes the 85th forward. It too comes under fire from Morgan's ground troops. Thornton, who sustains a wound, disregards it and plunges ahead. He sends a contingent under Captain Shaw with instructions to plow into the center. Simultaneously, two other contingents of the 85th strike the far right and the center of Davis' positions. The maneuver receives more support when the carronades on the gunboats propel shells onto Morgan's batteries at the far left of his line. Thornton's presence of mind turns his strategy into a master stroke. The lightning-fast attacks include other contingents of the 85th that slam against Davis' positions.

The Kentuckians along Davis' positions observe the wave of troops approaching, and they panic. These raw troops fear being trapped between two forces. Rather than stand and fight, they race to the rear. General Morgan instructs Colonel Davis to halt the stampede, but the effort is futile. Morgan persists and manages to persuade a small group to return to face the enemy; however, before they arrive back in position, a series of British rockets descend upon them and they again panic and race like jack rabbits in the direction of Morgan's left. All the while, the Louisiana militia holds steadfastly and delivers streams of effective fire into the advancing ranks. Nevertheless after hasty departure of the frightened Kentuckians, the militia has no protection on its right. Immediately, the

British take the advantage. They bolt over the ditch, ascend the parapet and gain positions within the lines of Morgan.

The militia, now holding untenable positions, is compelled to abandon their ground or face capture. By the time they become imperiled, they had already fired their final cartridge. Steps are taken to disable the guns before they pull back. There is neither disorder nor lack of discipline. They retire as a unit, while under fire from the British. During this desperate period, Commodore Patterson observes Morgan's predicament and orders his guns, which have been supporting General Jackson's line on the opposite bank all through the morning, turned to bolster Morgan. The race to the rear is also observed by Patterson, and as the horde is running full speed toward his positions several hundred yards to the rear of Morgan, he becomes enraged. Patterson orders a midshipman, the commander of a 12-pounder, to fire upon the "damned cowards." The midshipman, unwilling to question the commodore, complies. He raises the lit match and prepares to fire, but the commodore has a change of heart and the order is cancelled, preserving the Kentuckians. By this time, Thornton is threatening Patterson's battery. He orders the guns spiked. Afterward, the troops toss the ammunition into the Mississippi, withdraw in orderly fashion and head toward the USS *Louisiana* several hundred yards to the rear.

Colonel Thornton's command continues its advance; however, he has no knowledge of the progress or lack thereof on the opposite bank. Nonetheless, his late arrival on the opposite shore made it obvious that his target, Patterson's battery, had not been supporting the advance of the brigades of Gibbs and Keane. While Patterson is moving toward the *Louisiana*, the militia is trailing close behind. Once Patterson's party arrives at the ship, they are unable to get it underway. The militia, although executing a retreat, remains cohesive and prepared for a fight if Thornton catches up to them. The militia, after noticing Patterson's dilemma, suspend their pullback to free the vessel. They succeed and Patterson moves out beyond the reach of the British guns. Meanwhile, the militia resumes marching until they reach the Boisegeveau canal, where they regroup. By the time the militia prepares to receive Thornton's command; however, momentous events beyond the control of Morgan, Patterson and even Thornton have occurred on the opposite bank.

Thornton's force arrives at Patterson's battery. At nearly the same time, an artillery officer, Colonel Dickson, sent to intercept Colonel Thornton, arrives at the battery and informs Thornton of the disaster on the left bank. Thornton tells Dickson that with his reinforcements (contingents of sailors and Royal Marines), he can hold the battery. Dickson, however, insists the positions are untenable. Thornton holds, but Dickson hurries back to report to General Lambert, and without a moment's thought, Lambert orders him to abandon the battery and report to him.

While Thornton is preparing to re-cross the river, General Jackson is sending reinforcements to bolster Morgan; however, Jackson's choice as commander of the relief force, a Frenchman, General Humbert, is offensive to the militia officers. They procrastinate due to not wanting to serve under Humbert, which causes a prolonged delay in getting reinforcements to Morgan. In the meantime, Thornton's efforts to re-cross the river take a large part of the day. Due to his recall, which occurs in conjunction with an agreement between Jackson and Lambert, the progress of the British on the right bank is halted. Consequently, the Redcoats never advance to the militia's positions at the canal. On the left bank, the main body of the attack force has not yet heard reveille, but word of the misfortune regarding Colonel Thornton's crossing of the river had gotten back to the officers, most of whom have not slept. The jovial conversations surrounding their soon to be victory suddenly turns somber. The officers who take the news as a bad omen show no signs of cowering. A question is

tossed at Colonel Dale, a courageous officer and the commander of the 93rd Highlanders. He is asked about his opinion with regard to the boats being delayed. Rather than directly respond, Colonel Dale looks to his regimental physician, Doctor Dempster, then hands him a letter and his watch: "Deliver these to my wife. I shall die at the head of my regiment," essentially a declaration that despite his thoughts that the battle is lost, his duty to British shall not be derailed even at the cost of his life. The profound effect that his words have on the younger officers can only be guessed, but surely chills must have run down their spines.

Another officer, Colonel Mullens of the 44th Regiment, the unit delegated to lead the charge against Jackson's redoubts, is equally fatalistic; however, his words speak of no heroic allegiance to Britain. To the contrary, he comes rather close to expressing contempt when he states that his regiment would essentially be executed and their corpses would become a bridge for the trailing troops to pass over as they advance to a similar fate. Meanwhile, for the officers involved in the dreadful conversation, there would be no sleep whatsoever. The grim news had also been delivered to General Pakenham as soon as he arrived at the canal. Nonetheless, the general makes no move to alter his strategy. The operation continues and Pakenham remains absolutely sure that his heroic and courageous troops will surmount the unexpected setback and carry the day against all odds. At a distance of about 500 yards from the American redoubts, Generals Gibbs and Keane (neither aware of the delay of Thornton) form their columns and the troops are raring to jump off; however, the brigades remain motionless because the signal from Colonel Thornton is late. The troops become edgy, but there is still no fire by Thornton on the opposite bank. Actually, Thornton and his boats are still fighting the current on the Mississippi.

Back at the positions where the main attack force is formed, there is apprehension due to the absence of Thornton's fire; however, the column under Gibbs begins its advance under cover of yet another fog. The brilliant colors of the British uniforms are obscured by the mist; however, the Americans are waiting and prepared for the assault. All across the line, men are peering into the dense canopy of fog in search of even the slightest presence of the British to seize the honor of firing the first shot. The gunners at Battery 7, under Lt. Spotts, are convinced that they detect a slim red line that becomes visible at a point directly to their front at a distance of about 300 yards. In a snap, Spotts' halts and shortly thereafter, the fog begins to lift and the British column is totally exposed. Suddenly, the American gunners are staring at a sea of scarlet that is stretched nearly from one side of the plain to the other.

The British fire a rocket from a position close to the river, just before another rocket is fired from a position near the swamp. The rockets temporarily divert the gunners, and by the time they are about to fire, the British column momentarily vanishes, causing confusion at the American lines. Nevertheless, the activity had only been a maneuver by which the column had reformed into a column of companies. The British ground troops are not accompanied by their musicians or even their drummers. The companies, however, are greeted by the music of an American band which begins to play at first sight of the Redcoats. Their choice of music specifically selected to taunt the British is "Yankee Doodle," a name the British gave to those ragtag troops of George Washington during the American Revolution. The British as they advance have a clear view of the Stars and Stripes, which is on a high staff at about the mid-point of Jackson's line. The British have already been angered by their earlier defeats and are more determined to demolish the redoubts. They continue their advance with precision.

Meanwhile, as Gibbs' brigade is advancing toward the right, General Keane's brigade pushes against

the left with about 1,000 men, including companies of the West Indian brigade under Colonel Rennie. The British encroach the American outpost without being detected, and they catch the guard completely unaware. Effortlessly, the British drive them back toward the redoubt.

During the hurried retreat, Colonel Humphrey observes the British in pursuit; however, he holds his fire out of fear of striking the Americans as well as the British. The Americans make it back to the main defenses, but the vanguard of Rennie's force is on their heels. The British burst through and ignite close-quartered combat with elements of the defending 7th Infantry. The vicious hand-fire, and those British holding the redoubt suddenly become anxious to relinquish the redoubt. At the same time, a 56-man Marine contingent under commanded by Lieutenants de Bellevue and de Grandpre withstand an attack by the 93rd Highlanders. The Scottish regiment is totally unsuccessful and forced to retreat after sustaining high casualties. The Marines hold the redoubt without the loss of a man. Nevertheless, the threat rather than being terminated becomes more grave, as the main body is closing in a formation of two solid columns, moving separately, with one moving along the river and the other marching directly down the road.

During their approach, Colonel Humphrey has no concern about hitting friendly troops. The British suddenly come under fire from the men of the 7th Regiment and the guns of Colonel Humphrey's battery (No. 1) less than 75 yards from the river. The British along the road are overcome by the devastating fire but the troops by the levee remain unscathed. Commodore Patterson's Marine Battery detects the contingent that appears safe and he rectifies the situation by getting the range, and then his battery plasters the levee with grape. The commander, Colonel Rennie, has sustained a severe wound when he is struck in the thigh by grape; however, the pain does not deter him. He continues to press forward. With a small detachment, he arrives at the ditch on the far right and then reaches the crest of the redoubt. The conquest is glorious for the British, who have been jinxed at nearly every move. Rennie and two others, Captain Henry and Major King, take sole possession of the redoubt from the contingent of the Orleans Rifles, which falls back. Rennie's jubilation is premature. He raises his sword and swings it back and forth while proclaiming: "Hurrah boys, the day is ours." Nonetheless, the detachment of the Orleans Rifles had not retired; rather, they pulled back to give themselves better targets. The three British officers soon after claiming victory are killed by the Orleans sharpshooters. Consequently, the remainder of the force retreats, heading toward the safety of the levee. During the retreat, a young bugler who observed the entire advance by positioning himself in a tree and blowing his bugle, which was heard despite the constant burst of shells, is left behind. Apparently, his position had been spotted, but the boy remained unscathed. After the British are gone, a soldier captures the boy and takes him into the American lines, where they treat him royally and shower praise upon him for his courage.

The bodies of Colonel Rennie and the other two officers are carried into the American lines. A discussion develops about who struck down the colonel. A named Withers states: "If he isn't hit above the eyebrows, it wasn't my shot." Shortly thereafter it is determined that Colonel Rennie had been hit slightly above the eyebrow and Withers receives recognition as the marksman who killed Rennie. In the meantime, as the threat to the left is finally terminated, the column on the right under Gibbs is encountering severe difficulty.

General Gibbs maneuvers his column toward the woods to gain some protective cover with the 44th under Colonel Mullens at the point, trailed by the 21st and 4th Regiments respectively. It is an awesome sight as the Redcoats quicken their pace and zoom past the redoubt on the far right of the British positions. As they reach the swamp, the 44th Regiment, composed primarily of Irish troops,

is under orders to stack their arms and carry the facines and the ladders.

By this time, several of the American batteries have the column in their sights. Batteries 6 and 7 and the howitzer at No. 8 open fire. Grape and shot arc toward the advancing line as the rattle of thunder signals the avalanche of fire, which causes a disruption of the cohesion of the force. Suddenly, yet another snafu interferes with the advance. While on the run from death, men of the 44th along with other troops manage to pick up some of the ladders and facines as the advance resumes, however, the guns of Spotts and Garrigue, along with the howitzer prevent success in bringing up the necessary equipment. Word that the ladders and facines had not arrived spreads through the column, while the troops advance with their weapons on their shoulders under a fire storm of grape and shot.

Once Pakenham learns of Mullen's failure to carry out his order, he becomes incensed and races to the point to verify the rumors, which prove to be true. Mullens is castigated by Pakenham, who by this point is infuriated. He orders Mullens to expeditiously return to the rear, gather the ladders and facines, then hurry back with his regiment. The remainder of the column is affected by the confusion and the advance temporarily stalls. Nonetheless, the American batteries remain unaffected. They catapult round after round into the ranks to wreak havoc. General Gibbs is faced with watching his troops begin to fall from the iron storm. He reacts angrily and yells at the top of his voice: "Let me live till tomorrow and I'll hang him [Mullens] to the highest tree in that swamp."

If Gibbs remains where he stands, his chances of being alive at dawn on the following day are slim. Rather than have his forces slaughtered in place, while waiting for the ladders, he issues his order: "Advance!" Once again, the American gunners observe a perfectly spaced column of Redcoats moving straight toward the redoubt. British rockets carrying combustibles zoom overhead; however, the distraction does not impede either the rapidity or the effectiveness of the American guns, which deliver incessant volleys of death and destruction.

The path of advance is turning scarlet from the layers of dead and wounded, while the advance continues. As the British soldiers are blown out of the formation huge gaps are created in the column, but others quickly fill in the spaces. As if on parade rather than under the enfilade, the British remain oblivious to the fire and move directly toward the line where Spotts' pernicious 18-pounder at Battery No. 7 is still pounding the brigade. The situation for the British, already grave, suddenly deteriorates when they find themselves in a deadly quagmire. Choices seem few. Stand and die, advance and die, or retreat and risk death. Gibbs' brigade bravely attempts to forge ahead only to enter a cauldron in which the heat is provided by the incessant waves of artillery fire. Still the British refuse to quit. Onward they trek, unaware that the battery commanded by Spotts is protected by the Tennesseans under General Carroll and a large contingent of Kentuckians.

Up to this point the British have faced wave after wave of withering fire primarily from Battery No. 7; however, as they inch closer to the redoubt, the ground they stand upon is instantly transformed into a blazing inferno. The other batteries, nearly in unison, unleash their terrifying fire upon the beleaguered brigade at just about the time they come into the range of the Tennessean sharpshooters. In rapid succession, the Tennesseans deliver a devastating volley, and almost as soon as the muskets are discharged, a second line opens fire. After their volley, a line of Kentuckians replaces them to deliver more punishing blows. Once the first wave of Kentuckians fires, they step back only to be replaced by a second line of Kentuckian marksmen. The blinding smoke conceals the carnage, and as Patterson's Marine Battery joins the fight, the entire front of the redoubt is swept by a flash flood of iron that causes the ground to quiver.

The Americans maintain their fire and receive non-stop encouragement from General Jackson, who

bellows: "Stand your guns. Don't waste your ammunition. See that every shot tells." And then the general adds: "Give it to them, boys; let us finish the business to-day." Despite the agonizing thrashing, the British reach a point about 200 yards from the ditch in front of the redoubt, but there is neither safety nor concealment here, nor a pause in the punishment being heaped upon them. The British are greeted with the order "Fire! Fire!" being bellowed by General Carroll. In an instant, as if the sky had opened with a gargantuan cloudburst, the entire line delivers riveting fire, and in rapid succession another volley follows without pause as four separate lines, two of the Tennesseans and two of Kentuckians, rotate seamlessly as if on a revolving wheel. The British are absolutely astonished to watch their ranks become shredded. The combined noise created by the muskets and the cannon reverberate, and as if bouncing off the clouds, the sounds become amplified as the whirling thunderclaps inflict indelible marks into the memories of the survivors.

The fire is so thick that it could be said that a Louisiana mosquito could not survive. Nonetheless, those under Gibbs who are able-bodied remain determined to gain the ditch, but still they lack the ladders and fascines. British officers still standing ignore the sheets of fire to lend encouragement by gaining the front of the stymied column. However, it is common knowledge that the 44th had not yet come up with the necessary equipment, prompting the troops to ask, "Where is the 44th?"

Gaining ground to reach the ditch without the equipment is sure folly, but a calming voice, that of General Gibbs, begins to yell: "Here come the 44th," soothing words to the desperate but persistent brigade. As calmness regains its position over the disorder, the troops spot the 44th, but it is only a contingent and to their great surprise, Colonel Mullens is not leading it; rather the commander, General Pakenham, arrives with the troops. Pakenham had run the gauntlet with his Irish troops carrying the equipment. Just before he reaches the column, his bridle arm is struck by American fire and at the same time, a ball strikes and kills his horse. Pakenham pays little attention to the incoming fire. He quickly mounts the pony of his aide, Captain McDougall, and reaches the front; however, by the time he arrives the column has hit an impenetrable wall of fire that checks the advance.

The British officer corps by this time has been decimated. Nearly all the regimental officers have been eliminated or wounded, leaving the troops with mass confusion and unable to penetrate the walls of fire. Cohesion breaks down due to the insufficient number of officers to maintain discipline. Some of the troops valiantly but in vain struggle to reach the ditch, while others, essentially the greater part of the brigade, attempt to make their way to the swamp. Momentarily, the field directly in front of the American positions is free of advancing British troops until they regroup at the ditch where they discard their knapsacks and reinitiate their advance. General Keane, expected to remain in reserve, decides to ignore his instructions to threaten but not attack the redoubt. He orders his brigade to join in the attack. Suddenly, a fresh wave of crimson pours onto the field with the 93rd Regiment in front of the column. The troops advance in good order with the rays of the sun beginning to penetrate the hovering smoke to bounce off their uniforms and seemingly increase the brilliance of their bayonets. The front line, composed of about 100 troops abreast, moves forward with added boldness, as if they believe themselves to be immune from the unfolding living nightmare. Nonetheless, neither the splendor of their impeccable uniforms, nor the swagger in their step or their menacing bayonets impress the Tennesseans and Kentuckians, who remain perfectly still while the artillery pours fire upon the approaching line.

The 93rd Regiment plows forward at an accelerated pace determined to gain the ditch. The effort is both gallant and noble; however, they are driving straight toward General Carroll's command. Suddenly, the order is given and the British line is shredded by an inescapable avalanche of fire.

Colonel Dale, who earlier mentioned his premonition of death, is killed by grapeshot while at the front of his 93rd Regiment. The spectacular display of unharnessed violence does not prompt the British to retire; rather, the remnants of Gibbs' brigade become inspired by the daring of the 93rd. They rush to their aid to snatch victory from defeat by a powerful thrust directly into the American lines that up to now have been invincible. Major Creagh, having assumed command of the 93rd, glances to the left and spots Pakenham. To his right, General Gibbs is back in the thick of the fight. The British are still vulnerable to the incessant fire, but the column reaches a point about 100 yards from the coveted ditch. All the while the grape and shot descends upon them to inflict more deadly punishment, while the thickening smoke obscures vision all the more.

General Pakenham is still on his aide's pony but his right arm has been rendered useless. Nevertheless, while his aide leads the pony, the general continues to brave the fire. He conceals his injury by removing his hat with his left hand, then he waves it back and forth to rally his troops, yelling: "Hurrah brave Highlanders!" But his cheers are short lasting. At about the time he completes his words of praise, a flying shell from an American gun scores a direct hit that kills or mangles nearly all who are close to the impact.

Pakenham survives the massive explosion with a severe wound to his thigh; however, he is tossed from the horse which had died instantly. While being assisted by other officers and men, yet another American shell crashes. Pakenham, while being lifted from the ground, sustains another wound, this one in his groin. The latest hit is debilitating and fatal. General Pakenham, paralyzed, is somehow safely carried back through the whirling shells to the rear and laid by an oak tree. His condition is beyond medical aid. A surgeon is rushed to his side, but to no avail. Almost at the same time the doctor makes it known that his wound is mortal, General Pakenham dies.

Just before General Pakenham had died, he had the strength to direct Sir John Tyndell, a staff officer, to call for the reserves under General Lambert. A bugler is summoned, and as he begins to signal for Lambert to advance, the invisible cloud of doom that has been plaguing the British since they landed strikes again. The bugler is struck in his arm by an American ball. This causes him to drop his bugle, and the unintended consequence is that the reserves remain in place until it is too late to be of any value.

The British, despite their indomitable spirit and their brash courage under fire, are unable to discover a weak link in the American defenses, while the indefatigable Americans continue to riddle the British ranks with menacing fire. Officers continue to fall along with the rank and file and the generals are not immune to the fury. General Gibbs and General Keane remain active on the field after Pakenham falls, but American fire soon inflicts a mortal wound upon General Gibbs. He suffers with agonizing pain into the following day before he dies. Meanwhile, the remaining general officer in the field, General Keane, sustains a dangerous wound to the neck, and he is carried to the rear.

The Americans have cleared the table, eliminating all the British field officers, which causes additional insurmountable problems. Still, the Redcoats refuse to accept defeat. Major Wilkinson, the brigade major, assumes command of the fragmented brigades and calls for the troops to follow him as he bolts forward leading a near-suicidal charge into the mouths of the American artillery and the lines of sharpshooters. About 20 of the troops and Lt. Lavac accompany Wilkinson. The little band makes it to the ditch and beyond to the redoubt. Wilkinson actually begins to climb the wall of the redoubt, then, just as his head and shoulders become visible, he instantly becomes the point-blank target. The major is blasted by the fire of no less than ten muskets, and the results are gruesome. He is riddled with bullets and yet he survives for the moment with agonizing pain.

The scene is heartbreaking even for the hardened Kentuckians and Tennesseans. Major Wilkinson to the very end is concerned only about his duty. An American officer and Kentuckian attempts to befriend Wilkinson during his final time on earth and tries to cheer his spirits: "Bear up, my dear fellow, you are too brave a man to die." Wilkinson, well aware that he is fading fast, responds with little more than a whisper: "I thank you from my heart. It is all over with me. You can render me a favor; it is to communicate to my commander that I fell on your parapet, and died like a soldier and a true Englishman." Meanwhile, the British just behind Wilkinson see him being sliced up with American bullets, but a few troops attempt to reach the top of the redoubt in vain. They are spared being cut down by the muskets because they fail to reach the top. Most of the detachment had already sought safety in the ditch.

By the time Major Wilkinson initiates his charge, most of the surviving men of the decimated brigades are hurriedly falling back. Usually it is the British watching their foe fleeing from British muskets and bayonets. This time, the American militia and volunteers in support of the regulars have reversed the roles. The field is still permeated with smoke as the retreat unfolds, leaving the Americans in suspense with regard to the depth of their success and no knowledge that they have destroyed about two-thirds of two British brigades by either death or wounds. During the retreat, General Lambert, still holding the reserves in place, finally hears of the death of Pakenham and the wounds of Gibbs and Keane. He proceeds with extra caution to provide some protection for the retreating remnants of the brigades. In retrospect, the failure of the bugler to signal General Lambert to reinforce the besieged brigades most probably preserved his command.

During the tumultuous contest, the troops holding the opposing ends of the American redoubt have tirelessly met and repelled each advance by the British, and their successes have inadvertently caused the troops holding the center to become frustrated. The center of the line is not challenged and the guns posted there remain dormant. The ground troops—including the 44th Regiment, Daquin's battalion, Lacoste's battalion and Plauche's battalion, numbering about 800 men—get no opportunity to directly engage the attacking force. The units specified are under orders to refrain from firing for two specific reasons, the advancing British are out of the range of their muskets and secondly, Jackson forbids wasting ammunition. Nevertheless, while the troops are shut out of the action, the officers remain on the alert due to the overwhelming temptation to slip away momentarily either to the left or right to get into the fight. Meanwhile, in the middle of the line, the band that began to play "Yankee Doodle" at first sight of the Redcoats has been as active as the guns. The music continues during the entire engagement to provide patriotic songs as an added inspiration to the men on the line. On the far right of the redoubt at the swamp, the British had sent a contingent led by Lt. Colonel Jones (4th Regiment) against the positions of Major General Coffee. Coffee's Tennesseans had been posted in the water, and the appearance of the British provides them with some exercise in addition to intercepting the intruders. The British are totally outclassed in the mud and water. The Tennesseans bounce from log to log, and they easily adapt to skirmishing in the mud. The incursion fails miserably and the attacking troops are either killed or captured. The troops of the West Indian Regiment begin to feel comfortable after becoming prisoners, because in their minds, they had surrendered to troops "of their own color and blood." The captors are Caucasians, but their prolonged time in the swamp and their lack of razors and soap had fooled the captives.

At 0800, the Americans and British had been in constant combat for two hours when the fighting begins to subside because the ground troops have difficulty spotting targets. Shortly thereafter, orders to cease fire get passed down the entire line. General Jackson is moving along the line to personally

congratulate his troops for their outstanding feat in the defense of the city and the Stars and Stripes. The troops realize they have been victorious; however, due to the hovering smoke from the guns, which have not yet been silenced, they remain unaware of the depth of the victory. There is concern that the British might be regrouping to mount another attack. While passing the band, which continues to play, Jackson is greeted with "Hail Columbia." At the same time, the troops instantaneously break out with their congratulatory chants and hurrahs to the general in recognition of his leadership.

When the smoke clouds begin to vanish and the celebrating troops look out upon the field, the joy of the victory is suppressed by the horrific scene from one end to another. The Americans clearly see Redcoats at every point, but not one is standing and those who are alive are stretched out in agonizing pain among the layers of dead troops. The plan destined to capture New Orleans had become a calamitous event, the worst defeat for the British army in the annals of the United Kingdom. The scene is beyond grotesque. Irregular red lines of deceased troops are lying everywhere. At some spots entire platoons are massed together and to the front of General Carroll's positions, the rows of the lifeless troops extend out at least 200 yards. Locating a standing live British soldier becomes extremely difficult; however, after a while, through the use of telescopes, General Lambert's reserves are located when a thin red line is observed far in the rear at a ditch.

The horrendous scenes on the battlefield are so breathtaking that the joy of victory is subdued and replaced by sympathy and outreach as the horrors of war are absorbed by the victors. The voices of the wounded, easily heard in the redoubt, cause some troops to ignore orders. They carry canteens and slip down the parapet to give the wounded some comfort. Nevertheless, some of them are wounded or killed by wounded British troops who do not realize the men are only trying to give aid. The powerful British army that defeated Napoleon lies shattered at the gateway to New Orleans, humbled by General Andrew Jackson.

The general, however, remains ever on the alert, and although he is more relaxed, he ensures that the line remains prepared for a new assault. By about noon, it becomes evident that no attack is being prepared. During the operation to capture the wounded, one British officer resents being captured by a Tennessean. The officer ignores the order to surrender and tries to walk away until the Tennessean informs the officer that if he takes another step, he will be dead. As he surrenders, he remarks: "What a disgrace for a British officer to have to surrender to a chimneysweep."

Word of the spectacular victory arrives back at the city and celebrations break out throughout. Even the youngsters are anxious to participate. A group of boys gather and with a drum and fife they begin to march through the streets. Before the day is out, the British do enter the city; however, most are being transported to the hospitals for medical aid. The hospitals, however, are overcrowded from Americans either sick or wounded. Nevertheless, the British are not abandoned. They are taken into private homes, and they receive the help of the families in addition to the services of physicians. The British able-bodied prisoners also enter the city, but not as conquerors. They arrive under the guard of a contingent of General Carroll's command.

In the meantime, a small detachment of Americans had moved out beyond the front lines. They report to General Jackson at about noon that a party of British troops are arriving at the lines under a white flag. Three riders approach and one is an officer. The party halts about 300 yards from Jackson's lines. Colonel William O. Butler and two other officers ride out to meet with the British. The officers accept the communication and take it back to Macarte's, where Jackson had established headquarters. The British message requests an armistice to permit time to bury the dead. The Americans take the

message to Jackson's headquarters. Jackson immediately notices the absence of General Pakenham's signature. The signature on the message designates no rank and states only "Lambert." The message is taken back to the British party and the Americans inform them that no armistice can be concluded until the authority of the commander in chief is affixed to the document. Jackson, again one step ahead of the British by his reply, forces General Lambert to re-sign with his rank as commander-in-chief. This informs Jackson that Pakenham is deceased. The modified document is returned within about one-half hour.

General Jackson proposes that hostilities cease on the left bank only to permit the burials; however, he allows no cessation on the right bank, with a restriction that neither side is permitted to send reinforcements to the right bank on the 9th during the armistice. Jackson is aware that the British have made inroads on that bank. Lambert requests time and agrees to respond by 1000 on the 9th. Meanwhile, he sends word to Colonel Thornton and orders him to abandon his positions at Patterson's Marine battery and report back to the main body. During the night of the 8th, after destroying some sawmills and other equipment and supplies, he arrives back on the left bank. Although Thornton had inflicted a defeat upon Morgan's force, the British sustain higher casualties. The 85th Regiment sustains two killed and 39 wounded, and the contingent of sailors and Royal Marines sustain four killed and 49 wounded. Morgan's command sustains one killed and five wounded. The missing Kentuckians are later discovered in the rear.

That same night, Commodore Patterson moves to regain his battery and completes the task during the early morning hours of the 9th. At dawn on the 9th, Jackson receives a round-about message from Patterson that the position is back under American control. The British are also informed that the battery is back in action when Patterson's guns deliver a series of shots into their outpost positions. The Marines based at the New Orleans Navy Yard under Major Daniel Carrick held positions alongside of the Mississippi River in a redoubt. They withstood a counterattack by the British, but the commanding officer, Major Carrick was seriously wounded by a rocket fragment that hit him in the forehead. Command of the Marines passed to Lt. de Bellevue.

Casualty figures for the British vary. American reports place the casualties at 700 killed, 1,400 wounded and 500 captured. British reports indicate 291 killed, 1,951 wounded and 488 captured. The British figures regarding killed are confined to those killed in the field, but they do not include those who died from their wounds. The most tragic part of battle has not yet been learned. Later the participants will discover that every death, disfigurement and injury during the struggle for New Orleans on 8 January had occurred after the war ended, but before the word arrived in the United States.

Also, during the British campaign, the *Tchifonta*, a corvette, remained incomplete in New Orleans. Construction was started during either late 1813 early 1814, and it was to play a part in the defense of the city, but the project was halted by Secretary of the Navy William Jones. The ship remains incomplete after the war. It is sold about 1820.

**January 14–15** The USS *President* under Captain Stephen Decatur attempts to run the British blockade off Long Island during inclement weather on the night of the 14th, but as the vessel is breaking for open seas after weighing anchor off Staten Island, it gets hooked on a sandbar. The crew, by about 2200, gets the vessel over the bar, but due to damage to the rudder and the winds, the *President* cannot return to port. It glides along the Long Island shore for about fifty miles before heading southeast by east. During the early morning hours at about 0500, lookouts spot three sail. Decatur evades them in the darkness, but at dawn, the danger intensifies when four British warships

are spotted. Two of them are to the rear with the other two divided, one on each quarter. The lead vessel, a 74-gun razeed, commences fire, but causes no damage. Nonetheless, the chase continues. By noon, another ship closes from the rear and the crew of the *President* takes steps to lighten the load by tossing items, including anchors and provisions, overboard to gain more speed.

By 1500, a brigantine is flying toward the *President*, while the 50-gun *Endymion* arrives at close range and it commences fire, which is immediately returned by the *President*. At about 1700, the *Endymion* is at about half-point range, prompting the *President* to maneuver into a position from which it could deliver a broadside; however, the *Endymion* fails to take the bait. By this time, the *President* is sustaining more damage, including the rigging and the sails. Nevertheless, the *President* continues to forestall disaster. At the arrival of dusk, Decatur changes course in an attempt to draw off one of the pursuers. The battle ensues and after trading broadsides, the British guns of the *Endymion* are silenced; however, the remainder of the squadron is closing fast, prompting Decatur at about 2000 to forego his prize and break away.

At about 2300, two more ships, the *Pomone* and the *Teneuos*, arrive. The *President* receives even heavier fire. By this time, about 20 percent of the *President's* crew had become casualties, and it was cut off from escape. Decatur, aware that his ship is too badly damaged to escape or even match the fire power of the British, decides that he must surrender. Lieutenants Babbit, A. Hamilton and Howell are killed.

Lieutenants Shubrick and Gallagher receive praise from Decatur (in a report written while aboard the HMS *Endymion* on the 18th) for their actions during the battle. Decatur also praises Lieutenant Twiggs and his entire complement of U.S. Marines, which fired about 5,000 rounds. Others among the crew that receive praise are Midshipman Randolph and a volunteer, Mr. Robinson.

The Americans sustain 26 killed and 60 wounded. The British ships that capture the *President* are the 74-gun *Majesty*, 60-gun *Endymion*, 60-gun *Pomome*, 38-gun *Teneuos* and the 18-gun *Despatch*. Total British casualties are 11 killed and 14 wounded according to their report; however, Commodore Decatur later states that he was taken aboard the *Endymion* 36 hours after the battle, and at that time, he witnessed the burial of ten British crewmen. Decatur surrenders his sword, but only to the entire squadron and to the British commander-in-chief. It was forwarded to Captain Hays of the *Majestic*; however, Hays who had arrived after the battle, chooses to have it returned.

Decatur is among the wounded, but in his official report he does not mention this. During the fighting, while in a conspicuous position, he had been hit in the chest by a splinter that knocks him down. Crew members rushed to his aid, but after a short while he snapped back into action. Later a second splinter struck his forehead. Decatur had been given command of the *President* during the summer of 1814, along with the *Peacock* (Captain Warrington), *Hornet* (Captain James Biddle) and the store-ship *Tom Bowline*. Crews of the other ships in Decatur's squadron remain unaware of the capture of the *President*.

Commodore Decatur arrives at Bermuda on 26 January. The weather had been extremely nasty and he thinks that the captured *President* had been lost, but it arrives on the 30th. Although the *President* had engaged multiple warships, the British embellish the reports and conceal many of the facts. In England, the praise for the victory goes to the *Endymion*, one of the four warships that participated; however, during the fighting between the *President* and the *Endymion*, the latter had been totally vanquished and was compelled to drop back to await the remainder of the squadron. To the illusion, illustrations (engravings) that follow portray only the *Endymion* as the victor and the *President* as the vanquished, while the other ships are completely eliminated from the scene. These illustrations that

are spread rapidly throughout Great Britain and its colonies do not even mention the remainder of the squadron in the accompanying captions or articles. Decatur is paroled shortly after his capture. He arrives at New London on 22 February and by the following May, he returns to the sea.

**May 20 to June 30 1815**-The United States, which had declared war on Algiers on 3 March, sends a naval fleet commanded by Commodore Stephen Decatur to deal with the Algerians. The squadron sets sail on May 20 with the *Guerriere* as flagship, followed by the USS *Constellation*, *Epervier*, *Macedonian*, *Ontario*, *Saranac*, *Spark* and *Torch*. The squadron moves swiftly to reach the Mediterranean to deal with the pirates. Decatur arrives at Gibraltar on 15 June. Shortly after arriving off Cape Gata, Spain, the Algerian vessel *Mashuda* is spotted during the early morning on 17 June. Decatur orders his men to their battle stations. As the squadron attempts to close, the Algerian vessel makes no attempt to run. Commander Lewis requests authorization from Decatur to “make sail.” Commodore Decatur, however, has noted that the Algerian ship by not trying to flee has probably identified the squadron as British because Algeria is not anticipating the arrival of the United States Navy. Decatur’s instincts prove true. He instructs Lewis: “Do nothing to excite suspicion; she lies well as she is now.” Nevertheless, Decatur’s attempt to totally surprise the enemy ship gets foiled when the USS *Constellation* prematurely hoists the Stars and Stripes. An attempt to fix the mistake is quickly unfolded.

Decatur raises the British ensign on the *Guerriere* and the other ships also hoist the British flag. The Algerians on the warship, however, realize the Americans are at their doorstep. The frigate *Mashuda*, commanded by Admiral Rais Hammida, tries to evade the squadron by running toward safety at Algiers. The *Mashuda* seemingly begins to fly; however, the USS *Constellation*, only about one mile away and the closest to the pirates, gives chase. Other vessels trailing closely join in the hunt to intercept the *Mashuda* before it reaches port. The *Epervier*, *Guerriere*, and the *Ontario*, the only ships close enough to support the *Constellation*, race toward the enemy ship. The *Constellation* closes the gap and begins to fire.

The *Mashuda* returns fire as it runs. Nonetheless, the barrage from the *Constellation* proves sufficiently effective to prompt the Algerians to modify their escape course. Admiral Hammida, convinced that his fate is sealed if he tries to make it to Algiers, instead moves toward the Spanish coast.

During the maneuver to change course, the *Mashuda* sails directly toward the *Ontario*. In response, the *Ontario* passes within about one-quarter mile of the *Mashuda*’s bow, while the other American ships had altered their courses and arrive on scene. The *Guerriere* moves into position between the *Constellation* on the starboard and the *Epervier* on its larboard. The *Guerriere* defiantly moves into close range and sustains musket fire that inflicts several casualties. Decatur remains aware of the wounded; however, he defies the fire and moves in closer, then unleashes a deadly broadside that inflicts horrific devastation.

The effective fire is immediately followed by another powerful broadside. Admiral Hammida had already been killed. He had suffered a wound from a shot fired by the *Constellation*, but at the time of the first broadside, Admiral Hammida was sitting in a chair on the quarter-deck, which had him elevated so he could observe from above the rail. He was split in half by a 42-pound shell. Other officers had also been killed, but the second broadside terminates the contest. The crew, having lost its commanders, also lose heart and the will to continue. They abandon their battle stations and try to escape by hiding in the hull. Some of the crew continue to resist, but in vain, despite their loyalty. Marines and sailors aboard the *Guerriere* liquidate them quickly. Nonetheless, the Algerians fail to

signal the surrender of the ship.

Although the Algerians fail to strike the colors, Commodore Decatur senses the immense devastation and he orders the *Guerriere* to cease fire. He maneuvers the *Guerriere* into position from which a boarding party can take possession of the prize. During the maneuver, a gun on the main deck of the *Guerriere* explodes, causing some confusion. At the same time, the *Epervier* arrives on the starboard quarter of the *Mashuda* and the *Guerriere* is no longer between it and the *Mashuda*. The *Epervier* observes suspicious activity on the *Mashuda*, when its helm is raised as if making another attempt to escape. The commander of the *Epervier* and his crew rush into action to take on the 46-gun *Mashuda*. Downes' 16-gun brigantine opens fire and immediately receives fire from the *Mashuda*; however, Downes' skills overcome the deficiency in fire power and his crew delivers nine consecutive broadsides that pulverize the *Mashuda*.

Finally, the Americans spot the signal that it had surrendered. Decatur delegates Captain Lewis to lead the boarding party to gain possession of the *Mashuda*. Two other officers, Midshipmen Hoffman (Decatur's aide) and Howell, accompany the party. The scene aboard the prize gruesome. Admiral Hammida's body is splattered about along with thirty other crewmen. Four hundred and six others remain alive and are taken prisoner. In contrast, the *Guerriere* sustains four wounded from the initial musket fire and of those, one died of his wounds. In addition, three others are killed and seven wounded when the gun of the *Guerriere* exploded. The *Mashuda*, under guard by the USS *Macedonian*, is taken to Cartagena.

On the following day, Commodore Decatur summons the captains of the squadron to his flagship. Upon their arrival, the officers move to Decatur's quarters, where he had arranged souvenirs of war on a table. They included "cimeters, atta ghans, and Turkish daggers and pistols." He invites the officers to choose for themselves; however, he suggests that Captain Downes should get first choice due to his spectacular leadership on the *Epervier*. Subsequently, Commodore Decatur sails eastward to cruise along the coast of Spain to search for and destroy or capture the remainder of the Algerian squadron. Decatur believes that two frigates and a few smaller ships are still operating in that area. Two days later (19 June), Decatur encounters another pirate ship off the coast. He strikes quickly and effortlessly destroys the vessel *Estedio*. Once the *Estedio* is eliminated, Decatur sets his sights on Algiers, and his intent is to reach the troublesome city before the remnant Algerian fleet can arrive there to ensure that his squadron can intercept it and either capture or destroy them before they can enter the port. While en route, Decatur holds a council with his officers to detail his master plan which calls for a full scale attack designed to destroy the shipping and the city's batteries if the dey fails to accept his terms. The squadron arrives at Algiers in late June.

**July 14 (Friday) 1815-In Naval Activity**, the USS *Epervier* is en route from the Mediterranean to the United States on a mission to deliver a copy of the treaty gained by Commodore Stephen Decatur with Algiers. The *Epervier* is also carrying flags captured from the now non-existent navy of the dey of Algiers. Once the *Epervier* moves through the Straits of Gibraltar, it vanishes without a trace. The entire crew, 132 sailors and two Marines, is never heard from again. Lt. Thomas T. Shubrick, the commander, initially entered the navy during 1806.

**October 6 (Friday) 1815-In Naval Activity**, following a successful coordinated effort with Commodore Stephen Decatur to establish the Mediterranean Squadron, Commodore Bainbridge returns to the United States. Captain Shaw receives command of the Mediterranean Squadron. While en route, the *Independence* pauses at Malaga and a seaman deserts. He is captured but claims to be a Spanish citizen. He is taken to the headquarters of the general of Marine. Once informed,

Bainbridge moves to see the governor, who sends him to the general of marine. Both men decline Bainbridge's demand that the seaman be returned. Commodore Bainbridge becomes irritated. After returning to see the governor, Bainbridge makes it clear that because the Spanish government is protecting a seaman and not a private citizen, it is an insult to the American flag. Bainbridge gives the governor one-half hour to return the deserter to the *Independence*, and if he is not returned, Bainbridge informs the governor that 500 men will debark and seize the deserter. He also cautions the governor that if his contingent encounters resistance, the naval guns will commence firing upon the town. Shortly thereafter, a detachment of Spanish troops arrive to transfer the deserter. Captain Bainbridge departs for Gibraltar. Bainbridge's command arrives at Newport, Rhode Island, on 15 November 1815.

**April 1816**-The USS *Boxer*, a brigantine, intercepts a pirate ship, the *Comet*. Marines and sailors capture the vessel.

**June 30 (Sunday) 1816**-At this time the active duty strength of the U.S. Marine Corps stands at 472 men, including twenty-one officers and 451 enlisted men.

**July 27 to August 26 1816-In Florida**, the U.S. sends troops from Fort Scott at Chattahoochee under Colonel (later general) George Lamont Clinch of Georgia to destroy Fort Apalachiola (known as Negro Fort). It was established the previous year by British captain Woodbine, who claimed to represent the forces in Florida of the king of England. Woodbine is harboring slaves and hostile Indians. Marines, serving aboard the gunboats No. 149 and 154, participate in the capture and destruction of the fort on 26 August. Captain Zachary Taylor (later general and president) participates in this expedition. During the assault, a shell strikes a magazine within the fort. It causes a huge explosion that kills many, including women and children. During 1818, the army constructs Fort Gadsden at this site.

**December 23 1818**-A combined operation including the Army, Navy and Marines tightens the noose on the pirates holding Amelia Island, Florida. The operation, which includes the contingents of six naval vessels, compels the pirates to surrender the facility.

**1829**-Archibald Henderson, at age 38, becomes the youngest ever commandant of the Marine Corps. Henderson is known for a phrase he coined: "Take care to be right, and then they are powerless." Legend has it when Commandant Henderson was departing with two battalions of Marines to fight the Indians in 1836, he left this message on his office door: "Gone to fight the Indians. Will be back when the war is over."

**November 1824-In Puerto Rico**, the United States reacts to an incident by dispatching Commodore Porter's fleet to Fajardo. Porter goes ashore with a contingent of Marines to retaliate for an insult to the American flag.

**November 14 (Sunday) 1824-In Puerto Rico**, two U.S. naval vessels, the *Beagle* and *Grampus*, enter the harbor at Fajardo Bay to demand an apology from the Spanish for an insult to an American naval officer and the American flag a few weeks before. Captain David Porter notes two Spanish cannons directed at his ships and promptly dispatches Marines to knock out the guns. The assault team scales the 80 foot cliff without opposition and destroys the firing mechanisms of the guns. The 14 man squad moves rapidly to join the main force of approximately 200 Marines and sailors who landed near a main road and begin to approach the town of Fajardo under a white flag. The Spanish defenders offer the Americans an apology and shortly thereafter, the Americans depart. Captain Porter is suspended from duty for a period of six months after a hearing on the 12 July 1825. The court-martial board which suspends Porter simultaneously commends him for his competence against

the pirates operating in the West Indies. Captain Porter, rejecting the outcome of the court-martial board, feeling it too harsh a punishment, decides to resign from the Navy. Porter subsequently becomes the commander of all Mexican naval forces and serves in that capacity until 1829, when he returns to the U.S. to become the consul general to the Barbary Coast countries.

**February 5–6 1832**-The USS *Potomac* sails into Sumatra to avenge the murders of American seamen; two American Navy men were killed, 11 wounded. The natives suffer 150 killed. The USS *Potomac*, which earlier received orders to set sail for China, actually departed New York several months before, heading for the Indian Ocean to avenge the atrocities against the merchant vessel *Friendship*, captured by Malay pirates the previous year. Within five miles of Quallah Battoo the *Potomac* anchors leisurely, posing as a lucrative Danish East Indian vessel, but during the early morning hours of February 6, the Americans display their true intent. Landing boats are dropped into the sea and 280 Marines and sailors zip silently toward the four enemy forts protecting the village. The defenders are greeted by the first rays of sunshine coupled with four separate assault teams. The fighting is vicious as the Americans push forward. In short order, the strongholds fall. The Marines, outnumbered at Tuko de Lima, crash through the walls knocking out the cannons and forcing the enemy to scatter. The last remaining obstacle, Fort Duramund, is assaulted by sailors and Marines who charge through the smoke-filled village, seizing the fort in a flash. The Malays who fled to the jungle watch as their forts and village burn in retaliation for the assault against the vessel *Friendship*. The victorious Americans are back on board the *Potomac* by 10 A.M. They take time to solemnly bury one seaman and two Marines who fell during the battle. Before departing the following morning, the *Potomac*, with the Stars and Stripes in full view, moves close to the shores of Quallah Battoo and commences firing its deadly long range 32-pounders, leaving the Malays with a final reminder of the visit.

**October 31 (Thursday) 1833**-*In Naval Activity*, U.S. ships are still in the vicinity of the Falkland Islands and Argentina, South America. A contingent of Marines and sailors are debarked at Buenos Aires, Argentina, to insure the well-being of American citizens in the area during a period of unrest.

**May 1835**-*In Washington, D.C.*, due to a directive by President Andrew Jackson during his second term, the army and Marines are instructed to begin changing their uniforms back to the styles worn during the Revolutionary War. This change was based on tradition and Jackson's strong belief in a positive image of the military. The Marines are finally in receipt of their new uniforms and are "Changing Back to the Green" while stationed aboard the USS *Brandywine* off the coast of Valparaiso, Chile. The sloops *Fairfield* and *Vincennes* and two additional schooners have been on patrol in the Pacific for almost a year when they meet the supply ship transporting their new attire.

**January 22 1836 (Friday)**-*In Florida*, U.S. naval vessels, including the *Constellation*, arrive at Fort Brooke (Tampa Bay) to bolster the defenses and prepare against additional Indian attacks such as the massacre of December 1835. The Marines subsequently depart with the soldiers to track and kill as many Indians as they can locate. The campaign force returns during early April after a few skirmishes with the Indians. The swamplands of Florida make it difficult to deal with the Indians.

**May 24 (Tuesday) 1836**-*In Washington, D.C.*, Colonel Archibald Henderson, commandant of the Marine Corps, reports to the War Department in compliance with an agreement reached between himself and President Andrew Jackson to lend the assistance of the available Marines to fight the Indians in the southeastern states. Colonel Henderson posts a sign on his office in Washington and departs on 10 May with the 1st Battalion of Marines. Henderson arrives in Columbus, Georgia, on 23 June, where his Marines begin supporting the army fighting the Creeks in the area.

**January 27 (Friday) 1837-In Florida**, a contingent of U.S. soldiers and Marines led by Colonel A. Henderson clash with the Indians in the vicinity of Hatchee-Lustee. The confrontation culminates with one of the few victories against these elusive Indians who thrive in the swamps. An agreement is signed during March concluding a settlement of sorts with the Seminoles. A bona fide treaty has never been signed with the Seminoles ending the war, but this agreement authorized by General Jesup, commanding general of the Army of the South, supposedly ended the hostilities.

**July 23 (Monday) 1838**-All shore Marines have departed Florida and have been dispersed or returned to Washington. A substantial number of Marines remain on board ships in Florida waters as part of the Florida Squadron, the "Mosquito Fleet."

**January 2 (Wednesday) 1839**-The USS *John Adams* sends a landing party of Marines and sailors ashore to protect Americans on the island of Muckie, Sumatra. Another contingent of Marines and sailors attached to the USS *Columbia* debark later in the day to bolster forces already there.

**April 16 (Thursday) 1840**-The USS *Otsego*, patrolling off the east coast of Florida, waits offshore as a detachment of Marines and sailors engages a band of Indians for several hours.

**July 12 (Sunday) 1840**-The U.S. Navy, performing its operation in concert with the Wilkes Expedition, experiences difficulties with a detachment that has gone ashore at Sualib Bay, Fiji Islands. Marines and sailors are dispatched expeditiously from the USS *Peacock* and *Vincennes* to take retaliatory measures against the natives who attack the expedition. Another retaliatory raid occurs on 26 July.

**December 31 (Thursday) 1840**-Marines and sailors attached to the Florida squadron are assigned to the army to assist in an operation which is to venture into the Florida Everglades to attack Indian villages. The expedition will return to their base in November 1841 without ever seeing any Indians.

**February 25 (Thursday) 1841**- The United States Exploring Expedition in the South Pacific has encountered additional problems with the natives on the islands. A contingent of approximately 70 men, including Marines and sailors, are debarked at Upolu, Samoa, where they land and torch three villages in retaliation for the natives having murdered an American sailor. On April 6 American Marines and sailors land at Drummond's Island (Gilberts), known as Tabiteuea to the natives, and attempt to rescue a missing sailor. The Americans, upon receiving opposition and no attempt by the natives to release the sailor, burn two villages. The Americans return to the ships without the sailor.

**June 20 (Wednesday) 1842**-The U.S. Navy disbands the Florida Squadron, which has been on duty during and after the Indian difficulties, which occurred at Fort Brooke, Florida, in 1835. Navy personnel, including Marines, are reassigned to Norfolk, Virginia. The Florida Indian campaign will be officially terminated on 14 August 1842 without benefit of a peace treaty.

**November 29 to December 16 1843**-The U.S. dispatches a naval squadron, commanded by Commodore Matthew Perry, to forestall difficulties with various chiefs of the African nations. Perry's attempts to negotiate solutions which will eliminate the slave trade and piracy bring himself and detachments of servicemen ashore several times in areas that are today in the region known as Liberia. On one such occasion, the natives under King Ben Crack-O, at the village of Little Bereby, Nigeria, betray the trust of the two parties. The Americans respond to the treachery of the 15th with a severe response, first, King Crack-O is shot by a Marine and then the town is burned to the ground. Within two days, Perry's men debark again and burn seven additional villages in retaliation for the betrayal.

**December 14 (Thursday) 1843**-Marines and sailors retaliate against Africans on the Ivory Coast for attacks against the merchant ships *Mary Carver* and *Edward Barley*. The expedition is led by

Matthew C. Perry. King Crack-O is slain and Little Bereby is burned.

**June 1844**-The USS *St. Louis*, commanded by Captain Tilton, while stationed near Canton, China, debarks a detachment of Marines which is to go ashore to protect the lives of Americans during a period of turmoil.

**January 12 (Friday) 1844-In California**, Captain Archibald Gillespie and his Marines construct a primitive fort at what is now downtown Los Angeles on Fort Hill. It is named the Post at Los Angeles and it is a 400 foot long breastwork. The fort's plan was initiated by 1st Lieutenant William H. H. Emory (Corps of Topographical Engineers). General Kearny had ordered the fort to be built; however, on the 23rd of April, the plans are modified and a larger fort is constructed. This is supervised by 2nd Lieutenant John W. Davidson of the 1st Dragoons. The post, designated Fort Moore on 4 July 1847, is never completed. It is named in honor of Captain Benjamin Moore of the 1st Dragoons, who was killed at the Battle of San Pasqual in San Diego County on 6 December 1846. The garrison was withdrawn in 1848 by the order of Captain William Tecumseh Sherman and the post was abandoned during 1849. A large mural now stands at the intersection of Hill Street close to Sunset Boulevard marking the location of the fort.

**May 8 (Friday) 1846-In Florida**, the USS *Mississippi*, a steamer, arrives at Pensacola from Vera Cruz. Doctor Wood, U.S. Navy, who is carrying dispatches from the squadron to the government, is a passenger. In other activity, Marines and seamen attached to the Home Squadron occupy Port Isabel, Texas. They are to defend the fort if attacked by the Mexicans.

**May 9 (Saturday) 1846-In California**, John Fremont is informed that an American officer, Lieutenant Gillespie of the U.S. Marine Corps, is following the command. Later that day, Lieutenant Gillespie delivers secret orders to Fremont. And Fremont is also informed that hostile Indians are waiting for him. Gillespie had destroyed the dispatches, but not before memorizing them. Fremont is ordered to return to California. Fremont's return to California prevents Sir George Seymour from claiming California for the British when he sailed into Monterrey.

**May 18 (Monday) 1846-In Naval Activity**, Marines and seamen attached to the USS *Cumberland* and the USS *Potomac* are landed on the south side of the Rio Grande. They become the first U.S. forces to land in Mexico.

**May 24 (Sunday) 1846-In Naval Activity**, the USS *St. Mary's* bombards Tampico, Florida. The Marines aboard the vessel participate in the bombardment.

**June 18 (Thursday) 1846-In Mexico**, a contingent of about 200 seamen and Marines, commanded by Captain Aulick and attached to the USS *Cumberland* and the USS *Potomac*, enter the Del Norte where they are to cooperate with an army detachment under Lt. Colonel Wilson in setting up a post at Barita.

**June 30 (Tuesday) 1846** -The U.S. Marine Corps stands at 1,167 men, 41 officers and 1,126 enlisted men.

**July 7 (Tuesday) 1846-In California**, American Commodore Sloat, aboard the *Savannah* and with five smaller vessels, arrives in Monterey and claims California for the United States. He orders a force of 250 Marines and sailors to go ashore at 10 A.M. to raise "Old Glory" above the Customs House. Commodore Robert Stockton replaces Commodore Sloat and continues directing the Navy's role during the conflict in California. R. M. Price reads a proclamation in English and Spanish proclaiming California as part of the United States, ending the Bear Flag War.

**July 9-29 1846-In Naval Activity**, on the 9th, sailors and Marines debark and seize the town of Yerba Buena (present day San Francisco) without incident. On the same day, Marines and seamen

aboard the USS *Portsmouth* occupy the town of Sonoma, California. Navy Lieutenant Joseph Warren Revere, a grandson of Paul Revere, hoists Old Glory above the town. Revere (later Union general) after the war lives in California and enters the Mexican army, where he is involved in organizing their artillery units. This action is followed by crewmen of the USS *Cyane* landing and capturing San Diego, California.

**July 17 (Friday) 1846-In California**, John Fremont's force arrives at the San Juan Mission, about thirty miles from Monterey. Purser Fauntleroy arrives with a company of mounted Marines. Fauntleroy is also carrying orders from Commodore Sloat. In accordance with the orders, Fremont, along with Gillespie, arrives at Monterey on the following day to report to Sloat. Commodore Sloat, while interviewing Fremont, expresses anger with Fremont when the latter is asked about his reasons for aiding the rebels. Fremont responds that he acted on his own authority. Sloat then informs Fremont that he might as well "continue to prosecute the war on his own responsibility." Sloat tells Fremont that he will turn over the "control of affairs to his junior officer (R. F. Stockton) and return to Washington."

**July 23 (Thursday) 1846-In California**, Commodore John Drake Sloat sails for Washington. He leaves Commodore Robert Field Stockton in command of the forces on the sea (sailors and Marines) as well as the army. Also, Stockton dispatches the USS *Cyane*, commanded by Commodore Samuel Francis Dupont, to take Fremont and his force to San Diego.

**July 29 (Wednesday) 1846**-Marines and seamen aboard the USS *Cyane* occupy San Diego, California.

**August 6 (Thursday) 1846**-Marines and seamen aboard the USS *Congress*, a frigate, land and occupy San Pedro, California.

**August 7 (Friday) 1846**-Commodore Robert Stockton sends a force of approximately 350 men to assault the Camp of the Messa, Gust (outside of Los Angeles), which is defended by 500 Mexicans. The Mexicans retreat without a fight. In other activity, the squadron of Commodore Conner sails to Alvarada, Mexico. Marines aboard the vessel are to participate in the expedition; however, due to the arrival of inclement weather, the squadron departs on the following day.

**August 9–10 1846**-In California, Santa Barbara and San Pedro fall to the Americans when contingents of the USS *Congress* debark and capture the two towns. The Marines who accompany Commodore Stockton are drilled in infantry tactics, particularly cavalry attacks. While in Los Angeles, the Mexicans come into Stockton's camp under a flag of truce, but the real reason is probably to get a number of American troops. Nevertheless, the Marines under Stockton march over the hill in such a way that their numbers appear to be multiplied by about ten. General Castro requests an armistice, but Stockton through the envoys emphatically say no. In the meantime, General Castro, once informed of Stockton's decision, abandons his camp and moves to Sonora.

**August 13 (Thursday) 1843**-Marines and seamen march into Los Angeles against no opposition. Commodore Robert Stockton sends the following message to the secretary of the Navy in Washington, D.C.: "The flag of the United States is flying from every commanding position in the territory of California."

**September 2 (Wednesday) 1846**- Marines aboard the USS *Cyane*, a sloop, participate in the capture of the Mexican sloop *Solita* while operating off San Blas.

**September 3 (Thursday) 1846**- Marines aboard the USS *Cyane* participate in the capture of the Mexican brigantine *Susanna* off San Blas.

**September 7 (Monday) 1846**- Marines participate in the capture of the Mexican brigantine *Malek*

*Adhel* by the USS *Warren*, a sloop, while operating off Mazatlan, Mexico.

**September 14 (Monday) 1846**-Marines aboard the USS *Cyane* participate in the capture of nine Mexican vessels off the coast of La Paz, California.

**September 23 (Wednesday) 1846-In California**, at the post at Los Angeles, Captain Archibald Gillespie and his Marines successfully repulse a Mexican attack on the small American garrison at Los Angeles at 3 A.M. Gillespie states: "We were not wholly surprised, and with 21 rifles, we beat them back." However, they are forced to surrender when overrun by more than 500 Mexicans on September 30 after a bitter siege. Captain Gillespie is permitted to leave. He is to depart from California from San Pedro. Nevertheless, during the siege, Gillespie is able to sneak through the lines and reach Captain William Mervine, U.S. Navy, at Monterey. Also, Gillespie dispatches Juan Flaco to Monterey with word for Commodore Robert Stockton. He puts nothing in writing in case the messenger is caught. Instead, Gillespie hands Flaco a pack of cigarettes. He writes on the cigarette wrappers "Believe the bearer" and then stamps them with his seal. Mexicans shoot Flaco's horse from under him, but he is unhurt. He receives another horse following his escape from the pickets on foot. Finally, on 29 September, Juan Flaco locates Commodore Stockton in San Francisco. In the meantime, Gillespie's situation is becoming worse. On the same day, the Mexicans issue another and final ultimatum to Captain Gillespie. They promise him that if he surrenders, his force will have its safety guaranteed. Gillespie does not keep the agreement. He marches out of the fort with the drums beating and the colors flying, along with two artillery pieces. Gillespie is to give his cannon to the Mexicans before boarding the ship. Before departing the post he spikes all of the guns, and those that he takes to the ship, he tosses into the bay.

**October 1846-In Mexico**, Admiral Matthew Perry leads an expedition that includes a 200-man contingent of Marines commanded by Captain Alvin Edson. They capture Frontera and San Juan Bautista, but they do not occupy either city. Also, U.S. Marines aboard the USS *Cyane* participate in the capture of twelve Mexican vessels off the coast of lower California.

**October 7–8 1846-BATTLE OF DOMINQUEZ RANCHO In California**, Captain Gillespie, along with Captain William Mervine (U.S. Navy), initiate their march on Los Angeles with about 225 Marines and sailors who are attached to the USS *Savannah*, which is at San Pedro. En route the Americans encounter about 125 Mexicans led by Jose Antonio Carrillo. The American contingent has no artillery, but they insist on capturing the gun of the Californians. They attack three separate times, but after losing 12 men, Captain Mervine calls off the attack. He retreats to San Diego under cover fire from Gillespie's men. Mervine buries his dead on an island in San Pedro Bay. It is commonly known as Deadman's Bay, but the official name is Isla de los Muertos.

**October 15 (Thursday) 1846**-U.S. Marines participate in the second expedition against Alvarado, Mexico. Commodore David Conner withdraws after shelling enemy positions.

**October 23 (Friday) 1846**- U.S. Marines attached to Commodore Perry's squadron participate in the expedition up the Tabasco River. The Marines land and capture Frontera, California.

**October 24–25 1846-In Mexico**, U.S. Marines attached to Perry's squadron land at a spot on the Tabasco River below Fort Accachappa, then advance and capture the fort. Afterward, they re-embark and the expedition continues up the river. Later that day, the Marines land at San Juan Bautista and capture that place. The town of Tabasco receives an intense bombardment from the American Gulf Squadron, commanded by Commodore Perry. Perry's troops capture or destroy all vessels in the harbor.

**October 27 1846**-U.S. Marines participate in the landing and capture of the town of San Pedro,

California.

**November 14 (Saturday) 1846**-U.S. Marines and seamen attached to Commodore David Conner's squadron capture Tampico, Mexico, without opposition. Afterward, a garrison is established.

**November 19 (Thursday) 1846**-U.S. Marines and seamen attached to Commodore Connor's squadron land and seize Panuco, Mexico.

**December 5 (Saturday) 1846**-Captain Archibald Gillespie, U.S. Marine Corps, and his detachment of 35 men join up with General Kearny, who is en route to San Pasqual, California.

**December 6 (Sunday) 1846-BATTLE OF SAN PASQUAL-In California**, General Stephen Kearny sends Edward Stokes, an Englishman, ahead to inform Commodore Robert Stockton at San Diego that he had annexed New Mexico and established a civilian government there before moving to San Diego. Stockton is quick to act. Stockton dispatches Lieutenant Archibald Gillespie, a Marine, and 37 riflemen, along with one field gun. Lieutenant Gillespie informs Kearny that a large band of rebels is encamped about five to six miles away at San Pasqual. The insurgents are led by Andres Pico, the brother of Mexican Governor Pio Pico. Kearny is intent on engaging the Californians despite a torrential downpour. He calls for a council of war, and he also plans a reconnaissance of their camp before attacking it on the following morning.

One man, Captain Benjamin Moore, is against his plan. He attempts to persuade Kearny that he is underestimating his opponents. Moore tries to persuade Kearny to launch a surprise attack against the camp before the Californians could mount their horses. Nevertheless, Kearny is confident that he is going to attack in the morning.

In the meantime, Lieutenant Gillespie suggests to Kearny that his "mountain men" could get into and out of the enemy camp without being discovered. Kearny turns down Gillespie. He is confident that the task can be handled by his aide-de-camp, Lieutenant Thomas Hammond, six dragoons and the Californian deserter Rafael Machado. Machado leads the detachment into the valley of San Pasqual. Machado moves to about one-half mile from an Indian encampment, where he is informed that Pico's men are sleeping. Nevertheless, Hammond decides that Machado is taking too long. He rides into the camp with his force. Their swords are all banging, which gets the dogs barking. The noise alerts Pico's men, about 100 in number, and shortly thereafter, Pico's men are up and prepared to mount their horses.

Hammond has inadvertently blown Kearny's surprise. Pico's men are mounted and they ride toward Hammond's force, which is on the retreat. Pico, however, is convinced that Hammond's group is only a scouting party. Pico directs his troops to round up their horses so they can abandon their camp.

Meanwhile, Hammond returns to Kearny's camp to inform him that Pico had been alerted to the presence of the Americans. Kearny then decided that the attack must be made immediately, despite a pouring rain. The weather had become inclement and extremely cold. Kearny's force had seen their ammunition drenched in the rain, but did not check it. Meanwhile, Pico is concerned only with abandoning his camp. Kearny is convinced that Pico's men are blocking the road to San Diego.

Kearny is aware of the health of his mules and intends to seize horses from the Californians. Kearny is also still convinced that the Californians would run from battle once his force encounters them. Kearny initiates his attack. His force arrives at a ridge between San Pasqual and Santa Maria. Kearny tries to tell them that their government is anticipating that they will charge "with the point of the saber." Kearny instructs his troops to encircle Pico's camp. Just afterward, his troops descended the ridge, but the force gets stuck in some low clouds as well as fog.

Kearny takes note of the conditions and orders his force to initiate a trot; however, the order is

misinterpreted by Captain Abraham R. Johnston's command. Despite being about 1,000 yards from the camp, Johnston's detachment thought he said "Charge." From that command everything goes downhill. Kearny, having heard the order to charge said: "Oh heavens! I did not mean that!" About forty men are out in front of the others, at least by one and a half miles from the main body.

Meanwhile, the Californians see the charge as well as the condition of their mounts, including near dead horses and mules. Kearny's force loses its cohesion as the advance guard under Johnston breaks away from the others. Kearny is far back in the pack. Johnston drives directly into Pico's camp; he is instantly killed. At the tail end, Lieutenant Gillespie and his volunteers are moving forward.

Captain Benjamin Moore orders his troops to charge. He pushes his horse to the limits in an attempt to cut off the Californians. Moore passes the point on his right and with dawn approaching, he can see the Californians down the road. Moore halts, then looks to his rear and realizes that he is the only American who has cleared the point. Moore remains where he is and suddenly notices that all of the Californians had not gone down the road. In front of him, there are about 70 Californians with Andres Pico. Captain Moore is in a precarious position with few options. He can either head back around the point to join his soldiers or he can charge the enemy.

Captain Moore chooses to charge the Californians with intent to kill the man in the center. The Californians watch in amazement as the American officer gallops toward Pico. The Californians do not take notice of a second American officer, Lieutenant Thomas C. Hammond, who had come around the bend.

Moore, at a full gallop, fires his pistol at Pico but misses. In an instant, Moore raises his sword and makes a second pass at Pico. Two Californians, Leandro Osuna and Dionisio Alipas, intercept Captain Moore and both stick him with their lances. Afterward, other Californians come up and dispense their lances into Captain Moore. Pico then comes over to Moore and stabs him.

Captain Benjamin Moore's body falls off his horse as the Californians retrieved their spears. Pablo Apis, an Indian, comes up to Moore and he also runs his lance into his body. Moore is lanced up to eight times. Thomas Sanchez then rides his horse over to Moore and shoots him in the head.

Lieutenant Thomas C. Hammond hears the shot and sees the Californians gathered around Captain Moore's body. Hammond rides over to try to save his brother-in-law, but the Californians kill Hammond by their lances.

Suddenly, the Californians halt and turn their horses around to charge the Americans. The Americans try to fire their weapons but their ammunition is too wet to ignite. Kearny finally arrives at the scene, but it is too late for him to take command and too late to yell any coherent command. It is a very chaotic situation. Then Kearny himself is struck in the back by a lance. The Californians had turned toward Lieutenant Gillespie's "mountain men." Gillespie is wounded a few times, including a lance that misses his heart. Despite being wounded multiple times, Gillespie, gets back to the guns which had arrived. He and a naval midshipman, James Duncan, bring them into action.

The Californians capture one of the guns. They drag it off the field, break off the engagement and ride away. The encounter is especially short, but also extremely severe. About fifty Americans had entered the fray and of those, 21 troops are killed and seventeen are wounded, including Kearny.

Captains Johnston and Moore, Lieutenant Hammond, along with two sergeants and a corporal are killed by lance thrusts. General Stephen Kearny and Captains William H. Warner (topographical engineers), Archibald Gillespie and Samuel Gibson were all seriously wounded, along with Antoine Robidoux.

**December 10 (Thursday) 1846-**Beleaguered American troops under General Stephen Kearny are

attacked by Mexicans. The Mexicans even attempt to stampede horses to break the American lines. However, the Americans stand fast and the Army of the West repulses the Mexican attack. One hundred sailors and eighty Marines arrive to reinforce the Americans.

**December 20 (Sunday) 1846- In Mexico,** Commodore Matthew C. Perry, aboard the USS *Mississippi*, along with the USS *Bonita*, *Petrel* and *Vixen*, seize Laguna in Tobasco. Marines and seamen debark and destroy the guns and ammunition in the fort and town. Commander Sands is left in command. The *Petrel* and *Vixen* remain in charge of the town. The *Bonita* moves out to hold the mouth of the Tobasco River.

**December 21 (Monday) 1846-In Naval Activity,** U.S. vessels attached to Commodore Matthew C. Perry's Squadron debark Marines and seamen at the Mexican stronghold of Carmen, and after meeting some opposition, seize and occupy the town. Perry's squadron will seize two Mexican ships off Alvarado on the 27th.

**December 29 (Tuesday) 1846-**General Stephen Kearny and Commodore Robert Stockton depart San Diego storming toward Los Angeles with a force of approximately 500. The U.S. Marines attached to the USS *Congress*, USS *Portsmouth* and the USS *Cyane* are assigned to the 1st Division under command of Captain Zeillin.

**January 8 (Friday) 1847-THE BATTLE OF RIO SAN GABRIEL** American troops—about 600 under the command of General Kearny, and the reinforcements, including Marines, under Commodore Robert Stockton—encounter a force of mounted Mexicans on the San Gabriel River. The Americans form into a square defense, with each of the four divisions facing outward from a side. After they began to cross the river, they are hit by fire from two of the Californians' artillery pieces. At about the same time, the Californian lancers charge toward the left side of the square. Inspired by the battle cry "New Orleans!" the Americans fight tenaciously, defeating the enemy overwhelmingly and doing it on the same day Andrew Jackson won the battle of New Orleans 32 years before. Once they cross the river, the Americans set up their artillery and return fire; the Mexicans retreat and pull their guns back. The Americans resume their advance.

In the meantime, the Mexican cavalry circles the American square and launches another charge against its rear face; however, Gillespie's division is posted there and they repel the charge. The Americans, after moving about one-half mile, again are hit by the Californians' guns, but the Americans return fire and their superior firepower compels the Mexicans to withdraw. The Americans resume their advance the next morning, but they yet again encounter the Californians at a spot at La Mesa, south of the city of Los Angeles. The Californians charge the Americans as they had the day before, but yet again, the American artillery duplicates its superior firepower and drives the Californians back. On 10 January, the Americans reach Los Angeles and Gillespie raises Old Glory, where he had been compelled to take it down the previous September. The Marines commanded by Captain Zeilin participate in this battle.

**January 9 (Saturday) 1847-In California,** Commodore Robert Stockton's force, which includes Marines, engages the Californians in the Battle of La Mesa at present-day Vernon. Stockton's force, including Marines, is traveling on foot, but they are able to defeat the mounted Californians. The Californians initiate a charge and try to outflank the Americans, but to no avail. They are forced to withdraw and regroup at Pasadena. The Californians are exhausted, which compels them to give Stockton's force the city of Los Angeles. The Californians sustain 15 dead and about 25 wounded. Mexican General Flores returns to Mexico after the contest.

**March 9 (Tuesday) 1847- In Mexico,** General Scott's forces hit the beach three miles southeast of

Vera Cruz near Sacrificios under cover of U.S. naval gunfire. The landing is covered by two steamers and five gunboats. Five thousand five hundred troops head for shore in 67 surf-boats from Commodore Connor's squadron once the signal gun is fired. The boats, rowed by seamen, rush to the beach, with every man anxious to be the first to hit it. Connor's lighter vessels flank the boats in an effort to protect the boats from a crossfire from the beach. However, opposition is not raised. The entire operation is executed without any mistakes. Outside of the city, there are hills of loose sand that are irregular, ranging from twenty to about 250 feet in height, and the terrain is also inundated with chaparral.

Unfortunately, the carts and 115 draught horses have not arrived from Tampico, nor have the 300 pack mules, which are needed to carry the supplies and ordnance. General William Jenkins Worth's brigade of regulars leads the descent. He is followed by U.S. volunteers under Major General Robert Patterson and Brigadier General David Twiggs' reserve. The troops trek through the sand hills with Old Glory in the lead.

From their positions, the city of Vera Cruz and the castle of San Juan de Ulua and its 128 guns are in full view. The docks are consumed with the ships of foreign nations and their decks are permeated with the crews, who are peering at the astonishing sight. The first division of troops had landed a little before dawn, with the second and third following closely behind. By 10 A.M. the entire army composed of about 10,000 troops had landed and without the loss of a single life. This is the first amphibious landing for the United States Army. The Mexican army offers no direct opposition to the landing, however, the guns of the castle are able to bombard the landing force with constant firing of round shot and thirteen-inch shells.

Scott's information from his topographical engineers exposes the dangers of the landing and they did a masterful job. Everything they had examined was correctly done. Scott's invasion of Vera Cruz is impeccable in its execution. No lives are lost and no accidents occur. Nevertheless, there are some Mexican forces that advance against the Americans, but they only impede the operation slightly. By the 12th, the entire army is able to land and occupy its positions.

However, most of the wagons, horses and the mules had not yet arrived. U.S. Marines, attached to the Army's 1st Division, participate in the struggle for Vera Cruz. Also, during the siege, the U.S. is hit with a yellow fever epidemic.

**March 22 (Monday) 1847**-Working at a furious pace, Americans have now managed to seal off the fortress city, Vera Cruz, and General Scott demands their surrender. The Mexicans refuse to surrender and General Scott immediately commences bombardment of the city of Vera Cruz, leveling Fort Santa Barbara. In other activity, Commodore Joseph Hull's squadron operating off Monterey, California, spots the British blockade runner *William*. The Marines attached to the squadron capture it.

**March 30 (Tuesday) 1847**-The USS *Portsmouth*'s contingent of Marines supported by sailors, lands at San Jose, Mexico, seizing it.

**March-April 1847-In California**, the 1st Regiment, New York Volunteers, begins to arrive in San Francisco. Lt. Colonel Henry Burton, U.S. Army, is the commanding officer. The regiment is to reinforce Navy and Marine forces in the region.

**April 1 (Thursday) 1847**-The USS *Portsmouth*, patrolling off Alvarado, debarks its contingent of Marines with sailor support troops which devastate the Mexican fortifications in the area. The crew of the *Portsmouth* cruises farther and seizes several more Mexican towns during the remainder of the month, including La Paz on the 13th.

**April 7 (Wednesday) 1847**-Marines attached to the USS *Portsmouth* capture the American ship *Admittance* off San Jose in lower California.

**April 18 (Sunday) 1847**-An American force composed of Marines and seamen, numbering about 1,500 troops, is landed in the Tuxpan region. They encounter and engage about 400 Anishinabe soldiers and defeat them.

**April 18 to June 1847**-Commodore Perry's Mosquito Fleet lands Marines and seamen in Mexico. An American force composed of Marines and seamen, numbering about 1,500 troops, is landed in the Tuxpan region. They encounter and engage about 400 Anishinabe soldiers and defeat them. The U.S. force sustains three killed and 11 wounded. The Anishinabe casualties remain unknown.

**May 9 (Sunday) 1847** -Marines attached to the USS *Independence*, a razeed, participate in the capture of the Mexican vessel *Correo* in the Pacific Ocean.

**May 15 (Saturday) 1847**-Marines attached to the USS *Mississippi* participate in the landing in which Carmen, Mexico, is captured.

**May 21 (Sunday) 1847**-The secretary of the Navy orders the formation of a Marine regiment to be commanded by Lieut tenant Colonel Watson. The regiment is to serve with General Scott.

**June 1847-SECOND BATTLE OF TUXPAN**-Commodore Perry's Mosquito Fleet again lands a force of Marines and seamen. They engage Anishinabe soldiers and once again they defeat them. Later on 30 June, yet again, the enemy attacks, but the Americans prevail.

**June 24 (Thursday) 1847**-Tabasco, a Mexican village garrisoned by U.S. Marines, is assaulted by Mexicans attempting to regain the town. The Marines repulse the assault.

**June 30 (Wednesday) 1847**-U.S. Marines skirmish with Mexican troops while participating in the expedition to Tamulcay, Mexico. In other activity, the strength of the Marine Corps is 1,182 enlisted men of which 75 are officers.

**Early August 1847**-U.S. Marines commanded by Lieutenant Colonel Watson arrive in Puebla to be reformed as a regiment in support of Scott's effort to end the war with Mexico. The Marines form a battalion and will be the portion of Scott's Army that hooks up with a contingent of army troops led by Lieutenant U.S. Grant, which assaults and seizes the San Cosme gate. They are the first troops to enter Mexico City. The army while at Puebla is subjected to discipline and drilling.

**August 5 (Thursday) 1847-In Mexico**, at Puebla, a war council is held. General Scott lays down his plan of operations. Major Generals Worth, John Quitman, and Gideon Pillow along with Brigadier Generals George Cadwalader, James Shields and David Twiggs are in attendance. In other activity, Lieutenant Colonel Samuel E. Watson and his contingent of Marines arrive at Puebla. Due to a shortage of men, the unit is reformed as a battalion.

**August 20 (Friday) 1847-THE BATTLE OF CHURUBUSCO In Mexico**, following the decisive victory at Contreras, the Americans push on to Churubusco, which is heavily fortified. The first major obstacle is the Tete du Pont (bridgehead) built along the principal causeway that crosses the Churubusco River. It is composed of two bastions and is further fortified with batteries. The second major obstacle is the convent church, which is only about 500 yards to the west of the first obstacle and slightly west of the river. The church itself stands out because it is higher than the high walls. In addition, the outside walls contain two embrasures high enough to dominate the approaches.

General Worth's division becomes the first to encounter the Mexican obstacle at Tete du Pont. Worth's division and Pillow's division advance at about 8 A.M. along the crossroad that leads from San Angel. In the meantime, Quitman's brigade (Pennsylvania volunteers), bolstered by U.S. Marines, is ordered to remain at San Augustine to protect the general depot there.

At 1 P.M. the separate divisions are prepared to attack. The division on the west is to assault the fortified church, while the division under General Worth to the south is designated to assault the Tete du Pont. Mexican General Carrera, commander of the artillery, arrives at the road from Coyoacan. He deploys the artillery pieces in a field that surrounds the hacienda at a spot near where the causeway leads to the western gate of the city.

General Perez's brigade is at Portalis, and the remainder of Santa Anna's army is all deployed around Churubusco. The division of General Worth advances along the causeway against Tete du Pont, while General Twiggs is braving heavy fire and attacking the fortified church and its convent. In the meantime, General Shields attacks the Mexican lines on the rear and right. The attack on the church and convent is carried out by the brigades of General Smith and General Riley. The Mississippi Rifles are detached and sent to support the New York and South Carolina volunteers under Shields. And the brigade under Pierce on the left is advancing to assault the Mexican rear and right. This movement on the right is to check the movement on the convent, while it is also to cut off the Mexican retreat to the capital.

The battle for the Tete du Pont is quickly decided. Two columns under Clarke and Garland advance to the front of the works, taking heavy fire from infantry along the line and from several pieces of artillery. The 5th and 8th Infantries, commanded by Lieutenant Colonel Scott and Major Waite, press into the ditch and enter the fort. The Mexicans choose not to defend. They retreat and flee toward Mexico City.

In the meantime, the force under General Twiggs begins its assault on the citadel of Churubusco about one hour before General Twiggs reaches the Tete du Pont. The citadel, composed of the church and convent, is surrounded by several pieces of artillery and a substantial number of troops under Santa Anna. The battle rages for several hours. Mexican General Rimcon is the defending officer. His guns are at the front in San Pablo. The troops of Smith and Riley pound against the defenses and take high casualties.

Two American officers, Captain Larkin Smith and Lieutenant Snelling, both of the 8th Infantry, confiscate a Mexican gun and turn it upon the Mexicans. After about three hours, the citadel is penetrated. Captain Alexander, Captain J. M. Smith and Lieutenant Shepler, along with three companies of the 3rd U.S. Infantry, barge into it. The surrender of the citadel is accepted by Captain Alexander. He hoists the standard of the 3rd Infantry on the balcony. At the guns, one company of deserters from the American 2nd Infantry, Thomas Riley, commands a company of deserters. They man three guns and fight desperately; often, they tear down the white flag hoisted by the Mexicans. Santa Anna's army is poised behind the Churubusco River. It is attacked violently by the volunteers from Carolina and New York. They continue to pound against the defenders, taking high casualties. Nevertheless, they maintain the pressure until eventually they conquer. In the meantime, General Pierce faints and has to be removed from the field. The Mexicans retreat toward Mexico City. They waste no time and climb over the dead to get there. The Mexicans are hotly pursued by Captain Kearney, who races to the gates of Mexico City before he reigns in his horse.

The Americans also captured 29 men of the Irish Battalion who are deserters from the American army. They are tried by general court-martial headed by Colonel Riley, 2nd Infantry. All of the men are convicted and sentenced to be hanged. A general order by General Scott on 8 September approves the sentence, except for three who deserted before the war began and two because they were to receive the favor of the court. Four others are also spared. Sixteen of the deserters are executed at San Angel on 10 September.

Colonel Pierce Mason Butler and Lieutenant Colonel James Polk Dickinson of the South Carolina Regiment are both mortally wounded while carrying the flag during the battle. Colonel Dickinson passes the flag to Major Adley Gladden (later Confederate general) who in turn passes it to Lt. Baker of Company A. He carries it until he is forced from illness to hand the flag to Private Patrick Leonard of Company H. Leonard carries it through the remainder of the battle. Colonel Dickerson Palmetto Regiment of South Carolina, wounded earlier at Vera Cruz, is again wounded in the leg. He seizes the colors from a color bearer and shortly thereafter is hit. Nevertheless, he refuses to have his foot amputated and on 12 September 1847 he dies at age 31. Dickerson's remains are returned to Camden, South Carolina, where he is interred at Monument Square.

**August 24 (Tuesday) 1847**-Armistice is agreed upon by General Winfield Scott and General Santa Anna in Mexico.

**Late August 1847**-An unarmed American wagon supply train enters Mexico City for supplies under the flag of truce, but it is attacked. Santa Anna sends an apology, which is accepted by General Scott.

**September 13 (Monday) 1847-THE BATTLE OF CHAPULTEPEC**-The United States artillery begins its attack on Chapultepec, which according to the Mexican records is defended by about 1,000 troops commanded by Mexican General Nicholas Bravo. An assault at 8 A.M. follows a cessation of the bombardment. Mexico City itself stands on an elevated piece of ground and it is saddled with a ditch that serves for drainage as well as military defense. Chapultepec is also where the military college is located. It must be taken before the city can be entered. General Worth is directed to keep his division in reserve, close to the foundry from where he can support General Pillow and Brigadier General Persifor Smith.

Generals Gideon Pillow and John Quitman, in position since the 11th, receive an aide-de-camp, sent from General Scott, alerting both that the attack is to be launched. With the batteries firing at the castle, both columns advance. Pillow maneuvers to the west side of the city, but his troops are compelled to move on open ground. Mexican sharpshooters are in place but are quickly taken out. At about the same time, General Pillow gets a serious wound to the ankle. Command of Pillow's division reverts to General George Cadwalader due to the absence of General Franklin Pierce, who was wounded at Contreras on (August 19).

The slope which holds the college has to be seized before the castle can be taken. General Pillow's brigade attacks from the west, while Quitman's brigade, which includes the 4th Division and U.S. Marines, comes in from the southeast. Quitman's unit encounters trouble when it is halted by a brigade that is entrenched at the intersection with the road that enters the city from the east. Quitman's brigade attacks the hill from the south with about 120 Marines and soldiers. Heavy fighting ensues. Marine Captain George Terrett leads about 36 Marines who pursue the Mexicans while they retreat to the city. The Marines speed up the chase as they approach the San Cosme Gate causeway under an extremely heavy fire. The Marines are joined in pursuit by Lieutenant Ulysses S. Grant, who is leading about 20 infantrymen. Together, the two detachments move toward the city's San Cosme Gate.

Lieutenant John Simms, USMC, and Lieutenant Charles Henderson (son of the commandant) assault the gate, but it is too strongly defended. Instead, Lieutenant Simms and Lieutenant Jabez Rich, along with seven other Marines, attack the gate from the left side. Henderson, who is wounded in his leg, attack it from the front. The gate is seized before dark by both parties at a cost of six casualties.

In the meantime, the other part of the storming party continues to ascend the steep hill. Mexican riflemen and cannon are only part of the problem. The slope is full of rocks, chasms and mines.

However, the Americans ascend so quickly that the Mexicans are driven from their positions. The Mexicans have no time to light even a solitary mine. To do so would have also blown up their fellow soldiers. The Americans gain the ditch as well as the walls. The Americans bring up ladders and scale the walls. Those who are the first to climb are the first to fall. Nevertheless, the troops continue to ascend until finally they gain the castle of Chapultepec.

After the San Cosme Gate is taken, Quitman's division, supported by Marines, maneuvers toward the Belen causeway while coming under heavy fire. The Mexicans defend the gate and halt the advance. The gate falls by afternoon. By about noon the next day, General Quitman and General Worth are readying an attack against the entrances to Monterrey; however, General Santa Anna had retreated. General Quitman's troops speed through the streets and into the Grand Plaza. They take the Mexican National Plaza, where the Halls of Montezuma had earlier stood. When General Scott comes into the city of Monterey, he discovers that the Marines are posted to guard the palace.

American troops, including United States Marines, capture the castle by 9:30 A.M. ("From the Halls of Montezuma," words in the Marine Corps hymn, refer to this Battle of Chapultepec.) About 90 percent of the Marine officers and non-commissioned officers who participate in the Battle of Monterrey are killed. General Quitman's staff is devastated. He loses every member of his staff during the fighting at the Belen Gate.

**September 30 (Thursday) 1847**-Marines attached to the USS *Dale*, a sloop, participate in the capture of the Mexican schooner *Magdalena* in the river at Muleje, Mexico.

**October 1 (Friday) 1847**-Marines attached to the USS *Dale* land at Mulege, Mexico, and after a skirmish, they drive the Mexicans from the town.

**October 5 (Tuesday) 1847**-The USS *Dale* stands offshore at Loreto, California, during one of its tours in search of enemy merchant vessels and privateers. On this day, a contingent of sailors and Marines aboard three U.S. cutters attack Loreto.

**October 10 (Sunday) 1847**-Marines attached to the USS *Portsmouth* participates in the capture of the brigantine *Argo* out of Chile in the Gulf of Mexico.

**October 20 1847**- Marines attached to the USS *Portsmouth* and the USS *Congress* participate in the capture of Graymas, California.

**November 1 (Monday) 1847**- Marines participate in the expedition to Todos Santos. The force returns to San Jose on the 7th and it encounters no opposition.

**November 7 (Sunday) 1847**-Marines receive orders to garrison San Jose, California.

**November 11 (Thursday) 1847**-Marines attached to the USS *Cyane*, a sloop, USS *Congress*, a frigate, and the USS *Independence*, a razee, are landed at Mazatan, Mexico. They capture the town.

**November 17 (Wednesday) 1847**-Marines supported by seamen attached to the USS *Dale*, a sloop, repel an attack against Guaymas, Mexico.

**November 19–21 1847**-U.S. Marines attached to several ships, including the USS *Congress*, are guarding San Jose, California, when they are suddenly assaulted by a force of Mexicans. The Marines sustain the attacks until the 21st without losing the ground. The town is fortified, and combined American troops, although besieged until February 15, 1848, and are compelled to fight off several more attempts by the Mexicans. The Americans retain the city.

**January 22 (Saturday) 1848**- Marines, part of the garrison at San Jose, California, are besieged by Mexican forces. The siege lasts until 15 February and all attacks are repelled.

**January 30 (Sunday) 1848**- Marines attached to the USS *Dale* are landed at Cochon, Mexico. The town is captured.

**February 13 to March 15 1848**-U.S. Marines attached to the USS *Cyane* are debarked in the vicinity of Bocachicacampa, Mexico, where they initiate a skirmish with the defenders and quickly seize the town. The Marines and sailors embark on the *Cyane* and in two days will debark again to fight their way through Mexican lines to successfully lift the siege of San Jose, California. There are a couple of additional skirmishes between the Americans and Mexicans but by August 1848, all American troops are gone from Mexico.

**February 15 (Tuesday) 1848**-A contingent of Marines and seamen attached to the USS *Cyane* are landed. They fight their way through the Mexican forces to lift the siege of San Jose. In other activity, Marines and seamen attached to the USS *Dale* are landed at Cochon, Mexico. The town is again captured. It was seized on 30 January 1848.

**April 9 (Sunday) 1848**-Marines and seamen attached to the sloop USS *Dale* land at Guaymas, Mexico. They capture the town and on their return to the ship, they engage the enemy.

**September 20 -(Saturday) 1856** The sloop USS *St. Mary's* and the razez USS *Independence*, while operating in Central America off Panama, order contingents of Marines and sailors ashore to protect American citizens and their possessions.

**October 23 (Thursday) 1856**-During a religious war in China, American citizens become endangered in Canton. A contingent of Marines and sailors from the USS *Portsmouth* moves ashore to guard the Americans. Later, reinforcements from the *San Jacinto* and *Levant* arrive to bolster the force. The trouble begins to escalate on November 16.

**January 6th (Monday) 1859** -Brigadier General Archibald Henderson, Commandant of the Marine Corps, dies while in office, having served under ten Presidents. Henderson is still remembered as the "Grand Old Man of the Corps."

**June 16 Wednesday 1858**-*In Marine Corps activity*, a contingent of twenty Marines is rushed to the jail in Washington, D.C., to quell a riot.

**October 16–18 1859-JOHN BROWN'S RAID** The abolitionist John Brown leads his 22 man "Army of Liberation" on a raid against Harpers Ferry, Virginia, capturing the federal arsenal. A contingent of United States Marines is dispatched and Brown and the remaining survivors are captured. The Marines are led by Colonel Robert E. Lee, U.S. Army. Brown is convicted of treason and conspiracy. Subsequently, he is sentenced to death by hanging. Colonel Lewis Washington, the great-grand-nephew of George Washington, is among the hostages taken by Brown. During the Marine assault on the arsenal, Pvt. Luke Quinn is killed crashing through the door. It could be said that Quinn is the first serviceman to die in the Civil War.

**April 28 (Saturday) 1860**-The USS *Mohawk* (formerly the *Caledonia* under charter of the U.S. Navy), while operating off the east coast and in the West Indies against pirates and slave runners, encounters the *Wildflower*, a slave runner. The vessel is seized in the Old Bahama Canal and taken to Key West, Florida. More than 500 slaves are cramped in the vessel. At Key West, the slaves, for their protection and safety, are placed under the watch of a contingent of Marines attached to the *Mohawk*. Subsequently, the slaves are transported back to their native country.

**January 5 1861 (Saturday)**-*In New York*, at 1700, the merchant steamer *Star of the West*, chartered by the government, departs New York and pauses at Staten Island to pick up the reinforcements. Initially army recruits are scheduled for the mission, but instead, Marines move aboard. The vessel carries a contingent of 250 enlisted men and four officers, with Lt. Charles R. Woods, 9th U.S. Infantry, in command. The mission, undertaken with secrecy, had been exposed prior to the ship's departure. The vessel's movement was published in a New York newspaper during the afternoon.

Several days later, on 8 January, another newspaper, the *Constitution*, which operated in Washington, D.C., also publicized the ship's movements. Taking advantage of the notification in the press, the secretary of the interior, Jacob Thompson, on this day sends a telegraph to Charleston to alert the rebels. Senator Louis Tresevant Wigfall, another sympathizer, also telegraphed word of the ship's movements to the Confederates in Charleston. Meanwhile, Lt. Colonel Lorenzo Thomas, the assistant adjutant general (General Winfield Scott's staff ) sends a letter to Major Robert Anderson at Fort Sumter to advise him of the plans, but the message is not treated as a priority. In other activity, a detachment of forty Marines, commanded by Captain Algernon S. Taylor, moves from the Washington Navy Yard to Fort Washington in Maryland to bolster its defense.

**January 9 (Wednesday) 1861-In Marine Corps activity**, First Lieutenant Andrew J. Hays, leading a detachment of thirty Marines, departs the Washington Navy Yard en route to Fort McHenry, in Baltimore to help defend it.

**January 10 (Thursday) 1861**-Florida secedes from the Union by a vote of 62 to 7; it is the third state to break away. Also, the federal navy yard at Pensacola surrenders to southern forces led by an insurgent naval officer, Captain Randolph, working in collusion with other officers at Pensacola who are sympathetic to the Confederate cause. Thirty-eight Marines commanded by Captain Josiah Watson are among the men who surrender. Lt. Adam J. Slemmer, an artillery officer attached to Fort McRee, and other troops, including soldiers from Fort Barrancas and a contingent of sailors and Marines attached to the USS *Wyandotte*, move to Fort Pickens to bolster it and defend it until reinforcements can arrive. At this time, Florida is not considered a primary concern for either the North or the South, as it is less populated and contains little industry. Nevertheless, within a short while, it rises to a position of great importance to both sides, especially the South, subsequent to the Union victory at Vicksburg (1863). Florida raises about 15,000 troops for the South; however, the greatest number of these serve in other parts of the country, primarily in the Army of Tennessee and the Army of Northern Virginia.

**January 11 (Friday) 1861-In Louisiana**, state militia seizes the Marine Corps hospital in New Orleans.

**January 14 (Monday) 1861-In Washington, D.C.** Marines begin preparations for defending the navy yard, including setting up artillery crews.

**January 22 (Tuesday) In Marine activity**, the Marine Guard stationed at the Brooklyn Navy Yard in New York takes up arms in the event southern sympathizers move against the facility.

**April 12 (Friday) 1861- In Florida**, the U.S. Navy lands troops, including more than 100 Marines commanded by 2nd Lieutenant John C. Cash, at Fort Pickens on Santa Rosa Island, bolstering its defenders and preventing the fort from being overtaken by the Confederacy. Fort Pickens will be a very important Gulf Coast fortification, giving the Union a base in the South. The vessels transporting the reinforcements and their artillery are the USS *Sabine* (Captain Adams); the frigate USS *Brooklyn* (Captain Walker), a steam sloop of war; the sloop of war *St. Louis*, carrying the commander of the operation, Commander Charles H. Poor; the gunboats *Crusader* and *Wyandotte*; and two supply vessels.

Within a few days, more reinforcements arrive aboard the steam transports *Atlantic* and *Illinois*, which are escorted by the *Powhatan*, bringing the defending force to about 900 troops. Confusion complicates the mission.

**April 15 (Monday) 1861-In Marine Corps activity**, most of the United States Marines will serve aboard ships for the duration. However, some Marines choose to leave the corps and head south to

serve with the Confederacy.

**April 19 (Friday) 1861-In Naval Activity**, President Abraham Lincoln orders a blockade of Confederate ports located in Alabama, Florida, Georgia, Louisiana, Mississippi and Texas. It will take some time to accomplish the mission. Lincoln will appoint Commodore Silas Horton Stringham commander of the Atlantic Naval Squadron, which will operate between Key West, Florida, to the south and stretch north to Cape Charles, Virginia, at the mouth of the Chesapeake Bay. Stringham's flagship will be the USS *Minnesota*, a forty-gun steam frigate and an accompanying fleet composed of 25 vessels with a complement of about 3,500 sailors and Marines to handle the operation designed to keep the Southern ports paralyzed. Nevertheless, the United States Navy is suffering from the same ailment as the United States Army. It is called southern sympathy and sailors are beginning to move to fight for the Confederacy. The Marines are no exception; their ranks also thin quickly.

**April 20 (Saturday) 1861-In Washington, D.C.**, a contingent of fifty Marines, commanded by Captain Hiram Paulding, leaves the Washington Navy Yard aboard the USS *Pawnee* for Norfolk, Virginia, to bolster the defenses at the Gosport Navy Yard. The *Pawnee* secures the USS *Cumberland* and tows it to a safe port. The *Cumberland* had originally been commissioned during November 1843. During 1855–1856, it was transformed into a slop of war and afterward was assigned as the flagship of the Africa Squadron (1857–1859) and the Home Squadron (1860). Meanwhile, the *Pawnee* patrols the Potomac River as part of the defensive measures taken to protect the capital.

**June 1861**- William Whedbee Kirkland (West Point, attendance 1852) had resigned from the military academy and during 1855 switched uniforms and enlisted in the U.S. Marine Corps, serving there until 1860. Now, he again switches uniforms and joins the Confederacy as colonel (later brigadier general) of the 21st North Carolina Infantry.

**June 6 (Thursday) 1861-In Naval–Marine Corps activity**, a detachment of sailors and U.S. Marines from the sloop USS *Pawnee* land at White House, Virginia, to protect a survey team.

**June 29 (Sunday) 1861-In Marine Corps activity**, at this time, the United States Marine Corps stands at 2,386, including 48 officers and 2,338 enlisted men.

**June 30 (Sunday) 1861-In Marine Corps activity**, at this time, the United States Marine Corps stands at 2,386, including 48 officers and 2,338 enlisted men.

**July 21 (Sunday) 1861**-The Battle of Bull Run-A contingent of 365 Marines, including twelve officers, commanded by Major John C. Reynolds, participates as part of the Union Army's 1st Brigade.

**July 25 (Thursday) 1861-In Washington, D.C.**, Congress authorizes an expansion of the United States Marine Corps, increasing it to 93 officers and 3,074 enlisted men.

**August 19 (Monday) 1861-In Naval–Marine Corps activity**, the Union's Potomac Flotilla, searching for Confederate fortifications in Maryland, receives a detachment of 200 Marines from the Navy yard at Washington, D.C., to assist in its operation.

**August 27 (Tuesday) 1861-(In North Carolina**, Flag Officer Silas Stringham's fleet arrives in the vicinity of Fort Hatteras. Union troops (including Marines) under the command of General Benjamin Franklin Butler, prepare to attack the Confederate positions on the following day. Butler, who had volunteered to lead the assault, is succeeded at Fortress Monroe by General John E. Wool. The units that participate in the action are the 9th New York (220 men), commanded by Colonel Rush C. Hawkins; the 20th New York (500 men), commanded by Colonel Max Weber; about 100 troops of the Union Coast Guard, commanded by Captain Nixon; and nearly 60 troops of the 2nd U.S. Artillery, commanded by Lt. Frank Larned. A contingent of U.S. Marines also participates.

**August 28–29 1861-ATTACK AGAINST FORTS HATTERAS AND CLARK**-Union warships had arrived off the coast in the vicinity of Fort Hatteras and Fort Clark, North Carolina, on the 27th. On the 28th at 0500, Flag Officer Louis M. Goldsborough (successor to Flag Officer Silas Stringham), aboard the USS *Minnesota*, orders the ships to open fire and take on the Confederate shore batteries. The powerful show of naval fire continues the bombardment without pause until 0900. The steam frigates *Minnesota* and *Wabash*, supported by the sloops *Cumberland* and *Susquehanna*, commence firing. Marines from each of the ships' respective detachments join with the army force for the assault. Many of the troopers under General Benjamin Butler get stranded on a sandbar while landing, but Confederate Forts Hatteras and Clark haul down their colors. Fort Clark is abandoned and a contingent of Coast Guardsmen and other troops under Colonel Weber secure it.

**September 3 (Tuesday) 1861-In Washington, D.C.**, a detachment of U.S. Marines stationed at the U.S. Navy Yard is dispatched to reinforce the Union-held garrison at Fort Ellsworth in Alexandria, Virginia. Skirmishing also develops at Mason's Island, Maryland.

**September 14 (Saturday) 1861-In Naval Activity**, the USS *Colorado*, commanded by Lt. Russell, U.S. Navy, engages and destroys the Confederate privateer *Judah* while attacking a shipyard in Pensacola, Florida. A contingent of sailors and Marines under the command of Captain Edward M. Reynolds rows into the harbor, boards the privateer and sets it afire.

**November 2 (Saturday) 1861-In Naval Activity**, a large naval force commanded by Commodore Samuel Du Pont, while en route to seize Forts Beauregard and Walker at Hilton Head, sails into a tremendous storm, so treacherous that from the flagship, only one of the more than seventy vessels is visible. The fleet, in addition to its sailors and Marines, is also transporting the ground forces, composed of three brigades under General Thomas West Sherman. One of the vessels, the steamer *Governor*, is lost; members of the crew, including a Marine battalion of 300 men commanded by Major John C. Reynolds, is safely transferred to the frigate USS *Sabine*, commanded by Captain Ringgold; however, one corporal and six enlisted Marines are lost. Three other transports—the *Peerless*, which collides with the *Star of the South* while the latter is attempting to rescue it, and the *Osceola* and the *Union*—are driven to shore and into the hands of Confederate forces. All aboard are seized and imprisoned. Two gunboats, both on the brink of disaster, manage to lighten their loads by heaving several of their guns overboard to successfully avoid destruction and continue the mission. Two ferry boats and one steamer sustain enough damage to force them to abort the mission and return to Fortress Monroe, Virginia.

**March 26 (Wednesday) 1862-In Naval and Marine Corps activity**, the USS *Mercedita* and *Sagamore* sail to attack Confederate positions and vessels at Apalachicola in West Florida. Marines and sailors aboard both vessels participate in the action and occupy the town on April 3.

**April 25 (Wednesday) 1862-In North Carolina**, the siege of Fort Macon terminates. U.S. Marine units aboard the steamers USS *Daylight*, *State of Georgia*, and *Chippewa* and the bark *Gemsbok* participate in the attack. The USS *Ellis* also participates. Following about one and one-half hours of combat, the rough seas force the gunboats to back off. At about 1600, a white flag is raised over Fort Macon and an offer to surrender proposed by the Union is accepted. Union troops under General Burnside occupy Fort Macon on the following day.

**May 15 (Thursday) 1862-THE BATTLE OF DREWRY'S BLUFF** Confederate batteries at Fort Darling, one of the formidable defensive positions charged with protecting the Confederate capital at Richmond, comes under attack by a Union naval squadron composed of the gunboats *Aroostook*, *Galena* (ironclad), *Monitor* (Lt. William N. Jerrers), *Naugatuck* and the *Port Royal*. The naval force

is commanded by Lt. Commander Watson Smith. Fort Darling, also headquarters for the Confederate Naval Academy, is prepared to meet the threat. Confederate ground troops are deployed along the banks of the James River, and high up on the bluff, the Confederates had recently installed three gargantuan seacoast guns, one 10-inch Columbiad and two 8-inch Columbiads. The position is bolstered by six other heavy guns that are deployed slightly upriver. Other impediments have also been used to prevent easy passage for Union vessels. Confederate Commander Ebenezer Farrant, charged with overseeing the construction project, arranges for a number of vessels, including the CSS *Jamestown (Thomas Jefferson)* to be intentionally sunk to create some concealed obstacles immediately under the bluff.

There had been some fear in Richmond, following the recent destruction of the CSS *Virginia*, that the capital would be vulnerable to an attack by water. Separately, the Union had come to the identical conclusion. Commander Rogers' fleet gets an early start and by about 0700, the Union vessels approach Fort Darling, which towers above the river. At 0715, the ironclad *Galena* commences fire and shortly thereafter, the Rebel guns respond, raking the *Galena* with a blanket of shot and shell that pounds the *Galena* and begins to expose its vulnerability due to its thinly coated armor. The other guns along the river also begin their barrages, creating thunderous bombardment that delivers incessant waves of fire that inflicts damage to the fleet. The gunboats return relentless fire, but from less than advantageous positions, and the fire power from the fleets is unable to catapult the shells high enough to reduce the obstacles on the bluff about ninety feet above the river.

Meanwhile, the *Monitor* has problems adapting to the shallow water and its guns are not able to perform at one hundred percent. The Confederates, however, have not created a perfect storm and they too experience problems. At the instant the 10-inch Columbiad fires its first round, the recoil is so powerful that it literally disables the carriage, rendering the gun out of action for the greater part of the contest.

Another of the guns deployed outside of Fort Darling becomes immobilized when its casemate collapses. Nevertheless, neither side is willing to acquiesce as the tenacious artillery exchange continues for more than four grueling hours. At that time, 1130, Commander Rogers, aware that the fleet's supply of ammunition is nearly expended, orders the gunboats to retire. The Confederates, although not able to destroy the squadron, do deter the Union from being anxious to again move up the James River to attack Richmond. The fort remains unscathed until 1864.

Subsequent to the clash, the area remains tranquil. The Confederates however, continue to fortify the bluff and surrounding area to increase the defenses to defend Richmond from attack, either by land or sea. Captain Sydney Smith Lee is placed in command of the fort and under his leadership, the defenses are bolstered and expanded. Within the fort itself, the troops also construct barracks, officers' quarters and a chapel. The post also contains the Confederate Naval Academy and includes the Confederate Marine Corps Camp of Instruction. The formidable U.S. fleet had withstood the layers of fire without sustaining the loss of any vessels; however, the Confederate fire had inflicted severe damage, particularly to the *Galena*, which had been hit repeatedly by artillery rounds and by shots from the ground troops posted along the river. The *Galena* sustains 12 men killed and 15 wounded. Nevertheless, the battered warship remains in action and maintains its patrols along the James River, engaging enemy shore batteries and at times giving support to General McClellan's campaign.

In September 1862, the *Galena* shifts from its positions on the James and moves to Hampton Roads, from where it operates until May 1863. Total Union casualties amount to at least 14 killed and 13

wounded. The Confederates sustain seven killed and eight wounded. Corporal John F. Mackie, serving on the USS *Galena*, becomes the first U.S. Marine to receive the Medal of Honor due to his actions above and beyond the call of duty during the engagement.

**May 25 (Sunday) 1862-In Marine Corps activity**, a contingent of Marines commanded by Captain Charles G. McCawley reoccupies the Navy yard at Gosport, Norfolk.

**June 24 (Tuesday) 1862-In South Carolina**, twenty Marine Sharpshooters attached to the steamers USS *James Adger*, *Albatross*, and *Keystone State* transfer to gunboats, the *Andrew* and *Hall*, and move up the Santee and Wahamau Rivers to raid Confederate positions.

**June 28 (Saturday) 1862-In Naval Activity**, at 0300, Admiral David Farragut's fleet, including the schooner *Arletta*, initiates a bombardment of Vicksburg. The steamers USS *Brooklyn*, *Hartford* and *Richmond* and the gunboats USS *Sciota*, *Pinola*, *Wissahickon*, *Iroquois*, *Winona*, *Oneida* and *Kennebec* again bombard the Confederate batteries as they attempt to run past the obstacles to reach Vicksburg. However, one of the vessels, the USS *Clifton*, attached to the Mortar Squadron, sustains a hit in the boiler, which explodes and kills seven crew members. Nevertheless, it survives and later participates in the capture of Galveston (October 1862). During this action at Vicksburg, U.S. Marines participate, manning secondary guns. Farragut has been lambasting Vicksburg since the 26th, but the city still refuses to capitulate. Farragut concludes that it will be necessary to create a canal that will run across the narrow neck of the peninsula that lies opposite Vicksburg through which the Union can move transports to reach the opposite end of the Mississippi. In addition, he plans on linking his force with that of Commodore Charles H. Davis. The Confederate batteries are silenced and all but three of Farragut's vessels pass safely. Once beyond the batteries, Farragut encounters Lt. Colonel Alfred Ellet (who succeeded his brother, Charles R. Ellet, who recently was killed at Memphis) of the ram fleet, and shortly thereafter, he confers with Commodore Davis. Farragut and Davis decide to launch a reconnaissance expedition along the Yazoo River, while awaiting reinforcements that were recently requested from General Halleck for the main assault to seize Vicksburg. The side-wheel steamer CSS *Capitol* burns at Liverpool, Mississippi. During the following month, the Confederates sink the hull on the Yazoo River as an obstacle to impede Union vessels. The ship's machinery is transported to Selma, Alabama.

**June 30 (Monday) 1862-**At this time, the U.S. Marine Corps' active duty strength stands at 2,406; it includes 51 officers and 2,355 enlisted men.

**June 17 (Thursday) 1862-In Naval Activity**, 28 Marines board the steamer USS *Grey Cloud*, which sails to join the USS *New London*; both vessels embark on a mission to seek and destroy Confederate vessels suspected of transporting cotton in the vicinity of Pascagoula, Mississippi.

**August 8 (Friday) 1862-In Naval Activity**, the USS *Wabash* and *New Ironsides* move to Morris Island, South Carolina. Once there, a contingent of troops, including ninety Marines, commanded by 1st Lieutenant H.B. Lowry, go ashore and establish positions for a series of guns. The *New Ironsides* had only recently (August 1862) been commissioned. It had been built during the previous year as an armored warship. In January 1863, it joins the South Atlantic Blockading Squadron and remains on duty there for about one year in support of the blockade of Charleston.

**August 16 (Saturday) 1862-In Naval Activity**, Union gunboats and accompanying U.S. Marines bombard Confederate positions through the 18th at Corpus Christi, Texas. The Union force is commanded by Lieutenant J. W. Kittredge, U.S. Navy, and the Confederates are led by Major Alfred M. Hobby. The Union reports no casualties. The Confederates sustain one killed.

**August 22 (Friday) 1862-(In New York)**, a group of recruits in the Empire Brigade, commanded by

General Spinola, start a riot; Captain David M. Cohen, leading a detachment of Marines, departs the Brooklyn Navy Yard and quickly terminates the trouble.

**August 25 (Monday) In Florida**, U.S. Marines prepare to reoccupy the navy yard at Pensacola.

**September 25 (Thursday) 1862-In Florida**, the Confederate-held navy yard at Pensacola is recaptured by U.S. Marines.

**November 4 (Tuesday) 1862-In Illinois**, a contingent of U.S. Marines, composed of seventy-five enlisted men and three officers, occupies and garrisons the new naval station at Cairo.

**December 5 (Friday) 1862-In Georgia**, the steamers USS *Ottawa*, *Seneca* and *Pembina* move to Wassah Island, Georgia, where a contingent of troops, including U.S. Marines, debark and occupy an abandoned Confederate fort.

**December 20 (Saturday) 1862-In Louisiana**, a contingent of U.S. Marines, commanded by Captain McLane Tilton, moves into and garrisons Pilot Town.

**December 27 (Saturday) 1862-In California**, the USS *Independence* arrives at Mare Island. A company of U.S. Marines, commanded by Major Addison Garland, debarks and establishes quarters there to garrison the base.

**January 1 (Thursday) 1863-In South Carolina** at Charleston, a contingent of thirty Marines, attached to the South Atlantic Squadron, land at Murrells Inlet and raid a Confederate schooner, sinking it.

**January 2 (Friday) 1862-In Union Naval officer activity**, Commander Charles H. Poor is promoted to the rank of commodore. He assumes command of the USS *Saranac*, a sloop of war operating as part of the Pacific Squadron. During his tour aboard the *Saranac* (1864–1865), in one incident, Commodore Poor uses the power of his sailors and U.S. Marines to compel the authorities at Rio La Hache, Venezuela, to apologize for insulting the U.S. flag by having them hoist Old Glory and salute it. His actions are afterward approved by the Navy Department.

**January 4 (Sunday) 1862-In Arkansas**, the Union initiates an offensive to seize Fort Hindman (Arkansas Post) on the 4th and culminates the operation on the 11th. The fleet under Admiral David D. Porter is transporting troops from General William T. Sherman and a contingent of U.S. Marines.

**January 8 (Thursday) In Arkansas**, Union gunboats bombard Confederate Fort Hindman on the Arkansas River, prior to the assault on the 11th by soldiers and U.S. Marines. Grant at first opposes the attack, to be launched by General John A. McClernand, until he realizes what mischief 5,000 to 6,000 defenders could do behind Union lines. The Union initiates a scouting operation. The detachment departs Elk Horn for Berryville and concludes the mission on the 10th.

**January 10 (Saturday) 1863-In Mexico** at Yukatan on Majores Island, the U.S. Marine guard attached to the USS *Wachusett*, composed of eighteen men, assumes control of the CSS *Virginia*, a captured ironclad steamer; the Marines sail the vessel to Key West, Florida, where it is to be destroyed.

**January 31 (Saturday) 1863-In South Carolina**, off Charleston during the early morning hours, the Confederate vessels *Palmetto State* and *Chicora*, both ironclads under the command of Flag Officer Ingraham, move out of Charleston Harbor and initiate an attack against the Southeast Blockading Squadron, composed of the vessels *Augusta*, *Keystone State*, *Housatonic*, *Memphis*, *Mercedita*, *Quaker City*, *Powhatan* and the *Canandaigua*. The last two vessels had departed for Port Royal to replenish their coal supplies. U.S. Marines stationed at secondary guns aboard the vessels participate in the wild battle that damages three of the Union vessels, the *Keystone State*, the *Mercedita* and the *Quaker City*. The *Mercedita* sustains casualties, primarily from explosions in the

boiler room. Four men succumb and several others are injured. The *Mercedita* actually surrenders; however, the two Confederate ironclads move against the other vessels, permitting the damaged *Mercedita* to escape. It is sent to get repairs and does not re-enter service until the following April, when it is assigned to duty in the West Indies and in the Gulf of Mexico until decommissioned during October 1865. The *Quaker City*, having sustained savage damage, had been disabled and was close to surrendering, but other Union vessels rush to its aid, and the Confederate ships choose to return to Charleston, thereby saving the *Quaker City* from falling into Confederate hands.

**March 19 (Thursday) 1863-In Mississippi**, a Union fleet, including the USS *Hartford*, bombards Grand Gulf. U.S. Marines aboard the *Hartford* participate.

**May 23 (Saturday) 1863-In Mississippi**, General Grant concentrates on building up his forces and defenses to facilitate the operation to secure Vicksburg. Grant orders the construction of earthworks and forts, and he also directs the artillery and the fleet to maintain bombardments to camouflage the continuing effort to dig tunnels that lead to the Confederate lines. A Union contingent of Marines, cavalry and infantry engages and defeats Confederates at Beaver Dam Lake. Casualty figures are unavailable.

**June 30 (Tuesday) 1863-In Union activity**, United States Marine Corps active duty strength stands at 3,000, including 2,931 enlisted men and 61 officers.

**July 6 (Monday) 1863-In South Carolina**, a Union naval squadron debarks a battalion of U.S. Marines to reinforce army troops on Morris Island in an attack against Fort Wagner; however, the Confederates repel the assault, preventing the Union from closing on Charleston.

**July 13 (Monday) 1863-In New York**, riots break out in New York City because of federal enrollment legislation (the draft law of March 3). Mobs begin ravaging the city. A colored orphan asylum is burned and in the rioting, colored people are hanged in the streets. The rioters do not stop short of looting. Federal troops, including Marines, are rushed in to quell the disturbance of the mob, which primarily consists of Irish workingmen. The riots are quieted by the 15th.

**July 16 (Thursday) 1863-In Naval Activity**, Japanese shore batteries commence a bombardment of the USS *Wyoming* while it is cruising in the Straits of Shimonoseki. Following the shelling, the Prince of Magato orders his ships to attack the U.S. warship; however, the crew, including its Marine detachment, returns fire, discouraging the Japanese from prolonging the encounter.

**August 10 (Monday) 1863-In South Carolina**, a battalion of U.S. Marines, commanded by Major Jacob Zeilin, arrives to reinforce other Marines attached to the South Atlantic Squadron on Morris Island. The combined force provides artillery support for the forces ashore.

**September 8–9 1863-In South Carolina**, U.S. Marines and sailors attack Confederate-held Fort Sumter. At 2200, under cover of darkness, a contingent of about 400 troops launches the attack. The force, commanded by Lt. Commander T.H. Stevens, is composed of five contingents commanded by Lt. Commander E.P. Williams (USS *Patapsco*), and Lieutenants Higginson, Preston, and Remey and Ensign Craven. The Marine contingent is commanded by Captain McCawley. The Union plans to surprise the Rebels at Sumter; however, the Confederates are expecting the visit. Once the units reach the ruins of the fort, Major Elliott gives the order to open fire. The Union troops are inundated with a hurricane of fire that compels them to head for their boats. The Rebels bombard the vessels, causing more complications. Nearly half of the attacking force is captured. The USS *Lodona* loses one boat and its crew is captured. Following this action, the *Lodona* sails north to Philadelphia for repairs and remains there until 11 November.

**December 28 1863 (Monday)- In South Carolina**, a contingent of Marines and sailors attached to

the steamer USS *Marblehead* debark at Stono to attack and seize a Confederate supply base.

**January 1 (Friday) 1864-In South Carolina**, a Union contingent of Marines and sailors raid Murrells Inlet. The unit succeeds in sinking a Confederate schooner.

**February 20 (Saturday) 1864-In Illinois**, a contingent of U.S. Marines, commanded by 1st Lieutenant Richard S. Collum, arrives at Mound City to protect the ammunition depot there.

**May 12 (1864-In Union activity)**, Colonel John Harris, the sixth commandant of the United States Marine Corps, succumbs while in office. He will be succeeded by Major Zeilin the following month.

**June 9 (Thursday) 1864-In Union general officer activity**, Major Jacob W. Zeilin is appointed seventh commandant of the United States Marine Corps, succeeding Colonel John Harris, who died the previous month.

**June 30 (Thursday) 1864- In Washington, D.C.**, it is recorded that the active duty strength of the U.S. Marine Corps stands at sixty-four officers and 3,075 enlisted men, totaling 3,139.

**July 3 (Sunday) 1864-In South Carolina**, a contingent of soldiers and Marines (accompanied by two light howitzers) skirmish with a Confederate force at the Dawho River in White Point.

**July 11 (Monday) 1864-In Maryland**, a contingent of U.S. Marines, commanded by 1st Lieutenant James Forney, and sailors, each based at the Naval Yard in Philadelphia, reopen the Washington-Baltimore Railroad at Havre de Grace, about thirty miles north of Baltimore.

**July 12 (Tuesday) 1864-In Washington, D.C.**, the Confederates under General Jubal Early press Fort Stevens with running skirmishes throughout the day. Early's force had previously penetrated Washington D.C., but without executing a genuine assault. He and his Confederates pull out after nightfall, having been repulsed by the combined forces of the 6th Corps, the 22nd Corps and U.S. Marines. Early's losses amount to some 500 killed or wounded and the Union defenders sustain 54 dead and 314 wounded. Union Colonel Joseph A. Haskin (West Point, 1839), in command of artillery, does a magnificent job repelling this assault.

**August 5 (Friday) 1864-THE BATTLE OF MOBILE BAY** At the mouth of Mobile Bay, Alabama, the call to battle is signaled to the Union fleet at 0500. By about 0630, every vessel briskly hoists the Stars and Stripes atop the peak and the three mastheads. Shortly thereafter, the *Tecumseh* commences fire, propelling two shots toward the Confederates, and by 0655 the fleet advances.

Within ten minutes, the Confederates return fire, catapulting rounds toward the USS *Brooklyn*. At about the same time, the Confederate fleet under Admiral Franklin Buchanan sails from its positions to the rear of Fort Morgan and establishes a defensive line across the channel to intercept the attacking armada.

Meanwhile, the U.S. fleet, led by the 21-gun *Hartford* (flagship of Farragut), commanded by Captain Percival Drayton, enters Mobile Bay. The trailing warships include the *Richmond* (Captain Thornton A. Jenkins, 20 guns), *Brooklyn* (Captain James Alden, 24 guns), *Metacomet* (Lt. Cmdr. James E. Jouett, six guns), *Lackawanna* (Capt. John B. Marchand, eight guns), Chickasaw (Lt. Cmdr. George H. Perkins, four guns), *Galena* (Lt. Cmdr. Clark H. Wells, 10 guns), and the *Tecumseh* (Cmdr. Thomas T. Craven, two guns). Once within range, they bombard Confederate-held Forts Gaines, Morgan, and Powell.

The Confederate ram *Tennessee*, commanded by Commander J.D. Johnston, becomes the focus of the *Tecumseh*, which only moments ago was apprehensive about moving within the restrained area of the buoy. However, Commander Craven, aboard the *Tecumseh*, orders his ship to head directly for the *Tennessee*. And then suddenly a torpedo strikes and detonates, delivering a fatal blow to the *Tecumseh*. Craven instructs the pilot, John Collins, to go first with the other survivors, but Craven

plummets to the bottom with his ship.

In the meantime, the other Union vessels continue the fight and pour incessant fire into the forts and the Confederate fleet. Farragut, expressing his concern for the *Tecumseh* during the heated duel, directs a rescue team to search for the survivors of the ill-fated vessel. Of the crew, which had numbered more than 100, twenty-one are saved, including the pilot. An ensign, H.C. Niels, braves the fire and uses a small boat to execute the rescue, but nearly becomes a casualty himself as the *Hartford* mistakes the tiny boat for a possible disguised torpedo. Only at the last second is Niels recognized. The gunner is promptly stopped from unleashing some 100-pound shells upon the boat. The Confederate batteries continue to pound the fleet. A thunderous barrage hammers the *Brooklyn*. As it attempts to back up, a collision with the USS *Richmond*, which has lost its engines, nearly occurs; however, an accident is avoided thanks to change in the tide that permits the *Brooklyn* to turn around. The *Hartford* continues its advance, but the narrowness of the channel restricts its maneuverability and gives the CSS *Tennessee* an advantage.

While the Rebel warship pours fire at the *Hartford*, return fire can only originate from the guns on the bow. As the *Hartford* attempts to pass, the *Tennessee* moves to ram the wooden warship, but speed saves a disaster and no collision occurs.

The *Tennessee* initiates pursuit, but as the *Hartford* breaks away, the *Tennessee* goes after the other approaching wooden ships. The USS *Brooklyn*, in the lead, receives a two-shot barrage from the Rebels, but in return the *Tennessee* receives a hefty broadside. Following this, the *Tennessee* moves against the approaching *Richmond*, but it, too, propels a mighty broadside which stuns the *Tennessee*. In cadence with the broadside, the riflemen aboard the *Richmond* effectively pour fire through the ports, seemingly catching the Rebel gunners by surprise. Nevertheless, the *Tennessee* maintains its pace and moves against the *Lackawanna*.

A nearby participant, Captain Strong, aboard the *Monongahela*, spots the impending collision and attempts to intercept the *Tennessee*. Strong attempts to rush ahead and strike the *Tennessee* at a right angle; however, having the *Kennebec* in tow hinders the maneuver and the *Tennessee* is struck only with a slight blow by the *Kennebec*, permitting the *Tennessee* to continue the fight. It pours shells into the *Kennebec* and inflicts casualties, then speeds ahead and encounters the *Ossipee*, which plows into but doesn't halt the *Tennessee*. Afterward, the *Tennessee* attempts to give a broadside to the inoperable *Oneida*, but its guns misfire. Nonetheless, once it passes the cripple, another attempt to destroy it is made. The guns of the *Tennessee* plaster the stern and inflict injury and damage; Captain Mullany sustains the loss of an arm. The *Galena* is tied to the *Oneida* and sustains seven hits, and one man is killed prior to its entering the bay. Using all of its power, the *Galena* manages to get itself and the *Oneida* out of the range of the guns at the forts.

Another approaching vessel, the feisty ironclad *Winnebago*, maneuvers to intercept the *Tennessee* and save the *Oneida*. Despite the punishing exchange, the crew of the *Oneida* bolts to the rails and begins to give rousing cheers as the *Winnebago* moves up; its commander, Thomas H. Stevens is their former commander. The *Tennessee* then moves to positions behind Fort Morgan. All the while, the other vessels continue to pummel each other.

The *Hartford* is still pursued by smaller ironclads. One, the *Gaines*, receives a barrage that knocks it out of commission. Shortly thereafter, the *Gaines* is destroyed by its crew just off Fort Morgan. Other Confederate vessels are pursued by the *Metacomet* in an effort to destroy them before they can escape to Mobile. The tenacious exchange remains relentless in its fury. The Confederate vessel CSS *Selma* (formerly CSS *Florida*) pulls down its colors after being chased by the *Metacomet* for about

one hour. The *Selma* terminates its career in the Confederate Navy; however, it is immediately brought into Union service as the USS *Selma*.

The CSS *Morgan* retires behind Fort Morgan and from there bolts to temporary safety at Mobile; the *Gaines* is torched. But still the *Tennessee* runs free. It closes on the *Hartford*, which is anchored about four miles from Mobile. The Rebel ram encroaches the *Hartford* while the crew is eating breakfast. The alarm sounds and the mess is cleared, while the decks are manned for imminent action. The Union vessels coordinate their activity. The *Lackawanna*, *Monongahela* and *Ossipee* advance to run it down, while the *Hartford* moves into action on its own. Quickly, the *Monongahela* commences fire, which inflicts damage, and this is followed by an effective broadside as the *Tennessee* passes the *Monongahela*. Soon after, the *Tennessee* is again struck, this time by the guns of the *Lackawanna*. These shots damage the port, forcing the vessel to list and be inadvertently swung around just in time for the *Hartford* to close as if it were a ram.

The two vessels collide, but only nominal damage is inflicted. However, the guns still rock the Confederate vessel. As the two ships separate, the *Hartford*, from a distance of about ten feet, unleashes yet another riveting broadside. Again, the obstinate Rebel vessel sustains no substantive damage. In turn, the *Hartford* escapes serious harm because when the *Tennessee* attempts to initiate another volley, the guns' primers fail to operate.

All the while, other Union vessels circle like steel sharks to finish victimizing the Rebel warship that seems to have nine lives. The *Hartford* maneuvers to make another run against it, but in the meantime, the *Lackawanna* crashes into it at a point near to where Admiral Farragut is positioned. He escapes harm, but the vessel becomes disabled and sustains damage below the water line. At about the same time, the monitors begin raking the *Tennessee* with shot and shell, pummeling the cripple and destroying its steering apparatus, jamming its guns and creating further havoc by severing the smokestack. Choking smoke permeates the paralyzed ship, essentially sealing the fate of the iron warrior. The proud *Tennessee* attempts to escape and heads back, but relentlessly the Union gives chase.

The *Hartford* maneuvers for position to ram while the vessels *Chickasaw*, *Manhattan* and *Winnebago* continue to propel fire upon the *Tennessee*. Still, the defiant Rebels maintain their feistiness and pride by refusing to capitulate. Admiral Buchanan continues to oversee the battle plan and personally sets the sights on the guns, but suddenly the captain gets struck by an iron sliver which breaks his leg. At about this time, the Confederates realize further resistance is futile. The Confederate colors are struck, but the Union is unsure of the reason, for it has already once shot the flag from the mast and the ship continued to fight. Union fire continues to rain upon the *Tennessee*. Finally, Captain Johnston ascends to the top of the vessel and displays a white flag to terminate the battle that had lasted little more than one hour.

The USS *Chickasaw* places the *Tennessee* under tow and drops its anchor near the flagship *Hartford*, then moves forward to reduce Fort Powell. Fortuitously for the Union, the fort had been constructed to hold off an attack of this type from only the front, giving the *Chickasaw* an easy objective. The Rebels evacuate the fort and blow up the fortifications. The fleet will move against the remaining forts on the following day. During this engagement, Admiral Farragut coins the phrase "Damn the torpedoes, full steam ahead." In addition, Farragut notes in a letter regarding the battle: "Notwithstanding the loss of life, particularly to this ship [*Hartford*], and the terrible disaster to the *Tecumseh*, the result of the fight was a glorious victory, and I have reason to feel proud of the officers, seamen, and marines of the squadron under my command."

**August 6 (Saturday) 1864-In Naval Activity**, a contingent of 26 Marines led by Capt. Charles Heywood and attached to the USS *Hartford* and *Richmond*, debark and occupy Fort Powell in Mobile, Alabama.

**October 1 (Saturday) 1864-In Naval Activity**, the Marines aboard the USS *Wabash* receive recognition for saving the ship after it grounded off the Virginia coast at Frying Pan Shoals.

**October 27-28 1864-In Naval Activity**, U.S. Navy Lt. William B. Cushing and a combined detachment of Marines and sailors (13 officers and men) from the North Atlantic Blockading Squadron move up the Roanoke River and successfully pass the Confederate pickets and the USS *Southfield*, the latter having been sunk there earlier, and approach the *Albemarle* without detection. Lt. Cushing attaches the mine to the Rebel ironclad while under fire and succeeds in destroying the vessel while it remains at the wharf. The Union assault boat *Pickett No. 1* is also destroyed, but not until its torpedo (mine) strikes the target. The USS *Shamrock*, commissioned in June and assigned duty off North Carolina, acts as “mother ship” to *Pickett No. 1*. The Confederates demand surrender of the men in the boat, but the men ignore the ultimatum. Only Cushing and one other man, Acting Master’s Mate Woodman, attached to the Commodore Hull, escape; however, Cushing reports that he was unable to get Woodman (who had been wounded) to shore. The others are either killed or captured. Cushing evades capture by entering a swamp. He notes in his report after arriving back on the *Valley City* on the night of the 28th that the destruction of the *Albemarle* at Plymouth was confirmed.

**November 28 (Monday) 1864-In South Carolina**, a Marine battalion, commanded by 1st Lieutenant George G. Stoddard, sailors and Union Army troops attack Confederate positions along the Charleston-Savannah Rail Line at Boyd’s Neck, South Carolina, but the assault fails to dislodge the Confederates, who thwart the effort.

**December 6 (Tuesday) 1864-In South Carolina**, 1st Lieutenant George C. Stoddard’s Marine battalion again links with Union Army troops for an attack. The Union force, supported by Commodore Preble’s naval force, strikes positions at Tullifinney (Tulifing) Crossroads and Derang’s (Deveaux) Neck.

**December 23 (Friday) 1864-In North Carolina**, the forces of General Benjamin F. Butler and Admiral David D. Porter arrive at Wilmington and immediately prepare to assault Confederate-held Fort Fisher, commanded by General William Henry C. Whiting, at the mouth of the Cape Fear River. U.S. Marines serving the South Atlantic Squadron manning secondary guns, participate in the bombardment of Fort Fisher.

**December 24 –25 1864-In North Carolina**, at dawn on Christmas Eve, the Union fleet arrives off Wilmington and the gunboats initiate a bombardment of Fort Fisher. The tumultuous thunderclap relentlessly pounds Fort Fisher, but the defenders scurry to bombproofs to avoid injuries. Sheets of fire are incessantly catapulted into the Confederate positions. Nevertheless, the plan of attack goes awry when the transports run late. They finally arrive, but too late to strike. During the day’s action, the USS *Yantic* experiences an accident when its 100-ponder rifled gun explodes. The division officer and the gun captain are mortally wounded. Four other crewmen receive fatal wounds. Commander Harris pulls his ship out of the line, but soon after checking the damage, he returns to the firing line. On the following day, it participates in the landing of the attack force. On Christmas morning, the naval guns resume their fire and rattle the earth, but still, the Rebels, about 700-strong, under General William H.C. Whiting (West Point, 1845), withstand the iron storm, due in great part to the bombproofs, which have saved many casualties.

Meanwhile, under the umbrella fire of the fleet, General Butler's ground forces debark in the vicinity of Flag Pond Battery. During the landing, the USS *Minnesota*, from a point about one mile from the Confederate position, catapults round after round to bolster the assault force, which numbers about 2,000 ground troops. Once the beachhead is established, contingents advance and the vanguard reaches positions near the fortress; however, the progress of the fleet is negated and in vain due to Butler's decision that the fort is too strong to be taken by his force. General Butler aborts the attacks after deciding to retire. Admiral Porter staunchly opposes aborting the attack and remains confident that the fort can be reduced. Subsequent to the failed assault, Porter refuses to relent. He requests of General Grant that another attack be launched under a new commander of the ground forces. Grant concurs, and during the following month, the fleet returns with another army.

Lt. Aeneas Armstrong of the Confederate States Navy later describes the scene within the fort: "The whole of the interior of the fort, which consists of sand, merlons, etc., was as one 11-inch shell bursting. You can not inspect the works and walk on nothing but iron." Lt. Commander Harris of USS *Yantic* subsequently notes: "At 1400, on the 25th, the troops landed amidst deafening and encouraging cheers from the men-of-war and from the troops still aboard the transports, cheers which were echoed by the fleet by a fire that elicited but a feeble response from the fort." He adds: "To the surprise and mortification of all, [General Nathaniel Banks] recalled the troops; and the landing operation ceased."

The new attack occurs on 13 January 1865, when Admiral Porter returns with about sixty ships and a force of about 10,000 troops, composed of 2,000 Marines and sailors along with the main body, 8,000 soldiers under the command of Major General Alfred Terry.

**January 13–15 1865-BATTLE OF FORT FISHER** -A U.S. naval assault (about sixty vessels) combined with a land attack by forces under General Alfred H. Terry prove to be too much for Confederate-held Fort Fisher, North Carolina. The fleet includes the *Advance*, *Aries*, *Cherokee*, *Colorado*, *Fort Jackson*, *Gettysburg*, *Huron*, *Iosco*, *Kansas*, *Keystone State*, *Minnesota*, *Mohican*, *Mahopac*, *Monadnock*, *Nereus*, *New Ironsides*, *Pontoosuc*, *Rhode Island*, *Santiago de Cuba*, *Sassacus*, *Governor Buckingham*, *Ticonderoga* and *Wabash*.

During the early morning hours of the 15th, the naval guns blast the Rebel fort and the bombardment continues until 0900. The *New Ironsides* leads three monitors to positions within 1,000 yards from the fort, which is already permeated with iron and debris from the previous attack (December 1864) and commences fire, sending a steady stream of shells into the Rebel positions. In the meantime, the *Kansas* and other wooden warships form into a battle line and open fire in unison against Flag Pond Battery and the woods in the area. After about one-half hour of incessant fire, the wooden gunboats lower boats to send detachments to support the landing force, which moves ashore at terrain which is out of range of the Confederate guns.

Afterward, the *Kansas* maneuvers into positions alongside of the main body, which is saturating Fort Fisher with round after round. The fort continues to sustain incoming fire for the following two days. In the meantime, during the landing, some confusion occurs with regard to overall command of the naval and Marine forces. It is cleared up when Lt. Commander Kidder Breese, U.S. Navy, displays a letter from the admiral and he assumes command of the troops, although some naval officers outrank him. The ships' troops are organized into three divisions under the commands of Lt. Commanders Charles H. Cushman, James Parker and Thomas O. Selfridge.

While the Army strikes by land, the naval force and the Marines face a more arduous task because they lack proper weapons and carry only revolvers while they brave heavy fire as they trudge along

the beach. This Confederate fortress had held firmly against an earlier attack during December 1864; however, the three-day bombardment and the combination of the army, commanded by General Ames attacking by land, and the Marines and seamen, commanded by K.R. Breeze (U.S. Navy) by sea, overwhelm the Confederate defenders. The victory becomes apparent at 2200, when the fleet becomes illuminated. Suddenly cheers ring out on land and sea as if in unison when the fleet lights the lamps of victory. Although there are no cheers from the vanquished under General Whiting, they had not lost their will to fight.

The cessation of the fighting is due mainly to the Rebels running out of ammunition and because reinforcements under General Robert Hoke do not arrive. Hoke's division had been a short distance away, a mere two miles, but the naval guns had kept the division at bay. The Confederates that are able make it to the inside of the fort and from there they escape.

Union losses are 184 killed and 749 wounded. Confederates lose 400 killed or wounded and 2,083 captured. Union Brigadier General Newton M. Curtis, wounded four times, is the first man to pass through the gates of Fort Fisher. Confederate General William H.C. Whiting is badly wounded and captured. Whiting succumbs due to complications from his wounds on 10 March 1865.

A tremendous explosion occurs aboard the USS *Ticonderoga* when gun number two explodes while firing upon the Confederate positions. Coxswain William Shipman, in an effort to reorganize his men in spite of the death and destruction on the deck, yells to the other gunners: "Go ahead boys; this is only the fortunes of war." The Confederate artillery that had withstood the Union since the first attack in 1864 was commanded by General Louis Hebert (West Point, 1845). Also, 400 Marines attached to Admiral David Farragut's squadron participate in the attack to seize the fort.

**February 23 (Thursday) 1865-In South Carolina**, Union troops from a U.S. naval fleet occupy Georgetown, subsequent to the Confederates abandoning it. The occupation force is composed of six companies of U.S. Marines, commanded by 1st Lieutenant George C. Stoddard.

**April 9 (Sunday) 1865**-The United States Marine Corps, during the Civil War, sustains a total of 551 casualties: these include those killed in battle, those dying of their wounds and those who had been lost at sea or succumbed to disease; the figure also includes those wounded during the conflict.

**June 1866** — In retaliation for an attack against a Consular official attached to the American Consulate in China, Marines aboard the USS *Wachusett* debark at Chwang, China to protect American interests and guarantee that the perpetrators of the attack are punished. Marines and Sailors will subsequently debark at Tung Chow Foo during August to protect American diplomats while conferences are in session.

**June 18th (Monday) 1866** — Fewer than 150 Marines are killed during the Civil War. Many in the Corps side with the Confederacy. The Marine Corps is at its lowest point during the Civil War and the House of Representatives issues this resolution: "RESOLVED, THAT THE COMMITTEE ON NAVAL AFFAIRS BE DIRECTED TO CONSIDER THE EXPEDIENCY OF ABOLISHING THE MARINE CORPS, AND TRANSFERRING IT TO THE ARMY, AND MAKING PROVISION FOR SUPPLYING SUCH MILITARY FORCE AS MAY AT ANY TIME BE NEEDED IN THE NAVY, BY DETAIL FROM THE ARMY."

**June 1867** — The U.S. Navy has vessels posted in the sea of Japan. Marines and Sailors stationed aboard the USS *Hartford* and *Wyoming* are debarked at Formosa to take retaliatory action against islanders who had killed the crew of an American merchant vessel.

**February 1868** — Japan is naturally suspicious of foreigners and there are frequent outbreaks of violence. During February, Marines and Sailors attached to the USS *Oneida* land at Hioga, Japan to

prevent further trouble. In other activity, Marine and Sailor contingents are forced to land at Uruguay to insure the protection of Americans during an outbreak of Rebellion. During these periods of turmoil it is necessary for reinforcements to relieve the American troops.

**June 9-11 1871** — The USS *Colorado*, and four additional warships *Carondelet*, *Benica*, *Monacy* and *Palos* under the command of Rear Admiral John Rogers, anchor off the coast of Korea waiting about 10 days for a Korean apology for the massacre of a U.S. Survey team. No apology is sent, prompting Rogers to land a party of Marines and Sailors, under the cover of Naval fire. Two Americans were wounded the previous day by Korean fire. The assault team immediately rushes the Korean Fort on the Salee River. Pvt. Hugh Purvis (U.S.M.C.) is the first to scale the walls of the Fortress and capture the flag of the enemy. They take an additional Fort the following day and finally the "Citadel": The Americans suffer few casualties, the Koreans 243 dead. Nine Sailors and six Marines receive the Medal of Honor for their actions.

**May 1873** — The United States is busy at home with the campaigns against the Indians but although there is no war being waged against a foreign nation, the Navy is busy with insurrections that continually pop up around the globe. During May, for example, Marines and Sailors are dispatched to Colombia for the purpose of protecting American lives.

**1882-**As in other parts of the old world, there is some resentment against Americans and other foreigners. In Egypt, people are causing disturbances which prompts the U.S. vessels in the vicinity to land Marines and sailors at Alexandria during July to quell the disturbances and protect American lives.

**1885-**The U.S. Navy and its complement of Marines serving in the vicinity of Colombia are kept busy during 1885. There is political instability and American lives are endangered causing American servicemen to be landed several times to insure the lives and property of the Americans.

**1885-**United States Marines, sent to Panama City to restore order and to prevent anti-government forces from burning the city, march into the city and hold it against overwhelming odds until Colombian reinforcements arrive. From this action, correspondent Richard Harding Davis left us with these words: "THE MARINES HAVE LANDED AND HAVE THE SITUATION WELL IN HAND." The Marines are under the command of Colonel Charles Heywood.

**1891-**U.S. Marines and Sailors are landed at Buenos Aires, Argentina during July to protect American diplomats and the consulate during a political crisis.

**January 1893-**The government of Hawaii had granted the U.S. rights to use the ports of Hawaii during 1884 and they have made good use of the offer. During January, another ruler of the island, the Queen, Liliuokalani, is deposed. Marines are quickly dispatched to protect American interests during the transitional period of forming a provisional government.

**July 1894-**The governments of China and Japan have gone to war, causing the U.S. to deploy American troops attached to the USS *Baltimore*, at Chemulco, Korea. They will move to Seoul to protect the Americans in the area. Additional Marines and Sailors debark at Taku, China during December, moving immediately to Tientsin to preserve the rights and safety of the Americans there.

**February 15 (Tuesday) 1898-** The Battleship *Maine* is rocked by a tremendous explosion while in Havana Harbor, costing the lives of 260 crewmen, including 28 Marines.

**June 6 (Monday) 1898-**Admiral Sampson dispatches the USS *Marblehead* and USS *Yankee* to secure Guantanamo as a Naval Base. One hundred Marines land and are followed by 674 more, under Lt. Col. Robert Huntington. They establish Camp McCalla, unfurling Old Glory. This Landing takes place on June 10 and begins the invasion of Cuba.

**June 14 (Tuesday) 1898**-American Marines (Company C and D) are ordered to seize a well used by the enemy at Cuzco, Cuba. The Americans advance on the enemy position until the USS *Dolphin*, in error, begins shelling American positions. Lieutenant McGill, U.S.M.C., orders Sergeant John Henry Quick to signal the ship, telling them to stop firing on their own positions. Sgt Quick defies enemy fire and stands signaling continuously, amidst incoming shells and enemy rifle fire. Quick's efforts are eventually successful and his heroism makes him the recipient of the Medal of Honor. The Spaniards escape the trap but the well is seized and sealed to prevent the enemy from acquiring any water from it.

**June 30 (Thursday) 1898** - Naval gunfire from the American Fleet hits the island of Guam which was occupied by the Spanish but receives no return fire, the Spaniards having thought the Naval gunfire a salute. They have not been informed that war has broken out. They could not return fire even if they chose to do so because the island was out of ammunition. The island is occupied by a combined Sailor and Marine force who oversee the lowering of the Spanish flag and replace it by hoisting up the Stars and Stripes. General Anderson's force (having stopped briefly to claim Guam for the United States) disembark at Cavite on the 1st of July. In action in the Cuban theatre, Generals Kent and Sumner advance to El Pozo to join Grime's Light Battery, placing themselves in a position to attack Santiago. The American force divides itself into three separate commands and leaves Daiquiri heading for Santiago. 1) Br. General Kent leads the first division towards San Juan Hill. 2) Maj. General Lawton starts towards El Caney. 3) Maj. General Joseph Wheeler's Cavalry Division heads towards Kettle Hill (1st Volunteer Cavalry Regiment "Rough Riders"). Pvt. George H. Warton and Dennis Bell, both from the 10th U.S. Cavalry, leave the safety of their ship to aid in the rescue of wounded troopers. They both become recipients of the Medal of Honor. Frederick Muller USN also receives the Medal of Honor for his bravery under fire on a mission with the USS *Wompatuck* (vicinity Manzanillo, Cuba). Heavy skirmishing develops at Tayabacoa, Cuba between a contingent of the 10th Cavalry and the enemy.

**July 6 (Tuesday) 1898** — Spanish General Blanco, General-In-Chief of the Army of the island of Cuba, agrees to exchange Lt. Hobson and the volunteers from the *Merrimac* for captured Spanish Officers and men. General Schafter attempts to give the Spanish a face-saving surrender offer, noting a joint Army-Navy bombardment will commence at noon on July 9th. American Marines would then invade the Socapa Battery at the mouth of the harbor.

**April 1(Saturday) 1899**-Sergeant Bruno A. Forsterer (U.S.M.C.) becomes the recipient of the Medal of Honor for his valor in an engagement with the Rebels at Samar, Philippines. The USS *Philadelphia* bombards enemy positions at Samoa, Philippine Islands and Marines and Sailors coordinate action.

**May 24 (Thursday) 1900**- A contingent of Marines, under the command of Captain John T. Meyers, depart Taku, China, heading for Tientsin to assist in quelling the Boxer Rebellion. The Boxers, a group of Chinese Patriots protesting the presence of foreigners in China, have seized the British Legation and American citizens were pleading for help. The U.S. Navy had earlier dispatched the USS *Newark* with a detachment of U.S. Marines and sailors.

**July 13 (Friday) 1900**— American Marines and sailors engage the Boxers in the vicinity of Tientsin, China. Additional American troops of the China Relief Expedition and other Allied nations attack Tientsin on the 13th. The Allied Force takes control of the city by the 14th. Troops of the 9th, and 14th Infantry come from the Philippines. The Sixth Cavalry came directly from the United States. Sergeants Alexander J. Foley, John M. Adams, Corporal Harry Adriance and Private James Cooney,

all U.S. Marines, receive Medals of Honor for their gallantry during this engagement.

**July 21-August 14 1900** — Allied forces continue their expedition toward Peking. On the 21st, American troops again engage Boxers in the vicinity of Tientsin, China. The march continues with the Allies reaching the capital on the 12th of August. On the 13th, a contingent of Russian troops impulsively attack the Outer Gates of the city where they become entangled and totally disorganized. Allied troops are impelled to rush to their rescue. Private Daniel .I. Daly is among the men who receive the Medal of Honor. Daly will be remembered later for his heroic actions at Belleau Wood as a Marine Corps Sergeant during World War I. The Allied troops who have successfully taken Peking, consist of British, Japanese, German, Austrian, Italian, and American Soldiers. (The Russians were also there, as mentioned before). American troops climb the Tartar Walls of the city giving cover fire to the British. This accurate American fire allows the British to rush in to the Outer City. The Americans play a major part on the 14th as well.

**September 28 (Sunday) 1901**-Moros tribesmen on Samar massacre Company C, 9th Infantry, U.S. Army. The United States retaliates, sending in Marines which results in furious jungle fighting for several months.

**November 17 (Sunday) 1901**-U.S. Marines, commanded by Colonel David D. Porter, land at the junction of the Cadacan and Sohoton rivers in Samar to launch a surprise attack against enemy positions which have become almost impregnable. The enemy positions hidden in cliffs are attacked by Marines using bamboo ladders. The tribesmen catapult tons of rocks, which had been placed on platforms held by vine cables, upon the Marines, as they scale the cliffs. The Americans succeed in getting to the top where they chase the Rebels. Captain Bearss continues the pursuit right through the water and sabotaged trails which hold hidden pits and poison spears. The Marines, undaunted, make it to the enemy camps where they proceed to destroy everything in sight.

**August 3 (Friday) 1906**-Cuba requests American aid to put down a Rebellion. William Howard Taft later heads a provisional government to maintain order. President Teddy Roosevelt dispatches sailors and Marines to Cuba to restore order. Reinforcements arrive later and take control of major towns which subdues the mob violence of the Cuban Liberal Party. The United States remains in charge until February 1st 1909.

**March 21 (Thursday) 1907**-U.S. Marines are dispatched to Honduras to put down a revolution.

**March 3 (Wednesday) 1909**- The House Naval Appropriation Committee prevents an attempt by President Roosevelt to remove all Marines from Naval warships.

**May 1910**-United States Marines, commanded by Major Smedley Butler, land in Nicaragua to assist the Moderates during a political feud. The Marines had been stationed on the USS *Paducah*.

**June 5 (Wednesday) 1912** — U.S. Marines are dispatched to Cuba to protect the lives and property of American citizens on the island during a political crisis.

**April 21 -23 1914** — A U.S. Naval Fleet, consisting of the *Prairie*, *Florida* and *Utah*, descends upon Vera Cruz where Admiral Fletcher lands a Regiment of Marines. A Navy Battalion attached to the *Florida* also lands, heading directly into severe sniper fire. By the end of the first day, the Americans have only cleared half the city of enemy troops. Admiral Fletcher sends in additional troops and takes personal command. Marines, under Lieutenant Colonel Wendell C. Neville and Major Atbertus W. Catlan then quickly clear the area of snipers by noon on the 22nd. The Marines and Blue Jackets virtually control the city and hold it until the arrival of the U.S. Army which would take over the occupation. The occupation force is commanded by Major Frederick Funston. The American losses in taking Verz Cruz are 15 dead and 56 wounded. Fifty five men, including Rear Admiral Frank

Friday Fletcher, Major Catlin and Major Smedley Darlington Butler are recipients of the Medal of Honor during this engagement. The actions of the American forces prevent a German ship from supplying arms to Huerta. The U.S. Marines who landed in Vera Cruz are under the command of Colonel John Archer Lejeune. This incident and those of the past few weeks bring Mexico and the United States close to war but arbitration settles the dispute.

**June 17 (Thursday) 1915** — The United States dispatches several companies of Marines (attached to the 4th Marines), into Mexico for expeditionary reasons. The Marines debark from the USS *Colorado*.

**July 9 (Friday) 1915** — U.S. Marines, stationed on the USS *Washington*, are landed at Cape Haitien, Haiti to protect American citizens and their property at risk because of unstable political problems on the island.

**July 28 (Wednesday) 1915** — U.S. Marines land on Haiti to put down the revolution. Marines remain there for 19 years.

**July 28-29 1915** — The USS *Washington* and USS *Jason* land additional Marines on Port au Prince, Haiti to reinforce the Marines already there. Troops continue to arrive through August and battle the Rebels for over three months before ending the violence.

**August 15 (Sunday) 1915** — A contingent of Marines (5th Regiment), stationed at Guantanamo, Cuba arrives at Puerta Plata, Dominican Republic. These Marines, who have been transported on the USS *Hancock* are commanded by Colonel Charles A. Doyen. The mission of these Marines is to protect American lives and property during the Rebellion.

**September (Thursday) 16 1915** — The United States and the Government of Haiti sign an agreement to establish a Haitian Constabulary under the supervision of the Marine Corps.

**September 18 (Saturday) 1915** — U.S. Marines and Haitian Cacos Bandits clash at Gonaives.

**September 27 (Monday) 1915** — A detachment of U.S. Marines, commanded by Colonel Eli K. Cole, assaults and captures Quartier, Morin, Haiti, the headquarters of the bandits.

**October 24 (Sunday) 1915** — A Marine patrol is ambushed by Cacos Bandits in the vicinity of Grosse Roche, Haiti. The Marines, although surprised, repulse the attack. Also, in Haiti, Major General Edward A. Osterman, USMC receives the Medal of Honor for his actions during the capture of Fort Dipitio.

**October 25 (Monday) 1915** — A Marine patrol engages Cacos Rebels at Fort Dipitie, Haiti. On that same day, the Marine Corps Recruit Depot is established at Parris Island, South Carolina. Marine recruit training was formerly located in Norfolk, Virginia.**November 8 (Monday) 1915** — A contingent of Marines, commanded by Major Smedley Butler, engage Cacos bandits at Forts Selon and Berthol, Haiti.

**November 9 (Tuesday) 1915** — The 4th Marine Regiment, commanded by Colonel Joseph Pendleton, is deployed off the coast of Mexico\_

**November 17 (Wednesday) 1915** — U.S. Marines clash with Cacos bandits at Fort Riviere, Haiti.

**May 5 (Friday) 1916** — The USS *Castine* and *Prairie* arrive at Santo Domingo, Dominican Republic. A contingent of U.S. Marines are sent ashore on the 15th to protect the American Consulate during an ongoing revolution. The Marines after landing, take up defensive positions around the consulate, but find no enemy or weapons. The enemy had fled for Santiago, a city which is situated in the mountains.

**May 26 (Friday) 1916** — The USS *Panther* arrives at Monte Cristi, Dominican Republic, landing

Marines who occupy the city without opposition.

**June 1 (Thursday) 1916** — The USS *Salems* arrives at Puerto Plata, Dominican Republic and a contingent of Sailors and Marines debark to occupy the city. This captured city gives the Marines control of the northern portion of the island. Marines continue to battle bandits until peace is secured around 1922. Marines remain on the island until September 1925.

**June 27 (Tuesday) 1916** — A detachment of Marines, 5th Regiment clash with bandits at Las Trencheros, Dominican Republic.

**July 3 (Monday) 1916** — A detachment of Marines, 5th Regiment, would battle bandits at Quayacanas, Dominican Republic.

**November 20 (Monday) 1916** — The Rebel held Fort, San Francisco de Macoria, falls to the United States Marines (Dominican Republic).

**November 29 (Wednesday) 1916** — The USS *Vermont* with her complement of Marines arrive at Port-Au-Prince, Dominican Republic to reinforce Marines already on the island. On this day, the United States declares the "Military Occupation Of The Dominican Republic!"

**January 12 (Friday) 1917** — The USS *Maine* arrives at Guantanamo Bay, Cuba. On board is a detachment of Marines awaiting orders to debark for the purpose of protecting American citizens and property during the ensuing revolution.

**March 7 (Wednesday) 1917** — Additional Marines land at Rio Canto, Cuba to protect American life and property. Additional troops continue to land throughout the month at Santiago, Guantanamo, San Geronimo, Banes, Boqueron and Daiquire. The USS *Hancock*, *Olympia*, *Jupiter* and *Ontario* participate.

**March 29 (Thursday) 1917** — U.S. Marines land at Christiansted, St. Croix, Virgin Islands, where they set up a Garrison.

**May 1 (Tuesday) 1917** — The Guardia Nacional Dominica is established in the Dominican Republic. These men are trained and led by United States Marines.

**June 30 (Saturday) 1917** — The total strength of the United States Marine Corps is 776 Officers, 26,973 enlisted men.

**August 21 (Tuesday) 1917** — The USS *Prairie* departs Philadelphia, for Guantanamo with additional troops to insure the protection of American lives and property on the island. The 7th Marine Regiment on board the *Prairie* is commanded by Colonel Melville J. Shaw.

**October 1917** — Marines are dispatched to Oriente Province, Cuba to deal with German agents who are using sabotage and propaganda.

**October 5 (Friday) 1917** — The first contingent of the 6th Marine Regiment arrives in St. Nazaire, France. They are combined with the 5th Regiment and are known as the 4th Marine Brigade, assigned to the U.S. Army 2nd Division.

**December 25 (Tuesday) 1917** — The USS *Von Steuben*, arrives at Guantanamo, Cuba with the newly established 9th Marine Regiment, to deal with rebels who are destroying American property.

**March 17 (Sunday) 1918** — The 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines are the 1st Marine unit to hit the front lines in France. They are joined shortly thereafter by the balance of the 4th Marine Brigade. These Marines who hit the Western Front at Toulon, France receive heavy enemy artillery barrages for days, causing over 800 casualties, although they were over fifty miles behind the immediate front.

**April 12 (Friday) 1918** — The Germans commence a poison gas attack against American positions at Verdun, France, necessitating the evacuation of 314 Marines.

**April 23 (Tuesday) 1918** — Lieutenant Commander Alexander Gordon Lyle U.S.N. (Dental Corps),

serving with the 5th Marine Regiment risks his life to save the life of Corporal Thomas Regan on the French front during a skirmish with enemy troops. Lyle becomes the recipient of the Medal of Honor for his heroism.

**May 21 (Tuesday) 1918** — Ensign Daniel A. J. Sullivan, U.S.N.R.F., stationed on the USS *Cristabel*, during an action against enemy submarines, saves his ship from destruction by risking his life to secure floundering depth charges bouncing all over the deck. An enemy charge has detonated very close to the American ship, causing the charges on board to become unfastened. In other activity, the USS *President Lincoln* is sunk by an enemy torpedo. Lt. Izac is captured and taken to Germany but he escapes on his second attempt and returns with valuable intelligence information concerning enemy sub movements.

**May 31 (Friday) 1918** — An American Machine-Gun Battalion, 3rd Division, is positioned at the bridge over the Marne, to assist French troops who are attempting to hold the German advance at Chateau Thierry. Marines just moved up to the front lines are not yet used because of Pershing's feelings that Marines will not be quick to fight. French General Foch also questions the Marines' ability to fight. The French continue to use duress in an attempt to intermingle American Soldiers with French units, but Pershing continues to decline. Pershing insists American troops remain as one unit under American control.

**June 1st (Saturday) 1918** — The U.S. 2nd Division, including the 4th Marine Brigade dig in north of the Marne and west of Chateau-Thierry (Aisne), along the principal road to Paris, whence they jump off on the 6th of June to attempt to capture Belleau Wood and halt the German advance. The major German offensive begun in late May, is threatening Paris, the heart of the French cause.

**June 3 (Monday) 1918** — Marines from the 4th Brigade participate in the battle for Les Mares, Farm, Belleau Wood, Chateau-Thierry, France. The Germans for the past two days have been trying to force their way through the staunch American lines without success. The American Marines are not satisfied with holding the Germans back and opt to prepare a counter-offensive. As the American troops proceed to move to their positions, the French hastily request American reinforcements to be used to fill the line to help hold the Germans. American General Bundy, upon receiving the request for aid, turns to Colonel Preston Brown and gives the following order: "SEND THE 23RD INFANTRY" The 23rd Infantry is unavailable because they have not yet reached camp. The only troops ready are the Marines. They receive orders to dig trenches and to hold on at all costs. General James Harbord passes the orders on, rejecting them himself with this statement "WE DIG NO TRENCHES TO FALL BACK ON. THE MARINES WILL HOLD WHERE THEY STAND" This group of young heroic men never really dig in and the Germans soon learn of the fighting spirit of the U.S. Marines.

**June 5 (Wednesday) 1918** — The Marines ordered to Belleau Wood encounter retreating French Soldiers as they themselves are advancing. A French Officer stops momentarily to advise the Marines to follow the French in retreat, because the Germans were coming. A Marine Officer without hesitation, responded: "RETREAT HELL! WE JUST GOT HERE:" The Marines keep moving in the direction of the sound of the guns. The 4th Brigade, over 9,000 men strong, open fire with deadly accuracy at a distance of over 800 yards (unheard of prior to this action). The Marines startle the Germans who could not comprehend accurate fire at such distance. The Germans are under the impression these Marines are using machine-guns. The German 461st Imperial Infantry have encountered what they later describe as the "Devil Dogs".

**June 6 (Thursday) 1918** — The 5th Marines, 1st Battalion spearhead an attack against the Germans,

west of Belleau Wood, expecting to quickly overrun the German positions but this thought quickly diminishes as the inexperienced Marines get caught in a German machine-gun cross fire and suffer over 400 casualties. The setback does not deter the tenacity of the Marines as they press further, attempting to gain a section of the woods. German guns open up and hit the Marines heavily, again causing more than 1,000 casualties. Marine tradition emerges spontaneously as Sergeant Dan Daly looks around and then jumps up, yelling his famous words: "COME ON YOU SONS OF BITCHES! DO YOU WANT TO LIVE FOREVER!" The Marines rise, then charge into the German positions where hand-to-hand combat takes place. The fighting keeps a furious pace for twenty days. The crack German troops counterattack on the 13th, almost pushing the Marines from the village of I3ouresches. Major John A. Hughes defiantly refuses to withdraw from the fast approaching German advance. The 1st Battalion 6th Marines give no ground and take an additional 600 casualties but the Americans halt the German advance. The Marines are relieved on the 15th day by an Army Regiment and then return to action on the 22nd to continue their bold actions against the enemy. The Marines chase the remnants of the German troops and capture the Wood. The commander of the 5th Marine detachment, Major Maurice Shearer telegraphs the following message to American headquarters: "WOODS NOW UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS' ENTIRELY" This tremendous victory saves Paris, reassures the Allies of the ability of the American Soldiers and inspires the other Allies pull up their boot straps and drive on to victory. In addition, this battle changes the history of the Marine Corps, who until this point basically fought only smaller skirmishes. The U.S. now controls the Wood after suffering 9,777 casualties including 1,811 killed (Army and Marines).

**June 11 (Tuesday) 1918** — Lieutenant Orlando H. Petty (Medical Corps U.S.N.R.F.), serving with the 5th Marines during the attack on Bois de Belleau, in the town of Lucy, becomes the recipient of the Medal of Honor for his bravery, while under intense fire and gas as he evacuates the wounded. Gunnery Sergeant Fred W. Stockman U.S.M.C., removes his own gas mask, giving it to a wounded Soldier, then continues to aid in the removal of the wounded. Stockman dies several days later because of gas poisoning.

**June 28 (Friday) 1918** — A detachment of U.S. Marines disembark at Vladivostok, Russia to protect the U.S. Consulate and aid the Allies in restoring calm to the city.

**June 30 (Sunday) 1918** — The 6th French Army issues an order changing the name of Belleau Wood to "Bois de la Brigade de Marine." The French also issue the Marines the highest French award for bravery. To this day, the 5th and 6th Regiments wear this award on their uniforms. The Marines also receive an award of sorts from the Germans who refer to the Marine attackers as fierce fighters, giving them the name "Devil Dogs"

**July 3 (Wednesday) 1918** — The 13th Marine Regiment, commanded by Lt. Colonel Smedley Butler, is organized at Quantico, Virginia.

**July 15th-August 5th 1918 — BATTLE OF THE MARNE** — Two Armies, comprising 52 Divisions, assault Allied positions along the Marne. When the assault troops strike the French 125th Division, the French are driven into retreat. Pennsylvania National Guard Units are attached to the French and receive the brunt of the assault as the French have withdrawn. During these early hours of battle, four companies of Yanks are trying to hold their positions. One thousand men outnumbered by as many as 50 to 1 hold and fight. Over 600 men of the 28th Pennsylvania are lost but their unswerving courage has delayed the Germans, slowing their rush through the Bois de Conde. The U.S. 3rd Division, not dependent upon the French, holds firmly. The enemy assaults the 38th Infantry, 3rd Division from three sides with no advance. The Regiment holding fast to the left of the

French are soon nicknamed "Rock of the Marne:" The U.S. 109th Engineer Battalion and a contingent of the 108th Machine Gun Battalion hold their positions between Monthural and St. Agnaw, preventing enemy Infantry from pouring through at that point. On the following day, contingents of the 1st Battalion, 109th Infantry reinforced by K Company, counter-attack with the French 20th Division pushing the Germans back. In other related activity, the 38th Regiment, 3rd Division assisted by artillery devastates a German assault which is crossing the Marne in boats under smoke cover. Accurate heavy firing virtually splits the boats to pieces. Only one boat reaches the American positions on shore and it is greeted with hand grenades and quickly destroyed.

Further downstream, an elite German unit, the Sixth Prussian Grenadiers, cross the Marne east of the Mezy but to no avail. The Grenadiers are neutralized when four hundred of the command are cut off and easily captured ending the threat.

Another American Division, the Rainbow Division, fights alongside the French under Gouraud at Somme Py. Two battalions of the Fighting 69th, an Irish Regiment from New York, hold responsibility for the point. The Germans approach their positions and are met with immediate rapid firing machine-guns accompanied by incessant Infantry fire. The 69th holds the enemy at bay, preventing a breakthrough. In addition to these Yank Divisions, the Huns are rebuffed by the 2nd Division which includes the 4th Marine Brigade. The Yanks are scoring overwhelming successes and French General Foch requests that Pershing commit every available man to completely quell the enemy. A massive counter-attack spearheaded by the unwaivering Yanks follows on the 18th.

**July 18 (Tuesday) 1918** — SOISSONS — CHATEAU THIERRY — During the Allied Offensive at the Marne, Marine Sergeants Kocak and Cukela rush to the aid of their Battalion, moving through heavy enemy fire, driving the gunners from the nest. They reorganize 25 lost French Soldiers and successfully assault another enemy nest. Heroism is the order of the day. 2nd Lieutenant Samuel Parker 28th Infantry, 1st Division, with the aid of a contingent of French Colonials, attack an enemy nest, taking 40 prisoners and seizing 6 guns. Parker, although badly wounded, remains in command, crawling on his knees until he can consolidate all lines of the 28th at their newly won positions.

**July 18-19 1918** — The 6th Regiment including Sailors and Marines hit severe resistance at Vierzy. Seaman J. Boone and John Balch ignore all enemy shells and set up a hospital field station to aid the wounded.

**July 18th-August 5th 1918** — SECOND BATTLE OF THE MARNE — The Allies reverse the obvious and forego hours of preliminary artillery bombardment in an effort to confuse German intelligence and advance observers from discovering the depth of the imminent attack. As the sun peers over the horizon, the Allied guns burst in unison, spewing an awesome amount of firepower to aid the simultaneous massive Infantry assault intended to sever the main highway between Soissons and Chateau Thierry. The spearhead of the assault force are the 1st and 2nd U.S. Divisions which have been attached to the French on orders of Pershing.

These brash bull-headed Yankees drive relentlessly against the entrenched defenders. They advance in unmannerly spirited fashion meeting stiff resistance. Three hundred Tanks are intertwined with the ground troops and their participation quickens the pace. Well-entrenched defenders are pushed from their fortifications one by one and the enemy line crumbles as the persistent Yanks secure five torturous miles by nightfall.

Crack German reinforcements are expedited to the front to check the Americans. They are complemented by heavy artillery and deadly machine-gunners but the Yanks are not stagnated. Within a week, this unprecedented offensive gains twenty miles and permanently stifles this German

threat against Paris.

The 1st Division disregards all obstacles, grinding their way through barbed-wire entanglements, plowing through fortified trenches, eradicating the enemy resistance and seizing the heights above Soissons in addition to the capture of Berry-le-Sec.

The U.S. Second Division crashes through their opposition exhibiting a combination of impetuous daring and disciplined determination. This Yank Division, comprised of Army and Marine units roll through viciously and by the end of two days of bitter combat secure Beau Repaire and Vierzy. The town of Porcy is victimized by the New Englanders of the 26th Division on the 18th. The Germans are outmatched by the 3rd Division and are punishingly driven back to Mont St. Pere, and the towns of Charveves and Jaulgonne where a hastily last line of defense is established to halt the hordes of unyielding Americans. The French Moroccan Division which includes the legendary French Foreign Legion joins the advancing Americans to apply even more tenacity to the assault. The Germans who have been on the offensive since 1914 are pressed to reverse tactics and take defensive measures to attempt to regain the momentum. As the Germans withdraw to regroup, they are confidently pursued by rumbling tanks and irascible Infantrymen who outdistance the tanks.

The enemy, although on the retreat, refuses to capitulate easily and throws up wicked rear action resistance. As the grudging combat continues incessantly, the Yanks are sustaining heavy casualties to secure their objectives. The Germans inflict over 7,000 casualties on the gallant First Division during this gruesome struggle at the Marne but the attackers are undaunted. The First Division keeps up the vigorous pace of the famed Moroccans and continues to drive forward even after the battle-tested veterans of the Legionnaires are withdrawn for rest. Over sixty percent of the infantry officers have become casualties. All officers above the rank of captain in the 26th Regiment become casualties but the Chateau Thierry - Soissons road has been sliced and the enemy forced into full retreat to elude capture.

The aroma of victory permeates the otherwise blood-filled terrain and three exhausted American divisions pause momentarily to take a deep breath and get a second wind before bolting in whirlwind fashion to crush the enemy. These gallant men, still recuperating from the vicious fighting and excruciating pain of unending forced marches, reach down in their souls and take one more heroic challenge to end the war.

In a stunning and most spectacular fashion, Pershing's Cavaliers burst out in a synchronized advance. The 28th sprints across the Marne at Dormans as the 3rd moves across at Chateau Thierry, co-ordinating with the 26th Division leaping forward from the recently hallowed ground of Belleau Wood. The cunning Germans pull out all stops, rushing ammunition trains and supplies to impede the Yankee tide. Magnificently placed machine-gun nests, nearly invisible to the naked eye until the deadly fire criss-crosses the advancing troops, are scattered strategically to block passage at Epieds and forestall defeat. Artillery is expeditiously committed to block the advance but also to no avail. This murderous stronghold in the heights does not collapse without fanfare. Cross-fires strip the American ranks as they gnaw their way up the ridges. The French move in precision fashion, zig-zagging under and through the enemy fire in conjunction with the Americans and the combined thrust shakes the Germans horrendously. Deadly fire from both sides ring the stone ridges forming a steel canopy but when the shrill sounds of the guns cease, the heights are in firm control of the Allies.

Casualties on both sides are extremely heavy. Fresh American divisions are brought into action to alleviate stress on the exhausted troops and the advance continues. In rapid succession, additional

enemy strong-points are secured. The Rainbow Division dashes through the Foret de Fere on the 24th destroying the entrenched enemy nests as they advance. Three more Divisions, the 3rd, 4th and 42nd surge ahead with the latter peering across the banks of the Ourcq River by the 27th. The German-held heights behind the town of Cierges are consumed by the combined efforts of the 42nd and 32nd Divisions. Sergy falls prey to the deter-minded efforts of the Rainbow Division while toughly fortified Hill 230 capitulates to tireless contingents of the 32nd. These splendid Allied victories are overwhelming and the Germans are further pressed. They make a hurried withdrawal to the Vesle River.

The nearly-beaten Germans still cling to the faint hope that the advance can be halted. This thinking is quickly dispelled by another grievous shock. More American reinforcements are pouring into the battle zones to increase the pressure. Incredible instruments of warfare have been committed to exterminate the Yankee thrust but even the use of poison gas, land mines and flame throwers seem inadequate. The U.S. 42nd and 32nd Divisions are replaced by equally tenacious units, the U.S. 4th and the Pennsylvania 28th which immediately begin the chase and encounter immense resistance which leads to brutal hand-to-hand combat. The clashing bayonets turn crimson as opposing troops pummel each other. The carnage is horrendous and dead Yanks lay prone within arms reach of the trenches lined with the bodies of the enemy.

In another weary effort to forestall defeat, the Germans begin to reform at Fismes, concentrating every available piece of equipment to retain control of this village which serves as a junction for every main road between the Aisner and Vesle Rivers. The Yanks and French advance, anticipating severe resistance but to their surprise, capture the outskirts with nominal effort. The Germans mount a fierce concentration of resistance at Grimpeos Woods which temporarily impedes the Allied progress. Advance elements of the American Division, unique in the sense that many of its troops are of German origin, are forced to pull back after a vicious fight but come back more tenaciously the following day and secure the Woods. The Yanks also clear the enemy from Cierges and fortify their positions against an anticipated poison gas assault, while simultaneously whip-lashing through the town, seizing the threatening heights to the north.

A short pause is taken by the Yanks to rest their exhausted bodies, then they jump right back into the chase, charging vehemently into Jomblet's Woods, gaining a foothold against intense opposition while their French counterparts clear the enemy from Meuniere Woods. On the first of August, the Allies penetrate deeper into the enemy lines, driving them into further retreat. The Yanks pour into Moncel, Chamery and Villome, then advance to Cohans where heavy enemy resistance is building. The resistance at Cohans is rigid but short-lived. After ferocious combat lasting a few arduous hours, Cohans is secured by the Yanks. In addition, the Germans in the heights north of Draveguy also crumble on the first. Three days of nonstop combat in terrible weather and unfavorable road conditions does not deter the Americans from finishing their task. The momentous assault troops streamline their schedule, making enormous advances on the second. The mine-strewn roads add to the difficulty of keeping the supplies within easy reach of the racing Infantry.

Les Bourleaux, with its awesome defenses, takes a high toll on the advancing Allies, but the Yanks pull back to regroup, changing their course of action which trains their sights on the slopes north of St. Giles and Mount St. Martin. Simultaneously, the French continue to advance on the right flank of the Americans. Meuniere Woods to the east of St. Giles is consumed by the French. The Yanks capture strategic positions slightly east of the Vesle and the pocket at Fismes is finally doomed.

On the 5th, Allied artillery opens its fiery mouth in a large bombardment. Infantry follow the shells

and the Germans are racing for the opposite bank of the Vesle. The Germans mount an artillery attack but counter-fire from the Americans quickly silences the enemy guns. Fismes falls and during the course of the massive assault which began on the 18th, over a hundred guns and two thousand prisoners are taken.

**July 30 (Tuesday) 1918** — The 1st Marine Aviation force lands at Brest, France.

**August 12 (Monday) 1918** — Secretary of the Navy Josephus Daniels authorizes the Marine Corps to allow women to enlist in the Marine Corps Reserve for clerical tasks. [The following day, Opha M. Johnson, becomes the first woman Marine.

**September 12-16 September 1918 (Battle of St. Mihiel)**-The offensive made by more than 500,000 U.S. troops including the 2nd Division, USA led by Marine Corps major general John A. Lejeune. Major General Lejeune's mission is to break through the German trench lines of the St. Mihiel salient, a 30-mile wide salient that cuts into Allied lines by about 15 miles. It is defended by 10 German divisions, supported by artillery and has been held for about 4 years. Lejeune's objective is Thiaucourt, France. At 0500, on September 12, the attack is launched with the 2nd Division's lead brigade (9th and 23rd Infantry Regiments, USA). The division's Marine brigade (5th and 6th Marine Regiments) follow them closely. The 5th and 6th machine-gun battalions supported the advance. The 1st Provisional Tank Brigade also accompanies the attack, but the terrain was too muddy and mechanical breakdowns add to the failure of the tank attack. Nevertheless, the infantrymen overrun the trenches and reach the objective by 1000 hours. The U. S. Artillery had initiated a barrage that lasted for about one hour and it prevented the enemy from forming a counter-attack. Consequently, the advance units of the 2nd Division regroup and get re-supplied. By noon, Thiaucourt is seized. By day's end, the 2nd Division commanded by Major General Lejeune establishes a formidable front that stretches well beyond Thiaucourt and in the meantime it collapses German counterattacks. During the next several days, Major General Lejeune pushes his divisional artillery brigade forward to support his infantry (Army and Marines) which drives to the next line (Hindenburg Line) of defense by the 15th of December. In conjunction, the 2nd Division is relieved on the night of 15-16 September by the 78th U.S. Infantry Division. After being relieved the 2nd Division moves to another sector (Meuse Argonne Forest) of the Allied line. St. Mihiel and the surrounding area is free of German troops. The casualties sustained by the American three corps is about 7,000. The 2nd Division sustains 195 killed, 1,041 wounded and 292 missing. The 2nd Division seizes 3,300 prisoners and captures more than 115 artillery guns. The Germans sustained 7,500 killed or wounded.

**October 1 (Tuesday) 1918** — Americans, holding the ground in the vicinity of Apremont, France, are attacked by two German Regiments. Major Joseph H. Thompson's Battalion, the 110th Infantry, repulses the attack. Thompson charges on foot aside the one remaining tank against the enemy position, successfully knocking out a nest and allowing the Americans to advance. On this day, the 4th Marine Brigade takes the offensive at Blanc Mont, Champagne, France. In other activity, the Yanks continue to work tirelessly to rejuvenate the overworked tanks. The effort fields eighty-eight Tanks for combat today but fifty-nine are out of action at the end of the day. The gallant tank corps engages the remaining thirty against the enemy on the 5th but at day's end, only seventeen remain combat ready.

**October 3 (Thursday) 1918** — The U.S. Army 9th Infantry advances on Medeah Farm, France and encounters severe enemy fire. Private Frank J. Bart advances at a great risk to his life and silences the guns, allowing the column to advance. In other action, the 78th Infantry, 6th Regiment Marines, continue their offensive against the Germans at Blanc Mont, France. Corporal John Henry Pruit,

USMC, and Sergeant John J. Kelly, USMC, both receive the Medal of Honor for bravery during this action. Kelly, with grenade in hand, kills one gunner, wounds another and captures eight prisoners while Pruitt charges two machine-gun nests, capturing both and taking 40 prisoners. A short time later Pruitt is killed by artillery fire.

**October 5 (Saturday) 1918** — The American offensive rolls on effectively. The 28th Infantry advances closer to Exermont where they continue to find stiff German resistance. Sergeant Michael Ellis, Company C, singlehandedly attacks an enemy nest, killing two and capturing seventeen prisoners, then dashes through intense fire to capture 27 additional prisoners with their machine-guns, ending all obstruction to the American advance. Ellis keeps right on going and captures four more machine-gun nests and their crews. Ellis receives the Medal of Honor for his extraordinary gallantry. The U.S. 2nd Division, assisted by the French, assault and capture Blanc Mont, driving the German 4th Army back to the Aisne river. Pharmacist Mate John Balch sets up an advance medical station to aid wounded Marines. His courageous actions would earn him the Medal of Honor at Somme-Py.

**October 13 (Sunday) 1918** — Marine Corps Aviation Squadron #9, attached to the British, make their first raid over enemy lines. Marines have flown with Squadron 218 R.A.F. as observers earlier and come under attack from enemy aircraft. Marine Lt. Talbot and Gunnery Sgt. Robinson (wounded on the 14th) assist in chasing the planes and destroying one over Pittham Belgium.

**November 3 (Sunday) 1918** — The First Marine Regiment, commanded by Colonel Thomas C. Treadwell, departs Philadelphia on the USS *Hancock*, steaming towards Cuba to protect the lives and property of American citizens on the island. A revolution prompts this movement of the Marines. In other action, troops of the 89th Division, 356th Infantry, advance on Le Champy, France to find the Germans putting up stiff resistance. Captain Marcellus H. Chile leads a charge through waist-high water against German machine-gun fire. The Americans take their objective but the heroic Chile gives his life.

**November 11 (Monday) 1918** — At the whim of the victorious Allies and at a cost of additional lives, the fighting ceases, bringing an end to World War One at the 11th hour of the 11th day of the 11th month 1918. Total casualties for this war including all participating armies exceed 37,500,000 men. This figure includes a death toll of 8,500,000. Americans suffer 320,000 total casualties, once again proving that the cost of Liberty is high.

**December 1 (Sunday) 1918** — The 2nd Division, U.S. Army, including the 4th Marine Brigade march triumphantly into Germany.

**February 20 (Thursday) 1919 - (Dominican Republic)** In the Dominican Republic, a Marine Patrol, commanded by Captain William C. Byrd, springs an attack against a bandit stronghold in the mountains, killing about twelve of the band of fifty, and capturing their supplies.

**February 26 (Wednesday) 1919 - (Dominican Republic)** - An advance detachment of Marine" attached to the 15th Regiment land at San Pedro de Marcoris Dominican Republic. They will assist the 4th Marine Regiment which is battling bandits on the island. The remainder of the Regiment and the First Marine Air Squadron will arrive at Santo Domingo, Dominican Republic in the beginning of March. This will be the initiation of Infantry and Air units (Marine) working in coordination for the first time. The Air contingent, commanded by Captain Walter E. McCaughtry, consists of six JN-6 (Jenny) Biplanes and will operate from the jungle Airstrip, near Consuelo. The Marines will institute many small Patrols, usually mounted, as a tactic to eradicate the bandits.

**March 22 (Saturday) 1919** - In the Dominican Republic, bandits ambush a Marine Patrol composed of nineteen men (44th Company). Marine Riflemen and an accompanying machine gun rout the

bandits. The bandits sustain about fifteen dead. The Marines suffer no casualties.

**March 31 (Monday) 1919**, - Marines (Squadron E) land at Port au Prince, Haiti to assist Marine ground forces fighting bandits on the island. Four Companies of the 7th Marine Regiment based at Guantanamo, Cuba had arrived about a week earlier. The Marines will engage the bandits at Hinche, Haiti on the 4th of April.

**May 14 (Wednesday) 1919** - The United States lands a detachment of Marines, attached to the USS Arizona, at Constantinople, Turkey for the protection of the American Consulate after Greeks occupy the city.

**June 30 (Monday) 1919** - The active duty strength of the Marine Corps stands at 48,834 and is composed of 2,270 Officers and 46,564 men. On the 11th of July, Congress depletes this strength, authorizing a peacetime Marine Corps consisting of 1,093 Officers and 27,400 men.

**July 30 (Wednesday) 1919**, - The USS *New Orleans* arrives at Vladivostok, Russia. Marines debark to protect American interests. At present, the White Russians under General Denikin and Admiral Kolchak are attempting to overthrow the Bolshevik government of Lenin.

**August 13 (Wednesday) 1919** - In the Dominican Republic, a group of bandits ambush a Marine Patrol, composed of four men, under Corporal Bascome Breedon. The superior force charges with machetes and guns, killing three of the defenders. Private Thomas Rushfort, both hands rendered useless from wounds, mounts his horse and rides through the enemy to get reinforcements; however, it is too late to save the other men.

**October 7 (Tuesday) 1919** - U.S. Marines engage bandits led by Charlemagne Peralte, at Port au Prince, Haiti. Peralte escapes capture.

**October 27 (Monday) 1919** - The Marine Corps Band and a Marine Battalion render honors to King Albert of Belgium, Queen Elizabeth, and the Prince of Wales upon their arrival at Washington, D.C.

**October 31-November 1 1919** - A Marine Patrol, including Gendarmerie (Haitian Soldiers), infiltrates the Cacaos' headquarters" of Chief Charlemagne Peralte. The Marines are discovered, but still manage to disperse the attackers and kill the leader. This daring act would earn both Sergeant Hera H. Hanako and Corporal William R. Button the Medal of Honor. This Patrol kills captures or disperses approximately 1,200 bandits. By June of the following year, thousands of bandits surrender or are captured, allowing the Marines to begin to transfer the duties of policing the island to the Gendarmerie.

**December 17 (Wednesday) - 1919** - The 8th Marine Regiment is reactivated to assist the Marines in Haiti in ridding the island of outlaws. The Regiment will be commanded by Lt. Colonel L. McCarty Little.

**May 19 (Wednesday) 1920** - Marine encounters with outlaws. Continue. A Patrol led by Captain Jessie Perkins surprises Caco bandits in Haiti and the bandit leader, Benoit Batrville, successor to Charlemagne Peralte, is killed during the engagement.

**June 30 (Wednesday) 1920** - Major General Commandant George Barnett is relieved "for reasons mostly political." His successor is Major General John A. Lejeune (13th Commandant). At this time active duty strength of the Marine Corps is 17,165; 1,104 Officers and 16,061 men.

**August 20 (Friday) 1920** - A U.S. Marine Guard is established at the American mission in Tungchow, China.

**December 1920** - In the Dominican Republic, Major Alfred A. Cunningham, who had commanded the 1st Marine Aviation Force in France, assumes command of the 1st Aviation Squadron, which is now using DH-4bs, a more modern Biplane. Captain Cunningham remains in command until 1922,

when he is succeeded by Major Edwin A. Brainard. The Squadron maintains a strength of about 130 enlisted men and nine Officers and six operational Planes. In addition, a new Airfield had been established around Santo Domingo City.

**February 11 (Friday) 1921** - A U.S. Seaplane crashes near the Marine barracks at Pensacola, Florida. The quick thinking of Pvt. Joseph Smith, a sentry on duty, saves the Pilot's life and he receives the Medal of Honor for his bravery.

**November 7 (Monday) 1921** - President Harding orders the Marine Corps to assist with the protection of the U.S. Mail.

**January 25 (Wednesday) 1922** - Anti-America feelings are escalating in Nicaragua. Marines, attached to the USS *Galveston* will land at Corinto to reinforce Marines positioned there.

**February 11 (Saturday) 1922** - Marines continue to train Haitian troops to rid Haiti of the bandits which are still terrorizing the people. The United States appoints Brigadier General John A. Russell as American High Commissioner and personal representative of the President to the Government of Haiti. He retains the position until 12 November 1930.

**April 28 (Friday) 1922** - Civil disturbances occur in Peking, China. Marines led by Captain Charles H. Martin would debark the USS *Albany* at Peking, to bolster the American legation guard.

**May 5 (Friday) 1922** - U.S. Marines, attached to the Asiatic Fleet, are landed at Tientsin, China, positioned to move against Peking if necessary, to protect American lives during the ongoing political crisis. Another contingent of Marines lands at Taku, China and is positioned to move into Shanghai to protect American interests if necessary.

**August 1 (Tuesday) 1922** - The 3rd and 15th Regiments stationed in the Dominican Republic are disbanded and its personnel reassigned to the newly reestablished 1st Marine Regiment.

**February 14 (Wednesday) 1923** - The USS *Ashville* arrives at Masu Island, China. Marines debark to protect Americans from Chinese bandits.

**August 11 (Saturday) 1923** - The Marine Corps Recruit Depot, Mare Island, California, is moved to San Diego.

**November 15 (Thursday) 1923** - A detachment of Marines debarks at Tungshan, China to protect fifty American missionaries, endangered after the defeat of the forces under Sun Yat-sen at Sheklung.

**February 27 (Wednesday) 1924** - The United States and the Dominican Republic enter into a new treaty, which would subsequently allow the Marines to be withdrawn from the island. In other activity, a U.S. flotilla arrives at La Ceiba, Honduras. Political turmoil is causing additional defensive action to be taken by the U.S. to protect American citizens. Marines led by Lt. Theodore Cartwright debark the USS *Denver*, to fortify the Marine contingents already there. Additional Marines land during the following week.

**August 6 (Wednesday) 1924** - Political stability is returning to the Dominican Republic. The U.S. Marines, 4th Regiment, depart the island and return to duty in the States. A small detachment remains behind to complete the transition.

**September 7 (Sunday) 1924** - Additional Marines, attached to the USS *Rochester*, debark at La Ceiba, Honduras to comply with the American Consul's request for more protection.

**September 9 (Tuesday) 1924** - The USS *Huron* disembarks a detachment of Marines to guard a portion of the boundary at Shanghai, China. Marines would also be rushed to reinforce the legations at both Tientsin and Peking, to deal with the continuing political instability.

**September 16 (Tuesday) 1924** - The Dominican Republic now has the responsibility of policing itself, as the last contingent of the 4th Marines returns to the United States.

**October 6 (Monday) 1924** - The U.S. Navy is pressed into Shanghai to protect American interests. Other Marine contingents, positioned at Canton, China will be reinforced toward the end of the month to assist efforts to contain the ongoing political unrest.

**January 15 (Thursday) 1925** - Political turmoil continues in China. U.S. Marines attached to the USS *Sacramento* land at Shanghai to defend American interests. A second Marine Expedition Force, commanded by Captain James J. Schwerin, debarks the USS *Barker*, USS *Borie* and the USS *Whipple* ten days later, to reinforce the defensive posture already there.

**February 28 (Saturday) 1925** - Congress authorizes the Marine Corps Reserve. The Marine Corps will begin to organize the reserves on July 1st.

**March 13 (Friday) 1925** - The U.S. Navy participates with the army in joint maneuvers around Oahu, Hawaii. About 750 Marines from Quantico (Virginia), also participate.

**April 20 (Monday) 1925** - The U.S. Navy finds itself once again ferrying Marines to trouble spots around the globe. The USS *Denver* dispatches Marines to La Ceiba, Honduras to protect Americans in the area.

**June 5 (Friday) 1925** - The USS *Huron* arrives at Shanghai. Marines are sent ashore to assist in the protection of the International Settlement. The USS *Aberenda* would arrive on the 9th and dispatches her contingent of Marine reinforcements to bolster those forces already there.

**July 1 (Wednesday) 1925** - The USS *Huron* anchors at Shanghai with another contingent of Marines. These Marines, commanded by Captain William Richards, debark. In other activity, the Marine Corps Reserve, authorized by Congress on February 28th, is established.

**August 1 (Saturday) 1925** - The Marines which were needed to protect the American Legation at Managua, Nicaragua, withdraw. They will depart the country on U.S. naval ships in a few days. Several weeks after the departure of the Marines, a group of Conservatives barge into a celebration being held by some liberal cabinet members, accuse them of treason and throw them into jail. On the 25th of October, the fortifications at La Loma are overtaken by Emiliano Chamorro's followers. Soon after, President Solorzano and Vice President Sacasa flee the country.

**October 28 (Wednesday) 1925** - The Marine Garrison stationed at Tientsin, China is further bolstered by the arrival of more reinforcements.

**November 9 (Monday) 1925** - Marines, led by Captain A. Wilson, are shifted from Shanghai to Tientsin, China, to protect Americans. This type of checkerboard movement would continue as the instability in China remains constant. On the 30th of December, additional Marines debark naval vessels at Shanghai.

**May 6 (Thursday) 1926** - The USS *Galveston* arrives and drops Marines at Blue Fields, Nicaragua to protect U.S. citizens after revolution erupts. The sole purpose of the Marines is to prevent riots or fighting in the city. They do not interfere with the dispute. This detachment of Marines will be relieved on October 31st, when fresh reinforcements arrive aboard the USS *Rochester*.

**October 10 (Sunday) 1926** - The USS *Denver* arrives at Corinto, Nicaragua. Her contingent of Marines would be put ashore to protect American lives as the revolution continues. The USS *Denver* delivers additional Marines at Blue Fields on November 30th, relieving those who had arrived on the USS *Rochester*.

**October 20 (Wednesday) 1926** - President Calvin Coolidge authorizes the use of 2,500 Marines to guard the U.S. Mail.

**December 23 (Thursday) 1926** - The USS *Rochester* arrives at Rio Grande, Nicaragua to dispatch a contingent of Marines and sailors to protect Americans on shore. The USS *Cleveland* would see

her contingent of Marines debark at Bragman's Bluff for the same purpose.

**January 5 (Wednesday) 1927** - Marines, attached to the USS *Denver*, debark at Pearl Cay, Nicaragua and establish an outpost. On the following day, additional Marines stationed on the USS *Galveston* land at Corinto, from where they will move to Managua, Nicaragua to protect the American Legation.

**January 7 (Friday) 1927** - The USS *Denver* arrives at Rio Grande, Nicaragua to land Marine reinforcements. Two days later, Marines attached to the USS *Cleveland* debark at Prinzapolca, Nicaragua to initiate a neutral zone.

**January 10 (Monday) 1927** - Nicaragua continues to see the arrival of U.S. Marines, as the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines arrives at Blue Fields. More reinforcements will arrive shortly. In the U.S., President Coolidge informs Congress that he will initiate full measures to protect American citizens in Nicaragua. He will authorize the sale of 3,000 Krag rifles, 200 Browning machine guns and 3,000,000 rounds of ammunition to the government of President Diaz.

**February 1 (Tuesday) 1927** - Through the request of Diaz, U.S. Marines relieve government troops and deploy to protect the city of Managua, Nicaragua.

**February 9 (Wednesday) 1927** - A detachment of U.S. Marines, commanded by Major Samuel P. Budd, debark the USS *Pecos*, to reinforce the Marine force protecting the International Settlement in Shanghai during the ongoing civil war.

**February 19 (Saturday) 1927** - The USS *Galveston* dispatches Marines to establish an outpost along the railroad at Leon, Nicaragua. In two days, the Marine detachment aboard the USS *Trenton* arrives at Corinto, where they will set up a defensive stance to protect American citizens in the vicinity of Chinandega and Leon. The government troops had lost and resecured Chinandega, but it had been reduced to rubble.

**March 4 (Wednesday) 1927** - The *Meifoo XIV*, an American vessel which had been captured by Chinese rebels, is recaptured by a joint Marine-Navy assault unit. The Americans had been transported by the USS *Pittsburgh*.

**March 1927** - During March, the turmoil continues in Nicaragua. On the 7th, Brigadier General Logan Feland, USMC, arrives at Corinto to assume control of the 2,000 Marines in the country. During the beginning of the month, an American diplomat is assaulted and injured, prompting additional Marines to deploy at Matagalpa. Incidents have caused Belgium and Italy to ask for protection of its citizens by the U.S. and the Chinese make the same request.

**March 16 (Wednesday) 1927** - Political turmoil fuels further instability in China, forcing the U.S. to send in additional troops. Twelve hundred men arrive in Shanghai aboard the USS *Chaumont*. More Marines arrive in May, which initiates the forming of the 3rd Marine Brigade.

**May 4 (Wednesday) 1927** - The USS *Grant* arrives at Olongapo, Philippines, where she will land Marine units including Aviation Contingents.

**May 16 (Monday) 1927** - Marines participate at the Battle of La Paz Centro, Nicaragua.

**May 21 (Saturday) 1927** - Marines garrisoned in the Philippines begin to arrive at Shanghai. They bring a contingent of light tanks with them. Additional units, the 6th Regiment and 1st Battalion, 10th Marines, further bolster the force when they arrive on the 21st.

**June 10 (Friday) 1927** - U.S. Marines occupy the town of Ocotal, Nicaragua. At the end of June, total Marine Corps strength stands at 19,198 men - 18,000 enlisted men and 1,198 officers (active duty).

**July 15 (Friday) 1927** - The revolution in Nicaragua continues. The USS *Tulsa* arrives at El

Gallo and lands a contingent of Marines to set up an outpost. On the following day, Marine infantry engages approximately 700 Nicaraguan rebels, led by Augusto C. Sandino in the vicinity of Ocatal. The Marines receive air support from aviation units that swoop low, dive bombing the rebels. This is the first time that Marine Aircraft and Infantry units coordinate in battle (first Marine dive-bombing attack in support of ground troops). The rebels had demanded surrender, but Captain Gilbert D. Hatfield ignores the request. Successive assaults are beaten back before the arrival of the planes. The Marines lose 1 dead and 5 wounded. The rebels lose 56 dead (recovered) and over 100 wounded. Two days later, rebels ambush a Marine patrol near San Fernando. Of the 40 bandits, 11 are killed. One Marine is wounded. The patrol encounters another bandit force, but advances to Jicaro and occupies it without incident.

**September 17 (Saturday) 1927** - Marines attached to the USS *Tulsa* land and occupy the town of Bragman's Bluff, Nicaragua. The USS *Cleveland* arrives on the 23rd with reinforcements to relieve the contingent, which had landed earlier.

**September 19 (Monday) 1927** - In Nicaragua, at Telpaneca, a group of Sandino's rebels about 200 strong attempt to surprise a contingent of 20 Marines and 25 Guardia Nacional troops. Dynamite is thrown near the Marines' barracks, but the startled troops recover quickly. By dawn, the rebels had lost about 25 killed and approximately 50 wounded. One Marine is killed and another succumbs later in the day. One of the Guardia troopers is wounded.

**January 1 (Sunday) 1928** - Marines assist Nicaraguan troops engaged against a band of rebels at Sapotillal Ridge, Nicaragua. The Marines and government troops take the crest after a bitter fight, and pause to await reinforcements. They subsequently make it to Quilali.

**January 6-8 1928** - Marines come under heavy rebel fire in Quilali, Nicaragua. Lieutenant Christian F. Schilt braves the enemy fire, taking off ten times to evacuate the wounded and return with supplies and allow the besieged Marines to hold their positions. His plane has no brakes and Marines grab its wings upon landing to slow the aircraft. Schilt would become a recipient of the Medal of Honor for his courage. The operation to destroy the rebel leader Sandino and his fortress at El Chipote fails. The patrols which had initiated the quest on December 19th, 1927, return to San Albino.

**January 14 (Saturday) 1928** - Marine Aircraft successfully dive bomb rebel positions at El Chipote, Nicaragua. On the following day, the Navy puts additional Marine reinforcements ashore at Corinto.

**January 15 (Sunday) 1928** - Three hundred Marines, commanded by General Logan Peland, arrive at Corinto, Nicaragua.

**January 18 (Wednesday) 1928** - The force of U.S. Marines in Shanghai now stands at 1,200. In addition, there are 3,354 now deployed at Tientsin and another 521 at Peking.

**February 27 (Monday) 1928** - Nicaraguan troops with the assistance of Marines, battle rebels at Bromaderos, Nicaragua. Two attacks are repulsed before reinforcements arrive at dawn. Lt. O'Day's patrol loses three killed and ten wounded. Two additional men die before they be evacuated. The rebels lose 10 dead and 30 wounded.

**March 25 (Sunday) 1928** - The USS *Rochester* anchors at Corinto, Nicaragua to place Marines ashore to assist Nicaraguan troops which are attempting to drive the rebels out and restore order in the area.

**May-December 1928** - United States Marines continue to assist the Nicaraguan Army in their efforts to defeat the rebels. Marines participate in skirmishes including the battles at the Cua River, the Coco River and the battle of Cuje.

**January 19 (Saturday) 1929** - The 3rd Marine Brigade, commanded by Smedley Butler, is

disbanded at Tientsin, China. The Marines pull out by the end of January and are reassigned. With Chiang Kai-shek in power the political situation in China stabilizes, however; the rift between the Nationalists and the Communists does not end. Mao Tse-tung will emerge as the Communist leader.

**March 5 (Tuesday) 1929**- Major General Wendell C. Neville becomes the fourteenth Commandant of the Marine Corps, succeeding Major General John A. Lejeune who retires to assume the post of Superintendent of the Virginia Military Institute.

**August 31 (Saturday) 1929** - The 11th Marine Regiment, based in Nicaragua, receives notification that it will be disbanded. The Marines head back to Quantico, Virginia to be reassigned.

**August 6 (Wednesday) 1930** - Major General Ben H. Fuller becomes the fifteenth Commandant of the Marine Corps.

**February 21 (Saturday) 1931** - The State Department revamps its Nicaraguan policy by withdrawing the Marine outposts in northern Nicaragua in order to concentrate in the area of Managua. Marines continue to assist the Guardia in ridding the country of rebels, but they change plans temporarily at the end of March, after a tremendous earthquake strikes Managua. The Marines are used to guard against looting and to set up first aid stations.

**April 13 (Monday) 1931** - Nicaraguan Guardia troops assisted by Marine Aircraft, repulse bandit attacks in the vicinity of Puerta Cabezas.

**February 3 (Wednesday) 1932** - The USS *Houston* arrives at Shanghai and Marines are debarked to bolster the 4th Marines in the face of rising Sino-Japanese hostilities and to protect American interests.

**April 24 (Sunday) 1932** - Marines and Guardia troops, on patrol for bandits around Costancia, Nicaragua, encounter some trouble as a live grenade becomes loose. Corporal LeRoy Truesdale grasps the grenade, losing his hand in the process, but his actions save the Patrol.

**January 1 (Sunday) 1933** - Nicaraguans inaugurate Juan B. Sacasa as President. U.S. Marines participate in the ceremony and within two days, the final remnants of the 2nd Marine Brigade depart the country.

**November 16 (Thursday) 1933** - President Roosevelt meets with Soviet Commissar for Foreign Affairs, Maxim Litvinov. Subsequent to the meeting, an announcement is made that the United States is re-establishing diplomatic relations with the Soviet Union. The U.S. had broken relations during 1919 due to the Bolsheviks seizure of power. The Russians are given trade status and they promise not to spread Communist propaganda in the United States. Marines arrive at Moscow on March 1st, 1934 to assume Embassy duty. The staff consists of 1 Officer and 6 enlisted men.

**December 8 (Friday) 1933** - This day marks the establishment of the Fleet Marine Force. The Navy and Marines have been working together as a formidable team for some time and now emphasis would be placed on quick reaction to hostilities against Americans.

**February 28 (Wednesday) 1934** - Major General Ben H. Fuller retires from the Corps, having reached the statutory age of 64. He is succeeded on the following day by Major General John N. Russell, Jr. who becomes the 16th commandant.

**April 9 (Monday) 1934** - The newly established Fleet Marine Force flexes its strength. Units from both the East and West coasts converge off the coast of Culebra, Puerto Rico to hold joint maneuvers. The Marines are now strengthened by Armor units and their expanding Air Force.

**August 1-15 1934** - A formal ceremony ends United States occupation of Haiti. The responsibility of protecting the island from bandits is turned over to the Haitian Army. Marines withdraw from the island by the 15th. Their presence had been due to a treaty signed with Haiti in 1915.

**April-June 1935** - The Fleet Marine Force engages in maneuvers at Midway Island in the Pacific where an American Base will be established.

**August 12 (Wednesday) 1936** - The USS *Augusta* arrives at Shanghai. A combined Navy-Marine contingent of 100 men lands to reinforce the 4th Marines. Additional Marines from the Philippines soon arrive, bringing total Marine strength in Shanghai to 2,536 men, enabling them to continue their defensive stance during the political crisis between China and Japan.

**May 6-8 1937** - A German Dirigible, the Hindenburg, crashes while attempting to land at Lakehurst Naval Air Station in New Jersey and rescue operations begin immediately. Thirty six of the 97 passengers are killed. A contingent of U.S. Marines, commanded by Lt. Colonel W. Galliford, assist in the rescue and also assume duty positions, to insure no rioting erupts. There is some thought that sabotage is responsible for the crash, but this theory is never substantiated.

**February 28 (Monday) 1938** - A contingent of 200 Marines led by Lieutenant W.C. James departs Peiping, China, to establish an outpost at Tientsin, in conjunction with existing forces of the U.S. Army.

**September 8 (Friday) 1939 - (United States)** President Roosevelt, realizing the situations in Europe and the Pacific are becoming even more dangerous, declares a Limited National Emergency. The proclamation increases Marine Corps strength from just over 18,000 to 25,000 men and permits the recall of retired officers and men.

**December 20 (Wednesday) 1939** -America still remains neutral, while Japan becomes more entrenched in Manchuria and the Russians and Germans are slicing up Europe. Sentiment in the U.S. still leans toward neutrality, while Roosevelt realizes the crisis is only worsening. The chief of naval operations instructs the Marine Corps to dispatch a unit to Midway Island, to establish a garrison to meet a possible Japanese threat.

**July 8 (Monday) 1940** -America senses danger close to its shores after France falls. The United States dispatches a force of Marines to Martinique, a French Colony in the Western Hemisphere off the coast of South America, to prevent German occupation. There is much concern over German presence in the Western Hemisphere.

**August 27 (Tuesday) 1940 - (United States)** President Roosevelt signs a joint resolution giving him authorization to mobilize army reserve units and the National Guard into Federal service for one year. The following Saturday, President Roosevelt calls the National Guard into national service, starting with 60,000 men whose next weekend drill will stretch for a year. The primary reason for calling up the National Guard had been the unpreparedness of the U.S. Army, because of twenty years of neglect by the United States, which had been sliding toward an isolationist position. During May of 1940, U.S. Army stands at about 185,000 men, and the U. S. Navy strength is around 120,000, including about 28,000 Marines. The U. S. Air Corps numbers about 22,000, for a grand total of approximately 300,000 men, totally inadequate to meet a genuine threat.

**September 3 (Tuesday) 1940 - (United States)** The United States, leaning heavily toward the Allied cause, agrees to transfer fifty U.S. destroyers to England. Roosevelt fashions the agreement in this way "Destroyers for Bases." In return, England reciprocates by allowing the United States to lease strategic military bases for a period of 99 years. U.S. Marines are dispatched to take defensive positions at Antigua, Jamaica, Trinidad, the Bahamas and other agreed upon islands, such as St. Lucia and British Guiana. Three days later, the first eight destroyers are transferred to the British.

**September 29 (Sunday) 1940 - (Pacific)** The U.S. Navy arrives at Midway. A contingent of Marines and sailors, from the Fleet Marine Force, debarks to set up defensive positions in the event of hostile

actions being initiated by Japan.

**October 15 (Tuesday) 1940 -** General mobilization orders are issued to all Marine Corps reserve battalions, informing them that they shall be assigned to active duty, not later than November 9th 1940.

**October 16 (Wednesday) 1940 - (United States)** Sixteen million Yanks register for the draft to comply with the Selective Training and Service Act.

**October 26 (Saturday) 1940 - (United States)** The Marines establish a Parachute Detachment at the Naval Air Station, Lakehurst, N.J. In other activity, at the request of President Roosevelt, the navy formulates a plan to invade Martinique. The operation calls for 2,800 Marines of the 1st Marine Brigade, reinforced by two reinforced army regiments, however; the assault proves unnecessary and it will be canceled.

**January 1941 - (United States)** The U.S. begins to bolster its Pacific defenses. The Marine 3rd Defense Battalion is ordered to Midway. Contingents of the 1st Battalion would be dispatched to Johnston and Palmyra. The Marines 6th Defense Battalion is sent to Pearl Harbor.

**February 1941 - (Atlantic-Cuba)** The Marines bolster their positions at Guantanamo, Cuba, reinforce the Hawaiian Islands and fortify Midway.

**March 1941 -** The neutral American buildup continues, although the official U.S. position is to stay neutral. The 7th Defense Battalion USMC arrives at Samoa on the 18th, being the first troops of the Fleet Marine Force to receive duty in the Southern Hemisphere during World War II.

**April 18 (Friday) 1941 -** American Admiral Kimmel requests high priority be given to the defenses of Wake Island, which is situated close to Japan. A Marine defense battalion is dispatched.

**April 22 (Tuesday) 1941 -** Congress authorizes an increase in the strength of enlisted men in the Marine Corps. The act also authorizes Marine Corps strength be placed at 20% of total Navy strength. The U.S. Navy increases its strength to 232,000 men.

**May 29 (Thursday) 1941 -** The United States prepares to land a combined army Marine force, consisting of 28,000 men, led by Major General Holland Smith, USMC, on the Azore Islands, in anticipation of a German invasion. Subsequent information confirms that the Germans are not planning to attack these Portuguese Islands and President Roosevelt decides to halt the operation.

**Spring 1941 -** America, anticipating conflict with both Japan and Germany, begins to rethink its options in the Pacific. The United States realizes it will have to bear the responsibility of defending the area. It had become apparent that the original plans to hold on to the Philippines would not be feasible, forcing the U.S. to begin increasing military strength there. In addition, the U.S. would contemplate the capture of the Caroline and Marshall Islands and also fix their sights on Midway, Johnston, Palmyra, Samoa and Wake Island, with Marine detachments being sent to each. General Douglas MacArthur will be returned to active duty, with the rank of Lieutenant General in July. He will be in charge of all troops (except naval) in the Far East.

**June 30 (Monday) 1941 - (United States)** The United States Navy, at present, has 1,899 Vessels of all types available. naval strength stands at approximately 284,427. Marine Corps strength is at 54,359, including 3,339 Officers. The U.S. Coast Guard strength has been built to 19,235.

**July 7 (Monday) 1941 - (United States)** President Roosevelt informs Congress that an agreement between the U.S. and Greenland has been attained, permitting the dispatching of U.S. Troops to Iceland. The 1st Marine Brigade, which had been organized under Brigadier General John Marston, lands at Reykjavik, Iceland. They have been transported, courtesy of a naval task force, commanded by Rear Admiral D.M. LeBreton. Marine presence prevents German occupation,

thus denying the Germans the use of a naval or air base, which could have been used against the Western Hemisphere. In other activity, the Marines establish the 1st Marine Aircraft Wing at Quantico, Virginia. It is commanded by Colonel Louis E. Woods. Three days later, on the 10th, the 2nd Marine Aircraft Wing will be established at San Diego, California and will be commanded by Francis P. Mulcahy.

**August 11 (Monday) 1941 - (Pacific-Midway)** The Marine 6th Defense Battalion, commanded by Commander Colonel Harold D. Shannon, arrives at Midway to begin preparations to relieve the 3rd Defense Battalion.

**September 1 (Monday) 1941 - (United States)** The Navy takes responsibility for protecting Allied Trans-Atlantic Convoys from the meridian of Iceland to a point off Argentina. In other activity, U.S. Admiral King, Commander Atlantic Fleet, delegates a Naval Task Group, calling it a Denmark Strait Patrol and giving it responsibility to operate in waters between Greenland and Iceland. **(China-Burma-India)** The situation in the Far East continues to worsen. The American Consul and Superior Officers in Shanghai, request that all U.S. Naval forces, including Marines, be withdrawn from China; the evacuation does not occur.

**September 11 (Thursday) 1941 - Pacific-Midway)** The Marine 6th Defense Battalion arrives at Midway and relieves the 3rd Battalion.

**September 24 (Wednesday) 1941 - (Atlantic)** The Marines (1st Provisional Brigade), are released from Naval jurisdiction to serve under Army jurisdiction while they maintain positions in Iceland.

**November 2 (Sunday) 1941 - (Pacific)** Additional Marines arrive at Wake Island, bringing total Marine Strength, including 15 Officers, to 388 men.

**November 19 (Wednesday) 1941 - (United States)** Marine Aircraft Group 21 is ordered to Midway, with instructions to modify the base for the use of aircraft. MacArthur continues to plead for Washington to strengthen the Philippines against attack by sending additional aircraft and infantry. He feels that with reinforcements and an increased Philippine Army, Japan can be stopped at the beaches.

**November 27 (Thursday) 1941 -** The USS *Madison* and the USS *Harrison*, depart Shanghai, evacuating the 4th Marines. Authorization had been given previously to move these troops to the Philippines. All naval commanders in the Pacific receive notification of the imminence of war with Japan through both the War and Navy Departments. The message reads in part "**AN AGGRESSIVE MOVE BY JAPAN IS EXPECTED WITHIN THE NEXT FEW DAYS.**" "**EXECUTE APPROPRIATE DEPLOYMENT.**" On the same day, General MacArthur receives similar notification from General Marshall: "**HOSTILE ACTION POSSIBLE AT ANY MOMENT. IF HOSTILITIES CANNOT BE AVOIDED ... THE UNITED STATES DESIRES THAT JAPAN COMMIT THE FIRST OVERT ACT.**" Pearl Harbor has not been mentioned as a specific target by the war or navy departments and it has been implied that Pearl Harbor hostilities are not considered "imminent or probable." At Pearl Harbor, U.S. naval task force commanders and army commanders are meeting with Admiral Kimmel when the word arrives. This particular conference is to determine which type of aircraft should be dispatched to the picket fence islands of Midway, Johnston, Palmyra, and Wake, which are suspected of being the first recipients of a Japanese attack. In attendance are Lt. General Walter C. Short, commander Hawaii; Major General Frederick L. Martin, Vice Admiral Brown; Rear Admiral Bellinger and Admiral Halsey in addition to Admiral Kimmel and staff members. The first choice is to send planes from General Martin's force, but upon questioning from Halsey, it is determined that the army planes are unable

to pursue further than 15 miles from shore. The choice becomes Marine Fighting Squadron 211 and the endeavor is to be kept strictly confidential, because of Japanese spies on Hawaii, which contains in excess of 150,000 Japanese. Major General Paul A. Putnam USMC, the commanding officer of Squadron 211 is one of two officers who are aware of the assignment. Pearl Harbor, despite the constant threat of attack by the Japanese is defended by exactly six U.S. Flying Fortresses that have the capability of locating and destroying Jap aircraft carriers. Admiral Kimmel had received a dispatch requesting that soldiers replace the Marines on Midway and Wake Islands. Admiral Kimmel and General Short determine that the suggestion is impossible, because the army has no guns, either surface or antiaircraft, and if relief occurs, the Marines would have to leave their equipment behind; there is no extra equipment to rearm the Marines upon arrival at Pearl Harbor. In addition, Admiral Kimmel receives a dispatch suggesting he remove all carriers from the vicinity of Pearl Harbor.

**November 28 (Friday) 1941 - (Pacific)** Marine Fighter Squadron 211 is given secret orders to depart Ewa and proceed to Ford Island (Pearl Harbor), from where the USS *Enterprise* will transport it to Wake Island. Admiral Halsey departs Pearl Harbor at 0700 with Task Force 2, but upon passing the channel he divides the force and creates Task Force 8 (this move had been authorized on previous day during meeting with Kimmel). Halsey also directs Task Force 8, which comprises the *Enterprise* three heavy cruisers and nine destroyers, to mount warheads on all torpedoes. He also instructs all pilots to attack and sink any ships sighted and to knock out any planes that venture into the planned course (Halsey is aware that no Allied vessels are in the area). Halsey's startling orders cause instant response from his staff. Commander William Buracker, unaware of the secrecy of the mission and the importance of the Japanese not discovering the planes in transit, rushes to Halsey and states: "Admiral, did you authorize this thing?" Halsey responds "Yes" and receives another question. "Do you realize this means war?" And again the response is affirmative. Admiral Halsey is not expecting any Japanese warships in his path, but is of the opinion that if they are around, it is to attack and if he doesn't fire first, his force will be struck and annihilated. The order stands and the task force heads for Wake screening an area of a 300 mile circumference to protect the fleet and the cargo. In other activity, Commander W.S. Cunningham, USN, relieves Major Devereux as Wake Island Commander. Major James P. S. Devereux has been island commander since October 5th. Although Admiral Kimmel has orders not to bomb submarines outside of the three mile limit, he issues orders to destroy any strange submarines in the operating areas and notifies the chief of naval operation of his actions.

**November 30 (Sunday) 1941 - (United States)** The total strength of the Marine Corps reaches 65,881 men. The Americans attempt to fortify Samoa by initiating anti-aircraft gun emplacements, to meet the threat. Although America expects an attack, it does not foresee that it will be against Pearl Harbor. The Japanese fleet, by radio silence, has allegedly fooled U.S. intelligence to erroneously report that it is in home port. The navy department directs Admiral Hart, commanding officer Asiatic Fleet, to search for information on Jap movements in the China Sea as an attack on the Kra Isthmus is imminent. On the following day, Kimmel receives a dispatch from the navy department (copy of dispatch to Admiral Hart) emphasizing attack against Malaya; there is no mention of attack or possibility of attack against Pearl Harbor.

**December 1 (Monday) 1941-(Pacific)** Marine reinforcements (2nd and 4th Defense Battalions) from the States arrive at Pearl Harbor to await further orders, which will move them to Wake Island to establish a permanent garrison.

**December 4 (Thursday) 1941 - (Pacific)** The aircraft carrier *Enterprise* arrives near Wake Island, delivering Marine Fighter Squadron 211, which takes off for Wake, on Japan's doorstep. The fighters are to fly continuous patrols in search of hostile ships and planes. Task Force 8, under Halsey, returns toward Pearl, anticipating arrival at 0730 on the 7th of December, but heavy seas hold up a refueling operation and the carriers run behind schedule.

**December 7 (Sunday) 1941 - (Pacific) BATTLE OF PEARL HARBOR** - Japan secretly positions Vice Admiral Nagumo's task force of 33 Ships, including six carriers, 200 miles north of Oahu, Hawaii. In Japan, there is a sense of anxiety concerning the secrecy of the mission. The hour in Tokyo is 0130 as the planes are taking off. In Washington, at 1130 it is still just another quiet Sunday. President Roosevelt's plea to Emperor Hirohito is in transit and will be delivered by Tojo, at 0300, Tokyo time, less than a half hour before Japanese commander Fuchida's planes attack Pearl Harbor. During the mere moments of a few hours, history will be drastically changed for the remainder of time. As the clock ticks away in Washington, the Japanese stall for time, as Ambassador Nomura asks the state department for a half hour deferment of the meeting to deliver Japan's final message to the U.S., concerning the situation in the Pacific. There is an edge of a warning concerning the possible presence of an enemy submarine in the early morning hours near Pearl, but thoughts of a major attack are not yet evident to the Americans.

The USS *Condor*, a minesweeper, patrolling near the entrance to Pearl Harbor, observes what appears to be a submarine. This information is transmitted to the USS *Ward*, a destroyer, which is moving into Pearl, after just having completed a patrol. About seven minutes pass, between the sighting, and the crew of the *Ward* receiving the message and taking action at a little before 04:00, but without results. The *Ward*, relaxes at about 0500, after a serious hour of general quarters, without locating any unidentified vessels and the *Ward* maintains a course which takes her toward the harbor. At 0600, the Imperial Navy's attack force is commencing its assault, presumed to reach Pearl Harbor in an hour and a half. Within fifteen minutes, the bombers and escort fighters have been launched by the six carriers and they are heading south toward the unsuspecting Yanks. In advance of the main body of aircraft, are reconnaissance seaplanes, which move in undetected. In addition, Japanese cruisers acting as a vanguard of the fleet are not detected either.

As the planes are closing on the harbor, the USS *Ward* is just about to enter Pearl. Its about 0630, and the watch on the *Ward* is observing a target ship being towed into the harbor when they spot an uninvited periscope, trailing behind, attempting to shadow the American target vessel and move right through the defenses unnoticed, into the harbor. General quarters are sounded and after making sure the intruder is foreign, the *Ward* closes, firing two shots from a distance of 100 yards, with the first shot missing and the second hitting the diminutive conning tower of the midget submarine at exactly 0645. The *Ward* follows the deck gun action with the release of four depth charges that succinctly finish the enemy submarine, then it dispatches the following message to headquarters: **"WE HAVE ATTACKED, FIRED UPON, AND DROPPED DEPTH CHARGES UPON SUBMARINE OPERATING IN DEFENSIVE SEA AREA!"** Unfortunately, the dispatched message from the destroyer to headquarters, does not reach the commanding officers. There have been many reports of unidentified submarines in waters near Pearl for about a year or so, but all had proved erroneous.

Commander Mitsuo Fuchida, leading the surprise attack against American installations at Pearl Harbor closes in for the kill. The Japanese send a total of 360 aircraft, including horizontal bombers, dive bombers and torpedo bombers to strike the unsuspecting Yanks, many of whom are sleeping

late or attending church this tranquil Sunday morning. A detachment of two men, Privates George Elliot and Joseph Lockhart, working the radar station high in the hills on Oahu, pick up the enemy planes at 0702 and excitedly pass on the information of a large formation of planes heading for Pearl Harbor. The person on duty at headquarters accepts the formation of planes as the expected B-17 flying fortresses, due from California and does not react, except to tell the two privates not to worry. Japanese planes begin flying over Kahuku Point, a little after 0730, maneuvering around the Kodakan Peaks swarming toward Oahu from the southwest to deliver the crushing blow against its airfields. In accordance with the prediction of a local radio station, which is being heard on the planes' radios, Fuchida's invaders break through the clouds, entering clear skies as they approach their targets. So leisurely is the approach, Fuchida actually peers through his binoculars, scanning the area before ordering his force to attack.

The enemy carriers are out of harms way and full of happy Japanese, cheering their pilots that had ascended on one of the most cowardly sneak attacks in history against the United States of America. At the slumbering harbor there are about 90 American vessels, including nine cruisers, eight battleships, 28 destroyers and five of the 22 submarines. Many other warships, including all carriers are out of the harbor and there seems to be no great thought of an invasion against Pearl Harbor, situated 8,000 miles from Japan. Most officers have considered this possible, but not probable. Admiral Halsey's task force is due at Pearl Harbor at 0800, but thanks to some inclement weather he is running behind schedule. Halsey, in an effort to give his pilots extra practice and the ground batteries an opportunity to spot live targets, dispatches planes from the Enterprise to arrive at Pearl before the fleet. As the Admiral is having breakfast at 0755, a terse dispatch is handed to him: **"JAPANESE AIR ATTACK PEARL. THIS IS NO DRILL."** Halsey, at first glance, assumes that Pearl had been firing at his planes, but soon realizes that his pilots are flying right into it a war without warning.

The first wave of enemy planes strikes just prior to 0800 hours. Bombs and bullets strafe the entire area, but the colors are raised in disciplined fashion on the USS Nevada, as if it is an ordinary day. As soon as the brief ceremony ends, all hands race for battle stations. As the colors are raised on the USS *Utah*, two torpedoes interrupt the ceremony and the mighty battleship is sent to the bottom, taking with her 58 men who have been either riddled by Jap bullets or temporarily entombed when the vessel rolls over. In short order, the neatly parked planes at Hickam Field and the ships at Ford Island are set ablaze by bombers which also blast battleship row, where in some instances, PBVs at the ramps on Ford Island ejaculate in the air in pieces. The Stars and Stripes lay amidst row after row of burning ships.

On battleship row, the *Arizona*, *California*, *Maryland* and the *Tennessee*, along with the *Oklahoma*, *Nevada* and the *West Virginia* are besieged, their valiant crews are caught in a sudden inferno. The *Pennsylvania*, another of the battleships, is trapped in drydock, but her guns are operational and the anti-aircraft crew joins with the other gunners, pouring fire into the attacking planes. Close by, three American destroyers are also captive in dry dock when they come under the sudden savage and relentless assault. The USS *Shaw*, isolated in a floating dry dock, is ravaged within the first 20 minutes of the assault, being struck by several bombs, one of which devastates the mess (kitchen). Fires spread and within a short time the magazine explodes. Instinctively, the dry dock is flooded to aid the fire fighters, but as the dock becomes submerged, so does the *Shaw*, and the waters around her are consumed by flaming fuel. The destroyers *Cassin* and *Downes*, tucked near the *Pennsylvania*, are sitting ducks as their Guns lack parts. The battleship *Pennsylvania* continues to

fill the sky with anti-aircraft fire, buffering the two destroyers, while the *Cassin's* operational machine guns direct their guns in concert.

The crew of the *Downes*, reassembles its machine guns in record time to join the fight. During the process, the crew must break the locks to get to the ammunition. As more bombs strike the dry dock area, the fuel tank of the *Downes*, is ignited, causing a huge explosion that ravages, but doesn't disable the crew. An incendiary bomb then strikes the *Downes* and flames flow like lava across the deck from a vociferous volcano. Some crewmen are instantly transformed into ashes, while others are burned beyond recognition. The *Cassin*, stranded next to the *Downes*, becomes the recipient of the rapid moving fire. Both of these destroyers soon resemble molten steel rubbish, but will ultimately be salvaged and join the dedicated fight in the Pacific against the Japanese. The majority, 14 out of the 17 destroyers in port, are able to avoid major damage and eventually make it out of their moorings to engage in antisubmarine activity and join in the search for the Japanese fleet after the morning devastation ceases.

American fighting men are coping as best as possible. Rescue operations get underway immediately to evacuate the wounded and salvage as much equipment as possible. Fortunately, many of the men are ashore when the attack occurs or the loss of life would be far worse. The *Arizona*, suffers a horrid fate as a bomb drops directly down one of her stacks, exploding the boiler room and killing all hands. The USS *Arizona*, which becomes a most hallowed shrine for these gallant American servicemen, killed by an enemy which had not declared war until after the attack was underway. These valiant sentinels of freedom still sleep in the harbor as an indelible reminder of the Japanese treachery and a stirring testimony of the deeds of those Yanks at Pearl; 15 receive the Medal of Honor for their actions.

The carriers at sea escape the ruthless assault. In addition, the Japanese curiously spare the sub base, although there are five submarines in port. The subs manage to join in the action and also pick up survivors in the burning sea. The USS *Tautog* crewmen man their deck guns when the Jap planes come in rapidly over battleship row and as the destroyers cease fire, the *Tautog*, picks up the tempo and blasts a plane from the sky, giving her the first submarine unassisted kill (plane) of the war. In addition, the *Curtiss*, a seaplane tender, later damaged by a crashing enemy plane, destroys a midget submarine. It will receive the dubious honor of being raised and cemented into the foundation of the U.S. submarine pier.

The Americans add to their difficulties when the over-stressed ground crews, desperately engaged with the attackers, inadvertently fire upon U.S. flying fortresses attempting to reach Pearl Harbor. Additional army and naval planes also come under attack by friendly fire. By the time the second wave of planes appear, at just about 0840, most of the damage had been done. The second wave roars into action against the Americans, as eighty-six dive bombers, over fifty horizontal bombers and three dozen fighters whack the already devastated defenders at Pearl. Much of the planes' effort is concentrated on the USS *Nevada*, intentionally grounded at Waipo Point to prevent it being sunk where it might block the narrow harbor. When this attack ceases, the navy has lost four battleships, one mine layer, and a target ship. Three cruisers, three destroyers and two other vessels are damaged. All but three, the *Oklahoma*, the *Utah* and the *Arizona*, come back to haunt the Japs in the future. In addition, 188 American aircraft are destroyed, including eleven launched from the *Enterprise*.

By 1 P.M., the balance of the enemy planes have returned to their carriers. American carriers, based at Pearl Harbor, are out of port, saving them and giving the U.S. a sign of hope and the means to strike back. American ships including Halsey's fleet search for the enemy fleet, but they disappear

into the sunset, celebrating the deaths of the Yanks at Pearl. The entire West Coast could have been jeopardized if the Japanese task force had decided to move against it. Fortunately, the Japanese chose to return to the homeland. Only God knows the thoughts of those who perished for their country. One example of fidelity that exemplifies the actions of all Americans on this fateful day are the final words of Machinist Mate Robert R. Scott, who steadfastly refused to leave his trapped companions on the mangled battleship, the USS *California*: **"THIS IS MY STATION AND I WILL STAY AND GIVE THEM AIR AS LONG AS THE GUNS ARE GOING."** The *California* had been staggered at 08:05 by torpedoes that cause explosions and fires: the damage was so severe, that an order to abandon is given-and ignored, until further actions prove in vain. Survivors plummet into the boiling water and swim through the burning sea, as the *California* goes down. Rescue workers battle the overturned vessel without rest, in response to the desperate taps of life, being pounded against the hull from the inside. This manifest effort saves 32 men. An additional 415 men on the *California* are lost. In a last fling with arrogance, the Japanese commanding officer, Fushida, makes a solitary pass over the wreckage and carnage, taking photographs of his remarkable victory.

On the following day, Admiral Halsey moves his fleet into the battered harbor. It is a profane sight that Halsey would never forget and one that made him anxious to take the war to Japan. It will be Admiral Halsey, who ferries Colonel Doolittle's bomber squadron on the famous carrier raid against Japan. The United States loss at Pearl: 2,004 Sailors, 108 Marines and 222 Soldiers killed; wounded: Army, 360; Marines, 75; Navy, 912. The Japanese lose fewer than 100 men. In addition, the Japanese lose five midget submarines and 28 aircraft. The damage to the U.S. fleet is as follows: Sunk battleships *Oklahoma* (BB-37), *Arizona* (BB-39), *California* (BB-44), *West Virginia* (BB-48). In addition the minelayer *Oglala* (CM-4) and the target ship *Utah* (AG-16) are sunk. Damaged: battleships *Nevada* (BB-36), *Pennsylvania* (BB-38), *Tennessee* (BB-43), *Maryland* (BB-46). Light cruisers: *Helena* (CL-50), *Honolulu* (CL-48), *Raleigh* (CL-7). Destroyers: *Cassin* (DD-372), *Downes* (DD-375), *Shaw* (DD-373). In addition, the seaplane tender *Curtiss* (AV-4) and the repair ship *Vestal*, (AR-4) are also damaged. **THE JAPANESE DECLARATION OF WAR AGAINST THE UNITED STATES ARRIVES IN WASHINGTON D.C. AFTER THE REPREHENSIBLE ATTACK AND MASSACRE AT PEARL HARBOR.**

**December 7 (Sunday) 1941 - Pacific-Midway)** Two Japanese destroyers, the *Akebono* and *Ushio* bombard American positions on Midway Island, inflicting severe damage to the installation. The Marines (6th Defense Battalion) suffer 14 casualties. Two U.S. destroyers, the *Argonaut* and the *Trout* are on patrol in the vicinity of Midway Island, but have no encounters with the enemy. In addition the submarines *Tambor* and *Triton*, are operating near Wake Island, but encounter no enemy activity.

**December 8 (Monday) 1941 - (Pacific-China-Burma-India)** A small contingent of Marines at Tientsin, Peiking and Camp Holcomb, China, are forced to surrender to the Japanese. Colonel William Ashurst USMC, the senior officer surrenders the troops. The USS *Wake* (PR-3), a river gunboat, surrendered at Shanghai, after the crew tries unsuccessfully to destroy the vessel. It becomes the first and only fighting ship to surrender to the Japanese. In other activity, the S.S. *President Harrison*, on a mission to evacuate the sparse contingent of Marines at Ching-wangtao, China, runs aground in the vicinity of Sha Wai Shan, China and is captured by the Japanese.

**December 11 (Thursday) 1941 - (Pacific-Wake Island)** - At dawn, a Japanese squadron eases near the coast and begins to bombard the island. The Japanese then attempt to invade, but the Marine

1st Defense Battalion firing its shore guns, turning back the enemy naval squadron, while its 450 man invasion force is still embarked. To the dismay of their squadron commander, Admiral Kajioka, the Japanese are handily repulsed at both Wilkes and Wake Islands by the Marine garrison, commanded by Major Devereux, numbering 15 Officers and 373 enlisted men. Old Glory will not be torn down on Wake, by the Japanese today. The Japs pay a heavy price as the remnants (five operational planes left) of Fighter Squadron 211 bomb and strafe the withdrawing force, sinking two destroyers. The *Hayete* is the first Japanese surface ship to be sunk during World War II, and the honors go to Marine shore batteries. The other Japanese destroyer sunk is the *Kisaragi*, by Marine Corps pilots.

**December 14 (Sunday) 1941 - (Pacific-Wake Island)** Japanese fighter planes escalate the siege of Wake Island. Beleaguered Marines defiantly resist capitulation. At day's end, only one airstrip remains operational. The U.S., in a desperate maneuver to reinforce Wake Island, dispatches Task Force 14, commanded by Rear Admiral F. J. Fletcher, from Hawaii. The task force departs within 24 hours.

**December 15 (Monday) 1941 - (Pacific-Hawaii)** An attempt by the United States to reinforce Wake Island is initiated. Task Force 14, commanded by Rear Admiral Fletcher, departs Pearl Harbor. The reinforcements include contingents of the 4th Defense Battalion and Marine Fighter Squadron 211.

**December 16 (Wednesday) 1941 - (United States)** In the States, the Marine Corps establishes the 7th Defense Battalion, consisting of both artillery and infantry units. This force will subsequently depart San Diego for Samoa, to garrison the island.

**December 20 (Saturday) 1941 - (Pacific-Wake Island)** A U.S. Navy PBY lands at Wake Island, bringing physical contact with the outside world for the first time since the outbreak of war. The defiant defenders are informed of the task force which is rushing to their aid. It will be impossible to hold on much longer without help. **(Pacific-Philippines)** Another Japanese wave storms Mindanao. After brushing aside 2,000 Filipino troops, the Japanese capture Davao and its airfield. The Marines are ordered to evacuate Cavite. The 4th Marines are assigned to the command of General Douglas MacArthur.

**December 21 (Sunday) 1941 - (Pacific-Wake Island)** The U.S. Navy PBY, which had brought the news of reinforcements heading to Wake, departs, taking with it the last Americans who would leave the embattled island before its fall to the Japanese. American intelligence reports a strong build-up of Japanese Naval and Air forces in the vicinity of the Marshall Islands. This news suggests that the relief force which is heading for Wake might be detected by the enemy. Japanese Planes continue to pound the defenses on Wake as raids knock out the remaining Planes of Squadron 211. The Marine Planes on Wake have been eliminated, so the Pilots resort to the cardinal tradition that all Marines are Infantrymen first, and grab rifles to defend the beaches.

**December 22 (Monday) 1941 - (Pacific-Wake Island)** The Japanese send two patrol boats directly toward the beach at Wake. Both of these old destroyers, Nos. 32 and 33 are destroyed by Marine Corps gunfire.

**December 23 (Tuesday) 1941 - (Pacific-Wake Island) THE BATTLE OF WAKE ISLAND -** Task Force 14 has not been able to reach the fatigued Marines at Wake. The Japs initiate a pre-dawn invasion of the positions, but the understrengthened defenders are braced for the final enemy assault. Fifteen hundred enemy soldiers hit the beach at about 0100, assisted by air support in an effort to exterminate the meager force of 85 Marines who dish out stiff opposition. At one location, three Marines crank out incessant machine gun fire, killing two hundred Japs. Captain

Elrod, who previously had abandoned his useless aircraft, takes command of his area and withstands ferocious attacks, until he falls, mortally wounded. Other Marines, manning a 5-inch gun, pour fire into the enemy vessels offshore, sinking one destroyer and damaging another. Lieutenant Arthur Poindexter, commanding a team of twenty men, counter-attacks and recaptures lost terrain. Commander W.S. Cunningham, USN, the island Commander, appraises the situation and deems it necessary to order Major Devereux to capitulate. Devereux reluctantly complies with the order, stating: **“I DON'T KNOW WHETHER THE MARINES HAVE EVER SURRENDERED BEFORE BUT THOSE ARE MY ORDERS AND THAT'S WHAT WE ARE GOING TO DO.”** The gallant 85 gave it their utmost, fighting on that island of death on this final day in the highest traditions of the United States. The Stars and Stripes had fallen, but the exploits of her proud defenders would live forever. Task Force 14, en-route to save the island, is diverted for other duty in the Pacific. It had sailed to within 425 miles of Wake.

**December 24 (Wednesday) 1941 - (Pacific-Midway)** The 4th Marine Defense Battalion arrives at Midway to bolster the garrison. The U.S. Navy is taking precautions to preserve what is left of the fleet, with emphasis being given to the tactical placement of the carriers, in order to cut off any attempt by Japan to strike against the U. S. mainland. **(Pacific-Philippines)** In the Philippines, Fort Stotsenburg is evacuated. Major General Wainwright initiates the withdrawal from northern Luzon and heads for Bataan. Brigadier General Albert M. Jones departs South Luzon in an effort to join the other troops converging on Bataan. The 4th Marines are ordered to report to General MacArthur at Corregidor, where they are to position themselves at the beaches to meet the Japanese. A Japanese invasion force of about 7,000 men lands at Lamon, 70 miles southeast of Manila.

**December 25th (Thursday) 1941 - (Pacific-Philippines)** Admiral T.C. Hart, departs the Philippines by submarine, heading for Java, where new headquarters are to be established for the Asiatic Fleet. All remaining naval forces in the Philippines are now under the command of Admiral Rockwell. **(Pacific-Midway)** The American defenders at Midway celebrate Christmas with the new arrivals from Marine Squadron 221, delivered by the USS *Saratoga* (diverted from Wake).

**December 31 (Thursday) 1941 - January 1st, 1942** The Palmyra Atoll is greeted with the arrival of the Marine First Defense Battalion, which will take responsibility for defense of the area.

**January 20 1942 — (United States)** Major General Thomas Holcomb, Commandant, becomes the first Lieutenant General in the Marine Corps (Act of Congress).

**January 22 1942 — (Pacific-Philippines-Luzon)** At Bataan, General MacArthur implements a plan which includes the withdrawal of troops from the entire Mauban-Abucay line and places the final defense stance to occur further south, at the rear of the Pilar-Bagac road. Troops are scheduled to withdraw from the Mauban-Abucay line for the next several days (23rd-26th). The Japanese initiate an offensive in the II Corps area, driving the Philippine Division back to where it had begun the offensive a week ago, in the area of Abucay Hacienda. In the I Corps sector, combined forces including units of the 91st Philippine Division, supported by Tanks and contingents of the 26th Cavalry, assault Japanese positions along the West Road. However, they are unable to break through the rigid enemy positions to reinforce the First Division, which is heavily engaged at the Northern portion of the main line of resistance in Bataan. Into the following morning, the Japanese 2nd Battalion, 20th Infantry, boards barges at Moron and embarks for Caibobo Point. The invaders get lost along the route and land at Quinauan Fbint and Longoskawayan Point, on the Southern tip of Bataan (night of 22nd-23rd). A U.S. Navy P.T. Boat intervenes and sinks two troop barges. U.S. Commander Francis J. Bridget will dispatch Naval and Marine personnel on the 23rd to meet the

threat.

**January 23 1942 —(Pacific-Philippines-Luzon)** In Bataan, the I and II Corps persist in their struggle to stop the Japanese invaders, as their ammunition and supplies continue to diminish. In the II Corps sector, the withdrawal to the last line of resistance is initiated. To the South, Philippine Constabulary troops are deployed at Quinaun Point, where many of the Japanese had debarked during the night. The Filipino troops make scant headway. Other Japanese, who had landed at Longoskawayan Point and occupied Pucot Hill, are engaged by Naval and Marine forces, committed by Commander Bridget, U.S.N. They accomplish the mission with the assistance of a Howitzer and a contingent of the 301st Chemical Co., but the enemy infiltrates during the night and reoccupies the position. (Pacific-Samoa) **In American Samoa**, the 7th Defense Battalion is greeted by the arrival of the 2nd Marine Brigade, to help to bolster the American position on Guam.

**January 27 1942-(Pacific-Philippines-Luzon)** The Japanese launch a violent attack against the main line of resistance in the afternoon at the II Corps sectors C and D. Sector C., which are being reinforced by the Philippine 41st Infantry. The Japanese drive back advance posts and cross the Pilar River. The Japanese also strike hard in the west, but the able 91st Division repulses the assault. Heavy resistance is put up by the defenders in the vicinity of Quinaun Point and Longoskawayan Point. The outnumbered defenders contain the enemy only temporarily by committing every operational gun at Longoskawayan Point. Contingents of the 4th Marine Regiment participate at this battle. The Japs repulse an assault against their position at Quinaun Beach. They then pause to bolster their defenses, with reinforcements by sea, before launching another major attack in the direction of Mariveles.

**January 28 1942-(Pacific-Philippines-Luzon)** The situation in Bataan remains grave. The exhausted Defense Forces continue to take heavy casualties, as their diminishing supplies are further drawn down. The Japanese attack the II Corps sector and make some forays across the Tiawir River, but the defenders halt the attack (Sector C). The defenders also repulse another attack in the same sector. In the I Corps area, the Japanese ooze through a gap in the lines and get separated, causing them to span out into two pockets, dubbed Little Pocket and Big Pocket. Fierce fighting occurs in the vicinity of Longoskawayan Point, in the south sector. Mortars and Machine Guns of the 4th Marine Regiment are assigned to the 57th Philippine Scout Regiment, to aid in the relief of the Naval Battalion on Longoskawayan Point. The organized Japanese resistance ends in this sector.

**February 10 1942-(Pacific-Midway)** American-held Midway Island is subjected to another shelling from a Japanese Submarine, but the enemy Vessel manages to get off only two rounds before being chased by Fighters from Marine Squadron 221.

**February 24 1942 — (Pacific)** The U.S. Navy strikes back. Admiral Halsey's Task Force 16, including the Carrier *Enterprise*, moves toward Japanese held Wake Island. Halsey has the luxury of aerial photographs of Wake, compliments of a Marine Pilot from Midway. Task Force 16 (previously Task Force 8) is split into two Groups for the assault; TG 16.7, comprising the Heavy Cruisers *Northampton* and *Salt Lake City* and the Destroyers *Baich* and *Maury*, strikes from the west while TG 16.7 comprising the *Enterprise* and the Destroyers *Blue*, *Dunlap*, *Craven* and *Ralph Talbot* swoop down from the north. Treacherous weather hampers the operation, causing the launching of Planes to be delayed for about 15 minutes. Upon launching, at about 05:44, one plane is lost due to the severity of the storm. In the meantime, Task Group 16.7, deployed within fifteen miles of Wake, is effected by the delay, and with radio silence a must, the situation becomes critical. The planes are overhead at 0800 and the belated bombardment ensues. The Japanese on the island have insufficient

numbers of Aircraft available and do not cause any damage to the cruisers and destroyers nearby, but the Yanks have a good day, blasting the hangars and shore batteries. In addition the U.S. aircraft and surface vessel fire strike and destroy 3 four-engine flying boats and several small vessels plus fuel supplies and ammunition depots. The mission cost three planes lost, one to enemy anti-aircraft fire and two to the inclement weather. Halsey departs heading northeastward to pull in the fuel ship the *Sabine* and the destroyer *McCall* and rendezvous with TG 16.7 for the cruise back to Pearl Harbor.

**March 2 1942 — (United States)** The U.S. Military is mobilizing as fast as possible, in an effort to initiate the long awaited push to recapture the ground they have lost in the Pacific. Marine and Naval forces are working at a furious pace to fortify what they control, while simultaneously endeavoring to outguess the Japanese. By this time most Code-breakers, previously stationed in the Philippines, have been evacuated and quickly reassigned. The Americans anticipate an attack at Midway as a Japanese stepping stone for an attack on the United States.

**March 8 1942 — (Atlantic)** The First Marine Brigade (Provisional), which has been stationed in Iceland to defend against a possible German invasion, is replaced by U.S. Army troops.

**March 10 1942 — (Pacific-Midway)** A Squadron of Marine Fighters intercepts and destroys a Japanese Kawanishi 97 flying boat. The Squadron initiates the first action between Marine Pilots and enemy Aircraft at Midway. The appearance of the enemy flying boat is one more indication of Japan's intent to make another strike at Hawaii.

**March 28 1942 — (Pacific)** The U.S. Marine 7th Defense Battalion arrives at Samoa to establish a new garrison.

**March 29 1942 — (Pacific-New Hebrides)** The U.S. Marine, 4th Defense Battalion, supplemented by Marine Fighter Squadron 221, is ordered to redeploy at Port Vila, Efate, New Hebrides.

**April 2 1942 — (Pacific-Samoa)** The advance unit of Marine Aircraft Group 13, arrives in Samoa to bolster American troops. (China-Burma-India) The U.S. 10th Air Force, based in India, initiates its first combat flight by attacking enemy Vessels in the vicinity of the Andaman Islands. Soon after, their combat missions will take them over Burma to strike enemy positions.

**April 9 1942 — (Pacific-Philippines)** The Japanese accept the surrender of Bataan at 12:30 P.M. The exhausted warriors, who had reluctantly approached the Japanese with a white flag, are in for a torturous, humiliating forced march from Balanga to San Fernando, 85 miles away. The anti-aircraft gunners from Mariveles, including Marine Battery C, escape to Corregidor, being among the two thousand of the luckier troops; the other 76,000 make the infamous Death March. The Japanese brutalize their captives, driving them in torrid heat for six days. Thousands die from thirst, exhaustion, untended wounds, and relentless beatings.

**April 29 1942 — (Pacific-Command)** Admiral Earnest J. King, Commander South Pacific, establishes the South Pacific Amphibious Force, which is composed primarily of the 1st Marine Division.

**May 6th-10th 1942 — (Pacific-Philippines)** The courageous stand of the "Battling Bastards of Bataan" expires as American General Wainwright unconditionally surrenders all Allied forces throughout the Philippines. The surrender talks commence at 1030 and last until midnight, when the papers are signed. Colonel Samuel L. Howard, senior Marine Corps officer on the island, orders the Regimental and National Colors (4th Marines), to be burned, to prevent capture and desecration by the enemy. Colonel Howard, after hearing General Wainwright's plea to surrender, turns to Colonel Donald Curtiss and states: "**MY GOD, I HAD TO BE THE FIRST MARINE EVER TO SURRENDER A REGIMENT.**"

**May 25 1942 — (Pacific-Midway)** The USS *St. Louis* delivers Companies C and D, 2nd Raider Battalion and the 37mm battery, 3rd Defense Battalion, U.S.M.C., to assist the other Marines already on the island.

**May 26 1942 — (Pacific Hawaii-Midway)** The U.S. Navy is busy today as a Task Force, including the Carriers *Hornet* and *Enterprise*, under Rear Admiral Halsey, arrives at Pearl Harbor from the South Pacific, to resupply and prepare to move back to sea for another major confrontation, with the Japanese. Halsey's Fleet had been about 600 miles from Tulagi (Guadalcanal), preparing to occupy the Samoa-Fijis-New Caledonia Line when ordered back to Pearl Harbor. Upon his return, Halsey is diagnosed by doctors as having "general dermatitis" (incessant itching) preventing him from participating in the operation for which he was recalled to Pearl Harbor. Halsey convinces Nimitz to give Ray Spruance his command for the big fight. The Yorktown Force, under Admiral Fletcher, arrives on the following day. The USS *Kittyhawk* arrives at Midway, bringing with it, both ground and air reinforcements. Sixteen SBD-2s and seven F4F-3s also arrive, in addition to an Anti-aircraft Group and a light Tank Platoon (3rd Marine Defense Battalion).

**May 27 1942 — (Pacific-Walls Island)** A contingent of Seabees and Marines occupy Wallis Island in the South Pacific.

**June 2nd-6th 1942 — THE BATTLE OF MIDWAY** — American intelligence reports prove correct. The Japanese Invasion Fleet is steaming towards Midway, unaware that two U.S. Task Forces 16 and 17, are rendezvousing northeast of Midway, before moving jointly to a point, about 200 miles from Midway to meet the enemy Armada. Japanese Fighters, dispatched from two Carriers, raid Fort Mears and Dutch Harbor, Alaska, in an unsuccessful attempt to divert attention from the Japanese troops landing in the Aleutians. In addition to the U.S. Surface Vessels, the U.S. deploys 12 Submarines around Midway. The *Trigger*, *Narwhal* and *Plunger* deploy at a point where they can run interference between Oahu and Midway keeping a vigil to the east and north. Four other Submarines camp about 300 miles north of Oahu, while six additional Submarines are racing to the scene. The lone *Cuttlefish*, holds the point, about 700 miles out, to relay the signal at the first sign of the invaders. The USS *Saratoga*, a formidable Carrier, would be a welcome sight to the Yanks, but her voyage from the States, prevents her from reaching Midway in time. During the first rays of sunshine on the 4th, the *Cuttlefish* reports an enemy Tanker about 600 miles from Midway, then is forced to submerge, because of daylight and does not regain contact with the enemy. Shortly thereafter, Scout Planes detect the Invasion Force.

On the 4th, the Japanese strike Dutch Harbor again, causing slight damage. American Planes search in vain for the Carriers. Poor visibility works in favor of the Japanese, allowing them to escape southward without damage, but the Japanese ruse fails to rattle Nimitz. Search Planes based at Midway locate a genuine bonanza on the second of June, discovering two Japanese Carriers 400 miles south of Kiska.

Land-based Bombers, swarm above the approaching enemy Vessels on the 3rd, inflicting some damage, but not enough turn back the invaders. One hundred and thirty Japanese Planes are launched from four Carriers on the 4th, to destroy Midway and its defenders. The threat is met initially by U.S. Marine Corps planes based on Midway. As the danger signals rattle the communication lines, every available Plane is sent aloft. Approximately 50 Zeros, with superior maneuverability and speed, lead the parade, escorting an array of nearly 100 Dive Bombers and Torpedo Planes. The formation is interrupted, about 30 miles from their objective, when Marine Pilots pounce on the Bombers, before the Zeros can come to their aid. The badly outnumbered Marines, attached to Fighting Squadron 213,

do a magnificent job, considering the odds. During the Air duel, the Jap Bombers penetrate and strike Midway. Fifteen of the 25 Marine Fighters are shot down and another seven are severely damaged, but they make their way back to Midway. The Japanese pay a high price for their Air attack, losing 34 Planes (damaged or shot down). The Marine Pilots return to base, passing over the smiling faces of the defenders who are waving excitedly in the shadow of Old Glory. They had intentionally avoided bombing the Airfields, that they might utilize the fields themselves in the near future. Instead, the Airfields remain useful to the Yanks.

Although the Marines, whacked the Japs as they encroached Midway, all hell is breaking out in the battle zones. Army Bombers, based on Midway and without Fighter cover stream through the skies, heading for the objective, as quickly as the coordinates of the enemy Strike Force are received through the radio system, zooming for the anticipated location of the enemy Carriers. The staunch aggressiveness of a PBY had made contact with the Strike Force, at a position about 150 miles from Midway and now the Eagles are close behind. While the Fortresses advance, the Submarines receive their orders; the *Cuttlefish*, and the *Flying Fish* and the *Cachalot*, are ordered to stand fast, while other Submarines are ordered to attack the Carriers. The unescorted Army B-26s and Navy Torpedo Planes dive without cover fire and are mangled by Antiaircraft fire and Jap Zeros. This heroic assault by six Torpedo Planes (Avengers) and four B-26s (Marauders) cost the U.S. seven Planes, as one TBF and two B-26s return alone. Additional Marine Squadrons follow the fury and are synchronized in the attack, with the Flying Fortresses. The Marine Dive Bombers penetrate the flying steel, again without cover fire. Out of 27 Dive Bombers who crash through the Zeros and ack-ack, eight are shot down and the remainder sustain severe damage. The Fortresses expend all bombs, but none strike the mark, invigorating the Japanese, who still contemplate the seizure of Midway. The unscathed Japanese Carriers have evaded destruction and receive reports detailing the location of the American Carriers, which are slightly beyond the horizon. At about 09:00, the Japanese alter their course to seek out the *Enterprise* and her counterparts, the *Hornet* and *Yorktown*.

Pilots from the *Hornet* and *Enterprise* desperately attempt to locate the Jap Flattops, but their fuel diminishes rapidly as the Japanese have changed course, making the Americans' task even tougher as they scour the clouds. The Flying Fighters from the *Hornet* are compelled to ditch at sea and the Bombers must head for Midway or suffer the same fate. The worries of the day become more serious for the Yanks at Midway, the most vulnerable of the objectives. Japanese Bombers from the *Enterprise* are skyward, but they see nothing, but wide open seas. Suddenly, a Squadron of Fighters from the *Enterprise* spots the enemy Carriers and roars the location to the Bombers. They immediately close the range in conjunction with testy Fighters from the *Yorktown*, whose memories of the Coral Sea are still vivid in their minds. As luck would have it, the Japanese on the *Kaga*, are caught reloading the Bombers as Planes from the *Yorktown* arrive. First, the Japs receive several reprieves. Torpedo Squadron 8, fresh off the *Hornet*, approaches, again without Fighter protection. The dauntless Pilots begin the attack, just prior to 09:30, fully realizing the expected odds and the entire Squadron, commanded by Lt. Commander John C. Waidron, of 15 is downed. The lone survivor is Ensign George H. Gay. The Pacific Theater is about to make a fibber out of Barnum, for it is Ensign Gay, who is about to have the front row seat, at the greatest show on earth, at least if you count the Pacific Theater. As Gay ponders his fate, while clinging to his life preserver, the clock nears 10:00 as friendly Yankee engines roar overhead, bound for the Carriers. A Torpedo Squadron from the *Enterprise* dives through the flying lead, followed closely by additional Skywarriors from the *Yorktown*. As an astonished Ensign Gay watches, a most magnificent roar trembles over the

ocean. The initial explosion is soon followed by more, until the *Kaga* is consumed by fire and smoke. The battle rages, with more bombs striking, and more explosions, literally catapulting Japanese Sailors from the decks into the nearby inferno of the once unspoiled waters, which have instantly been transformed into a vision of carnage and wreckage. Both the *Akagi* and *Soryu* are ablaze. The American Planes return to their Carriers, although 10 Torpedo Bombers, from the *Yorktown* and a like number from the *Enterprise* are shot down. However, there are three less operational Carriers in the Japanese Navy.

Japanese Planes discover the location of the American Carriers at about 12:00 and close for the attack with 36 Planes, equally divided between Dive Bombers and Zeros. Twelve Fighters from the *Yorktown* are launched in quick succession, to meet the threat and they knock out half of the Bombers.

Several Japs break through the skywall, to be knocked down by gunners, but three bombs strike the Carrier, causing severe fires. The crew works feverishly to extinguish the inferno, but as they do, another group of Torpedo Bombers swoops down on the wounded Carrier. The Gunners knock out every Plane, but the Vessel is rocked with several additional torpedoes. Soon, Captain Elliot Buckmaster is forced to abandon his Carrier. The score is three to one, but the loss of the *Yorktown* is critical to the American cause. The key to victory depends on finding the 4th Jap Carrier, the *Hiryu*, which is retreating to the northeast, while the other three are burning, in what might be the biggest fish fry outside of Tokyo. The *Hiryu*, flanked by her escorts, is speeding out of the area, but Spotter Planes from the *Yorktown* locate the enemy Armada, which includes the lone Carrier, still operational and two Battleships, a few Destroyers and two Cruisers. Planes from the *Hornet* and the *Enterprise* are called out and combine to knock out the Carrier. Incessant enemy fire greets them, as they make the approach, from 10 Zeros but the *Hiryu* is hit and set ablaze. While the attackers from the *Enterprise* are pummeling the *Hiryu*, other Planes from the *Hornet* assault the escort Vessels.

Ensign Gay, remarkably floating alone in the middle of this gigantic graveyard in the sea, is unaware that he is not the only American in the area. Several fathoms below, lies the impetuous USS *Nautilus*, the only Submarine, out of a cast of 29, that will play a major part in the show. The crew of the *Nautilus* is a little aggravated with the day so far, as she has been assaulted at about 08:00, by a Jap Plane and a couple of aggressive Cruisers. A little later in the morning, the *Nautilus* spots a periscope, a Battleship. The Warship now attacks the periscope of the *Nautilus*, while the crew is on its deck, scurrying around, anticipating a jubilant kill. The curious periscope scans the water and sees enemy Vessels at every point of revolution. Brockman, disgruntled by the irreverent treatment by his hosts, shakes loose of a barrage of depth charges, and rears forward to attack. The *Nautilus* fires torpedoes at a Cruiser, bringing even more depth charges. The Armada move ahead, leaving a lone Destroyer to catch *Nautilus*. The Destroyer searches in vain, but the Submarine skirts under the waves at a zesty pace, then impulsively, pokes her periscope atop the water, enabling the Vessel, to observe a sky full of bursting shells strewn in umbrella style, high above an enemy Carrier. Above the sheilfire, is a more delightful view; soaring American Planes. Enemy escorts spot the protruding eye of the Submarine and initiate an attack. Taking corrective action, the *Nautilus* fires her torpedoes before diving for cover to the bottom. The enemy evades the incoming torpedoes and starts dropping depth charges wide of the *Nautilus*, which is beached nervously in sand. At about 10:00 it goes up for another look and finds allis clear, except for a few blazing Carriers, as reported over the radio. The *Nautilus* creeps near the burning, but operational Carrier *Soryu*, and fires a few poignant torpedoes. All three torpedoes hit the mark, triggering severe explosions and finally, a thunderous

roar, that rocks the entire area after the Vessel is half way to the bottom. The final explosions are so terrifyingly violent, that the *Nautilus* momentarily thinks it is under attack. The periscope verifies no Ships, friend or foe, and the men of the *Nautilus* enjoy their dinner. Ensign Gay, holding the only front seat for the *Nautilus* performance, has enjoyed the show and will be later rescued to tell the tale. The day is full of fury, heroics and glory. In another instance of American fortitude, Captain Richard Fleming's (U.S.M.C. Squadron 241) craft is struck by 179 hits during the day. His Plane dips to an altitude of 400 feet, to release its bombs, during the initial attack. He returns against the enemy again and after scoring a near miss from an altitude of 500 feet, is struck by additional enemy fire, that forces the courageous Pilot to crash in the sea. All in all, it has been a calamitous day for the Imperial Navy. The chastened Admiral Yamamoto has no choice, but to attempt to get back to Japan. He instructs a group of Cruisers, from his Occupation Force, to move close to Midway in a diversionary tactic, to lambaste the island, preventing Aircraft from pursuing him. However, the U.S. has this one figured out also. All the Submarines, which had been dispersed to search for the enemy, are hastily recalled to their original positions, to protect Midway in the event of an invasion and are deployed by the early morning of June 5th. The Japanese move cautiously, toward Midway, but are surprised to find the Submarines waiting in ambush. Contact is made, with unidentified Vessels, by the USS *Tambor*, at slightly after 02:00, but extreme caution is taken by Lt. Commander Murphy, in the event that they might be American Ships. Further probing by the Submarine verifies the Vessels as hostile Cruisers and unquestionably Japanese. The *Tambor*, dives as the enemy cruisers approach. When it comes up to periscope depth, the *Tambor* finds all four Cruisers had swung to the left, causing two to collide immediately after sighting the American Submarine. Yamamoto, finding more futility in the belated endeavor, orders the attack aborted well before the sun comes out. The four Cruisers retreat, with the *Mikuma* and the *Mogami*, both damaged, and lagging behind. Planes from Midway, following the trail of oil from the damaged *Mikuma*, deliver a brutalizing attack on the 6th of June. The Air assault incapacitates the *Mikuma* and staggers the *Mogami*. Admiral Spruance then dispatches Aircraft from the *Hornet* and *Enterprise* to finish the job. The Dive Bombers bury the *Mikuma* and take a severe toll on the *Mogami*. Amazingly, the Vessel is able to crawl back to Truk. Midway is saved, but again the cost is high. The gallant *Yorktown* is knocked out of action and while being towed to Pearl Harbor for repairs, one of three enemy Submarines, operating around Midway is able to get off four torpedoes, two of which strike the *Yorktown* and the other two hit the Destroyer *Hammann*. A tremendous explosion ignites the Vessel's ammunition, killing many of the crew and further damaging the nearby *Yorktown*~ ensuring her demise. Other Warships in the area rush to get the Submarine *I-168*, culminating the battle. On the following morning, at 05:00, the *Yorktown* rolls over and sinks.

Admirals Nimitz, Spruance and Fletcher are the victors. Admiral Halsey, unable to oversee his Task Force, had made an admirable choice in Spruance. The U.S. Headquarters at Pearl is ecstatic as word had reached them about Yamamoto's retreat back to Japan. The U.S. Navy begins rescue operations, picking up surviving Pilots who had ditched in the Pacific. Aircraft losses on both sides are extremely heavy, costing the U.S. 150 Planes and the Japanese over 250. Surviving Japanese Pilots are rare, as few are issued parachutes. The Three American Carriers had turned the tide of battle and although the Yanks suffer the loss of the *Yorktown*, it has a successor, the *Saratoga* heading for the Pacific Theater. The principal body of Yamamoto's assault forces have escaped unscathed, but the Japanese have lost over 4,500 Sailors, and four Carriers during this confrontation. The Imperial Navy is down to only two Carriers and they have been preoccupied in the Aleutians, where U.S. and Canadian

forces have stopped the Japanese thrust into Alaska. Yamamoto, devastated personally by the defeat, is prepared to call back the Aleutian force, but decides to instruct them to land at Attu and Kiska. In addition, the two consecutive losses at the Coral Sea and on Midway, has cost precious experienced Japanese Pilots. Both Air and Sea power in the Pacific now favor the United States. The U.S. Navy had won the decisive victory needed to raise morale and place the momentum on the side of the Allies.

**June 4 1942 — (Pacific-Midway)** The island of Midway is attacked by carrier based Japanese aircraft. They are intercepted and defeated by Marine Corps and Army aircraft operating out of Midway. The Japanese claim all level bombers and 36 dive bombers broke through Marine interceptors and struck targets. In addition, they claim one dive bomber shot down by AA fire and two fighters do not return to their ships (first wave). In the sea battle, the USS *Yorktown* is damaged by Japanese aircraft. The Japanese carrier *Kaga* is sunk by carrier based planes and the carrier *Soryu* is destroyed by the combined force of carrier based aircraft and the submarine *Nautilus* (SS-168). The Japanese contend that the *Nautilus* had not sunk the *Soryu*, but rather had fired at the *Kaga*, without results. Japanese war records show no submarine attacks against *Soryu*.

**June 14 1942 — (Pacific)** The first contingent of the 1st Marine Division (5th Marines) arrives at Wellington, New Zealand. (Atlantic-North Africa) The British, under General Ritchie, in Libya, are pushed back further by superior German Tanks at El Adem. The Germans move toward Acroma and Tobruk, against heavy opposition. On the following day, British Major General Kiopper receives orders to hold Tobruk at all costs. Superior enemy forces will take Tobruk on June 21st, pushing the British to Egypt.

**June 25 1942 — (Pacific)** American Admiral King and General Marshall U.S.A., meet to discuss the proposed offensive (Bismarck Archipelago). Santa Cruz Island, Tulagi, along with other islands in the area are to be seized by the Marines. After securing the Islands, the Marines will be replaced by U.S. Army troops, now based in Australia.

**June 26 1942 — (United States)** Major General Alexander Vandegrift, Commanding Officer 1st Marine Division, is informed of the impending assault on Guadalcanal-Tulagi. Total Marine Corps strength at the end of June will stand at 142,413; of which 7,138 are Officers. (Atlantic-Cuba) The U.S. establishes an Auxiliary Air Station at San Julian, Cuba. (Atlantic-Germany) Germany proclaims its intention to authorize its Submarines to operate along the East Coast of the United States without limitations.

**July 1 1942 — (United States)** The 2nd Marines, reinforced 2nd Marine Division, embarks from California, being transported by five U.S. Ships and escorted by the USS *Wasp*. (Egypt).

**July 2 1942 — (United States)** The Joint Chiefs of Staff agree on the proposed plan to take the offensive in the Pacific. The target date is set for 1st August, but will be postponed until 7th August when U.S. Marines invade Guadalcanal in the first U.S. land offensive of the war.

**July 7 1942 — (United States)** A German U-Boat, the *U-701*, encroaches near North Carolina and the U.S. Army dispatches Planes, which sink it. (Pacific-Hawaii) A U.S. Task Force, including the Carriers *Enterprise* and *Saratoga*, departs Pearl Harbor, for the South Pacific. The main body will remain at sea while a contingent of vessels proceeds to New Caledonia and picks up the Marine 1st Raider Battalion.

**July 11 1942 —** The rear echelon of the 1st Marine Division arrives at Wellington.

**July 14 1942 — (Pacific-Australia)** A submarine Task Force (TF42) is dispatched to disrupt enemy Shipping in the vicinity of Rabaul, and the 7th Marines, 1st Marine Division is notified by Admiral

Ghormley that it will leave Samoa for the Solomons in four days.

**July 15 1942-(Pacific-New Hebrides)** Elements of the 4th Marine Defense Battalion arrive at Espiritu Santo, bringing heavy anti-aircraft and automatic weapon batteries.

**July 20 1942-(Pacific)** Major General Alexander A. Vandegrift, commanding General, 1st Marine Division, issues tactical orders relating to the invasion of the Solomon Islands.

**July 22 1942 — (Pacific)** The Allied offensive against the Solomons continues, as the 1st Marine Division embarks from Wellington, New Zealand. The Marine 3rd Defense Battalion sails from Pearl Harbor to join the 1st Marines. The U.S. invasion force reaches striking distance of the Solomons, completely undetected by the Japanese, on the 6th of August.

**August 2 1942 — (Pacific)** The U.S. Task Force scheduled to assault Guadalcanal finalizes preparations for the invasion. The attack against Guadalcanal is to be made by the 1st Marine Division (minus the 7th Marines).

**August 6th 1942 — (Pacific)** The Marine Amphibious Force nears the Solomon Islands. The U.S. naval task force carrying the Marines moves without detection, by the Japanese. There is also some activity at Pearl Harbor. Two American submarines, the *Nautilus* and the *Argonaut*, depart the harbor at 09:00, carrying a “few good men” who will be absent from the big show at Guadalcanal on the following day. The *Nautilus*, in addition to her normal crew, is accompanied by an additional seven officers and 114 men, while her sister ship, the *Argonaut* transports an additional 84 men and six officers. The submarines separate to avoid enemy detection, as they steam toward Makin Island in the Gilberts, maintaining surface speed for nearly the entire trip. Carlson’s 2nd Raider Battalion, the recipients of this over-cramped Navy hospitality, are embarking on a most perilous operation and all the extensive training and discipline will surely be appreciated when they hit the beach in Carlson’s “Gung Ho!” style. The trip is uneventful for the ten days it takes to reach Makin.

The *Nautilus* arrives at 03:00 (16th), and begins to check out the landing sites. Contact is made with the *Argonaut* at 21:16, during a storm, as they move toward the designated jump off point. Plans are meticulously studied and equipment is checked. Meanwhile, last minute letters are hastily penned, and last, but not least, the weapons are checked in the closing moments. The clock passes the hour of midnight, as Marines scamper for the rubber boats. At 03:00 (17th), under trying conditions, the Raiders are fighting against the unruly surf, however, all are shorebound on schedule. Additional problems develop, prompting Carlson to order all boats to hit Landing Beach Z, opposite Government Wharf.

Fifteen of the eighteen landing rafts follow Carlson. Two wind up about a mile away, but are able to hook up with Carlson during the heated contest. The final boat comes ashore further south, behind Japanese lines. The Raiders land without incident, but one of the rifles is accidentally fired, alerting the enemy. Carlson sends a message to the waiting Submarines:

“EVERYTHING LOUSY” Shortly thereafter, another Carlson quip: “SITUATION EXPECTED TO BE WELL IN HAND SHORTLY~ Colonel Carlson orders Company A to cross the island and seize the Lagoon Road. Meanwhile, a contingent of Company A had already secured Government House unopposed. Its 1st Platoon, advancing down the Lagoon Road engages Japanese infantry and support forces which include Flame throwers and machine guns. The submarines fire salvos toward suspected enemy positions near Ukiangang Point. U.S. reinforcements from Company B rush to the right flank of Company A and vicious combat ensues.

Sergeant Clyde Thomason, a Marine Corps reservist, deploys his men and inspiringly leads them. Thomason, aware of a sniper, breaks down a door and eliminates him. Thomason continues to exhibit

extraordinary courage and is killed leading an attack. The Marines break through by 11:30, however, Japanese warships arrive in the lagoon, forcing the submarines to take action. In effortless fashion, the sailors redirect the deck guns and the two enemy vessels are sunk. As the Raiders pressure the enemy, Jap planes strafe. On a few occasions, the submarines are forced to dive. Heavy skirmishing continues throughout the day. At 16:30 Japanese planes strike suspected American positions, however, they bomb and strafe Japanese troops, which had occupied the positions.

At 19:30, the submarines are waiting offshore to pick up the Marines, however, the surf prevents the troops from getting off the beach. Some have drowned in the attempt. At dawn, the submarines submerge and await darkness. Early on the 18th, Carlson dispatches men to locate food and weapons. Much to their surprise, there is not an over abundance of Japs left on the island. The patrols kill two enemy soldiers, the only enemy encountered. Later in the day, the troops detonate a large supply of fuel and in addition, confiscate documents from the office of the commanding officer. During the day, eighty three enemy dead are counted. The Marines recover 14 of their own dead. Total Marine losses hit a tragic note as 7 men drown in the surf and in the greatest of mistakes, and not known until after the close of hostilities, nine men had been left on the island. Explanations are unclear, but it is not a normal practice for Americans to abandon fellow fighting men. One theory presented by the Marines who live by the standard, "never leave a man behind," is that the men might have attempted to row back to the submarines during the night of the 17th and were thrown back to the beach by the wild seas, but the possibility exists, that somehow, they could have inadvertently been left behind. Speculation aside, the fact remains that nine American Marines are later captured by the Japs and after a short time in captivity, the Japs execute these Marines. The Japanese disclaim these casualty figures. They claim in a letter to the History Branch G-3 Headquarters, U.S.M.C., Washington, D.C., that their records place 70 men on Makin at time of the raid and that 43 were killed, 3 missing and 27 survivors.

**August 7th 1942-February 9th 1943 — (Pacific) THE BATTLE OF GUADALCANAL** — The Japanese have, up to this point, knocked over and trampled over all Allied ground resistance in the Pacific and Asia. Because of a continual string of conquests, the Japanese are of course confident that any invasion mounted by the U.S. will be turned back. The Americans are coming, but not in force. Though it has been almost eight months since Pearl Harbor, the Americans are only attacking with one division on their first offensive thrust of the war. But they are fortified with an extreme animosity against the Japanese. Stories are already legion about the soldiers, sailors and Marines, already slaughtered by the Japs during their carnivorous odyssey, that has already brought their terror to the gates of the U.S., in the Pacific. Stories of their rape and pillage, as they romped through their first inglorious trophies of conquest in Asia, have been added to the first hand stories of atrocities, against Americans. In addition, Jap propagandists have been giving the Yanks a steady broadside since the war has begun. The one-sided conflict on the ground is about to be strenuously tested.

The time has come for a reckoning with the Japanese and the Solomons have been selected as the first chain to be seized. The First Marine Division, commanded by General Alexander Vandegrift, are to do what they have been trained to do, kill Japs, seize the ground and kill more Japs. If these Oriental supermen bleed, the Marines should be able to get the situation well in hand. Guadalcanal, in the southwest Pacific off New Guinea is the largest of the Solomon chain, and there is very little intelligence known by the U.S., concerning defenses or exact numerical strength. The island has no roads, however, it is inundated with enormous swamps and treacherous jungle, which surrounds the mountains. It must be taken.

Fresh in their minds as they ready for the assault, is the message just received from Colonel LeRoy Hunt (5th Marines): "OUR COUNTRY EXPECTS NOTHING BUT VICTORY FROM US AND IT SHALL HAVE JUST THAT. THE WORD FAILURE SHALL NOT EVEN BE CONSIDERED AS BEING IN OUR VOCABULARY. WE ARE MEETING A TOUGH AND WILY OPPONENT BUT HE IS NOT SUFFICIENTLY TOUGH OR WILY TO OVERCOME US BECAUSE WE ARE MARINES ... WE'VE WORKED HARD AND TRAINED CAREFULLY FOR THIS ACTION. EACH OF US HAS HIS ASSIGNED TASK. LET EACH VOW TO PERFORM IT TO THE UTMOST OF HIS ABILITY, WITH AN ADDED EFFORT FOR GOOD MEASURE. GOOD LUCK. GOD BLESS YOU AND TO HELL WITH THE JAPS."

The armada, under Admiral Fletcher passes the enemy shoreline during the night of the sixth, under a moonless sky. The navy maneuvers precariously between the neck of water, separating the Savo Islands and Guadalcanal, approaching the fringes of Tulagi Bay, without a solitary Japanese shell being fired. The enemy silence works in reverse and causes some concern among the members of the strike force, which is happy, yet bewildered by the non-action of the defenders on Guadalcanal. The vessels crash their way through the waves, approaching jump off hour. Some of the assault troops are curiously peering through binoculars at their new residence, although vision is blurred by both the darkness and the constant interruption of passing ships in the convoy. The backdrops of this massive undertaking are huge darkly colored mountains, which stand out in great contrast to the lighter color of the near morning sky. Guadalcanal is gradually moving to the forefront, as the ships move deeper into the bay, passing Tulagi, situated to the east and the Florida Islands to the north, but still no enemy fire to induce a full throttle flow of adrenaline into the troops as they cruise southwardly.

U.S. Navy guns commence firing at 06:14. Darkness and anxiety is replaced by furious fire and impatient troops. The first volley originates from a cruiser, followed by additional cruisers. The rumbling of thunderous guns, spewing large fiery shells, including tracers, which arc toward the landing sites add an ominous note to the invasion. Navy gunners are joined by planes, which supplement the already multicolored skyline, giving the island an iridescent glow of death. One of the salvos hits a supply depot giving the exercise a magnificent finale.

By 06:19, part of the armada (Admiral Turner), carrying General Rupertus' force, which will invade Tulagi, tails off to the left toward the objective. By this time the balance of the fleet has joined in the bombardment. The invasion timetable is pretty much on schedule. The navy guns are still plastering the island at 06:28, but a conspicuous raging fire to the front of the convoy attracts the attention of the men. The towering smoke turns out to be a Japanese vessel, which had gotten into the sights of the strafing planes. The schooner induces a mighty fire, as the cargo includes gasoline, and adds illumination to the American vessels, nearing the debarkation point, for the sprint by the Marines to the beach. At this time there is still no return enemy fire, against the armada, causing more intent thought, by the commanders of the invasion force. The immense bombardment startled the Japanese, catching them off-guard totally. The entire area had been pummeled, without any reciprocal fire from the enemy. Cruisers continue to pour fire upon selected areas.

Close Air support is afforded the 1st wave to hit the beaches, but the landing of the 5th Marines is completely unopposed at Guadalcanal (Beach Red). The First Marines, commanded by Colonel Clifton Cates, follow in reserve. The Marines take full advantage of the lull and preparations are immediately taken to beat back an attack when it comes. Supplies pour ashore, including gasoline, ammunition and barbed wire. Within a couple of hours, the Marines have sent out extended patrols to scout the jungle. Others begin fortifying the perimeter with the wire and other obstacles, such as

machine gun positions and foxholes. Communication systems are strung and preparations are made to attack and seize Henderson Airfield, which they will accomplish, against nominal opposition on the following day. Later, Japanese planes swarm in under a massive cloud cover several times and bomb the American shipping in the bay. Two would be destroyed by American planes and one other by anti-aircraft fire. The Marines spend a jittery night, consumed by jungle silence occasionally penetrated by a shot or volley, but more often by disgruntled Macaws and dive-bombing aedes and anopheles Mosquitos.

The 7th Marines land on the Southern Solomons. During the day's operations, the destroyer USS *Mugford* is damaged by an enemy dive bomber. The 1st Raider Battalion, commanded by Colonel Merritt Edson, lands at Blue Beach, Tulagi, without incident and moves southeast, until heavy enemy resistance halts its progress at Hill 281 where the Japs have entrenched themselves firmly in caves. The Second Battalion, 5th Marines, which had not landed with the 5th Marines on Guadalcanal, comes in behind the 1st Raider Battalion on Blue Beach. In addition, the 1st Battalion, 2nd Marines, hit the beach at the Southern portion of Florida Island, without meeting any opposition. At noon, the 1st Paratroop Battalion -invades Gavutu and Tanambogo, clearing the majority of the two islets. The paratroopers, assisted by the 2nd Marines, secure both Gavutu and Tanambogo by the following day. On the 8th, Japanese planes attached to the Eighth Fleet, under Admiral Gunichi Mikawa, arrive from Rabaul and swarm over the American transports at about noon and severely damage Allied naval operations, in the vicinity of the Solomons. Suicide bombers hit the *George F Elliott* (Transport), inflicting enough damage that the U.S. scuttles the vessel. The USS *Jarvis* (Destroyer) is also struck by a suicide bomber and damaged, and the transport USS *Barnett* is struck by a torpedo. The USS *Jarvis* departs for Noumea, but it is never heard from again. During the night of the 8th, lasting into early morning of the 9th (Battle of Savo), the Japanese Eighth Fleet inflicts more punishment to the fleet, sinking the USS *Astoria*, *Quincy* and *Vincennes* (Cruisers) and damaging other Allied vessels, while losing none themselves. Seventeen thousand of the 19,000 men make it to shore, before the support ships are forced to withdraw on the 9th, taking approximately one half of the 60 day supply of food and equipment with them, however, the Japanese have exhibited their night naval skills which becomes a costly lesson to the Yanks, who sustain over 1,200 men killed and over 700 wounded. Through some fortuitous luck, the U.S. transports are not attacked. The Americans have grasped a foothold on the islands and are there for the duration. The Marines fortify their positions quickly as they prepare for a bitter campaign. These tenacious men will learn the ways of jungle warfare quickly, deciphering the sounds of an animal and of the impostoring enemy, the cries of a wounded comrade and the ruse of a Japanese ambush.

As September settles down in the Solomons, 17,000 Marines --control a 4-by-7 mile strip of Guadalcanal. Japanese continue to assault their positions and the Allied ships offshore, which are attempting to keep them resupplied, however The Marines intend to hold their mosquito, snake infested paradise at all costs. Four Japanese carriers, with battle escorts, glide confidently through the sea, until they are confronted by two American task forces, commanded by the able Admiral Kinkaid, in the vicinity of Santa Cruz Islands on October 26th.

The Japanese lose two destroyers sunk, in addition to having two carriers and two battleships damaged. The USS *Hornet* (Carrier) is damaged and subsequently sunk by Japanese dive bombers. The 164th U.S. Infantry, the first Army troops to assist the Marines on Guadalcanal, arrive on October 13th and initiate their part in the campaign, which will soon see the balance of the Americal Division arrive to relieve the Marines. On November 13th, the Japanese make another attempt to

retake Guadalcanal. The two opposing fleets confront each other, in what is known as the Naval Battle of Guadalcanal. The engaging vessels criss-cross each other at dangerously close distances, firing at point blank range. The U.S. loses two cruisers sunk and two damaged. The Japanese lose one battleship. On the 14th, patrol planes from the *Enterprise* spot another Japanese fleet approaching and inform headquarters. Land-based American bombers catapult from the airstrips and deliver a decisive blow to the encroaching enemy, sinking seven troop transports and damaging the remaining four. The remnants of the enemy fleet try to regroup and land on Guadalcanal, but yet another American task force, under Admiral Willis Lee, speeds across Iron Bottom Sound and crushes the flotilla, sinking another battleship and damaging two cruisers. The invasion is halted; the disoriented Japanese retire.

As each day passes, the fighting becomes more gruesome, but once the threat of another Japanese amphibious invasion is over, the Americans move swiftly, through the dense jungle terrain, until every Jap sniper is plucked from the trees and each enemy nest is destroyed by grenades, rifles and when necessary, the Yank's second best friend; his silent and reliable bayonet. By early February, 1943, the Japanese evacuate approximately 12,000 troops from the northwestern tip of the island (Cape Esperance) as the triumphant U.S. secures the entire island by the ninth. The Americans, with Old Glory firmly entrenched, now share the island with monkeys, and mosquitoes. There are no live Japs left to help celebrate the first American land victory and the first Japanese land defeat of the war.

**August 7th 1942 — (Pacific-Solomons)** With the Task Force of Admiral Fletcher at the door of the Solomons, Surface vessels and carrier planes run interference for the landing force, which is about to land in the Pacific. Land-based planes supplement the attacking force and also assist this the first offensive of the United States in the war. The amphibious vessels, commanded by Admiral Turner, speed to the beaches. The U.S. 1st Marine Division assaults the southern Solomons with Task Groups Yoke and X-Ray, landing in the vicinity of Tulagi and Guadalcanal. At 09:10 the 5th Marines, minus the 2nd Battalion, storm beach (Red) on the northern coast of Guadalcanal and quickly establish a beachhead between the Tenavatu and Tenaru Rivers. The landing force will be bolstered by reinforcements (1st Marines and support weaponry). Elements advance approximately one mile to the west and southwest before stopping for the night. At 08:00 the 1st aircraft carrier is sunk, while escorting a Convoy towards Malta.

**August 12 1942 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** Lieutenant Colonel Frank Goettge USMC, leads a 25 man patrol on a reconnaissance mission in the vicinity of the Matanikau River. A Japanese ambush wipes out all but three men. In other activity, Admiral McCain (Task Force 63) receives instructions to transport ammunition, supplies and ground crews from Espiritu Santo to Guadalcanal, to assist the Marines already there.

**August 13 1942 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** The Japanese order Lt. General Haruyoshi Hyakutake (Commander Japanese 17th Army) to take control of all ground action on Guadalcanal.

**August 15 1942 — (United States)** The U.S. Navy establishes additional Naval facilities, to bolster its strength. Today, an Air Station is established at Whidbey Island, Washington. Another Auxiliary Air Facility is established in Jamaica. The Navy also commissions Patrol Wing 11, which is to operate in Puerto Rico. Keeping up with the Navy expansion, the Marines establish Marine Aircraft Wings, Pacific in San Diego, California. (Pacific-Guadalcanal) The first Ships with supplies and ground crews for the Planes, since the initial landing on August 7th, arrives at Guadalcanal today. The Marines have been using a Jap safe, as a griddle for their cooking, not necessarily to be construed as gourmet. There is one refrigerator in possession of the Yanks and it is run by a generator, but

utilized for medicine, not to keep the captured Jap booze cold. Circumstances on the island force Marine rations to be cut in spite of the newly arrived supplies.

**August 19 1942 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** A contingent of the 5th Marines raids the village of Matanikau, while another unit attacks Kokumbona to the west, in an effort to locate an enemy radio station and to cut off retreating Japanese. After clearing the coastal villages, the Marines return to Lunga Point.

**August 20 1942 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** The USS *Long Island* (Aircraft Escort Vessel) transports the first contingent of Marine Aircraft Group 23 to Guadalcanal. They arrive at Henderson Field, which is now fully operational. The mud Marines are glad to see the new arrivals. The first Army Aircraft (5 P-400s) arrive on the 22nd and 11 Navy Bombers arrive on the 24th, to further augment the airwing.

**August 21 1942 — Pacific-Guadalcanal)** The island experiences the first heavy combat of the campaign, which is initiated when the Japanese assault Marine positions at the mouth of the Ilu River. The Marines charge across the river circling the Japs. American Tanks roll forward and successfully end the attack.

**August 22 1942 — (Pacific-Hawaii)** The 4th Marine Aircraft Wing (4th Marine Base Defense Air Wing) is commissioned at Ewa and will provide protection for the Bases in the Hawaii area.

**August 24-25 1942 — (Pacific) BATTLE OF THE EASTERN SOLOMONS** — The Japanese launch a Naval Task Force, consisting of three carriers, eight battleships, six cruisers, and 21 destroyers, escorting four transports, in a concentrated effort to regain Guadalcanal and Tulagi, Solomon Islands. The enemy threat is met east of Guadalcanal by planes dispatched from Rear Admiral Fletcher's naval task force. The carrier-based aircraft, assisted by land-based planes from Henderson Field, punish the invaders, sinking the carrier *Ryujū*, a light cruiser and one destroyer. Other Japanese vessels are damaged, before they withdraw. In the air, the Japanese are also outfought. On the 25th, the U.S. carriers launch planes to chase the departing Japanese fleet, but makes no contact. Land-based planes (Marine-Army) strike the remaining enemy transports, which are closing in on Guadalcanal, scoring many hits. One enemy transport and a destroyer, the *Muzuki*, are sunk. Army aircraft destroys the destroyer. One Japanese cruiser is damaged and the combined destruction causes the mission to be aborted. On Guadalcanal enemy planes are intercepted by Marine fighters; the Japanese lose 21 Planes and the Marines lose three. During the battle offshore, the USS *Enterprise* (CV-6) is damaged by Japanese planes and the U.S. loses 20 Planes to the enemy's 90.

**August 26 1942 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** The 5th Marines, 1st Marine Division, responsible for the western flank of the Lunga perimeter, ready for an offensive to eradicate enemy resistance in their sector. (Pacific-New Guinea) Heavy fighting continues between the Milne Force and the Japanese. Allied Planes damage one of the enemy Transports and destroy the majority of supplies, which had been unloaded on the beach. During the night, the remainder of the Japanese force lands and subsequently makes another night attack, only to be pushed back again at dawn.

**August 27 1942 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** Additional Marines (1st Bn., 5th Marines), land west of Kokumbona, and drive east along the shore, meeting stiff enemy resistance outside of Kokumbona. Another Marine unit (Company 1, 3rd Battalion) drives west from Kukum, to head off retreating Japanese, that are moving inland. In other activity, additional Army P-40s land at Henderson.

**August 28 1942 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** Marines (1st Bn., 5th Marines) complete a successful flanking movement, without encountering enemy forces and return to the Kukum vicinity, with elements of the 3rd Battalion. In other activity near Guadalcanal, Marine fighters depart Henderson

Field and assault Japanese vessels off the coast of Santa Isabel, in order to prevent them from debarking reinforcements. The Marines succeed in turning them back, but not before the Japanese lose the Destroyer *Asagiri* and have two others damaged. The Japanese also lose the Submarine *I-123*, after it engages the USS *Gamble* (DM-15), a light minesweeper, off the coast of Guadalcanal.

**August 30 1942 — (Pacific Guadalcanal)** The USS *Colhoun* (Transport APD-2), is sunk by enemy bombers. The rear echelon of Marine Group VMF-221 and 231 (18 fighters and 12 dive bombers) arrives safely, at Henderson Field.

**August 31 1942 — (Pacific-Solomon Islands)** The carrier, USS *Saratoga* (CV-3), operating slightly over 250 miles southeast of Guadalcanal, is seriously damaged by a torpedo from an enemy submarine and is forced to withdraw from the area, to seek repairs at Tongatabu; she subsequently returns to Pearl Harbor, where she stays until November. The loss of her carrier support is something, that the U.S. can ill afford. A Japanese force in excess of 6,000 men lands in the vicinity of Kokumbona, to threaten the Marine positions. Reinforcements (1st Raider Battalion and 1st Parachute Battalion) arrive to strengthen the perimeter defense against enemy attack.

**September 2 1942 — (Pacific-Samoa)** Elements of the 5th Defense Battalion and the 7th Marines, depart Samoa, heading for New Hebrides.

**September 2 1942 — (Pacific-Samoa)** Elements of the 5th Defense Battalion and the 7th Marines, depart Samoa, heading for New Hebrides.

**September 4 1942 — (Pacific-Solomons)** The 1st Marine Raider Battalion scouts Savo Island and finding no enemy troops, returns to Guadalcanal.

**September 8 1942 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** Marines (1st Raider Battalion and 1st Parachute Battalion minus parachutes) are transported by two Destroyers, east of Tasimboko, where they land and assault a Japanese installation from the rear. Planes based at Henderson Field, support the surprise attack, which culminates with the successful capture of the enemy supply base. The Japanese lose 27 killed. The Marines suffer eight casualties.

**September 11th 1942 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** Japanese aircraft attack Henderson Field, continuing their efforts to maintain pressure against the Marine defenders.

**September 12-14 1942 — THE BATTLE OF EDSON'S RIDGE (Guadalcanal)** — Three Japanese destroyers and a light cruiser, lurking in the Sealark Channel, commence a bombardment of Henderson Field. This naval barrage is supplemented by a major enemy assault against Marine positions on Edson's Ridge, in the western sector south of Henderson. The Marines (800 men), commanded by Colonel Merritt Ed-son, are greatly outnumbered against the Japanese, who temporarily penetrate the Raider Parachute Battalion's positions on the 13th. Through the daylight hours, Japanese snipers ring the perimeter with shots, keeping all Marines on edge through the night. Major Kenneth Bailey, commanding Company C, on the right flank, leads his men in a fight of gruesome hand to hand combat for ten grueling hours, after the enemy penetrates the main line of defense, during the first assault soon after nightfall. Major Bailey, suffering gravely from a head wound, insists on maintaining command and leading his men. His troops, along with the other defenders, hang tough against no less than twelve brutalizing assaults throughout the night.

Old Glory is victorious over the Samauri Bandits. As the sunrises on the 14th, exhausted, but enthusiastic Marines, their strength barely over two full companies, have wrecked Kawaguchi's force, numbering over two full battalions. As the remaining Japanese evacuate the slopes of what is now called "Bloody Ridge," heading toward Kokumbona, aircraft blasts them with machine gun fire and bombs. Henderson Field remains in control of the Americans and 600 dead Japanese line the

perimeter. The Marines sustain 143 casualties. Colonel Edson and Major Bailey both become recipients of the Medal of Honor for their valiant efforts. Bailey receives the Medal posthumously. **September 15 1942 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** An American carrier task force, commanded by Rear Admiral Noyes, is attacked by two Japanese submarines, while escorting transport vessels to the besieged American positions on Guadalcanal. The carrier USS *Wasp* (CV-7), is struck and heavily damaged by an enemy torpedo, while still in the vicinity of New Hebrides. The concussion and fire, followed by explosions, costs the lives of approximately 200 men. The *Wasp* is subsequently destroyed by the U.S. Navy. The USS *North Carolina* (BB-55, Battleship), along with the destroyer *O'Brien* (DD-415), suffer slight damage. The entire time lapsed during the assault is less than 10 minutes. In other activity, Japanese battleships bombard Marine positions on Edson's Ridge. The Japanese maintain sporadic action, by firing upon the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, which is positioned along the southeastern portion of the Lunga perimeter.

**September 18 1942-(Pacific Guadalcanal)** The Marines are put back on full rations. Most Marines were not compatible with the captured Japanese rations and are delighted to have their rations increased. In other activity, the remainder of the First Marine Division (7th Marines) arrives offshore on Task Force 65 and debarks at Kukum. The ammunition is the first to be brought ashore, since the request back on the 22nd of August. Badly needed aviation fuel also arrives on three different vessels. After the successful unloading of troops and supplies, Task Force 65 embarks with the 1st Paratroop Battalion, some wounded and eight Japanese prisoners, heading for Espiritu Santo, New Hebrides.

**September 19 1942 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** General Vandegrift, USMC, divides the Lunga area into 10 sectors. The Marines have held their positions and are now expanding their coveted terrain. Supplies are flowing in much more smoothly and they have adapted to jungle warfare. Marines who move around, do so with caution. Sometimes an alleged dead Jap, hanging from a tree, is merely fastened with wire, ready to kill an approaching Marine. They take precautions by ringing a few extra shots at the dead snipers.

**September 23-27 1942 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** Contingents of the 5th and 7th Marines, assisted by the 1st Raider Battalion, assault Japanese positions across the Matanikau River. Fierce fighting occurs in the vicinity of Mt. Austen and Matanikau village. The Marines are forced to withdraw on the 27th. Petty Officer Douglas Munro (U.S. Coast Guard) courageously leads 5 Higgins Boats to rescue the beleaguered Marines; 19 more follow. Munro is killed, but his dauntless courage and leadership saves the Marines. The Marines attack again on October 7th and after a brutalizing three-day battle, the Japanese lose 700 men. The Marines pull back to their positions suffering 65 men killed, 125 wounded. Artillery from the 11th Marines, assisted in the operation and greatly aided the attack across the river.

**September 26th 1942 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** Heavy fighting continues between the Marines and Japanese in the vicinity of Matanikau village. Air and artillery support are called upon to assist the Marines.

**September 27 1942 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** The Marines withdraw from Matanikau, unable to penetrate the solid Japanese defenses.

**October 2 1942 — (Pacific-Ellice Islands)** The Marine 5th Defense Battalion, stationed in New Hebrides, arrives at Funafuti and occupies the island.

**October 7th 1942 — (Pacific-New Caledonia)** Task Force 64.2 (TF Sugar), commanded by Admiral Scott, departs Espiritu Santo escorting a Convoy transporting approximately 6,000 Soldiers (164th Infantry, Americal Division), the First Marine Aircraft Wing and some additional Marine units and

supplies to bolster the Marines on Guadalcanal. The Task Force is composed of four Cruisers including Scott's Flagship, the *San Francisco*, and five Destroyers. Additional protection is situated west of Guadalcanal in the form of the *Hornet* Force; to the east, another Force which includes the Battleship *Washington*, stands guardian off Malaita. The Convoy reaches Guadalcanal on the 9th and remains off the southwest coast for two additional days. **(Pacific-Solomons-Guadalcanal)** The Marines open an offensive, dispatching elements of the 1st Division west in three columns from Henderson Field to expand their perimeter. The 5th Marines drive hard along the coast, heading for the mouth of the Matanikau, pushing the Japanese troops back toward the river. A large segment of the 7th Marines, trailed by the 3rd Battalion, 2nd Marines and a detachment of Snipers, commanded by Colonel William Whaling, drive to the southwest and surround Pt. Cruz. The 5th Marines bump into strong opposition, but the other two columns of Marines reach Hill 65 against minor resistance and make camp for the night. The 1st Raider Battalion joins the 5th Marines during the evening to bolster the coming offensive. Bad weather prevents the 5th Marines and the contingent of the 1st Raider Battalion from attacking across the Matanikau River during the morning of the 8th, but this doesn't prevent the Marines from making an improvised incision in the Japanese lines holding the east bank. In heavy fighting, the enemy beachhead is destroyed. General Vandegrift, informed of a probable enemy counterattack, diverts the troops intended for an assault against Kokumbona and Poha, against the enemy at Pt. Cruz in an all-out assault. The Yanks, consisting of Colonel Whaling's detachment and the 7th Marines, supplemented by the Artillery of the 11th Marines, attack vigorously, driving across the Matanikau charging toward the enemy to the north. Heavy fighting ensues in the vicinity of Matanikau Village and Pt. Cruz. After the brutalizing contest, the Marines withdraw eastwardly, crossing the Matanikau at its mouth under the cover fire of the 5th Marines, concluding the three day operation. The introductory engagement results in the loss of 700 Japanese troops. The Marines lose 65 men killed and 125 wounded. This operation prevents the Japanese 4th Infantry from crossing the Matanikau River and setting up artillery units, which would threaten the American beachhead.

**October 9 1942 — (Pacific)**-The U.S. 164th Infantry aboard a Convoy, escorted by a U.S. Task Force under Admiral Scott departs Noumea, New Caledonia. Marine Fighter Squadron 121 and the last contingent of 2nd Marines, 2nd Marine Division, also departs. The Japanese who have been getting hammered by Marine planes as they run ransports to reinforce their forces on Guadalcanal, speed troops (Tokyo Express) toward the contested island.

**October 10 1942-(Pacific-Guadalcanal)** Marine defense positions, undergoing constant reinforcing to prepare for a Japanese counter-offensive, send out heavy Patrols to watch for enemy activity.

**October 11-12 1942 — (Pacific-Solomons) — BATTLE OF CAPE ESPERANCE** — The Americans are holding precariously on Guadalcanal and the supply situation is critical. The 1st Marine Division has been heavily engaged since the initial landing on the island on August 7th without a lull. The mud Marines and their limited air strength have withstood all enemy attempts to dislodge and destroy them, but it has been tremendously difficult. Between the 13th and 14th, enemy planes heavily bombard American lines and this devastation is followed by 1,000 rounds of 14-inch shells from the battleships *Kongo* and *Haruna*. As soon as the Navy attempts to bring in supplies, the Japanese planes move in fast and force the vessels to withdraw. In addition, malaria and dysentery have taken a high toll on the Marines. An American task force, commanded by Rear Admiral Scott is escorting a convoy from Noumea to Guadalcanal to help alleviate the problem, but intelligence gathering by the code-breakers has been totally accurate, concerning a storm of enemy activity and

as anticipated a large enemy armada is converging on Guadalcanal. Scout planes spot the enemy movement in the afternoon and report the enemy positions at about 210 miles distant. Scott's Force shifts to blockade the entrance to Savo Sound off Cape Esperance. At this point, the Americans do not control the seas and are outgunned, but unlike their last deadly encounter off Savo Island on the 8th-9th of August, the Americans will acquire more accurate information and be prepared. It is the Japanese who receive the unexpected surprise this night.

The Japanese have been consistently reinforcing their positions by navigating the "Slot" under cover of darkness with the "Tokyo Express" and have massed over 30,000 troops in the vicinity of Lunga Point by the beginning of October. The U.S. Navy intends to derail this floating train and bring it to a flaming halt before it can arrive and bolster General Kawaguchi. Admiral Goto, commanding the enemy Force is convinced the Imperial Navy cannot fail, but his thoughts of prostrating the Americans are premature. Scott's Force deploys under a lazily setting sun as the tranquil waters begin to stir while the two antagonists converge. The sweltering night air does little to relieve the pressure as midnight approaches.

The Japanese cruise forward under a slender moon with three swaggering heavy cruisers, all participating conquerors at the battle of Savo Island during August. With the cruisers *Aoba*, *Furutaka* and the *Kinugasa* leading the pugnacious Armada, along with the destroyers *Murakumo* and *Fubuki*, this vociferous vanguard expects to lambaste the Marines at Lunga Point and afford the trailing group of warships the opportunity to debark the reinforcements and accompanying equipment, including tanks.

At 23:30, a pilot attached to the *San Francisco* sounds the alarm, signaling the presence of the Imperial Navy at the gateway to Guadalcanal. Admiral Scott reacts immediately, ordering a change in course that has the task force reversing its northeastward thrust for a sprint to block the pass between Cape Esperance and Savo Island. Three of the destroyers get a late jump during the complicated maneuver and put on a burst of speed to overtake the Cruisers and become positioned between the American Cruisers and the enemy Armada.

At 23:46, unaware that American destroyers might be in the direct line of fire, the *Helena* commences firing at a target sighted by radar. The *Boise* and the heavy cruisers *San Francisco* and *Salt Lake City* join in the shelling, broadsiding the surprised Japanese with deadly results before the call to battle stations. Unfortunately, the U.S. destroyers *Duncan Laffey* and *Farenholt* are in harm's way.

The *Aoba*, *Furutaka* and *Murakumo* are splattered with shells during the encounter, but Admiral Scott, fearful for the safety of the U.S. destroyers, orders a cease-fire until they can clear the fire zone. Admiral Goto attempts to reverse his course only to position his Armada back in line of fire from U.S. Ships, some of which have not received the order to cease fire. The turkey shoot resumes and additional deadly volleys crash into the beleaguered *Aoba*. The battered ship survives the ordeal, but Admiral Goto falls mortally wounded. The U.S. destroyers attempt to get on line with their guns and torpedoes firing as they move. The *Duncan* which is in the mid-die of the battle grid, while pursuing the enemy, becomes wedged between the enraged opponents and decides to break for the *Furutaka*. The pesty *Duncan* unloads her torpedoes, but is fatally hit herself, when an American salvo strikes a savage blow. The *Farenholt*, becomes the second American vessel damaged at about the same time as the *Duncan*, probably by U.S. guns.

The sky is full of arcing tracers forming multi colored steams of fire during the semi-confusion with unremitting volleys. The origin of the shells is often undetectable as both sides suffer grievous losses due to firing on their own ships. At a few strokes before midnight as the *Fubuki* stumbles through the

darkness a stone's throw from the guns of the *San Francisco*, the U.S. cruiser flips a switch and pins the vessel in her searchlights. American warships take a bead on the target and in unison commence firing, quickly extinguishing the lights of the *Fubuki* permanently. Possible enemy warships are tracked through the radar screen of the cruiser *Boise*. In an attempt to verify identification, her searchlight beams in the general direction of the suspected target, resulting in an immediate response from two Japanese warships. The *Boise* is riddled with fire and a subsequent explosion that illuminates the immediate area, exposing the location of the *Salt Lake City*. The spotlighted vessel sustains several hits. Undaunted, the Yankee clippers continue to buzz forward giving chase to the westward bound *Kinugasa*, which had fired upon the *Boise*, lumbering volleys of shells upon the fleeing vessel.

The contentious affair lasted only 34 minutes from inception to finale. By 00:20 on the 13th, the fleets have totally disengaged. The enemy heads west and Admiral Scott instructs the destroyer *McCalla* to circulate and lend aid to the disabled vessels.

On the 12th, the destroyers *Murakumo* and *Natsugumo*, trailing the retreating fleet to pick up survivors, are blown from the water by aircraft (Navy and Marine) based at Henderson Field. The Japanese have also lost the cruiser *Furutaka* and the destroyer *Fubuki*. The U.S. suffers damage to two cruisers, the USS *Salt Lake City* (CA-25) and the *Boise* (CL-47). In addition, the destroyers *Duncan* (DD-485) and *Farenholt* (DD-491), are also damaged during the vicious confrontation, the *Duncan* to be sunk by enemy fire on the 12th. The navy and Marines however, force the Japs to abort the planned invasion and return to Rabaul. Permanent defenses are being established at the mouth of the Matanikau.

**October 13 1942 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** Marine defenders continue to receive additional troops. The USS *McCawley* and *Zeilen* (Transports) deliver reinforcements from the 164th U.S. Infantry, Americal Division. In addition, over 200 men of the 1st Marine Air Wing, nearly 100 Marine casualties and weapons and ammunition are also on board. Sailors unload the vessels during frequent air attacks and successfully embark the 1st Raider Battalion, before departing for New Caledonia. Total troop strength of the 1st Marine Division stands at 23,088 men, excluding the forces on Tulagi. The Marines, anticipating a major assault by the Japs, split the perimeter into five sections, with their greatest strength placed to the west facing the Matanikau River where the Japanese would most probably strike. Henderson Field is struck again, by enemy planes, causing damage including a hit which destroys 5,000 gallons of aviation fuel.

**October 15 1942 —(Pacific-Guadalcanal)** American aircraft from Henderson Field and New Hebrides attack an enemy convoy which had evaded destruction the previous day and is presently landing at Tassafaronga. The Japanese lose two Vessels, while others are damaged. The defenders on Guadalcanal receive desperately needed gasoline, via army and Marine transport planes.

**October 20 1942 — (Pacific-New Caledonia)** A meeting concerning the situation on Guadalcanal is held aboard Halsey's flagship, the *Argonne*, moored in Noumea harbor. Major General Vandegrift, 1st Marine Division Commander, Major General Alexander M. Patch U.S.A., Major General Millard F. Harmon U.S.A. (Senior Army Officer in South Pacific), Lt. General Thomas Holcomb Commandant U.S.M.C., Major General Barney Vogel are among the Officers in attendance. The question, "ARE WE GOING TO EVACUATE OR HOLD?" is asked by Halsey. Vandegrift insists: "I CAN HOLD, BUT I'VE GOT TO HAVE MORE ACTIVE SUPPORT THAN I'VE BEEN GETTING." Rear Admiral Kelly Turner indignantly proclaims the Navy is doing everything possible and further explains there are insufficient Warships in the area. The conversation continues to be

heated. The situation is so bad that the Yanks are eating captured Japanese food and using captured gasoline for the vehicles. Admiral Halsey agrees to send additional troops to Guadalcanal and he diverts the 147th Infantry (intended to strike Ndeni, Santa Cruz Islands), to bolster Vandegrift's force. Halsey informs Vandegrift: "ALL RIGHT, GO ON BACK. I'LL PROMISE YOU EVERYTHING I'VE GOT."

**October 21 1942 —(Pacific-Guadalcanal)** The Japanese, intent on crossing the Matanikau River, to reach the east bank, are again repulsed by the Marines, who are supported by Artillery and Tanks. American firepower destroys another Japanese Tank, prompting the enemy to pull back.

**October 22 1942- Pacific-Guadalcanal)** The Japanese keep pressure on the Marine defenses with artillery barrages, but due to the main enemy assault force not being on line, an intended attack against the Lunga perimeter is postponed.

**October 23 1942 —(Pacific-Guadalcanal)** A Japanese offensive, with tanks supporting its advance infantry, meets nasty resistance by the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines. Rapid fire mauls the attackers and devastates their tanks. The Japanese retire, badly bloodied, losing nearly 600 men and eight Tanks. The Marines suffer 25 killed and 14 wounded. The main body of the Japanese Force had not positioned itself properly for attack, forcing a postponement of the major assault until the following day. The Japanese primary force, is struggling along a primitive road, tramping through severe rains that greatly hamper progress and when it finally deploys for the attack against the Marines holding "Bloody Ridge" on the 24th, it is forced to assault without the assistance of Artillery, which is still bogged down along the jungle road. The fierce engagement commences late in the afternoon of the 24th and continues throughout the night. The Marines under Lt. Colonel "Chesty Puller" battle steadfastly killing as many Japs as possible. Holes develop along the Marine perimeter on Bloody Ridge, but the Japs do not penetrate. Army reinforcements arrive to stuff the holes and help to repulse the attack. At dawn on the 25th, Bloody Ridge still flies the Stars and Stripes, despite ill-controlled and undisciplined banzai attacks, which had cost the enemy heavy casualties. General Hyakutake had approximately 20,000 troops at his disposal against the Americans, but only about half had been committed during the offensive. Unsatisfied with the rebuttal by the Yanks, another unsuccessful assault is mounted on the 25th with the same dismal results; Old Glory reigns and the Japanese get thrashed. The Japanese Fleet, offshore, is informed of the lackluster showing by the Imperial troops and must modify its plans somewhat as the only ground troops now threatening the perimeter are dead.

**October 24 1942- (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** The Japanese mount a strong attack, against the south flank of the Marine perimeter on Guadalcanal. The 1st Battalion, 7th Marines, assisted by cover fire of the 2nd Battalion, 164th Infantry, and reinforced by the 3rd Battalion, 164th Infantry, U.S.A., handily turns back the attacks, which last into the 25th. Sgt. John Basilone (U.S.M.C.), commanding two sections of heavy machine guns, holds firmly against the brutalizing attack. Enemy fire, including mortars and grenades knocks one section out of action, leaving the task of holding against a Regimental sized attack to two men, but Basilone moves another gun into position and then repairs another which he begins to fire until relieved. Basilone risks death again, going through enemy lines for desperately needed ammunition, required for the survival of his crew. Sergeant Basilone's extraordinary actions, hasten the destruction of an entire Japanese regiment. The Japanese fleet waits in vain for word that the Marines had been driven from Henderson. The Marines instead gain needed time for Rear Admiral Kinkaid's Task Force to arrive at New Hebrides. This gives Halsey two separate U.S. carrier Forces, built upon the *Enterprise* and *Hornet*, which converge northeast of New

Hebrides and are placed under the command of U.S. Admiral Kinkaid prior to departing for the Santa Cruz Islands.

**October 25 1942 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** Prior to daybreak, Japanese warships, including a heavy cruiser and destroyers, land reinforcements on Guadalcanal. The warships bombard Henderson but the weather is so terrible that U.S. Planes cannot get off the ground to strike back until around noon. While the enemy naval guns pound the perimeter, two additional Japanese naval forces are detected moving toward Guadalcanal. The army (six B-17s from Espiritu) and Marines combine with the navy and bomb the light cruiser *Yura*, damaging it enough that the enemy destroys it. In addition some damage is inflicted upon two destroyers. Admiral Halsey orders the *Enterprise* to dispatch planes in search of the two approaching naval forces but no contact is made. Admiral Scott's Task Force is directed to search around Savo Island during the night, but again no encounters with the enemy. Scott's Force, including two cruisers three destroyers and the battleship *Washington* will not participate in the main battle of Santa Cruz except to fend off enemy planes. Admiral Halsey, intuitively thinking the battle imminent had issued orders to his commands: "ATTACK REPEAT ATTACK" In other activity, the USS *Amberjack* surfaces near Tulagi and delivers army personnel and supplies. U.S. naval guns inadvertently fire upon and damage the USS *Hughes* (DD-410). Another American vessel, the USS *Zane*, is damaged when it is encountered by enemy warships in the Sealark Channel and the USS *Seminole* (AT-65), a tug, is sunk by enemy fire. Marines repulse two attacks against their positions during night of 25th-26th. In one of the many acts of extraordinary courage, Sgt. Mitchell Paige directs the fire of his gunners until they are all killed or wounded, then singlehandedly barrages the advancing enemy with deadly fire until reinforcements arrive to give support fire. Paige, fearlessly grabs a rifle and leads a successful bayonet charge, driving the Japs away. The Marines hold the expensive ground. Paige receives the Medal of Honor.

**October 26 1942 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** Operational aircraft are down to 29, but the Yanks have thoroughly shattered the Japanese on the ground, after they attempted unsuccessfully for three days to break through Marine lines. Army reinforcements rushed to help Colonel Puller's troops hold aptly named Bloody Ridge.

**October 29 1942 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** The Japanese, aware that the reinforcements have been beaten back at sea and especially weary from their futile effort to take Guadalcanal from the Marines, start to withdraw toward Koli Point and Kokumbona.

**October 31 1942 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** The Marines are preparing to launch an offensive, against the Japanese, who have been racked in recent days, sustaining heavy casualties. Cruisers and destroyers bombard Japanese positions at Point Cruz on Guadalcanal.

**November 1 1942 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** The 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines, moves east, near Koli Point toward the Metapona River. On the following day, the 2nd Marines support the 1st and 3rd Battalions, 5th Marines, as they begin to further isolate enemy resistance west of Point Cruz

**November 2nd 1942 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** The addition of two 155 Howitzer Batteries (1, Army) gives more muscle to the American firepower in the Lunga area. These new weapons are the first to provide the effectiveness to match the long-range enemy guns. The 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines, still moving east from the march which had begun on the 1st, sets its defenses at Tetera village. Additional Marines, the 1st and 3rd Battalions, 5th Marines, and contingents of the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, press westward to apply more pressure. The Japanese land about 1,500 troops east of Koli Point in an attempt to supplement those already ashore. The Japanese then begin to construct an airfield.

**November 3 1942 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** The Marines continue to mop up enemy troops in the vicinity of Point Cruz. The 2nd Battalion encounters hardened resistance at the Nalimbiu River and is forced to withdraw to the west bank and await reinforcements. Headquarters, after being informed of the enemy reinforcements being landed, dispatches Planes and also directs Allied Naval Vessels to commence firing on enemy positions. The 1st Battalion, 7th Marines, embarks by barge heading for Koli Point.

**November 4th 1942 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** The American area of responsibility is divided into two sectors. Brigadier General William Rupertus (assistant Commander, 1st Marine Division) will command the east sector; and Brigadier General Edmund B. Sebree, U.S.A., assumes command of the western sector with both under the command of General Vandegrift, Commanding Officer 1st Marine Division. In other activity, the 164th Infantry, U.S.A., departs the perimeter to assist the 7th Marines presently engaged at Koli Point. The 2nd Raider Battalion, commanded by Colonel Carison, departs Aola Bay, heading for Koli Point to trap the Japanese who might attempt to flee east from the closing Marines and Soldiers. (See November 4th-December 4th 1942).

**November 4th-December 4th 1942 — (Guadalcanal) CARSON'S PATROL** — A brilliant patrol operation contributes tremendously to the success of the Guadalcanal campaign. It begins as an American force debarks reinforcements at Aola Bay; the 8th Marines, supported by the 1st Battalion, 10th Marines (75mm pack howitzers) arrive. In addition, the 1st Battalion 147th Infantry, U.S.A., the 246th Field Artillery Provisional Battalion K, U.S.A., about 500 Seabees and Carison's Raiders (contingents of the 2nd Raider Battalion), also land to supplement the American Force. The Seabees initiate the construction of an airfield, but the plan is scuttled because the terrain is ill-suited for an airfield. Subsequent to the landing, the Raiders drive west to intercept and destroy enemy supply bases. The Raiders are ambushed on the eighth by a small enemy unit, but advance and establish a base camp near Binu on the following day. Between the 11th and the 17th, the Raiders engage a strong force that had evaded encirclement by the 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines in the vicinity of Tetere. The Raiders pour heavy fire into their ranks, killing much of the force and scattering the remainder in the brush.

Carlson's command advances to the upper Tenaru on the 24th of November, splits his force into three groups; one operates from a base camp with two units in the field. Several supply paths and bivouac sectors are detected. On the 29th of November the Raiders destroy a large supply area, including artillery pieces. On the following day, the Raiders surprise 100 Japs in a bivouac area, killing 75 of them. The patrol returns to the 1st Marine Division lines on December 4th, having disrupted enemy supply lines and killed approximately 175 enemy troops while sustaining a loss of six Raiders during the operation. The patrol contributes immensely to the morale of the American efforts on the 'canal and the ultimate defeat of the Japanese. The timely hit and run attacks had unnerved the enemy, which had been operating behind the Marine positions near the Matanikau.

**November 6 1942 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** The 7th Marines continue attacking eastward, crossing the Nalimbiu River and driving across the coast, pushing the Japs before them. The task force, which debarked the reinforcements at Aola Bay, has completed its mission and now departs the area.

**November 8th 1942 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** The 1st, and 2nd Battalions, 7th Marines and 164th Infantry, U.S.A., continue moving east to encircle the Japs at Koli Point. The Japanese have been landing reinforcements in the vicinity of Cape Esperance and Kokumbona, since late October. On the following day, the 164th Infantry and 7th Marines repel several Jap attempts to escape the net. In other activity, Admiral Halsey visits with the troops on Guadalcanal and confers with the

Commanders. While staying in General Vandegrift's cramped quarters for the night he finds it hard to sleep and admittedly is scared when an enemy destroyer commences a bombardment. American artillery units return fire, but Halsey notes: "IT WASN'T THE NOISE THAT KEPT ME AWAKE; IT WAS FRIGHT. I CALLED MYSELF YELLOW-AND-WORSE AND TOLD MYSELF GO TO SLEEP YOU DAMNED COWARD!" He further states: "IT DIDN'T DO ANY GOOD; I COULDN'T OBEY ORDERS" During a press conference while on this trip he does issue his "recipe" for winning the war: "KILL JAPS, KILL JAPS AND KEEP ON KILLING JAPS."

**November 9 1942-(Pacific-SolomonsGuadalcanal)** The 7th Marines, assisted by 164th Infantry, surrounds the enemy at Gavaga Creek and repulse several attempts to break out. In other activity, contingents of the 164th Infantry and units of the 8th Marines, withdraw from Koli Point and head for the Lunga perimeter, to participate in another attack on Kokumbona. (Pacific-New Guinea) The Allies reach Natunga with advance troops.

**November 12-15 1942 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal) — ThE NAVAL BATTLE OF GUADALCANAL (Savo Island) —** The Japanese, determined to drive the Americans from Guadalcanal, dispatch another naval force and 10,000 troops to destroy Henderson Field and eradicate the American naval presence off Guadalcanal. The American task forces, commanded by Admirals Callaghan and Scott, composing 13 vessels are ordered to intercept the enemy and forestall their advance until planes from the *Enterprise* can get from Noumea to the area on Friday the 13th. Admiral Halsey pitches the *San Francisco* (Admiral Callaghan's Flagship), *Portland* (Heavy Cruisers), three light cruisers including the *Atlanta* (Admiral Scott's Flagship) and eight intrepid destroyers against the overwhelming strength of the Japanese force which includes two battleships, a light cruiser and 15 destroyers. Radar contact is made with three enemy columns at 01:24. Callaghan taking the odds into perspective initiates the attack, but the hazards of poor communications and the inability of precise radar tracking, due to the narrow sea passages causes grave complications for the U.S. forces.

Immediately following the radar sighting, the U.S. begins to close on the enemy, almost 30,000 yards dead ahead; however the journey is leading them into the jaws of the enemy warships which flank the advancing U.S. Force as it advances, its vision obscured by darkness. With a sudden flash of artificial illumination, the entrapped warships are lit up by giant searchlights. The Yanks are caught in an avalanche of shells that threatens not only the pygmy task forces and the lives of thousands of U.S. seamen, but the entire Solomon operation. Guadalcanal, the first American offensive of the war, and the lives of 20,000 Marines are at stake. Another striking force, including two carriers and the main body of the Japanese 38th Division is closing aboard transports escorted by additional destroyers.

Callaghan and Scott instinctively strike back with heavy barrages of their own, attempting to escape the gauntlet and regain the momentum in time to bar Admiral Hiroaki Abe's passage. As exploding shells and tracer bullets electrify the sky, the opposing ships criss-cross blindly exchanging blows in a relentless struggle. Communications between the American vessels is practically cut off during the free-for-all; normal attack strategies are thrown to the wind and every ship is on its own, often unable to distinguish friend from foe in a colossal circular stampede.

The blind shootout also has the Japanese strike force mesmerized as their own ships fall out of position, with U.S. destroyers and cruisers in their place. In the end, the Japanese admiral orders a retirement at 02:00, bewildered by the chaotic turn of events and totally unaware that only a few American warships remain to hamper his advance. As the Japanese head west, the *Kirishima* makes

a wide swing and unleashes a few final volleys against the American ships and then proceeds to speed westward. The *Hiei* is plagued by American fire as she retires and sustains hits from the guns of the *San Francisco*. The destroyer *Yudachi* is left behind, fully ablaze. Additional exchanges continue for a few hours, but the main event terminates at approximately 02:25 after a whirlwind contest lasting less than an hour. By 02:30, the U.S. fleet begins to retire.

Admiral Halsey had anticipated the *Enterprise* arriving on the scene, but the weather causes the Big "E" to run late. Admiral Halsey, sweating the battle out at Noumea, receives no word until after daylight and the first reports are staggering. It isn't until early afternoon that Halsey gets a clearer picture of the ongoing operation. The destroyers *Barton* and *Laffey* have both been lost with catastrophic casualties; the former losing 90 percent of her crew subsequent to torpedo strikes. The latter is abandoned; however, the depth charges detonate without warning. The ship plummets to the bottom, with the majority of its survivors caught in the vacuum and pulled through the boiling water. The *Monssen* and the *Cushing* are also lost, the latter lingering until 17:00. The cruisers *San Francisco*, *Atlanta*, *Portland* and *Juneau* and the destroyers *Aaron Ward*, *O'Bannon* and *Sterett* are also damaged. Only the destroyer *Fletcher* and the cruiser *Helena* remain unscathed. Both Admiral Scott and Callaghan are killed during the encounter, but their clearheaded decisions and heroic stance will have them remembered as the protagonists of Guadalcanal who had barred the Japanese from reaching the beachhead. One more somber incident occurs as the light cruiser *Juneau* attempts to make it back to safety. At about 11:00 the Japanese submarine *I-26* unleashes a torpedo that virtually splits the vessel into pieces. The nearby crippled vessels cannot offer assistance, and later calls for help never reach Admiral Halsey. Slightly over 100 men reach the water, but only 10 will survive, pushing the loss of life to about 700.

The Japanese retreat with the knowledge that their ground forces have been whipped on the 'canal in conjunction with their own failure to penetrate. Planes from the *Enterprise* arrive in the afternoon and inflict additional punishment to the *Hiei*. The vessel is struck by Marine planes and by planes from the Big "E~" The riddled warship is scuttled later in the day, giving the Japanese Imperial Navy their first Battleship loss since the war has begun.

By the 14th, the spunky but battered and exhausted remnants of the U.S. defending force are unable to engage another enemy fleet. Admiral Halsey anticipating this possibility, had during the afternoon of the 13th dispatched a message to Admiral Kinkaid instructing him to speed two battleships and four of his destroyers, under the command of Rear Admiral W.A. Lee, toward Savo Sound (Iron Bottom) to lay ambush for the expected arrival of the next wave of enemy ships. Kinkaid responds to Halsey that Lee is on his way, but will not arrive until 08:00 on the 14th. The Japanese begin closing within striking range of Henderson Field before dawn. General Vandegrift USMC, calls Halsey immediately, requesting aid as Henderson is under bombardment. The dispatch: "BEING HEAVILY SHELLLED" While Halsey waits impatiently, he learns the uncontested enemy bombardment has subsided after a blistering hour and twenty five minutes without immediate cause, with three planes destroyed and seventeen more damaged during the attack. Halsey then learns that pesty PT Boats had impetuously raced out from Tulagi to engage the enemy armada. Lt. Hugh M. Robinson, leading the squadron, charges directly into the force consisting of five destroyers and six cruisers. The menacing PTs display cavalier recklessness and force the enemy to expend their ammunition and withdraw, forestalling disaster and buying time for Halsey and Vandegrift.

Planes from Henderson and the USS *Enterprise* the only American carrier afloat in the South Pacific, attack against the superior enemy force, dealing them devastating losses. The enemy task force loses

seven of its 11 troop transports, one heavy cruiser; in addition, three other warships are damaged. Four remaining but damaged transports sputter toward Guadalcanal, beaching in the vicinity of Tassafaronga. The U.S. had committed every available plane to destroy the enemy. They strike with vengeance between 10:00 and darkness, landing only to refuel and reload. A group of Marine pilots share in a bonanza. A Japanese speedboat racing away from one of the wrecked vessels and transporting what appears to be a lot of Oriental brass is cut to pieces by the Marine pilots.

The four remaining transports, carrying approximately 4,000 of the original 10,000 Japanese reinforcements, manage to stumble toward Tassafaronga under cover of darkness and debark safely, but their sanctuary is temporary. On the following morning, the transports are located and a combined artillery, naval and air bombardment from New Hebrides and Henderson Field is poured upon them, wiping out half the Japanese force. The deluge of shells also ruins the supplies that had been unloaded on the beach.

Rear Admiral W. A. Lee prepares to engage the approaching enemy and culminate the pernicious conflagration which has transformed Leyte Gulf into a grotesque necropolis, its floor laden with castaway gray sepulchers. Lee's Force, comprising the battleships *South Dakota* and *Washington* and the destroyers *Walke*, *Benham*, *Gwin* and the *Preston* converge on Savo Sound to engage four cruisers, the battleship *Kirishima* and nine destroyers. The confrontation erupts prior to midnight and continues raging into the 15th.

Admiral Kondo, under the impression he is facing only cruisers and destroyers, divides his task force into four sections to grasp an advantage, but the move unbalances his total strength and allows the Yanks an opportunity to attack them piecemeal. The Japanese succeed in getting some of their vessels behind Lee's force, but the *Walke* flings several deadly volleys into the Sendai and accompanying destroyers. The Japanese warships react immediately, pounding away at the dauntless destroyers. Meanwhile, the battleships *South Dakota* and *Washington*, two self designated equalizers maneuver quietly into position.

The tone of the raging battle rises to a crescendo as the staggered destroyers are fighting spreading fires. The Japanese become overconfident as the gallant destroyers begin to totter under Kondo's missiles. At 23:36 the *Preston* is decimated at point blank range by the *Nagara* and ordered abandoned, costing the lives of four officers and 112 enlisted men. The *Walke* is also abandoned, six minutes later, allegedly brought about by the guns of the *Nagara* and a subsequent torpedo. This costs the lives of 75 seamen, many of whom succumb instantaneously when depth charges explode while they are alongside the incinerated vessels. The *Benham* is also rocked with a devastating series of hits, but the vessel shakes, quivers while capsizing, but recovers miraculously to roll back and survive the onslaught temporarily. Meanwhile the tempo of the enemy guns accelerate as the damaged *Gwin*, under the umbrella of the battleships presses the attack. The disabled *Benham* struggles forward to rescue survivors of the *Preston* and *Walke* but the Japanese pour a continual fusillade, aborting the attempt.

The *Gwin*, damaged earlier by the *Nagara*, is hit again and unable to unleash her torpedoes. Meanwhile, the *South Dakota* steams forward, her turrets spewing shells upon the enemy. Her radar fails, however, and the knockout punch is delayed. Enemy searchlights expose her position and a flurry of enemy fire lambastes the battleship, slaying about 40 men and demolishing one of her turrets. The *Washington* drives to crush Kondo's force from his flank. The *Washington* delivers a convincing barrage of five and 16 inch shells that silence the Kondo effectively. At 01:05, with the demise of a destroyer and the imminent loss of the *Kirishima* which is running in circles like a punch

drunk fighter, Admiral Nobutake Kondo heads his battered fleet west for Tokyo.

The U.S. loses several destroyers and the Japanese lose a heavy cruiser, the battleship *Kirishima* and a destroyer. Rear Admirals Daniel Callaghan and Norman Scott are killed during the initial stages of the bloody engagement, but the Japanese Navy has been repulsed at Guadalcanal for the last time on a large scale. Japan will not attempt to deploy a large naval force there again. The subsequent capture of enemy documents shows exactly where the Japanese intended to accept the surrender of General Vandegrift, but there will be no death march on Guadalcanal.

Although the Japanese continue to struggle fanatically against the Americans, this tumultuous victory at sea ultimately seals the fate of the island and preserves New Zealand and Australia in the process. Japan has been bragging on the radio that America is doomed, but their propagandists cannot suppress the facts and their animated editorials only achieve the furthering of American resolve.

After the fall of Guam in December of 1941, a Jap announcer had poured propaganda over the airwaves, profusely dishonoring America. Tokyo Rose is not the only endearing enemy voice that the Marines would like to quell. This particular lovable Nip, who speaks with a lisp had clamored after the fall of Guam: "GUAM NOW BELONG TO JAPAN FOREVER.~" "NEVER AGAIN WILL AMERICANS TOUCH ITS SOIL" After the 1st Marine Division landed on Guadalcanal, the same infamous announcer proclaims: "AT THIS RIDICULOUS RATE OF ADVANCE, AMERICA WON'T RECOVER ITS LOST TERRITORY FOR PERHAPS TWO HUNDRED YEARS" He subsequently states: "OUR AXIS ALLIES ARE PINNING AMERICA DOWN IN EUROPE. WE SHALL BE VERY MUCH STRONGER BEFORE AMERICA IS FREE TO MOVE IN THE PACIFIC" As if his big mouth isn't already making him unpopular with Americans, this "son of heaven" takes another shot at the Americans, stating: "WE ARE WILLING TO SELL YOU LAND AT 1,000 LIVES AN ACRE. FOR SUCH A PRICE WE WILL SELL YOU A MILLION SQUARE MILES IF YOU WISH" The Yanks are not intending to wait 200 years; they are on their way toward Guam and Tokyo.

In one of the saddest personal tragedies of the entire war, one mother and father back in the States are soon to be visited by a representative of the Navy Department. The Sullivan family, proud and patriotic, see their sons go to war immediately after the debacle at Pearl Harbor. Inspired by the disaster, they go together and are assigned to the same ship, the cruiser *Juneau*. The Fighting Sullivans' are busy during this battle against the Japanese. sticking together as they have since they were boys, until a Japanese torpedo crashes into the vessel. All five Sullivans go down with the ship. The navy, which had allowed the Sullivans special permission to serve on the same vessel, takes precautions that this type of tragedy can never happen again. Naval vessel casualties are as follows: November 12th: USS *San Francisco* (CA-38), a heavy cruiser, damaged by air attack, the USS *Buchanan* (DD-484), a destroyer, is accidentally damaged by U.S. naval gunfire. November 13th: American light cruiser *Atlanta* (CL-51) and *Juneau* (CL-52), both sink, the *Atlanta* by Naval gunfire and the *Juneau* by an enemy torpedo; the destroyers *Barton* (DD-599), *Cushing* (DD-376), *Laffey* (DD-459) and the *Monssen* (DD436) are also sunk. In addition, the following U.S. vessels are damaged on the 13th: heavy cruiser *Portland* (CA-33), by enemy surface craft torpedo; heavy cruiser *San Francisco* (CA-38), by naval gunfire; light cruiser *Helena* (CL-50), by naval gunfire; destroyers *Aaron Ward* (DD-483) and *Sterett* (DD-407), both by naval gunfire and the destroyer *O'Bannon* (DD-450), is damaged accidentally by U.S. guns. The Japanese Navy sustains the loss of the battleship *Hiei* and two destroyers, the *Akatsuki* and the *Yudachi*. November 14th: the American destroyers *Preston* (DD-379) and the *Walke* (DD-416) are both sunk. The Japanese lose the heavy

Cruiser *Kinugasa*. November 15th: The destroyer USS *Benham* (DD-397) is sunk by U.S. Forces, after having been damaged by Japanese surface vessels. The USS *South Dakota* (BB-57), the destroyer *Gwin* (DD-433), and the cargo ship *Almaak* (AK-27) are damaged. The Japanese lose the battleship *Kirishima* and the destroyer *Ayanami*.

Subsequent to the battle, General Vandegrift sends the following message to Admiral Halsey: "TO SCOTT CALLAGHAN AND THEIR MEN GOES OUR GREATEST HOMAGE & WITH MAGNIFICENT COURAGE AGAINST SEEMINGLY HOPELESS ODDS, THEY DROVE BACK THE FIRST HOSTILE STRIKE AND MADE SUCCESS POSSIBLE & TO THEM THE MEN OF GUADALCANAL LIFT THEIR BATTERED HELMETS IN DEEPEST ADMIRATION' Admiral Nimitz also rings praise upon the men who have defended Guadalcanal especially Admirals Callaghan and Scott. Referring to Admiral Halsey he states: "HE HAS THAT RARE COMBINATION OF INTELLECTUAL CAPACITY AND MILITARY AUDACITY AND CAN CALCULATE TO A CAT'S WHISKER THE RISK INVOLVED."

**November 18 1942 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** The U.S. Forces (Western Sector), commanded by General Sebree, U.S.A., begin to advance to an offensive position. The 2nd Battalion, 182nd Infantry, with cover fire from the 8th Marines, crosses the Matanikau River, near its mouth and secures Hill 66.

**November 18-30 1942 —(Pacific-Guadalcanal)** U.S. Army and Marine Corps contingents continue skirmishing with the Japanese, as they gnaw toward the main Japanese Force, situated at Kokumbona and the Poha River. The Yanks clear the enemy from Point Cruz, but withdraw, during the end of November, to brace for an anticipated Japanese counter-offensive.

**November 22 1942 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** The Japanese tenaciously resist U.S. attempts to dislodge them. The 164th and 182nd Regiments are stalled, as they drive west. The 8th Marines finalize preparations, to push through the 164th Infantry lines, in order to crash through the rigid Japanese defenses. On the following day, the Marines unsuccessfully attack the Japanese positions. The offensive will be halted on the 23rd, to await reinforcements.

**November 23 1942 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** The combined amount of Army, Navy, Marine Corps and New Zealand Planes, operating on Guadalcanal, stands at 84.

**November 29 1942 — (United States)** Approval is reached in Washington for the 25th Infantry Division USA, to relieve the 1st Marine Division, on Guadalcanal. (Pacific-Solomons) On Guadalcanal, Aola Bay is rejected as a site for an airfield, however, Carney Airfield is to be constructed at Koli Point. Contingents of the 147th Infantry Regiment, additional Sea-bees, elements of the 9th Marine Defense Battalion, and units of the 246th Field Artillery Battalion arrive at Koli Point.

**December 4 1942 —(Pacific-Guadalcanal)** The 2nd Marine Raider Battalion finishes its month-long journey from Aola Bay, reaching the Lunga perimeter; losses along the route amount to 17, against 400 enemy killed. The reports, turned into Major General A.A. Vandegrift, by Carlson, inform him of the enemy concentration of strength to the south.

**December 8 1942-(Pacific-Guadalcanal)** The U.S. 3rd Infantry Regiment and the 132nd RCT, USA, arrive in Guadalcanal to relieve the 1st Marine Division. On the following day, General A. A. Vandegrift, U.S.M.C., will be replaced by Major General Alexander M. Patch, U.S.A., as commanding officer of Guadalcanal.

**December 11 1942 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** The 164th and 182nd Infantries, U.S.A., positioned at Point Cruz, are relieved by the 8th Marines and the 132nd Infantry. This troop transfer continues through the middle of December. On the 17th, the 35th Infantry Regiment, U.S.A., 25th Division will arrive on Guadalcanal.

**December 12 1942 — (Pacific-Solomons)** U.S. PT Boats, operating off Guadalcanal, intercept several Japanese destroyers. The PT-44 is sunk, as well as the destroyer *Terutsuki*. On Guadalcanal, the 2nd Marine Division relieves the Americal Division west of Matanikau. During the night a Japanese contingent springs an attack against Fighter Strip No. 2. In other activity, the 2nd Marine

Division's Signal Co. and the 18th Naval Construction Bn. arrive.

**December 26 1942 — (Pacific-Solomons)** On New Georgia, U.S. naval planes attack Japanese vessels at Wick-ham Anchorage. On Guadalcanal, air and artillery units bombard Japanese positions at Gifu prior to another attack by the 3rd Bn., 132nd Regiment; limited progress is made. In other activity, forward contingents of the 2nd Marine Air Wing arrive to relieve the 1st Marine Air Wing at Henderson Field. Brigadier General Francis P. Mulcahy of the latter, relieves Brigadier General L.E. Woods.

**January 1 1943- (PacificSolomons)** The USS *Nautilus* (SS-168) evacuates 29 people, including three children and 14 nuns, from Teop Island and sails for Australia. Fresh troops arrive, the 2nd Marine Engineering Battalion and the 27th Regiment, 25th Division, U.S.A.

**January 2 1943-(Pacific-Solomons-Guadalcanal)** General Harmon activates XIV Corps, comprising the Americal (reinforced by 147th Regiment) and 25th Division; it is commanded by General A. Patch. General Sebree replaces Patch as Commander of the Americal Division. In addition, the 2nd Marine Division and other Marine units are attached to Corps. The 132nd Infantry moves against Gifu, and seizing the crest of Hill 27, then repulses several counterattacks. PT boats attack an enemy flotilla near Cape Esperance and damage one destroyer.

**January 4 1943 —(Pacific-Solomons)** The Japanese holding Guadalcanal are ordered to pull out and head for New Georgia Island. Fighting on Mount Austen continues, with the 132nd Infantry stretched in a semicircle between Hills 27 and 31. The Army, fighting for about 20 days in this area, has killed between 400 and 500 enemy soldiers, while suffering 383 total casualties themselves. Marine reinforcements (6th Marines) arrive, taking the 2nd Marine Division up to full strength for what becomes the last 36 days of battle on the island. Also, the 161st Regiment, 25th Division arrives on the 'Canal.

**January 6 1943 — (Pacific-Solomons)** An enemy dive bomber damages the light cruiser, USS *San Juan* (CL-54). On the 'Canal Brigadier General Alphonse De Carre, commanding the forward echelon of the 2nd Marine Division assumes responsibility for all Marine forces on the island (except aviation).

**January 12 1943 —(Pacific-Australia)** The 1st Marine Division arrives at Melbourne from Guadalcanal. **(Pacific-Guadalcanal)** Japanese put up strong defense and repulse attempts to seize Galloping Horse, Sea Horse and Gifu. In one incident, overpowering Japanese machine gun fire halts elements of the 25th Division. Captain Charles W. Davis braves the danger and carries directions to the besieged battalions. On the following day, he leads a gallant charge against more devastating fire and seizes the crest of the hill, permitting the Corps to seize the objective. Captain (later Major) Davis receives the Medal of Honor. In other activity, the 6th Marines and the artillery of the 2nd Marine Division are attached to the Composite Army-Marine Division (Provisional) which also includes the 182nd and 147th Army Infantry Regiments and artillery units of the Americal Division.

**January 13 1943 —(Pacific-Guadalcanal)** The XVI Corps enlarges its offensive to secure the 'Canal. The 2nd Marine Division initiates its coastal assault moving from line Point Cruz-Hill 66 (to the right of the U.S. 25th Division.) Heavy enemy fire halts the advance of the 8th Marines as its attack expands from Hills 80 and 81. Meanwhile the 2nd Marines drives west from Hill 66 gaining about 800 yards. In conjunction, the 27th Regiment, 25th Division powers forward, reducing Hill 53 with its 2nd Battalion, completing the seizure of Galloping Horse. Japanese resistance halts the advance of Company C, 35th Regiment; the 2nd Battalion drives against entrenched pillboxes at the Gifu strongpoint, making no genuine progress.

**January 15 1943 —(Pacific-SolomonsGuadalcanal)** The Japanese entrenched at Gifu refuse a surrender demand and continue to defy American attempts to dislodge them, despite supporting artillery, and flame-throwing tanks. Also, the Japanese mount heavy resistance against the 2nd Marine Division which is advancing along the coast. In other activity, planes from Henderson Field attack an enemy convoy, damaging two of nine destroyers. Also, the 2nd Marines depart for New Zealand.

**January 16 1943 —(Pacific-Solomons)** On Guadalcanal, the XIV Corps orders a new offensive to extend its positions westward to the Poha River. The Composite Army-Marine Division (**LAM**), comprising the 6th Marines, 147th and 182nd Regiments, and the Americal and 2nd Marine Divisions' artillery units advance on a 3,000 yard front in conjunction with the 25th Division attack against the Japanese south flank.

**January 17 1943 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** The Marines and Soldiers continue to attack along the coast with the 182nd Infantry on the left and the 6th Marines on the right. Meanwhile, the Japanese

at Gifu have not responded to the earlier surrender request; a two and one-half hour artillery barrage strikes the strongpoint to encourage reconsideration. A ground attack is aborted as darkness begins to settle.

**January 19 1943 —(Pacific-Guadalcanal)** Heavy fighting continues along the line. The 6th Marines and the 182nd Infantry attempt to close a gap between the two forces. The 182nd Infantry, operating on the left of the CAM Division advances a brutalizing 1,000 yards since beginning its push on the 17th. Meanwhile, the Japanese are still under heavy attack at Gifu, by the 2nd Battalion, 35th Infantry (25th Division). In other activity, the 147th Infantry is transferred to Point Cruz after being replaced at Koli Point by the American Reconnaissance Squadron.

**January 20-23 1943 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal) The combined forces of the 25th Army Division and the Army-Marine** Division drive toward Kokumbona to finally crush the remaining Japanese force. By the 23rd, the 25th Division seizes the high ground south of the stronghold, giving it control of the coastal positions in the area, while the Army-Marine Division plows through enormous opposition and seizes the southeastern heights of Kokumbona on the 23rd, culminating all enemy resistance on Mount Austen; it then moves to cut the retreating Japanese off at Cape Esperance.

**January 22 1943-(Pacific-Solomons)** On Guadalcanal, at 06:30, the XIV Corps drives toward the Poha River. The drive is supported by air, naval gunfire and artillery. The CAM Division advances west toward the high ground southeast of Kokumbona, while the 25th Infantry Division, operating on the south flank, attacks toward Hill 87. The 6th Marines hit heavy opposition near Hill 94; the 147th Regiment seizes Hill 95. By 17:00, elements of the 25th Division control Hills 90 and 98 east and south of Kokumbona respectively. Meanwhile, contingents of the 35th Regiment, 25th Division, bolstered by a Tank, drive a wedge into Gifu.

**January 27 1943 — (Guadalcanal)** The Army-Marine Division pushes further, advancing through the jungle to reach the Nueha River. (Pacific-New Hebrides) Headquarters 2nd Marine Aircraft Wing is established at Efate.

**January 28 1943 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** The combined Army-Marine Force drives west from the Nueha River, eliminating resistance, however, Japanese Snipers remain active.

**January 30 1943-(Papua)** New Guinea on March 15th to join the Australian contingents. The unit, using its Indian members to good advantage, implements codes in the impenetrable Indian language, frustrating the Japanese and inciting a long lasting argument between them and the U.S. Marines as to whom was first to use Indian codes.

**January 31 1943 — (Pacific-Solomons)** U.S. dive bombers and torpedo planes receive orders to attack enemy surface vessels off Kolombangara Island. Elements of Marine Fighter Squadron 112, fly as escorts and intercept a huge contingent of enemy Zeros which are protecting the fleet. 1st Lieutenant J. Joseph Deblanc, USMC, leads his greatly outnumbered section against the Zeros, protecting the bombers which return to Base. DeBlanc remains in the area, destroying five zeros before his plane is damaged, forcing him to ball out at a dangerously low altitude over enemy positions. Captain DeBlanc is awarded the Medal of Honor.

**January 1943 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal) Marine Fighter** Squadron 121 has been in constant combat with the enemy since October. Captain Joseph J. Foss, between October 9 and 19 November, has singlehandedly destroyed 23 Japanese planes, in addition to inflicting damage to many more while flying escort missions over the Solomons. On the 15th of January, 1943, three more enemy planes are shot down by Foss. Subsequently, he leads eight Marine F4F fighters and four Army P-38s against an extremely large enemy force of fighters and bombers off Guadalcanal on the 25th of January. The smaller American force destroys four Japanese fighters, and turns back the others before they can drop a solitary bomb.

**February 9 1943 — (Pacific-Guadalcanal)** Guadalcanal comes under total American control as the 1st Battalion, 161st Infantry, 25th Division encounters the 2nd Battalion, 132nd Regiment, Americal Division at Tenaro (1625). Major General Alexander M. Patch, (XIV Corps) U.S.A., announces the "TOTAL AND COMPLETE DEFEAT OF THE JAPANESE FORCES ON GUADALCANAL" The struggle which started on August 7th 1942 (first U.S. offensive of the war) had been a grueling contest, inflicting heavy casualties on both sides. Army troops had begun replacing the Marines during the latter part of 1942. The Japanese have been vanquished, giving them their first land defeat of the war. About 13,000 Japanese have escaped to Bum and Rabaul, 12,000 from the 17th Army and the balance, Naval personnel.

**February 16 1943 —(Pacific-Guadalcanal)** Operation CLEANSLATE (invasion of Russell Islands) is implemented as the first elements of the 43rd Division Assault Force, commanded by Major

General John H. Hester, arrive at Guadalcanal. (Southwest Pacific) The U.S. Sixth Army is established and comprises the 2nd Engineering Special Brigade, 503rd Paratroop Infantry Regiment supported by the 1st Marine Division, which is being attached. Lieutenant General Walter Krueger U.S.A., will command.

**February 21 1943 — (Pacific-Solomons-Russells)** The Marine 3rd Raider Battalion, commanded by Colonel Harry B. (Harry the Horse) Liversedge, hits the beach at Pavuvu's Pepesala Point, without opposition and the U.S. 43rd Infantry Division, commanded by Major General John H. Hester, lands unopposed at Banika Island. By March 1st, about 9,000 men are ashore. The Marine 11th Defense Battalion dispatches anti-aircraft guns and crews to Banika. The Marines find themselves confined to garrison duty as the Japanese have evacuated the island; after one month on the island, they depart to prepare for the invasion of Bougainville.

**March 1 1943 — (United States)** The Marine Corps receives its first medium-bomber squadron, as Marine Bomber Squadron 413 is commissioned at Cherry Point, N.C.

**March 6th 1943 — (Pacific-Russell Islands)**-Japanese fighters and bombers, aware of American presence on the Russell's, initiate airraids against Marine positions (11th Defense Battalion).

**March 12 1943-(Pacific-Solomons)** Marine Fighter Squadron 124 arrives on Guadalcanal from Espiritu Santo, introducing the F4U into combat.

**March 14 1943 — (Pacific-Russells)** The advance echelon of Marine Aircraft Group 21 lands on Banika Island.

**March 15 1943-(Pacific)**-In the Pacific, the 1st Marine Raider Regiment is organized for operations on Dragons Peninsula, New Georgia. **(Pacific-Solomons-Russell Islands)** In the Russell Islands, the Marine 10th Defense Battalion relieves the 11th Defense Battalion.

**March 17 1943 — (Pacific-Johnston Island)** Marine Scout Bomber Squadron 243 arrives on the island from Hawaii.

**March 20 1943 — (Pacific-Solomons)** Marine Torpedo Bomber Squadron 143, commanded by Major John Sapp, initiates the first aerial mine-laying operation in the South Pacific, deploying mines off the Solomons.

**March 21 1943 — (Pacific-New Georgia)** An advance Marine detachment is landed by a PHY at Segi Plantation to check the feasibility of an amphibious invasion. After a careful study of the terrain, they return and inform headquarters that the beach cannot sustain a large landing force.

**March 31 1943 — (Pacific-Samoa)** The 2nd Marine Brigade is dissolved in Pago Pago.

**April 1 1943 — (United States)** Marine Aircraft Group 53, commanded by Lt. Colonel Frank H. Schwable, is commissioned at Cherry Point, N.C., becoming the Marine Corps' first Night Fighter Squadron.

**April 7 1943 — (Pacific-Solomons)** An order is issued by Japanese Admiral Yamamoto, commencing a campaign to drive the Allies from the Solomons and from New Guinea. An enemy fighter and bomber force, exceeding 185 planes, assaults American positions at Guadalcanal. The enemy force is intercepted by Allied planes and a vicious encounter follows. During the tenacious air battle, Marine Fighter Squadron 221 attacks vehemently. Lt. James Swett leads his four plane section into a wave of 15 enemy craft. Swett destroys three in mid-air before becoming separated from his unit. Afterward, he singlehandedly attacks six enemy bombers, destroying four. Out of ammunition, he feints off another enemy plane, with his windshield useless after being smashed by enemy fire. Swett safely scuttles his plane off Tulagi and is subsequently awarded the Medal of Honor. Only light damage is sustained by the Americans at Guadalcanal; however, the enemy sinks the Destroyer USS *Aaron Ward* (DD-483). The Oiler *Kanawha* (AO-1) is also sunk. The Oiler *Tappanannock* (AO-43) and the cargo vessel *Adhara* (AK-71) are both damaged. In addition, the New Zealand corvette *Moa* is sunk. The Japanese suffer heavy plane losses, while the Allies lose seven. The enemy air threat against Guadalcanal is now neutralized, but Japanese reinforcements land at Kolombangara without opposition because of the enemy's expensive diversionary maneuver.

**April 18 1943 — (Pacific-Australia)** General MacArthur and Admiral Halsey who have been conferring at Brisbane, Australia on Pacific strategy, decide on May 15th as the tentative date for the planned invasion of New Georgia. D-Day is subsequently changed to June 30th. (Pacific-Guadalcanal) Japanese Admiral Yamamoto flies from Rabaul toward the Solomons to inspect the Japanese positions. However, 18 U.S. P-38s intercept his entourage of two bettys and six fighters, killing Admiral Yamamoto, one of Japan's chief Military Leaders. American code-breakers set the stage and the ambush is sprung over Bum, about 35 miles outside of Ballale Island. Captain Thomas G. Lanphier, 339th Fighter Squadron makes the kill. General MacArthur would subsequently remark:

“ONE COULD ALMOST HEAR THE RISING CRESCENDO OF SOUND FROM THE THOUSANDS OF GLISTENING WHITE SKELETONS AT THE BOTTOM OF PEARL HARBOR.” On the 19th, at a morning meeting, at Halsey’s Quarters the daring episode brings much discussion. Admiral Kelly Turner begins applauding and Halsey interjects: “HOLD ON, KELLY! WHAT’S SO GOOD ABOUT IT?” “I’D HOPED TO LEAD THAT SCOUNDREL UP PENNSYLVANIA AVENUE IN CHAINS WITH THE REST OF YOU KICKING HIM WHERE IT WOULD DO THE MOST GOOD” Admiral Halsey notes that the story is suppressed because Captain Lanphier’s brother is a POW with the Japanese and there is great fear for his life if the Japanese determine that it had been his brother that killed Yamamoto. Halsey relates a few acts of Japanese hospitality that cause his concern: “I HAVE IN MIND THE NUNS THEY CAUGHT ON GUADALCANAL AND RAPED FOR FORTY-EIGHT HOURS BEFORE CUTTING THEIR THROATS; AND THE TWO MARINES WHOM THEY VIVISECTED; AND THE YOUNG GIRL ON NEW GUINEA WHOM THEY FORCED TO WATCH HER PARENTS BEING BEHEADED, BEFORE HER OWN TURN CAME; AND THE EXECUTION OF GENERAL DOOLITTLE’S PILOTS; AND THE MARINE PILOT IN A PARACHUTE, WHOSE FEET WERE CHOPPED OFF BY THE PROPELLER OF A ZEKE.”

**April 21 1943 — (Pacific)** Marine Aircraft South Pacific is tentatively established to coordinate the administrative and logistical duties of the 1st and 2nd Marine Aircraft Wings.

**May 19 1943-(Pacific-Solomons)** Thirty TBFs attached to Marine Scout Bomber Squadron 143 and Navy Torpedo Squadron 11, escorted by six heavy bombers, mine Buin-Kahili off Bougainville.

**May 23 1943- (Pacific-Samoa)** The 22nd Marines are detached from the 3rd Marine Brigade and transferred to Tutuila to operate as a separate tactical unit; on the 27th it is organized as the Garrison Force, Defense Force, Samoan Group.

**June 3rd 1943 — (Pacific-Solomons)** Admiral Halsey issues fundamental plans for the seizure of New Georgia. Rear Admiral Richard Turner will command the overall operation. The landing force, commanded by General Hester U.S.A. 43rd Division, comprises the 43rd Division U.S.A. and the 1st and 4th Marine Raider Battalions.

**June 21 1943 — (Pacific-Solomons)** The 4th Marine Raider Battalion, acting upon the request of a coastwatcher who had been threatened by a Japanese advance from Vim Plantation, occupies Segi Point on the southern tip of New Georgia Island to prevent occupation of the southern tip of New Georgia by the Japanese. Contingents of the 103rd Infantry, 43rd Division, U.S.A. land on the following day to bolster the force. On Bougainville, the Third Defense Battalion, the final Marine Ground unit departs.

**June 27 1943 — (Pacific-Solomons)** Elements of 4th Marine Raider Battalion sail from Segi, New Georgia, to the Lambeti Plantation to initiate a forced march on enemy held Viru Harbor. They move out on the following day to seize the harbor intending to use it as a small craft Naval Base.

**June 28th 1943 — (Pacific-New Georgia)** The 4th Marine Raider Battalion begins to move toward Viru Harbor.

**June 29-30 1943 — (Pacific)** The Allied Offensive (Operation CARTWHEEL) to destroy Rabaul begins. The Allied thrust includes three Amphibious Landings; the Central Solomons, the Trobriands and New Guinea. Just before midnight, a U.S. naval task force, comprising four destroyers and four cruisers, commanded by Rear Admiral Merrill, bombards Vila-Stanmore on Kolombangara and also attacks BumShortland, Bougainville. In addition, the navy plants mines in the area. The Third Fleet Amphibious Force, commanded by Rear Admiral Turner, and supported by land-based aircraft, lands the New Georgia Occupation Force. Other troops, traveling with Admiral Fitch’s Task Force (Western Force), storm ashore at Rendova Harbor, against light resistance. Japanese planes intercept the American assault force, but spirited pilots from the Solomons, including Marine Fighter Squadrons 121, 122, and 213 are dispatched to quell this threat. The Japanese damage the flagship *McCawley* (the *McCawley* will subsequently be sunk by friendly *FT* boats in error when its silhouette is mistaken for an enemy ship). The Eastern Force lands elements of the 169th Infantry without opposition on Sasavele and Baraulu Islands. Outposts are established on Roviana Island. The Viru Occupation Force lands at Segi Point. In conjunction with the land movements, the Marine Raiders reach Viru Harbor by nightfall. The 2nd Battalion, 103rd Infantry and contingents of the 4th Marine Raider Battalion land unopposed at Vangunu and seize the objective. The Japanese begin to draw a rigid line of resistance to prevent American movement from Vangunu to Wickham Anchorage.

**June 30th 1943 — (United States)** Navy records indicate total Naval strength at 1,741,750, Marines at 310,994, and Coast Guard at 154,976.

**July 1 1943 — (Pacific)** Admiral Nimitz issues a tentative plan for the capture of the Marshall Islands. (Pacific-Solomons) The Americans (43rd Division) strengthen their beachhead at Rendova, while maintaining Patrols to detect enemy activity. Two Platoons of the 4th Marine Raider Battalion overrun a Japanese Garrison at Tombe Village, while the remainder of Company F, and Company Q, capture Tetemara, a village on the west side of Viru Harbor, giving the Marines control of Vim Harbor, New Georgia Island. Also, The 9th Defense Battalion USMC arrives at Rendova, bringing welcome 90-mm and 155-mm Batteries. Meanwhile, the Marine 4th Raider Battalion and Company F~ 103rd Regiment, U.S.A., withdraw to Vira where raids are launched against the remaining Japanese at Cheke Point. The unit takes Kaeruka and overruns Cheke Point against slight opposition, completing the task by the 4th.

**July 30 1943 —(Pacific-Manchuria)** Three Americans who had escaped from the P.O.W. Camp at Mukden during June, and subsequently recaptured by Chinese Mongolian police are executed by a firing squad. The Japanese charged that the two Marines and one Sailor had stolen something (item unknown) and also killed a policeman during the confrontation. Witnesses state that the Japanese returned the Americans (bound) to Mukden in the rear of a truck and that the men showed signs of a brutal beating.

**August 15 1943-(Pacific-Solomons)** Admiral Wilkinson's Northern Landing Force successfully transports the McClure Landing Force (Regimental Combat Team 35) to Vella Lavella. This landing intentionally bypasses Kolombangara, another enemy strongpoint. The Invasion Force includes some sailors and Marines. The Marine 4th Defense Battalion, receives responsibility for establishing the anti-aircraft beach defenses and will also be assigned a section of the beach. They debark near Barakoma. Japanese Planes harass the naval vessels, causing slight damage, but the land forces hit no opposition from enemy troops, partially because of the actions of Marine Fighter Squadron 124, which intercepts a superior enemy force. First Lt. Kenneth A. Walsh intermingles with the enemy force, which outnumbers his section six to one. Lt. Walsh's Plane is hit several times, however, he singlehandedly shoots down two enemy dive bombers and one fighter before returning to base.

**August 27 1943 — (Pacific-Ellice Islands)** U.S. Marines and Seabees arrive at Nukufetau, to join advance Forces. Defenses are established, while the airbase is undergoing construction.

**September 4 1943 — (Pacific)** The V Amphibious Corps is established to train and control troops for amphibious landings in the Pacific. Major General Holland M. Smith, USMC is the commanding officer. General Smith, born in Alabama, had been offered a seat at Annapolis, however, both his parents were, as he put it, Southerners who were still "unreconstructed and would not permit me to accept an offer, which in their minds, would be a surrender to Yankee ideology" Smith becomes a lawyer, however, not wanting to stay with his father's law firm he attempts to leave the Alabama National Guard and join the Army; no openings were available for 2nd Lieutenants (1904). He joined the Marines and ironically departs San Francisco for the Philippines on April 16th 1906, two days before the devastating earthquake which rocked the city.

**October 5 1943-(Pacific-Wake Island)-** The island of Wake has been in the hands of the Japs since December 23rd 1941. Today, a mighty Allied task force, commanded by Rear Admiral A. E. Montgomery, comprising six carriers, 24 destroyers and seven cruisers, strikes Japanese positions with a combined naval air bombardment that inflicts heavy damage; the task force duplicates the effort on the following day, forewarning the Japs that Americans are returning. After the island had been taken during 1941, the military personnel had been moved to Japan and then on to Shanghai. Five Marines are decapitated (simultaneously) by the Japanese along the route. The attacking Yanks are also unaware that 96 civilian construction workers have been held on Wake to be used as slave labor on the Airfields.

**October 14 1943 — (Pacific)** Admiral Nimitz issues directives for the "capture, occupation and development of bases at Wotje, Maloelap, and Kwajalein' Target dates for invasions; January 11944 for Wotje and Maloelap, and Kwajalein on the following day. In other Allied Pacific strategy, General Headquarters approves a plan for the seizure of New Britain, calling for a landing by the 7th

Marines (less one Battalion) to be known as Combat Team C, on the beaches along the northern shores of Cape Gloucester and Borgen Bay. The other Battalion will land in the vicinity of Tual. The 1st Marines (Combat Team B) are held in reserve.

**October 27 1943- (Pacific-Solomons)** An advance detachment of Marines lands north of the Karuma River near Atsinima Bay, Bougainville. Allied planes, based on New Georgia swoop overhead as the New Zealand 8th Brigade (seasoned at North Africa Crete and Greece) storms ashore on the Treasury Islands situated between Barakoma and Torokina, against mild opposition. Stirling is defenseless and at Mono, only sparse numbers of enemy troops are available to resist, and they retire quickly, pursued by the New Zealanders (commanded by Brigadier General R.A. Row). Control of the Treasury Islands is necessary to protect the flank of the main invasion and to afford a fighter airstrip radar station and a small-vessel base. In the Solomons, enemy Aircraft attack Allied Shipping with negligible results. An assault is launched during the night of 27th-28th by the 2nd Marine Paratroop Battalion, commanded by Lt. Colonel Victor H Krulak, which lands on Choiseul Island, Solomons. The Marines use an old ploy, spreading out numerous patrols to exhibit the impression that the Force is greater than it actually is. The Marines continue to feint strength during this diversionary mission until they are withdrawn, mission accomplished, on November 4th.

**October 31 1943-(Pacific)-**The 22nd Marines are detached from Defense Force, Samoan Group and attached to V Amphibious Corps.

**November 1-2 1943- (Pacific-Solomons) INVASION OF BOUGAINVILLE** — An American amphibious force commanded by Rear Admiral T.S. Wilkinson arrives offshore and the First Marine Amphibious Corps, under Lt. General A.A. Vandegrift debark to seize the enemy strongpoint. Planes attached to task forces' 38 and 39 zoom overhead, shattering Japanese airfields on the southern end of the island. The Japanese commander, Lt. General Haroyoski Hyakutake, assumes the air assaults are a prelude for the main assault. His conclusion allows the feint to prosper as the 3rd Marine Division, transported by Task Force 31, storms ashore at Empress Augusta Bay, Cape Torokina at 07:30, protected by aircraft, including both naval and Marine squadrons and further supplemented by surface ship fire. The invasion force fortifies its positions against a small, yet defiant enemy force. While the troops are securing the beachhead and surrounding area, additional warships, commanded by Rear Admirals A.S. Merrill and F.C. Sherman bombard the airfields and military fortifications in the Buka-Bonis area of the Solomons. This is followed by Admiral Merrill's task force, striking the air facilities on Shortland Island. During the invasion, Sergeant Robert Allen Owens, and a four man squad destroy a 75-mm regimental gun and its crew, enabling the troops to continue advancing.

In conjunction with the landing at Cape Torokina, another force, the 2nd Marine Raider Regiment, seizes Puruata Island, off Cape Torokina by noon on the 22nd. On the heavily defended cape, site of the main invasion, the bulk of enemy strength is at the northern and southern tips, near the airstrips. Fierce jungle and swamps separate the Japanese from the Marines and the Japanese commander is not convinced that the invasion is the main assault. This indecision allows the Marines sufficient time to fortify, while engaging in the tedious work of wedging through dense jungle terrain, to clear the area of resistance and to expand their beachhead. Word of the invasion reaches Rabaul and the Japanese react quickly, sending a powerful armada including about 1,000 reinforcements, to break the spine of the U.S. assault force at Torokina. planes from Rabaul are dispatched to supplement the operation. The enemy task force, commanded by Rear Admiral Sentaro Omori, steams toward the Yanks, however the Troop Transports fail to join the fast moving armada at the proper time, causing the commander to continue on course and order the troop transports to return to their base. The Japanese had spotted an American Submarine and conclude that the troop ships are too cumbersome

and will shackle the balance of the convoy. Pressing forward, the Japanese fleet, consisting of six destroyers and four cruisers, nears the U.S. naval force slightly after midnight. The armada burst through the waves under darkened skies, racing southward to an expected victory. Instead, the Japanese crash directly into a steel picket fence of waiting American warships. As the attack force speeds forward, with the heavy cruisers *Haguro* and *Myoko*, spearheading, flanked by light cruisers and destroyers, the Japanese are unexpectedly stunned at about 01:30, when a Yank plane has some fortuitous luck and implants a bomb directly on the deck of the *Haguro*. The Japanese convoy slows to accommodate the injured vessel. Japanese headquarters still holds the opinion that American warships have departed the area to replenish supplies and ammunition, and have left the troop transports and ground troops abandoned and susceptible to massacre.

Admiral Halsey, aware of enemy intentions, puts all gears in motion to intercept and foil the plot. Rear Admiral Merrill's cruiser destroyer force is steaming from Vella Lavella to Empress Augusta Bay. Captain Arleigh (31 Knot) Burke's Destroyer Division 45, also is sprinting at top speed, after being informed of the upcoming crisis, while refueling his destroyer division, near the Kula Gulf. Meanwhile, Commander Austin's Destroyer Division 46 stands in place. The warships rendezvous about 40 miles outside of Empress Augusta Bay; eight destroyers and four light cruisers hold the line, in stark night air on the eerie shadowless waters, anxious to spring the attack. Two of Burke's Doctrine Points are: "IF IT WILL KILL JAPS, ITS IMPORTANT. IF IT WILL NOT KILL JAPS, IT IS NOT IMPORTANT."

American radar picks up the enemy vessels as they move toward Torakina. Merrill's force moves north, and separates at the predetermined point. Still, the Japanese cruise unsuspectingly toward Torakina to bludgeon the Yanks. Burke's destroyers peel off and fire a steady stream of "iron fish". However, the Japanese have picked up the advancing cruisers and are in the process of changing course, unwittingly avoiding the approaching torpedoes.

The U.S. cruisers also enjoy a little luck themselves. The Japanese, spot the U.S. vessels and spring a futile torpedo attack. The American cruisers change course to engage the enemy, then commence a tumultuous bombardment, which inflicts grievous damage on the light cruiser *Sendai*, that ignites powerful explosions. The vessel, although badly wounded and lying dead in the sea, still contains operational guns. Additional volleys by Merrill's men, casts more gloom on the convoy. The cruisers play tag in the dark throughout the night, however, neither side is able to knock out the other. Two Japanese destroyers, the *Samidare* and the *Shiratsuyu*, smash into each other, and this prompts more erratic maneuvers, as the two vessels retire. Commander Burke's destroyers move back into the raging battle to assist other destroyers engaged against the *Sendai*.

During the tumultuous sea battle, one of the torpedoes intended for the American cruisers strikes the USS *Foote* just after 03:00 while it attempts to join Austin's main body. In addition, the Americans suffer damage when two destroyers, the *Thatcher* and the *Spence*, collide while maneuvering at high speed. The *Spence* is subsequently struck by surface fire, by the *Myoko* at 03:20. Within minutes, the *Myoko*, and the *Haguro*, score several hits on the USS *Denver*, before she rejoins the formation to conclude the battle. During this exhibition, the USS *Columbia*, is struck by a large surface shell, but luckily, it is above the watermark and she remains operational. The *Spence* and the destroyer *Converse* attack the crippled cruiser *Sendai*, delivering a quick salvo of torpedoes, however, again the *Sendai* escapes the fatal blow, as all torpedoes miss the target. Burke's command finishes off the *Sendai*.

In the midst of this sea joust, the *Myoko* inadvertently rams into the *Hatsukaze*, amputating a section of the *Hatsukaze's* bow. The Japanese scatter with the Yanks in pursuit. Three of the U.S. destroyers,

the *Thatcher*, *Spence* and *Converse* close on the retreating enemy destroyers and commence an unsuccessful attack. All torpedoes miss their mark, but the Japanese veer off balance, as they return fire and gain the same results; all torpedoes miss the American destroyers. Commander Burke moves into action as the *Spence* is disengaging, due to diminishing ammunition and fuel.

Commander Austin transfers command to Commander Lampman on the *Thatcher* and departs the area. The *Spence* comes under accidental fire from the guns of Burke's Force. Commander Austin snaps a message to Burke, after observing about a dozen shells falling near his vessel: "WE'VE JUST HAD A BAD CLOSE MISS I HOPE YOU ARE NOT SHOOTING AT US' As Burke is speaking with Austin, he asks the question, "Are you hurt?" Austin yells, "NEGATIVE" and Burke follows with the following message: "SORRY BUT YOU'LL HAVE TO EXCUSE THE NEXT FOUR SALVOS THEY'RE ALREADY ON THEIR WAY:' The *Spence* high tails it and runs right into the wounded *Hatsukaze*. Commander Austin attacks from a distance of about 4,000 yards, sending shells reeling into the Destroyer, stopping her dead in the water. Burke is directed to move in and complete the destruction.

At about 03:30, the Japanese retire toward Rabaul, scampering along the coast of Bougainville. The cruisers, under Merrill, also disengage. Burke is also directed to halt pursuit and reform. The order is timely, as the Japanese planes are moving to attack the Yanks.

At 08:00 "Colors" is attended by about 100 uninvited Japanese pilots, swarming overhead. Fifteen planes had intercepted, but the superior force breaks through and bombards the disabled destroyer *Foote*. A wall of antiaircraft fire, by the *Foote* and her escorting vessels foils the attack and she escapes injury. The enemy planes then strike Merrill's main body. The sky fills with antiaircraft fire and smoking Japanese planes, which plummet to the sea. In a rare occurrence, several Jap pilots are observed floating to the water in parachutes, nestling themselves right in the middle of Merrill's formation. The attack bellies out with about two dozen planes shot down, and the balance making a run for their base with American planes in pursuit. The Japanese damage the cruiser *Montpelier*, but she and the rest of the task force, including the USS *Foote*, share in the momentous victory. Again, the savage power of the Japanese Imperial Navy had been halted. Old Glory flies high above the fleet and just as proudly on Bougainville, where the struggle is really just beginning.

The Marines work feverishly to clear the hills, while simultaneously setting up defenses to protect against any possible Japanese counterattacks, as they prepare to take the entire island, yard by yard. Heavy fighting occurs on Bougainville for some time. As Christmas approaches, the Marines are concentrating on one obstinate pocket of resistance, known as, "Hellzapoppin Ridge" and in appropriate Marine fashion, thrash the enemy, securing the ridge on the 18th of December. Subsequently, U.S. Army troops (Americal Division), begin to replace the Marines.

The Marines would be relieved by the Americal Division, U.S.A., in mid January. The Americans continue strengthening the island defenses, bracing for the Japanese counter-attack, which occurs during March. The Army repulses the Japanese who close in from the northern and southern tips of the island, crossing swamps, hitting American mines and finally, withering Yankee fire. Japanese charge incessantly to overrun positions. The Japs penetrate American lines with some success, however, infantry, supported by tank counterattacks regain the lost terrain. After 17 days of bloody combat, the Japanese counterattacks finally cease on the 24th of March with heavy casualties. By the end of April, Bougainville is secure and airfields sprout up in the jungle clearings and begin launching American Planes to strike Rabaul. The Stars and Stripes flies proudly over Bougainville, bringing the Yanks and their pilots one step closer to the heart of Japan.

**November 1st 1943 — (Pacific-Solomons)** During fierce fighting between the Americans and

Japanese, Planes assist at Bougainville, intercepting an enemy force. One pilot, Lt. Robert H. Murray, Marine Fighting Squadron 215, disperses six enemy planes (Torpedo Bombers), shooting down one and driving the balance away, forcing them to drop their bombs prematurely near Augusta Bay.

**November 2nd 1943 — (Pacific-Bougainville-Solomons)** The 3rd Marines continue to fortify the beachhead. The 9th Marines switch positions with the 3rd Marines, which have been in bitter battle on the right flank since landing. The 3rd Marine Raider Battalion declares Puruata Island secure.

**November 3 1943 — (POA)** The Northern Attack Force (TF52) concludes its practice maneuvers for the seizure of the Gilberts (GALVANIC) at Hawaii. (Pacific-Solomons) The 3rd Marine Defense Battalion and the 12th Marines on Bougainville bombard enemy positions on Torokina Island. Afterward, a detachment of the 3rd Raider Battalion moves to Torokina, but finds no live Japanese.

**November 4 1943-(Pacific-Solomons)** The Marines (2nd Parachute Battalion) are withdrawn from Choiseul. These Marines under Lt. Colonel Krulak have spent 12 days conducting their raids and lose 12 men, while inflicting 143 casualties upon the enemy and diverting sufficient strength to prevent the Japanese from giving their full attention to Torokina. A Japanese naval force, dispatched earlier from Truk, enters the harbor at Rabaul, threatening the American beachhead at Bougainville. A scout plane spots eight heavy cruisers, two light cruisers and eight destroyers. The U.S. assumption is that they will refuel and steam toward Torokina. This concerns Halsey who states: "THE MOST DESPERATE EMERGENCY THAT CONFRONTED ME IN MY ENTIRE TERM AS COMSOPAC?" U.S. Task Force 38 (Admiral Ted Sherman) is directed to counter the threat by attacking Rabaul and drawing first blood. Allied land-based aircraft are ordered to fly cover escort for the carriers, giving Sherman the opportunity to dispatch ninety-seven planes from the *Saratoga* and *Princeton*. Admiral Merrill's task force is not within striking distance and Halsey is preoccupied with the thoughts of the planes being wiped out and both carriers being struck. Halsey ponders the order and then returns it for transit stating simply: "LET 'ER GO."

**November 5 1943 — (Pacific-Solomons-Bougainville)** A bitter skirmish develops in the vicinity of the Mission Trail as the 3rd Ranger Battalion repulses a vicious Japanese attack. The Rangers then link with the 9th Marines and drive toward the Numa Numa Trail, one of two primary trails on Cape Torokina.

**November 6 1943-(Pacific-Solomons)** Reinforcements (1st Battalion, 21st Marines), arrive on Bougainville to bolster the beachhead of the 3rd Marines. Additional 3rd Marine Division troops land on Cape Torokina and Puruata. Island.

**November 7 1943 — (Pacific-Solomons)** The Japanese land just under 500 troops in the vicinity of the Laruma and Koromokina rivers, near Cape Torokina, Bougainville and attack the 3rd Marines, 3rd Marine Division positions at Koromokina lagoon, however, the Marines, using mortars and effective artillery, hold firmly. During the heated battle, one squad, led by Sgt. Herbert J. Thomas inches forward and destroys two menacing enemy nests. As the detachment nears another deadly machine gun nest, a grenade gets hung up in the dense jungle brush then suddenly bounces back upon the squad. Sgt. Thomas covers the exploding grenade with his body to save his men. His incredible action inspires the remaining men to charge recklessly and destroy the enemy crew. The Japanese cut off a small Marine outpost, but these Marines are rescued by sea. The Marines counterattack on the eighth, terminating the enemy threat.

**November 7th-10th 1943 — (Pacific-Bougainville) THE BATTLE OF PIVA TRAIL —** A roadblock along the junction of the Piva-Numa Numa Trails (right flank of Marine perimeter) is assaulted by Japanese. An intense battle ensues, with the Marines pushing off on the 9th with a strong counterattack (2nd Raider Regiment, assisted by the 2nd Battalion 9th Marines), and driving the

Japanese back in disarray. The 1st and 2nd Battalions, 9th Marines, move right through the trail junction, continuing beyond Piva Village and establish defensive positions along the Numa Numa Trail.

**November 8 1943 — (Pacific-Bougainville)** The 1st Battalion, 21st Marines, assaults Japanese positions, followed by attacks from the 3rd, 9th, and 21st Marines, to defeat a Japanese landing force. The Japanese are heavily bombarded on the following day by planes from Munda, which thoroughly devastate the enemy landing troops. In other activity, advance elements of the 37th U.S. Infantry Division arrive, to begin relief of the Marines. During the heated combat, the light cruiser *Birmingham* (CL-62), the attack transports *Fuller* (APA-18) and the *President Jackson* (APA-18) are damaged, by enemy dive bomber attacks. In other activity, the I Marine Amphibious Corps assumes responsibility for all forces ashore.

**November 9 1943-(Pacific-Bougainville)** American Aircraft, based at Munda, New Georgia, attack enemy positions between the Marine perimeter (Koromokina Lagoon) and the Laruma River, ending opposition from the remnants of the enemy assault force. The U.S. 148th Infantry Regiment, 37th Division, relieves the Marines on the left flank and takes responsibility for the area. The Army begins to replace the Marines on the island. In a heated firefight, a Platoon of the 3rd Marine Raider Battalion holds firm at a roadblock on Bougainville Island near Empress Augusta Bay. Marines pour steady fire upon the attacking Japanese. PFC Henry Gourke, reacts instinctively when a lobbed grenade falls into his two-man foxhole. He pushes his sidekick away saving his life and falls on the grenade, permitting the other man to continue firing his automatic weapon. Gourke receives the Medal of Honor posthumously. In other activity, Major General Roy S. Geiger replaces Major General Vandegrift, as Commanding General I Marine Amphibious Corps. Gen Vandegrift has been appointed Commandant of the Marine Corps.

**November 11 1943 — (Pacific-Bougainville)** Marines hold the junction of the Mission and Numa Numa Trails after their successful drive, which kills about 550 Japs. The Marines (3rd Division) are ordered by General Geiger to drive in two directions, east and west, simultaneously to secure and hold an airfield site. Also, additional contingents of the 21st Marines arrive.

**November 13 1943 —(Pacific-Solomons-Bougainville)** More elements of the 37th Division, U.S.A., commanded by Major General Robert S. Beightler, arrive. Marines attached to the 2nd Battalion, 21st Marines, advance cautiously from their beachhead along the Numa Numa Trail, Bougainville to establish an outpost. A Coconut Grove about 200 yards from the junction of the East West Trail, erupts into a vicious battlefield, as cunning Japanese patiently await the advancing Yanks, then attack furiously. Reinforcements from Companies F and G, rush to bolster Company E and this combined force of Marines, and five tanks send the Japs running. This action (13-14th), enables the Marines to expand their beachhead an additional 1,500 yards.

**November 14 1943 — (Pacific-Bougainville)** The fight for control of the junction of the Numa Numa- East-West trails ends with the 21st Marines the victors.

**November 15 1943-(Pacific)** Major General Holland “Howlin Mad” Smith, USMC, commander V Amphibious Corps, issues Operation Plan 2-43, the original overall troops directive for the seizure of the Marshalls. The 2nd Marine Division, (designated Attack Force) is now aware of its objective. They had departed Wellington, New Zealand, expecting to participate in practice maneuvers at Hawkes Bay, then return to Base for liberty. Their neatly packed liberty clothes will not be used for some time. Their genuine destination is Efate, New Hebrides to rendezvous with Admiral Hill’s attack force (Task Force 52). The ruse had been implemented to ensure secrecy of the upcoming invasion The USS *Nautilus* and U.S. planes have been gathering intelligence for the operation

(Galvanic) during September. An aerial photo of enemy latrines turns out to be invaluable. Enemy strength is estimated by the number of officers' latrines; the figure is accurate. Meanwhile, Admiral Turner's task force is en route from Hawaii; the forces converge near the Marshalls on the 17th.

**November 17 1943-(Pacific-Soloinons)** The final detachments of the 21st Marines arrive in Bougainville, however, the USS *McKean* (APD-5), a transport, is sunk by an enemy plane, before it makes port.

**November 18 1943 —(Pacific-Gilberts-Marshalls)**American planes continue to raid enemy positions. The Army-Marine Strike Force heading for the Gilberts will meet extraordinary defensive positions at Betio. The Japanese Commander, Admiral Shibasaki has boasted: "THE AMERICANS COULDN'T TAKE BETIO WITH A MILLION MEN IN A HUNDRED YEARS:' The Japanese have fortified Betio in such fashion that nearly every square inch of beach is under fire from all flanks. The gun emplacements are buried deeply and bolstered by layers of thick concrete and palmetto logs. The pill boxes are constructed with steel. Before the invasion force encounters these obstacles, it must overcome a network of natural reefs that loiter anxiously to entrap landing craft. In addition, the enemy has strung out blankets of barbed wire, supplemented by mines and generous applications of concrete obstacles which resemble miniature pyramids that protrude from the reefs, ready to tear the bottom from unsuspecting landing craft. Today, the LSTs are spotted by an enemy patrol plane. Japanese bombers are launched to attack the armada, but carrier-based planes intercept and drive them away. On the 19th, the convoy is approached by an enemy bomber, but it is quickly destroyed and the convoy maintains its course.

**November 20th-23rd 1943 — THE BATTLE OF TARAWA and MAKIN —** The Army will storm Makin, and the Marines, will seize Tarawa and Betio, on the southwestern tip of the atoll. Major General Holland M. Smith, USMC, commanding officer of the amphibious force, chooses to land with the army strike force at Makin and remain with General Ralph Smith for that campaign. For several days, relentless bombardments have delivered in excess of four million pounds of explosives against these Japanese positions. The Japanese have boasted that Tarawa could not be taken at any cost. A preinvasion message from Admiral Spruance is read to the men. The message points in the direction of success and co-operation, in part: "CLOSE CO-OPERATION BETWEEN ALL ARMS AND SERVICES, THE SPIRIT OF LOYALTY TO EACH OTHER, AND THE DETERMINATION TO SUCCEED DISPLAYED BY VETERAN AND UNTRIED PERSONNEL ALIKE." The message further states: "WE WILL NEVER STOP UNTIL WE HAVE ACHIEVED SUCCESS." General Smith also gives his words of encouragement to the 2nd Marine Division: "THE DIVISION HAD BEEN ESPECIALLY CHOSEN BY THE HIGH COMMAND FOR THE ASSAULT ON TARAWA BECAUSE OF ITS BATTLE EXPERIENCE AND COMBAT EFFICIENCY."..."YOUR SUCCESS WILL ADD NEW LAURELS TO THE GLORIOUS TRADITION OF OUR CORPS. GOOD LUCK AND GOD BLESS YOU ALL."

Before Dawn (03:55), assault troops board landing craft. At 05:07, surviving Japanese shore guns commence firing. U.S. naval guns track the origin of the incoming shells by searching for the location of gunfire flashes. Successive salvos hit the mark and create a huge explosion that temporarily quiets the guns. The navy reinitiates its bombardment about 06:00 to allow safe passage for the carrier planes to resume their assault. Japanese defenses are pummeled. Smoke and debris cloaks the area including the lagoon, but there is still enemy firepower on shore and the strike force has no knowledge of how much has survived. Meanwhile, the two-pronged invasion is already running behind schedule.

The invasion of Makin goes off as scheduled at 08:30 and meets nominal opposition, allowing an

army regimental combat team, attached to the 27th Division to move inland quickly and secure a beachhead perimeter and also to flush out light enemy resistance up to Ukiangong Point.

At Tarawa, things turn out much differently than anticipated. Prior to the assault, Marines are promised light resistance because of the relentless bombardments. Someone forgets to tell the Japanese. Three waves of Marines await the order to strike. A smoke screen is laid to obstruct the enemy's view of two minesweepers, the *Pursuit* and *Requisite*, which are clearing the channel. Suddenly, enemy guns commence firing at the minesweepers. Two destroyers, shepherding the minesweepers, the *Dashiel* and the *Ringgoia*~ unleash lethal dosages of shells themselves and eliminate the threatening shore guns, then proceed into the lagoon in the event their guns are needed again. Soon after, other enemy guns fire upon the *Ringgold*, however, the hits fail to detonate. Again, the destroyers strike paydirt, hitting a plump ammunition dump that quickly eradicates the threat and knocks out the guns. Some of the larger enemy shore guns have been captured from the British and transported to Tarawa.

The assault force approaches the channel pass at 07:15, however, the landing craft become blinded, as the incessant bombarding creates a wall of smoke and dust. The *Pursuit's* searchlight penetrates the haze and guides the Marines through safely, however, the operation is now one-half hour behind schedule.

The 2nd Scout Sniper Platoon, led by Lt. William Hawkins has the tedious task of knocking out a massive enemy stronghold at the edge of Long Pier in synchronization with the final wave of planes that are strafing the beachhead at tree top level at 08:55. The Marines strike hard, quickly overcoming the defenders who are unable to repulse the Marines and their accompaniment of flamethrowers. The emplacement is destroyed and along with it a portion of the pier. Mission accomplished, they depart in the LCVP, however, it gets hung up on the sinister reefs. Quick action on their part, transfers them to an LVT and they make it to shore.

Three waves of troops head for the beach objectives, designated Red 1, 2, and 3, against severe fire. Landing craft become helplessly strung along the reefs, forcing the Marines to walk to the beach through a gauntlet of fire. The paralyzed craft are trapped in a sea of horrors. Dead troops are slumped over the controls of vehicles. The Marines have three beaches to take and at this time the Jap guns are confining many on the reefs. Those attempting to make it to Red Beach 2 are riddled with bullets from several directions. Suddenly, additional Japanese guns pound the Marines causing more casualties. Meanwhile, a Japanese vessel strafes the Marines as they struggle to get to shore. U.S. dive bombers swoop down and pummel the vessel, but each time the gunners are blown away, additional crews take their place. Finally, a dive bomber scores a direct hit. A blatant shortage of amtracs magnifies the problem facing the invasion force. In addition, radio equipment has been lost to the surf and those which reach shore are unreliable. Two platoons of Company E, 2nd Battalion, 2nd Marines make it to Beach Red 2. Other units divert to Beach Red 1, and advance over the seawall and eliminate a machine gun nest. Soon after, Marines take up residence in a vacant oversized bomb crater. Company F, 2nd Battalion, 2nd Marines also moves against Red Beach 2, under the same withering fire, taking grievous casualties, while forcing its way inland about fifty yards, where remnants of the Company riflemen and machinegunners fortify their tenuous positions. Later, Colonel Shoup arrives on Beach Red 2 and sets up his command post; three sherman tanks arrive to bolster the beachhead. Four other tanks arrive at Beach Red 3 to bolster Colonel Crowe and one is lost to the surf. The boats that reach shore continue to come under murderous fire and the majority of men stranded on the reefs in the Higgins boats (Landing Craft Vehicle and Personnel) are nearly annihilated. The enemy fire is so devastating that many of the landing craft land on the wrong

beaches.

The situation of the 3rd Battalion, 2nd Marines on Red Beach 1, also remains grave. Company K, takes a severe thrashing and the survivors that reach the bloodied beach cramp low and tight under an iron cloud of enemy shellfire. To its rear, the sea is strewn with dead and wounded Marines, flanked by useless vehicles, while others still operable struggle to aid survivors and ferry more men to shore. Company 1, 3rd Battalion, 2nd Marines, also takes heavy casualties. Meanwhile, Company G comes under a furious fusillade, forcing one platoon to land to the right of Beach Red 1.

Other landings by Companies E, and F, 3rd Battalion, 2nd Marines, receive similar fates. A fourth wave comprising Company L, 3rd Battalion, 2nd Marines, runs right into the naval junkyard scattered along the reefs and maneuvers around the sunken Japanese vessel and attempts to walk from the reefs. The stark reality is that it takes thirty-three percent casualties.

There is one glaring candle in this drama of death. The destroyers *Ringgold* and *Dashiel* are in close proximity to the 2nd Battalion, 8th Marines, as it attempts to secure Beach Red 3, another of the ominous Japanese positions. The guns of the destroyers, combined with the onrushing waves, being transported in proper vehicles (LVTs) give the Yanks an ounce of success. The first wave strikes at 09:22, followed closely behind by two additional waves. The 2nd Battalion, 8th Marines penetrates a gap in the seawall and drives straight to the enemy landing strip, giving the Marines on Red 3, a hairpin line extending into the heart of the enemy positions. Thanks to the navy, their casualty rate is nominal, but the fight is a long way from over. The skies remain clear. Still, shrouds of dust and debris obscure vision, and the extreme temperature during mid-morning is already taking a toll on the bodies, creating a nauseous odor.

At 09:59. most of the 3rd Battalion, 2nd Marines, under Major Schoettel, remain stranded on the reefs. Schoettel using one of the few operating radios, calls Colonel Shoup, stating: "TROOPS HELD UP ON REEF ON RIGHT FLANK OF RED 1" "TROOPS RECEIVING HEAVY FIRE IN WATER:" Shoup responds: "LAND RED 2 AND WORK WEST:" Schoettel answers Shoup: "WE HAVE NOTHING LEFT TO LAND" Schoettel and the remnants of the 3rd Battalion, 2nd Marines, remain on the reefs unable to penetrate the enemy fire. During the afternoon, the battalion receives another message from Shoup: "LAND AT ANY COST." The besieged battalion reaches Beach Red 2 near evening instead of its initial objective (Beach Red 1).

The situation is grave. Never in the history of the Corps, have the Marines been positioned so badly and so close to being thrown back to the sea. To make the predicament worse, no amphibious vehicles are available for a rescue. More dead Marines line the beaches, some at the water's edge, their heads submerged in the sand, as insensitive waves roll over their corpses. Others, their bodies riddled with enemy bullets, are strewn about the bloodied beach. Still, about 1,500 Marines (many of whom are wounded), are cramped on the tiny beachhead, pinned down by murderous fire. Fanatical Japanese rush to the beaches tossing hand grenades into the landing crafts, but the agile Marines pump them right back and hold their ground.

Colonel Shoup and Colonel Carlson (observer) attempt to make it to the beach, but the Japanese compel them and their party to abandon the disabled vehicle and walk to shore. A reserve battalion, 1st Marines, 2nd Battalion, reaches the reefs at 10:30, however, again, improper vehicles hinder the landing and the Reserves are isolated, anxiously awaiting amphibious tractors (LVTs). Some arrive, but enemy guns commence firing and the vehicles are abandoned, prompting more troops to race through the raging tempest.

Communications remain chaotic at best, but individual heroism and clear-thinking heads maintain discipline. One thing favoring the attackers is that despite an alarming casualty rate for officers, their

training has prepared them to assume positions of command when officers are shot down. Colonel 'Shoup observes a wounded Marine (Red 2) that had lost an arm, become the recipient of a thrown enemy grenade. Wasting no time the ambidextrous Marine heaves it back upon the Japanese. At 11:03, the 3rd Battalion, 8th Marines is directed to land at Red Beach 3 to bolster the battered 2nd Battalion, 8th Marines, already there, however, again, no vehicles (Tractors) are available. By noon, tractors arrive and two waves sprint toward the beach, but enemy fire repulses the assault and these Marines, under Major Robert Ruad begin wading ashore initiating another walk of endurance. Unsuspecting deep waters clasp many of the Marines, transporting heavy packs, drowning them. Under one hundred men (first wave) make it to the beach. The second wave takes heavy casualties and the third wave is nearly annihilated. The fourth wave reaches the pier, but withdraws and comes ashore later.

At 12:30 (Day 1) Shoup requests that Carlson return to the USS *Maryland* to give a first hand report to the Commanders. He instructs Carlson to give this message: "TELL THE GENERAL AND THE ADMIRAL THAT WE ARE GOING TO STICK AND FIGHT IT OUT." Shoup, orders an advance at 14:00. General Holland Smith still has one combat battalion in reserve, excluding the Sixth Marines which is being held back to support the army on Makin. The army, doing extremely well on Makin, permits the Sixth Marines to be reassigned to the 2nd Division and in addition, the 1st Battalion, 8th Marines is ordered to support the Tarawa invasion. Confusion abounds on the deployment of these men due to severe communication problems and they spend the day and night aboard landing crafts. Also, General Holland Smith orders Brigadier General Leo Hermie to go ashore and assume command, however, the directive is not forwarded and Shoup retains control of the ground operation.

During the course of the day's action, the majority of the Marines are confined to their precarious beachhead, but accurate return fire keeps Japanese maneuvering stymied. The balance of the bizarre afternoon continues to extract the strength of the beleaguered Marines. The Sherman tanks (2nd and 3rd Platoons Company C, I Marine Amphibious Corps Tank Battalion), assigned to the 2nd Marine Division, share in the brutalizing struggle. The three tanks that reach Shoup on Red 2, are dispatched to Red 1, however, enemy fire compels them to divert and lend their firepower to the troops trying to penetrate the west taxistrip. One tank participates, pumping shells into enemy emplacements. The other two are victimized by enemy fire and abandoned. The four tanks on Red 3, sustain losses. A Japanese plane destroys one and two others are hit by enemy fire and abandoned. Other Marines, under fire from the enemy stronghold at the Burns-Philip Pier are happy that the one remaining operational tank is around to give assistance. Intense enemy fire pounds the tank as it cranks along, but the successive hits fail to waste the tank.

Colonel Crowe, still commanding the deepest inland positions, begins to regroup his scattered forces with those of Ruad's 3rd Battalion, 8th Marines to bolster the tenuous hold in the airfield triangle. An extraordinary effort to knock out a large enemy emplacement proves costly. Flamethrowers and demolition teams move straight ahead. Another contingent of the 2nd Battalion, 8th Marines~attempts to flank the deadly bunker. The combined thrust fails to destroy the obstacle and the infantry platoon operating on the flank is nearly wiped out. The assault stalls, then aborted by Crowe. A unit of the 3rd Battalion, 8th Marines drives further inland and becomes threatened by enemy troops bolstered by a tank. Quick redirection of several 37-mm guns repulses the attack which includes about 200 enemy troops.

The 1st Battalion, 2nd Marines, commanded by Major Kyle, had come ashore on Red Beach 2, bolstering the 2nd Battalion, 2nd Marines, commanded by Colonel Jordan who had assumed the

position after the death of Lt. Colonel Herbert Amey, killed during the initial invasion. Meanwhile, the 2nd Marines continue to take more casualties as it advances within the Triangle; 57 men attached to Jordan's command hold the point.

Menacing enemy fire continues throughout the day on Beach Red 1, where Major Ryan is wedging his command forward. Six Sherman tanks attempt to make it to Beach One to assist the besieged 3rd Battalion, 2nd Marines, but bodies of dead Marines obstruct their passage. Choosing not to move through the wounded and dead, the tanks divert to Green Beach and four tanks are lost to deep water in the process. Rather than face possible annihilation, Ryan, improvises his attack plans and decides to take Green Beach. The tanks supplement the advance initially but one is knocked out and the other crippled. In addition to the obvious supply and communication problems, the assault is severely short of flamethrower fuel and explosives. The Marines destroy the resistance that they can handle and avoid those too strong to attack without heavy weapons. The attack, initiated at 14:00, continues for about four hours and advances to within 300 yards of the southern shore, when Ryan withdraws to set up a night perimeter.

The Japanese spend the night infiltrating Marine lines and boarding some of the skeleton vehicles lying dead in the water to ambush reinforcements heading toward the beach on the 21st. There is a conspicuous absence of mortars and there is no major counterattack. The Marines also get a bonus when Japanese planes swarm over the island to blast American positions and mistakenly bomb Japanese positions, too. The Americans take advantage of the inactivity of the enemy and bring in additional men and artillery including Lt. Colonel Presley Rixey's 1st Artillery Battalion, 10th Marines.

On this second day on Tarawa, the Marines will pay heavily again while attempting to expand their tiny beachhead. The 1st Battalion, 8th Marines, waiting in landing crafts since the previous day, receives its untangled orders to assault and is delegated to land on Red 2, then attack toward Red Beach 1, to bolster Ryan with his effort to seize Green Beach. The 1st Battalion's first wave scurries toward the reefs in LCVPs, passing the broken chain of green uniforms, blanketing the bodies of slain Marines which are being swished back and forth in the surf.

The 1st wave comes under riveting enemy fire, directed by Japanese deployed on the abandoned vehicles. Three additional waves rush toward the reefs while the fifth wave is held back until the navy can lend assistance. Marines, observing the spectacle from the beach, begin charging enemy pillboxes with audacious courage to divert fire. Rixey's howitzers are redeployed and the barrels roar, opening up in cadence with navy Hellcats which score damage with their machine guns, however, their bombs miss the mark. Rixey's artillery picks up the slack and the Japs on the reefs in the two bunkers are silenced, permitting the 1st Battalion, under Major Lawrence Hays, to reach the beachhead. Although casualties are high, they attempt to drive toward Ryan's Force, but lacking flamethrowers and heavy weapons, the palisade of piercing enemy fire prevents any advance.

Major Ryan is not deterred by the unavailability of reinforcements. In fact he has been heavily engaged for an hour before the attack of Hays' battalion begins. Ryan's marauders are perched and ready for the attack at 11:00 hours. One officer, Lt. Greene, spots targets for an American destroyer, which commences firing on enemy pillboxes and is joined by another warship. The naval symphony continues pounding the enemy positions, gaining the Marines some running room. As the guns cease firing, the men of the 3rd Battalion, 2nd Marines advance and by 12:00, drive to the opposite end of Green Beach. The Marines drive speedily, assisted by two battered Sherman tanks, one retrieved from the reefs and the other a crippled survivor of the initial fighting. The victors continue to drive inland behind the heat of the demolition teams and the flamethrowers, to pay their respects to the landlords,

still controlling stiff defenses to the north and south. Colonel Shoup is not yet aware of the progress on Green Beach.

As the hours pass, the tides change, and the Americans get more supplies and men ashore; however, the ferocity of the Japanese has not diminished. Contingents of the 2nd Battalion, 2nd Marines, drive to the positions of the 1st Battalion, 2nd Marine contingent, which is still holding a portion of the airfield triangle. In the meantime, the Japanese have closed the opening in their line at the taxistrip, creating an impenetrable zone. The Marines within the triangle are cut off. U.S. planes strike Japanese positions near the airfield, but the Japs are so closely intertwined that the raid further jeopardizes the stranded Marines and the attacks are aborted. Meanwhile, Shoup receives a message from General Holland Smith at 10:22 inquiring about his present needs: "DO YOU HAVE ENOUGH MEN TO TAKE THE ISLAND?" Shoup responds semi-ambiguously: "SITUATION DOES NOT LOOK GOOD" Smith requests more information and Shoup informs him that Colonel Carlson is delivering further details in person. Undaunted by the holdup at the taxistrip, Shoup readies another attack, utilizing his Marines and their sparse amounts of ammunition to move swiftly across the airfield runway. Heavy machine guns are deployed to disturb the enemy nests and distract their attention. At 13:00, Marines bolt from their positions and charge across a 200-foot open space through the airstrip, sustaining light casualties, and push to the beach on the opposite shore. Subsequently, the Marines come under severe attack and the ensuing struggle extracts heavy casualties from both sides. The Marines, however, hold on and slice the island in half, further splitting the defenders communications. The Marines, holding tenuously on the south shore, tend their wounded and prepare to advance.

While contingents of the 1st and 2nd Battalions, 2nd Marines had been dashing to the beach, Kyle's Machinegunners continue to pound the Japanese in the vicinity of the airfield (Green Beach) throughout the afternoon in a vicious engagement that culminates with another victory for the Marines who seize the taxistrip. A subsequent assault, intended to hook up the 1st and 2nd Battalions with Crowe's Force, is abandoned after the available manpower maintaining the hold on the south shore is determined understrength. The protracted struggle extends into another blood-filled night with the momentum tilting to the Yanks, especially after news of the success on Green Beach reaches Command. Kyle and Company C, eventually reach the south shore. Jordan, Commanding the 2nd Battalion, 2nd Marines since the death of Lt. Colonel Herbert Amey, relinquishes command to Kyle. At 16:00 on the 21st, Shoup brings command up to date on the situation on Betio. In his report he states: "SOME TROOPS IN 232 (TARGET AREA DESIGNATION) DISHING OUT HELL AND CATCHING HELL. PACK HOWITZERS IN POSITION AND REGISTERED FOR SHOOTING ON TAIL. CASUALTIES: MANY. PERCENTAGE DEAD: UNKNOWN. COMBAT EFFICIENCY: WE ARE WINNING. SHOUP."

Colonel Edson comes ashore on the night of the 21st and takes command of the operation on Betio. A major thrust is prepared for the following day, but the Japanese are not finished yet. The Americans, unconcerned about Japanese intentions, are up and about bright and early on the 22nd for the purpose of finishing the operation. Men and equipment have been coming ashore throughout the night. cruisers and battleships standing offshore commence a strong bombardment at 07:00. Subsequent 20 minute salvos occur, with the final barrage banging the eastern portion of the island at 10:30. In synchronization with the Naval bombardment, the 3rd Battalion, 6th Marines, commanded by Lt. Colonel McCleod, is standing off Green Beach, waiting for orders to land. Spotters aboard ship detect enemy troops attempting to swim to Bairiki and orders are changed to intercept and destroy the enemy on Bairiki. The 2nd Battalion, 6th Marines under Murray, get the

assignment to wipe them out. Prior to the landing at 17:00, a Naval bombardment commences. Enemy machine guns open up against the troops and the U.S. counters with planes, which strike the enemy positions and detonate a tank of gasoline. When the battalion hits the beach there are no Japanese live or dead, except those who had been manning the machine guns.

In conjunction with the principal advance on the 22nd, the 1st Battalion, Sixth Marines lands on the south beach during mid-afternoon setting two precedents: they come in on rafts and they are the first contingent to arrive on Betlo without being under fire. They sprint through the positions of the 3rd Battalion, 2nd Marines and drive down the south shore to join the 2nd Marines along the coast. The advance halts about 600 yards short of Jones' perimeter to establish sturdy night positions and act as a support group. The added firepower comes in handy as the night progresses. Meanwhile, infuriated Marines close on Japanese headquarters, a bombproof blockhouse from which Japanese Admiral Meichi Shibasaki is directing the remnants of his 4,500 defenders. Marines blow up the blockhouse with grenades, gasoline and TNT, which is tossed down the air vents. The pocket is reduced by 10:00 and the two Battalions spread out further on a scavenger hunt across the airfield giving the Japanese a heavy dosage of American firepower.

McCleod's Command, which had established night positions near Jones, is struck by a massive suicidal attack, however, this counterattack finally allows the Marines to see their elusive targets. Several assaults are mounted by the enemy and begin to further turn the tide toward the Americans. The Yanks deploy their artillery and combine the firepower of the pieces available on Betio with those on Bairoki to direct protective fire directly in front of American positions. The first attack is beaten back with rifles and bayonets. Successive attacks are also greeted with artillery and naval gunfire.

The Japanese mount another counterattack at 23:00 when troops weasel out of the thick brush screaming Banzai and tossing grenades at the 6th Marines during what turns out to be a diversionary feint. The main assault starts with a bang at 03:00 when enemy machine guns pour fire into American positions, preceding an infantry charge by hundreds of enemy troops. The Yanks return fire with every available piece including the Navy Long guns. Japs are everywhere, making it difficult for the Marines fire to miss. U.S. artillery shells pour into a concentrated area about 75 yards in front of the Marine lines. The Japanese are being thumped and those that are able to pass the ring of fire and enter American lines are taken out by bayonets. Within about an hour, the assault terminates in failure. When the sun rises on the 23rd, the enemy's numbers are greatly reduced and those still resisting are about to be eliminated either by suicide or U.S. fire.

On the 23rd, at 07:00 the final bells begin to toll ending Japanese control of Tarawa. Carrier-based planes strike the southeastern tip of Betio, ringing the remaining enemy positions with devastating fire. Still, the enemy holds about 2,000 yards of the beach, but their positions are becoming inundated with incoming shells and bombs from overhead, while being confronted by the Marines to their front and the sea to their backs. Positions are reversed. The Japanese are being vanquished by the Americans and it has not taken 100 years with a million men as the Japanese had bellowed through their propagandists, but rather, the task is handled by the 2nd Marine Division in slightly over three days. The attack carried out by carrier-based planes abets and at 07:30, a vigorous bombardment, lasting about fifteen minutes is commenced by Rixey's artillerymen. In conjunction, the navy launches another massive bombardment which lifts at 08:00, signaling the final advance to take control of the island. Its a grand march, spearheaded by the nine remaining tanks. Flamethrowers and enthusiastic Demolition squads accompany the infantry as they advance 200 yards without incident, passing dead enemy troops at every step. Many of the remaining occupants of these monuments of

Japanese engineering take their own lives as an alternative to surrendering and their powerful fortresses have been transformed into crypts of rubble, scattered between endless areas of jungle growth. McCleod's 3rd Battalion, 6th Marines effectively destroys everything in its path, while driving toward the final resistance still holding on the edge of the island. Additional naval fire bolsters the effort and by 13:00, the objective is reached by frontal elements of the 6th Marines. Remaining Japanese, squatting along the boundary line separating Red Beach 1 and Red Beach 2, are wiped out as elements of the 3rd Marines, commanded by Colonel Shoup, drive west. In addition, Company B, 2nd Tank Battalion, lands two platoons, one grinding into Red 2 and the other reporting to Major Jones on Green Beach. The 2nd and 3rd Battalions, Eighth Marines, under Hays, storm toward Burns Philips Pier and eradicate the staunch enemy bunkers that had plagued the Marines for too long. Schoettel's 3rd Battalion, 2nd Marines, joins the Hays assault team. The force also is supplemented by half-tracks and flamethrowers. Within a few hours the remaining bunkers collapse and the attackers cross the airfield and drive north toward the beach. All is going well for the Americans today. General Julian Smith informs headquarters that the situation has changed again. On the previous day, the Americans had been thinking it would take a longer time to take the island. Smith's dispatch brings pleasurable news to the commanders offshore. The message in part: "DECISIVE DEFEAT OF ENEMY COUNTERATTACK LAST NIGHT DESTROYED BULK OF HOSTILE RESISTANCE. EXPECT COMPLETE ANNIHILATION OF ENEMY ON BETIO THIS DATE."

Coincidentally, this message is dispatched to Admiral Spruance on the *Indianapolis* and to General Holland Smith and Admiral Turner on the *Pennsylvania*, one of the Ships anchored in Pearl Harbor on December 7th 1941. By noon on the 23rd, the Marines control the entire island thanks to the combined efforts of the entire strike force. The naval and air support units share in the victory and last but not least the often forgotten Seabees deserve great credit. Their commanding officer, Major Henry Drewes had been killed on the first day of the invasion. Undaunted, the Seabees cleared the land and paved the way for the arrival of planes. One plane lands today, before the island is declared secure. Some quick words are passed between the pilot and ground troops and in a flash, the plane receives minor adjustments and returns to the fight. The gallant Marines lose 1,081 dead (93 die of their wounds) and 2,233 wounded. In addition, 88 men are missing in action and presumed dead. Of over 4,500 Japanese who defended the island, only 17 survive, along with 129 Korean laborers to see the Stars and Stripes replace the Japanese colors. The Betio Island is declared secure at 13:30; however, mop up operations continue for several days on the remainder of the atoll. A defensive posture is taken by the Americans to prepare for any attempt by the enemy to retake the island. General Holland Smith subsequently remarks: "THE NAVAL GUNFIRE AND BOMBING WAS THE REASON FOR OUR SUCCESS. WITHOUT NAVAL GUNFIRE WE COULD NOT HAVE TAKEN THE ISLAND... THE REASON THIS BATTLE WAS WON WAS THAT THESE GREAT AMERICAN MEN WERE DETERMINED THAT THEIR NATION WOULD NOT GO DOWN IN DEFEAT~' The Battleship *Mississippi* (BB-41) is damaged, by an accidental explosion; Light Carrier *Independence*, damaged by an Aircraft torpedo; the Destroyers *Ringgold* (DD-500) and *Dashiel* (DD-659) by coastal guns and enemy ground batteries, respectively.

**November 20 1943**—(Gillberts-Tarawa-Betio) The 2nd Marine Division (Bloody Division), hit the beaches, Red 1, Red 2, and Red 3, on the northern coast of Betio after passing savage resistance on the way through the reefs at 09:10, spearheaded by the 2nd Battalion, 8th Marines, and the 2nd and 3rd Battalions, 2nd Marines in assault. The 1st Battalion 2nd Marines and the 3rd Battalion, 8th Marines are landed in reserve. Casualties are devastatingly high. In one instance, Sgt. William J.

Bordelon 1st Battalion, 18th Marines, (attached to 2nd Marine Division) leading the four survivors of his landing craft, destroys 2 enemy pillboxes, then gives cover fire to other Marines attempting to scale the seawall. In addition, Bordelon, while wounded himself, rescues two wounded Marines before finally giving his life, while attacking a fourth machine gun nest. His incalculable heroism is in the finest traditions of the United States fighting man. The invasion force is under the overall command of Admiral Spruance.

**November 21 1943 —(Pacific-Gilberts-Tarawa)** The 1st Battalion, 8th Marines land on Red Beach 2 to bolster forces already there. The 2nd Battalion 2nd Marines assisted by Companies A and B, 1st Battalion and the majority of the 2nd Battalion drive to the southern coast of the island to divide the enemy forces, while the 3rd Battalion, 2nd Marines, commanded by Major Ryan, secures Green Beach. Elements of the 6th Marines land on the western tip of Bairoki Island late in the day, to cut off the Japanese attempting to escape the clutches of the Marines on Betio. While the Marines concentrate against the enemy on Betio, contingents of the 2nd Tank Battalion advance up the atoll in search of Japanese at Eita, but find none; another contingent locates an enemy pocket at Buota. During the struggle to secure Betio, many men die; in one instance of heroism, 1st Lt. Hawkins leads an assault against an impregnable enemy position, defended by 5 machine guns and destroys it. Although Lt. Hawkins becomes severely wounded, he refuses to withdraw and continues to lead his men against additional enemy pillboxes, knocking out three more before a machine gun fire kills him. Lt. Hawkins becomes the recipient of the Medal of Honor posthumously.

**November 21-25 1943 — (Pacific-Solomons-Bougainville)** The 3rd Marines expands its perimeter in the Piva Forks area, to eliminate any additional major enemy threats. During this operation, the 2nd and 3rd Battalions, 3rd Marines, defeat the Japanese 23rd Infantry in a vicious battle line that stretches 800 yards along the east fork of the Piva River on the 24th.

**November 22 1943-(Pacific-Gilberts-Tarawa)** The U.S. again unleashes an intense bombardment of Japanese positions, using the combined guns of naval vessels, planes and field artillery to assist the Marine ground forces. In one incident concerning the innumerable acts of courage on Betio, 1st Lt. Alexander Bonnyman Jr., attached to the 2nd Battalion, 8th Marines, tires of being pinned down by enemy fire (20th) and leads his squad off the pier and onto the beach, then he proceeds to force a gap in the enemy lines by knocking out several enemy positions. Today, Bonnyman creeps out about 40 yards in front of U.S. positions and knocks out a large enemy bunker in his first step to eliminate the primary bunker containing several hundred enemy troops. Although under intense fire the entire time, he continues to advance. About 100 enemy troops are killed during a breakout attempt; the remainder are eliminated after they refuse to surrender. Bonnyman holds his ground against a severe attack, killing three more enemy troops before he becomes mortally wounded. Bonnyman receives the Medal of Honor posthumously for his actions. Colonel Shoup, (later General) is responsible for the entire land operation and although he himself has been seriously wounded, while coming ashore, his courageous action and distinctive leadership, masterminds the victory; he also is awarded the Medal of Honor.

**November 23rd 1943 — (Pacific-Gilberts-Malden)** Advance contingents of the 165th Infantry progress to the tip of Butaritari Island ending organized resistance on the island by 10:30. **(Pacific-Gilberts-Tarawa)** Enemy resistance on Betio ceases as the 3rd Battalion, 6th Marines drives through the 1st Battalion lines and clears the remaining area of enemy resistance, reaching the southeast tip of Betio by about 13:00. The 3rd Marines destroy the enemy pocket between Beaches Red 1 and 2. Major General Julian C. Smith, commanding officer 2nd Marine Division, declares the island secure at 13:30. **(Pacific-Solomons-Bougainville)** The 1st Marine Paratroop Battalion arrives to bolster the

ongoing operation to wipe out enemy resistance. The U.S. Navy joins in, when Rear Admiral A. S. Merrill's Cruiser Destroyer Task Force bombards Buka-Bonis.

**November 24 1943-(Pacific-Gilberts-Tarawa)** The 2nd Defense Battalion arrives from Samoa to replace the 2nd and 8th Marines which departs for Kamuela, Hawaii. Major General Julian Smith, 2nd Marine Division Commander, instructs Brigadier General Leo Hermle to assault and occupy the Apamama Atoll (3rd Battalion, 6th Marines). The 2nd Battalion, 6th Marines, supported by scouts of the 2nd Tank Battalion, begin their long trek through the jungles of the islands stretching up the eastern side of the atoll to eliminate any remaining the Japanese. In other activity, elements of the 3rd Battalion, 10th Marines, moves north to scout the area around Ida Island.

**November 25 1943 — (Pacific-Gilberts-Tarawa)** The 2nd Battalion, 6th Marines continue their march up the Apamama atoll reaching Buariki, the final large island in the northwest portion of the atoll without incident. Meanwhile, Company D, 2nd Tank Battalion halts its advance about halfway across the eastern side of the atoll and returns to Eita. The Third Battalion, 6th Marines, is en route to Apamama Atoll. Also, the 1st and 3rd Platoons, V Amphibious Corps Reconnaissance Company reports no resistance on Otto.

**November 26 1943 — (Pacific-Gilberts-Tarawa)** During closing mop up operations, the 2nd Battalion, 6th Marines, converges on the southern tip of Buariki, the last major island in the northwestern section of the atoll. Company E clashes with a Japanese Patrol. All resistance on Buariki ceases by the following day. **(Pacific-Gilberts-Apamama)** The Marines land troops at both John, and Steve Islands, initiating a defensive build-up. **(Pacific-Solomons-Bougainville)** Marines take over abandoned Japanese positions on Grenade Hill.

**November 27 1943 - (Pacific-Gilberts-Tarawa)** The 2nd Battalion, 6th Marines terminate resistance on Buariki.

**November 28 1943 — (Pacific-Gilberts-Tarawa)** Major General Julian C. Smith, U.S.M.C. declares the entire atoll secure when the 2nd Battalion, 6th Marines returns from the Naa Islet after locating no Japanese. Marine casualties on Tarawa total 3,301 killed or wounded. Japanese losses; about 4,690 killed, 17 captured.

**November 29 1943-(Pacific-Solomons-Bougainville)** U.S. Construction troops begin to establish an airstrip near the Piva River. Also, the 1st Parachute Battalion, with Company M, 3rd Raider Battalion, and an observer contingent from the 12th Marines land at a Japanese supply depot on Koiari beach to destroy communication and supplies, however, the unit is forced to evacuate.

**November 30 1943 — (Pacific-Gilberts)** Contingents of Company D, 2nd Tank Battalion, complete their search of Abaiang and Makakei Atolls north of Tarawa, but find only five Japanese troops. On the following day, additional Marine scouts (Company D, 2nd Tank Battalion) land on the Maiana Atoll near Bickerel village, but depart after finding no Japanese.

**December 1 1943 — (United States)** The U.S. Navy announces it has established a Naval Air Ferry Command. Also, the first Marine Corps air-transportable air warning squadron is commissioned at Cherry Point, North Carolina.

**December 3 1943-(Pacific-Solomons-Bougainville)** The 1st Marine Parachute Battalion, dispatched from Vella Lavella, arrives and begins to expand its perimeter.

**December 9 1943 — (Pacific-Bougainville)** The Allied airstrip at Torokina is declared operational. Fighting will erupt as the U.S. 3rd Marines begin to secure the hills in the vicinity of their beachhead. The Marines track the Japanese doggedly until the end of the month.

**December 10 1943 —(Pacific-Solomons)** Torokina Airstrip, Bougainville, slightly over two hundred miles from Rabaul, receives Marine Fighter Squadron 216. The squadron flies its first ground-air

close combat support mission on the 13th and directs its fire on “Hellzapoppin Ridge.”

**December 15 1943 - (Pacific-Bougainville)** General Griswold, XIV Corps commanding general, relieves General Geiger, Marine Amphibious Corps commanding officer, of responsibility for the defense of Bougainville beachhead, The beach is secure except for minor mop-up operations, while the 21st Marines, 3rd Marine Division, operating in the nearby heights, clears enemy remnants in the vicinity.

**December 17 1943 — In New Georgia,** Allied Fighters, including Marine Fighter Squadron 214, from airfields in New Georgia, attack Japanese Planes that are attempting take off at Lakunai Airfields in Rabaul. This attack is the first fighter assault launched against Rabaul.

**December 18 1943 - (Pacific-Solomons-Bougainville)** The 1st and 3rd Battalions, 21st Marines mop up opposition on the heights above the beachhead after culminating the operation which had begun on the 27th of November. Hellzapoppin Ridge, the most obstinate of the Japanese-infested hills falls to the Marines.

**December 21 1943 —(Pacific-Bismarcks-New Britain)** Two Marine patrols scout the beach areas, in the vicinity of Tauali prior to the landing. **(Pacific-New Guinea)** Major General William H. Rupertus, USMC, runs his troops (Task Force Backhander), through the final rehearsal prior to the invasion of Cape Gloucester, New Britain.

**December 23 1943-(Pacific-Marshalls)** Six SBDs, attached to Marine Scout-Bomber Squadron 331 participate in a U.S. attack against Jaluit Atoll. **(Pacific-New Britain)** Marine Fighter Squadron 214 assaults Rabaul. Enemy planes are launched to intercept the American planes, prompting a duel in the sky over Cape St. George. The Marines pilots inflict heavy losses on the Japanese interceptors.

**December 24 1943 —(Pacific-Solomons-Bougainville)** The entire beachhead is now secure. The Marines have exterminated enemy resistance on all the heights in the surrounding area. On the following day, advance elements of the Americal Division, USA, arrive to begin relieving the Marines, 3rd Division and take responsibility for the island. The Marines will be totally evacuated by the 16th of January.

**December 25 1943 — (Pacific-Bougainville)** RCT 164, American Division arrives to relieve the 3rd Marine Division.

**January 2 1944- (Pacific-New Britain-Cape Gloucester)** Brigadier General Lemuel C. Shepherd, Asst. Division Commander, orders the 2nd and 3rd Battalions, 7th Marines, to attack. The assault overcomes the enemy and presses forward, toward Borgen Bay.

**January 3 1944-(Pacific-New Britain)** The 1st Battalion, 7th Marines, repulses a Japanese counterattack mounted against its positions on Target Hill. Elements of the 7th Marines are stalled by heavy enemy resistance at “Suicide Creek” The Marines, unable to get their Tanks across by ordinary methods, improvise; by the following day, the Tanks roar across a modified version of a bridge to destroy the resistance. In other activity, Marine Fighter Squadron 214 has been in constant battle with enemy Planes, since the 12th of September 1943. During this time period, Major “Pappy” Boyington has been credited with the destruction of 26 enemy Planes. Major Boyington’s aggressive leadership has molded an elite outfit, which has helped to accomplished many brave feats, leading to the disintegration of enemy Air-power in this strategic area of the Solomons.

**January 4 1944 — (Pacific-New Britain)** Contingents of the 3rd Battalions, 5th and 7th Marines, defeat the 2nd Battalion, 53rd Japanese Infantry, at “Suicide Creek,” Cape Gloucester. The triumphant Marines move toward Aogiri Ridge, without opposition.

**January 9 1944 — (Pacific-Solomons)** At Bougainville, the 3rd Marine Division still is being replaced by the Americal Division U.S.A. In other activity, another Airfield, Piva Yoke, is complete.

**(Pacific-New Britain)** The Japanese lose a portion of Aogiri Ridge, west of Hill 150. The Japanese, who have been ordered to hold at all costs, lose the contested ridge that controls a primary enemy supply route to the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines, on the 11th.

**January 10 1944 — (North Pacific-Aleutians)** A U.S. Minesweeper, the YMS-127, operating in waters around the Aleutians, sinks, after becoming grounded. **(Pacific-New Britain)** The Marines, who have maintained control of a portion of Aogiri Ridge since the previous day, repulse a series of counterattacks, then advance to attack enemy positions on Hill 660.

**January 11 1944 -(Pacific-Marshalls)** Naval Planes under the command of Rear Admiral J. H. Hoover, based at both the Gilbert and Ellice Islands, combine to bombard enemy positions including Shipping and Military installations on Kwajalein.

**January 12 1944-(Pacific-New Britain)** Company B, 1st Tank Battalion, 1st Marine Division and Company F, 158th Infantry, U.S.A., arrive at Arawe to further bolster the perimeter. **(Pacific-Solomons)** The Americal Division movement to Bougainville is complete.

**January 13 1944-(Pacific-New Britain)** Heavy fighting is still raging near Hill 660. The Marines call in Artillery and Air support, but are prevented from capturing their objective until the following day. The U.S. 864th Engineering Aviation Battalion arrives at Cape Gloucester to help speed up repairs of the Airdrome. **(Pacific-Solomons)** The Americal Division (Artillery units) is in the process of relieving the Artillery units of the 3rd Marine Division on Bougainville.

**January 14-1944-Pacific-New Britain** The 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, drives to the top of Hill 660 (final objective of the A.D.C. Group), ending the Japanese resistance in the Cape Gloucester-Borgen Bay area; the A.D.C. Group relief begins on the following day.

**January 16 1944 — (Pacific-Solomons)** The final contingents of the U.S. 3rd Marine Division departs Bougainville. **(Pacific-Bismarcks-New Britain)** The 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, finish the Japanese on Hill 660 after what would be the last Japanese counterattack in Western New Britain, culminating the fighting in the Cape Gloucester-Borgen Bay area. At Arawe, the 2nd Battalion, 158th Infantry, attacks vigorously, supported by B Company, 1st Tank Battalion, U.S.M.C., driving against the Japanese who are attempting to penetrate the perimeter. The tanks assist the troops to gain 1,500 tough yards and on the following day, enemy resistance in the area near Arawe will be extinguished, while pursuit against the Japanese who have withdrawn toward Lupin continues.

**January 21 1944-(Pacific-Marshalls)** The 25th Marines and the Special Weapons Battalion, 4th Marine Division, deploy organic weapons along the Northern shore of Ennugarret, zeroing in on Namur, to support the attack by the 24th Marines.

**January 24 1944 — (Pacific-Solomons)** Japanese fighters intercept American bombers near Simpson Harbor in the Solomons. One plane from Marine Fighter Squadron 215, piloted by Lt. Robert M. Hanson, destroys four Jap zeros and probably a fifth, before he is shot down. From November 1st through today, Lt. Hanson has shot down 25 enemy planes.

**January 31-February 8 1944 — (Pacific-Marshalls) THE BATTLE OF KWAJALEIN —** An Amphibious Assault Force, under the command of Vice Admiral Spruance, springs upon the Japanese in the Marshalls. Two Task Forces, commanded by Rear Admirals Conolly and Turner, deliver amphibious troops to assigned beachheads. In addition, landing forces are supplemented by a reserve force and the Majuro Attack Group, commanded by Rear Admiral H. W. Hill. Additional naval firepower comes from Rear Admiral Marc Mitscher's carrier-based planes, and land-based aircraft under Rear Admiral J. H. Hoover. Rear Admiral Sherman's carriers are simultaneously launching planes against Engebi Island, on the Eniwetok Atoll.

Task Force 51, commanded by Admiral Turner, initiates a naval and air bombardment of Kwajalein

Atoll, just prior to the landing. As the guns silence, the coordinated Army-Marine assault force, commanded by Major General Holland M. Smith USMC, attacks. The (Northern Force) 25th Marines charges ashore against light opposition, taking Mellu (Ivan) and Ennuebing (Jacob) Islands, permitting it to move rapidly, seizing Ennubirr (Allen), Ovella, Ennumennet (Albert) and Ennugarret (Abraham) Islands in the Kwajalein Atoll. Regimental Combat Team 17, 7th Division USA, storms ashore seizing Cecil and Carter, both islets that control the Ninni Pass on Kwajalein Atoll. Elements of Company B and Reconnaissance units, land on Chauncey (Gehh) in error, then after leaving Infantrymen to clear the enemy, the units jump to Cecil, seizing it without opposition by about 12:30 hours. Carter falls to elements of the 7th Division after a three hour battle at 09:30. Troops from the V Amphibious Corps secure Majuro Atoll without opposition.

Communications between shore forces and the navy are excellent and the air support substantial. On the following day, the 23rd Marines land at a lagoon across the south beaches of Roi Island and seize NAT Circle, the last Japanese pocket of resistance, after a brief encounter with the enemy defenders, then declare the island secure. An enemy Force of approximately 100 men attempts to infiltrate Marine lines, but is decisively repulsed during the night after intense hand-to-hand combat. The Marines drive north and seize the remaining islands in that portion of the Atoll. Eight islands are secured on the 2nd of February without opposition; the army also seizes minor islands without opposition in the southern area of the Atoll. Combat Team 24 (USMC), drives toward Namur from two directions converging on the point and securing Namur, the primary objective of the campaign for the 4th Marines. After securing Roi and Namur on the 2nd, activity remains brisk, with the Marines searching for enemy resistance. Between the 2nd and the 4th of February, the 1st Battalion, 23rd Marines, secures Boggerlap, Boggerik, and Hollis Islands without opposition. Landing Team 3 (3rd, Battalion, 25th Marines) replaces Landing Team 1 (1st Battalion, 25th Marines) and proceeds to secure the remaining islands in the northern portion of the Kwajalein Atoll. From the 4th through the 7th, Landing Team 3, supported by Battery C, 14th Marines, supplemented by strong Naval support, secures thirty-nine islands without opposition, culminating the mission of the Northern Landing Force. By the sixth of February, the army (Southern Landing Force) had seized Ennugenliggelap Island, finishing their mission. By the eighth of February, Kwajalein Atoll is secure and the majority of the Northern Landing Force (Marines) departs the Atoll to prepare for the next objective. The U.S. Army remains on the island with responsibility for its security.

**February 1 1944-(Pacific-Kwajalein Atoll-Marshalls)** Combined U.S. Army and Marine units land on the Kwajalein Atoll under cover of concentrated naval and air bombardment. By the end of the day, the 7th Division, commanded by General Corlet, U.S.A. (Southern Landing Force) controls approximately one-third of the Kwajalein Island including a portion of the enemy-held Airfield. The Marines hit the beaches at the southern shores of Roi and Namur at about noon, quickly seizing control of the airfield from the unorganized and surprised Japanese. The Marines (RCT 23) drive to the edge of the northern coast, expelling enemy resistance with the exception of a pocket in the middle of the airfield. The Marines (Regimental Combat Team 24) encounter dense jungle terrain and fortified buildings that had withstood the murderous bombardment but take the objective. During the operation, an ammunition dump explodes causing the Marines as many casualties as they would incur from battle. An enemy counterattack at dawn proves expensive for the Japanese, as the Marines devastate the attackers. During the day, one Marine, P.F.C. Richard B. Anderson, in a foxhole with two other Marines, pulls the pin on a grenade, but it slips from his grasp endangering everyone. Anderson, in an effort to save the others, throws himself over the explosion, saving the others. He receives the Medal of Honor posthumously. In another of the unending acts of undaunted heroism,

1st Lt. John V. Power (4th Division U.S.M.C.) is setting charges at an enemy pillbox and is struck viciously in the stomach. Unwilling to yield, he presses one hand against the bleeding wound and fires his weapon with his right hand then charges another pillbox, expending his ammunition into the pillbox, then reloads to finish the job. Another round of fatal enemy fire rips into his stomach and head as he slumps to the earth. Meanwhile, Private Richard K. Sorenson, stuffed in a shell crater with five other Marines, covers a grenade which falls among them. Miraculously, he survives after taking the full explosion. Both Sorenson and Power receive the Medal of Honor; Power's receives his posthumously.

**February 2 1944 — (Pacific-Marshalls-Kwajalein)** The U.S. 7th Division meets stiff enemy resistance. Air, Artillery, and Naval guns are called in for support. The 2nd Battalion, 184th Infantry, drives across the lagoon side of the island, while the 2nd Battalion, 32nd Infantry, assaults enemy positions along the ocean. Meanwhile, the 3rd Battalion, 32nd Infantry, destroys an enemy pocket known as Corn. Advance elements stretch farther than the Nora Road, but the main body organizes its line short of the road. In other activity within the sector of the Southern Landing Force, elements of the 7th Division land on Chauncey and engage in a severe fire fight. The Japanese lose 125 dead.

In the Northern Landing Force area, the Marines mop up enemy resistance on Roi, then move to capture Namur; organized resistance on Namur is terminated by the Marines at 1215, ending the battle for the southern end of the Kwajalein atoll, except for mop-up operations. Lieutenant Colonel Dyess, 1st Battalion, 24th Marines, directs his men against the last enemy position remaining on Namur, but a volley of enemy fire takes his life. His tremendous leadership during this attack contributes greatly to the success of the operation. Major General Henry Schmidt, commanding the Northern Force, dispatches Combat Team 25, and Company A, 10th Amphibian Tractor Battalion and Landing Team 2, to secure the remaining islands in the northern section of the Kwajalein Atoll. They secure eight islands without opposition. Between the 2nd and the 4th, landing Team 1 secures Boggerlapp, Boggerik and Hollis Island, without opposition.

**February 4 1944-(Pacific-Marshalls-Kwajalein Atoll)** Elements of the U.S. 7th Division U.S.A., advance to Nathan Road after a difficult day of clearing enemy resistance. The operation takes a toll on the troops, causing them to arrive in a state of disarray. Additional units move to Nero Point on the tip of the island at about 17:00. Enemy resistance holds out until almost 21:30, however, the island is declared secure by General Corleif at 16:10. The army has gathered many prisoners during the day, including both Japanese and their Korean laborers. The 1st Battalion, 17th Infantry, continues its northern attack against Burton, meeting stiff opposition, however, the troops secure the island by early afternoon. Units of the 2nd Battalion, 17th Infantry, capture Burnet and Loi north of Burton. Additional Japanese and Koreans (about 20) are captured on Blakenship. Landing Team 3, U.S.M.C., continues north and for the next three days, sweeps through 39 islands, capturing all without opposition. In other activity, two planes attached to Marine Photographic Squadron 954 initiate the first photo reconnaissance of Truk Atoll.

**February 7 1944 — (Pacific-Marshalls-Kwajalein)** The Northern Landing Force, 24th Marines, finishes its search of the islands in the northern Kwajalein Atoll. During this action which started on January 31st, the Marines suffer 963 total casualties; the explosion of an ammunition dump is responsible for about half of the deaths suffered by the Marines. The Japanese losses are reported as 3,472 killed and 91 captured.

**February 8 1944 —(Pacific-Marshalls-Kwajalein)** The vast majority of the Southern Landing Force (14th Marines, 23rd Marines, and the 2nd Battalion, 24th Marines), departs a secured Kwajalein. Combat Team 25 remains behind to garrison the atoll.

**February 10 1944-(Pacific-New Britain)** The 1st Marine Division and RCT 112, U.S.A., link up, culminating the campaign in Western New Britain.

**February 12 1944 — (Pacific-Bismarcks)** A contingent of the 1st Marines, 1st Marine Division, based on Cape Gloucester, lands on Rooke Island to search for Japanese; it remains until the 20th without encountering any enemy troops.

**February 16 1944-(Pacific-Bismarcks-New Britain)** U.S. Army patrols dispatched from Arawe and Marine patrols emerging from Cape Gloucester converge on Gilnit near the Itni River to secure western New Britain and the Itni Valley.

**February 17 1944-(Pacific-Marshalls)** A powerful U.S. Navy Task Force Group (51.11), commanded by Admiral Hill, bombards Engebi, Parry, Japan and Eniwetok Islands on the Eniwetok Atoll, while Planes attached to Task Force 58.4 simultaneously strike the landing zones. U.S. Marines (Tactical Group 1) land and secure Aitsu (Camellia) and Rujiyuru (Canna) Islands without opposition. U.S. Army Artillery is deployed on the islands to position guns facing Engebi Island. The Marines (Co. D, 4th Tank Battalion) move toward Zinnia (Bogon), but initially land two islands short, because of confusion in the darkness, before moving rapidly to Bogon without incident. The Americans have taken their first day's objective without casualties. The newly established Artillery Detachment is ordered to commence firing against Engebi to supplement the Naval preinvasion bombardment. In a coordinated operation, Underwater Demolition Teams reconnoiter the beach areas.

**February 18 1944 — (Pacific-Eniwetok-Marshalls)** The U.S. Navy bombards Engebi to soften resistance; carrier-based planes, attached to Rear Admiral H. W. Hill's Task Force, also strike enemy positions. Meanwhile, the 22nd Marines, supported by a contingent of a U.S. Army cannon company, land on the beaches and quickly declare Engebi secure, except for an isolated pocket at the southern tip of the island. Elements of the landing force join the landing at Eniwetok with the 106th Infantry Regiment, U.S.A. In other activity, Marine Company D, 4th Tank Battalion, arrives on Bogon Island, situated west of Engebi, and establish positions to cut off Japanese escape routes. On the following day, army and Marine Troops combine to assault Eniwetok Island.

**February 19 1944 — (Pacific-Bismarcks)** Japanese positions are bombarded by army, navy, and Marine aircraft. This is the final opposed raid against Rabaul; the attacks force the enemy to withdraw all its air defense units stationed there. Marine Corps aircraft stationed on the Solomons initiate round-the-clock bombing which continues until the 15th of May, turning Rabaul into rubble.

**(Pacific-Marshall Islands)** U.S. naval vessels and carrier-based planes attached to Rear Admiral Hill's Task Force again bombard enemy positions on Eniwetok Atoll. Following cessation of the bombardment, elements of RCT 106, 27th Division, storm the beaches on the lagoon side, then drive past the outpost positions and push toward the ocean. The 1st Battalion pivots right, moving against enemy artillery fortifications on the southern end of the island. Enemy resistance slows the progress of the march. The 3rd Battalion, 22nd Marines (Reserve Force), is committed during the afternoon to assist the drive and is given orders to move to the northern end of the island to meet the ongoing enemy counterattack. During the night of the 19th, the Japs creep close to Marine positions and toss a grenade into a foxhole containing three Marines. Corporal Anthony P. Damato (Shenandoah, Pa.), instinctively smothers the grenade with his body, absorbing the entire concussion and saving the lives of the others; he receives the Medal of Honor posthumously.

**February 20 1944-(Pacific-Marshalls-Eniwetok)** The combined army and Marine force wipes out resistance on Eniwetok. An army contingent (3rd Battalion 106th Infantry) moves north against the enemy while the 3rd Battalion, 22nd Marines, assisted by the 1st Battalion, 106th Infantry, wipes out

opposition in the southern end of the island. The assault against Parry, the last of the larger islands on the Atoll, is being prepared as artillery based at Eniwetok Island, bombards enemy positions. Additional artillery, stationed on Japan Island, also rains shells on the island. In other activity, Allied carrier-based planes attached to Rear Admiral J.W. Reeves' task group, strike Jaluit Atoll. Company D, 4th Tank Battalion USMC, lands on the southern group of the western chain of islands, capturing Rigili Island after destroying minor resistance, then moves across the remaining seven islands in the chain without incident.

**February 20 1944- (Pacific-Bismarcks-New Britain)** The 5th Marines drive across the northern coast of the island toward Iboki Plantation, a Japanese stronghold. In other activity, the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines, seizes Karai-ai near Cape Raoult with a two pronged assault, striking from the sea and on the ground to seize the Japanese supply base. **(Pacific-Marshalls-Eniwetok)** The combined troops of the army and Marine Corps secure Eniwetok. The 3rd Battalion, 106th Infantry mops up, while the 3rd Battalion, 22nd Marines, pulls out to prepare for the invasion of Parry, which is presently under attack from the air and the sea as part of the preinvasion plan, which is finalized today.

**February 22 1944-(Pacific-Marianas)** U.S. Task Force 58, commanded by Admiral Mitscher, is attacked by enemy planes as it steams toward the Marianas. However, carrier-based planes and surface vessel fire devastate the Japanese force. **(Pacific-Marshalls-Eniwetok Atoll)** The 22nd Marines, Landing Teams 1 and 2, assault the northern portion of Parry Island. The 2nd Battalion, supported by the 3rd Battalion, moves south, forcing the capitulation of enemy resistance on the southern portion of the island by 19:00, successfully concluding the Eniwetok Operation.

**February 25 1944 — (Pacific-Bismarcks-New Britain)** Marine Patrols reach Iboke plantation to find it evacuated. According to reports the last solid Japanese force had gone through the village on the 16th. Also, the 1st Battalion, 141st Japanese Infantry, withdraws from the Lupin area, heading north.

**March 4 1944-(Pacific-Marshalls)** The 4th Marine Defense Air Wing's campaign against the Japanese entrenched on the eastern Marshalls commences with the bombing of Wotje, Jaluit, Maloelap and Mille Atolls. These attacks continue until the final surrender of the Japanese. Also, Marine Scout-Bomber Squadron 331 assaults Jaluit.

**March 6-9 1944 — (Pacific-New Britain)** Combat Team A, 5th Marines, 1st Marine Division lands at the Volupai Plantation on the Willaumez Peninsula to prepare for the assault against Talasea. Inclement weather prevents air support, but the Marines fight through swampy terrain against fierce opposition and extend the beachhead 2,000 yards, then prepare to attack toward the airdrome. The Fifth Marines meet little opposition on the following two days. On the 9th, the Marines pounce on Mount Scheleuther and the Waru Villages in the Willaumez Peninsula only to find the Japanese had fled south. Subsequently, the Marines declare Talasea and its airdrome secure. Three Infantry Battalions of the 5th Marines patrol the area to the north, south, and southeast of Bitokara, expelling Japanese stragglers from western New Britain; the mop-up operation lasts until the 25th of April.

**March 7 1944 —(Pacific-Marshalls)** The First Reconnaissance Group, including two reinforced companies from the 22nd Marines, leaves the Kwajalein Atoll to secure the Wotho Atoll.

**March 8 1944 —(Pacific-Bismarcks-New Britain)** The 5th Marines moves toward Talasea against only light resistance. Patrols have discovered Talasea unoccupied by the enemy.

**March 8-24 1944 — (Pacific-Solomons-Bougainville)** The U.S. Army, holding Bougainville since the withdrawal of the 3rd Marine Division on January 16th, comes under ferocious attack by the Japanese now reinforced from other parts of the island. The 37th Division receives an intense artillery barrage which destroys one B-24, and three fighters and damages 19 planes.

**March 9 1944-(Pacific-Bismarcks-New Britain)** Talasea falls to the 5th Marines. The 2nd Battalion seizes Mt. Scheleuther and the Waru villages on the Willaumez Peninsula. As the Japanese retreat south. Mop-up operations begin with the Infantry scouring the peninsula to rid the area of Japanese stragglers. The search and destroy operation lasts until April 25th.

**March 11 1944 -(Pacific-Marshalls)** Elements of the 1st Battalion, 22nd Marines, secure Lib Island, south of the Kwajalein Atoll.

**March 14 1944 — (Pacific-Marshalls)** Marine reconnaissance teams, attached to the 1st Battalion (2 Companies), arrive at Kwajalein Atoll after seizing the islands and atoll in the western chain of the Marshall Group.

**March 18 1944 — (Pacific-Bismarcks)** An American assault force departs Guadaicanal, heading for Emirau in the St. Matthias Islands. The 4th Marines, transported by a naval force commanded by Commodore Lawrence F. Reifsnider, will arrive at the objective on the 20th and land without the support of a preinvasion bombardment. The Marines find the island undefended. It becomes a Light naval and air base to assist the island hopping campaigns. **(Pacific-Bismarcks-New Britain)** Contingents of the 5th Marines (Patrols) advance to Numundo Plantation at the eastern base of the Willaumez Peninsula.

**March 19 1944-(Pacific-Marshall Islands)** Two assault forces of Marines (3rd Battalion, 22nd Marines) embark from Kwajalein Atoll to secure the southern group of the chain.

**March 20 1944- (Pacific-Bismarcks-St. Matthias Islands)** The 4th Marines, commanded by Brigadier General Alfred H. Noble, USMC, land at Emirau Island, finding it undefended; it is transformed into a light naval and air base. This landing culminates a series of Operation CARTWHEEL offensives against Rabaul.

**March 21 1944 —(Pacific-Marshalls)** Two contingents of the 3rd Battalion, 22nd Marines, land at Ailinglapalap Island, Southern Group. The landing teams eradicate enemy resistance and secure the island; subsequently, one detachment embarks for Ebon located on the southern tip of the atoll.

**March 24 1944 —(Pacific-Marshalls)** Contingents of the 3rd Battalion, 22nd Marines, accept surrender of the Japanese on Namu Atoll. Subsequently, the Marines depart for Kwajalein Atoll, arriving there on the following day. Other Atolls in the southern Group also fall to the Marines (3rd Battalion, 22nd Marines). In an operation initiated on the 23rd, the Marines seize Ebon Atoll, then jump to Namorik Atoll and Kill Island, seizing them without opposition.

**March 27 1944 —(Pacific-Marshalls)** Troops attached to the 2nd Battalion, 22nd Marines, begin clearing the North and Northeast Groups of the chain. Ailinginae, Bikar and Rongerik Atolls are bypassed.

**March 28 1944-(Pacific-Marshalls)** Elements of the 3rd Battalion, 22nd Marines arrive back at Kwajalein Atoll after their successful mission to secure the islands and atolls in the southern group. A reinforced Battalion of the 22nd Marines unfurls Old Glory on Bikini Island while securing the island.

**March 30 1944-(Pacific-Bismarcks-New Britain)** A small Marine Corps patrol destroys the rear guard of the retreating 17th Japanese Division in the vicinity of Linga Linga.

**April 1 1944-(Pacific-Marshalls)** A contingent of the 3rd Battalion, 22nd Marines, seizes Ailuk Atoll in the Northeast Group.

**April 2 1944 — (Pacific-Marshalls)** Mejit Island (Northeast Group) is taken by elements of the 3rd Battalion, 2nd Marines.

**April 3 1944-(Pacific-Marshalls)** Elements of the 3rd Battalion, 22nd Marines, Capture Likiep Atoll, Northeast Group.

**April 4 1944 — (Pacific-Marshalls)** The 3rd Battalion (contingent of the 22nd Marines) is wrapping up its campaign to secure the Northeast Group of the Marshalls.

**April 5 1944 - (Pacific-Bismarcks)** Units of Marine Aircraft Group 12 arrive on Emirau, St. Matthias Islands. **(Pacific-Carolines)** U.S. Carrier-based Aircraft sink the Japanese Auxiliary Submarine Chaser No. 46. **(Pacific-Marshalls)** Contingents of the 2nd Battalion, 22nd Marines eradicate light enemy resistance at Utirik Atoll and secure the island; the unit subsequently returns to Kwajalein.

**April 11 1944- (Pacific-Bismarcks)** The 4th Marines, holding Emirau Island in the St Matthias Islands are relieved by the U.S. 147th Infantry, initiating Army responsibility for the island. Major General James I. Moore, U.S.M.C., takes command of all ground troops on Emirau Island.

**April 13 1944 —(Pacific-New Britain)** A 16-man Marine patrol lands on Cape Hoskins and advances inland 5,000 yards under the noses of enemy troops, gathering intelligence on the Japanese airfields.

**April 22 1944 — (Pacific-New Guinea) THE BATTLE OF HOLLANDIA** — The Japanese again are caught offguard, as MacArthur's strategy has them confused about the Allied objectives. Wewak, which had sustained saturation bombing during the end of March, is the anticipated target, but it is spared. Instead, the Australian-American force invades Hollandia, 450 miles up the New Guinea coast. MacArthur is pleased with this operation before it starts; for the first time, he has the cushion of a well supplied naval task force to assist the invasion.

The assault operation is under the command of Rear Admiral D.E. Barbey and is supplemented by the massive guns and planes of Vice Admiral Marc Mitscher's carrier task force. Allied surface vessels pummel enemy positions prior to the landing. When it ceases, the first waves of 60,000 combat troops storm ashore on the northern coast of Hollandia, meeting no opposition. In addition, a diversionary force makes a simultaneous landing at Aitape. Japanese officer, Vice Admiral Yoskikazu Endo, transported by submarine from Wewok to Hollandia to escape the assault is in a state of utter disbelief. He soon strolls into the jungle and commit hari-kari

Task Force Reckless lands at Humboldt and at Tanahmerah Bay to establish a beachhead, as contingents of the 24th Division secure two landing sites, Red Beach 1 and Red Beach 2 (Depapre Bay). The main thrust of the inland drive is to spring from Beach 2, but its terrain is swampy and dangerously narrow. In addition, no trails or roads connect the two beaches, forcing all supplies to be transferred from Beach 2 to the secondary choice. The 21st Infantry, 24th Division begins moving overland to Beach Red 1, while the 19th Infantry remains behind to defend Beach Red 2. Subsequently, the 1st Battalion, 21st Infantry moves inward from Red Beach 1, advancing about eight miles to Jangkena, before pulling back to Kantome for the night. The enemy makes strong but unsuccessful attempts to sever the trail. Meanwhile, the U.S. 41st Division lands at Homboldt Bay, its 162nd Infantry hitting the beaches at the north sandspit between Humboldt and Jautefa Bays on Beaches White 1 and 2. The 2nd and 3rd Battalions drive inland toward Hollandia. A reinforced Rifle Platoon of Company A pushes south and captures Cape Pie, allowing elements of the 186th Infantry to land without incident. The Japanese pull back most contingents to concentrate their resistance at the coveted Airfields. Leimok Hill, Pim, and Suikerbrood Hill are secured by contingents of the 186th Infantry. Company 1, 186th Infantry, which had landed at Beach White 3, seizes Tjeweri at the northern tip of the island and begins pressing toward Hollekang.

Task Force Persecution, landing in conjunction with TF Reckless, crashes ashore at Wapil, Aitape, east of Hollandia. RCT 163, 41st Division, quickly secures a beachhead which includes the airfields at Tadji. The objective of this diversionary strike is to secure Aitape as a base. During the course of

the capture of Hollandia, more than 100 nuns and missionaries are saved. Within three weeks, Wake Island is enveloped by MacArthur. By the 20th, the Japanese lose an important coral airstrip and about 800 dead. The U.S. suffers 40 killed. The isolated Japs on Wewak are no longer able to be supplied; as time passes, they revert to cannibalism. (Company A, 1st Tank Battalion, 1st Marine Division assisted the assault forces at Tanahmerah Bay during the Hollandia Operation).

**April 23 1944 — (Pacific-New Britain)** Advance elements of the 40th U.S. Infantry Division, USA, arrive at Cape Gloucester and begin replacing the 1st Marine Division.

**April 24 1944 — (Pacific-New Britain)** The 1st Marines, 1st Marine Division, and some supporting contingents are withdrawn from Cape Gloucester.

**April 25 1944 — (Pacific-New Britain)** The First Marine Division turns the island of New Britain over to the 40th Infantry Division, USA.

**May 2 1944-(Pacific-Bismarcks)** Marine Fighter Squadron 115, the first squadron from Marine Air Group 12 to arrive at Emirau Island, St. Matthias Islands, flies its first air combat patrol.

**May 3 1944 —(Pacific-New Britain)** Remnants of the First Marine Division prepare to pull out of Cape Gloucester. The withdrawal will be completed on the 4th of May, with the exception of the 12th Marine Defense Battalion, which remains to assist the Army.

**May 23 1944-(Pacific-Bougainville-Solomons)** U.S. Navy and Marine T.B.Es mine the Buin-Kahili waters.

**June 14 1944-(Pacific)**-Admiral Hill's Western Landing Group, transporting the 2nd and 4th Marine Divisions, approaches Saipan.

**June 15-July 7 1944 — (Pacific-Marianas)** The BATTLE OF SAIPAN (Operation FORAGER) — Admiral Nimitz has placed all troops under the command of Admiral Spruance, who has designated Admiral Turner to command the Joint Expeditionary Force to seize the Marianas. Marine General Holland M. Smith will command all forces once ashore. Turner's Northern Landing Force winds down its three-day bombardment of Saipan, which is defended by about 25,000 Soldiers (31st Japanese Army) and more than 3,000 Naval troops, all under Admiral Chuichi Nagumo. Surface vessels and planes pummel the landing areas to soften resistance, however, the buried Japanese shore guns remain potent. The 2nd Marine Division storms ashore at 08:40 near Charan Kanoa, north of Afetna Point on the west coast of the island, while the 4th Marine Division's Regimental Combat Teams 23, and 25, land south of Afetna Point. In addition, a diversionary operation executed by elements of the 2nd Marines, 24th Marines, and 29th Marines land unopposed near Tanapag Harbor. The primary landing forces advance speedily against intense fire. Despite vicious opposition which inflicts about 2,000 casualties, the Marines expand the beachhead to about 10,000 yards wide by 1,500 yards deep by nightfall; about 20,000 troops have landed.

During the night of the 15th-16th, the Japanese mount a surprise attack to drive the Americans back to the sea. However, U.S. surface vessels re-enter the fight and catapult star shells which expose attacking enemy troops and allowing Marine sharpshooters to mow them down under the brilliant illumination. On the 16th, the 4th Marine Division drives inland, while the 2nd Marine Division's 8th Marines seizes Afetna Point, and Charan Kanoa pier, establishing contact with the 4th Marine Division. After dark, the Japs again spring a foiled Tank attack against the 4th Marine Division's positions. Meanwhile, XXIV Corps Artillery and units of the U.S. 27th Division, arrive to bolster the beachhead. In addition, the Japanese are rushing reinforcements (Operation A-GO) to Saipan. Japanese Admiral Toyoda dispatches Admiral Ozawa's First Mobile Fleet, which will be joined en route by Warships of the Combined Fleet. Forewarned by U.S. submarines, that the Japanese armada is steaming toward Saipan from the southern Philippines, Spruance orders his Fast Carrier Task

Forces under Mitscher, and some of Turner's warships to sail west and intercept, while Turner takes his transports out of harms way. The antagonists collide in the Philippine Sea on the 19th. At battle's end on the 20th, the Stars and Stripes prevails, vanquishing the enemy fleet, demolishing the carrier planes and inflicting heavy casualties upon the Japanese in what is known as "The Great Turkey Shoot." The victory also prevents enemy reinforcements from reaching the besieged island.

On the 18th, the 165th Regiment, 27th Division U.S.A., seizes Aslito Airfield and two nearby ridges. In addition Japanese attempt to land near Flores Point, however, the 4th Battalion, 10th Marines batters the reinforcements, turning them back. On the following day, Marine and army units continue driving: the 27th Division advances toward Nafutan Point, while the 1st Marine Division seizes Hill 790. Marine General Holland Smith orders the 2nd and 4th Marine Divisions to drive north to eradicate the main body of enemy resistance; two Regiments of the 27th Division U.S.A., will bolster the force. Hill 500 falls to the 3rd Battalion, 25th Marines. By the 22nd, the 2nd Battalion, 23rd Marines, storms the summit of Mt Tipo Pale, seizing it, and on the following day, the 2nd Battalion overruns Hill 600. Meanwhile, the 4th and 2nd Marine Divisions drive north to seize Mt. Tapotchau, on the east and west flanks respectively; U.S. Army elements are driving up the middle. Japanese resistance remains fanatical and fierce. Heavy resistance from caves hinders the advance of the 27th Division as it attempts to move through Death Valley between Mt. Tapotchau and Purple Heart Ridge, to relieve contingents of the 4th Marine Division, prompting General Holland Smith, USMC, to relieve General Ralph Smith, Commanding Officer of the 27th Division on the 24th.

On the 25th, the 4th Marine Division plunges east, driving through Kagman Peninsula. Meanwhile, the 6th Marines, 2nd Marine Division, continues to encounter fierce resistance north of Mt. Tipo Pale. After a bitter fight, the 8th Marines seizes Mt Tapotchau, Saipan's principal terrain feature. In addition, the 27th Division, under General Sanderford, makes some progress. The 165th Regiment hits withering fire at "Purple Heart Ridge" and is unable to climb the slopes, however, other elements pound the Japs on Hill 300, in southern Saipan, demolishing the enemy's main line of resistance, clearing the way to seize Nafutan Point and ensuring the demise of the enemy on Saipan.

Furious combat continues across the island on the 27th. The northern slopes of Mt. Tapotchau are engulfed with heavy skirmishing as the 2nd Battalion, 25th Marines, begins to eliminate the resistance. Meanwhile, contingents of the 106th and 165th Regiments battle fiercely at Hells Pocket and Purple Heart Ridge respectively, while additional contingents of the 106th advance across Death Valley under strong enemy fire. Meanwhile, the 2nd Battalion, 105th Regiment, secures Nafutan Point; 550 enemy bodies are counted and estimates of total force number over 1,000, rather than the original estimates of about 350 defenders. On the following day, Hells Pocket is vanquished by the 27th Division, but the iron resistance in Death Valley and on Purple Heart Ridge, continues to inflict severe casualties. Contingents of the 4th Marine Division reach the 0-6 line and give support fire to the 27th Division in the valley. On the 30th, Death Valley and Purple Heart Ridge fall to the determined 27th Division, while the 2nd Marine Division continues driving along horrendous terrain above Mt Tapotchau and Tipo Pale; contact is made between the army units and the Marines, concluding the struggle for central Saipan.

As the Yanks close the noose, the Japanese begin retreating northward. On July 1st, the Yanks are close to victory, as the V Amphibious Corps drives to line 0-7, extending across the northern neck of the island. Garapan, leveled earlier by bombing, is seized effortlessly by the 2nd Marines, 2nd Marine Division. In addition, contingents of the 4th Marine Division push forward about 1,500 yards against feeble resistance. Meanwhile, the 27th Division advances on its left and right flanks, however, fierce resistance stalls the center assault of the 3rd Battalion, 105th Regiment. On the 3rd, the 23rd

Marines, 4th Marine Division are driving hard against Hills 721, and 767; both are seized by the following day. Meanwhile, the 27th Division making the principal thrust, pivots north driving toward Tanapag Harbor, seizing the seaplane base at Flores Point on the 4th with its 1st Battalion, 105th Regiment.

On the 6th, the 4th Marine Division begins to pinch out the 27th Division and drive to Marpi Point. Meanwhile, the 27th Division is to eliminate resistance in the Tanapag-MakunshaNarakiri Gulch area and simultaneously block the northern escape route of the Japanese. Elements of the 25th Marines overrun nominal resistance, reaching the slopes of Mt Petoskara; 700-800 civilians enter the lines to surrender. Meanwhile, the Japanese mount a fanatical Banzai attack on the night of the 6th-7th, hitting the 105th Regiment, 27th Division, deployed in the heights overlooking Harikiri Gulch, and the 3rd Battalion, 10th Marines, just southwest of Tanapag village, with the brunt of the assault. The Japanese overpower the positions of the 105th on the left flank and also the guns of the 10th Marines, however, the attack is repulsed at the regimental command post where Japanese dead are piled high. The 4th Marine Division drives to Marpi Point, the northeast tip of the island, on the 9th of July, terminating organized resistance on Saipan. The Japanese garrison of about 30,000 men is annihilated. Some choose suicide, rather than capture by the Yanks. Many Japanese including women and children, jump to their deaths from the cliffs at Marpi Point. The commanding officer of the defenders, Chiuchi Nagumo (Japanese Carrier Commander at both Pearl Harbor and Midway), kills himself with his pistol. The Japanese Army commander, Lt. General Yoshitsuga Saito, stabs himself in the stomach and is finished off by an aide who shoots him in the head. The Americans suffer 14,111 casualties: Army 3,674; Marines 10,437. Saipan, now flying the Stars and Stripes, allows the Americans to prepare for the next objective; Tinian. Saipan is transformed into a base from which B-29s will strike Japan.

**June 15 1944 — (South Pacific)** Admiral William Halsey, Commander of the South Pacific, relinquishes his command, becoming commander of the U.S. Third Fleet; he is replaced by Vice Admiral J.H. Newton. (Southwest Pacific) Plans are issued for RENO V, the last of the string of plans calling for Airbases to be established: Between July and October, on Vogelkop Peninsula and on Morotai, the latter being synchronized with the Palaus invasion; invasion of Philippines at Mindanao on the 25th of October to bolster the mid-November operations against northern Philippine objectives; invasion of Luzon during early 1945. (Pacific-New Guinea) Japanese Tanks advance from the West Caves on Biak and hinder the progress of Task Force Hurricane, commanded by General Eichelberger. In addition, strong Japanese resistance also prevents Allied Aircraft on Biak from striking Japanese positions in the Marianas. (Pacific-Marlanas) U.S. Surface Ships and Planes pummel enemy positions on Saipan prior to the landing of the Marines (reinforced by U.S. Army Teams). The U.S. lands a diversionary force at Tanapag Harbor while the main body storms ashore near Charan Kanoa at 08:40. The 2nd Division, deploys the 26th Marines to the north and the 8th Marines to the south after embarking north of heavily fortified Afetna Point. The 4th Marine Division, flanked by RCT 23 on the left and RCT 25, on the right lands south of Afetna Point. The Marines (4th Division) drive inland against Japanese opposition including Tanks and seizes Charan Kanoa. Although progress is made, the Japanese retain control of Afetna and still hold commanding positions as the bulk of their weaponry escaped damage during the preinvasion bombardments. In other activity, the USS *Tennessee* is damaged by enemy coastal guns. (Pacific-BonIn-Volcano Islands) Aircraft from two U.S. Naval Task Forces commanded by Rear Admirals J.J. Clark, and W.K. Harrill, strike Japanese installations (specifically Airfields, barracks and fuel storage areas) at Iwo Jima, Volcano Islands and Chichi Jima and Haha Jima in the Bonin Islands. The air strike against

Iwo Jima will be repeated on the 16th. (China-Burma-India) Heavy but indecisive fighting ensues around Myitkyina. On the Suiween Front, the Chinese mount an attack that gains control of the southeast corner of Sung Shan, a hill mass that extends along a 36 mile strip of the Burma Road (Salween Valley). The Japanese thwart Chinese attempts to seize the southwest corner of Sung Shan. (Pacific-Japan) American B-29s based in China and attached to Bomber Command XX launch their initial air attack against the mainland of Japan, dropping 221 tons of bombs on the Imperial Iron and Steel Works (Yawata facility) on Kyushu Island. (Atlantic-France) 21st Army Group In the U.S. First Army area, VII Corps sector, General Collins concentrates Corps actions on severing the Cotentin Peninsula. The 357th Infantry seizes Gourbesville, but the balance of the 90th Division is stalled by heavy German resistance. In the 9th Division sector, the Germans mount a strong counterattack, forcing the 47th Infantry to give ground east of the Douve. The Yanks then launch a counterattack of their own, regaining most of the lost terrain. In other activity, the 82nd Airborne's 505th Paratroop Infantry advances to positions south of Reigneville; the 325th Glider Infantry drives to within 1,000 yards of fortified St. Sauveur-le-Vicomte. The VIII Corps, commanded by Major General Troy H. Middleton, becomes operational; it assumes defensive positions extending from Carentan across Cotentin Peninsula, and will guard the southwest flank of the VII Corps. The U.S. XIX Corps fortifies its positions, but continues launching probing attacks to bolster the defenses. Montmartin-en-Graignes falls to the 120th Regiment, 30th Division, which attacks before the entire Division gets ashore. (Atlantic-Italy) In the US. Fifth Army area, the VI Corps is assigned to Seventh Army for Operation ANVIL. In the V Corps area, troops advance to the Ombrone River and send Patrols to probe enemy activity in Grosseto. The IV Corps begins fording the river after dark. In the British Eighth Army area, the 13th Corps reduces rear-guard resistance at Allerona and Ficulle. The 10th Corps continues pursuit of the enemy subsequent to a bridge being laid at Todi.

**June 16 1944 —(Pacific-Marianas)** The 2nd Marine Division continues to strengthen its beachhead on Saipan, spreading the 8th Marines to the right and the 2nd Marines to the left, resulting with the clearing of Afetna Point and the Charan Kanoa Pier. In addition, the 2nd Division links up with the 4th Marine Division, which is regrouping prior to renewing its offensive. The 4th Marines commit their reserves (24th Marines) to the operation at 12:30. Also, the 4th Division meets stiff resistance on the right flank where the terrain is a formidable opponent. During the night, the Japanese unsuccessfully throw tanks against the 4th Marine Division positions. Though heavy enemy fire isolates one Marine tank, Gunnery Sergeant Robert H. McCard, Company A, 4th Tank Battalion, continues the fight. As superior enemy fire bears down, McCard orders the crew to evacuate while he remains and begins throwing grenades at the encroaching Japs. Upon expending his supply, he then rips a machine gun from the tank to afford more time for his crew to reach safer positions. Sixteen Japs fall to his fire before he is overrun. McCard receives the Medal of Honor posthumously.

**June 17 1944-(Pacific-Marlanas-Salpan)** Marine General Holland "Howlin Mad" Smith and Brigadier General Arthur M. Harper U.S.A. (XXIV Corps Commander), establish a command Post ashore. An intense bombardment is commenced by the Americans just prior to the jump off, by the Marines who make substantial gains against the enemy with the exception of the center of the assault which meets heavy enemy fire pouring from a large gap that exists between the 2nd and 4th Marine positions near Lake Susupe. The 2nd and 6th Marines, 2nd Marine Division, drive northeast, while the 8th Marines supported by elements of the 29th Marines drive eastward toward entrenched Japanese in a coconut grove. In the 4th Marine Division sector, the Japanese halt progress of the 23rd Marines' left flank, creating a gap between the attacking Battalions, however it is filled in later by the 3rd Battalion, 24th Marines. Naval guns and field artillery are called in to bolster the Marines to

capture Aslito airfield. Carrier-based planes from Task Force 58 are recalled from their support duties to search for the enemy fleet and to neutralize Guam and Rota.

**June 18 1944 —(Pacific-Marianas)** On Saipan, the Japanese unsuccessfully attempt to transport reinforcements from Tanapag Harbor to the front lines; they are intercepted by LCIs (infantry landing craft) and Marine Corps Artillery which forces abortment of the mission. A lull develops in the 2nd Marine sector, with the exception of enemy pockets in the coconut grove which is cleared by the 8th Marines. The 4th Marine Division drives across the island, severing it in two by reaching Magicienne Bay on the east coast. The 165th Infantry, 27th Division U.S.A., seizes Aslito airfield against light opposition during the morning. The Japanese had fallen back to Nafutan Point. The captured airfield is named Conroy Field in honor of Colonel Gardiner J. Conroy, Commander of 165th Infantry, who had been killed at Makin. However, it is subsequently renamed Isley Field (misspelled) for a naval aviator, Commander Robert H. Isely who is killed over Saipan. The Army commences its main attack later in the day; RCT 165, advances close to Magicienne Bay, unopposed. However, RCT 105 encounters much difficulty because of the terrible terrain.

**June 19 1944 —(Pacific-Marianas)** On Saipan, the 4th Marine Division speeds around the 2nd Marine Division, to secure the northern sector of the island. In the 2nd Marine Division sector, the 1st Battalion, 6th Marines captures Hill 790. The U.S. 27th Division is given the task of clearing Nafutan Point and the south coast, a mission which is expected to be no more than a mop-up operation; however, preliminary enemy troop strength estimates are off by about 60 percent. The 165th Infantry advances to the south coast of Magicienne Bay without incident and the 3rd Battalion, 105th Infantry slices unopposed through rough terrain, however, the 1st Battalion, 105th Regiment launches a frontal assault against enemy positions on a ridge at Nafutan and is repulsed, prompting the unit to attempt to outflank the enemy. During the day, a hole occurs in the lines of the 105th Infantry. The 1st Battalion, 165th Infantry rushes to the Airfield to fill the void.

**June 20 1944 —(Pacific-Marianas-Saipan)** Enemy held Hill 500, west of Tsutsuuran Village, falls to the 3rd Battalion, 25th Marines after the conclusion of a joint northern pivoting movement by the 2nd and 4th Marine Divisions. The 4th Division is now perched just below the Japanese main line of resistance, extending across the island from Garapan to the northwest fringes of Magicienne Bay.

**June 21st 1944 —(Pacific-Marianas-Saipan)** Marine Major General Holland M. Smith instructs the 27th Division, U.S.A. (minus one Infantry Battalion and one Light Tank Platoon) to form northwest of Aslito airfield in the Northern Troops and Landing Force Reserve, while one battalion maintains the mop-up operation on Nafutan Point. Subsequently, RCT 105, takes over the mop-up task, but a mix-up in communication of the orders prevents the combat team from taking over until the 22nd. During the action on Nafutan Point, the 2nd Battalion, 105th Infantry replaces the 2nd Battalion, 165th Infantry on the left side; gains for the day are nominal. The 3rd Battalion, 105th Infantry, drives east along the south coast and demolishes an enemy stronghold, nearing the troops which had been driving down from the north. In other activity, General Holland Smith directs the 27th Division to begin reconnaissance northward to join the Marines. General Ralph Smith, U.S.A., orders RCT 105, to relieve RCT 165 contingents before 06:30 on the 22nd; to regroup and reinitiate the offensive. The artillery of the 27th Division is placed under the direction of the XXIV Corps Artillery. Intelligence places the remaining number of defending Japanese on Nafutan point at between 300 and 500 troops. **(Pacific-Solomons-Bougainville)** The 3rd Marine Defense Battalion is withdrawn to Guadalcanal. It is the last Fleet Marine Ground contingent in the active South Pacific area.

**June 22 1944 — (Pacific-Marlanas-Saipan)** The 2nd and 4th Marine Divisions continue their attacks northward against the 0-5 line, which stretches from the west coast below Garapan to the

Lalau Village on the Kagman Peninsula on the east coast. Contingents of the 6th Marines, 2nd Marine Division, reach the peak of Mount Tipo Pale, situated about 1,200 yards from Mt. Tapotchau, which dominates the entire island. The 8th Marines, operating on the right flank, drive across rough ground against Tipo Pale; the 2nd Marines, already positioned along the line, stay in place. During the synchronized assault, the 4th Marine Division, its 23rd Marines pulling the center, 24th driving on the right and the 25th advancing on the left, strike toward the objective. The 27th Division, minus the 105th Infantry, receives instructions to drive forward between the positions of the 2nd and 4th Marine Divisions to alleviate pressure on the left flank and simultaneously permit the 4th Division to swerve eastward to tackle the Kagman Peninsula. Meanwhile, the 27th Division begins to reform near the Nafutan positions. The difficult maneuver causes the left flank to lose some terrain as the 2nd Battalion, 105th Regiment, relieves the 3rd Battalion, 165th Infantry. The 3rd Battalion, 105th Regiment swings north to relieve the 1st Battalion on the right flank. The 165th Infantry activity is northwest of Aslito airfield, which becomes operational.

**June 23 1944 — (Pacific-Marianas-Saipan)** Planes attached to a carrier task force commanded by Rear Admiral J.J. Clark, strike enemy airfield facilities on Pagan Island. The 2nd and 4th Marine Divisions and the 27th U.S.A. Division continue their three-pronged assault. The 8th Marines, advancing on the Division's (2nd) right seizes a cliff that controls a primary route to the summit of Mt. Tapotchau. The 27th Division, attempting to relieve pressure on the left flank of the 4th Marine Division, becomes sluggish, delaying its attack through "Death Valley," situated in no-man's land saddled on the right by an ominous ridge dubbed "Purple Heart" and on the left by a portion of the hills of Mt. Tapotchau. The 4th Marine Division attacks on the right flank, committing the 23rd and 24th Marines, the former having a rough time because of the inability of the 165th Infantry to break through the defenses at the caves; the 23rd Marines seizes Hill 600 and the 24th Marines drives along Magicienne Bay, reaching 0-5 line east of Laulau. The Marines hold the heights. During the night of the 23rd-24th, the Japanese mount a strong, but unsuccessful tank-supported assault against Hill 600. Also, the U.S. 2nd Battalion, 105th Infantry reorganizes, then attacks Nafutan; only one Platoon reaches the crest; the others make some gains, then return to their starting line.

June 24 1944 — (Pacific-Marianas-Saipan) The 2nd Marines, 2nd Marine Division advances to the southern fringes of Garapan, but are forced to stall, awaiting the contingents operating on their right flank. Meanwhile, the 6th Marines, 2nd Marine Division are heavily engaged with Japanese near Mt. Tipo Pale, while the 8th Marines combine with the 29th Marines (1st Battalion) and drive toward the summit of Mt. Tapotchau. The 27th U.S. Division receives responsibility for more terrain, but its progress is minimal. The 106th Infantry attempts to push through Death Valley without any success and the 165th Infantry is advancing through the valley, lying east of Purple Heart Ridge, but the center thrust by the 27th Division falters. The other part of the assault, being waged by the 4th Marine Division, sees progress. The hold up of the 27th prompts the 4th Marine Division to strike eastward; the 23rd Marines skim around the 24th Marines, creating a gap between the Army and Marines. General Holland Smith strongly urges General Ralph Smith, U.S.A., to speed up his 27th Division. Later in the day, General Ralph Smith is replaced by Holland Smith because of the inability of the 27th to advance. The temporary Commander becomes Major General Sanderford Jarman, USA, the island Commander. The 4th Marines seize Chacha and Laulau. In the southern portion of Saipan, the attempt to take Mt. Nafutan by the 27th Division fails; the troops are ordered to withdraw. In addition to the ongoing campaign to seize the Marianas from the Japanese, the U.S. Navy pays an unannounced visit to other Japanese strongholds in the island chain. Planes from the carrier task groups of Rear Admirals J.J. Clark, and A.E. Montgomery, bombard enemy positions on the Volcano

and Pagan Islands in the Marianas. Iwo Jima island is also attacked.

**June 25 1944 — (Pacific-Marianas-Saipan)** The battle for Saipan continues to rage. Stiff enemy resistance on Mt. Tapotchau is leveled by the 8th Marines, reinforced with contingents of the 29th Marines (both 2nd Marine Division); the victors comfortably control the primary strongpoint of the island. Rigid resistance is mounted by the Japanese, north of Mt. Tipo Pale, holding up the 6th Marines. On the right flank, the Kagman Peninsula is seized by the 4th Marine Division. The 27th Division, U.S.A., is still heavily engaged in the center thrust to secure Death Valley and Purple Heart Ridge, but the Japanese refuse to relent; the 165th Infantry is receiving severe punishing blows from the entrenched Japanese. In the southern portion of Saipan, the 2nd Battalion, 105th Infantry, drives to Nafutan, striking a thunderous blow and rattling the Japs; the main line of resistance on Nafutan collapses and the 105th pulverizes the defenders on Ridge 300, solidifying the American effort on Saipan. It is now inevitable, the Japs have lost the Ridge which controls the fate of Nafutan Point and they will revert to fanatical acts of desperation. During the night, a Japanese soldier who had feigned death, drops a grenade into a foxhole containing several Marines including P.F.C. Harold Epperson (2nd Division). Epperson, throws himself over the grenade and his body is shattered. His actions save the other Marines; Epperson becomes a recipient of the Medal of Honor posthumously.

**June 26 1944-(Pacific-Marianas-Saipan)** The Japanese have been attempting to bolster their beleaguered forces on Saipan by transporting reinforcements by barges from Tinian. American destroyers and infantry landing craft boats have been successful in dispersing them. Today, eleven barges attempt to break through; none succeed. This is the final attempt. On the ground in Saipan, the heavily entrenched resistance north of Mt. Tipo Pale is demolished by the 6th Marines, 2nd Marine Division. Meanwhile, the 8th Marines, 2nd Marine Division, holding Mt. Tapotchau, begins to fortify its positions against counterattack. As the 2nd Marine Division maintains its pace, the 4th Marine Division, supported by the 1st Battalion, 105th U.S. Infantry and the 165th Infantry (less the 2nd Battalion), clear the remnant opposition on the right flank. Later in the day, the 4th Marine Division (Designated Northern Troops and Landing Force reserve) receives notice that it is to return to the lines on the following day and assume responsibility for the right of the V Corps front; the 25th Marines, holding Hill 500, are available as additional reinforcements if required. In conjunction, the 27th U.S. Division continues to plow forward in the center of the thrust, meeting heavy opposition; intense enemy fire originating from a Japanese stronghold dubbed “Hell’s Pocket” stalls the 1st Battalion, 106th Infantry at the southwestern end of Death Valley. In coordinated fighting, the 2nd Battalion, 165th Infantry, strikes Purple Heart Ridge from the east, synchronized with an attack by the 3rd Battalion, 106th Infantry driving from the west; the combined attacks force the enemy to begin faltering. The commanding officer of the 106th Infantry is replaced today. On the southern end of Saipan, the enemy is thoroughly compressed at Nafutan Point by the 2nd Battalion, 105th Infantry. The Japanese await darkness and attempt to escape. The 317th Japanese Independent Infantry breaks through the outposts of the 2nd Battalion, 105th Infantry, U.S.A., and assaults Aslito airfield and Hill 500, where they strike a hornets’ nest dubbed by the “25th Marines.’ The Japanese also attempt to destroy the 14th Marine Artillery positions that are poised between Hill 500 and the airport; there is little slack in the American lines and the Japanese are severely beaten, sustaining grievous losses.

**June 27th 1944 — (Pacific-Saipan)** Enemy resistance continues to be heavy against the 6th Marines, 2nd Marine Division as it advances in the center on the left flank of the V Corps attack. Other elements of the 2nd Marine Division are fighting to secure the northern slope of Mt Tapotchau. The 4th Marine Division moves additional units to the line 0-6. On the southern portion of Saipan, Nafutan Point is declared secure at 18:40 after the successful conclusion of the mission of the 2nd

Battalion, 105th Infantry. Nafutan point had been defended by approximately 1,000 troops, substantially more than previously thought by the Americans. The enemy body count is 550.

**June 28 1944 — (Pacific-Marianas-Saipan)** The 2nd Marine Division still meets intense opposition as it eliminates the remaining defenders on the crest of Mt. Tapotchau. Tipo Pale falls to Company K, 6th Marines. The 27th Division USA, receives its new commander, Major General George W. Griner. The 27th meets fierce resistance which causes severe casualties as it continues to eradicate heavy enemy resistance on Purple Heart Ridge and also within Death Valley; the efforts are supplemented by support fire from contingents of the 4th Marine Division, which is simultaneously fortifying its positions on the right flank of the corps. Enemy resistance at Hell's Pocket is totally reduced by elements of the 27th Division.

**June 30 1944 — (United States)** The United States Navy has 46,032 Vessels of all types on active service. Navy personnel stands at 2,981,365, Marine Corps at 32,788 Officers and 442,816 enlisted men, and the Coast Guard at 169,258. (Pacific-Marianas-Saipan) At a meeting on Saipan, it is decided that the invasion of Guam will commence on the 21st of July and that the invasion troops will be reinforced with the U.S. 77th Division, which will arrive from Hawaii. The 27th Division U.S.A. culminates its trek through Death Valley and Purple Heart Ridge, making contact with the Marines on both flanks, ending the fighting for control of Southern Saipan. The Kagman Peninsula is being fortified by the Marine 4th Division, which also dispatches probing patrols deeper into enemy territory beyond the 0-6 line.

**July 1 1944 — (Pacific-Marianas-Saipan)** The V Corps, composed of the 2nd and 4th Marine Divisions, operating on the flanks and the 27th U.S. Division, driving up the center, continue the campaign to gain Saipan, advancing toward the northern neck of the island. Japanese have been observed withdrawing to the north. The 2nd Marine Division makes its largest gain since arriving on the island and secures Garapan by the following day.

**July 2nd 1944 — (Pacific-Marlanas-Saipan)** The 2nd and 4th Marine Divisions continue to advance across the island. The 2nd Marines, 2nd Marine Division enter a leveled (by bombardment) Garapan. The 27th Division also moves forward in its sector. In other activity, General Saito, Commander of Japanese troops on Saipan, issues orders directing all defenders to abandon their positions along the Garapan Tapatchon-Kagman line and to prepare to defend at the Tanapag — Hill 221-Hill 112 line.

**July 3 1944 — (Pacific-Marlanas-Salpan)** The combined Army-Marine force, with the 27th Division, U.S.A., driving up the center, heads for Tanapag Harbor. The 27th Division gains strategic terrain that controls the area, but certain elements (106th Infantry) receive heavy fire as they advance to positions near the 2nd Marine Division perimeter. The 3rd Battalion, 2nd Marines captures the heights overlooking Tanapag Harbor; the 1st and 2nd Marines secure Garapan. The 4th Marine Division also bumps into heavy resistance at Hill 721; artillery is brought to bear on the stubborn hill throughout the night. The 23rd Marines, 4th Marine Division seizes Hills 721 and 767 on the following day.

**July 4 1944-(Pacific-Marianas-Salpan)** The 3rd Battalion, 2nd Marines, establishes a perimeter on Matthew Point near Garapan. In other activity, the 2nd Marines (less 2nd Battalion) and the 6th Marines, 2nd Marine Division are temporarily attached to the Northern Troops and Landing Force Reserve. In yet other activity, the 1st Battalion, 105th Infantry, U.S.A., seizes Flores Point (Seaplane Base). During the day, elements of the 27th Division U.S.A., relieve two Battalions of the 4th Marine Division's left flank. The enemy penetrates the perimeter, but the new residents, 165th Infantry USA, react quickly and drive the attackers away with losses.

**July 5 1944 — (Pacific-Marianas-Saipan)** The operation to secure the island enters its final phase. The 4th Marines pushes on the V Corp's right, moving handily through unorganized opposition. The 27th Division, U.S.A., advances on the left; contingents reach an enemy strongpoint, Harakiri Gulch, but the Japanese bar entrance, despite the 65th Infantry's attacks.

**July 6 1944-(Pacific-Marianas-Saipan)** At 09:00, battle orders are changed, directing the 4th Marine Division to drive forward, take the front and sweep the island north of Makunsha to Marpi Point; during the advance of the 25th Marines, approximately 800 civilians walk into the 1st Battalion's area to surrender. The 23rd Marines, attacking Paradise Valley from the west, hits tough resistance; the 24th Marines drives ahead about 1,800 yards. The 27th Division's zone is confined to the western coastal area, which includes Paradise Valley, south of Makunsha village and the obstinate Harakiri Gulch. The efforts of the 27th Division again are repulsed; the gulch remains in Japanese hands, preventing passage to the valley. During the night of the 6th-7th, the Japanese mount counterattacks along the Tanapag Front and against 4th Marine positions to the northeast. The 105th Infantry deployed in the heights above Harakiri Village and the 3rd Battalion, 10th Marines, holding outside Tanapag Village, receive the brunt of the attack. In other activity concerning the Marianas, Marine General Holland M. Smith, attaches the U.S. 77th Division to the III Amphibious Corps to strengthen the Assault Force for the invasion of Guam.

**July 7 1944-(Pacific-Marianas-Saipan)** In a last ditch effort to forestall defeat, about 3,000 Japanese push through the left flank of the 27th Division, against the 105th Infantry and the 3rd Battalion, 10th Marines, PFC Harold C. Agerholm, 4th Battalion, 10th Marines, commandeers an ambulance and makes repeated trips under constant fire, rescuing 45 men. Agerholm then rushes to the aid of what he believes to be two wounded Marines, but is cut down by a sniper; he receives the Medal of Honor posthumously. The 106th Infantry, U.S.A., rushes to the scene and halts the attack, retaking most lost territory.

**July 8 1944 —(Pacific-MarianasSaipan)** The 2nd Marine Division sweeps through the 27th Division's perimeter to eliminate the remaining enemy opposition on Tanapag Plain. In conjunction, the 27th Division reverts to the northern troops and landing force reserve. During the drive, Sergeant Grant Timmerman, on board his tank in front of the infantry keeps a steady stream of fire pouring into the enemy until intense enemy fire halts the advance. Timmerman stands up to fire the 75mm, after first directing the infantry to hit the deck. A Japanese grenade is tossed toward the open turret; Timmerman covers the hatch with his body, smothering the grenade with his chest, saving the balance of the crew by giving his life. The 4th Marine Division pushes through the Karaberra Pass; its 23rd Marines reaches the beach by 12:05. The 25th Marines advances unopposed up the east coast and the 24th Marines arrives at its assigned positions by early afternoon. In other activity, the 165th Infantry, 27th Division assaults from the heights above Harakiri Gulch and drives through Paradise Valley.

**July 9 1944 — (Pacific-Marlanas-Saipan)** Old Glory flies victoriously over Saipan, concluding another excruciating campaign. The Northern Troops Landing Force consisted of 71,034 men, against about 30,000 well entrenched Japanese. The Japanese have been totally eliminated, their troops destroyed. The Americans suffer about 20% casualties; 3,674 Army and 10,437 Marines, however, the Yanks close on Japan. B-29s will operate from Saipan to bomb the Japanese homeland.

**July 10 1944 — (Pacific-Marianas Guam)** Radioman Tweed, U.S.N., still uncaptured, observes U.S. Warships bombarding Japanese positions, taking note that two destroyers remain offshore, about ten miles south. Enemy shore guns commence firing on the destroyers, but return fire silences the guns. Tweed excitedly, uses the late afternoon sunlight to his advantage and manages to make contact

with the destroyers. Although the Navy is overly suspicious, they respond. Tweed hastily informs them through signal flags all his intelligence information, then he requests that the navy pick him up. The sailors are astonished at the possibility of an American being on Guam. No immediate answer is forthcoming to the dismay of Tweed. About 15 minutes later, a boat is lowered in the water and Tweed ecstatically runs a marathon down the mountain and is rescued. On Tinian, Marine reconnaissance and underwater demolition learn spend their second day gathering intelligence and clearing obstacles for the impending invasion.

**July 12th 1944 — (Pacific-Marianas-Saipan)** Major General Holland Smith assumes command of the Fleet Marine Forces Pacific and turns over command of the V Corps to Major General Harry Schmidt.

**July 13 1944-(Pacific-Marianas-Saipan)** The 3rd Battalion, 6th Marines, 2nd Marine Division capture Maniagassa Island in Tanapag Harbor, terminating Marine operations on Saipan.

**July 21-August 11 1944 — (Pacific-Marianas-Guam)** The American III Corps awaits the cessation of the preinvasion bombardment of Guam. Army land-based planes join the Marine and naval carrier-based squadrons' attack. In concert, surface vessels open up with incessant salvos that pound the island. That boastful Japanese prediction after the fall of Saipan, stipulating that Guam will not fall, is at risk: 'NOT GUAM. GUAM IS SECURE...GUAM IS JAPANESE FOREVER.' After the seizure of Guam, the Japanese had implemented plans to essentially enslave the approximate 21,000 Guamanian natives. Japan permitted colonization of their new possession and the colonists anticipated the Chamorros doing their bidding. As the Japanese fortify the island in preparation of the attack, they force the natives to do the work; those unable to withstand the task die. Some islanders had been lucky and been in the U.S. Armed Forces when the island was seized and a portion of them are now offshore. As one Guamanian aboard ship had mentioned, they grew up with a strong desire to become Sailors and their heroes were the United States Marines as they watched them drill and practice in their perfectly fitted uniforms.

Offshore is the task force of Rear Admiral R.L. Conolly, which has transported the army and Marine forces, commanded by Major General R.S. Geiger USMC. As the storm of Yankee shells begin to simmer, Japanese planes attempt to engage the Yanks, but they are no match for the American pilots. At approximately 08:30, the western coast of Guam receives three regiments of the 3rd Marine Division, moving abreast in synchronization with the First Marine Provisional Brigade, landing to the south, with the 4th Marines, striking on the right. The 22nd Marines lands on the left between Agat Village and Bangai Point. The 3rd Marine Division is positioned between Adelup and Asan Points. The combined units drive inland against medium resistance, expanding the toehold of two beachheads to a distance two miles wide and 1 mile deep. Later, RCT 305, USA, 77th Infantry Division, lands to reinforce the beachhead, taking positions about 400 yards inland at Gaan Point. During the night of the 21st, the Japanese assault the perimeter of the 1st Provisional Brigade with vociferous cries of Banzai! Banzai! The unperturbed Marines open up with everything available, including swinging rifle butts and savage bayonets, decimating the Japanese 38th Infantry (minus the 3rd Battalion). Morning exposes many dead attackers; the unit is eliminated as a fighting force.

On the 22nd, Regimental Combat Team 305 and the 1st Battalion, 4th Marines capture the crest of Mt. Alifan. Subsequently, the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade is ordered to take the Orote Peninsula as soon as the 77th Division USA, relieves them. Meanwhile the 3rd Marine Division is concentrating on eliminating the heavy resistance in the hills commanding the northern beachhead. The Marines continue to scour the island yard by yard, compressing the Japanese as they advance. The 77th Division holds and expands the beachhead as the days pass. Patrols from the army and the Marines

probe jointly as the enemy is chased north.

The Japanese launch futile attacks against the Marines on the 25th through the 27th. The 3rd Marine Division's beachhead at Asan is rammed with a tremendous blow, but the line is rock hard. The Japanese fare no better on Orote Point where their assault receives withering fire and steadfast determination, leaving the enemy battered and crunched. The combined force of the 58th Keibitai Regiment (reinforced) and the 218th Japanese Regiment, minus the 1st Battalion, suffer devastating losses.

On the 26th, the big naval guns, in orchestra with the ground artillery, supplement the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade during a three day operation to secure the Orote Peninsula. Orote Airfield is declared operational and will soon receive its first fighters.

On the 27th the 77th Division, USA, sends patrols, attached to the reconnaissance troops, south to weigh the strength of the Japanese and extends north to assume responsibility for some terrain beyond Mt. Tenjo, captured by the 3rd Marine Division on the 25th. By the 29th, the combined thrust of the 77th Division and the 3rd Marine Division, secures the Force Beachhead Line and the commanding ground along Adelup-Aluton-Tenjo-Alifun-Futi Point, terminating enemy resistance in the center of the island, culminating Phase 1 of the operation.

The battle continues to rage; newly secured positions give the Yanks a commanding view of the northern portion of the island. Small arms fire is incessant. The 1st Marine Brigade assumes responsibility for the Force Line Beachhead Line, releasing the 77th Division, USA to drive north. On the following day, the III Amphibious Corps attacks to secure the northern part of the island; against fanatical resistance, Agana, the capital of Guam falls to the 3rd Marines, 3rd Division. On the following day, the 77th Division powers forward and secures the Agana-Pago Bay Road.

As the sun rises on the second of August the 9th Marines, 3rd Marine Division, secures Tiyan Airfield as they push north, firing at anything that moves; occasionally Japs stick their heads up from a burrow; often it is their last glimpse of sunlight as a sudden burst of gunfire riddles the opening. As the Yanks advance, one Marine notices a Jap playing possum and snaps viciously as his weapon empties: "DON'T PLAY DEAD WITH ME YOU BASTARD. Nearby, American wounded are being transported in stretchers, heading back to the ships.

On the third of August the 1st Provisional Brigade and elements of the 4th Marines secure Toto, further diminishing the resistance in the north. The 77th Infantry seizes Barrigada and its water supply. On the following day the 77th Division bolts to the mountain north of town seizing it; in conjunction, the 3rd Marine Division secures the Finegayan defenses, cracking the outer defense of the Mt. Santa Rosa defense line. In quick succession, the 77th gnaws toward Mt. Santa Rosa, capturing Yigo and it by the eighth, eliminating all resistance in the divisional area. On the 11th, the 306th Infantry, 77th Division USA, seizes the enemy command post on Mt. Mataguac; the effort kills the highest ranking Japanese officer on the island, Lt. General Obata. Organized resistance had ended on the 10th.

Throngs of mystified Japanese civilians come out of hiding, their visions of grandeur obscured by limitless rows of GIs and Marines. Even after the escape of Radioman Tweed, the arrogance of Japanese justice continues. Tweed is anxious to return to Guam to thank the people who saved him from capture and torture. Many of them, including children, had been tortured and beaten with unparalleled savagery. One young girl named Tonie, accused of harboring Tweed had been severely whipped with telephone wire until her legs and back bore continuous and crisscrossed bleeding stripes. Unsatisfied, the captors covered her head with a towel and gushed water into her mouth and face, leaving her near death and unconscious, the excess water cascading from her ears, nose and

mouth. Tonie recovers, but not necessarily for the better.

While the American Navy is bombarding the island, Tonie is one of three young women who attempts to seek shelter in a cave, already containing Jap troops. Tonie is greeted by a staggering blow delivered with a bayonet. Still unsatisfied, the Japanese soldier pulls out the bloodied bayonet and also her intestines; several minutes pass, then she slumps dead to the earth. Tweed's appraisal of Japanese "terrible butchery" and his fervent desire to return to Guam with the invasion force does not occur for two months. Tweed also states: "I KNOW THAT THESE PEOPLE (CHAMORROS) WERE AS BRAVE AND LOYAL AS ANY WHO EVER LIVED UNDER THE AMERICAN FLAG" The island cost the lives of 1,226 Americans. The Japanese sustain an actual body count of over 10,000. Many of the Jap stragglers take to the hills and the Americans initiate a system of weeding them out by establishing ambushes; the average catch is about 30 to 35 dead per night.

**July 21 1944-(Pacific-Marianas)** In one incident of extreme bravery on Guam, PFC Luther Skaggs, 3rd Battalion, 3rd Marines, assumes command of his section after its leader is wounded during the invasion by enemy mortar fire. Skaggs leads his men inland to a position from where they can better defend themselves; during the night, enemy infiltrators penetrate Marine positions and a grenade is thrown into Skaggs' foxhole severely wounding him. He places a tourniquet on his shattered leg and positions himself for a fight. He exchanges fire with the enemy for eight hours, then crawls to the rear to join the main battle; Skaggs receives the Medal of Honor for his extraordinary courage. On Tinian, the Naval and Air bombardment becomes more powerful.

**July 22 1944 — (Pacific-Marianas-Guam-Tinian)** Elements of the First Provisional Marine Brigade (1st Battalion, 4th Marines), reinforced by 305th U.S.A., secure Mt. Alifan. In other activity, the Japanese spring an unexpected attack against elements of the 2nd Battalion, 3rd Marines, as it clears opposition in a ravine along the Asan-Adelup Beachhead. Two machine guns, firing from a distance of 15 yards, jeopardize the operation. PFC Leonard F. Mason, acting instinctively, bolts from the gully and attempts to get behind the Japs. A deadly burst of fire from troops in the heights snaps into his shoulder and his arm, but he drives further and reaches the stronghold where another round of fire from a machine gun wounds him mortally. Mason, unwilling to succumb, perseveres, destroying five Japanese and wounding another. Mason, subsequently rejoins his platoon and is evacuated for medical treatment; however, the savage wounds take his life; he receives the Medal of Honor posthumously. On Tinian, the massive air and surface bombardment continues to soften enemy resistance.

**July 23 1944- (Pacific-Marianas-Guam-Tinian)** On Guam, the 77th Division, U.S.A. (minus 307th Infantry) lands in the southern section (Agat) and begins to relieve the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade. In other activity, the 3rd Marine Division extends its beachhead and finishes the occupation of Cabras Island, deploying artillery to support subsequent island operations. On Tinian, the Japanese feel confident despite the usual Allied naval and air bombardment; the Japanese guns control the island approaches and expect to annihilate the Marines if they attempt to land. The opposite side of the island is undefended because of the alleged unscalable cliffs and two slim but deadly passages through the reefs.

**July 24th-August 1st 1944 — THE INVASION OF TINIAN** —U.S. Rear Admiral H.W. Hill's task force prepares to take Tinian, a few miles south of newly won Saipan. Planes, based in Saipan, lend their killing power to the operation, subsidizing the carrier-based aircraft and naval surface vessels. The island is to be taken by the 2nd and 4th Marine Divisions. Serious lessons have been previously learned at Tarawa, and will be applied at Tinian to lessen the severity of casualties. Naval guns catapult shells toward the island with quivering shock, pounding the island. More shelling and

bombs are committed by the Planes in dazzling fashion; the impact pumps debris and fire and blinding smoke all across the beach area. The Japanese peer defiantly as the landing craft begin moving toward the shore heading directly into the sights of the Japanese guns. The Japanese at Tinian Town, the obvious choice of landing sites, prepare to fire, but become momentarily bewildered when the 2nd Marine Division halts the invasion just short of the range of the shore guns. The Japs suspect the invasion is to be aborted for fear of the Marines receiving similar resistance as that sustained by Marines at Tarawa slightly over six months ago. The landing craft simply wallow in the water holding in place, to the growing amazement of the confident defenders, now thoroughly convinced their shore guns have prevented invasion.

As the Japanese relish the apparent indecision of the 2nd Marine Division, the 4th Marine Division is inconspicuously closing at the reverse side of the island to attempt a most remarkable maneuver, landing as if threading a needle, a mission that requires extraordinary skill to ensure success. The Japanese maintain no vigil on the northwest tip of the island, confident that the erratic reefs are nearly impenetrable and if some craft penetrate, the rocky cliffs still forbid entrance. The 4th Marine Division defies the odds and the Leathernecks squirm through the treacherous reefs.

In a startling burst of daring speed, the reefs are conquered and the landing craft gates bolt open. Marines devour the beachhead and scale the rugged cliffs grasping a solid foothold on the island. While the Japanese man the southwest sea walls and pound the water with shells to keep the 2nd Marines at bay, 15,000 other Marines had come ashore. The 2nd Division, having served as bait, soon delivers its 1st Battalion 8th Marines to add more punch to the beachhead, which stands at just under 3,000 yards at its widest point. During the lightning assault, the 2nd Battalion, 24th Marines advances to the fringes of Airfield No. 3 (Old Ushi Point Airfield), splicing the primary road that extends from Ushi Point through the central portion of the island to its southern end.

The Japanese attempt to turn the tide and blow the Marines away, but their reaction time is insufficient. The Japanese regroup and mount a vicious assault during the early morning hours of the 25th, but the Marines sleep lightly. The 135th Japanese Infantry commences the attack, striking against the center and both flanks of the Marine perimeter; it is violently repulsed by devastating fire that decimates the enemy's 1st Battalion. Subsequently, the 8th Marines attack against nominal resistance, seizing the remainder of the airfield at Ushi Point, while the 25th Marines secures Mt. Maga.

By the 26th, the 2nd Division is completely ashore and the 8th Marines revert back to its jurisdiction. Aware of the vantage point controlled by the Japanese on Mt. Lasso, Naval surface vessel guns and artillery are called into action by the Marine infantry as the 2nd and 4th Divisions race under the iron umbrella, seizing the objective without opposition, denying the enemy the opportunity of bombarding the expanding American beachhead with artillery or mortar fire.

The 27th brings more rapid advancement to the Marines who drive across the island and secure the northern portion of Tinian by 16:00. Marines supplemented by tanks, scour the island advancing toward the final bastion, Tinian Town. Japanese resistance remains moderate to light for the duration. The Marines advance tenaciously taking Tinian Town and Airfield No. 4 on the 30th. On the following day, with the enemy stampeded and corralled on the southern tip of the island, the drive intensifies and the Yanks converge for the final surge, overpowering the resistance by August 1st. Enemy troops hold up in caves on the southern sector; squads, equipped with flame throwers are brought to bear on those unwilling to surrender. On August 3rd, the Stars and Stripes is officially raised in victory. The invincible Japanese are again vanquished. The combined Marine losses including the 2nd and 4th Marine Divisions are slightly over 300 killed and approximately 1,550

wounded. The Japanese sustain over 5,000 killed.

**July 25 1944- (Pacific-Marianas-GuaniTinlan)** On Guam, elements of the 77th Division, U.S.A., assume responsibility of the Force Line Beachhead and the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade receives orders to secure the Orote Peninsula. The 3rd Marine Division is ordered to take the heights above the Mt. Tenio Road. The Japanese mount successive futile assaults against the Marines' Asan beachhead and also against the 25th Marines' perimeter on the Orote Peninsula from today until the 27th and are decisively defeated sustaining tremendous losses. During ferocious fire fighting near Fonte Hill, the 2nd Battalion, 9th Marines, 3rd Marine Division pushes toward the heights against machine gun and rifle fire, but still advances 300 yards, and seizes the obstinate objective. Captain Louis H. Wilson Jr., commanding officer of a rifle company, takes command of the units in the area and directs deployment procedures for the night. Wounded three times during a five hour period, he still finishes the task before seeking medical aid and retiring to his command post. The Japanese commence a savage counterattack, prompting Wilson to forego his sleep and rejoin the troops on the line; he engages in hand-to-hand combat for a period of ten hours and at one point, goes out to retrieve a wounded Marine lying helplessly, within reach of the enemy. By the following morning, the attacks in his zone have been crumbled. Wilson still unable to properly tend his wounds or rest, takes a 17 man squad to secure a strategic slope, ensuring permanent stability of his positions, losing 13 men to the casualty list as they plow through intensified machine gun and mortar fire, supplemented by rifle men. The Marines, undaunted by the odds, capture the objective guaranteeing success of the regimental objective, and destroy about 350 Japs in the process; Wilson becomes a recipient of the Medal of Honor. On Tinian, the Japanese mount a heavy counterattack, but are repulsed by the 4th Marine Division. The airfield at Ushi Point falls to the 8th Marines (2nd Division under jurisdiction of 4th Division) and the 25th Marines seize Mt. Maga.

**July 26 1944-(Pacific-Guam)** Seven battalions of artillery open up against enemy positions on the Orote Peninsula. The 4th Marines and the 22nd Marines (1st Provisional Marine Brigade), operating on the left and right respectively, advance about 1,500 yards through heavy jungle entanglements across the neck of the peninsula; the peninsula which includes the Marine barracks, will be secure by the 29th. The 22nd Marines (minus 3rd Battalion), subsequently transfers into the III Amphibious Corps Reserve, deploying south of Agat; the 3rd Battalion remains on the peninsula. The Orote airfield is declared operational during the three day operation. The 3rd Marine Division handily repulses a strong enemy counterattack during the night 21st-22nd, thrashing the attackers. (Pacific-Marianas-Tinian) The 2nd Marine Division completes its landing and prepares for action after reclaiming the 8th Marines. Artillery and Air support are committed to a major attack, supporting the 2nd and 4th Divisions' drive across the northern portion of the island against light resistance; Mt. Lasso is seized without incident.

**July 27 1944 —(Pacific-Marlanas-Guam)** On Guam, Patrols of the 77th Division U.S.A. move south to gather information on enemy strength in that portion of the island, expanding their positions beyond Mt. Tenjo, taking responsibility for ground previously covered by 3rd Marine Division. On Tinian, the Ushi Point Airfield is declared operational. In other activity, the 2nd and 4th Marine Divisions continue the operation to eliminate enemy resistance on the island, securing the northern portion by 16:00.

**July 28 1944 — (Pacific-Guam)** Tanks arrive (army and Marine units) to supplement the 4th Marines and lead an afternoon drive that makes substantial progress, which links the 4th Marines with the 22nd Marines at the eastern end of the airstrip. In other activity, the 77th Infantry and the 3rd Marines join the northern and southern beachheads, completing the final beachhead line. The 3rd

Marine Division (3rd Battalion, 307th Infantry U.S.A. attached) secures Mt. Chachao and Mt. Tenjo, clearing travel on a road stretching from Mt. Tenjo to Adelup Point. On Tinian, the Japanese continue to withdraw, mounting slight opposition against advancing Marines who handily secure the airfield at Gurguan Point.

**July 29 1944 — (Pacific-Marianas-Guam-Tinian)** On Guam, the remaining enemy resistance on Orote Peninsula is eliminated by the Marine First Provisional Brigade, culminating the first phase of the operation by 17:00. The 77th Division U.S.A., and the 3rd Marine Division, dispatch numerous patrols from the beachhead to prepare for the next level of operations to secure Guam. On Tinian, the Japanese mount strong resistance against the 4th Marine Division's drive to clear the heights to the east. The 2nd Marine Division sprints rapidly to the west; the combined attack toward the southern end of the island continues.

**July 30 1944 — (Pacific-Marlanas-Guam-Tinlan)** Operations continue to secure the island. On Tinian, Airfield No. 4 and Tinian Town are secured. During the day's combat, Private Joseph Ozbourn gives his life to save his squad. While the 1st Battalion, 23rd Marines are cleaning out the Japanese from remaining ditches and pillboxes, Ozbourn and four other men are working a section when he readies a grenade to toss into a nearby entrenchment; a huge explosion originating at the entrance of the enemy position wounds all five members of the detachment. Ozbourn too badly wounded to throw the grenade and aware that his companions will be killed, instinctively covers the grenade with his body absorbing the explosion; he receives the Medal of Honor posthumously.

**July 31 1944 —(Pacific-Marianas-Guam-Tinian)** The III Amphibious Corps (77th Division U.S.A. and 3rd Marine Division) attacks to secure the northern part of Guam; Agana, the capital, is seized by the 3rd Marines (3rd Division), extending the line from there to Yona to the east where the 77th Division meets slight resistance. On Tinian, the navy launches planes and also adds its surface vessel guns to the Marine artillery to thump the Japanese as the Marines maintain their southward drive across stubborn and rugged ground against medium resistance.

**August 2 1944 — (Pacific-Marlanas)** The 9th Marines, 3rd Marine Division, seizes Tiyan Airfield as it drives northwest. (Pacific-Guam) The U.S. 77th Division seizes Barrigada and on the following day secures the mountain north of the town. The 3rd Marine Division captures Finegayan and continues its tenacious penetration, driving toward the outer defenses of Mt. Santa Rosa. During the fiercely contested fighting at Finegayan, PFC Frank P. Witek, 9th Marines, 3rd Marine Division, is part of a rifle platoon that is bushwhacked by deviously concealed enemy positions. Witek reacts to the startling and devastating fire by charging; at point blank range he eliminates eight of the human moles, then remains with a wounded Marine, while the platoon seeks better positions. He further endangers his life by covering the stretcher bearers as they take the casualty to safety. An enemy machine gun opens fire and Witek singlehandedly charges the position, killing another eight Japanese. He is then struck and killed by a Japanese rifleman, but his platoon takes the objective, due to his extraordinary courage and determination; he receives the Medal of Honor posthumously.

**August 4 1944-(Pacific-Marianas-Guam-Tinian)** Planes attached to Marine Aircraft Group 21 land on Guam and are the first Marine planes to serve on the island since 1931. In other activity, the Army and the Marines continue the operation to secure the island. On Tinian, during mop up operations, a squad is surprised by a hot grenade tossed into their path; PFC Robert Lee Wilson, 2nd Battalion, 6th Marines, 2nd Marine Division, yells a warning and then covers the grenade with his body to save his comrades; he receives the Medal of Honor posthumously.

**August 6 1944 — (Pacific-Marianas-Guam-Tinian)** On Guam, the III Amphibious Corps drives forcefully to the 0-4 line and by now has two thirds of the island secure. The 305th Infantry, 77th

Division, USA suffers high casualties while turning back an early morning Banzai attack, which is supported by tanks. On Tinian, the 2nd and 4th Marine Divisions depart (6th-7th); the 4th Marine Division heads for Hawaii and the 2nd Marine Division embarks for Saipan. Mop-up operations are maintained by the 8th Marines, 2nd Marine Division.

**August 7 1944 —(Pacific-Marianas-Guam)** The III Amphibious Corps commences the final attack to secure the northern portion of Guam. The U.S. 77th Division secures Tigo and presses toward Mt. Santa Rosa. Marine aircraft, attached to VMF-225, launch sorties from Orote airfield to bolster the effort to end enemy resistance on the island.

**August 8 1944-(Pacific-Marshalls)** U.S. destroyers and land-based Marine bombers, stationed at Majuro in the Marshalls, bomb Japanese positions at Taroa on the Maloelap Atoll.

**August 9 1944 — (Pacific-Marlanas-Guam)** Remnant Japanese defenders express actions that they prefer to be killed rather than surrender; the Americans oblige and continue to eliminate those remaining alive. Effective resistance had been eliminated on the previous day; all organized resistance is terminated by the 10th. The 3rd Marine Division attacks to seize the remainder of the island. In other activity Brigadier General Lemuel Shepherd, commander 1st Provisional Marine Brigade, announces that all enemy resistance in his brigade's sector has been eliminated.

**August 10 1944 —(Pacific-Marianas-Guam)** The northern tip of the island is secured by the 3rd Marine Division, ending all organized opposition. Subsequently, a few hundred additional Japanese will be killed during mop-up operations. The island of Guam had been defended by a force estimated to be in excess of 18,000 men. The Americans count over 10,000 dead Japanese. On Tinian, the Capture and Occupational phase of the operation ends. The 8th Marines, 2nd Marine Division is assigned mop up operations.

**August 14 1944 — (Pacific-Marianas-Guam)** The V Amphibious Corps establishes a line extending from Naton Beach to Sassayan Point. The U.S. 77th Division and the 3rd Marine Division each deploy an Artillery and Infantry Regiment to continue mop-up operations above the line; other 77th Division elements occupy the heights east of Agat, while the balance of the 3rd Marine Division deploys between the Pago and Ylig Rivers, stretching down the east coast road.

**August 23 1944 — (Pacific-Marianas)** Aguijan Island, Marianas, is bombarded by a naval task force consisting of destroyers and other vessels; these attacks continue to strike the installations until the 26th. On Guam, Operational Command of the 3rd Marine Division is passed to Island Command and the 1st and 3rd Battalions, 306th Infantry, USA, are assigned to the 3rd Marine Division.

**August 24th 1944 — (Pacific)** The Administrative Command Fleet, Marine Forces Pacific, is abolished by the redesignation of its Headquarters to Provisional Headquarters Fleet Marine Force, Pacific.

**August 26 1944-(Pacific-Marianas-Guam)** The 1st and 3rd Battalions, 306th Infantry, U.S.A., are detached from the 3rd Marine Division and reattached to the 77th Division, USA.

**August 29 1944-France-U.S.** Marines attached to the USS *Augusta* and the *Philadelphia*, debark at the islands of Ifs and Ratonneau, in Marseille Harbor; they accept the surrender of all German troops on the islands and stay ashore to disarm the garrisons.

**August 31 1944 — (United States)** The commandant of the U.S. Marine Corps orders the abolishment of the Administrative Command and orders the establishment of Fleet Marine Force Pacific. **(Pacific)** A U.S. carrier task force, commanded by Rear Admiral R.E. Davison, begins a three day bombardment of Iwo Jima and the Bonin Islands. On the following day, continuing into the 2nd of September, destroyers and cruisers move into the area to bolster the aircraft and add more punch to the assault.

**September 4 1944-(Pacific-Solomons)** The Marine III Corps begins embarking from the Solomons, for the Palaus Islands, Carolines. Subsequently, other vessels of the convoy depart; the invasion takes place on the 15th of September.

**September 7 1944 — (United States)** The commandant of the United States Marines directs that his earlier letter of 31st August and attached chart be modified by the deletion of Fleet Marine Force, Air Pacific, and he states that the command status of the air units will be forthcoming at a later date.

**September 11 1944 —(Pacific-Russell Islands)** Marine Night Fighter Squadron 531st arrives in the Russells, becoming the first night fighter squadron to operate in the South Pacific Theater.

**September 15 1944 — (Pacific-Palaus) — THE INVASION OF PELELIU —** Just another island in an obscure chain within the western Carolines in the awesome Pacific Ocean is one way of describing this diminutive speck, barely visible while scanning a global map. That's what it had been until the outbreak of hostilities between the Japanese and the Americans, but now it is to become recognizable to future generations because of the role it plays in the overall plans to wipe the Japanese Armed Forces off the face of the map. There have been heated differences of opinion on whether or not to take the Palaus, but similar exchanges had transpired on whether or not to seize other Islands. In this instance, Peleliu is to be secured to insulate MacArthur's imminent move against the Philippines in opposition to the wishes of Admiral Halsey who prefers to simply isolate it and let the defenders wither and die. Admiral Nimitz makes the decision, and the Marines get the task of securing the islands to ensure that MacArthur's right flank remains safe.

Offshore, the powerful Fleet of Vice Admiral T.S. Wilkinson hosts the III Amphibious Corps, commanded by General Geiger, a battle-ready determined group of Americans that is anxiously awaiting the orders to hit the beaches. The scene is reminiscent of recently won campaigns. Final instructions are being bellowed as the planes are pummeling enemy positions during these early morning hours. The booming guns of the surface vessels are overshadowing the interaction aboard ship. Continuous puffs of friendly smoke permeate the sky directly over the warships as the giant guns clear their throats, coughing out deadly strings of fire in seemingly continuous links that arc toward the beaches and burst in spectacular fashion, igniting multicolored fires, detonating massive explosions, and catapulting dust and debris that virtually creates a horrid wall of smoke, forbidding penetration by the human eye. Anyone watching the magnificent display might easily form the opinion that nothing alive could survive this thrashing. Last minute letters and portions thereof are left aboard ship by Marines for their loved ones at home. Another check of their weapons, another prayer or two jammed into their litany of words that help to keep them calm, and off they go. In a matter of moments, some will be dead and others will have their bodies wrenched with pain, but they are on their way to deliver another promissory note to the Japanese. Meanwhile, the navy attempts to draw attention from the main invasion by some diversionary maneuvers that feint a landing at Babelthuap by the Angaur Attack Group under Rear Admiral William H. P. Blandy.

The Japanese on Peleliu number over 10,000 and their positions are deeply entrenched, unscathed by the zealous bombardments of the carrier planes and surface vessels. The Japanese again are buried in interconnecting caves that are generously dispersed throughout the center of the island on the impartial slopes of the Umurbrogol Ridges. The skillful deployment of their weaponry has given them extraordinary advantages. The water approaches have been thoroughly saturated with underwater explosives to destroy approaching landing craft. Beyond these dangling instruments of death, the Marines must overcome innumerable personnel mines that mischievously conceal themselves on the beaches, lying in deadly ambush beneath the sand. After the Marines overcome these murderous inconveniences, they must conquer a terrifying gridlock as the Japanese have their

guns placed in order to catch the Yanks in a crossfire as they attempt to overcome the antitank obstacles.

It's 08:30 and the Marines are landing. General Rupertus' 1st Division strikes the southwest shore of Peleliu, unaware that the Japanese have changed their defensive tactics and will not defend the beaches with their usual tenacity, choosing to draw the Americans to their inland positions. The resistance is heavy, but the battle plan hopes to draw the 9,000 Marines into the spider's web. Absolute orders have been issued to the Japanese forbidding them from mounting suicidal attacks. General Sadao Inoue, commanding the Palau, intends to destroy the invaders with his command, considered to be one of the Emperor's finest.

Opposition at beaches Orange and White is resolute, beginning nominally, then increasing with determination as the Marines push inland. The 5th Marines forces the center, flanked by the 7th Marines on the right and the 1st Marines driving on the left, with the iron-fisted thrust of the center penetrating unhesitatingly to the coveted airfield where the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines pivots during its eastward drive and races north, securing the southern portion of the airfield. Meanwhile, Company L bolts across the island in buzz-saw fashion, chopping the island into two parts, inconveniencing the landlord and making Japanese excursions hazardous to their health. The 1st Marines hit rigid resistance along the northern perimeter of the beachhead. Enemy machine guns rake every square yard, inflicting severe casualties upon Chesty Puller's 1st Marines. The unending burst of fire originating from sinister pillboxes must be exterminated one by one before the perimeter collapses. Within a couple of hours, Company K has lost the majority of two platoons to the casualty list, but the obstacles are taken, and the death trap known as the "Point" is demolished by intrepid troops by use of grenades being deposited through the tiny slits of the pill boxes. In addition, the Marines saturate the stronghold with fire from flamethrowers and generous dosages of killing power from other available weaponry.

The irritated Japanese mount a fierce counterattack, comprising tanks and infantry, to retake the airfield near dinnertime, but the effort is futile and handily repulsed, resulting in a great number of Japanese being killed. The Yanks take quick advantage of the failed assault. Company L, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines drills forward nearly to the center of the airfield. Nearby, the 7th Marines advances south where the 1st Battalion rounds up scattered enemy troops in its sector. By day's end, the Yanks have secured a solid beachhead that professes permanency although in measurement it is only several hundred yards deep and 2,800 yards running north to south (slightly deeper within perimeter of center salient). Of course, the possibility of 10,000 Japanese relocating 9,000 U.S. Marines without their consent is unlikely. Old Glory is here to stay. During the actions taking place on the beach, heroism abounds, but many individual acts of courage will never be known. Two men of the 5th Marines receive the Medal of Honor for their sacrifices: Corporal Lewis Bausell and 2nd Lieutenant Carlton Rouh, each throwing their bodies on live grenades to save the lives of their fellow Marines, the latter giving his life.

On the 16th, the Marines turn on the pressure. The 5th Marines, supplemented by the 1st Marines, secure the northern sector of the airfield. Elements of the 3rd Battalion sweep to the eastern shore and fortify the sector, while Company K, 3rd Battalion, pushes south toward the high peaks that extend into the water on the southeastern tip of the island. General Nakagawa, commanding the Japanese on Peleliu, orders the ridges in the northern portion of the island to be the main line of resistance. The enemy prepares to resist the 1st Marines under Puller, which launches its attack. The Japanese take horrendous casualties, but their determination to outlast the invaders does not subside. The Marines also take severe casualties as the task of driving the Japanese from the caves is an excruciating

endeavor. On the 17th, the enemy is dislodged on the southern promontory by the 7th Marines (Company L, 3rd Battalion), while the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines, secures Hill 200.

Peleliu has the scent of death and destruction as the sun rises on the 18th. The Japanese have already sustained over 2,500 dead. The Marines lose less than fifty, although they sustain slightly over 400 wounded. The torrid tropical heat also is taking a toll on the Marines. With the temperatures hovering uncomfortably, well over 100 degrees, heat exhaustion is prevalent. Despite the enduring temperatures, the drive continues, and Hill 210 falls to elements of the 1st and 7th Marines. In addition, the 1st Battalion, 1st Marines exterminates the resistance and seizes Hill 205, while the menacing southeast promontory resistance collapses under the duress of the 1st Battalion, 7th Marines, giving the 7th Marines control of the southern portion of the island.

The Marines gnaw forward, crossing the island, and many more Marines are wounded, their ranks thinning faster than anticipated. Today, the 19th, elements of the 1st Marines force their way to the Five Sisters, the southern front of the final enemy resistance, where the lingering pocket of resistance still stands defiantly. By the 21st, the 1st Marines under Chesty Puller have taken such casualties that they are rendered unable to continue as a regimental team and are compelled to pull back to the eastern defense zone to regroup and rest. By the 23rd, Regimental Combat Team 321, 81st Infantry, USA is brought into the battle. An invasion force usually outnumbers the defending force by at least four to one, but at Peleliu, the opposing forces are nearly equal in size. Army units have been available as reserves, but General Rupertus had expressed a vehement reluctance to have them participate on Peleliu. The grim casualties take preeminence, and the army troops land on Orange Beach, receiving orders to invest the enemy resistance in the Umurbrogol Mountain in cooperation with the 7th Marines.

Now the soldiers and Marines attack simultaneously, each having savage engagements as they ascend the mountain, stone by stone with fervent passion. On the 24th, Company E, 321st Infantry advances to the furthestmost point of the ominous mountain and methodically eliminates the opposition, seizing Hill 100. On the following day, Neal Task Force, USA, shredding the enemy resistance in the sector south of Hill 100, whips its way upon Hill B, trapping and isolating the remaining Japanese on the northern peninsula, while the 5th Marines assault enemy positions on the tip of the peninsula and set up a perimeter.

Non-stop activity is the order of the day on the 26th, as the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines drives toward another obstinate group of hills known as Amiangal "Mountain" The assault takes Hill 2 after a superlative effort by Company B. The 2nd Battalion drives north, bypassing Hill 1, reaching the eastern shore of the northern peninsula, seizing Hill 80; its capture ensures the closure of the northern tip of the island. On the following day, the Japanese are further compressed as RCT 321 drives north to dissolve the Umurbrogol Pocket and eradicate the enemy still holding tenaciously in the central ridges that have been previously bypassed by the Marines. By today, it is apparent that the Yanks are to be the victors. Old Glory is raised at the 1st Marine Division command post to symbolize the quest, although the fighting continues for some time. The crushing jackhammer thrust of the combined Army-Marine force drives through the remaining resistance, inflicting enormous casualties on the enemy while taking heavy casualties themselves. The Japanese maintain discipline and avoid suicidal assaults. When getting behind U.S. lines, they revert to concealment in order to strike suddenly from within the American perimeter, but to no avail. By the 30th, northern Peleliu is declared secure. Mop-up operations, carried out by contingents of the 5th Marines and elements of Regimental Combat Team 321, U.S.A., culminate on the 2nd of October. The balance of the island still holds Jap strong-points, but the effective use of flame throwers, grenades, and, of course the Infantry, eliminates them.

The Marines eventually are completely relieved by the army, allowing the 1st Marine Division to prepare for its next offensive. At the end of a month of brutalizing combat, including pulling the Japs out of the caves or blowing away those that refuse to capitulate, the Japanese lose most of their defenders; however, the 1,100 plus that still remain linger for another month and a half. The island is officially declared secure on November 27th. The Marines suffer 1,250 killed and 5,275 wounded. The U.S. 81st Division sustains 3,275 casualties, including 542 killed. Total Japanese losses, including action on the small islands off Peleliu and Angaur, amount to 13,600 killed and 400 captured.

**September 16 1944-(PacificHawaii)** Marine Aircraft Wings, Pacific, is redesignated Aircraft, Fleet Marine Force, Pacific in accordance with an earlier directive (September 7th) from the commandant. The commander is Major General F.P. Mulcahy and Headquarters is at Ewa, Oahu, Territory of Hawaii. **(Pacific-Pelellu)** The 5th and 7th Marines secure most of the airfield at Peleliu. In addition, Company I, 3rd Marine Battalion, 5th Marines, advances to the east shore and fortifies the beachhead there. Company K drives to the southeastern promontory. In other activity, the 1st Marine Division commences a strong assault against the well-entrenched enemy, deployed in the central ridges that permeate the axis of the northwest peninsula.

**September 17 1944 — (United States)** Upon authority from the commandant of the Marine Corps (August 31st), the word Provisional is dropped, and Headquarters, Fleet Marine Force, Pacific, and Headquarters and Service Battalion, Fleet Marine Force Pacific are both officially established. **(Pacific=Palaus-Peleliu)** The 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines, captures Hill 200. In other activity, elements of the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, seize the southern promontory (ridges extending into the water).

**September 18 1944 — (Pacific-Peleliu)** Hill 210 falls to the 2nd Battalions of both the 1st and 7th Marines. The 1st Battalion, 1st Marines' Company B, secures Hill 205 while the southern promontory is taken by the 1st Battalion, 7th Marines, the latter giving the Marines control of the southern sector of the island. During the fiercely contested conflict between the 7th Marines and the Japs, one small detachment of four men gets caught in an exposed position during a furious forward thrust. A pull-back is ordered from the untenable position, but extrication is extremely dangerous as they are exposed just under a fortified cave. A volley of Jap grenades descends upon them, one of which severely wounds PFC Charles Roan. Immediately following this barrage, another grenade flies into their midst. Roan absorbs the full impact, giving his life to save the other four men in his detachment; he receives the Medal of Honor posthumously.

In another personal endeavor concerning extraordinary heroism, PFC Arthur Jackson, 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, becomes infuriated when his platoon is halted by a well-fortified Jap strongpoint. Jackson darts forward, reaching the obstacle. He begins firing his automatic weapon through the slim openings of the position which contains about 35 enemy troops. Another Marine rushes up and throws white phosphorous grenades, eliminating the threat and killing all remaining occupants. Private Jackson continues his impetuous advance through incessant enemy fire, knocking out pillbox after pillbox, until a total of 12 nests have been singlehandedly destroyed by him; in addition, 50 Japanese defenders are killed; Pvt. Jackson receives the Medal of Honor.

**September 19 1944 — (Pacific-Carolines-Peleliu)** Contingents of the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines advance to the final southern pocket of enemy resistance (Five Sisters). Elements cross Horseshoe Valley and seize the summit of Hill 100. A patrol from Company K, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines advances to Purple Beach on the east coast; Company G occupies the southern tip section of the beach and patrols northeastward. The 1st Battalion, 1st Marines, which had secured Hill 205 on the previous day, is struck during the night of the 18th, with intense resistance, as it attempts to ascend

a steep sloped hill. Point blank artillery fire causes heavy casualties and creates confusion within the ranks. Captain Everett P. Pope leads the remaining men of his detachment through a ring of fire and reaches the summit. He succeeds in holding the ground with 12 men and one wounded officer. By the following morning, eight men still hold the crest, having turned back continuous attacks throughout the night. The ground becomes untenable, and they are ordered to withdraw; however, the Japs couldn't penetrate, and those who did met death with the bayonet and hand-to-hand combat. Captain Pope becomes the recipient of the Medal of Honor for his outstanding leadership.

**September 20 1944 — (Pacific-Carolines-Peleliu)** In the 1st Marine Division sector, the 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines, drives east. Company F seizes the crest of Hill 260 in front of the Five Sisters. The northern tip of the island is secured by Company G, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines. Marine Observation Squadron 3 initiates flights out of the captured airfield. The excruciating struggle to eliminate the Japanese from their entrenchments is expensive. The Japs are holed up in near invulnerable caves, some of which have sliding steel doors. The casualties sustained by the 1st and 7th Marines keep climbing. The 321st Infantry, USA., is informed that it will be needed on Peleliu; it assumes responsibility for the southern part of Angaur and for the obstinate pocket of resistance at the northeastern tip of the island. **(Pacific)** The 1st Marine Aircraft Wing is informed that its seven dive-bomber squadrons are to participate in the Luzon campaign to retake the Philippines.

**September 21 1944 — (Pacific-Carolines-Palaus)** On Peleliu, the 1st Marines have sustained heavy casualties and are unable to continue as a regimental combat unit; they move to the rear for rest and rehabilitation (eastern defense zone). On Angaur, the 321st Infantry is ordered to relieve the 1st Marines on Peleliu. The 322nd Infantry USA, drives vigorously into the Lake Salome bowl against strong resistance; however, the positions are untenable, forcing the unit to withdraw to safer positions during the night.

**September 23 1944 —(PacificCarolines-Palaus)** RCT 321, 81st Infantry Division, U.S.A., lands on Orange Beach and receives responsibility for isolating enemy resistance on Umurbrogol Mountain in coordination with the 7th Marines; in addition, the 2nd and 3rd Battalions (RCT 321) relieve the 1st Marines. In other activity on Peleliu, Company G, 2nd Battalion 5th Marines, captures a tiny island north of Ngabad which concludes the regiment's objectives.

**September 24th 1944 —(Pacific-Palaus)** Hill 100 is seized by Company E, 321st Infantry, 81st Division, eliminating the main portion of the center of Japanese resistance on Umurbrogol Mountain. A Japanese counterattack pushes the 32 1st Regiment back slightly, but quick reaction regains the lost territory. A gap is created between the U.S. Infantry and the 7th Marines because the Marines must secure ground to the right rear that was bypassed by the 321st Regiment. Meanwhile, the Japanese reinforce their Garrison by bringing in troops from another island to the north.

**September 25 1944 — (Pacific-Palaus)** On Peleliu, 321st Infantry, (U.S.A.) patrols meet nominal resistance and advance toward the fifth phase line. Elements of the 321st on the right flank, assisted by the 5th Marines, continue to clear the northern portion of the island. In other activity, the 7th Marines continue to eliminate Japanese in its sector of the island. While a contingent of the 2nd Battalion is directing mortar fire upon enemy positions, a Japanese soldier creeps out from a cave and throws a grenade into the Marines' position. Without hesitation, PFC John Dury New blankets the grenade with his body to save the lives of two observers. PFC New receives the Medal of Honor posthumously for his most courageous action.

**September 26 1944 —(Pacific.Palaus)** Hill 2 is secured by Company B, 1st Battalion, 5th Marines, while Hill 80 is seized by the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, cementing the fate of the northern tip of the island. In other activity, Marine Fighter Squadron 114 arrives on the airfield.

**September 27th 1944 — (Pacific-Palaus)** On Peleliu, RCT 321, USA maneuvers to shrink the Umurbrogol pocket and spreads out in a northward drive to secure the central ridge system which has been bypassed by the 5th Marines. The Japanese meet the advance with incessant fire. The 1st Battalion sweeps north and secures Kamilianlul Mt. with surprising ease. The rapid seizure permits further movement to the intersection of the East and West roads where contact is made with the 5th Marines. The 1st Battalion, 5th Marines, secures Hill 1. In other activity, Old Glory is raised at the 1st Division command post to signify that the island is secure.

**September 28 1944 — (Pacific-Carolines-Palaus)** Ngesebus, off Peleliu's northern coast, is seized by the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines, and Company G, 2nd Battalion secures the northern portion of the northwest peninsula (28th and 29th). The 321st Infantry, USA completes the elimination of enemy resistance in the northern portion of the Umurbrogol Pocket up to its previously designated line.

**September 29 1944 — (Pacific-Carolines Palaus)** The 1st Battalion, 7th Marines relieves RCT 321 and takes responsibility for eliminating the balance of enemy resistance in the Umurbrogol Pocket. The exchange of places permits the 3rd Battalion, 321st Regiment to drive northward to clear the resistance previously bypassed by the 1st Battalion, RCT 321. Different contingents of RCT 321 relieve the 5th Marines on Kongauru and Ngesebus islands, but the 5th Marines continue the operation to clear Amiangal.

**September 30 1944 — (Pacific-Carolines-Palaus)** Admiral George H. Fort declares Peleliu, Ngesebus, Kongauru, and Angaur occupied. Organized resistance on northern Peleliu ceases. The 5th Marines report 1,170 enemy killed or captured although a recent estimate of enemy strength had been 500. Regimental Combat Team 321, U.S.A. relieves the Marines and mops up the remaining resistance.

**October 1 1944 —(Pacific-Carolines-Palaus)** Marine Fighter Squadron 122 and Marine Night Fighter Squadron 541 (final elements) arrive at Peleliu, bringing strength to total allotted for Group 11 Marine Aircraft on the island.

**October 2 1944 —(Pacific-Carolines-Palaus)** Contingents of RCT 321, bolstered by Company G, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, seize Radar Hill, terminating the mop-up operation on the northern peninsula of Peleliu.

**October 3 1944 — (United States)** The Joint Chiefs-of-Staff order General MacArthur to secure operating Bases on Luzon (December 20th 1944) for the purpose of supporting subsequent Pacific efforts. MacArthur is to receive wide cover support from Admiral Nimitz. Nimitz is also expected to seize Iwo Jima (January 20th 1945) and the Ryukyus (Okinawa) (March 1st 1945). (Pacific-Carolines-Palaus) The 7th Marines secure a firm hold on the ridges stretching along the east side of the Umurbrogol Pocket. The 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines, seizes Walt Ridge and Company K, 3rd Battalion, advances to the crest of Boyd Ridge.

**October 4 1944 — (Pacific-Carolines-Palaus)** On Peleliu, the 7th Marines continue attacking the Umurbrogol Pocket, but the incessant fighting has taken a heavy toll on the unit, depleting its numbers sufficiently enough to render them too understrengthened to continue. On the following day, the 5th Marines relieves them. During a violent counterattack on the night of the 4th, a grenade is thrown into a foxhole, and Private Wesley Phelps instinctively yells a warning to his fellow Marine, then throws himself forward to take the full impact and save the other Marine; Phelps is awarded the Medal of Honor (posthumously).

**October 5th 1944 — (Pacific-Carolines-Palaus)** The 5th Marines initiate relief of the 7th Marines on Peleliu at the Umurbrogol Pocket. During the day's skirmishing, a four-man detachment, including PFC. Richard E. Kraus, 8th Amphibian Tractor Battalion, volunteers to extricate a wounded Marine.

The contingent advances against withering enemy fire that forbids further progress. While attempting to make their way back, the men are approached by two men who appear to be Marines. The squad yells for the password, but the impostors are Japs, and the response is a tossed grenade. Krause (Medal of Honor Recipient), in an effort to save the other Marines, flings his body upon the live grenade and absorbs the full impact, giving his life that the others might live.

**October 7 1944 —(Pacific-Carolines-Palaus)** The 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines, supported by tanks, attempts to reduce the Umurbrogol Pocket, but the assault is unsuccessful and ground assaults are temporarily halted.

**October 9 1944 —(Pacific)** A warning order for the invasion of Iwo Jima is given. Few men in the Pacific have heard about the island, which is to be assaulted during early 1945; subsequent to the invasion, few will forget its name. Admiral Spruance is designated commander of the operation (CTF 50). Vice Admiral Richmond Turner is to command the joint expeditionary force (Task Force 51), and Major General H. M. Smith USMC will command the expeditionary troops (Task Force 56). The necessary troops are to be assembled in Hawaii and in the Marianas. The tentative invasion date is scheduled for January 20th 1945. **(Pacific-Carolines-Palaus)** On Peleliu, the 5th Marines mount another attack against the entrenched Umurbrogol Pocket, but the stronghold defends fiercely and the assault makes only nominal progress.

**October 10 1944 — (Pacific-Carolines-Palaus)** Companies G and E, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, maintain pressure against the staunch resistance in the Umurbrogol Pocket. The effort gains Baldy Ridge after another bloody fight. **(Pacific-Ruykyus)** Okinawa, the point in the vast Pacific where the U.S. Navy is soon to be known as “THE FLEET THAT CAME TO STAY,” receives a thundering letter of intent from Uncle Sam today. Seventeen bountiful carriers, escorted by 14 cruisers, 5 battleships, and 58 destroyers, commanded by Vice Admiral Mitscher, arrive off Okinawa and commence a bombardment. Squadrons of flying eagles in concert with the long guns of the naval surface ships pound the island. The U.S. aircraft rule the skies and pummel the shipping and facilities on Okinawa and other nearby islands. The Yanks have brought fireworks made in the U.S.A. and are testing them on the Japanese. The planes return to their carriers with a grand assortment of aerial photographs that prove valuable for the final invasion plans.

**October 11 1944 — (Pacific-Carolines-Palaus)** Contingents of the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, seize Hill 140, an objective that is enormously strategic in nature, giving its occupants a perfect view of the Horseshoe and the draw between Boyd and Walt Ridges.

**October 12 1944 — (Pacific-Carolines-Palaus)** General Roy S. Geiger, U.S.M.C., declares the Peleliu assault and occupation phase terminated. The HI Amphibious Corps command post is moved ashore. Command functions are transferred from the assault forces to the Central Pacific administrative echelons, comprising the forward area, Vice Admiral J. H. Hoover USN, the Western Carolines Submarine Area, Rear Admiral J.W. Reeves Jr. USN, and the Island Command, Brigadier General H.D. Campbell. The 321st Infantry assumes responsibility for the eastern portion of the island and initiates relief of the Marines, but the Marines retain responsibility for the Umurbrogol Pocket, which is still resisting tenaciously.

**October 15th 1944 — (Pacific-Carolines-Palaus)** The airfield at Angaur receives its first Plane today. On Peleliu, the 81st Infantry Division, U.S.A. begins the permanent relief of the 1st Marine Division. The 2nd Battalion, 321st Infantry assumes responsibility for the northern end of the Umurbrogol Pocket, relieving the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines.

**October 16 1944 — (Pacific-Carolines-Palaus)** RCT 321, 81st Division, U.S.A. finalizes relief of the 5th Marines and assumes total responsibility for the operation in the Umurbrogol Pocket. The 5th

Marines remains on Pelellu as Reserves, while the 7th Marines prepares to depart for the Russells. **October 17 1944 — (Southwest Pacific)** The commander, Army Air Force issues specific instructions regarding the Luzon campaign and identifies the units which are to participate. The First Marine Aircraft Wing provides seven dive-bomber squadrons. (Pacific-Carolines-Palaus) The 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines, engages Japanese who infiltrate the area and reoccupy a group of caves south of the Umurbrogol pocket. The skirmishing continues into the following day and is the final combat activity of the 1st Marine Division on Peleliu.

**October 18 1944 — (United States)** In Washington, the Joint War Plans Committee issues "Operations for the defeat of Japan~' Iwo Jima is paramount in the master plan to end the war (the island is required to give the U.S. Planes a refueling stop upon return from bombing mission over the Japanese mainland) and to give the U.S. a primary stepping stone at the doorstep of Japan, which is ultimately to be invaded according to present war plans. (Pacific-Carolines-Palaus) The 321st Infantry, 81st Division, U.S.A., finalizes relief of the 1st Marine Division contingents at the Umurbrogol Pocket on Peleliu. The concentrated resistance now comprises about 400 yards east to west and stretches 850 yards north to south. This small pocket is responsible for a great many of the 6,526 casualties sustained by the Marines during this campaign.

**October 21 1944 — (United States)** The Joint Chiefs of Staff order the invasion of Luzon to commence on December 20th. In addition, the invasion of Iwo Jima is scheduled for January 20th 1945, with the subsequent invasion of the Ryukyus (includes Okinawa). In other activity, Marine Carrier Groups, Aircraft, Fleet Marine Force is established today, headquartered at Santa Barbara, California.

**October 25 1944-(Pacific-MarianasTinian)** The 1st Battalion, 8th Marines takes responsibility for mop-up operations. Other contingents of the 8th Marines depart for Saipan.

**October 26 1944 — (Pacific-Palaus-Pelellu)** The mission to reduce the Umurbrogol Pocket, now comprising an area approximately 600 yards from north to south and 350 to 475 yards from east to west, is assumed by RCT 323. Terrible weather conditions impede the operation, prompting the combat team to bolster its defenses. The Japanese have resigned themselves to a fight to the death and retain some positions in well-entrenched caves within the perimeter. The 321st Infantry, which had relieved the Marine contingents of the 1st Marine Division, has sustained 146 men killed and 469 wounded since initiating the operation to reduce the pocket.

**October 30 1944 — (Pacific-Palaus)** The 5th Marines reinforced, the final Marine contingent on the island, departs Peleliu.

**November 7 1944-(Pacific-Solomons)** Dive bomber squadrons of the 1st Marine Aircraft Wing and Headquarters and services squadrons of Marine Aircraft Groups 24 and 32 are assigned to the U.S. Fifth Air Force (308th Bombardment Wing H), for operational control during the Lingayen Gulf, Luzon occupation campaign. Marine Scout-Bomber Squadron 133rd, 142nd, 236th, 241st, 243rd, 244th, and 341st, 1st Marine Air Wing are instructed to provide close air support for ground operations in the Lingayen region and in Central Luzon. Marine Aircraft Groups 24 and 32 are to establish base and servicing facilities for the Marine scout-bomber squadrons.

**November 10th 1944--(Pacific)** The 4th Marine Base Defense Air Wing is re-designated the 4th Marine Aircraft Wing, commanded by Major General Louis E. Woods.

**November 25 1944-**In Naval Activity, Japanese suicide planes attack the U.S. carriers, severely damaging the Essex (CV-9) and costing 14 dead. The Intrepid (CV-11) is struck by two kamikazes and becomes engulfed in flames; 69 men are killed or missing and 17 planes are lost, forcing the vessel to return to Pearl Harbor. An attacking kamikaze misses the Hancock (CV-19), but a piece of

its wing lands on the vessel, igniting a fire. In addition, the light carrier Cabot (CVL-28) is heavily damaged by a suicide plane, 34 men are killed. The light carrier Independence (CVL-22) sustains damage when a friendly plane crash lands. Aircraft attached to Rear Admirals G.F. Bogan and F.C. Sherman strike Japanese shipping and aircraft facilities in central Luzon. The raid sinks the Japanese heavy cruiser Kumano, the cruiser Yasoshima, and the transports Nos. 6 and 10 (**Marinduque Island**). The destroyer Shimotsuki is sunk by the submarine Cavalla (SS-244) off Borneo; the submarine Hardhead (SS-365) sinks the Coastal Defense Vessel No. 38; the submarine Atule (SS-403) sinks patrol boat NO. 38. Today marks the last day that Admiral's Halsey's warships strike in support of the Leyte operation; since the 5th of November, his planes have destroyed 756 Japanese aircraft in addition to devastating enemy convoys and airfields. Halsey had reminded MacArthur of an underused Marine Air Group and it had been quickly brought in to cover Admiral Kinkaid's request for more aircover; Halsey subsequently notes: "WITHIN 24 HOURS AFTER THE MARINE PLANES ARRIVE, THEY HAD JUSTIFIED MY RECOMMENDATION. THANKS TO THEM AND TO OUR STRIKE ON LUZON, KINKAID'S DAILY REPORT BEGAN TO READ, NO BOGEYS."

**November 27 1944-(Pacific-Carolines-Palau)** RCT 323, U.S.A., re-duces the Umurbrogol Pocket; its commander reports that the Peleliu operation is terminated. The Japanese lose approximately 13,600 killed on Angaur, Peleliu, and the tiny islands off Peleliu. In addition, about 400 prisoners are taken. The U.S. 81st Division and attached units sustain over 3,275 casualties, including 542 killed. The First Marine Division, reinforced, sustains about 1,250 killed and 5,275 wounded.

**November 30 1944-Pacific**) Allied Air Forces direct that four F4U Squadrons of the 1st Marine Aircraft Wing be attached to the operational control of the Fifth Air Force on Leyte, Philippines to allow the Third Carrier Fleet to concentrate its efforts on the attack against Japan.

**December 2 1944-(Philippines)**-Marine Night Fighter Squadron 541 (2nd Marine Aircraft Wing, Peleliu) and Marine Aircraft Wing 12 (VMF-115, 211, 218, and 313, Solomons) land at Tacloban and are attached to the 308th Bombardment Wing, Fifth Air Force.

**December 5 1944 (Philippines)**-The recently arrived Marine Air units (3rd), covering the Naval forces, encounter Japanese Planes for the first time.

**December 7 1944 (Philippines)**-Marine Aircraft attack a Japanese convoy transporting reinforcements to Ormoc. Planes from Marine Fighter Squadron 211 damage a Japanese destroyer, which is retiring from Leyte. Also, planes attached to Marine Fighter Squadrons 218 and 313 combine with Army P40s, sinking a transport and damaging two destroyers of the convoy. The entire convoy, comprising six transports and seven escort vessels, is thought to be destroyed.

**December 8 1944-February 19th 1945 (Pacific-Volcano- Bonin Islands)** B-24s stationed in the Marianas attack the islands, softening the defenses for the upcoming invasion. PBJs from Marine Bomber Squadron 612th participate in these Seventh Air Force attacks from early December until the end of January.

**December 10 1944 (Pacific-Marianas)** The Marine 8th 155mm Gun Battalion arrives at Saipan from Peleliu.

**December 10-25 1944-(Philippines)- In the XXIV Corps sector**, Ormoc comes under Corps control as advance contingents of the 7th Division roll ahead of the 77th Division at Ipil, splitting the enemy forces on Leyte and isolating the troops in Limon. The 77th Division's 306th and 307th Regiments drive from Ormoc, encountering firm resistance. Japanese reinforcements arrive at Ormoc Bay during the night of the 11th-12th, but few succeed in landing and those that do fail to participate in the contest for the Ormoc corridor; twelve F4Us attached to Marine Aircraft Group 12 and P-40s intercept the

convoy near the northeast tip of Panay and then strike it again off Palompon, sinking four of the ten vessels.

**December 12 1944 (Philippines)**-Marine aircraft from Group 12 and P40s sink a Japanese destroyer escorting a troop convoy, and a tank landing ship is set ablaze off Panay in what turns out to be the last major attempt to reinforce the beleaguered Leyte garrison.

**December 23 1944 (Pacific)** The commanding general V Amphibious Corps Landing Force issues plans for the invasion of Iwo Jima, VACLANDFOR Operation Plan 3-44, directing the 4th and 5th Marine Divisions to assault the southeastern shores of Iwo Jima, landing abreast on D-Day; the tentative date is scheduled for 19th, February. The 3rd Marine Division is to be held in floating reserve until released to Corps.

**December 28 1944 (Pacific-Caroline Islands)** Marine Fighter Squadrons VMF-124 and 213 embark from Ulithi aboard the USS Essex, becoming the first Marine fighter squadrons to board a big carrier. The carrier will strike Formosa and Luzon during early January.

**January 1 1945 -(Pacific-Marianas)** The 1st Battalion, 8th Marines, departs Tinian for Saipan, subsequent to five months garrison duty on the island.

**January 2-12 1945 (Pacific-Philippines)** Marine Aircraft Group 14 (VMC-212, 222, and 223) land at Guaiam, Samar, and will operate under command of the Fifth Air Force.

**January 3 1945 (Pacific-Formosa-Ryukyus-Pescadores)** In preparation for the invasion of Luzon, carriers, under Vice Admiral J.S. McCain (U.S. Third Fleet), launch planes against enemy aircraft and shipping, with the primary thrust being against Formosa and secondary strikes against the Ryukyus and Pescadores. The assaults are hindered because of bad weather. Marine Corps planes (Fighter Squadrons 124 and 213) attached to the USS Essex participate; this is the first time Marine fighter squadrons attack land installations from a carrier.

**January 11 1945-(Philippines)**-Marine Aircraft Groups, Dagupan, commanded by Colonel Clayton C. Jerome, are organized. Advance elements of Marine Aircraft Group 24 arrive in Lingayen Gulf. The units fly close air support missions to assist U.S. Army ground troops.

**February 14th 1945 -(Pacific Area)** Task Force 54 (Gunfire and Covering Force), commanded by Rear Admiral B.J. Rodgers, and Rear Admiral W.H.B. Blandy's Task Force 52 (Support Carrier Group of Amphibious Support Force) embark Saipan, heading toward Iwo Jima to launch pre-D-Day operations. The iron-scribes of the navy begin to implant autographs on the target; however, the Japanese ground forces, which number over 60,000, have been virtually living underground in caves, unscathed by the previous bombardments and those that are to come. They will have to be eliminated by ground forces of the 4th and 5th Marine Divisions tunnel by tunnel and yard by yard. The volcanic island is considered an arm of Tokyo and its troops are ordered to defend to the death. (Pacific-Iwo Jima) At 08:40, the Battleships *Nevada*, *Tennessee*, and *Idaho* launch a carpet bombardment of Chidori Airfield and its escarpments, while the heavy cruiser *Pensacola*, standing about 750 yards offshore, sizzles the slopes of Mt. Suribachi. Meanwhile, twelve wooden hulled Minesweepers, equipped with rockets, race back and forth scooping up anything which might impede the invasion. In conjunction, twelve gunboats and three destroyers close in on the beach and deliver an acrimonious shelling which scorches the landing areas and further pockets the desolate landscape. Iwo Jima's commanding officer, General Kuribayashi, peers ambivalently at the massive show of force and focuses on the approaching gunboats which are merely transporting the navy and Marine frogmen, who are to clear the landing areas of demolitions. Each vessel carries about fifty-man crews and about 100 frogmen. Kuribayashi decides it is the long anticipated invasion and orders his force to open fire as the gunboats reach positions about 250 yards from shore, breaking his abstinence of

lire. The Japanese retaliation tears the area asunder. Enemy fire rips into the gunboats as the underwater teams swim through the frigid waters toward the beach, oblivious to the raging battle: the 457 is sinking; 471's engine is knocked out; 459 and 467 are ablaze, but get towed to safety; and 473 is afire, having sustained 200 hits. In addition, the Jap guns have severed the bow gun of the 438. Also, the 449 takes grievous casualties; its commanding officer, Commander Rufus H. Herring, receives the Medal of Honor for his actions during the battle. The vessels receive smoke cover and withdraw; the ordeal costs 43 crewmen killed and 153 wounded. Meanwhile, the frogmen come up for air and are greeted by a cyclone of machine gun fire. Undaunted, they dodge the gunfire and attend to their tasks, including placing a bumptious sign on the beach which reads: "WELCOME TO IWO JIMA."

The USS *Pensacola* attempts retrieval of frogmen and receives six hits within three minutes of blistering fire which kills the commanding officer Austin C. Behan and seventeen other men. An additional 127 men are killed aboard the *Kingfisher* when ammunition explodes. Admiral Blandy's armada had joined the ongoing fight, and aircraft from the *Wake Island*, *Lunga Point*, and *Bismarck Sea* rush to the area and unleash a doughty low level attack to enunciate the intent of the fleet. In addition, the island is struck by B-24 Liberators from the Marianas. The U.S. fleet moves over the horizon at 18:21, culminating the day's action. Upon checking reconnaissance photographs of the island, it is determined that seventeen of the 20 blockhouses still stand on the beachhead and that almost all pillboxes on the beach remain unscathed. The photographs also disclose that the dug-in artillery and naval guns on the slopes of Suribachi remain operational.

General Kuribayashi radios Tokyo, informing it that his forces had repulsed the invaders, but cautions that they will return. He is unaware that the invaders had been frogmen, clad in swimming trunks and sneaks and had only been armed with small knives. Tokyo broadcasts that the garrison on Iwo Jima had intercepted the troops on the beach and "REPELLED THEM INTO THE SEA:' There had been no mention of the humorous sign installed on the beachhead. The battleship *Tennessee* (BB-43), the heavy cruiser *Pensacola* (CA-24), and the destroyer *Leutze* (DD-481) sustain damage. In addition, the destroyer *Dortch* (DD-670) is damaged by strafing; the destroyer *Waldron* sustains damage by intentionally ramming a Japanese picket boat.

**February 18 1945 -(Pacific-Iwo Jima)** The U.S. pre-invasion bombardment of the island continues and special emphasis is given to the landing beach area when the guns of the battleships *Tennessee*, *Idaho*, *Nevada* and *New York* bellow at 07:45, and continue for five hours. Cruisers and destroyers also bombard the island and are joined by aircraft however, heavy rain squaBs impede the air raid, confining it to 28 sorties; the napalm fails to explode. B-24s from the Marianas have difficulty locating the islands because of severe cloud cover and return without releasing any bombs. When the cease fire terminates at 18:21, the fleet has ample ammunition for additional strikes, but Admiral Blandy informs Admiral Turner that the invasion should go as ordered. Marine Lt. Colonel Donald M. Weller suggests a 24-hour delay, but to no avail. The island absorbs tremendous shock; however, the primary forces are entrenched well into caves and tunnels and sustain no substantial losses. Major General Holland (Howlin) H. M. Smith had requested ten days bombardment for his Marines and gets three. Admiral Turner tells the press that Iwo " IS AS WELL-DEFENDED A FIXED POSITION, PARTICULARLY AN ISLAND POSITION, AS EXISTS IN THE WORLD TODAY. WE EXPECT LOSSES OF SHIPS AND MEN ... HOWEVER, WE EXPECT TO TAKE THE POSITION:' General Smith, V Corps Commander, simply nods in agreement, aware that victory is a congenital trait of the Marines. In addition, Secretary of the Navy James Forrestal, aboard to see the invasion first hand, adds: "MY HAT IS OFF TO THE MARINES:' The light minesweeper *Gamble* (OM-IS) and the high

speed transport *Blessman* (APD-48) are damaged by horizontal bombers. The *Blessman* is one of the vessels boarding frogmen and upon being struck, two Frogmen are killed and twenty injured. Eleven crewmen also sustain injuries. The plane had been shot from the sky, but its bomb struck. (Pacific-Japan) Task Force 58, operating off Japan, encounters inclement weather which forces abandonment of its air attacks; it embarks for Iwo Jima to supplement the invasion forces. Admiral Nimitz, accompanying the Fifth Fleet, reports on the past several days' progress that 332 enemy planes had been shot down and 117 were destroyed on the ground. He also states that the raids inflicted damages to many buildings and small merchant ships as well as leaving a small carrier burning. The U.S. loses 49 planes and saves nine pilots.

**February 19 1945 -(Pacific) THE INVASION OF IWO JIMA** -At 03:00, reveille sounds "wake up" throughout the restless transports. Groggy-eyed Marines are roused from their improvised bunks in a flurry, and they instinctively are ready for the landing. The seas, unruly at midnight, become calm as the armada maneuvers for the operation commencement. Warships deploy for pre-invasion and cover-fire positions while the carriers prepare to launch aircraft. Landing craft personnel finalize last minute details, while Marines are treated to the customary pre-invasion meal: steak. The 3rd, 4th, and 5th Marine Divisions have been delegated to seize this annex of hell, and it is the Marines who must attack into the eyes of the volcanic devil. The island's eastern beach sectors, from south to north, are designated Green, Red 1, and Red 2, assigned to the 5th Division, and Yellow 1, Yellow 2, Blue 1, and Blue 2, which will be invaded by the 4th Division. The landing zones stretch about 3,000 yards, not nearly large enough to consume three divisions; the 3rd awaits offshore.

The Japanese have been steadily reinforcing Iwo Jima for over twenty years; however, it has become a high priority since the fall of Saipan during July 1944. The endeavor has transformed the once obscure eight-square mile volcanic island into a near invincible fortress under command of the adept Lt. General Kuribayashi, known as a "tiger hearted" leader. He has trained as a cavalry officer in the U.S. at Fort Bliss, Texas, and speaks fluent English. The island, a mere 700 miles from Tokyo, contains no harbors or fresh water sources; however, its two operational airfields and a third under construction mandate its seizure to afford the U.S. a base from which Fighters can fly escort missions to safeguard bombers which attack Japan. In addition, it is imperative to gain the bombers a refueling stop on the return flights from Japan.

Iwo Jima, about two miles wide and five miles long, stands as a bulwark and contains the ominous Mt. Suribachi to the south which extends well over five hundred feet above the beaches; to the north is the treacherous Motoyama Plateau, guarded on both sides by ridges which plummet abruptly to the sea. The island is inundated with intertwining caves and tunnels, which conceal the majority of the 23,000 defenders, who, to the man, have sworn "to fight to the death." In addition, the island citadel has its awesome guns well hidden and deeply entrenched. The tanks are stationary, buried right up to their turrets, which protrude just above the ground, and the big naval guns also are capably concealed. Innumerable machine guns and mortars further bolster the defenses. Layers of lethal firepower mirror the island and are capable of strafing every square yard of it. Solid blockhouses and pillboxes adorn the dismal island, guaranteeing a gruesome struggle.

General Kuribayashi realizes that the Americans control the air and the sea, ensuring no reinforcements will arrive, and he has concluded that his troops can fare better by retaining their commanding positions and refraining from banzai attacks. The landing will be unopposed by infantry. The Yanks are to be drawn slightly inland to isolate the beachhead, while artillery destroys all incoming craft and annihilates the invasion force. The Japanese are prepared; however, the primary question remains: Will the invasion force strike the east or west beaches?

At 06:30, Admiral Turner gives the cue: "LAND THE LANDING FORCE." Within minutes, heavy guns of over 70 capital ships fire in unison, delivering another deluge upon the already scarred landscape. Roaring 16-inch shells of the battlewagons pound the slopes of Suribachi, quivering the ground. Nine gunboats move to within 250 yards of the beachhead and unleash nearly nine thousand scorching rockets within one half hour. Troops offshore wonder aloud how anyone could survive such a copious bombardment; however, the enemy is so deeply entrenched in caves that they are unscathed, except for being stunned.

At 08:05, the awesome armada of floating thunderclap relents, subsequent to delivering a more powerful fusillade than that which was expended at Normandy during June of 1944. One Sailor aboard the Heavy Cruiser *Salt Lake City*, Francis Early, of Glenside Pa., related that the tracer fire was so intense and bright that anyone on deck "could easily read a newspaper at anytime during the night-bombardments." Upon cessation of the naval guns, about 120 navy corsairs and hellcats soar overhead and unleash murderous fire upon the landing area and nearby terraces, then swerve toward the northern hills and back over Suribachi, delivering more killing fire, exhibiting a dazzling display of airpower. As the naval pilots turn toward their carriers, 48 Marine corsairs, circling at 5,000 feet, dive against the landing zones under orders to "scrape the beach with their bellies." The pilots oblige, flying at tree-top level to saturate the beachhead with more shells. In addition, fifteen B-24s from the Marianas arrive over the island; however, cloud cover obscures their target and only thirty-six bombs are dropped. By 08:25, all planes have vanished and again the navy commences firing, privitering the island with another earth-shaking bombardment.

At 09:00, over 65 Amtracs initiate the 4,000 yard dash to the beach, transporting three machine gun crews and one 75 mm howitzer crew each. Their mission is to seize the beachhead and hold it for the 8,000 infantry troops, which are trailing close behind in six waves, at five-minute intervals. Higgins boats dove-tail and transport additional troops, designated for holding and expanding the beachhead. The landing craft close upon the beaches with the words of V Corps Commander Schmidt ringing in their ears: "HERETOFORE IT HAS ALWAYS BEEN UR POLICY TO GRAB THE MONKEY BY THE TAIL AND HANG ON. NOW WE'RE CUTTING THE MONKEY'S TAIL OFF."

Japanese peer intently, but their heavy guns remain silent, waiting to spring the ambush, while the advance waves strike the beach against light opposition at about 09:05 and begin a nightmarish advance. As they move forward, their feet sink deeply in the sand. The black ash envelops vehicles, bogging them down and creating an instant quagmire, which surely invites slaughter. Suddenly, the ongoing crackle of machine gun fire is joined by incoming mortars and an onslaught of heavy artillery fire, which consumes the entire exposed beachhead in an attempt to exterminate the invasion force. Attempts to dig fox holes are futile, as the sand simply caves in. Stranded landing craft attempt to break for the water, from where their guns can aid the Marines, while Higgins boats simultaneously attempt to land. Withering fire sinks several craft, with their cargoes of Tanks and Trucks, further congesting the landing approaches. Burning Vessels create a traffic jam in the water. The sting of death hovers above the din of battle; however, there is no disillusionment on the beach. The besieged Marines, noted for their ability to improvise and endure, stare in stark horror as their ranks are unmercifully decimated, but there is no despair. Instead, the aroma of victory permeates the stench of death and forges a more galvanized beachhead.

Surprisingly, the Japanese still withhold the counterattack, affording the Yanks one hour to land about 6,000 men, a few tanks, artillery units and some Seabees with their bulldozers, a luxury that

the Japanese would soon regret. Although the situation is grave, a bulldog posture evolves spontaneously as the legendary Esprit de Corps asserts itself and the irreversible course is set; advance! Amidst whizzing bullets, whining mortars, and crashing artillery shells, the Marines attempt to drive inland. Walls of fire, originating from an invisible enemy, slice further into their ranks. Cries of anguish are everywhere, including some garbled ones, coming from beneath the ash, as men are buried under the crushing blows of the devastating fire. Others bleed to death slowly, as menacing grid-fire prevents any aid from reaching them.

Undaunted, despite the incessant fire, other Marines daringly inch forward through deadly minefields. The carnage is horrendous. Some men collapse, minus arms or legs, others have portions of their faces ripped off and yet others are blown to oblivion; however, the breakout attempt continues to gnaw toward Suribachi and Airfield No.1. By 10:45, the 25th Marines, operating on Blue beaches 1 and 2, are tightly pinned down about 200 yards from the quarry, and the 23rd Marines are sprawled nakedly on the terraces in front of Airport No. 1, pinned by a blistering enfilade. In the southern portion of the crammed beachhead, the 27th Marines are halted by an avalanche of impregnable fire and in desperate need of tanks to alleviate the monstrous pressure. Meanwhile, the 28th Marines slug their way across most of the island's neck toward Suribachi; however, this too, is abruptly halted by a hurricane of fire. Its 1st Battalion continues to press forward, but is stopped by 12:00; during this struggle, Corporal Tony Stein, 1st Battalion, singlehandedly assaults enemy pillboxes, taking out twenty enemy troops. He also makes eight trips back to the beach for additional ammunition and tends many of the wounded. Stein becomes a recipient of the Medal of Honor for his extraordinary courage.

Admiral Turner orders the beaches closed for several hours at 13:00 and moves up warships to blast pinpointed enemy strongholds from point blank range. By 15:00, six tanks, attached to the 5th Division, and the 1st Battalion, 26th Marines come ashore: two tanks are lost and the infantry takes high casualties. Still, the enemy remains mysteriously concealed; however, fire seems to emanate from behind every rock and from within every rancid hole as if the earth has become Satan's nefarious apprentice. The Marines react extemporaneously with countless individual acts of courage, which become the hallmark of the campaign on this island of gore. Casualty lists spiral and include an exorbitant amount of dead and seriously wounded officers and NCOs, as the day's fury winds down. At 17:00, General Hermlie, assistant commander, 5th Marine Division orders the troops to consolidate and brace for the usual frenzied night counterattack. Sunset arrives at 18:45 and the temperatures begin to dip toward 40 degrees, a far cry from the tropical temperatures of the Solomons.

Droll humor, always evident on a battlefield, is abundant throughout the day's struggles and continues for the duration. There is the story about the Marines who goad some Japs in a strongpoint, prompting one to come out and angrily set up a gun, while a Marine quips that the Jap has no sense of humor, as yet another Marine peels off a few rounds and ends his frustration with a killing blow. In another of the unending stories, a Marine requests permission from a frugal officer to have a flamethrower wipe out a Jap in a nearby pillbox. The officer, aware of the acute shortages of ammunition and supplies, wants confirmation of the threat and asks: "HOW DO YOU KNOW THERE IS A JAP IN THERE," and receives the response: "BECAUSE I THREW IN A GRENADE AND HE THREW IT BACK OUT" Another Marine quips to a buddy: "ARE YOU STILL AN ATHEIST?" and receives the response: "I'M GOING TO START PRAYING IN THE MORNING." Last, but not least, is the entrepreneur's beachhead sign which boasts, "Lots for Sale," emphasizing their ocean view and

nightly fireworks displays. With a note of sardonic wit, the advertisement closes with “Available for U.S. Army personnel soon,” with the addendum (We Hope).

Morning arrives, but the counterattack remains dormant, like the nearby towering volcano. Marine reinstate the grueling advance, blowing pillboxes and blockhouses and sealing cave entrances. Tanks and vulnerable flame-throwers work tirelessly. Elements of the 4th Division overrun Airfield No. 1, and the 5th Division, bolstered by naval surface fire and flame-throwing tanks, presses its dogged advance against Suribachi. At the airfield, the Marines spot some Japs who snap off a few rounds, then disappear mysteriously. Soon after, they reappear on the other side of the airfield by dashing through storm pipes, which run under the field. The scheme is discovered and the pests are eliminated. Meanwhile, the Seabees, which had landed with the 4th Division, immediately begin to bulldoze the rubble of the skeleton Jap planes and renovate the cratered surface to provide access for U.S. aircraft. The gallant Seabees, much older than the average fighting man on the island, achieve a rating of excellence on this their first invasion, despite sustaining heavy casualties. Their resolve and dedication is outstanding.

On the 21st, elements of the 4th Division attack toward Airfield No. 2, and the 5th Division continues to assault the Japs around Suribachi; however, the ferocious resistance limits both the northern and southern assaults to slow and costly progress. Meanwhile, a few Kamikazes penetrate the air defenses, sink the escort carrier *Bismarck Sea*, and damage the escort carrier *Lunga Point* and the carrier *Saratoga*. In addition, the suicide planes damage several LSTs and a cargo vessel. During the night of the 21st, the Japanese mount several disciplined counterattacks; however, all are thwarted.

On the 22nd, the northern assault receives heavy support from naval surface guns and artillery to bolster its attack against Airfield No. 2, but the heights between it and Airfield No. 1 are staunchly defended and pour incessant fire, halting its progress; RCT 21, 3rd Marine Division continues to press, but it is forced to pull back. Meanwhile, in the southern portion of the embattled island, the 3rd Battalion, 28th Marines surges forward and has Suribachi nearly surrounded. Subsequently, it is encircled when the 27th and 28th Marines establish contact. Heavy fighting continues throughout the day and during the night, the Japanese mount counterattacks, which again are repelled by the Marines.

The quest to vanquish Mt. Suribachi begins early on the 23rd. Just after sunrise, patrols are dispatched to search for the enemy. Around 08:00, 2nd Lt. G. Greeley Wells, at the command post, is able to empty his map case, in which he has been carrying a flag since the departure from Guam, one which he received from the transport *Missoula*. A forty-man patrol, under Lt. Harold G. Schrier, Co. E., is ordered by Lt. Col. Chandler W. Johnson to conspicuously place the colors on the crest of Mt. Suribachi. The "word" spreads among the troops on the ground and throughout the fleet offshore. Eyes strain with every cautious step, during the ascent. Nearby ships use binoculars and the rear guard is kept informed by signals. Some caves and abandoned weapons are discovered; however, there is no sign of the Japs as the patrol climbs. Another detachment composed of four men, approaching from the opposite side, also advances without incident. The patrol takes its last strides and holds the summit, while anxious hearts pound excitedly across the island. The troops fan out and

secure a section of Japanese pipe which is used as a staff for the Stars and Stripes, and she is prepared for her next appointment with destiny.

At 10:31, the Marines below shout: "THERE GOES THE FLAG," as the improvised staff, with Old Glory affixed, is lunged into the ground by three Marines. The stirring activity spontaneously causes epidemic chills to spread through the spines of the Marines and the sailors offshore. Lumps gather in throats when the Stars and Stripes springs briskly into the ' sky, atop the newest outpost in the Western Pacific and crackles commandingly in the breeze. The balance of the patrol scours the crest for the elusive enemy. Suddenly, two men, one with grenades and the other brandishing a sword, bolt from a cave. The sharpshooters quickly riddle them with shells. A brief and lopsided firefight erupts, as two Marines secure the Stars and Stripes, while the others charge the cave and eliminate any further threat. Sure-handed flamethrowing troops join in and scorch the caves in response to tossed grenades, incinerating the entrances. Coincidentally, Secretary of the Navy James Forrestal and Major General Holland Smith had observed the spectacular flag raising from the beach. During the unfurling, which was the first of two such occasions on the volcano this morning, Tech. Sgt. Louis R. Lowery had caught the action on film; however, when the Japs darted from their cave, he had rolled to avoid a grenade and slid about 50' down the slope, culminating the fall with a broken camera: the film was saved. Subsequently, a twelve-man patrol, led by Sgt. Ernest L. Thomas, probes a cave and discovers about 150 dead Japs, most having died by clenching a grenade next to their stomachs; it is permanently sealed.

Lt. Col. Johnson, concerned that his Battalion will lose its ceremonial Flag, moves to get it back. Another, much larger Flag is taken up as a replacement. The giant flag is hoisted as Lt. Well's historic banner is simultaneously brought down. Two Marine photographers, Sgt. William Genaust, using color movie film, and Pvt. Robert Campbell, equipped with black and white still film, are along for the 2nd raising, as well as Joe Rosenthal, a civilian war photographer for Associated Press. Genaust is killed within a few days and never sees his footage, which is shown across the world without giving him credit. Both Lowery and Campbell receive little attention for their shots, as the fortuitous photograph taken by Rosenthal receives worldwide publicity and goes on to become one of the most famous shots ever taken of Old Glory. The 28th Regiment, oblivious to its new found fame, resumes the war, initiating the mop up of Suribachi. Since D-Day, it has sustained almost 900 casualties.

By the end of the 25th, the 3rd and 4th Divisions control most of Airfield No.2, and the remainder of it is overrun by RCT 9, 3rd Division on the following day. The combat team also secures the nearby heights. The 3rd Division reduces Motoyama viilage on the 28th, after another bloody contest. Hill 326A, a superbly fortified cross-island defense base, and the obstinate Hill 882 fall by March 2nd. The 3rd Division grinds forward and seizes Airfield No.3, on March 3rd. Meanwhile, vicious fighting continues east of the Motoyama plateau, where determined attacks force the collapse of resistance on Hills 357 and 362B.

On March 4th, the situation brightens even more, despite the gruesome fighting, when the 1st crippled B-29 arrives on the island. The drudgery of eliminating the strongpoints one by one does not deter the Yanks, who prepare to batter and demolish the last Japanese line of defense. On the 6th, contingents of the 3rd, 4th, and 5th Divisions drive east and northeast to accomplish the mission. Tanks, bazookas, and flamethrowers accompany the infantry in a yard-by-yard advance. One by one the tenacious obstacles fall, but the price of the real estate remains high. A fierce counterattack is

mounted against the 4th Division's positions on the 8th-9th; however, it is convincingly thrown back. The rigid resistance continues unrelenting; however, by the ninth, patrols of the 3rd Marine Division grind to the northeast coast.

On the 10th, the 3rd Division uproots and destroys the resistance in its sector, except for one pocket remaining in the 9th Marines' zone and some sporadic opposition in the nearby cliffs. Meanwhile, the heavily defended Amphitheater (Turkey Knob) gets roasted by the 4th Division. By the following day, the full thrust of the Marines is committed to open the final phase of the campaign; the 5th Division drives north in conjunction with the 3rd and 4th Divisions, which press toward the east coast.

By the 14th, the conclusion of the campaign is inevitable. The Colors are officially raised, synchronized with the striking of the Colors on Suribachi, proclaiming control of the Volcano Islands. Marine Lt. General Holland M. Smith departs for Guam. The Japs are being systematically eliminated, but those still alive have not lost their fervor. Cushman's Pocket, another stronghold, is eradicated on the 16th by the 9th Marines, 3rd Division, further diminishing the Japanese forces. The indefatigable 3rd Division presses toward Kitano's Point. Meanwhile, RCT 25, 4th Marine Division streaks to the east coast. The powerful juggernaut terminates resistance in both the 3rd and 4th Division sectors; the bloodied island is declared secure. The 147th Infantry Regiment, U.S.A., arrives on the 20th to assume responsibility for the island: it is attached to the 3rd Marine Division, which remains behind to assist the Army force, while the 4th and 5th Marine Divisions reembark.

On the 20th, in a last futile effort, between 200-300 Bandanaattired Japs mount a Banzai attack against the Army and Marine bivouac areas, but the assault troops are quickly intercepted and destroyed by the VII Fighter Command, U.S.A., and the 5th Pioneer Battalion. The frustrated Japanese die a swift death for their Emperor. Meanwhile, General Chaney, U.S.A., assumes command of the island.

The 23,000 defenders had been nearly annihilated, but the U.S. also sustains heavy casualties. Two hundred and seventy-five officers are killed, 60 dying of their wounds, and 6,610 enlisted men die, 1,271 succumbing to wounds. Eight hundred and twenty-six officers and 16,466 enlisted men are wounded. In addition, three officers and 43 enlisted men are missing in action and presumed dead. The figures do not include the many navy casualties. For their efforts, about 2,400 crippled planes will touch down on Iwo Jima and about 25,000 airmen will be saved. In addition, more will be saved by the ability of fighters to fly escort missions. History will debate the cost and necessity for centuries; however, the men who took the island did it because they were ordered to seize it. Admiral Nimitz sums up the battle and its young warriors by stating: "UNCOMMON VALOR WAS A COMMON VIRTUE."

**February 19th 1945 -(Pacific-Iwo Jima)** In one instance during the savage fighting, menacing Japanese fire holds up a section of Company B, 1st Battalion, 23rd Marines, 4th Marine Division. Sergeant Darrell S. Cole leads his Squad toward Airfield No. I, against a wall of fire. Cole eliminates two enemy positions with hand grenades and advances further, encountering three enemy pillboxes. He deploys his one remaining machine gun and knocks out the first obstacle; however, the gun jams and his unit is again pinned down. Cole, armed with his pistol and one grenade, advances,

singlehandedly attacks and then returns for more ammunition. He then makes a third assault, taking out the obstacle; however, as he returns to his lines, an enemy grenade kills him. Sergeant Cole's actions eliminated the obstacles allowing his company to seize the objective; he receives the Medal of Honor posthumously. Cpl. Tony Stein, 28th Marines, also receives the Medal of Honor posthumously; he singlehandedly kills 20 enemy troops.

**February 20th 1945 -(Pacific-Iwo Jima)** Heavy fighting ensues throughout the day. The 4th Marine Division seizes Airfield No. 1. Meanwhile, the 5th Marine Division drives toward Mt Suribachi. Captain Robert Hugo Dunlap, commanding officer, Company C, 1st Battalion, 26th Marines, 5th Marine Division receives the Medal of Honor for his extraordinary leadership. Dunlap advances with his men against impregnable caves, then moves out singlehandedly, remaining in an exposed position for two days directing accurate fire against the enemy positions. Also, PFC Jacklyn H. Lucas; 1st Battalion, 26th Marines absorbs the blasts of two grenades to save his detachment as it is moving through a ravine and hits an ambush. He saves the patrol which then routs the Japanese Patrol; Lucas receives the Medal of Honor. Casualties continue to climb; Tank losses are also heavy. Offshore, the Light Cruiser *Biloxi* (CL-80) and the Hospital Ship *Samaritan* are accidentally damaged by U.S. Naval gunfire. The Attack Transports *Napa* (APO-1 57) and *Logan* (APA-196) are damaged by collision. In addition, the Attack Cargo Ship *Starr* (AKA-67) is damaged by collision, and the LST 779 sustains damage by coastal mortar fire.

**(Southern Philippines)** In the U.S. Eighth Army area, X Corps sector, elements of the Provisional Task Force dispatches land and sea pPatrols to Lavezares on the northwestern coast of Samar. Contingents, protected by Marine aircraft, land without opposition on Macarite Island, from where they cross the channel and establish a beachhead on Biri Island, on the eastern entrance to the San Bernardino Strait.

**February 21 1945 -(Pacific-Caroline Islands)** Truk is attacked by Naval land-based and Army Aircraft. (Pacific-Iwo Jima) Marines continue attacking north toward Airfield No.2 and south against Mt Suribachi. Japanese resistance remains fierce and again Marine casualties are high. RCT 21, 3rd Marine Division (Corps reserve) lands on Beach Yellow and is attached to 4th Marine Division. During the heavy fighting on Iwo, PFC Donald Jack Ruhl, Company E, 28th Marines, 5th Marine Division, intentionally takes the impact of a grenade, saving the life of his buddy. Prior to being killed by the grenade, Ruhl had singlehandedly attacked eight Japanese, killing two as they were escaping and also braved heavy fire to assist a wounded Marine. Ruhl receives the Medal of Honor posthumously for his extraordinary bravery as his unit moves to secure Mt Suribachi. During the attack against Motoyama Airfield No. 2, Captain Joseph Jeremiah McCarthy, 2nd Battalion, 24th Marines, 4th Marine Division, leads a spectacular charge against an enemy pillbox, destroying it with his small force of riflemen and accompanying flamethrowers. McCarthy kills several of the enemy, then jumps into the ruins of the obstacle, taking out several more.

McCarthy continues the attack securing the ridge; he becomes a recipient of the Medal of Honor. Near Airfield No. I, Sergeant Ross Franklin Gray, Company A, 25th Marines, orders his detachment to withdraw from within range of enemy grenade range as they come under severe fire. He advances alone, discovering a large minefield, and subsequently clears a path through it. He then, under cover fire by three Marines, advances, taking out six enemy positions and killing about twenty-five enemy troops. Gray receives the Medal of Honor.

**February 23 1945 -(Pacific-Iwo Jima)** Old Glory is raised on Mt Suribachi by contingents of Company E, RCeT 28. The 3rd Marine Division (minus RCT's 3 and 21) are detached from Expeditionary Troops reserve and attached to V Amphibious Corps. Meanwhile, the 2nd Marine

Division reverts to area reserve. Offshore, Task Force 58.5 continues to support the land operation and provides night Fighter protection, while Task Force 58 moves out to launch air strikes against Tokyo. In the Third Marine Division area, enemy fire holds up tank movements. Corporal Hershel W. Williams, working under cover *fire* of four other Marines, advances singlehandedly to take out enemy positions and in one instance actually places the muzzle of a flamethrower into the air vent of a pillbox, incinerating the occupants. Soon after, a detachment of enemy troops charge toward him and encounter instant death as his flamethrower unleashes deadly accurate bursts of fire. Williams' Company Teaches its objective; he becomes the recipient of the Medal of Honor..

**February 24 1945 -(Pacific-Iwo Jima)** The remainder of the 3rd Marine Division lands on Beach Black. The V Amphibious Corps attacks toward line O-A, which splits the island about 800 yards north of Airfield No. 2; the assault disintegrates resistance in the center. The 2nd and 3rd Battalions, 24th Marines overcome strong resistance on Charlie-Dog Ridge near the east-west runway of Airfield No. 2.

**February 25 1945 -(Pacific-Carolines)** The Motor Minesweeper YMS-275 is damaged by a mine. (pacific-Iwo Jima) Marines continue advancing toward 0-2 line, making progress at Airfield No.2. The 3rd Marine Division takes responsibility for securing the central part of the Motoyama Plateau; the terrain includes Motoyama village and Airfields No. I and No.2. In other activity, the 12th Marines begin landing.

**February 26 1945 -(Pacific-Volcano Islands-Iwo Jima)** On U1e ground, enemy resistance remains fierce. Artillery plasters the heights at airfield 2 in support of U1e advancing RCT 9, 3rd Division. Meanwhile, the 4th Division drives against heavy resistance; contingents reach the southern slopes of Hm 382. PFC Douglas T. Jacobson (3rd Battalion, 23rd Marines) takes over a bazooka, subsequent to the death of its handler. then advances toward Hill 382 against withering fire which has his platoon pinned down. Jacobson eliminates two machine gun positions, then knocks out a blockhouse before moving against a second pillbox. He continues driving forward, knocking out six enemy positions, and then volunteers to assist another company. He advances, knocking out a pillbox and a tank which is pouring fire into American positions. His individual actions take out 16 enemy positions and kill about seventy-five Japs. Jacobson becomes the recipient of the Medal of Honor. In addition, the 5th Marine Division advances northward. In other activity, two planes attached to Marine Observation Squadron 4 Oy in from the escort carrier *Wasp*, becoming the first U.S. aircraft to land on the island; the Planes spot for artillery units. Antiaircraft artillery begins bombarding Kangoku and Kama Rocks off the west coast.

**February 27th 1945 -(Pacific-Iwo Jma)** The 1st and 2nd Battalions, 9th Marines, 3rd Marine Division reduce final resistance at Airfield No. 2. Meanwhile, the 1st Battalion. 9th Marines seize Hill Peter and the summit of 199 OBOE. During the fighting in the Third Marine Division sector (during 26th-27th), heavy enemy fire holds up the 2nd Battalion, 9th Marines. Private Wilson D. Watson, using his BAR, advances singlehandedly and charges a pillbox, keeping it neutralized until he gets close enough to throw a grenade. Subsequently, he and his assistant BAR man charge up the crest of the hill, receiving severe fire from the reverse slopes. Watson holds the hill until his Platoon joins him, despite heavy opposition, and kills sixty Japs in the process. He receives the Medal of Honor for his extraordinary courage. In the 4th Marine Division sector, RCT 23 drives to the summit of Hill 382, but it pulls back for the night. In the Fifth Marine Division sector, heavy enemy machine-gun fire holds up the advance of Company G, 3rd Battalion, 27th Marines as it attempts to secure Hill 362. Gunnery Sergeant William G. Walsh leads an attack and is thrown back by withering fire. Undaunted, Walsh leads a second charge up the ridge, and again his unit takes

high casualties; nevertheless, the ridge is gained. Soon after, an enemy grenade is thrown into the midst of the surviving men of his detachment; instinctively, Walsh throws his body on the grenade, saving the other men. His courageous actions allow his Company to seize the hill. Walsh receives the Medal of Honor posthumously. In other activity, Marine Observation Squadron 5 begins operations from Airfield No. I. Major General James E. Chaney, commanding general, Army Forces and Island Commander, lands with his headquarters and a contingent of the 147th Infantry Regiment, U.S.A.

**February 28 1945 -(Pacific-Iwo Jima)** The 3rd Battalion, 21st Marines, 3rd Marine Division secure Motoyama Village and the heights above Airfield No.3. In the 4th Marine Division sector, RCT 23 still meets heavy opposition at Hill 382; RCT 25 seizes more ground, but the Japanese still retain a pocket near Minami. In the 5th Marine Division sector, RCT 27 takes the forward slopes of Hill 362 south of Nishi. During the violent confrontation, many Marines are badly wounded. Pharmacist's Mate First Class John H. Willis, USN, becomes wounded while tending disabled Marines and is sent back to the aid-station. However, he moves back to the front without being released, reaching the front lines in the midst of heavy close-in fighting. He is administering plasma to an injured Marine when he comes under a grenade attack. Continuing to give the aid, he picks up the enemy grenade and tosses it back, then throws seven of his own grenades in rapid succession while simultaneously continuing to give the wounded Marine the transfusion. The next grenade goes off in his hand, killing him instantly. His inspirational actions greatly affect his outnumbered unit to take the objective and repulse a subsequent counterattack. Willis receives the Medal of Honor posthumously.

**March 1 1945 -(Pacific-Iwo Jima)**-RCT 21 seizes the western part of Airfield No. 3. In the 4th Marine Division sector, heavy fighting ensues at Hill 382; it falls to the 2nd Battalion, RCT 24 on the following day. Meanwhile, the 5th Marine Division's RCT 28 relieves RCT 27 and seizes Hill 362.

**March 2nd 1945 -(Pacific-Iwo Jima)** Elements of the 5th Marine Division drive against the western anchor of the Japanese cross-island defenses and secure Hill 362A. The 3rd Marine Division moves into Airfield No. 3; however, enemy fire pounds the area. Meanwhile, the 4th Marine Division, operating on the right flank of the Corps, advances against the entrenched enemy in caves and fortified pillboxes. In other activity, Airfield No. I becomes operational for transport aircraft.

**March 3rd 1945 -(Pacific-Iwo Jima)** The 3rd Marine Division secures Airfield No. 3; its 2nd Battalion, 21st Marines overruns Hills 357 and 362B, east of Motoyama Plateau, virtually terminating resistance between it and the eastern coast of the island. In the 5th Marine Division sector, Japanese infiltrators penetrate the lines of the 1st Battalion, 28th Marines. Sergeant William G. Harrell kills two of the attackers as they come out of a ravine and continues to fire, despite falling grenades. He continues holding his post, but is struck severely, losing his left hand and suffering a fractured thigh. While he attempts to reload his weapon, another soldier arrives with another weapon. However, the Japanese keep rushing and one wounds him again with the slash of a sword. Undaunted, Harrell kills the Jap and orders his wounded comrade to withdraw as two additional Japs advance into his foxhole. Ignoring the agonizing pain, he kills one with his pistol and takes the grenade which is very near his head and tosses it to the other Jap, killing him. Finally, at daylight, reinforcements arrive to evacuate Harrell, discovering twelve dead Japanese nearby, at least five of whom had been eliminated by Harrell. Sergeant Harrell receives the Medal of Honor for his unyielding courage and heroism. Also, Pharmacist's Mate Second Class, George E. Wahlen,

USN, distinguishes himself while assisting the 2nd Battalion, 26th Marines, 5th Marine Division. He had been severely wounded on 26th February, but remained on the battleground to continue giving aid to wounded Marines and was again wounded badly on March 2nd; however, he continued to treat about fourteen wounded men while under fierce mortar and smaB arms fire. His courageous actions under fire continue today as he moves across the battlefield, becoming wounded for the third time. Unable to walk, he crawls 50 yards through a wall of fire to give aid to a downed Marine. Wahlen receives the Medal of Honor for his extraordinary courage. Corporal Charles Joseph Berry, 1st Battalion, 26th Marines receives the Medal of Honor posthumously, after diving on a grenade to save the life of his buddies during the Japanese surprise attack against their positions. PFC William R. Caddy, Company I, 3rd Battalion, 26th Marines attempts to knock out an enemy obstacle as his platoon is advancing. Fierce sniper-fire pins them down and a burst of hand grenades is exchanged by the opposing forces. An enemy grenade falls into the foxhole and Caddy blankets it with his body to protect the other Marines. He receives the Medal of Honor posthumously. In addition, Pharmacist's Mate Third Class Jack Williams, serving with the 3rd Battalion, 28th Marines, becomes wounded three times while giving aid to the Marines. He continues exposing himself to enemy fire to assist the troops, ignoring his own wounds. Subsequent to giving aid, he dresses his wounds and attempts to make it back to safety. A sniper's bullet cuts him down with a mortal wound. Williams receives the Medal of Honor for his extraordinary courage. **(Southern Philippines)**-In the U.S. Eighth Army area, contingents of the Americal Division, bolstered by naval surface fire and Marine aircraft, land on Masbate, Burias, and Ticao Islands against no opposition, finding Ticao vacant; a sweep of Burias is initiated; however, no enemy forces are encountered until the 6th. Philippine guerrillas take over the islands on the 11th, permitting the 1st Battalion, 132nd Regiment to return to Leyte.

**March 5 1945 -(Pacific-Iwo Jima)** V.A.C. regroups for an offensive which commences on the following day. In other activity, the 3rd Marines, Expeditionary Troops Reserve embarks for Guam.

**March 6 1945 -(United States)** The USS *Gilbert Islands* (2nd commissioned Marine escort carrier) embarks the Marine Carrier Group 2 (VMF-512, VMTB-143, and CASD-2) at San Diego, California, and sails for the Pacific during April 1945. **(Pacific-Iwo Jima)** The 3rd, 4th, and 5th Marine Divisions mount a full scale attack driving northeast and east to eliminate the remaining resistance on the island. In other activity, Brigadier General Ernest C. Moore, U.S.A., commanding general Fighter Command, arrives at Airfield No. 1 with Planes of the 47th Fighter and 548th Night Fighter Squadrons.

**March 7 1945 -(Pacific-Iwo Jima)** Company K, 3rd Battalion, 9th Marines, 3rd Marine Division seizes Hill 362C in the northeastern part of the island. During the heavy fighting, several contingents become isolated. Second Lt. John H. Leims advances 400 yards singlehandedly and lays telephone lines. Orders come in to withdraw his platoon; however, several wounded men are still on the abandoned ridge. Leims defies heavy enemy fire and returns to rescue one wounded Marine; despite apparent exhaustion, he returns for a third time and carries out another wounded man. Leims becomes a recipient of the Medal of Honor for his heroism. In the 5th Marine Division sector, Hill 215 is overrun. In other activity, General James Chaney, U.S.A., takes responsibility for operation of the airfields, including air defenses. Brigadier General Ernest C. Moore, U.S.A., becomes Commander, Air, Iwo Jima.

**March 8 1945 -(Pacific-Iwo Jima)** Strong naval and artillery bombardments precede an assault by the VAC. Some ground is gained against heavy opposition. A counterattack (8th-9th) is repulsed by the 4th Marine Division; the Japanese suffer heavy losses. In the 5th Marine Division sector,

27th Marines zone, Japanese sneak up and throw a grenade into a foxhole manned by three Marines. PFC James D. La Belle shouts a warning, then throws his body on the grenade to shield the others, giving his life that they might live. He receives the Medal of Honor posthumously for his tremendous sacrifice. During another heated skirmish in the 5th Marine Division sector, enemy fire, which has been incessant for two days, continues to hinder operations. As the 2nd Battalion advances, intense fire halts it. First Lt. Jack Lummus advances to knock out the objective and is stunned by an exploding grenade; however, he recovers and destroys the pillbox, then moves against a second. He encounters more fierce fire and another grenade throws him to the ground, but he advances and destroys the obstacle. Soon after, he destroys a third pillbox singlehandedly and continues to attack until subsequently being mortally wounded after stepping on a land mine. His command continues the drive, inspired by his heroism; Lummus receives the Medal of Honor posthumously. In other activity, Army Planes (15th Fighter Group) assume combat air patrol duties and fly close support missions until March 10th. Advance echelon units of Marine Torpedo-Bomber Squadron 242 arrives from Tinian to fly antisubmarine patrols.

**March 9 1945 -(Pacific-Iwo Jima)** Elements of the 3rd Marine Division drive to the northeast coast, severing the remaining Japanese on the island. In the Fifth Marine Division sector, Japanese fire halts the advance of a platoon of the 1st Battalion, 27th Marines. Sergeant Joseph R. Julian orders his men to deploy their guns while he advances and knocks out a pillbox, killing its occupants. Sergeant Julian gets more ammunition and advances further, eliminating two more cave positions. He continues the one-man attack moving against the final obstacle, but a devastating burst of enemy fire wounds him mortally just as he destroys it. Sergeant Joseph Julian receives the Medal of Honor posthumously. Admiral Turner's Carrier Force departs for Guam, subsequent to turning over command to Admiral Hill redesignated Senior Officer Present Afloat Iwo Jima),

**March 10 1945 -(Pacific)** Marine Fighter Squadrons begin returning to the United States. By the 13th, Squadrons 112, 123, 124, 212, 213, 216, 217, and 451 are detached from Task Force 58 for the return trip. U.S. Marine ground crews remain behind to accommodate Navy F4u's. **(Pacific-Iwo Jima)** The 3rd Marine Division sector is cleared of resistance except for a Japanese pocket in the 9th Marines' area and some sporadic resistance in the cliffs overlooking the beach. Meanwhile, the 4th Marine Division terminates resistance at the Amphitheater Turkey Knob.

**March 11 1945 -(Pacific-Iwo Jima)** The VAC. commences the final phase to secure the island; the 3rd and 4th Marine Divisions push to the east coast, while the 5th Division drives north. Enemy resistance is terminated in the 4th Division sector, except one obstinate pocket to the right.

**March 12 1945 -(Pacific-Iwo Jima)** The 1st and 3rd Battalions, 9th Marines, 3rd Marine Division, drive west toward "Cushman's Pocket, the last remaining stronghold on the island; it is permeated with interconnecting caves and pill boxes. Despite the destruction of many obstacles, only slight gains are made. In other activity, the island's airfields are renamed South, Center, and North Airfields.

**March 13 1945 -(Pacific-Iwo Jima)** The 3rd and 4th Marine Division continue mop-up operations. Meanwhile, the 5th Marine Division, supported by flamethrowers, tanks, and artillery, continues its attack against the remaining resistance and advances steadily; Air support is absent due to the terrain.

**March 14th 1945 -(Pacific-Japan)** Marine Fighter Squadrons 214 and 452 stationed aboard the USS *Franklin* join the Fifth Fleet and participate in raids against the Inland Sea, the Kobe, and the Kobe and Kure harbors (19th). **(Pacific-Iwo Jima)** The Stars and Stripes is officially raised on Iwo Jima at V Amphibious Corps Headquarters (09:30), proclaiming U.S. Naval Military government

of the island. Subsequent to the celebration, Lt. General Holland M. Smith, commander Expeditionary Troops, departs for Guam. Meanwhile, the 3rd and 4th Marine Division continue mop-up operations in their respective sectors. The 5th Marine Division's 1st and 2nd Battalions. 9th Marines, drive about 600 yards against heavy resistance. The attack is supported by P51s and becomes the final air support of the campaign. During this fighting, the Japs have continued to infiltrate American lines. In one instance, an enemy grenade is tossed into a foxhole while the troops are trying to get some sleep after another bitter night-long fight. Private George Phillips, 2nd Battalion, 28th Marines, the only man aware of the deadly intruder, shouts a warning, then dives onto the grenade taking its full concussion, giving his life to save the other Marines; he receives the Medal of Honor posthumously. Also, Private Franklin E. Sigler, 2nd Battalion, 26th Marines, leads a rifle squad and singlehandedly wipes out a nest which had been hindering his company's progress for several days. Suddenly, more Jap guns begin firing at Sigler. He dashes up the cliffs to get to the caves, startling the enemy with his one-man assault. Despite being badly wounded, he crawls back to his squad and continues to direct their fire. Meanwhile, he carries several wounded Marines back behind the lines and returns to continue the fight. Private Sigler becomes a recipient of the Medal of Honor.

**March 15th 1945 -(Pacific-Iwo Jima)** The 3rd and 4th Marine Divisions continue to eradicate remaining enemy resistance. The 5th Marine Division advances another 400 yards on the right and 200 yards in the center against heavy opposition. In the 4th Marine Division zone, the Japanese pound the positions of contingents of the 2nd Battalion, 24th Marines. Pharmacist's Mate First Class Francis J. Pierce, seeing two of eight stretcher bearers wounded while transporting wounded Marines, takes charge. He carries the two recently wounded men to safety, then directs the evacuation of three other wounded men. He stands exposed, trading shots with the enemy to distract attention from the evacuation. He begins to give aid to another wounded man, but a nearby Jap begins firing from close range. Pierce again stands to draw fire, bringing the Jap from his cave and killing him before throwing the wounded Marine over his shoulders and transporting him about 200 yards through heavy fire to safety. On the following morning, Pierce leads a Combat Patrol to the sniper's hideout, and while he is giving aid to yet another wounded Marine, he becomes severely wounded himself; he declines medical treatment for himself and continues laying cover fire for the attacking Marines.

**March 16 1945 -(Pacific-Iwo Jima)** The remaining Japanese at Cushman's Point on the northern coast are decimated by the 1st and 2nd Battalions, RCT 21 (reinforced), 3rd Marine Division, ending all resistance in its sector. Also, all enemy resistance in the 4th Marine Division area ceases as RCT 25 drives to the beach road on the east coast of the island. Iwo Jima is declared secure, but some resistance remains at Kitano Point and the draw to the southwest. The Japanese defenders had not been reinforced or resupplied. In addition, their water supplies had become exhausted; enemy troops would sneak out of their caves after dark and search for empty food cans (discarded by the Yanks) hoping to find them full of rain water.

**March 17 1945 -(Pacific-Iwo Jima)** Contingents of 5th Marine Division drive north to destroy the remaining resistance at Kitano Point.

**March 18 1945 -(Pacific-Iwo Jima)** Contingents of the 3rd Marine Division patrol and also complete mop-up operations until relieved by Garrison troops.

**March 19 1945 -(United States)** The USS *Block Island* (first Marine escort carrier commissioned) embarks Marine Carrier Group 1 (YMF-511, VMTB-233, and CASD-1) at San Diego, heading for Pearl Harbor to deploy with the fleet. **(Pacific-Iwo Jima)** The 4th Marine Division embarks for

Hawaii. Contingents of the 5th Marine Division continue to drive against Kitano Point.

**March 20th 1945 -(Pacific-Iwo Jima)** The 147th Infantry, USA, arrives from New Caledonia to assume responsibility for defense of the island; it is attached to the 3rd Marine Division.

**March 21 1945 -(United States)** Commandant General Alexander A. Vandegrift becomes the first four-star general in the Marine Corps on active duty.

**March 22 1945-(Pacific-Iwo Jima)** Elements of the 5th Marine Division, assisted by flamethrowing tanks, continue advancing against the final opposition at Kitano Point. The Japanese continue to resist fiercely.

**March 24th 1945 -(Pacific-Iwo Jima)** RCT 28, 5th Marine Division is given the task of eliminating the final Japanese pocket on the island. The pocket is about 50 square yards along the coast. It is thought that General Kuribayashi is alive and holding out in 4 concealed cave, but he is never discovered.

**March 26th 1945 -(Pacific-Iwo Jima)** The Japanese initiate their final attack as 200 or more troops attempt to infiltrate lines; 196 die suddenly. During the violent contest, 1st Lt. Harry Linn Martin, 5th Pioneer Battalion, groups the Marines near his foxhole to form a line of fire to halt the intruders; however, the Japs keep rushing. Martin spots several of his men who are isolated and attempts to rescue them, braving heavy fire from a captured Marine machine gun to reach them. He then guides them to safety. blasting several Japs as he moves. Soon after, he singlehandedly destroys four more Japs who had seized an overrun foxhole. Sensing the increasing danger of a breakthrough, Martin orders an attack to break up the fanatical assault. He gives his life, but his heroism breaks up a superior force and saves much of his platoon and company. At 08:00, Major General James E. Chaney, who had been appointed commander ETO when established June 8th, 1942, assumes title of Island Commander, concluding the capture and occupation phase. of the Iwo campaign. The 5th Marine Division transfers its zone to the 3rd Marine Division and continues to reembark, leaving RCT 9, 3rd Marine Division, and RCT 147 U.S.A, to share responsibility for the island. RCT 21, 3rd Marine Division reembarks for Guam, The approximate 23,000 defenders of the island are almost annihilated; their near impregnable positions have inflicted extremely heavy casualties upon the Americans, which sustain about 5,500 killed out of a total casualty List of over 20,000 men, about 30 percent casualties out of the invasion force of 60,000 men. The capture of this island further seals the fate of the Japanese as it tightens the blockade of Japan and gives the U.S. an airbase which will now save thousands of additional airmen as the air field provides an alternative to crashing in the sea if they run out of fuel or become disabled while returning from bombing missions. **(Pacific-Ryukyu Islands)** Operation ICEBERG commences as the 77th Division lands on Kerama Island to seize a seaplane base to be used for the main invasion of Okinawa. Following a horrendous air and naval bombardment, four boat landing Teams assault four of the islands simultaneously and with effective swiftness. The Japanese get some planes airborne, but the attacks are disorganized and consist primarily of kamikazes. At 08:04, BLT 3, RCT 305 lands on Aka Island and easily seizes the village of Aka, while securing two thirds of the island. BLT 1, RCT 306 overruns Geruma Island and deploys artillery to bolster subsequent operations; BLT 1, RCT 305 sweeps and secures about a third of Zamami Island and soon alter, handily repulses multiple counterattacks. BLT 2, RCT 306 seizes Hokaji Island without incident and a Reserve BLT (2 RCT 307) is subsequently committed and seizes Yakabi Island aiter some brief exchanges of fire. Meanwhile, patrols of Fleet Marine Force Amphibious Reconnaissance Battalion (attached to 77th Division) lands on Keise Island which lies within artillery range of the majority of southern Okinawa and discovers it undefended. Long-range naval guns and aircraft supplement the ground

operations, and in conjunction, the fast carrier fleets and naval warships continue to pound enemy positions on Okinawa.

**April 1 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)** At 08:30, subsequent to a huge naval and air bombardment by forces of the Fifth Fleet, the Joint Expeditionary Force (TF 51) under Admiral Turner lands the 111 Amphibious Corps (1st and 6th Marine Divisions) and the XXIV Corps (7th and 96th Division ), U.S. Tenth Army on the southwest shore of Okinawa near Hagushi, against light opposition. The Northern Attack Force (TF 53), under Rear Admiral Reifsnider, lands the Marines north of the Bishi River, and the Southern Attack Force (TF55), under Rear Admiral 1. L. Hall, lands the infantry south of the river. Both move inland, gaining beachhead about 15,000 yards long and between 4,000,5,000 yards deep. The XXIV Corps' 7th Division seizes Kadena Airfield while the 96th Division secures the area south and southeast of its beaches, advancing to a river beyond Chatan on the coast. The III Corps seizes Yontan Airfield with its 6th Marine Division while the 1st Marine Division races south in conjunction with the XXIV Corps and breezes through Sobe village. U.S. Naval damages during invasion: battleship *West Virginia* ( BB-48). by kamikaze; destroyer *Pritchett* (00-56 1), by dive bomber; destroyer escort *Vammen*, by striking mine; minesweeper *Skirmish* (AM-303) , by dive bomber; attack cargo ships *Achernar* (AKA-53) and *Tyrrell* (AKA-80), by kamikazes. In addition, the attack transports *Elmore* (APA-42) and *Alpine* (APA-92) are damaged by a horizontal bomber and a kamikaze respectively.

**April 2 1945-(Pacific-Ryukyu Islands-Okinawa)** The 2nd Marine Division throws the Japanese main body off guard by feigning an invasion on the eastern side of the island at the Minatoga beaches. Meanwhile, the Japanese still offer only nominal resistance as the U.S. Tenth Army drives inland. Both Kadena and Vodontan Airfields are operational for emergency use. Artillery-spitting planes begin to arrive; the first U.S. plane to land on the island is one from Marine Observation Squadron 2 which lands on Yontan Airstrip. In the III Corps area, the 6th Marine Division drives into the foothills of Yontan-Zan, after securing a peninsula northwest of Hagushi to eradicate entrenched resistance in the ridges and mountains. Meanwhile, the 1st Marine Division's 1st Marines advance on the right; two Battalions of the 1st Marines push to line Ishimmi-Kutoku-Chatan. In the XXIV Corps area, the 184th Regiment, 7th Division, closes a gap on the left flank, while the 17th Regiment advances to the high ground dominating Nakagusuku Bay; patrols move to the east coast, slicing the island in two. In addition, the 32nd Regiment eliminates a strongpoint south of Koza. Meanwhile, the 96th Division drives forward, getting elements beyond Shimabuku and near Futema on the left and right respectively; however, the Japanese stronghold near Mombaru hinders the center thrust of the divisional advance.

**April 3 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)** In the III Corps sector, the 6th Marine Division drives about 7,000 yards securing the Yontan-Zan hill, and in addition, its left flank expands to the Ishikawa Isthmus. Meanwhile, the 1st Marine Division advances to the east coast and sends Patrols which reach Hizaonna on the Katchin Peninsula. In other activity, a disabled F6F makes a successful landing on Yontan Airfield.

**April 4th 1945 -(Pacific-Iwo Jima)** The 147th Regiment, USA assumes responsibility for both ground defenses and mop-up operations on the island; the 9th Marines, 3rd Marine Division prepare to depart for Guam. (Pacific-Okinawa) In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Corps commanding general establishes his command post ashore. The 6th Marine Division attacks north, driving up the Ishikawa peninsula, subsequent to relinquishing responsibility for Yontan airstrip to the 29th Marines; all three airstrips are declared operational for fighter planes. In addition, the 1st Marine Division occupies the Katchin Peninsula. In the XXIV Corps sector, the Japanese offer hardened

opposition against the 96th Division as it drives down the west coast toward the hill mass stretching from Urasoe-Mura to Ould. Also, the 7th Division encounters rigid resistance as it presses forward at the ruins of an ancient fortress castle west of Kuba.

**April 6 1945-**On Okinawa. In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Amphibious Corps sector, elements of the 6th Marine Division continue moving up Ishikawa Peninsula. In the XXIV Corps sector, the 96th Division commences its attack against the Shuti defenses in the southern sector of the island. The 383rd Regiment clears about half of Cactus Ridge after bitter fighting. Meanwhile, the 7th Division's 184th Regiment, operating on the Division's right flank, pounds the enemy with close fire support and extensive use of flame throwers, reducing resistance at a formidable outpost position about 1,000 yards southwest of Arakachi. In addition, the 32nd Regiment advances through the coastal sector with ease.

**April 7 1945-(Pacific-Ryukyu Islands)** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, the first F4u fighter planes of Marine Aircraft Group 31 arrive on Okinawa at Yontan Airfield. Meanwhile, FMF reconnaissance company scouts the remaining Eastern Islands -Takanare, Heanza, Hamahika, and Kutake Shima; Japanese are found on one island. In the HI Amphibious Corps sector, the 6th Marine Division advances to line Nago-Taira at the Motobu Peninsula; the battle for it begins on the following day. In the XXIV Corps sector, Cactus Ridge falls to the 383rd Regiment, 96th Division. Meanwhile, the 184th Regiment pounds unsuccessfully against the front slopes of a hill about 1,000 yards west of Minami-Uebaru; however, contingents swing around and seize the outpost with a flanking assault.

**April 8 1945-(Pacific-Ryukyu Islands) Okinawa-** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, the 29th Marines, 6th Marine Division advance across the base of the Motobu Peninsula and occupy Gagusuku and Yamadadobaru, opening the battle for control of the peninsula. In the XXIV Corps sector, air, artillery, and naval gunfire supports the attack of the 383rd Regiment, 96th Division as it drives to seize Kakazu Ridge; fierce Japanese resistance holds the line and the Japs pour mortar fire in front of the approaches. Meanwhile, the 7th Division's 184th Regiment hammers against Tomb Hill and Triangulation Hill, seizing the latter. In conjunction, the 32nd Regiment, 7th Division, advances in the coastal sector.

**April 9 1945-Southern Philippines** In the U.S. Eighth Army area, on Cebu. the Americal Division deploys to commence an enfilade fire upon Jap positions in the mountainous interior. After dark, RCT 164 arrives at Cebu City. On Negros, the 40th Division encounters fierce resistance as it drives against enemy positions in the mountains; the 185th gains about 6,000 yards; the 160th pushes to Hill 3155 (renamed Dolan Hill); the 503rd Paratroop Infantry, on the left, encounters impenetrable fire, halting it as it drives toward Manzanares. Meanwhile. the 41st Division moves to secure the Calamian Islands, north of Palawan; contingents land unopposed on Busuanga Island. In the Sulu Archipelago, RCT 163 (minus 3rd Battalion) lands unopposed on Jolo Island, subsequent to two weeks of relentless bombardment by the U.S. Seventh Fleet; a support Air Team Tom Marine Aircraft Group 32 accompanies the mission. **(Pacific-Ryukyu Islands)** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Amphibious Corps sector, the 29th Marines, 6th Marine Division, continue probing the Motobu Peninsula. Meanwhile. Kadena Airfield is declared ready to handle aircraft; planes from Marine Aircraft Wing 33 begin to operate against the enemy. In the XXIV Corps sector, contingents of the 383rd Regiment, 96th Division, launch a predawn surprise attack against Kakazu Ridge in the Shuri defense system; however, intense enemy fire forces a withdrawal; the engagement costs both sides heavy casualties. During the murderous encounter, PFC Edward Moskala races through 40 yards of withering fire and knocks out two machine guns. During his company's withdrawal,

he and eight other soldiers form a rear guard, forestalling the enemy for three hours; he kills more than 25 Japs before the contingent pulls back. One wounded man is left behind and Moskala runs the gauntlet with other volunteers to rescue him. Soon after, while he is protecting other wounded troops, he kills four infiltrators before getting mortally wounded. PFC Moskala receives the Medal of Honor posthumously. Meanwhile, the 184th Regiment, 7th Division, seizes Tomb Hill. In other activity, the main body of the 27th Division (less RCT 105) debarks on Orange Beach near Kadena to bolster the ground troops.

**April 10 1945-(Pacific-Ryukyu Islands)** Carrier aircraft and naval surface vessels give umbrella coverage to the 3rd Battalion, 105th Regiment, 27th Division, which lands on Tsuken Shima off Okinawa to seek and destroy isolated Japanese forces on this, the only defended island in the Eastern Island. In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Amphibious Corps sector on Okinawa, the 29th Marines, 6th Marine Division continues to whack against Jap positions on Yae-Take hill mass on the Motobu Peninsula; the 2nd Battalion captures Unten Ko, a submarine and torpedo boat base. In the XXIV Corps area, the 381st and 383rd Regiments, 96th Division, bolstered by enormous fire support, drives against Kakazu Ridge. Bitter fighting ensues; however, the Japanese are not dislodged, despite gaining territory. Meanwhile, the 7th Division continues advancing toward Ouki.

**April 11 1945 (Pacific-Ryukyu Islands)** The Japanese mount another heavy Kamikaze attack against the U.S. fleet off Okinawa, compelling Task Force 58 to concentrate on destroying the attacking plane at the expense of the ongoing support missions with the ground troops. The battleship *Missouri* (BB-63) and the aircraft carrier *Enterprise* (CV-6) are struck by suicide planes, and the carrier *Essex* (CV-9) is damaged by a dive bomber; the *Enterprise* retires to Ulithi for repairs. In addition, the destroyers *Bullard* (DD-660) and the *Kidd* (DD-661) are damaged by kamikazes, the destroyer *Hank* (DD-702) is hit by aerial strafing, and the destroyer *Hale* (DD-642) incurs damage by a dive bomber. Destroyer escorts *Manlove* (DE-36) and *Samuel S. Miles* (DE-183) are damaged by aerial strafing and a kamikaze respectively. During the melee, the attack transport *Berrien* (APA-62) is damaged by collision and the attack cargo ship *Leo* (AKA-60) and the destroyer *Trathen* (DD-530) are accidentally struck by U.S. naval gunfire. To close out the navy's damages, the LST 399 suffers damage by grounding. On Tsugen Shima, the 27th Division terminates its two-day mission, counting 234 Japanese dead. The U.S. Tenth Army jumps the schedule slightly, ordering the 77th Division to seize Ie Shima on the 16th (originally set for Phase II of the campaign). In the III Amphibious Corps sector, the 6th Marine Division continues grinding forward on the Motobu Peninsula against entrenched Japanese in the mountainous region Yae-Take. In the XXIV Corps sector, resolute Japanese resistance prevents the 96th Division from securing Kakazu Ridge. Meanwhile, the 7th Division propels contingents into Ouki; however, the lack of tanks forces the 32nd Regiment to pull-back. The Japanese resistance has caused stalemate along the entire corps front at the Shuri approaches.

**April 12 1945-(Pacific-Iwo Jima)** The final elements of the 9th Marines, 3rd Marine Division depart Guam, having concluded its participation in the mop-up operations on the island.

**April 13 1945-(Pacific-Ryukyu Islands)** The Fleet Marine Force Amphibious Reconnaissance Battalion occupies Minna Shima, off the northern coast of Okinawa, in concert with an intensified preinvasion bombardment of Ie Shima; the battalion lands in preparation for the assault against Ie Shima. In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Amphibious Corps sector, final preparations are made by the 6th Marine Division, to eradicate the entrenched positions of the Japanese on the Motobu Peninsula in the Yae-Take hill mass. Contingents of the 22nd Marines drive to the northern tip of the west coast of Okinawa, reaching Hedo. Meanwhile, other contingents maintain reconnaissance

operations on the east coast and some head inland. In the XXIV Corps sector, Japanese infiltrators which are still alive are being destroyed by mop-up teams; in addition, corps continues to repulse futile counterattacks. During one nasty attack, the Japanese become acquainted with Beaufort T. Anderson, 381st Infantry, 96th Division; during the predawn hours, the Japs spring a stunning blow against the flank of Company C. Sergeant Anderson directs his men to a timeworn tomb, then shatters the screaming attackers by emptying one magazine at pointblank range, then he tosses one of the enemy mortars, which had not exploded, into their midst, killing several. The Banzai screams diminish further as he hoists U.S. mortar shells. pulls the pins and hurls them at the befuddled enemy between bursts of fire from his carbine. Beaufort Anderson is wounded seriously, but he has decimated the attack and saved the company flank from collapse. His actions account for the termination of several enemy machine guns, enemy knee mortars and at least 25 enemy Soldiers; he receives the Medal of Honor.

**April 14th 1945 -(Pacific-Philippines)** Luzon In the U.S. Sixth Army area, heavy skirmishing continues as contingents of RCT 158 press San Francisco, subsequent to additional air strikes. In the I Corps sector, following an air strike, the 148th Regiment, 37th Division attacks toward Monglo; contingents reach Hairpin Hill, less than 1,000 yards from the town. Marine SBDs attached to Marine Aircraft Group 24 fly the last Marine aviation mission on Luzon in support of the 37th Division attack. (Pacific-Ryukyu Islands) In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Amphibious Corps sector, the 4th Marines and the 29th Marines. 6th Marine Division, bolstered by air, naval surface fire, and artillery, attack the Yae-Take hill mass on the Motobu Peninsula. The 4th Marines drive east while the 29th Marines drive west and southwest, encountering fierce terrain and tenacious opposition; however, the 4th Marines advance to the initial ridges. In the XXIV Corps sector, the Japanese mount another predawn fanatical attack, and again it is repulsed, terminating any further such attempts.

**April 15 1945-(Pacific-Ryukyu Islands)** Artillery comes ashore on Minna Island to bolster the invasion of Ie Shima. Meanwhile, the plastering of Ie Shima by aircraft and naval surface gunfire continues. In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Amphibious Corps sector, the Japanese continue resisting bitterly on the Motobu Peninsula, forcing the 6th Marine Division to move forward under extremely heavy fire, eliminating the entrenched Japs methodically in costly fighting. During the brutalizing encounter, PFC Harold Gonsalves, acting as Scout Sergeant, 4th Battalion, 15th Marines, accompanies his commanding officer and one other Marine on a mission taking them into heavy fire on Mount Yae Take to coordinate the artillery fire. As they advance to the front line, an enemy grenade is tossed into their midst. Gonsalves immediately throws his body on the grenade, saving the lives of the other Marines; he receives the Medal of Honor posthumously. On the following day, the Marines launch a full-measured attack to crush the obstinate resistance.

**April 16 1945-(Pacific-Ryukyu Islands)** Subsequent to a naval and air bombardment, contingents of the 77th Division hit the south and southwest coast of Ie Shima at 08:00, the 305th and 306th Regiments landing on the right and left respectively. The Regiments race inland, overcoming mines and resistance, seizing about two-thirds of the island and securing the airfield. After dark, the Japs spring counterattacks against the perimeter of the 305th Regiment, but the Yanks clobber the attackers and hold their ground. The 77th completes capture of the island by the 21st. Marine Aircraft Groups 31 and 33 fly combat air patrol in support of the landing. On Okinawa, in the III Amphibious Corps sector, the 6th Marine Division throws a powerful blow against the Japs on Motobu Peninsula, striking from three directions. Companies A and C, 1st Battalion, 4th Marines seize Yae Lake, the mountain fortress and primary terrain feature on the peninsula, shattering enemy

organized resistance. Corporal Richard Earl Bush's squad (1st Battalion) is the first unit to drive through the squall of fire and reach the summit from where they flush the defenders from their positions. Bush becomes wounded and is being treated by medics when a grenade is thrown among the wounded; Bush instinctively pulls the live grenade to his prone body and absorbs the entire shock, saving many of his buddies. Bush receives the Medal of Honor for his extraordinary bravery. In the XXIV Corps sector, regrouping occurs in preparation for a full-strength assault on the 19th. **April 17 1945-Southern Philippines** In the U.S. Eighth Army area, Victor V Attack Group (TG 78.2), commanded by Rear Admiral Albert G. Noble, commences an air and naval gunfire bombardment to soften resistance for elements of the X Corps' 24th Division, awaiting to land on Mindanao. Upon cessation of the attack, the main force lands near Parang and a second contingent lands north of Malabang, each hitting the beach without resistance. As reports had previously indicated, Malabang is controlled by guerrillas when the 21st Regiment arrives there. The rapid inland advance captures Parang and the high ground above Polloc harbor. Also, Ground echelon of Marine Aircraft Group 24 participate in the landing.

**April 18 1945-(Pacific-Ryukyu Islands)** On Ie Shima, the 77th Division still battles fiercely to gain control of "Bloody Ridge," striking it from the south and from the west; the Japanese resist tenaciously, making progress difficult. Elements of the 305th Regiment puncture the defenses at Ie Town, but subsequently withdraw to the outskirts. Meanwhile, the 306th Regiment drives to the northeast coast. In other activity, Ernie Pyle, the famous war correspondent, known widely as the soldiers' best friend, is killed by enemy sniper fire. On Okinawa, in the U.S. Tenth Army area, Army opens its Command Post. In the III Amphibious Corps sector, Marines drive northward, chasing retreating Japanese. In the XXIV Corps sector, corps continues preparations for a full scale attack to be launched on the 19th. Meanwhile, Company G, 106th Regiment, 27th Division begins a quiet crossing of the Machinato Inlet at 16:30, quickly capturing Machinato village, setting the stage for engineers who move in and construct a bridge across the inlet by midnight.

**April 19th 1945 -(Pacific)** The USMC Provisional Air Support Command is disbanded, being replaced by Marine Air Support Control Units. Amphibious Forces, Pacific.

**April 20 1945-Southern Philippines-**Marine Aircraft Group 24, having departed Luzon, begins arriving at Malabang, Mindanao. (Pacific-Ryukyu Islands) On Ie Shima, the 77th Division, which is attacking south, pivots its 306th Regiment to the north. It encircles the Pinnacle (Iegusugu Mountain) while the 305th and 307th Regiments secure positions on Bloody Ridge. In the U.S. Tenth Army area, XXIV Corps sector, the Japanese continue raising fervent resistance, preventing rapid progress. At an obstinate strongpoint known as "Item Pocket," north of Gusukuma, the battle rages for the following week before the 165th Regiment, 27th Division breaks through. Meanwhile, the 105th and 106th Regiments receive equally fierce resistance as they pound against Urasoe-Mura Escarpment, crashing against the East and West Pinnacles, the dominating features near Iso Village. The 2nd Battalion, 105th Regiment drives a wedge into the escarpment by bypassing the East Pinnacle, but the Japanese surround the unit. Meanwhile, the 1st Battalion, 105th attacks to eliminate the bypassed resistance and progresses rapidly in the Kakazu area; however, after dark the Japanese return to the region in force. In other activity, the 96th Division eradicates remaining resistance, seizing Tombstone Ridge while continuing its contest to secure Nishibaru Ridge. In the meantime, the 7th Division moves punishingly against heavy resistance gaining a slim hold on Ouki Hill, but the Japanese halt its progress in the Rocky Crags region. In the III Amphibious Corps sector, final organized resistance on Motobu Peninsula is crushed as the 4th and 29th Marines, 6th Marine Division reach the north coast of the peninsula. Corps zone on Okinawa is secure;

nevertheless, mop-up operations continue as a few small groups of Japs are still alive.

**April 22 1945-Southern Phlippines** In the U.S. Eighth Army area, X Corps sector, the 31st Division (minus 2nd Battalion, 167th Regiment) lands on Mindanao, relieving contingents of the 24th Division, permitting them to drive across the island to Davao Gulf. The 19th Regiment, 24th Division, advances to positions about three miles southeast of Balabac. Meanwhile, the 3rd Battalion, 34th Regiment, advances, seizing the road junction of Highway 1 and Sayre Highway before pushing to the area near Kabacan. The U.S. progress divides the Japanese forces on the island. Marine Aircraft Group 24, based at Malabang, begins support operations, bolstering the advance of the 24th and 31st Army Divisions. In the Sulu Archipelago, on Jolo Island, RCT 163, 41st Division, drives fiercely, seizing Mt. Daho effortlessly, eliminating the final strongpoint on the island, and terminating organized resistance.

**April 30 1945-(Pacific-Ryukyu Islands)** As of today, the Japanese have lost over 1,100 Aircraft to naval forces since the 26th of March, excluding those destroyed by aircraft and AA guns. Although the Japs have sunk some ships as well as damaging many others, no capital warships have been sunk, and in addition, the fleet is still here to stay. Today's raid by the kamikazes damage the destroyer *Bennion* (DD-662) and the Minelayer *Terror* (CM-5). On Okinawa, in the U.S. Tenth Army area, the 27th Division, operating on the Corps' west flank, begins to be relieved by the 1st Marine Division. which is attached to Corps. The Marines, subsequent to relieving the 165th Regiment, head for the Asa River line. Meanwhile, the bloody struggle for Maeda Escarpment continues to rage as the 77th Division takes over for the 96th Division and continues the furious fight. Also, the Japanese holding Kochi Ridge refuse to relent, despite increasing pressure by the 17th Regiment, 7th Division, however, elements of the 32nd Regiment gain ground on a ridge southwest of Kuhazu.

**May 1 1945-(Pacific-Ryukyu Islands-Okinawa)** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, XXIV Corps sector, the 1st Marine Division finishes relieving the 27th Division and assumes responsibility for Corps' western flank. Meanwhile, the Japanese raise fervent opposition, greatly hindering the Marines as they advance to the Asa River line. The 77th Division's 1st Battalion, 307th Regiment unsuccessfully attacks the eastern edge of the Maeda Escarpment; contingents scale the difficult slopes using ladders and cargo nets, but the few who hit the top are pushed back by a night counterattack. Also, the Japanese repulse the 3rd Battalion, 307th Regiment at the Apartment House. In other activity, the 7th Division's 32nd Regiment is relieved by the 184th Regiment; however, Jap infiltration complicates the endeavor. Meanwhile, the 184th Regiment's Company L pierces enemy lines on Gaja Ridge during the night of the 1st-2nd, but it pulls back. Also, additional forces continue to secure the paths to Kochi Ridge to permit the 17th Regiment to seize it.

**May 2 1945-(Pacific-Ryukyu Islands-Okinawa)** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, XXIV Corps sector, the 1st and 5th Marines, 1st Marine Division drive west toward the Asa River, but the Japanese control commanding positions with excellent observation of the Marines and pound them with effective fire, holding progress to a minimum. Japanese infiltrators encroach Marine positions and a deadly exchange of hand grenades commences. An enemy grenade falls into a foxhole and PFC William A. Foster (1st Marines) smothers it with his body, saving his buddy. Despite being mortally wounded, Foster hands his remaining two grenades to the other Marine, stating: "MAKE THEM COUNT!" Foster receives the Medal of Honor for his heroism and extraordinary courage under fire. Also, Robert E. Bush, Hospital Apprentice, USN Reserve receives the Medal of Honor (or heroism above and beyond the call of duty while attached to the 5th Marines, 1st Marine Division; Bush advances through walls of enemy fire to give medical aid to the wounded. Upon

reaching the crest of the hill to assist a wounded Officer, the Japs counterattack. Undaunted, he calmly continues giving the officer plasma with one hand and brandishing his pistol with his other hand, expending his ammunition on the attackers. He discards the pistol and clasps a carbine, delivering more fire against the enemy at pointblank range. He becomes wounded, but refuses aid and waits until the officer is taken to safety; Bush walks to the aid station and collapses, but recovers to receive the Medal of Honor. In the 77th Infantry Division zone, the vicious fight for Maeda Escarpment still rages; still, the Japanese retain control. Meanwhile, the 17th Regiment, 7th Division continues without success to secure a knob on Kochi Ridge; in conjunction, the 184th Regiment takes Gaja Ridge, but soon loses it to a counterattack. However, the consistent pressure has taken its toll on the Japanese as they confer and decide to launch a full scale attack on May 4th. **May 2 1945-(Pacific-Ryukyu Islands-Okinawa)** The Japanese mount a full scale counterattack, the only major offensive of the campaign. Kamikazes strike the fleet in strength, and later, during the night of the 3rd-4th, two separate amphibious landings are attempted to get behind American lines. The amphibious troops which move to the east and west casts are met by fierce U.S. reaction, including assistance by Marine planes, Antiaircraft units, and contingents of the 1st Marine Division. Combined, the army and Marine forces pulverize the Japs, destroying nearly all the landing craft and killing between 500-800 enemy troops. Some make it to the beaches, but they are annihilated. In other activity, contingents of the 77th Division surge to the crest of Maeda Escarpment; however, incessant fire from the reverse slopes pounds their positions. Also, the Japanese on Koehi Ridge repulse an attack by the 1st and 3rd Battalions. 17th Regiment. 7th Division.

**May 4 1945-(Pacific-Ryukyu Islands-Okinawa)** The Japanese launch another suicidal attack against the U.S. fleet and also hit land areas including the Yontan Airfield. Japanese suicide planes damage the escort carrier *Sangamon* (CVE-26), the destroyer *Cowell* (DD-547), light minelayer *Gwin* (DM-33), high speed minesweeper *Hopkins* (DMS-13), and the motor minesweeper YMS-331. In addition, the motor minesweeper YMS-327, is damaged by a kamikaze and accidentally by U.S. naval gunfire, and the minesweeper *Gayety* (AM-239) is damaged by a suicide piloted bomb. Also, the motor minesweeper YMS-311 is accidentally struck by U.S. naval gunfire, and the destroyer *Hudson* (DD-475) is damaged by collision. The motor gunboat PGM-17 is damaged by grounding. In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Amphibious Corps moves south and is replaced in the sector by the 27th Division. In the XXIV Corps sector, the 7th Division and the 306th Regiment, 77th Division hold the line against the Japanese onslaught. In conjunction, the 1st Marine Division attacks the enemy west of Machinato Airfield against strong resistance and sustains heavy casualties. Company I, 1st Marines advances up a hill; a rifle platoon is surprised by Japanese moving up the reverse slope and a tenacious hand grenade exchange develops. An enemy grenade lands in the midst of a group of Marines and instinctively, Sergeant Elbert L. Kinser dives upon it and receives the full blast to save the other Marines; he receives the Medal of Honor posthumously for his heroism in the face of certain death. The 307th Regiment, 77th Division pounds against resolute opposition on the Maeda Escarpment, and it makes some progress.

**May 6 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)** [In the U.S. Tenth Army area, XXIV Corps sector. the 1st Marine Division still hits resolute resistance and is unable to gain much terrain. The 1st Marines attack to secure Hill 60, but it holds; however, 200 yards north of the obstinate hill, the Marines repulse Japanese attacks coming from the reverse slopes on Nan Hill. Meanwhile, the Japanese also offer fervent resistance against the 5th Marines in the bulwark defenses in the hills and ridges south of Awacha, preventing progress. In the center of the corps' assault, the 307th Regiment, 77th Division

advance; from the Maeda Escarpment to the southern slopes of Hill 187. Meanwhile, contingents of the 7th Division's 17th Regiment is heavily engaged at a knob on Koehl Ridge while simultaneously methodically eliminating the infiltrators near Tanabaru.

**May 7 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, Army takes control of operations on southern Oldnawa. Lt. General John R. Hodge directs the seizure of line Asa-Dakeshi-Gaja by the following day to clear the way for an army offensive planned to drive south. In the III Amphibious Corps sector, corps assumes responsibility for the western sector of the Tenth Army front in the southern sector of the island. The 1st Marine Division is still heavily embattled; the 1st Marines continue fending off strong opposition from the reverse slopes of Nan Hill while simultaneously pounding against rock resistance on Hill 60. During one skirmish, the Japanese toss grenades into the midst of a squad from Company C, 1st Battalion, 1st Marines. Corporal John P. Fardy, in an attempt to save his Marines, jumps on the grenade absorbing its full impact; the others in his group are saved; Fardy receives the Medal of Honor for his devotion to duty and extraordinary heroism while under attack by fanatical Japanese. Also, Private Dale M. Hansen, Company E, 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines goes on the attack and singlehandedly wipes out a machine gun nest with his rocket launcher, then subsequent to the weapon jamming, he confiscates a rifle and continues racing to the crest of the hill, exterminating four of six Japs before his rifle jams. The other two Japs attack him, but he improvises and both are driven off by the butt of his weapon. Soon after, the fearless corporal procures another rifle and grenades, then he moves out and slays eight more enemy troops and destroys a mortar position in the process. Corporal Hansen receives the Medal of Honor. The Japanese also encounter PFC Albert E. Schwab, who exceed the bounds of human endurance during the heated battles with the Japanese; his Company is pinned down by incessant fire and casualties begin to mount. Schwab, transporting his flame-thrower ascends the steep hill and attacks singlehandedly, knocking out the first stumbling block which permits his troops to seize the ridge. Then a sudden burst of enemy machine gun fire, takes more casualties. Schwab, instantaneously, despite his fuel being at an alarming rate, advances straight into the sheets of fire with his flame-thrower roaring. He becomes wounded, but destroys two more nests and the company moves forward. Schwab receives the Medal of Honor. Meanwhile, the Japanese mount unyielding resistance south of Awacha, hindering progress of the 5th Marines for the next week. In the XXIV Corps sector, the 7th and 77th Divisions, on the left and right respectively, advance prudently against Shuri and Yonabaru. The 17th Regiment, 7th Division concludes the extermination of infiltrators in the Tanabaru region; additional regimental contingents fortify the perimeter on Kochi Ridge and yet others encounter fierce resistance south of Kochi town as they advance toward Zebra Hill. Meanwhile, the 184th Regiment seizes Gaja Ridge effortlessly.

**May 8 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)** All air ground and naval operations are hindered by heavy rains. In the U.S. Tenth Army area, advance contingents of the 6th Marine Division flow in to the lines on the island's southern front, relieving units of the 7th Marines on the west coast north of the Asa. Also, the 1st Marine Division begins blasting the Japs from their caves on the reverse slopes of Nan Hiu, to clear the way for another drive to secure Hill 60. In the XXIV Corps sector, vicious fighting erupts as the 305th Regiment, 77th Division pushes further, prompting strong reaction from the enemy.

**May 9 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, orders for a general assault to commence on the 11th are handed down by General Buckner. The plan calls for a holding action in the center coordinated with a double envelopment of the Shuri defenses. In the III Amphibious

Corps sector, the 1st Marines, 1st Marine Division eliminate final resistance on Nan Hill in addition to seizing Hill 60. In the XXIV Corps sector, Japanese resistance hinders the 77th Division as it drives toward Shuri. The operation continues to move methodically, implementing a combination of strong support fire bolstering individual regiments and further ensuring success by committing another regiment to add its support fire, then move in and mop up the remaining resistance at each stronghold. Meanwhile, most Japanese have been dislodged from their Kochi positions.

**May 10 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Amphibious Corps sector, at 03:00, the 22nd Marines, 6th Marine Division, drive across the Asa Estuary. However, the Japanese destroy the footbridge, forcing the rear contingents to wade across; the Marines advance through Asa and establish a bridgehead extending about one mile wide and 350 yards deep. After dark, a Bailey bridge is constructed to afford passage of heavy weapons. Meanwhile, at fortified Shuri, the Japanese continue to hinder progress of the 1st Marine Division. The 1st Marines are unable to advance because of incessant fire and the 7th Marines storm Dakeshi Ridge, but the Japanese repulse the assault. In the 5th Marines zone, the 2nd Battalion advances against severe fire and becomes stalled. Pharmacist's Mate Second Class William D. Halyburton, Jr., leaps to assist a wounded Marine, despite the unmerciful barrages; while tending to the man, additional enemy fire strikes the patient. Halyburton, shields the man with his body and continues rendering first aid, but the Japanese fire kills Halyburton, who sacrifices his life that the Marine might live; he receives the Medal of Honor posthumously. In the XXIV Corps sector, Japanese deployed north of Shuri are being eliminated position by position and yard by yard in a tedious operation. The 383rd Regiment, drives to the summit of Zebra Hill, digs in, and repulses a subsequent night counterattacks. Meanwhile, the 383rd Regiment, 96th Division prepares to launch an assault against Conical Hill, the eastern bastion of the Shuri defense line.

**May 11 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, a full measured assault is launched against the inner Shuri defenses following a one-half hour Artillery bombardment. The III Amphibious Corps and Ule XXIV Corps drive on the right and left respectively. The 6th Marine Division pushes contingents to the northern fringes of Amike, while another contingent seizes a hill lying less than one thousand yards from Asa. Meanwhile, the 7th Marines, 1st Marine Division comes under a wall of fire from Wana Ridge; however, it advances and seizes positions on Dakeshi Ridge. Also, The Japs holding the Shuri Heights pour fire upon the 1st Marines, keeping it pinned. In conjunction, the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines wipe out the remaining resistance in the Awacha Pocket. In the XXIV Corps sector, Hill 130 (Chocolate Drop Hill) and Flattop Hill, the latter controlling Dick Hill mass, are assaulted by the 306th Regiment, 77th Division, but fierce fire from entrenched positions hinders progress. Meanwhile, the 96th Division's 382nd Regiment attempts to drive to Dick hill mass; however, Japanese resistance halts progress. The 383rd Regiment, 96th Division seizes a hold on some hills at the northwest approaches of Conical Hill. At Zebra Hill, five enemy pillboxes bar advance by Company B, 382nd Regiment, 96th Division. Captain Seymour W. Terry sprints through incessant barrages of fire, grabs a demolition charge on the run and blows the first strongpoint to oblivion. Without pause he dashes from pillbox to pillbox, eliminating the defenders with rifle fire and grenades destroying all four nests, killing twenty enemy troops in the process. Soon after, more enemy fire stalls the Company advance, but Terry, latches on to six charges and attacks, devastating the enemy entrenchments; ten of the twenty enemy killed are attributed to Terry. Company B roars forward until new enemy positions open up and halt progress of two of his platoons, prompting Terry to race 100 yards to join the support platoon and lead an

assault. The reinforcements thrust forward, scattering the Japanese; quick pursuit annihilates the enemy. Captain Terry then directs his men to reform to guard against a counterattack, however, an enemy mortar rings in and kills him; he receives the Medal of Honor posthumously.

**May 12 1945-(Pacific-Ryukyu Islands-Okinawa)** U.S. Tenth Army area, III Corps sector, Company G, 3rd Battalion, 22nd Marines drives to Sugar Loaf Hill, southeast of Amike; however, fierce resistance compels it to pull back. Meanwhile, the 7th Marines, 1st Marine Division gains most of Dakeshj Ridge. In the XXIV Corps sector, the 305th Regiment, 77th Division encounters fierce opposition as it grinds forward along Route 5 toward Shuri. In conjunction, the 306th Regiment halts its attack against Hill 130 to pivot and reinforce the 305th Regiment. Meanwhile, heavy resistance hinders the 382nd Regiment, 96th Division which is driving against the Dick Hill mass; elements, however, seize a hill about 600 yards south of Zebra. Also, the 2nd Battalion, 382nd Regiment seizes a fragile hold on a northern spur of Conical Hill, prompting Division to place more heat on the hill by accelerating its frontal assault.

**May 13 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Amphibious Corps sector, Japanese resistance remains resolute as the 6th Marine Division grinds through storms of fire, taking heavy casualties, but maintaining its advance. The 1st Marines, 1st Marine Division attack Hill 55; however, the Japanese holding the strongpoint, which is part of the south wall of the Wana Draw, repulse the attempt. Meanwhile, the 7th Marines extinguish final resistance on Dakeshi Ridge and drive toward Wana Ridge, incurring high casualties as it plows through the village of Dakeshi. In the XXIV Corps sector, the 306th Regiment, 77th Division reinitiates its assaults against Chocolate Drop Hill, again encountering vicious resistance, while also driving against Flattop where resistance is rock-hard. Meanwhile, the 382nd Regiment drives against two enemy hills of Dick Hill mass, securing one of them. In conjunction, the 383rd Regiment cracks the eastern tip of the Shuri line, reaching the northeast summit of Conkal Hill; the Japanese mount heavy counterattacks, but the regiment holds firmly. Also, contingents of the 383rd Regiment drive to the slopes of nearby Charlie Hill; however, the Japanese retain the summit.

**May 14 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Amphibious Corps sector, the 22nd Marines, 6th Marine Division launch an attack, but the effort gains only a slight hold on Sugar Loaf Hill. In the 2nd Battalion zone, Major Henry A. Courtney (Executive Officer) concludes that the enemy will counterattack, details his thoughts to his Marines and moves out to seize the forward slope of Sugar Loaf, followed by every man in the unit. The charge gushes forward and reaches the reverse slope. After acquiring additional ammo and 26 reinforcements, Courtney moves to the point and pounds enemy caves with grenades as he races to the crest, only to discover a huge concentration of enemy troops preparing to attack. Major Courtney charges the Japanese as a one-man wrecking crew, terminating a large number of the foe and chasing the balance into caves. Determined to hold the new ground he orders his unit to dig in for the duration, but as he scampers from man to man, he is struck and killed by an enemy mortar; Major Courtney receives the Medal of Honor posthumously. Meanwhile, heavy fighting develops at Wana Ridge, as the 1st Marines, 1st Marine Division drives to dislodge the enemy and establish contact with the 7th Marines; the Japanese hold, and the 5th Marines move in and relieve the 1st Marines. During the murderous fighting, Japanese fire halts Company C, 1st Battalion's left flank. Corporal Louis J. Hauge, Jr., orders his squad to afford him cover fire while he attacks the obstacles. Machine gun fire rips into his body as he advances, but he gets off a grenade which exterminates the nest. Enemy fire becomes

heavier, but Hauge grinds forward, ignoring his pain until he lobs another grenade which wipes out the second machine gun nest, before a new barrage of enemy fire kills him. Corporal Hauge receives the Medal of Honor posthumously. In the XXIV Corps sector, Chocolate Drop and Flattop continue to withstand the pressure of attacks by the 306th Regiment, 77th Division; the regiment is now greatly reduced in strength. In the 96th Division zone, the 383rd Regiment stretches its control to include Charlie Ridge, while also driving to the summit of King Hill to the south.

**May 16 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Amphibious Corps sector, the 6th Marine Division attacks entrenched enemy positions on Sugar Loaf, committing two regiments; the resistance is the fiercest that the division experiences during the entire Okinawa operation. Violent combat ensues for two days; however, the 29th Marines finally vanquishes the defenders on the 18th. In the 1st Marine Division zone, the 5th Marines, commit M7s and tank-infantry teams to counterbalance the enemy holding Wana Draw. [n conjunction, the 1st Battalion, 7th Marines drives up Wana Ridge, but unrelenting fire forces a pull-back. In the XXIV Corps sector, heavy fighting ensues north of Shuri, as the 7th Division's 305th and 307th Regiments on the right and left respectively press forward; the 307th pounds against Chocolate Drop and Flattop, but the Japanese give no ground. Meanwhile, the 383rd Regiment, 96th Division fortifies positions on the regiment's left flank and is joined by tanks which advance to the outskirts of Yonabaru. An effort is made to dislodge the Japanese from Love Hill west of Conical Hill; however, the Japanese repulse the attack.

**May 17 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, General Buckner assumes responsibility for all troops ashore, as the amphibious phase of the operation concludes. He also accepts responsibility for the fortification of all captured enemy positions. Meanwhile, Vice Admiral Richmond K. Turner is relieved by Vice Admiral Harry W. Hill, who assumes the position of Commander TF 51 and will control naval forces and air defenses; he is subordinate to General Buckner. Massive naval surface vessel fire, air strikes, and artillery precede an assault by the 29th Marines against Sugar Loaf, but still, the Japanese resist feverishly. The 1st and 3rd Battalions hammer from the west end of Crescent Hill while the 2nd Battalion shoots from the east, reaching the summit of Sugar Loaf. until all ammunition is exhausted, forcing a withdrawal. In the 1st Marine Division zone, Hill 55 is assaulted by the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, which seizes some ground on the west slope. The beleaguered 1st Battalion, 7th Marines, pounding against the entrenched Japanese on Wana Ridge, is relieved by the 3rd Battalion; still, the enemy continues to hold against the efforts of the 3rd Battalion. In the XXIV Corps sector, Company E, 307th Regiment, 77th Division springs a night surprise attack and lunges to Ishimmi Ridge, outside of Ishimrni village; the positions become untenable as the Japanese interdict, preventing reinforcements from giving assistance. Meanwhile, the 3rd Battalion gains ground around Cbocolate Drop and repulses a subsequent counterattack, then pushes to the crest of Flattop; however, severe fire drives it back.

**May 18 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Amphibious Corps sector, the 29th Marines, 6th Marine Division seize Sugar Loaf and also gain part of Horseshoe, a dominating feature slightly southwest or Sugar Loaf. In the 1st Mari ne Division zone, brutal fighting continues to ensue at Wana Ridge and Wana Draw where 5th Marine M-7s and tanks continue to pound enemy positions in conjunction with engineers who are clearing the lower slopes of the ridge. The 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines continues driving against the Japanese on Wana Ridge, but the effort is

in vain. In the XXIV Corps sector, heavy fighting continues at Flattop and at Chocolate Drop as the 77th Division makes some progress at the latter. In the 96th Division zone, the 382nd Regiment holding Dick Hill comes under a wall of fire from flattop; nevertheless, it retains the ground, then attacks to secure the reverse slope. Meanwhile, the 3rd Battalion, 381st Regiment commences an assault to seize Sugar Hill.

**May 19 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Amphibious Corps sector, the 4th Marines relieve the 29th Marines, whose strength is weakened from incessant battle. At Wana Draw, heavy fighting continues as the 5th Marines, 1st Marine Division maintain pressure against the enemy, and at Wana Ridge, the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines continues pounding against the enemy entrenchments; the 1st Marines move up and relieve the 7th Marines. In the XXIV Corps sector, the Japanese mount continued pressure throughout the day to annihilate the exhausted Company E, 307th Regiment, 77th Division, but the effort fails; upon darkness reinforcements rush in and relieve the battered unit. Meanwhile, the Japs on Flattop and Dick Hill are barraged with heavy and direct fire. In conjunction, the 322nd Regiment, 96th Division doggedly stretches its control over the reverse slope of Dick Hill. Meanwhile, contingents of the 383rd Regiment drive to the west end of King Hill, but the Japs drive them off. Also, the 381st Regiment's 3rd Battalion continues closing toward Sugar Hill.

**May 20 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Amphibious Corps sector, the 4th Marines, 6th Marine Division continues to fight vigorously around Sugar Loaf, maintaining attacks to secure the balance of Crescent and Horseshoe features; at the latter, some progress is made and upon nightfall, the Japanese mount night attacks; however, they are thrown back, losing over 200 troops. Meanwhile, Hill 55 is taken by the 5th Marines 1st Marine Division, which then drives into Wana Draw. Meanwhile, the 1st Marines launch an assault and overrun the summit of Wana Ridge. In the XXIV Corps sector, the remaining resistance on Chocolate Drop is eliminated by the 307th Regiment, 77th Division; it also seizes Flattop. Meanwhile, the 382nd Regiment, 96th Division continues grinding on the reverse slope of Dick Hill, seizing more ground. Also, the 3rd Battalion, 381st Regiment moves cautiously as it advances toward Sugar Hill.

**May 21 1945-(Pacific-Ryukus Islands-Okinawa)** Marine Torpedo-Bomber Squadron 131 lands on Ie Shima and will support the ongoing operations of Marine Aircraft Group 22. Also, Marine Fighter Squadrons 113, 314, and 422 (Marine Aircraft Group 22) land on Ie Shima to bolster Marine operations on Okinawa. On Okinawa In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Amphibious Corps sector, contingents of the 6th Marine Division continue driving toward the Asato River on the western flank of the corps, hammering against the Sugar Loaf defense system. Some progress is made as Marines move methodically through tunnels within Horseshoe, but the Japanese on Crescent still hold firmly. In the 1st Marine Division sector, furious combat continues to ensue as the advance toward Shuri Ridge bangs forward against fervent opposition raised by the defenders at this final feature protecting Shuri Castle. Progress is tedious on the reverse slope of Wana Ridge; however, Japanese counterattacks to regain the front slopes are futile as the Yanks repulse them. In the XXIV Corps sector, the 77th Division's Company A, 307th Regiment drives to the base of Jane Hill, southwest of Flattop; the progress places it near untenable positions and it is isolated, coming under fierce fire until the 30th. Meanwhile, the 382nd Regiment, 96th Division advance to Oboe Hill about one thousand yards from Shuri, here as an intense enemy fire halts progress for several days. However, the 3rd Battalion, 381st Regiment seizes Sugar Hill; the prize empties the eastern slopes of Conical

Hill and forces the enemy's right flank to turn abruptly. In conjunction. the 184th Regiment, 7th Division jumps off at 19:00. advancing south along the coast road to invest Shuri. The situation for the Japanese is deteriorating rapidly; a decision is reached to withdraw from Shuri.

**May 22 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, sporadic rains have been hitting the area for several days; the intensity increases and heavy storms move in, lasting until early June, restricting operations. In the III Amphibious Corp area, the 4th Marines, 6th Marine Division advance to the northern bank of the Asato River, but supporting armor is bogged down in the mud; Patrols probe across the river after dark. In the XXIV Corps sector, the 383rd Regiment, 96th Division is heavily engaged at Love Hill. west of Conical peak, and fights viciously for several days to eliminate the objective. Meanwhile, the 184th Regiment, 7th Division advances through decimated Yonabaru without incident, driving to the nearby hills.

**May 23 1945-(Okinawa)-** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Amphibious Corps sector, the 6th Marine Division, deployed near the Asato River. launches a drive toward the Kokuba on the west flank of the corps. In conjunction, resistance south of the Asato River encounters only sporadic resistance, prompting the 4th Marines to implement smoke screens and push two battalions across the river. In the XXIV Corps sector, the 184th Regiment, 7th Division secures a starting line to permit the 32nd Regiment to drive west and surround Shuri and also guard the rear positions of the 32nd Regiment. Meanwhile, although its Armor is still paralyzed by mud, the 32nd Regiment begins trekking west to positions about one mile southwest of Yonabaru.

**May 24 1945-(Pacific-Ryukyu Islands-Okinawa)** In the III Amphibious Corps sector, contingents of the 6th Marine Division enter northwest Naha without incident. In the XXIV Corps sector, Oboe Hill becomes a seat of fire as the Japanese attack positions of contingents of the 382nd Infantry, 96th Division; two Companies of the 1st Battalion are compelled to withdraw from the hill; however, the Japs retreat, leaving 150 dead. In other activity, a patrol of the 5th Marines, 1st Marine Division probes to Asato, and the 32nd Regiment, 7th Division dispatches patrols to assess Japanese strength at fortifications which pass the Yonabaru Valley southeast of Shuri. However, after dark, the Japanese mount fierce counterattacks against the regiment and penetrate the lines.

**May 25 1945-**In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Amphibious Corps sector, the 4th Marines, 6th Marine Division seizes Machishi, then stretch control further, gaining much of the ridge line west of the town.

**May 28 1845-(Pacific-Ryukyu Islands-Okinawa)** The Japanese strike the fleet off Okinawa, losing over one hundred planes; the Destroyer *Shubrick* (DD-639) is sunk. The U.S. has finally drained the strength of the Japanese air strikes as this is the final heavy attack to be launched against Okinawa. In the U.S. Tenth Army area, the torrential rains begin to subside, permitting accelerated activity. In the III Amphibious Corps sector. contingents of the 22nd Marines, 6th Marine Division move from Naha to the Kokuba estuary effortlessly, but violent enemy reaction emerges as the Marines begin reconnaissance of Ona-Yarna Island in Naha Harbor. Meanwhile, engineers get bridging across the canal in Naha upon nightfall. Also, the 29th Marines, subsequent to relieving the 4th Marines, drives toward Kokuba. Beehive Hill on the lower portion of Shuri Ridge is seized by the 5th Marines, 1st Marine Division. In the XXIV Corps sector. the Japanese mount fierce resistance on Hill 69, north of Karadera village, halting progress of th 184th Regiment, 7th Division.

**May 29th 1945 -(United States)** President Truman authorizes the strength of the Marine Corps to be increased to 503,000. **(Pacific-Ryukyu Islands-Okinawa)** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Amphibious Corps sector, the 22nd Marines cross into Naha to meet the Japanese who have chosen to stand and fight there. Meanwhile, the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines secures the summit of Shuri Ridge and also takes Shuri Castle, the infrastructure of the Shuri bulwark; the castle in the 77th Division zone. has been abandoned. In the XXIV Corps sector, the 77th Division closes on Shuri, its 184th Regiment encountering strong opposition at a hill near Karadera.

**May 30 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)** The Japanese 32nd Army has successfully evacuated the majority of its force from the Shuri lines. evading the clutches of the III Amphibious Corp and the XXIV Corps drives, reaching the southernmost part of the island: Kiyarnu Peninsula. In the U.S. Tenth Army area. m Amphibious Corps sector, contingents of the 22nd Marines, 6th Marine Division secure Hill 27 on the southeastern portion of Naha. In the XXIV Corps sector, the 77th Division overpowers rear-guard action as it advances, seizing Dorothy, Jane, and Tom Hills. the former containing an extensive cave system. Meanwhile, contingents of the 77th Division pass into the III Amphibious Corps sector and assault 100 Meter Hill, while the 96th Division races forward seizing Hen Hill, which has hindered the Yanks for nine days in addition to capturing the reverse slope of Oboe and Love Hill. Also, the 32nd Regiment, 7th Division secures Ella, June, and Oak Hills southwest of Yonawa; Patrols (184th Regiment) push onto Chinen Peninsula with ut opposition.

**May 31 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Amphibious Corps sector, contingents of the 6th Marine Division encounter tenacious rear-g ard action near Hill 46,northb of the Kokuba and call in tanks and artillery to ease pressure. Meanwhile, the 1st Marine Division reverts to reserve and will initiate mop-up operations at Shuri. In the XXIV Corps sector, the 77th Division overruns 100 Meter Hill then bursts into the ruins of Shuli, from which the Japanese have made a disciplined evacuation; the city is jointly occupied by the 77th and forces of the 1st Marine Division. The Japanese establish new defensive positions along the Kokuba Gara and at Taukaan. Meanwhile, the 96th Division destroys the remaining resistance in its zone and establishes contact with the 1st Marine Division. During the fighting at Hen Hill, PFC Clarence B. Craft, Company G, 382nd Regiment and five other soldiers move out in advance of Company G, encountering impenetrable fire. Craft, stands up in conspicuous fashion and advances firing as he moves, knocking out enemy troops with uncanny accuracy as he pushes again t a .force which has been repulsing attacks of battalion strength for the past twelve days. Challenging death, he reaches the crest of the hill and defiantly stand as a silhouette from where he casualty lobs grenades which splatter many of the enemy. The extraordinary assault relieves pressure on his platoon which advances to join him. Forming a human chain, grenades are rapidly passed to the indomitable private who expends a total of two cases of grenades on the enemy's main trench line, while simultaneously directing the tossing of grenades by his buddies on a lower part of the slopes, slashing more destruction upon the defenders. Private Craft opens up with his rifle, exterminating more of the enemy at point-blank range. As the Japs flee, Craft pursues, driving them down the hill. As he descends, he spots a machine gun pumping shells into the Yanks who are consuming the entire hill. Craft, charges and annihilates the position defenders with rifle fire and another grenade. Many of the fleeing enemy troops seek refuge in a cave, but Craft continues his rampage and slings a large explosive charge into their midst, creating an instant crypt. PFC Craft's actions are greatly responsible for the total collapse of the Naha-Shuri-Yonaburu line; he receives the Medal of Honor. Also, the 7th Division continues its advance, overrunning several hills near Chan concluding its

present mission.

**June 1st 1945-(Pacific-Ryukyu Islands-Okinawa)** The Japanese have successfully evaded entrapment at Shuri; however, the U.S. Tenth Army is in pursuit, canceling its plans to surround the enemy. In the m Amphibious Corps sector, the 1st and 6th Marine Divisions mount a coordinated assault which gains the high ground dominating the east-west road of the Kokuba Gawa Valley. where the Japanese have drawn new defensive positions. Hill 46 is captured by contingents of the 6th Marine Division; the division then seizes Shiehina and the northern branch of the Kokuba, Subsequent to nightfall, the 6th Marine Division gets reconnaissance patrols across the Kokuba estuary to gather intelligence for an imminent assault to secure Oroku Peninsula. In the XXIV Corps sector, the 96th Division begins reducing remaining resistance near Chan, In conjunction, the 77th Division protects the rear of the 96th Division and simultaneously mop up in the Shuri area. Meanwhile, the 7th Division exterminates rear-guard opposition at two hills on the corps' east flank.

**June 2nd 1945 -(Pacific-Philippines)** In the U.S. Sixth Army area, XI Corps sector, the 43rd Division concludes its mop-up operations in Ipo area. (Pacific-Okinawa) In the U.S. Tenth Army area, the 7th Marines, 1st Marine Division, deploys along the Kokuba, freeing the 6th Marine Division for an amphibious invasion to seize Oroku Peninsula. In the XXIV Corps sector, the remaining resistance in Chan is exterminated by the 96th Division; it then drives south rapidly, pursuing the retreating Japanese. Also, the 7th Division is in hot pursuit of the enemy.

**June 3 1946-(Pacific-Ryukyu Islands-Okinawa)** A Naval Task Force, commanded by Rear Admiral L. F. Reifsnider, lands Marines on Iheya Shima: the 8th Marines, 2nd Marine Division, clears Iheya and Agun! Shima, west of Okinawa, completing the operation by the 9th of June. The Marines then take added precautions, including installing air warning and fighter direction facilities to bolster the perimeter of Okinawa. In the U.S. Tenth Army area on Okinawa, XXIV Corps sector, an existing gap which has developed between the corps is filled as the 7th and 96th Divisions drive south, elements of the former reaching the southeast coast near Hyakuna, sealing off the Chinen Peninsula.

**June 4 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)** In the U.S, Tenth Army area, Yaeju Dake Escarpment (III Amphibious Corps sector) is placed in the XXIV Corps sector as the III Amphibious Corps boundary shifts west. In the III Ampbiblous Corps sector, the 1st Marine Division, operating in a smaller zone, receives responsibility for isolating the Oroku Peninsula; it drives forward seizing Itoman, secures the Kunishi and Mezado Ridges, advancing to Ara Sake, the southernmost point on the island.

**June 4th 1945 -(Pacific-Okinawa)** In the U.S, Tenth Army area, Yaeju-Dake Escarpment (III Amphibious Corps sector) is placed in the XXIV Corps sector as the III Amphibious Corps boundary shifts west. In the III Ampbiblous Corps sector, the 1st Marine Division, operating in a smaller zone, receives responsibility for isolating the Oroku Peninsula; it drives forward seizing [toman, secures the Kunishi and Mezado Ridges, advancing to Ara Sake, the southernmost point on the island. Meanwhile, tbe 4th Marines, 6th Marine Division spearhead amphibious invasion against Oroku Peninsula on the southwest section of the island; the 29th Marines follow close behind. The Marines drive inland, gaining about half of Naha Airfield. The 6th Reconnaissance Company overruns OnoYama in the Naha Inlet, wiping out the few defenders. In the XXIV Corps sector, corps rumbles over crumbling resistance as it races forward, pivoting southwest in accordance with new boundary changes, reaching line Iwa-Minatoga. Meanwhile, in the coastal

sector, the 7th Division fords the Minatoga River.

**June 5 1945-(Pacific-Ryukyu Islands-Okinawa)** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, on Okinawa, operations continue; still the supporting armor is immobilized. In the III Amphibious Corps sector, the fighting is ruthless as the 6th Marine Division engages defenders which offer iron resistance at Naha Airfield; despite the grueling opposition, the Marines gnaw forward, seizing most of the airfield. Meanwhile, the 7th Marines, 1st Marine Division advances southwest to isolate the peninsula while the 1st Marines roars south to positions near Iwa. In the XXIV Corps sector, the Japanese have dug in for a last stand at their final defense line on southern Okinawa, deploying from the west to east coast at Guishichan. The Japanese control three dominating features to forestall defeat: Yuza-Oake Escarpment, Yaeju-Dake Escarpment, and Hill 95.

**June 6 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Amphibious Corps sector on the Oroku Peninsula, the remaining resistance on Naha Airfield is crushed by the 6th Marine Division. As it drives beyond ferocious enemy fire originating on Hill 57 in the center of the peninsula, progress is stalled. Meanwhile, the 22nd Marines, 1st Marine Division come out of reserve to form a line of protection for division's right flank and stretch across the base of the peninsula. The 7th Marines push to positions near Oakiton. In the XXIV Corps sector, the enemy's new line of defense is reached. The 1st Battalion, 381st Regiment, 96th Division attacks against Yaeju-Oake Escarpment, encountering incessant fire which compels it to pull back. In conjunction, the 7th Division moves slowly on the right; however, its left flank also receives withering fire which halts progress near a hill which extends northeast from Hill 95.

**June 7 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Amphibious Corps sector, the 6th Marine Division presses forward, despite the Japanese death wish which prompts feverish resistance: Hill 57 is taken and the defenders decimated with the assistance of Tanks. Pvt. Robert M. McTureous, Jr. 3rd Battalion, 29th Marines spots a contingent of stretcher bearers coming under heavy fire as they attempt to evacuate wounded. He stuffs his uniform with grenades and attacks, charging from cave to cave, incinerating the enemy holes, while Simultaneously diverting enemy fire to permit the wounded to reach safe positions. McTureous returns to his lines, scoops up more grenades and reinitiates his thunderous trek, pounding more enemy positions. Many enemy positions are permanently silenced, however, McTureous becomes severely wounded. He crawls about 200 yards to an aid station before calling for help; he receives the Medal of Honor for his extraordinary heroism, while making the ultimate sacrifice for his country. Meanwhile, the 1st Marine Division continues pushing south, the 7th Marines advancing to the coast north of Itoman, isolating the fanatical Japs on the Oroku Peninsula. In the XXIV Corps sector, troops await arrival of supplies to bolster a general assault; however, scaled down actions occur as units probe enemy defenses. In conjunction, Artillery and Planes shellac enemy positions.

**June 8th 1945 -(Pacific)** Marine Fighter Squadron 112 and 123, the remaining Marine Fighter Squadrons in Task Force 38, depart for Leyte, subsequent to being detached from the force. **(Pacific-Philippines)** Luzon In the U.S. Sixth Army area, I Corps sector, the main body of the 37th Division closes on Bagabag. The 145th Regiment plows through Solano, reaching the road junction of Highways 4 and 5. Okinawa In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Amphibious Corps sector, fierce fighting continues as the 6th Marine Division squeezes the noose tighter on the remaining Japanese on the Oroku Peninsula at Tomigusuki. In the 22nd Marines zone, Hospital Apprentice First Class Fred F. Lester attempts to rescue a wounded Marine. He braves incessant fire, reaching the Marine, but while lugging him back to safety, enemy fire rips into him, causing a mortal wound. Lester,

realizing his wounds are fatal and unable to give further aid, directs two other members of his squad as they work on the wounded man. "Two additional wounded Marines require aid; Lester refuses treatment and continues to direct the men as they save the lives of the others. Lester succumbs moments later, giving his last breath to save the others; he receives the Medal of Honor posthumously. The 1st Marine Division moves south, closing on the enemy's final defense line. In the XXIV Corps sector, the Port of Minatoga is opened, greatly aiding the supply system. Heavy resistance continues as the 7th Division gnaws forward on Corps' east flank toward fortified Hill 95, which refuses to relent.

**June 9 1945-(Pacific-Ryukyu Islands-Okinawa)** A naval task force commanded by Rear Admiral L.F. Reifsnider lands a contingent of Marines on Aguni Shima. Also, another naval force, commanded by Rear Admiral A.W. Radford, launches planes in concert with a surface bombardment of Okino Daito Jima. In the U.S. Tenth Army area on Okinawa, III Amphibious Corps sector, the 6th Marine Division's 4th and 22nd Marines hook up, unquestionably ending all hopes of the Japanese escaping from the Oroku Peninsula. Meanwhile, the 1st Marine Division advances nearer to the final Japanese strongpoint on Okinawa: Kunishi Ridge. The XXIV Corps finalizes preparations for the fullscale attack against the Japanese defense line. Meanwhile, the 7th Division gets contingents to the southeastern tip of Yaeju-Dake Escarpment; the 1st Battalion, 32nd Regiment pounds against Hill 95. Although the effort is in vain, some Japanese positions are eliminated.

**June 10 1945-(Pacific-Ryukyu Islands-Okinawa)** A Naval Task Group commanded by Rear Admiral J.J. Clark bombs and bombards a Japanese airfield and other positions on Minami Daito, Ryukyu Islands. In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Amphibious Corps sector on Okinawa, the tenacious Japanese on the Oroku Peninsula are cornered in an area about 1,000 by 2,000 yards by the 6th Marine Division, which is poised for the kill. The Japanese spring a night counterattack expecting to break out; about 200 die swiftly. Meanwhile, the 1st Marine Division buzzes forward. The 7th Marines seize a ridge north of Tera and bolt beyond roaring through Itoman. However, the 1st Marines encounter fierce resistance and sustain heavy casualties while seizing an obstinate hill outside of Yuza. In the XXIV Corps sector, improved weather conditions permit sufficient tank support as a full scale attack is launched against the Japanese line of defense. The 96th Division gets elements toward Yuza and also pushes units to a ledge in a saddle between two peaks: Yaeju-Dake and Yuza-Dake. Meanwhile, the 17th Regiment, 7th Division pumps Artillery fire into its sector of Yaeju-Dake, while the 32nd Regiment, bolstered by naval surface vessel gunfire and flame-throwing tanks, attack toward Hill 95, seizing a strategic ridge near the coast line.

**June 11 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)** Major General Louis E. Woods U.S.M.C. assumes command of the Tactical Air Force and the 2nd Marine Air Wing. In the U.S, Tenth Army area, m Amphibious Corps sector, the Japanese on Oroku peninsula are further corralled, as the 6th Marine Division forces them into a square encompassing 1,000 yards. In the 1st Marine Division zone, the 7th Marines encounter impenetrable fire as it attempts to cross open terrain and reach Kunishi Ridge, halting progress; however, at 03:00 on the 12th, it breaks through and seizes positions on th western end of the ridge. Meanwhile, Hill 69, west of Ozato, is seized by the 1st Marines. In the XXIV Corps sector, the 383rd Regiment, 96th Division drives to Yuza. The Japanese open up with a wall of fire, forcing a withdrawal; on the following day, it drives into town, again advancing until heavy fire halts it just short of Yuza Peale. Meanwhile, the 1st Battalion, 381st Regiment gets all contingents upon the ledge of the saddle between Yaeju-Dake and Yuza-Dake Peaks and

subsequently thwarts a strong early morning counterattack; the regiment concentrates heavy fire upon Yaeju-Dake counterbalancing the enemy position while the 17th Regiment, 7th Division makes preparations for an attack to seize it. In conjunction, the 32nd Regiment, 7th Division seizes Hill 95 on the east flank ensuring the demise of the Japanese entire YaejuDake Escarpment, which falls on the 17th.

**June 12 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Amphibious Corps sector, the Japanese resistance on Oroku Peninsula is faltering and doomed as the 6th Marine Division converges on the dwarfed perimeter of the remaining Japanese; some resist futilely, while the others choose quickly between suicide or surrender, many taking the latter course of action rather than be captured. Meanwhile, in the 1st Marine Division zone, the 1st Marines mop up Hill 69 and push Patrols toward Kunishi Ridge. In the XXIV Corps sector, the 381st Regiment, 96th Division, drives to the base of YaejuDake Escarpment. seizing positions on the steepest slope. An early morning attack by the 17th Infantry, 7th Division stuns the Japs and permits the regiment to seize its assigned part of the escarpment. Yaeju-Dake Peak remains under Japanese control, however, their defenses on the southeastern end of the line have been cracked,

**June 13 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Amphibious Corps sector, Major General Lemuel C. Shepherd, Commanding Officer, 6th Marine Division, declares that all organized resistance on Oroku Peninsula has ceased. During the 13th and 14th, a record number of Japanese are captured by the 6th Marine Division: 159. In the 1st Marine Division zone, by dawn, six Companies of the 7th Marines are holding tenuously on Kunishi Ridge coming under ferocious fire; 140 casualties are sustained. Planes and Tanks keep the Marines supplied. In the XXIV Corps sector, additional pressure is brought to bear on the Japanese holding cave position; Armored Flame Throwers systematically incinerate them one-by-one in support of Corps actions, However, the Japanese still hold dominating positions on Yuza-Dake and Yaeju-Dake peaks and all on Hills 115 and 153 from east to west.

**June 14 1945-(Pacific-Ryukyu Islands-Okinawa)** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Amphibious Corps sector, mop-up details are carried out on Oroku Peninsula by contingents of the 6th Marine Division. Also, the 6th Reconnaissance Company secures Senaga Shima, an island off the coast of the Oroku Peninsula. In the 1st Marine Division zone, the 7th Marines continue to hold tight on the western tip of Kunishi Ridge, despite the continuing incessant enemy fire. In an effort to relieve pressure on the ridge, some modifications are implemented to facilitate victory. At 03:00, the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines attack and seize the eastern end of the ridge and retain control against vicious opposition. The Marines use tanks and flame throwers effectively during the entire Kunishi Ridge contest, the former playing a primary role in keeping the Infantry supplied as well as ferrying the wounded and pulverizing individual entrenched positions. In the XXIV Corps sector, the Japs' intricate cave systems are still undergoing methodical scrutiny by Corps which advances and exterminates them as discovered. In conjunction, the Japanese still resist fervently on Yuza peak and Yaeju-Dake peak; the 383rd Regiment, 96th Division claws forward and is stopped in front of the former by a wall of fire; however, the 381st Regiment attacks successfully, climbing to the top of Yaeju-Dake peak. Meanwhile, at Hills 115 and 153 on Corps' eastern flank, the 7th Division maintains its clearing operation, destroying the enemy as it advances.

**June 14 1945-(Pacific-Ryukyu Islands-Okinawa)** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Amphibious Corps sector, mop-up details are carried out on Oroku Peninsula by contingents of the 6th Marine

Division. Also, the 6th Reconnaissance Company secures Senaga Shima, an island off the coast of the Oroku Peninsula. In the 1st Marine Division zone, the 7th Marines continue to hold tight on the western tip of Kunishi Ridge, despite the continuing incessant enemy fire. In an effort to relieve pressure on the ridge, some modifications are implemented to facilitate victory. At 03:00, the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines attack and seize the eastern end of the ridge and retain control against vicious opposition. The Marines use tanks and flame throwers effectively during the entire Kunihi Ridge contest, the former playing a primary role in keeping the infantry supplied as well as ferrying the wounded and pulverizing individual entrenched positions. In the XXIV Corps sector, the Japs' intricate cave systems are still undergoing methodical scrutiny by corps which advances and exterminates them as discovered. In conjunction, the Japanese still resist fervently on Yuza peak and Yaeju-Dake peak; the 383rd Regiment, 96th Division claws forward and is stopped in front of the former by a wall of fire; however, the 381st Regiment attacks successfully, climbing to the top of Yaeju-Dake peak. Meanwhile, at Hills 115 and 153 on corps' eastern flank, the 7th Division maintains its clearing operation, destroying the enemy as it advance. Offshore The Motor Gunboat PGM-24 is damaged by collision.

**June 15 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)**In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Amphibious Corps sector, contingents of the 6th Marine Division probe the infrastructure headquarters of the enemy tunnel system on Oroku Peninsula and discover about 200 dead Japs, including the commanding officer and members of his staff who chose death by suicide. In the 1st Marine Division zone, violent fighting continues on Kunishi Ridge, but no progress is made. In other activity, the 8th Marines, 2nd Marine Division lands on Okinawa and is attached to the 1st Marine Division.

**June 16 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Amphibious Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone, some inroads are gained on Kunishi Ridge as the 7th Marines grind forward, reaching positions from which eye contact is made with the 5th Marines, advancing from the east. In the XXIV Corps sector, heavy fighting is ongoing on Yuza-Dake hill mass, continuing as the 96th Divisions 382nd Regiment relieves the 383rd Regiment and maintain the attack. Meanwhile, the 381st Regiment finally eliminate the vehement resistance and seizes Yuza-Dake peak. In other combat, the 17th and 32nd Regiments, 7th Division hammer the final dominating ground: Hills 115 and 153. The two stubborn strongpoints fall on the following day in synchronization with the downfall of the Japanese 32nd Army.

**June 17th 1945 -(United States)** The Escort Carrier *Vella Gulf*, the fourth Marine Escort Carrier to be commissioned, embarks from San Diego for Pearl Harbor, transporting Marine Carrier Group 3 (VMF-513, VMTB-234, and CASD-3). **(Pacific-Okinawa)** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, III Amphibious Corps sector, more pressure is applied against resistance on Kunishi Ridge as fresh Marine units are thrown into the battle. In the 4th Marines sector (Oroku Peninsula), Japanese Admiral Minoru Ota, Commander Naval Base Force, is discovered dead in a cave; he is in a ceremonial position (his throat is slashed).

**June 18 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, Lt. General Simon B. Buckner, Jr. is killed by an enemy shell, while on site at a Marine observation post, watching the progress of the first attack on the island by the 8th Marines, 2nd Marine Division. General Bruckner is replaced temporarily by Major General R.S. Geiger, USMC, senior troop commander, who assumes

command of Tenth Army and directs it for the duration of combat on the island. In the III Amphibious Corps sector, the 6th Marine Division continues grinding forward against faltering resistance on the west flank of corps. In the 1st Marine Division sector, tank-infantry teams of the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines pulverize the final organized resistance on Kunishi Ridge. However, the Japanese resist fervently at Hill 81, west of Medeera, repulsing contingents of the 5th Marines; the obstinate strongpoint is destroyed on the 21st.

**June 18 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)** In the U.S. Tenth Army area, efforts to convince the Japanese to surrender have been ongoing and appear to be fruitful as 343 Japanese surrender. The Japanese, since the inception of hostilities, have usually accepted death rather than capitulation. In the III Amphibious Corps sector, 6th Marine Division zone, the Japanese resistance is evaporating as forces drive south on the corps' west flank. In the 1st Marine Division zone, brutal fighting continues at Hill 81 as contingents of the 5th Marines pound it; however, additional units of the 5th Marines and the 8th Marines advance to the island's southern coast. In the XXIV Corps sector, the Japanese raise violent opposition against the 96th Division in the Aragachi-Medeera region, forestalling defeat. Meanwhile, to the east, the 7th Division closes on Mabuni and Udo. In the 77th Division zone, heavy fighting breaks out near Ozato. Sergeant John Meagher boards a Tank and begins spotting targets for the gunner. Suddenly, a Japanese soldier approaches the tank with an explosive charge. Meagher yells a warning to the gunner then dives from the tank, killing the Jap with his bayonet, but the explosion knocks him unconscious. Soon after, he is up and with a new weapon in hand, attacks a nearby pillbox, eliminating its six occupants. Meagher moves forward, his uniform becoming more riddled with bullets as he advances. As he reaches the pillbox, his gun runs out of ammunition, but the dauntless sergeant clasps the barrel, swinging it viciously as he roams the position, eliminating the entire crew; Sergeant Meagher receives the Medal of Honor.

**June 20 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)** The Japanese pattern is changing drastically as nearly one thousand additional troops surrender to Tenth Army, a record setting number; however, despite the success of the convincing psychological warfare, other Japanese forces continue fanatical resistance. In the III Amphibious Corps sector, 6th Marine Division zone, the Japanese defending in the Kiyamu region mount strong opposition against the 4th Marines; however, the 29th Marines advance to the southern coast against feeble resistance. Meanwhile, in the 1st Marine Division zone, the enemy on Hill 81 resists feverishly, impeding the attempts of the 5th Marines to reduce it. In the XXIV Corps sector, defenders on Hill 85 in the Medeera pocket repel attempts by the 96th Division to seize it; Aragachi is overrun. Meanwhile, in the 7th Division zone, Hill 89 outside of Mabuni is reached by the 32nd Regiment; Japanese headquarters is entrenched underground.

**June 21 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)** It has been 82 blood-filled days since the U.S. invasion of Okinawa on Easter Sunday, April 1st, 1945. Despite the agonizing campaign and the fanatical resistance which included mass attacks by suicide pilots, the U.S. fleet remains offshore as the island is declared secure by General R.S. Geiger USMC, temporary commanding officer of the U.S. Tenth Army. Organized resistance is terminated in the III Amphibious Corps sector, as Hill 81 is seized by the 1st Marine Division, while the 29th Marines, 6th Marine Division vacuums Ara Sake, the island's southernmost point. In the XXIV Corps sector, die-hard resisters continue to hold out on Hill 85 in the Medeera pocket, but the effort is futile as the 96th Division places its final clamps on the hill. Meanwhile, the remaining Japs holding out in a pocket on Hill 89 near Mubini are eliminated by the 7th Division.

**June 26 1945-(Pacific-Ryukyu Islands-Okinawa)** A Naval Task Group (TG-31.24), under Captain C. A. Buchanan, lands the Fleet Marine Force Amphibious Reconnaissance Battalion, supported by one reinforced rifle company of the 1st Marine Division and a small naval force, on Kume Island, without opposition. Kume, the final and largest island in the Okinawa Gunto chain, is secure by the 30th. The success of the mission permits implementation of additional air warning systems to ensure the Okinawa perimeter.

**June 30th 1945 -(United States)** At present the Navy has 67,952 vessels on hand, all types. Personnel: Naval 3,383,196; Marine Corps 474,680 (37,067 Officers and 437,613 enlisted); Coast Guard 171,192.

**July 12 1945 -(Pacific-Philippines) Luzon** In the U.S. Eighth Army area, XIV Corps sector, the 6th Division seizes Kiangang; however, Japanese resistance remains in the region. despite extensive air raids which have deposited thousands of gallons of napalm on Japanese positions in the pocket. Meanwhile, the 32nd Division pushes along Highway 11 to secure the other obstinate pocket remaining in northern Luzon in the Sierra Madre Mountains. On Mindanao, in the X Corps sector, the 21st Regiment, 24th Division (attached Sarangani Task Force) lands unopposed on the north shore of Sarangani Bay. Marine planes support the invasion; this is their final major support mission of the war. Meanwhile, the Provisional Battalion, driving from Lake Buluan, continues closing on the bay in conjunction with the Expeditionary Battalion (Guerrilla 108th Division), reaching positions northwest and northeast respectively. Iso, the Guerrilla 116th Regiment secures more of the bay's shore area. The U.S. submarine Chaser PC-582 is damaged by grounding.

**July 16th 1945 -(United States)** The Atomic Bomb is tested successfully at Los Alamos. New Mexico. News of the breakthrough is subdued, but it is determined that its use against Japan will bring the war to an abrupt conclusion and spare enormous casualties. The U.S. anticipate about 1,000,000 casualties if Japan is invaded (Operations Olympic-Coronet). The initial phase (Olympic) is tentatively scheduled for the invasion of Kyushu (southernmost Japanese home island) on November 1st, 1945; the assault force will compose the U.S. Sixth Army and the 5th Marine Division. The second phase (Coronet) is tentatively scheduled for the invasion of Honshu; the assault force will strike at the Plain of Tokyo and be composed of the U.S. 8th and 10th Armies. A Special B-29 air unit (has been isolated at a secret base (Wendover, Utah). The commanding officer. Colonel Paul W. Tibbets Jr., (509th Composite Group. 313th Wing, 21st Bombing Command, 20th Air Force) has overseen his unit's training until completion. however, even he is not yet aware of the imminent dangerous mission; to deliver the atomic bomb on Japan. Upon arrival at Tinian, in the Marianas, Tibbet's wng is totally isolated from the remainder of the crews and in fact they never join the daily incendiary bombing raids over Japan. However, Tibbet's Group does fly some separate and often unusual missions over Japan, but never in formations larger than six Planes and always at low altitude. The modified Planes resemble all the others on the surface. but the interiors have been radically changed to accommodate the atomic bomb. As time moves ahead, the other Airmen joke about the mysterious 509th, and question their contribution. Colonel Tibbet will be the only member of the unit to receive advance knowledge of the exact mission that his unit will carry out on August 6th; to deliver the atomic bomb on Hiroshima. Also. today, the cruiser USS *Indianapolis* embarks from San Francisco with a secret and precious cargo (atomic bomb), heading for Tinian. Coincidentally, the Japanese submarine I-58 departs Kure, Japan; the vessels will collide in the Pacific.

**July 16th-August 3rd 1945 -(United States-Pacific)** Admiral Spruance's flagship, the USS

*Indianapolis*, (CA-35) sustained serious damage by a kamikaze off Okinawa on March 30th, but the ship's stamina and the crew's character forestalls disaster. The *Indianapolis* retires to San Francisco under her own power and is immediately repaired, setting the stage for her next appointment with destiny. Captain Charles Butler McVay receives his final orders at Mare Island; they are short and direct, but nonetheless ambiguous. Admiral William R. Purnell and Captain William Sterling put the situation in perspective without pulling any punches, when they send McVay off to the island of Tinian: "TAKE THE PASSENGERS TO PEARL HARBOR THEN PROCEED TO TINIAN-YOU WILL NOT BE TOLD WHAT THE CARGO IS, BUT IT IS TO BE GUARDED EVEN AFTER THE LIFE OF YOUR VESSEL... SAVE THE CARGO AT ALL COSTS, IN A LIFEBOAT IF NECESSARY ..." Captain McVay departs, totally unaware that his cargo is the atomic bomb, but most assuredly pondering the significance of the mission. The *Indianapolis* carries a crew of 1,200 men, but because of a snafu, she inadvertently embarks with 2,500 lifejackets.

The striking cruiser pulls up anchor at 08:00 and glides smoothly under the Golden Gate Bridge at 08:36. The cruise is uneventful as the *Indianapolis* parts the waves between the West Coast and Pearl Harbor en route to the Marianas. The ship reaches Tinian on July 26th, after traveling 5,000 miles in ten days. The secret invaluable cargo is delivered and the *Indianapolis* shuffles her way to Guam, still unaware (as is most of the world) that she has delicately deposited the atomic bomb on the island. The *Indianapolis*, expected at Leyte (Philippines) for rendezvous with Admiral McCormick by July 31st, pulls away from Apra Harbor, Guam on the 28th manned by a crew of 81 officers, 1,114 men and a passenger, Captain Edwin M. Crouch, on what is expected to be a routine cruise through waters which have been docile for months. Sunday, the 29th, turns into an ordinary day. with overcast skies and choppy seas. At about 12:00, there is communication over the TBS (talk between ships) with a passing LST, heading north to practice anti-aircraft firing. As night approaches, the weather deteriorates and the visibility diminishes. A message comes in from a vessel, the *Wild Hunter* which is bound for Manila with supplies, stating that she had fired upon an enemy submarine on the previous day. The crew takes it in stride as this type of report is not unusual. GUAM RECEIVES THE REPORT AND IT IS DISPATCHED TO ALL SHIPS IN THE AREA. The navigator, Commander Janney remarks: "WE'RE GOING TO PASS A JAP SUB around midnight" And a fellow officer retorts: "OH WELL. OUR DESTROYERS WILL TAKE CARE OF THAT." There are no destroyers within 300 miles of the *Indianapolis*. Later that night, Commander Janney arrives on the bridge with the night orders and some new information.: "WE HAVE A REPORT THAT A PBM AND A DDE ARE SEARCHING FOR AN ENEMY SUBMARINE. WE SHOULD

PASS THE POSTAT 08:00 TOMORROW. By about 22:30, the moon rises, but the overcast skies shield it and the stars for the better part of the evening as the vessel (begins non-zigzag course at about dusk) continues moving toward Leyte. Below deck, two men are in the brig, but many of the others are catching some sleep topside; being so close to the equator, the ship remains hot. One of the men on watch notices an open porthole and a glaring light, etched in the otherwise darkened ship. The source is located and extinguished.

Meanwhile, the Japanese submarine I-58 is criss-crossing the Philippine Sea in search of prey. At 00:14 on the 30th, the opposing vessels which had departed the U.S. and Japan, respectively, on the 16th of July initiate the fateful encounter. The *Indianapolis* is rocked by an explosion, followed by another more devastating blow. The men on the bridge take a shattering blow as the explosions toss

the men against the deck and bulkhead again and again, but within seconds after the termination of the explosions, they regain their composure and take action. However, the communications are out and it is not known if messages got through. None have been sent from Guam to the *Indy* since her departure and the *Indy* has dispatched no reports to Guam. The situation is more than critical. There are only two small boats aboard the vessel, but it is being consumed with choking smoke and rapidly rising water. Commander McVay orders his vessel abandoned. The crew attempts to escape to safety and await rescue, but it is simply jumping from a bad dream to a horrific nightmare.

Back at the Philippines, Tuesday the 31st arrives without the *Indianapolis* making her rendezvous with Admiral McCormick's fleet. The no-show is commonplace among cruisers so no alarm is raised; Admiral McCormick neglects to note the non-arrival. As of Tuesday, the *Indy's* whereabouts are still unknown to anyone except the Japanese submarine which sunk her and the endangered survivors who are clinging to the flimsiest strands of life in their sea of death and illusion.

On Monday, the survivors had spotted a plane at about 13:00 and several more a few hours later, but the aircraft had not noticed the Americans. No planes appear on Tuesday. Meanwhile, the sea and the weather are taking a heavy toll on the men's minds and bodies. The lack of survival boats force many of the men to remain in the water, which is permeated with deadly sharks, razor-teethed barracuda that zing through the water at speeds of 75 mph, and an assortment of other deadly fish. The menacing sea monsters strike without warning, ripping limbs and causing relentless pain. By Monday, most of the wounded have succumbed, but the numbers of healthy seamen is dwindling quickly. In addition, the unbearable heat and lack of fresh water begins twisting the minds of the men who are stranded alone and undergoing dehydration.

Also, by Tuesday, the jungle rule of survival sets in as fights erupt over rations in synchronization with the progressive pain of the wounds as they develop ulcers. Wild schemes are dreamed up by some of the men. One believes there is an ice cream store in the hull. Another discovers the *Indianapolis* just under the water line, claiming it has not sunk and another discovers an island with an airstrip and a hotel. Many of the men have become deranged because they disregarded the warnings and have drunk salt water; they soon suffer with anxieties, chills and seizures. The outrageous actions of some of the survivors deteriorate further by Wednesday. More planes are spotted, but the remaining survivors can not be seen by the pilots. By darkness, additional men have lost their heads and begin proclaiming that they are being attacked by the Japanese. The unkind clock continues clicking and the remaining swimmers that have outlasted the sharks and barracudas are on the brink of death from exhaustion.

On Thursday, when nearly all hope is gone, a magnificent sight appears overhead when a U.S. ventura passes over the survivors and plops some rafts and life jackets to them. The pilot ascends, but continues staying in the area. At about 12:00, another plane arrives with more life rafts, but keeps flying by. As their luck begins to turn, another plane, an amphibian zooms in from the south toward dark. Ignoring the 12' swells, he makes a hard landing and scoops up a lone swimmer to ensure he would last the night. The daring action causes some consternation to some other survivors which they vocalize as he flies by. In addition, an army PBY swoops in, then disappears and reappears over a wave. The rescue is on. Some of the men are coming home. Ironically, there are several groups of survivors and each is unaware of the others.

By now rescue vessels are steaming to the area; the destroyer Escort *Cecil J Doyle* races without orders, subsequent to getting the news from a pilot; the DDE *DuFilho* and several APDs also rush to the area. After dark on Thursday, Commander McVay pulls out some more stops, saying the

Lord's Prayer and igniting a smoke pot. Then at 21:30, a glimmering light appears from the south and it keeps closing. No doubt, it is a ship, but despite having searchlights, his rafts are not sighted. The ships begin picking up the swimmers. On Friday morning at 10:00, the rafts are still not spotted, but the undaunted McVay still has his old smoke-pot burning. Ironically, a roving APO picks up a radar blip; that blip is McVay's smoke-pot. The remainder of the survivors are rescued, but nine-hundred men are lost: fifteen officers and 301 enlisted men survive. And of the 39 man Marine contingent, nine are rescued. Had it not been for the fortuitous test flight of LT. Wilbur C. Gwinn, the pilot (VB0-152) who first discovered the survivors of the *Indianapolis*, thinking a nearby oil slick was an enemy submarine, all might have been lost. Closer surveillance zooms in on some bobbing heads. Eventually, the draining exhausted saga ends and the sailors, with a new lease on life, are taken to Peleliu and from there to Guam or to the Philippines. One survivor grapples with the *Bassett's* (APO-73) fantail, getting aboard without any help; he sits down and says: "I CAN'T WALK, A SHARK GOT MY LEG:" Other rescue Ships include the *Register* (CAPO-92), *Madison*, *Ringness*, *Talbot*, *The Bassett*, *Alvin C. Cockrell*, *Aylwin* (DD-355) and the *French* (DDE-367), and the *Helm* (DD-388).

The I-58 escapes from the area, but is subsequently sunk by U.S. forces on April 1st 1946. Captain McVay receives a court martial, becoming the only U.S. Naval Officer to be court martialed for losing his Ship during wartime. He is sentenced to lose 100 numbers in his temporary grade of captain and to lose one hundred numbers in his permanent grade of commander. The general public is not impressed with the verdict. On December 9th 1946, Secretary Forrestal sends out a letter directing the chief of naval personnel to withdraw the disciplinary letter from McVay's file. There is no press conference.

**August 1st 1945 -(Pacific-Philippines)** The four SBD Squadrons of Marine Aircraft Group 32 terminate tactical operations in the Philippines and prepare to depart for the U.S. on August 15th.

**August 4 1945-(Pacific-Okinawa)** Marine Carrier Group 4, attached to the Marine Escort Carrier *Cape Gloucester* (TG 31.2). embarks from Okinawa to lend cover to the minesweeper operations in the East China Sea and also to attack shipping in the Saddle and Parker Island Groups near Shanghai.

**August 9th 1945 -(Pacific-Bismarcks)** Marine Aircraft fly their final bombing mission against Rabaul; PBJs attached to Marine Bomber Squadron 413, 423, and 443, and Marine Aircraft Group 61, headquarters, participate.

**August 10th 1945 -(Pacific)** Fleet Marine Force, Pacific, orders the 6th Marine Division to place a regimental combat team with the Third Fleet in the event that an early occupation of Japan is necessary. Brigadier General William T. Clement, assistant division commander, is assigned command of the fleet landing force. In other activity, Rear Admiral Oscar C. Badger, USN, is assigned commander, Task Force 31 (Yokosuka Operation Force), and all ships are instructed to organize and equip Bluejacket and Marine landing forces for the occupation of Japan..

**August 11th 1945 -(United States)** President Truman informs Japan that its surrender will be accepted by a Supreme Commander; however, the emperor and the Japanese high command must first issue cease fire orders to all Japanese armed forces. **(Pacific)** Preliminary plans for the activation of Task Force Able are prepared by the III Amphibious Corps; it will participate in the occupation of Japan and be composed of a small headquarters detachment, the 5th Marines reinforced, an amphibian tractor company, and a medical company. In conjunction, Major General

William T. Clement's (USMC) selected staff officers initiate planning for Task Force Abel's departure for Japan; a RCT is to be prepared for movement to Japan within 48 hours. August 13

**August 13 1945-(Pacific-Wake Island)** Marine Corps planes attack Japanese positions on Peacock Point Battery; it is the final air strike against the atoll.

**August 14th 1945 -(United States)** President Truman makes an announcement, proclaiming that a cease-fire is in effect and that the war with Japan is over. Admiral William D. Leahy reflects: "WE WERE THE FIRST TO HAVE THIS WEAPON IN OUR POSSESSION, AND THE FIRST TO USE IT. THERE IS A PRACTICAL CERTAINTY THAT POTENTIAL ENEMIES WILL HAVE IT IN THE FUTURE AND THAT ATOMIC BOMBS WILL SOMETIME BE USED AGAINST US" ..., "EMPLOYMENT OF THE ATOMIC BOMB IN WAR WILL TAKE US BACK IN CRUELTY TOWARD NON-COMBATANTS TO THE DAYS OF GHENGIS KHAN." ... "UNTIL THE UNITED NATIONS OR SOME WORLD ORGANIZATION CAN GUARANTEE AND HAVE THE POWER TO ENFORCE THAT GUARANTEE-THAT THE WORLD WILL BE SPARED THE TERRORS OF ATOMIC WARFARE, THE U.S. MUST HAVE MORE AND BETTER ATOM BOMBS THAN ANY POTENTIAL ENEMY." **(Pacific-Japan)** Japan capitulates, agreeing to the surrender ultimatum issued by the Allies at Potsdam. General of the Army Douglas MacArthur is named Supreme Allied Commander to accept the surrender and initiate the occupation of Japan. Japan's message concerning surrender: "WITH REFERENCE TO THE JAPANESE GOVERNMENT'S NOTE OF AUGUST 10TH, REGARDING THE ACCEPTANCE OF THE PROVISIONS OF THE POTSDAM DECLARATION AND THE REPLY OF THE GOVERNMENTS OF THE UNITED STATES, GREAT BRITAIN, THE SOVIET UNION, AND CHINA, SENT BY AMERICAN SECRETARY OF STATE BYRNES UNDER THE DATE OF AUGUST 11TH, THE JAPANESE GOVERNMENT HAVE THE HONOR TO COMMUNICATE TO THE GOVERNMENTS OF THE FOUR POWERS AS FOLLOWS: 1.) HIS MAJESTY THE EMPEROR HAS ISSUED AN IMPERIAL RESCRIPT REGARDING JAPAN'S ACCEPTANCE OF THE POTSDAM DECLARATION. 2.) HIS MAJESTY THE EMPEROR IS PREPARED TO AUTHORIZE AND ENSURE THE SIGNATURE BY HIS GOVERNMENT AND THE IMPERIAL GENERAL HEADQUARTERS OF THE NECESSARY TERMS FOR CARRYING OUT THE PROVISIONS OF THE POTSDAM DECLARATION. HIS MAJESTY IS ALSO PREPARED TO ISSUE HIS COMMANDS TO ALL THE MILITARY, NAVAL, AND AIR AUTHORITIES OF JAPAN AND ALL THE FORCES UNDER THEIR CONTROL WHEREVER LOCATED TO CEASE ACTIVE OPERATIONS, TO SURRENDER ARMS, AND TO ISSUE SUCH ORDERS AS MAY BE REQUIRED BY THE SUPREME COMMANDER OF THE ALLIED FORCES FOR THE EXECUTION OF THE ABOVE MENTIONED TERMS." This culminates the war, having now achieved the unconditional surrender of Italy, Germany, and Japan. It has been three years, eight months, and seven days since the attack against Pearl Harbor.

**August 15 1945 -(Pacific-POWs)** The U.S. Fourteenth Air Force transports OSS "Mercy Teams" to Japanese POW camps-"Mission Magpie"-Four Airmen from the Doolittle Raid and Commander Winfield S. Scott, the commander of the navy and Marines on Wake Island (1941) are discovered near Peking, China. The plane, troubled with difficulties, lands at Gai Lam, near Hanoi, but it finally gets to its destination. Also, another OSS Mercy Team discovers the survivors of the USS *Houston*, which was lost at the Battle of the Java Sea during February of 1942. In Thailand, two POWs had escaped from a camp near Bangkok during the summer of 1945 and explained that hundreds more Allied POWs were still there (Petburi Prison Camp). The team liberates 315

survivors who are still wearing their original Khaki drill uniforms. During the latter part of August, these beleaguered troops are flown to Calcutta to prepare for the long road ahead to restore their dignity and health.

**August 21 1945 -(United States)** Asiatic Wing, Naval Air Transport Service is established at Oakland, California. (Pacific) Lt. General Robert L. Eichelberger, U.S.A., commanding officer, Eighth Army orders that the landing of Task Force 31 be made at the naval base at Yokosuka, Japan. The Reserve Battalion, 4th Marines is ordered to land on Futtsu Saki to counterbalance any threat by shore batteries and coastal forts. President Truman sends a letter to Admiral Leahy requesting that the Joint Chiefs of Staff initiate a study to evaluate some proposed legislation suggested by the navy. Truman had received a letter from the Secretary of the Navy James Forrestal requesting increased permanent strength for the navy and Marine Corps. Admiral Leahy is to look at the legislation from the viewpoint of the combined services and their post-war needs. The army is directed to initiate a study on its needs. Subsequently, during September, the army produces a study which suggests the combining of the army and navy under one Department.

**August 23rd 1945 -(Pacific-Okinawa)** Aircraft, Fleet Marine Force, Pacific orders Marine Aircraft Group 31 (at Chimu Airfield) to fly to Japan to support the northern occupation operation.

**August 27th 1945 -(Pacific-Philippines)** The forward contingents of Marine Bomber Squadron 611 departs for Peleliu to join the 4th Marine Air Wing.

**August 30 1945 -(Pacific-Carolines)** Brigadier General Robert Blake, U.S.M.C., is appointed Prospective Island Commander, Truk. **(Pacific-Japan)** The occupation of Japan is official as the 11th Airborne Division is flown to Atsugi Airfield, while an amphibious force composed of the 4th Marines, 6th Marine Division, sailors, British sailors, and Royal Marine Commandos land at Yokosuka Naval Base and at the harbor forts off Miure Peninsula. The first landing craft debark contingents of the 2nd Battalion, 4th Marines at Futtsu Saki; however, the Marines discover the mortars and coastal guns inoperable and re-embark. The main body of the 4th Marines moves ashore at Beaches Red and Green at Yokosuka without incident, advancing inland to establish a defensive perimeter around the airbase and naval base. The Fleet Landing Force's commanding officer, Major General William T. Clement USMC, accepts the surrender of Yokosuka naval base area, and Rear Admirals Robert B. Carney and O.C. Badger, USN, receive the surrender of the First Naval District. The Japanese civil police are permitted to retain their firearms; later, they stop the practice of saluting Allied officers, incensing Admiral Halsey. He sends Oliver (Scrappy) O. Kessing to see the Mayor of Yokosuka to ensure that the police salute Allied officers. The Mayor inquires: "HOW WILL THEY KNOW WHO IS AN OFFICER AND WHO IS NOT?" Kessing makes it easy stating: "IF THEY DON'T KNOW, THEY BETTER PLAY IT SAFE BY SALUTING EVERY FOREIGN UNIFORM."

**August 31 1945 -(Pacific)** The Headquarters and Service Battalion, Fleet Marine Force, Pacific, is disbanded. (Pacific-Japan) Company L, 3rd Battalion, 4th Marines, land at Tateyama Naval Air Station on Sagami Wan (Honshu), initiating reconnaissance of the beach areas and to cover the landing of the 112th Cavalry, U.S.A. scheduled for the 3rd of September; the base capitulates without incident.

**September 1 1945 -(Pacific-Japan)** Allied troops now control the majority of strategic terrain along the coast of Tokyo Bay, except Tokyo. (Pacific-Philippines) Marine Aircraft Groups, Zamboanga is disbanded; operational control of Moret Field and the air defense of Mindanao is assumed by the 13th Fighter Command, U.S.A. **(Atlantic-Cuba)** The Marine Barracks, Naval

Operating Base, Guantanamo Bay is redesignated a Marine Corps Base.

**September 3rd 1945 -(Pacific-Japan)** Company L, 3rd Battalion, 4th Marines, relieved by the 112th Cavalry, USA, at Tateyama Naval Air Station, returns to Yokosuka. Meanwhile, a U.S. Army task force attached to 32nd Infantry Division is transported by air to Kanoya to secure an emergency airfield on the air route to Tokyo from Okinawa and the Philippines. **(Pacific-Volcano-Bonins)** Commodore John H. Magruder, Jr., USN accepts the surrender of the Japanese forces in the Bonins; the short ceremony takes place on Chichi Jima. While the U.S. was bombing the Bonins, the Japanese captured eight Airmen; four of them were executed. Subsequently, when it became apparent that no reinforcements or supplies would arrive, the remaining four Americans were cannibalized. **(Pacific-Phillippines)** Major General Edmund H. Leavey, chief of staff for Lt. General Styler accepts the surrender of the Japanese forces on the Philippines. Japanese General Yamashita, who had been hiding in the mountains west of the Cagayan Valley had been captured on the previous day. He is accused of being responsible for the atrocities committed in the Philippines, despite the fact that he arrived in the Philippines subsequent to the crimes. He receives a speedy trial and is executed before the end of the year. British General Percival, whom Yamashita had forced to surrender unconditionally at Singapore during February 1942, shows no outward emotion. General Wainright, not surprisingly, asks if Yamashita will be shown courtesy due his rank and receives General Styler's assurances, responding: "HE'LL BE GIVEN EVERYTHING HE'S ENTITLED TO UNDER THE GENEVA CONVENTION. WE DON'T WANT, TO BE GUILTY OF TREATING ANYONE AS THE JAPS TREATED YOU AND YOUR MEN." Meanwhile, General Wainright continues to come across new and exciting things which he had missed since his captivity. He comes upon another unusual sight which he describes as "one of the most astonishing sights of my two score years in the Army (a female wearing a feminine version of a uniform)," inquiring: "I BEG YOUR PARDON , BUT WHAT ARE YOU?" and he receives the response: "WHY, I'M A WAC, SIR." General Wainright reacts, "WHAT?" Wainright, after several more minutes of conversation with the WAC is still perplexed and asks an accompanying Officer: "WHAT THE DEVIL IS A WAC?" General Wainright, having been imprisoned by the Japanese had no knowledge of the formation of the Women's Army Corps.

**September 4 1945 -(Pacific-Marcus Island)** The 11th Military Police Company (Provisional) of the 5th Military Police Battalion arrive to guard the island. **(Pacific-Marianas)** Rota Island is occupied. Colonel Gale T. Cummings, USMC is appointed temporary island commander. The bombed out air strip is repaired immediately by Marines and Seabees. **(Pacific-Wake Island)** Brigadier General Lawson H. M. Sanderson, commanding officer of the 4th Marine Aircraft Wing, accepts the surrender of the Japanese forces on the island on behalf of the commander, Marshalls, Gilberts area; the atoll is designated a naval air facility.

**September 4 1945 -(Pacific-Marcus Island)** The 11th Military Police Company (Provisional) of the 5th Military Police Battalion arrive to guard the island. **(Pacific-Marianas)** Rota Island is occupied. Colonel Gale T. Cummings, USMC is appointed temporary island commander. The bombed out air strip is repaired immediately by Marines and Seabees. **(Pacific-Wake Island)** Brigadier General Lawson H. M. Sanderson, commanding officer of the 4th Marine Aircraft Wing, accepts the surrender of the Japanese forces on the island on behalf of the commander, Marshalls, Gilberts area; the atoll is designated a naval air facility

**September 7 1945 -(Pacific-Japan)** Advance elements of Headquarters, Marine Aircraft Group 31, and planes of Marine Fighter Squadron 441 arrive from Okinawa at Yokosuka Airfield, becoming the first aviation unit to operate in Japan. The detachment is under command of the Third

Fleet. **(Pacific-Wake Island)** U.S. occupation forces, including a Marine detachment of two officers and 54 enlisted men from the Marshalls, begin arriving.

**September 14 1945 -(Pacific-Japan)** Colonel Daniel W. Torrey, commanding officer Marine Aircraft -Group 22, and a reconnaissance detachment lands at Omura Airfield for an inspection; it is selected as the Base for Marine Air operations in southern Japan.

**September 16 1945 -(Pacific-Japan)** An advance reconnaissance detachment (V Amphibious Corps), led by Colonel Walter W. Wensinger, Corps Operations officer arrives at Nagasaki to prepare for the landing of the V Amphibious Corps troops and supporting Army units. In other activity, Marine Aircraft Group 31 at Yokosuka airfield comes under control of Fifth Air Force.

**September 19 1945 -(Pacific-Japan)** Admiral Raymond A. Spruance, USN commander Fifth Fleet relieves Admiral Halsey of his responsibilities in the occupation of Japan. Spruance assumes command of all naval operations in Japanese Empire.

**September 20 1945 -(Pacific-Japan)** Brigadier General William T. Clement, USMC, commanding officer of Task Force Able is relieved by Lt. Colonel Fred D. Beans at Yokohama. Clement and his Staff return to the 6th Marine Division on Guam. Also, another reconnaissance detachment including V Amphibious Corps officers and officers of the 5th Marine Division arrive at Sasebo and finish preparations for the landing of corps contingents and supporting army units. Meanwhile, some elements of Marine Aircraft Group 22 arrives at Omura Airfield from Okinawa to bolster the occupation operations.

**September 22 1945 -(Pacific-Japan)** The V Amphibious Corps Headquarters troops and the 5th Marine Division arrive at Sasebo. The 26th Marines (minus 2nd Battalion), supported by the 2nd Battalion, 28th Marines, lands on the beaches at the naval air station. The Marines relieve Japanese guards and take over protection of base installations as well as the stores in the area. Subsequently, contingents of the 13th and 27th Marines and the 5th Tank Battalion establish guard posts and implement security patrols ashore. On the following day, Major General Harry Schmidt, V Amphibious Corps commander, establishes a command post at Sasebo and assumes command of the 2nd and 5th Marine Divisions; Major General Thomas E. Bourke (5th Division) also establishes a command post there.

**September 23 1945 -(Pacific-Japan)** The remaining contingents of the 5th Marine Division land at Sasebo. In other activity, the 2nd and 6th Marines, 2nd Marine Division land at Nagasaki, relieving Marine detachments from the USS *Biloxi* and *Wick ita* which had been used for security details.

**September 24 1945 -(Pacific-Japan)** General Walter Krueger, Commander U.S. Sixth Army, takes control of all forces ashore. Also, the remaining contingents of the 2nd Marine Division land at Nagasaki. On the following day, the U.S. Sixth Army begins landing at Wakayama.

**September 27 1945 -(Pacific-Japan)** Advance elements of the V Amphibious Corps move to Fukuoka, the biggest city in Kyushu.

**September 30 1945 -(Pacific-Japan)** The V Amphibious Corps begins arriving at Fukuoka, Kyushu, in strength for occupation duty. Brigadier General Ray A. Robinson, USMC, asst. commander, 5th Marine Division receives command of the Fukuoka Occupation Force, composed of the 28th Marines, reinforced and army support units. **(Pacific-China)** The III Amphibious Corps arrives at Tangku to implement the occupation of north China. The 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines move by rail to Tientsin, arriving on the following day.

**October 1 1945 -(Pacific-Japan)** Kanoya airfield is occupied by a U.S. Army task Force, the only major Allied unit ashore other than the 2nd and 5th Marine Divisions. **(Pacific-China)** The 1st Battalion, 7th Marines, reinforced, arrive at Chinwangtao; its commanding officer quells ongoing fighting between Communist regular and Guerrilla and former Japanese puppet troops. Marines replace the puppet troops along their perimeter.

**October 3-4 1945 -(Pacific-China)** A Communist Company sized force raids Hsin Ho dump, stealing several cases of ammunition; however, the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines, which is guarding the area, reclaims most of the contraband.

**October 6 1945 -(Pacific-China)** Major Gener I Keller E. Rockey, Commanding Officer, III Amphibious Corps accepts the surrender of 50,000 Japanese troops in the area TientsinTangku, Chinwangtao region. Also, headquarters, 1st Marine Aircraft Wing is established at the French arsenal located near an airfield outside of Tientsin. Despite the close of hostilities with Japan, combat is not terminated; Chinese Communists about 40-50 strong attack a contingent of Engineers and their supporting Marine rifle platoon which is dispatched to clear a roadblock on the Tientsin-Peiping road, instigating the first major skirmish between Marines and the Chinese Communists in northern China. The roadblocks are cleared on the following day when the Marines receive added support from a tank platoon and carrier planes.

**October 7 1945 -(Pacific-China)** The 29th Marines, 6th Marine Division is scheduled to land at Chefoo, which is held by tile Communists, but this is delayed due to anticipated hostility. Toward the latter part of the month, the III Amphibious Corps directs the 6th Marine Division to send a reinforced infantry battalion to handle the situation in Chefoo. In other activity, the 5th Marines arrive in Peiping, about 65 miles north of Tientsin.

**October 10 1945 -(Pacific-China)** About 50,000 Japanese troops in the area of Peiping surrender to the 11th War Area Commander. **(Pacific-Volcano-Bonins)** Advance contingents of the 1st Battalion, 3rd Marines land on Chichi Jima for occupation duty.

**October 11 1945 -(Pacific-China)** The 6th Marine Division lands at Tsingtao; contingents move to Tsangkou airfield about ten miles outside the town, securing it. On the following day, observation planes attached to Marine Observation Squadron 6 arrive at the Airfield.

**October 18-19 1945 -(Pacific-Japan)** The 127th Infantry (minus the 1st Battalion) land at Sasebo and will assume responsibility for the 26th Marines' sector; on the following day, the 26th Marines are detached from the 5th Marine Division and will revert to Fleet Marine Force, Pacific, and subsequently moves to the Palau Islands to oversee the repatriation of the Japanese troops in the Western Carolines.

**October 24 1945 -(Pacific-Japan)** The 32nd Infantry Division establishes a command post In Fukuoka. In conjunction, the Fukuoka Occupation Force is disbanded, its components assigned support roles in the northern Kyushu area. In other activity, the 27th Marines (minus the 1st Battalion) sets up headquarters in Kurume and takes responsibility for the sector of the 5th Marine Division.

**October 26 1945 -(Pacific-Palaus)** The 26th Marines arrive at PeIeliu, relieving the 111th infantry, USA and assuming responsibility for garrisoning the island.

**October 27 1945 -(Pacific-Japan)** Contingents of the 2nd Marine Division (2nd Battalion, 2nd Marines) arrive at Kanoya, relieving a U.S. Army Task Force.

**October 29 1945 -(Pacific-Japan)** Most of the 1st Battalion, 8th Marines, 2nd Marine Division moves from Kumamoto to Kagoshima City and assumes control of western Kagoshima. **(Pacific-China)** The 1st Battalion, 5th Marines, moves to Tangku to protect the railroad there and also moves contingents to Taku, the primary port in North China.

**October 30th 1945 -(Pacific-Japan)** The 2nd Battalion, 2nd Marines, 2nd Marine Division assumes operational control of the army-air-force contingent, maintaining the emergency airfield at Kanoya and freeing a Battalion of the 32nd Division, U.S.A., which returns to Sasebo and rejoins its Regiment.

**October 31 1945 -(Pacific-China)** Major General Louis E. Woods arrives at Tientsin and assumes command of the 1st Marine Aircraft Wing from Brigadier General Thomas Larkin. In other activity, the 4th Marines' occupational sector is greatly reduced in size, being confined to the naval base, airfield, and the town of Yokosuka. On the following day, control of the 4th Marines reverts to commander, U.S. fleet activities, passing from U.S. Eighth Army.

**November 3 1945 -(Pacific-Hawaii)** The 4th Marine Division embarks from Hawaii for the United States.

**November 14-15 1945 -(Pacific-China)** Chinese Communist troops clash with Marines assigned to guarding a train transporting the 1st Marine Division commander, Major General DeWitt Peck; the confrontation occurs near Kuyeh.

**November 20 1945 -(Pacific-Japan)** Marine Aircraft Group 22 departs Sasebo for the United States. Also, the 4th Marines are detached from administrative control of the 6th Marine Division and placed under control of Fleet Marine Force Pacific. The regiment is relieved of its duties in Japan by the end of the year.

**November 23 1945 -(Pacific-Japan)** The V Amphibious Corps starts to relieve the 5th Marine Division, assuming responsibility for its sector and to assign its personnel to the 2nd Marine Division and the 32nd Division, U.S.A.

**November 24 1945 -(Pacific-Japan)** Responsibility for Saga and Fukuoka transfers from the 2nd Marine Division to the 32nd Division, U.S.A.

**November 25th 1945 -(Pacific-Japan)** The remaining base command at Fukuoka is disbanded as the 32nd Division assumes its duties. The 5th Tank Battalion and 28th Marines deployed at Fukuoka and Oita Prefectures and Yamaguchi Prefecture respectively are replaced by Army contingents. **(Pacific-Carolines)** The 2nd Battalion, 21st Marines and the Truk Occupation Force reach Truk Island.

**November 28 1945 -(United States)** The 4th Marine Division is disbanded at Camp Pendleton, California.

**November 30 1945 -(Pacific-Okinawa)** The Marine Detachment (Provisional), Naval Operating Base is disbanded.

**December 1 1945-(Pacific-Japan)** All Japanese Army and Navy personnel involved with demobilization operations are given civilian status, in accordance with recently established government ministries and bureaus. Also, the 1st Battalion, 4th Marines, scheduled to be dissolved, sails for the U.S. **(Pacific-Guam)** The 3rd Marines' Headquarters embarks for the U.S. **(Pacific-Volcan~Bonins)** The remnants of the 1st Battalion, 3rd Marine Division arrive at Chichi Jima to

participate in the occupational mission.

**December 5 1945 -(Pacific-Japan)** The first transports laden with contingents of the 5th Marine Division depart for the U.S.

**December 8 1945 -(Pacific-Japan)** The V Amphibious Corps is informed by the U.S. Sixth Army that effective 30th December. I Corps (Sixth Army) will assume all occupational duties in V Amphibious Corps area. Meanwhile, the 2nd Marine Division takes responsibility for all 5th Marine Division occupation duties.

**December 9 1945 -(Atlantic-Germany)** General Patton, while traveling with General Gay in the rear seat of a staff car is badly injured after a collision at an intersection on the Frankfurt-Mannheim Autobahn. General Patton becomes nearly totally paralyzed from the neck down. Patton had been scheduled to depart Germany for the U.S. on the following day. There is some speculation that the accident had been an assassination attempt, but all indications, including the subsequent severe depression and sincere sorrow of the driver of the truck which struck the staff car, tend to disavow this theory. General Patton's wife rushes to Germany; he an iron-willed man fights a tough battle for twelve days. Doctors note that most men who had suffered such an injury would have succumbed within a few days at best. The fighting general gets pneumonia, which over stresses his heart. He succumbs on the 21st of December, having noted that: "THIS IS A HELL OF A WAY FOR A SOLDIER TO DIE." General George S. Patton's final words, spoken to his beloved wife Beatrice,:" IT'S TOO DARK, I MEAN TOO LATE." Patton had previously stated that if he died overseas, he wanted to be buried with his troops. He rests at Hamm, Luxembourg next to a colored truck driver. Also, on the 21st, Fred Ayer Jr., an army officer and nephew of General Patton was in Boston speaking with two Marines . when word of the General's death reached them. Silence followed the tragic news, then one of the Marine officers (tears in his eyes) speaks extemporaneously: "THERE DIED THE BEST GOD-DAMNED MARINE THE ARMY EVER BRED."

**December 10 1945 -(Pacific-Marshall Islands)** The Marine Detachment (Provisional), Eniwetok is dissolved.

**December 13 1945 -(Pacific-China)** The commanding general, China approves of the disbanding of the III Amphibious Corps.

**December 15 1945 -(United States)** Admiral Nimitz becomes the chief of naval operations, replacing Admiral King. Also, the 3rd Marines arrive at San Diego from Guam and moves to Camp Pendleton, California, becoming part of the Marine Training and Replacement Command.

**December 19 1945 -(Pacific-Japan)** The remaining contingents of the 5th Marine Division depart for the United States.

**December 22 1945 -(Pacific-Marcus Island)** The Marine Detachment (Provisional, Marcus Island) is activated.

**December 24 1945 -(Pacific-Japan)** The 3rd Battalion, 4th Marines, reinforced by Regimental units and a Casual Company (established to provide replacements for ships' detachments) relieves the 2nd Battalion of all guard responsibilities.

**December 28th 1945 -(Pacific-Guam)** The 3rd Marine Division (minus the 1st Battalion in the Bonins and the 2nd Battalion on Truk) is disbanded on Guam.

**December 31 1945 -(Pacific-Hawaii)** The 3rd Marine Aircraft Wing is decommissioned at the Marine Corps Air Station, Ewa, Hawaiian Islands. (Pacific-Japan) The V Amphibious Corps is relieved of all occupation responsibilities as the U.S. Eighth Army relieved the Sixth Army and takes command of all occupation troops in Japan.

**January 1 1946 - (Pacific-Japan)** - The 2nd Battalion, 4th Marines embark from Yokosuka, heading for the United States. The unit is replaced by the 3rd Battalion, 4th Marines. (EP)

**January 6 1946 -(Pacific-Japan)** The remnant regimental headquarters detachment of the 4th Marines, still in Yokosuka, departs for Tsingtao, North China, to join the 6th Marine Division. In other activity, General MacArthur is notified by the the JCS that his recommendation to equip the Korean National Civil Police with U.S. equipment has been approved. The SWNCC recommends that the equipment should be provided to the Police with the identical stipulations used for Korean civilians who are also provided with U.S. tools. The regulations include that such equipment be returned upon completion of the mission or such time when the U.S. evacuates Korea, or the alternative that the equipment be "sold or otherwise transferred" to the Korean administration upon establishment of an international trusteeship or the establishment of an independent Korea.

**January 11 1946 -(United States)** - The Magna Carta (Magna Charta), an ancient document originating in England by King John during the year 1215, that granted particular political and civil liberties (prompted by the English Barons) had been transferred from England to the United States for safe keeping during the war. Today, a Marine detachment from the Marine Barracks in Washington, D.C., serves as an honor guard at the Library of Congress, while the cherished document is presented to the British Ambassador who will have it returned to Great Britain.

**January 14th 1946 -(Pacific-Korea)** The activation of a Korean Constabulary force and a Korean Coast Guard becomes effective today. In Seoul a Constabulary Recruiting Station opens at the English Language School. The school, a former Japanese facility, is located on the Ch'unch'on Road northeast of Seoul where a Constabulary Garrison has been established. The campaign to find recruits is successful. By the latter part of January, three full Companies are formed in the Seoul area. Lt. Col. John T. Marshall, a former member of the Bureau of National Defense, becomes the first American Chief of the Constabulary; at the same time, the 1st Regiment Korean Constabulary is formed. Initially, Japanese drill is implemented, but on February 11th, it is replaced by U.S. drill. In conjunction, communications still remains a problem. By April 30th, commands are sufficiently translated by using a mixture of Japanese and Korean. Nevertheless, according to a subsequent letter from Lt. Col. Clarence C. DeReus to Major General A.C. Smith (Chief of Military History, U.S. Army) on August 27th, 1953, DeReus states that some Japanese drill remains during July, 1948. While the Americans are in the process of instituting the new force they rely on a Korean, Lee Hyung Koon, who had been a Korean Colonel in the Japanese Army. Koon, now an advisor to the Director of National Defense, General Champney, subsequently becomes a Lt. General in the ROK Army. In other activity, Korea, while under the dominance of Japan, had a Coast Guard. Today, the Military Government transfers it to the jurisdiction of the Director of National Defense for the purpose of establishing a Korean Coast Guard. It is needed to eliminate the ongoing piracy and smuggling activities which are rampant off the coast. A Training Station is established on the south coast at Chinhae; this task is more difficult than raising the Constabulary as Marine equipment is much more scarce. In addition to the lack of equipment and Ships, there is an acute shortage of qualified Seamen. General MacArthur dispatches repeated urgent requests for the proper assistance, but apparently, the War Department is not very responsive. Responsibility for the success of the

Coast Guard depends initially on two U.S. Naval Reserve Officers, followed by one Army Officer who each serve successive terms. Finally, by September 1946, the U.S. Coast Guard provides a team of fifteen, including Officers and enlisted advisors. The Coast Guard gets the program off the beaches with its proper guidance. **(Pacific-Wake Island)** On Wake Island, Marine Detachment Wake is activated. Subsequently, the unit will be redesignated Marine Detachment (Provisional), Eniwetok on the 10th of February, then ordered to embark there with further instructions to disband following the termination of the atomic bomb tests on the Bikini Atoll.

**January 22nd 1946 -(United States)** The Marines at Quantico, Virginia, are ordered by the commandant (General Vandegrift) to establish an infantry brigade, which is to be prepared for expeditionary service; the directive mandates that the force be kept in a perpetual state of readiness. Before the end of the month, the First Special Marine Brigade is established at Quantico. On February 4th, Brigadier General Oliver P. Smith, USMC, assumes command of the Brigade. Also, an additional specialized battalion is formed at Camp Lejeune, North Carolina.

**January 31 1946 -(Pacific-China)** There is some agreement reached between the Communists and the Nationalists at the Political Consultive Conference with regard to a unified China and the making of a democratic country. Nevertheless, the sequence of events during the remainder of the year prevents any genuine implementation of the goals. And the two sides continue to skirmish for control of the nation. **(Pacific-Japan)** - The 32nd Division, USA is relieved by the 2nd Marine Division. The 2nd Marines take responsibility for sections of Oita and Miyazaki; the 6th Marines deploy in Fukuoka, Oita and Yamaguchi; the 8th Marines are deployed in Kagoshima and Kumamoto and the 10th Marines assume responsibility for Nagasaki. **(Pacific-Marianas)** Marine Detachment (Provisional), Marianas area is officially disbanded.

**February 4 1946 -(United States)** - In Quantico, Brigadier General Oliver P. Smith, brigade commander 1st Special Marine Brigade, assumes control of the Administrative and operational responsibilities of the unit. Soon after, on the 8th, General Smith is ordered to ensure the brigade's readiness for action on two weeks' notice, and he is directed to report to the CinC Atlantic Fleet to participate in future planning.

**February 5 1946 -(United States)** - At Camp Pendleton, California, the Headquarters Battalion, 5th Marine Division disbands. The action is mandated by Area Special Order 40-46 issued January 31st.

**February 9th 1946 - (Pacific-China)** George Marshall sends a letter to President Truman informing him that the situation in Manchuria is worsening. Marshall offers several strong suggestions, including ending the China Theater of Operations and replacing it with a Military Advisory Group. Marshall also urges that the U.S. Marines be withdrawn from China, except for some reconnaissance troops and a few other small contingents including guards. In addition, Marshall suggests that China announce that it is to dispatch troops into Japan to participate with the Occupation Forces.

**February 10 1946 -(Pacific-Marshalls)** - Marine Detachment (Provisional), Marcus Island is re-designated Marine Detachment (Provisional) Kwajalein. Also, Marine Detachment (Provisional) Wake is re-designated Marine Detachment (Provisional) Eniwetok; testing of the atomic bomb is scheduled at Bikini during June and the unit is ordered to embark for there with further instructions to disband at the conclusion of the atomic tests.

**February 15 1946 -(Pacific Japan)** - The V Amphibious Corps is disbanded; its zone will be

taken over by the 2nd Marine Division. **(Pacific Area)** - Headquarters, 2nd Marine Aircraft Wing embarks for the United States. Also, at Yokosuka, about seventy five percent of the Yokosuka Occupation Force is redesignated the 2nd Separate Guard Battalion (Provisional) Fleet Marine Force; it remains there to assume interior guard responsibility.

**February 19 1946 -(United States)** - A directive by the Secretary of the Navy Forrestal authorizes the establishment of the Marine Air Training Command, which will take responsibility for all Marine Air Reserve activities; on February 26th, a Marine Air Training Command is established at Glenview Naval Air Station, Illinois.

**February 26 1946 -(Pacific-Carolines)** - Base Headquarters Company, Occupation Forces, Truk and the Central Caroline Islands is re-designated Marine Detachment (Provisional), Truk. On the following day, the 2nd Battalion, 21st Marines will be detached from the force and embark for Guam for the purpose of disbanding.

**March 1st 1946 -(Pacific-Palaus)** On Peleliu, Marine Detachment (Provisional), Peleliu is activated.

**March 8 1946 -(Pacific-Philippines)** The 6th Marine Division, on the previous day, issued Secret Special Order No. 108-46, which authorizes the reactivation of the 4th Marines as part of the 6th Marine Division; the 4th Marines, captured by Japanese forces after the capitulation of Corregidor during 1942, are activated today.

**March 13 1946 -(Pacific-Marianas)** On Guam, the 4th Marine Air Wing concludes the operations of its Command Post; its Headquarters departs for the United States. On the following day, the 4th Marine Air Wing departs Apra Harbor by Ship for the United States, arriving at San Diego on March 26th, where it is disbanded.

**March 18 1946 -(Pacific-Philippines)** The Marine Detachment (Provisional) Samar is activated.

**March 22nd 1946 -(United States)** The Marine Corps, sustaining similar postwar manpower cutbacks as other Service Branches, issues Basic Post-War Plan No. 2, which sets its strength at 100,000 Men and a proportional number of Officers. In conjunction, Fleet Marine Force is to be composed of just two divisions, headquartered at Camp Lejeune, N.C., and in Guam, bolstered by a reinforced Marine brigade on the West Coast at Camp Pendleton. Marine Aviation will be limited, consisting of two commands: Aircraft, Fleet Marine Force, Pacific which receives responsibility comprising the West Coast, extending to Hawaii and beyond to the Marianas; the 2nd Command consists of the overall command of six Marine Carrier Groups. The remaining Marine components comprise the Headquarters, Fleet Marine Force, Pacific and Headquarters, Fleet Marine Force, Atlantic; Force troops are assigned to each commands.

**March 23 1946 -(Pacific-Japan)** The 2nd Marine Division's occupational zone is further diminished and limited to the island of Kyushu, as British Commonwealth troops relieve the 6th Marines in the Yamaguchi Prefecture.

**March 31 1946 -(United States)** The 9th Marine Aircraft Wing is decommissioned at Cherry Point, North Carolina. **(Pacific-China)** Pursuant to the issuance of Special Order 22-46 (21 March), the Headquarters and Service Battalions, III Amphibious Corps, stationed in North China, are disbanded.

**April 1 1946 -(Pacific-China)** The 3rd Marine Brigade is activated at Tsingtao, China, being formed by troops of the 6th Marine Division, which is being reduced in strength to accede to the

postwar needs of the Marine Corps.

**April 8 1946 -(Pacific-China-Japan)** Headquarters 5th Marines transfers from Japan to Taku, China.

**April 10th 1946 -(Pacific-Marcus Island)** The Marine Heavy Antiaircraft Artillery Battery (Provisional) is re-designated Marine Barracks, Marcus; it falls under the jurisdiction of the Department of the Pacific; the unit will be disbanded entirely on the 12th of May. Also, within a week (April 16th), the Marine 11th Military Police Company (Provisional), attached to the 5th Military Police Battalion, Island Command, Saipan, is disbanded.

**April 15th 1946 -(Pacific-Carolines)** Marine Occupation Force, Truk and Central Caroline Islands is renamed, becoming Commander, Truk and Central Caroline Islands. **(Pacific-Palaus)** The Department of the Pacific assumes administrative control of the Marine Detachment (Provisional) Peleliu; it is then redesignated Marine Barracks, Peleliu.

**May 1946 - (United States-Pacific-Korea)** The joint United States-USSR Commission, which had been authorized during the Moscow Conference of the Foreign Ministers of the U.S. and Russia for the purpose of bringing about a unified Korea, still makes no progress. The Commission had met during early 1946 but no decision could be reached by which Korean organizations should be involved with the formation of a Provisional government. The Russians, of course, have decided that only those organizations which have shown support for an idea which originated at the Moscow conference be involved. The idea was to establish a five-year trusteeship, governed by four-powers, but the only Korean organization that supports the notion is the Communists. Obviously, if the proposal is accepted, the Russians are guaranteed a Communist-controlled regime. The Commission, unable to agree, adjourns the meetings. During 1947, about one year later, the Commission returns to the table, but still the Russian proposal is discounted and the meetings accomplish nothing of value. Subsequently, the U.S. takes the question of Korean independence and unification to the United Nations, rather than waste more time with the Russians. In conjunction, the issue is discussed by the U.N. during September 1947.

**May 2 1946 -(United States)** Major Albert Arsenault, USMC, and a contingent of Marine volunteers move to Alcatraz Island, California, to bolster the civilian Police and assist in quelling a prisoners' riot.

**May 4 1946 - (United States)** In California, riots erupt at Alcatraz prison, prompting President Harry Truman to send in U.S. Marines to bolster the guards and squash the insurrection. The incident costs the lives of five people and injures 14 others.

**May 6 1946 -(United States)** Again, there are movements afoot to cut the size of the Marine Corps. Commandant General Alexander Vandegrift appears before the Senate Naval Affairs Committee to resist the action which has appeared as Senate Bill 2044. Vandegrift expounds on the dangers of reducing the Marine Corps.

**May 20 1946 -(Pacific-Ryukyus)** The Marine 8th Military Police Battalion (Provisional) is renamed Marine Barracks, Naval Operating Base, Okinawa. (EP)

**June 1 1946 -(Pacific-Marianas)** The 1st Base Headquarters Battalion, Guam, becomes a Marine Barracks. )

**June 1 1946 - May 5th 1949 -(Pacific-Marianas)** The Marine Garrison on Guam assumes responsibility for the Japanese war criminals interned there. Marines are responsible for maintaining

discipline in addition to feeding and clothing the war prisoners; some prisoners who have been sentenced to death are executed by the Garrison troops. **(Pacific-Bonin-Volcano Islands)** The 1st Battalion, 3rd Marines, 3rd Marine Division, based on Chichi and a component of the Bonins Occupation Forces are disbanded.

**June 10 1946 -(Pacific-Marianas)** The 5th Military Police Battalion (Provisional) becomes Marine Barracks, Saipan. **(Pacific-China)** The III Amphibious Corps Headquarters is deactivated, but the majority of its Staff are transferred to the staff of the 1st Marine Division. The new organization, commanded by Major General Keller E. Rockey, becomes Marine Forces China and is composed of slightly more than 24,000 men. In other activity, the 3rd Marine Brigade Headquarters and its support troops combine with the 4th Marines at Tsingtao.

**June 13 1946 -(Pacific-Japan)** The 2nd Marines, which had responsibility for Miyazaki and Oita Prefectures, embark Sasebo, Kyushu, for Norfolk, Virginia. Subsequently, the 8th Marines also depart for the States. (EP)

**June 15 1946 -(Pacific-Japan)** - The Marines relinquish their occupational responsibility for Kyushu as Major General Leroy P. Hunt hands over his zone to the 24th Division, USA. Also, the 2nd Separate Guard Battalion (Provisional), Fleet Marine Force is decreased in numbers and is redesignated Marine Detachment, Fleet Activities, Yokosuka; the unit falls under the direction of the Department of the Pacific. **(Pacific-Korea)** The Korean Department of National Defense receives a name change and will now be known as the Department of Internal Security; its functions remain unchanged, national defense. Apparently, the phrase "national defense" has been disturbing to the Russians, and discussions about a different name have filtered down. During May, with regards to the subject, General Hodge, the Military Commander in Korea and General Archer Lerch, the Military Governor who succeeded General Arnold, had discussed the issue and concluded that the word change would be suitable. Other apparent sensitive name changes also occur. The Bureau of Armed Forces and its subordinate Departments of the Army and Navy are abolished, and replaced by the Constabulary and the Coast Guard. In conjunction, General Hodge, subsequently states his feelings on the subject: "I WAS VERY INTERESTED IN ESTABLISHING A KOREAN ARMY FROM THE BEGINNING OF THE OCCUPATION...I MET WITH MUCH OPPOSITION AT HIGHER LEVELS APPARENTLY IN THE BELIEF THAT AT THAT STAGE OF OUR RELATIONS, SUCH A MOVE MIGHT BE MISUNDERSTOOD BY THE RUSSIANS AND BE A SOURCE OF DIFFICULTY WHEN IT CAME TO THE COORDINATION OF THE AMERICAN AND RUSSIAN ZONES OF KOREA INTO A SINGLE NATION." (EP)

**June 20 1946 -(United States-Canada)** Mr. Fred Rose (Rosenburg), the only known Communist member of the Canadian Parliament, has been convicted in Montreal of being a Soviet spy; he receives a six-year sentence. Devastating news emerges from the trial disclosing information that the spy ring has operatives throughout cities in the U.S., including the capital, Washington. **(Pacific-Japan)** Marine Corps Aviation completes its mission in the Pacific as Marine Aircraft Group 31 departs Yokosuka for the States; the departure also concludes Marine occupation duties in northern Japan. **(Pacific-Philippines)** The Marine Detachment (Provisional), Samar is redesignated a Marine Barracks; the Department of the Pacific takes over administrative control of the unit from Fleet Marine Force, Pacific. On the 24th, the 2nd Marine Division Headquarters embarks Kyushu for the States.

**June 27 1946 -(United States)** The Division of Reserve (Marine) is detached from the Personnel

Department and is reactivated as a separate Division of the office of the Commandant. Soon after, on July 4th, the duties of the Office of the Marine Corps Women's Reserve are detached from the Personnel Department and are assigned to the Division of Reserve. Simultaneously, the Division of Recruiting is transferred from the Personnel Department to the Office of the Commandant. (EP)

**June 29 1946 - (Pacific-China)** The on-going talks to settle differences between the Nationalist and Communist forces conclude, but unification is no closer. Meanwhile, Anti-American propaganda increases and unfortunately, it comes from both the Communists and some Nationalist groups. During July, the Nationalists will accuse the Communists of instigating fighting in the Kiangsu and Tatung areas. Meanwhile, the Communists blame the Nationalists for the surge in fighting in the vicinity of Hupeh, Kiangsu and Shantung. And to make the situation worse, Chinese college students stage AntiAmerican rallies, much to the dismay of the American government.

**June 30 1946 -(United States)** Marine Corps active duty personnel strength stands at 155,679, composed of 141,471 enlisted and 14,208 Officers. In comparison, on June 30th, 1945, Marine Corps strength stood at 474,680: 437,613 enlisted and 37,067 Officers. Also, the Navy V-12 College Program is deactivated.

**July 1 1946 -(United States)** The Marine Corps deactivates its Auxiliary Air Stations at Atlantic, Congaree and Gillespie, as well as the Marine Corps Air Station at Eagle Mountain Lake, Texas. Also, Marine reservists and inductees who have accumulated 30 months of service become eligible for discharge. In other activity, President Truman appoints J. Leighton Stuart as Ambassador to China.

**July 1 1946 - (Pacific-Bikini Islands)** The United States explodes a 20-kiloton atomic bomb over the Bikini Islands, which are part of the Marshall Islands. The natives have agreed to be moved to another island, prior to the test. Later in the month (25th), another atomic bomb is tested in the area, but it is detonated under water. In unrelated and subsequent activity, the Bikini bathing suit is named after these islands.

**July 2 1946 -(Pacific-Japan)** The majority of the 2nd Marine Division embarks for the United States, arriving at Norfolk on July 12th; the unit proceeds from there to Camp Lejeune, North Carolina.

**July 4 1946 -(Pacific-Philippines)** The Marine Detachment (Provisional), Headquarters Commander, Philippine Sea Frontier is redesignated Marine Detachment, Commander, Naval Forces, Philippines. Also, the Philippine Islands receive their total independence from the United States.

**July 7 1946 -(Pacific-China)** A manifesto is issued by the Chinese Communist Party; it vehemently criticizes U.S. policy toward the Central Government of Chiang Kai-shek. (EP)

**July 13-27 1946 -(Pacific-China)** In reaction to the Communists' ambush and capture of seven Marine Guards in an area about 15 miles from Peitaiho, members of the Executive Headquarters successfully gain their freedom without retaliatory action. (EP)

**July 29 1946 - (Pacific-China)** Communist troops ambush a small Marine Patrol. The Marines sustain three killed and several wounded.

**August 1 1946 -(United States)** The Commandant of the Marine Corps, by means of a confidential

letter, dictates post-war Marine Corps Aviation strength to consist of one Marine Aircraft Group and one Marine Aircraft Wing; components will be based on the West Coast and in the Central and Western Pacific. In conjunction, the combined strength of the Fleet Marine Forces, Atlantic and Pacific respectively, is established at 1,498 Aviation Officers and 11,848 enlisted men; ground Officers are set at 2,149 and ground enlisted personnel at 36,493. **(Pacific-China)** The 1st Marine Division orders Marine forces in Tsingtao be set at one reinforced Infantry Battalion; in conjunction, the 4th Marines (minus 3rd Battalion) is ordered back to the States. The 3rd Battalion, 4th Marines remains as a separate unit, under the jurisdiction of the Commander, Naval Port Facilities, Tsingtao. Final contingents of the 4th Marines embark from the states on September 3rd.

**August 10 1946 - (United States)** President Truman dispatches a letter to Chiang Kai-shek, which points to the growing dissatisfaction in the U.S. concerning the inability of Chiang's Kuomintang government and the Communists to form a united government. Truman requests quick progress toward that end as the U.S. is about to rethink its China policy. Truman makes it clear that it is both the Nationalists and Communists who are to blame for the expanding chaos. In conjunction freedom of the press is being interfered with and some Chinese civilians are being assassinated. Kai-shek responds and tells Truman that his government is doing everything to achieve the "mutually declared objective." Continuing, he states that he is fully co-operating with General Marshall and adds that success depends on the "sincerity of the Communists." In conjunction, General Marshall has previously informed Truman that if an all-out civil war breaks out, the Communist will prevail.

**August 19th 1946 -(Atlantic-Cuba)** On Guantanamo, the Marine Corps Base is re-designated Marine Barracks, Naval Operating Base, Guantanamo Bay.

**August 28 1946 -(Pacific-Marshalls)** The Marine Detachment (Provisional), Bikini disbands.

**August 31 1946 - -(United States)** The First Special Marine Brigade, which has contingents based in both Quantico, Virginia, and Camp Lejeune, North Carolina, is disbanded. (EP)

**September 1 1946 -(United States)** The U.S. Navy has been extremely busy since the close of hostilities. In addition to the enormous amounts of Soldiers it has ferried back to the States, it has also shuttled 1,300,000 Officers and men of the Coast Guard, Navy and Marine Corps back to the States from their overseas stations.

**September 6 1946 -(Pacific-China)** The Chinese Nationalist Army has assumed responsibility for the protection of the coal fields and the rails running between Chinwangtao and Peiping; effective today, U.S. Marine Guards' details are restricted to guarding those trains which are transporting U.S. personnel or equipment.

**September 11 1946 - (United States)** Marine Headquarters and Service Company and Weapons Company, 6th Marines, Fleet Marine Force becomes Headquarters and Service Company, 3rd Marine Brigade, Fleet Marine Force. **(Pacific-Korea)** General Lerch, the Military Governor of Korea, orders all Americans in the Korean government to cease day-to-day responsibilities and act only in an advisory capacity. Lerch is convinced that the South Koreans, having had one year of U.S. supervision and no Japanese domination, are now able to depend more on themselves. In conjunction, Colonel Price, the Director of the Department of Internal Security, formerly the Bureau of National Defense, relinquishes his post to a Korean counterpart. Similar changes occur within the Constabulary and the Coast Guard. In theory, the Koreans are on their own, but practical application will be some time coming. In fact, at this time there is no Korean at the head of the

Constabulary, eliminating a formal advisor. Major Lee Hyong Koon, who had served in the Japanese Army, is the chief, but his prior record does not prompt advertisement of the fact. Subsequently, during November 1946, Lt. Colonel Song Ho Seung becomes the chief of the Korean Constabulary. In conjunction, one American advisor, Captain James H. Hausman, is transferred to the Constabulary in Seoul. He becomes a primary factor in the arming of the Koreans from his new location, and eventually he serves as an important liaison between the KMAG and ROK Chiefs-of-Staff. Hausman, directed by Colonel Barros, intensifies the effort to expand the Korean Constabulary program, but as time goes on, Captain Hausman becomes disenchanted with the treatment given to the Constabulary by the Korean Department of Internal Security. In the meantime, as the Korean forces are being built, the American advisor force is dwindling, as is the rest of the U.S. Army. The Officers continue to depart Korea, but no replacements are scheduled to take their places. This, of course, makes the task of those remaining even more difficult, especially for those few Americans that are spread far and wide throughout the provinces. Between now and about April of 1948, the number of American advisors averages about six men, although the number fluctuates from between four and ten Officers at a time. And there is no definitive rule as to exactly what "methods of internal security" should be, leaving the interpretation to the individual Advisors. In conjunction, each advisor usually retains responsibility for more than one Constabulary Regiment, and despite the lack of so many basic things including weapons and other essentials, the training courses run non-stop seven days a week. One restriction forbids the training of Korean Constabulary forces with weapons other than small arms because it is merely a reserve force to bolster the Police. Nonetheless, the Korean forces are frequently near the U.S. forces, and it is not uncommon for the advisors to have the Koreans become familiar with various other weapons, such as Mortars and Machine Guns.

**September 12 1946 -(Pacific-China)** The 4th Marines, reinforced (less one Battalion), embarks for the United States to become part of the 2nd Marine Division at Camp Lejeune, North Carolina.

**September 13 1946 - (Pacific-China)** George Marshall informs President Truman that the diplomacy by him and Ambassador Stuart to bring about a peaceful solution in China has reached an impasse.

**September 18 1946 -(Pacific-China)** The Commander of Marine Forces, China, Major General Keller E. Rockey, is relieved by Major General Samuel L. Howard.

**September 30 1946 -(Atlantic-Virgin Islands)** The Marine Corps Air Facility on St. Thomas is changed to a custodian status.

**October 1 1946 -((United States-USMC)** At present, Marine Corps strength stands at about 95,000 regular male Marines, just under the set amount of 100,000. Also, Marine Corps Air Stations at El Centro and Mojave, California are redesignated as Naval Air Stations and come under Naval authority and Marine Corps Air Station, Parris Island, South Carolina is deactivated. In other Marine activity, all reservists and inductees, regardless of length of service, become eligible for discharge. By today, nearly all of the ten Provisional Marine Detachments and Military contingents of the occupation forces, formed since the close of the war, have either been disbanded, redesignated a Marine Barracks or been transformed into a permanent Marine detachment; the exceptions are those on Eniwetok, Kwajalein and Wake.

**October 4 1946 -(United States)** Headquarters USMC directs that all enlisted male selectees (draftees), reservists and regulars whose enlistments have expired must receive their discharge or

be placed on terminal leave by October 18th, unless exempted by special authorization.

**October 7 1946 -(Pacific-Japan)** The U.S. Fifth Air Force detaches Marine Aircraft Group 31; it reverts to Naval control. (EP)

**October 12 1946 -(Pacific-Carolines)** The Provisional Marine Detachment, which has been controlled by Commander, Truk and Central Caroline Islands, is now administered by the Department of the Pacific.

**October 15 1946 -(USA-Pacific)** The Commanding General, Marine Garrison Forces, 14th Naval District receives additional responsibility, as all Marine Garrisons in the Pacific area, excluding Fleet Marine Forces, Marine Corps Air Stations and shore-based air warning contingents, revert to his command; Headquarters is redesignated Headquarters, Marine Garrison Forces, Pacific, and the Garrison Commander becomes Commanding General, Marine Garrison Forces, Pacific. **(Pacific-Japan)** Marine Aircraft Group 31 halts its regular reconnaissance flights over the Tokyo area, restricting missions mostly to courier, mail, transport and training flights. (EP)

**November 30 1946 - (Pacific-Korea)** The U.S. Army Military Government in Japan lists the Korean Constabulary roles as containing 143 Officers and 5,130 enlisted men. Also during November, another Constabulary Garrison is established on the island of Cheju-do. Nevertheless, experienced Korean Officers remain in short supply, and it will take about two additional years to beef up the Constabulary forces. In conjunction, many of the Officers have received their earlier training serving with Japanese or Chinese outfits, and they naturally tend to inject their way of Soldiering into the minds of the troops. The methods sometimes directly oppose U.S. tactics, as in the case of executing Banzai assaults. However, some of the more ancient methods, such as total reliability on using either animals or humans to transport supplies, seemed at least positive in this rugged terrain.

**December 1 1946 -(United States)** Marine Barracks, Parris Island, South Carolina, is re-designated a Marine Corps Recruit Depot.

**December 10 1946 -(Pacific-Marshalls)** The Wake and Eniwetok (Provisional) Detachments are disbanded. The Kwajalein contingent is redesignated Marine Barracks, Kwajalein, and falls under administrative control of Marine Garrison Forces, Pacific.

**December 16 1946 -(USA-Atlantic)** Fleet Marine Force, Atlantic, operationally controlled by the Commander in Chief, Atlantic is activated by Commanding General, 2nd Marine Division, who assumes command of the unit. In other activity, a detailed report is received by Marine Commandant, General Vandegrift, detailing the effects of an atomic bomb attack against an amphibious landing; the committee's conclusion explains that WWII-type Amphibious Invasions are now obsolete.

**January 13 1947 -(Atlantic-Caribbean)** The U.S. is practicing amphibious maneuvers in Caribbean waters; the 2nd Marine Division, commanded by Major General Thomas E. Watson, takes part in the exercises. (EP)

**January 23 1947 -(United States)** Lt. General Roy S. Geiger USMC, scheduled for official retirement in eight days, dies at the Naval Hospital in Bethesda, Maryland; General Geiger had served with the I and III Amphibious Corps and assumed temporary Command of the 10th Army on Okinawa subsequent to the death of Lt. Simon B. Bruckner, Jr. USA.

**January 30 1947 -(United States)** Having concluded that the ongoing endeavor of George C.

Marshall, General of the Army, to terminate the Chinese Civil War is futile, U.S. Officials order the withdrawal of about 12,000 Military personnel from China. Approximately 2,000 U.S. Marines are included in this directive. (EP)

**January 31 1947 -(United States)** The Navy Department Places its casualty figures (dead or missing) for the period 12/7/41 through 1/1/47 at 88,939; this figure includes all causes. The Navy figures: 62,548; Marine Corps figures: 24,479 and the Coast Guard: 1,912. In other activity, the United Nations guard, composed of 125 United States Marines, is disbanded; the contingent consists of 125 combat veterans, men whose uniform of the day had been Dress Blues. (EP)

**January 1947 - (Pacific-Korea)** The Korean Coast Guard, established subsequent to the U.S. occupation of South Korea, has made some progress, especially since the arrival of U.S. Coast Guard Advisors during September of 1946. Eighteen Vessels on loan from the U.S., which had been delivered to Korea from Japan and the Philippines, had been commissioned during Autumn of 1946. Captain George McCabe, the American Commander, reports that as of January, 1947, the Korean Coast Guard is staffed with "reasonably well-trained troops." By early July, the Joint Chiefs of Staff will be asked to recall the American advisers.

**February 3 1947 -(United States)** In Chicago, Illinois, the Marine First Volunteer Training Unit (USMC Reserve) is established; it is commanded by Major Milton V. O'Connell. In other activity, a message from Ambassador MacVeagh arrives from Athens, Greece, alerting Washington that the British might be preparing to abandon Greece or greatly decreasing their troop commitment, which now stands at about 40,000 men. **(Pacific-China)** The 1st Marine Division is directed to complete its preparations for embarkment from China, however, simultaneously, it is ordered to provide logistical and tactical support to the Army units in Peiping until their evacuation is concluded.

**March 1 1947 -(United States)** In San Diego, California, the Marine Corps reactivates the Field Music School, under the leadership of the base band officer, Chief Warrant Officer F. A. Lock.

**March 5 1947 -(United States)** The 7th Marines, returning from China, is disbanded upon reaching Camp Pendleton; the majority of the unit and its equipment is transferred to the 3rd Marine Brigade also at Pendleton.

**March 10 1947 -(Pacific-China-Guam)** A contingent of the 1st Pioneer Battalion, Company B, embarks China for Guam where it is to help with the Camp construction for the 1st Marine Brigade which will be based on Guam.

**March 12 1947 -(United States)** President Truman, concerned with the spread of Communism, proclaims what becomes known as the Truman Doctrine. During a speech to the Joint Session of Congress, he requests that Congress appropriate money for Greece (\$250 million) and Turkey (\$150 million), both of which are being strained by Communist attempts to seize power. At the conclusion of the President's thunderous speech, both Houses rise to their feet to deliver roof-shattering applause. One man Vito Marcantonio, the American Labor party representative from New York is the lone person who refuses to stand. Truman expects Congress to pass the Legislation by March 31st; however, the bill does not get approved until April 22nd by the Senate, and on May 9th, the House passes it by a vote of 287 to 107. Congress will appropriate \$400 million. The Truman Doctrine makes it emphatically clear that the U.S. will oppose Communism and its expansion plans wherever it becomes necessary. Truman later states that his speech was "AMERICA'S ANSWER TO THE SURGE OF COMMUNIST TYRANNY. IT HAD TO BE CLEAR AND FREE OF HESITATION OR DOUBLE TALK."

**March 14 1947 -(Pacific-Philippines)** The Philippine Government agrees to lease bases to the U.S. for a period of 99 years.

**March 17 1947 -(Pacific-China)** The single 1st Marine Company on duty with the Guard Detachment at the port of Chinwangtao is relieved by the Marine 1st Reconnaissance Company. Also, Company E, 3rd Battalion, 4th Marines receives orders to move to Tsingtao to bolster the 3rd Battalion, 4th Marines; the reinforced unit will relieve the entire Seamen Guards at the Naval Installations. (USMC) Woman Marine Tech Sgt. Mary Frances Wancheck completes four years of service during March, becoming the first Woman Marine to receive a hash mark (each slash mark on sleeve signifies 4 yrs. of service).

**March 17-April 21 1947(Pacific-Palau Islands)** The war with Japan has been over since August 1945, but there are still some Japanese troops who are unaware of the surrender. Subsequent to Japanese troops lobbing grenades at a Marine Patrol and firing weapons at local villagers on Peleliu, two contingents of Marines are rushed to end the problem. Twenty-one are flown in from Oahu and an additional 41 Marines embark from Guam. Subsequently, on April 3rd, a Japanese Seaman named Tsuchida emerges from the bush and surrenders; Tsuchida is reluctant about believing that Japan has capitulated, but gives information on the whereabouts of other hostile Japanese. In conjunction, another twenty-five Marines embark from Guam on the 5th of April to bolster the operation to root out the Japanese stragglers from their jungle positions. Japanese Admiral Michio Sumikawa intervenes and attempts to convince the Japanese to surrender. Finally, on April 20th, Japanese Lt. Yamaguchi and his tattered outfit of 26 Soldiers and Sailors officially surrender to the U.S. troops. Yamaguchi hands his sword and some battle flags to the Commandant of the Palau Islands, Captain L. O. Fox. Nearby, 80 Marines in complete battle gear observe the unique surrender, two and a half years after the close of hostilities. However, the saga has not completely ended. On the following day, the final seven holdouts capitulate, terminating the last unorganized resistance on Peleliu.

**March 19 1947 -(Pacific-China)** The Marine 1st Reconnaissance Company comes under the administrative control of the 1st Marines, passing from Headquarters Battalion, 1st Marine Division, which is preparing to embark China.

**March 22 1947 -(United States)** President Truman proclaims that all U.S. Government workers will be scrutinized to ensure that they are loyal to their country. There is a tremendous amount of espionage seeping out of the United Nations, incited by the Soviet Union. However, the Soviets deny this and continue to dupe the U.S. under the guise of diplomatic immunity.

**March 31 1947 (United States)** The draft (during peacetime) is terminated by Congress. (EP)

**April 4-5 1947 -(Pacific-China)** In Northern China, Communist Chinese troops execute an unexpected and unprovoked attack against a small Marine contingent near the Hsin Ho ammunition depot, resulting in the death of five Marines and the wounding of eight others. Reinforcements, namely Company C, 1st Battalion, 5th Marines, rush from Tangku to assist, but the Communists are able to successfully withdraw; Co. C sustains eight men wounded. Later, on the 21st, Company C, 5th Marines transfers the Hsin Ho Ammunition supply to the Chinese Central Government upon their withdrawal. A detachment of the 7th Service Regiment remains behind until mid-May to gather the remaining serviceable ammunition.

**April 15 1947 - (United States)** President Truman continues to make his views known concerning the emerging Communist arrogance of power. During a speech at the annual Thomas Jefferson

dinner, Truman notes Jefferson's principles with regard to the rights of nations and states: "WE MUST TAKE A POSITIVE STAND. IT IS NO LONGER ENOUGH MERELY TO SAY WE DON'T WANT WAR. WE MUST ACT IN TIME-AHEAD OF TIME-TO STAMP OUT THE SMOLDERING BEGINNINGS OF ANY CONFLICT THAT MAY THREATEN TO SPREAD OVER THE WORLD..."**Also**, General A.A. Vandegrift, commandant of the Marine Corps, announces that the Corps is going to be reorganized to provide the individual units with more flexibility. He emphasizes that Marines would be able to be dispatched by aircraft, Naval surface vessels or submarines without administrative delay (red tape) or loss of their firepower. Actually, according to the re-organizational plan, Marines will be equipped with more potent firepower. (EP)

**April 24 1947 - (Pacific-Guam)** The advance command posts of the 1st Marine Aircraft Wing and the Marine Aircraft Group 24, from Guam, begin operations on Guam. (EP)

**April 26 1947 - (United States)** Secretary of State General George Marshall returns to Washington from the Foreign Ministers Conference in Moscow. He informs Truman that the Russians exhibit no signs of working for peace. Truman later relates that the Russians "WERE INTERESTED IN THEIR OWN PLANS AND WERE COLDLY DETERMINED TO EXPLOIT THE HELPLESS CONDITION OF EUROPE TO FURTHER COMMUNISM RATHER THAN COOPERATE WITH THE REST OF THE WORLD."

**April 27 1947 - (United States)** - General Marshall, speaking on the radio, tells the American people that the Russians are preventing settlement of the German question. He states in part: "AGREEMENT WAS MADE IMPOSSIBLE AT MOSCOW BECAUSE, IN OUR (U.S.) VIEW, THE SOVIET GOVERNMENT INSISTED UPON PROPOSALS WHICH WOULD HAVE ESTABLISHED IN GERMANY A CENTRALIZED GOVERNMENT ADAPTED TO THE SEIZURE OF ABSOLUTE CONTROL." One result of the conference in Moscow was that all three Western powers became convinced that the Soviets have no intention of compromising. Up to their old tricks, the Soviets expect to con the Americans into agreeing to permit the printing of German currency in the American and Soviet sectors, but the Americans are aware of the previous Russian scheme which bilked the American taxpayers when Secretary of the Treasury Morgenthau authorized the Soviets to print occupation marks, using techniques and plates supplied by the U.S. Treasury Department. The Soviet alternative is succinctly turned down.

**April 30 1947 - (United States)** The transport USS Cavalier arrives at the West Coast and debarks the 11th Marines at Camp Pendleton, ending its five-year stint in the Far East.

**May 1947 - (Pacific-Korea)** The Military Government establishes a South Korean interim government in order that the country be prepared for eventual independence, which the U.S. and the United Nations are attempting to bring about.

**May 1 1947 - (Pacific-China)** Fleet Marine Force, Western Pacific, a new command, is activated at Tsingtao, China; the Commanding Officer is Brigadier General Omar T. Pfeiffer. General Pfeiffer's organization is composed of the Headquarters and Service Battalion; 3rd Service Battalion, 4th Marines; 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines; 12th Service Battalion; and Air FMFWESPAC, Wing Service Squadron, VMF-211 and VMF-153. The command's primary responsibility is to provide for the safety of U.S. Naval training operations. (EP)

**May 7 1947 - (United States)** Presently, the Truman Administration is formulating a plan to merge the U.S. Armed Forces, which is not a well-received idea; today, the Administration's plan comes under attack by fleet Admiral King.

**May 9 1947 - (Pacific-China)** The final elements of Marine Aircraft Group 24 close down the remaining facilities at South Field in Peiping and depart for Guam.

**May 12 1947 -(Pacific-China)** Continuing the U.S. Government's withdrawal of forces from China, the 5th Marines (minus the 1st Battalion) embark for Guam. The continuing depletion of U.S. troops makes duty unnecessarily hazardous for those still remaining as the Communists are increasing their hostility against the Americans.

**May 13 1947 -(Pacific-China)** Several miles of Peiping-Shanhaikwan railroad tracks are destroyed by Communist troops; a train transporting 500 U.S. Marines had just passed through the area.

**May 15 1947 -(Pacific-China)** A contingent of the Marine 7th Service Battalion, which had remained at the Hsin Ho ammunition Depot after the elements of 5th Marines had departed during late April, departs for Tientsin.

**May 20 1947 -(Pacific-China)** The 1st Battalion, 1st Marines remains at Hopeh, acting as guard force for the rear echelon of the 1st Marine Division, but the remainder of the 1st Marines departs for Tsingtao to join FMFWesPac.

**May 22 1947 -(United States)** President Truman signs into law, the bill which authorizes the U.S. to provide aid to Greece and Turkey. Greece and Turkey will receive a total of \$400 million. Truman later notes that "AMERICA HAD SERVED NOTICE THAT THE MARCH OF COMMUNISM WOULD NOT BE ALLOWED TO SUCCEED BY DEFAULT." Meanwhile, the Communists sped their attempt to seize power in Greece prior to the arrival of the aid. In other activity, the Marine Corps celebrates its Aviation's 35th birthday; during 1912, Marine Lt. Arthur A. Cunningham reported to the Naval Aviation Camp at Annapolis, Md., establishing the Marine Corps aviation.

**May 23 1947 -(Pacific-China)** Communist Chinese troops have been ravaging towns; today, Marines evacuate a group of people including 66 Americans from Peitaiho Beach who had escaped the wrath of the Communists when they raided Changli on May 18th.

**May 25 1947 -(Pacific-China)** U.S. Naval Vessels evacuate about 200 Marines from Chinwangtao, located 120 miles from Tientsin, China. Chinese Communist troops had these Marines cut off for the past week as the Communists take advantage of the Marine withdrawal from China and the apparent irrevocable U.S. message that it would not involve itself in the ongoing civil war. In other activity, the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines embarks Taku and Hopeh, China, to join the Regiment in Guam.

**May 26 1947 -(Pacific-China)** The 1st Pioneer Battalion, deployed as the Marine Guard detachment at Peitaiho, departs for Tientsin.

**June 6 1947 -(United States)** The U.S. Naval Academy holds a graduation ceremony for 500 graduates; 33 of these men accept commissions in the Marine Corps.

**June 9 1947 -(United States)** A subcommittee of the U.S. House of Representatives recommends that the highest ranking Generals and Admirals in the Armed Forces should be four stars, thus ending promotion to five-star generals; those general officers presently holding five-star rank are not affected by the action.

**June 15 1947 -(United States)** The Marine Training and Replacement Command, San Diego Area is transferred from Camp Pendleton (Oceanside), California, to Marine Corps Base, San Diego. In

other activity, Marine Barracks, Camp Pendleton is established.

**June 17 1947 -(Pacific-China)** About 1,900 U.S. Marines are embarking China from Tangku en route to California; while the Marines are departing Tangku Harbor, Chinese Communist amphibious troops come ashore and secure a beachhead outside of Tangku.

**June 21 1947 -(Pacific-China)** The Marine 1st Division opens its Command Post aboard the USS Renville, immediately following its closure in Tientsin.

**June 30 1947 -(United States)** Lt. General Roy E. Geiger, USMC, who had passed away during the previous January, receives the rank of full General posthumously, as President Truman signs a bill to that effect. The fiscal year 1947 calls for a standing Army, to be composed of a maximum of slightly more than one million men. As of today, the U.S. Army stands as a volunteer force composed of 684,000 troops. In conjunction, all wartime draftees have been released and no inductees will be called. U.S. Naval strength stands at 484,000 troops. Also, Marine Corps strength stands at 93,053; included in this figure is Fleet Marine Force Pacific which is composed of all units at Camp Pendleton, Guam, Hawaiian Islands and China.

**July 1 1947 - (United States)** Robert A. Lovett succeeds Dean Acheson as Under Secretary of State. In other activity, the Marine Corps' Quartermaster General is designated the rank of Major General, while serving as the head of the new Supply Department.

**July 4 1947 -(Pacific-Guam)** The Marines honor one of their own; the 1st Marine Brigade names its camp, Camp Witek, after Private Frank P. Witek, 1st Battalion, 9th Marines, 3rd Marine Division who received the Medal of Honor posthumously, subsequent to his heroic actions during the recapture of Guam

**July 6 1947 -(United States)** The 1st Marine Division, minus the 7th and 11th Marines, having terminated its duty in the Far East, debarks at San Diego and moves into its new base at Camp Pendleton.

**July 16 1947 -(United States)** The 3rd Marine Brigade disbands at Camp Pendleton; the majority of its equipment and personnel is transferred to the 1st Marine Division.

**July 21 1947 -(United States)** A Marine R5C Transport Plane carrying 32 Marines, which had disappeared during a flight on December 10th 1946, is located on the South Tahoma Glacier by Assistant Chief Ranger William J. Butler (Mount Ranier National Park).

**July 22 1947 -(United States)** A contingent of 26 Marines, commanded by Lt. Colonel Robert F. Scott, accompanies the Freedom Train as Guards while it tours the country. (EP)

**July 27 1947 -(United States)** A bill is passed by the Senate and delivered to the President; it places a ceiling of 14 four-star General Officers during peacetime: the Army, Air Force and Marines receive a total of ten Generals and the Navy is limited to 4 Admirals. The present five-star officers are unaffected by this bill. Also, the bill changes the Military promotion methods from seniority to meritorious promotion.

**August 7 1947 -(United States)** The rank of General is made permanent for the Commandant, United States Marine Corps.

**August 25 1947 -(United States)** A Marine test pilot at the Patuxent Naval Air Center, Major Marion Carl, establishes a world 3-kilometer speed record of 650.6 mph; Major Carl's record setting flight in a Douglas D-558 Skystreak (Jet) occurs at Muroc Lake, California.

**August 27 1947 -(Pacific-China)** The 1st Battalion, 1st Marines depart Tientsin aboard the USS Pickaway en route for the USA; the contingent composed of 1,825 men arrives back in the States on September 16th. The rear echelon of the 1st Marine Division departs on September 1st.

**September 1 1947 (Pacific-China)** The remaining contingent of the 1st Marine Division embarks Tientsin for the United States, in effect isolating those Marines at Tsingtao, the final Marine duty station in China.

**September 6 1947 -(United States)** Lt. General Ross E. Rowell, USMC, known as the man who conceived and introduced the art of dive bombing, dies at the age of 62 in San Diego, California.

**September 15 1947 -(United States)** The Fleet Marine Force's reorganization is concluded; the changes include the elimination of the infantry regimental echelon within a brigade and a division. The new organizational tables grant more economical use of service personnel.

**September 18 1947 -(United States)** The Army Air Corps becomes the U.S. Air Force. Designated Officers are automatically transferred to the newest service. When known as the Army Air Corps, the Air Force had no service flag as it was part of the Army. The Air Force receives parity with the Army and Navy. The Marine Corps remains a Department of the Navy. (EP)

**September 25 1947 -(United States)** The Joint Chiefs of Staff send a letter, concerning Korea, to Secretary of State, Dean Acheson, informing him that there is little U.S. strategic interest there. The letter also offers the opinion that there is no need to continue maintaining the "present troops and bases in Korea." The U.S. continues to diminish its forces, a practice that has been underway since the close of hostilities at the conclusion of WWII. Subsequently, during October, the Department of the Army requests that Generals MacArthur and Hodge offer their recommendations for the Korean Armed forces. General Hodge, the Commanding Officer of American troops in Korea, suggests that Korean troops should comprise six Divisions and the necessary support elements, but General MacArthur responds by suggesting that any decision concerning Korean troops be deferred until the U.N. makes its decisions known.

**October 1947 -(United States-United Nations-Korea) (Atlantic-Germany)** - The Communist "Iron Curtain," as described by Winston Churchill, seemingly cloaks the perimeter of Eastern Europe, while its Berlin counterpart seems to be confined by a steel picket fence, designed to intimidate the Allies at every opportunity. There has been a consistent barrage by the Communist press (in Soviet zone) against the Western Allies and their policies in Germany; in essence, steady doses of Bolshevik propaganda. The Soviets disregard truth and embellish false accusations. Also, the Soviets have repeatedly ignored the Allied agreements, clandestinely shipping skilled German workers to the Soviet Union, initiating the manufacture of munitions within the American zone for their purposes and resorting to indiscriminately dispatching German Police from their zone to abduct German citizens within the American zone. The U.S. Military is restrained by the U.S. Government's intent to eventually reach a compromise, preventing them from reacting too strongly. General Clay, does however, issue orders (October 25th) to the director of the Information Control Division, Colonel Gordon Textor, authorizing his operation to fight fire with fire. Textor is permitted to expose Communism for what it is and attack it at every opportunity. **(Pacific-Japan)** The tentacles of Stalin are far-flung and certainly not confined to Europe. The Soviets much belated Military movement into Manchuria and their subsequent nominal, but vociferous, presence in Japan is an additional test of endurance for the Allies. But facing the Communist instigation is a rigid bulwark: MacArthur. Incensed at their inability to occupy Hokkaido, the Soviets incessantly

instigate problems at the Allied Council, seemingly in concert with their efforts in Berlin. During October, the President of Korea, Syngman Rhee, and his wife visit Japan and are the recipients of full honors by SCAP. About 600,000 Koreans reside in Japan, and great numbers of them are either Communists or sympathizers with the cause, but there are no visible demonstrations against the anti-Communist Rhee. In conjunction, some Koreans have been working with the Communists since 1939; a volunteer force of Koreans had fought with the Chinese Communists. And subsequent to World War II, many of these troops and others cooperate with the Soviet Occupation Forces (1946-47); thousands of Koreans attend special schools, receiving instructions on various Military arts.

**October 1 1947 - (United States)** President Truman, concerned about the situation in Europe and the deteriorating circumstances in France and Italy, notifies Congressional Committee Chairmen that he would like them to focus on the financial aid to Europe. In conjunction, Truman will soon call for a special session of Congress to begin on November 17th. He claims that the session is necessary due to the steady rising of prices in the U.S. and because of the situation in Europe. In other activity, Major General Curtis LeMay is promoted to Lt. General, becoming the youngest Lt. General in the newly created Air Force. He will shortly embark for Germany to become the Commander U.S. Air Forces in Europe, replacing General Idwal Edwards. He is heading to a much different Europe than had been in effect at the close of hostilities. The great calls to demobilize and "bring the boys home" are taking their toll on manpower and equipment. When the war was terminated, there were at least 70,000 Aircraft in the Army Air Force, supported by a force of nearly 2.5 million men. Unfortunately, this massive deterrent has been dangerously gutted; manpower in the Air Force stands at less than 325,000 men, and incredibly, of the mere 38 Combat Groups of Aircraft listed on rosters around the world, only eleven are genuinely operational. LeMay, will have a staggering job in front of him if the Soviets decide to move west against this skeleton Air Force, composed of a Lilliputian number of Planes. LeMay's new neighbors, the Soviets, standing about seventy-five miles from his new residence in Wiesbaden, have not downgraded their forces one iota; many of the thousands of U.S. Planes given to the Russians through the Lend-Lease program now threaten the Yanks. And the Soviets are completely informed of the present deplorable strength of the U.S. Armed Forces in Europe.

**October 5 1947 -(United States)** President Truman, still attempting to get more food to the throngs of starving people around the world, requests the American people to abstain from meat on Tuesdays and from poultry on Thursdays to make more available. Coincidentally, Catholics in the United States already abstain from meat on Fridays, dictated by the laws of the Church. **(Atlantic-Poland)** Stunned by the U.S. effort to regenerate free Europe economically, the Communists hold a mysterious and undisclosed meeting in Poland to formulate a plan to disrupt the U.S. recovery plan. The Communists proclaim that the Marshall Plan is "AN INSTRUMENT OF AMERICAN IMPERIALISM." The Communist International, allegedly disbanded during 1943 to ensure aid from the U.S. (Lend-Lease), is apparently still alive and deadly, operating under a different name: the Communist Information Bureau (Comintern). In conjunction, on October 22nd, the Red Bugle blares, calling the Bolsheviks from around the world and within the United States to join the conspiracy and fuel the fire.

**October 7-December 17 1947 -(Atlantic-United States-Germany)** - The American and British confer to work out financial problems of the bizon (Germany). The British purport that they are unable to maintain their payment schedule, whereas the Americans initially insist on equal burdens.

Compromise is reached on December 17th when Robert Lovett, Acting Secretary of State, signs for the U.S. and Sir William Strang signs for the United Kingdom. The agreement places the bulk of the financial burden on the United States; however, it affords proportional voting privileges on subjects pertaining to affairs of foreign exchange and foreign trade according to financial contribution. The agreement excludes money contributed to the costs of the two occupational forces and accompanying personnel; nonetheless it provides the U.S. with the last word on economic and financial topics. Subsequently, the French protest (January 24th, 1948) the U.S.-British efforts to bolster the German administration.

**October 24 1947 -(United States)** The first Marine Corps Jet Fighter Squadron, VMF-122, is established at Cherry Point, North Carolina. The Squadron, Commanded by Major Marion E. Carl, begins its duty with McDonnell FH-1 Phantoms.

**November 2 1947 -(United States)** At Annapolis, the Marine Corps detachment of Severn officially becomes known as the Marine Barracks, Severn River Naval Command.

**November 10-14 1947 -(United States)** The 1st Marine Division carries out comprehensive Amphibious Operations off the coast of Camp Pendleton in Southern California.

**November 21 1947 -(United States)** General Clifton B. Cates is selected by President Truman to become the 19th Commandant of the Marine Corps.

**December 1 1947 -(United States)** Marine Helicopter Squadron HMX-1 is established at Quantico, Virginia, becoming the corps' first helicopter squadron; it is commanded by Colonel Edward C. Dyer and the unit is equipped with Sikorsky HO3S-1s and Piasecki HRP-1s, the latter being dubbed "Flying Bananas."

**December 11 1947 -(United States)** Lt. General Thomas E. Watson, USMC, becomes commanding General of Fleet Marine Force Pacific.

**December 25 1947 -(Pacific-China)** Five Marines, disregarding warnings from Nationalist Chinese outpost guards at Ling Chan, advance on a hunting trip and are last seen near Wang Tan Yuan moving into Communist territory. During February, the Communists confirm that the Marines have been interned; however, one man, PFC Charles J. Brayton Jr., had been mortally wounded when they were captured. Furthermore, the Communists demand that the U.S. Navy apologize before the surviving Marines will be freed. The Communists contend that the five Marines had been assisting the Nationalists in the civil war. Without retaliation by the U.S., the Chinese hold the captives until April 1st, 1948.

**December 31 1947 -(United States)** General Alexander A. Vandegrift, 18th commandant U.S. Marine Corps retires; he is immediately succeeded by General Clifton B. Cates. Also, Marine Corps strength stands at 90,486, although its authorized strength is 108,200.

**January 5-March 12 1948 -(United States)** The Navy Transports Bexar and Montague embark Morehead City, N.C., transporting the 2nd Marines (reinforced) to the Mediterranean where they will join the Ships of the Sixth Fleet, initiating Marine policy of maintaining a ready Air-Ground force in the Mediterranean. The Cruisers Little Rock, Portsmouth and Providence as well as the Carrier Midway will accommodate the seagoing Marines. (EP)

**January 7 1948 -(Mediterranean)** With the imminent arrival of the Marines in the Mediterranean becoming public knowledge, Fleet Admiral Chester Nimitz makes it known that their presence should be construed as a warning to the Communist Yugoslavian government, that the 5,000 U.S.

Army troops in the Free Territory of Trieste are not to be threatened.

**January 11 1948 -(United States)** In Philadelphia, the Marines hold a huge rally to honor their heroes and celebrate the inauguration of National Marine Corps Reserve Week; the event is sponsored by the Philadelphia Inquirer.

**January 12 1948 -(United States)** Major General W.P.T. Hill is reappointed Marine Corps Quartermaster General.

**January 19 1948 -(Mediterranean)** The 2nd Marines, which embarked from North Carolina on January 6th, to join the 6th Fleet, arrive at Malta.

**January 20 1948 -(Atlantic-Germany)** - The Allied Control Council meets. As usual, the Soviets are not in a cooperative mood. The Russian, General Sokolovsky, refuses to initiate the repatriation of war prisoners as mandated by the Council of Foreign Ministers, stating that "THE SOVIET GOVERNMENT HAS DETERMINED ITS DEADLINE, 31 DECEMBER 1948...THIS DEADLINE WILL BE MET." Sokolovsky then goes on a tirade, accusing the Western Powers of using prisoners for slave labor; actually, the prisoners who chose to work, did so voluntarily. Also, the Soviets do not keep their word to repatriate the prisoners.

**January 31 1948 -(Pacific-China)** A Communist Chinese force of undetermined numbers pins down a Marine Patrol at Tsangkou Airfield; no Marine casualties are sustained.

**February 6th 1948 - (Pacific-Japan)** General MacArthur informs Washington and the JCS that, in his opinion, an Army for South Korea is not yet feasible. He claims that the XXIV Corps is unable to provide adequate personnel and equipment and that there are insufficient training facilities for such an immense undertaking. At this time, even the U.S. units are underequipped and less than full strength. MacArthur offers an alternative to the problem, suggesting that the Constabulary force be increased from its present number of about 20,000 to 50,000 men, and that they be equipped with heavier weaponry; however, he mentions that there should be no Artillery provided. MacArthur is convinced that the build-up can be completed in about three and one-half months, which would coincide with the upcoming Korean elections. However, it appears as if the force nears the 50,000 mark during March. Meanwhile, the Russian and Communist Chinese reaction to these fast-moving events is still an unknown factor, but the Communists in North Korea soon make their thoughts known.

**February 8 1948 - (Pacific-Korea)** The North Korean Provisional Government proclaims the establishment of the Korean People's Army.

**February 12 1948 -(Pacific-Pearl Harbor)** Marine Detachment (Provisional) Eniwetok is organized at Pearl Harbor; the unit embarks for Eniwetok on February 24th.

**February 13 1948 -(Pacific-China)** The Chinese Communists admit that they captured five Marines on Christmas Day 1947 and that one was killed. In addition, the Chinese claim the captured Marines had been helping the Nationalists with the ongoing civil war and that they will be held until the United States Navy apologizes. The U.S. Government takes no retaliatory action.

**February 20-June 28 1948 -(United States)** The 8th Marines embark Morehead City, N.C., for the Mediterranean; the regiment becomes the landing force of the Sixth Fleet.

**February - December 1948 - (Pacific-Korea)** The Russians begin to withdraw from Korea. The last of the contingents returns to the Soviet Union during December 1948, but many advisors remain

behind. The Russians also leave some tanks and aircraft for the use of the North Korean Armed Forces. In addition, many Koreans who had served with Communist Chinese units will be shipped back to serve in the North Korean Army. Of these, many have been trained in the Soviet Union and they are qualified as aircraft mechanics, Pilots and other specialized units, including Armor.

**March 10 1948 - (United States)** The Joint Chiefs of Staff, in response to General MacArthur's suggestion that the Korean Constabulary be increased substantially in both numbers and equipment, authorizes the build-up and directs that the force be equipped with weaponry. The authorization stipulates supplying small arms, Cannon, ranging from 37-mm-to105-mm only. The Constabulary force also is to receive M-24 Tanks and Armored Cars, but no figures are specified; it states as deemed necessary.

**March 11 1948 -(United States)** The Joint Chiefs of Staff and the Secretary of Defense meet in Key West, Florida, to define the future collective functions of the Armed Forces and the specific purpose of the Joint Chiefs of Staff as well as that of the Air Force, Army, Navy and Marines, with regards to defending the United States of America and its Constitution. These particulars are proclaimed by the Secretary of Defense in a statement subsequent to the conference's termination on the 14th. Included in this formula, the Air Force is designated responsibility for "strategic warfare," the art of destroying the enemy's war-making capacity, including their manufacturing plants, power systems, transportation networks and communication systems. Also resulting from the conference, the Marine Corps is restricted to a four division ceiling (during wartime), mandated by the Key West Agreement; the agreement also stipulates that the Marine Corps is prohibited from establishing a second land Army and its tactical command is to be restricted to Corps level.

**March 29 1948 -(United States)** General Thomas Holcomb, USMC, Ret., the first Marine to attain the rank of full General (Commandant USMC 1936-1943), resigns his position as Foreign Minister to the Union of South Africa, following four years at the post. (EP)

**March 31 1948 -(Atlantic-Germany)** - The Soviets test the mettle of the Western Powers. Discounting a previous agreement between General Clay and Russian Marshall Zhukov, the Soviets issue orders for Soviet forces to stop and search all Military passenger trains crossing the border into the Soviet sector as they head for Berlin. The decree had been delivered to the Allies by the Deputy Military Governor of the Soviet Union, General Dratvin. On April 1st, the Soviets instigate further harassment procedures, proclaiming that the Russian Kommandatura must give permission before any freight could be transported from Berlin. The Soviets send their ultimatum (in writing) to General George Hays, Deputy to General Clay. The Russian demands are forwarded to Department of the Army to form a consensus for reaction. The Americans offer compromise (or appeasement). The Americans refuse to permit Soviet entry on their trains, but offer to turn over detailed papers on cargo and passengers. The offer is flatly rejected by the Soviets. General Clay tests the Soviet resolve by sending an armed train into the Soviet sector; it is not boarded, but it is switched to a side rail where it remains motionless for a few days prior to returning to the U.S. zone. Meanwhile, General LeMay has been privately concerned about the ability of his Air Force Command to meet a Soviet threat if it occurs; he requests that a contingent of B-29s be dispatched to infuse some heavier strength into the area. The request is approved, and 29 B-29s arrive at Munich on April 15th. The Americans had also made it known that the Russians had agreed to permit access to Berlin when the Yanks had withdrawn from Saxony and Thuringia to their own zones. In response, the Russians claim that they never agreed to any such thing.

**April 1 1948 -(Pacific-China)**The Chinese Communists release the four surviving Marines who were captured near Tsingtao on Christmas Day, 1947. Those Marines freed are Pvt. Robert Hart, PFCs Thomas Kapodistria and Carrol W. Dickerson and Corporal William L. Pollard. **(Atlantic-Germany)** The Russians attempt to strangle Berlin by ordering the closing of all roads, rails and river routes into Berlin or out of the besieged city. The closings are scheduled to last until July 1st due to "TECHNICAL DIFFICULTIES."

**April 8 1946 - (Pacific-Korea)** General Hodge is informed by the Department of the Army that he should develop a situation in Korea which would permit the withdrawal of U.S. troops from there by the close of 1948. As a precaution, General Hodge is to see that the Koreans are trained in defensive measures and for the purpose of Korea's internal security, to preempt possible aggressiveness which might draw the U.S. into a war. General Hodge has his work cut out for him, as the advisors are still scattered about the provinces and there are too few to speed the process. Nonetheless, by July the Constabulary forces will initiate standard training exercises modeled after U.S. methods, and by the 15th of September, the first phase of his plan is activated.

**April 10 1948 -(Pacific-China)** A Marine Transport Plane, attached to VMR-153, makes an emergency landing at Hung Shih Yai and the Communists capture four Marines. The Marines, 1st Lt. Harold Hawkins, MSgt Thomas J. Shaw, TSGT Robert C. White and Corporal Robert R. Lewis are returned to American control on July 2nd, 1948. **(United States-Germany)** General Clay is in communication with the Department of the Army concerning the Berlin crisis. The Soviets have resorted to halting passenger trains moving out of Berlin, including the international move called the Nord Express. Secretary of the Army Kenneth C. Royall makes it clear that the U.S. intends to remain in Berlin. General Clay had reaffirmed his opinion: "**WE SHOULD NOT LEAVE BERLIN UNLESS DRIVEN OUT BY FORCE.**" General Clay states further: "**WE HAVE LOST CZECHOSLOVAKIA. NORWAY IS THREATENED. WE RETREAT FROM BERLIN. WHEN BERLIN FALLS, WESTERN GERMANY WILL BE NEXT. IF WE MEAN...TO HOLD EUROPE AGAINST COMMUNISM, WE MUST NOT BUDGE.**"

**April 15 1948 - (United States)** Marine Barracks, Marine Corps Schools, Quantico is redesignated Marine Corps Schools, Quantico, Virginia. **(Atlantic-Germany)** Twenty-nine B29s arrive at Munich from their Base in Salina, Kansas. The giant Bombers carry no atomic capability, but it is hoped that the Soviets might consider them to be carrying atomic weapons. General LeMay orders the aircraft to move to England, ensuring that they are out of immediate danger of attack by Soviet forces.

**April May 1948 -(Pacific-Guam)** The Marine 1st Provisional Brigade at Guam sharpens its amphibious skills with practice maneuvers off Guam.

**May 1948 - (Atlantic-Germany)** The Soviets raise the stakes in Berlin, initiating procedures which cast preposterous standards on the documentation system required to transport cargo and passengers into Berlin. By the following month, the Soviets resort to holding up trains, then hijacking cars containing Military cargo.

**May 4 1948 -(Pacific-Japan)** A United Nations Commission (UNTCOK), formed during 1947 to move into Korea to observe elections intended to eventually bring about a unified Korea, had been unable to reach any compromise with the Soviets. The Soviets totally rejected any attempts for the nine-nation commission to enter North Korea, halting them at the 38th parallel. The Commission decides by vote to depart Korea and travel to Japan to complete its report for the United Nations.

Today, a representative of the commission arrives at Haneda Airport and discovers that SCAP, under the direction of MacArthur, makes it clear that permission for the commission to enter the country has been rejected; the reason apparently is that the commission is responsible to the United Nations General Assembly and that SCAP has no desire to become involved in the impasse between the U.N. and the Soviets over Korea. High-positioned duress from Washington brings about a reluctant change of heart, and on the 13th, MacArthur issues a press release permitting the commission's entry. Meanwhile, the commission alters its plans and convenes in Shanghai.

**May 10 1948 -(Pacific-Korea)** For the first time, free elections are held in Korea. The citizens in North Korea are prohibited from participating; however, about 95 percent of the eligible populace in South Korea cast their votes, electing a National Assembly. Soon after, on the 31st, the newly elected representatives gather in Seoul and cast their ballots, electing Syngman Rhee, a staunch Anticommunist as president for a four-year term. The election process worked well despite the Communist attempts to disrupt the historical event. The Americans have been steadily drained from Korea and the process continues; by mid-year 1949, U.S. troops number only about 500 advisors. In addition to the dangerously low numbers of Soldiers, by the end of the summer the U.S. eliminates Korea as a responsibility of defense for General MacArthur. The troops come under the jurisdiction of John J. Muccio, the U.S. Ambassador to Korea. The U.S. is preparing for what it believes to be a total pull-out, leaving a solid country to govern itself. The U.S. expects to eventually establish a Diplomatic Mission, supplemented by Military advisors, if the situation warrants them. Meanwhile, there is no reduction of Soviet involvement and political control, nor is there less training of the North Koreans by the Chinese Communists.

**May 12 1948 -(United States)** Congress passes HR Bill 5035 authorizing the U.S. Marine Corps Band to attend the 82nd encampment of the Grand Army of the Republic. (EP)

**May 16 1948 -(United States)** Unbeknownst to the average American and in particular the citizens of New York, the Strategic Air Command runs an exercise to test the proficiency of its B-29s and their crews; New York is the designated target. More than 180 B-29s are scheduled to simulate a saturation bombing run. The present condition of SAC is dismal, and the readiness of its Aircraft to react to an enemy attack is worse. Only 101 of the Bombers are able to take off from Andrews Air Base and make the run. The tragic plight of the Air Force is due greatly to the dismemberment of the Air Corps at the close of hostilities. Ironically, it is the attitude of the Russians toward the Western Allies that sounds a wake-up call to the plight of the U.S. Armed Forces. Once again, U.S. fighting men are in harms. way because of political decision or lack thereof on the part of Congress. Now drastic action must be the order of the day. Meanwhile, while the Americans have stripped their defenses beyond the point of danger, the Soviets have maintained what they had at the close of hostilities and continue to build. After the surrender of Japan, the Americans had destroyed nearly all Japanese war supplies and discarded enormous U.S. supplies. However, the Soviets, who pranced into Manchuria subsequent to the U.S. dropping the atomic bomb on Japan, confiscated everything they could find for future use.

**May 20 1948 - (Pacific-Korea)** Brigadier General William Roberts succeeds Colonel Terril Price as advisor to the Director, Department of Internal Security. Once he becomes acquainted with the operations, which doesn't take long, things change drastically. Captain Hausmman, a K MAG Advisor now working in Seoul, informs Roberts of what he considers to be the main problem: lack of mutual cooperation between the DIC and the Constabulary; the latter, according to Hausman, is nearly disregarded in the decision-making process. General Roberts, although only an advisor,

similarly to Col. Price, apparently is more able to throw his weight into the disarray. On June 25th, following some close scrutiny, a major reorganization occurs.

**May 23 1948 -(United States)** Marine Garrison Forces, Pacific become an Administrative Command under the jurisdiction of Headquarters Marine Corps.

**May 31 1948 (Pacific-Korea)** In Seoul, the newly elected representatives of the National Assembly, Republic of South Korea convene and elect Syngman Rhee as chair. Immediately, the National Assembly begins to formulate a constitution and by the 12th of July, it is completed. The constitution specifies that the new republic have a president, elected by the National Assembly.

**June 1-October 2 1948 -(United States)** More Marines head for the Mediterranean to join the 6th Fleet; the 21st Marines embark Morehead City to bolster the Fleet's landing force.

**June 2 1948 -(United States)** President Truman receives a bill from Congress which authorizes 20,045 women to join the regular Armed Forces. The Marine Corps is allotted 1,100 of this number; within two years, this number will be increased to two percent of the total strength of the Corps.

**June 4 1948 -(United States)** The Naval Academy at Annapolis graduates four hundred and ten Midshipmen; of these, 28 accept commissions in the Marine Corps.

**June 24th 1948 -(Pacific-Korea)** Subsequent to the arrival of General Roberts as the new advisor to the Director of the Korean Department of Internal Security, it has become apparent that drastic changes had to occur to eliminate waste and what might be construed as the good-ole-boy system among the Koreans in the department. Effective today, the Department of Internal Security terminates its activity as a Headquarters Group, and is relegated to be just the Office of the Director, Department of Internal Security. The reorganization also provides more equal treatment for the Constabulary by giving responsibility for the making of policy to the Department of Internal Security and the responsibility of operational control to the Constabulary. Prior to reorganization, there had been an over-abundance of duplication prior to reorganization and too many Korean Officers who were more needed within the ranks.

**June 30 1948 - (United States)** The Selective Service decides that draftees will be called to duty by their date of birth, not by lot. In other activity, President Truman signs the Reserve Retirement Bill. Also, Marine Corps strength stands at 84,988.

**July 1 1948 - (Pacific-Korea)** The U.S. advisors continue to plow forward attempting to bolster the fighting ability of the Constabulary forces by increasing the training of Korean Officers and enlisted men. Today, a Weapons School is established at Taegu by the U.S. 6th Division. Other XXIV Corps units including the U.S. 7th Division are cooperating with the Advisors to expedite the efficiency of the Koreans. Later, on the 10th, the 6th Division establishes a Cannon School at Chinhae, while the 7th Division opens an identical school at Seoul.

**July 2nd 1948 -(United States)** The four U.S. Marines captured by the Chinese when their plane landed in Communist held territory are released to American custody today.

**July 12 1948 - (Pacific-Korea)** The Korean National Assembly finishes its fabrication of its constitution, which mandates that a president be elected by the National Assembly. Soon after, on the 20th, Syngman Rhee is elected the first president of the Republic of South Korea. The official inauguration occurs on August 15th.

**July 22 1948 -(United States)** The Marine Corps announces that it will not require any draftees for

the year 1949, due to the fact that their voluntary enlistments are sufficient to keep their proper strength.

**August 15 1948 -(Pacific-Korea)** Syngman Rhee is inaugurated president of South Korea, bringing the end of U.S. occupation in Korea. The U.S. begins to transfer its authority to the new government; however, U.S. forces will still remain in Korea, and until the final contingent departs, there will have to be agreements on how the U.S. will assist in the defense of the new nation. General Hodge initiates immediate talks with the new president to ensure a smooth transition of power. An agreement is consummated between the two men on August 24th. Upon the inauguration of Rhee, the participation of the American advisors also is scheduled to terminate, but the upcoming agreement will extend the time for the advisors. In conjunction, the South Koreans begin calling the Constabulary the National Defense Army, but this term is not acknowledged by the United States. **August 20 1948 (Pacific-Korea)** The Korean Constabulary Training Center becomes the Korean Military Academy, established to promote long-term education, but the continuing crisis surrounding the lack of Officers in the field mandates that the facility continue to function as an Officers' Candidate School through spring of 1949.

**August 24 1948 - (Pacific-Korea)** General Hodge, representing the U.S., and Syngman Rhee, the president of South Korea, sign an agreement regarding the mutual Military obligations. The agreement specifies the terms which will guarantee a smooth transfer of authority and solidify the defense of the nation. The South Koreans agree to assume the responsibility of the country's security forces. It will be accomplished gradually, in concert with the ongoing withdrawal of U.S. troops. In exchange, the U.S., during the transitional period, will maintain the training of the Constabulary forces and the Korean Coast Guard. In conjunction, the U.S. will continue to maintain use of the various Bases and other facilities to ensure the upkeep of its forces. The American Advisors will be reassigned to the Overstrength Detachment, Headquarters, USAFIK, and they will be reorganized as a Provisional Military Advisory Group (PMAG), under the command of General William Roberts. Later, on the 11th of September, another agreement is reached between Hodge and Rhee, finalizing the process.

**August 25 1948 -(United States)** Second Lt. John Earl Rudder, the first Negro Marine officer to attain a commission in the regular Marine Corps, begins his training at Marine Corps Schools, Quantico.

**August 26 1948 - (Pacific-Korea)** Mr. John J. Muccio, recently appointed Special Assistant to Korea by President Truman, establishes a U.S. diplomatic Mission in the capital. Muccio also retains the rank of Ambassador, and he is authorized by the President to negotiate the impending withdrawal of U.S. troops from Korea.

**August 27 1948 - (Pacific-Korea)** Lt. General John Hodge, Commanding Officer, U.S. troops in Korea, departs Korea. He is succeeded by John B. Coulter, who assumes command of USAFIK and XXIV Corps.

**August 31 1948 -(U.S.-Pacific)** The Marine Garrison Forces, Pacific command is deactivated; all of these Marine security units and their supporting organizations in the Pacific Ocean areas now come under the administrative control of the commanding general, Fleet Marine Force, Pacific.

**September 1948 - (Pacific-North Korea)** The North Koreans establish a new government, The People's Republic of Korea, and proclaim that it has jurisdiction over the entire peninsula of Korea.

**September 11 1948 - (Pacific-Korea)** General Hodge and President Syngman Rhee again meet to conclude their negotiations. The second and final agreement, following the Military agreement signed on the 24th of August, includes an initial monetary settlement, as well as a property settlement. The U. S. is to return to the Korean government the funds and property controlled by it during the period of occupation. The U.S. agrees to pay for all Korean services and goods received by it during the same period. There is nothing in the agreement which suggests that South Korea repay the U.S. for its services for the identical period.

**September 13 1948 -(United States)** More Marines join the Sixth Fleet landing forces as the 4th Marines, reinforced, embark Morehead City, North Carolina, for the Mediterranean. (EP)

**September 15 1948 - (Pacific-Korea)** According to earlier instructions from the Joint Chiefs of Staff, General Hodges' plan to withdraw the U.S. troops from Korea begins today. Some contingents of USAFIK depart the peninsula.

**October 1 1948 -(United States)** Marine Corps strength is listed at 77,405. In addition, Marine Reserve strength stands at 116,000 enrolled, with 37,742 in training. (EP)

**October 18 1948 -(United States)** The first director of the permanent peacetime component of the Women Marines, Colonel Katherine A. Towle, arrives at Marine Corps Headquarters, Washington, D.C., to assume her duties.

**October 19 1948 - (Pacific-Korea)** The S.K. 14th Regiment had recently received orders to proceed to the island of Chej-do to assist forces already there to secure the area, troubled by turmoil. The Regiment, which contains some Communist NCOs, is issued U.S. Rifles to supplement the Japanese weapons it already has. Apparently the Communists intend to use the additional weaponry by distributing it to other Communists, but they are directed to move out before the Rifles can be handed out. The Communist NCOs take the advantage before moving out and instigate a mutiny by the Regiment. The rebels seize Yosu and imprison some loyalists, including two American advisors, and then move to other nearby towns. Other units loyal to the government, speed to the area to extinguish the insurrection, and heavy fighting occurs for several days. Other U.S. advisors, including Captains Hausman and Reed, also rush to the scene to assist the government troops who will be led by Brigadier General Song Ho Seung, the Chief of the Constabulary. Upon their arrival, the Americans work to stabilize the situation by gathering members of the Constabulary and forming organized opposition; they will be joined by the two captured advisors who escape. Captain Hausman and Captain John Reed plug the gap by the 21st, halting the progress of the Communist-led 14th Regiment. By the following day, with the infusion of more reinforcements a successful counterattack is launched; it regains Sunch'on. The momentum continues and on the 24th the government troops recapture Kwangyang and Posing. This is followed by the seizure of Polgyo-ri on the 25th, forcing the faltering rebels to make a last-ditch stand at Yosu, the original site of the mutiny. At Yosu, the defiant mutineers raise fierce resistance for two days, but the final gasps of the insurrection occur on 27th when the rebels are overrun. Many of the remnants of the 14th Regiment scatter and break for the north to disappear into the mountainous area near Chiri-san. It is from here that they will operate as Guerrilla forces against the government. The South Koreans decide to permanently eliminate the Regiment, considering it shameful; on the 28th of October, the colors of the Regiment are burned and the number 4 is totally banished from all units, effective immediately. Other fall-out from the incident prompts close scrutiny to root out any remaining Communists which might still be among the ranks of the South Korean forces. According to

General Roberts, the government will discover more than 1,500 such troops and expel them from the Korean Armed Forces.

**November 10 1948 -(United States)** Eight former Women Marine Reservists enlist in the regular Marine Corps, initiating the Women Marines on the 173rd birthday of the United States Marine Corps.

**November 17 1948 -(Pacific-China)** The Communists are about to seize control of Nanking. A Platoon of Marines is dispatched there to guard the U.S. Embassy. The Marine Guard remains there until April 21st, 1949.

**November 18 1948 -(Near East)** A Marine Guard composed of 61 men is assigned to support the U.S. Military Observer Group which has been deployed in Haifa during the Arab-Israeli War. (EP)

**December 1 1948 -(United States)** The Marine Corps lists its strength at 85,425 men. (EP)

**December 10 1948 -(Pacific-China)** The U.S. Naval Commander, Western Pacific, Vice Admiral Oscar C. Badger, speaking in Shanghai, announces that a contingent of Marines is en route from Tsingtao to Shanghai to guard the 2,500 Americans still in the city as the Chinese Nationalists are trapped and attempting to break out of the Communist hold.

**December 12 1948 - (United Nations)** The General Assembly of the United Nations passes a resolution which calls for the U.S. to withdraw all of its troops from Korea. The U.S. has been slow in removing its forces for several reasons including a request from its president to remain until South Korea's forces become better able to resist any threats from within or from without its borders. In response to the resolution, the Joint Chiefs of Staff order General MacArthur to reduce the present force of about 16,000 troops to that of one Regimental Combat Team.

**December 15 1948 - (Pacific-Korea)** The Korean National Assembly, during the latter part of November authorized the ROK Armed Forces Organization Act. Today, the government establishes a national defense organization. It is composed of a Department of the National Defense and Departments of the Army and Navy. In addition, Brigadier General Lee Hyung Koon is appointed Chief of Staff of the Army, which will be composed of the Constabulary units.

**December 31st 1948 -(United States)** The Marine Corps lists its strength at 88,000 and anticipates strength for 1950 to shrink to 85,800; in conjunction, women in the regulars or active reserve number 24 Officers and 300 enlisted. (EP)

**January 1 1949 - (United States)** The United States officially recognizes the Republic of Korea.

**January 3-May 24 1949 - (United States)** The 2nd Marines depart Morehead City, North Carolina, to join the Sixth Fleet landing force in the Mediterranean.

**January 5 1949 - (Pacific-China)** Vice Admiral Badger, commander Western Pacific, denies published reports that the Marines are being withdrawn from China.

**January 10 1949 - (United Nations)** Trygve Lie, the Secretary General of the United Nations, lauds the efforts of Brigadier General William E. Riley, USMC with the U.N. Mediation Commission in Palestine.

**January 20 1949 - (United States)** - Harry S Truman is inaugurated as the 33rd President of the United States. During his inaugural address on this cold Thursday, President Truman stresses the urgency of formulating a strengthened Atlantic Defense pact (negotiations between Allies are ongoing). He also makes it clear that the U.S. is convinced that the Communists are interfering with

post-war recovery for the world and that they are attempting to obstruct world peace. Many Military units participate in the inaugural parade, including the Marine Band (President's own) and a Marine Band from Quantico. President Truman had initially assumed the Presidency upon the death of President Franklin D. Roosevelt on April 12th, 1945.

**February 1 1949 - (Pacific-China)** The U.S. Marine Corps Air Facility, located at Tsingtao, China, is disbanded.

**February 21-March 19 1949 - (Caribbean)** The U.S. carries out Military exercises in the Caribbean (Atlantic Command Exercises); Marine Corps Aviation, commanded by Major General Field Harris, participates.

**February 23 1949 - (United States)** At the Marine Corps Recruit Depot, Parris Island, South Carolina, the 3rd Recruit Battalion is reactivated to train new Women Marines. The first women recruits begin arriving on February 28th to form the first platoon which will compose 50 women and entail a six-week training program.

**February 25 1949 - (United States)** OPERATION MICOWEX, a large-scale Naval Amphibious maneuver in the North Pacific, the first since the close of World War II, concludes successfully.. The 20,000 man Task Force debarks at San Francisco, culminating the month long operation. Marines had made two landings at Kodiak, Alaska. (EP)

**February 26 1949 - (United States)** Captain James Gallagher departs Carswell Air Force Base, Fort Worth, Texas, in a Boeing B-50 to circle the world. The plane, Lady Luck II, completes the voyage in just over 94 hours, travelling 23,452 miles. In other activity, about 2,000 Officers and enlisted men rejoin the First Marine Division at Camp Pendleton, California, subsequent to their duty in China and other Pacific duty stations.

**March 1949 - (Pacific-Guam)** Marine Aircraft Group 24 and the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade embark for the United States and upon arrival will be disbanded, the former enjoining the 1st Marine Aircraft Wing and the latter into the 1st Marine Division. In conjunction, the remaining Marine forces on Guam are incorporated into the recently established command, Fleet Marine Force, Guam.

**March 2 1949 - (Caribbean)** U.S. Soldiers, Marines and several Platoons of Canadian troops make an amphibious landing on Vieques Island, participating in what is the largest post war amphibious exercise. (EP)

**March 23 1949 - (Pacific-Korea)** The advisors to President Truman have recently recommended that further assistance to the South Koreans should not be tied to the presence of U.S. troops and they suggest that all troops be embarked by June 30th. In addition they recommend an Advisory Group. Today, Truman approves the advice and authorizes the establishment of the Advisory Board.

**March 1949 - (United Nations)** The Security Council of the U.N., following studies of the U.S.'s Korean policy, determines that the present force of 65,000 men should be armed at U.S. expense. Already, sufficient equipment to arm 50,000 troops has been, or is about to be, transferred from the Americans to the South Koreans. These items had initially cost about 56 million, but the figure to replace them at present prices would be about 110 million dollars. The U.N. also decides that the U.S. should give some Ships and equipment, valued at about one million dollars, to the Korean Coast Guard. And the U.N., not the U.S. Congress, also decides that legislative action should be forthcoming to get permanent financial aid for Korea from a U.S. assistance program for free

nations. That legislation emerges and will be signed into law by President Truman during October 1949.

**April 1 1949 - (United States)** Marine General Alexander A. Vandegrift (former Commandant), who remained on active duty subsequent to his term as Commandant, retires today.

**April 2 1949 - (Pacific-Korea)** U.S. Army Forces in Korea Headquarters is informed by the Department of the Army to facilitate the withdrawal of all troops from Korea by June 30th; the deadline is met with one day to spare. However, there is still much concern that the evacuation of U.S. troops, while North Korea continues to build its force with the approval of the Soviets, is not good judgment. The echoes of the insurrection, incited by Communists at Yosu during October of 1948, still ring. In conjunction, orders are also given to the Military Advisor Group to enlarge its operation to enable it to provide proper instructions to the South Koreans. Within a week, word arrives from Washington specifying that the organization should contain a maximum of 500 people. At the same price, many South Koreans are sent to the United States to receive training at Army Schools there.

**April 4 1949 - (United States)** - A meeting between the United States and eleven of its Allies convenes in Washington, D.C., resulting in the establishment of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO). Subsequent to the signing by the participating nations, the U.S. Senate ratifies the pact on 21 July. This new organization has formed a mutual defense pact which declares that "AN ARMED ATTACK AGAINST ONE OR MORE...SHALL BE CONSIDERED AN ATTACK AGAINST THEM ALL." NATO's primary purpose is to negate any potential threats by the Communists. It has become increasingly apparent, since the discovery of a giant spy system operating in the U.S. and other free nations, that the Communist conspiracy to dominate the world is flourishing. (EP)

**April 11 1949 - (Pacific-Korea)** The Army publishes the Military Advisory Group Table of Distribution. It calls for 182 Officers, four Warrant Officers, 293 enlisted men and one Nurse. At present, the organizations contains 92 Officers and 148 enlisted men. In conjunction, Korea, not considered an especially good duty station, makes the search for Officers difficult. Filling the billets remains a tedious task for the Provisional Military Advisory Board.

**April 15 1949 - (Pacific-Korea)** General William Roberts transfers Lt. Col. Lewis D. Vieman from his position as advisor to the S.K. 5th Division to Advisory Group Headquarters; he is appointed Schools Advisor and instructed to create blueprints for establishing a program for the schools. Vieman begins to implement programs which he believes will enable the South Korean Army to defend its nation by itself by the beginning of 1952. Col. Vieman establishes additional schools, including a Korean Quartermaster School (July), Korean Army Medical School (August) and a Finance School (October).

**May 2-September 26 1949 - (Mediterranean)** Another contingent of Marines embarks for the Sixth Fleet in the Mediterranean as a Battalion Landing Team of the 8th Marines departs Morehead City, North Carolina, to bolster the Fleet's landing force.

**May 3 1949 - (Pacific-Korea)** North Korean Communist troops launch a raid which brings them to the vicinity of Kaesong in the Republic of South Korea. This clash is followed by hundreds of additional similar type skirmishes which occur during the next six months. Many of the exchanges are small, and both sides sustain high casualties during some of the encounters. In addition, there is much Guerrilla activity which the ROK must deal with. **(Atlantic-Bavaria)** General Clay arrives

in Grafenwoehr, Bavaria, to review the troops. Actually, Clay is preparing to leave Germany. Today the White House announces his departure (May 15th), and General Huebner has arranged a grand farewell. Nearly 10,000 troops of the 1st Division and the Constabulary participate. As the review ends, the 86th Fighter Group, commanded by Colonel Clarence T. Edwinston, soars overhead; the formation spells out General Clay's name.

**May 16 1949 - (United States)** The 9th Marines complete their voyage from the Pacific, arriving at Morehead City, North Carolina, subsequent to their duty in Guam and China. (EP)

**May 24 1949 - (Pacific-Hawaii)** The 3rd Marines arrive at Pearl Harbor from their previous duty station, Shanghai, China.

**May 25 1949 - (Pacific-China)** The final Marine unit to serve off the coast of mainland China, Company C., 7th Marines embarks Tsingtao for the States. (EP)

**May 28-June 29 1949 - (Pacific-Korea)** The final U.S. occupation troops depart Korea. The troops of the 5th RCT embark from Inch'on for Hawaii and the other remaining Soldiers move to Japan. Subsequent to the departure of the 5th Regimental Combat Team and its support troops, only Advisors remain to assist the South Koreans.

**June 1949-June 1950 - (Pacific-Japan)** General Headquarters in Tokyo uses a clandestine operation in Korea which keeps MacArthur informed on the situation there. This group forwards constant reports on the condition of President Rhee's preparedness and all other facets concerning the Communist peril. During this particular period, nearly 2,000 reports are given to MacArthur's Headquarters, and they are forwarded from there to Washington to keep it abreast of the ongoing crisis. The reports do comprise key information which specifies President Rhee's unpreparedness to meet a Communist attack, due to various things including lack of Tanks and Planes. These reports also explain that North Korea and the Communist Chinese are controlled by the Kremlin. A specific report filed during September informs the U.S. Government that Chinese Communists troops are flowing into Pyongyang under the pretense of being war refugees. During March of 1949, the U.S. had decided to equip a 65,000 man Constabulary and to equip a Coast Guard composed of about 4,000 men. This is basically a Police Force for land, and the Coast Guard is to handle such things as piracy, smuggling and possible enemy penetration from the sea. However, the U.S does not equip the forces to handle an invasion. Its Armor consists of some Half-tracs and Scout Cars, and they have few Planes. Also, the North Koreans attack the South Korean Ongjin Peninsula during June of 1949 and they are not thrown back until July. The U.S. furnishes Korea with more than 51 million rounds of various types of ammunition, most of which will be delivered during June, but the Koreans expend about 32 million rounds before the end of the year.

**June 3 1949 - (United States)** The graduating class of the Naval Academy at Annapolis is composed of 790 Midshipmen; of these, 55 accept commissions in the Marine Corps. (EP)

**June 7 1949 - (United States)** Secretary of Defense Louis A. Johnson accepts a Navy proposal intended to bring about an end to racial bias in the Navy and Marine Corps.

**June 15 1949 - (Pacific-Korea)** The Korean Combat Intelligence School, operating for about one year is renamed the Nam San Intelligence School. The school restricts its combat intelligence courses to those necessary on a Divisional level.

**June 21 1949 - (United States)** Secretary of Defense Louis A. Johnson makes a promising speech, incidentally, his first public statement since becoming Secretary of Defense. He vows that the future

functions of the Marine Corps and Marine Aviation are guaranteed, thus putting to rest for a time the sporadic calls for extinction of the Corps. However, the future of the Corps continues to ignite vehement discussions.

**June 25 1949 - (Pacific-Korea)** The Korean government establishes the Quartermaster Clothing Factory to streamline the manufacture of Military uniforms and other Military essentials such as bandages, mosquito nets and hospital gowns. The facility also establishes sections to repair clothing and shoes. The Koreans, with the advice of the KMAG Advisors also initiate the manufacturing of ammunition and spare parts for the Japanese Rifles which are still in use.

**June 29 1949 - (Pacific-Korea)** The final contingents of U.S. troops depart Korea. On the following day, Headquarters, USAFIK is disbanded, which cancels the previous agreement reached between General Hodge and President Rhee concerning U.S. support for the South Korean Armed Forces. Effective today, the South Koreans have total control and responsibility for their Armed Forces.

**June 30 1949 - (United States)** Marine Corps strength is listed at 85,965 Officers and enlisted personnel. In conjunction, during the summer, the Marine Corps establishes an Officer Candidate Screening Course to select qualified enlisted men for Officers; following a four week course, those found qualified are commissioned and transferred to Basic School for additional training and indoctrination.

**July 1949 - (Pacific-Korea)** North Korean forces strike Kaesong, South Korea. The Communists commit artillery to bolster their Infantry raid.

**July 1 1949 - (Pacific-Korea)** The Provisional Advisory Group, earlier organized to assist the South Korean Armed Forces, becomes the official connection between the U.S. and Korea due to the departure of USAFIK. It becomes the U.S. Military Advisory Group to the Republic of Korea, known as KMAG. The organization, commanded by General Roberts, establishes Headquarters in the South Korean Army Headquarters in Seoul. It will operate under the control of Ambassador Mucchio, but it retains close ties to General MacArthur and the Far East Command. MacArthur believes that the unit should be under Mucchio and that on Military matters it should have a direct link with the Pentagon and has so stated to the JCS. But he also recommends that all messages be communicated through the FEC. The members of KMAG, coming under the American Diplomatic Mission, receive Diplomatic immunity. In conjunction, the FEC will provide logistic support for KMAG, but only to the Korean ports. From there they would be handled by the Joint Administrative Service, the link between the Army Supply depots in Japan and the advisors in Korea. The KMAG never attain enough strength to properly advise the S.K. Armed Forces, as there are far too few advisors to spread around. The U.S., which approves training six Divisions, finds that by the end of 1949 there are eight Army Divisions and the language barrier makes things more difficult. In addition to the numerous actions against the North Korean regular forces, the South Koreans also clash with the ever-growing Guerrilla units; well over 400 anti-Guerrilla missions are executed between now and the end of December. Advisors will also be necessary for the Korean Coast Guard, but it becomes the step-child and the U.S. seemingly does not give it any priority. Initially, the Korean Coast Guard receives only six Advisors and many of its Vessels must be towed to port. The Coast Guard will have at its disposal about ninety Vessels, but only about forty are seaworthy. The organization is greatly outclassed by the smugglers and pirates who maintain their exploits with little interruption.

**August 1949 - (United States)** Secretary of Defense Louis Johnson delivers bad news to the Navy, ordering it to cut its expenditures by a staggering \$353 million. And the orders stipulate that the Navy slash its Carrier Force by fifty percent, from eight to four. Johnson also instructs the Navy that its fourteen Air Carrier Air Groups must be reduced to six, a fifty-seven percent decrease. Continuing the cuts, he also mandates that the Marine Corps slice its Air Squadrons from twenty-three to twelve. Johnson's directives, with the approval of the President, unquestionably place the nation in jeopardy, if a major confrontation would erupt. And the situation of the Armed Forces continues to deteriorate as the year progresses. **(Korea)** North Korean Communists again strike the South Korean Ongjin Peninsula igniting severe fighting, but the South Korean forces drive them back across the 38th Parallel. By about this time, all American troops have been pulled out of Korea, except for KMAG advisors. The members of KMAG working in the vicinity of Seoul reside at Camp Sobinggo, a thoroughly American compound. Other KMAG troops are dispersed throughout the provinces at about twenty other locations including Ascom City and Yongdungp'o.

**August 1 1949 - (Pacific-Korea)** The Korean Signal School, operational since July of 1948, is reorganized to enhance the infrastructure and add additional classes. There have been many changes within the various schools since the establishment of the Republic of South Korea. The Ordnance School had temporarily ceased teaching classes during July to give it time to reorganize and infuse new programs; it reopens September 4th. In conjunction, General Roberts, during the early part of August, instructs Major John B. Clark to establish an Infantry School and if possible have it operational by November 1949. It opens during September. The school, intended to turn out qualified Infantry Officers, will be established at Sihung, outside Seoul; many of its American advisors will be graduates of Fort Benning's Infantry School. During the following month, another school, the Korean Army Command and General Staff College, opens. And by the end of the year thirteen primary schools are in operation to assist the Korean Armed forces.

**August 10 1949 - (United States)** - President Truman signs into law the National Security Act Amendments of 1949. The Departments of the Army, Air Force and Navy, combined as The National Military Establishment, becomes known as the Department of Defense.

**August 11 1949 - (Middle East)** Marine Brigadier General William E. Riley is assigned to the United Nations' Palestine Truce Mission as Chief of Staff; Riley's Palestine Observation Staff is to be sliced from 500 to 40 people.

**August 20 1949 - (Pacific-Japan)** General MacArthur establishes the Joint Strategic Plans and Operations Group. This top rank unit comprised of Air Force, Army and Navy personnel will be under General Wright; its purpose is to be prepared for any eventuality emerging from an adversary in the Far East and eventually becomes the primary planning arm of the United Nations when hostilities break out during June of the following year.

**August 24 1949 - (United States)** At Mount Ranier National Park, a memorial is dedicated to the 32 United States Marines who were lost there in an air crash on the South Tahoma Glacier on December 10th, 1946.

**September 1st 1949 - (Pacific-Japan)** Intelligence reports indicate that since June 1949, a Chinese Division has moved in trickles from Antung, Manchuria, into North Korea appearing to be war refugees.

**September 6 1949-January 26th 1950 - (Mediterranean)** A Battalion Landing Team of the 21st

Marines departs Morehead City, North Carolina, to become the 6th Fleet Landing Force; on October 20th, the unit is redesignated.

**September 21 1949 - (Pacific-China)** The Chinese announce the establishment of the People's Republic of China. Its capital, will be Peiping and under the wings of the Soviets, it will be led by Mao Tze-tung. During February of 1950, the Chinese and Soviets will sign a friendship pact in Moscow.

**September 23 1949 - (United States)** President Truman announces to the nation that the Soviet Union has detonated an atomic bomb. The startling news sets a somber mood across the nation. The United States is no longer the world's only superpower. The difference is that the U.S. has repeated its perpetual mistake of gutting its Military at the conclusion of war. Congress has stripped the Military of its teeth immediately following every major confrontation since the War for Independence. Meanwhile, the Soviets continue to build their strength and spread their ideology of world Communism around the world. Although this news causes concern within the free world, it is a bonanza for the Bolsheviks who thrive on the fringes of confrontation. Their silent strength in numbers is minuscule even in the Soviet Union. For the Bolsheviks to survive and flourish, there must be confrontation between two antagonists; otherwise their amoral cause would perish.

**October 1 1949 - (United States)** Contingents of the 1st, 6th and 7th Marines are combined to establish the 1st and 2nd Battalions, 5th Marines, commanded by Colonel Victor H. Krulak.

**October 6 1949 - (United States)** The Mutual Defense Assistance Act is signed into law by President Truman. The legislation approves nearly one and one quarter billion dollars (\$1,314,010,000) for Military assistance to friendly nations. Of this, Korea receives \$10,200,000 to supplement that already received in equipment under the Surplus Property Act of 1944 which turned over items valued at about \$56 million. The Korean supplement is primarily to cover maintenance equipment and spare parts. The law also provides \$75 million for the "general area of China." The terms of the new law dictate that bilateral agreements must be reached between each of the recipient countries and the United States before any aid is delivered.

**October 11 1949 - (United States)** - The assistant director of Marine Corps Aviation, Brigadier General Vernon A. Megee, speaking to the Senate Armed Service Committee, proclaims that the Air Force is neglecting tactical aviation and charges that it has no "effective air-ground control system."

**October 17 1949 - (United States)** General Clifton B. Cates, Commandant of the Marine Corps, states that the Army General Staff is attempting to "destroy the Marine Corps." At present Marine Corps authorized strength is 100,000 men and will be sliced to 67,000 by June 1950. However the commandant insists that the Army General Staff wants the figure cut further to 50 or 60 thousand. Also, recently retired Commandant Alexander A. Vandegrift backs up Cates' claim. Several days later on the 20th, General J. Lawton Collins, Army Chief of Staff and a member of the Joints Chiefs of Staff, tells the House Armed Services Committee that the Army does not intend to phase out the Marine Corps or to take over its amphibious operations, nor does it intend to push the Navy to transfer its Air arm to the Air Force. In other activity, the 2nd Marines is reorganized and expanded to total Regimental strength. Simultaneously, the 6th Marines is reactivated on a regimental level. Nonetheless, the declining number of naval amphibious ships, since the culmination of World War II, is quite alarming: at the termination of hostilities, the navy had more than 600 vessels; by 1947, the number dwindled to less than 400. And by 1950, just prior to when there will be a dire need for

amphibious ships, only 91 will be commissioned. There will also be a huge shortage of landing craft, the iron-gloves of the amphibious Marines. During 1948, the final year of Secretary Forrestal, a respected friend of the armed forces, more than 500 landing craft are decommissioned by the navy. To those in the military, it is no secret that the amphibious branch of the navy is one of near ostracism and perceived as an obstacle to promotion.

**October 19 1949 - (United States)** In Washington, D.C., the House Armed Services Committee is holding hearings. Witnesses include many military leaders, some of whom are especially concerned about the future of the navy and the Marine Corps. One witness, General Omar Bradley, Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff, un masks his feelings concerning the Marine Corps and reads his statement, which unravels like a tirade rather than an objective viewpoint. Bradley's remarks include at least one item which could be construed as a dagger to the heart of the Marine Corps. The naval and Marine Corps officers, in attendance, offer no accolades when Bradley concludes. A ringing prophecy is made during Bradley's speech: "I ALSO PREDICT THAT LARGE SCALE AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS WILL NEVER OCCUR AGAIN." **(Pacific-Korea)** Ambassador Muccio informs Washington that the present condition of the Korean Coast Guard is less than satisfactory and that it should be supplemented with supplies and equipment, including five picket boats, four patrol craft vessels and five observation scout seaplanes. He also recommends that the American advisor team be increased to twenty-three men. Some of Muccio's requests will be added to the KMAG recommendations during December when it requests aid for fiscal year 1950. But budgetary problems exclude the aircraft, and the Koreans will also have to use their exchange funds to purchase some of the other large items. Nevertheless, the situation for the Coast Guard improves hardly at all, prompting repeated pleas, during the first half of 1950, from KMAG to bolster the Coast Guard.

**October 21 1949 - (United States)** As the political quarrels continue concerning the unification of the Services, Secretary of the Defense Louis A. Johnson states that he had asked for the resignation of John L. Sullivan ( former Secretary of Navy) because of his opposition to unification. Mr. Sullivan, who resigned on April 26th over the Carrier dispute, discounts Johnson's remarks, stating he supported unification, but remained opposed to the destruction of the Navy and Marine Corps Aviation and was equally opposed to the "slow death" of the Marine Corps.

**October 30 1949 - (United States)** The Department of Defense announces the mothballing of various Warships, keeping in tune with the plans to reduce the Navy and Marine Corps by 54,891 men by July 1st, 1950. This pattern of gutting the U.S. military after war has continued similarly since the end of the War for Independence and to date, the lesson is the same, but Congress fails to grasp the consequences of its actions. While the U.S. continues its ongoing demobilization, the Communists continue to build up their strength. The judgment eventually calculates to additional loss of American servicemen. In less than one year, while the U.S. watches the Soviets in Berlin, hostilities break out in the Far East and the U.S. is again unprepared, costing them valuable American lives. Although the navy and Marines lack much of their required strength, the army is down to ten divisions, all under-strength. The Air Force as well is unprepared for a genuine conflict; it is composed of a mere 48 air groups.

**December 8 1949 -(Pacific-Japan)** General Headquarter's Intelligence receives a report from its agents in Korea updating the situation; the information specifically states that the North Korean Government is a puppet of the Soviets and that it is controlled by the Kremlin through its Soviet Mission at Pyongyang which staffs about 300 people. Also, the intelligence discloses the North

Korean Army strength to stand at somewhere between four and eight Divisions, bolstered by separate Brigades. Aircraft is documented as Soviet-made and composed of between 60-70 Planes and about 35-40 Soviet T-34 Tanks. In conjunction with the Military strength, the Korean intelligence operation concludes that the S.K. Labor Party is the source of nearly all the civil disturbances in South Korea. Also, the filed report senses an increase of Chinese Military material and personnel being transferred to Korea as the ouster of the Nationalist Government relieves pressure. Headquarters is informed that the winter will prevent any hostilities, but that during April and May of 1950, Communist action is very possible. The Government of South Korea has received no Planes or Tanks from the U.S. to neutralize the Communists. This intelligence is forwarded to Washington.

**December 17 1949 - (Pacific-Korea)** General William Roberts confers with Ambassador Muccio and recommends that the amount of Military assistance allotted to Korea through the Mutual Defense Assistance Act be supplemented by extracting some of the money allocated to the "general area of China." Roberts requests the additional funds because he is convinced that the program as mandated remains insufficient to fulfill the needs of Korea regarding equipment and ammunition if any hostilities occur. Muccio concurs with Roberts. Later, on December 31st, General Roberts specifies particular recommendations for the extra assistance in the amount of nearly ten million dollars.

**December 20 1949 - (Pacific-Korea)** Colonel Vieman succeeds Major Russell Geist as G-4 Advisor to the Koreans. In other activity, the position of Schools Advisor is eliminated; KMAG's G-3 Training Section assumes this responsibility.

**December 31 1949 - (Pacific-Korea)** General Roberts proposes an additional \$9,800,000 in aid for Korea and he includes a request for 3-inch Guns for the Coast Guard vessels, 105 howitzers, machine guns and mortars for the army and some F-51s, T-6s and C-47s for the air force. Roberts believes that these supplements will insure the stability of the new republic. The new request is forwarded to Washington and acted upon during March 1950.

**Misc. 1950 -** An association known as IPR (Institute of Pacific Relations), since as early as the mid-1930's, according to the Internal Security Subcommittee of the U.S. Senate, has been dominated by pro-communists and pro Soviet sympathies. Also, the Reece committee, called to investigate Tax-Exempt Foundations notes profoundly: "**... NOR DOES THE POINT NEED TO BE LABORED THAT THE LOSS OF CHINA TO THE COMMUNISTS MAY HAVE BEEN THE MOST TRAGIC EVENT IN OUR (U.S.) HISTORY, AND ONE TO WHICH THE FOUNDATION-SUPPORTED INSTITUTE OF PACIFIC RELATIONS HEAVILY CONTRIBUTED.**" IPR is a private organization, branched in ten separate countries and composed of ten separate national councils, with its main Headquarters in New York. Astonishingly, Wall Street plays a principal part in the success of IPR: its primary contributors include the Carnegie and Rockefeller Foundations, funded by the Morgans and the Rockefellers. Also, Chase National Bank, National City Bank, Standard Oil, International Telephone and Telegraph and International General Electric contribute; contributions poured heavily into IPR, apparently due to the connection between them and the banking interests of the Rockefellers and the Morgans. As the U.S. nears entrance into the Korean Conflict, the Rhodes Conspiracy theory again surfaces (secret society to spread British upper-class lifestyle); the Round Table Groups extend their organization; in New York, according to Professor Carroll Quigley, the front for the organization is the Council on Foreign Relations, which in turn is a front for J.P. Morgan and Company. Quigley, later (1960s) acknowledges the conspiracy,

stating: "THERE IS A CONSPIRACY, AND I SHOULD KNOW BECAUSE I AM CLOSELY CONNECTED TO IT." Quigley, in his book proclaims: " ... THIS NETWORK WHICH WE MAY IDENTIFY AS ROUND TABLE GROUPS HAS NO AVERSION TO COOPERATING WITH THE COMMUNISTS, OR ANY OTHER GROUPS, AND FREQUENTLY DOES SO."

**January 5 1950 -(United States)** President Truman proclaims that the United States will not initiate, either directly or indirectly, any Military action to intercede on behalf of the Nationalist Chinese under Chiang Kai-shek on Formosa. Chiang Kai-shek and his top aides fled from the mainland to Formosa during December, along with many of the Nationalist troops. A Chinese Communist attack against the island stronghold is anticipated. Within a week, the situation in the Far East becomes more confusing as Korea goes on the chopping block when the Secretary of State proclaims that the U.S. would act to defend Japan, the Philippines and Okinawa, eliminating Korea from the protection of U.S. forces. This unexpected news, considering the enormous amount of aid which is pouring into Korea undoubtedly excites the Communists in both Moscow and Peiking. Nevertheless, the KMAG advisors continue to train the South Koreans. **(Pacific-Guam)** The Fleet Marine Force based on Guam returns to California, leaving only Marine Security forces on Guam. **(Pacific-Japan)** An intelligence report comes into General Headquarters indicating that the Communists in North Korea will launch an invasion of South Korea during either March or April; it further defines the movement of the 3rd North Korean Division into the western sector of the 38th Parallel, the deployment of the 2nd North Korean Division to the south and continued arrivals of Chinese troops. These facts and the increasing size of the Border Constabulary force, point to Military action. The reports are forwarded to Washington by the FEC, but the U.S. has shown little interest in defending Korea.

**January 6th-23rd 1950 -(United States)** The 1st Battalion, 6th Marines, reinforced, embarks Morehead City, North Carolina for the Mediterranean to join the 6th Fleet as the landing force.

**January 8 1950 -(United States)** The Civil Engineer Corps (Seabees) Reservists begin training at the Marine Recruit Depot, Parris Island and within six months, about 240 men complete their training.

**January 9 1950 -(United States)** The Defense budget for fiscal year 1951 reduces Marine Corps manpower from 85,700 (1949-50) to 74,396 for 1951.

**January 14 1950 -(United States)** Air Force, navy and Marine pilots participate in the first unified maneuvers at the All-American air maneuvers over Miami, Florida.

**January 1950 - (Pacific-Korea)** Negotiations between the South Korean Army and the National Police, brokered by KMAG advisors has brought about a plan to train about 10,000 Policemen for combat. The blueprint calls for twenty-two Police Battalions, each composed of 112 men. Initially, more than 100 Police Officers are sent to the Korean Army Infantry School to become familiarized with tactics and subsequently become the officers. However, the theory works well, but the plan never really gets off the ground due to the lack of funding. By May, only one battalion is genuinely mustered for the field. Colonel Harold Krohn, KMAG advisor to the National Police, in a report dated June 15th 1950, states that no Combat Police Battalions had been placed in the field prior to June 1950. In conjunction, the army units have great difficulty getting its units to receive training, as the Communists guerrillas maintain their activity, keeping the army busy.

**February 3 1950 -(United States)** The 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines and VMF-218, composed of about 2,000 Marines arrive back in the States from Guam and return to Camp Pendleton, and El

Toro, California.

**March 1 1950 -(United States)** The House of Representatives' Armed Services Committee issues a report which publicizes its 1949 investigations. It recommends that important air warfare roles should be given to the navy and Marine Corps and it urges increased combined-training. Also, the report recommends that the commandant of the Marine Corps be included in the Joint Chiefs of Staff and that chairmanship of the staff should rotate between services.

**March 10 1950 -(Pacific-Japan)** Another intelligence report flows in from Korea, predicting a North Korean invasion as early as spring but undoubtedly by the fall, then pins it down to: "latest reports received that the North Koreans P.A. (Peoples Army) will invade South Korea in June." MacArthur, again forwards the information to Washington. It should be repeated that Korea is not under the responsibility of MacArthur, but rather the State Department and the few troops (500 advisors) still in Korea report to the American Ambassador. In conjunction, the training of Police Combat Battalions still remains well behind schedule. About mid-March, the South Korean Army puts out a second Training memo, intended to get all contingents through a thirteen-week training schedule (Battalion) by June 1st and the Regimental phase by the end of June.

**March 15 1950 - (Pacific-Korea)** Congress approves the request for additional \$10,970,000 in aid to Korea in response to the request from General Roberts and Ambassador Muccio during December 1949. Because of a priority position assigned to Korea by the Joint Chiefs of Staff, the bulk of requested equipment is not available in the war-reserve stocks and must be procured from commercial sources which delays delivery. By June 25th, the day the Communists invade South Korea, about \$1,000 dollars worth of supplies has been delivered and about \$300,000 in Signal Corps equipment and spare parts are in transit. According to testimony given later during Congressional hearings, one KMAG Officer states that prior to the outbreak of hostilities, only about \$250.00 worth of wire had been received in Korea. These crucial developments greatly concern the KMAG advisors.

**April 1950 -(Pacific-Japan)** In response to a recent request from General MacArthur for the Navy and Marine Corps to provide some training (Amphibious training) for the Army troops in Japan, a Marine instruction team, commanded by Col. Edward Forney, USMC, arrives in Japan. The Marines jump at the opportunity to accommodate General MacArthur and prove the worth of their special attributes, especially since the scathing remarks of General Bradley who predicted the demise of the Corps. Subsequently, a small Amphibious Force and Support elements including Aviation personnel join the instructors in Japan.

**April 5 1950 -(Pacific-Korea)** The Seventh Fleet, commanded by Admiral Struble, and based in the Philippines is off the shores of Korea. Planes attached to Air Group 5 (top Jet-trained unit in the Pacific), zoom from the Valley Forge and fly a parade formation over Inchon and Seoul, then several days later the Jets repeat the ceremonial flight over Hong Kong. In conjunction, the Seventh Fleet comes under the jurisdiction of Admiral Radford, not General MacArthur.

**April 25 1950 -(United States)** The final contingents of the Fleet Marine Force, Guam arrive at Camp Pendleton, California, joining the 1st Marine Division. There is a tremendous shortage of Marines in the Pacific and they are totally lacking in the Far East, except for ships' detachments and security units at the Marine Barracks in Japan. The once powerful Seventh Fleet, has incurred the unexplainable wrath of Congress and the administration; it carries no Marine battalions, in case of an emergency and the fleet has no amphibious ships.

**May 4-August 18 1950 -(United States)** The 3rd Battalion, 6th Marines, reinforced, departs Morehead City, North Carolina to join the 6th Fleet in the Mediterranean and become the Landing Force.

**May 9 1950 -(Pacific-China)** The Chinese Communists announce that two interned U.S. Airmen, MSgt. Elmer C. Bender, USMC and William C. Smith, a Navy Chief Electrician's mate are being released; both men were taken prisoner on October 19th, 1948 when their plane was forced down in Manchuria. The returning Americans state that they were coerced into making confessions of espionage prior to their release. The two servicemen also state that they had not been mistreated during captivity, nor had they come into contact with any Russians while being held in Tsingtao.

**May 25 1950 -(Pacific-Japan)** Activity in North Korea is accelerating according to an intelligence dispatch from operatives in Korea. The message discloses recent inspection of all army units and it identifies seven different divisions. The message also reiterates its previously dispatched information concerning the infusion of Chinese troops. In conjunction, General Headquarters is informed by more facts about the compulsory service in the North Korean Armed Forces, confirming that between 100,000-150,000 youths have been inducted. General MacArthur and the Far East Command still have no authority over Korea or Formosa as they have been the wards of the State Department. Nonetheless, MacArthur's G-2 instinctively had formed a small and inconspicuous intelligence unit; Korean Liaison Office (K.L.O.). Apparently, the information contained in the nearly 2,000 messages forwarded to Washington had been totally disregarded. Within one month, a heavy price (American blood) will be paid for the inattention. In conjunction, the South Korean Armed Forces are composed of ten divisions, however in direct opposition to MacArthur, the Koreans had basically been trained for Constabulary duty, not front line combat. In contrast, the North Koreans are well trained and their guns are pointed toward South Korea. Kaesong which had been attacked by Communists during August of 1949 is again raided during May 1950.

**April 15 1950 -(Pacific-Japan)** General Headquarters receives another of its intelligence documents; this one verifies that the Communists directed the evacuation of all civilians living within three miles of the 38th Parallel to evacuate. Soon after evacuation, the memo advises North Korean troops and guerrillas take over the empty living quarters. As usual, this information is dispatched to Washington.

**May 1950 -(United States)** In California, the 1st Marine Division and the 1st Marine Aircraft Wing demonstrate an amphibious invasion (Exercise DEMON III) for the students attending the Senior Course, Amphibious Warfare School. Also, Congress enacts a new Code of Military Justice, the law which governs the actions or inaction of Armed Forces personnel.

**June 2 1950 -(United States)** The Naval Academy graduating class at Annapolis is composed of 690 Midshipmen; forty-eight of these accept commissions in the Marine Corps.

**June 15 1950- (United States)** At Quantico, Va., Combat demonstrations are exhibited for President Truman to show him why the Marine Corps should receive a larger share of the budget. The Marines showcase an Assault Landing, launched from Carrier-based Helicopters to spotlight the speed with which troops and their supplies can be ferried from the sea to targets behind enemy lines. The President expresses no desire to pass the buck and, in a touch of sarcasm, places his hand on a Howitzer, implying that he puts his confidence in it. **(Pacific-Korea)** The ongoing program to combat-train the South Korean police battalions and army units remains behind schedule. The

bulk of the contingents have not completed the courses, but by this time, all Korean troops have fired their rifles for qualification. In conjunction, some police battalions replace S.K. Army units to handle internal security, permitting army battalions to return to their bases to receive training. Schedules for the completion of training are again raised, being pushed back from June to July 31st for battalion courses and the end of October for regimental training. All the while, Korean leadership qualities have been below standard and slow-coming. In related activity, KMAG reports that the Korean Coast Guard is only about 70 percent of capacity. It contains 105 vessels, but only 58 are serviceable and the number includes fishing vessels. There has been movement toward detaching the Coast Guard advisors and reassigning them under the State Department as a cost-cutting plan. KMAG stipulates that regardless of which department controls the expenses, the advisors are still quite necessary. In addition, the U.S. is in the process of reducing army operations in Korea during 1951 (fiscal year). The Korean Air Force contains ten Harvard trainers and consists of twelve operable liaison planes. In related activity, KMAG makes it known that because of the current situation, including the condition of the armed forces and lack of operational equipment and supplies, the South Koreans will be able to mount a defensive operation if hostilities occur for no longer than fifteen days. KMAG also makes it clear that "KOREA IS THREATENED WITH THE SAME DISASTER THAT BEFELL CHINA." Simply put, KMAG sounds the alarm that the Communists could overrun Korea if they choose to ignite hostilities. In conjunction, the North Koreans have been on an escalating war-footing, supported by the Russians who have been the North's capabilities since the close of WW II. Several thousand North Koreans have received training in the Soviet Union and the Soviets have contributed large numbers of advisors and training instructors to assist the build-up. In addition, the North Koreans have received from the Russians great numbers of equipment, including artillery, fighter planes and tanks. In other activity, General William Roberts departs Korea; Colonel Wright, the Chief of Staff, assumes command of KMAG until Major Frank Keating arrives from the States. However, Keating chooses to retire, rather than move to Korea. In the interim, Colonel Wright is instructed to remain until another replacement for Keating arrives. Meanwhile, Lt. Col. Carl Sturies has temporary control of the advisory group. In conjunction, Colonel Wright is scheduled to depart Korea to attend the Industrial College of the armed forces in the United States.

**June 23 1950 - (Pacific-Korea)** Lt. Colonel Thomas McPhail, KMAG Advisor to the S.K. 6th Division, has become concerned about possible enemy incursions; he bases his conclusions on various missions which his Intelligence units have executed. Recent Reconnaissance missions have uncovered new enemy Infantry units, camouflaged Tanks and Antiaircraft Batteries, all within striking distance of the South Korean positions below the 38th Parallel. Colonel McPhail convinces General Kim, the S.K. 6th Division Commander, to cancel all weekend leaves and to ensure that all defensive fortifications are totally manned. The 6th S.K. Division guards the approaches to Chunchon; during the past several weeks it has received its baptism under fire while engaging enemy Guerrillas who had crossed the border between Chunchon and Kangnung. The Intelligence has been forwarded by McPhail to his superior Officers, but there is still no thought of an enemy invasion. Meanwhile, other S.K. units, on either flank of the 6th Division, are unprepared and less trained as the weekend of the 23rd approaches.

**June 24th 1950 - (Pacific-Korea)** There is no suspicion of an invasion by North Korea. Four South Korean Divisions and one Regiment are deployed defensively to react to hostilities, but only four Regiments and one Battalion are posted near the front lines below the 38th Parallel. The remainder

are stationed to the rear. Many of the South Koreans and the KMAG Advisors are on weekend liberty when the invasion occurs.

**June 25-June 28 1950 - (Pacific-Korea) THE INVASION OF SOUTH KOREA** - At 0400, the sudden roar of artillery and mortars, accompanied by the bizarre shriek of bugles and clanging armor, jolts the South Koreans and their American advisors into a hellish war as the somber blackened skies are illuminated by crimson streaks of unrelenting fire along the 38th Parallel, across the entire peninsula. The N.K. I Corps strikes southward with feverish pitch, pounding the Ongjin peninsula and the other border areas east toward Ch'unch'on. After the initial shock, South Korean units of the 17th Regiment return fire, but it is insufficient to halt the attack. Units of the N.K. II Corps stream across the border, ravaging everything in their path, pouncing on S.K. positions near Ch'unch'on and Hongch'on, further east. The blistering attack is not totally synchronized. Some of the staggered firing commences as late as 0500. Nonetheless, much of the potent firepower far outdistances anything in the South Korean arsenal; the flying terror creates a great deal of panic and confusion south of the border.

North Korea, which has become an armed fortress through the support of the Kremlin, has quietly placed about seven infantry divisions and one armored division close to the 38th Parallel. The massive force anticipates the signal to spring the attack. Slightly to the rear are thousands of reinforcements, also awaiting the bugle's call. Once sounded, in coordination with the blaring sound of the guns, the deadly force will burst across the border to conquer all of Korea in one swift motion before the free world can react.

Subsequent to the invasion, the North Koreans will claim that they had reacted to a South Korean incursion and had ordered a counterattack, but it is noteworthy to mention that on June 8th, more than two weeks prior to the opening of hostilities, newspapers in P'yongyang (North Korea) proclaimed through a manifesto that a parliament would be elected during early August. In conjunction, a meeting is scheduled to convene in Seoul on August 15th, making it clear that the Communists anticipated total control of Korea by mid-August.

The post-war strategy of the Soviets (Bolsheviks) to trample freedom around the globe by cunning use of its satellites and fellow travelers has been unfolding according to plans. While the strategic eyes of the U.S. had been focused on Europe, the Kremlin was tuning the strings of its puppets in North Korea. During the early morning hours of the 25th, the unexpected invasion is launched. This tranquil and rainy Sunday morning is transformed into a massive cauldron of horror, as about 90,000 crack North Korean troops, many trained in the Soviet Union, burst across the 38th Parallel, spearheaded by Soviet-made Tanks. Unending swarms of screaming troops, foliage sprouting from their uniforms and helmets, attack and scorch the earth. Much of the brazen advance is effortless at many of the selected targets, as the South Koreans lack planes, Tanks, and antitank weapons, compelling many of them to retreat in disarray. Synchronized unopposed air attacks also occur.

Seoul, the embattled capital of South Korea, and Kimpo airfield are struck by several unopposed air raids before day's end. The ugly combination of air, ground and armor attacks wreaks havoc on soldiers and civilians alike, leaving a ghastly path of death and destruction in the wake. Crushed and burning buildings are commonplace. Throngs of bewildered civilians flee in absolute fright under the echo of the ponderous guns. Many trembling children are scattered about the line of retreat, some dead, others huddled in fear with trauma on their faces, adding to the gloom. The initial fighting during the contest is lopsided. Later, one South Korean who was there described the

defense and likened it to "THROWING EGGS AT A ROCK." Observations after the fact reveal many South Korean dead who are piled in irregular layers and others, merely tossed in singular lines, lying prone in unnatural positions. All share a common bond; their hands are tied behind their backs, exposing cruel slaughter.

Meanwhile, the meager number of American advisors (less than 500) are unable to provide any genuine assistance; no U.S. Combat troops are in Korea and few aircraft, none of which are available to the South Koreans. The dilemma of the Americans is seriously compounded because few of the South Korean troops speak English. Once the North Koreans infiltrate the streaming lines of terrified civilians, it is impossible to distinguish friend from foe.

It becomes increasingly apparent that the United States has again been caught flat-footed and is ill-prepared to immediately halt the Soviet-backed North Korean invaders. This bold enemy offensive sounds a belated alarm, which underscores the U.S. unpreparedness to neutralize Communist aggression in the Far East. However, at the moment, word of the invasion has not yet reached Washington. Incursions along the border have been frequently occurring for many months; therefore the U.S. Embassy initially assumes it is just another pesky provocation. This conclusion is shattered at 1100, when North Korean Premier Kim Il Sung proclaims over the radio that a full-scale invasion had been launched.

As the juggernaut begins moving west to east, the isolated Ongjin Peninsula, bound on three sides by water and on the north by the 38th Parallel, is struck solidly by the N.K. I Corps. At about 0400, Ongjin, which covers about 26 air miles of mountainous terrain along the 38th Parallel, is pounded by artillery of the 14th Regiment, 6th North Korean Division and the constabulary troops of the 3rd Brigade. These fierce artillery attacks are followed about one-half hour later by ground forces. Swiftly, the beleaguered undermanned 17th Regiment (ROK), commanded by Colonel Paik In Yup, and its five American advisors are imperiled. One battered battalion is wiped out; the remainder of the regiment is compelled to withdraw toward the sea. There is one ferry crossing which is located on the eastern side of the peninsula; the boats travel across Haeju Bay to the mainland.

Emergency calls from Ongjin are picked up in Seoul at 0600. By 0900, another desperate plea filters into headquarters, requesting air evacuation. Two American pilots flying L-5 planes depart Seoul and extricate the Americans. Meanwhile, previously laid-out evacuation plans are set in motion to salvage the battered regiment. Three LSTs answer the call and rescue the survivors on the following day.

Further east, across the water from the Ongjin Peninsula, lies Kaesong; it is about two miles south of the 38th Parallel. The town is defended by two battalions of the 12th Regiment, 1st S.K. Division, which are deployed slightly north of the town. Another battalion is strung out about 20 miles to the west at Yonan. Meanwhile, the 13th Regiment holds positions east of Kaesong near the Imjin River at Korangp'o-ri. Also, the 11th Regiment (reserve) and headquarters are deployed further south at Suisak, slightly north of Seoul. At approximately 0500, the 13th and 15th Regiments, N.K. 6th Division crash across the border in a two-pronged move. Many troops spring from Songaksan (Hill 475), which spreads along the 38th Parallel above Kaesong. Another contingent about regimental strength arrives by train, using tracks that had been secretly relaid north of the 38th Parallel just prior to the invasion.

The sole American advisor at the 38th Parallel (at the onset of the invasion) is Captain Joseph R. Darrigo, who is awakened by the sounds of the guns. Immediately, he rushes into Kaesong where

he spots the enemy troops bouncing from the rail cars. There is little time to react when the one-sided fight erupts. By 0930, Kaesong falls along with Yonan; the defenders are decimated. Only two companies of the S.K. 12th Regiment escape death or capture. Darrigo, the American Officer, makes it safely to Munsan-ni. In conjunction, at daybreak in Seoul, Colonel Rockwell, USA, is contacted by S.K. Colonel Paik, who informs him of the invasion. Col. Paik then phones headquarters at Suisak and orders the 11th Regiment and other contingents to rush to Munsan-ni-Korangp'o-ri and reinforce the 13th Regiment at the Imjin River Bridge, the predetermined spot to form a strong defense line. With great rapidity, the 13th Regiment reaches its destination and becomes engaged in fierce fighting for several days against elements of the N.K. 1st Division and its supporting tanks.

Lacking antitank equipment, courageous yet reckless volunteers of the 13th Regiment affix explosives to themselves and individually charge the armor. Others board the tanks and attempt to drop grenades down the hatch. These and other types of suicidal actions near the Imjin Bridge knock out several Tanks, but after the quick loss of about ninety men, few others volunteer. The Imjin River Bridge at Munsan-ni is to be blown as soon as the 12th Regiment is safely across, but with the enemy on the heels of the regiment, the plan fails, and the bridge is seized intact. The seizure creates additional problems for the weary defenders; however, despite the overwhelming enemy superiority, the S.K. 1st Division holds the line at Korangp'o-ri nearly three days before it withdraws to the Han River to escape envelopment and slaughter by the enemy units in the Uijongbu Corridor. Adding to the dreary plight of the S.K. 1st Division, American planes inadvertently attack them on the 28th. The aircraft, under orders to destroy enemy columns and decimate "organized troops north of the Han River," strike the retreating unit with rockets and machine gun fire, causing heavy casualties. In a most unusual display of morale boosting, Colonel Paik, speaking to his men after the accidental raid, states: "YOU DID NOT THINK THE AMERICANS WOULD HELP US. NOW YOU KNOW BETTER."

While the multi-pronged assault unwinds, the eye of the blistering attack moves full-throttle down the Uijongbu Corridor. Units of the N.K. 105th Armored Brigade smash into contingents of the S.K. 7th Division, commanded by Brigadier General Yu Jai Hyung; the 1st Regiment which is deployed along the 38th Parallel feel the sting. During the initial fighting, which erupts about 0530, the 1st Regiment takes severe losses. Tanks of the N.K. 105th Armored Brigade support the 3rd and 4th N.K. Divisions as they penetrate toward Seoul. About 40 tanks of the 107th Tank Regiment, followed by the N.K. 4th Division, spring from positions near Yonch'on. They advance along the western road driving toward Tongduch'on-ni and hammer the S.K. 3rd Regiment. One enemy unit, the 16th N.K. Regiment, sustains heavy losses before the ROKS lose the town toward the end of the day. Synchronized with the 4th Division, the N.K. 3rd Division, bolstered by about 40 tanks of the 109th Tank Regiment, smash their way down the eastern route, grinding along the P'och'on Road (Kumhwa-Uijongbu-Seoul Road), which is defended by the S.K. 9th Regiment. As the enemy rumbles down the two separate highways which join at Uijongbu, the overmatched South Koreans take high casualties, prompting an ROK officer to send an emergency call to Seoul for reinforcements as early as 0830. He states that all available forces had been committed. Nonetheless, the dual dagger of the enemy pushes forward. The N.K. 3rd Division reaches the steps of P'och'on, but pulls back during the night. On the morning of the 26th the town is taken without opposition, permitting the 3rd Division to immediately drive toward Uijongbu.

The S.K. Army High Command in Seoul reacts shortly after 0930 on the 25th, sending reserve

forces north to launch a counterattack in the Uijongbu Corridor. The first troops to begin rushing north are contingents of the 2nd S.K. Division at Taejon, commanded by General Lee Hyung Koon; at 1430, some American advisors, elements of the 5th Regiment and division headquarters move by rail from Taegon toward Seoul. Other KMAG advisors with the S.K. 2nd Division are scattered at other locations such as Anjung-ni, Ch'ongju and Yongju; they also rush to Seoul. At about darkness, contingents of the S.K. 5th Division depart Kwangju in southwest Korea heading north, and troops of the S.K. 3rd Division advance from Taegu, ninety miles below Seoul. Initially, the S.K. 3rd Division has little knowledge of the unfolding invasion. Its commander, Colonel Yu Sung Yul, and the senior KMAG Advisor, Lt. Col. Rollins Emmerich, are in Chinju, attending a conference. They learn of the attack during their return to Taegu. By the time Emmerich arrives back at Taegu at about 1800, elements of the S.K. 3rd Division and three KMAG advisors already are en route to Seoul. Like the other American Advisors, those in Taegu are unsure of what their role has become with the opening of hostilities.

Meanwhile back in the United States, during a specially called session of the U.N. General Assembly on the 25th, the North Koreans are directed to halt their aggression and return across the 38th Parallel, but the directive is ignored. Two days later on the 27th, President Truman commits air and naval forces to aid the South Koreans. Soon after, at the request of General MacArthur, U.S. ground troops are on their way to Korea. Ironically, it had been thought by many in the U.S. that the role of the infantry and the amphibious forces had been rendered obsolete because of the creation of the Atomic Bomb. But it is the infantry which gets the call to arms as the U.S. goes to war under the auspices of the United Nations; this is called a "Police Action."

Across the 38th Parallel, The N.K. 2nd Division (II Corps) moves from H'wachon, just above the border, to replace Constabulary troops, then attack Ch'unch'on, a primary road junction near the border along the Pukhan River. The division anticipates an effortless early morning victory. In conjunction, the N.K. 7th Division advances from Inje toward Hongch'on, several miles further south. To their surprise, the ROK 6th Division stands ready for the fight as no weekend passes had been handed out, and the unit is at full strength. The N.K. 2nd Division's 6th Regiment winds down the river road, and the 4th Regiment moves over Peacock Mountain, both expecting to converge for victory at Ch'unch'on. But determined resistance greets the advance. Heavily fortified concrete pillboxes scattered atop the crest of a towering hill just north of the town foil the plot. The 2nd Division's incessant accurate fire delays the enemy timetable and scores well against the N.K. 6th Regiment. South Korean resistance is resolute, forcing the North Koreans to change strategy. On the 25th, the N.K. 7th Division en route to Hongch'on is ordered to pivot and reinforce the 2nd Division on the 25th.

The furthest point of battle from the Ongjin Peninsula is the east coast, where the remaining North Korean troops are staged in the vicinity of the Taebaek Mountains, near Inje. Their mission is to secure the eastern mountains. The N.K. 5th Division and the 766th Independent Unit, bolstered by guerrilla contingents, are perched for the border crossing. Facing the enemy is the S.K. 8th Division which is deployed in a near vertical line. Its 10th Regiment guards the border; headquarters stands at Kangnung, about 15 miles south of the border. The 21st Regiment is garrisoned 25 miles further south at Samch'ok, but when the invasion commences at about 0500, most of its troops are scattered throughout the Taebaek Mountains, eradicating Communist guerrillas. Six KMAG advisors, including Major Gerald E. Larsen, the chief advisor, are at headquarters in Kangnung with the 10th Regiment when the invasion begins; Major George Kessler is at Samch'ok.

The 10th Regiment becomes heavily engaged with elements of the N.K. 5th Division and the 766th Independent Unit. In conjunction, enemy guerrillas execute amphibious landings above and below Samch'ok, defended by the S.K. 21st Regiment. In concert, two battalions of the N.K. 766th Independent Unit debark near Kangnung. Again, overpowering Communist force makes the South Korean positions untenable. Fighting remains heavy throughout the day, but previously prepared withdrawal plans are being quickly activated. Elements of the 21st Regiment rush antitank guns to the water's edge near Samch'ok and commence firing at some offshore Vessels. The South Koreans sink two vessels; the remainder depart the area. Up to this point, Major Kessler and the advisors at Samch'ok remain unaware that the incursion is part of a full-scale invasion.

On the following day, the S.K. 10th Regiment continues buying priceless time at the border, while the remainder of the 8th Division prepares to evacuate Kangnung, heading for Pusan. Fighting across the peninsula on the 26th remains ferocious, but enemy tanks ensure continued success. South Koreans, having only antipersonnel mines in their arsenal, remain disadvantaged.

The diverted N.K. 7th Division reaches Ch'unch'on during the evening of the 26th, adding its tanks to the battle, but the S.K. 6th Division still inflicts punishment upon the enemy. The bitter combat rages continually into the 27th, but relentless enemy pressure finally collapses both flanks of the defenders. At this crucial point, orders arrive instructing the battered S.K. 6th Division to withdraw further south. Subsequent to a South Korean pull-back on the 28th, the 2nd and 7th N.K. Divisions, led by nine tanks, enter a charred Ch'unch'on. However, for this prize the North Koreans have paid a high price. Their 2nd Division sustains about 40 percent casualties and the 6th Regiment incurs more than 50 percent casualties. The N.K. 7th Division sustains moderate casualties; in addition, the North Koreans lose about 16 self-propelled guns (SU-76-mm) and other assorted weapons. The seizure of Ch'unch'on opens the way for the 7th Division to resume its trek toward Hongch'on; in conjunction, the N.K. 2nd Division marches directly toward Seoul.

On the 26th, in the S.K. 7th Division sector north of Uijongbu, General Yu Jai Hyung launches a solid counterattack against the N.K. 4th Division, but the inflicted losses are not severe enough to halt the advance. Inaccurate battle reports claim the destruction of 58 enemy tanks and the capture of 1,580 North Korean troops, greatly confusing South Korean strategy. In conjunction, General Lee fails to order two available battalions of the S.K. 2nd Division to attack. Consequently, the South Korean counterattack is weakened.

General Lee, convinced an attack would be futile, keeps his command in defensive positions along the P'och'on Road about two miles northeast of Uijongbu; at 0800 (26th), North Koreans encroach their positions. Initially they are met with artillery and small arms fire. The accompanying tanks take the hits, but the shells harmlessly bounce off. Subsequent to a short pause, the armor blows through the South Korean defenses and rolls into Uijongbu; in the wake, the N.K. 7th Regiment barges into the two battalions of the S.K. 2nd Division, shredding its ranks. Faced with total envelopment, the survivors make it to the nearby hills. The collapse of the S.K. 2nd Division forces the S.K. 7th Division to abort its attack which had been advancing up the western road; it retires to more tenable positions below Uijongbu. As the invaders deepen their penetration, the South Korean's plight deteriorates drastically. In retrospect, the decision by General Chae, S.K. chief of staff, to delegate responsibility to the 2nd Division to hold the P'och'on Road proves to be a mortal wound; it had been unable to field a full division for the task.

The night of the 26th causes more apprehension for the South Koreans, whose forces are being

pounded at every point. In Seoul, the government considers evacuation, but a heated debate in the General Assembly concludes with a decision to remain in the capital. Nonetheless, without informing the American advisors (KMAG), S.K. Army headquarters departs the beleaguered city on the morning of the 27th, heading for Yong-dungp'o, about five miles further south. Also, about 0900, Ambassador Muccio and his Staff move to Suwon. Colonel Wright and KMAG move to Sihung-ni and persuade General Chae to return to Seoul; his headquarters arrives back in Seoul about 1800, but by this time, the original confidence of those in the capital has vanished, being replaced by an aura of bewilderment.

Col. Wright had received several messages from General MacArthur, urging him to: "REPAIR TO YOUR FORMER LOCATIONS. MOMENTOUS DECISIONS ARE IN THE OFFING. BE OF GOOD CHEER." Another message from MacArthur informs Wright that MacArthur will be placed in command of all troops in Korea. Meanwhile, the surviving South Korean units are still being racked by the relentless enemy advances. The S.K. 1st Division is endangered at Korangp'o-ri, as the 3rd and 4th N.K. Divisions, moving from Uijongbu, close on it in coordination with the N.K. 1st Division, which is driving from their immediate eastern flank. Also, the remaining operational units of the 2nd, 5th and Capital (Palace Guard) Divisions and the 7th S.K. Division are engaged in separate and uncoordinated delaying actions. Combined, they are unable to forestall the tenacious enemy advance toward Seoul.

As the North Koreans gallop south, the President, Syngman Rhee, continues pleading for help from the United Nations. Some of the South Korean units fight bravely, but the majority have been trained only for constabulary duty; many of them retreat in disorganized fashion to escape the surging Soviet-made T-34 tanks, the ring of automatic weapons and the menacing sting of the burp guns. As the ROK forces hurriedly retire, huge irregular columns of civilians, transporting colossal loads upon their backs, flee south from their homes near the 38th Parallel. This unanticipated activity clogs the paths and roads which are now under constant strafing by Soviet-made aircraft. In addition, great numbers of ROK forces have abandoned their military lifestyle, changing into peasant clothes and blending into the panic-stricken civilian flight. But there is no sanctuary in Seoul. The Government prepares for evacuation to forestall total defeat.

By the 27th, it becomes inevitable that the ROK forces cannot hold the capital. The Communists, taking advantage of the expanding confusion, dispatch planes which deposit leaflets enticing the populace to surrender. This is in coordination with a radio broadcast by N.K. Field Marshal Choe Yong Gun, who also requests surrender. The pleas for surrender are ignored; however, most of the precautionary plans to meet any pending threat are never implemented. Roadblocks are fabricated but left unguarded. The bridges are not blown and, with few exceptions, the fabricated obstacles are not covered by defensive fire, affording the rampaging North Koreans an unobstructed path to Seoul.

One small contingent from the ROK Engineering School, led by Lt. Col. Oum Hung Sup, strikes four approaching enemy tanks at the Uijongbu-Seoul Road at a mined bridge. But by nightfall, at about 1930, the N.K. 9th Regiment, 3rd Division reaches the outskirts of the embattled city; this penetration is beaten back, but later at 2300, an infantry platoon, bolstered by one tank, cranks into the northeast section of the city, entering the Secret Gardens at Chang-Duk Palace. This infiltration too is met and destroyed as Korean Police eliminate or chase off the troops and decimate the Tank. Nevertheless, the real onslaught is close behind. By midnight, the American advisors and the North Korean officers are discussing the Han River Bridge. General Chae states that he has not ordered

the bridge destroyed. It is determined that no order will be given until the enemy tanks are directly on the street of ROK Army headquarters.

Soon after midnight (27th-28th), General Chae is apparently placed in a jeep and driven over the bridge out of the city, leaving dissention behind. Major George Sedberry (KMAG) attempts to convince the ROK deputy chief of staff, General Kim Paik II, to refrain from blowing the bridge until troops and equipment could be evacuated. In addition, the vice minister of defense, according to General Kim, directed the bridge be blown at 0130, further complicating the crisis. Immediately upon being informed of the impending demolition, General Lee Hyung Koon, commanding officer, 2nd S.K. Division, urges General Chang Kuk to halt the order until he can extricate his command. Reluctantly, the general agrees, but the roads are jammed, slowing his motorcade. As Chang reaches a point about 150 yards from the span at 0215, he is greeted with a thunderous roar and a gargantuan blast of fire and debris. The two spans of the Han River bridge and three companion railroad bridges are simultaneously detonated. The consequences are grave as many military personnel and civilians are obliterated in the horrific explosion. Ironically, several KMAG Officers had safely crossed the span, beating the catastrophe by about five minutes.

Still on the north side of the span only feet from the blown portion, several American war correspondents, Keys Beech, Burton Crane and Frank Gibney, stare through their shattered windshield at a truck directly in front of them, which had been lost with all its troops on board. Subsequently a board of inquiry meets to place the blame for the incident; it results in a military court martial for the ROK senior engineer, who is summarily executed. The verdict remains under debate today. Some believe the order had been given by General Chae and others set blame on the vice minister of defense, neither of whom had been charged; stronger arguments support the case against the latter.

In the capital, the early morning hours of the 28th are gloomy. Remaining KMAG Officers successfully seek exit routes and cross the Han River at 0600, but the majority of the South Korean Army contingents and their equipment remain trapped. Some scattered units attempt to hold the enemy back, while the others cross the river without most of their heavy equipment and transports.

The N.K. 3rd Division attempts to enter the city but it hits fierce resistance offered by a small heroic contingent of South Koreans who hold until about noon. Eventually, elements of the N.K. 16th Regiment, 4th Division break into the capital. Another band of ROK troops hold a Spartan line on South Mountain within the city; these gallant men resist throughout the day until the last man is wiped out. However, Communist control of the city occurs by midday, and the conquering troops are received by a tumultuous welcome by fifth columnists and exuberant college-age students.

Meanwhile, surviving ROK troops attempt to reform on the south side of the Han River. At the time of invasion, the South Korean defenders numbered about 98,000 troops. Now, four days later, the South Koreans assess the situation and assume they have depleted their force by about 75 percent, accounting only for about 22,000 troops (south of the Han River) by the end of the month. Later, more stragglers limp into headquarters and favorable reports filter in concerning the 6th and 8th S.K. Divisions, pumping the numbers back to about 54,000. Incredibly, 44,000 troops are killed, wounded or missing in the first week of combat; many of these losses are directly contributed to the premature destruction of the Han River bridge. Before, during and subsequent to the entry of Seoul, the North Koreans exhibit a barbaric nature which greatly overshadows the atrocities of the Japanese during World War II.

U.S. Congressional clamoring to demobilize has been progressing since the close of World War II. This has jeopardized America's ability to defend itself or those nations it has promised to defend. But when President Truman is informed of the disaster, about seven hours after the ignition of the conflict, he moves quickly, returning to the Blair House from his home in Independence, Missouri. He urges the United Nations to take immediate action. Now, as South Korea's defenses are collapsing under the Iron Canopy of the North Koreans, Washington must reverse its position and remobilize.

At present, the U.S. Armed Forces are in wretched fighting condition, unbecoming a Superpower. Of the ten active U.S. Army divisions, only the 1st Division stands at full strength, and it is in Europe staring down the Soviets. There are four weakened Eighth Army divisions in Japan; however, none are battle-ried and most of the men are inexperienced. In conjunction, the Marine Corps has been deflated from nearly 500,000 at the conclusion of World War II to a dangerous level of less than 75,000 men. In conjunction, the air force and navy, both under strength, will be called upon to fill the gap, while the ground forces begin to mobilize. It is the air force which forestalls total defeat. Ironically, the U.S. Navy will need the services of a tremendous number of Japanese seamen to meet the threat.

A predetermined evacuation plan (Operation CRULLER) begins to extricate endangered Americans and some personnel from other nations. The evacuees board the USS *Reinholt* and embark for Japan on the 27th. Others are airlifted from Kimpo Airfield on the 26th by Fifth Air Force planes which dispatch C-46s, C-47s and C-54s to handle the emergency. Meanwhile, after the fall of Seoul, General MacArthur is flown to the front on the following day, the 29th; he gets a first-hand observation of the impending nightmare. As MacArthur focuses on the chaos, he devises a dauntless plan to reverse the impending rout: the amphibious landing at Inchon. MacArthur, not surprisingly, remains resolute as he peers through the grueling action near the destroyed Han River bridge, where he witnesses the muddled masses of retreating troops.

The first U.S. ground troops to arrive in Korea will be composed of the 24th Division, commanded by Major General William Dean, the previous military governor of South Korea. Ironically, General Dean had been readying his return to the United States and bidding goodbye to friends as he departed church services in Japan on the 25th. It was then that he received the news that he was not yet going home. The post duty officer informed him of the invasion. Smith, realizing that his weakened Division is deployed all across Japan, begins to reel them in for deployment in Korea, less than 150 miles away.

On June 30th, General Dean informs Colonel Charles (Brad) Smith that he will command the first troops in Korea and that Dean will follow soon after. Colonel Smith is to lead Task Force Smith into Pusan and drive north to delay the North Koreans until the balance of the 24th Division and other reinforcements can be rushed to support them. Task Force Smith will fly to Pusan then by convoy, advance to Taejon and attempt to hold. Colonel Smith is becoming adapted to being suddenly awakened with orders; on December 7th, 1941, the colonel was awakened and directed to command an infantry contingent at Oahu, Hawaii. The task force, numbering about 400 infantry men and an artillery unit, reaches positions near Osan on July 5th, becoming the first U.S. troops to clash with the Communists in North Korea. The engagement is a costly one for the young Americans who expect to quickly extinguish the fighting. They barely escape total slaughter. Their carbines and obsolete antitank weapons are overmatched. Some troops break under the pressure, but more stand and fight, making the ultimate sacrifice to buy time for MacArthur's warriors and

the free world. Many of the young men of Task Force Smith are captured and butchered by the North Koreans.

General MacArthur will be chosen to command the United Nations force on July 8th. He will confer with other military leaders and be informed that the 1st Marine Division is available. The Marines (seasoned veterans) begin to arrive from Camp Pendleton at Pusan during early August. The swaggering entrance of 5,000 Marines perks up the besieged defenders to the point of angering some of the beleaguered army troops. Nonetheless, their self-confidence becomes contagious. The Marines soon back their boastful pride with dashing dare and inspire the others to break the siege.

Meanwhile, General Walton Walker's command must hold the line at the "Pusan Perimeter," or be driven into the sea. His forces meet the challenge, and the Communists realize that their quest for easy victory has been snatched from them by the combined and determined forces of freedom.

For the duration of the conflict, Communist aircraft receive sanctuary in China, avoiding destruction by the American and other Allied pilots. As the opposing forces continue to battle for the won-again lost-again barren blood-soaked hills, the casualties continue to climb. Fifty-three nations join the struggle against the Communist aggression, but it is the American fighting men who assume the brunt of the task. Only fifteen additional nations commit combat troops; Turkey and Great Britain are the only nations to field more than the strength of a battalion. Also, South Korea forces compose sixteen infantry divisions. In contrast, the Chinese Communists funnel thousands of troops into the ranks of the North Koreans, and toward the end of 1950, several hundred thousand Chinese troops openly join the fight. The protracted struggle contains all the elements of man's inhumanity to man and enunciates the equally powerful hope of men to remain free, regardless of the sacrifices that must be borne to eradicate tyranny. Korea is the battleground and the line is drawn, then underscored with blood, while the bewildered and anguished South Koreans await the conclusion.

**June 25 1950 - (United States)** Warren Austin, U.S. Ambassador to the United Nations, announces the North Korean Communist invasion of the Republic of South Korea (in part): "AT 4 O'CLOCK IN THE MORNING SUNDAY, JUNE 25TH, KOREAN TIME (1926, June 24th, Washington time), ARMED FORCES FROM NORTH KOREA COMMENCED AN UNPROVOKED ASSAULT AGAINST THE TERRITORY OF THE REPUBLIC OF KOREA...THIS WHOLLY ILLEGAL AND UNPROVOKED ATTACK BY THE KOREAN NORTH FORCES...CONSTITUTES A BREACH OF THE PEACE AND AN ACT OF AGGRESSION...IT WOULD APPEAR FROM THE NATURE OF THE ATTACK AND THE MANNER IN WHICH IT WAS LAUNCHED THAT IT CONSTITUTES AN ALL-OUT OFFENSIVE AGAINST THE REPUBLIC OF KOREA." In response, a U.N. Resolution emerges from a special session: "NOTING WITH GRAVE CONCERN THE ARMED ATTACK UPON THE REPUBLIC OF KOREA BY FORCES FROM NORTH KOREA THE SECURITY COUNCIL DETERMINES THAT THIS ACTION CONSTITUTES A BREACH OF THE PEACE." The U.S. Ambassador, John J. Muccio, had informed the U.S. of the invasion; it was still June 24th, U.S. time. The response calls for an immediate withdrawal by the North Koreans to the 38th Parallel in synchronization with an immediate halt to the hostile actions. The resolution also calls on all members "TO RENDER EVERY ASSISTANCE TO THE UNITED NATIONS IN THE EXECUTION OF THIS RESOLUTION AND TO REFRAIN FROM GIVING ASSISTANCE TO THE NORTH KOREAN AUTHORITIES." Ironically, the primary antagonist, the Soviet Union, is absent from the meeting, having boycotted the sessions since January 10th, 1950, in protest of Red China being denied a seat as the bone fide representative of China. This Soviet miscalculation

for whatever reason eliminates the Communist veto, permitting the U.N. to take action. The resolution receives an abstention from the representative from Yugoslavia, another Communist-dominated nation, but nine yes votes are cast. The nations voting yes are China, Cuba, Ecuador, Egypt, France, Great Britain, India, Norway and the United States. There are no U.S. combat troops in Korea. Also, the total inundation of Soviet propaganda had actually prevented the U.S. government from properly equipping the South Korean Armed Forces to defend themselves. Soviet trickery through its negotiators has again made fools of the U.S., which has negotiated fairly but with astonishing naivete. Also, at this time, in addition to the U.S. Army and Naval strength being dangerously low, there are no Marine Corps forces of any consequences in the Far East; in fact, due to the Truman Administration's post-war policy, there are few Marines in the United States. **(Pacific-Japan)** Official word of the North Korean invasion of South Korea is dispatched from Korea at 0925 by the U.S. Embassy, but neither General MacArthur nor his general headquarters receives orders concerning the crisis at the 38th Parallel; instructions do arrive to evacuate the Americans from Korea. By about midnight, Brig. General Edwin K. Wright has instructed all units necessary to initiate the evacuation to stand ready. The operation gets underway at 0100 on the 26th; a plan of action for such an occurrence had been distributed on July 1st, 1949. Also, Colonel William H.S. Wright receives permission from Ambassador Muccio to evacuate KMAG personnel from Korea, except 33 men who are to remain with ROK Headquarters. Soon after, President Truman informs MacArthur that he will be in command of the operation. Sadly, the finest army the world has ever seen was totally gutted immediately after WWII, and again, the U.S. government has not learned from history. Congressional actions have disarmed the nation to a dangerously low level. Concurrently, another of the frequent (through the years) but unsuccessful political movements to disband the Marine Corps had surfaced, as the arm-chair military strategists have predicted that the Marine Corps is obsolete and that the army infantry will be of little value in future wars, because the U.S. has the Atom Bomb. Coincidentally, through the efforts of spies and fellow travelers in the U.S. and some captured German scientists, the Russians have also acquired the atomic bomb. In other activity, Amphibious Group 1, commanded by Admiral Doyle, is en route from Tokyo to Chigasaki Beach to execute a practice amphibious landing; the navy and Marine specialists will oversee a landing by the 35th Regiment on the following day. In other activity, subsequent to emergency talks between Ambassador Muccio and Syngman Rhee, the former requests that MacArthur supply additional ammunition to ensure that the South Koreans are able to meet the crisis. **(Pacific-Korea)** North Korean armed forces invade South Korea. Since the beginning of June, the North Koreans have offered two suggestions for the unification of Korea, but neither is acceptable to the South Korean government. In addition, the U.S. has been in the process of diminishing its aid to the new republic, and repeatedly, the U.S. has publicly stated that Korea is not within its protective zone. Actually, the U.S. has laid out clear instructions on what the policy is for KMAG Advisors with one exception; the U.S. has not issued instructions on what they should do once hostilities begin. KMAG now faces a dilemma and the ambassador has no specific instructions. Ambassador Muccio suggests that the entire mission including the advisors could converge on the embassy in Seoul if the Communists take the city and diplomatic immunity could be claimed, but KMAG declines the suggestion. Apparently, the North Koreans feel confident that there will be no intervention by the U.S. to save South Korea. Communist aircraft strike several times without opposition, damaging facilities at the Kimpo Airfield; a U.S. C-54 transport plane on the ground is also damaged. The North Korean Air Force, according to U.S. estimates prior to the invasion, stands at 21 IL Bombers and 33 YAK Fighters; the aircraft are

domiciled at four Bases: Pyongyang, Sinanju, Sinuiju and Wonsan. South Korean President Rhee and his government are preparing to evacuate Seoul by mid-day, although the U.S. ambassador suggests that they stay to forestall panic. Rhee then explains during the late-night meeting at the Ducksoo Palace that if the Communists seize the city and the government officials, the cause will be lost and all resistance will collapse. Seoul is overrun by Communists on the 28th. After a series of communications between Syngman Rhee and U.S. officials, Washington authorizes General MacArthur to rush Military supplies to South Korea. The shipments moving to Korea by sea, sail by several routes; from Yokohama the distance is 900 miles, but this route can be shortened by about 235 miles if passage is through the Bungo-Suido Strait; from Sasebo, 130 miles; from Moji, 123 miles; from Kobe, 361 miles and the distance by sea from Fukuoka to Pusan is about 110 miles. The port of Pusan is the jewel of Korea, and it is capable of handling the heavy tonnage expected to begin arriving to support the U.N. cause. More than 24 deep-water vessels can simultaneously be docked with about 14 LSTs, side-by-side, unloading their cargoes on the beach. Unloading becomes the easiest of the tasks; most transportation in Korea along the 22,000 miles of primitive roads has been by oxcart. In contrast, the railroad system had been well built by the Japanese, and these rails carry the heaviest burden for the United Nations forces. Once it is determined that the invasion is full-scale, the KMAG advisors suggest that the South Koreans immediately initiate the previously fabricated defense plan, which calls for the evacuation of the Ongjin Peninsula and the redeployment of all units west of the Imjin River to the south bank of the river. In addition the plan directs that all reserve divisions posted in the south prepare to attack north upon orders. Major General Chae Byong Duk, South Korean Chief of Staff, concurs with the advice of KMAG, and he directs that all divisions be informed. In related activity, Ambassador Muccio dispatches Commander John Seifert, naval attache to Inch'on, to find a suitable vessel to transport the American civilians to Japan; he chooses the best of the lot, a Norwegian vessel, the *Reinholt*. Subsequent to the unloading of its cargo of fertilizer, the ship is prepared to receive the evacuees. Early on the 26th, Mucchi activates Operation CRULLER to execute the rescue of U.S. civilians.

**June 26 1950 - (United States-Far East)** With the unexpected outbreak of hostilities ongoing in Korea, the logistical problems are monumental. The Pacific Coast will serve as origin point for the Military Air Transport Service, Pacific en route to Tokyo. Three separate routes will be utilized; the first is Great Circle, with flights originating at McChord Air Force Base, Tacoma, Washington, with Tokyo its destination, via Anchorage, Alaska, and Shemya, Aleutian Islands, covering a distance of about 5,688 miles and between 30-33 flying hours; a second route originates at Travis Air Force Base, near San Francisco, by way of Honolulu and Wake Island, a distance of about 6,718 miles to Tokyo and 34 flying hours; the third route is by way of Southern California via Honolulu, Johnston, Kwajalein and Guam, requiring 40 hours of flying time to cover the distance of 8,000 miles. Throughout the month of July, the acceleration of the number of flights transports more than 100 tons of supplies per day. Subsequent to the delivery of supplies to Japan, they are forwarded to Korea, basically from Ashiya Airbase, supplemented by the Airfields at Brady and Itazuke. At present, due to U.S. Government sentiment that there had been no danger of trouble in Korea, there are no C-Rations there and almost none in Japan. Those rations initially arriving in Korea, including the C-Rations and B-Rations, are the ultimate in leftovers, having been around since the close of World War II; age doesn't affect the taste, and the ground troops who consume them seemingly never forget them. Also, in Washington, a scheduled policy meeting is canceled, prompting commandant of the Marine Corps, Clifford B. Cates to make an extemporaneous entry on his wall calendar: "SecNav's policy meeting called off. Nuts." General Cates is anxious to

commit his Marines to the war. In other activity, President Truman and his Advisors meet in the Blair House to assess the situation in Korea, but intelligence is still minimal. Talk of committing U.S. ground troops is considered, but the ramifications are great and it will take more time; therefore, word is sent to MacArthur that the use of ground troops is not authorized. In conjunction, the U.S. does not have many ground troops prepared for mobilization in the Far East. Nevertheless, the consensus seems to be that Infantry will be required soon. **(Pacific-Japan)** President Truman authorizes General MacArthur to dispatch a military survey group to Korea to assess the situation. On the following day, Brigadier General John H. Church and twelve other staff officers and enlisted men depart for Korea. In other activity, Amphibious Group 1 conducts the 35th Regiment's practice landing as scheduled at Chigasaki Bay. Another landing is scheduled for the following day; it gets underway, but the hostilities in Korea cause its premature cancellation. Orders come in recalling the Air support, and shortly thereafter, the Destroyers are directed to withdraw. **(Pacific-Korea)** The U.S. Air Force begins to airlift American civilians from Korea, initiating flights between Kimpo airfield outside of Seoul and Itazuke airfield in Kyushu. In conjunction, American dependents are also transported from Seoul to Inchon for evacuation to Japan. Slightly after midnight (25th-26th), Ambassador Muccio activates the evacuation plans. Armed Forces Radio station WVTP, which has been broadcasting constant updates, instructs all women and children dependents to speed to Camp Sobinggo to receive transportation to Inch'on where they will board the *Reinholt*. By about 1800 on the 26th, more than 700 passengers are aboard the Vessel, which is usually accustomed to carrying no more than twelve passengers. Other Americans from Taegu and Taejon join those in Pusan and depart aboard the vessel *Pioneer Dale*. Air Force planes, based in Japan, fly continual escort and surveillance flights throughout the day to ensure safety. Additional flights transport ammunition and supplies from Japan to the embattled South Koreans. In related activity, Colonel Wright returns to KMAG Headquarters from Japan. He is briefed on the deteriorating circumstances and as the situation becomes more grave, he prepares orders directing KMAG personnel to move further south to positions between Seoul and Pusan from where they can be quickly evacuated if the situation warrants. Clear instructions dictating further action by KMAG are not forthcoming from Washington, but the U.S. is definitely reversing its position concerning its intent to defend Korea. Word arrives from the secretary of state through FEC that all KMAG advisors are to stay with their respective Korean units as long as it remains feasible and the units are operating in a combat mode. By the latter part of the 26th, Ambassador Muccio requests military planes from Japan to evacuate non-essential personnel from the mission. Soon after, following strong suggestions from his staff, Colonel Wright directs all nonessential KMAG personnel to depart by truck for Suwon from where they will be airlifted to Japan. Colonel Wright retains thirty-three officers and enlisted men to remain with him to assist the South Koreans. Wright further orders that if the KMAG face imminent capture, they are to break for the embassy and seek diplomatic immunity with Muccio's party.

**June 27 1950 - (United States)** President Truman sends word to the United Nations, reference their resolution of the 25th. He indicates that the Northern aggressors have not heeded the order to halt hostilities, but rather had chosen to press the attack. Continuing, the president notes the security council's plea for all members to aid the U.N.'s effort to mandate compliance, then clearly emphasizes America's intent: "I HAVE ORDERED UNITED STATES AIR AND SEA FORCES TO GIVE THE KOREAN GOVERNMENT TROOPS COVER AND AIR SUPPORT. THE ATTACK UPON KOREA MAKES IT PLAIN BEYOND ALL DOUBT THAT COMMUNISM HAS PASSED BEYOND THE USE OF SUBVERSION TO CONQUER INDEPENDENT

NATIONS AND WILL NOW USE ARMED INVASION AND WAR." In addition, the U.N. Ambassador, Warren Austin, presents a letter to the Security Council underscoring the North Korean intent to "COMPLETELY DISREGARD AND FLOUT THE DECISION OF THE SECURITY COUNCIL..." The United Nations Security Council goes into another special session, which results in a second resolution: "THE SECURITY COUNCIL RECOMMENDS THAT THE MEMBERS OF THE UNITED NATIONS FURNISH SUCH ASSISTANCE TO THE REPUBLIC OF KOREA (South) AS MAY BE NECESSARY TO REPEL THE ARMED ATTACK AND TO RESTORE INTERNATIONAL PEACE AND SECURITY IN THE AREA." (On the 26th, Washington time, a teleconference between Washington and Tokyo had transpired, resulting in the issuance of orders to evacuate civilians and dependents from Korea; in a separate message, the Pacific Fleet is directed to prepare additional ships to move to the Western Pacific.) Curiously, the Soviets again are absent from the U.N. session, continuing their protest pattern since the beginning of January, and are unable to veto the resolution. Although the United Nations falls short of declaring war, the intent is clear and the action is called a "Police Action." The nation of Yugoslavia again votes no; Egypt and India abstain, but the latter joins the action two days later. The precedent setting resolution passes with the votes of China, Cuba, Ecuador, France, Great Britain, Norway and the United States. (**Pacific-Japan-Korea**) General MacArthur, from his headquarters in Tokyo, speeds a contingent of technical specialists to Korea where he establishes General Headquarters Advanced Command and Liaison Group (ADCOM), commanded by General John H. Church. General Church departs Haneda airfield and arrives at Itazuke at 0600, anticipating a trip to Seoul, but new instructions arrive directing him to reroute to Suwon because of the deteriorating situation in the capital; his entourage arrives at Suwon by air at about 1900. Headquarters is established in Suwon at the Experimental Agriculture Building. MacArthur arrives on the 29th to survey the battle area. In other activity, the government officials of the republic evacuate Seoul as the North Koreans sweep south; they reach Taegon, but soon after, they are forced to jump back further to Taegu and from there to the last stop, Pusan. U.S. Embassy officials also begin to exit in haste, slightly after 0900. Muccio, just prior to his evacuation, reports to MacArthur that the Armed Forces radio station is being destroyed to prevent use by the enemy. South Korean Army Officials also depart without informing KMAG. When informed, Colonel Wright and his staff rush to Sihung to intercept the ROKs and convince them to return to the capital. During the trip, a radio message from MacArthur is received by Wright, which informs him that the JCS has ordered MacArthur to assume control of all U.S. troops in Korea, including KMAG. While conferring with the South Koreans in Sihung, another radio message from MacArthur is received by Wright instructing him "to be of good cheer." MacArthur also tells Colonel Wright that big decisions (by the U.S.) are about to unfold. This news persuades the South Korean headquarters personnel, including the chief-of-staff, to return, but the stay is short-lived as they again evacuate on the following morning, again without notifying the Americans. Finally, the exhausting efforts of Wright conclude; he attempts to halt the evacuation of the remaining KMAG personnel at Suwon, previously scheduled to depart for Korea, and succeeds in stopping about thirty men. They are ordered to return to Seoul. Meanwhile, the swarming hordes of North Koreans will allow little time to dispose of critical records in the U.S. embassy, causing severe complications. Some secret documents are burned on the roof; however, unclassified personnel records will be seized and subsequent purges are held. In addition, when the North Koreans enter the city on the following day, they bring cases of documents containing the names of scores of South Koreans considered Anticomunist. People, tied together, are led into the streets, and after a quick kangaroo trial by what is known as People's Court, many innocent

victims are executed. Of course, when an accusation is made and the sentence given, the onlookers are asked if anyone wants to speak on their behalf; none do, aware that they would then be shot, too. According to CIA reports, more than half of the students in Seoul support the North Koreans and great numbers of them voluntarily join the Communist Army. Also, many who remain in Seoul greet the invaders with enthusiasm. But many more reject the aggressors and wait in hopes of MacArthur and the U.S. arriving to save them. The U.S. fleet moves to blockade North Korea, but President Truman also intends to ensure that the Nationalist Chinese under Kai-shek on Formosa are unable to initiate raids against the Chinese mainland and possibly provoke China to enter the conflict. American and some other foreign nationals continue to be evacuated from Kimpo and Suwon airfields, but the pace is accelerated as the danger increases. During the activity at the airfields, three North Korean planes attack four American escort fighter planes; the three enemy planes are blown from the sky. Four additional enemy aircraft are destroyed in dog fights later in the day. The air evacuations are covered by the 68th and 339th All Weather Fighter Squadrons and the 35th Fighter Bomber Squadron, Fifth Air Force, which execute 163 sorties over Korea. The air evacuation safely transports 718 Americans to Japan, and another 809 Americans are transported by sea (June 26th-29th). In all, 2,001 people are evacuated. In other activity, word arrives in Taegu from Ambassador Muccio that the KMAC Advisors are to separate from the S.K. 3rd Division and move south to Pusan; the families of the advisors had been evacuated earlier. In Naval Activity, Rear Admiral Hoskins orders the Seventh Fleet to embark Hong Kong and Subic Bay for Sasebo, but en route, orders arrive from Admiral Joy instructing the fleet to divert to Okinawa, placing it in close proximity to Korea and Formosa, yet a safer distance from the Chinese and Soviet Air Forces. Meanwhile, the USS *Juneau* and the destroyer USS *DeHaven* are directed to sweep the coastal waters south of the 38th Parallel and intercept any hostile landings; the USS *Sergeant Keathley*, which embarks Yokohama with a capacity load of ammunition and supplies including twelve 105-mm howitzers, is escorted by the *Juneau* and *DeHaven* to Pusan.

**June 28 1950 - (United States)** The commandant of the Marine Corps, General Cates, meets with Admiral Forest P. Sherman, chief of naval operations, and recommends that Fleet Marine Force be committed to Korea; soon after, on the 30th, General Gates attends the secretary of the navy's conference and more discussions, which include the possibility and probability of committing Marines to Korea. **(Pacific-Japan)** At 0600, a C-54 takes off from Tachikawa airfield near Tokyo, transporting 105-mm ammunition to Suwon to supplement the ammunition which had been transported the previous day from Japan by ship. By mid-afternoon, additional aircraft depart with nearly 120 additional tons of ammunition. In Naval Activity, the USS *Cardinal O'Connell*, her hulls crammed with ammunition from the Ikego Ammunition Depot, departs Japan for Korea, escorted by the destroyers *Collett* and *Mansfield*, to further augment the South Korean cause. **(Pacific-Korea)** At about 0100, KMAC personnel attempt to inform Colonel William H.S. Wright that the S.K. Army Headquarters is again evacuating Seoul, but he is unaccessible as the past few days have left him sleepless and his aide refuses to wake him. A second trip to headquarters by Lt. Col. Lewis Vieman proves fruitful, but as the two men are about to confer, conversation becomes almost unnecessary as the Han River bridge blows, focusing on the immensity of the situation. The bridge was not to be destroyed until the enemy secured the capital and all South Korean troops had been evacuated to the south bank of the Han. This disaster cripples the evacuation process and needlessly kills hundreds of people on the bridge and traps S.K. units in the city. Panic and confusion run rampant. Colonel William Wright attempts to move the Americans out of Seoul by convoy; however, the alternate bridges are also blown. Eventually, Lt. Col. Lee Chi Yep offers to assist the

Americans. He commandeers a ferry by shooting one boatman through his clothing to push the powers of persuasion to a new level. The startled river-man quickly moves his huge raft to shore. Most Americans are crossed safely at about 0800, but the original fifty vehicles are left behind. From the south bank of the Han, the main contingent walks fifteen exhaustive miles along a primitive trail to Anyang-ni where they are greeted by an advance party. Col. Lee Chi Up, the enterprising South Korean who procured the raft, accompanies the walking Americans; he commandeers a jeep and speeds ahead and procures vehicles to transport the party to Suwon. In the meantime, Colonel Wright, two officers and three enlisted men remain on the north bank in Seoul to locate a safe crossing for the Command jeep which contains the radio, their only means of communicating with Japan. Before dawn, the small party is able to board another raft which also accommodates the Jeep; they make it to Suwon to join the main party there. Also, General Church, subsequent to his initial observations, informs General MacArthur that only by an infusion of U.S. ground troops can the original boundary in Korea be restored. First reports filtering into Command during the invasion cause grave concern about the plight of some Americans (KMAG), but by the end of the month all are accounted for and only three casualties have struck their ranks, all sustaining minor wounds. Also, the capital falls; North Korean tanks, followed by infantry, enter Seoul. North Korean Colonel Han Se Gon later relates that one of his gunners had run up the flag of the Peoples Republic of Korea, and they watched it flutter bravely. In other activity, U.S. planes bomb enemy positions in Seoul. At Suwon Airfield, two grounded U.S. aircraft are destroyed by enemy aircraft. Also, the USS *Juneau* anchors off the east coast of Korea and prepares for action. In Pusan, the situation remains confusing, too. The KMAG advisors to the S.K. 3rd Division arrive from Taegu after a tedious journey begun on the previous day. The small column nudged southward through endless rows of frantic South Korean civilians and then encountered a nasty rainstorm which stalls the group. The Americans abandon their mud-trapped Vehicles outside Pusan and walk the remainder of the route. Once in Pusan, Colonel Emmerich's party spots South Koreans who are raiding the American compound to steal food, equipment, furniture and about anything else they can get their hands on. The newly arrived Yanks begin firing over the heads of the Koreans and the pirating ceases. Col. Emmerich is informed by Captain Gerald Putnam, advisor to the S.K. 23rd Regiment, that the American dependents had departed Pusan on the previous day aboard the *Pioneer Dale*. He is also told that another vessel, the *Letitia Lykes*, remains in port with members of the American mission and some KMAG advisors. The KMAG advisors are sent for and ordered to return to Emmerich's Headquarters. Later, Emmerich makes radio contact with FEC in Japan and speaks with Brigadier General George Back to get instructions. Unfortunately, headquarters in Japan, like Emmerich, has little knowledge of the crisis; General Back inquires if Emmerich has any first hand information about the situation in Seoul. Emmerich is instructed to wait for orders. Meanwhile, headquarters in Japan will maintain constant contact with Pusan to try and keep abreast of the crisis. Colonel Emmerich, totally unaware of KMAG's predicament in Seoul, establishes a Provisional Military Advisory Group, Headquarters, Pusan, Korea, and as the senior Officer, he creates a small staff and designates himself commanding officer.

**June 29 1950 - (United States)** Major General L.L. Lemnitzer pens a memorandum to the Secretary of Defense giving him a consensus of military leaders at the time of the invasion, stating that there had been knowledge of the North Korean ability to attack South Korea. But he emphasizes that every other country bordering the Soviet Union possesses the same capabilities and that no intelligence agency had considered Korea as "a point of attack." In other activity, Secretary of State Dean Acheson is informed by the Australian Ambassador that two Australian Warships

and the 77th Royal Australian Fighter Squadron (all presently based in Japan) will join the U.S. forces. Additional Naval forces are committed by Canada, Netherlands and New Zealand. Also, the only nation to offer ground troops is Nationalist China, but their proposal to dispatch 33,000 troops is short-circuited by MacArthur on the following day, stating that the Nationalist contingent is untrained and lacks motor transport and artillery. There is speculation that Washington prefers to keep the Nationalist Chinese out of the conflict, to avoid the possibility of inciting the Communist Chinese from entering the conflict. In other activity, General Eisenhower visits the pentagon (28th Washington time) to meet with General Omar Bradley, but Bradley is confined to bed, suffering from a stomach virus. Eisenhower speaks with Generals Matt Ridgway, Joseph Collins and Wade Haislip. Apparently Eisenhower is stunned to discover the unpreparedness of the army and the nonchalant attitudes concerning the Korean crisis. Eisenhower strongly urges initial mobilization of sufficient force to meet the threat, including the bolstering of the forces in Europe and the use of the Atom Bomb, if necessary. Eisenhower is in town for a scheduled physical examination, but he seemingly writes a few prescriptions for the army while there. Ike also makes note that he would prefer a younger general in command, an obvious referral to MacArthur; however, he states that the restrictions confining MacArthur to the area below the 38th Parallel should be lifted. **(Pacific-Korea)** General MacArthur and fourteen additional Staff members depart Japan at 0610, heading for Suwon aboard the *Bataan*, an unarmed aircraft. The *Bataan*, after a hazardous flight including a close encounter with a Russian Yak Fighter, lands safely on a dwarfed airstrip amidst a wrecked C-54; U.S. Fighters close in and quickly drive the Communist plane away. At about 0800, while in flight, MacArthur has a message dispatched to Lt. General George Stratemeyer's second in command. The message to General Partridge, dictated by Stratemeyer: "STRATEMEYER TO PARTRIDGE: TAKE OUT NORTH KOREAN AIRFIELD IMMEDIATELY. NO PUBLICITY. MACARTHUR APPROVES." Communist planes are bombing the retreating South Koreans and have also plastered the airfield at Suwon, just prior to MacArthur's arrival. Once aground, the *Bataan* is flown back to Tokyo out of harm's way, but Lt. Colonel Anthony Story, MacArthur's pilot, returns to Suwon at 1715 to pick up the General. While in Korea, MacArthur moves right to the front to assess the ongoing tragedy, driving through the mystified and bewildered civilians as they flee for safety, and past the retreating South Korean forces. At the Han River, MacArthur clearly perceives the disaster at hand when he observes a routed Army in disorganized retreat. But some other officers see things differently, as many units are observed as they retire with discipline. One demoralized retreating Korean Officer remarks to a friend: "WE CAN'T FIGHT THEM WITHOUT EQUIPMENT," giving credence to their inability to hold the line. Many of the South Koreans have fought bravely, but the match is one-sided. General MacArthur, standing in the midst of the death and destruction and under enemy fire, scrutinizes the final rear guard actions at the Han River, while simultaneously collecting even incidental information to assist him in what would have to be a miraculous extrication from defeat. First impressions of the MacArthur party, concerning the startling events in Korea, convince them that only the contingents of the S.K. 1st and 7th Divisions contain enough men and equipment to resist effectively. Nevertheless, units of the S.K. 5th Division hold in Yong-dungp'o, and to the west, Inchon is held by the Capital Division. Additional S.K. troops of the 2nd Division regroup at the junction of the Han and Pukhan Rivers. Meanwhile, the S.K. 6th Division, following its gallant three-day stand, continues retreating toward Wonju in the center of the peninsula, and the 8th Division is retreating south. Also, the 23rd Regiment, 3rd S.K. Division moves north from Pusan toward Ulchin, about sixty-five miles above Pohang-dong, to intercept an anticipated North Korean drive down the east coastal highway.

MacArthur thinks not with despair, but of victory, and in less than thirty minutes he conceives his plan. Although overwhelmingly outnumbered, MacArthur has devised a strategy to use his sparse occupation troops to give the impression of strength to buy time and receive reinforcements. He will direct an orderly retreat to gain more tentative positions and permit the disillusioned ROK troops to regain their confidence. The swiftness of the North Korean advance forces many mistakes on the South Korean defenders, including the premature demolition of the Han River Bridge, which traps large numbers of troops on the opposite bank; they are slaughtered. During this brief period of pondering, MacArthur realizes that the power of the North Korean thrust might propel them to the last stop, Pusan. He devises a plan to launch an amphibious invasion behind the enemy lines at Inchon from which point he can recapture Seoul and isolate the Communists troops between there and Pusan. The plan will be poorly received by Washington, but his persistence will prevail. Later in the day, subsequent to meeting with President Rhee, Ambassador John Muccio and General John Church, General MacArthur returns to Tokyo to mobilize his forces. MacArthur's conclusions about the future of Korea, during his initial visit to the front: "AIR AND NAVAL ACTION ALONE COULD NOT BE DECISIVE, AND THAT NOTHING SHORT OF THE INTERVENTION OF U.S. GROUND FORCES COULD GIVE ASSURANCE OF STOPPING THE COMMUNISTS AND OF LATER REGAINING THE GROUND." Also, the first U.S. ground troops arrive in Korea at Suwon; Detachment X, composed of less than thirty-five men, brings with them four M55 machine guns of the 507th antiaircraft artillery battalion. Slightly after 1600, the unit engages four attacking enemy planes, destroying one and probably shooting down another. Another raid occurs about 2000. As the day progresses, contingents of the N.K. 6th Division, which had breached the Han River west of Seoul on the previous day, seize control of Kimpo Airfield. In addition, the N.K. 3rd and 4th Divisions (in Seoul) prepare to bolt the river in force, following severe Artillery bombardment of South Korean positions. The N.K. 1st Division trails the previous two enemy Divisions, but later it will pivot toward Ich'on and Umsong on the first primary road east of the Seoul-Pusan highway, trailing the 2nd N.K. Division which will also utilize this route. In Pusan, Colonel Emmerich continues to maintain contact with Headquarters in Japan and members of his Staff forward weather reports to the Air Force at Itazuke to aid the success of its missions. Meanwhile, additional KMAG Advisors who were with the S.K. 6th and 8th Divisions at Wonju arrive at Pusan bringing the forces there to twenty-two Officers and 34 enlisted men; two Missionaries and six civilians of the ECA are also with Emmerich. The newly established Provisional KMAG becomes active; it dispatches one team composed of six men to Taejon and another detachment of two Officers is sent to rejoin the S.K. 3rd Division at Taegu. Emmerich's Command also dispatches some Communications personnel to the Coast Guard Base at Chinhae. In other activity, the Fifth Air Force executes 172 sorties in support of the S.K. forces; this level of Air support is maintained during the coming days. Also, the Cruiser USS *Juneau* commences the first U.S. Naval Surface Vessel bombardment of the conflict, striking suspected enemy positions in the vicinity of Kangnung-Samch'ok, where N.K. Guerrillas and the elements of the Communist 766th Independent Unit had landed on the 25th.

**July 1 1950 -(United States)** There are no outward signs, but the White House and the military are concerned about the United States' capability to handle a major Soviet threat. **(Pacific-Japan)** Task Force Smith, with 406 of its 440-man strength, departs Japan for Korea; the Task Force is not designated TF Smith until several months later. Some elements arrived at Pusan only on the previous day. The unit is composed of the 1st Battalion, 21st Regiment, Rifle Companies B and C, both at less than full strength, but each contains six 2.36-inch bazooka teams and four 60-mm

mortars; a recoilless rifle platoon (composite), less two of its four guns; one-half of headquarters company and four 4.2 inch mortars, two of which have not been airlifted. Six transport planes are available for the operation, which includes moving more than 400 men and their equipment. The first plane lifts off at 0845, but upon arrival at Pusan, it and the second plane, which is transporting Col C.B. Smith, are both compelled to return to Japan because of a thick fog that hovers over the runway. At about 1100, the Pusan airstrip receives the first of many flights; Col. Charles B. Smith arrives on the tenth flight. Transport Vehicles wait at the runway to carry the force seventeen miles to Pusan where crowds anxiously await their arrival and greet the troops with a tumultuous welcome that includes banners and huge smiles. When the troop trains depart for Taejon at 2000, a South Korean band plays enthusiastically to give the Yanks a spirited send-off. **(Pacific-Hawaii)** General Lemuel Shepherd, U.S.M.C., commanding general FMF Pacific arrives at Hawaii from the U.S.; he is en route to the Far East, anticipating the arrival of Marines. Coincidentally, today General MacArthur requests a Marine brigade to assist Eighth Army in Korea. **(Pacific-Korea)** The North Koreans continue driving south. From Seoul, the N.K. 5th Regiment, 4th Division, held in reserve since the invasion began, pushes its 3rd Battalion across the Han River at 0400. The remainder of the division follows and ignites a fierce contest for Yongdungp'o that lasts until July 3rd. The South Koreans raise solid resistance and inflict heavy casualties upon the attackers. . Nevertheless, by 0800 on July 3rd, the North Koreans seize control of the town and force the Koreans to retreat. The enemy sustains 227 dead, 1,822 wounded and 107 men missing while capturing the prize. As the hotly contested battle ensues, the N.K. 3rd Division also fords the Han. In other activity, the ADCOM convoy reaches Taejon; General Church establishes a new command post. Colonel Wright dispatches five of his KMAG officers to Suwon to assist the South Koreans there. The Eighth Army Operation Order calls for an initial delaying force, comprised of two rifle companies reinforced by two platoons of 4.2 inch mortars and one platoon of 75-mm recoilless rifles; the remainder of the division follows by sea. From Pusan, trains will transport the task force from Pusan to P'yong'aek, and from there the troops advance to Osan where they encounter overpowering resistance on July 5th. The task force is composed of mostly green troops, but they are full of confidence and expect to quickly terminate the hostilities. In the central corridor of Korea the South Korean 6th Division continues to fight effective delaying actions against the N.K. 7th Division, which has sustained about 400 casualties and several destroyed T-34 tanks between Ch'unch'on and Hongch'on. The enemy advances slowly, marching from Hongch'on through the mountainous terrain toward Wonju, a strategic rail and highway center. Here, too, elements of the S.K. 6th Division forge stiff resistance to further frustrate the N.K. Commanding Officer, Maj. Gen. Chon U. The sluggish advance apparently handicaps the time schedule of the North Korean main Command which replaces Chon U on about the 4th of July, one day before the capitulation of Wonju. In conjunction, the N.K. 7th Division becomes the 12th N.K. Division to differentiate it from a new Division that is activated and designated the 7th N.K. Division. Also, during the early part of July, MacArthur focuses on his plan to launch an amphibious landing behind the enemy lines at Inchon. He will direct Admiral James T. Doyle to make the proper preparations and study all the complexities of initiating the invasion.. Doyle diligently executes his orders and subsequently informs MacArthur on the findings of his staff; in part: **"OUR RESEARCH LISTED EVERY KNOWN GEOGRAPHICAL AND NAVAL HANDICAP-INCHON HAD 'EM ALL."**

**July 2 1950 -(Pacific-Hawaii)** General Lemuel Shepherd arrives at Pearl Harbor to assume his new

position as commander Fleet Marine Force Pacific. Soon after his arrival in Honolulu, Shepherd receives a waiting message from the commandant that alerts him of the probability of Marines going to Korea. Before noon, General Shepherd meets with Admiral Radford. **(Pacific-Korea)** Task Force Smith's Train pulls into Taejon at 0800. Soon after, Colonel Charles B. Smith is escorted by Col. LeRoy Lutes to General Church's headquarters where a meeting is ongoing between the general and several other U.S. and South Korean officers. General Church welcomes Col. C. B. Smith and gives him a quick update, detailing where the task force is needed by referring to the spot on the map. General Church, as is the case with most of the American Command, remains convinced that the invasion will be rebuffed; he tells Smith: "**WE HAVE A LITTLE ACTION UP HERE. ALL WE NEED IS SOME MEN UP HERE (pointing to the spot) WHO WON'T RUN WHEN THEY SEE TANKS...**" Col. Smith reflects no apprehension and he has confidence in his officers, one-third of whom have seen combat in either the Atlantic or Pacific during WWII. Smith feels equally confident about his troops, although many are green; however, he is totally unaware of the enemy's strength and the supporting tanks. Task Force Smith moves to the rest area, but Col. Smith and several Officers move out and travel north about eighty miles along harsh roads to Osan; Smith's entourage passes innumerable ROK troops and civilians heading south. The uncomfortable trip appears profitable as Lt. Col. Smith discovers what he believes is a perfect defensive position about three miles north of Osan. The selected site, a ragged ridge of hills running north, intersects the road at right angles; its point reaches a height of 300 feet and affords an excellent view of approaching traffic. In addition, the task force positions will control both the railroad and highway. During the reconnaissance mission, enemy planes pass over without detecting the Americans. Smith and his party return to Taejon after dark. Orders arrive that instruct Smith to move his force by rail to Ansong and P'yongt'aek, the former 20 miles southeast of Osan and the latter 15 miles south of the town. Again the troop train rolls north. Col. Smith remains at P'yongt'aek, separated by about twelve miles from the other half of his force; he establishes headquarters along the Main Road. In other activity, General Dean reaches Korea by plane, but due to the darkness, his pilot is unable to locate the airstrip at Taejon; they return to Japan. On the following day, General Dean hitches a ride with Captain Ben Tufts, the recently appointed liaison officer between the press and the Army; Tuft's pilot is familiar with Taejon; despite a dense fog, the plane lands about 1030. While at General Church's headquarters, General Dean receives word that he will command all U.S. Army troops in Korea, effective 0001 July 4th. These Americans will face more than one enemy, and the other foes, the weather and terrain, are equally nasty. The Korean battlefields frequently experience temperatures of more than 100 degrees, and the land is inundated with precipitous hills that bear sparse foliage; when the sun is not blazing, it is usually raining heavily. The elements extract nearly as many casualties due to exhaustion as those inflicted by the enemy during the early days of the war; salt tablets are a necessity and heat exhaustion is commonplace. **In the Central Mountain area**, the S.K. 6th Division engages the N.K. 7th Division near Wonju; the stiff resistance hinders the enemy's advance.

**July 3 1950 - (United States)** The Joint Chiefs of Staff meet in Washington, D.C., to discuss strategy. One of the topics is the possible commitment of Marines to Korea; General Cates, commandant Marine Corps, is permitted to attend only this part of the meeting. The Joint Chiefs are: General Bradley, Chairman; General Lawton Collins, Army Chief of Staff; Admiral Sherman, Chief of Naval Operations and General Hoyt Vandenberg, Air Force Chief of Staff. The commandant of the Marine Corps jots down a note of historical importance (concerning the Corps)

on his wall calendar: "**ATTENDED JCS (Joint Chiefs of Staff) MEETING. ORDERS FOR EMPLOYMENT OF FMF APPROVED.**" In conjunction, the apparent movement of the Corps had already been in the works. On July 1st, Admiral Forest Sherman (CNO) inquires of Admiral Radford (CinCPacFlt) the time involved to transport either a Marine battalion landing team or a Marine regimental combat team from the West Coast to Korea; on the 2nd, Radford responds, informing Sherman that the former could be loaded in four days and embarked in six days. He also states that a RCT could be loaded in six days and be prepared to sail in ten days. Admiral C. Turner Joy makes it known that a Marine RCT could be dispatched to the Pacific if General MacArthur would want it. MacArthur had accepted the offer immediately and so stated in his message on July 2nd, which requested the immediate presence of the Marine RCT and its supporting aircraft. Nonetheless, there is still much reluctance on the part of the Joint Chiefs to commit the Marines, and there are additional efforts by General Vandenberg to cancel out Marine aviation, but to no avail. In other activity, Major Vincent J. Gottschalk, USMC, is appointed commanding officer, VMO-6, the 1st Marine Provisional Brigade's Air Observation Squadron; the squadron will be composed of eight fixed wing aircraft (Light Observation Planes) and seven rotary wing aircraft (Helicopters), the latter being brought in from Quantico, Virginia. Gottschalk is directed to have his outfit ready to embark on the 11th. It becomes an extraordinary challenge that requires an immense effort and some ingenuity, peculiar to the corps, to accomplish the mission. The helicopters and accompanying personnel will not arrive at El Toro until two days before shipping out. The fixed wing aircraft personnel number eight pilots and thirty-three enlisted Marines. **(Pacific-Japan)** General MacArthur dispatches a message to Washington, slightly after the clock nudges past midnight (2nd-3rd), with regard to his instructions to implement a naval blockade of North Korea. He lays out a pragmatic plan that he considers mandatory to effectively enforce the blockade. Geographically, the alignment of warships must isolate the eastern ports of Ch'ongjin, Najin and Wonsan, while simultaneously they cap the sea lanes off the west coast ports of Anju, Chinnamp'o, Inchon and Sonch'on. Due to presidential restrictions, which explicitly forbid action or reaction to the Soviet Union, Najin, Ch'ongjin and Sonch'on are left unmolested; this non-action keeps U.N. warships a safe distance from the Soviet Union and Manchuria.. However, it grants the Communists several lanes that are guaranteed safe passage. MacArthur notifies Washington that all available ships will be at their assigned station on the 4th. Also, General MacArthur, aware of uselessness of the available ammunition against tanks, requests that the newly perfected 3.5 rocket launcher be sped to Korea; actual production of this weapon's ammunition had begun about fifteen days before the outbreak of hostilities in Korea. The initial shipment of 3.5s rocket launchers is flown from Travis Air Base, California, on July 8th; it arrives on the 10th, and by July 12th, they reach Taejon. Immediately thereafter, particular men of the 24th Division are indoctrinated on the proper use of this weapon. This new antitank weapon is constructed of aluminum, weighs 15 pounds, and stretches five-foot in length; it is composed of a smooth bore and an open tube that is capable of launching an eight and one-half pound, 23 inch-long shell. The U.S. Eighth Army is in dire need of a weapon that can penetrate the armor of the Russian-built Tanks, and this new shell is expected to destroy any Tank which is encountered. In other activity, the Far East Air Force establishes a joint operations center on Kyushu at Itazuke Air Base to better control the fighter planes that operate over Korea. **(Pacific-Korea)** Specialists in air-to-ground communications arrive in Taejon; these two Fifth Air Force Tactical Air Control contingents greatly enhance the U.N. support of ground troops.

**July 4 1950 -(United States)** Lt. General Lemuel C. Shepherd, Jr., Commanding Officer FMFPac and Col. Victor Krulak (later commandant), a G-3 staff officer, receive orders to proceed from Pearl Harbor to Japan to meet with General MacArthur. General Shepherd, prior to his departure, requests that the 5th Marines' rifle companies each receive a third platoon before shipping out to Korea, and on the following day, Admiral Sherman approves the request. The additional firepower is welcome, but unfortunately there is insufficient time to add a third company to each of the battalions which are operating with only two companies per peacetime requirements. The Marine Brigade, scheduled to embark in one week, initiates round-the-clock activity at Camp Pendleton and its neighboring Base, El Toro, which domiciles the air components of the brigade; telegrams are sizzling the wires, informing Marines stationed at posts that are scattered throughout the nation to report to Pendleton and El Toro. Included in this gathering of warriors are the first helicopter pilots of the U.S. Armed Forces to be established as a unit, destined for overseas combat duty. **(Pacific-Korea)** Twenty-two additional officers are named general and special staff officers of USAFIK. The officer selections are basically drawn from ADCOM, but some KMAG officers are chosen. In conjunction, the majority of KMAG officers who had returned to Japan after the Communist invasion, arrived back in Korea aboard the *Sergeant Keathley* on July 2nd. Also, Brig. Gen. Crump Garvin and some of his staff arrive in Pusan to establish Pusan Base Command; it is activated today, and on the 13th of July it will be renamed Pusan Logistical Command. The U.N. naval blockade of portions of North Korea becomes effective today. In other activity, the North Korean 3rd and 4th Divisions, with Yongdungp'o under their belt and tanks by their side, reinitiate their southern drive. The columns move down the major rail-highway route. At about 0600, the 5th Regiment, N.K. 4th Division takes the point; it drives feverishly down Suwon Road and covers half the distance between Yongdungp'o and Suwon by 1200. Infantry augmented by eleven tanks move into Anyang-ni. Meanwhile, South Koreans who are fleeing on foot and in trucks from Suwon to P'yongt'aek cause the route to become heavily clogged; the traffic jams last throughout the night. During the day, enemy tanks overpower a delaying force attached to the S.K. 5th Regiment, 2nd Division, operating between Anyang-ni and Suwon. The ROK unit, lacking much equipment, is crushed by the armor, then overrun by infantry. During the daylong skirmishes, U.S. and Australian Air Force planes attempt to aid the ROK forces near Osan, but on several occasions they mistakenly strike ROK and inflict more casualties. The South Koreans, unable to neutralize the enemy advance, pull out of Suwon before dark, and by midnight, the town is taken by the N.K. 4th Division. Meanwhile, Lt. Col. Brad Smith pulls his separated command into P'yongt'aek; it is bolstered by a contingent of the 52nd Artillery Battalion, which had come in from Japan by sea. The unit is composed of one-half section of headquarters and service batteries and the complete complement of A Battery, comprising 108 men and 73 vehicles. In other activity, Colonel Brad Smith and a small party, including Colonel Perry, return to the Osan vicinity and decide on definite positions for the U.S. artillery; as they advance, they pass ROK troops setting the bridges for possible detonation. Also, in Taejon, Generals Dean and Church confer with General Barth, acting commanding general of the 24th Division Artillery; Brigadier General Henry J. D. Meyer, the divisional artillery commander is en route back from the States. General Dean sends General Barth to P'yongt'aek with orders for Colonel Brad Smith to deploy at "**THOSE GOOD POSITIONS NEAR OSAN YOU TOLD GENERAL CHURCH ABOUT.**" Slightly after midnight, Task Force Smith moves out of P'yongt'aek, after working out some unexpected problems with transportation. A scarcity of North Korean drivers suddenly develops when word arrives that the convoy will move north. Without hesitation and unwilling to listen to persuasion, the North Koreans vanish into

the darkness as fast as their GI boots could carry them. Unperturbed, the Yanks jump into the drivers' seats and head north, only to encounter more difficulty. Driving under blackout conditions, they encounter several unexpected obstacles; primarily it is ROK forces and North Korean civilians heading south. As the task force continues along the clogged road, the Americans attempt to convince the South Korean demolition troops that are setting charges on the bridges, to cease and desist because the Americans require use of the spans. One particular group of South Koreans, apparently unimpressed with the American request, refuses to discontinue their operation. General Barth, not wanting to become emotionally involved, cuts off conversation and easily gets his point across. Without fanfare, he picks up the crates of dynamite and heaves them into the river, terminating the problem. Meanwhile, the efforts of the South Korean 6th Division to hold Wonju and fend off the N.K. 7th Division begins to falter due to overpowering enemy strength; it is abandoned by the following day.

**July 7 1950 - (United States)** The 1st Provisional Marine Brigade, commanded by Brigadier General Edward A. Craig, is activated at Camp Pendleton; the unit is composed of the 5th Marines, the 1st Battalion, 11th Marines and Marine Aircraft Group 33 (MAG-33); the latter includes three Squadrons and is commanded by Brigadier General Thomas H. Cushman. The Brigade begins boarding the Warships on the 12th. On the 14th, the convoy sails for Korea. The three Squadrons of MAG 33 are: VMF-214, 29 Officers, 157 enlisted men and 24 F4U4B Planes; VMF-323, 29 Officers, 157 enlisted men and 24 F4U4B Planes; VMF(N)-513, 15 Officers, 98 enlisted men and 12 F4U5N Planes. The helicopter contingent, VMO-6, commanded by Major Vincent Gottschalk, will be composed of 15 officers, 63 enlisted men, eight light observation planes and four HO3S-1 Sikorsky 2-place helicopters. Seven pilots, 30 enlisted men and the four Sikorsky helicopters will be detached from HMX-1 (Quantico) on Jul. 8th, from where they will proceed to El Toro, California, to join the brigade. Also, Company A, 1st Marine Tank Battalion is activated for service with the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade; the unit, acutely familiar with the M4A3 medium tank equipped with the 75-mm gun or a 105-mm howitzer, will be supplied with Pershing M-26 tanks which are equipped with 90-mm guns. The tankers receive scant time to acquaint themselves with the Pershings; Captain Gearl M. English, the commanding officer, finagles in order to get his Marines one day of practice in the field; each gunner and loader is restricted to a meager two rounds. The tanks' 90-mm Guns are then silenced until the tanks engage the enemy in Korea. Support battalions of the brigade are also scaled down; Company A, 1st Motor Transport Battalion is composed of six officers and 107 enlisted men, and Company A, 1st Engineer Bn. (reinf) is composed of eight officers and 209 enlisted men. **((Pacific-Hawaii)** General Lemuel Shepherd, USMC, and his G-3, Col. Victor H. Krulak, subsequent to the activation of the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade, depart Hawaii by air for Japan. **(Pacific-Korea)** General Walton Walker arrives from Japan to confer with General Dean.

**July 8 1950 -(United States-Japan)** General MacArthur is chosen by President Truman to command the United Nations troops in South Korea. The General's task is to be strewn with obstacles. Primarily, the U.S. Armed Forces in the Far East are deeply understrength and untrained for such an undertaking. The U.S. has been undergoing a continuous depletion of men and equipment, and the training of troops in Japan has been poor at best. Weaponry is also dangerously low, due to the inauspicious practice of mass demobilization after the war. Also, the plan to land the 1st Cavalry Division at Inchon is canceled today, due to the continuing deterioration of the situation in Korea. Meanwhile, the Soviets have been steadily fortifying their war machinery,

including stockpiling all Japanese equipment captured by them during their previous several-day war against a beaten Japan. There are some other critical problems facing MacArthur: as commander of the United Nation Forces, he is compelled to report his plans and actions to the United Nations. Coincidentally, the Soviet Union representative in the U.N. receives all this information. Also, U.S. planes are forbidden from crossing the Yalu River in pursuit of enemy aircraft. This practice permits enemy Aircraft to strike U.N. positions, then retire across the Yalu River to the sanctuary of Manchuria. During the American War between the States, General Robert E. Lee used to tell his commanders to read the northern newspapers to become informed about what the Union forces intended to do. In this case, the North Koreans need simply to read their copies of the United Nations' secret memos, smuggled to them by the Soviets. MacArthur learns this lesson quickly and eliminates some of the problem. In other activity, General MacArthur (SCAP) authorizes Japan, through its Prime Minister Shigeru Yoshida, to establish a national police reserve of 75,000 men.

**July 9th 1950 -(United States)** According to reports, the ground troops of the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade, which is preparing to embark for Korea, stands at 266 Officers and 4,503 enlisted men: the two largest contingents are the 5th Marines and the 1st Bn., 11th Marines. The 5th Marines comprise 113 Officers and 2,068 enlisted men; the 1st Battalion (reinf), 11th Marines is composed of 37 Officers and 455 enlisted men. In addition, the Air components comprise 192 Officers and 1,358 enlisted men, swelling the Brigade to a total of 458 Officers and 5,861 enlisted men, for a total of 6,319 troops. Nonetheless, with the arrival of the additional Rifle Companies (requested by Gen. Shepherd) and some extra support personnel, the Brigade's final number as it departs will be 6,534 troops. **(Pacific-Japan)** General MacArthur updates the Joint Chiefs of Staff on the situation in South Korea; the dispatch informs them of the fighting efficiency of the enemy ground troops and of the superior quality of their equipment. The dispatch in part: "...**THIS FORCE MORE AND MORE ASSUMES THE ASPECT OF A COMBINATION OF SOVIET LEADERSHIP AND TECHNICAL GUIDANCE WITH CHINESE COMMUNIST GROUND ELEMENTS. WHILE IT SERVES UNDER THE FLAG OF NORTH KOREA, IT CAN NO LONGER BE CONSIDERED AS AN INDIGENOUS N.K. MIL(itary) EFFORT...**" In conjunction, MacArthur commits part of his B-29 contingent to the war effort. In other activity, General Shepherd, Commanding Officer FMFPac, and Col. Krulak, USMC, arrive in Tokyo from Pearl Harbor. **(Pacific-Korea)** Effective 1300, Eighth Army Headquarters Korea is established at Taeju. Chonan and vicinity have been abandoned by the fatigued U.S. troops who are pulling back toward Taejon under heavy Communist pressure. The Tanks are rolling south. In the midst of the chaotic fighting, the bewildered civilians are fleeing in absolute panic, often under the guns of North Korean Planes. However, a combination of U.S. Air Force, U.S. Navy and Australian Air Force Planes has been clearing the skies. By the following day, the Russian YAK Fighters, flown by the North Koreans, will have been thoroughly thrashed, giving the Allies total air supremacy. It is the Air Force which contains the enemy, buying precious time for the Americans to regroup and reinforce as they are being shoved back to Pusan and the sea. At Choch'iwon the 3rd Battalion, 21st Regiment, commanded by Lt. Col. Carl Jensen, is dug in north of the town, and a composite Battalion is deployed south and east of Chonui, occupying a low ridge about 500 yards east of the town and a steep hill about 800 yards south of the town. At Chonui, Engineers detonate the approach bridges. Eleven Tanks, supplemented by about 200-300 Infantry, close against Chonui by mid-afternoon; Planes and Artillery intercept the column and inflict damage and casualties.

Reports indicate five Tanks ablaze. As the Infantry penetrates Chonui, Bazookas and Artillery fire greet them to slow the enemy which is moving house-to-house. East of Chonui, Planes pound another advancing Convoy composed of about 200 Vehicles; reports from the air indicate about 100 Vehicles destroyed. The night passes slowly as the beleaguered defenders, using the illumination from the aging fires in Chonui, keep a cautious vigil. Enemy Patrols nudge against their positions. At Chinch'on, the South Korean Capital Division and some Police spring an effective ambush against one Battalion of the N.K. 2nd Division. The South Koreans capture four Artillery pieces and 27 Vehicles. The stunned North Koreans then launch a strong counterattack igniting several days of bitter fighting. The ROK force, subsequent to the fall of Ch'onan and Chonui on their west flank, abandons its positions on the 11th, permitting the N.K. 2nd Division to enter Chinch'on. In other activity, Lt. Col. David Smith is evacuated for two or three days of rest; the exhaustion is totally physical due to lack of sleep, but things get messed up in Taejon. The Medical report specifies that Smith should not be placed under the psychiatric department. Nevertheless, the medical personnel in Taejon place Smith on a Plane to Tokyo and when he arrives there, someone discovers "exhaustion" on his record and sends him to the psychiatric hospital in Tokyo. The error becomes embarrassing, and Col. D. Smith is quickly discharged and sent to Camp Drake to await a new assignment. Smith eventually retires after thirty years of honorable service in the Army.

**July 10 1950** -During the conference, a casual conversation between General MacArthur and General Shepherd instigates a momentous historical event. MacArthur begins discussing the accomplishments of the 1st Marine Division when it was under his authority during the New Britain campaign 43-44. Continuing, MacArthur says that if he had the 1st Marine Division in Japan he would employ it as his landing force for the Inchon operation. The tone moves from casual exchange to a more serious discussion between MacArthur and Shepherd, who had been the asst. divisional commander of the 1st Marine Division during the New Britain operation. Shepherd suggests that MacArthur request that the 1st Marine Division be assigned to him. MacArthur, with a genuine excitedness, asks if it could be ready to launch an invasion by the 15th of September. Shepherd responds in the affirmative, then bolsters his enthusiastic boast by noting that the division is under his command and he would take personal responsibility to ensure its readiness, minus the infantry regiment and other Marines of the brigade. Of course, General Shepherd does not give General MacArthur the full story. Thanks to the gutting of the armed forces and the activation of the Marine Brigade, the 1st Marine Division presently contains fewer troops than one regimental combat team, giving the Marines a full scale nightmare to bring the division to full strength and have it ready for an assault in 67 days. MacArthur requests the 1st Marine Division today and Shepherd prepares to call out the Marines, including the Reserves, but first Congress and President Truman must authorize the rebuilding of what they dismantled. MacArthur's request for the 1st Marine Division is expeditiously dispatched to Washington.

**July 12 1950 -(United States)** On the West Coast, the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade begins boarding Ships which will transport them to Korea, via Japan; it will be the final publicized embarkation of troops for the duration of the war in Korea. Between today and the 14th, Task Group 53.7 embarks San Diego for Korea; it travels under strict radio silence. MAG 33 is ordered to embark on Transports. Due to the chronic shortage of Ships, the Marine Brigade departs, lacking about one-third of its motor transport. **(Pacific-Japan)** Admiral Ruble is temporarily appointed commander Naval Air Japan; Ruble will be responsible for providing logistical support to all Naval Aircraft and every Marine Air Squadron in the Korean Theater.

**July 14 1950 -(United States)** The final elements of the Convoy assigned to transport the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade to Korea departs San Diego; this is the final troop deployment from the United States to be publicized for the duration of the war in Korea. Ironically it is also the first measurable contingent of U.S. troops to depart the States and enter combat in Korea. The commandant, Clifton B. Cates, stands proudly near the docks, as he has done for the past three days, bidding farewell to his Marines. Although it is apparent to the commandant that the majority of the Privates and PFCs are much too young to have served during World War II, it is equally obvious to his trained eye that the majority of the company commanders, platoon leaders and the NCOs are molded from the Old Breed, from Guadalcanal, Saipan, Tinian, Tarawa, Pelelieu as well as Iwo and Okinawa. It is the Old Breed which will ensure that the New Breed upholds the traditions of the Corps. General Cates snaps off a mighty salute as the troops pass. During the final send off he speaks to his Marines: "...YOU BOYS CLEAN THIS THING UP IN A COUPLE OF MONTHS, OR I'LL BE OVER TO SEE YOU." Soon after its departure, the Transport USS *Henrico* becomes crippled. It is inflicted by a major mechanical malfunction while passing San Clemente Island. Temporarily, the vessel is rendered unfit to sail; the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines Landing Team and the regimental commander, Lt. Col. Murray, and his staff are aboard. Col. Murray and his staff transfer to the USS *Pickaway*, but the 1st Battalion, comprising about one-third of the brigade's combat troops, returns to port aboard the limping Vessel. Astonishingly, there are no other available ships for transporting the Marines. They are compelled to wait impatiently for the repairs to be completed. The Marines are confined to the vessel, except for some training on the docks, to prevent any possible security leaks. The unfortunate gutting of the U.S. Armed Forces, subsequent to the close of WW II, is becoming more obvious, and as the preparations for additional naval operations continue, the lack of adequate manpower and equipment becomes intolerable. The *Pickaway* makes two attempts to embark, but on both occasions the vessel is forced to return for additional repairs; finally, on its third attempt, the ship sails west, moving under the Golden Gate Bridge on its solo cruise toward Japan. In other activity, General Cates, commandant USMC, directs the activation of the First Replacement Draft (800 officers and enlisted men); their departure is scheduled for Aug. 10th. This augments General Craig's mission in the event that the hostilities in Korea mandate a premature entrance of the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade.

**July 15 1950 - (United States)** General Shepherd instructs General Harry Liversedge, USMC, acting commanding general 1st Marine Division, to increase the training and workday for the troops of the Division. Coincidentally, General MacArthur places his second request for a war-strength Marine Division for his plan to invade Inchon, Korea. In other activity, Generals Collins and Vandenberg arrive back in the States (14th Washington time) from the Far East; President Truman, the other JCS and Louis Johnson are brought up to date.

**July 16 1950 -(United States)** The Advance Echelon of the 1st Marine Air Wing departs the West Coast by air for Japan. Brigadier Generals Edward A. Craig, commanding officer, 1st Provisional Marine Brigade and Thomas J. Cushman, his chief of staff and several staff members are aboard the transport plane; the entourage stops at Pearl Harbor to confer with General Shepherd and subsequently Admiral Radford, prior to pushing to the Far East. During the brief meetings in Hawaii, General Craig reiterates his sharp concerns about inadequate amounts of equipment and a crucial shortage of replacement troops for the Marine ranks, which already are dangerously thin. Following the conferences, the plane departs, arriving in Japan on the 19th

**July 18 1950 -(United States)** Major General Oliver P. Smith, USMC, who had been

commissioned a 2nd Lt. during WW I and later served in the Pacific during WW II, departs Washington, D.C., to assume command of the 1st Marine Division; Brigadier General Harry B. Liversedge is temporary commanding officer of the division. General Smith succeeds Major General Graves B. Erskine who is assigned to the state department for a secret mission in Southeast Asia.

**July 19 1950 -(United States)** President Truman, reacting to the expanding crisis in Korea, requests that Congress appropriate ten billion dollars for the purpose of rearming the U.S. Armed Forces, which had rapidly been disarmed at the conclusion of World War II. Truman, upon the recommendation of the JCS, also activates the Organized Marine Corps Reserve; in turn, General Clifton B. Cates, Marine commandant, informs the Marine Reserve of its impending call to active duty. Beginning on the following day and continuing until the 4th of August, in response to the Korean crisis, the entire complement of 47,000 men and women of the Marine Ground Force Reserve is called up and placed on active duty. Marine Aviators are not included in the activation process. **(Pacific)** The USS *Henrico* (subsequent to repairs) trails the main convoy, sailing alone from the States toward Japan. The vessel encounters some unexpected danger during its second night at sea. Radar detects two "unidentified Submarines" which are closing toward the Vessel. This prompts the sound of General Quarters and the trailing noise of Sailors rushing to their posts. With Battle Stations ready, the pitch-dark sea is scanned for possible enemy contact; according to American Intelligence, no North Korean Warships remain afloat. Following about one hour of uneasiness, the alleged hostile bleeps on the radar screen vanish, releasing the tension. Subsequent to the strange encounter, the *Henrico* continues toward the Far East without further incident. **(Pacific-Japan)** The Forward Echelon 1st MAW lands at Haneda Airport, near Tokyo; General Craig heads directly for Admiral Joy's (Craig's Naval Superior Officer) Headquarters. Following this meeting, Craig and his Staff confer with Army Generals Edward Almond and Edwin Wright to give them the details concerning the particulars on the Brigade's Air-ground Team. Also, Generals Craig and Cushman are escorted into MacArthur's Office for a cordial and candid meeting. MacArthur takes great pains to alleviate any pressure. He quickly jokes about what he calls "unfounded rumors" that he had been prejudiced against the Marines during World War II and proclaims that he "had always held the greatest admiration for the Corps." MacArthur is completely briefed on the Marine Brigade and its capabilities, despite its frail numbers. MacArthur is stunned to learn that the brigade is at peacetime strength with only two rifle companies per company and only four guns to each battery as opposed to six guns. The revelation that each Marine company contains 50 less men than specified in the Marine war tables had been a complete surprise to MacArthur. Nonetheless, MacArthur is extremely delighted to know the Marines are en route to lessen his burden. Subsequently, General MacArthur requests that the Marine Brigade be immediately upgraded to wartime strength, and again he requests that the Joint Chiefs of Staff authorize and provide one complete war strength Marine division, including its normal contingent of air support, for duty in Korea. In conclusion, the Marine generals are jubilant to learn from MacArthur that the brigade is to remain in Japan under the operational control of Admiral Joy, rather than Eighth Army; this guarantees the Marines the freedom to make ready for the anticipated amphibious invasion.

**July 20 1950 -(United States)** The commandant of the Marine Corps (General Cates) assumes that the JCS will eventually authorize the expansion of the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade and agree to upgrade the 1st Marine Division to war time strength; he phones Admiral Sherman CNO and

offers Plans ABLE and BAKER, two recently created procedures that detail the blueprint for the buildup of the two units. At present the entire Corps is comprised of a mere 74,279 Officers and enlisted men: Operating Forces 40,364; Supporting Establishment (Administrative and Supply Personnel) 24,592; Special Assignment 3,871; Non-available hospitalized personnel, confined personnel or personnel en route 5,492. However, Cates' emergency request to activate the Marine Aviation units is refused by the JCS. In the meantime, MacArthur has already agreed that Marine Air Squadrons will cover the Infantry. The press in the U.S. begins to cover the intentional slight of the Marine Corps. In other activity, General Collins and Admiral Sherman depart the U.S. by Plane to meet with General MacArthur in Japan. **(Pacific-Japan)** Marine Generals Edward Craig and Thomas Cushman, domiciled at General Headquarters Tokyo, meet with General Stratemeyer, USAF; they discuss the Marine Brigade and clarify General MacArthur's decision to keep the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade unaltered; Marine air dominates the discussion and by the conclusion of the meeting, Stratemeyer makes it emphatically clear that MAG 33 will remain available to support the Marine ground troops for the duration. In other activity, General MacArthur decides on Inchon as site for the amphibious invasion, but deliberates for a long time with Generals Almond and Wright on the alternatives; the blueprint for the operation, dubbed Operation CHROMITE, will be distributed to general headquarters on the 23rd.

**July 21 1950 - (Pacific-Japan)** Initially, when General MacArthur had accepted the commitment of Marines for duty in Korea, it had been proposed to base the ground forces in Sasebo and the air units at Kobe Air Field, separating the units by about 400 miles. General Craig, USMC, aware of the impending burden, has recently requested that the troops be garrisoned together near Kobe in order to continue training; he is so confident that the request will be affirmed that he directs Generals Craig and Cunningham (with staff) to depart Tokyo and inspect the areas. The two generals and their accompanying staff return to Tokyo on the 23rd.

**July 22 1950 - (United States)** The JCS have been deliberating over General MacArthur's request for a war time strength Marine Division for use in Korea, without results. Initially, MacArthur had received a response informing him that his request could not be fulfilled any earlier than late fall, "without unacceptable weakening (of) the Fleet Marine Force Atlantic." The message ignites an immediate and more urgent response from MacArthur. The response in part: "...**THERE CAN BE NO DEMAND FOR ITS (Marine Division) POTENTIAL USE ELSEWHERE THAT CAN EQUAL THE URGENCY OF THE IMMEDIATE BATTLE MISSION CONTEMPLATED FOR IT.**" Today, having read MacArthur's most recent request, the JCS inform MacArthur that they are reexamining the possibility of providing the Marine Division, and they request confirmation of the status of the brigade (until Sept. 10th) which is en route. MacArthur responds by informing the JCS that the brigade will remain in Japan under Admiral Joy for participation in the anticipated invasion unless the ongoing operations in Korea deteriorate; he also states that a definitive date for the amphibious invasion cannot be ascertained at present. He implies that it must not be delayed or the advantage will be lost and the alternative will be a frontal attack.

**July 23rd 1950 -(United States)** General Cates receives authorization to mobilize the Marine Aviation Reserve. The Marine Organized Aviation Reserve, composed of 30 VMF Squadrons and 12 GCI Squadrons, is directed to order six VMF squadrons and three GCI (Ground Control Intercept) squadrons to report to El Toro, California, to bolster the 1st Marine Air Wing and bring it up to war strength. MAG-33 of 1st MAW has been dispatched to the Far East, prompting the action.

**(Pacific-Japan)** General MacArthur makes it known that the U.N. forces, while prosecuting the war, will embrace the provisions of the Geneva Prisoner of War Convention; in conjunction, Syngman Rhee, the President of South Korea, accepts the same provisions for the Republic of Korea. At 1730, a meeting concerning the Inchon operation convenes at MacArthur's Headquarters; representatives of the Army and Navy are in attendance, including Generals Collins (Army Chief of Staff), Almond, Hickey and Wright and Admirals Sherman, Doyle, Joy and Struble. Admiral Doyle, speaking on behalf of the Navy, references the selection of Inchon: "**THE OPERATION IS NOT IMPOSSIBLE, BUT I DO NOT RECOMMEND IT.**" Following the close of the Naval presentation, MacArthur, who had remained silent except for a few select questions, reverts to his persuasiveness. Through the process of elimination, he knocks out Kunsan, the site favored by Sherman and Collins. Eventually, after speaking for about forty-five minutes, MacArthur, hell-bent on an Inchon landing, closes with his usual flair, noting: "**THE NAVY HAS NEVER TURNED ME DOWN YET, AND I KNOW IT WILL NOT NOW.**" MacArthur prevails, although additional attempts to sway him continue. In conjunction, an alternate landing site at Posung-myon, opposite Osan and thirty miles south of Inchon, is suggested by Doyle and on the following day, General Lemuel Shepherd, Jr. USMC, reiterates the suggestion of Admiral Doyle, nonetheless unsuccessfully. The blueprint for Operation CHROMMITE is made available to general headquarters. The ambitious plan offers alternative landing sites for the invasion of Korea: 1.) Plan 100-B, Inchon (west coast); 2.) Plan 100-C, Kunsan (west coast); 3.) Plan 100-D, vicinity of Chumunjin (east coast). The featured plan is B, in synchronization with an Eighth Army attack. MacArthur apprises the Department of the Army that he has scheduled an amphibious landing, composed of the 5th Marines and the 2nd Infantry Division, for mid-September to be sprung against the enemy behind his lines. However, enemy successes will alter these plans. In other activity, the Marine entourage, which had gone to Itami Airfield to examine the area, returns to Tokyo and proposes a blueprint for the deployment of the 1st Brigade and the 1st Marine Division near there; MacArthur's staff concurs. Two days later, the Marine Officers again return to Itaki.

**July 25 1950 - (United States)** The JCS has apparently digested the repeated requests of General MacArthur for a war-time strength Marine Division for use in Korea; the Pentagon orders the Marine Corps to expand the 1st Marine Division to war strength (Plan BAKER). Major General Oliver P. Smith assumes command of the 1st Marine Division; he receives instructions from the commandant to bring the division to war strength, minus one regiment, and be prepared to embark for Korea between the 10th and 15th of August. Much easier said than done. Smith has a mere two weeks to round up the troops, many of whom are scattered around the entire country. In addition an entire Regiment, the 7th Marines, is to be added, which makes the procurement of equipment and supplies a colossal task. On August 10th, the joint chiefs of staff will authorize the third Regiment for the 1st Marine Division, calling for the activation of the 7th Marines at that time. In conjunction, the chief of naval operations authorizes the reduction of the stateside Marine security forces by fifty percent, thereby permitting an additional 3,630 regular Marines to join the 1st Marine Division. **(Pacific-Japan)** Marine Generals Craig and Cunningham (and some Staff) depart Tokyo for Itami airfield, expecting to reinspect the area due to the imminent arrival of the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade. Meanwhile, a massive enemy threat continues to build against Pusan. The North Korean offensive, poised to strike toward Pusan from the north, gains the southwestern portion of the peninsula and gives the Communists more advantage; they are positioned to strike from two separate directions, evoking a new crisis along the perimeter. General Headquarters dispatches an

emergency message recalling Craig's transport plane, which is about twenty minutes from Tokyo, stressing that it is imperative. Soon after his return, General Craig is briefed at headquarters; General Edwin K. Wright (Far East Command G-3) informs Craig that all available troops will be required to confront the advancing enemy and that General MacArthur has authorized the commitment of the Marine Brigade. Colonel Edward W. Snedeker, USMC, chief of staff of the brigade is instructed by dispatch to move the brigade to Korea. In conjunction, the convoy, transporting the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade, receives new orders, directing it to immediately change course for Korea. The convoy arrives off Korea on August 2nd; the Marines go ashore at Pusan on the following day. However, the vessels transporting MAG-33 continue toward Japan. Later, at 1700, Generals Craig and Cushman depart for Korea, making a stop at Itami to make some alternative adjustments. On the following day, the Marine generals fly to Fukuoka where they transfer to a smaller Plane which is adaptable to the rough airfields of Korea.

**July 26 1950 - (United States)** The USS *Luxembourg Victory* embarks San Francisco for Korea; among its cargo are eighty Medium Tanks to bolster Eighth Army. Additional Tanks are also being rushed to the Korean battlefield. In other activity, a messenger from Washington arrives at Camp Pendleton informing General Oliver Smith that his 1st Marine Division will be composed of four classes of personnel: 1.) Brigade units to be united with the Division in the Far East; 2.) elements of the 2nd Marine Division (East Coast); 3.) regular personnel from various posts and stations; 4.) final deficiencies to be met by troops from the Marine Corps Reserve who meet minimum combat experience requirements. **(Pacific-Korea)** Marine Generals Craig and Cushman arrive by air at Taegu from Japan at 1400 and quickly grasp the criticalness of the situation; the airstrip is rough at best and there are few defending troops as well as a minimum amount of planes. General Craig reports to General Walker. Soon after, a briefing is given by Col. Landrum to all Marine officers, updating them on the situation as best as possible. The defensive line is deteriorating so quickly that headquarters is not thoroughly positive about much of the ongoing fighting. The Marines are informed that there is no specific sector assigned to them because of the uncertainty of the situation as the outnumbered American troops are being slowly pushed back. Nonetheless, the instructions are explicit in that the Marines are expected to be ready to move to any point subsequent to debarkation and on instant notice. In conjunction, aboard the Convoy, it is common conversation among the Marines that they might not arrive in Korea in time to go on the offense. There is concern that they will debark only in time to flank and protect a general evacuation. Also, General Walker provides his plane to permit General Craig, Col. Joseph Stewart (Brigade G-3) and Lt. Col. Arthur A. Chidester (Brigade G-4) to inspect the combat zone, presently considered all ground still controlled by U.N. troops. During the excursion, Pusan and its harbor are inspected and while there, Craig confers with Brigadier General Crump Garvin concerning the imminent arrival of the Marine Brigade. Subsequent to departing Pusan, the Marine team, through aerial observation, determines that it would meet the requirements of an acceptable Base for VMO-6 and the Marine air support control unit if it becomes essential. Before closing the busy day, General Walker's pilot, possessing an astute knowledge of the area, swings further west and gives General Craig and his entourage a pointed look at Masan, Chinju and the Naktong River, any of which might become the mission of the Marine Brigade.

**July 29 1950 -(Pacific-Japan)** The continuing success of the enemy in Korea interrupts General MacArthur's plans for an amphibious invasion (CHROMITE) at Inchon. MacArthur sends a reluctant dispatch to the chiefs of staff in Washington: "IN KOREA, THE HOPES THAT I HAD

ENTERTAINED TO HOLD OUT THE 1ST MARINE DIVISION (BRIGADE) AND THE 2ND INFANTRY DIVISION FOR THE ENVELOPING COUNTER BLOW HAVE NOT BEEN FULFILLED AND IT WILL BE NECESSARY TO COMMIT THESE UNITS TO KOREA ON THE SOUTH LINE RATHER THAN ...THEIR SUBSEQUENT COMMITMENT ALONG A SEPARATE AXIS IN MID SEPTEMBER...I NOW PLAN TO COMMIT MY SOLE RESERVE IN JAPAN, THE 7TH INFANTRY DIVISION, AS SOON AS IT CAN BE BROUGHT TO AN APPROXIMATE COMBAT STRENGTH." In other activity, the French contingent of the U.N. Naval Force arrives at Sasebo; the *La Grandiere*, an elderly Frigate, enters port to participate with what is transforming into a giant-sized Fleet. The French Warship will depart Sasebo on September 6th, escorting the slower moving Vessels toward Inchon. **(Pacific-Korea)** General MacArthur, constantly appraising the situation of the raging battlelines, is still intent in using the Chinese Oriental psychology of reversing the obvious to his advantage. He maintains his desire to convince his superiors that an amphibious landing behind the enemy lines would break the back of the invaders; his motto of "MEETING FORCE WITH MAXIMUM COUNTERFORCE" is presently impossible despite the infusion of reinforcements, including small contingents of U.S. Tanks. It is the U.S. Air Force which is applying its maximum effort available to stave off total defeat of the outnumbered U.S. and ROK Infantry contingents. B-29 Superfortresses, attached to the Far East Command (Major General Emmett O'Donnell), have been pounding enemy strategic targets above the 38th Parallel and have begun to include heavy bombing raids to sweep the enemy-infested ridges and mountains from which enemy ground units are blasting the Americans. In conjunction, Air Force and Navy fighters as well as the Australian Air Force continue their sorties to buy more time for the struggling ground forces. It is the Air Force which holds the key to success; without air support the ground forces will be decimated. The Air Force is the modern version of the Old West Cavalry, arriving in the nick of time; they no longer carry Sabres, they fly them, unsheathed to cut the enemy's bloodline. In other activity, General Walker goes to the 1st Cavalry Command Post at Kumch'on, where he confers with General Gay and enunciates his dissatisfaction with the recent actions of 1st Cavalry in combat against the enemy. Walker further states that he expects no more withdrawals. In turn, General Gay explains to Walker that, although he could not attest to the absolute necessity of the pull-backs, his primary concern was losing communications and apparently risking isolation. Also, General Walker, apparently eliminating the earlier withdrawal plans of Eighth Army (on the 26th), issues his new instructions to Eighth Army, shortened by the press to: "STAND OR DIE." Of course, there is much more substance in his talk to the men at the command post of the 25th Division at Sangju. Walker, making this speech subsequent to his meeting two days previous with General MacArthur at which time MacArthur pressed for a rigid stand, mentions the impending arrival of Army and Marine Corps reinforcements. He also proclaims that the U.S. must mount counterattacks to jolt the enemy off balance, while emphasizing that there is "NO LINE BEHIND US TO WHICH WE CAN RETREAT." Continuing, Walker, using similar words to those spoken by MacArthur, states that there will be no Dunkirk nor Bataan, claiming that a withdrawal to Pusan would be "ONE OF THE GREATEST BUTCHERIES IN HISTORY. WE MUST FIGHT UNTIL THE END...WE WILL FIGHT AS A TEAM. IF SOME OF US MUST DIE, WE WILL DIE FIGHTING TOGETHER...I WANT EVERYBODY TO UNDERSTAND THAT WE ARE GOING TO HOLD THIS LINE. WE ARE GOING TO WIN." This order on the surface makes it clear that the forces will stand in front of the Naktong River. However, during early August, Eighth Army is compelled to pull back again, clouding the issue of Walker's wide-spread and controversial order. General Walker gives similar talks to the other

divisional commanders under his command. (The quotes of Walker are from written notes taken during the talk to officers of the 25th Division.) On the 31st, the 25th Division pulls back to a new line (withdrawal) about three miles east of Sangju and in a separate incident, troops of the 1st Cavalry will also pull back. General Walker is also concerned with the enemy movements coming from the west; he informs General Church (24th Division) that the ROK 17th Regiment, composed of 2,000 men (presently considered the elite of the South Korean forces), is to bolster the 24th at the Naktong River. Walker also tells Church that the 1st Battalion, 21st Regiment has been transferred from its positions in the vicinity of P'ohang-dong-Yongdok to Hyopch'on to shore up the rear of the 34th Regiment. The 21st Regiment deploys west of the town and the ROK contingent (17th Regiment) will arrive early on the 30th.

**July 30 1950 -(Pacific-Korea)** General Walker, in an attempt to loosen the slack on his statement perceived as "STAND OR DIE," places a more positive and less fatal addendum on the situation. He exudes an air of confidence, stating that the United States forces presently in Korea would hold "UNTIL REINFORCEMENTS ARRIVE," then underscores his remarks by stating that "ULTIMATE VICTORY WILL BE OURS." Walker then reiterates that the fighting in Korea "HAD REACHED A CRITICAL POINT," having given a similar response to a question posed by a *New York Times* reporter several days earlier. In other activity, the South Korean Government has established fifty-eight camps for refugees, the bulk of which are located in the Pusan-Taegu vicinity; estimates place the number of refugees moving into ROK territory from the invasion of the 25th of June through July 15th to number 380,000 and from then to today, about 25,000 more per day. These refugees and the untold numbers of infiltrating enemy troops among them causes severe problems for the American forces and the U.N. command. Also, at this time, including the Aircraft which arrived on the USS *Boxer* on July 23rd, the Far East Air Force is composed of 626 F-80s and 264 F-51s; of the combined total of 890 Planes, only 525 are assigned to units and prepared for battle. Also, Fifth Air Force B-29s begin bombing the Hungnam area, which contains a huge array of chemical facilities, continuing the missions until September 30th and depositing more than 1,700 tons of bombs there; the targets include Najin, situated about seventeen miles below the Siberian border. The port of Najin is used as an unloading point for Military equipment, supplies and ammunition dispatched into North Korea from the Russians out of the port of Vladivostok, slightly more than 100 air miles away. In other activity, the N.K. 7th Division, which had been activated on July 3rd and is composed of about 4,000 troops of the 7th Border Constabulary Brigade and 2,000 recruits, receives additional men; toward the latter part of July it had received an Artillery Regiment and today, 2,000 South Koreans (pressed into service) join the Division. On August 1st, the Division, about 10,000 strong, departs Seoul for southwestern Korea. Also, General Craig, having been informed by Eighth Army on the previous day that the U.N. left flank is folding, confers with General Walker and Air Force General Partridge to finalize the initial mission of the Marines. Walker informs Craig that the Marines will be immediately sent to the southwest perimeter and that their movement will not be encumbered by Eighth Army. In addition, General Partridge informs Craig that in the event the Marine Planes are initially unavailable, Air Force Aircraft will provide support for the Brigade. Subsequent to this final meeting with Walker and Partridge, the Marine contingent departs Taegu by Jeep for Pusan to await the arrival of the Brigade; in Taegu, Army Headquarters is desperately seeking to buy some precious time. Later during the evening, in Pusan Marine Staff Officers discuss the possibilities of MAG-33 arriving in time to provide Air cover for the imminent action of the Marine Brigade. Lt. Col. Stewart surprisingly is able to make contact by phone with Col. Weir (Gen. Cushman's CoS) at Itaki Air

Base in Japan; he requests that Weir deliver the Helicopters and Air Support contingents via LSTs to Pusan as soon as they unload in Japan. Also, General Craig is informed that the Brigade's replacement troops would be delayed as, rather than being transported directly to Pusan, the Marines would be formed at Camp Pendleton and subsequently moved to Korea with the 1st Marine Division. Craig, aware of the dire necessity of replacement troops, relentlessly presses the issue and demands that the replacements and the third Rifle Company be sent directly to Pusan.

**July 31 1950 -(United States)** Marine reservists are reporting to Camp Pendleton and other contingents are departing Camp Lejeune for Pendleton; the 13th Infantry Company (Los Angeles), 12th Amphibian Tractor Company (San Francisco) and the 3rd Engineer Company (Phoenix) arrive today and for the immediate future, Marines will be reporting 24 hours a day. From today until March 31st, 1951, the Volunteer Reserve will provide 51,942 of the 84,821 reservists on active duty; of these 99 percent of the officers and 77.5 percent of the enlisted men are veterans of WW II. Also, the JCS order the chief of naval operations to bring the 2nd Marine Division up to war strength (easier said than done) and to add two Marine tactical air squadrons, bringing the strength to eighteen Squadrons. The tireless efforts of General Cates, combined with the persistence of MacArthur and the unwavering vocal support of the Chairman of the House Armed Services Committee, Congressman Vinson, have won out, gaining the employment of the Marine Aviators for Korea. **(Pacific-Japan)** General MacArthur, based on information given him by staff during mid-July, informs the Department of the Army that South Korea is able to mount no more than four divisions and that he will equip the Korean forces based on that number. MacArthur does stipulate that some heavy equipment will be withheld. In contrast, General Walker and Ambassador Muccio both believe that the U.S. should arm many more South Koreans. In a rare about-face, by the following week MacArthur changes his stance and informs Walker that he should increase the figure of armed Koreans to a point which he felt necessary. The Carrier USS *Badoeng Strait*, commanded by Capt. Arnold McKechnie, arrives at Kobe, bringing with it 70 F4Us, six HO3S helicopters and eight light observation planes. In other activity, the portion of Task Group 53.7 transporting the forward echelon of the 1st Marine Air Wing arrives at Kobe during the afternoon. Within about three hours the troops have completely debarked and an LST is standing by to transport the Marine Tactical Air Control Squadron Two and the ground troops of VMO-6. The LST embarks for Pusan on the following day, arriving in Pusan on the 4th. In the meantime, the unloading process continues and the troops assemble the helicopters and the light observation planes of VMO-6, and to the astonishment of the observing Japanese, the aircraft take off from the streets and move to Itami. In other activity, General Craig, USMC and Lt. Col. Stewart (G-3) take a jeep and drive southwest to reconnoiter the ground, previously observed from the air, to which the brigade is likely to be committed; upon his return, Craig is informed by Eighth Army that the 5th Regimental Combat Team, recently arrived from Hawaii, is to be attached to the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade, giving Craig two regiments with which to operate.

**August 1 1950 -(Pacific-Korea)** The USS *Philippine Sea*, commanded by Captain W. K. Goodney, which had arrived in San Diego, California, subsequent to duty as an Atlantic Fleet Carrier on June 10th, 1950, arrives off Korea. Following the unexpected outbreak of hostilities, the *Philippine Sea*, expected to relieve the *Valley Forge* during October 1950, had been rushed to the area (July 5th) to augment the U.S. air-power. In other activity, Eighth Army issues an Operational Directive, confirming the various verbal orders previously circulated among the units concerning the planned withdrawal across the Naktong River; it clarifies the points of redeployment along the primary

defensive lines of the Pusan Perimeter. Also, the USS *Badoeng Strait*, unable to unload its aircraft at Kobe which lacks proper harbor facilities, remains offshore, but forty-four of its Marine planes take off and head for Itami airfield where they receive a pre-combat check; on the following day, the remaining twenty-six Planes arrive at Itami from the carrier. **(North Korea)** On or about today, the Soviets convince the North Koreans to lay minefields at various locations (east and west coasts) in North and South Korea to hinder any possible U.N. amphibious invasions, but the operation never rolls full steam. **In the Pusan Perimeter**, the South Korean National Police are by now given total responsibility for guarding all the railroad tunnels and bridges; contingents of varying sizes are posted at each remaining bridge and tunnel.

**August 2 1950 -(Pacific-Korea)** At Pusan: The USS *Henrico*, having completed the voyage across the Pacific alone, finally makes visual contact with the convoy in the Tsushima Straits during the morning hours; the convoy transporting the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade arrives off Pusan during the evening, with the leading vessel entering the harbor slightly after 1700. Soon after, as the ship creeps toward the dock, the Marines on deck are serenaded with a "tinny and tone-deaf" version of the Marine Hymn played by a South Korean Band; some of the army troops along the dock and the Marines aboard ship trade their usual sardonic salutations, with some of the seasoned antagonists (on both sides) visibly pleased that the encounter verifies the continuance of the tradition. As dusk arrives, the dock area becomes over-animated as man and machine begin a flurry of bustling activity lasting throughout the night, guaranteeing little or no sleep. Amidst the clanking of the cranes and the roaring of the engines, some giant searchlights focus on supply areas, while the brigade's troops debark and attempt to receive their equipment, food and ammunition; it is an amusing sight. Combined, 9,400 tons of Brigade supplies are unloaded, the greatest portion thereof relinquished to the Army Quartermaster section in Pusan and absorbed into the general pool. Four officers and 100 enlisted men of the Combat Service Detachment, under Major Thomas J. O'Mahoney, are designated rear echelon and will be based in Pusan to handle administrative and logistical duties. Meanwhile, General Craig orders a briefing at 2100 aboard the USS *Clymer*, for brigade staff, Lt. Col. Raymond Murray, commanding officer, 5th Marines, battalion commanders and personnel from supporting units; at present the Marines know they are heading west, but the specific mission is still unknown. Eventually, at 2325, General Craig is informed by Col. Landrum that the brigade, as ordered by General Walker, would proceed to Changwon and revert to Eighth Army reserve. Early on the following morning, the Marines return to their ships to receive a hot and hearty breakfast prior to moving out.

**August 3 1950 -(Pacific-Korea)** General Walker, having earlier in the day repeated his previous orders to "MAINTAIN CONTACT WITH THE ENEMY," places more emphasis on his intent during the afternoon with yet another directive: "DAILY COUNTERATTACKS WILL BE MADE BY ALL UNITS...COMMANDERS WILL TAKE IMMEDIATE ACTION TO INSURE THAT THESE AND PREVIOUS INSTRUCTIONS TO THIS EFFECT ARE CARRIED OUT WITHOUT DELAY." Continuing, Walker directs: "COUNTERATTACK IS A DECISIVE ELM (element) OF THE DEFENSE." **In the western coastal sector, 25th Division sector**, the 27th Regiment's Headquarters remains at Chindong-ni, a small town sitting along the south coastal road (dirt) where mountain tributaries extending from the north converge on the Korean Strait. Although elements of the Regiment had been strongly tested on the previous day, the area has enjoyed a fairly quiet night, maybe too calm! But the tranquil mood is short lasting. Unbeknownst to the sleeping men of the 27th Regiment, one Battalion of the evercunning enemy is closing toward their positions,

with the intent of establishing a roadblock. With a hushed motion, the unit moves east of the north-south road along a rough ridge that ends abruptly at a towering cliff which extends high atop the indented Command Post, a schoolhouse which is precariously tucked under the jagged ridge. From here, the coiled elements of the 14th Regiment, N.K. 6th Division prepare to spring into action; the operations of the mission are controlled from Sobuk-san, north of the objective. In conjunction, the Regiment's other two Battalions had swung away from the unit further east to assume positions and establish additional roadblocks nearer to Masan.

In the schoolyard adjacent to the Command Post lay the restful Howitzers of Company A (11th Field Artillery Bn.), and in close proximity, the weapons of the 8th Field Artillery Battalion, which had provided a powerful and protracted iron umbrella to guide the 1st Battalion as it sprinted home along the south fork road on the previous night. Dispersed in the same area is the exhausted 1st Battalion, 27th Regiment, under Col. Check, which had sprawled out near the command post immediately upon returning from its adventurous reconnaissance patrol.

Obviously, guards have been posted around the perimeter throughout the night to ensure against intruders. But ostensibly, some of the guards had become derelict, endangering the command by sleeping at their post; in addition, several sentinels at other outposts inadvertently assume that the troops observed in the shadows are friendly ROK Soldiers, known to be posted nearby. The consequences, resulting from the inexcusable conduct of some the troops on the grave-yard watch, thrust the regiment into a gruesome contest for survival.

While the officers of the regimental staff are just completing breakfast in the command post, the surprise attack is launched; enemy small arms fire, intended to signal the attack, concentrates on the command post. Synchronized with the initial fire, the enemy charges from their positions on the east ridge, but the first troops to descend from the heights are U.S. soldiers, some of whom complete the trek without their boots. Unquestionably, the suddenness of the attack causes disorganization; however, Cols. Michaelis and Check, bolstered by no-nonsense NCOs, set about transforming the turmoil into a disciplined defense; during this endeavor, some troops are jerked from their prone positions under some stationary jeeps and trucks and propped into fighting positions. During the fighting on the east hill, which ensues heavily until around 1300 and for the balance of the day, the North Koreans utilize regular civilian telephones, affording the U.S. signalmen (and S.K. interpreters) the opportunity to continually intercept and eavesdrop on the conversations as they are diverted through the Regimental switchboard.

To their amazement, the North Koreans are themselves startled, subsequent to commencing the attack as they are quickly encountered by infantry which they had apparently not anticipated. Company A, 1st Battalion convincingly bolts toward the enemy-occupied hill, east of the command post, driving confidently up the slope. Two enemy machine gun crews, manning positions on the summit, assert their tenacity, pouring fire toward advancing A Company. The ascending troops advance undaunted, seizing more tenable terrain from where their sharpshooters, using M1 rifles, wipe out both machine gun crews, terminating the enemy machine gun fire; the commanding officer of A Company, Captain Logan Weston, who led the attack, receives a wound in the leg. Weston, declining evacuation, gets some treatment by a medic, resumes his participation in the slugfest and becomes wounded two additional times while leading his command to seize the high ground. Once the crest is taken, the supporting guns of the recoilless rifles and the mortars begin sending some heavy metal into the positions of the North Koreans; in conjunction, the new occupants of the summit easily locate some of the enemy positions. The coordinates are given to the artillerymen and

after some range adjustments, the North Koreans are serenaded by the howitzers with salvos of white phosphorus shells.

Seemingly perplexed at the resolute resistance of the 1st Battalion, which handily repulses the attack, the commanding officer of the North Koreans, determined to take Chindong-ni, commits a new force to overcome the defenders by diverting one of the other battalions, scheduled to operate closer to Masan. A contingent, estimated to be, at minimum, battalion strength, races south from the direction of Haman. As the convoy reaches a point about 1,000 yards away, it comes to a halt to unload the reinforcements; the activity is spotted by Lt. Col. Augustus Terry Jr., who coincidentally is the commanding officer of the 8th Field Artillery Battalion, self-designated chairman of the welcoming committee. In cadence with the quick step of the troops as they excitedly exit the vehicles, the howitzers roar, accelerating the pace. Rather than attack, the enemy reinforcements advance hurriedly toward the hills; the threat evaporates. The 1st Battalion, 27th Regiment, commanded by Colonel Check, which had been exhausted, somehow reached down for a powerful second wind to beat back the attack and retain the regimental perimeter intact.

The successful defense of Chindong-ni, attributed in great part to the 1st Battalion, 27th Regiment's surprise appearance, creates additional problems for the North Koreans. Of the additional two battalions which had broken away from the force committed against Chindong-ni, one had to be reattached to reinforce the failed attack. Also, the 15th Regiment, N.K. 6th Division, poised for an attack against Masan, cancels the assault because of the unsuccessful attack at Chindong-ni. Nevertheless, its troops penetrate the heights southwest of Masan. Since the inception of fighting against American troops on July 27th at Hadong, the N.K. 6th Division, which has moved at a swift pace, has sustained massive casualties, depleting its strength by about one-half. Subsequent to the intensely fought battles around the Notch, the enemy pauses to prepare for the next step toward seizing Masan. Meanwhile, the U. N. forces prepare to further fortify their defenses along the left flank of Eighth Army, which is forming the new defensive line: the Pusan Perimeter. **In the 5th Regimental Combat Team's** sector, at Hill 342 (Fox Hill) behind the positions of the 27th Regiment, an enemy contingent attacks during the morning, dislodging the platoon which had been occupying the crest; later during the night, Company F mounts a fierce counterattack, regaining the ground. Company F holds the hill until relieved by the 5th Marines. However, the 2nd Battalion, 5th Regimental Combat Team again comes under assault on the night of the 6th, the eve of the scheduled start of the U.S. offensive. In other activity, the 25th Division completes its move from Waegwan to Masan in a speed breaking time of 36 hours. General Walker subsequently relates that the 150-mile "HISTORY MAKING MANEUVER" was responsible for the successful defense of Pusan. However, he also noted that it could not have happened if the North Koreans had launched a full attack against the Kumch'on front while the 25th Division was navigating the lone highway through Kumch'on. In other activity, General Craig, USMC, and LT. Col. Stewart, USMC, arrive from Pusan at Masan by helicopter to confer with Generals Walker, Kean and Barth; in response to a request of Craig, General Walker agrees to provide the Marine Brigade with South Korean Army recruits to be utilized as scouts, interpreters and rear-guards. General Walker orders General Craig to have the brigade ready for combat subsequent to the evening of the 5th. **At Pusan:** At 0600, the **1st Provisional Marine Brigade** heads for Masan (by Truck and Rail) where it is placed in Eighth Army reserve; thanks to the cooperation between the army and Marine General Chidester, fifty additional trucks and accompanying army drivers transport elements of the Marine Brigade. The tanks, heavy equipment and vehicles over 2 1/2-ton capacity are moved by flat cars; the 1st

Battalion, 5th Marines, commanded by Lt. Col. George Newton, arrives at the Changwon area at about 1400 and deploys defensively about one mile outside (west) of town, along the Changwon-Masan Road to afford protection for the remainder of the brigade. The vanguard is the first to experience the memorable trip along the slim and primitive serpentine roads which provide the Marines incessant bumps and jolts along the route, combined with the constant gush of unruly clusters of annoying dust launched to the rear by the rolling tires of the trucks; the Marines, plastered with the grayish grime of dust arrive at their destination resembling galloping gray ghosts. In conjunction, the Marines, traveling by rail in antiquated trains containing tiny and extremely uncomfortable wooden seats, encounter an equally unusual ride as the train is constantly stopping suddenly without cause. The trip is further punctuated by the agonizing scent emerging from the rice paddies which have been inundated with fertilizer. Craig had received orders to establish positions in Changwon, but heavy enemy activity, about six miles away west of Masan, convinces him to establish positions outside of the town. By 1600, all combat and support contingents except one platoon of tanks arrive in the vicinity of Changwon; the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines establishes positions in the heights to the left of the Changwon-Masan Road, relieving the 1st Battalion which then extends its line deeper along the high ridge on the right flank. The 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, commanded by Lt. Col. Harold Roise, deploys on a strategic hill amidst a large rice paddy (south of the MSR) extending between the town and the 3rd Battalion. General Craig establishes his command post in a small hollow sheltered by some small hills on the fringes of Changwon. The command post is defended by the Engineer Company and headquarters components; tank platoons and the artillery of Col. Wood's artillery battalion are also scattered within the perimeter. At about 2200 there is some premature activity as a rifle shot is fired against an invisible enemy, creating nervousness among many of the untried troops who believe the command post is under assault. The clanging of rifle shot increases as the triggers are pulled in reaction to the swaying of bushes in the darkness, which are mistaken as enemy figures. By about midnight two machine guns join the wasteful duel near the command post; however, the nervousness has spread to the positions of the 5th Marines, causing more problems. One man in the 2nd Battalion is shot and in the 1st Battalion sector, 2 casualties occur, one during a mixup during a challenge and another when a weapon fires accidentally. Eventually, by about 0300, following some colorful and unprintable expletives by the irritated NCOs, the green troops are persuaded convincingly that they have been firing at thin air. At dawn on the 4th, General Craig, subsequent to a restless night, calls in the particular leaders from where the majority of firing occurred and lays down the law, proclaiming that such activity will not be tolerated; it doesn't reoccur. Following the peculiar but predictable incident near the command post on the night of the 3rd, the remaining time at Changwon remains rather tranquil, except for one incident concerning some enemy encroachment on the 4th; seven unidentified people (using radios) are detected on the crest of a mountain, spotting the positions of the Marines. One platoon speeds toward their location to eliminate the problem, but the enemy troops escape. Nonetheless, it is another learning process for the Marines as the steep climb in the Korean heat causes casualties. Marine helicopters move to the crest, setting a combat precedent by delivering water and rations to the troops there; then the choppers evacuate those troops suffering with the most severe cases of heat prostration, initiating the first air evacuation of Marine casualties in Korea. The Marine Brigade is attached to the U.S. 25th Division on August 6th. Initially, there is some animosity between those soldiers already in Korea and the new Marine arrivals, due to several reasons, including some who believe that the Marines always receive too much press coverage. Another cause of the discontent is the manner in which the Marines have come ashore with their usual

haughtiness and conspicuously brash "Esprit de Corps." The Marine Brigade, similarly to their counterparts in the army, are enduring the identical hardships, including grave shortages of manpower; the 1st Provisional Brigade's three battalions of the 5th Marines are composed of just two rifle companies each, rather than the necessary three; one heavy weapons company is also attached. However, the bulk of its officers and about 65 percent of the Noncommissioned Officers enter Korea having gained their combat experience in the Pacific against the Japanese; this painfully gathered expertise will pay grand dividends at the front lines. The interservice dispute between the troops in the field will dissipate once the Marines enter the fight and convincingly prove their mettle. Essentially, the perceived condescending attitude of the Marines by the soldiers is transformed to respect, and the "attitude" of the Marines gradually becomes contagious as the two services galvanize to thwart the foe. When the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade departs Pusan, the troops carry their weapons, ammunition, pack and rations, enabling extra mobility.

**August 5 1950 -(Pacific-Korea)** The carrier USS *Sicily* races into the Yellow Sea and catapults its Marine planes (VMF-214) to strike Inchon, Seoul and Mokpo. The raids pound the airfields, harbor areas, bridges, railroads, factories and warehouses. Also, VMF-323, commanded by Major Arnold Lund, USMC, departs Itami for the carrier *Badoeng Strait*. The other Marine Squadron, VMF(N)-513, assigned to Fifth air force, will fly at night and operate from a land Base at Itazuke. Meanwhile, on the ground in Korea, Eighth Army moves closer to extinction. On the 8th, MacArthur directs all air units to concentrate on close-air support for the ground troops to forestall disaster. **Pusan Perimeter-Naktong Bulge:** During the morning (6th), General Church concludes that the majority of North Koreans that infiltrated east of the river has been confined to the bulge of the Naktong area. He had previously believed that the enemy would strike the northern sector of his lines. Church orders the 19th Regiment, 24th Division to attack west to cover the northern flank of the 34th Regiment. The risk proves fruitful as the regiment converges on an enemy group composed of about 300 troops and catches them off-guard in a village near Ohang Hill about one mile east of the river; the 19th Regiment, commanded by Col. Ned Moore, takes the advantage and swiftly swings into action to terminate the threat. The regiment wipes out nearly the entire North Korean contingent.

Meanwhile, Company A, 1st Battalion resumes its advance to the river. Company B, earlier stalled by enemy fire, establishes positions on Cloverleaf Hill. Although the North Koreans had occupied portions of Cloverleaf Hill as they moved east, it becomes evident that they have not yet maneuvered south of the Yongsan-Naktong Road. Consequently, the high ground at Obong-ni Ridge still remains free of the enemy. Company A reaches a contingent of Company L at its original positions along the Naktong River at about 2000, but the combined force amounts to less than 100 men. After establishing night positions, Company A makes use of a forward Artillery spotter's radio to reestablish contact with the 1st Battalion; at daybreak on the 7th, Capt. Alfonso discovers that enemy troops have secured the ridge to the right of his positions. He requests Artillery fire to eliminate the threat. Alfonso dispatches a Squad to investigate the effects of the Artillery, but enemy fire drives it back.

After dusk on the first day of battle for the bulge, the enemy gets more reinforcements across the river to make it clear that their positions will not easily be eliminated. The fighting fails to terminate with the setting sun; however, the enemy encounters tough opposition. Although some units have been thumped and several others have abandoned their positions, most stand steadfastly, thus preventing acute panic from spreading through the lines. Before dawn on the 7th, the S.K. 17th

Regiment, scheduled to move out and reform with the ROK Army, is repeatedly struck as the enemy attempts to cross the river on the right flank. Nevertheless, the South Koreans repel each attack prior to their relief by Task Force Hyzer on the morning of the 7th. In the 25th Division sector, Marine officers General Craig and Lt. Col. Stewart arrive in Masan to attend a final conference with Generals Walker and Kean to discuss the imminent U.N. offensive. Walker enunciates his disappointment about the inability of Eighth Army to halt the enemy up to now. He states with equal passion that no more ground is to be surrendered, and he reiterates his "stand or die" policy. Following the meeting, Craig and Stewart hop back into the Helicopter, piloted by Lt. Gustave Lueddeke, and within several minutes, Craig joins Col. Murray at his 5th Marines Command Post to brief him on the plan of attack against Sachon and Chinju.

**August 6 1950-(Pacific-Korea)** Offshore: Marine Planes (VMF-323) catapult from the USS *Badoeng Strait* to fly support missions for Eighth Army's; the corsairs' thirty sorties deliver thunderous storms of fire; the planes are armed with 20-mm cannon, five-inch rockets and 500 pound bombs. **Southwest Perimeter Pusan:** Eighth Army issues the operational order to launch the offensive toward Chinju at 0630 on the following day (August 7th). Major General William Kean, 25th Division commander, will lead the attack-force, designated Task Force Kean. In conjunction, the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade is attached to the 25th Division. The 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines, commanded by Lt. Col. Robert Taplett, and the 1st Battalion, 11th Marines depart Changwon at 1040 and arrive at Chindong-ni before 1230. The 2nd Platoon, 75-mm recoilless guns and the 3rd Platoon, Company Engineers accompany the infantry; the other units arrive later in the day. By about 1600, Taplett orders the artillery and mortar units to fire for registration on the northern approaches to Chindong-ni. Initially, the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines comes under the jurisdiction of Col. Michaelis, 27th Regiment, USA, but upon arrival of a second Marine battalion, command passes to General Craig, USMC. The main assault force, designated Task Force Kean, is composed of the 25th Division (minus the 27th Regiment and the 8th Field Artillery Bn., both of which are relieved today at the front and placed in army reserve); the 5th Regimental Combat Team and the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade, both attached to the 25th Division. The 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines relieves the 2nd Battalion, 27th Regiment on and in the vicinity of Hill 255, situated about one and one-half miles outside of Chindong-ni on the west side of the north-south road; the battalion command post is established on the first step of the hill, slightly above on the second rise; Company H, commanded by Captain Joseph Fegan, facing north, deploys defensively. Soon after, Fegan requests permission to move to higher ground, about 500 yards from the closest battalion unit, but the request is denied. Taplett wishes to keep the battalion closely tied to ensure blockage of the MSR approaches. The 2nd Platoon, Company H spreads out beyond Chindong-ni in the heights east of the MSR to intercept any infiltrators that encroach from the mountains southeast of the road or from the sea. Company G, commanded by Lt. Robert Bohn, deploys its 2nd and 3rd Platoons on nearby Hill 99, located on the opposite side of the valley and slightly west of Hill 255; the 1st Platoon, Company G, led by 2nd Lt. John Cahill, deploys about 600 yards from Chindong-ni at the base of Hill 255 to guard the Haman Road; the platoon is reinforced by the recoilless gun platoon. Toward evening, the 27th Regiment and the 2nd Battalion, 5th Regimental Combat Team stand along the front west of Chindong-ni, with the former close to the road and the latter spread amidst the heights to the north. Later, the remainder of the 5th Regimental Combat Team assumes the positions of the forward 27th Regimental troops in conjunction with the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines which relieves the 1st Battalion, 27th Regiment and assumes its reserve positions. Also, the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines is set to relieve the 2nd Battalion, 5th Regimental Combat Team on

the high ground north of the highway on the 7th. In conjunction, Eighth Army Intelligence estimates the opposing force (N.K. 6th Division) to be about 7,500 troops; it actually stands at approximately 6,000 men. However, unbeknownst to the U.S., the 83rd N.K. Motorized Regiment had enjoined the division, making the troop estimate accurate.

In other activity, elements of the N.K. 6th Division attack the 2nd Battalion, 35th Regiment about three miles west of Chungam-ni; the assault drives one company from its lines, but a strong counterattack regains the lost terrain; the 35th Regiment had been preparing to attack on the following day. The N.K. 6th Division has occupied a series of tunnels and mine shafts that permeate the western slopes of Sobuk-san; they utilize the concealed positions for underground quarters and supply depots; these cavernous areas aid the North Koreans during their month-long (August) siege against Masan. In other activity, the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines, commanded by Lt. Col. Robert Taplett, continues to fortify its positions on Hill 255, while other Marine units continue to arrive into the sector. Just after midnight (6th-7th), Taplett receives an urgent call from Col. Michaelis that relays orders from General Kean; he directs the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines to speed one reinforced platoon to support a beleaguered contingent of the 5th Regimental Combat Team, Company F, which is under attack on the slope of Hill 342; an enemy contingent has pushed out one platoon which had been deployed on a small ridge under the crest. The enemy gain places them on excellent ground from where they can effortlessly observe activity at the command posts of both the 5th Regimental Combat Team and the 5th Marines, causing complications for the imminent U.S. offensive. Taplett explains that he cannot spare one platoon, having only six, but Michaelis informs him that General Kean says that Hill 342 (Yaban-san) must be held at all hazards. Fifty-two Marines from Company G's 1st Platoon are assigned the task; the platoon is reinforced with a machine gun squad and a SCR-300 operator. Lt. Cahill leads the platoon to Col. Michaelis' CP south of Hill 99 near a bridge and from there to the command post of the 2nd Bn., 5th RCT, located slightly north of the road on the eastern fringe of Hill 342. Cahill's platoon, ordered to relieve Company F, 5th RCT, departs the CP with a guide. Due to the pitch-black darkness, the guide erroneously takes the wrong route and causes a delay. Still in friendly terrain, the platoon is then beset by more misfortune as it advances toward the end of the valley which lies between the two elongated spurs of Hill 342. At about 0500, after gaining only three miles, rifle fire suddenly strikes the column. Two Marines become wounded. The guide, puzzled by the fire from within friendly lines, suggests that the column await dawn before ascending the slope. Soon after, it is determined that the incoming fire had originated from troops of the 2nd Battalion, 5th RCT; the unit is unaware of the Marines' presence in the sector and had assumed that an enemy contingent had been advancing. The mission to take the hill resumes on the 7th. Meanwhile, to the left of the 35th Regiment, the 24th Regiment undertakes the task of securing the area of mountain mass that separates the paths of the 35th Regiment and the 5th Regimental Combat Team, both of which will participate in the upcoming offensive. The 24th Regiment incurs problems at its positions near Haman. West of the town, a contingent of North Koreans springs an ambush upon Company L, but the attack also disperses Company I and creates bedlam as troops flee haphazardly. During the unruly retreat, one officer alleges that his own command bowled him over three separate times as they sprinted to the rear. Nonetheless, the entire line doesn't concede its ground; one soldier, PFC William Thompson, attached to the heavy weapons company, chooses to stand and fight. Thompson places a machine gun in position and delivers sheets of fire against the charging enemy. He holds without relinquishing even one yard, despite being pummeled by enemy fire and grenades. Thompson's relentless actions temporarily contain the attacking force as its fire concentrates on

him; he becomes wounded by grenade fragments and then by small arms fire, but still he refuses to abandon his weapon. Finally, an enemy grenade strikes a mortal blow; PFC Thompson, Company M, 24th Regiment, becomes the recipient of the Medal of Honor (posthumously) for his uncompromising courage in the face of the enemy. Also, Col. Horton White is relieved as Commander of the 24th Regiment, subsequent to today's actions by the Regiment; he is replaced by Col. Arthur Champney. **August 7 1950 -(Pacific-Korea) Perimeter Pusan:** In the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines sector near Chindong-ni, the area around Col. Taplett's Command Post near Hill 255 is struck by some enemy shelling between 0100 and 0300, but otherwise the night is fairly quiet. At about 0600, Taplett receives word from Lt. Cahill's platoon, informing him of the situation and of the casualties incurred while attempting to reach the crest of Hill 342. At dawn, the reinforced platoon, Company G, 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines resumes its climb; it ascends the high ground that hooks Hill 342 with its eastern knob, then swings over slightly to enable an advance against the summit from the southeast. The burning sun and ghastly heat drain the Marines' stamina; water discipline vanishes in an attempt to quench an intolerable thirst as the elements vacuum the very breath from their bodies. At times an advance of only a few feet would be lost again as the men lose their footing and stumble back down the slope. Following the exhaustion of the meager water supply, some Marines slip into unconsciousness. Others are consumed with excruciating buckling pain. Nonetheless, despite the irregular formation of the advancing platoon, the NCOs encourage the advance. Cahill and Sgt. Lee Buettner bolt ahead of the pack to contact the besieged army unit. As they reach a point about seventy-five yards from the crest, enemy fire rips into the two-man detachment. This is the initial enemy fire upon the Marines in Korea. Cahill orders Buettner to lay back and lead the platoon up a draw while he sprints through the daunting fire to reach the crest. At 0830, Cahill meets the army company commander. Both men scrutinize the perimeter and the three hard-hit platoons. The company commander explains that the mortars had been sent down to the base of the hill because they attracted excessive enemy fire that rendered them ineffective. Meanwhile, Marine reinforcements arrive at the peak, having sustained 1 man killed and six wounded, including Sgt. Robert Robinson, the platoon Sgt. and Sgt. Thomas Blackmon, the platoon Guide. Blackmon has sustained a mortal wound, but he insisted upon reaching the crest to join Cahill. Some additional Marines that have sustained heat prostration and one other that had suffered a nervous condition, remain further down the slope. Meanwhile, at 0200, the large convoy transporting the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, commanded by Lt. Col. Harold Rosie, moves from Changwon to Chindong-ni and arrives there at about 0500. The vehicular traffic becomes congested, but it then totally bogs down near Hill 255 as vehicles attempt to turn around in a school yard. Meanwhile, enemy mortars and artillery fire begin shelling the area while the Marines are debarking the trucks; Col. Murray (CO, 5th Marines), his own vehicle among those halted north of Chindong-ni along the MSR, instructs Roise to keep the trucks moving despite the shelling, and he is informed by Roise that it is excessive mud in the schoolyard that is stalling the convoy, not the enemy shelling. Eventually when the convoy enters Chindong-ni, Col. Murray directs the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines to deploy on a stretch of Hill 255 above Company H's (3rd Bn.) positions. Murray also directs the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines to relieve Company G, 3rd Battalion on Hill 99, which releases it to augment Col. Taplett's perimeter on the lower portion of Hill 255. Subsequent to relief, Bohn's contingent redeploys on the opposite side of the valley along the lower slopes of Hill 255 to face Haman Road. Enemy snipers spend the night ringing the perimeter with shells. In conjunction, Col. Taplett's 3rd Bn. area in Chindong-ni remains relatively quiet after dawn, but Captain Fegan (Company H) and Lt. Bohn (Company G), positioned on Hills

255 and 99 respectively, do on occasion call in artillery fire to intercept enemy movement along the northern approaches to Chindong-ni. In related activity, 2nd Lt. Lawrence Herrick's 3rd Platoon, Company A Engineers finish setting the initial Marine minefield; it stretches across Haman Road one-half mile in front of Chindong-ni. Also, General Craig arrives by helicopter at Chindong-ni slightly after 0700 during an enemy bombardment of the area; he immediately establishes phone contact with the 5th RCT to maintain communications with the unit's progress at Tosan, which has a direct connection with the brigade's scheduled assault. Craig receives command of all troops in the area of Chindong-ni; at 1120, he moves to the front to see first-hand the progress of the 5th RCT. It becomes clear that enemy resistance is nominal, but progress is stymied because the MSR that extends from Sangnyong at the foundation of Hill 342's spurs to the strategic junction at Tosan is crammed with equipment, troops and vehicles. Meanwhile, the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, which has just begun the ascent to occupy Hill 255, receives new orders. The Marines had been ordered to dispatch a battalion to advance to Hill 342, relieve Cahill's 1st Platoon, 3rd Battalion and the 2nd Battalion, 5th RCT, then capture the balance of the hill; the task is given to Roise's 2nd Battalion. The 2nd Battalion, having received no sleep during the night, sets out toward Hill 342. At the road junction where the army guide had met Lt. Cahill during the previous night, Roise splits his command; he sends Company D, commanded by Captain John Finn, up the north fork to seize the eastern spur and the hill; Company E, now led by Lt. William Sweeney, is ordered to move around the rear of Sangnyong and capture the western spur of Hill 342. In conjunction, Major Morgan McNeely, 2nd Battalion S-3, and Captain Finn move ahead by jeep to Taepyong at the eastern base of the hill. Finn is informed that Company D is to relieve a unit of the 5th RCT in the heights above some thatched huts, and he is told that the ascent would be uncontested by organized resistance. In the meantime, the torrid heat of mid-afternoon begins to seriously affect the overtired troops of Company D. When the column arrives at the base of the hill, it is immediately greeted with heavy enemy rifle and machine gun fire, that originates in the village of Tokkong-ni on the opposite side of the valley and from the heights above the road. This unexpected fire quickly dissipates the notion of an easy ascent. Simultaneously, Captain Finn orders his troops to disperse into the rice paddies just off the road and calls for his platoon leaders. Finn directs that the enemy fire from the village be disregarded in order to concentrate on seizing the hill. The 1st Platoon, led by 2nd Lt. Arthur Oakley, drives to take the right flank and advances up the southern slope of 342, while the 2nd Platoon, led by 2nd Lt. Wallace Reid, passes through Taepyong-ni and ascends the hill at its linkage with the spur. In conjunction, on the left flank, the 3rd Platoon, under 2nd Lt. Edward Emmelman, advances directly toward the crest of the spur. Company D, against sporadic resistance, reaches the spur; it sustains five casualties by enemy fire, but a more powerful enemy, the excruciating heat, takes a severe toll; twelve Marines fall totally unconscious and the remainder hang on the brink of complete exhaustion. Finn establishes his command post in the heights above the village of Taeponyong, along with the accompanying mortars. During the early evening and without rest, Finn leads the three rifle platoons toward the summit to reach Cahill's platoon and the 5th RCT. The platoons reach positions several hundred yards from the crest, and then Finn contacts Col. Roise to report on the condition of his men. During the pause, Lt. Arthur Oakley, 1st Platoon, moves forward and greets the defenders on the crest. Lt. Cahill and the army company commander descend the slope with Oakley to confer with Capt. Finn; the army officer urges Finn to suspend the climb until dawn. He assures Finn that his soldiers and Cahill's Marines can undoubtedly hold the summit until then. Captain Finn informs Col. Roise of the meeting and Roise then permits Company D to hold in place and relieve the troops on the summit at dawn. The mission of Company

E goes off with less enemy resistance, but equally nasty weather, as it advances. Along the route to take the western spur of Hill 342, the enemy strikes with futile long-range machine gun fire; it reaches the halfway point on the ridge at dusk, and then concentrates on establishing a night perimeter. In the 1st Bn. (reinforced), 11th Marines sector around Chindongni, Lt. Col. Woods' Batteries had exchanged shells with the enemy on the previous night; they expend 87 rounds in support of the 5th Marines. By today, the enemy fire has registered on the artillery positions. During the pre-dawn hours (7th), one Marine battery receives a direct hit from an enemy 102-mm shell which destroys one 105-mm howitzer and kills two Marines; eight others become wounded. The incident becomes another lesson for the Marines; subsequent to this tragedy, the Marine artillerymen require no prodding to dig ammunition pits, foxholes and gunpits.

**August 7 1950-August 15 -(Pacific-Korea) Southwest Perimeter Pusan:** THE U.N.'s FIRST OFFENSIVE (BLOODY GULCH) - TASK FORCE KEAN launches its offensive, but the N.K. 6th Division initiates its attack almost simultaneously, which guarantees a donnybrook. Anticipated U.S. air strikes are canceled due to a dense fog which carpets the coastal area in the vicinity of Chindong-ni. Nonetheless, lacking air support, the assault commences. At 0700 U.S. artillery commences a powerful barrage to signal the advance once the guns become silent. From right to left, the 35th Regiment will jump off from its positions at the Notch to drive from the northeast. In synchronization, the 5th Regimental Combat Team pushes up the center. It heads due west along the secondary inland road. Soon after, the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade on the left flank will grind along the south coastal road.

The artillery ceases fire at 0720. The 2nd Battalion, 35th Regiment, poised about three miles west of Chungami at the Notch, jumps off and immediately runs into stiff opposition mounted by about 500 North Korean troops that are supported by self-propelled guns. Fierce fighting ensues there for about five hours. Meanwhile, on the right flank, slightly west of Chindong-ni, the 1st Battalion, 5th Regimental Combat Team pushes out. It encounters no opposition as it proceeds to the road junction, but once there it commits a costly error. Rather than pursuing its straight course due west, the contingent veers left at the junction, thereby leaving one of its objectives, the strategic hill that sits northwest of the intersection, unmanned. The remainder of the 5th Regimental Combat Team and the 5th Marine Regiment, each trailing the 1st Battalion, 5th RCT, continue their advance, expecting cover fire from the 1st Battalion on the dominating hill.

Meanwhile, the 1st Battalion, 5th RCT advances about three miles along the wrong route where it reaches a hill mass south of the road fork; now its line of advance is on the road previously designated to the 5th Marines. Heavy opposition greatly hinders the advancement of the 5th RCT for about two days.

Back with Lt. Col. John Wilkins' 2nd Battalion, 35th Regiment at the center of the advance, the combat continues at a furious pace as both sides hammer each other. The Yanks receive some welcome air support toward the latter part of the five-hour slugfest, which propels them to victory and gives them possession of the pass and the heights to the north. With the ground secured, the 35th Regiment continues west, less encumbered by the enemy; it reaches positions near the Much'on-ni road fork by dark. Near Pansong, the 35th overruns an enemy command post and seizes Russian-made radios (large capacity) and other headquarters supplies and reports. The advance also captures four trucks, loaded with ammunition and weapons. The 35th Regiment, commanded by Colonel Fisher, also slays about 350 enemy troops and destroys two tanks, five anti-tank guns and one self-propelled gun. The regiment then holds in place through the night. On

the following morning, it advances to the heights just to the front of the road fork.

In the meantime, to the rear of the departure point of the 35th Regiment, in the sector expected to be swept by the 24th Regiment, the situation remains poor, caused by the rout of the contingents of the 3rd Battalion, 24th Regiment on the previous day. The 3rd Battalion commander, Lt. Col. Samuel Pierce, and another officer locate the battalion in Haman about four miles to the rear. The inability of the 24th Regiment to secure Sobuk-san keeps the Americans in the dark concerning enemy troop strength in the area behind TF Kean. This failure also enables the Communist forces to get behind American lines and disrupt the supply convoys attempting to reach the front.

On the left flank, some contingents of the 5th Marines have been heavily engaged since the previous night, supporting the 5th RCT, commanded by Col. Ordway, on Hill 342. As dawn breaks on the 7th, the Marine platoon from Company G (3rd Battalion, 5th Marines), led by 2nd Lt. John Cahill, resumes its ascent up the rugged hill, advancing toward the crest. The troops pause while Lt. Cahill and Sgt. Lee Buettner move to the crest under enemy fire as they attempt to locate the isolated soldiers. This emerges as the first action between the enemy and the Marines. Thirty-seven Marines reach the peak, but eight Marines are wounded and three are killed. While the Marines are grouping on the reverse slope, the North Koreans pound the area with a massive amount of fire, which prompts some soldiers to abandon the perimeter; but quick and decisive actions by an army lieutenant halts the stampede. The troops then reinhabit their foxholes. Soon after, Cahill's Marines are dispersed around the perimeter to share positions with the soldiers in the foxholes. The unusual mix produces excellent results as the assorted army-marine infantrymen are each determined to exemplify the high standards of their units; two additional Marines are instantly killed while being led to their positions on the crest.

More reinforcements are rushed to the hill. At 1100, the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, led by Lt. Col. Harold Roise, (subsequent to the departure of the attacking 1st Battalion, 5th RCT.), advances to relieve Col. Throckmorton's beleaguered 2nd Battalion, 5th RCT on the ridge, but it encounters an immediate obstacle. North Korean troops who had infiltrated the ridge during the night have wedged themselves between the Marines and the 2nd Battalion 5th RCT.

In the meantime, the enemy places a curtain of troops around Hill 342, further endangering the small command at the top of it. At 1200, the Marines and soldiers on the summit are unexpectedly pummeled with a devastating unending string of enemy rifle and machine gun fire which slams across the confined perimeter; terrorizing mortar fire joins the ensemble of flying death. In coordination with the blazing enemy fire, the approach slope is permeated with huge numbers of creeping enemy troops who are attempting to remain concealed. No one on the summit moves from their positions as the enemy horde approaches; rather, the isolated troops staunchly commence firing with equal tenacity, determined to halt the attack and retain the crest. However, the defenders are rapidly diminishing their ammunition. Cahill uses his SCR-300 radio to contact army artillery units to help neutralize the enemy mortars; following the urgent request for assistance, the guns of the artillery fire effectively on suspected enemy mortar outposts, but the mortars are not silenced.

Cahill's Marine platoon and the elements of the 5th RCT maintain control of the summit, but the ammunition level reaches a critical point, and the army's water supply is rapidly vanishing. Cahill calls for an Air drop to rectify the problem. A large air force R4D transport passes over and drops supplies and ammunition, but only one package is recovered. The remainder falls into enemy held terrain. The sole retrieved package contains only carbine shells and is of no value to the cause.

Subsequently, two additional attempts are made by the more maneuverable OY-2s from VMO-6. The VMO-6 Squadron confiscates every available water can in the unit to donate to the desperate troops on the crest. The third attempt succeeds and pin-points the mark to deliver the supplies, but again misfortune strikes. Each of the water cans explodes upon impact.

The additional Marine reinforcements (2nd Bn., 5th Marines) advance, but en route, they encounter the enemy that had infiltrated during the previous night. A vicious battle ignites. The Marines, still unadjusted to the scorching heat of Korea, move in to slug it out with the enemy in close-quarters, as the temperature soars to about 112 degrees. The draining weather and accompanying enemy fire halt the progress of the Marines, who lose more casualties (about thirty Marines) to the elements than to the opposition. The 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines establishes contact with the isolated command on the following day, but first it reinitiates more ferocious fighting along the slopes. Slightly before daybreak on the 8th, the North Koreans storm Hill 342, but it holds. Company D, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines drives to the summit to relieve the army contingent and Cahill's platoon from Company G, 1st Battalion, 5th Marines; they evacuate the crest; six Marines under Cahill have been killed and twelve wounded.

Meanwhile, Company D is struck with a storm of fire; 2nd Lt. Wallace Reid is killed and while attempting to retrieve his body, the company commander, Capt. John Finn, receives two serious wounds. First Lt. Robert Hanifin, Jr. assumes command as the North Koreans mount another attack to seize the crest; he too falters as heat exhaustion causes him to collapse. But in his place, Master Sgt. Harold Reeves and Second Lt. Leroy Wirth take over the unit and the attack is repelled. Company D, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines holds the hill; it sustains eight Marines killed and twenty-eight wounded. On the 9th of August, the summit of Hill 342 is given to the 24th Regiment, USA.

Meanwhile, the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines, which had begun relieving the 27th Regiment on the previous night, completes the exercise at 1120. At this time, General Edward Craig, USMC, commanding officer of the 1st Marine Provisional Brigade, assumes command over all troops on the Chindong-ni front; the action occurs due to orders issued by General Kean who has become especially irritated by the ongoing confusion on the field. To add to the dilemma, friendly tanks inadvertently sever army communications when their treads rip through telephone lines that are stretched openly on the ground.

Upon relief by the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines on Hill 342 (Fox Hill), Col. Throckmorton's weakened 2nd Battalion, 5th RCT proceeds toward the dominant hill northwest of Chindong-ni to secure it; the 1st Battalion, 5th RCT had accidentally bypassed it on the previous day. The 2nd Battalion contains only two effective companies following its week-long duty on Fox Hill (Hill 342). The assault to seize the hill fails, due partially to ineffective supporting artillery fire. Later in the afternoon, a fuming General Kean arrives at the 2nd Battalion positions; he makes his point by ignoring Col. Ordway (Regimental Commander 5th RCT) while speaking to Col. Throckmorton, who is standing close by: "I WANT THAT HILL TONIGHT." After the encounter with General Kean, three Tanks are rolled into position to provide cover fire in concert with the deployment of 4.2-inch and 81-mm Mortars. Companies E and G, despite their weariness, launch a successful, but strenuous night-attack to seize the hill. The troops are victorious; however, by dusk on the 8th, they are also on the brink of total exhaustion.

Since the commencement of the U.S. westward offensive on the 7th, the din of battle has not been confined to the area west of Chindong-ni. During the night of the 6th-7th, North Korean contingents

move eastward and nudge around the fringes of Chindong-ni. They occupy Hill 255 which controls the road from there to Masan, essentially endangering the supply route. Meanwhile, the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines and contingents of the 2nd Battalion, 24th Regiment, bolstered by air strikes, batter the newly enemy-occupied hill, but without success; the Marines and soldiers also commit tanks, mortars and ample dosages of artillery shells, but still the entrenched North Koreans hold Hill 255 with resolute determination. The 159th Field Artillery Battalion's Companies B and C jointly propel about 1,600 shells into the roadblock, and additional fire power is also called upon. The 555th Artillery Battalion, at the request of the 5th Marines on site, pours its fire upon the enemy obstruction.

Captain Joseph Fagan, company commander, H Company commits the 1st Platoon, led by Lt. John Williams; it advances until halted by a storm of machine gun fire and an abundance of thrown grenades, originating about thirty yards away. Williams is ordered to pull his unit back and the 3rd Platoon is directed to charge the positions, but the 3rd Platoon, apparently stunned by the thrashing received by the 1st Platoon, fails to advance into the ring of fire, unbecoming a Marine platoon. Capt. Fagan bolts into action; he leads the attack; two Marines, Tech. Sgt. Ray Morgan and PFC Donald Terrio, hit the enemy's right flank with tenacious swiftness and knock out two enemy machine guns. Another team hits the left flank and rakes it with BAR fire. Corporal Melvin James, leading the assault against the left flank, extricates six wounded Marines during the fierce action. The attack is bloody, but the 3rd Platoon annihilates the defenders; Sgt. Barnett, wounded twice, is taken to safety by Capt. Fagan. The enemy withstands the brutal punishment for two days, but by the morning of the 9th, the combined thrust of contingents of the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines and two battalions of the 24th Regiment causes the enemy to falter. The perplexing weather that has the temperature soar to well over 100 degrees offers no aid to the attack and further aggravates the situation. Undaunted, the Marines and the soldiers apply more pressure. The battle for Hill 255 ends successfully for the Americans; Company H, 5th Marines advances during the morning of the 8th and convincingly dislodges the enemy from the high ground. Elements of the 24th Regiment hook up with the Marines on Hill 255, and by slightly after 1200, the roadblock is eliminated. The 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines receives the heaviest opposition; it sustains about 70 casualties during the final day, however, again, about one-half are caused by heat exhaustion. In contrast, the Americans count 120 enemy dead and estimate total enemy casualties at 600.

Task Force Kean had initiated its offensive early on the 7th with expectations of stunning the enemy, but instead had itself been somewhat startled as it rams into the unexpected enemy attack. Unlike U.S. Intelligence during World War II, the U.S. operations in Korea have no OSS-type units behind the lines to feed information and confound the enemy. Lacking critical information and strategic tactics, major gaps remain constant concerning details on enemy intentions and troop movements. Despite incessant pleas for this type of operations, Washington never authorizes them, keeping the U.N. troops at a disadvantage. And it is assumed that all U.N. information forwarded to the United Nations is discreetly being forwarded instantaneously to the Soviet Union. Despite the poor intelligence and the seemingly perpetual confusion, by today (9th), TF Kean bulldozes through the maze of the initial enemy opposition and prepares to jump-start the center and southern spears of the attack. The 5th Marines moves to the positions of the 1st Battalion, 5th RCT at the hill along the coastal road; upon relief, the 1st Battalion, 5th RCT retraces its steps to the road junction west of Chindong-ni and begins to advance along the proper road to rejoin the regiment. The 5th Marines initiate a fast paced advance down the coastal road.

On the 9th, subsequent to the seizure of Hill 255, the 5th Marines quickens its pace, as it moves under the wings of eagles. The carriers USS *Badoeng Strait* and *Sicily* each have their eagles soaring overhead to scour the area in front of the advancing troops. Targets are located and within the blink of an eye, corsairs attached to the 1st Marine Air Wing descend rapidly to deliver stunning overdoses of close-air support that eradicate the threats. Usually, weather permitting, about six corsairs remain in close proximity to the Marine ground troops during daylight hours. The Marine pilots mother General Craig's ground troops as they drive forward; in the lead, the 1st Battalion, commanded by Lt. Col. Newton, takes Hill 308 and secures the strategic road junction at Tosan. Then, the 2nd Battalion, led by Lt. Col. Harold Roise, sprints to the point to spearhead the advance toward Kosong; en route it encounters an enemy ambush at Taedabok Pass, less than ten miles from Kosong. To ensure progress, the 3rd Battalion, led by Lt. Robert Taplett, pivots to take a calculated short cut to bounce ahead of the 2nd Battalion. However, a probing patrol, led by Major Morgan McNeely, ventures too far out front and vanishes around a bend. The Communists spring an ambush which shreds the jeep and nearly decimates the six-man patrol. Company G then rounds the bend and spots the destroyed Jeep and the six Marines who are helplessly sprawled on the ground; three men are dead and the other three are grievously wounded. Col. McNeely (mortally wounded) is dragged to safety by Lt. Westerman, but he too becomes wounded in the process. The remainder of the advance patrol cannot be extricated until the following day (10th).

The Marines continue to eliminate the opposition along the coastal road. By the 11th, the resistance in the high ground at the constricted Taedabok Pass is totally silenced. Two Sherman tanks take the point, trailed by Company H. The column starts a nine-mile march to Kosong. It encounters enemy opposition in the high ground along the approach, but the resistance is rooted out and the advance resumes. As the leading 3rd Battalion encroaches the objective, supporting artillery of the 1st Battalion, 11th Marines begins to plaster the area near a road junction west of the town to adjust its fire; through some good fortune, some of the artillery shells fall among concealed enemy vehicles. Thanks to the reaction of the North Koreans, a bonanza results. Believing their positions have been zeroed in, the enemy force (83rd Motorized Regiment, 105th N.K. Division) hurriedly boards the vehicles to evacuate the area and rush toward Sachon to escape what they think is grid fire. The ensuing clouds of dust bring a clear focus to a band of four Marine corsairs from the Carrier *Badoeng Strait* that arrive over the Marine column. The planes catch the enemy column as it flees.

The four corsairs dive and attack the convoy from extremely low altitude. They zoom over the column of nearly 200 exposed vehicles and strafe the entire line, creating instant disorientation. A huge multiple vehicle accident occurs. While some trucks crash into one another, others attempt to get off the road to evade the incoming fire. Consequently troops bolt for cover, but the motorcyclists that are dispersed between the vehicles get trapped in the massive pile up. Meanwhile, the airborne quartet swings around to unleash another attack. During the planes second low-level pass, enemy ground troops return fire and hit two of the aircraft. One plane, piloted by Captain Vivian Moses, crashes in a nearby rice paddy; Capt. Moses, knocked unconscious upon impact, drowns. The other crippled plane makes an emergency landing. By this time, about forty vehicles have been destroyed, and the surprised enemy motorized regiment is going to get stung by another attack. A few more Marines in corsairs arrive overhead, and they are joined by a group of swarming U. S. Air Force F-51s. The heat gets turned up considerably. The aircraft easily follow the path of the crunched convoy and add more deadly fire to the blistering attack. Wild explosions occur as the corsairs strike ammunition trucks, causing more panic. The vehicles that survive the

ordeal hobble toward Sach'on. Later, during the afternoon, the 5th Marines reaches the rubble of the convoy; 24 jeeps, 31 trucks and 45 motorcycles lay wasted and the estimate of enemy casualties is 200. The Marines push past the smoldering convoy and reach a point about four miles west of Kosong where they rest for the night.

In concert, the 5th Marines sweep along the coastal road, and the 5th Regimental Combat Team has renewed its advance up the center, moving toward Much'on-ni. On the 10th, the army combat team approaches Pongam-ni, a dingy village comprised of about twenty primitive mud-huts with thatched roofs, situated east of the pass near a junction of the primary east-west road. Another tiny village, Taejong-ni, also east of the pass, sits several hundred yards away. Enemy fortifications north of the town, including Tundok, have been attacked by naval planes, but the area in front of Pongam-ni holds concentrations of enemy troops which had not been discovered by the air observation sorties. The enemy lurks in the heights on the north side of the road that will be used by the 1st Battalion as it attacks on the right. The 2nd Battalion, commanded by Col. Throckmorton, operating on the left, drives along the south side of the highway. The 1st Battalion, under Lt. Col. John P. Jones, comes under fire by the enemy in the northern heights, but the unit reaches Pongam-ni and establishes its command post there. The 3rd Battalion also advances west, and on the following day (11th), it pushes forward to the Much'on-ni Road fork to hook up with the awaiting 35th Regiment to launch a scheduled combined thrust toward Chinju Pass. The 3rd Battalion's departure from Pongam-ni strips the Headquarters 5th RCT and Battery C, 555th Field Artillery Battalion positions (east of the village) of all Infantry support.

Beyond the village road junction, about 400 yards to the northeast and on the northern side of the east-west road, lies an ominous hill that lacks foliage; it is the western terminus of a protracted enemy-occupied ridge that straddles the highway, less than 1,000 yards away. Companies B and C, 1st Battalion occupy the eastern sector of this ridge, but the enemy controls the remainder and it intends to dominate the pass. West of the road junction, two additional ridges that shadow a 300-yard wide valley converge about 1,000 yards from the villages; the 2nd Battalion, 5th Regimental Combat Team deploys on the southern sector of both of these ridges; Company E remains in Pongam-ni. The east-west road leads out of the western edge of Pongam-ni and hugs the base of the southern ridge as it ascends radically from the valley; the highway then threads the pass at the point where the northern and more elevated ridge adjoins the southern ridge. And another valley lies north of Pongam-ni; a dirt path from the northern exit of the town moves through the valley to Sobuk-san, from where a stream flows south and enters an eastward flowing stream at the western edge of Pongam-ni.

In support of the mission, the artillerymen disperse in and around the villages of Pongam-ni and Taejong-ni, north of the east-west road: Battery C, 555th Artillery Battalion places its guns near the rear eastern positions of the headquarters, 5th Regimental Combat Team. Battery A, 555th Field Artillery Battalion deploys under a peculiar (to the area) concrete bridge that spans the southern flowing stream near its convergence with the eastern flowing stream; Battery B establishes positions at the tip of the village astride the stream and headquarters battery deploys within the village. In conjunction, at Pongam-ni, on the opposite (west) side of the southern flowing stream, the 90th Field Artillery Battalion (minus one Battery) establishes its positions.

After dark on the 10th, the North Koreans mount vicious attacks against the Americans; the artillery units and 1st Battalion, 5th RCT remain embattled throughout the night, and they continue the battle straight through the daylight hours of the 11th. The command post of the 2nd Battalion, west of

Pongam-ni, is also besieged, but Col. Throckmorton speeds word to the village calling for support from Company E; with the help of the reinforcements, the positions are held and the enemy is driven back. During the unwieldy fighting, communication is lost between Battery A and its parent unit, the 555th Field Artillery Battalion; the Bn. Commander, Lt. Col. John Daly, and Col. John P. Jones, 1st battalion commander, accompanied by Infantry troops, attempt to reach the embattled positions, but both Daly and Jones become wounded. Col. Jones' wound is debilitating; Col. Daly assumes temporary command of the 1st Battalion. In concert with the attacks at Pongam-ni, the units east of the village receive fierce attacks, but despite the lack of Infantry, Headquarters 5th RCT and Battery C, 555th Field Artillery hold the enemy at bay. During the morning of the 11th, Planes arrive to throw their weight into the battle. The North Koreans are driven back into the high ground. Throughout the day, enemy snipers and an array of small enemy detachments maintain pressure on the main supply route out of Chindong-ni, but these are neutralized by several tanks and an assault gun that ride shotgun with the supply convoys as they move to the forward positions of the combat team.

By afternoon (11th), the 5th RCT, commanded by Col. Godwin Ordway, is prepared to push through the pass west of the village and continue the advance toward Chinju. But Col. Ordway is convinced that the convoy, including the artillery, must move after dark to ensure success. Later, General Kean instructs Col. Ordway to push the force west as soon as possible, and he also informs Ordway that one Battalion of the 24th Regiment is rushing to Pongam-ni to cover his right flank. Col. Ordway senses a potential disaster. He protests the daylight movement. Following a prolonged telephone conversation between Kean and Ordway, Kean relents and grants permission for the regimental combat team to move after dusk. In conjunction, but unbeknownst to Col. Ordway, General Kean had received instructions from Eighth Army to prepare to release the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade and the 5th Regimental Combat Team upon orders from army; Kean, who has also been directed by army to seize and defend the Chinju Pass, has been instructed to dispatch Task Force Min to Taegu where it can be transferred to the South Korean Army.

At Pongam-ni, the evacuation of Col. Jones is arranged. At 1400, Lt. Col. T. B. Roelofs (former Bn. commander), the regimental S-2, arrives to assume command of the 1st Battalion. Roelofs is directed to seize control of the ridge west of Pongam-ni; it controls the pass through which the combat team must advance. Company B moves from its positions on the ridge to the valley in preparation for the assault. Toward evening the 1st Battalion, supported by artillery units of the 2nd Battalion, mounts its attack to clear the objective. Company C drives west along the north ridge to hook up with B Company, which is assigned the primary task of assaulting the hill on the right; it dominates the terrain north of the pass. Company B secures the ground north of the pass before dark. However, during the morning hours the enemy strikes back ferociously.

Subsequent to the seizure of the ground north of the pass, the 1st Battalion establishes a command post about 300 yards west of Pongam-ni. While the 5th Regimental Combat Team prepares its advance, one platoon of Company A, 1st Battalion, supported by a contingent of tanks, remains in place north of the village along the Tundok Road; the balance of Company A relieves the 2nd battalion, which is to spearhead the advance. The 2nd Battalion, under Col. Throckmorton, Battery C, 555th Field Artillery Battalion and the vehicles begin to form on the road at about 2100. But countermanding orders arrive for Col. Ordway, creating a dilemma. Despite the earlier agreement between Ordway and General Kean to move out after dark, the new orders (from Gen. Kean) call for the immediate movement of the 2nd Battalion and one battery of artillery. In addition, to the

dismay of Ordway, the remainder of the unit is to remain in place until daylight. Col. Ordway, still convinced that a daylight move could mean slaughter, attempts but fails to make contact with General Kean at divisional headquarters. Assuming that army and the divisional commanders have information which he lacks, Ordway carries out the order and cancels movement of the balance of the team. In the meantime, Batteries C and Headquarters Battery and the 2nd Battalion are heading west, and they have already moved beyond the top of the pass. Ordway attempts to reach the vanguard by radio, but once it moved over the top of the pass, radio contact was impossible. The 2nd Battalion encounters and overcomes some opposition before it completes a five-mile westward advance to Taejong-ni; it bivouacs there until morning and expects the main body to join it. Meanwhile, back at Pongam-ni, another tortuous night unfolds at midnight (11th-12th).

The departure of the 2nd Battalion and artillery elements weakens the 5th Regimental Combat Team, but it is not expecting an immediate attack. Nonetheless, the enemy expresses no empathy as it prepares a night assault. The 1st Battalion remains north of the road, and the remaining elements of the 555th Field Artillery Battalion are to its rear, dispersed within the two villages. Slightly east, beyond the villages, the regimental headquarters and the 159th Field Artillery Battalion are dispersed. The tranquility of the new day is shattered abruptly slightly after 0100 on the 12th. Company C, 1st Battalion, which had earlier supported the assault to clear the northern ridge, comes under a tenacious attack. The besieged unit loses communications with bBattalion, but the thunderous sounds of the guns alert the 1st Battalion to the danger. Frantic attempts are made to establish radio contact, but without results. A chain of reactions begins to emerge as the 13th Regiment, N.K. 6th Division unleashes its power. Meanwhile a U.S. contingent is dispatched to lay new communication wire, and messengers are sped to the troubled area to establish contact and report on the situation. Col. Roelofs, the 1st Battalion commander, contacts Col. Ordway and details the ensuing fight; he further explains the gravity of the situation on the northern ridge. Col. Ordway, feeling obliged to obey the divisional orders, declines Roelofs' plea to extricate the artillery and vehicles by pushing them through the pass to safety. Once the conversation ends, Col. Roelofs departs his command post, bolts to his jeep and, accompanied by two staff officers, races east toward Pongam-ni; they pass elements of the regiment that are forming the convoy along the road while apparently awaiting orders to roll west.

When Roelofs reaches the bridge that spans the south-flowing stream at the western edge of Pongam-ni, he encounters officers of the 555th Artillery Battalion who also appear ready for orders to evacuate; after passing by, Roelofs' entourage turns north to take the Tondok Road, a dirt path. Soon after, they come upon Company A, 1st Battalion and several tanks that are posted nearby to guard the crossroads and the rear artillery. The troops of Company A inform Roelofs that the sounds of small arms fire and grenades have been heard in the vicinity of Company C, but that no other enemy activity is apparent. Actually, Company C is being overpowered by the enemy and fighting for its survival as it is ruggedly shoved off the ridge. The ordeal becomes hellish. The 2nd Battalion, unaware of the unfolding tragedy, advances. Meanwhile, the promised 24th Regiment is nowhere in sight. Col. Roelofs rushes back to the command post, but his hopes of receiving good news about the fate of C Company are quickly dashed. The runners have returned, but they were unable to locate the stranded Company. To make matters worse, the troops which had been dispatched to lay new wires between the command post and Company C have vanished. In addition, during Roelofs' absence, observers had noticed enemy flares shooting up from C Company's location.

Dawn (12th) is getting closer, but the arrival of sunlight is not expected to make the situation any better. The artillerymen still lack infantry protection. The infantrymen north of the village are also imperiled and no reinforcements have reached the beleaguered command. During these final but nonetheless perplexing predawn hours, Col. Roelofs again persists in getting Col. Ordway to get the combat team on the road before the enemy closes the noose and traps the command in the valley. Subsequent to repeated failed attempts to receive permission from General Kean to move out before daylight, Col. Ordway remains convinced that the enemy is taking the high ground above Pongam-ni; he issues the order to abandon the area. At about 0400 the convoy rolls west; the supply trucks take the lead, trailed by the artillery; it is under the protection of the 1st Battalion which brings up the rear. If all goes well, the supply trains should clear the pass in less than half an hour, with time to spare before the sun rises. But, immediately, a quagmire develops along the road.

The traffic creeps forward by less than quantum leaps, gaining only several feet between stoppages. As the sluggish column passes the 1st Battalion command post, a contingent of medical vehicles attempts to merge with the column. One ambulance becomes bogged down in a gully; it paralyzes the entire column and consumes precious darkness. The vehicle is towed from the ditch and the column then begins to move at a slightly quicker pace, but the sun is rising. The enemy that holds the high ground begins to pop shells into the column. Col. Ordway's vehicle proceeds over the top of the pass slightly after daybreak and attempts to speed up the column, but to no avail; he then attempts to clear the road to permit the artillery to extricate itself from the valley, but no shoulder space is available. As Col. Ordway clears the top of the pass, another snafu develops. The platoon from Company A and its contingent of tanks which had been ordered to guard the northern approach of Pongam-ni and the artillery there is spotted moving toward the tip of the pass. Col. Roelofs spots the unit and inquires as to why it had deserted its positions; one officer claims that he was ordered to pull out. The validity of the explanation is never determined, but nonetheless, the artillery now stands naked in the village. Attempts to return the unit to its positions are initiated, but the idea is scrapped because it is thought that the reversal will probably cause another and larger traffic jam.

While he attempts to keep the vehicles rolling at a steady pace through the pass, Roelofs observes the unfolding disaster back at Pongam-ni. Horrendous firing commences and North Koreans plow into the valley to strike the artillery positions from three separate directions. In concert, enemy armor delivers massive blows against the vehicular traffic and the village, causing pandemonium. One truck is blown to oblivion as it crosses the bridge that spans the south stream. The huge explosion propels a wall of fire which snarls bridge traffic. The troops with the convoy dive for protection, but the merciless attack continues at close-quarters; the tanks and self-propelled guns bellow from nearly point blank range. The exposed howitzers of the 555th Field Artillery Battalion attempt to engage the armor, but the effort is futile and the guns of the 90th Field Artillery fare poorly because the armor penetrates under the range of the guns; despite maximum effort, the 155s cannot be lowered sufficiently to hit the encroaching armor. However, the artillerymen choose not to capitulate, but rather to improvise and assume the role of infantry to supplement the few guns that remain operational.

Further west, the forward elements of the column complete a five-mile trek and reach the 2nd Battalion positions at Taejong-ni, but the rear elements are undergoing a ruthless ordeal. The abandonment of its positions by the platoon at the roadblock north of the village permits enemy

armor to move in without meeting any resistance; these gains grant them positions from which they can strike with total surprise from extremely close range at a time of their choosing.

At Taejong-ni, Col. Ordway arrives at the positions of the 2nd Battalion; he meets with the forward elements of the Convoy and directs them to continue moving until they find a suitable assembly area. Ordway expects this to help keep the road open for the remainder of the convoy. Additional troops reach the area and one of the officers informs Col. Ordway of the ongoing slaughter of the artillerymen at Pongam-ni. Ordway then heads back to the beleaguered village. En route he encounters Col. Roelofs' weary 1st Battalion, which is moving west. Col. Ordway, in an attempt to salvage the command, directs the 2nd Battalion to rush back toward Pongam-ni to establish a rear-guard action to protect the balance of the regiment.

The valley is quickly becoming known as "Bloody Gulch," as the savagery of the enemy power is reaching full throttle. The swiftness of the enemy infantry is in cadence with the repeated direct hits of the armor. The artillery positions of the 555th are pummeled, but three of the 105s continue to return fire until about 0900. The 90th Field Artillery Battalion (stationed west of the south flowing stream) had earlier sustained two direct hits on its 155 Howitzers; it is also under constant small-arms fire that pours in from the ridge just north of the besieged road. The effectiveness of the enemy fire is overwhelming, and the lopsided struggle approaches total massacre.

Once the sun comes up, the corsairs from the carriers arrive. Undaunted by lack of communication with the embattled ground troops, the Marine pilots modify their low level attack by following the arc of the tracer shells toward the enemy positions. Even this powerful strafing and rockets barrage fail to halt the North Koreans. The crewmen of the 4.2 inch mortar contingent are struck with blistering fire, which inflicts serious casualties; the crew must halt the return fire to seek temporary refuge. Other segments of the remnants of the artillery command are being squeezed between the proverbial rocks; unequivocally, it is the individual courage of the beleaguered troops which forestalls total disaster. Some additional help arrives in the form of air force F-51s which effectively strafe the enemy positions to bolster the perimeter. The 5th RCT Team's contingent of heavy machine guns is dug in strongly and not easily dislodged; their menacing return fire impedes the enemy on the ridge while the remnant convoy elements continue their desperate attempt to clear the pass. Meanwhile an enemy machine gun, positioned to the rear and slightly south of the road, begins firing for range, but some quick action by a U.S. truck driver takes out and kills the machinegunner before he scores any damage.

The pressure of the enemy fire is becoming unbearable in the valley. Individual acts of courage continue to hold back the onslaught. West of the southern stream at the positions of the 90th Field Artillery Battalion, the predawn assault had also arrived with a thunderous roar. Two of the howitzers are blown up and the fires ignite some ammunition trucks of Company A. Nonetheless the transformed artillerymen refuse to budge. Making good use of their foxholes, the newly christened infantrymen of the 90th Field Artillery Battalion handle the machine guns and rifles as if they were sharpshooters to convincingly repulse the North Korean attack against their perimeter. One resilient soldier, PFC William Baumgartner, commandeers a machine gun which is mounted on a truck; singlehandedly he pours fire upon the advancing enemy until an incoming round scores a direct hit that destroys his weapon. Baumgartner escapes death, but he loses consciousness and drops from the vehicle. When he revives, Baumgartner assumes the position of rifleman and rejoins the fight to hold the perimeter. But this too is futile as no reinforcements are yet on scene. By 0900 (12th), it becomes apparent that the artillery positions of the 90th Field Artillery are doomed.

Slightly east, the enemy has also plowed into the lines of Battery B, 159th Field Artillery Battalion, but this predawn strike consists of less velocity and tails off at about 0800. Nonetheless, its bite is deadly. Several Trucks laden with gasoline and ammunition are blown and still others remain nearby to jeopardize the unit. Several fearless drivers bolt to the surviving Trucks and recklessly speed the rolling ammunition and gasoline Vehicles from the area. Few Vehicles in the sector east of the bridge at Pongam-ni survive the enemy barrages.

Back at the pass, Col. Roelofs continues his dogged attempt to extricate the survivors from the nightmarish gulch, which is becoming an amphitheater of death and destruction. Roelofs has no way of communicating with the survivors at Pongam-ni; he relies solely on information from the men who are moving along the road toward the top of the ill-fated pass. By now, some reinforcements are en route, but it is too late. The melee becomes even more gruesome as the enemy draws the noose tightly. Planes continue to strafe the attackers, while the able survivors of the 90th Field Artillery Battalion band together; some provide cover fire while others place the wounded on the few remaining vehicles still able to escape from the valley. The 90th Field Artillery Battalion sustains ten dead, 60 wounded and about thirty men missing. The 555th Field Artillery, which had been swamped by the enemy at about 0900, is ravaged; it loses eight 105-mm howitzers, and on the following day (13th), eighty percent of its troops are absent from duty. The infantry ranks have also been decimated.

By this time, most of those able to escape the horror of the gulch have done so. Col. Roelofs is briefed on the debacle at the village by an artillery officer who is moving west with several other stragglers. The officer informs Roelofs that the survivors are escaping by whatever means possible, but he relates that all remaining vehicles are destroyed. Roelofs decides to make one last effort before writing off the trapped men. He leads a small contingent back toward the village.

Meanwhile, the final elements of the 1st Battalion, 5th RCT, accompanied by three tanks, approach the tip of the pass; this surprises Roelofs who had been unaware of any armor being in the village. One of the tanks is directed to pull over and wait in place, while the others continue moving west through the pass. Company A still has elements at the pass and Company B remains engaged in the hills north of it; Company C, which had been struck by the initial thrust of the attack, is now composed of only twenty-three troops who will straggle into the 1st Battalion positions while Roelofs is en route to the village.

The 4.2 inch mortar platoon and the heavy machine gun platoon which had peppered the enemy-held ridge to the north are each ordered to move west. Meanwhile, Col. Roelofs moves closer to the village, and he encounters the final vehicle moving west, a jeep driven by Chaplain Francis A. Kapica. The chaplain informs Col. Roelofs that he has recovered every wounded man he could locate, convincing Roelofs that his probe into the village is useless. Both vehicles then return to the pass, where Col. Roelofs boards the waiting tank for the trip west. The remnants of the 5th Regimental Combat Team move over the rim with Company A at the point, trailed by the survivors of Company C which had originally comprised 180 troops. Company B disengages from battle on the ridge and withdraws by platoon under cover from fire supplied by the three tanks, which form the rear of the column behind Company B. This, the final contingent, departs at about 1000.

There has been much activity in conjunction with the tragedy at Pongam-ni and the surrounding area, but no action taken had brought any relief to the men at the village. The 2nd Battalion is in motion and will arrive at the pass during the morning. However, the battle has subsided and only

a few stragglers move into the battalion positions near the pass; no troops reach 2nd Battalion positions subsequent to noon. Col. Throckmorton, believing that the North Koreans are maneuvering to attack the regimental command post at Pongam-ni, requests and receives permission to return there at 1500. His return is timely as an enemy attack will occur on the following day.

Other reinforcements are also be rushed to the area. General Barth, subsequent to an unsuccessful attempt to reach the embattled troops at the pass, informs General Kean of the crisis. General Kean immediately orders the 24th Regiment to dispatch its 3rd Battalion, with instructions to attack through the hills and get to Pongam-ni; Kean also contacts General Craig, USMC, and orders him to send a contingent of reinforcements (5th Marines) to reopen the middle road to the rear of the 5th RCT.

In the meantime, the 5th Marines, having bivouacked about four miles west of Kosong during the night of the 11th-12th, gets an early start on the 12th. The 1st Battalion moves in front of the 3rd Battalion, then pushes forward toward Chinju; it advances about eleven miles without incident and reaches a point less than five miles short of Sach'on by 1200. At about this time, word reaches the 5th Marines, instructing Lt. Col. George Newton to send the 3rd Battalion to aid the artillerymen of the 5th RCT at Pongam-ni. By about 1300, the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines is speeding toward Pongam-ni; the Marines are presently involved with the enemy near Kosong, but the 3rd Battalion detaches itself, reverses direction and arrives within three miles of Pongam-ni by 1400.

While the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines rushes to support the 5th RCT, the other Marine units continue to move toward the sounds of the guns. Advance elements of the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines reach Changchon (Changallon) at about 1300, not quite expecting an ambush, but the hills are infested with the enemy and the coiled trap is about to be sprung. Concealed at the village are units of the 2nd Battalion, N.K. 6th Division and contingents of the 83rd N.K. Motorized Regiment. The enemy, many of whom had felt the deadly sting of the Marines and their accompanying aircraft on the previous day, are apparently too anxious to waste the Marines. In haste, they commence fire on the lead jeeps of Company B's reconnaissance platoon, which alerts the entire command. Additional enemy fire also strikes the main body of Company B, which ignites heavy fighting. The Marines react instinctively; Pershing tanks rush to the front. Captain Tobin, B company commander, speeds the 3rd Platoon forward to take out the enemy who had fired upon the reconnaissance jeeps; they are entrenched on the hill. In synchronization, Company A attacks a hill to the right. Marine pilots that are overhead to cover the advance immediately dive their corsairs toward the hills; tenacious fire riddles the machine gun emplacements. And then in a flash, the planes spot an enemy convoy that is scurrying from the area and streaming hurriedly toward Sach'on. The aircraft pounce upon the convoy.

Meanwhile, Company A attacks to the right, while Company B peels off to the left and charges the entrenched enemy in the hills there. At a frenzied pace, the Marines charge the hills and take the fight to the North Koreans. On the hill to the north, the 3rd Platoon enjoys initial success and secures the hill, but the enemy regroups on the reverse slope and mounts a stiff counterattack that begins to shove the Marines back off the ridge. The 3rd Platoon gives ground, but then after losing about half the hill, it holds firmly. In conjunction, the hill to the left is seized by Company B and to the right, Hill 202 falls to Company A, at 1700 and 2000 respectively. Exhausted after the day-long fighting, the Marines, lacking food and water, sack-out to get some rest. The Marines sustain three killed and 13 wounded. Meanwhile, the North Koreans prepare to ignite another donnybrook while the Marines are sleeping.

Back at Pongam-ni, the 24th Regiment, which had been promised by General Kean on the previous day (11th), never arrived. Today the 3rd Battalion, 24th Regiment moves toward Pongam-ni, but while en route, it encounters an enemy force composed of about two companies. The 24th Regiment's two attacking companies, composed of a combined strength of more than two hundred troops, receive some sparse incoming mortar fire, but it apparently mortifies the troops. The two companies are soon reduced to about fifty percent of strength, and the situation deteriorates rapidly. By day's end the 3rd Battalion sustains a total of ten casualties and three of these are officers. The commanding officer (assumed command on the 9th of August), Lt. Col. John Corley, is an exceptional commander with much experience during World War II; therefore his ability is above reproach, not subject to some ongoing and subsequent complaints about white officers commanding Negro troops. Corley's regiment continues the attack toward the besieged 3rd Battalion, 24th Regiment, but on the following day (13th), each of the two attacking companies is amazingly composed of less than platoon strength, consisting of 20 and 35 troops respectively; the profuse disappearance of these battalion troops is not related to casualties, but rather massive dereliction of duty. Ultimately, the 24th Regimental attack comes to a halt less than three miles from the lost positions of the artillery.

Other attempts to get reinforcements to the area on the 12th also fall short. A platoon of the 72nd Engineer Combat Battalion sets out to secure the blocked road, but it too is ambushed; the mission fails. Meanwhile, the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines reaches Kogan-ni by about 1600. To the dismay of the enemy, the corsairs from the carriers, which have been adeptly covering the Marine advance, are also back on the scene. Marine artillery units deliver large quantities of potent howitzer shells into the enemy positions; the massive barrage, combined with the low level attacks of the corsairs, proclaims the arrival of the 5th Marines, which launches a dogged attack. By dusk, the heights east of Pongam-ni and north of the road are tucked under the wings of the 5th Marines. On the morning of the 13th, the 3rd Battalion launches another strong attack to attempt rescue of any remaining survivors of the Triple Nickel (555th) Field Artillery Battalion; the attack gains another ridge by 1000, and still the Marines have incurred no casualties, but before the attack is completed, new orders arrive, aborting the mission prematurely.

At this point, the Marines are virtually operating on two separate fronts; their regimental components are separated by about twenty-five rough miles. The practical introduction of a new war machine, the multi-use helicopter, greatly eases the command problems. General Craig utilizes the new craft to swing back-and-forth quickly to issue orders and maintain strict control of his divided command. At about midnight (12th-13th), Lt. Col. Newton is ordered to depart Changchon and return the 2nd and 3rd Battalions, 5th Marines to Chindong-ni, in an apparent response to another trouble spot along the Pusan Perimeter. The Marines who first encountered the Communists on August 7th have now driven the North Korean 6th Division back about 22 miles. However, the withdrawal is slightly more complicated than the Marines would prefer, caused partially by an apparent deadly mistake on Hill 202.

At Changchon, still on the 13th, the North Koreans commence a predawn attack against Company B's positions on Hill 202, catching some of the Marines off guard. The two-pronged assault strikes the flank and the front of the night-perimeter at 0445, but evidently, some of the sentries on the left flank had fallen asleep, permitting the charging North Koreans to startle the unsuspecting defenders and seize two machine guns in the process. Gruesome fighting occurs as the 3rd Platoon attempts to neutralize the attack, which now includes fire from their own guns. Lt. Col. Newton instructs the

3rd Platoon to hold on, as he proclaims that help is on the way. Artillery fire is thrown against the attackers with tremendous effectiveness. The Marines unleash some 3.5 rocket launchers and at dawn, the two captured guns are silenced. While the 3rd Platoon survivors hold their flank, Newton reels in the 1st and 2nd Platoons to form one rigid line. Incessant fighting continues for about one hour, but the combined tenacity and effective return fire offered by the Americans finally drive the enemy back to the bottom of the hill. Subsequent to the withdrawal of the North Koreans, Newton is ordered to pull out immediately and converge on the road for the trip back to Chindong-ni. The real estate rental expenses for the hill had been unnecessarily expensive, but the costly lesson hardens the battalion; twelve Marines are killed, eighteen are wounded and eight men are missing. Captain John Tobin, USMC, requests permission to send a detachment to bring out the bodies of the eight missing Marines, but the request is denied on the grounds that the regiment is behind schedule and must speed to Chindong-ni; the Marines are shattered by the unexpected decision to leave their dead buddies behind. Nonetheless, the painful march proceeds as the 1st and 2nd Battalions move out; tanks and engineers cover the rear. The Marines are initially distressed, but by the time they reach their destination, despite the arduous ordeal, they have regained their swagger.

Meanwhile, the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines, having gained the heights overlooking the seized positions of the artillery on the previous day, commences an attack on the 13th to attempt rescue of any surviving men of the 555th FAB who might still be near the bridge which crosses the southern stream at Pongam-ni. A helicopter transporting Col. Murray attempts to convey word that help is on the way, but enemy fire prevents him from getting close. The assaulting Marines advance to the hill overtop the objective, but the only troops they observe are enemy. The 3rd Battalion sets up for the attack, but in the meantime, orders arrive that bar further movement and instruct the battalion to move to Masan and rejoin the regiment. It is never determined whether or not troops of the artillery battalion had been at the bridge.

Further west, at Much'on'ni, the 35th Regiment and 3rd Battalion, 5th RCT advance from the road fork to Chinju Pass, but except for several patrols, the force halts there. During the afternoon (13th), the contingent begins to move east to returning to U.S. lines; the troops are exhausted. Along the return route military police are scheduled to guide it to particular areas of assembly, but confusion abounds and during the night, it winds up in a dry stream bed near Chindong'ni. Finally as daylight arrives on the 14th, the various troops that are scattered about are able to identify one another.

At Taejong-ni, the 2nd Battalion, 5th RCT, under Col. Throckmorton, intercepts and beats back an enemy attack during the morning, and subsequent to the encounter, it boards trucks, moves to the road fork and from there heads east to Masan. By the following day, Task Force Kean is back at its starting point. The Chinju Pass had not been seized as expected. But Eighth Army does achieve some levels of success. The western offensive puts a large indentation in the N.K. 6th Division, preventing it from overrunning the western flank, and the support provided by the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade acts as a B-12 shot with an iron supplement for the U. S. forces. The Marines, initially scoffed at when they debarked barrel-chested at Pusan in their usual cavalier fashion, have quickly paid their dues to earn the respect of the soldiers. And now, the determined attitude of the Marines begins to spread across the Pusan perimeter as the Eighth Army begins to hold the line during the crucial days to follow. Later, General Matthew Ridgway, USA, pays eloquent tribute to the Marines and their Sherman tanks, noting that their armor was up to the task against the

enemy T-34s, stating: "...THIS FORCE SAVED THE DAY IN THE SOUTH AND STOPPED THE ENEMY COLUMN IN ITS TRACKS." Ridgway also notes that the U.S. planes could not stop the advance because of the enemy resorting to night-marches. Task Force Kean will be disbanded on August 16th; it has inflicted serious casualties upon the enemy, but the operation also costs heavy U.S. casualties.

Subsequent to the week's fighting and the dissolving of Task Force Kean, the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade departs Chindong-ni on August 15th; it moves north by trains to Miryang to come under the jurisdiction of General Church's 24th Division. The Brigade is scheduled to participate in the Battle of the Naktong, the final natural barrier in front of the Pusan perimeter. In conjunction, the 5th Regimental Combat Team, the 24th Regiment and the 35th Regiment will deploy along the 25th Division's line on the southwest perimeter. The N.K. 6th Division deploys defensively in the mountains west of Masan and faces the 25th Division.

**August 8 1950 - (United States)** The Vessels that will transport the 1st Marine Division to the Far East begin to load today in San Diego; the operation is completed by the 22nd. Ninety stevedore crews are requested for the huge task, but only fifty-four crews are raised. The following vessels will handle the principal body of the 1st Marine Division: LSM 419; LST 845; USS *Noble* and USS *President Jackson* (Assault Transports); USS *General Buckner*, USS *General Weigel*, USS *Marine Phoenix*, USS *General Meigs* and USS *General Butner* (Transports) and the Cargo Vessels SS *African Patriot*, SS *Alma Victory*, SS *American Press*, SS *American Victory*, SS *Belgian Victory*, SS *Dolly Thurman*, SS *Green Bay Victory*, SS *Noonday*, SS *South Wind*, and the SS *Twin Falls Victory*. **(Pacific-Japan)** General MacArthur orders all available air support, including Seventh Fleet carriers, to focus their efforts on interdiction and close-air support missions until the 17th. The intent is to shore-up the Eighth Army while maintaining incessant pressure against the North Korean advance toward Pusan. Also, Lt.Gen. Stratemeyer directs Maj. Gen. Partridge to increase the amount of night-flights to fifty per night to increase the odds of spotting enemy columns which might be moving supplies. In other activity, General MacArthur again meets with Averell Harriman and Generals Ridgway and Norstad. MacArthur exudes confidence concerning victory over the Communists in Korea, and he gives Harriman's entourage the specifics on what he requires to bring forth a successful conclusion of the conflict. Included in the necessities are the infusion of troops from other Allied Nations and the speedy arrival of the U.S. 3rd Division in Japan to afford protection if the Russians should decide to attack there. In conjunction, the Korean crisis has required the commitment of the 7th Division (Inchon), thereby stripping Japan of its U.S. defensive force. Harriman and his entourage return to the States today, convinced that MacArthur's plan to invade Inchon will succeed. MacArthur has apparently convinced them that the Chinese will not invade Formosa; however, he adds his caveat that if the Communists do attack Formosa, he will take command there and deliver them a "crushing defeat." Also, the trip has created some quiet concerns about the leadership ability of General Walker; en route back to the States, Harriman and Norstad confer and they decide that General Ridgway should replace Walker. In turn, Ridgway believes that Walker should be replaced subsequent to his holding the line at the Pusan Perimeter, but Ridgway makes it clear that he is not seeking the job. **(Pacific-Korea) Southwestern Perimeter Pusan:** General Craig, USMC holds temporary command of all units in the vicinity of the Masan-Chinju axis, including the army operations along the front and those to the rear of TF Kean. Craig orders the 5th RCT to maintain its drive to seize Tosan to permit the Marine units to advance on the road to Sachon. **In the 5th RCT zone**, the Regiment resumes its push toward the

objective against even stronger resistance than it had encountered on the previous day. The 5th RCT makes some progress from its departure point near Singi, but it is hindered by the narrowness of the MSR and the huge traffic jams along it. In addition, the advance is further slowed due to tenacious fighting above it on Hills 255 and 342. **In the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines zone**, the 1st Battalion lacks a definitive objective, but it is to drive down the south fork of the Tosan junction in accordance with the attack strategy of TF Kean. Newton's 1st Battalion descends from its positions on Hill 99 on schedule at 0600, but the unit gets bogged down due to the giant traffic jam on the bridges along the Main Supply Route directly under Hill 99. The immobilized army vehicles clog the road and army ground troops overwhelm the area, compelling the Marines to remain in place. Col. Newton is ordered by General Craig to suspend the advance until the snafu is cleared. Meanwhile, Company B, 1st Battalion, commanded by Captain Tobin, is ordered to return to the heights from where it had come, while the 1st Battalion awaits (three miles from its departure point) orders to move. Eventually, the crammed road is opened and word arrives for the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines to begin its drive. Col. Newton, walking in advance of the column, arrives at the command post of the 5th RCT, about one and one-half miles ahead, perched on a small slope between the villages of Singi and Oryong; he is informed by the army regimental commander, Col. Godwin Ordway, that troops of the 5th RCT have been dispersed into the heights that surround Tosan. Newton is also informed that the rice paddies separating the CP from the hill are inundated with enemy troops, which in effect have isolated the companies in the high ground. Meanwhile, as Newton and Ordway confer, the leading contingents of the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines catch up with Newton, but again the battalion stalls. At about the same time, a soggy and disgruntled army staff sergeant reaches the area and confirms the news. He informs the officers that the troops south of the road junction near Hill 308 are engaged in a severe fire fight. The sergeant adds that his trip back to headquarters had been completed by crawling nearly the entire distance to evade the ferocious enemy machine gun fire, which is covering the huge rice paddy between the CP and the hill. Meanwhile, General Kean spots Lt. Col. Murray, CO, 5th Marines as his vehicle passes while en route from Chindong-ni to the front; Kean halts Murray and orders him to execute relief of the 1st Battalion, 5th RCT. The 1st Battalion, 5th Marines withdraws to the fringes of Sangnyong to an assembly area under the western spur of Hill 342; it is here that Col. Murray receives instructions to relieve the 1st Bn., 5th RCT at its positions southwest of Tosan at midnight Aug. 8th, and then the Marines are to terminate the resistance. The orders specify that the relief force is to be at the 5th RCT CP by 2300 where it will be joined by guides who will lead the contingent to Hill 308. The Marine relief force arrives at the command post at 2200, but no guides are there. And the Marines find that the army troops (1st, Bn. 5th RCT) are prematurely withdrawing from the hill. Nonetheless, the Marines move through Singi and continue heading west until they halt at the MSR, about one-half mile southwest of Tosan; here, they encounter soldiers heading down a small path leading from the hill to the supply route. Col. Newton is informed that his Marines should use the identical trail to reach the hill, but they must pause until the soldiers pass, which slows the march. Slightly after midnight, the Marine column reinitiates its advance with two South Korean civilian guides who had arrived belatedly. The Marines are totally unfamiliar with the terrain, therefore they apply caution as they plod along the grimy dike, hoping to avoid a misstep which will surely catapult them into the stench and filth of the rice paddy. The anxious trek along the slim and slippery 1,200 yard trail is arduous. The column advances in single file without incident until it reaches Hill 308. The rear elements of the battalion finally arrive on the hill at dawn (9th). Also, in the 5th Marines sector at Hill 342, the soldiers (5th RCT) and Marines (3rd Bn., 5th Marines)

are struck slightly before dawn with a flurry of short-range rifle and machine gun fire. The fire is delivered from close-range by a contingent of enemy troops who have silently crept through the darkness to reach positions near the crest. The Marines and soldiers aggressively return fire, and they further liven things up by tossing grenades down the slopes. The sting of the attack is blunted, but one group encroaches near enough to spring an attack against the northeastern edge of the triangular defense. The penetration ignites immediate heated hand-to-hand combat. The North Koreans make no headway, rather they are harshly pushed back down the ragged slope. One Marine and several soldiers are wounded while repulsing the pre-dawn assault, and one Marine is slain by a combination of bayonet and gunshot wounds. At sunrise, Company D, under Capt. Finn, departs its positions under the crest. The three platoons move side-by-side and ascend the southern slope against minimal resistance, but once they reach the peak, they come under fierce fire. North Koreans, holding positions on the northern half of the hill, saturate the summit with fire. Nevertheless, Company D executes the relief and takes responsibility for the crest; Cahill's Platoon and the remnants of the 5th RCT contingent descend the crest, battered but victorious. The North Korean units operating against Hill 342 are contingents of the 13th and 15th Regiments, N.K. 6th Division (according to documents recovered from bodies of dead enemy troops); the estimate of strength against Hill 342 (Yaban-san) is between 500-600 men. Lt. Cahill's 1st Platoon (Company G), 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines sustains six men killed and twelve wounded during the battle. Company D, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines attempts to tighten the positions on the crest of Hill 342, but the Communist troops that remain clustered on the upper slopes maintain a steady stream of fire. During the final climb and the fight which continues to ensue beyond the relief operation, Company D sustains casualties, including the deaths of Lieutenants Oakley and Reid. Capt. Finn braves the fire to recover Reid's body; he crawls forward, but enemy rounds also strike him to inflict a severe head wound and a wound to the shoulder. Finn, temporarily nearly blind and approaching unconsciousness from his wounds, crawls back to the lines to receive medical aid. Later, while he is being taken down the hill for more medical attention, Finn encounters Lt. Hanifin who is moving up the slope. Hanifin is informed by Capt. Finn that he is now in command of D Company. Once at the crest, Lt. Hanifin quickly regroups his new command, with little time to spare. The North Koreans afford the exhausted Marines no rest; rather they launch another assault to seize the summit, but it is repulsed and the enemy sustains heavy casualties. Company D sustains six men killed and twenty-five wounded. At about 1130, while the struggle for the crest (342) subsides, Lt. Hanifin receives a call from Col. Roise; during the beginning of the conversation, Roise gets a quick picture, as Lt. Hanifin collapses from heat exhaustion. The problem of command is quickly rectified. Master Sergeant Harold Reeves (nearly 30 years service) assumes temporary command of Company D's three rifle platoons, and 2nd Lt. Leroy Wirth, a forward observer for the 1st Battalion, 11th Marines, assumes temporary command of the supporting units, including the planes of MAG-33, which circle above the positions. Soon after, Captain Andrew Zimmer (Regimental Asst. S-3) is appointed new commanding officer of Company D. This is the final major threat against Hill 342, but Zimmer's unit incurs some additional casualties, the majority of which occur while attempts are made to reel in supplies which miss the mark when airdropped. In the meantime, while the contest continues on Hill 342, Major Walter Gall, CO, 2nd battalion weapons company, dispatches a small patrol to destroy the machine gun positions in Tokkong-ni; these had initially been ignored by Company D. The patrol sustains three casualties, but it does not quiet the guns. First Lt. Ira T. Carr then turns the 81-mm guns toward the village and commences a powerful barrage which terminates the guns of Tokkong-ni. In other related activity, the 2nd Battalion, 24th

Regiment is scheduled to relieve the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines at Hill 342, but it is held up near Chindong-ni. In conjunction, Company E, 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines, operating on the western spur of Hill 342, advances several hundred yards and establishes positions there. Meanwhile, back at 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines zone, troops of Company G deployed on Hill 255 have been harassed by snipers throughout the night, but at dawn, four enemy troops are spotted within 100 yards of their positions; all four troops die suddenly. Also, slightly after dawn on Hill 255, Marines of Company H peer down the Haman Road and observe a column of troops that are casually ascending the slope moving toward a high peak beyond the plateau. Initially the Marines believe that the troops are ROKs and take no action. Capt. Fegan observes the troops positioning themselves, and he orders his troops to stand ready, and with no time to spare. The unidentified troops commence firing, ending the mystery; it is enemy fire. The attack is part of the major enemy offensive and it interferes with TF Kean's jump-off. By seizing the high ground here, the enemy is able to sever the Masan-Chindong-ni portion of the Main Supply Route, which hinders the ground troops from receiving supplies and reinforcements. In related activity, word of the plight of the 2nd Battalion, 24th Regiment north of Chindong-ni reaches Colonel Taplett. Once informed of the enemy on the peak, he directs Capt. Fegan to commit Company H to exterminate the enemy position. Artillery preparatory fire and coordinated air strikes fail to dislodge the enemy, as the troops are safely huddled within the natural protective shield of the rocky crag. Second Lt. John O. Williams' 1st Platoon moves toward the peak under cover fire of the remainder of the company. Williams' platoon reaches a point within thirty yards of the objective, but heavy machine gun fire grids the area and a huge amount of grenades are tossed down the slope, halting progress. An attempt is made to shift the attack toward the enemy's left flank; one fire team advances to positions just under the enemy, but it is repulsed. Lt. Williams is ordered to pull back to regroup. In the meantime, the 3rd Platoon is ordered by Fegan to move through the positions of the 1st Platoon and continue the assault, but it ignores the order and fails to advance. Sensing that the 3rd Platoon had merely been stunned by the failure of the 1st Platoon, he moves quickly to restore confidence by taking personal command of the 3rd Platoon and of the attack. With Fegan in command, the 3rd Platoon advances in wedge formation, maneuvering while under continuous heavy fire. Staff Sgt. John Wheatley, Sergeant Edward Barrett and several others become wounded; Barrett, debilitated by two wounds and lying in open ground, is carried to safety by Fegan. Meanwhile, the platoon gnaws forward and then, with a sudden thrust, the Marines lunge onto the peak; one contingent, led by Corporal Melvin James, strikes from the left flank, while another attack, stimulated by the spirited actions of Tech. Sgt. Ray Morgan and PFC Donald Terrio, plow into the enemy's right flank; Morgan and Terrio had each destroyed a separate enemy machine gun and its crew. At this point, the contest becomes bloodier as the Marines encounter an enemy force who desires a fight to the death; the Marines oblige and move from foxhole-to-foxhole until the crest falls and the annihilation is complete. Company H then moves north about 200 yards where the heights terminate with a perpendicular drop; the three platoons pause there and gaze across the chasm toward Hill 255, while awaiting orders. In the meantime, the North Koreans continue to lay artillery and mortar fire on the captured positions. Company H sustains six men killed and thirty-two wounded during the attack. Col. Taplett directs it to hold in place for the night; Marine artillery and planes from MAG-33 support Company H during its bivouac. The mortar platoon of the 1st Battalion, 11th Marines and the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines keep their mortars firing throughout the night (8th-9th); the shells carpet the entire battalion front with an iron belt to keep the enemy sedated. In related activity, during Company H's attack, Company G on Hill 255 observes enemy reinforcements as

they travel along Haman road, north of Hill 99; the column traces the steps of the contingent which had attempted to strike earlier at dawn. Bolstered by its supporting units which provide effective interdiction fire, the column halts abruptly; the surviving troops disperse hurriedly and sprint back toward their original positions.

**August 9 1950 -(United States)** The 1st Marine Division issues Operation Order No. 1-50, which authorizes the embarkation of the division (minus the brigade and one RCT) to the Far East, with orders to report to the CinCFE upon arrival. By today, Camp Pendleton contains 17,162 Marines who have arrived from across the country, and they are eligible for transfer to the 1st Marine Division. **(Pacific-Korea)** Southwestern Perimeter Pusan: In the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines zone, dawn arrives just as the trailing contingents of the battalion complete the night-long journey from the 5th RCT command post near Singi. Col. Murray orders the 1st Battalion to continue the attack and secure Hill 308. The tired Marines move out advancing southwest, ascending 1,000 feet from the base and 2,000 yards south. Company B, commanded by Captain Tobin, spearheads the attack; it encounters only sniper fire during the climb and the summit is secured at 1200. The weary battalion sustains many victims from the heat; about half of Companies A and B become sick. Troops are sent to find water to help alleviate the problem. In the meantime, new orders arrive from Col. Murray which direct the weary contingent to descend the hill and reinitiate the attack by driving toward Paedun-ni. Temporarily, Col. Newton instructs weakened Companies A and B to remain on the crest, while he organizes the advance column, using headquarters and weapons troops. Newton, reaching the low ground northwest of the hill, inspects his map (Japanese) and it displays only one of the two roads that lead to Paedun-ni, from Oso-ri, a village about 600 yards south of Tosan. However, Col. Murray's map depicts the two roads; the road (south) is ragged and the other (west) smooth, but Murray's map wrongly identifies the rough route as improved. He specifically instructs Newton to use the supposed "improved" road. The column proceeds beyond Taesil and then it encounters mines scattered about the road. Company A Engineers rush to the area from Chindong-ni and remove the obstacles which are found to be U.S. antitank mines that probably fell off an Army vehicle. At about the same time, Col. Murray arrives on the scene, and still using his mismarked map, he informs Newton that his column is on the wrong road. Newton is told to turn the column on the narrow road and return to the intersection, compounding the comedy of errors. The vehicles and baffled troops reach the intersection back at Oso-ri, but the column stalls. General Craig arrives and he becomes extremely unhappy with the confusion. Eventually, the column begins advancing on the southern route which curves around the base of Hill 308, and by this time it is joined by Companies A and B. About one mile out, the advance elements encounter a lone enemy machine gun position entrenched in a hut about mid-point on the curve; the position is destroyed by ground troops, accompanied by a Rocket Launcher. The column reinitiates its advance, and without incident it reaches a 400-foot pass leading between Hills 308 and 190. As dusk approaches, the battalion is ordered to establish defensive night positions; it stands about two miles south of the Tosan departure point. Meanwhile, General Craig prepares a night-attack for the brigade, based in part on his assumption that the lack of opposition against the advance of the 1st Battalion is a signal that the enemy is not expecting a fight. Craig orders the 5th Marines to seize Paedun-ni prior to dawn on the 10th. In the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines sector, the Communists have sustained severe casualties while unsuccessfully attempting to seize Hill 342 from Company D. The area is now tranquil, except for some ineffectual long-range machine gun and antitank fire that occurs during the morning hours; the bulk of the enemy is retiring northward. Company D, having sustained eight men killed and twenty-eight wounded during the contest for the hill, is relieved

during the afternoon by the 2nd Battalion, 24th Regiment. Estimates vary as to the number of enemy dead, purported to be troops of the N.K. 13th and 15th Regiments, N.K. 6th Division, according to papers discovered among the bodies. Lt. Cahill, CO, Company D, estimates 150 enemy killed, and he notes on the report that the figure is "conservative." The 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines establishes the number of enemy killed at 400, subsequent to its battle. The actual count of enemy dead inflicted by army and Marine troops and supporting units, according to Marine records, "probably lies somewhere between the two figures." In other activity, at 0825, Marine artillery and planes lambaste North Korean positions on Hill 255, to loosen resistance for Company H, 3rd Battalion. The Marine aircraft deliver the first close-support dosage of napalm during the conflict. The supporting artillery fire and the powerful strike by the Marine planes bring huge dividends; less than five minutes before Captain Fegan's troops throw the final punch to knock out the enemy positions, word is received from an airborne tactical air coordinator that the preparatory strikes have rendered the objective benign. Fegan's troops sprint the remaining distance to the peak against inconsequential resistance and discover only the remains of two decimated machine guns and a few enemy dead. The strategy introduced to terminate the enemy threat to the Main Supply Route had included a Marine drive along Hill 255 to grid line 1350 and a coordinated attack, north of the border line, by army units pushing from Masan. At 1125, Company H, 3rd Bn., 5th Marines makes visual contact with approaching elements of the 24th Regiment. The Marine 3rd Battalion sustains 16 killed and 36 wounded while clearing the MSR, and the majority of casualties occurs in Fegan's Company H, reducing its effectiveness by 25 percent. In other activity, General Craig, USMC, relinquishes his control of all troops in the area at 1700; in conjunction, the road junction is secure, permitting both the army and Marine units to resume progress toward the objective. The 2nd Battalion, subsequent to its relief on Hill 342 by the 24th Regiment, moves from Sangnyong-ni to Hill 308, arriving there at 2100. At 0010 (10th), the battalion heads south toward the new MSR to participate in the night-assault against Paedun-ni. Fifteen minutes later, it moves through the lines of the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines at a pass between Hills 190 and 308. The 3rd Battalion remains in its sector to execute some security details until relieved by Army units; it joins the brigade on the following morning. Also, the three batteries (four guns each) of the 1st Bn. (reinforced), 5th Marines which had relieved the 8th Field Artillery Battalion at Chindong-ni (6th) has played a vital support role for much of the ground fighting between the 7th-9th. In addition, the observation planes of VMO-6 has enhanced the artillery's success by its effective target spotting, with emphasis being placed on enemy mortar positions. The crews of the batteries of the 1st Battalion, 11th Marines quickly adjust to the perplexing combat around Chindong-ni. The batteries form an arc to intercept any threat, singular or plural and regardless of from which direction it comes. Usually, one battery peers north while two others face east and west respectively. Later, Colonel Wood, referring to the experience gained, offers his opinion: "I THINK THAT THIS IS ONE OF THE MOST IMPORTANT LESSONS WE LEARNED IN FIGHTING INFILTRATING TROOPS. ARTILLERY MUST BE ABLE AND ALWAYS PREPARED TO FIRE IN ANY DIRECTION ON A MOMENT'S NOTICE."

**August 10 1950 - (United States)** The Joint Chiefs of Staff authorize a third regiment for the 1st Marine Division; the 7th Marines are activated, with orders to sail for the Far East by September 3rd. The gutting of the Armed Forces by the Truman Administration and Congress is now paying poor dividends for the nation; the shortage of Marines is too large, compelling the Corps to order a battalion of Marines, serving in the Mediterranean with the Sixth Fleet, to join the division in the Far East. In conjunction, Washington also has dangerously stripped the U.S. Navy; about one-third

of the Ships required to transport the Amphibious Force to Korea, ironically, will be Japanese Vessels manned by Japanese Sailors, due to the lack of American vessels. Previously, many of the Japanese vessels were U.S. ships. Some of these vessels are permeated with an atrocious smell due to hauling fish; it causes many of the troops to become sick during the upcoming journey. **(Pacific-Japan)** General MacArthur issues a statement to respond to the speculative news stories streaming out of Tokyo concerning Ambassador Sebald being left out of a recent meeting with Kai-shek; he reiterates that the meeting was of a military nature which did not require the Ambassador. MacArthur also reprimands what he calls the anonymous sources that he claims are "10,000 miles away from the actual events." The statement in part: **"THIS VISIT HAS BEEN MALICIOUSLY MISREPRESENTED TO THE PUBLIC BY THOSE WHO INVARIABLY IN THE PAST HAVE PROPAGANDIZED A POLICY OF DEFEATISM AND APPEASEMENT IN THE PACIFIC..."** **(Pacific-Korea)** Planes from the USS *Philippine Sea* attack enemy targets; during one raid an enemy barracks is damaged. The USS *Valley Forge* also catapults its planes to strike enemy targets. One contingent, composed of four F4Us commanded by Lt. Clarence E. Smith, coordinates with a mosquito plane near Chinju and successfully blows a bridge near the village. Following further instructions from the mosquito plane, the aircraft head north of the village and locate concealed vehicles and an oil depot; lightning fast passes and accurate rocket and machine gun fire decimate the area. **Southwestern Perimeter Pusan: In the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade sector:** The brigade had been released from its mop-up operations in the area around Chindong-ni at 1600 on the previous night, making the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines available for the proposed night-attack against Paedun-ni. At 0115, the 2nd Battalion advances through the positions of the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines. The overtired contingent treks through the darkness, supported by spearheading tanks, and it arrives near the objective without incident at about 0500. But a mishap occurs as the point tank of Lt. William Pomeroy's platoon inadvertently smashes into a concrete bridge and becomes jammed, forbidding passage. Unable to extricate the M-26, the trailing tank attempts to take a circuitous route adjacent to the bridge, but mid-stream, it loses a track which forces the column to stall for two additional hours. In the meantime, South Korean laborers build a makeshift bypass to provide passage for the lighter vehicles that are attached to the attack group. Heavy equipment is brought up to fabricate a crossing for the remainder of the tanks and the other heavy vehicles. The 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines arrives at Paedon-ni at 0800 and discovers it unoccupied. By 0930, the column is back on the road heading toward Kosong, but many of the heavier vehicles still struggle for progress at the stream; this impedes Murray's plan to ferry the troops by truck. The column advances, lacking air and artillery support, but it expects only minimal resistance. During the eight-mile march, General Craig arrives overhead in his helicopter; after it sets down, he expresses his displeasure with the tardiness of the advance and he orders Murray to speed up the march. Four jeeps and five 2-1/2 ton trucks are procured. They roar to the head of the column to load the advance troops; the 1st and 2nd Platoons, Company D, an assault squad, the 60-mm mortars and one machine gun section become the vanguard. The advance unit is to occupy the town and establish a defense strategy while it awaits the arrival of the main body. Still lacking air cover and artillery support, the forward elements advance along the road heading toward the unfamiliar and elevated narrow 1,000 foot Taedabok Pass, two and one-half miles southwest of Paedon-ni. From the pass, the column must still venture around a dangerously tight curve, near the village of Pugok. It veers left as it nudges the base of a huge hill which dominates the entire pass. The convoy moves through the pass without incident, providing some added confidence that the final leg of the journey might remain uncontested. Then suddenly, at 1500, the first jeep of the

reconnaissance unit pulls into position, nearly parallel to the village of Pugok, and it is struck by an ambush; concealed machine guns unleash a swift hurricane of fire that catapults down from the ominous hill to riddle the troops of Company D. The Marines safely scurry for cover, but as they bolt from the vehicles, a shell from an antitank gun swoops down with a thunderous roar and scores a direct hit on one of the lead jeeps. The small detachment then moves back to join the remainder of the company. Capt. Zimmer considers his options; he directs his 1st Platoon to maneuver to the right side of the road, then climb to positions about half-way through the pass to secure the high ground there. Zimmer hopes the action will help neutralize the enemy fire until the full strength of the battalion arrives. The ground troops move swiftly and reach the assigned positions without resistance. They immediately establish positions and return fire. By this time, Company B has eliminated several small groups of the enemy who had been posted on both sides of the road at the entrance to the pass and arrives to join the fire fight. In the meantime, Zimmer discovers the position of the menacing antitank gun. Mortar fire then pulverizes it, but in the process, the mortar ammunition becomes exhausted. Zimmer postpones any further advance until the brigade's heavy guns arrive. At 1630, two tanks pull up. They promptly return fire, and the powerful blasts of their 90-mm shells pummel the enemy positions. Marine aircraft also arrive to further augment the battalion; the combined strength apparently convinces the North Koreans to scatter. With the elimination of the enemy's advance positions, the advance resumes, but other enemy troops lurk nearby. During the interruption, the 3rd Battalion, led by Col. Taplett, arrives at Paedun-ni from Chindong-ni; it joins the column. Col. Murray directs Taplett to prepare to run his 3rd Battalion through the 2nd Battalion positions and maintain the attack. The 3rd Battalion advances to the pass, to reach positions just behind the 2nd Battalion which had moved by foot. Col. Murray and Col. Taplett, unable to locate Col. Roise (2nd Battalion Cmmdr.), move to the high ground to scrutinize the terrain and attempt to locate the enemy positions. Kosong, about five miles distant, is clearly visible from their vantage point, but the precise positions of the enemy cannot be determined. Nonetheless, the 3rd Battalion launches the attack; some elements (Company G) have already crossed the departure line and are poised to strike at the hill, precisely at the bend in the road. However, the uncertainty of the location of the entrenched enemy continues to raise concern; Major McNeely (S-3) and a small detachment volunteer to advance in a jeep to gain the needed intelligence. At 1730, the volunteers jump off, but almost immediately, Col. Taplett, from his OP in the heights on the left side of the road, spots danger awaiting the Patrol. Urgently he radios word to Lt. Bohn instructing him to halt the jeep, but it is too late. The speeding jeep takes the curve and as the patrol disappears around the bend, the foreboding sounds of heavy enemy small-arms and machine gun fire reverberate alarmingly, signaling the probability of fateful news. Company G bolts forward to reach the beleaguered patrol. Westerman's platoon takes the point, with Lt. Duncan's platoon trailing, but the fierce ring of fire halts progress. Desperate to reach McNeely's detachment, Lt. Bohn orders Duncan's platoon to sweep wide to the right, then open the throttle. Despite heavy incoming fire, the gutsy envelopment succeeds. Duncan's command swiftly swoops onto the summit and it violently evicts the enemy occupants. Westerman's platoon follows shortly thereafter. Once on the summit, Westerman glances down; he discovers the grim sight of McNeely's ravaged jeep. Close by, the five Marines lay utterly still, under and to the immediate rear of the decimated jeep. He disregards furious fire and defiantly sprints to the ambushed detachment; he successfully drags McNeely (mortally wounded) back to the lines. Still two killed and two severely wounded men lie helplessly near the jeep, but intense enemy fire becomes impenetrable and bars additional rescue attempts. Meanwhile, Company G resumes its attack and

immediately comes under a wall of relentless fire that originates from two concealed enemy machine guns, emplaced at the remote end of the curve. Company H bolsters the attack force; it pushes on the left side of the road and captures the hill opposite Bohn's Company G. Nonetheless, the enemy machine guns continue their deadly fire until finally, just before dark, they are permanently silenced. Col. Murray, at 2015, orders the 3rd Battalion to establish night defenses to ensure the retention of the two captured hills. An anguishing decision is reached concerning the fate of the two surviving men; convinced that the enemy has laid a cunning night-ambush, the mission is postponed until dawn (10th). With the exception of some sporadic rifle fire along the 700 yard front of the 3rd Battalion, the night of the 9th-10th remains peaceful. Also, in accordance with the orders of General Craig, the attack is to be reinitiated at dawn on the following day.

**August 11 1950 (Pacific-Korea)** As an added precaution to ensure the safety of Pusan, General Walker has recently received instructions from General MacArthur concerning a particular second line of defense to be drawn closer to Pusan. MacArthur wants it established in the event that the enemy is not halted at the Naktong. Today, General Walker directs Brigadier General Garrison Davidson to draw plans; Davidson, an engineer, studies the selected terrain and he suggests that the line be drawn tighter to Pusan because of more tenable defensive ground. Rather than modify MacArthur's plan, the original lines are drawn. Another man, Brigadier General Crump Garvin, and the 2nd Logistical Command at Pusan begin work on what becomes the Davidson Line; it originates eight miles north of Ulsan on the east coast at Sodong-ni and spreads west through the heights to a spot northeast of Miryang. Continuing, the line sweeps down a ridge east of Muan-ni and then it swerves south crossing the Naktong and terminates in the heights northeast of Masan. The complications of forming a defensive line vary from location to location, and this one is no different; Davidson prefers to strip the front area of houses to give the defenders a finer line of fire against the approaching enemy, but the idea is discarded by General Walker. On September 1st, General Davidson reports to the divisional headquarters of the 24th Division to assume the position of Asst. division commander, but work on the line continues in his absence. **Southwestern Perimeter Pusan: In the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade sector:** During the early morning hours a thick fog creeps into the 3rd Battalion perimeter while Company G prepares to attack. It will advance from its recently captured positions in the high ground beyond Pugok to strike Kosong. In the meantime, at the first glimpse of dawn, amidst the thick fog, a Communist contingent composed of about one platoon strikes against Company G. The attempt to evict the Marines and retake the crest ignites a wild close-in struggle, but the Marines resort to their bayonets and bare knuckles to eliminate the threat. The donnybrook intensifies as the enemy troops lunge toward the outpost of Lt. Bohn which stands midway along the line. The Marines tighten the defense and sharpen their throwing arms; they toss grenades into the midst of the attackers while fending off enemy grenades. Suddenly, one of the enemy grenades explodes and wounds Lt. Bohn, but it is not debilitating; he retains control of the troops. Meanwhile, Sgt. Charles Kurtz, standing next to Bohn, ignores incoming grenades and the whizzing burst of burp gun fire, while he communicates with the support units to get some assistance. Instant mortar fire arrives to squelch the attack; the timely 60-mm mortars sedate the enemy. Then the ground troops charge and culminate the thirty minutes of fury by shoving the surviving enemy troops down the slope. In conjunction, the men of Company G also reach and rescue the two surviving members of Major McNeeley's patrol. Following the skirmish, the brigade reinitiates its attack toward Kosong; the 3rd Battalion acts as vanguard. The column advances quickly, with the 3rd Platoon (Lt. John Counselman) Company G, at the point, but it comes to a screeching halt about one mile out when the terrain to its front appears

peculiar. The forward elements of the 3rd Platoon (led by Corporal Raymond Giaquinto) are accompanied by flank guards that lurk astride the halted vehicles; instinctively, the guards sprint forward on their respective sides of the MSR and form a lethal loop around the suspicious ground, which harbors a Machine Gun and five enemy troops. Corporal Giaquinto's contingent creates a three-pronged terminator force which springs a vicious and swift charge. The fleeting strike eliminates five defenders, and the perched machine gun never gets off a round. Soon after, the forward elements eliminate another trio of enemy obstacles by combining direct assaults and envelopment tactics. By 1000, the lead components of the brigade arrive at a bridge north of the objective. Prior to crashing into Kosong, the 3rd Battalion enlists the bellowing guns of the 1st Battalion, 11th Marines by requesting a preparatory bombardment to soften the resistance. Slightly before noon, the 105s roar. Streams of arcing shells initiate a demolition derby. The barrage delivers a sledge-hammer pounding which blows some buildings into instantaneous debris and splinters, much of which swirls into the sky. The quivering bombardment inspires the occupying forces of the N.K. 83rd Motorcycle Regiment to evacuate. While the 105s maintain a steady string of deadly fire, about 100 enemy vehicles begin the desperate escape, but the retreating regiment receives no reprieve. The ill-fated Convoy scoots through the flying dust and rubble, escaping the town only to encounter more firepower. TACP had requested air support, and as the convoy exits the town, the skies directly above it are consumed with a vociferous gathering of four Marine aircraft. The planes had just catapulted from the USS *Badoeng Strait* in response to a call for a search-and-destroy mission beyond the town. The imminent bonanza is totally unanticipated by the brigade, but nonetheless greatly appreciated. The fortuitous arrival of VMF-33 Planes, led by Major Lund, is a terrifying omen for the contingents of the motorcycle regiment and a spectacle to behold for the diving Pilots. The howling corsairs swoop down to their usual dangerously low level and then they trigger a relentless strafing run which rivets the entire column. The convoy, without choice, screeches to a halt which causes a chain reaction pile-up and a chaotic situation. The vehicles either smash into each other or careen wildly into the gutters astride the road. Meanwhile, the enemy troops, having experienced the equivalent of being heatedly spun in a barrel while being pelted with a hammer, bolt for cover, away from the burning vehicles. Their thirst for destruction unquenched, the ravaging corsairs of Major Arnold Lund continue to spew fire into the enemy; the planes pummel specific targets with rockets and 20-mm shells to the consternation of the beleaguered enemy. However, the North Koreans resist as best they can. Return small-arms fire damages two of the aircraft which compels the distressed pilots to attempt emergency landings. Captain Vivian Moses, shot down and rescued (unharmed) by helicopter from behind the enemy's lines on the previous day, is again shot down; he attempts to land his disabled plane in enemy territory. Upon impact, Moses is thrown from the cockpit; he loses consciousness upon impact and succumbs by drowning in the rice paddy within minutes before a rescuing helicopter arrives to save him. Captain Moses becomes the first fatality of VMF-33. The other downed pilot, Lt. Doyle Cole, ditches his plane in the sea. Luckily, General Craig passes over in his helicopter to inspect the area; Craig operates the helicopter's hoist and pulls Cole to safety. Meanwhile, additional Planes from VMF-323 arrive to relieve the initial attack force and continue to maul the paralyzed column; this second wave of Marine corsairs is bolstered by air force F-51s, which cheerfully join the hunt dubbed "THE KOSONG TURKEY SHOOT." Following the decimation of the enemy convoy, the 3rd Battalion attacks Kosong; Company H leaps through Company G's positions along the MSR and enters Kosong against light opposition. Capt. Fegan neutralizes the defenders with one rifle platoon and two supporting tanks. Fegan then pivots to the right and drives south toward Sachon while his

other two platoons maintain their southern movement toward a hill in front of Sunam-dong. In the meantime, Lt. Bohn's Company G, 3rd Battalion passes through the area just west of the Kosong to assault Hill 88, defended by about 100 Communist troops. Along the route of advance, Company G encounters an obstinate enemy pocket; the obstacle is eliminated, but several casualties are sustained. Company H, awaiting orders, is poised to strike Hill 88; while standing by, the ground troops observe planes from MAG-33 soar overhead and rock the summit with a blazing attack in coordination with the guns of the 1st Battalion, 11th Marines. Upon cessation of the air and artillery strikes, Company H advances, and to its surprise, against an enemy that has vanished; the hill is secured at 1330. Apparently the defenders had become demoralized by the thunderclap which preceded the Marines' climb to the crest. While Companies G and H clear their respective areas of responsibility, General Craig arrives in Kosong. He witnesses a brief duel; a small detachment of enemy snipers are perched in and about the school house adjoining the school yard where Col. Taplett is establishing his battalion CP. Unexpectedly some threatening but ineffective shots ring out. In spontaneous response, sniper teams of Taplett's 3rd Battalion snap into action. Following the resounding crackle of shells fired by sharpshooters, the snipers suddenly expire. The 3rd Battalion is ordered by General Craig to abort any additional action around Kosong and at once to turn its attention toward Sachon. Company G descends Hill 88, which affords a reprieve for any North Korean troops that remain in the heights above Sunam-dong. Company H assembles on the western fringe of the town and prepares to spearhead the attack. Meanwhile, an ambulance speeds toward the area where the casualties from the earlier skirmish at Hill 88 are waiting, but after it cruises through the positions of Company H, it misses a southward turn. Inadvertently the medics continue toward Sachon. The ambulance races directly into the sights of two enemy antitank guns, both entrenched on the blind side of a curve in the road. The medical jeep, conspicuously marked, is decimated when it rounds the bend; the driver, Corpsman William Anderson, is killed by the barrage and two other troops are catapulted from the wreckage. Capt. Fegan, Company H, commanding officer moves to the curve, bringing two M-26 tanks with him; Sgt. Johnnie Cottrel swivels the turret toward the obstacles, then he unleashes three 90-mm avenging rounds which obliterate the final enemy blocking position and clear the route to Sachon. Along the way, the ground troops acquire a special attitude toward VMF-33 and the air force F-51s, which have cluttered the road with smoldering enemy Vehicles left in the wake of the hasty retreat from Kosong. Momentarily, the Marines pause and stand in awe, as they glance at the ugly sight of the massive damage inflicted by the Aircraft. The abandoned enemy Vehicles have become bizarre contortions of scrap metal. However, some of the enemy vehicles, including jeeps and motorcycles with side-cars, remain unscathed and in mint condition. These evoke some slight merry-making during an otherwise dead-serious ordeal. A quick inspection determines that Lend-Lease to the Russians during World War II is again haunting American troops; the captured Communist jeeps are manufactured in Russia and their Ford-type engines are quite familiar to the Marines. The normally stern NCOs crack a smile and allow troop discipline to dissipate while they fool around as if in an amusement park back in the states; they drive the smacking new motorcycles and the equally fresh Russian jeeps around VMF-33's recently created obstacle course. The savored moments are quickly over, and the brigade resumes the attack. The 3rd Battalion remains out front, trailed by the 2nd Battalion, but the entire column retains the umbrella support of VMF-323 and the much appreciated light observation planes which sprout off optimistic reports on the enemy's movement. The reports indicate a rapid retirement toward Sachon, with the Marines on their heels. By 1800, after advancing several miles, the lead M-26 tanks and elements of Company H approach

a concealed enemy machine gun nest which lurks lazily in a valley to the left; unexpectedly, the machine gun fire rakes the advance troops and wounds three Marines. The tanks move up to extinguish the threat. They uncork their 50-caliber machine guns and destroy the nest and its crew. At this time, the column halts for the night. Col. Taplett's 3rd Battalion spreads out and occupies two hills, both slightly north of the road. In conjunction, because an amphibious operation had been considered possible during the advance that followed the capture of Kosong, the LST QO119 is nearby. It is operated by Team No. 1, Company A, 1st Shore Party Battalion and it has been shadowing the column. The vessel is anchored off the fishing village of Tanghong-ni; the LST also doubles as a hospital vessel for the brigade, and under the circumstances, which include extreme heat as well as battle casualties, Company C, 1st Medical Battalion receives little rest.

**August 12 1950 -(Pacific-Japan)** General MacArthur issues CINCFE Operation Plan 100-B; the plan lists the Inchon-Seoul vicinity as the target for the amphibious invasion Force; in three days, MacArthur will establish Headquarters for the operation. **(Pacific-Korea) Southwest Perimeter Pusan; In the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade area:** General Craig establishes his command post at Kosong at 0800. At 1130, General Kean, commanding general 25th Division, contacts Craig by phone and instructs him to rush a reinforced battalion to the rear to support the 24th Regiment at Chindong-ni where the enemy has severed the MSR and captured artillery pieces. Craig dispatches the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines by 1300. By 1400, he ponders the risk, considering that his brigade is down to two battalions and Sachon must still be taken. **In other activity,** at 0630, there is a change of the guard as the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines, commanded by Lt. Col. George Newton, eases through the positions of the 3rd Battalion to attack and secure Sachon; the column is spearheaded by a 15-man contingent of the recon company. It is an unsettling march through an eerie tranquility which exhibits no visible signs of the enemy. The circumstances raise some grave concern for the seasoned veterans who recall similar experiences from World War II. The advance continues uncontested for more than four hours. Nevertheless, the tension continues to increase. The vanguard gains eleven miles and approaches Sachon, but still, the mysterious and somber bone-chilling silence signals imminent danger. The Recon point men, led by Captain Kenneth Houghton, near a suspicious curve about four miles from the objective at about noon. Company B, 1st Battalion trails closely behind; its 1st Platoon is on the point, nosing just ahead of two tanks. The 2nd and 3rd Platoons follow, and they are trailed by a caboose of three additional tanks and the remainder of the battalion. At about 1200, the restless vanguard swings around the foreboding curve that leads into Changchon, an innocent-looking village of thatched huts. In a flash, the uncanny aura is penetrated and the queer silence ends, proving that the fateful intuition of the NCOs. Two enemy soldiers are spotted by the Marines. They commence firing and ignite a huge powder keg. The hills on both sides of the road are infested with enemy troops that intended to snarl the entire column by permitting it to move within range before snapping the lethal trap. But the early detection of the enemy prematurely trips the wire. The hills become electrified as clanging machine guns lay down an enfilade that sprays the Marines from both flanks and from the front. The reconnaissance troops return fire while awaiting reinforcements. Meanwhile, the artillery contingents begin to establish positions, but their immediate help is unavailable. Captain Tobin speeds the 1st Platoon to bolster the recon troops; three Marines become casualties in the process. Then some heavier persuaders advance; three tanks move out, trailed by the 2nd Platoon to further augment the point troops. The tanks confine their movement to the road to avoid becoming bogged down in the soggy ground, but still they provide additional shields of formidable armor for the

infantry. Nonetheless, the enemy fire increases. The 3rd Platoon and headquarters troops, still to the rear, also come under severe fire from Hill 250 on the right side of the road. Col. Newton calls in air support to deliver some killing power on Hill 250; Corsairs arrive and oblige by pounding the slope. Following cessation of the air strike, Lt. Cowling leads his 3rd Platoon to seize the heights. In conjunction, Company A rushes a rifle company and one machine gun section to assist Company B's 3rd Platoon. Colonel Newton directs the reinforcements from Able Company to secure Hill 301, which also lies to the right of the road. While the 1st Battalion engages the enemy, the 2nd Battalion deploys to protect the remainder of the brigade's column. In the meantime, the corsairs expend much of their fuel, and Col. Newton is informed that two of the planes will be available for only five additional minutes. Newton then suggests that the corsairs sweep the road between Sachon and Changchon in search of prey; the fiery winged stallions zoom above the road and catch another enemy convoy; the planes take the opportunity to offer a repeat performance of the Kosong incident. The five remaining minutes of fuel is sufficient to propel some of the enemy into eternity; following the deadly strafing runs, the small enemy convoy resembles a scale-model replica of the iron rubble which lay in waste outside of Kosong, complete with swirling smoke and twisted metal. While the planes, artillery and mortar units plaster Hill 301, the advancing 3rd Platoon, Company B gets caught in a cross-fire by surviving enemy machine guns and small-arms fire. It is compelled to withdraw; one man is killed and two become wounded. Nearby, reinforcements from Company A seize Hill 301 without incident, but other hellish fighting continues without pause. The 3rd Platoon, Company B moves to Hill 301 and Capt. Stephens leads the balance of his Company A to take the heights on the right side of the road. However, heavy enemy resistance remains on Hill 250; Marine artillerymen begin pumping iron, catapulting 113 rounds into it. And the stubborn hill is further saturated by another air strike, compliments of corsairs; the hostile machine gun fire on Hill 250 is terminated, and Company B's right flank is secured. Still, the left flank of B Company is ripe with vicious fire as the 1st and 2nd Platoons maintain their positions in the gutters along the road; the platoons return fire while awaiting relief by the big guns. The Marine artillery flexes its muscle in synchronization with the free swinging corsairs which deliver three additional strikes. The incessant pounding eliminates the enemy positions one at a time. The 1st and 2nd Platoons bolt from the gutters and join the attack; they dart across a rice paddy to complete the destruction of the enemy on the hill. Nearby, an enemy contingent of thirty-nine troops is detected by Lt. Taylor as they advance along the reverse slope toward the summit of Hill 202; Sgt. F. J. Lischeski rushes forward with a squad to ensure that the enemy receives a warm greeting. The troops disperse along the rim of the ridge, and Lischeski then cautions them to hold their fire until they get close. The Marines stare impatiently as the enemy climbs the rugged hill. When they reach a point about 75 yards from the crest, the Marine riflemen fire in unison; the entire enemy unit is wiped out, except for one officer who later succumbs en route to the command post. Dusk then settles over the area and Company B is able to complete its movement to the heights on the left side of the highway to establish a night perimeter. Marine losses during the skirmishing are three killed and thirteen wounded. The 1st Battalion expects to resume the attack to take Sachon on the 13th, but new orders arrive at midnight (12th-13th) which direct the battalion to form for movement to reinforce army units in another area. The decision does not sit well with the Marines who are anxious to finish the job, having been convinced that their swift advance has "broken the back" of the enemy opposition in the vicinity of Sachon. Seemingly, their feelings emerge from the first paragraph of the order to pull back. The brigade withdrawal order in part: **"...FOLLOWING BRIGADE RAPID ADVANCE FROM CHINDONG-NI TO SACHON IN WHICH THE BRIGADE**

**ATTACKED, OVERCAME, AND PURSUED THE ENEMY, THE 25TH INFANTRY DIVISION HAS DIRECTED THE WITHDRAWAL OF THIS BRIGADE IN ORDER TO HOLD A DEFENSIVE POSITION AND MOP UP ENEMY RESISTANCE IN THE ZONE OF ACTION OF ELEMENTS OF THE 25TH DIVISION."** Subsequently, it becomes known that the decision to pull back the Marines was based on the enemy's penetration of the Naktong. This had compelled Eighth Army to redeploy the Marines to prepare to launch a counterattack. Meanwhile, in the 24th Regiment sector, shortly after 1330, Lt. Col. Stewart, USMC Brigade (G-3) and Lt. Col. Taplett arrive by helicopter to meet a liaison officer at a bridge specified by General Kean; however, the army jeep scheduled to meet them is not in the area. While landing, the Marines spot a camouflaged army tank and inquire of the crew about the jeep, but they have no knowledge. The two Marine officers check out the area where the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines will be arriving. Eventually, they find a line and reach the 25th Division CP by phone, whereby they are instructed to determine how to eliminate the enemy in the area. They are also directed to establish security for the remaining artillery unit (one Battery 159th FAB, attached to 25th Division). Colonels Stewart and Taplett also survey the terrain from the helicopter, and then they make a quick sweep over the MSR to locate the advancing 3rd Battalion. After returning, Stewart and Taplett meet Col. John Daly, CO, 555th FAB, who informs them that on the previous night, Battery C of his outfit and two additional batteries of the 90th FAB had been overwhelmed by the enemy, rendering them destroyed as fighting units. Continuing, Col. Daly gives the Marine officers the approximate positions of the enemy, and in fact, he enhances their strategy by relaying the criticalness of the defenses. It is decided to seize two dominant ridges lying along the MSR. But the full picture remains somewhat unclear as the confounding day continues to unfold. In essence, the Marines, engaged in an attack at Changchon, had been ordered to move 25 miles to the rear to seize a ridge which is supposed to be secure. At about the time the objectives are selected, the 3rd Battalion arrives by vehicle. Col. Taplett is supposed to report to General Barth, ADC, 25th Division upon his arrival, but the general is still en route. Taplett decides to immediately launch the attack; he concludes that if he waits for the general, it would be too dark to initiate an attack. Without orders, Colonel Daly provides the attacking Marines with a fifteen-minute preparatory artillery barrage, and Taplett procures a squad of corsairs that carry partial bomb-loads, including napalm. Army intelligence estimates place the number of enemy troops operating in the area at between 2,000-2,500. Following the artillery bombardment and the air strikes, Company H leads the attack. It encounters only minimal resistance, and the ridge falls without sustaining any casualties. In conjunction, only one enemy casualty is discovered; he had apparently succumbed while fighting a rear-action during the withdrawal. General Barth arrives at 1900 to assume overall command; he inquires of Taplett as to when his Marines would be prepared to launch the attack. In response, Taplett informs General Barth that the first objective had already been secured. General Barth congratulates Col. Taplett on his quick action and he concurs with the further plan of attack, which calls for the seizure of the next ridge on the following morning. Later, Battery C, 11th Marines arrives to bolster the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines, and General Barth further strengthens the unit by committing three army tanks and several M-44 armored personnel carriers to the assault. Col. Taplett and his Marines are extremely pleased with the cooperation of the army and particularly with General Barth. **Naktong Bulge Perimeter:** East of Yongsan, the enemy again resorts to ambushing conspicuously marked U.S. ambulances; prior to daylight, Col. Hill is informed that a few ambulances and several trucks had been attacked. Despite the shortages of manpower at Cloverleaf, Col. Hill orders Company F, 9th Regiment to move from there and destroy the road

blockage; the unit is accompanied by a mortar platoon and the mission is further supplemented as guns of the 15th Field Artillery Battalion are adjusted and fired toward the trouble spot along the road. Nevertheless, the roadblock remains operational into the following day, and the enemy continues to increase the pressure to strangle Yongsan, which is close to being encircled. General Walker again arrives by air. He confers with General Church, CO, 24th Division and he discovers no change for the better. But the three battered regiments maintain ferocious tenacity in their respective sectors in a whole-hearted attempt to forestall a massive breakthrough. Walker is well aware that the 27th Regiment, 25th Division is en route from the south, but its two attacking battalions are befuddled by throngs of disoriented civilians who clog the route of advance and hinder the rescue operation. Walker, in yet another desperate maneuver, orders General Keiser (2nd Division) to dispatch one battalion of the 23rd Regiment to augment the 24th Division; Col. Paul Freeman, Commander 23rd Regiment directs his 1st Battalion, commanded by Col. Claire Hutchin, to execute the mission (commences on 13th). Also, during the effort to subdue the enemy's eastward advance and to preserve Yongsan, the 27th Regiment, 25th Division is attached to Church's 24th Division. In conjunction, a conglomeration of army troops that ranges from cooks and clerks to reconnaissance troops is fabricated into a 135-man outfit; it is placed under the command of Captain George Hafemen, Headquarters Company commander. The improvised unit speeds from Miryang to plug the passage along the Yongsan-Miryang Road just outside Simgong-ni at the pass. The modified riflemen accompanied by two tanks reach the destination and soon become engaged in a bitter skirmish. Hafemen's team repels repeated enemy attacks thanks in part to the support of armored cars which shuttle water, food and ammunition from Miryang. Meanwhile, the 2nd Battalion, 27th Regiment, which had resecured the bridge over the Naktong at Namji-ri, is back on the assault; it advances north and engages heavily fortified enemy troops who are armed with mortars and machine guns as well as the usual small-arms. The 2nd Battalion attacks and a day-long struggle ensues. Aided by the added punch of supporting aircraft, it convincingly pushes the enemy from their positions; about 100 enemy troops are killed, but the number of wounded is indeterminable. In addition, twelve machine guns and several antitank "Buffalo Rifles" are included with the cache of abandoned equipment. On the following day, the 2nd Battalion, under Col. Murch, resumes its northward drive to clear the sector south of Yongsan. The ongoing fighting remains heavy, and neither side receives the advantage. The North Koreans have not been thrown back across the Naktong, and in turn, they have been unable to take Yongsan. Meanwhile, the publicized prediction by the North Korean leader that all of Korea would be united under their Communist banner by August 15th seems much less probable now, with the rekindled fighting spirit of the U.S. soldiers. **Central Front Taegu Pusan Perimeter: In the 1st Cavalry Division sector**, the N.K. 10th Division had begun crossing the Naktong on the previous night. At 0300 today, its 25th Regiment starts to cross the river about fourteen miles southwest of Taegu near the damaged bridge. The area is defended by the 2nd Battalion, 7th Cavalry Regiment, commanded by Lt. Col. Gilman A. Huff, and the battalion is fortified by the preregistered guns of the 77th Field Artillery Battalion, commanded by Lt. Col. William A. Harris; the artillery guards the crossing site and the Koryong-Taegu Road. About 300 to 400 soldiers cross and advance to the village of Wich'on'dong by about dawn. The contingent is apparently en route to secure the heights east of Yongp'o from where it can provide cover fire for the main body of the division, which is scheduled to follow. At the village, Company H, 7th Cavalry intercepts the advance guard and a grueling battle erupts; the Communists and Company H become locked in a tight-fisted, close-quartered struggle. The enemy unleashes a tenacious attack; it commits automatic weapons and grenades into

the slug-fest which blow a hole into the advance positions of the cavalry. The situation at first appears grave as the enemy lunges further and shreds the mortar positions and the heavy machine gun emplacements. However, the gargantuan guns of the artillery accelerate their powerful barrage, and at about the same time, planes arrive to deliver more destructive fire. The combined deadly fire quickly diminishes the strength of the attack and gives the cavalry new momentum. By 0900, the 2nd Battalion has halted the advance in its tracks and it has revoked the enemy's progress. With the blazing artillery at their backs and the attacking planes overhead, the 2nd Battalion shoves the enemy backward and chases them through Yongp'o; the survivors scatter and attempt to retrace their steps back to the bridge and beyond to the safety of their lines. Although the cavalry has turned back the initial attack, it realizes that it must still brace for the primary attack; it will begin during the morning hours of the 14th. **(Inchon vicinity)** A group of sailors (Underwater Demolition Team) and Marines (Amphibious Scouts, Reconnaissance Company, 1st Marine Division) debark the USS *Horace A. Bass* south of Inchon to execute a special operation; the troops, without sustaining any casualties, launch several raids between today and the 16th; the team wrecks three tunnels and destroys two bridges. Following the mission, the unit is retrieved by the navy. **(Atlantic-Mediterranean)** The contingent of the 6th Marines, FMFLant, serving with the Sixth Fleet, is ordered to Korea. The command post aboard the USS *Yellowstone* receives urgent special orders from the chief of naval operations that direct the 6th Marines to embark for the Far East; additional contingents will embark from San Diego. The orders circumvent the commandant Marine Corps and Sixth Fleet due to the compelling circumstances in Korea; however, the commandant, General Cates, is with Admiral Sherman while the orders are being drawn. The 6th Marines embark on the USS *Bexar*, which will arrive in Suda Bay on the 14th (evening); the unit will mold the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, 1st Marine Division, due to be activated on August 17th. In conjunction, neither the men nor the officers are aware of the still secret plans to invade Inchon; rather they are of the belief that the unit will be committed as an amphibious assault team of a U.S. task force.

**August 13 1950 -(Pacific-Korea) Southwest Perimeter Pusan:** The 1st Provisional Marine Brigade, acting upon orders from the 25th Division, prepares to withdraw from the vicinity of Changchon and Sachon. The individual units are informed of the departure at 0400 (OP Order 1050). Stretched left to right along Hill 202 are the 3rd, 1st and 2nd Platoons, Company B, 1st Battalion; the formation is tight and the men remain alert. Meanwhile, silently the enemy has crept forward to infiltrate and assume concealed positions poised for a pre-dawn assault. At 0450, enemy machine gun fire breaks the calm. With instant response, Marine 60-mm mortar illuminating shells streak skyward and expose an enemy concentration on the right flank near the 2nd Platoon, but this incursion is a ruse to take the focus off the primary assault. It commences at 0455 when three enemy flares are propelled into the sky, two red and one green. They ignite a furious night-attack against the left flank. The enemy hurls a powerful assault against the 3rd Platoon and the machine gun section; the latter is annihilated, except for two Marines. With the absence of communications, confusion emerges. The radios had been destroyed earlier while crossing the rice paddies and trudging through the mud. Now their phones become inoperable, probably due to the severing of the wires. In the midst of the feverishly-pitched battle, two runners attempt to reach the besieged contingents, but both are cut down by enemy fire. The fighting continues to intensify and at close-quarters. Shots and grenades are rapidly exchanged during the donnybrook, and the enemy captures two Machine Guns and turns their fire on the Marines. In the meantime, a third messenger breaches

the fire and reaches the left flank; he directs the survivors to pull back and reform with the 1st Platoon, but the captured machine guns hinder this action. The gruesome exchange draws more blood and without reprieve, but the survivors hold. Finally, with a hint of daylight, the 3.5" rocket launchers destroy the two captured machine guns. But the situation doesn't automatically get better. Enemy fire in turn knocks out the radio of the artillery's forward observer, and then the mortars on the left flank expend their ammunition. At this point the enemy pivots to divide and conquer. They drive a sharp wedge between the 1st and 2nd Platoons, but raking return fire inflicts severe casualties. At 0630, Company B is ordered to disengage and descend to the command post to join the battalion. Meanwhile, Capt. Tobin tries using the radios of Company A to get support from artillery and mortar fire to buy time while he reforms for attack. The 1st and 3rd Platoons are ordered to converge on the 2nd Platoon positions on the right flank. At about the same time, the enemy withdraws toward the lower sections of the contested hill. In the interim, the enemy small-arms fire subsides, but mortars continue to sprinkle the area. By 0815, using stiff discipline, the individual units have descended the hill. Almost in cadence, a group of soaring corsairs arrives; they deliver a mighty blow that culminates the action and effectively tranquilizes the enemy fire. The struggle on Hill 202 takes the lives of twelve Marines and wounds eighteen others; eight men are missing in action. Prior to the descent, Capt. Tobin had requested permission to launch a final attack to regain the missing troops, but his request is denied on the basis that the withdrawal is behind schedule. Tobin had been convinced that a final attack would regain the lost ground in about one hour and they could have reclaimed their dead. The denial of permission to retrieve their dead buddies is not well received by the troops. Subsequently, when the ground is retaken during September, the bodies of seven of the Marines are discovered. Much later, during November of 1953, the final missing Marine on Hill 202 is declared dead. The brigade moves out, with its engineers and armor protecting the rear. The engineers are ordered to lay mines and demolish some bridges and culverts. In one instance, the engineers of the 1st Platoon, Company A, 1st Engineer Bn. lays a minefield on a road which leads from Samchonpo toward the right flank of the brigade; the mission is accomplished. However, Lt. Nicholas Canzonna, the platoon leader, discovers to his embarrassment, that about one-half of the mines had contained the wrong type fuses, which render them impotent. Apparently, it didn't matter as the enemy chose not to approach them. **In the 25th Division sector**, 24th Regiment zone, the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines reinitiates its attack to seize the ridges that dominate the MSR, and it encounters only slight resistance. By 1000, the two attacking rifle companies own the real estate on both ridge lines and the price is right; no casualties are incurred. However, no enemy casualties are inflicted, which adds more mystery to the episode of returning 25 miles to attack the ridge. Nonetheless, the mission of the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines affords the 25th Division an opportunity to extricate survivors of the trapped artillery units that had previously been overrun. In conjunction, the cunning enemy still permeates the area. Lt. Col. Murray, CO, 5th Marines arrives over a trapped contingent of survivors from the 555th FAB and he attempts to deliver a message, but his helicopter nearly falls prey to a waiting ambush; it escapes damage or worse by a thin line and by the excellent skill of the Pilot. In related activity, Col. Taplett prepares to launch another assault to finish his mission by recapturing the lost artillery pieces, but the brigade receives new orders to withdraw and the mission is left undone. The artillery pieces are not regained; rather, air strikes are called in to demolish them, subsequent to the relief of the Marine Brigade.

**August 15 1950 -(Pacific-Japan)** General MacArthur, alarmed by high casualty rates in the U.S. Divisions operating in Korea, directs General Walker to initiate the merging of South Korean

soldiers into U.S. units. The instructions dictate that each U.S. company and battery be augmented by 100 South Korean troops; this transfer of troops will effect each of the four U.S. divisions already in Korea and the U.S. 7th Division which is still in Japan. The South Koreans are to remain under the jurisdiction of the South Korean Army and receive their pay from it, but the troops will be accommodated with U.S. rations. The projected amount of South Korean troops to be integrated into the U.S. units is about 30,000-40,000 men. Some U.S. contingents have already begun using South Koreans within their ranks on an unofficial basis. In other activity, Headquarters is established by MacArthur for the impending Amphibious Operation; to retain secrecy the group is selected from GHQ FEC Staff and it will be designated Special Planning Staff, GHQ. **(Pacific-Korea) Southwest Perimeter Pusan:** The U.S. 25th Division, subsequent to the detachment of the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade from Task Force Kean, is ordered by General Walker to deploy west of Masan along the southern flank of the perimeter. The redeployment places it east of Chinju in the most defensible terrain below Chinju Pass. The terrain west of Chindong-ni, the left flank of the division, is guarded by Throckmorton's 5th Regimental Combat Team. It spreads out northward in front of the Chindong-ni coastal road to Fox Hill (Yaban-san), but from there, a dangerous hole exists between it and the 24th Regiment which holds the division's central zone. This gap causes General Kean distress; Col. Throckmorton dispatches a contingent of about 100 South Korean troops and several U.S. officers to plug the hole. When the troops reach the designated objective, Sobuk-san, they find that the 2,000-foot ridge is already occupied by an enemy force which had arrived there during the first week in August. Sobuk-san is one of two strategic ridges that dominate this area west of Masan and it affords an excellent set of vantage points to guard the Komam-ni (Saga)-Haman-Chindong-ni Road. The enemy on Sobuk-san forbids any advance and forces the South Koreans to withdraw. General Kean then directs the 5th RCT to seize the ridge; however, the initial delay in occupying the ridge makes this mission unfeasible. Back in the 25th Division sector, the 2nd Battalion, 24th Regiment begins to redeploy west of Masan. It disengages with the enemy at Obong-san and moves slightly west to Battle Mountain (Hill 665). The 2nd Battalion spreads out there and on a ridge west of Haman; it will be bolstered by the 3rd Battalion. Battle Mountain (Hill 665) assumes several descriptive aliases, including the printable ones: Old Baldy, Bloody Knob and Napalm Hill. Between Battle Mountain and P'ilbong, the ridge line slims down to a stony ridge dubbed Rocky Crags, and north of Battle Mountain, there is more infamous ground which abruptly declines and forms two extended subsidiary ridges of the Sobuk-san mountain mass; the eastern ridge is nicknamed Green Peak. The 24th Regiment deploys on the east side of Battle Mountain, opposite the enemy-held western slope. Meanwhile, the 35th Regiment, led by Col. Fisher, takes the northern extension of the 25th Division's perimeter; the defense line links with the 24th Division sector. It covers the Sibidang-Komam-ni vicinity and stretches north for about 26,000 yards to the bank of the Nam River, and from there, it leads east along the water to its confluence with the Naktong River. The sector immediately west of Komam-ni is manned by the 1st Battalion, under Lt. Col. Bernard Teeter. The 2nd Battalion, led by Major Robert Woolfolk, disperses along the Nam. The 3rd Battalion stands in reserve at Chirwon, along the Masan-Chinju Road, from where it can be propelled to a trouble spot in either Battalion zone. The Masan-Chinju Highway, the Nam River corridor, and the Railroad Lines fall within the zone of the 35th Regiment. The 25th Division completes its deployment by today. In contrast, the N.K. 6th Division is establishing defensive positions west of Masan, while it forms for an attack to crush the U.N. southwest perimeter; strung from south to north, the N.K. 14th, 15th and 13th Regiments face the U.S. 25th Division. In conjunction, the Communists have been pressing South Koreans into their ranks to fill out their

regiments, but these recent conscriptors, having been scooped up in the vicinity of Seoul, are mostly reluctant warriors. By today, about 2,000 of these replacement troops are funneled into the N.K. 6th Division. At Chinju, the untried recruits are issued grenades, but they receive no weapons. Rather, they are instructed to procure their weapons and ammunition by initiating scavenger hunts on the battlefield to retrieve weapons from their dead and wounded comrades. By the 21st, the N.K. 6th Division receives about 2,500 additional South Korean replacement troops, expanding its strength to about 8,500 troops. In other activity, Communist reinforcements arrive in southwestern Korea from Seoul to bolster the N.K. 6th Division; elements of the N.K. 7th Division (1st and 3rd Regiments) arrive at Chinju and the port town of Yosu is occupied by the 2nd Regiment. **Naktong Bulge Perimeter Pusan:** The weather hovering over the lower Naktong remains terrible, and the cloud-filled skies cancel all Air support for the troops of Task Force Hill. Nevertheless, it attacks to rid Cloverleaf and the Obong-ni Ridge vicinity of resistance. Task Force Hill advances, but obstinate resistance holds it at bay. Both sides sustain more heavy casualties. In one raucous engagement on Obong-ni, elements of the 34th Regiment attack the enemy on a small knoll; one platoon from A Company, composed of 35 men, dashes across a slim saddle and encroaches the enemy positions on the reverse slope to ignite a ferocious battle in which Grenades are tossed from close-range and Rifle fire is rapidly exchanged from distances of 25-30 feet. The two sides bloody each other terribly, and within one hour, 25 men of the original platoon are wounded or killed. As the survivors, including eleven able troops, begin to withdraw from the brutal firefight, PFC Edward O. Cleaborn apparently becomes angered by the tenacious enemy fire; he lags behind, hoping to get off another round, but before he pulls the trigger, an enemy shell kills him. The ten surviving troops move back, transporting nine wounded men with them. Before the wounded can be treated by medics, three of them die. The situation remains grave as not only has the enemy rebuffed Task Force Hill, but the latter is extremely hard pressed to hold its lines. Its strength is diminished and it lacks reinforcements. A decision, made jointly by General Church and Col. Hill, changes the tone of battle from offense to defense to preserve the remaining ground. However, Eighth Army, which up to now has been unwilling to believe that the entire N.K. 4th Division had crossed the Naktong, is finally convinced; it agrees to throw more weight into the battle to achieve victory. Before noon, General Walker, slightly beside himself, arrives at General Church's Headquarters with a conspicuous belligerent attitude and tells General Church: **"I AM GOING TO GIVE YOU THE MARINE BRIGADE. I WANT THIS SITUATION CLEANED UP AND QUICK."** At about noon, Walker returns to Taegu to firm up his plan to reinforce the 24th Division. Within one hour, Walker dispatches Col. William Collier to Miryang to inform General Craig, USMC of the plan. In conjunction, the 1st Marine Provisional Brigade had been in Masan subsequent to its recently concluded participation with Task Force Kean along the southwestern perimeter, and it is just setting up its bivouac. Nevertheless, the Marines break camp and move to Yongsan, having at least enjoyed their first hot meal since arriving in Korea. The 1st Marine Provisional Brigade is attached to the 24th Division. General Church, CO, 24th Division and General Craig, Marine Brigade Commander confer on strategy, and it is decided that the entire 24th Division (reinforced) will launch a counterattack against the enemy bridgehead at 0800, August 17th; the attached 1st Provisional Marine Brigade will attack the North Korean positions east of the Naktong. **Central Front Taegu Pusan Perimeter: In the 1st Cavalry Division sector: In the 5th Cavalry zone** near Hill 303, about fifty enemy troops, supported by two Tanks, advance south, trailed by another contingent; the predawn movement is observed by Company G. Soon after, nearby Company F comes under attack; fearing encirclement it withdraws south. By 0830, the area around Hill 303

becomes untenable; Company G and its supporting mortar platoon from Company H are surrounded. The commanding officer of Company G informs the mortar platoon leader by phone that a contingent of about sixty South Korean troops are rushing to assist. Soon after, slightly after eating their breakfast, elements of a Korean unit are observed moving up the slope. The mortarmen, thinking it is the reinforcements, send out a patrol; it is greeted with automatic weapons fire. Despite the fire, the platoon leader remains convinced that the approaching troops are friendly. He gives no order to fire. Suddenly, it is too late, as the Communists are on both sides of their foxholes and at arms length. While burp guns are jabbed into the sides of the Americans, they are plucked from their foxholes and seized. U.S. Reinforcements, unaware of the capitulation, rush to their aid, but enemy fire halts the column, composed of Company B, 5th Cavalry and some supporting tanks. In the meantime, Company G manages to hold the hill throughout the day, against a force estimated to be building to a Battalion, comprising about 700 troops. As the struggle for Hill 303 continues, confusion begins to establish a hold within portions of the 5th Cavalry, but both the 1st and 2nd Battalions still prepare to rescue isolated G Company and its supporting mortarmen from Company H. The captured men of Company H, however, are taken from the hill and placed in a nearby orchard where they are tied and bound by contingents of the 4th Company, 2nd Battalion, 206th Regiment, N.K. 105th Armored Division, and some elements of the N.K. 3rd Division. On the following day, the U.S. prisoners are transferred to several different places, but the Americans remain unaware of their fate. In other activity, twenty-one T-34 replacement tanks arrive to strengthen the enemy attack against Taegu; the armor is parceled out to the various divisions. Also, the South Korean Army establishes another training center, the Ground General School, located at Tongnae in the vicinity of Pusan; it will accept its first class on August 23rd, and its primary function is to train replacement 1st Lieutenants for the S.K. Infantry at a rate of about 250 men per week.

**August 16 1950 -(United States)** The advance group of the 1st Marine Division departs the West Coast at 1400 by air for Japan; the contingent includes twelve officers and six enlisted men who are to initiate planning for the invasion of Inchon. General Smith remains at Camp Pendleton for two additional days. In other activity, the remaining elements of the 1st Marine Air Wing at El Toro receive orders to move to the Far East; the units are 1.) Wing Headquarters Squadron 1; 2.) MAG-12, composed of Headquarters Squadron 12, Service Squadron 12, VMF-212, VMF 312, VMF(N)-542 and the rear echelon of VMF(N)-5113. Embarkation by sea begins on August 24th. **(Pacific-Korea)** The USS *Philippine Sea* launches Planes which pummel nine separate enemy held villages and several groves; the raids, carried out by eight skyraiders and eight F4Us also damage a pair of enemy trucks. In conjunction, additional planes attached to the USS *Valley Forge*, raid other enemy concentrations; five AD skyraiders hit one village, inflicting damage, and they also destroy nine vehicles, while damaging three additional trucks; another group, composed of four F4Us, attacks four villages in the vicinity of Taegu and they also strike a supply depot and gasoline dump, setting both afire. In other activity, the 72nd Tank Battalion, an organic unit of the 2nd Infantry Division, arrives at Pusan from the United States; it will join the division, further bolstering its armor which already comprises two regimental tank companies (6th Medium Tank Bn.). **Southwestern Perimeter Pusan: In the 25th Division sector:** A group of S.K. Police, sent by General Kean, arrives at the 24th Regiment positions; Col. Champney, the regimental commander orders them to deploy in an existing gap at P'il-bong, between the 5th RCT and the lines of the 24th Regiment. On the 18th, the Communists launch an attack against the 24th Regiment. **Naktong Bulge Perimeter**

**Pusan:** At Obong-ni and Cloverleaf, the close-quartered fighting continues to rage. The exhausted men of Task Force Hill eagerly await reinforcements. The enemy makes progress in the 9th RCT zone on Cloverleaf, killing some of the defenders in their foxholes, then setting up positions in the captured ground. At Ohang Hill, vicious combat erupts. The enemy uses its usual envelopment tactics to surround the 19th and 34th Regiments, but through some tough resistance and persistence, the two endangered regiments evade encirclement. In the newly-expanded 24th Division area at Hill 409, near Hyongp'ung, the division receives orders slightly after midnight (15th-16th) to mount an attack. Ironically, the enemy could have moved from the hill and caused tremendous damage at the already strained American positions at the bulge, but the N.K. Regiment remains fixed. To thwart any attempt by the Communists to drive south from the hill, reinforcements (1st Battalion, 23rd Regiment) arrive to fortify the 24th Division. Also, the Carriers *Badoeng Strait* and *Sicily* move to positions from which their planes can support the attack. General Church intends to launch a coordinated assault, committing the Marines against Obong-ni Ridge and the 9th RCT against Cloverleaf. General Craig, using his helicopter, scouts the battlefield. Later, Craig drops in at the 9th RCT command post to meet with Col. Hill. Col. Murray also arrives at the front to discuss the attack strategy with Hill. While there, Murray notes the thinning lines of the battle-weary troops on both Hill 125 and Observation Hill, following their five days of tough fighting. He also trains his eyes on the terrain which will become his battleground and then he focuses on the low ground which could entrap both his 5th Marines and the 9th RCT if they are simultaneously caught in the open. Murray concludes that only one unit should jump off first, and he reasons that his objective, Obong-ni, is the closest. Murray suggests that if agreeable, the Marines would attack at 0800, under cover fire from the 9th RCT. Then according to the plan, the 9th will advance with Marine cover fire. Colonel Hill concurs. Meanwhile, complications are developing on the eve of the attack. General Church had assured General Craig that 145 army vehicles would be available to facilitate the movement of the Brigade. The trucks should enable Murray to speed one battalion to Observation Hill while the remaining two battalions set to attack, but only forty-three trucks are available at Miryang. This upsets the schedule and wastes valuable energy and time as many of the troops must now walk. At 1900, the 3rd Battalion boards the trucks and moves to the 5th Marines command post about 3,000 yards behind the front lines, and from there they march to Cloverleaf and relieve the 34th Regiment. Responsibility for the area south of the MSR passes to Col. Taplett at 0445 on the 17th. The 2nd Battalion advances the old fashioned way, by foot, and reaches positions near Cloverleaf at 0130. The lack of trucks also makes the 3rd Battalion trek to the front run way behind schedule, causing it to arrive at the assembly area later than expected. One thing remains certain; there is little sleep for the Marines prior to the scheduled assault. As usual, there is scant intelligence on the opposing forces, but it is assumed that Obong-ni Ridge is strongly defended and that the next objective, Hill 207, will be difficult to seize. Furthermore, giant Hill 311, the third objective is also deemed potent. At this point General Craig is unaware of the agreement between Col. Hill and Col. Murray, concerning the method of attack, but conversations just prior to the assault clarify the situation. Craig asks Col. Murray to explain his tactical plan and he is informed that the 5th Marines will attack in columns of battalions. The 2nd will seize Obong-ni, and be followed by the 1st Battalion which will pass through the 2nd and secure Hill 207. And, the 3rd Battalion will seize the third and final objective, Hill 311. General Craig concurs with Murray's plan. Also, the N.K. 2nd Division reminds its troops of the order which forbids the shooting of POWs; it issues a memo through its Cultural Section which notes in part: "**SOME OF US ARE STILL SLAUGHTERING ENEMY**"

**TROOPS THAT COME TO SURRENDER. THEREFORE, THE RESPONSIBILITY OF TEACHING THE SOLDIERS TO TAKE PRISONERS OF WAR AND TO TREAT THEM KINDLY RESTS ON THE POLITICAL SECTION OF EACH UNIT."**

Ironically, another massacre unfolds at the Central Front on Hill 303 as the reminder is issued. **Central Front Taegu Pusan Perimeter:** In air activity, 98 B-29 Superfortresses attempt to annihilate about 40,000 enemy troops suspected of staging north of Waegwan. The planes pulverize the area north of Taegu. At 1158, the first squadrons of the five bombing groups, based in Okinawa and Japan, arrive over the designated areas. By the time the final run is completed, the 19th, 22nd, 92nd, 98th and 307th Bomber Groups unleash nearly 1,000 tons of 500-1000 pound bombs on the target sites. The colossal air strike is witnessed by General O'Donnell who remains airborne for more than two hours; he reports that during the air strikes, no enemy activity could be detected from the air. Subsequent patrols from the 1st Cavalry sector also are unable to gather any intelligence on the success of the raids; one patrol is halted at the Naktong by enemy fire. Another crosses the river, but additional strong enemy fire pushes it back. Intelligence, later received from prisoners, alleges that the enemy units suspected of being in the area had already crossed the river before the initiation of the air strikes. The results of the air force's heavy strike remains unavailable. But following the massive bombing mission, the enemy artillery which had been firing from that area slacks off dramatically. On the following day, the North Koreans initiate a strong assault along the Taegu Front. In other activity, during the past twenty-four hours, the enemy has seized ground on Hill 303, but Company G, 5th Cavalry still maintains its isolated positions there; the condition of the supporting mortarmen remains questionable, but critical at best. The tanks support Company B which mounts another attack to relieve the besieged command on the hill, but again the enemy repulses it, despite additional support fire from the guns of the 61st FAB and several howitzers of Battery B, 82nd FAB. Waegwan, sitting amidst the blazing combat, becomes a "no-mans land." The 5th Cavalry's commander, Col. Marcel Crombez, becomes infuriated with the 2nd Battalion commander's progress. The officer has apparently allowed control of the units to slip away from him to the point that he is unaware of their locations. Crombez relieves the officer of command; another officer takes over and he resumes the attack. Nonetheless, the enemy repels all forward movement. After dark, Company G eludes capture and destruction; it escapes through the enemy lines to safety, but the mortarmen of Company H are not so lucky. On the following day a new attack is launched to seize the obstinate hill. In the meantime, while the enemy attempts to break through the cavalry, it also launches persistent assaults against the adjoining S.K. 1st Division, commanded by Major General Paik Sun Yup, in the rugged mountains northeast of the cavalry. The S.K. 1st Division's 13th Regiment is strung along the river. Its 11th and 12th Regiments, deployed deeper in the mountains, engage the enemy east of the Naktong at Suam-san and Yuhak-san, west and northwest of Tabu-dong respectively. In conjunction, the North Koreans, despite coming under heavy artillery fire, which includes direct hits, maintains an underwater bridge near Hills 201 and 346, about six miles north of Waegwan. The combined enemy pressure within the zones of the cavalry and the ROK 1st Division places Taegu in a more precarious position. Two enemy tanks penetrate the S.K. 1st Division lines during the day at Tabu-dong, but their progress is quickly halted by ROK bazooka teams which eliminate both. In an effort to bolster the tottering city, which is bulging with ever-increasing numbers of refugees causing its population to soar from 300,000 to 700,000, a contingent of 750 S.K. police is posted along its fringes. In conjunction, the refugee population still conceals countless numbers of North Korean enemy troops, regular and irregular, and they remain indistinguishable from the South Koreans. In other activity, the 27th Regiment,

25th Division arrives at Kyongsan and reverts to Army reserve. But Col. Michaelis is immediately ordered to dispatch reconnaissance patrols north, northwest and west of the town, and he is to remain prepared to move out if the enemy is detected. **Eastern Corridor Pusan Perimeter** At Toksong-ni, during the night of the 16th-17th, the drastically shrinking perimeter of the S.K. 3rd Division becomes electrified. The 3rd Division has ably held off the enemy along the coastal road, permitting other inland contingents to pull back, but now it is forced to begin backing toward the sea. Meanwhile, the heavy guns of the naval surface vessels of Rear Admiral Hartman's TG 96.51 rivet an iron picket fence to their immediate front, preventing hordes of Gooks from overrunning their point of departure. While the navy attempts to confine the enemy to prone positions with accompanying lack of sleep, the troops of the 22nd and 23rd Regiments and the attached contingent of National police begin boarding LSTs, taking all their equipment and weapons with them. The evacuation is totally successful, and at 0700 the final vessel embarks, moving out with the remaining troops and equipment, none of which is lost to the enemy. Subsequent to daylight on the 17th, planes of the Fifth Air Force carpet the beach area to the immediate front of the evacuees with a monstrous blanket of impenetrable fire, forbidding advance to the water by the enemy. In the meantime, the floating convoy, formidably escorted by the USS *Helena* and a few destroyers (Destroyer Squadron 11) arrives at Kuryongp'o-ni at 1030; the ground troops debark immediately. Orders await the S.K. 3rd Division, which instruct it to advance on the following day to the positions of the Capital Division, south of P'ohang-dong. Meanwhile, the Capital Division and Task Force P'ohang each maintain pressure against the enemy. By the following day, the North Koreans are shoved from the vicinity of the Kyongju corridor near Angang-ni and pushed north of the Taegu-P'ohang Road. In other activity, the 23rd Regiment, 2nd U.S. Division is en route to Kyongju to bolster the forces there. Also, South Korean troops embark Pusan for Japan to be attached to the badly diminished U.S. 7th Division, which had been heavily stripped of its ranks to fill the 1st Cavalry and the 24th and 25th Infantry Divisions; the contingent comprising 313 recruits arrives in Japan on the 18th. **(Atlantic-Mediterranean-Crete)** A Battalion of Marines departs Crete for the Far East; the vessels USS *Bexar* and *Montague*, transporting the troops and cargo respectively, sail from Suda Bay and then through the Suez Canal; the unit arrives at Pusan to join the 7th Marines as its 3rd Battalion on September 9th; the sea movement remains under stiff security and makes only one stop en route at Celon for six hours to take on fuel. In conjunction, other contingents of the 6th Marines are being prepared to join the 7th Marines, although the official activation of the 7th Marines does not occur until the 17th. The scheduled departure of the U.S. contingent is September 3rd, but the unit will ship out on September 1st.

**August 17 1950 -(United States)** The 7th Marines, pursuant to authority by the JCS, is activated at Camp Pendleton, California; it is commanded by Col. Homer L. Litzenberg. In conjunction, the catalyst of the regiment is the 6th Marines (less two battalions) which had arrived at Pendleton from Camp Lejeune on the previous day; the 3rd Battalion, 6th Marines, 2nd Marine Division is stationed in the Mediterranean, but it receives orders to proceed to Japan to join the 7th Marines, 1st Marine Division. Other units utilized to form the 7th Marines include 3rd Battalion, 11th Marines; Company D, 1st Tank Bn.; Company D, 1st Engineer Bn.; Company C, 1st Shore Party Bn. (including two Shore Party Communications Teams attached to Signal Company, Signal Bn.); Company D, 1st Motor Transport Bn.; and Company E, 1st Medical Bn. **(Pacific-Korea)** MacArthur's directive calling for extensive air support for the U.N. ground troops terminates today. The carriers which have been alternating two days in action and one day off for replenishing their

supplies, will continue to make Air strikes. Subsequent to the activities of the carriers during this operation and during the fleet's return to Sasebo, Admiral Struble remarks: "**A TEMPORARY LULL IN THE GROUND FIGHTING HAD BEEN REACHED.**" The total results of the carrier close-air support had been disappointing due to the inability to fully utilize the power of the strength at hand. Rear Admiral E.C. Ewen, Commanding Officer Task Force 77, remarks: "**A CONTINUATION OF THE PRESENT METHOD OF PROVIDING CLOSE AIR SUPPORT IS BOTH WASTEFUL AND INEFFECTIVE...**" Admiral Hoskins remarks: "**...THE SIMPLE FACT WAS THAT THERE WERE TOO FEW TRAINED CONTROL PARTIES ON THE GROUND, TOO FEW 'MOSQUITO' PLANES IN THE AIR, AND TOO LITTLE EQUIPMENT TO HANDLE THE NUMBERS OF AIRCRAFT OVER THE BATTLELINE (battleline).**" **Southwest Perimeter Pusan Perimeter:** Some contingents of the N.K. 7th Division, which arrived at Chinju about August 15th, push to T'ongyong, dislodge the South Korean police and occupy the town, giving the enemy positions at the southern point of Korea. Soon after on the 19th, U.S. naval vessels move offshore and bombard the town in conjunction with an amphibious landing by ROK Marines. The infusion of the N.K. 7th Division into the area has taken place to bolster the N.K. 6th Division and to protect its rear against invasion by U.S. forces. By today, the North Koreans have nudged closer to the U.S. 25th Division's perimeter, giving them the opportunity to initiate attacks to test the mettle of the American lines. The Communists continue these actions persistently until the end of August, but they confine the majority of these heavy patrols, ranging to strengths of up to one battalion, to the high ground in the mountains west of Haman. The combat points are concentrated around Battle Mountain and the two ridges, P'il-bong and Sobuk-san, the area comprising the northernmost sector, which is defended by the 35th Regiment and the central zone which is manned by the 24th Regiment. The enemy jumps off early today. At 0300, North Korean Artillery commences a barrage which strikes the 35th Regiment's 1st Battalion command post at Komam-ni. Within one hour, the enemy ground troops charge the perimeter to initiate a five-day battle for control of the terrain two miles west of the town on the southern spurs of Sibidang; it is held by Col. Teeter's 1st Battalion. The attack is met by some flares and by illuminated mortar and artillery shells; however, the supply of these is becoming scarce. Before dawn, Company A is forced to give ground. A mortar position is overwhelmed and two platoons are driven back, but soon after dawn, Company B launches a counterattack and recaptures the lost ground. **Naktong Bulge Perimeter Pusan:** During the predawn hours (0130), the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, commanded by Lt. Col. Harold Roise, completes its march from Miryang and moves to its assembly area near Cloverleaf. While the Marines of the 2nd Battalion await the signal to attack, they are able to fix their eyes on six ominous knobs (Hills 102, 109, 117, 143, 147 and 153) protruding from the jagged ridge. At one particular spot, conspicuous by its crimson color, the ridge is parted at about its mid-point by a huge gash created by a previous landslide; it is this marker which forms the boundary that separates Company D and Company E, which operate on the right and left respectively.

At 0725, under clear skies, the artillery commences firing for range, but the shells fall ineffectively due either to poor registration fire on the previous day or because of mistakes by the observers. A scheduled coordinating air strike is delayed. Eighteen Marine corsairs arrive to slam the ridge, but not until 0740, fifteen minutes late, cutting their striking time in half, thereby permitting only one pass before the Infantry jumps off.

At 0800, the four rifle companies of the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines begin the advance

simultaneously. They cross the valley moving toward what is to be called "No Name Ridge." Soon after, the tanks of Company A, 1st Tank Battalion move to positions from where they can support the attack throughout the day by plastering enemy positions with their 90-mm shells and machine gun fire. Company D operates on the right and Company E operates on the left. Company D, led by Captain Zimmer, traveling on the right traverses the road-cut below the spur, moves onto the exposed ground lying between Observation Hill and Hill 125. The 2nd Platoon, led by Sgt. Sidney Dickerson, deploys as reserve near the southern spur of Hill 125; Capt. Zimmer establishes his CP there. The 3rd Platoon, led by Lt. Michael Shinka nudges into the foul scented rice paddy, trailed by the 1st Platoon and a rocket launcher section. The rocket launcher detachment tails off and establishes positions near the road to guard the MSR. Then about half-way through the ill-scented paddy, the 1st Platoon, led by Sgt. T. Albert Crowson, increases the pace and swings over to the right, all the while receiving no resistance. The 1st Platoon catches up with the 3rd and then both units advance abreast.

To the left of Company D, Company E, commanded by Lt. Sweeney, attacks simultaneously. The 1st and 2nd Platoons plod into the rice paddy with its near-indelible stink, moving from their positions on the southern parcel of Observation Hill. Disregarding the official boundary separating his company from Company D, the attacking contingents of Sweeney's command concentrate their drive toward the village of Obong-ni, which sits immediately beneath Hills 143 and 147. Similarly to the advance of Company D, the resistance against Company B is limited to a few harmless shots. Nevertheless, the atmosphere is seemingly spooky and a transparent veil of danger appears to be suspended unnaturally above the battalion, waiting to drop its virulent storm. However, once the company reaches the base of the slope, the situation changes.

The prolonged silence is shattered and the agonizing apprehension dissipates during a rapid-paced series of events which suddenly unfold, beginning with a burst of fire against the 2nd Platoon, Company D, held in reserve on Hill 125. In the meantime, the four attacking platoons of Companies D and E maintain their cautious advances toward the objective, anticipating a cloudburst of enemy fire with each and every dogged step.

While Company D's 1st Platoon moves up the draw to the right of the spur of Hill 102, the 3rd Platoon, advancing on the left, drives through a gully advancing toward the first objective. And then, enemy fire changes the tone of the attack.

The 2nd Platoon, Company D, providing cover fire for the attacking units from its positions on Hill 125, is struck by long-range machine gun fire, much of which is incoming from Obong-ni and originating simultaneously from the area of Hills 117 and 143. This fierce fire inflicts the first two casualties on Company D. The echo of the fire encroaches the 2nd Battalion attack force like a distant storm and the rifle companies realize that beyond the thunder lurks the deadly lightning. Meanwhile, the 1st and 3rd Platoons have ascended nearly halfway up the slope, on the right side of the reddish gash. Then without warning, incessant bolts of enemy fire descend upon the slope. About twelve machine guns of the N.K. 18th Regiment unleash interdiction fire upon the advancing troops, and this massive display is joined by enemy mortar fire. The gushing thrust of unending streams of shells impedes, but does not halt the ascent. The 1st and 3rd Platoons gnaw forward, exhibiting contempt toward the enemy fire. Meanwhile, the North Koreans also express resolute determination. They increase the pressure by pouring more punishing fire upon the Marines which delays the 3rd Platoon's exiting from the gully. At about the same time, enemy machine guns focus on the 1st Platoon and inflict severe casualties against it, bringing the advance to a standstill. The

layers of fire become impenetrable.

Undaunted, the casualty-weakened 3rd Platoon, Company D, led by Lt. Michael Shinka, reinitiates its ascent to seize the summit of Hill 109 at 1000, but the advance is precarious as the men are forced to move entirely on naked ground. At the onset, the troops are beset with a whirlwind of automatic weapons fire, which is highly supplemented with an avalanche of grenades. Nevertheless, twenty troops reach the crest, but they are intercepted by a North Korean surge. Enemy troops emerge from their foxholes, located just over the reverse slope. Then more enemy grenades are launched toward the Marines. During the heated contest, five more Marines become casualties, bringing Shinka's strength down to fifteen men. The 3rd Platoon is then compelled to descend the slope, shadowed by the pounding of the enemy fire from the crest and by the ever-increasing machine gun and mortar fire originating on the still unmolested enemy positions on Hills 117 and 143. The platoon is struck by more menacing fire originating at enemy positions in the areas north and south of Hills 102 and 109. Meanwhile, the beleaguered 1st Platoon remains stalled and under heavy fire at its positions on the right.

Captain Zimmer resorts to committing his slim reserve: the 2nd Platoon, led by Sgt. Dickerson. Zimmer, quickly decides that passing the 2nd Platoon through the gully used by the 3rd Platoon would be fruitless and expensive. He directs Dickerson to attack through the draw, where the 1st platoon remains stuck. Initially, Dickerson traces the route of the 3rd Platoon, sloshing through the rice paddy while inhaling the raunchy stench and absorbing the human fertilizer which clings to the fatigues, to the further consternation of the troops. Soon after, the 2nd Platoon arrives at the draw, encountering the 3rd Platoon which is regrouping following its futile attack toward the crest of Hill 109. At that point, Dickerson's platoon sprints over the spur of Hill 102. Instantaneously, both of his flanks are saturated with rings of heavy fire. Shells arc into the right from the heights north of Tugok, in cadence with more intense fire streaming in from Hills 117 and 143, each on the left side of the MSR. All the while, Capt. Zimmer scans the battlefield. He notices the enemy positions beyond Tukok, then he deduces the reasons for the severe casualties being incurred by the 1st Platoon which is trapped along the northern approaches to the objective, dubbed "No Name Ridge." To Zimmer, it becomes apparent that the enemy is striking its rear and flank from entrenched positions within the zone of the 9th RCT. Zimmer takes measures intended to terminate the withering slaughtering fire. He calls for the 2nd Battalion to redirect its guns and commence an artillery barrage, but the request receives no response. The task is then given to the artillery of the 1st Battalion, 11th Marines. Immediately, the Guns roar, but they then suddenly quiet as the fire is ringing too close to the 9th RCT.

Captain Zimmer then directs his 60-mm mortars to try take out the enemy positions, but that too fails as the shells fall way short. Meanwhile, the enemy is seemingly startled by the non-stop initiative of Shinka's 3rd Platoon. The North Koreans attempt to shove a heavy machine gun into place on a saddle extended between the two northernmost peaks to crush the impetuous attackers, but Marine fire forces it back. The process is repeated, but again effective Marine fire turns the gunners back. Tenaciously, the enemy pulls it back into a position a third time, but it has little effect on who will control the hill. Capt. Zimmer, in the meantime, has procured the services of battalion and one of its 75-mm recoilless rifles. While the enemy crew is placing the machine gun on the saddle, a lone shot is fired by the 75-mm gun. It scores, and instantly the machine gun and its crew are succinctly eliminated.

By this time, Company E emerges from the rice paddy, filthy but unscathed, while its counterpart

Company D remains embattled on the right. Company E's rifle companies continue moving toward the village of Obong-ni, encountering bitter fire. Lt. Sweeney's 1st and 2nd Platoons drive directly toward the inferno. The 2nd Platoon begins lagging, then it loses its forward thrust and becomes spiritless. Meanwhile, the 1st Platoon, led by Lt. Nickolas Arkadis, presses forward. Disregarding the menacing flying steel, the troops zoom into the village, and without pause, they zip through it and exit in front of the nameless slope. The 1st Platoon then is greeted by new and more concentrated fire. Enemy machine gun crews, entrenched on Hills 147 and 153, pound the flanks with jackhammer speed. Lt. Sweeney has the operation under observation from his command post and attempts to supply artillery support to aid his beleaguered troops; the attempt fails as the forward observer is unable to communicate with the artillery. In the next sequence of events, he attempts to contact the mortar section, but this too is unsuccessful. Sweeney, becoming desperate, chances severe improvisation; he commits his reserve to tackle the sinister obstacles.

The 2nd Platoon, Company E races to the spur to the left of the village and grinds forward along it toward positions from which fire can be established to lessen the pressure on the attacking platoons. The gamble pays off. Lt. Rodger Eddy's platoon lays effective fire on the two hills, 147 and 153. At about the same time, more enemy fire begins pouring into Company E from enemy positions south of Obong-ni on the lower slopes of the ridge. Instinctively, Sweeney utilizes the scant remainder of his reserves to forestall any threat against his positions. The mortar section and Sweeney's headquarters troops are directed to deploy in the valley to intercept the enemy at a point where they can block the southern approach through a rice paddy. Leaving his Ex. Officer, Lt. Paul Uffelman, to lead the troops covering the flank, Sweeney speeds to the positions of the 1st and 2nd Platoons; he discovers the latter's situation chaotic and leaderless. But Sweeney's 1st Platoon, bolstered by strong support fire from the 81-mm mortars of the 2nd Bn., 5th Marines, has gained ground and advanced nearly to the summit. Then the attack stalls as friendly artillery fire falls short of target and blisters their skirmish line with white phosphorous. Soon after the friendly bombardment, elements of Company E, again surge toward the summit, but as they begin to converge upon it, new orders arrive, directing the unit to pull back to safer positions due to an imminent air strike. The order is instantly obeyed; however, the corsairs arrive so swiftly that some Company E troops are still within twenty-five yards of the peak.

At about 1100, the planes from the carriers arrive on the scene, but an acute shortage of fuel tanks prevents the aircraft from carrying napalm. The enemy positions are plastered with another cogent air strike. Nevertheless, some enemy troops withstand the brutal punishment by hugging the ground in their foxholes on the reverse slope.

Subsequent to the termination of the air strikes, the Marines, holding positions about midway on the slope, reinitiate their assault. Company D to the right of the gash and Company E to the left advance. During the aerial bombardment, the 3rd Platoon, Company E, which had moved forward to provide cover fire and neutralize the enemy fire coming from Hills 147 and 153, withdraws about 100 yards, but this permits the enemy to reinitiate its fire; heavy machine gun fire from both peaks hammers the riflemen of Company E at their positions on the slope, thereby preventing the resumption of its attack to gain the crest.

The 3rd Platoon, (Company D), fifteen-men strong, musters the stamina to re-climb the slope, and despite the raging fire, it overwhelms the defenders and gains the crest. An enemy contingent, composed of about one squad, counterattacks from its positions on the reverse slope, only to be slain by Marine riflemen. The crest of Hill 109 now belongs to the Marines, all nine of them. And

their ammunition is nearly depleted, with no resupply in sight. From their vantage points above Hill 109, on Hill 143, the enemy increases the fire on the left flank of Lt. Shinka's small contingent. In concert, Hill 207 to their front is also enemy-controlled and it rains shells on the crest, subjecting the beleaguered contingent to ruthless punishing fire. Lt. Shinka contacts Capt. Zimmer, briefs him on the casualties and explains the stark consequences of the biting enemy fire. Soon after, corsairs from MAG-33 reappear and deliver some white phosphorous shells upon Hill 143, lessening but not eliminating the enemy fire. The newly-won positions appear untenable, prompting Shinka to order his men off the crest; he instructs them to bring out the wounded and the weapons. The remnants of Company D's 3rd Platoon abandon the crest and redeploy about halfway down the slope; but Shinka's force has been reduced to six able bodied men. Soon after, Shinka, unable to shake his concern, decides to return to the crest in case any wounded have been inadvertently abandoned. Reaching the scorched summit, he creeps over the evacuated positions and then discovers PFC George Hric who is still alive and lying prone between two dead Marines. A dangerous rescue then unfolds. As Lt. Shinka later relates the incident: **"AS I GRABBED HIM UNDER THE ARMS AND PULLED HIM FROM THE FOXHOLE, A BULLET SHATTERED MY CHIN. BLOOD RAN INTO MY THROAT AND I COULDN'T BREATHE. I TOSSED A GRENADE AT A GOOK CRAWLING UP THE SLOPE, DIDN'T WAIT FOR IT TO EXPLODE, TURNED AND REACHED UNDER THE MARINE'S ARMS AND DRAGGED HIM AS FAR AS THE MILITARY CREST."** At that point, Shinka again is struck; a bullet spears into his right arm and the momentum violently spins him around, causing him to tip over and flip down the hill; somehow, he recovers and makes it back to his lines.

By noon, the combined casualties of the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines rise to 23 dead and 119 wounded, nearly all attributed to Companies D and E, during the savage fighting for the hill. And it is becoming increasingly apparent that the lack of a third rifle company in the battalion is hindering the progress of the operation and unnecessarily increasing the casualties. Yet, the persistent attacks have obviously cut deeply into the enemy defenders, exhibited by the numerous scattered bodies of the N.K. 4th Division and its demolished equipment. Nonetheless, the 2nd Battalion, like nearly every other unit in Korea, is understrength and unable to propel reserves into the battle. Its six bloodied rifle companies are too depleted to complete the conquest of the ridge. Subsequent to its grueling seven hour battle for the ridge, the 2nd Battalion's able bodied riflemen stand at less than 100, mandating the commitment of Col. Newton's 1st Battalion.

Meanwhile, General Craig becomes troubled by the noticeable inactivity within the zone of the 9th RCT, which in essence has permitted the enemy from their position at Tugok to maintain heavy pressure against the right flank of his brigade. Upon inquiring as to why there has been no timely assault, Craig is informed of the previous agreement reached between Col. Murray (CO, 5th Marines) and Col. Hill (CO, 9th RCT), whereby the 9th RCT would postpone its attack and afford cover fire until the Marines seize the first objective. Craig then orders Tugok to be bombarded.

Col. Murray becomes apprehensive because up to this point, no cover fire has come forth. He attempts to contact Col. Hill and request that the 9th RCT begin its attack, but there is a delay in getting the message through, prompting Murray to concentrate on his dilemma. With few alternatives remaining, at about 1300 Col. Murray directs Col. Newton to pass his 1st Battalion through the lines of the 2nd Battalion and resume the attack to vanquish the enemy on Obong-ni Ridge. While the 1st Battalion moves toward its assembly point, fresh planes from MAG-33 again streak overhead to revisit the over-baked ridge. While the corsairs carpet the enemy positions, the

guns of the 1st Battalion, 11th Marines and some Able Company tanks join the fight. In the midst of transferring responsibility for the attack, Col. Murray, Commanding Officer, 5th Marines is speaking on the radio with Capt. Zimmer, Company D, 2nd Battalion. While Zimmer is briefing Murray on the situation in his area, heavy enemy machine gun fire pours into Zimmer's outpost. He is severely wounded, as well as several other nearby Marines. Capt. Zimmer struggles, but by painful crawling he reaches his Company CP on the opposite slope of the spur and places Lt. R.T. Hanifin in command. Subsequently, Zimmer heads back to battalion lines for medical treatment while Company D prepares to withdraw to Observation Hill, its portion of the battle ended for now. In conjunction, the 1st Battalion sets up its command post right next to that of the 2nd Bn., to the rear of the road cut. The 1st Battalion, 5th Marines Weapons Company deploys behind the CP. Also, Col. Newton establishes the Bn. Outpost close to Col. Roise's 2nd Bn. OP on Observation Hill. In conjunction, Col. Hill's 9th RCT will launch its attack against Cloverleaf simultaneously.

At 1600, following a towering artillery barrage which includes time-on-target air bursts that wreak havoc over the entire slope of Cloverleaf, the 9th RCT commences its attack. And in synchronization, the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines presses forward to complete the destruction of the enemy on Obong-ni Ridge. The effective artillery shelling of Cloverleaf demoralizes the enemy defenders, enabling the 2nd Battalion, 9th Regiment to charge aggressively. This forces the surviving North Koreans to hurriedly flee down the reverse slope; implementing quick action, the 2nd Battalion, 9th RCT secures Cloverleaf and prepares to use its weaponry to augment the Marine advance against Obong-ni, where the Marines experience resolute resistance.

While the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines presses its attack, Marine artillery pounds enemy positions on the forward and reverse slopes of Obong-ni Ridge. Marine aircraft deliver equally stunning blows against it. Meanwhile, a detachment of tanks moves forward and pours its 90-mm shells and machine gun fire into the target areas to support the infantry. But still the enemy continues to exhibit enormous resiliency under the bombardments. During the tedious day-long fighting, the tanks eliminate a minimum of twelve enemy antitank guns and some automatic weapons. Enemy return fire pounds the four U.S. tanks and scores twenty-three hits; one tank is struck by three direct hits. Surprisingly, the damage is minimum and only one crewman is wounded (superficially).

In the meantime, Capt. Tobin's Company B, 1st Bn., 5th Marines passes through the lines of the 2nd Battalion; its 1st Platoon, led by Lt. Schryver, pushes toward Hill 102, while the 2nd Platoon, led by Lt. Taylor, makes exceptional progress as it plows up the gully, driving toward the saddle lying between Hill 102 and Hill 109. Still in reserve, the 3rd Platoon and some machine guns deploy on Observation Hill. The machine guns spread out along the forward slopes to bolster the attack; Tobin, also on Observation Hill, notes the platoons' headway while he confers with his Exec. officer, Captain Fenton. At that time, enemy machine gun fire rakes the area, wounding Tobin. Subsequent to getting Captain Tobin evacuated for medical aid, Fenton assumes command of the company (B) and speeds to the ridge, where by now the 1st and 2nd Platoons are each stalled by heavy fire on the ridge; the former is way up the slope and the latter is positioned well below the mid-point. The 2nd Platoon is struck by enfilade fire and its ranks are being shredded from fire originating on Hills 109, 117, and 143. The commanding officer, Lt. Taylor, sustains a mortal wound. Capt. Fenton is with the 2nd Platoon and aware that both units are stalled; he orders the 3rd Platoon into the fight. Meanwhile, Lt. Schryver concludes that the nemesis of his 1st Platoon's advance is the menacing fire coming from Tugok; he requests and receives assistance from the 1st Bn., 5th Marines' weapons company. Soon after, the village becomes the dubious recipient of

incessant 81-mm mortar shells. While the deadly Marine fire descends upon the village, the 1st Platoon eases to the western spur overlooking the MSR, and from there it outflanks the enemy and strikes viciously. The 1st Platoon converges on Hill 102 and secures it at 1710. In the meantime, while the 1st Platoon drives from the south, some blazing Machine Gun fire of Company B continues to drill the summits of Hills 117 and 143. This surge permits the 2nd Platoon to shoot the draw, and within fifteen minutes it secures Hill 109 (1725).

At 1500, while Company B, 1st Battalion launches its attack through the lines of Company D, 2nd Battalion, the 1st Battalion's Company A attacks through the positions of Sweeney's Company E, 2nd Battalion. Company A scampers through the rank rice paddy and moves beyond to the near incinerated slopes. The 1st and 2nd Platoons, each accompanied by a machine gun section, advance, while battle-weary and drawn Company E, 2nd Battalion moves back to Observation Hill. At first, the advance meets only nominal opposition, permitting the 1st and 2nd Platoons to easily pass the midway point, sustaining little more than sporadic sniper fire from the forward slopes and from the summit of Obong-ni Ridge. But then, the North Koreans spring to action, and in an instant, the seemingly benign summit is transformed into a multi-tongued serpent. Seething streams of riveting fire permeate the paths of advance and slice ruthlessly into the ranks of the 1st and 2nd Platoons. The 1st Platoon gets snagged between Hills 109 and 117, and the 2nd Platoon becomes snarled between Hills 117 and 143. Both platoons are dangerously strung out and the intensity of the fire staggers the grueling advance.

All the while, Marines on Observation Hill watch in anguish as their buddies become imperiled, despite the copious bombardment which has pulverized enemy positions on Hills 117 and 143. Lt. Robert Sebilan, leading the 1st Platoon through the gully, disregards the wall of fire. He pushes his platoon forward. Sebilan soon after receives a debilitating blow when his leg is shattered. But Sgt. Orval McMullen assumes command and the platoon again drives forward, reaching the saddle above the gully about the same time as Company B gains Hill 109. However, there is no advance to the south toward Hill 117; additional enemy fire bars progress with another wall of fire.

The 2nd Platoon, Company A, led by Lt. Thomas Johnston, is also paralyzed by withering enemy fire as it advances to the left of the 1st Platoon; its ranks are severed in half. Lt. Johnston, incensed by the machine gun fire which is cutting his platoon to pieces, defiantly jumps up and bolts forward, singlehandedly charging the enemy positions, but he is felled when he reaches the base of the summit. Tech. Sergeant Frank Lawson assumes command and he attempts to lead the dwindling 2nd Platoon forward against more aggravating fire. The platoon is quickly reduced to about one squad.

The recently committed 3rd Platoon moves forward from its positions on Observation Hill. Led by Lt. George Fox, it moves through the rice paddy. An enemy Mortar barrage strikes the advancing platoon before it can emerge from the rice paddy, killing one man. Nevertheless, the platoon advances doggedly, reaches Obong-ni Ridge and then begins to climb, collecting some remnants of the 1st and 2nd Platoons as it grinds toward the crest. As with the previous assaults, the unit passes the mid-point before hitting impenetrable fire. Two attempts to break through are stymied by the vicious fire. Meanwhile, Capt. Stevens arrives at the foundation of the ridge where he is able to spot the 1st and 2nd Platoons, but not the 3rd. There is no radio communication between Stevens and the troops on the slope. And at dusk, Hills 117 and 143 still belong to the enemy.

In addition to the attacks by the 9th RCT and the 5th Marines, other attacks by the 19th and 34th

Regiments, operating on the 24th Division right, begin during late afternoon, subsequent to numerous holdups. These attacks prove costly, particularly with L Company, 34th Regiment which sustains heavy casualties, many caused by enemy fire striking from the rear. But with persistence the two Regiments seize their objectives to the north, and by darkness, Ohang Hill is taken by the 19th Regiment. In conjunction, the 1st Battalion, 21st Regiment, to the southeast, maintains its blocking position without challenge. Also, the 9th RCT has cleared Tugok and Finger Ridge against nominal resistance. On the following day, Marines will uncover the maimed bodies of thirty U.S. soldiers at a medical station which had been overrun during the previous week; the troops show conspicuous signs of torture, which occurred prior to their execution.

In the meantime, the Marines begin to establish night positions on Hills 102 and 109, but apparently the enemy isn't quite ready to pause. At 2000, troops of Company B, 1st Battalion, 5th Marines on Hill 102 glance to the west and spot four T-34 tanks rumbling down the MSR. Trailed by infantry, the armor heads for the pass which slithers between Obong-ni and Cloverleaf. From their vantage points on Hill 102, the Marines appear intrigued by the arrogant T-34s as they encroach the pass. The enemy Tanks have yet to encounter the Marine Pershings which have been supporting the ground attacks throughout the day, but the encounter is imminent. A radioman with B Company grabs the radio and informs battalion headquarters of the approaching intruders. Within a short time the M26 Pershings, which are refueling and rearming, get equipped with 90-mm armor-piercing shells and then they speed to the pass. At about the same time, several soaring corsairs detect the enemy armor. The planes immediately attack the column, waste the trailing Tank and scatter the stunned enemy Infantry. The remaining three Tanks continue the advance and pass beyond Finger and Obong-ni Ridges encroaching the curve near Hill 125. The Marines on Hill 125 rush two 3.5-inch rocket launcher teams to positions near the curve on the MSR to await the presence of the enemy armor. The reception committee is ballooned by the 1st 75-mm Recoilless Rifle Platoon which is deployed on nearby Observation Hill to guarantee a heated reception. In coordination with this rapid development, the three Pershing tanks (M-26s) continue to race forward, transporting some heavier fireworks to augment the welcoming committee.

The T-34s announce their presence by the gathering clouds of dust which ascend from the road as they crank forward. The anxious Marines wait for the armor to round the bend. In conjunction with the sighting of the lead tank, the bazookas prepare to fire. Then and when it reaches a point about 100 yards away, a shot rings out and it clips the tanks treads. Nevertheless, the crippled T-34 continues to advance with its guns blazing. In an instant, the tank is struck by a second scorching blow from the bazooka. At about the same time, the beleaguered tank sustains a massive hit from a recoilless rifle; the shell blows a hole in the tank's hull. But still, the tank refuses to die easily. Its movement becomes erratic as it haphazardly swings around the curve, firing blindly as it rumbles along, unaware of new lurking danger. Standing in the path is Sergeant Cecil R. Fuller's Pershing tank; two quick shots are fired and the enemy tank finally expires. One enemy soldier survives the explosion and he escapes the blazing tank, but he is immediately cut down by Marine riflemen. By now, the second T-34 takes the deadly curve and it is instantly hit by an assault squad from Company A. It too manages to hobble forward, but one track is dragging. The handicap is soon eliminated. Before it gets too far, it is clobbered by a rocket, fired by a detachment of the 1st Battalion, and then it is pounded by recoilless rifles; the mugged tank limps to a futile halt directly behind the first dead tank, but its 85-mm gun continues to fire wildly into the wind. In the meantime, another Pershing tank arrives to keep Sgt. Fullerton company on the skimpy firing line,

giving the impression that the tanks are metallic Siamese twins. By now, the third Russian-made T-34 swings around the bend and into the sights of the waiting Marine tanks. Both Pershings commence firing and pump out six 90-mm shells which stagger the T-34. Incredibly, the decimated tank maintains its ability to fire, which prompts both Pershings to increase the dosage. The T-34 sustains seven additional hits. But meanwhile a white phosphorous shell launched by a 1st Battalion rocket team scores a peculiar direct hit with a bank shot; one of the crewmen attempts to escape the iron coffin. He opens the hatch while the phosphorous shell is en route; it strikes the open hatch and bounces down into the turret, igniting an inferno just before the Pershings' seven rounds arrive to blow through the turret and create a violent explosion. The legend of the sterling invincibility of the Russian tanks is evolving as a myth. The final T-34 charges around the bend, only to greeted by the rubble of the two which preceded it. After an abrupt halt, the lone operational enemy tank is quickly transformed into burning scrap metal. The combined power of the two Pershings, the rocket launchers and the grizzly recoilless rifles unleashes an onslaught of decimating fire, which concludes the lop-sided encounter. The rattled T-34 trembles under the shock, then explodes. In this, the first encounter between the Marines' Pershings and the Russian-made T-34s, the Pershings shine brilliantly, eliminating the foe in less than ten minutes.

With the threat of the tanks terminated, the Marines resume establishing their night perimeter, including the ample dispersement of trip flares, in preparation for an anticipated night-attack. At the same time, artillery units maintain fire along suspected enemy approach routes leading toward Cloverleaf and Obong-ni, to hinder the advance of any reinforcements. In conjunction, while the battlefield activity subsides on the slope, the medics and ambulances, overworked for the entire day, become more animated in the race to save lives. During the incessant contest, casualties continue to be carried non-stop from the slopes, ensuring that Lts. Bentley Nelson and Chester Klein (Bn. Medical Officers) and their corpsmen receive no rest. So taxing is the crisis that all ambulances in the rear, including sixteen army vehicles are commandeered to transport the wounded. Also, the light observation planes of VMO-6 transfer the more serious wounded to the ships offshore; combined, the dedicated efforts slash the number of fatalities.

Soon after the tank encounter at about 2030, Capt. Stevens, CO, Company A, 1st Bn. makes contact with his 1st Platoon, which is straddled between Hills 109 and 117 and next to Company B. Stevens is informed that a 100-yard gap separates it from the 2nd and 3rd Platoons. Stevens meets with the platoon leaders at the base of the ridge and they discuss continuing the assault; however, with the imminence of darkness noted by the rapidly fading sun and the diminished supply of ammunition, food and water, the platoon leaders contend that their exhausted troops should not attack. In conjunction, Stevens and the platoon leaders agree that a large enemy attack might be following right behind the destroyed Armor. It is agreed that the attack should be postponed.

Captain Stevens informs Col. Newton, the 1st Bn. commander, of the situation and Newton then instructs Stevens to discontinue the attack and bind together with Fenton's Company B, to hold the perimeter for the night. In conjunction, Fenton's Company B, composed of 195 troops, tightens up; its 1st and 2nd Platoons dig in defensively on the forward slopes of Hills 102 and 109 while its machine guns on the summits exchange fire with the North Koreans on Hill 117; the 3rd Platoon reverts to reserve. In conjunction, Company A, composed of 185 men, shifts further right from its positions below Hills 117 and 143 to link more closely with Company B. The 1st Platoon is the furthestmost unit on the left of Company A's front, which extends left from the southern part of Hill 109; the 1st Platoon extends right to the middle of the saddle toward Hill 117. From there the 2nd

Platoon's perimeter line curves downward to the spur underneath enemy controlled Hill 117, where it enjoins what is virtually the perpendicular line of the 3rd Platoon (left flank) which extends up and down the spur of Hill 117. Theoretically, the brigade's line is completed by the 1st Battalion's headquarters company which is to stretch across the rice paddy extending from Observation Hill to Company A, but the severe casualties incurred by headquarters company prevent the hook up, thereby leaving the 3rd Platoon strung out precariously. Nevertheless, Col. Murray, CO, 5th Marines, upon arriving back at his command post near Yongsan, remains confident despite the tactical problems; because he realizes his forces are powerfully concentrated within their restricted area and that the reserve 2nd and 3rd Battalions on Observation and Cloverleaf respectively can easily mount a strong support attack if the enemy strikes during the night. Most of the Marines attempt to get some rest, but about 25 percent remain on guard and at the ready.

Although the units prepare for an anticipated enemy night assault, elements of the 24th Division have intercepted an enemy radio message that details chronic shortages of ammunition in the area of the Naktong Bulge, and they also intercepted a related request which would authorize the North Koreans to withdraw back across the river.

Meanwhile, on Obong-ni Ridge just before 2200, the screaming rattle of incoming mortar fire is heard and then the violent explosions, followed by a devastating direct hit inflicted by four white phosphorus shells that land dead center within the entrenched positions of Company A. Eighteen men, nearly the entire contingent in the gully, become casualties and its 60-mm mortars are destroyed. On the fringe of the impacting shells, several men of the 3rd Platoon are also wounded, including Lt. George C. Fox, platoon leader. Subsequent to the contest and the capture of enemy equipment, it is determined that the enemy had possession of a captured U.S. Army radio (SCR-300) and its frequency setting was that used by the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines, giving the enemy an added advantage during this battle.

The next several hours pass with unnatural tranquility, except for some sporadic fire originating from enemy positions south of the Marine perimeter. An attack by the battalion is scheduled for 0700, but in the interim, the enemy night-attack is still expected.

And at 0230, it arrives with a bang!

As expected, the Communists launch their attack, hoping to catch the Marines on Obong-ni off-guard. Initially, the Marines on Hill 117 detect enemy movement and in synchronization, North Korean machine guns on the summit commence firing into Company A's positions. A luminous green flare consumes the night sky as the North Koreans charge from their concealed positions on Hill 117 against the positions of Company A, commanded by Capt. John Stevens. Simultaneously an assault strikes Company B at its positions on Hill 109; two enemy platoons driving west head up the gully against Fenton's main defenses, while a diversionary attack is launched by one Squad attacking from the gully west of the saddle between Hills 102 and 109. Company B remains solid and the attack falters. However, some enemy troops penetrate by evading Marines in foxholes and striking the Command Post on 109. They are met by annoyed mortarmen, rocket launcher crewmen and clerks who encounter and annihilate the infiltrators.

Meanwhile, brilliant artificial daylight is created by the burst of 81-mm illuminating mortar shells which expose the enemy attack, offering the Americans a panoramic view and a lesson on the enemy tactics. The North Koreans bolt noisily from the ground, lobbing grenades as they sprint forward while firing their automatic weapons toward the flank and to the front. But it is noted that

the attacking units travel only short distances, then they drop prone to the ground to permit trailing squads to leap forward and repeat the process, continuing the strategy for the duration of the attack.

The killing grounds appear more gruesome because of the colossal flares. The enemy pressure succeeds in isolating the remnant 2nd Platoon of Company A, but the greatly outnumbered platoon resists tenaciously for about one-half hour of deadly close-quartered fighting. Tech Sgt. Lawson, who had replaced Lt. Johnston as 2nd Platoon leader earlier in the day, is wounded three times during the struggle, but he refuses evacuation, choosing instead to lead and inspire his troops to fight on. Finally, the 2nd Platoon is overwhelmed, but the enemy misses the opportunity of gushing through the gap in large numbers. Nonetheless, the North Koreans splinter the two companies as they press toward the command post of Stevens' Company A, to the immediate rear of the overwhelmed 2nd Platoon. The attackers, bolstered by heavy submachinegun fire and grenades, shove Stevens and his headquarters down the gully toward the saddle south of Hill 109. This in turn opens the left flank of his 1st Platoon, compelling it to pull back toward the southern face of Hill 109.

Capt. Fenton, informed of the enemy seizure of the saddle south of Hill 109, begins to further tighten his left flank by pulling it in tight toward his 3rd Platoon which is deployed on the reverse slope. This maneuver forms a configuration similar to that of a football at this portion of the defenses, and it enables Company B to fend off enemy pressure which is driving from the south. Followiwnng about one hour of furious battle, the enemy is driven back.

Marine Artillery fire lends well-appreciated support to the riflemen of Company A in their effort to hold off the enemy thrust. Ironically, the 3rd Platoon, deployed on the left along the spur below Hill 117, remains unscathed except for some brief exchanges with enemy Infantry during the attack; Lt. Fox reforms his 3rd Platoon, and stretches its perimeter to afford more protection, utilizing some few surviving troops of the 2nd Platoon. By 0400, Capt. Stevens is momentarily out of touch with his company; however, the situation is not critical; he balances his center near the bottom of the draw. One Company A Officer, Lt. Fred Eubanks, singlehandedly charges up the gully against the enemy. Soon after, he is joined by another Marine Officer, Lt. Francis Muetzel, who was assumed dead during the initial enemy penetration against the 2nd Platoon, but the machine gun officer had only been knocked out. His timely recovery is a welcome addition for Eubanks. Both Marines then advance together, hacking their way through the enemy lines to safely reach the Marine zones. During the struggle, Tech. Sgt. Paul Hodge, disregarding his wounds, enables Stevens to make contact with Lt. Fox (3rd Platoon) prior to dawn and the loose ends are tied, setting up the attack. In the meantime, the request by Col. Newton to have the artillery barrage the enemy positions has been answered so powerfully that the 1st Battalion, 11th Marines asks Newton to hold back a few rounds to support the Brigade attack, still scheduled to jump off in several hours, at 0700. Newton retorts that if the Battalion does not continue to receive maximum artillery support, the brigade would be attacking for the purpose of regaining Objective One at 0700. The incessant bombardment continues and it is bolstered by the generosity of the 2nd Battalion's total complement of 81-mm mortar ammunition, which greatly increases the killing power of Newton's mortarmen.

The bitter night-attack had started with both Marine Companies being numerically weak, and at its conclusion, the 1st Battalion is victorious but further drained. At dawn, while the surviving remnants of the enemy are retiring back to their lines, machine guns still entrenched on Hill 117 rattle off some shots at the Marines. Company A is down to 90 able men and Company B has incurred 85 casualties, thinning its ranks to 110 troops, but B Company still commands Hills 102

and 109.

With the arrival of daylight, the Marines, having repelled the North Korean onslaught, prepare to mount the scheduled attack to clear Hill 117 where the enemy had withdrawn after being rebuffed by the Marines. The 1st Battalion reorganizes and Company A, prepares to conclude yesterday's task by taking the hill. At 0700, subsequent to conferring with Col. Newton, Stevens orders the 3rd Platoon to strike. The skies remain clear on the 18th, giving the Marines the added power of close-air support as well as Artillery support.

The Marines (1st Bn.) drive south toward the hill, crossing the saddle effortlessly, but as the troops begin to ascend the slope, an enemy machine gun fire strings a ghastly wall of fire across the line of advance. One Marine BARman, PFC Harold Twedt, eliminates two of the machine guns, but enemy fire kills him. About fifty yards further up the slope, another machine gun position stalls the advance by laying sheets of fire. The Marines are hung high on the slope. An urgent call for an air strike is dispatched and soon after the Tactical Air Coordinator, Lt. Col. Norman Anderson, obliges as the corsairs are overhead; Anderson fires a colorful smoke rocket to identify the location of the target and Major Arnold Lund (VMF-323) directs his section leader, Capt. John P. Kelley, to destroy the menacing obstacle. Kelley's corsair zooms overhead, then dives toward a belly-scraping level nearly shaving the heads of the troops of the 3rd Platoon before unleashing his 500-pound parcel of sudden death which destroys all four machine guns. The frightful impact virtually jolts the Marines on the ground, and one BARman is inadvertently killed by the blast. At about the point of detonation, while the smoke and debris are still hovering above the charred earth, the Marines charge from their positions and secure the hill. Upon reaching the enemy gun emplacement it becomes evident that Captain Kelley had hit the bull's eye with his bomb, scoring a massive direct hit. Within five minutes of the appearance of the corsair, the Marines had sprinted to the summit, claiming Hill 117, they were joined by McMullen's 1st Platoon, which has driven from Hill 109, prompting the enemy to flee from the crest and the reverse slope under heavy fire from the new occupants of the crest.

With the crest of Hill 117 in their pocket, the men of Company A, 1st Battalion swing toward the south to sweep the crest; twenty Marines attack and seize Hill 143, against light resistance. Immediately, Stevens requests permission from Newton to continue the attack and he receives this response: affirmative. Soon after, the 3rd Platoon, Company A attacks and overruns Hill 147; many of the enemy defenders flee their positions. Some choose to stand and fight for the crest, and they are annihilated. The victors scour the summit and detect a disciplined enemy column composed of about 150 troops descending the western slope and about half-way to the base. Suddenly, Marine fire commences from the crest and the neatly moving columns of four begin to unravel; the troops jump frantically to outrun the hunters.

The jewel of Obong-ni, Hill 153 with its towering peak, still remains to be taken, and it is expected that the North Koreans will resist tenaciously. Company A's 3rd Platoon drives expeditiously to the crest, encountering discarded equipment and weapons, but the enemy is confined to some corpses. As usual, the Marines search the area and the slopes for the vanishing enemy, and they discover an unusual sight on the reverse slope; some scrub pines harbor hostile tree-huggers. The Marines observe the bushes unnaturally moving down the hill; some of the enemy are slain, but their pace is so quick that many of the fleeing bushes escape.

While the 1st and 2nd Platoons, Company A concentrate on the middle peaks, the 3rd Platoon

sweeps the southern stretches below Hill 153, encountering no opposition. In conjunction, the 1st Platoon, Company A, Engineers sweep through the swamps south of Hill 153, securing it and the left flank of the 3rd Platoon by establishing a solid minefield stretching from the southern summit downward to the valley and eastward from there across the swamp.

In the meantime, Col. Taplett's 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines, which had received warning orders at midnight (17th-18th) to continue its attack, is preparing to jump from its assembly area. Artillery fire and Mortars converge on the objective and air strikes plaster the hill as well to loosen resistance. Col. Taplett establishes his Observation Post on the northern portion of Obong-ni. Companies G and H, with support fire from the 9th Regiment, USA on Cloverleaf, jump off from the northern edge of Obong-ni toward Hill 207 (In some U.S. Army references this hill is noted as 206).

At about 1000, Fenton's Company H contingent breaks from the MSR and moves onto some open ground lying between Obong-ni and Finger Ridges. From there it drives up the eastern spur, while the trailing Company G, under Bohn, pivots to the right and from the opposite side of a deep gully, it charges up the western spur. While the attacking troops ascend the slopes, watchful Tanks of the 3rd Platoon, Company A spot an enemy platoon working the flank; the M-26s open fire from a range of 300 yards, shattering the attack, killing many and scattering the remainder. The tanks maintain their cover fire to the front and flanks, enabling the ground troops to continue the climb.

As Company H's 1st Platoon encroaches the summit, a few of the defenders rise from their foxholes and toss grenades at the attacking Marines. Instinctively, everyone hits the deck and remains prone until the grenades detonate. Then with a sudden burst, the final lap is run, catching the stunned defenders off-guard. Most defenders head down the reverse slope, but some remain to resist; all are quickly killed. Meanwhile, Company G, driving on the right, swings in over the western portion of the objective and quickly eradicates the few remaining enemy troops, culminating the conquest of Hill 207 (Objective Two) at 1237.

The N.K. 4th Division begins to crumble. Contingents are speeding from the slopes of Hill 207. Some bee-line for Hill 311 on the opposite side of the MSR, and others flee toward the Naktong River. The disciplined enemy division is in disorganized flight, lacking its usual cover of darkness; the exposed North Koreans offer an abundance of splendid killing opportunities for the artillerymen and the Marine corsairs. The assumed position of the command post of the N.K. 18th Regiment on a crest south of Hill 207 is obliterated by Planes of MAG-33. The attack delivers thunderous bolts of flaming steel and short circuits the enemy communications. In the meantime, other corsairs play tag, alternating as they spray the banks of the Naktong and tag the hundreds of fleeing enemy troops with more steel.

The murderous thunderclap increases its intensity with ruthless vengeance. At about 1200, when the information concerning the enemy retreat across the Naktong is transmitted, the artillery hones in on the Naktong River crossings, in concert with the aircraft which strafe the roads and paths on the western slopes, slicing the enemy ranks there; the enemy becomes caught on naked ground during their desperate attempt to reach the river.

While the enemy is being shredded on the banks by the corsairs, the artillery is adjusted to place interdiction fire on each of the river crossings, greatly increasing the fatalities and casualties on the beleaguered Communist division. The guns of the artillery are adjusted for effectiveness on target and modified by supplementing the barrage with "adjusted air bursts" and "quick fuse" shells to

ensure a greater killing area. The time-delayed shells spring deadly surprises on the enemy troops who attempt escape by swimming under water. When they come up for air they are greeted with clusters of exploding shell fragments overhead. In conjunction, Col. Taplett, not to be outdone, concentrates his supporting tanks, mortars and machine guns on the enemy caught in the valley and upon Hills 207 and 311. Taplett requests permission to continue the assault, but he is directed to hold in place while the Brigade completes the annihilation operation at the river.

Following the seizure of Hill 206, at 1530, Companies G and H begin departing the summit, meeting the 1st Platoon, Company A, 1st Tank Bn., commanded by Lt. Pomeroy at the base. From there, with the security of the Tanks, the 3rd Battalion slants slightly northwest and crosses the valley toward the final ridge in front of the Naktong, Hill 311 (Objective Three). Meanwhile, the North Koreans are receiving a thorough thrashing, and most are attempting to withdraw across the Naktong. Nevertheless, those enemy troops still remaining on 311 are pounded by a heavy preparatory bombardment. MAG-33 Aircraft coats the peak with napalm, while the big guns of the artillery, 74-mm recoilless rifles and mortars whack the high slopes with thundering blasts. The massive fire power obstructs free flight by the enemy, while the Turkey shoot at the Naktong remains in progress.

The once resolute resistance of the N.K. 4th Division has been shattered and its remnants are scattering, under the overwhelming pressure. The planes hammer from the sky in conjunction with the blazing action of the ground troops.

The enemy hunters become the prey, but at some points the North Koreans still mount some formidable opposition. In conjunction with the Marine assault, the 19th and 34th Regiments, operating on the right flank of the 24th Division, continue their advance into the bulge; before dusk, Hill 223 is seized by the 19th Regiment and Hill 240 is secured by the 34th Regiment.

Meanwhile, the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines' Companies G and H drive up parallel spurs and close on the summit. Enemy fire rips into Company H when it climbs to within about 200 yards shy of the crest. The stiff resistance is raised by a lone platoon, but the attack stalls and the machine guns are of no value due to thick brush. In the meantime, Company G overpowers light resistance and advances to the southern tip of the crest at 1730. Soon after, it pivots and drives north only to stall as it encounters fierce fire from the identical enemy platoon which has stymied Company H. Lt. Bohn dispatches the 1st Platoon, Company G under Cahill to the west to envelop the enemy to the left. The maneuver works and the obstacle is smartly eliminated, but then the North Koreans on the forward slopes raise heavy resistance and close-quartered fighting ensues between them and Company H.

During the pitched battle on the slopes, Capt. Fegan becomes wounded, totally halting the progress of Company H. In conjunction, due to imminent darkness, Lt. Bohn recalls his over-extended 1st Platoon and receives a report from its leader, Lt. Cahill, himself wounded, that the platoon's casualties amount to two killed and eight wounded.

Subsequent to the day's fierce combat which culminates with the capture of the majority of Hill 311, Col. Taplett orders his 3rd Battalion to establish a night perimeter. The remnant resistance on the crest is scheduled for destruction on the following morning (19th). Sunset on the 18th sets a somber note for the N.K. 4th Division, which has been decisively defeated, giving the North Korean Army its first major setback since the outbreak of hostilities.

The 81-mm Mortars of the 3rd Battalion bellow at 0610, signaling the demise of Hill 311, the third

and final objective of the Marine Brigade. Company H, seemingly moving on the tailwinds of the mortar fire advances rapidly, popping over abandoned enemy entrenchments to reach the northern portion of the hill without interruption. Objective Three is Marine terrain by 0645, culminating the mission of the brigade. The 1st Battalion holds Obong-ni Ridge, the 2nd controls 207 where it deployed on the previous day and now the 3rd Battalion holds the commanding heights in the Naktong Bulge. The price: 66 dead Marines, 278 wounded and one Marine missing in action.

On the morning of the 19th, elements of the 34th Regiment and contingents of the 5th Marines converge on the Naktong, essentially terminating the battle of the Naktong Bulge. Patrols which scout the river area during the afternoon discover no enemy troops and subsequent information extracted from prisoners verifies that most survivors of the initial attacking force had withdrawn across the Naktong during the night (18th-19th). Although no contact is made with the enemy and exact losses for the enemy are unknown, it is increasingly clear that the enemy had sustained grave casualties. The 24th Division buries more than 1,200 Communist troops. Additional information, gained from prisoners, claims that the remnant force of the decimated 4th N.K. Division had been reduced to 3,500 men. Coincidentally, the defeated division receives word from North Korean Army Headquarters today that it has been designated (by Army order) a "Guard Division," for recognition of its excellent achievements during the battle of Taejon (July). The North Koreans lose face with the destruction of the supposed crack 4th Division. In an attempt to regain the momentum to capture Pusan and throw the Americans back into the sea, the North Koreans remove the 2nd and 9th Divisions from the Taegu front to succeed the battered 4th N.K. Division. Simultaneously, the Communists build up the N.K. 6th Division which has also taken a beating (Chinju). The unexpected redeployment of the N.K. 2nd and 9th Divisions is a blessing for General Walker's Eighth Army, as the strategy inadvertently bolsters Walker's diminishing force at Taegu.

Following the battle at Obong-ni, detachments from Marine Ordnance units begin collecting the enemy's abandoned and destroyed heavy weapons. Detachments scoop up 34 artillery pieces, more than half of them positioned adjacent to the Yongsan-Naktong River road. Other weapons captured (including destroyed and abandoned) include eight antitank rifles, 25 light machine guns, eighteen heavy machine guns and 63 submachine Guns; countries of origin for these weapons are Russia and the USA. The U.S. forces also confiscate large quantities of grenades and ammunition as they mop-up along the Naktong.

With the victorious conclusion of the fighting in the bulge, Eighth Army releases the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade from the 24th Division; it moves to an assembly area outside of Changwon, east of Masan, reverting to Eighth Army reserve until its services are again needed during early September. **North Korea** North Korean Premier Kim Il Sung (born Kim Song-ju) had earlier predicted the ouster of the U.S. and the unification of Korea subsequent to the destruction of the South Korean resistance by August 15th. But now he is compelled to modify his schedule; he proclaims a new order by radio broadcast, again calling for the eviction of the Yanks and the destruction of South Korea by the end of August. Kim Il Sung further states that his Communist forces should "**DESTROY THE SOUTH KOREAN AND UNITED STATES (troops) TO THE LAST MAN.**"

**August 18 1950 -(United States)** The Second Echelon of Planners (1st Marine Division) leaves Camp Pendleton for Japan; General O. P. Smith departs with the entourage. In conjunction, the 1st Marine Division Command Post at Pendleton is closed in coordination with the departure of the Commanding General; however, a few thousand Marines (rear Echelon) remain there under the

command of General Alfred H. Noble. **(Pacific-Japan)** The first contingent of South Korean troops who are to be filtered into the U.S. 7th Division arrive in Japan; the final contingent arrives by the 24th, giving the U.S. 7th Division a total of 8,625 Korean troops including Officers and men. It is a complicated set up which doesn't work out too well, due to many things including a language barrier, insufficient training and a much different culture and set of loyalties. Some of the troops who arrive are particularly young and still carrying their school books; many of these new recruits have been scooped up in Taegu and Pusan. **(Pacific-Korea) Southwestern Perimeter Pusan:** Elements of the N.K. 6th Division launch another morning assault against Col. Fisher's 35th Regiment, 25th Division at Sibidang, again pushing Company A from its sector, but the lost ground is then regained by a counterattack. Two Companies of S.K Police arrive to bolster the right flank of Company A, and the Artillery of the 64th Field Artillery Battalion, commanded by Lt. Col. Arthur Logan and its attached Battery C, 90th Field Artillery Battalion also give support to Companies A and B during these skirmishes. To the south of the 35th's positions, the North Koreans initiate a morning assault against the 24th Regiment. The attack strikes strongly against Company E, 2nd Battalion, posted on the northern spinal ridge of Battle Mountain. The enemy gains some ground dislodging portions of the Company and killing its Commanding Officer. During the day's skirmishing on Battle Mountain, Lt. Col. George R. Cole, Commanding Officer, 2nd Battalion, 24th Regiment is replaced by Lt. Col. Paul F. Roberts. **In the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade area: See also Aug. 17th-19th.** Patrols from each Battalion scrutinize their areas of responsibility to eliminate any Snipers or lagging enemy stragglers. One mop up Patrol discovers three concealed 122-mm Howitzers which are deployed in a column and positioned whereby they could fire over one another from their camouflaged area in the brush on a hill near the Naktong River. The find is a genuine bonanza of intelligence, as the Marines have never before encountered enemy Guns emplaced in this fashion; General Craig believes that these undisturbed Howitzers are the Guns which had been striking the Marine positions until the final bell of the battle.

**August 19th 1950-Korea- Southwestern Perimeter Pusan:** U.S. Naval Forces bombard the enemy positions at recently seized T'ongyong in support of an ROK Amphibious Invasion; with the support of the U.S. Navy fire, the S.K. Marines take the town. The North Koreans lose about 350 troops during this action, splitting their force by about 50 percent; the survivors withdraw to Chinju. In the U.S. 25th Division sector, the North Koreans continue to slim the ranks of the 1st Battalion, but Lt. Colonel Bernard Teeter's men hold firmly, with the support of Artillery which cranks out about 200 rounds an hour during the night of the 19th-20th. To reinforce Company A, the South Korean Police on the flank and Company B reinforcements rush to the scene. Company C, 35th Regiment and Company A, 29th Regiment speed to positions along the Komam-ni Road on the morning of the 20th. In the 24th Regiment sector at Battle Mountain, the enemy again mounts a morning attack. Company C, 2nd Battalion quickly dislodges itself and hurriedly descends the slope. In the confusion of the battle, many of the newly arrived South Korean Police on P'il-bong also desert their positions in the face of the enemy attack. About forty troops of Company C, 2nd Battalion are collected by Officers and ordered back to their positions. The enemy takes its usual advantage, and by day's end, an indeterminable number of N.K. troops infiltrate the hole, which now extends about one mile north from P'il-bong. This enables them to get traction for the next assault. The deserting troops who seem to vanish on the slope have no easy task to get to the base of the mountain; it takes several tedious hours to descend the precipitous eastern slope, which has only foot paths at best, and at certain points the climbing or descending is normally accomplished

with the help of ropes, carefully extended along the side of the path. With each new penetration, the enemy expends more time severing the communication lines of the 24th Regiment, causing the wire repairmen to work tirelessly to fix the breaks. Alternate ways of communicating with the Commands on the mountain are strenuous as an average trip by messenger from the base of the mountain to the defenders and back consumes nearly eight hours. The 25th Division, in addition to being heavily involved with the enemy, is hampered by its efforts to assist the South Korean Police scrutinize the legions of refugees who have been flooding the area between the Nam River and Chindong-ni. Since about the 12th of August, more than 50,000 refugees have been moved out of the sector. This is not an isolated incident. The 25th Division, since August 1st, has moved about 120,000 refugees from its zone. **In the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade sector:** General Craig moves by helicopter to meet with General Church at 24th Division headquarters. While there, Craig is informed that the brigade is released from the 24th Division and it will revert to Eighth Army reserve.

**August 20 1950 -(Pacific-Japan)** Admiral Joy, with the authorization of MacArthur, issues orders establishing Joint Task Force 7, which will execute the invasion of Inchon; its Commander is Admiral Struble (Commander of Seventh Fleet). Basically, it is the Seventh Fleet modified to extend its authority over all the Armed Services. The Fleet is composed of six primary Task Forces. Other countries' Navies participate; they are Australia, Canada, France, Great Britain, Japan, New Zealand and some Merchant Vessels. The unorthodox move, establishing a Joint Task Force, places a Naval Commander (Struble) over Air Force activity or inactivity, thereby ensuring that the Marine and Naval Planes will conduct the operation as they did during World War II, rather than using the Air Force's air-ground support system. In conjunction, the Naval and Marine Planes will be unable to handle the Pusan Perimeter due to the Inchon operations; this responsibility will be handled by the Air Force.

**August 21 1950 -(Pacific-Korea) In the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade sector:** At 1300, General Craig arrives at the Brigade's new quarters outside of Masan, dubbed the "Bean Patch." Following the establishment of his Command Post, Craig reports to General Kean, 25th Division Commanding Officer, the Officer with responsibility for the area. The conversation between the two Generals includes enemy penetration, and General Kean informs Craig that the Marines might be required to lend support if the enemy makes additional gains. The conquest of Obong-ni has drained the already slim numbers of the ground troops. While General Craig has repeatedly requested reinforcement replacement troops, they have not yet arrived from the States. While at the Bean Patch, Craig will request volunteers from other Marine units to fill the gap. Not surprisingly, Headquarters personnel, Engineers, Shore Party troops and others, each having had prior experience with a Rifle, swarm to the call. More men volunteer than the number required.

**August 22 1950 -(United States)** The operation to load the 1st Marine Division's Vessels, destined for the Far East, which had begun on August 8th, is completed today. **(Pacific-Japan)** General Oliver P. Smith and many of the Staff Officers (23 Officers and twelve enlisted men) of the 1st Marine Division arrive at Haneda Airfield; they are met by Admiral Doyle. Later, Smith is driven to the USS *Mount McKinley*, which is docked at Tokyo Harbor; the Marines establish an advance command post on it. General Smith is advised of the tentative date and hour of the invasion of Inchon; up to now, Smith had been unaware of the details. The entire Inchon operation plan and its execution are concluded in a record breaking twenty-three days, a feat which will most probably stand for the rest of time; actually, less than 23 days remain as many of the warships must embark

port by September 10th. Also, at 1730, General O. P. Smith meets General Almond for the first time, and the encounter is educational for both. The two men emulate mutual respect, but there is a definite clash between personalities, which will linger for the duration. Subsequent to his conference with Almond, Smith meets with General MacArthur in a relaxed atmosphere. MacArthur lights his pipe and reassures Smith that despite the hazards, the war could be won at Inchon within thirty days. MacArthur proclaims that the Marines will prevail at Inchon and in so doing, they could win the war. Also, the 1st Marine Division troops and the staff of the 7th Marines begin arriving on August 28th and complete the debarkation by September 6th. **(Pacific-Korea)** Since the onset of hostilities with the initiation of U.S. forces against the Communist forces, Eighth Army as of today has sustained the loss of twenty Medium tanks to enemy fire. But the U.S. has greatly increased the number of tanks in the Korean Theater; Six medium tank battalions, averaging about 69 tanks each, have debarked at Korea during August. They join four regimental tank companies, plus about thirty light tanks in the field, giving the U.S. a large armored advantage over the enemy by September. **Southwestern Perimeter Pusan:** Prior to dawn, and lacking artillery and mortar preparatory fire, the North Koreans launch a large attack against the perimeter of the 25th Division. The enemy troops sever the barbed wire and penetrate the 35th Regiment's 1st Battalion zone and ignite a grueling close-quartered fight. The assault dislodges some elements of the 1st Battalion, but subsequent to several hours of bitter combat, at 0700 Company A counterattacks, and it drives the enemy back and resecures the area. On the following day, the North Koreans, who have sustained heavy casualties during the futile attempt to overrun the 35th Regiment, retire from the area. **In the 24th Division sector,** the 1st Battalion, 5th RCT, which had won and then lost control of Subok-san on the previous day, mounts an attack at noon to retake the coveted mountain. After a vicious five-hour contest, Company B gains the summit, prompting General Kean to recreate the boundary line separating the 24th Regiment and the 5th RCT; Kean gives responsibility for the captured crest to the 24th Regiment. Afterward, the 5th RCT attempts to regroup, but the enemy mounts repetitive night-attacks and catapults Mortar fire against its positions, preventing Companies A and B from linking together to form a galvanized perimeter. Also, with the enemy deeply entrenched in the Rocky Crags which flow from Sobuk-san northward toward P'il-bong, the adjacent contingents of the 24th Regiment are barred from advancing to link up with the 5th RCT's Company B, 1st Battalion. Meanwhile, the up-again-down-again struggle on Battle Mountain is reinitiated at dawn by elements of the 24th Regiment. Advancing under the cover fire of Company I, Company L moves out, heading toward the crest of Old Baldy (Battle Mountain); the unit makes sluggish progress, despite minimal resistance. One contingent, led by Lt. Gerald Alexander, inches only two hundred yards in one hour, although no enemy fire interferes with the climb. According to Alexander, when his group finally reaches its target area, several enemy Grenades are lobbed into its midst, inflicting six casualties and prompting the balance of the contingent to head back down the slope. At a point about 100 yards to the rear, Alexander orders the troops to return to their positions, but his orders are brashly disregarded; not one Trooper obeys the order. Lt. Alexander and one BARman ascend by themselves, and they discover that Battle Mountain's crest is unoccupied; soon after, the balance of the command arrives. Nonetheless, life at the top is short lasting. Within several hours, the enemy, which has recoiled on the west slope, sends a small force around the right flank to probe the strength on the summit. The maneuver succeeds and gains more than expected as Company L abandons the summit and withdraws to the lines of Company I at the base of the mountain. The struggle for the mountain resumes again on the 23rd. **In the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade sector:** The 1st Battalion, 11th Marines is ordered to Chindong-ni

to bolster the 25th Division. The brigade receives orders from Eighth Army to be prepared to launch a counterattack in support of the 25th Division; however, this proves unnecessary. The Marines, while adjusting to their new paradise, dispatch patrols to the rear of the 25th Division to root out infiltrators; these patrols, surprisingly, receive hot meals, compliments of the helicopters of VMO-6. Also, the Marines' bivouac area lacks tents, affording the brigade an opportunity to sleep in the open with an unobstructed view of the stars, when it isn't raining. In other activity, the brigade receives a message from the commandant, General Clifton B. Cates: "I AM VERY PROUD OF THE PERFORMANCE OF YOUR AIR-GROUND TEAM. KEEP ON HITTING THEM, FRONT, FLANKS, REAR, AND TOPSIDE! WELL DONE!" **Central Front Taegu Pusan Perimeter:** Following another hard night of fighting, the 27th Regiment, 25th Division sends out patrols and prepares for another expected assault. Meanwhile, the North Korean contingents, which had previously infiltrated the 27th lines, take up positions about nine miles north of Taegu. They begin to harass the Main Supply Route from there to a point stretching five miles further north. The enemy penetration causes some friction between the 27th Regiment and the South Korean 1st Division, as Col. Michaelis informs Eighth Army that his left flank, manned by the South Koreans, had folded and that the South Koreans were not fighting. The report infuriates S.K. General Paik who challenges the American commander's statement. Eighth Army dispatches KMAG officers to verify Michaelis' insinuations, but upon inspection, all ROK contingents are in their designated areas; this is subsequently confirmed by Brigadier General William C. Bullock, Asst. G-3 Eighth Army at this time. General Paik suggests that his troops cover the valley with all the supporting artillery and tanks and that the 27th Regiment exchange places with his troops and take over the high ground to fight the North Koreans there. During this particular struggle in the valley and mountains, the South Koreans had come down from their positions during the day to acquire food or to bathe in the stream, but all return trip to their positions, aided by U.S. artillery as they fight their way back. Also, at about 1000, Colonel Chong Pong UK, commanding officer of the N.K. 13th Division artillery regiment, strolls into the lines of the S.K. 1st Division and surrenders; Chong, the highest ranking officer to become a captive of the U.S. aids the Americans by pinpointing the exact location and number of his old outfit's concealed artillery (seven 122-mm howitzers and thirteen 76-mm guns); the area, an orchard in a shallow valley less than five miles north of Taegu, is struck by aircraft and artillery fire. In other activity, different units of the same group of North Korean troops, who had penetrated the 27th Regiment lines during the previous night, strike the positions of the 2nd Battalion, 23rd Regiment, which had deployed to defend the supporting artillery of the 27th Regiment. North Korean infantry lodge themselves between the positions of the 23rd and 27th Regiments, while other contingents circumvent the east flank of the 23rd Regiment's forward unit, the 2nd Battalion. At 1605, the enemy commences a heavy bombardment which strikes the 8th Artillery Battalion's positions near headquarters. Less than one-half hour later, the enemy guns score two direct hits on the Fire Direction Center, wiping out the center and killing four Officers and two Noncoms. Lacking further direction from headquarters, the battalion's individual batteries control their own fire. The enemy fire also strikes the 37th Field Artillery Battalion; at 1640, the 23rd's regimental commander, Col. Paul Freeman, notifies Eighth Army of the situation. Consequently, U.S. Air Force and navy planes, bolstered by Australian aircraft, swoop in and pound the enemy-held ridge east of the highway and other suspected enemy positions in a nearby valley beyond the ridge. After dusk, General Walker detaches the 23rd Regiment (minus 1st Battalion) from the 1st Cavalry Division, then he orders it to destroy the North Koreans in the hills above the main highway and along the road. Still obsessed with gaining

a victory, the enemy mounts another night-assault, but the attempt is feeble. It is easily repulsed by the 27th Regiment. In addition, during the night, the 2nd Battalion, 23rd Regiment throws back several enemy counterattacks. The activity interrupts preparations for an attack on the morning of the 23rd, but the 2nd Battalion still moves out at daybreak. **(Inchon vicinity)** A contingent of sailors and Marines, UDT and Marine amphibious scouts of the 1st Reconnaissance Company, 1st Marine Division secretly lands in the vicinity of Posung-Myon, about twenty miles south of Inchon and it collects valuable intelligence on the landing areas; the reconnaissance team remains there until the 25th, then returns to the USS *Horace A. Bass* (APD-124), which takes the troops back to friendly lines. The gathered intelligence is handed over to top brass on the 25th; General Shepherd uses the findings to take one last shot at convincing MacArthur to permit the landing to occur at Posung-Myon; MacArthur declines the suggestion, holding firm with Inchon.

**August 23 1950 -(United States-Hawaii-Guam)** Replacement Marines, composed of ten officers and 300 enlisted men, bound for the 1st Provisional Brigade in Korea, depart Bases in Hawaii and Guam by airlift; these Marines are replaced by identical numbers of non-combat Marines whom are flown from Camp Pendleton. In conjunction, Fleet Marine Force Pacific, on two separate occasions, repeats the process and airlifts additional Marines (20 officers and 590 enlisted men) to Korea as replacements for the brigade and to form third companies of the 5th Marines' Battalions. **(Pacific-Japan)** The Far East Command, endeavoring to bring the 7th Division up to strength for commitment to Korea, begins attaching all arriving Infantry replacement troops (for FEC duty) to the Division. This practice continues until September 3rd; in addition, from today until September 8th, all replacement Artillery troops are also attached to the 7th Division. Similarly, General MacArthur uses the identical strategy to acquire troops for X Corps; he siphons arriving Eighth Army replacement troops and places them in X Corps to further augment the Inchon Operation. In other activity, Major General Clark L. Ruffner, USA conducts a Staff meeting in Tokyo. Ruffner, chief of staff of the upcoming X Corps, mentions during the meeting that subsequent to the capture of Inchon, the 1st Marine Division is to ford the Han River and seize Seoul. General Smith, USMC, is in attendance and he is surprised to hear the information, considering that the X Corps lacks the necessary equipment and material to bridge the Han River. Later at another meeting with General MacArthur and other top ranking U.S. officers, it becomes obvious that MacArthur will prevail and Inchon will remain the objective. Nevertheless, Admiral Doyle makes a final attempt to emphasize all the dangers involved with Inchon. His presentation consumes about one and one-half hours, and he concludes his remarks by addressing MacArthur with the following: "THE BEST I CAN SAY IS THAT INCHON IS NOT IMPOSSIBLE." MacArthur, having listened to all the reasons for choosing an alternate to Inchon, begins to clearly dominate the meeting. He speaks for about forty-five minutes and explains why the target must be Inchon. On occasion, he pauses to enjoy his pipe; coincidentally, no one suggests that he put it out. MacArthur concludes his presentation with a profound sentence which capsulizes his vision: "WE SHALL LAND AT INCHON AND I SHALL CRUSH THEM." The final sentence of the last meeting, concerning the invasion of Inchon, is intended to be a prophecy. Now it is up to the Marines. In conjunction, Generals Almond, Collins, Stratemeyer, Hickey and Edwin Wright are in attendance; also, Admirals Doyle, Joy, Radford, and Struble and Marine Generals Lemuel Shepherd and O.P. Smith attend the briefing. **(Pacific-Korea) Southwestern Perimeter Pusan:** At the mountain of many names, Battle Mountain (Hill 665), Old Baldy, Bloody Knob and Napalm Hill, the day begins with plans to retake the hill. It is an arduous trek to the summit and the reverse course is equally awkward, especially for the

wounded. In order to get a wounded trooper back from the slope to the base, it requires six men to bear the stretcher, a Medic to administer assistance along the way, and frequently, Riflemen become necessary to cover the evacuation and fend off Snipers. Even then, the hours of desperate time involved to reach the base of the mountain causes some of the wounded to succumb before they can reach the Medical areas. Today, the 24th Regiment receives some heavy assistance as the 81-mm mortars and 4.2-inch mortars hone in on the enemy-held western slopes of the mountain, giving the North Koreans more to think about than the heat. Meanwhile Companies L and I launch an attack which is bolstered by the arrival of South Korean police reinforcements; the assault succeeds and the combined force recaptures the crest. Company L gives a report of its strength on the mountain top; it informs battalion that it has only seventeen men in foxholes. Subsequent to its relief, L Company descends the mountain and about half-way down the slope, the company becomes infused with thirty-one additional troops; by morning of the 24th, Company L's strength bounces back to more than 100 troops. Later, the commanding officer of the 3rd Battalion, 24th Regiment, Colonel John T. Corley, giving his testimony concerning the action on Battle Mountain, relates: "COMPANIES OF MY BATTALION DWINDLE TO PLATOON SIZE WHEN ENGAGED WITH THE ENEMY. MY CHAIN OF COMMAND STOPS AT THE COMPANY LEVEL. IF THIS UNIT IS TO CONTINUE TO FIGHT AS A BATTALION, IT IS RECOMMENDED THAT THE T/O (Tables of Organization) OF OFFICERS BE DOUBLED. ONE OFFICER MUST LEAD AND THE OTHER MUST DRIVE. **In the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade sector:** General Craig meets with General J. Lawton Collins, Chief of Staff, USA and General Kean, CO, 25th Division. General Collins requests that Craig prepare a memorandum to detail the Marine strategy used to destroy the North Korean T-34 (Russian made) tanks. In other activity, the Marines are treated to an evening of entertainment, provided by South Korean girls, playing Korean instruments and singing Western songs, with the help of some English speaking refugees from Seoul University. It is not exactly Bob Hope and his USO tour, but nonetheless the effort is appreciated by the Marines. Following the show, General Craig speaks to his Marines to relay his great thanks for their efforts on the battlefield. He notes that POWs of the N.K. 4th Division had informed G-2 interrogators that they preferred "TO STEER CLEAR OF THE AMERICANS IN THE YELLOW LEGGINGS."

**Central Front Taegu Pusan Perimeter:** At dawn, acting on orders received from General Walker on the previous night, the 2nd and 3rd Battalions, 23rd Regiment, 2nd Division commence their attacks against the enemy positions; the former secures the heights above the road and the latter combs the hills east of the road, scouring a three-mile area. The activity cleanses the terrain on the flanks and to the rear of Michaelis' 27th Regiment, 25th Division. But by about 1335, Eighth Army is informed by Col. Michaelis that the enemy had shattered the highway to his front and they had laid mines to delay the U.S. 27th Regiment's advance, while the N.K. 13th Division pulls back from the area. Nonetheless, many enemy stragglers remain behind the U.S. lines, ensuring a heavy mop up operation. While the 23rd Regiment, 2nd Division had been on the offensive, about 100 undiscovered North Korean troops spring up like weeds behind the forward perimeter of the 27th Regiment, igniting a fierce skirmish slightly before noon. The enemy at first startles the defenders from Company K, 27th Regiment and the 1st Platoon of Company C, 65th Engineer Combat Battalion, driving some contingents back; however, the troops exhibit resiliency and bounce back with fervor to deliver a jackhammer punch. The enemy scatters, but it sustains fifty killed during the failed attack. In other activity, the Fifth Air Force has continued to increase its numbers of Mosquito T-6 Aircraft and by today, twenty-nine are operating as coordinators in conjunction with the air strikes. **In other activity:** Russian T-34 Tanks arrive at P'yongyang on or about today to fill

the needs of the 16th and 17th N.K. Armored Brigades; the former receives forty-three new tanks and the latter, forty. The brigades depart the town by rail during the night to join the other elements facing the Pusan Perimeter. These tanks have been manufactured in Russia and shipped into Korea by way of Manchuria; these newly arriving tanks are instantly manned by waiting experienced crews. Each brigade is divided into two battalions, with each battalion being sub-divided into four separate tank companies.

**August 24 1950 -(United States)** Marine Air Squadron VMF-312 and the rear echelon of VMF(N)-542 embark aboard the USS *Sitkoh Bay*; the Marines and their planes sail from the West Coast for the Far East. Other units of the 1st Marine Air Wing based at El Toro depart on August 27th, and the final contingents depart on September 1st. **(Pacific-Japan)** Admiral Joy dispatches a memorandum to General MacArthur in an attempt to alter the priority of the Carriers at sea and have their power concentrated where it can be most constructive: "...NORTH KOREA CONTAINS A MULTIPLICITY OF VERY LUCRATIVE AND PROFITABLE TARGETS WHICH ARE WELL SUITED FOR CARRIER STRIKES, WHEREAS, IN THE SOUTH (**Korea**), TARGETS ARE FEW AND WELL HIDDEN. AFTER 25 AUGUST, I STRONGLY RECOMMEND THAT TASK FORCE 77 BE EMPLOYED NORTH OF THE 38TH PARALLEL." Nevertheless, on the following day, another urgent call for Naval assistance is requested by Fifth Air Force to strike south of the boundary. In other activity, Japan Logistical Command (JLC) is established by General MacArthur; it will virtually relieve Eighth Army Rear of its responsibilities with regards to camps, posts and stations and furthermore, the new organization will bear responsibility for the logistical support of the ground forces operating in Korea; some specific units, such as the Marines, will be exempted from this command.

**August 26 1950 - (Pacific-Japan)** General MacArthur, Chief of the United Nations Command, makes some additional changes within his Military organizations; the U.S. Far East Air Forces and the U.S. Naval Forces Far East are officially attached to the United Nations Command. In other activity, MacArthur issues GCHC FEC General Order 24, officially activating X Corps; in conjunction, all units presently in Japan and those en route, including the 1st Marine Division, are designated X Corps reserve. MacArthur, having previously selected General Almond (apparently during mid-August) to command X Corps, makes it official today. General Almond also is to retain his position as chief of staff (FEC), as MacArthur anticipates a startling quick victory subsequent to the invasion of Inchon, and he foresees a speedy return by Almond to his previous position. The joint chiefs of staff do not share MacArthur's enthusiasm nor his confidence concerning the Inchon operation. The designated X Corps chief of staff is Major General Clark L. Ruffner, who during WWII was chief of staff, U.S. Army Forces, Pacific Ocean Areas, headquartered in Hawaii. The primary components (ground troops) of the X Corps are the 1st Marine Division and the U.S. 7th Infantry Division, the former en route and the latter being brought to war-time strength in Japan. In conjunction, Almond expresses surprise with MacArthur's selection.

**August 27 1950 -(United States)** The USS *Cape Esperance* embarks from the West Coast and steams toward the Far East, transporting units of the 1st Marine Air Wing, VMF-212 and VMF(N)-542. **(Pacific-Korea)** Far East Air Forces, determined to discover a solution to the ongoing problem of knocking out the two pontoon bridges over the Han River at Seoul, deploy a new and successful tactic; orders are given to bombing command to drop delayed action bombs at the spans to cause sudden and unexpected havoc when they detonate after dark, while the enemy troops are busily engaged in repairing the bridges; the effectiveness of these raids is evident and they apparently

cause casualties among the repair teams to soar. When the city of Seoul is recaptured during September, the two spans are still uncompleted. **Southwestern Perimeter Pusan:** In the 25th Division sector, the 3rd Battalion, 24th Regiment, commanded by Col. Corley, completes its relief of the 1st Battalion at P'il-bong on Battle Mountain. In the meantime, Task Force Baker maintains the security of the crest of Battle Mountain. **In the 1st Provisional Brigade sector near Masan:** The Marines receive no liberty while at the Bean Patch, but their morale remains very good; their spirits are raised by mail from home and from some beer rations which arrive from Pusan. A generous offer of breweries in the States to supply free beer to the troops in Korea erupts into a sea of controversy between groups with opposing views on the subject, none of whom are fighting in Korea. Nonetheless, the free beer soon ceases. **Eastern Perimeter Pusan:** The boundary line between the 1st Cavalry and ROK units is being shifted by General Walker who is convinced that the present line in the vicinity of the Sangju-Taegu road is militarily unsound; the new line tilts southeast beginning at a point two miles southeast of Ka-san and extending below and east of Taegu. The revamping of the boundary line gives the 1st Cavalry Division responsibility for the Sangju-Taegu Road and the previous positions of the S.K. 1st Division. In conjunction, the eastward movement of the 1st Cavalry is compensated by the U.S. 2nd Division which now extends north to the 1st Cavalry sector. In other activity, the North Korean II Corps makes preparations to spring its attack on September 2nd, but the N.K. 12th Division, still mending from the mauling it took in the vicinity of P'ohangdong and Kigye, launches an attack against the ROK Capital Division, ending speculation that the enemy had been subdued in its area. At 0400, the S.K. 17th Regiment, deployed north of Kigye, is hit unexpectedly and hard, forcing one company to fall back. The enemy thrust then forces the entire 17th Regiment to give ground. The 18th Regiment, to the right, loses the protection on its flank and also pulls back. The 17th Regiment relinquishes Kigye to the enemy, and the Capital Division is then compelled to retire to positions about three miles south of the Kigye Valley. The unfolding development in the Capital Division zone creates major problems for Eighth Army, and the rapidity of the surrender of ground imperils the entire Pusan Perimeter. General Walker orders the 24th Division to rush a regiment to the trouble zone and he also directs Major General John B. Coulter (recently arrived in Korea) to head for the area to collect accurate information. Coulter and his C of S, Col. Andrew Tychsen immediately depart by air for Kyongju. In the meantime, Walker appoints Coulter deputy commander, Eighth Army and instructs him to assume command of the S.K. I Corps, the U.S. 21st Regiment, the 3rd Battalion, 9th Regiment and the 73rd Medium Tank Battalion (minus Company C). These various units under General Coulter become Task Force Jackson. Under his command, there will be no interlude. A flurry of activity begins during the anxious morning of the 27th; the 21st Regiment under Col. Stephens is stopped while en route to positions north of Taegu, and it is ordered by General Walker to reverse directions and speed to Kyongju; it departs Taegu by 1000 and arrives at its destination during the afternoon. The 3rd Battalion, 21st Regiment is immediately ordered to move north to An'gang-ni and deploy to the rear of the S.K. Capital Division; the 2nd Battalion will arrive on August 31st and be placed in TF reserve at An'gang-ni. In conjunction, General Coulter plans to launch an attack on the following day. In the meantime, the North Koreans dislodge the S.K. 17th Regiment from its positions on a ridge north of the curve of the Kigye Valley during a successful night attack; the South Koreans retake the ground on the following afternoon (28th), only to lose it again after dark. Simultaneously, the N.K. 5th Division infiltrates the lines of the S.K. 3rd Division southwest of P'ohang-dong.

**August 29 1950 -(United States)** In response to a recent suggestion by Congressman Gordon L. McDonough that the Commandant of the Marine Corps be appointed as a member of the joint chiefs of staff, President Truman reacts emotionally. Truman fires back a letter stating that the Marines are only **"THE NAVY'S POLICE FORCE."** Continuing the unfounded tirade, Truman tosses another zinger, which comes back to sizzle his lips: **"THEY (Marines) HAVE A PROPAGANDA MACHINE THAT IS ALMOST EQUAL TO STALIN'S."** Obviously, the President has done the Marines a gross disservice and within a week, the nasty sentiments become public and an embarrassed President Truman apologizes. **(Pacific-Japan)** General MacArthur, unable to attend the National Convention of the Veterans of Foreign Wars, due to what has presently been termed "A POLICE ACTION," sends a message to the attending members: **"I AM HAPPY TO REPORT (to his fellow troops during former wars) THAT THEIR SUCCESSORS NOW ENGAGING THE ENEMY ALONG OUR BATTLE LINES IN KOREA ARE EXEMPLIFYING THAT SAME HIGH STANDARD OF HIGH DEVOTION, FORTITUDE AND VALOR WHICH CHARACTERIZED THEIR OWN MARCH TO VICTORY WHEN THEY THEMSELVES ENGAGED IN COMBAT IN THE FIELD...TOWARD VICTORY, HOWEVER DIFFICULT THE ROAD, THEY ARE GIVING AN ACCOUNT OF THEMSELVES WHICH SHOULD MAKE EVERY AMERICAN HEART BEAT WITH PRIDE AND INFINITE SATISFACTION."** MacArthur also frames some choice words to convince the VFW members to hold the torch to ensure that defeatism at home cannot overcome the valor of the cause, thereby endangering the United States: **"TO PURSUE ANY OTHER COURSE WOULD BE TO TURN OVER THE FRUITS OF OUR PACIFIC VICTORY TO A POTENTIAL ENEMY. IT WOULD SHIFT ANY FUTURE BATTLE AREA 5,000 MILES EASTWARD TO THE COASTS OF THE AMERICAN CONTINENT, OUR OWN HOME COAST. IT WOULD COMPLETELY EXPOSE OURSELVES AND OUR HOMES AND FRIENDS TO THE LUSTFUL THRUSTS OF THOSE WHO STAND FOR SLAVERY AGAINST LIBERTY, FOR ATHEISM AS AGAINST GOD."** In other activity, the 1st Marine Division begins landing at Kobe; it culminates the debarkation on September 3rd. Sleeping quarters are crammed, but two transport vessels are used as floating barracks; the close proximity of the temporary barracks to the docks provides a lucrative labor force of Marines to handle the cargo. **(Pacific-Korea)**  
**Southwestern Perimeter Pusan:** In the 25th Division sector at Battle Mountain, isolated Company C receives some strong artillery fire support which pounds the enemy positions and keeps reinforcements from reaching the crest and overrunning the beleaguered contingent on Old Baldy. In addition, while the artillery delivers sheets of fire to keep the enemy advance stalled, planes dispense immense amounts of fire to help thwart the North Koreans. The planes also deliver ammunition and supplies to C Company. The North Korean contingents, which had seized the positions of Company E during the night of the 28th-29th, are hit by incessant barrages throughout the day; after dark, Company E commences a counterattack which recaptures the ground it had surrendered earlier. However, the enemy is not ready to quit. At about 2300, the North Koreans mount a night counterattack against Company C which easily penetrates the left flank. Troops manning the flank bolt from their foxholes and begin to sprint, yelling as they run: **"THEY HAVE BROKEN THROUGH."** Only seventeen troops, including several wounded, remain at the command post with Col. Corcoran, but their meager strength is not sufficient enough to retake the crest which the North Koreans have again reclaimed. After sunrise on the 30th, the air force is back on the scene to once again employ its skills in a dedicated effort to inundate Battle Mountain with fire. The charred crest is also blitzed by a steady stream of artillery, mortar and tank fire, and the

powerful combination apparently does the trick. A wounded trooper makes his way down the mountain and informs headquarters that the bulk of the enemy has evacuated the crest and taken refuge west of the summit on some wooded ridges to better conceal themselves. Soon after, at 1100, another counterattack is mounted by Company B, which jumps off under cover fire. The brisk pace of the attack retakes the crest within two hours. Subsequently, Col. Corcoran gives testimony referring to the actions of his troops; he states that "FIRE DISCIPLINE IN HIS COMPANY WAS VERY POOR," and that his troops "WOULD FIRE AT TARGETS OUT OF RANGE UNTIL THEY HAD EXHAUSTED THEIR AMMUNITION AND AT NIGHT WOULD FIRE WHEN THERE WERE NO TARGETS." Continuing, Col. Corcoran claims that within his entire Company (C) he counted twenty-five as soldiers and that they carried the remainder of the company. **In the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade sector:** Eighty-seven Marines receive Purple Hearts at a ceremony attended by S.K. President Syngman Rhee; subsequent to the ceremony, Rhee speaks to the troops offering his thanks and congratulations for their actions. Also, Rhee informs General Craig that he would like to present an award to every man in the brigade; later, the brigade receives a S.K. Presidential unit citation. **Central Front Taegu Pusan Perimeter:** The 1st Cavalry Division takes responsibility for the S.K. 1st Division zone north of Taegu; the I&R Platoon is dispatched to the crest of Hill 902, known as Ka-san, a walled city; however, the fortress is not really walled. The I&R Platoon reaches the top and encounters 156 S.K. troops. In conjunction, General Gay has attempted to get the area released from his authority as he claims his 1st Cavalry is already too extended (35 mile front). The question concerning responsibility will become moot in several days, subsequent to the seizure of the hill by the enemy.

**August 30 1950 - (United States)** Two Regiments of the 3rd Infantry Division, the 7th and 15th, embark from San Francisco en route to Japan from where they will move to Korea to join the 65th Regiment. The 3rd Division will join the X Corps. The convoy will arrive at Moji, Japan and the final contingent will debark by September 16th. **(Pacific-Japan)** A dispatch from General Oliver P. Smith, commanding officer 1st Marine Division, is received by X Corps, the recently activated Tactical Organization formed specifically for the Inchon operation; the message stipulates the need for the brigade to be released from Eighth Army on Sept. 1st, to enable it to participate with the 1st Marine Division's invasion of Inchon. Eighth Army is reluctant to release the brigade; however, Smith eventually prevails, and pursuant to orders by General MacArthur, the brigade is to be released to the 1st Marine Division on Sept. 4th. General Walker, while speaking with General Almond, makes it perfectly clear that he requires the 5th Marines and so states: "**IF I LOSE THE 5TH MARINE REGIMENT I WILL NOT BE RESPONSIBLE FOR THE SAFETY OF THE FRONT.**" General Almond, commanding officer of the X Corps, is convinced that the corps can accomplish its mission without the 5th Marines and he supports Walker. In the meantime, the enemy launches a fierce attack on Sept. 1st and MacArthur countermands his order to release the 5th Marines. Further deliberations on the subject are held in Tokyo on September 3rd, which terminate the debate on the fate of the Marines. In other activity, ComNavFE, Admiral C. Turner Joy issues Operation Plan 108-50, delegating the seizure of Inchon by Amphibious Assault to JTF-7; X Corps is part of JTF-7. Also, X Corps' Operation Order No. 1 (dated August 28th) is received by the 1st Marine Division today. Also, Admirals Struble and Doyle and Marine General O.P. Smith have been holding meetings for several days; today, Struble holds a conference (reference Inchon) with Admirals Andrewes, Higgins and Ruble and Captain Austin. **(Pacific-Korea)** At this time, eight Air Force fighter squadrons are flying support missions over Korea, which is about the

maximum able to be supported by the Airbases in Kyushu, Japan. The divisions, operating along the Pusan Perimeter during the month of August, each receive equal proportions of planes, about forty sorties per day. One distinctive and distinguished airman, Major Dean E. Hess, seemingly spends more time in the air than on the ground; Hess has the unique position of being an instructor for would-be South Korean pilots and he acquires the reputation of being "THE ONE MAN AIR FORCE OF THE SOUTH KOREAN ARMY," but he is officially grounded by the end of August, subsequent to flying 95 combat missions during July and August.

**August 31 1950 -(Pacific-Korea)** In Air activity, B-29s of Fifth Air Force strike a heavy blow against Chinnamp'o, an industrial area in North Korea, which contains aluminum and magnesium factories. With August closing out, the combined Naval-Air Force Air strikes have impaired, but not halted, the movement of enemy supply lines. The North Koreans manage to continue moving supply Trains and Trucks, but at a reduced rate. Also, the movement of enemy Artillery has diminished greatly during August, but Tanks and Heavy Weapons remain a crucial priority along with fuel and they continue to flow. In contrast, food becomes a lesser priority and by today, the majority of North Korean units on the front lines receive the ramifications. Lack of rations impedes their ability to fight with vitality. In other activity, although it is ahead of schedule and not in synchronization with the plans of General Walker, the South Korean Army has reactivated the ROK 7th Division; it will be composed of a minimum of one Battalion per Regiment (3rd, 5th and 8th Regiments). In conjunction, Task Force Min is vanishing as a S.K. unit; it will be transformed into the 1st and 2nd Battalions, 5th Regiment, S.K. 7th Division. Also, battle casualties during August, within the four U.S. Divisions fighting in Korea thus far, have been severe. The 1st Cavalry Division sustains 1,503 casualties, the 24th Division 1,941, the 25th Division 1,800 and the 2nd Division's 9th RCT suffers 827 casualties. In addition, all Divisions share an equally high rate of non-battle casualties, especially from heat prostration. The South Korean Army suffers many more battle casualties than the American units. At the present time, Walker has three U.S. Regiments in reserve: the 25th Regiment which arrives at Masan today and is scheduled to relieve the 5th RCT, which subsequent to relief is to rejoin its parent 24th Division at Taegu; the 19th Regiment, 24th Division at Kyongsan, southeast of Taegu and the 5th Marines, 1st Provisional Marine Brigade at Changwon, about six miles northeast of Masan. Eighth Army also has the British 27th Infantry Brigade, composed of two Battalions; however, it is still not totally equipped.

**September 1 1950 -United States)** The Defense Production Act is passed by Congress, authorizing President Truman to control wages and prices as well as authorizing him to control distribution of scarce commodities and to ration items which are in short supply. In other activity, El Toro becomes more quiet as the final elements of the 1st Marine Air Wing embark for the Far East aboard the USS *General Morton*; Major General Field Harris, Commanding Officer 1st MAW, had departed El Toro by air on the previous day. **(Pacific-Japan)** In response to the enemy offensive (launched today) in Korea, General MacArthur cancels his previous order releasing the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade to the 1st Marine Division. MacArthur wants to permit its use to neutralize the attack; most Brigade equipment is already at Pusan waiting to be shipped to Japan. In conjunction, Col. Edward Forney, USMC, the newly appointed deputy chief of staff, X Corps, suggests to General Oliver Smith that he accept the 32nd Regiment, USA in place of the 5th Marines. Smith declines the suggestion because the 32nd Regiment is untrained in Amphibious Invasions. General Smith remains adamant concerning the return of the 5th Marines; a meeting will be held on Sept. 3rd to conclude the problem with an amicable solution. In other activity, the dock areas in Kobe, Sasebo

and Yokohama are highly active as naval personnel scurry to complete the final phase of preparations for the Inchon invasion. The gunfire support group, comprising the majority of the escort vessels and the command ships, are at Sasebo; the 1st Marine Division, minus the 5th Marines (embarking from Pusan), will board its vessels at Kobe, and the 7th Infantry Division will embark from Yokohama. The assault troops have been debarking in Japan since the closing days of August, and there is little time before the big shove-off. To remain on schedule and reach Inchon on the 15th, the LSTs must depart Kobe on September 10th, and the Transports and Cargo Vessels, have to embark Yokohama by the 12th. **(Pacific-Japan-Korea)** The U.S. Navy continues its preparations for the invasion of Inchon; discreetly, Lt. Eugene Clark, USN, a member of MacArthur's JSPOG Staff is being sent to reconnoiter Yonghung-do, a tiny strategic island perched at the mouth of the channel about fifteen sea miles southwest of Inchon. The clandestine mission is dubbed Operation TRUDY JACKSON. The HMS *Charity*, having transported Clark from Sasebo on the previous night, rendezvous with the South Korean Patrol Vessel PC-703; Clark, two interpreters and a small entourage of several other men, apparently U.S. Army Intelligence, transfer to the Korean vessel. U.S. Marines and British Marines accompany Clark aboard the *Charity*, on the voyage from Sasebo. Once debarked, Clark, who brings ample ammunition- 30 cases of C-Rations and 200 pounds of rice, is quickly able to befriend the native Koreans (about 300-400 friendly Koreans). Clark organizes about 150 of them (between the ages of 14-18) as his personal OSS unit, dispatching them repeatedly into Inchon to measure the depth of the water and spy on the enemy, counting their numbers and identifying their positions. Clark also utilizes the Koreans to organize a defense of Yonghung-do, which is close to enemy-held Taebu-do, from which the enemy can walk during low tide. The mission is extremely successful and includes a naval victory of sorts. During the dangerous mission, the inevitable occurs as North Koreans move toward Yonghung-do in Boats protected by a sampan gunship. Clark and a crew of three Koreans engages the unusual flotilla with a slow chugging Sampan, outfitted with a .50 caliber machine gun. The sea joust erupts on Sept. 8th, when the enemy sampan gunboat fires its attached 37.mm tank gun, expending several rounds and showcasing poor marksmanship. Clark's crew commences firing and their machine gun fire decimates the enemy sampan, sinking it; Clark continues firing and sinks one of the accompanying Boats; three of the eighteen occupants are captured. Clark reports the incident, and on the following day (9th), the destroyer USS *Hanson* and some aircraft arrive to bombard Taebu-do. Meanwhile, Clark continues the primary mission of gaining intelligence and transmitting it to friendly vessels operating off Korea. In addition, during one of the nights on the island, Lt. Clark incredibly rows a boat straight into Inchon to test the density of the muck, and when the tide rolls out, he walks into the mud up to his waist. Concluding that landing troops would be futile, he dispatches the following message: **"INCHON NOT SUITABLE FOR LANDING EITHER TROOPS OR VEHICLES ACROSS THE MUD."** Despite his daily reports of intelligence and a growing danger to his life, Clark refuses continuous efforts to evacuate him; cognizant of his fate if caught, he carries one grenade to ensure the North Koreans don't capture him. During this unsung heroic action, Lt. Clark also manages to repair a Light Beacon on Palmi Island, which the enemy had previously put out of operation, without destroying it. Undaunted, the daily reports from Clark continue to flow, but finally he is compelled to evacuate hastily on the 14th, when a large contingent of enemy troops storm Yohung-do. Clark escapes harm and flees to the temporary sanctuary of the repaired Beacon light (Palmi-do), but the North Koreans slaughter about fifty Koreans (men and women) on Yonghung-do. At about midnight (14th-15th), Clark abandons the island and is retrieved by the navy. Other sources of information also contribute to the intelligence

gathering of the U.S. forces, including the experience of Warrant Officer W. R. Miller, USA (Second Transportation Medium, Yokohama); he is temporarily assigned to ComPhibGruONE because of his experience with Inchon's tides and unloading problems at the port. In addition, an air force officer, Colonel Richard W. Philbrick and two civilians, Donald Graves and Amron Katz, have been dispatched from the States; they measure the varying height of the Inchon seawalls, subsequent to inspection of aerial photographs taken by RF-80 jet aircraft from a distance of 200 feet during various stages of the tides. **(Pacific-Korea)** Eighth Army realizes early that the enemy attacks on the previous day had been the forerunner of the tremendous enemy offensive which is unfolding in the southern part of the perimeter. In reaction, General Walker keeps a feverish pace, beginning with requesting Air Force assistance at 0900; he calls for massive strikes to corner off the battleground by bombing slightly in front of the 2nd Division boundary stretching along the Naktong from Toksong-dong southward. He also requests simultaneous raids to be launched as deeply as 10-15 miles west of the Naktong. Upon receiving Eighth Army's urgent request, the Air Force Far East Command seeks some additional power from the navy. NAVFE contacts the Seventh Fleet, which is striking the area near Inchon and Seoul, and directs it to disengage and speed south to hit new targets. Meanwhile, General Walker, holding limited reserves (three understrength regiments) ponders, which units to juggle to reinforce the stand. The available units are the 27th Regiment, 25th Division, the 19th Regiment, 24th Division and the 5th Marines; each contingent receives orders to stand by and be prepared to move out at any minute. At 1045, Eighth Army informs the 25th Division that the 27th Regiment is to prepare for possible movement to the 2nd Division sector, further north. Even the possibility of losing the regiment is considered grave news for the beleaguered 25th Division. At 1100, Walker, having decided that the most critical area is the Naktong Bulge (2nd Division sector), orders the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade to dispatch the 5th Marines to the bulge in order to halt the North Koreans outside of Miryang. The 5th Marines receive the warning order at 1109 and confirmation orders arrive at 1215, instructing the brigade to move forward at 1330. The regiment pushes from Changwon about six miles northeast of Masan. In conjunction, the brigade had received an alert at 0810 to prepare for movement but the destination at that time was not forthcoming. By 1800, General Craig has his command post established at Miryang and advance units are there to assist the brigade. The 1st Bn., 11th Marines, released from the 25th Division is among the advance units. Craig's Marine Brigade will come under the operational control of the 2nd Division. Before day's end, at 2230, General Craig is informed by Eighth Army that the brigade is to move out at dawn and deploy to the rear of the 9th Infantry, 2nd Division, south of Yongsan.

**September 2 1950 - (Pacific-Japan)** At about 0935, Major General Doyle Hickey (deputy chief of staff, Far East Command) receives a telephone call from General Walker informing him about the situation along the perimeter. Walker specifies that the most severe threat is occurring in the terrain sitting between the U.S. 2nd and 25th Divisions in the southwestern sector; Walker, who has already dispatched the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade toward Yongsan, wants to make sure MacArthur approves of its use before he commits them, and he is reassured by Hickey that General MacArthur has consented. This news relieves Walker who had also informed General Hickey that he was of the opinion that the line could not be restored at Yongsan unless he was able to commit the Marines. In other activity, the fleet at Kobe, composed of about fifty vessels and the 1st Marine Division receive some bad news concerning the imminent arrival of an unwelcome guest; Typhoon Jane, unrelated to Hanoi Jane, is due to whack the port on the following day. All loading operations are suspended for thirty-six hours. **(Pacific-Korea)** In the Southwestern Sector Pusan Perimeter:

In the 25th Division sector, the 35th Regiment maintains its grasp north of Haman; on Hill 179, Company G, 2nd Battalion repulses the enemy's heated attempts to annihilate it. In accordance with General Kean's order of the previous day, the 2nd Battalion, 27th Regiment, commanded by Col. Murch, launches an attack at 1700, springing forward from the vicinity of Chung-ni to bolster the 35th Regiment. The trek over the mountainous terrain (Kuhe-ri Ferry Road) under a pitch black sky is arduous, but combined with ferocious enemy resistance, the unit advances more slowly. It is unable to reach the embattled 35th Regiment near Hill 179 until the following afternoon. Subsequent to the departure of the 2nd Battalion, 27th Regiment, the Command Post of the 24th Regiment, 25th Division is attacked by a contingent of North Koreans who had penetrated behind the lines. In reaction, General Kean orders the 3rd Battalion, 27th Regiment to move out and eliminate the enemy infiltrators. In conjunction, the 3rd Battalion, 27th Regiment, commanded by Lt. Col. George H. DeChow, is actually the 3rd Battalion, 29th Regiment until September 10th when it becomes the former. DeChow's Command will initiate its assault on the following day. Meanwhile, the 1st Battalion, 27th Regiment, commanded by Col. Check, had initiated a counterattack on the previous day to reclaim the ground surrendered by the 24th Regiment. It has spent the night on the seized ground on a ridge about one mile west of Haman. At daybreak, the North Koreans lunge against the 1st Battalion, using a soupy fog to obscure their advance, but the Yanks spring into action and steadily pour fire into the attackers. Aircraft arrive and deliver lethal dosages of napalm, incinerating large numbers of the North Koreans and increasing the odds for the 1st Battalion, which battles feverishly for control of the summit. Finally, at about noon, the struggle ends victoriously for Check's 1st Battalion as it has recovered all of all ground previously lost by the 24th Regiment. The 1st Battalion also recaptures the 24th's intact crew-operated weapons. Disregarding the lack of opulence, the staunch-hearted warriors of the 27th Regiment move into the original foxholes which had been abruptly vacated two nights earlier to get a breather and prepare for the next enemy attack. In related activity, enemy contingents penetrate the positions of the 159th Field Artillery positions near the Nam River (northernmost sector of the 25th Division), but the artillerymen establish tenacious resistance and handily repulse the assault. Also, the day-long support of aircraft has inflicted enormous punishment on the enemy; the 25th Division sector is the recipient of 135 sorties which account for enemy casualties, the decimation of several enemy Tanks, some Artillery pieces and the violent destruction of three villages, each concealing ammunition depots. **In the 2nd Division sector** near Agok, the 2nd Platoon, Company A, 9th Regiment (surviving unit of Company A) attempts to break for friendly lines before daybreak; Lt. Fern dispatches a messenger to the rear to inform Sgt. Herbert Freeman to bring up the wounded and rejoin the platoon, but Freeman's contingent cannot be located. Lt. Fern moves out under the umbrella of a dense fog, moving toward Yongsan. The 2nd Platoon arrives above the town at about noon while a fierce battle is in progress, and it moves into the lines of the 72nd Tank Bn. just outside Yongsan. Meanwhile, the lost detachment of Sgt. Freeman remains behind enemy lines for five days, but the entire detachment, including the wounded, reenters U.S. lines; the small band had reclaimed the crest on the night of Aug. 31st, escaping harm. Meanwhile, the remnant troops of TF Manchu are still stranded on a southern knoll on Hill 209, having withstood severe attacks against its small but rigid perimeter since the previous day. At dawn, the beleaguered command, led by Lt. Schmitt, easily spots large numbers of dead enemy troops to the front of the perimeter; however, ammunition and supplies, especially grenades are becoming scarce. At 0900, a keen eyed Sergeant, Travis Watkins, detects two enemy troops about fifty yards from the perimeter; he takes quick action and eliminates both, and then he bolts from the line to confiscate their weapons and grenades.

During this dangerous advance, three other enemy troops, who are concealed about twenty yards away, open fire on Watkins who returns fire, killing all. The resilient sergeant returns to the perimeter with the weapons and ammo of the five enemy troops. In the process he also takes the time to bring back the insignia from the uniforms. Soon after, six more enemy soldiers venture very close to the perimeter and firmly entrench themselves prior to lobbing grenades toward a machine gun position, 25 yards away; once again, Sgt. Watkins, now suffering from a head wound, springs into action with his rifle. Standing conspicuously, Watkins ferociously engages the enemy. While Watkins is singlehandedly engaging the enemy with his rifle, the enemy has simultaneously opened fire on him with a deadly machine gun. Shells rip into his left side snapping his back and causing instant paralysis from the waist down. Despite the menacing wounds and incalculable pain, Watkins incredibly takes out all six enemy troops before collapsing back into his foxhole. The Sergeant's maneuverability has been severed, but there is no lack of courage. Confidently, Watkins assumes the roll of cheerleader and he inspires the desperate command to continue the fight. Watkins refuses his share of the remaining rations, claiming that he doesn't deserve food because he is no longer able to engage the enemy. Meanwhile, no reinforcements arrive to rescue the men on the desolate Hill 209. Later in the day, a liaison plane attempts to drop supplies into the cramped perimeter, but threading the needle in this case is too difficult and the supplies hit the slopes within the lines of the North Koreans. Undaunted, another attempt is made to drop supplies during the evening, but it too misses the mark. Nevertheless, Lt. Schmitt and several troops recover some rations, ammunition and grenades as well as a small bonanza consisting of twenty-one air-delivered cans of beer. In the meantime, the enemy coerces an American prisoner to march up the hill and deliver an ultimatum: **"YOU HAVE ONE HOUR TO SURRENDER OR BE BLOWN TO PIECES."** Schmitt scorns the warning and his troops tighten the line. In less than one hour, enemy machine guns deployed atop the embattled contingent commence firing. In conjunction, a heavy dose of antitank fire followed shortly thereafter by mortar fire originating on a higher ridge to the east strikes Schmitt's positions on Hill 209. The command holds. As the enemy guns silence in cadence with the setting sun, the dwindling number of determined defenders prepare for the suspected night-attacks. And they come on schedule. During these pressing hours, more heroics occur; PFC Joseph Quellete, Company H, 9th Regiment braves the fire to retrieve ammunition and weapons from the nearby enemy dead and to bring in some air-dropped water cans which could be seen; Quellete makes it to the water cans but all have been cracked open and empty. His subsequent trip to retrieve ammunition is successful but not until he encounters and kills an enemy trooper in close-quartered fighting. On the following day, when the enemy repeatedly attacks the perimeter, Quellete comes under constant grenade bombardment, chasing him from his foxhole six separate times and compelling him to resist the attacks while standing exposed. His extraordinary courage under fire costs Quellete his life; he receives the Medal of Honor posthumously. As today is ending, the fighting on Hill 209 closes in fury, but despite the Yanks' numbers having been cut in half, they defy the heavy odds and retain the hill, having repulsed the repeated assaults. Nonetheless, the situation for the following day is grave, despite the extraordinary courage; no reinforcements, no water, nearly all ammunition has been effectively expended and while the wounded list has grown, only one medic with the scantiest of supplies is with the balance of the command. Also, Lt. Schmitt has become wounded, but he remains in command. Meanwhile the area around Yongsan is becoming an inferno as enemy troops moved into the town on the previous night. At about 0300, sentries (Company D, 2nd Engineer Combat Bn.) detect a long column of people, donned in white clothing moving through Yongsan toward the blockage, east of the town. Word of the unidentified

movement is immediately passed on to Company A, which prepares for any eventuality. Requests for identification are responded to by a barrage of fire, terminating the early morning mystery. The Engineers react promptly and another day of vicious fighting is underway. With the arrival of dawn, the North Koreans attempt to commit reinforcements into the blazing battle, but Lt. Lee Beahler's Company D, which had taken positions on the dominating hill above Yongsan on the previous day, retains its hold and unleashes a relentless blanket of fire. Without pause, the Engineers and their supporting tanks manifest resolute resistance despite the lack of artillery and mortar support fire. Company D improvises, combining the firepower of its nine older 2.36-inch rocket launchers and the recently arrived nine 3.5-inch version (new model bazooka) to shred the advancing enemy Infantry. Intertwined with the menacing bazooka fire, eight machine guns, and tank fire further decimate the attackers. Many North Koreans who escape this enfilade and the avenging tanks are cut to pieces by the effective fire of the riflemen. Those who advance even closer are greeted by a savage barrage of grenades. By about 1100, the blood-bath fighting on the fringes of Yongsan and on the slope of the hill south of it subsides. Temporarily, the enemy attempt to burst forward and drive east toward Miryang is thwarted, and their ranks are now greatly diminished. Enormous amounts of enemy dead are splattered over the area, and the scene displays large quantities of destroyed enemy equipment. The tankmen of Companies A and B, 72nd Tank Bn., the Combat Engineers and the 2nd Division Reconnaissance Company have bought some additional time for Eighth Army, but at a terrific price. Company A, 2nd Engineer Battalion sustains twelve troops killed and eighteen wounded; Lt. Beahler is the sole officer of Company D neither wounded or killed. In the meantime, Col. Hill, commanding officer, 9th Regiment begins regrouping about 800 troops of the 9th Regiment who have withdrawn east from their river line perimeter; the troops include Companies E and F which had been bypassed by the primary enemy advance across the Naktong. During the afternoon, the reorganized 2nd Battalion, 9th Regiment and some supporting Tanks advance through the positions of Company A, 2nd Combat Engineer Bn., then commence a counterattack. The infusion of the 2nd Battalion tilts the scales and by 1500, Yongsan is resecured. However, some enemy tanks remain in the area; two bazooka teams (Company A, 2nd Engineer Bn.) join the battle and eliminate three T-34s slightly west of Yongsan. Additional enemy tanks are decimated by other ground units and by arriving planes. In essence, the North Koreans have been intercepted, engaged and routed at Yonsan; by dusk the enemy is moving west heading into the hills. Following the dispersement of the enemy, the 2nd Battalion, 9th Regiment and Company A, 2nd Engineer Combat Battalion spread out about one mile beyond Yonsan, the former to the northwest and the latter to the west. General Walker arrives at the 2nd Division front at about noon and makes his position clear; he demands a **"stand or die defense."** At 1315, Walker attaches the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade to the 2nd Division. In conjunction, Walker orders every available unit of the 2nd Division, including the recently arrived Marines, to destroy the enemy east of the Naktong and retake the river line. Also, Eighth Army directs the 24th Division Headquarters and the 19th Regiment to pick up and head for Susan-ni, situated about fifteen miles east of the junction of the Nam and Naktong Rivers and about eight air miles south of Miryang; from these positions, the units can be sped into the 2nd or 25th Division sector, depending upon the need. **In the 23rd Regimental sector:** At Changnyong, the villagers begin evacuating the town about 1300, sending a clear message that the enemy is close by. Shortly afterward, Major Jack Young and Capt. Harry H. White, holding positions with their small force of about 300 South Korean police, decide to evacuate when they detect two separate enemy contingents approaching from the northwest and southwest respectively. The U.N. contingent retires eastward to fade into

the hills there. Later, during the night, the enemy troops occupy Changnyong. Meanwhile, communications have ceased between the northern force (TF Haynes) and the more southern units, the 9th Regiment and the 2nd Division Headquarters, prompting General Haynes to dispatch three tanks to Yongsan in an effort to reopen the communications. However, the task is difficult and costly for Company C, 72nd Tank Battalion; two tanks are lost while fighting their way along the Yongsan road. Nonetheless, Capt. Manes R. Dew's tank completes the trek and appraises General Joseph Bradley of the situation in TF Haynes zone. **In the 38th Regiment sector**, north of the 23rd Regiment, the enemy retains its grasp on Hill 284, threatening the Command Post of the Regiment; Col. Peplow's Command is dispersed widely, with the 2nd Battalion moving south to join elements of the 23rd Regiment and the 3rd Battalion advancing along the Yongsan road to rescue the isolated 1st Battalion, 23rd Regiment near Changnyong. The extreme right flank of the 38th Regimental zone is held by the 1st Battalion; during the night of the 2nd-3rd, enemy attacks force Company C, 1st Battalion to evacuate Hyongp'ung. For the following two weeks, the town is under domination of the enemy or falls into the "no man's land" category. In conjunction, the area north and east of the town and Hill 409 is comprised of mountainous terrain which also is classified as "**no man's land**" for the first weeks of September, due basically to the fact that no genuine U.N. defenses are entrenched there. Further north, about four miles distant, the Yongp'o bridge over the Nakdong and the dividing point between the 1st Cavalry and the 2nd Division is guarded by the 3rd Battalion, 23rd Regiment (attached 1st Cavalry Division); it will be relieved by a British contingent in several days. The 3rd Battalion, which had departed on the previous day, reaches the 1st Battalion, 23rd Regiment, having successfully overcome the enemy obstacles; Major Everett Stewart (Bn. Exec Off.), acting battalion commander, gets some forward contingents to Col. Hutchins by 1700. Later, during the night, the North Koreans attack the 3rd Battalion's positions on Hill 209, north of the road and directly across from Hutchins' positions at the pass; one Company is dislodged, but otherwise the line holds. In other activity, a crucial meeting is held at the 2nd Division command post during the afternoon to consider strategy for an attack; Col. William A. Collier, Eighth Army deputy chief of staff and General Keiser, commanding officer, 2nd Division attend. Also, Brigadier General Edward Craig and Major Frank R. Stewart, both of the Marine Corps, are in attendance; a decision is made that an attack will be launched on the following day. **In related activity, 1st Provisional Marine Brigade:** The 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines arrives at its blocking positions on the highway heading into Yongsan at 0630, with the balance of the Brigade moving to its assembly areas throughout the day. General Craig arrives at 2nd Division headquarters at 0830 to discuss the brigade's commitment. Following the meeting, Craig surveys the area by helicopter. At 1430, Craig returns to 2nd Division headquarters and is briefed by General Keiser on the deteriorating circumstances; Keiser urges Craig to initiate a large-scale assault during the afternoon, but Craig, pointing out the variables which prevent such an attack, including the late hour, lack of air cover due to nasty weather and most importantly, too many of his troops are still en route to their assembly sectors. In addition, General Craig requests that rather than launching a wide frontal attack, Keiser specify particular objectives for the brigade; General Keiser concurs. Later, during the evening (1900), Col Hill, upon his return to the 9th Regimental Command Post east of Yongsan, confers with Col. Murray, 5th Marines and informs him that the Marine departure line for the impending attack is secure. The various attack units begin to prepare and take their positions, but Company A, 2nd Combat Engineer Bn. encounters strong enemy resistance during the night and it is prevented from reaching the high ground which is scheduled to be part of the departure line for the Marines. In conjunction, when the Marines launch their attack at 0800 (Sept. 3rd) driving west,

the 9th Regiment, USA and its supporting units will attack northwest to establish contact with the 23rd Regiment; the 2nd Engineer Combat Battalion and some other supporting units will attack south of the Marines in support of their left flank to reestablish contact with the 25th Division.

**September 3 1950 - (Pacific-Japan)** Typhoon Jane, swept by roaring 110 mile-an-hour winds, arrives tumultuously at noon, wreaking terrible havoc for more than three and one-half hours. The powerful winds create forty-foot waves that overwhelm the dock area and imperil both man and machine, pushing both to the brink. Despite the precautions taken upon advance notice of the typhoon, nature prevails; one huge 200-ton crane is seared from its base, as if it had been torn from cardboard. Port troops and Marines work tirelessly to forestall catastrophe, but they must struggle against unruly two-foot breakers which engulf the piers. During the desperate effort, even the massive warships are mismatched; seven vessels are sprung from their moorings when heavy duty steel lines, with diameters of two and one-half inches, snap like twisted paper clips. The calamity exposes the overmatched vessels to the raging surf. However, the wild storm which had zoomed in from the east begins to subside somewhat by about 1530, permitting the troops to rebound and get a better grip on the situation. Fortunately, no major damage is sustained, and by 1630, the wildcat has passed over Kobe and begins whipping over the churning sea. The trailing tranquility is appreciated, but there is hardly time to relax as it is time for a mandated field day. The cleanup crew is everyone and sufficient toil remains in the wake; several ships are flooded, causing damage to the cargoes. Some other vessels are put into drydock to receive emergency repairs. In conjunction, the cargo aboard the transport *Marine Phoenix* shifts drastically during the storm causing a sharp list, but it is quickly adjusted and righted without disaster. General Field Harris, USMC, commanding general 1st MAW, and his staff arrive in Tokyo; many of the staff move to Itami airfield; however, General Field and several others remain in Tokyo to attend the conferences concerning Inchon. In Tokyo, Marine, navy and army officers meet to decide the fate of the 5th Marines and its place with regards to Inchon. General Almond, USA, former chief of staff, general headquarters Far East Command and now commander X Corps, states that the 5th Marines will remain in Korea with Eighth Army and that the 32nd Regiment, 7th Division will replace it for the invasion of Inchon. General Oliver Smith, accompanied by Admirals Doyle, Joy and Struble, reiterates his position concerning the 32nd Regiment's unpreparedness for an amphibious invasion, and then Smith emphatically restates the preeminence of the 5th Marines presence for the Inchon invasion. Shortly thereafter, General Almond excuses himself and departs to confer with MacArthur, explaining the stalemate to him and advising MacArthur that the navy and General Smith are not willing to strike Inchon without the 5th Marines. MacArthur directs Almond to inform Eighth Army: "**TELL WALKER HE WILL HAVE TO GIVE UP THE 5TH MARINE REGIMENT.**" Admiral Struble offers a compromise committing the 5th Marines to the counterattack, while the 32nd Regiment or equivalent unit from the 7th Division embarks for Korea from Japan to replace it when the fires are extinguished. The latter solution is finally accepted. On the following day, MacArthur sends General Wright to Taegu, Korea to update General Walker and inform him of the situation. In other activity, Admiral Struble issues JTF Seven Operational Plan 9-50 (Inchon Invasion). The Task Force components are: 1.) TF 90, Attack Force, commanded by Rear Admiral Doyle; 2.) TF 92 X Corps, commanded by Major General Edward Almond; 3.) TF 99, Patrol and Reconnaissance Force, commanded by Rear Admiral G. R. Henderson; 4.) TF 91, Blockade and Covering Force, commanded by Rear Admiral W. G. Andrews (Royal Navy); 5.) TF 77, Fast Carrier Force, commanded by Rear Admiral E. C. Ewen; 6.) Logistic Support Force, commanded by Capt. B. L. Austin, USN; 7.) TF 70.1, Flagship Group, commanded by Capt. E. L.

Woodyard, USN. air support, operating within the naval force, includes naval aircraft from the USS *Boxer*, Marine aircraft from their two accompanying escort carriers and British aircraft from the light british carrier; all aircraft missions will be controlled from the USS *Mt. McKinley*, the flagship of the amphibious force. In conjunction, the planes and surface vessels are restricted, the former forbidden from operating within twenty miles of Chinese or Soviet territory and the latter under orders to remain outside the twelve-mile limit of the same countries. **(Pacific-Korea) Southwestern Perimeter Pusan: In the 25th Division sector**, the 1st Battalion, 35th Regiment still controls a confined perimeter on Sibidang, the extreme western positions of the U.N. forces; however, the enemy has gained control of the terrain to its rear, including the primary supply road. Today, at 0100, the North Koreans strike tenaciously at the defenses on Sibidang-ni, but the 1st Battalion and its supporting artillery units again deal out punishing blows. During the fierce contest, about fifty enemy troops penetrate the lines of Battery A, 64th Field Artillery Battalion, commanded by Captain Andrew Anderson. The enemy assault runs over two protective machine gun positions of the artillery, reaching the guns at 0300, but the artillerymen react rapidly, engaging the attackers in gruesome close quartered hand-to-hand combat. Nearby, Battery C, 90th Field Artillery Battalion throws its weight into the battle, providing an iron shield for the besieged Battery A, which forbids the entry of enemy reinforcements and permits Capt. Andrew Anderson's troops to continue the fight. Several guns are temporarily seized by the enemy, but they are soon regained. When the battle subsides at about sunrise, the enemy has been repelled and at great loss; 143 enemy dead are counted in the immediate front of the positions, and from this figure the 1st Battalion estimates total enemy casualties at about 500 troops. In conjunction, Battery A sustains seven troops killed and suffers twelve men wounded. Needless to say, the artillery fire of the Yanks has saved the day; during these first days of September, the guns (105s) of five batteries of 64th and 159th FABs and Battery C, 90th FAB supplement the 25th Division with thirty-six guns. The artillerymen claim the losses of more than 1,800 enemy troops in defense of the Nam River lines of the 25th Division sector. In addition, the striking power of the U.S. air force has played a key role as reported by General Kean speaking on Sept. 3rd: **"THE CLOSE AIR SUPPORT RENDERED BY FIFTH AIR FORCE AGAIN SAVED THIS DIVISION (25th) AS THEY HAVE MANY TIMES BEFORE."** Subsequently (during November), General Walker, relating to the Air Force assistance states: **"I WILL GLADLY LAY MY CARDS ON THE TABLE AND STATE THAT IF IT HAD NOT BEEN FOR THE AIR SUPPORT THAT WE RECEIVED FROM THE FIFTH AIR FORCE WE WOULD NOT HAVE BEEN ABLE TO STAY IN KOREA."** In other activity, Company G, 2nd Battalion, 35th Regiment maintains its hold on Hill 179. In conjunction, the 2nd Battalion, 27th Regiment, which had commenced its attack to support the 35th Regiment on the previous day, fights to within 1,000 yards of the initial defensive positions of Company G, 35th Regiment, reaching there about 1300. Subsequently, the Infantry, augmented by air strikes, armor and artillery fire, gnaws ahead and drives a lethal wedge into the enemy positions. By 1800, the front line perimeter is restored and in the process, large quantities of previously abandoned Company G, 35th Regimental equipment is reclaimed. Col. Murch's 2nd Battalion, 27th Regiment retains control of the recaptured ground throughout the night of the 3rd-4th, but on the following day, the battalion is directed to launch an attack to the rear to secure the western tip of the battalion zone, thereby opening the alternate supply route. The huge enemy penetration to the rear of the 25th Division lines has unquestionably tested the mettle of the division and its individual units, many of whom are coerced into operating as self-sustaining contingents, relying on air drops and sporadic arrivals of armor while the elements of the 27th Regiment are advancing to their aid.

The various isolated battalions, companies and platoons meet the test; however, more than 3,000 North Koreans (behind the lines) push them to the brink. During the horrendous skirmishes, the evacuation of the wounded remains a grueling task and the attempts to resupply the beleaguered division exemplify courage and heroism. Notwithstanding, the enemy manages to create much confusion while masterminding more abominable atrocities. In one instance, tanks, spearheading a column of vehicles (transporting hot food) toward stranded Company G, 35th Regiment, encounter fierce resistance less than two miles from the objective. The tanks roar forward, sustaining no losses. But the enemy fire compels the majority of the mess vehicles to turn back. One segment of the column braves the fire and speeds forward to rejoin the tanks. Some of these troops are captured and tortured with ghastly results. One trooper remains concealed in a haystack, but another, his buddy, is not so lucky, and as the survivor relates, the anguished soldier proclaims: "YOU MIGHT AS WELL KILL ME NOW;" and the enemy executes him. Later, the body of the maliciously tortured Yank is discovered; it is a grotesque scene. His captors had severed his fingers and inflicted him with castration. Other dead Americans are also recovered when the enemy is driven from the 25th Division area; the benevolent Communists, prior to executing the Yanks, have tied their hands and amputated their feet. Yet other American soldiers lie dead; their tongues have been cut out of their mouths by the Communists. In other activity, the 3rd Battalion, 27th Regiment (3rd Bn. 29th Reg.), operating west of the "Horseshoe" encounters several hundred enemy troops near the positions of the artillery and engages them during the morning hours; prior to disposing of this opposition, the battalion launches its attack at 1500. Col. DeChow's troops drive forward to reinforce the rear of the 24th Regiment by seizing control of the high ground which overlooks the Horseshoe portion of the Masan Road, less than five miles east of Komam-ni. The advance, supported with only one piece of artillery, becomes arduous and soon after jump-off, the force is intercepted by an enemy contingent comprised of more than 1,000 troops; the 3rd Battalion is struck hard by a fierce counterattack which inflicts heavy casualties, including thirteen officers. planes bolster the attack by hindering the enemy thrust and more tanks arrive to lessen the brunt of the enemy counterattack. During one of the ongoing skirmishes, Lt. Elwood F. James, Company K commander, is killed while leading an assault. With the arrival of the air power and the reinforcing tanks, the 3rd Battalion overcomes the tenacious resistance and seizes the objective, and from these heights, the attack toward the 24th Regimental Command Post is scheduled to resume on the morning of the 4th. However, on the following morning new orders of attack are received by Col. DeChow. At Masan, the situation is also critical as the Communists have successfully nurtured a network of sympathizers and agents, enabling the North Koreans to easily receive reports on conditions within the town. While the fighting ensues, some enemy units are being engaged within a few miles from Masan. About four miles from Masan at Changwon, an enemy contingent composed of about fifty Guerrillas executes a surprise night-raid, capturing a diminutive detachment comprised of five Americans and two South Koreans at a radio relay station; their tent on the crest of a hill is overtaken swiftly. The guerrillas confiscate the weapons and the various documents in the tent, and as usual, the Communists dispense their ruthlessness. The lone woman in the enemy unit, brandishing a tommygun, assumes the role of assassin and riddles the seven U.N. captives with shells, but two of the shot Americans cheat death and survive to record the atrocity for posterity. Also, at the recovered positions of the 24th Regiment several miles west of Haman, Col. Check's victorious 1st Battalion, 27th Regiment is severely tested during the early morning hours. The North Koreans descend on the perimeter with great fervor, intending to dislodge the Yanks, but the battalion is perched for the anticipated assault and unleashes some hefty firepower

of its own. Some of the enemy troops strike at the battalion's rear, but a few improvisations and the rear is blanketed with a ring of fire. In addition, tanks are thrown into the battle and for some extra kick, mortars and artillery fire are catapulted toward the enemy, thinning their ranks considerably. To further ensure the decimation of the attacking enemy, some precision coordination between the battalion command post and soaring aircraft provides a killing blow with meticulous timing that shatters the force of the assault. The pin-pointed air strike assures victory for Check's troops on the ridge and delivers excruciating pain to the North Koreans; according to information acquired from a captured North Korean, four battalions had engaged Col. Check's 1st Battalion during the two day contest (2nd-3rd) and of these, about 1,000 enemy troops had been lost. The 1st Battalion, 27th Regiment will be relieved on the following day. **In the 2nd Division sector: 1st Provisional Marine Brigade:** Word has it that the Marines will again be facing the N.K. 4th Division, which had been decimated by the brigade during August; its survivors and new recruits are moving behind the N.K. 9th Division. The 5th Marines begins to move forward at 0300 to form for its attack, but enemy resistance hinders the operation. At 0450, the 2nd Battalion's trucks halt at a point about 800 yards from Yongsan to unload the troops; soon after, the column marches into the town, encountering sniper fire. The battalion insensitively silences the resistance and moves through the town, reaching the road junction at its western end by 0630. Still, about 1,000 yards from its line of departure, the 2nd Battalion, under Col. Roise, again comes under fire originating from its right front. Roise advances an additional 500 yards and to his amazement discovers that the lines of the supporting 9th Infantry there had folded. To the left of the road, Roise spots an army tank contingent posted to the rear of the small hill which he has reached; to the front, he spots four tanks, two demolished and two abandoned. Beyond them lie two decimated T-34s. To the right of the highway, there is also a distressing view. An earlier attack, launched by the North Korean 9th Division at dawn, has pushed back the army contingents posted at the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines departure line.

Meanwhile, General Craig and an accompanying officer land to the rear of Yongsan. They move by Jeep to reach the 1st Bn. 5th Marines CP and discover that the battalion is somewhat off line. The 1st Battalion realigns itself as much as possible in the darkness. Eventually, the 1st and 2nd Battalions, 5th Marines are in their respective assembly area, which is a long north-south ridge line directly south of Myong-ni and about one thousand yards west of Yongsan, the former (1st Bn.) south of Yongsan and the latter (2nd) north of it; the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines deploys southwest of Yongsan to guard the approaches from that direction which could threaten the regimental perimeter. In conjunction, the 2nd Platoon, Company A, 1st Tank Battalion, commanded by Lt. Robert Winter, will push down the MSR from its positions about 500 yards west of Yongsan; it will be a heated advance against stiff resistance.

Meanwhile, guarding the line of departure, Army contingents are deployed in the hills just west of Yongsan; Company G, 9th Regiment is spread north of the highway leading west through Kogan-ni to the Naktong River; Company A, 2nd Engineer Combat Battalion is dispersed southward across the road and Company F, 9th Regiment holds the ground to the rear of the engineers. One unit, Company A, 2nd Engineer Bn. has not reached its destination due to heavy enemy resistance on the previous night. At dawn, Company A, 2nd Engineers, led by Capt. Frank Reed, commences an assault to seize the heights designated as part of the 1st Bn., 5th Marines line of departure; braving fierce enemy fire, the company ascends to within 100 yards of the crest. Capt. Reed nears the top, but he is greeted by an enemy grenade. He snatches it and tosses it away from his troops, but he is

wounded in the process. Meanwhile, the enemy continues to resist feverishly. Marine tank fire joins the fight to supplement the power of the ground troops and they seize the hill. However, enemy penetration is driving the 9th Regiment, USA back. At 0645, Col. Roise directs Marine tanks to speed forward and cover the 9th Regiment withdrawal from the heights in the 1st Bn., 5th Marines zone. In addition, Marine Tanks (2nd Platoon) led by Lt. Robert Winter move to positions adjacent to the 2nd Bn., 5th Marines command post and from there, they begin pouring support fire to aid the 9th Regiment.

At 0700, the 2nd Battalion's Companies D and E strike along the Yongsan-Myong-ni Road to clear the brigades' right flank. In synchronization, while the final troops of the 9th RCT pull back from the 1st Battalion's departure line, Col. Roise orders artillery, mortars, machine guns, Tanks and air strikes to pound the vacated ridge line to the left front. Despite the huge bombardment, enemy fire still rings down on Company E, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines as it secures some hills below Myong-ni; on the previous day, these hills had been selected as the departure line for the 2nd Battalion, but they are now incorporated as part of objective number one. At 0800, Captain Samuel Jaskilka reports to Col. Roise, confirming that Company E's mission has concluded successfully. Roise then directs Company D to drive through Myong-ni and secure the hill slightly northwest of the village. By now the army's Armor posted at the southern part of the hill near the MSR join the Marine tanks there and the 1st Platoon, Company A, 1st Engineer Bn. comes on scene, resulting in a massive display of firepower which instantly halts the progress of the N.K. 9th Division, but not its return fire. General Craig's command post comes under wild fire which wounds several men, including Lt. Winter who receives a neck wound. Soon after, while another Marine offers first aid to Winter, he too becomes wounded. Winter, wounded but not without his priorities and sense of humor, offers General Craig a bottle of whiskey which had somehow found its way into Winter's tank. Two chaplains, Lt. Cmdr. Otto Sporrer, USN and Lt. Bernard Hickey, USN approach the hill to comfort the wounded and they too are greeted by repeated bursts of enemy machine gun fire which thankfully miss. Chaplain Sporrer quips: "IT'S LUCKY THEY'RE POOR SHOTS."

At 0855, the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines initiates its attack from below Chukchon-ni, but the formation to the south is off course. Companies A and B quickly adjust by swinging northwest with the former under Stevens on the right and the latter under Fenton advancing on the left. Each drives toward the enemy-held heights about 1,000 yards distant. As the 1st Bn. advances through the rice paddy, enemy fire from the ridge strikes from long distance, causing some casualties. But U.S. return-fire, including artillery and mortars, pounds the enemy positions. In addition, an army tank destroyer posted on the hill south of Chukchon-ni bolsters Company A with its heavy reaching arm. The attack also receives support from planes and at one point, enemy resistance originating in a village at the base of the objective is terminated by the combined firepower of the army tank destroyer and Marine recoilless rifles.

Meanwhile, the 2nd Battalion is operating to the south. The 1st, 2nd and 3rd Platoons are spread out from right to left, the 3rd Platoon trailing slightly to guard the exposed left flank. While the Marines advance, they encounter stragglers from army units, some of whom have been separated for as much as three days; nearly all are wounded and none have weapons.

While the 1st Battalion moves to secure its objective, the 2nd Battalion, commanded by Col. Roise, secures the 1st Battalion's right flank when its Company D secures Myong-ni, terminating the resistance there and then eliminating the resistance on the hill northwest of the village. But the enemy on Hill 117, situated to the immediate front of the 2nd Battalion, north of the MSR and about

500 yards west of Myong-ni, brings Company D under machine gun and mortar fire. Col. Roise is informed of the situation and actions to rectify the problem will be initiated slightly after noon in coordination with the 1st Battalion's activity on the opposite side of the MSR.

At 1100, Col. Newton (CO 1st Bn.) is in contact with Captains Stevens and Fenton, Companies A and B respectively, and both officers inform the battalion commander that the units are prepared to assault the ridge. At about that time, Newton orders the ridge bombarded by 81-mm mortars to neutralize the North Korean machine guns. In the meantime, the 2nd Platoon under Lt. Muetzel is stalled at a steep rise leading to the crest, but the 1st Platoon swings over to the right, while the 3rd Platoon forms to the left. Upon cessation of the preparatory fire, Lt. Muetzel bolts to the front of his men from where he yells the order, attack! Company A leaps forward, apparently screaming with enough volume to startle the defenders and convince them to abandon their positions on the forward slope and speed toward the summit. This gives the Marines a needed pause; the riflemen and BARmen almost leisurely set up and begin popping shells into the enemy as they flee, killing most. When the remnants vanish over the peak, the Marines reinitiate their climb, securing the hill (first objective) within several minutes at about 1200.

Subsequent to seizing the first objective, the 1st Battalion begins evacuating its wounded and getting resupplied while it prepares to move against its next objective. In the meantime, some unwelcome enemy fire from the reverse slope strikes the summit, wounding several men. Col. Newton calls in air support and soon after, corsairs arrive, plundering the enemy positions, prompting a post haste abandonment of the north slope. The North Koreans break for Hill 117 across the MSR, but Newton calls in artillery fire which catches the fleeing enemy in stride, effectively thinning their ranks as the slope and road become inundated with enemy dead and abandoned or destroyed equipment. However, many more escape to bolster Hill 117.

**September 4 1950 - (Pacific-Japan)** The 1st Marine Division issues Operation Order 2-50, the Landing Force Plan for Inchon. Although the reports from an agent (Lt. Clark, USN) have not yet been accumulated, the plan requires little modification when his radio reports eventually arrive from the island of Yonghung-do. The USS *Mount McKinley* sails from Tokyo, arriving at Kobe on the following day. The Marines will have some personnel problems, as on the following day the secretary of the navy will direct that all Marines involved with the Inchon operation who have not reached the age of eighteen, must be reassigned to noncombat assignments. **(Pacific-Korea)** Reports concerning the involvement of the Chinese in the Korean conflict have been coming into U.S. Intelligence for some time, and these observations have alleged that Chinese troops have been heading north and deploying in large numbers along the Chinese side of the Yalu River, poised for action in Korea. There is also much speculation that the Soviets are intertwined in the hostilities, by virtue of directing Chinese and North Korean activities. While various American military leaders in the U.S. and Japan are piecing together the fragments of information to determine the seriousness of the situation, some conclusive evidence is gathered today; offshore in the Yellow Sea near the west coast of Korea, a bomber brandishing a red star on its wing soars over a naval screening vessel in close proximity to the 38th Parallel, en route toward a group of U.S. naval warships. The enemy aircraft encounters a fighter patrol and commences firing; instant return fire destroys the enemy plane and subsequently, crewmen of one of the destroyers in the area retrieve the corpse of one member of the plane; he is identified as an officer of the Soviet Union's armed forces. On the following day, the *New York Times* prints the state department press release concerning the incident. On Sept. 7th, the *Times* publishes the Russian version of the incident and the article includes the

request by Russia for compensation for the shooting down of one of its bombers; it has not been determined if the downed plane is one given to the Russians through Lend-Lease during WWII. In any event, the U.S. declines to acknowledge the Russian claim. In other activity, aircraft begin raids in preparation for the invasion of Inchon; these missions continue until the landing; air force, navy, Marine and other U.N. aircraft participate. **Southwestern Perimeter Pusan: In the 25th Division sector:** The 2nd Battalion, 27th Regiment receives orders to attack to the rear to secure the alternate route (Chirwon Road); Col. Murch's command initiates the assault, driving along the road between the 1st and 2nd Battalions, 35th Regiment, leaving Company G, 35th Regiment to hold Hill 179. Soon after launching the attack, Murch is informed that Company G has been dislodged; this compels him to reverse direction and assist the beleaguered unit. By about noon the mission is accomplished, and Company G is again given responsibility for the area while Murch's 2nd Battalion resumes the attack to clear the supply lines, expending much of its ammunition in the process. Adding to the complexity of the clearing attack against large numbers of enemy troops, the area is besieged by a tumultuous rainstorm which impedes the vision of the attacking troops. Meanwhile, the enemy continues to pour more troops into the area behind the 35th Regiment. Lacking sufficient ammunition, Col. Murch pulls back his battalion and orders them to dig in while awaiting resupply, which will not occur until the following day. Also, the 3rd Battalion, 27th Regiment (3rd Bn. 29th Reg.), led by Col. DeChow, cancels its attack toward the 24th Regiment command post upon receipt of new orders, which direct it to drive toward Komam-ni to intercept the enemy force there which is attacking the positions of the artillery. At 0900, despite heavy resistance including intense small arms fire, the 3rd Battalion, under DeChow, plows straight ahead moving toward the heights above the Komam-ni crossroads. The fighting remains nasty throughout the afternoon, and conditions on the field worsen as the weather takes another bad turn when torrent rains pound the area. With the help of air support, the determined effort makes progress, but the casualties continue to mount, diminishing the battalion's strength. By day's end, Companies I and K seize the objective and retain the heights throughout the night. On the following day, Col. DeChow, diverted from his initial task of attacking to relieve the pressure on the 24th Regimental command post, will resume that mission. General Kean, aware that the strength of Col. DeChow's 3rd Battalion has been terribly zapped by the gruesome contest near the Komam-ni crossroads, orders Company C, 65th Field Engineer Bn. to be attached to the 3rd Battalion, 27th Regiment. Meanwhile, west of Haman, the 1st Battalion, 27th Regiment under Col. Check retains control of the regained positions of the 24th Regiment; at dusk, the 1st Battalion relinquishes the ridge to the 1st Battalion, 24th Regiment and Company F, 2nd Battalion 24th Regiment. Consequently, the 1st Battalion, 27th Regiment moves out and establishes a defensive perimeter on the other side of Haman, about one and one-half miles east of the town. In conjunction, Col. Champney reestablishes his 24th Regimental command post at the foundation of a hill located about 300 yards west of the center of Haman. Undeterred by the savage losses inflicted upon them by the 1st Battalion, 27th Regiment, the enemy mounts another night attack against Haman and it is a lesson in persistence. Some of the enemy assault force composed of about two companies encroach the positions of Company H, which is designated as security for the regimental command post. The command center is located on a hill along the western fringes of town. About one-half of the enemy contingent lacks weapons, but the security force departs the area without taking notice or offering even minimal resistance. Not one single shot is fired by the troops of Company H, which permits the enemy to casually pick up two abandoned machine guns and make a stealth advance toward the command post. The enemy presence becomes explicitly evident when the two captured machine guns begin

firing on the troops at the command post. A puny enemy detachment moves to within about 100 yards of the command post. But the North Koreans are then intercepted by troops of the I&R Platoon. Following a brief exchange of grenades, the North Koreans scurry away post haste; however, one enemy grenade lands in an ammunition vehicle, creating the illusion that a major battle is occurring within Haman. Later, three tanks enter the skirmish and the enemy is driven from the town. Meanwhile, about twenty of the nocturnal enemy marauders move discreetly and creep close to the positions of the command post of the 1st Battalion, 24th Regiment creating yet another instant stir; the North Koreans flick a few grenades and pop off some burp gun fire, which certainly stimulates the troops at the command post; approximately forty-five regimental troops and about twenty South Korean recruits are positioned there when the fireworks begin. By sunrise, the small enemy force is beaten back, but an astonished battalion executive officer, Major Eugene J. Carson, discovers that many of his defending troops have mysteriously vanished; seven wounded troops and 23 effectives remain with him on the hill for the conclusion of the skirmish. As Carson glances down the slope, he detects movement in the rice paddies below his command; about forty friendly troops are extricating themselves from the soggy paddies and moving toward a friendly tank, which is holding a roadblock. The stragglers offer greatly exaggerated reports of being overrun by the enemy and being driven from their positions on the hill. In conjunction, while this debacle is unfolding, another contingent of the 24th Regiment posted west of Haman also deserts its positions, leaving a roadblock totally unattended; one white officer and about 35-40 troops flee toward the positions of Col. Check's 1st Battalion, 27th Regiment, reaching there about 0500 on the morning of the 5th, with additional and unfounded tales of gloom and doom. **In the 2nd Division area: 1st Provisional Marine Brigade sector:** Just after dawn, the minefield, laid the previous night, is dismantled by engineers, clearing the way for the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines assault. At 0750, the 1st Battalion, 11th Marines artillery begins pounding the enemy positions; one contingent of enemy troops on a summit to the front of Company B is stunned by the barrage. The North Koreans abandon their weapons and flee west; Marine riflemen, holding nearby positions, take aim and methodically trim the enemy's ranks by cluttering the escape route with enemy dead.

At 0800, Companies A and B resume the attack and make tremendous progress in the heights south of the MSR. During the fast-paced advance, increasing numbers of Communist troops begin darting for safety in small units, but the massive amount of air support, artillery and armor further diminishes the retreating enemy numbers. By 1505, the 1st Battalion reaches Kang-ni (Objective One), more than 3,000 yards from its starting point. In the meantime, the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines jumps off slightly after 0800, taking over for the 2nd Battalion. Companies G and H move out, departing from the lines of 1st Battalion's Company E and D, respectively. Driving south of the MSR, Company G crosses the rice paddy heading toward Hill 117, then it sprints over a small hill, discovering unoccupied enemy entrenchments except some Communist dead. Continuing on, Company G reaches and secures the southern slope of the objective. Surprisingly, only fifteen enemy troops are eliminated along the way. Company H maneuvers to the right, making a deep curve around the northern fringes of Hill 117; it makes splendid progress against minimum resistance as it links with Company G. By 0840, Hill 117, which had been the nemesis of the 5th Marines on the previous day, fades with a hardly a whimper. Col. Taplett begins relocating his headquarters to the MSR. Although engineers had removed enemy mines on the main highway, the connecting road from Myong-ni to it had not been cleared, causing a serious problem. While en route, the lead vehicle strikes a mine, injuring ten Marines, all with communication units. Engineers scour the road and discover additional Russian-made mines, but by 1200, the secondary road east

of Hill 117 is wide open.

Subsequent to the capture of Hill 117, the 3rd Battalion resumes the attack; side by side, Companies G and H drive west across the heights north of the MSR; they are flanked on the left by the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines and on the right by the 9th Regiment, USA; however, along the route, visual contact with the 9th Regiment is lost. While Lt. Bohn leads Company G toward the objective, it is struck by enemy machine gun fire, originating from the hill north of Kang-ni, the target of the 3rd Battalion. Colonel Taplett places an urgent call to the heavier enforcers, MAG-33 and the 1st Battalion, 11th Marines' artillery. The combination results in yet another bloody thrashing of the enemy. Without pause, streams of menacing whistling shells trounce the defenders, knocking them into a period of bewilderment. After about one hour of relentless punishment, the North Koreans abandon the hill to escape near certain death, but their path becomes a death funnel. While maintaining the pressure on Hill 117, some of the guns make minor adjustments and begin to catapult blazing steel spears into the retreating enemy troops, seemingly lining the hillside with mangled North Koreans. In concert, the corsairs begin spitting fire into the retreating swarms of disorganized Communists, leaving the ridges, slopes and highway blanketed with additional scores of dead North Koreans. Following the pulverizing of the objective, Lt. Robert Bohn initiates the last rung of Company G's attack; near effortlessly, it secures Hill 117 at 1515. Soon after setting up occupancy, the Marines spot a retiring T-34 Tank and some accompanying enemy infantry, all scooting toward the lines of the 9th Infantry Regiment; Company G, machinegunners commence firing and rake the enemy column, scattering it.

Meanwhile, Communist reinforcements are driving along the MSR to reinforce the North Korean lines; however, caught between Hill 117 and Kang-ni, they too are deluged with the fire from the sky, bringing the advance to a succinct halt. The prolonged column is virtually decimated after being struck caught by a massive fusillade delivered by diving corsairs and rampaging artillery shells. In conjunction, the entire area resembles a giant scrap yard. Enemy antitank guns, vehicles, Machine guns, mortars and tanks litter the landscape; some are burning, others are operable, but all are conspicuously unmanned.

The Marine attack has also regained an enormous amount of previously captured army equipment, including artillery pieces, mortars, vehicles, and tanks, as well as ammunition and small arms; these and some recaptured supply dumps are transferred to the 2nd Division. The captured enemy prizes, following the seizure of an apparent enemy command post, include large quantities of documents and maps, ensuring some tedious scrutinization for army and Marine intelligence personnel.

With Hill 117 secure, the brigade prepares for the next part of the operation. In conjunction, the 9th Regiment, USA advances to the heights northeast of the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines, culminating the first part of the 2nd Division's counterattack plan. With all coordinating units at Phase Line One, General Craig receives orders from General Keiser to drive toward Phase Line Two, drawn through Hill 125 and Observation Hill.

The Marine Brigade's western boundary line beyond Kang-ni is the MSR, restricting the 3rd Battalion from driving west from its positions; therefore, Newton's 1st Battalion, 5th Marines is ordered to seize the next objective, Cloverleaf. It lies about 1,000 yards distant, slightly south of the MSR at Hwayong-ni.

The Marines are greeted with the well-known customary repugnant scent of a rice paddy when Companies A, and B, spring forward, the former on the left and the latter slightly below the MSR.

Company B, under Capt. Fenton, encounters resistance immediately. Enemy machine guns, posted in the high ground north of Hwayong-ni, pour fire upon the advancing unit. The normal operating procedure, during this ongoing mission, is quickly set in motion. Col. Newton again requests Air support to neutralize the enemy-held ridge, and like a magician pulling rabbits out of a hat, Corsairs reappear to the dismay of the enemy. With the termination of the machine gun fire by the planes, Company B leaps forward, and at 1800, Cloverleaf is secure. Soon after, Col. Murray directs the 1st and 3rd Battalions, both at the front, to establish their respective night perimeters and to be ready to reinitiate the advance at 0800 on the 5th. Similarly to the previous night, the brigade stretches out in near identical configurations; the 1st Battalion's positions are to the left front about 1,000 yards out; Companies A and B string a precarious line which stretches nearly one mile in length and contains a totally exposed left flank. But again, throughout the night, the perimeter receives no genuine threats from enemy ground troops.

Nevertheless, the night does not totally pass without incident; the North Koreans spend the evening and early morning hours bombarding the perimeter. Taplett's 3rd Battalion receives little rest due to the pesky shelling. The 1st Battalion, under Newton, is also subjected to the harassing barrages. Newton's command post sustains several direct hits which cause casualties; one Marine is killed and two are wounded. One lucky artillery officer, Lt. Joris Snyder, is poised only several feet from the impact of a 120-mm shell; he is knocked into deep unconsciousness, but otherwise he escapes unscathed and recovers in about three hours.

At about 0230 on the 5th, Major Joseph Reinburg's night-fighters (VMF-N-513) arrive from their Base in Japan and effectively strike the most blatant enemy mortar position, successfully terminating most of the shelling. Subsequent to extinguishing the mortars, the aircraft deliver some well placed bombs (including fragmentation type) on detected enemy vehicles and troop locations.

Prior to dawn, the enemy attempts to execute a probing mission against the lines of the 3rd Battalion, but Companies G and H are both alert and prepared. Sentries quickly detect the movement to their front. In a flash, 81-mm illuminating shells are catapulted skyward; upon bursting, a few small contingents of enemy troops are showcased. In response, the startled enemy pops off some ineffective rounds, but there is no determined attempt to launch an attack. However, one detachment seemingly inadvertently blunders badly and finds itself at the 3rd Battalion command post. The Communists soon depart the party, as some eager weapons company personnel, manning a listening post, extend an iron-hand and cause a stampede; one N.K. Officer is killed and the others flee. The duration of the night remains quiet until dawn when the North Koreans launch a bold attack against the nearby 9th Regiment, USA.

Meanwhile, General Walker reluctantly releases the 1st Marine Provisional Brigade from the operational control of the 2nd Division, effective September 5th at midnight; Walker has relented, but he remains convinced that he must maintain the Marine Brigade to ensure the safety of the perimeter. In contrast, the build-up for the imminent amphibious invasion of South Korea mandates the participation of the Marine Brigade. In other activity, Hill 209 remains in the hands of the Spartan force of TF Manchu remnants, but the overwhelming enemy pressure has not subsided and the menacing enemy fire continues to rake the confined perimeter. Some troops react irrationally and jump from their foxholes in a state of bewilderment, nearly guaranteeing themselves instant death. Again, no planes arrive to provide support fire, and the artillery remains silent; undaunted the resilient defenders hold the line and relentlessly return fire. The gallant stand achieves astonishing success, but they are unaware that their stalwart defense on Hill 209 has severely

punished the attackers. Toward darkness, Lt. McDoniel decides he must abandon the hill to save his command. He is cognizant that his remaining effective troops are each down to about one clip of ammunition and that they have expended nearly all their grenades during the quest to retain the hill. But, after sundown and prior to withdrawal, the enemy signals yet another attack. It then becomes obvious that the stalwart defense had been effective. Their fortitude on the beleaguered hill pays dividends; several enemy Grenades fall into the perimeter to signal the attack; however, none of the infantry advance, despite the repeated order, "Manzai." Finally, at 2200 after sustaining themselves for five nights and four days, Lts. McDoniel and Charles Caldwell (Company D), the other surviving Officer, begin the dangerous withdrawal; the two officers and 27 surviving troops split into small groups and head for safe territory. But there is an epilogue; Sgt. Watkins, who had contributed so much to retain the hill, remains paralyzed and refuses to impede the withdrawal. According to later testimony by survivors, Watkins asks that his Carbine be loaded, then placed upon his chest with the barrel directly under his chin, and it is further reported that a broad smile remained on his face as he wished them good luck on their journey. Sgt. Watkins receives the Medal of Honor posthumously for his unrelenting courage and leadership during the five-night four-day battle for Hill 209. In conjunction, of the twenty-nine troops who move off Hill 209, twenty-two reach friendly lines. Lt. Caldwell is captured on the 6th, but his two North Koreans captors blunder while attempting to murder him; after pounding him in the head with a rock, the enemy tosses him over a cliff into the Naktong River, but he survives and feigns death. Then after dark, Caldwell continues his escape and he eventually reaches the lines of the 72nd Tank Bn. on September 10th. Also, the heroic stance on Hill 209 further adds to the laurels of the army as the survivors bring out important intelligence concerning the activity of the enemy in the area near the Paekchin Ferry. In about three weeks, when the Americans return to the scene of the fighting on Hill 209, the sight is ghastly; the approximate amount of U.S. dead is thirty, but many of the bodies have been obliterated, and it is impossible at times to determine whether two or three Americans are in a foxhole; fifteen of the corpses are identifiable. In other activity, General Haynes adjusts the boundary between the 23rd and 38th Regiments, relinquishing the northern sector of the 23rd Regiment to the 38th Regiment, thereby permitting the 23rd to shore up its defenses along the Pugong-ni-Changnyong Road. In conjunction, the 3rd Battalion, 38th Regiment, which had sped to rescue Hutchins' 1st Battalion, remains near Hill 209. Hutchins' 1st Battalion, 23rd Regiment departs the area and heads south to fortify the 2nd Battalion, 23rd Regiment which is defending the southern route into Changnyong. Subsequent to its tenacious three-day stand, Hutchins' 1st Battalion has sustained about 500 casualties, drastically draining its original strength of 1,100 troops. Nonetheless, Hutchins' battered Battalion will deploy to the left flank of the 2nd Battalion; the 23rd Regimental command post is transplanted to the rear of the 1st Battalion. Severe fighting continues in the 23rd Regiment sector and frequently, while fending off North Korean assaults from the front, concentrated efforts are required to eliminate constant and nagging enemy penetrations to the rear, which hinder the supply route. In conjunction, the enemy launches an especially heavy assault against the 23rd's perimeter on September 8th. **Central Perimeter Taegu Pusan Perimeter:** General Wright arrives in Taegu to meet with General Walker and to inform him that General MacArthur has ordered that the Marine Brigade must be released from Eighth Army by the night of the 5th-6th; Wright also explains that the 17th Regiment, 7th Division will be sailing from Japan on the 6th to be placed in Eighth Army floating reserve. MacArthur also sends word that the 65th Regiment, 3rd Division, due in Japan about September 18th, will also be sent to Korea to further augment Eighth Army. In related activity, General Walker requests through General Wright,

that Eighth Army be granted permission to withhold its scheduled attack on the 15th in conjunction with X Corps until the 16th, giving Eighth Army a one day reprieve; Wright concurs with Walker on the timing of Eighth Army's involvement, and soon after MacArthur also approves. In other activity, General Walker directs the 24th Division to relinquish its reserve positions outside Taegu; on the following day it is to move to the 2nd Division sector at the Naktong Bulge to relieve the Marines, who are preparing to move out and join the Inchon Invasion force. The 24th Division had endured a dreary trek which culminated on the banks of the Naktong outside Susan'ni, where it has spent the night in a torrential downpour. Nonetheless, the relief of the Marines is canceled before execution begins. The 24th Division receives more recent orders directing it to again pick up and move to Kyongju to bolster General Coulter and TF Jackson. In other activity, the enemy (N.K. 3rd Division) continues to repel attacks by contingents of the 7th Cavalry Regiment; based on information from a captured North Korean soldier, Hill 518 is apparently defended by about 1,200 well-supplied North Koreans. In other activity, Hill 303 is seized by the 2nd Battalion, 5th Cavalry Regiment. Fighting is prevalent throughout the 5th and 7th Cavalry zones north of Taegu. While the U.S. assaults are underway, the North Koreans (N.K. 3rd Division) have been unfolding their own attacks, and simultaneously they push large numbers of troops to positions behind the U.S. lines. An overwhelming contingent of North Koreans moves toward the 7th Cavalry, passing through a break between the 3rd Battalion's positions on Hill 518 (southern slope) and the 2nd Battalion, posted slightly west. At the 3rd Battalion Command Post on Hill 518, it seems as if the enemy is preparing to swing east to attack it, but rather, the enemy turns westward, then solidly occupies Hill 464, giving the 3rd Battalion a temporary reprieve. However, enemy-occupied Hill 464, located on the southern side of the Waegwan-Tabu-dong Road, creates new threats as the 7th Cavalry Regiment becomes sandwiched between two enemy-held hills, 464 to its rear and 518 to its front. With the severing of the Waegwan-Tabu-dong Road, the 7th Cavalry Regiment's communications become limited to those units to the west. The recent developments within the 7th Cavalry sector compel the Regiment to pull back somewhat on Hill 518. Later, on the following day, more dramatic withdrawals occur. Meanwhile, the enemy's hopes of victory have not dwindled. Additional forces continue to penetrate the cavalry defenses and render the perimeter nearly untenable. The 1st Cavalry Division's ammunition supply depot in Taegu also is considered possibly endangered; the rail cars are soon crammed with ammunition and prepared to roll further south to safer positions. In conjunction, opposing rail traffic north of Samnangjin on the primary rail line ceases. The eastern rail line handling rail traffic east of Kyongju also halts.

**September 5 1950 - (United States)** The joint chiefs of staff are still simmering because of no response from MacArthur to their dispatch of August 28th, reference the impending Inchon operation; they send another dispatch, igniting a series of communications; MacArthur responds on the following day, explaining that his initial plans remain identical. The joint chiefs then speed yet another message to MacArthur on Sept. 7th, urging a rethinking of the entire question (Inchon) and directing him to dispatch an estimate of the chances of a favorable outcome. In conjunction, the continuing success of the enemy has caused a good deal of doubt to linger in the minds of the joint chiefs of staff. They are doubtful of the ability of Eighth Army to revert to an offensive, and they remain equally doubtful about the X Corps' ability to overwhelm the enemy in the Inchon-Seoul area. MacArthur responds on Sept. 8th. In other activity, the inexcusable demeaning remarks by President Truman about the Marine Corps are publicized during the Marine Corps League's annual convention in Washington, D.C., raising a storm of protest. On the following day, President Truman, to his credit, appears before the Marine conventioners and makes a humble and genuine

apology which is accepted. The incident is a blessing in disguise for the corps and its value immediately increases. **(Pacific-Korea)** Today's battle casualties are heavy along the entire Pusan Perimeter, totaling 1,245 troops; Army casualties stand at 102 killed, 430 wounded and 587 missing in action. The North Korean 9th and 4th Divisions operating in this sector of the perimeter have virtually succumbed to the ongoing frailties of the N.K. Army which is now over-extended; lacking good communications and burdened by an equally poor logistics system, the two N.K. Divisions have been unable to take advantage of their early successes. Nor are they able to overcome the potent power of U.S. Artillery fire, Air strikes and the neutralization of the T-34s. In other activity, the USS *Badoeng Strait* and the HMS *Triumph* accelerate their attacks against various enemy targets on the east and west coasts of Korea to attempt to keep the enemy guessing about U.N. intentions. The two carriers are supplemented on the 8th, when the USS *Sicily* joins the mission. The roving carrier aircraft stake out rolling trains, power stations and various enemy supply roads. These diversionary air sorties make frequent visits to Haeju, Kaesong, Kumchon, Pyongyang and Seoul, but Inchon and Wolmi-do receive some attention; the raids cease on the 10th. In conjunction, the carrier planes of Task Force 77 pound other robust enemy targets; the panther jets of the navy penetrate further north to slam the North Korean Airfields. **Southwestern Perimeter Pusan: In the 25th Division sector**, the 2nd Battalion, 27th Regiment, commanded by Col. Murch, receives its needed supplies, especially ammunition (requested on the previous day) when eight planes soar overhead during the morning and deposit them on the mark, permitting the battalion to resume its attack to the rear. The advancing 2nd Battalion, 27th Regiment, which had initially departed the Chung-ni vicinity on September 2nd, pushes forward throughout the day. By nightfall it has cleared the rear supply route and has eliminated the enemy resistance in the immediate area for a distance of about eight thousand yards from the forward perimeter of Company G, 35th Regiment. However, the 2nd Battalion, 27th Regiment receives little rest; Col. Murch is ordered to halt his battalion and prepare to drive northeast from there to establish contact with the 1st Battalion, 27th Regiment near Haman. Meanwhile, the 3rd Battalion, 27th Regiment (3rd Bn. 29th Regiment), commanded by Col. DeChow, departs its positions at the recently captured heights atop the Komam-ni crossroads and reinitiates its attack toward Haman to bolster the 24th Regiment. In other activity, there is still some trouble at Haman, caused by a small band of enemy troops, but it is virtually eliminated by daybreak. At 0500, 24th Regiment, which had abandoned its roadblock west of Haman during the night, arrives at the command post of the 1st Battalion, 27th Regiment; Col. Check is informed by the accompanying officer that an enemy force composed of about 2,000 troops had overrun his position at a roadblock west of Haman and that additional 24th Regimental units had also succumbed to the enemy surge. Col. Check immediately informs General Kean of the alleged disaster. Soon after, Check speeds one platoon of tanks and one infantry platoon to determine the criticalness of the situation in Haman. In the meantime, about 220 additional troops of the 24th Regiment are hastily proceeding to the rear until they are abruptly halted by officers of the 1st Battalion, 27th Regiment. These soldiers are ordered by Col. Check to halt their retreat and to join the advance to Haman; some do so immediately, yet others exhibit arrogant reluctance. Check's troops use the ultimate persuasion, threatening the dissidents with pointed weapons; it is an instantly effective tactic. All the faint-hearted troops then volunteer and return toward Haman for the anticipated duel with the enemy. But when the troops arrive, there is no fight. Much to the surprise of Col. Check, the tanks roar into Haman without incident, and there is no enemy to be found. Haman is extremely tranquil and the 24th Regimental command post, although scantily defended, is unmolested. **In the 2nd Division sector:** Slightly before dawn, while the U.S. troops prepare to

launch yet another counterattack to exterminate the remaining enemy still positioned east of the Naktong, the short-lived silence is shattered north of the 5th Marines' perimeter in the vicinity of the east-west road. In the midst of a driving rain, the enemy springs a vicious attack against the 9th Regiment, USA, hammering Company G with the brunt of the strike. Nearby, the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines, perched in the adjacent heights, has a bird's eye view and it attempts to support the 9th Regiment. Companies G, H, and Headquarters (3/5th Marines) activate their machine guns and begin slicing into the ranks of the Company-strong N.K. contingent, forcing it back. Nearby at a 9th Regiment outpost, SFC Loren Kaufman, Company G, attempts to rush his detachment to the aid of his besieged company, but en route, the group runs into an enemy force which is attempting to surround the command. Unhesitatingly, Kaufman begins running toward the enemy, and with a quick slash, he bayonets the lead enemy scout, killing him. Continuing forward along the ridge, Kaufman's rifle rips shells into the enemy while he simultaneously launches grenades; his one-man attack seemingly bewilders the enemy and prompts them to turn back. Soon after, Kaufman's platoon arrives to bolster the remainder of Company G, but in the meantime, the enemy seizes the dominating ground and paralyzes the company in a draw. Again, Kaufman is off and running, disregarding severe enemy fire. During his daring attempt to dislodge the enemy, Kaufman's adventure carries him toward two additional enemy troops; both expire by his bayonet. Continuing further, Kaufman commandeers a dormant machine gun, with which he further rakes the enemy positions and purchases some breathing room for the immobile company. After a quick regrouping, Company G takes the offensive with Kaufman leading the attack. Upon ascending to the crest of the ridge, Kaufman decimates an enemy machine gun position, and he drives the remaining enemy from the crest; during the brief jaunt, he kills two more of the enemy with his bayonet and then he encounters a mortar position; it too is destroyed and its crew eliminated. But Kaufman notes that some of the enemy have escaped and are holed up in a nearby village; Kaufman gathers a patrol and moves it against the fleeing prey, quickly dispersing the stragglers by torching the village. In conjunction, SFC Kaufman, for his extraordinary heroism and courage in the face of the enemy, receives the Medal of Honor. Meanwhile, U.S. Artillery continues to catapult incessant fire to the 9th Regiment's front, permitting the Regiment to repulse the enemy assaults throughout the day.

**In the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade area:** Meanwhile, with the repulse of the enemy attack against the 9th Infantry completed, Col. Newton orders Companies A and B to jump off at 0800. While the Marines on Clover Leaf assemble for the assault against Obong-ni, two air force planes, lacking air-ground controllers, inadvertently strafe Companies A and B while they are attacking enemy positions on the high ground north of Hwayong-ni. The aircraft spring the stinging raid by honing in from the north to zap the ridge from there, southward. But, as the planes begin their ascent from the dive, the Marines come under a storm of fire. Astonishingly, perhaps by Divine providence, only one Marine becomes wounded by the friendly fire. After the accidental air strike, at 0820, the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines advances westward, moving through a thick fog and a penetrating rain to secure its segment of Phase Line Two, Hill 125 and Observation Hill, the two remaining obstacles between the Marines and bloodied Obong-ni Ridge, the final objective in front of the Naktong River. Air support is hindered throughout the day due to the inclement weather.

Companies A and B, keeping with a dubious tradition, trudge through the rice paddy below the MSR and make swift progress to a point where the road makes a sharp right angle turn leading south for about 1,000 yards before it reverts back to its western direction. At the reinitiation of the western route, Company B, led by Capt. Fenton, swivels toward the base of the heights which point to Hill 125. Meanwhile, Company A, led by Capt. Stevens, drives toward the summit of

Observation Hill; the MSR separates the two attacking units. Company A begins the tedious climb up the eastern slopes of Observation Hill, while Company B seizes the eastern wing of Hill 125.

At 0935, the Communists on Obong-ni Ridge deliver their salutations to the advancing Companies (A and B) of the 3rd Battalion, by serenading them with mortars and artillery shells; however, the 1st Battalion, 11th Marines steps in with its ornery Artillery. Combined with the Mortars of the 3rd Battalion, the Marines return an even more resounding proclamation to the North Koreans, providing some extreme discomfort for the Communists on Obong-ni. Meanwhile, Companies A and B maintain the advance, resulting in the seizure of Hill 125 and Observation Hill by 1100. Col. Murray then orders the 1st Battalion to suspend its advance, pausing at Phase Line Two until the 9th Regiment moves up to positions on Company B's right. In the meantime, intermittent automatic weapons fire from Obong-ni harasses both Companies.

Meanwhile, at 1000, the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines had begun to swing around the rear of Cloverleaf, maneuvering southward to deploy on the 5th Marines' left as part of a two-Battalion assault against Obong-ni. Company G moves swiftly through the rice paddy south of Cloverleaf, bolstered by the artillery and 75-mm recoilless rifles which pummel suspected enemy emplacements. Soon after, Lt. Robert Bohn and his command reach the base of the high ground of Hill 91, a southern extension of the Obong-ni; Bohn immediately requests cessation of the support guns' fire, including that of the accompanying tanks. Upon cessation of the support fire, Company G bolts toward the summit. Immediately, it receives some aid from a 75-mm recoilless rifle, which decimates a machine gun and its crew just as the position is being set up on the crest. With the advance still in its infancy and merely a few yards up the slope, unexpected orders arrive. The Marines are directed to abort the assault. In conjunction, Company H, moving between Hill 91 and Observation Hill en route to the eastern approaches of Obong-ni, also receives orders to halt its advance. Both companies are directed to disengage and return to Observation Hill where the regimental commander, Col. Murray, is redeploying the 5th Marines along the MSR.

The reason for the suddenly aborted attack soon becomes clear.

On the crest of Hill 125, where Company B, 1st Battalion had been halted earlier, the Marines are deployed in their recently dug foxholes, which now resemble mudholes; the battalion's supporting tanks (1st Platoon) are poised in the road cut behind the sharp curve, which swings around the forward slopes of the hill. The view from the crest is less than breathtaking, with the village of Tugok and Finger Ridge to the east and west respectively and to the southwest, Obong-ni, which has just received a reprieve. The Leathernecks wait and watch, but it is daylight, making an enemy attack unlikely. The troops still come under some intermittent fire, but the only noted symbol of enemy presence are the three dead T-34 tanks, which lie dead in the road since an engagement with the brigade two weeks prior.

And then, at 1420, conditions begin to change. The haunting fog still hovers above the battlefield and the dismal rainstorm continues to saturate the troops, but nonetheless the aura is shifting. The infrequent clang of the enemy weapons heats up from a simmer to a boil and beyond, until it reaches the equivalency of a full scale preparatory fire; within minutes, Company B is besieged with enfilade fire which is poured upon its lines from machine gun positions on the northern fringe of Obong-ni. Slightly after this thunderstorm of fire commences, the enemy's camouflaged positions at Tugok open fire, and this action is joined by fierce fire originating on the northern foundation of Observation Hill; these guns pummel the crest with more automatic weapons fire. Adding more fury

to the thrust, an antitank gun bellows from its position on Finger Ridge. All the while, enemy tanks and infantry advance under a ghoulish drab fog in synchronization with the incessant support fire. The Communists, spearheaded by T-34s, drive down the MSR, unbeknownst to the Marines' 1st platoon of tanks. To make the situation more critical during the first moments of the enemy counterattack, the situation further worsens due to a colossal equipment failure; while Capt. Fenton is informing Col. Newton about the enemy attack, his radio dies. In addition to the failure of Fenton's radio, almost instantaneously every other radio in Company B goes dead, slain by the constant rain and mud. Consequently, there is no possibility of warning the Tanks of the imminent approach of the T-34s. In conjunction, Lt. Pomeroy, oblivious to the encroaching enemy armor and lacking contact with Fenton, quickly orders his tanks to move forward and take positions on the other side of the curve to strike at the enemy machine gun positions on Obong-ni Ridge to relieve the pressure on beleaguered Company B.

Meanwhile, as the opposing contingents of tanks are both blindly converging on the curve, the accompanying enemy Infantry swings onto the slopes of Hill 125 and begins a daring dash toward the summit. In concert, another enemy detachment emerges from the vicinity of Tugok via a draw. Insulated by heavy supporting fire, the contingent strikes against Company B's right flank. Fenton, having no realistic alternatives, is compelled to hold the crest; he staggers his troops in exposed positions around the peak. Then, to protect his left flank, he deploys his assault squad on the slopes just below his positions. From these restricted positions, Fenton expects to intercept the threat on the MSR and beat back the assault, or face annihilation.

During these rapidly passing moments of desperate action, the opposing tanks continue their movement and become separated only by seconds. They are nearly nose-to-nose. Still unaware of the presence of enemy armor, the lead M-26, its turret pointing toward the left front takes the curve. Unexpectedly, it is struck with a vicious close-range hit before it can swivel its turret into proper positioning. Immediately thereafter, several more 85-mm shells plow into the Pershing and kill it; this is the first loss of a Marine tank to the enemy. The trailing M-26 plows forward and attempts to maneuver on the slim serpentine curve, which is now partially blocked by the lead tank. The narrowness of the easement hinders movement and the 2nd tank also falls prey to the enemy armor. The double loss blocks the entire passage, causing the remaining tanks to halt and leave responsibility for final victory to the ground Marines. In conjunction, despite the loss of the two tanks, the crews safely escape their slain armor. Engineers, accompanying the tanks, rush to aid the wounded.

Fenton's deployment of the assault platoon on the slopes becomes a welcome hand of trump cards, including a bludgeoning ace of clubs. The infantry starts with a bang; using 3.5 rockets, the Marines destroy the first enemy T-34; following suit, the second tank is decimated by rockets, and then the final trump card is delivered. Yet another 3.5 rocket tears the heart out of the last piece of enemy armor, a personnel carrier.

In the meantime, the Marines of Company B still retain control of the crest of Hill 125, but they remain under siege and their ammunition supply is rapidly diminishing; the 60-mm mortars are totally expended. Company B's casualty list soars under the roar of the enemy fire. Nonetheless, the Marines continue to thwart the North Koreans by tossing grenades as if the supply is infinite. Without pause, the Marines also ignore the deluge of murderous enemy automatic weapons fire which is criss-crossing the crest. They maintain strict discipline and snap off incessant small arms

fire to keep the "Gooks" at bay.

By 1500, the situation on Hill 125 is grim. The ammunition is scarce, but the Marines do not contemplate surrender of the ridge. Fenton, still lacking communications, speeds a messenger to Col. Newton to arrange a resupply. All the while, the enemy keeps the pressure high. At about 1530, Fenton spots Hill's 9th Regiment, USA, as it deploys in the heights north of his besieged positions. He believes he has discovered a solution to terminating the attack. Immediately, Fenton dispatches another runner to brave the fire and reach Col. Hill's command, to request immediate support fire from the 9th Regiment and to urgently request that it be delivered to the immediate front of Company B, 5th Marines.

While Company B awaits help and continues to hold forestall disaster, the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines begins relieving Company A at its positions on Observation Hill. Company A is ordered to depart without its grenades and extra ammunition and to fall back to the rear, but during the transfer of responsibility, Company A receives new orders directing it to speed to Hill 125 and bolster Company B. After some quick reshuffling to retrieve its ammunition, the unit shoves off to aid Fenton's Command.

In the meantime, the second runner reaches Col. Hill (9th RCT). Soon after, the guns of the 9th Regiment plaster the forward slopes in front of Fenton. The commotion gets the delayed attention of the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines' mortar section. The combined firepower launches legions of scorching shells which irrigate the forward slopes and exterminates more of the enemy. Fenton's intuition has paid off; his Marines still control the hill and reinforcements are close-at-hand.

Subsequent to relief by the 3rd Battalion, Capt. Stevens dispatches the 1st Platoon, Company A to Hill 125. Without delay, upon arrival into the inferno on the crest, the troops of Company A plop into the lines and commence firing in unison with the troops of Company B, all of whom are entrenched at the forward wall. The reinforcements and the additional grenades and weapons are as welcome as Santa Claus on Christmas. Amazingly, despite the prolonged and awesome enemy hell-fire catapulted upon Hill 125, Company B sustains only two dead during the siege; however, twenty-three other Marines are wounded. In conjunction, today the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines on Observation Hill sustains twenty-four casualties, inflicted by artillery and mortar fire, until it is relieved by a unit of the 23rd Regiment, USA slightly after midnight (5th-6th).

The successful infusion of the Artillery fire and the trailing mortars crack the enemy attack against Fenton's Company B. Now, with further augmentation by the inclusion of the mortars of Company A, the power becomes focused on Obong-ni and Finger Ridges. The relentless pounding of the enemy-held positions terminates the attack with finality. The attacking North Koreans who remain alive retire to the village of Tugok.

But the battle for Obong-ni is not quite over, and the Marines are being pulled out before they can liquidate the foe. Obong-ni Ridge still contains some of the beleaguered N.K. 9th Division and some green troops of the N.K. 4th Division; however, both units have received a severe thrashing since the U.S. offensive began on Sept. 3rd. Neither enemy Division is capable of taking the offensive.

During the afternoon, Col. Murray informs his battalion commanders about General Craig's final field directive, concerning the brigades activity within the Pusan Perimeter. The order in part: "THIS MY OPN ORDER 22-50 x COMMENCING AT 2400 5 SEPT BRIG MOVES BY RAIL AND MOTOR TO STAGING AREA PUSAN FOR FURTHER OPERATION AGAINST THE

ENEMY X PRIOR TO COMMENCEMENT OF MOVEMENT 5TH MARS WILL STAND RELIEVED BY ELMS OF 2ND INF DIV COMMENCING AT DARKNESS...CONCEAL FROM THE ENEMY ACTIVITIES CONNECTED WITH YOUR WITHDRAWAL."

Slightly after midnight (5th-6th) at 0015, the 5th Marines depart from their positions at Obong-ni Ridge and begin the trek to Pusan to join the Fleet and the 1st Marine Division, which is en route to Korea. The 5th Marines battle casualties for today stand at 35 killed, 91 wounded and none missing in action. In other activity, Colonel John Hill, Commanding Officer 9th Regiment is relieved of command. He is succeeded by Col. Charles Sloane, Jr. The 9th Regiment under Sloane undergoes some changes; Lt. Col. Barberis (23rd Regiment) replaces Lt. Col. Joseph Walker as CO, 2nd Battalion, 9th Regiment, but Lt. Col. John Londahl remains in command of the 1st Battalion, 9th Regiment.

**September 8 1950 -(Pacific-Japan)** General MacArthur, responding to several messages from the Joint Chiefs of Staff concerning the Inchon operation, dispatches his answer, weaving the sentences with his usual effectiveness and nearly guaranteeing the persuasion of the recipients. The message in part: **"THERE IS NO QUESTION IN MY MIND AS TO THE FEASIBILITY OF THE OPERATION AND I REGARD ITS CHANCE OF SUCCESS AS EXCELLENT. I GO FURTHER AND BELIEVE THAT IT REPRESENTS THE ONLY HOPE OF WRESTING THE INITIATIVE FROM THE ENEMY AND THEREBY PRESENTING AN OPPORTUNITY FOR A DECISIVE BLOW. TO DO OTHERWISE IS TO COMMIT US TO A WAR OF INDEFINITE DURATION, OF GRADUAL ATTRITION AND OF DOUBTFUL RESULTS...THERE IS NO SLIGHTEST POSSIBILITY...OF OUR FORCE BEING EJECTED FROM THE PUSAN BEACHHEAD. THE ENVELOPMENT FROM THE NORTH WILL INSTANTLY RELIEVE THE PRESSURE ON THE SOUTH PERIMETER AND, INDEED, IS THE ONLY WAY THAT THIS CAN BE ACCOMPLISHED...THE SUCCESS OF THE ENVELOPMENT MOVEMENT FROM THE NORTH DOES NOT DEPEND UPON THE RAPID JUNCTURE OF THE X CORPS AND THE EIGHTH ARMY. THE SEIZURE OF THE HEART OF THE ENEMY DISTRIBUTING SYSTEM IN THE SEOUL AREA WILL COMPLETELY DISLOCATE THE LOGISTICAL SUPPLY OF HIS FORCES NOW OPERATING IN SOUTH KOREA AND THEREFORE WILL ULTIMATELY RESULT IN THEIR DISINTEGRATION. THIS INDEED, IS THE PRIMARY PURPOSE OF THE MOVEMENT. CAUGHT BETWEEN OUR NORTHERN AND SOUTHERN FORCES, BOTH OF WHICH ARE COMPLETELY SELF-SUSTAINING BECAUSE OF OUR ABSOLUTE AIR AND NAVAL SUPREMACY, THE ENEMY CANNOT FAIL TO BE ULTIMATELY SHATTERED THROUGH DISRUPTION OF HIS LOGISTICAL SUPPORT AND OUR COMBINED COMBAT ACTIVITIES..."** MacArthur closes the message, exclaiming that the reasons stated are why the operation is unfolding as planned. On the following day (9th in Japan and 8th in Washington), the MacArthur charm again has its way; the joint chiefs respond: **"WE APPROVE YOUR PLAN AND PRESIDENT HAS BEEN SO INFORMED."** In other activity, Tactical Air Command X Corps is activated today; its components will arrive in Japan today. In conjunction, Brig. General Thomas Cushman, USMC is appointed TAC X Corps Commander. **At Pusan:** The 1st Provisional Marine Brigade continues to prepare for embarkation to a point unknown. The imminent invasion of Inchon remains secret, but rumors of all sorts persist. At one point before the brigade departs, there is a large formation near the docks and a long litany is read aloud to them, explaining the specifics of the waters off Kunsan;

coincidentally, there are legions of enemy spies in Pusan and it is hoped that the information is absorbed and dispatched to the N.K. Military. The Marine scuttlebutt continues, but Kunsan is now definitely stricken from their list of targets. Nonetheless, Kunsan continues to be struck by air and naval surface vessels. Also, the Marine Brigade Commander, General Craig, receives some encouraging words from General O.P. Smith; in part: **"I APPRECIATE THE BEATING YOU ARE TAKING IN COMING OUT OF ACTION AND MOUNTING OUT. ONLY MARINES COULD DO WHAT YOU ARE DOING...THE BRIGADE HAS DONE A SPLENDID JOB IN SOUTH KOREA AND WE ARE ALL PROUD OF YOU..."**

**September 9 1950 - (Pacific-Japan)** General MacArthur, aware of the desperate situation in Korea concerning the dangerous level of remaining ammunition, dispatches an urgent request to two transports (carrying ammunition) en route to Yokohama, Japan and Pusan, Korea; he urges the vessels to speed as fast as possible, but not to endanger the vessels' safety, to deliver the supplies earlier than the anticipated arrival date of Sept. 11th. The ongoing Communist attacks against the entire Pusan Perimeter are seriously draining the ammunition stock, especially the howitzer shells. In other activity, General Smith, CO, 1st Marine Division receives a recommendation from General Almond calling for one Battalion of the 32nd Infantry Regiment to land on Wolmi-do Island late on the 15th, and from there it is to speed across the causeway to capture the high ground south of Seoul; Smith is requested to provide five Marine tanks to cover the 32nd's 20-mile inland advance. General Smith is disinterested in the plan, convinced that it is logistically infeasible, especially since Marine Artillery battalions will be landing there as scheduled. In conjunction, when the invasion unfolds, X Corps lands the 32nd Regiment on the 18th.

**September 10 1950 - (Pacific-Japan)** Between today and the 11th, sixty vessels transporting cargo for the invasion force embark Kobe for Inchon. In other activity, a plan conceived by General Almond to launch a surprise attack against Kimpo Airfield near Inchon is executed on schedule; Special Operations Company (X Corps), commanded by Col. Louis Ely, embarks Kobe on a British Frigate to rendezvous with a South Korean Picket Boat, off Korea. On D-day (15th), the soldiers are to be taken to a point from which they must row several miles to shore and attack the airfield in concert with the main invasion of Inchon; Ely's command embarks on schedule and makes the approach, but in the final moments, a decision is reached to abort the mission due to the rowing distance involved with rubber boats. **(Pacific-Korea)** Eighth Army further reduces the ration of howitzer shells per unit from fifty per day to twenty-five; the order has apparently taken on a sense of humor as it stipulates: "except in cases of emergency." The 17th Field Artillery Battalion ironically is unaffected by the order as it is the first Artillery unit to arrive in Korea with 8-inch shells; it totally lacks ammunition. **(Inchon area)** U.S. Aircraft strike Inchon and Wolmido Island, the latter receiving napalm deliveries by Marine planes; sixty-five sorties are flown against Inchon. The Marine pilots of TF-95.5 deliver the napalm to destroy the trees on Wolmi-do, which are hiding the enemy artillery. Initially, eight planes (VMF-214) and six aircraft (VMF-323) are launched from their carriers at 0600. Shortly thereafter, the eastern portion of the Wolmo-di becomes an inferno; the smoke is so thick that the second contingent of fourteen planes is compelled to circle the area momentarily while the smoke dissipates somewhat before they can strike their target area. The second attack group is met by some Antiaircraft fire. A third contingent composed of fourteen planes departs the carriers slightly before noon and following their devastating attack, the entire island of Wolmo-di resembles one huge barbecue as it is permeated with smoke and fire. On the following day, the *Badoeng Strait* and the *Sicily* return to Sasebo, Japan to get resupplied; however,

other navy fliers (TF-77) will resume the attacks during the interim.

**September 11 1950 - (Pacific-Japan)** The 1st Marine Division departs Kobe by sea for Inchon and the 7th Infantry Division embarks Yokohama; the warships are sailing just ahead of another approaching typhoon: Kezia, which is expected to swoop in from the southwest and strike the Korea Straits on September 12th-13th. Admiral Doyle and General O.P. Smith, USMC, depart Kobe at 1030 today aboard the USS *Mount McKinley*; the voyage is extremely rough due to the storm. Meanwhile, the USS *Boxer* is closing on Japan, transporting its complement of 96 planes and an additional fourteen aircraft; Typhoon Kezia forces the *Boxer* to launch the extra fourteen planes, dispatching them to Okinawa. In conjunction, the 5th Marines will sail from Pusan, Korea on the 13th and join the fleet at sea. Also, the massive suction of ground forces from Japan makes that country extremely vulnerable to attack if the Soviets or China choose to retaliate because of the Inchon operation.

**September 12th 1950 - (Pacific-Japan)** Admiral Struble, Commanding Officer, 7th Fleet and JTF 7, sails from Sasebo aboard his Flagship, the U.S.S. *Rochester*. In other activity, General MacArthur and other officers including Army Generals Almond, Edwin Wright, Alonzo Fox, Courtney Whitney and Marine General Lemuel C. Shepherd, Jr. move by air from Tokyo to Itazuke air base; from the airfield, the entourage is driven to Sasebo where it will board the USS *Mt. McKinley*. Initially, the party was to have departed on the Vessel from Kokura, but Typhoon Kezia has shifted directions, prompting an earlier boarding to ensure a timely departure. The *McKinley*, en route to Sasebo from Kobe, arrives at midnight 12th-13th and is back at sea within about thirty minutes.

**(Pacific-Korea)** There has been more than a fair share of bad days for the U.S. fighting men since their arrival in Korea, and today is definitely not one of their favorites. While the various units have been tramping through the mud and rain, and tracking the enemy, there has been a bitter controversy concerning them and some of their rations. There had been no apparent furor over the poor weapons, the lack of proper equipment and ammunition, nor has there been any investigations to determine why so many American units have been gutted and unprepared for battle, but word has reached the States that the fighting men have been receiving occasional free beer through rations, similarly to the way they receive cigarettes and candy. The argument is raised by various organizations and at one point, it is discussed on the floor of the U.S. Congress. Acquiescing to the pressure, the army directs the Far East Command to designate Sept. 12th as the final day for free beer. Beginning on the following day, the troops would be required to pay for beer, and it remains available at the PX's; there are not many post exchanges within short distances from the front lines. The Congressman who defended the beer rations expresses his thoughts: "**WATER IN KOREA IS WORSE THAN THE BULLETS,**" and the stereotyped response of the Foot Soldier is: "**...WE ARE DOING THE FIGHTING OVER HERE AND IT GETS PRETTY BAD. ONE CAN OF BEER NEVER HURT NOBODY.**" Some other typical responses are unprintable.

**September 13th 1950 - (Pacific-Japan)** Typhoon Kezia gains power as it whips over the southern tip of Kyushu. It begins slapping part of the invasion fleet with some hefty blows, including whining sixty-mile per hour winds and smashing waves which crack across the ships' bows, shifting cargo and turning stomachs with every nauseous roll. The nasty early morning storm begins shifting to the northeast, transforming the wild seas to more tranquil waters by about noon. One Ship, the Carrier USS *Boxer*, still racing from the States, gets muscled by the storm as it approaches Japan, forcing it to fight the unruly sea throughout the night, but it reaches port safely. At dark on the 14th the *Boxer* streams out of Sasebo, full steam ahead, moving toward Inchon with the Marines and its

complement of 110 Aircraft. **(Pacific-Korea) Pusan: 1st Provisional Marine Brigade sector:** At 0001, the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade is deactivated. In conjunction, the individual units automatically revert to their previous unit designations within the 1st Marine Division; subsequent to deactivation the Marines embark Pusan to rejoin the Division at sea, following 67 days of operations. The brigade air-ground team, operating with only two-thirds of its supporting transportation vehicles and those supplemented by the army, has covered 380 miles while engaging the enemy and has heartily participated in three separate Eighth Army offensives. The brigade sustains 148 Marines killed and an additional fifteen Marines who succumb from their wounds; 730 Marines are wounded during the operations. Most conspicuous of the figures is that only nine Marines are missing in action. Of these, seven men are subsequently identified as killed (when their bodies are later recovered), giving the brigade two men unaccounted for during the fighting. Enemy losses against the Marine Brigade are estimated to be 9,900 killed and wounded. The troops of the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade, dubbed the "firemen of the Pusan Perimeter," seem eager to depart Korea and the "Bean Patch," but the Marines know they will return soon; it is only a question of where. The corsairs, which had been at brigade's beckon call, remain perched on the carriers until their characteristic services are again needed (in two days). During the operations, the Marine squadrons constantly soared through the skies. To the ground troops the squadrons seemingly exhibited the beauty of bands of flying regal blue stallions, trotting amongst the clouds until a sudden diving gallop was required to ensure that their ground troops gain the finish line. The helicopters of VMO-6 performed with equal brilliance during their precedent-setting missions. A compliment afforded the brigade by Col. Paul L. Freeman, 23rd Regiment, USA: **"THE MARINES ON OUR LEFT WERE A SIGHT TO BEHOLD. NOT ONLY WAS THEIR EQUIPMENT SUPERIOR OR EQUAL TO OURS, BUT THEY HAD SQUADRONS OF AIR IN DIRECT SUPPORT. THEY USED IT LIKE ARTILLERY. IT WAS 'HEY JOE-THIS IS SCHMITTY-KNOCK THE LEFT OF THAT RIDGE IN FRONT OF ITEM COMPANY.' THEY HAD IT DAY AND NIGHT..."** In conjunction, VMF-214 flies 670 sorties, VMF-323 flies 498 sorties and VMF(N)-513 from its base in Japan, executes 343 sorties between August 3rd and September 14th. An analysis by a Marine Corps study board spells out the effectiveness of their recently completed mission: **"A CAREFUL EXAMINATION OF ANY OF THESE OPERATIONS IN WHICH MARINES ENGAGED DISCLOSES THAT A SINGLE FAILURE WOULD HAVE A PROFOUND EFFECT UPON THE ENTIRE U.N. EFFORT..."** **"ON 3 SEPARATE OCCASIONS THE BRIGADE WAS ATTACHED TO THE DEFENDING U.N. FORCES AT POINTS OF DANGEROUS ENEMY PENETRATIONS AND 3 TIMES MARINE UNITS SPEARHEADED THE COUNTERATTACKING ELEMENTS AND EFFECTIVELY STOPPED THE ENEMY'S EFFORTS, SEIZING THE INITIATIVE FROM HIM, INFLECTING SERIOUS LOSSES UPON HIM AND FORCING THE ABANDONMENT OF IMMEDIATE ATTEMPTS AT DECISIVE PENETRATION."**

**Inchon:** Admiral Higgins' gunfire support group, designated the responsibility of silencing the enemy batteries on Wolmi-do Island to ensure safe passage through the inner harbor of Inchon, sets to its task; six U.S. destroyers, two heavy cruisers, the *Rochester* and *Toledo*, and two British light cruisers, the *Kenya* and *Jamaica*, pass into the approaches to Inchon Harbor at 1010. Slightly before noon at 1145, thanks to the low tide, observers spot four enemy mines in Flying Fish Channel and the vessels take extra precautions. The cruisers tail-off to provide support, and the six destroyers advance to destroy the mines with 40-mm shells. The USS *Gurke* eliminates the first mine at 1146. Shortly thereafter, at about 1220, the cruisers drop anchor, positioning themselves between seven

and ten miles from the island, but five of the destroyers maintain their speed, riding the flooding tide and moving under the cover fire of supporting aircraft from Fast Carrier Task Force 77, to positions closer to the target. The destroyer USS *Henderson* is ordered by Captain Halle C. Allan, Commanding Officer Destroyer Squadron Nine, to lay back and continue seeking and destroying enemy mines near Palmi-do. The remaining destroyers take some unusual precautions. Due to the conditions of the channel and the remote possibility of enemy troops crossing the mud flats to attack a crippled destroyer, Admiral Higgins orders the crews to be armed with Grenades and Tommyguns in case he might be called upon to repel boarders, utilizing an order used frequently during the days of John Paul Jones, John Barry and Admiral Perry: "PREPARE TO REPEL BOARDERS." At 1230, the destroyers *Collett DeHaven*, *Gurke*, *Mansfield* and *Swenson* drop anchor, with the *Gurke* at the point about 800 yards from shore. The crew on the *De Haven* creates a ruse, stuffing uniforms with straw and rags to draw enemy fire. The destroyers are positioned facing the incoming tide, permitting all guns to stroke the shoreline, while providing themselves a quick line of exit if the return fire becomes too severe. With a giant roar the shells soar into the suspected enemy positions just prior to 1300, igniting a furious slugfest. Higgins' ploy to force the enemy to reveal the positions of their guns is successful. The *De Haven* initiates the attack, followed by the *Collett*. The first enemy shots are focused upon the *Gurke*, *Collett* and *Swenson*, the vessels closest to shore, but the shells pass over and a trailing barrage pulls up short of the Warships. But then, at about 1306, enemy fire strikes the *Collet*. By 1330, she sustains three more hits, one of which is a 75-mm armor-piercing shell which shatters; one piece drills the engine room and another fragment enters the plot room, wounding five crewmen. Meanwhile, the *Gurke* takes three hits, but she receives only slight damage. The *DeHaven* and *Mansfield* remain unscathed during the contest between ship and shore; however, the *Swenson* loses one man killed when the vessel receives a near miss. Ironically, the slain sailor is Lt. David H. Swenson, the sole American death incurred during bombardment; another sailor, Ensign John Noonan, is wounded. The destroyers pull back at 1347, under fire. The *Mansfield* narrowly escapes harm. In the meantime, the lagging cruisers pick up the slack. From their positions, too far out to be harmed by enemy shore batteries, the cruisers unleash their Guns at 1352, relentlessly pounding the island for one and one-half hours before taking a pause. But the enemy receives no reprieve as planes (TF-77) move in immediately and lambaste the island with a scathing attack; upon its conclusion, the cruisers resume firing at 1610, hammering the enemy with six-inch and eight-inch shells for thirty minutes. At 1645, the warships move back out of the channel to prepare for a return engagement on the following day; eight additional mines are discovered as the warships retire and all are destroyed. The enemy fire inflicts only slight overall damage to the destroyers. The warships move out of sight, hoping to convince the enemy it is merely a naval strike. Admiral Struble orders a conference aboard the *Rochester*, as he is not satisfied with the accuracy of the cruiser fire; Struble concentrates on improving Air-Spotting for the following day to improve the cruisers' firing. Also, the naval aircraft of Task Force 77 continue to strike Wolmi-do and Inchon vicinity today, while the carriers of TG-95.5 are getting resupplied.

**September 14 1950 -(United States)** President Truman announces that the state department has been authorized to initiate talks with Japan and Allied members of the Far Eastern Commission to determine the acceptability of the proposed peace treaty and the attached U.S.-Japan security agreement; this announcement sends a clear message that the U.S. is prepared to consummate the treaty with or without the Russians' participation. **(Pacific-Korea) Inchon:** The warships of Rear Admiral J.M. Higgins' gunfire support group move back into the channel to resume the bombardment of Wolmi-do, receiving only some meek sporadic return fire, giving evidence of the

devastation poured upon the island on the previous day. The enemy-held island is first struck by planes from the carriers of TG-99.5, as the Marines have been resupplied and are back on the scene. The aircraft of VMF-214 and VMF-323 spot targets for the cruisers and deliver more punishing dosages of napalm prior to and subsequent to the naval surface vessels' bombardment. The planes arrive slightly before 1100 to deliver their deadly fire. The long guns of the cruisers bellow at 1116, but today, the cruisers incorporate additional targets and pound Inchon during the bombardment. Waiting destroyers, their flags at half-mast, bide their time, and at about 1215, they advance to the positions which they had held on the previous day and reinitiate the bombardment. In the meantime, the guns on the cruisers temporarily fall silent, but the roar of hammering shells soon resumes as planes soar overhead and pour more devastating fire upon the island. Upon cessation of the air attack, the destroyers resume their in-close firing at 1255, ensuring no placidity on Wolmi-do and much anxiety in Inchon, as the five participating destroyers launch 1,732 5-inch shells into Wolmi-do and Inchon within one hour and fifteen minutes; the damaged *Collett* is detached. Subsequent to the combined attacks of the warships and planes, the withdrawal from the channel is totally uneventful; the Batteries on Wolmi-do have been permanently silenced. In related activity, the invasion force composed of 70,000 troops is fast approaching the objective. Despite the inclement weather, all ships in the task force have arrived at the rendezvous points, and they are preparing to strike; only one vessel becomes disabled during the journey, an LST (the 1048) transporting Headquarters, 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines. The vessel begins hobbling on the 12th, subsequent to blowing an engine, but a nearby ocean tug boat, the *Conserver* tows the LST at eight knots, getting her to the debarkation point on schedule. The vessels move across the Yellow Sea heading toward the final rendezvous point, dubbed CALIFORNIA, off the coast of Korea. Meanwhile, British Admiral Andrewes' blockade and covering force warships screen the advance. Also, the advance attack group, including Admiral Higgins' gunfire support group, the rocket ships (LSMRs) and the battalion landing team (3rd Battalion, 5th Marines and one platoon of nine M-26 tanks (Company A, 1st Tank Bn.) begin the approach to Inchon at 0200 on the 15th. Wolmi-do is the preliminary target, and its landing area is dubbed Green Beach.

### **September 15 1950 - THE INVASION OF INCHON:**

Prior to the entrance of the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade, there had been another confrontation between Marines and Koreans. Seventy-nine years ago, during May of 1871, the Koreans had massacred an American survey team. Following the Koreans' refusal to apologize, the U.S. fleet landed Marines and sailors to seek swift reprisals. Three days of ferocious attacks followed, culminating with the destruction of three forts, including the well fortified Citadel. Nine sailors and six Marines received the Medal of Honor for their extraordinary gallantry.

Now, a much larger and more powerful fleet, Joint Task Force Seven, including some Royal Navy vessels, encroaches the shores of Korea. The French, always eager to help, contribute the near antique frigate *La Grandiere*, whose maximum speed of about twelve knots, relegates her to escorting the tardy vessels, such as the tugs and minesweepers. The fleet, under Vice Admiral Arthur Struble, is undergoing a dazzling last minute operation to check the minute details of the various attack and support components. Amphibious Group One, commanded by Rear Admiral James H. Doyle, is dusting the cobwebs from the amphibious landing craft, as the 1st Marine Division, led by General O.P. Smith, prepares to launch the invasion. Meanwhile, the thunderous guns of the advance warships have been pummeling the objectives in concert with marauding aircraft. Initially, Wolmi-do, thought to be a well fortified stronghold, must be seized to prevent

its use by the enemy to strike against the flank of the invasion force. Subsequent to its seizure, Wolmi-do must be held by the Marines until late afternoon when the tides again change, to permit the main invasion force to enter the channel to storm Inchon. Wolmi-do, by evening of the 14th, subsequent to five days of incessant bombardment, resembles a over-charred smoking prime rib. While the enemy is pondering what might occur next, the Yellow Sea is bristling with monstrous activity. The early morning skies are as dark as the Devil's heart, increasing the gloom as the robust armada draws closer to the target, mindful of all the bleak disadvantages still facing the operation. The dubious questions! Is the fleet steaming across the blackened sea and through the grim darkness toward dawn and victory? Or is it impulsively stumbling into a profane and vulgar watery abyss, which could doom the fleet and consume the fearless warriors before they brandish their shields and armor? The profound answers will be forthcoming at dawn.

The fleet places the finishing touches on what must be a masterpiece operation to ensure a debilitating blow upon the Communists, against all calculable odds. Marines will launch a deadly delayed two-pronged landing on the west coast at Wolmi-do and Inchon, the latter a pernicious nemesis for both naval vessels and amphibious troops, situated on the estuary of the Yom-ha River. The vessels must conquer one of the world's most treacherous tides (33 feet at maximum, with an average spring tide of 23 feet). Twenty-nine feet of water is the minimum requirement for the warships and this occurs only on several days a month. If the invasion is forced to abort, the next available dates will be October 11th or November 3rd, neither being in the best interests of Eighth Army. Moreover, the slim spooky passage is easily blocked. If one ship gets hung up, all preceding vessels in the channel will be stranded, unable to reverse course, and those to the rear will be unable to assist.

As described by General Oliver P. Smith, "**...HALF OF THE PROBLEM WAS IN GETTING TO INCHON AT ALL.**" The navy is undertaking this unique challenge in stride. The remaining part of the equation is close-at-hand, and the Marines are convinced that they hold the solution.

At Jerico, Joshua had his seven rams' horns. At Orleans, Joan of Arc had her sword, garnished with five stunning crosses. And at Inchon, MacArthur has the crack 1st Marine Division, almost miraculously assembled, transported and prepared to attack within six weeks. MacArthur's Warriors are about to break through a wall to decapitate a serpent, not to be bitten.

Slightly before 0300 and subsequent to a flawless rendezvous after midnight, the warships of TF 90.1 initiate the invasion. The destroyer USS *Mansfield*, commanded by Commodore Halle Allan, takes the point and cautiously slips into the combustible cauldron of Flying Fish Channel with its notorious tides and ill-scented odor. Eighteen additional warships closely shadow the *Mansfield*, each exercising prudence. Success for the mission mainly depends on two items, the honed skill of the ships' radar operators and a generous sprinkling of good luck, to gain safe passage through the foreboding and unfamiliar dark waters.

The fate of Eighth Army and South Korea perilously hangs in the balance.

The politicians and a majority of ranking U. S. Military leaders are highly skeptical of achieving success with the dangerous mission. Nonetheless, they have acquiesced to the dynamic and peerless persuasiveness of General Douglas MacArthur, who has remained steadfast in his belief that the bold and unexpected amphibious assault will smash the enemy and bring a quick termination to the hostilities. However, he is equally cognizant of the disastrous consequences if the Marines falter.

The vessels reach the half-way point in the channel without any mishaps, but the final lap remains

full of lurking dangers, with the potential to become a chamber of death. The intrepid actions of Lt. Clark, USN, while in the area in advance of the invasion, have already paid great dividends of intelligence, and now the invasion force becomes the recipient of a spectacular bonus. As the vanguard creeps through the murky night air, sometimes unable to distinguish the sky from the sea and seemingly drifting toward a wall of ink, a brilliant flash of light comes into view, followed by additional time-delayed flashes. The *Mansfield* excitedly discovers that it is the Mariner's beacon on Palmi-do. The mood aboard ship swings from one of somberness to jubilation. Astonishingly, the Mariner's beacon light, which Lt. Clark had repaired, is beaming like the ancient star over Bethlehem and it is as welcome to the sailors and Marines as the star was to the Wise Men. The surprising nocturnal illumination sparks instant enthusiasm. Under the guiding light of the antiquated French lamp, the warships safely pass through the remainder of the critical danger points in the channel, and the troops breathe a hefty sigh of relief. The vessels shoot forward as if gliding along jet satin. Meanwhile, the ever-potent carriers, which have passed the night with relative calm, become a churning whirlwind of activity. The pilots have been thoroughly briefed and the crews have the planes primed. The resonant roar of their engines reverberates across the decks, signaling that the attack is imminent. The ebony sky and the inky black seas enunciate the serious tone of the task at hand, as the eager pilots await the signal to launch their planes. The cockpit becomes a very lonely place just prior to takeoff, especially on a starless night when the runway is the swaying deck of a carrier being manipulated by rough seas.

Suddenly, the Marine corsairs (VMF-214 and VMF-323) bolt from the decks of the *Sicily* and the *Badoeng Strait*, leaving short-lived fiery tails in their wake as they stream toward Inchon. Further west, the aerial exercise is being duplicated as the carriers *Boxer*, *Philippine Sea* and the *Valley Forge* launch their aircraft; the planes form above the carriers, then soar eastward toward the objective, arriving over the target areas at 0454.

Shortly afterward, the floating fortresses of Capt. Sears' Advance Attack Group 90.1 glide into the narrows west of Wolmi-do: three APDs, and one LSD. Expeditiously, the vessels move to their assigned battle positions. The sleek, but deadly destroyers glide just ahead of the attack force. The USS *Collet*, *DeHaven* and *Gurke*, having sustained only slight damage during the recent exchange with enemy shore batteries, are anxious to unleash their fury; the destroyers *Henderson*, *Mansfield*, *Southerland* and the *Swenson* are also poised to fire. The cruisers USS *Rochester* and USS *Toledo*, carrying Admirals Higgins and Struble respectively, as well as the HMS *Jamaica*, and the HMS *Kenya*, are in their specified battle positions, their colossal guns staring impassionately toward Inchon.

Nearby, north of the target area, three little mighty-mights, the LSMRs 401, 403 and 404, sway meekly, concealing their compact killing power while they bob in the water; the vessels are equipped with nasty rockets. These agile craft could be construed as seagoing rapid-firing archers, intent on slinging their flaming arrows upon enemy soil. The vessels are determined to hit the mark.

L-Hour is fast approaching. The murky darkness shows signs of its demise, relinquishing its post to approaching daylight. The control ship, USS *Mount McKinley*, glides forward with quiet confidence, entering the narrows a few blinks ahead of dawn, where it straddles amidst her gleaming steel warriors and slings its anchor at 0508.

Meanwhile, on Wolmi-do, the seemingly dazed survivors of the earlier bombardments are awakening to the whirling sounds of aircraft; since the aircraft do not possess the quaint sounds of

"*Washing Machine Charlie*," the most prominent nickname for the enemy aircraft with their sputtering sounds, it becomes apparent that the skies are filling with unfriendly aircraft.

The main event is scheduled for later in the day, but there will be no evening performance unless the initial attack succeeds with absolute perfection. And the show begins!

At 0520, Admiral Doyle, aboard the *Mount McKinley*, incites the battle with the expected signal: "**LAND THE LANDING FORCE.**" As the message is flung to the yardarm, the boats are lowered into the water, and soon after, the stout hearted Marines will begin the downward climb to board the wobbly craft and initiate the monotonous circling maneuver, about one mile off GREEN Beach, while forming for the attack. All the while, the wave commanders focus on the control vessel.

Suddenly, the four gargantuan cruisers bellow like mythical angry dragons, but they begin spewing genuine flame. In unison, unending banners of burnt orange fire are streaming toward Inchon; the first burst strikes thunderously at 0545, quivering the already blotched earth and driving fear into the black hearts of the defenders. The deafening sounds of the 5-and 6-inch guns, seemingly stir the sea, as the menacing echoes resoundingly bounce and swirl through the channel. Dawn is announced with a massive bang, as the channel affords excellent acoustics.

The destroyers chime in vociferously, concentrating their hardy five-inch guns on Wolmi-do, specifically Radio Hill; Intelligence has reported the island, linked to Inchon by a causeway, to be defended by about 400 North Korean troops. Subsequent information, extracted from prisoners, makes it clear that the defenders are attached to the N.K. 226th Marine Regiment and the N.K. 918th Coast Artillery Battalion.

Radio Hill's seaward profile has already been transformed by the bombardments from ghostly gray to pitch black, etched with some deep crimson. And now it is obscured by huge clouds of smoke. The defenders are unable to see the approaching Marine corsairs, which are diving to inflict more punishing blows.

At 0600, the F4Us descend rapidly. In a blazing flash, Wolmi-do is carpeted with bursting napalm bombs and their rockets' red glare; Marine pilots emboss the island with their signature, through improvised aerial calligraphy. The whistling death plummets to the ground with earth-shattering effects, as the planes criss-cross the island, pounding it with multiple layers of bombs and napalm while shredding it with linking chains of vicious machine gun fire and riveting rockets. The horrific air strikes cease at 0615, but Wolmi-do is scheduled to immediately receive several additional lethal surprises. And the corsairs will reinitiate their strikes to protect the ground Marines.

While the naval surface vessels and aircraft have been clobbering the target areas, the decks of the troop ships have been humming with animation as the Marines board the landing boats. The designated spearhead of the invasion force is the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines, commanded by Col. Taplett; Company G, aboard the USS *Diachenko*, and Company H, aboard the *H. A. Bass*, will lead the assault; and Company I, the recently established third rifle company, will debark the USS *Wantuck* and come in as reserve. In conjunction, regimental headquarters, the armor, vehicles, and various types of equipment are aboard the flagship of Capt. Sears, the LSD *Fort Marion*.

L-Hour is confirmed: 0630.

The Marines' spearhead force has been aboard the landing craft since about 0600, awaiting the signal to attack. The 5th Marines desire to rekindle their peculiar fondness for the sight of North Koreans; the last encounter with the "Gooks" had been at the gruesome Pusan Perimeter, and the

Marines have some unfinished business to pursue. The Marines are not anticipating the Communists setting the table or offering an elaborate meal, but they do expect to eat dinner in Seoul, and the sooner the better.

In the meantime, as ordered, the swashbuckling corsairs harness their flying swords at 0615, and an eerie silence permeates Wolmi-do, now totally consumed by choking smoke and incinerated debris. Nonetheless, the remaining enemy survivors are about to be struck by yet another sizzling hurricane of fire.

The bristling trio of LSMRs, led by Commander Clarence T. Doss, waiting patiently north of the objective, dart from their positions as the aerial attacks subside. The vessels vigorously sprint toward the coast, incessantly catapulting thousands of devastating rockets into the enemy positions, rekindling the flames and enlarging the tempest. During the searing barrage, one of the LSMRs veers south, cruising past Green Beach, pulverizing it; then the straying LSMR focuses on Radio Hill, saturating it with screeching rocket fire before departing. Once the LSMR advances beyond North Point of Wolmi-do, the torch passes to the sailors commanding the landing craft and the 5th Marines' spearhead.

The red flag is propelled to the yardarm of the control vessel, underscoring the anxiety and pre-battle anticipation of the watching assault troops. The landing craft, having ceased their circling, are formed on-line for the assault; seventeen LCVPs, transporting the 3rd Battalion, and three LSVs, containing nine Tanks, vigorously move toward the departure line.

Then swiftly, the red flag drops.

At 0625, a loudspeaker aboard ship proclaims: "Landing Force crossing line of departure"; General MacArthur, like the troops, has enjoyed little sleep when he enters the bridge of the *Mount McKinley* to observe the landing, just as the announcement is being spoken. The confining flag deck is becoming over-crowded with officers, and each of them focuses intently, peering toward the bland shore line which is shrouded by a dismal hovering haze and engulfed by lingering fires.

Inchon lies about one mile away, but it's an especially long mile, if you happen to be General MacArthur or a member of the first wave of the 5th Marines. This is the first major amphibious invasion since the landing on Okinawa on Easter Sunday, April 1st, 1945. Many ranking officers, including General Omar Bradley, have considered the era of the amphibious invasions over forever, destined to attain the same fate as the forlorn horse soldiers. The theory of the demise of the amphibious invasion has developed since the appearance of the A Bomb, during the latter days of World War II. General MacArthur and the Marine Corps wholeheartedly dispel the theory.

General MacArthur has held steadfast, unwilling to yield on his belief that Inchon will fall, and by Amphibious troops. MacArthur's flamboyant and pointed prophetic words: "**WE WILL LAND...AND I WILL CRUSH THEM,**" is now dependent upon the Marines and their ability to fulfill his promising boast. There are some positive things in MacArthur's favor, despite his detractors and his self-proclaimed odds of 5,000-to-1 against success. Since the birth of the Marine Corps, November 10th, 1775, no adversary has ever thrown the U.S. Marines back to the sea. And the 1st Marine Division intends to keep its honor clean.

During the hazardous trip to the beach, the probing restless minds of the Marines are consumed with a mixture of solemn and joyous thoughts; some hold tightly to their fond memories of loved ones at home and others are praying that the most recent blessings of the chaplains will bring them safely

through the murderous ordeal. Many remember one somber sardonic quote, attributed to General of the Army, Omar Bradley, while he was speaking during Congressional hearings on October 19th, 1949: "...I ALSO PREDICT THAT LARGE SCALE AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS WILL NEVER OCCUR AGAIN." And it's apparent that some of the Marines and sailors distinctly recall President Truman's chilling and sarcastic reference to the Marine Corps as being "NOTHING MORE THAN A POLICE FORCE FOR THE NAVY." As the landing boats charge toward shore, the slogan: "TRUMAN'S POLICE FORCE," is prominently displayed on several of them.

A mere eight minutes have trickled by since the first wave passed the departure line. Rockets and 40-mm shells maintain their steady stream, pulverizing the southern portion of the island, when one platoon of Company G and three platoons of Company H violently plow ashore against GREEN Beach, three minutes behind schedule, at 0633. They are followed by the second wave, which brings in the remainder of the two assaulting companies within two additional fleeting moments, at 0635. The landing is seriously hindered by the mass of destroyed enemy small craft, which clutter the approaches and confine the landing strip on the beach to fifty yards, thereby creating extremely close quarters during the early and most critical minutes of the landing. Due to the huge amount of shipwrecked debris, the underwater demolitions teams had been unable to fully dislodge the wreckage in time to ease the strain of the landing. And as usual, everything does not work out as expected. Lt. Bohn's first step from the boat is a sobering one, as he sinks in water which is over his head. But other than the quick bath, most things go well. So far, no enemy land mines have been encountered, and no enemy fire emerges to slow the advance.

In the meantime, a neutralizing process is underway, as swarms of circling corsairs from VMF-214 and VMF-323 resume the hunt, tenaciously swooping down and sweeping the areas fifty yards in front of the Marines, spitting deadly machine gun fire to open holes and ensure a speedy advance. The belligerent tanks of Company A, 1st Tank Battalion smash ashore at 0646, bolstering the foot Marines and adding some rolling steel cleats to their sturdy boots. The navy's guns and the aircraft have purposely spared the causeway, giving the tanks access to the mainland when it becomes necessary.

The Marines have been met primarily by ugly debris and some grotesque indications of mangled bodies and death, but few enemy shots ring out. A rapid reorganization occurs at the water's edge, and the advance begins. Lt. Bohn's Company G swings to the right and moves against Objective 1-A, Radio Hill, advancing against some sporadic fire as it charges up the northern slopes, again encountering no mines. Marine riflemen take aim and rapidly snap out effective fire, suppressing the resistance. Most of the enemy encountered choose to surrender, deducing that the alternative beats death. Bohn's Marines shoot to the top and occupy the summit. In conjunction, Company H, commanded by Captain Patrick Wildman, operating on the left, moves straight ahead to assault Objective 2-B, which includes the shoreline factory area facing Inchon and the badgered eastern spur of Radio Hill, but the platoons are restrained; compelled to move slowly through the twisted and burning rubble.

At 0655, twenty-two minutes after the landing, Sergeant Alvin E. Smith, 3rd Platoon, Company G plants the colors. He vividly affixes Old Glory to a battered tree atop the shattered crest of Radio Hill, not too far from the demolished radio towers; his actions are instantly noted aboard the *Mount McKinley*, as if the gallant sergeant is simultaneously transmitting the stirring words and music of *Semper Fidelis* and the *Marine Corps Hymn* directly to the electrified bridge of the *Mount McKinley*. MacArthur and the other officers are still keenly observing the flag raising from the

bridge. MacArthur, his chest swelling and his eyes beaming with undeniable pride, retains his commanding composure, while rising from his swivel chair and nonchalantly motioning to the other officers, saying: **"THAT'S IT. LETS GET A CUP OF COFFEE."**

Meanwhile, on Wolmi-do, there is no time for the Marines to savor the moment of their stunning historical achievement; much remains to be done to ensure total victory. The battle moves to the next plateau. Company H, commanded by Captain Patrick Wildman, drives toward the causeway which links the island with Inchon; a small detachment is also dispatched to secure North Point, which has been reduced to debris. Unfortunately, about one platoon of enemy soldiers on North Point evades the sweep, causing complications for the fourth wave, which arrives at 0659.

Company I (Reserve), commanded by Captain Robert McMullen comes in as the fourth wave and moves through North Point, once a somewhat elegant resort, but now about the only resemblance to opulence is the swimming pool. Thinking it unoccupied, I Company proceeds to advance, paying little heed to the many caves which had been used for dual purposes: to store goods and for refuge from bombardment. The roving unit encounters surprising resistance. Concealed North Koreans begin lobbing grenades, which further splatter the debris and scatter the startled Marines. Soon after the immediate explosions, the Marines regain their composure and the interrupted momentum, then search for the source of the grenades, discovering it in a group of nests, entrenched on the low cliff facing Inchon. An interpreter attempts to convince the trapped Communists that their predicament is futile and that they should surrender. A response is forthcoming as the cornered enemy begins slinging more grenades, angering the testy Marines.

Meanwhile, the recently arrived tanks of Lt. Sweet are standing by, impatiently waiting for a call from the ground troops; Capt. McMullen obliges, subsequent to the refusal of the enemy (about platoon strength) to capitulate. The M-26s sprint into position, while Marine riflemen deploy and provide ample cover fire to pen any enemy fire. Then, a cantankerous dozer Tank, directed by McMullen, plows into the pocket and plugs the enemy filled holes, exterminating the threat by permanently sealing off the openings.

Company I then resumes its advance, trailing the movement of Company H, and encounters another surprise as it moves toward the causeway. The advancing Marines come upon another mysterious cavern, thought to be unoccupied until peculiar noises begin filtering out of it. Instinctively, Marine riflemen take aim, then stand ready, as a cranky M-26 tank encroaches upon the entrance, pauses momentarily as it sets the turret's sights, then uneventfully pumps two whizzing rounds, dead center, through the entrance. Both rounds strike paydirt as explosions quiver the ground; immediately thereafter, huge puffs of billowing smoke and flame emerge erratically from the incinerated cave. The Marines are soon flabbergasted, as thirty lucky Red troops wobble through the dust and raise their hands high.

Company H, which had been attempting to clear the industrial area, continues its prolonged advance, prompting Col. Taplett to order Company G to secure Radio Hill in its entirety. Lt. Bohn's command races across the ridgeline and secures the eastern spur. Then Bohn speeds a detachment to the western tip of the heights to secure it.

During the clearing operations, one enemy armored vehicle boldly attempts to run the causeway, from Inchon to Wolmi-do; however, a concerned Marine M-26 tank crew becomes fearful that the armored car might get caught in the causeway minefield, laid earlier by the engineers. The tank decides to intervene. With precise intent, the tankers swivel the turret into position and fire, scoring

a bull's eye. The armored car and its occupants are blown into oblivion, keeping the engineers' causeway minefield a secret and preventing the engineers from claiming the first kill of an armored vehicle by ground troops.

In the meantime, General MacArthur has already leisurely enjoyed his coffee aboard the Mount McKinley, after spotting the most recent performance of Sergeant Smith. And at 0745 a message from Col. Taplett is received aboard the McKinley: "CAPTURED 45 PRISONERS. MEETING LIGHT RESISTANCE." The news of the 3rd Battalion's success is proclaimed over the loudspeaker and shortly thereafter, General MacArthur composes a profound note and requests that Admiral Struble relay it to the fleet:

**"THE NAVY AND MARINES HAVE NEVER SHONE MORE BRIGHTLY THAN THIS MORNING.**

MacArthur."

Back on Wolmi-do, progress again becomes rapid and by 0800, Radio Hill belongs to the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines; but more importantly, the 1st Marine Division now dominates the entire island, giving the Marines control of Inchon Harbor. Quickly, an elated Colonel Taplett contacts headquarters with the news: "...THIS GLOVE...WOLMI-DO SECURED AT 0800;" Taplett establishes his battalion observation post on the crest, giving him a panoramic view of the beach landing areas at Inchon and a bird's eye look toward enemy-held Observation Hill, which commandingly towers over Inchon. The positions are undoubtedly an artillery spotter's delight, and as the afternoon progresses, the navy guns will prove the point. The western base of Radio Hill near the west coast had been wrapped with barbed wire, intermingled with about 300 antipersonnel mines; however, the obvious amateurish dispersment proves to be no deterrent for Tech. Sergeant Edwin Knox's engineers (Company A, 1st Eng. Bn.), who dismantle them effortlessly.

So as not to overlook Washington, General MacArthur also pens a message which is forwarded to the States to be received by U. S. Army Generals Bradley, and Collins as well as U.S. Air Force General Vandenberg and Admiral Sherman. It reads: "FIRST PHASE LANDING SUCCESSFUL WITH LOSSES SLIGHT. ALL GOES WELL AND ON SCHEDULE."

Still, the Amphibious firemen of the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines must eliminate a Communist outpost on Sowolmi-do (Little Moontip Island), which contains a minute lighthouse and is linked to the southwestern end of Wolmi-do by a slim 750 yard causeway. In the meantime, Wolmi-do is being combed and transformed into a defensive mode by the bulk of the battalion. Up to now, the 3rd Battalion has sustained slight casualties, considering the weight of the mission; fourteen Marines have been wounded.

While the Marines are mopping up the smoldering terrain, the Marine casualties are expeditiously evacuated to the Fort Marion, but some of the more critically wounded are then shifted to the Mount McKinley. Contingents of the 1st Medical Battalion, which laid out the evacuation blueprint, handle the task admirably. The details have been meticulous, even to the point of committing ambulance boats capable of maneuvering through the low tide.

Several minutes prior to 1000, 2nd Lt. John Counselman, platoon leader (3rd), Company G receives orders to lead the attacking detachment to secure Sowolmi-do: one infantry squad, bolstered by machine guns and a section of tanks advances. The unit moves toward the puny causeway, a mere 12 yards wide, remaining confident but staying fully alert and prepared to react to potential enemy

fire. The suspicion proves right. About one enemy platoon holds the lighthouse; it begins blasting the Marine column as it approaches the entrance of the causeway, bringing the Yanks to a succinct halt and making it apparent that the Communists are bent on holding out. Colonel Taplett directs the infantry and supporting tanks to halt and await instructions.

Colonel Taplett then calls for some pinch-hitters to clear the causeway. Within several minutes, corsairs from VMF-214, led by Major Robert Floeck, appear overhead, driving some flaming line drives upon the defenders, besetting the opposite end of the causeway with bursting napalm and potent cannon fire, prompting some of the defenders to avoid the heat by diving into the water. The airstrike uncorks the bottleneck and the attack resumes.

Mine-clearing engineers lead the way, the towering tanks on their heels; the riflemen maintain a brisk pace just behind the clanging Armor.

Meanwhile, the mortars of the 3rd Battalion begin popping some oversize on-target 81-mm shells into the blockage, just ahead of the advancing assault squad, convincingly reducing the heavy fire down to a few flickering sparks. At 1048, Counselman's squad owns both ends of the causeway and the observers on Radio Hill are relieved. However, some remaining obstinate resistance, raised by enemy troops who refuse to surrender, must still be crushed.

The Leathernecks bolt from the confined passageway and spread out to overwhelm the remaining resistance. The enemy vigorously engages the Marines during a brief, but vicious heated exchange of rifle and machine gun fire; the Marines win the fight, then at 1100, initiate a swift mop up operation. After about one hour the Marines have the area secured, including the elimination of the precarious caves, which have been individually destroyed by grenades and a bully flame thrower. The defense of Sowolmi-do costs the North Koreans an additional seventeen dead, including some who succumb by drowning while attempting to swim to the mainland; nineteen others surrender. Eight additional North Koreans evade death and capture, concealing themselves until dark and then escaping to the mainland. General Edward Craig, who arrives on Wolmi-do during the evening, watches them escape to the mainland while he is observing the activity of the Marines.

By noon, the initial phase of the invasion is complete. Of the 400 defenders, the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines has captured 136 and killed 108; approximately 150 additional North Koreans have apparently lost their lives within the caves and other sealed positions. It is obvious that the North Korean Marines have been outclassed. But, most of the enemy defenders have been recently inducted into the service of the Communists and they are green. The prisoners are corralled and placed under guard in North Point at the swimming pool.

Next stop, Inchon!

The high tides completely vanish by 1300, and the 3rd Battalion is totally isolated on Wolmi-do, but the battalion, enthused by its track record, is quite prepared to remain self-sufficient until the tide rolls back into the seawall, carrying the remainder of the 1st Marine Division with what is expected to be a dynamic jackhammer knockout punch. The 3rd Battalion has sustained seventeen wounded and none killed during the operation to secure its objectives.

In the meantime, the fleet stands offshore shepherding Taplett's Marines, who maintain a cautious vigil while pondering the remarkable possibilities. Would the enemy attempt to dash from the mainland and attack across the mud? Would enemy armor bet its weight on a successful crossing of the causeway to attempt destruction of the battalion? The Marines wait stoically, their weapons

cocked. But the enemy at Inchon, estimated to be about 1,600 troops, prefers to remain inactive, exhibiting no outward signs of offense. With the exception of the disappearing armored car on the causeway and some sporadic mortar and machine gun fire, enemy activity is minimal.

While the 3rd Battalion prepares to support the main invasion force, naval and Marine aircraft continue striking the Inchon area, pounding the enemy terrain as far as twenty-five miles from the port, preventing ground reinforcements from easily arriving to bolster Inchon. On Wolmi-do, ordnance troops and other Marines (Ordnance Battalion, Combat Service Group and Service Battalion) focus on transforming the charred island into a support bastion for the 1st Marine Division. In the midst of the cramped beachhead area, Reconnaissance troops of the 11th Marines spread out and search for appropriate locations to deploy the howitzers, which are due to arrive on the rising tide to support the invasion by adding close range muscle. In addition, miles of crucial communication wire is being strung by signalmen, seemingly unperturbed by the arrival of a late afternoon rainstorm which is harassing them while they work.

Colonel Taplett, commanding officer, 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines is convinced by the inactivity of the enemy that his command is strong enough to daringly venture across the causeway and initiate a reconnaissance in force at the minimum, or an attack to seize a beachhead on RED Beach, which is scheduled to be secured by the 1st and 2nd Battalions, 5th Marines. Taplett's request to execute the mission is quickly scrapped by the brass on the *Mount McKinley*.

In the meantime, observers on Radio Hill scan the Inchon area, detecting some suspected enemy emplacements, and relay the intelligence to the warships; the positions are noted with special emphasis on the ships' maps, and the information is logged and scheduled for special handling during the upcoming preinvasion bombardment. In one instance, Lt. Joseph Wayerski (Shore Fire Control Party officer) calls in the long guns of the navy. However, soon after it is discovered that the people are civilians, ravaging a mound of rice in the tidal basin area; the guns are called off. In yet another instance, Lt. Wayerski, peering into Inchon through his binoculars, catches about twenty enemy troops moving on Observatory Hill; the mighty guns of the *Manchester* send them reeling when thirty 5-inch shells smother the trench area.

By 1400, the waters begin to churn as some particular landing craft begin forming near their assigned warships to participate in the landing as command boats. Almost simultaneously, the primary control ship, *Diachenko* (APD-123), is gliding into its position, about 3,000 yards southwest of the Line of Departure of the BLUE Beach Assault Force. In conjunction, the set and drift of the current is discovered to be three and one-half knots, stronger than originally anticipated. The information is immediately dispatched to the attack force commander, and after quick consideration, he sets H-Hour at 1730.

At 1430, each ship in the joint task force is informed that 1730 is the designated time for the invasion and fifteen minutes later (1445), the signal "LAND THE LANDING FORCE" is issued. Upon receiving the word, the lurking cruisers and destroyers create rainbows of fire as the zooming shells arc toward shore, to further cover the already scorched earth with more massive destruction. Inchon begins to resemble a colossal over-baked birthday cake, embellished with an abundance of murderous illuminated candles; the enemy terrain is thrashed and bashed for three enduring hours. At the onset of the naval surface bombardment, the free flying Marine corsairs of VMF-214 and VMF-323 join the celebration and light a few thousand more candles. The devastating preinvasion barrage is further supplemented by twelve additional naval planes, which Fast Carrier Task Force

77 has employed in the skies over Inchon to circle the area with another ring of fire and to conduct more search and destroy sorties; the air searches are thorough, but no enemy reinforcements are detected. All the while, the weather is becoming increasingly worse as the storm clouds mingle with the war clouds, a combination which places huge hovering patches of impenetrable smog and smoke over the objectives, obscuring much of the area and in particular, BLUE Beach, the target of Col. Puller's 1st Marines.

It is beginning to look a lot like the Fourth of July, and considering that the Americans in Korea had been too preoccupied with the enemy to celebrate the holiday properly, the spectacular fireworks display that is continuing to unfold is appropriate and serves a dual purpose: lifting the spirits of the invasion force and unequivocally proclaiming the arrival of the Yanks at Inchon.

Activity aboard the *Henrico* and *Cavalier* rises to a crescendo as the 1st and 2nd Battalions, 5th Marines, commanded by Lt. Col. Murray, scamper down the cargo nets and board the boats which will propel them to RED Beach; the LSTs begin to swell the seas with legions of additional landing craft for the 1st Marines. The LSTs, dubbed "slow moving targets," begin to resemble giant mechanical whales frolicking in the sea, especially when the wells open and Chesty Puller gives his impersonation of Jonah emerging from the mouth of the whale en route to Nineveh, but Puller is heading for Inchon with the 1st Marines.

Suddenly, the sea is consumed with aquatic steel chariots, each forming near the Lines of Departure, preparing to bolt for the beaches to descend upon and annihilate the enemy. The USS *Horace A. Reed*, designated control vessel for RED Beach, eases toward the departure line, trailed by waves of assault craft and crammed with the elements of the 5th Marines, while the USS *Wantuck* (Control vessel) scurries to the departure line off BLUE Beach. The PCEC 896, commanded by Lt. Reuben Berry, glides toward its assigned position off GREEN Beach (Wolmi-do) to oversee the numerous waves which are scheduled to execute an administrative landing there.

Meanwhile, the naval surface vessels and the planes maintain excruciating pressure on the enemy as their scorching shells continue to soar through the air, seemingly heating the raindrops, prior to their decimating impact on shore. The voluminous shelling actually increases as H-Hour nears, further obstructing vision, but the destructive raids instill even more confidence in the assaulting Marines whom are impatiently awaiting the signal to attack.

On Wolmi-do, the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines, holding indisputable control of the island, limbers up its support weapons while observing the ongoing pulverization of Inchon.

The BLUE Beach assault boats prepare to advance through the dismal smoke to reach the objective, but not without difficulty and confusion. At about 1640, the maneuver is momentarily interrupted when enemy mortar fire begins hitting the water in close proximity to the control vessel *Wantuck*. One of the lurking Destroyers swings into action and terminates the fire.

The first wave of the 1st Marines, aboard eighteen army LVTs, penetrates the starting line at 1645, igniting the invasion thought impossible, and giving the Marines the opportunity to overcome supposed insurmountable odds. As the slow moving armored LVTs close on BLUE Beach, about 5,500 yards distant, watchful eyes keep a stringent vigil to ensure that no remnants of the North Korean Air Force interfere with the operation or endanger the assault craft. The second wave follows close behind the first wave and receives some guidance from navy guide boats; however, the trailing waves lack this critical support. The compasses become useless while aboard the metal landing craft, and the fog is horrible, distorting vision badly. Major Edwin H. Simmons, while

passing the control vessel en route to the line of departure at 1630, requests instructions from the bridge and receives a response from a naval officer who speaks through a bull horn and directs the fifth wave toward BLUE Beach Two, while pointing to where the beach is supposed to be. Simmons notes: **"NOTHING COULD BE SEEN IN THAT DIRECTION EXCEPT MUSTARD COLORED HAZE AND BLACK SMOKE."** Major Simmons further states that as they press toward the supposed target area, they converge upon another attacking wave and quickly ask if it (the other group) is heading for BLUE Two. They receive this response from the wave Commander: **"HELL NO, WE'RE THE 2ND BATTALION, HEADED FOR BLUE ONE."** Simmons's wave then swivels to the right and he attempts to correct the blind course and strike the objective on time.

Despite MacArthur's unwavering confidence in the invasion, precautions have been taken to ensure transfer of command if necessary. In the event of an unexpected disaster, possible but not probable, the attack force, which takes its orders from TADC aboard the *Mount McKinley*, has a built-in safety net; the USS *George Clymer* is equipped with an emergency communications network and a control contingent (TAC X Corps), affording a smooth and quick transfer of command to General Cushman, in the event of catastrophe.

At 1705, the scenario becomes more intense as less than thirty minutes remain until H-Hour. The seafaring mighty midgets again are called to the forefront to electrify the skies with their blazing firestorm of rockets; Admiral Higgins signals the rocket ships to commence firing, and in conjunction, the pounding guns of the cruisers and destroyers come to a succinct halt, but still offering the enemy no quarter. More than six thousand rockets are flung against BLUE and RED Beaches, during a shocking twenty-minute barrage. All the while, the landing craft advance. The attacking Marines are besieged, not by the enemy, but rather by slapping winds and the pinging sting of the miserable penetrating rain.

Time passes slowly in the assault boats during the final minutes, but nonetheless, activity accelerates as the raging fury climbs to a frenzied pace. Much of the spectacle is unobservable, due to the overwhelming smoke and inclement weather. While the assault boats, heading for BLUE Beach, reach the halfway point about 2,200 yards from shore, the rocket ships cease firing, clearing the skies for a final strafing run for VMF-214 and VMF-233. Meanwhile, the first wave of the 5th Marines, dispersed in line to the left of Wolmi-do, crosses the departure line at 1722 to attack RED Beach. From left to right, the Boats, numbered one to four, transport two platoons of Company A, 1st Battalion toward their objective, Cemetery Hill. At the same time, boats five through eight, carrying elements of Company E, 2nd Battalion, speed toward their beach sector to debark the Marines who will secure the right flank of the beach and seize the hill of the British Consulate. Due to the lack of rehearsals and the poor visibility, several contingents of the waves become mixed, causing some units to wind up on the wrong beaches. This creates problems later.

In the meantime, on Wolmi-do the dormant 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines springs into action, blasting the mainland with incessant bursts of machine gun and mortar fire to insulate the landing areas and provide additional umbrella cover fire. Simultaneously, a contingent of engineers, led by Sergeant Edwin Knox, ventures upon the causeway to help spread the cheer and clear the way for the cantankerous tanks of Company A which are poised to dart to the aid of the Marines as soon as they hit the beach. The tanks proclaim their presence, stinging the beach areas with rapid bursts of machine gun shells and high explosives. Several of the Marine tankers draft a captured Russian gun to test its accuracy by turning it on the Gooks; the experiment works well as the Marines claim the

gun is accurate. At dusk, the tanks of Company A, 1st Tank Bn., which had come in at GREEN Beach with the 5th Marines, will stream across the causeway to join the main attack. In conjunction, a reconnaissance team lands on GREEN Beach at 1700, to make preparations for the arrival of the tanks from Company B, due to arrive on the following afternoon.

It is an exciting and dangerous few minutes, as the adrenaline flows full-force through the bodies of the Marines whose noses begin to pick up the scent of the prey, in cadence with the bellowing instructions to the riflemen: "LOCK AND LOAD."

BLUE Beach remains under the clutches of smoke, smog and fire, as the landing craft blindly, yet boldly, navigate through the hovering natural and man-made clouds which permeate the boat lanes. All the while, despite the hazards, the progress is observed by the circling aircraft, their pilots able to peek through the smoke and debris from their overhead positions. And more planes arrive on the scene; navy skyraiders, requested by Captain John R. Stevens, Company A, 5th Marines add their killing power to the attack, arriving overhead as the 1st wave of the 5th Marines reaches about thirty yards from the ominous seawall; Lt. James W. Smith (FAC) 1st Battalion, 5th Marines directs their strafing runs to ensure more accuracy to knock out the discovered obstacles.

In synchronization with the encroachment of the beaches by the assault boats, the tide continues to swell, but the sea wall remains a formidable obstacle, protruding about four feet above the landing crafts' ramps. Undaunted, the 5th Marines revert to their hastily constructed and obviously improvised ladders and position them for immediate use.

The shores of Inchon continue to undergo excruciating punishment, although the guns of the cruisers and destroyers remain tranquil as the support weapons on Wolmi-do pour relentless fire upon the beaches, in concert with the roving aircraft.

And now, the clenched steel fists of the first waves of the landing craft open widely, unleashing yet another and more devastating blow against the already stunned defenders of Inchon, which lay near-naked and charred.

Inchon braces for the imminent firestorm emerging from the sea.

Belligerently, the warriors of the 1st Marine Division crash into Inchon to reap vengeance from the Communists. The first crack of the unrelenting whip flashes against the seawall at 1731, sparking the initial lightning bolts of the raging storm, when boats five through eight (Company E) reach the objective with a bang. The ladders are thrust haphazardly against the wall, in synchronization with the deadly sting of an abundance of hurled grenades to clear any hostile troops which might be lingering on the opposing side. In single file, immediately following the detonation of the grenades, the Marines of the 1st Platoon, Company E, scurry up the makeshift scaling ladders, which are swinging and swaying dangerously, as the LCVPs plop back and forth along the wall. The gamble succeeds and the Hail Mary ladders sustain the ordeal, much to the delight of the platoon as the entire complement completes the trek. Some sporadic enemy fire clangs around the beach throughout the landing operation, but no casualties occur. The unit drives inland, advancing about 100 yards to the railroad tracks without encountering any opposition. Subsequently, the 1st Platoon follows the tracks to the British Consulate, capturing it by 1845, while another contingent seizes the built-up area on the opposite side of the tracks on the lower slopes of Observatory Hill. The lightning-quick gains provide some supplemental insurance for the additional twenty-two additional waves of landing craft and LSTs; however, the towering Observatory Hill must still be reduced.

Nearby, the four boats operating on the left (north) off RED Beach, which are transporting the main contingent of Company A, sustain some trouble; boat No. 1, containing half of the 1st Platoon and Tech. Sergeant Orval McMullen, incurs engine trouble, delaying it. However, boats 2, 3 and 4 hit shore on the heels of Company E at 1733, encountering stiff resistance beyond the wall. Company A is not easily deterred and remains hell bent on playing its part to decimate the foe. Sergeant Charles D. Allen, leading the remainder of the 1st Platoon, begins getting his troops off boat 2 and up the trembling ladders; enemy fire also rips into them. Several Marines are struck and killed immediately, and the remainder are halted at a point on the beach just several yards beyond the seawall. Close by, boat No. 3 debarks its contingent, a 2nd Platoon Squad, led by Lt. Francis Muetzel; the detachment advances and without the use of ladders it scurries through a hole in the seawall. Suddenly it discovers the ominous presence of an enemy machine gun which is silently standing in the path of advance. Unperturbed, the Marines daringly charge, and amazingly, the deadly gun remains mute, failing to protest the warriors from the sea. While the squad romps to positions on the beach, the Marines on boat No. 4, transporting a second squad of the 2nd Platoon, Company A and a 3.5-inch rocket section, merge with the troops of boat No. 3. Ironically, the pillbox containing the machine gun is occupied, but not for long. Two inquisitive Marines work their way toward the emplacement while the others take cover in an unoccupied protracted trench; the unnatural calm within the pillbox is shattered as grenades are popped into it. Following the reverberating explosions, six battered and bloodied Communist troops stagger through the smoke, exiting into the waiting arms of the Marines. Lt. Muetzel, 2nd Platoon, Company A then initiates an attack to secure Asahi Brewery, but some of his platoon is still offshore with the lagging second wave.

While Lt. Col. Murray's 5th Marines are securing RED Beach, the 1st Marines storm ashore at BLUE Beach One, surprisingly on schedule. At precisely 1730, elements of Lt. Col. Alan Sutter's 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines dart from their nine LVT(A)s, encountering no resistance. Grasping the unexpected advantage, the 2nd Battalion's spearhead drills inland, grinding northward toward the road which edges a knoll and leads inland. The advance comes to an abrupt halt; the untiring efforts of the navy's surface vessels had seared parts of the high ground to such an extent that landslides have virtually blocked the exit, immobilizing the amphibious vehicles.

The successive waves of the 1st Marines begin coming ashore at BLUE Beach One at 1830; the bulk of the remaining eleven LVTs, comprising the second wave, crash ashore with subtle swagger and brashness, springing elements of two assault companies into the midst of the enemy-held terrain. More men are en route, giving special meaning to the term Mud Marines. The trailing landing craft of the second wave get clipped by the mud about 300 yards from the beach, compelling the contingent of Fox Company to walk the distance; some crucial communications equipment is lost along the way. However, unlike many of the landings during WWII, the enemy raises no opposition. The high ground is quickly secured, and the contingents of Companies D and F eagerly await the arrival of the remainder of their unit, the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines.

In the meantime and slightly after H-Hour, BLUE Beach Two becomes the recipient of nine LVT(A)s which are homing in on the drainage ditch on the left, until some keen-eyed drivers take notice of imminent danger, due to a confined passageway and an abundance of muck. The landing craft begin reversing their engines to avoid possible calamity. During the precarious maneuver, some nearby enemy troops begin firing from positions close to the waterfront; the resistance is met by determined return fire. Soon after, the second wave of the 1st Battalion speeds past the army

amphibious vehicles, screeching to a stop at the seawall about ten minutes behind schedule; contingents of Companies G and I, on the left and right respectively, catapult ashore. At about the same time, some of the lead craft of the third wave arrive at the seawall and, in effect place Colonel Ridge's (Commanding Officer 3rd Battalion) tractor ashore prematurely.

BLUE Beach Two is buzzing with activity as the 1st Marines attempt to get a tight hold. The amphibians transporting Company G initiate a solid column and wedge into the drainage ditch, while the elements of Company I struggle with their improvised ladders to scale the seawall; some of the aluminum steps fail the test, crumbling under the pressure of the ascending Marines. More improvisation begins; engineers (Company C, 1st Eng. Bn.) rush to the seawall and fabricate new climbing devices by anchoring cargo nets to it. The venture by Company G into the drainage ditch proves faulty as the lead vehicle gets bogged down in the mud, paralyzing the five trailing LVTs. Without hesitation, Captain Westover, commanding officer Company G, directs his troops to dismount and prepare to drive inland on foot, to complete its primary mission which is to secure a lowland corridor and block a secondary highway originating in the east and leading to BLUE Beach.

Colonel Lewis B. "Chesty" Puller, commanding officer, 1st Marines has come ashore early (BLUE Beach TWO) with the third wave to lend his long experience to this unrehearsed operation, but in retrospect comments: "... I RECALL BEING EXTREMELY GRATIFIED THAT MY PRIOR CONCERN IN THIS CONNECTION WAS NOT WARRANTED."

Although there had been serious concerns about the operation, the obstacles, expected and unknown, have been conquered thus far. By 1800, the situation on BLUE Beach is excellent and Companies G and I have expeditiously cleared the beach, having sustained only light casualties; most of these have been inflicted by one obstinate machine gun. This has since been exterminated by fire from an LVT. Company G, 3rd Battalion 1st Marines drives on the left toward the lowland corridor, while Company I attacks toward the seaward peak of Hill 233, Objective Charlie.

Back on RED Beach, the 2nd Platoon, Company A, 5th Marines grinds forward toward its objective, hurrying over the skimpy beachhead, totally bypassing various locked buildings and disregarding the flaming debris. Nonetheless, the 2nd Platoon remains concerned that the enemy might be holding the high ground on Cemetery Hill, waiting to commence firing. To their immediate delight, the Marines advance without incident, diminishing fears that they might become stalled and trapped. The platoon moves post haste around the south side of the hill, from where it enters the city and proceeds unopposed along a street leading directly to the Asahi Brewery, taking it effortlessly. However, the contingents of the 1st Platoon, Company A, which have made it to the beach, remain stalled. They are held up by severe fire originating from a fortified emplacement to its immediate front and by extremely heavy flanking fire.

The 3rd Platoon, Company A lands and finally, the second wave also delivers the remainder of the 1st Platoon; the beach becomes extremely overcrowded. Lt. Baldomero Lopez (Company A) leads a detachment to destroy the bunker which is stalling the attack. Lopez gets to within grenade-throwing range and readies his tossing arm, but enemy fire rips into him, knocking him to the ground and causing the grenade to be dropped. Instinctively, Lopez, despite his critical wounds and anguishing pain, attempts to recover the projectile and toss it at the enemy. Unable to garnish the strength to hurl the grenade and unwilling to risk the lives of his fellow Marines, Lt. Lopez clasps the grenade with his wounded right arm and pulls it under his body to absorb the entire blast; he is

posthumously awarded the Medal of Honor for his extraordinary heroism. Two other Marines, carrying flamethrowers, attack the menacing bunker; both are felled by enemy shells. Time is beginning to run heavily against the success of the mission on RED Beach. The obstacle must be eliminated quickly or the expected waves of additional Marines might be jeopardized by fire from Cemetery Hill, the objective of the 1st Platoon, which remains under the control of the Communists.

Captain John R. Stevens, commanding officer Company A, comes ashore at H-plus 5, landing in Lt. Muetzel's 1st Platoon sector and he is immediately informed of the situation, including the death of Lt. Lopez. After unsuccessfully attempting to contact Sergeant Orval McMullen in boat 1, which had earlier stalled offshore, Stevens orders Lt. Fred Eubanks (Company A, Exec. Off.) to get the troops on the left organized and on the advance. In conjunction, Lt. Meutzel's contingent of the 2nd Platoon is recalled from the brewery with orders to rush back to the beach to lend some assistance. Along the return route, Meutzel absorbs some notes on Cemetery Hill, especially the tantalizing southern slope, which seems to him to be a magnificent path to the crest.

Recalling Capt. Steven's earlier feelings that the 2nd Platoon might be committed to seize the hill if the task would become too difficult for the 1st Platoon, he decides to take it. Muetzel's 2nd Platoon moves back, heading toward the waterfront, but upon reaching the enemy-held Cemetery Hill, the platoon pivots and sprints up the southern slope, quickly gaining the summit and capturing about twelve enemy troops along the climb. Soon after, the Marines are atop the summit and are confronted by rag-tag contingents of the N.K. 226th Regiment's mortar company. The defenders of the crest resemble zombies rather than tough enemy troops, seemingly brought about by the unending naval and air bombardments; the startled and bewildered Communists exhibit no desire to resist and defend the crest. Each of the exhausted defenders moves slowly from the trenches as if tranquilized and passively places down his weapons before filing down to the base of the hill; a small detachment guards them to ensure they remain docile. Cemetery Hill falls to the 2nd Platoon in less than ten minutes, and again, Muetzel's unit sustains no casualties. With the strategic hill under the belt of Muetzel's Platoon, he prepares to dispatch a strong contingent to bolster the 1st Platoon, which is still hung up on the beach.

That little corner of the world called RED Beach has been an inferno since the Marines landed thirty minutes ago. Lt. Eubanks, during his few minutes on the beach, gets the 1st Platoon, Company A back on track. While Lt. Meutzel is preparing to send help to the beachhead, the 1st and 3rd Platoons, having won the grenade duel, penetrate the fire wall and launch a successful attack against the bunker, destroying it with a flamethrower. With the breathing room, the two platoons break out of the pocket and drive to the fringes of the inland sector of Inchon, establishing contact with the 2nd Platoon there.

Company A sustains eight killed and twenty-eight men wounded before culminating the battle in the northern sector of RED Beach. At 1755, Captain Stevens fires an eagerly-awaited signal; the amber star cluster flare soon explodes, proclaiming the capture of Cemetery Hill for the 5th Marines. Nonetheless, Observatory Hill must still be secured; Company C, 1st Battalion 5th Marines, arrives at the beachhead at 1800 and is delegated to seize Objective A, the northern sector of the hill. Company D, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines is designated the unit to secure the southern portion: Objective B. Both of these units have experienced some trouble during the landings, including troops debarking on the wrong beaches. The snafu causes delays in the attacks and also provides the enemy with some time to snap back from their state of shock and reestablish some fierce pockets of resistance on the hill.

While the day wears on, the beaches become more clogged as additional cargo and troops still flow into the areas. At 1830, the LST 859, first of the eight LSTs, crosses the line of departure and closes toward the beach. By 1835, the enemy brings it under fire and the vessel returns the greeting by activating its guns. The ships' commanding officers see the crowded beachhead and conclude that the Marines have been unable to advance. Observatory Hill is struck by the return fire, but so is Cemetery Hill, the latter controlled by the 2nd Platoon, Company A, 5th Marines. The erroneous friendly shelling is not received kindly by the ground Marines. The trailing LSTs also come under enemy fire; their crews commence firing against suspected enemy positions, still unaware of Marines holding forward positions. The LSTs 975 and 857, second and third in the column, fire against suspected enemy positions causing more friendly fire to strike Lt. Muetzel's Platoon, driving it from the crest of Cemetery Hill. The platoon moves to the slope overlooking Inchon, where it then comes under enemy fire originating on Observatory Hill. Then suddenly, one of the shells from an LST scores a direct hit on the building housing the enemy gun, eliminating the trouble. Again, Lt. Muetzel's 2nd Platoon remains unscathed, sustaining no casualties.

In the meantime, an enemy shell ignites a fire on LST 914, endangering fully loaded ammunition trucks and obviously the Vessel; brave actions by firefighting Marines and Sailors extinguish the flames without major harm, preventing a calamity.

The 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, commanded by Col. Roise, is not as lucky as the 1st Battalion; H&S and Weapons Company (1st Shore Party Bn.) lands about 1830, traveling aboard the lead LSTs, and begins driving inland. The friendly fire of the trailing LSTs strikes its ranks hard, inflicting one death and wounding twenty-three other Marines, prompting Col. Roise to remark: "IF IT HADN'T BEEN FOR THE THICK WALLS OF THE NIPPON FLOUR COMPANY, THE CASUALTIES MIGHT HAVE BEEN WORSE."

Meanwhile, the 2nd Platoon, Company C, reorganized by Lt. Byron Magness, executes an attack to seize Observatory Hill, despite the fact that the balance of the company is still regrouping on the beach. Supported by Lt. Max Merritt's 60-mm Mortar section, Magness' platoon drives up the slopes. One Marine, Sergeant Max Stein, becomes wounded while taking on a machine gun nest, but his actions spur more determination by the charging Leathernecks. By 1845 the saddle lying between Objective A (northern part of Observatory Hill) and Objective B (southern part of Observatory Hill) is controlled by Lts. Magness and Merritt; their sole flare is fired to signal the seizure. But it misfires, preventing the beachhead and Col. Newton from becoming aware of the victory. Subsequent efforts to raise Lt. Pedersen (CO, Co. C) by radio also fail. During the contest to seize the saddle, Company B, 1st Battalion, 5th Marines (reserve) hits the beach in the 2nd Battalion's sector, subsequent to evading enemy shore fire at the assigned landing site.

Soon after Company B's arrival, Captain Francis Fenton confers with the battalion commander, Col. Newton; Newton orders Fenton's battle-tested troops to assume responsibility for Company C's mission to seize Objective A, the northern part of Observatory Hill.

Finally, by 1900, amidst choking smoke and driving rain showers, the eight LSTs and their loose-fingered Gun Crews reach the dock, to the relief of the Marines. Contact is immediately established between the ground troops and the ships' guns become quiet. However, there is no tranquility on RED Beach; the attack against Objective A is initiated.

Company B, led by Capt. Fenton, charges up the slopes under blackened skies, approaching the crest in a two-pronged assault, with one unit pressing directly forward while the other swings

around to the left to attack. The latter squirms around the rear of the hill where it encounters C Company's 2nd Platoon, which has secured the straddling saddle to the right of Objective A. The enemy raises resistance as the Marines climb the slope, but it is eliminated. The crest, containing an enemy battalion command post, is overrun and secured by the Marines at 2000; six Marines are wounded in the process. Quickly, three platoons are deployed on line, and linkage is established between Company B and the Marines of Company C's 2nd Platoon, which is holding the saddle to the right of Objective A. At 2240, Col. Newton contacts the 5th Marines Headquarters by radio, informing Col. Murray that the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines' portion of the O-A line is secure.

Meanwhile, the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, having incurred several snafus, including the earlier confusion of the boat waves at RED Beach, and the poor visibility, pushes out. Company D, subsequent to reorganizing after reclaiming its troops which strayed to the wrong beaches, moves out to capture Objective B, the southern part of Observatory Hill. Inadvertently, Company D assumes that Company E is holding the summit and it advances without normal precautions. The 1st Platoon, acting as spearhead, openly advances along a street, reaching the top of a hill without incident. The platoon continues its advance, maintaining its march on the road, heading toward the second peak where it expects to establish contact with Company E. Instead, the forward troops are engaged by waiting North Koreans. Machine gun fire suddenly erupts from entrenched positions along the route, prompting the Marines to bolt to the left side of the road for cover, from where they can return fire and destroy the ambushers. The exchange continues as the two forces, holding opposite sides of the road, begin trading grenades during a ferocious fifteen minute contest, culminating with Lt. Heck's 1st Platoon having the better aim. During the tenacious battle, one of Heck's Marines is killed and three others are wounded. The corpsman, himself wounded, disregards his own safety, refusing to be evacuated to ensure that he can aid the other wounded. Also, Lt. Col. Roise and his executive officer, Lt. Michael Dunbar, rush forward to the scene of the fighting; Dunbar becomes wounded by a ricochet shell. By the time darkness overtakes the area, the Communists are convincingly driven off the hill and Company D establishes a night perimeter. Three rifle platoons are deployed on the forward slopes of Objective B, and a platoon from Company F (Battalion reserve), commanded by Lt. Harry Nolan, moves up to hold the ground between Company D and the 2nd Platoon, Company C, 1st Battalion, which is holding the saddle with Lt. Merritt's Mortar contingent. Activity ceases for the night.

Colonel Roise is reluctant to penetrate deeper into the city, since he is unfamiliar with the terrain and because of the total darkness of the night. He concludes that there could be unnecessary casualties, but at regimental headquarters, established earlier on Wolmi-do (1830), there is some concern over his decision. New orders soon arrive from Colonel Murray.

During a conversation with Lt. Col. Murray, Commanding Officer 5th Marines, Roise is instructed to ensure that the areas considered to be undefendable from a tactical standpoint should at the minimum, have a forward guard. Outposts are ordered established. With the successful vanquishing of the enemy on Cemetery and Observatory Hills, the O-A line is secure, with the exception of the furthest point on the right, the inner tidal basin. Roise dispatches two Squads from Company F and a contingent of S.K. Marines to the tidal basin area. This small force undertakes a reconnaissance mission into Inchon, and it return at 2300 to inform Col. Roise that no enemy troops had been detected. Following the briefing by the reconnaissance squads, Col Roise orders Company F, less the platoon on Observatory Hill, to spread out on the right flank. Subsequently, just after midnight, Captain Uel Peters deploys his Company (F) adjacent to the tidal basin for the night. Also, at 2000,

the 3rd Battalion moves across the causeway from Wolmi-do and rejoins the Regiment.

Back on BLUE Beach, the Marine Infantry (1st Marines) continues its inland drive, Company I focuses its attention on Hill 233, and Company G drills toward the lowland corridor. The final waves of the attack force are greatly affected by the approaching darkness. During the initial landings, a serious miscalculation occurs when Colonel Puller orders Lt. Jack Hawkins to cross the line of departure with LCVP waves twenty-one through twenty-five, comprising the 1st Battalion, 1st Marines; the waves are expected at 1815, but a guiding searchlight aboard the control vessel, due to the poor visibility, inadvertently points toward the tidal basin, placing the waves 45 degrees off course (northeast). The first two waves debark, presumably at BLUE Beach Two; Lt. Hawkins, aboard the third wave (23rd), discovers the error and at about the identical time, the executive officer, Lt. Col. Robert Rickert, of the 1st Battalion, maneuvering about in his free boat, notices the erroneous landings and begins to intercept the waves and reroute them to the proper landing sites. In conjunction, Lt. Hawkins runs along the basin wall, yelling corrective instructions to the first two waves. Most of the Marines get back on track, but one contingent is forced to remain overnight on the wrong landing area, due to the lack of boats; this platoon, attached to Company B, walks to the mainland on the following day, netting a good many enemy troops along the way.

Finally, Hawkins reaches BLUE Beach Two, but darkness has beaten him there. Upon his arrival, Hawkins discovers Company C, which has arrived without incident, thanks to a savvy boat coxswain whose intuition brought them to the proper area. The 1st Battalion moves inland to establish a night perimeter; Major David Bridges (Bn. S-3) remains at the beach to direct the late arrivals. Later, Bridges leads about 100 miscellaneous troops from BLUE Three, toward the 1st Battalion bivouac area, but the contingent overshoots its objective and eventually halts in the heights to the left of Company G, 3rd Battalion.

Meanwhile, the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines has picked up the slack. Company D occupies the strategic road intersection at 2000 (Objective A), and within two additional hours, Company F secures a portion of Objective D, Hill 117, giving it positions from which it can dominate the Inchon-Seoul highway. Meanwhile, a group under Lt. Bruce Cunliffe, composed of the 60-mm section, Company F, 2nd Battalion, inadvertently misses its rendezvous point due to the darkness; it moves through the 3rd Battalion lines, finally halting near Hill 117, well beyond U.S. positions. Soon after, these Marines encounter some North Koreans and a terse firefight develops. The skirmish is brief as the Communists take off, leaving several dead behind. The Marines sustain no casualties; they await dawn to rejoin their unit. However, the 2nd Battalion does sustain one Marine killed and nineteen wounded during its inland drive. The enemy sustains about fifty dead, and fifteen Communists are captured.

In the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines sector, on the right side of the regimental zone, the enemy has been unable to raise any heavy resistance. Company I informs Headquarters at 1900 that the western nose of Hill 123 (Objective C) is secure. Within about one-half hour, Company G, which has been driving toward the lowland corridor, reports that it is establishing blocking positions across the corridor and along the road at the center of the O-1 Line; the task is concluded by about 2030. At about the same time, Company H's 1st Platoon launches a surprise attack against the enemy on Objective B, the small cape under Hill 94; it is a brief exchange, as the North Koreans, about company strong, abandon their fortified positions, leaving thirty enemy dead and wounded behind. The fall of Hill 94 ensures the O-1 Line, but more combat persists in the area for a few hours. Company H, less the 1st and 2nd Platoons, deploys between Companies G and I, securing a solid

blocking position about 400 yards to the rear of the O-1 Line.

While the ground troops are winding down for the night, the LSTs are rapidly being gutted by the tireless efforts of the Marine 1st Combat Service Group, 7th Motor Transport Battalion and the army's 2nd Engineer Special Brigade, the latter being in charge of the operation. By dusk, 450 vehicles are ashore. Floodlights are then swung into the port operation, to permit the additional equipment and supplies to be unloaded without delay. More supplies and equipment will arrive in the morning, aboard LSTs and LVTs to sustain the attack.

The night of September 15th-16th remains tranquil for both the 1st and 5th Marines as the vanquished enemy mounts no night counterattack. Nonetheless, there is one startling development. At Cemetery Hill (5th Marines), two Marines inadvertently digress from their positions emerging in front of the high ground and within sight of enemy guns concealed in a cave at the base of the hill. The enemy strikes both Marines, and attempts to rescue them are thwarted by the ring of submachinegun fire. The Marines, using an interpreter, demand surrender under the threat of sending tanks into the cave. The threat is sufficient; the enemy contingent capitulates. However, the one straying Marine had been killed instantly and the rescued Marine has sustained a mortal blow.

During the night of the 15th-16th, General Smith's order (OpnO 3-50) to attack is issued to the 1st and 5th Marines; it directs that the assault commence after dawn. In conjunction, the 5th Marines will advance through the southern sector of Inchon, reaching the O-2 Line and coming to positions abreast of the 1st Marines at its positions of the previous night, about three miles inland at Hill 117. From that point, along the Inchon-Seoul Road, which is virtually the O-1 and O-2 Line for the 1st Marines, the two Regiments will simultaneously attack toward the O-3 Line. In the meantime, most of the personnel who became separated from their units during the night become reunited with their parent units.

At dawn, as ordered, the 5th Marines' attack units move from their positions to converge and begin the assault. The 2nd Battalion will spearhead, trailed by the 1st and 3rd Battalions, respectively. Murray's regiment is to seize two hills (Objective D and E) located on the fringes of the city, north of the Inchon-Seoul highway, to eliminate threats against the imminent ship-to-shore operations at Inchon and to sling a safety net over their sector of the O-2 Line, in coordination with the 1st Marines; this will afford the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines domination of the heights overlooking Inchon. Company D departs its positions on Observatory Hill to bring up the rear of the advancing column, behind Company F. Company E, led by Captain Jaskilka, pushes out from the British Consulate and takes the point.

There is a puzzling aura forming, as the three battalions merge and begin passing the inner tidal basin heading through the city. The lack of resistance and the deadening silence are welcome, but mysteriously perplexing. The Marines advance through the hushed streets of Inchon, expecting at least some sniper fire, but so far, none develops. Their movement is observed, but only by some over-tense and bleary-eyed civilians, seemingly bewildered by the maze of destruction surrounding them. It becomes evident that the enemy troops have abandoned the city to seek refuge and to evade the attacking Marines. The Communists had not anticipated the tumultuous thrust of the invasion, and now, there is little they can do to rectify the futile situation.

Meanwhile, the 1st Marines are engaging the enemy; Company F, 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines begins clearing the eastern ridge of Hill 117 at 0615. Company F, 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines attacks to

secure a village on its right flank and the high ground above it, meeting stiff resistance; the fire fights continue throughout the afternoon.

While the 5th Marines are emerging from Inchon to hook up with the 1st Marines at the O-2 Line, the enemy does mount some opposition. At 0700 a mosquito sized armor column, composed of six tanks, is spotted by corsairs at Kansong-ni, about five miles outside of town. The tanks are clanking down the road toward Inchon, unescorted by infantry. In the meantime, the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines takes positions outside the city and makes visual contact with the 1st Marines on Hill 117 at 0730, setting the stage for the attacks to seize the 2nd Battalion's objectives (two hills north of the city). Company D, 2nd Battalion, with an escort of tanks, moves eastward, establishing contact with the 1st Marines on Hill 117 at 0900, having encountered little more than a few sniper shots. And while Company D is linking with the 1st Marines, Companies E and F are sprinting to their respective objectives, each being secured without opposition.

With the objectives taken, the main attack by the 1st and 5th Marines is reinitiated slightly after 0900. As mentioned previously, elements of the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines are engaged on Hill 117. The 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, moving from its positions on Hill 233, initiates its drive to clear the Munhang Peninsula; Companies G and I drive southward, encountering no organized resistance. In conjunction, the 1st Battalion, 1st Marines regroups in the middle of Col. Puller's sector (south of the road) and advances as the regimental reserve. Other contingents of the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines attack in synchronization with the 5th Marines.

A Platoon of Tanks (Company A) and Company D, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines spearheads the drive, followed by Companies D and F, 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines. The juggernaut propels down the highway, unaffected by the resistance which is confined to some minor sniper fire. The tanks and the elements of both Battalions reach Sogam-ni, situated on the O-3 Line by 1100 and halt in place to await orders; rising smoke is easily spotted in Kansong-ni, where enemy Armor had been detected earlier. In conjunction, at 1045, General Smith issues OpnO 4-50, ordering Cols. Puller (1st Marines) and Murray (5th Marines) to drive from the O-3 Line and secure the Force Beachhead Line, which will terminate the Assault phase of the Amphibious Operation. Smith's directive also stipulates the immediate establishment of a new Tactical Bomb Line, which restricts the Aviators from attacking within the boundary unless the attacks are coordinated with the ground observers.

Back at Kansong-ni, several hundred yards in front of Sogam-ni, the Spartan force of enemy Armor had not fared well, subsequent to being detected by the Corsairs at 0700. From atop their positions on Hill 117, the men of the 1st Marines observe a transformation. The T-34 Tanks are caught on the road like sitting ducks by the swooping Corsairs; eight Planes (VMF-214) dive low and splinter the column. The Planes snatch one Tank, consuming it with napalm fire and seemingly discover oil when another Tank is spotted dead in its tracks, oil gushing forth as if from a geyser. And yet another T-34 sustains a brutal blow as its tracks are blown off. Nonetheless, the lopsided victory becomes pyrrhic, as Captain William F. Simpson, during the dangerously low level attack, is unable to recover from the deepness of the dive; he is killed when his aircraft plunges into the earth, adjacent to the highway.

The men of the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines are jolted heavily as they watch their fellow Marine crash, extracting much of their jubilation. However, another group of Marines is equally upset: the second wave of VMF-214. Picking up the slack, the second wave dives tenaciously, pouring more fire into the enemy armor, destroying two tanks. It appears though, that these two are the identical

tanks which had been struck by the first wave. The enemy, attempting to escape the wrath of the Marine pilots, scamper to seek refuge in some nearby huts. But the Marines heat the stew, spewing napalm into the huts, which then vanish into ascending spirals of smoke. Relentlessly, VMF-214 Pilots continue the attack; erroneously assuming all the tanks have been annihilated, two other vehicles, a weapons carrier and a jeep, are quickly incinerated. Following this process of elimination, the planes make a deadly pass against some camouflaged vehicles, ripping into both of them. However, some of the tanks survive the attack and they recoil within the village, which is the next victim of the 1st and 5th Marines.

The expected tenacious enemy resistance has not materialized and before morning ends, it is obvious to the Marines that attaining the O-3 Line, composed of a three mile front extended across two connected peninsulas and protected on both flanks by the sea, will not be an arduous task. The theory is further bolstered by the great quantities of abandoned enemy arms and equipment being vacuumed up by the sweeping Marines. The Inchon and Munhang peninsulas, seemingly sewn together along their inland seams, place the Marines in an expensive bottle of champagne. When the cork is popped by General O.P. Smith, the Marines will be propelled toward Kimpo Airfield.

By about noon, the 1st and 5th Marines, commanded by Cols. Puller and Murray respectively, operating with the Inchon-Seoul Road as their boundary line, prepare to initiate the advance from the O-3 Line to secure the Force Beachhead Line. Similarly to the O-3 line, the FBHL, forming the configuration of a right angle, is insulated by the sea at both ends; its east-west arm lies above and near parallel to the Inchon-Seoul highway, stretching for five miles, and the north-south arm of the arc, lying about seven miles inland. The north-south arm contains an additional peninsula, Namdong, which will be consumed by the beachhead. Puller's 1st Marines, operating on the right of the highway, receives the largest mass of terrain (much of it rough) to secure; the regiment's expeditious advance has caused the 1st Marines to have its components spread over fifteen square miles of ground. The 1st Marines will commence its main attack at 1600.

The 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines (Col. Taplett) commences its attack at 1330, driving northwest toward the hills dominating that portion of the FBHL. Company G, advancing on the left, seizes its objective by 1440, while Company I attacks Hill 137, reducing it by about 1440. The swift gains are secured without sustaining any Marine casualties, and twelve enemy prisoners are scooped up in the process. Subsequent to the capture of its objectives, the 3rd Battalion dispatches reconnaissance patrols; probes are made westward to the sea and east to the outskirts of Ascom City, the latter discovering a bonanza. Elements of Company I, 3rd Battalion stumble upon an unguarded enemy ammunition depot and a vehicle storage area.

The 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines (Col. Roise) jumps off at 1335, encountering nominal resistance which emerges from enemy positions north of the highway. Nonetheless, the spearhead drives forward, entering Kansong-ni and encroaching a dangerous curve in the road that leads northward and bypasses two lanky hills. Unbeknownst to the advancing column, three lurking T-34 tanks, which evaded destruction earlier in the day, hold positions on the blind side of the curve. The enemy tanks are silently poised, waiting to bludgeon the unsuspecting advance force as it comes into view. But, a contingent of the escorting Marine tanks rushes to higher ground to shepherd the ground troops while they take the curve. To their apparent delight, the two tanks glance down from their positions on the mound and spot the three cunning T-34s in a neatly formed column. The hatches are drawn tightly and their sinister guns are unelevated, pointed directly at the curve, waiting to spring the ambush. Meanwhile, the undetected M-26s, anxious to announce their

dominant presence, forego any premature warnings; the tankers commence unrelenting fire, pumping twenty armor-piercing shells into the enemy armor, and terminate the battle before the T-34s can get off a shot. The menacing trio of tanks and their crews are eliminated with blazing speed, as each tank sustains a decimating explosion and becomes consumed with flames. Soon after, the Marines burst around the curve, awed by the combined destruction of the earlier air attacks and the most recent surgery on the tanks. Subsequent to the amputation of the enemy armor, the 5th Marines gallop along the road, heading toward Ascom City.

Company D, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines sprints to the crest of a large hill, sitting on the west side of the highway, about one thousand yards beyond the curve, while Company F surges forward on the left; it speeds over some railroad tracks, which run astride the road, and then it darts to the high ground nearby the terrain secured by Company D. Following the capture of this ground, both hills and the adjoining low lands are methodically combed; the operation culminates during the early evening. Although the 2nd Battalion is positioned about 3,000 yards from the FBHL, they own the dominant ground, prompting Col. Roise to direct his battalion to establish night positions. Company E (reserve) covers the rear, while Companies D and F deploy to guard the approaches to Ascom City, which is to their immediate front.

Meanwhile, in the 1st Marines sector south of the highway, the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines (Lt. Col. Allan Sutter), operating on the right, attacks at 1600; it drives toward Hill 186. Company D spearheads the assault, trailed by Company F. The swift advance passes below Kansong-ni. It gains an additional 1,000 yards without encountering the enemy and it reaches the base of the objective. Company D then tackles the jagged slopes of Hill 186. It conquers the slope and overruns the opposition, seizing the crest. Subsequent to the capture of the crest, Company D begins to fortify its perimeter. Company F arrives in short order, following the arduous climb and it deploys to the left where there is a commanding view of the road. In conjunction, Company E, which has been engaged throughout the day on the right flank, rejoins the battalion and establishes reserve positions near the base of Hill 186 close to the battalion command post. The battle for Hill 186, ignited some resistance. The bulk of the enemy troops would fire several rounds and high-tail it, but the hasty fire still inflicts casualties; four Marines are killed and ten are wounded. In contrast, the enemy loses about 120 killed or wounded and more than thirty prisoners are captured.

In the meantime, the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines (Col. Ridge), whizzes through the Munhang peninsula, culminating the vigorous sweep by 1600; the battalion regroups at the southern tip of the O-3 Line, where it will be relieved by the reconnaissance company, commanded by Capt. Kenneth Houghton at 1700.

The terrain separating the 2nd and 3rd Battalions, 1st Marines is being secured by the 1st Battalion, commanded by Lt. Col. Jack Hawkins. The battalion advances speedily, right on the heels of the retreating enemy, virtually shooting about two miles beyond the O-3 Line, when it halts progress in the heights about 2,500 yards south of Hill 186, the positions of the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines. There are some inconsistencies in the line as the day's fighting winds down; however, the gaps are soon filled. The 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, subsequent to relief by the reconnaissance company, shifts to the north and establishes rear positions there. Meanwhile, the reconnaissance troops deploy at the base of the Namdong peninsula to shore-up the southern flank, of the night perimeter and to ensure contact with the 1st Battalion, 1st Marines to its left.

Darkness takes over the area as the Marines prepare to get some rest. There is little more that can

be accomplished this night. The tanks of Company A, are relieved at dusk, when Company B, 1st tank battalion comes ashore. Today's action has cost the 1st Marine Division four dead and twenty-one wounded, the bulk of the casualties being sustained by the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines at Hill 186. And Inchon belongs to the Marines.

General O.P. Smith, having bid his goodbyes to General MacArthur on the previous day, departed the *Mount McKinley* and arrived on YELLOW Beach at 1730 on the 15th. Upon his arrival at the division's command post, he informed Admiral Doyle that he would assume responsibility for the ground operations at 1800 on September 16th.

The amphibious assault phase of the invasion is thereby terminated successfully, within nearly twenty-four hours of when the first wave of Marines hit the beach.

General MacArthur's parting words are preeminent in General O.P. Smith's thoughts as he prepares to launch the next phase of the operation: "TAKE KIMPO AIRFIELD AT THE FIRST OPPORTUNITY."

**September 16 1950 -(Pacific-Korea)** Enemy reinforcements attached to the N.K. 9th Division attempt to augment the defenders near Inchon. The N.K. 87th Regiment departs Kumch'on aboard trains; it travels by night and remains concealed in tunnels during the day to avoid detection by U.S. Aircraft. **(Inchon-Seoul) See Also, Sept. 15th Invasion of Inchon. Eighth Army:** Army sets the date and hour for its breakout from the Pusan Perimeter, in accordance with its revised attack plan of September 11th. At 0900 today, U.N. and ROK troops attack from their present positions to effect a linkage with the X Corps which landed at Inchon on the previous day. The primary attack force is to advance along the Taegu-Kumch'on-Taejon-Suwon axis. The main thrust is to be by the recently established I Corps; it holds the center of the line. Because of the contour of the terrain, the force has access to the best roads and it is closest to the X Corps. **X Corps: In the 1st Marine Division sector:** General O.P. Smith issues OpnO 5-50, directing the 1st and 5th Marines to launch an attack toward Corps Phase Line CC to extend the FBHL; the assault is scheduled to commence on the morning of the 17th. In other activity, the ships transporting the 7th Infantry Division arrive at Inchon Harbor; it will begin to debark on the 18th. General Almond has requested Admiral Doyle's assistance in hurrying the debarkation in order that Almond can speed the 7th Division to positions where it can cut off enemy movement south of Seoul. Also, Lt. Max Nebergall, a helicopter pilot (VMO-6), rescues a downed navy pilot offshore, executing the first such rescue of the Inchon-Seoul operation. The unit, VMO-6, executes other missions as well, including several reconnaissance flights and two missions which spot for artillery. **(Pusan Perimeter) In the Eighth Army area:** The attack intended to break Eighth Army out of the perimeter and propel the troops toward a linkage with X Corps to crush the North Koreans is scheduled for 0900, but neither the weather nor the enemy cooperates. Dawn arrives in cadence with another lousy day, not entirely unexpected in this peculiar part of the world. Dark clouds, fog and torrential rains compel the air force to abort a planned carpet bombardment by B-29s of the enemy positions at Waegwan. At 0900, many units are unable to commence their portion of the assault on a timely basis as the North Koreans have begun counterattacks, which keep the various units preoccupied with defending the terrain they hold. In essence, the ongoing battles for control of the hills merely continue with savage attacks and counterattacks being launched by both sides.

**September 17 1950 -(Pacific-Japan)** Marine Night Fighter Squadron VMF(N)-513, based at Itazuke, initiates the first of fifteen daylight support missions (17th-19th) to bolster Eighth Army

during its breakout from the Pusan Perimeter; the squadron, commanded by Major Joseph Reinburg, pounds the entire perimeter, hammering enemy armor, artillery and infantry contingents. **(Pacific-Korea)** Enemy troops begin mining the approaches to the Han River to impede the advance of the Marines. Also, at about this time, the N.K. 70th Regiment moves from Suwon to support the battle for Seoul. **(Inchon-Seoul)** The landing force commander, General O.P. Smith, USMC, is directed to reinstate a civilian government in Inchon. Although it is only two days since the invasion, the population is returning to the city in large numbers, and Korean Marines are assigned the task of filtering out the Communist sympathizers. Frequently, the S.K. Marines revert to harsh measures when suspecting disloyal civilians. General Smith, after consultation with S.K. Admiral Sohn Won Yil (S.K. chief of naval operations), selects a political prisoner named Pyo Yang Moon as the mayor of Inchon. Moon, the loser in the previous mayoral contest, will be installed on the following day. In other activity, the North Koreans test their brashness; two YAK aircraft fly over Inchon's harbor and bomb the USS *Rochester*; two passes are made, the first missing with three of the four dropped bombs, while the fourth one hits the ship's crane and bounces off without detonating. All the bombs miss on the second pass, but the near misses inflict some minor damage to the ship's electrical system. One of the two attacking planes passes over the HMS *Jamaica*, executing a strafing run; three casualties are sustained. The YAK is blown from the sky. Also, VMO-6, previously domiciled aboard an LST, debarks and establishes headquarters near the 1st Marine Division command post at an improvised airstrip; Reconnaissance and rescue missions will begin from dawn to dusk on a continual basis. Also, control of tactical air support is transferred from TADC (aboard the Mt. McKinley) to the air support section of MTACS-2 on shore. **In the 1st Marine Division zone**, the attack against Kimpo Airfield is delayed for about one hour due to some unexpected complications. But the preparations are complete. Company D, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines maintains positions on a hill which lies west of the Inchon-Seoul highway; it contains a knob situated about 200 yards to the front of the perimeter which slides into the center of Ascom City. Wary of the terrain, Lt. H.J. Smith had dispatched the 2nd Platoon at dusk (16th) to establish a forward outpost on the knob where the road swerves to the east and moves through a slash in the foundation of the knob. The platoon, led by Lt. Howard, is reinforced by machine gun and rocket launcher teams to bolster its strength. To the immediate rear of Company D, a platoon of Company A Tanks is anchored defensively to intercept any N.K. armor which might be advancing along the road from the east. The hefty rocket launchers of the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines and the 75-mm recoilless rifles of the 5th Marines are also slightly to the rear of Company D, poised for instant support if required. The opposite side of the highway is held by Company F, 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines and its perimeter has the added muscle of the 1st Marines' 75-mm recoilless rifles and 3.5 rockets. The entire Marine front had been extremely quiet during the night of the 16th and the mood within the perimeter was tranquil. At about midnight (16th-17th) there is a slight stir, but it is just a truck moving down the highway, hardly even noticed by the 2nd Battalion. The vehicle continues rolling down the highway, but the tankmen of Company A are more inquisitive. When the vehicle approaches the tanks which are spread out on the highway, the unexpected truck is halted. Everyone is taken by surprise. The Marines are startled to discover that a North Korean officer and four enlisted men had stumbled into the perimeter and penetrated several hundred yards without challenge. And the enemy is simply overwhelmed to find themselves captured. The incident turns out well as the Marines deduce that the enemy headquarters is totally uninformed about the location of the Marines; it is treated as an unusual isolated incident and things go back to normalcy, except for the embarrassed captives. At about 0545, the forward outpost (2nd Bn., 5th Marines) detects

an enemy column at a position several miles east of Ascom City. Lt. Howard, at the outpost, notifies Lt. H.J. Smith (CO. D, commander) that the contingent is composed of six T-34s and about 200 infantrymen, many of whom are aboard the tanks. Smith dispatches the information to Col. Roise at battalion headquarters, but Roise initially believes the information might be more wishful thinking than fact. The young officer's information proves true shortly after the report is forwarded. Similarly to the straggler truck, it seems obvious that the column is not anticipating any opposition. The tanks rumble closer toward Ascom City. Some North Koreans aboard the tanks are leisurely devouring their chow and those walking are consumed with laughter and babbling conversations; it seems as if they think they are heading for a midway at an amusement park for a laugh in the dark. However, it is daytime and the column is advancing along the road to intercept the Marines. Nonetheless, Lt. Howard is preparing to give the intruders a warm welcome. The column advances closer, with the trailing infantry maintaining a casual march. The highway is not taking the column into the "tunnel of love." Unbeknownst to the Communists, they are entering a midway which is about to become an awesome funnel of blazing flame. The 2nd Platoon takes aim, awaiting the suspended order to fire. Lt. Howard, unruffled in manner, focuses on the spearhead of the column, permitting it access to the curve. The tanks rumble forward toward Company D's positions and as they take the curve, Howard bellows the order to fire. Corporal Okey Douglas, who has moved in position on the lower part of the hill, swings a mighty blow with his sledgehammer; he unleashes his bazooka from a distance of 75 yards and his 2.36-inch rocket shells ring the bell, killing the tank. Okey continues firing and damages the second tank in the line. Meanwhile, the bazooka has plenty of accompanying fire. The 2nd Platoon is also pounding the tanks with a combination of machine gun, BARs and rifle fire, knocking off many of the infantrymen. The enemy Infantry bolts for safety, but to no avail. Some fall directly into the paths of their disoriented tanks; they are squashed by the treads. The others, attempting to escape to a nearby rice paddy, discover their efforts futile as the Marines' fire accelerates, shredding their ranks. Lt. Pomeroy's tanks (Company A) have joined the contest, and they are pulverizing the crippled tank and the four other surviving tanks; the enemy armor is barraged by 45 armor-piercing shells from a distance of 600 yards. PFC Walter Monegan, Company F, 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines is at the curve with his bazooka, firing from point-blank range. The enemy T-34s have been tossed from an uneven bumper car ride onto a roller coaster amidst the fiery midway. From a distance of 500 yards, Lt. Charles M. Jones' Platoon (AT Co., 5th Marines) commences firing with their recoilless rifles in concert with the 75-mm rifles of the 1st Marines, deployed on Hill 186. As the storm of fire continues to intensify, nearly beyond description by the naked eye, the enemy column is also being struck by the 3.5-inch rocket launchers of the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines. The wild one-sided shootout lasts only about five minutes, and it is terminated due to the elimination of targets. The six T-34s are permanently decommissioned and consumed with fire. Two hundred dead Communist troops are scattered between the tanks and the rice paddy; some have managed to escape, but not many. In contrast, the Marines' casualty list is short; one Marine receives a minor wound. The enemy contingent consisted of troops from the 42nd N.K. Mechanized Regiment and elements of the N.K. 18th Division, based at Seoul. The North Korean tank corps is no longer winning any laurels for their Russian tanks, which initially were considered near-invincible. Although the battle lasts only five minutes, conversations concerning the kills continue. Various units from both regiments claim kills and partial kills, due to the tremendous amount of combined fire converging on the same targets. In the meantime, General MacArthur, Admiral Struble and other top brass arrive at YELLOW Beach to confer with General O.P. Smith; from here, the entourage moves to the front, stopping at the 1st

Marines' command post to present medals to Col. Puller and South Korean Admiral Sohn; MacArthur dips into his pocket and discovers that he hadn't brought any medals with him. Undaunted, MacArthur instructs an aide to take note of the minor problem. The entourage then moves to the site of the successful bushwhacking of the enemy tanks and all are enthusiastic about the results; however, General O.P. Smith is over-anxious to get MacArthur and the other top officers out of the area before some enemy straggler causes a major disaster. MacArthur dismounts the jeep to give the area a sweeping look; he is swarmed by the press and their cameras are snapping off repeated photographs to speed back to the States. In addition to MacArthur and Admiral Struble, the entourage includes Generals Almond, Fox, Hodes, Ruffner, Shepherd, O.P. Smith, Whitney and Wright. Smith is greatly relieved when the group departs the area, heading for the 5th Marines' command post to inform General Craig and Lt. Col. Murray that they are to receive the Silver Star. The trail of dust in the wake of the speeding convoy of Jeeps could not be outdone in a John Wayne movie. Soon after the departure of MacArthur, the Marines prepare to continue the attack, when suddenly an unfamiliar noise is heard by men of Lt. George McNaughton's platoon; the unusual sounds emerge from the culvert which is directly under the place where General MacArthur had halted his jeep. Instantly, the Marines take persuasive action, and seven armed North Koreans decide to surrender; the only known survivors of the failed ambush are then taken prisoner. In Ascom City, a huge enemy depot is discovered; it contains 2,000 tons of captured American ammunition (for artillery, machine guns and mortars), seized by the Communists during June; it is in good shape and the X Corps will make excellent use of it. Subsequent to the departure of MacArthur and his entourage, the Marines launch the attack to secure Kimpo Airfield, which is defended by between 400-500 troops. In conjunction with the advance of the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, the 3rd Battalion advances as regimental reserve, and it takes over specified assembly areas left in the wake of the 2nd Battalion. While the 2nd Battalion attack is ongoing, the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines drives on the regimental right and it encounters no opposition. By 1900, Company A takes the southern portion of Objective Easy. In conjunction, Company B, 1st Battalion follows this advance and seizes the northern half of the heights, also without incident. Company C, 1st Battalion will occupy yet another hill to the west, giving the 1st Battalion positions about 1,500 yards southeast of the 2nd Battalion. Also, the 3rd Battalion South Korean Marines, having passed through the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines at 0500, is driving north, reducing pockets of resistance west of Ascom City as it advances. At 0900, the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines jumps off, driving east, spearheaded by Company E; it moves along the Inchon-Seoul highway and passes the burning debris of the earlier-destroyed enemy tanks. After an advance of about one mile, the spearhead pivots left to take a secondary road that leads north around the eastern tip of Ascom City, which is now a haven for enemy stragglers. Meanwhile, Company F's 2nd Platoon, commanded by Lt. Tilton Anderson (2nd Battalion), drives directly into and through the city to cover the left flank of Company E; it receives no resistance. However, the platoon does not execute a house-to-house search, nor does it comb the side streets as it moves. At the eastern tip of the city, things are quite different. From various locations on either side of the road, North Koreans fire upon the troops of Company E, hindering progress. Nonetheless, the Marines, led by Captain Samuel Jaskilka, eliminate the obstacles one-by-one, completing the task by about 1200. Following some confusion due to inaccurate maps, the battalion locates its objectives by the use of reconnaissance patrols and reinitiates its four-mile march (northeast) at about 1400. In the meantime, during the morning, the S.K. Marines experience difficulty on the western fringes of the city, forcing Taplett's 3rd Battalion to intercede. Company G plows into an enemy machine gun position, eliminating it, and soon after

another G Company contingent drills against an enemy obstacle among the town's buildings. The heated firefight terminates with eighteen dead Communists; the number of wounded remains unknown as the enemy departs hastily. Three Marines (Company G) are wounded during the fight. Also, the 3rd Battalion's Companies H and I rush into the town to complete the reduction of enemy resistance there. Following the cleansing of the town, the assembly areas are secured and the South Koreans resume their northward attack. The 3rd Battalion then settles in as regimental reserve and keeps vigil at a strategic road intersection that lie about half-way between Ascom City and Kimpo airfield. By about 1500, contact is made between the 3rd Battalion and the 1st Platoon of Company A Tanks under Lt. Pomeroy. A rifle platoon (Company F), led by Lt. Anderson, accompanies Pomeroy's tanks which push out of Ascom City to link up with the 2nd Battalion. But the tanks also experience difficulty in locating a road running northeast. Eventually a route is located that can handle the weight of the armor, but a damaged bridge causes more problems. Engineers (Company A, 2nd Platoon Engineers) rush to the scene to make repairs, and during the wait, more tanks arrive to bolster Pomeroy's platoon. Although the rolling thunder of the tanks has been halted at the water's edge, the ground troops of the 2nd Battalion punch forward and reach two hills that lie about 4,000 yards in front of Kimpo airfield. The hills, objectives A and B, give no appearance of being infested with enemy, prompting Colonel Roise to immediately thread them with rifle companies. At about 1600, Company E's 1st Platoon sprints to the summit of Objective B without incident, while the remainder of the 2nd Battalion holds in place to await word. Lt. Deptula radios that the objective is undefended, and he also makes it clear that the other hill, Objective A, is also clear of the enemy. Furthermore, the platoon leader believes that the descent to the airfield should be effortless. Roise orders the 2nd Battalion to prepare for attack. The battalion faces the objective, and Companies D and E initiate the assault and encounter only sniper fire. The steamroller effect of the attacking Marines is embellished by the arrival of the tanks. Some unfriendly fire greets the armor at a point about 1,000 yards south of the airfield, but it is insufficient to halt the momentum. Marines attached to the 2nd Platoon, Company F fly from the tanks and exterminate the threat, knocking out one automatic weapon with grenades. The tanks finish the job, splattering the area with seven rounds of 90-mm high explosive shells that quickly extinguish the resistance. Then, to ensure success, the tanks rivet the ground with effective machine gun fire. In the meantime, Company D, escorted by tanks, joins the fight and drills toward the airfield, while the other tanks swivel and move to support Company E's attack. By 1800, the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines is at the steps of the objective, and the enemy is completely caught off guard. The 2nd Battalion secures the southern portion of the airfield's runway by 2000. The seizure permits the Marines to establish a defensive night perimeter without too much difficulty; Tanks are on scene to bolster the line. Slightly before dusk, the 1st Platoon, Company E moves to Soryu-li to hold it, while the remainder of Company E deploys about three hundred yards behind Soryu-li at the airfield. East of the runway, Company E holds the line, interconnected with Company D which deploys west of the runway. In conjunction, Company F deploys south of the runway and focuses on the main road and two nearby secondary road junctions. However, there is some unexpected trouble. In other activity during the day, Col. Murray's Regimental Headquarters (5th Marines) is established north of Ascom City near the Railroad Station. Although the area has been tranquil, there is enemy presence. While a small detachment is searching for a site to locate the ordnance depot, the North Koreans commence firing, killing Warrant Officer Bill Parrish instantly; the firing also wounds two NCOs. The enemy fire had originated in a rice paddy and in an orchard, catching the detachment by surprise as they reconnoitered a small knoll. Reinforcements (1st Platoon A Engineers) speed forward to intercept

the enemy force; quick action brings the enemy activity to a halt. Ten Communists die around the orchard, and soon after, another seven are taken prisoner by S.K. police. Almost simultaneously, more enemy fire strikes near the Command Post perimeter, just as advance elements arrive to secure a sector for Battery A, 1st Battalion, 11th Marines. The incoming fire luckily causes no casualties, but two of the Marines do brave the fire and strike against the attackers, killing four additional Communist troops. More excitement erupts throughout the day as one additional Marine is killed and another wounded in close proximity to the command post. During the night, beginning at about 0200 on the 18th and continuing until dawn, the enemy mounts several counterattacks against the 2nd Battalion, but all are handily repulsed. The enemy sustains severe casualties for its efforts, predominantly inflicted by the tanks and Company E, which receives the brunt of the assaults. The remainder of Kimpo is secured on the following day. **In the 1st Marines' sector:** The road to Mahang-ri and beyond will be struck solely by the 1st Marines under Colonel Puller as the 5th Marines under Colonel Murray have swung northeast to seize Kimpo. The 1st Marines, supported by tanks, resumes its attack and drives from Ascom City, heading along the Inchon-Seoul Highway toward Yongdungp'o. Lt. Colonel Allan Sutter's 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines drives forward; Company D advances over the heights to the south while Companies E and F advance on the left and right sides of the road respectively. Communist resistance emerges instantaneously near and upon Hill 208, a feature stretching southward from the highway in the vicinity of Mahang-ri, but the Artillery of the 11th Marines supplements the attack and pounds suspected enemy positions in the heights to the front. Some progress is made, but an enemy roadblock about 500 yards outside Mahang-ri halts Company E; its 2nd Platoon becomes besieged as withering fire strikes from three separate sides. Reinforcements speed forward to extricate the stalled Platoon. Lt. McAlee, one of the two officers bringing up the fresh troops, is wounded, but the other, Lt. Johnny Carter gets through. In the meantime, Carter had gotten medical help for the wounded officer. Lt. Carter requests bazooka and recoilless rifle fire to loosen the opposition. The imperiled Platoon then bolts to a tiny knoll to the right of the obstacle to seek more tenable positions while the remainder of the company moves forward. The tenacious skirmish at the roadblock costs the enemy about twenty troops. While the roadblock is being reduced, other units are joining the attack; the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, spearheaded by Company G and one Platoon of Company B's tanks, grinds down the highway. By about 1200, Hill 208 falls to Companies D and F. The village of Mahang-ri is to be seized by Company E, 2nd Battalion. By this time, elements of the 3rd Battalion are on the scene. The tankers detect a sinister appearing hut; the M-26s commence firing and one concealed T-34 Tank is demolished before it can return fire. Soon after, the ground Marines aboard the tanks jump off and deploy. The tanks (1st Platoon Company B), commanded by Lt. Robert Grover, scour the area for targets from their positions on the road, and then they begin laying a steady barrage of shells. The enemy disengages and retires eastward, giving the 1st Marines control of Mahang-ri just prior to 1600. Subsequent to the fall of Mahang-ri and the domination of Hill 208, the 1st Marines push toward the next objective, Corps Phase Line CC. Colonel Puller's 1st Marines head for Sosa, the midpoint between Mahang-ri and the objective. In the meantime, Communist reinforcements are converging on Sosa to dismantle the Marines' attack. Nevertheless, the 1st Marines resume the assault, spearheaded by Companies E and F, 2nd Battalion, which advance along the left side of the highway, accompanied by the sturdy tanks of Company B's 2nd Platoon. To the rear of the tanks, Company G, 1st Battalion is transported aboard LVTs; the remainder of the 1st Battalion follows close behind, bringing up the rear. Along the route, the column approaches a seemingly dangerous pass, prompting extreme caution. The tank

at the nose of the column nudges into the pass against sporadic enemy fire, while the ground Marines fan out on either side of the highway. Then, the enemy fire unexpectedly becomes ferocious, as if the hillside is collapsing. The enemy small arms fire is supplemented by antitank fire and mortars which pummel the advance party. The ground Marines are stymied, unable to advance, and the tank becomes the center of attention, specifically because the engine fails, reinforcing Murphy's Law. Despite the precarious circumstances, the crew remains unusually calm; Lt. Bryan Combings (Platoon Leader) instinctively recalls that Infantry had been aboard his M-26. Combings flings open the hatch to check for any lingering Marines as the enemy is closing. A lone Marine rifleman is still aboard, prompting Combings to irreverently pull him into the tank, and not a second too soon. Like mice on cheese, the North Koreans are atop the tank. Inside the airtight armored vehicle, a double dilemma arises. Nauseating fumes from the 90-mm gun are dangerously building, and the rescued Marine is becoming hysterical, giving the platoon leader few encouraging options. Action is taken; the frenzied Marine is knocked unconscious to soothe his anxiety, and the pistol port is slid open to forestall asphyxiation. However, the fresh oxygen is accompanied by an enemy grenade which wounds three of the occupants, including Lt. Combings. In near cadence with the detonation of the enemy grenade, the enemy is about to finish the annihilation of the tankers, but the beleaguered crew is saved by the bell. Fortuitously, a second Yank M-26, commanded by Sergeant Marion Altaire, arrives and cranks a steady ring of machine gun fire upon the stalled tank, peeling off some paint and clearing off the Reds who succumb to the menacing fire. Meanwhile Marine planes (VMF-214) soar overhead and dive toward the enemy-held high ground, plastering the positions with bombs, rockets and machine gun fire. Soon after, the entrapped Marines, having neared Heaven's Gates, pop open the hatch and deeply inhale, ever grateful for their new lease on life, compliments of Sergeant Altaire. Meanwhile Company G regains its momentum and storms forward on the right side of the road to gain the heights above the pass. In cadence with the rejuvenated advance, another section of Cumming's tank platoon enters the pass and crashes forward with its guns blazing. The enemy loses six antitank guns; however, one U.S. tank loses a track and two additional tanks sustain some minor damage during the exchange. In conjunction, the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines surges to the summit of the heights on the left side of the highway and dislodges the enemy. Marine riflemen rivet the ranks of the retreating North Koreans as they break hurriedly for Sosa. Subsequent to the capture of the ground by the attacking forces, the remainder of the 2nd and 3rd Battalions, 1st Marines arrive, and the decision to establish a night perimeter is made. The day's progress has gained nearly 5,000 yards for the 2nd and 3rd Battalions. The enemy sustains about 250 killed and wounded, and seventy troops are captured. The Marines (2nd Battalion) lose one man killed and sustain 28 wounded; the 3rd Battalion's Company G sustains six Marines wounded. In other activity, the 1st Battalion, 1st Marines, commanded by Colonel Hawkins, bolstered by the division reconnaissance company initiates an attack during the morning, but it encounters only slight opposition. The unit races forward, sweeping through the unfamiliar valleys and unfriendly hills before halting in the heights just south of the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines. In conjunction, the reconnaissance company advances to the edge of the Namdong Peninsula; Captain Houghton's recon Marines sweep the area for two days and discover a mine manufacturing plant and some prisoners. In other activity, in addition to the six enemy tanks destroyed in the morning at Ascom City and the concealed tank wasted later in the day, Marine planes also account for one destroyed enemy tank. The divisional report of fourteen tanks destroyed cannot be verified by the record of division units, and the report of four tanks destroyed during the afternoon are actually part of those reported destroyed earlier in the day near Ascom City by the 1st

and 5th Marines and Able Company tanks. At day's end, the 1st Marines stand within one mile from the village of Sosa. The Marines call for some assistance from their British cousins. The night remains tranquil, possibly due in part to the HMS *Kenya* which spends the night offshore and delivers about 300 six-inch shells into suspected Communist positions at Sosa and on Hill 123. At dawn on the 18th, the attack will resume.

**September 18 1950 -(Pacific-Korea)** North Korea finally publicly mentions that there is activity at Inchon, but little is stated; the Communists proclaim that two American aircraft have been shot down by elements of the Coastal Defense units there, but still there is no mention of the invasion. **(Inchon-Seoul) X Corps:** A ceremony is held in Inchon to proclaim the installation of a civilian government. The proclamation is read in English and Korean as the mayor is being installed. Immediately following the ceremony, the government begins its work and reinstates a police force to maintain order; in addition, food is distributed to the ragged refugees and plans are set up to establish a hospital. The S.K. 17th Regiment, a recently established security contingent, arrives at Inchon; its mission is to sweep the terrain between Ascom City and the coast. In other activity, the 2nd Battalion, 32nd Regiment, 7th Division debarks and arrives in Inchon during the morning, followed later by the remainder of the Regiment. In other activity, corps (latter part of the afternoon) issues orders to force the Han River. **In the 1st Marine Division sector,** the attack to seize the remainder of Kimpo is readied, but there are some distractions. During the early morning hours, the enemy mounts several counterattacks, but none is supported with weapons heavier than Submachineguns and Rifles. Slightly after midnight, Company F (2nd Battalion, 5th Marines) comes under attack at its positions at an overpass located at the southernmost point of the perimeter. Engineers under Lt. Wayne Richards and the assault platoon led by Lt. James Harrell man the bridge, but the attackers are intercepted by one Marine before they can destroy the bridge; Sergeant Ray Kearl slays the sole officer and three of his men, but two others avoid Kearl and run for safety. The perimeter remains on the alert, and before the first signs of dawn, another enemy contingent approaches the bridge; the Patrol is wiped out. Nonetheless, the Gooks persist in the attempt to dislodge the Marines at Kimpo. At dawn, the Communists mount another assault. To their dismay, again the Marines are prepared, and the Communists are fried before they reach the lines of the 2nd Battalion. The 1st Battalion detects the attackers moving from the south across open ground. Unhesitatingly, Company B commences firing, but to add steam to the fire it calls for assistance from artillery and the heavy mortar sections. Consequently, the enemy is shredded in front of Kimpo. However, one enemy platoon reaches the testy lines of Company F, but to no avail. The enemy encounter is fierce, but the Marines under Harrell and the Marine Engineers under Lt. Richards hold the bridge. Sergeant Robert Kitka disregards his safety and remains exposed to the ring of fire, giving his life while he rallies his men. A bulldozer operator, Sergeant David DeArmond, commandeers a machine gun to meet the enemy threat; he too is slain by enemy fire. Nevertheless, the attack sizzles as the surviving North Koreans disengage and flee through a rice paddy. The Marines give hot pursuit. Companies E and F, bolstered by some tanks of Company A, rummage through the area to annihilate the remnant enemy troops before they can reach the Han River. In addition, Company C, 1st Battalion, 5th Marines joins in the hunt; supported by artillery, it seizes Objective Fox by 0930 against nominal opposition. In conjunction, the remainder of the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines remains at its positions of the previous day. In the meantime, Lt. Deptula's platoon, the furthest extension of Company E, detects enemy movement at about 0300 as the Communists move against its positions at Soryu-li. When the Gooks appear in their sights, a Sergeant (Richard Martson) bolts to his feet and screams "UNITED STATES MARINES" while

he simultaneously empties his carbine. The remainder of the platoon commences firing at about the same time, bringing the enemy contingent to an instant halt; twelve of them literally drop dead in their tracks while the rest of the column bolts to safety. Undaunted, the Communists launch three more unsuccessful attacks against Deptula's steadfast platoon. Still, the Communists attempt to take the platoon, adding a T-34 tank to the next assault. Deptula, aware of the isolated position of his platoon, chooses not to take on the tank; he orders his men to move back to the 2nd Battalion positions. The Marines pull back, having sustained one killed and one wounded; the platoon reaches the perimeter of Company E at about 0500. Prior to dawn, despite a solid perimeter, a Communist officer penetrates the line, wounds an engineer (Lt. Lawrence Hetrick), and evades capture. Then at dawn, Colonel Murray is awakened, but not by his bugler; the enemy officer and one rifleman, both near the CP, are firing incessantly. A platoon of engineers attacks and eliminates the threat with a flurry of grenades and rifle fire; one Marine casualty is sustained during the brief exchange. Soon after, the North Koreans mount another two-pronged attack, striking the 2nd Battalion's Company E from the east and from the west. Initially, the Marines believe the fire coming from the east is friendly. Captain Jaskilka orders his men not to return fire while he bolts to his feet and begins yelling to nearby Company D, telling the men to cease firing. Fortunately, Jaskilka is not hit by the enemy fire and the mistake is rectified. The Marines pour fire into the attackers, composed of about two squads, but another assault is emerging from the east against the 2nd Platoon. Company E holds firmly. By 1000, the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines seizes Kimpo airfield intact; the North Koreans fail to destroy the runway which is 150 feet wide and 6,000 feet long. The Marines capture one Russian Yak fighter and two Russian Stormovik planes which had not been destroyed. The captured aircraft are transferred to air force Intelligence. The Yak had been found by Lt. Edward Collins (ordnance battalion) and it had been armed and fueled; the aircraft is quickly repainted and given U.S. insignias to assure it could be safely flown to Japan if the enemy threatens Kimpo. At about 1030, Colonel Roise dispatches Company D, escorted by tanks and other heavy weapons, to take Hill 131 (Regimental Objective Dog). For added insurance, the navy shepherds the operation, blasting the objective as the Marines advance. The objective is taken without opposition at 1145, giving the Marines the strategic heights which command the banks of the Han river north of Kimpo. The Marines take quick advantage of the prizes. At 1000, the first U.S. aircraft lands at Kimpo (since the invasion during June); it is a helicopter, piloted by Captain Victor A. Armstrong. General Shepherd and Colonel Krulak arrive aboard the HO3S-1 and they are met by General Craig on the runway. At 1409, a corsair lands. Marine Aircraft attached to MAG 33 also arrive at the field today. Also, Colonel Murray relocates his regimental command post at Kimpo at 1245. The Marines draw X Corps a notch closer to Seoul. Also, the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines seizes Hill 99, northeast of Kimpo, before it reaches the Han. Since its departure from Ascom City on the previous day, the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines sustains four Marines killed and nineteen wounded while covering about nine miles over the high ground and through the rice paddies. In contrast, the Marines (2nd Battalion) kill 100 enemy troops in their sector while capturing ten POWs. No figures are available for enemy wounded. Subsequent to the seizure of Kimpo, the 5th Marines sector remains tranquil, especially to the east from where the Communists are retreating. However, intelligence concludes that about 1,000 enemy troops are forming north and south of the Han River to launch a counterattack against Kimpo. Naval carrier aircraft are committed; four skyraiders scorch enemy troop formations which are spotted northeast of the river on both banks. The Communists scatter, but about fifty die suddenly. In related activity, Marine planes discover additional enemy troop formations near Hill 125 and near Haengju, north of the airfield at Kimpo

and across from the 5th Marines' 2nd Battalion. Also, in accordance with the orders of corps, division issues orders to cross the Han River; the 5th Marines will seize crossing sites on the following day, but Puller's 1st Marines is to continue its drive toward Yongdungp'o. In other activity, the Marine 2nd Engineer Special Brigade assumes responsibility for Inchon's security, freeing the South Korean Marines to advance to the Han River. **In the 1st Marines' sector**, the attack is resumed. The 2nd Battalion's D and E Companies drive on the right and left respectively. A mishap occurs, causing casualties when several artillery shells detonate prematurely during the preparation fire; two Marines (Company E) are accidentally killed and three others are wounded. In conjunction, the 3rd Battalion, commanded by Colonel Thomas Ridge, moves forward transported aboard various vehicles including jeeps and DUKWs; it rolls through the positions of the 2nd Battalion. The forward thrust lacks serious enemy ground opposition and it effortlessly steamrollers over a roadblock to the front of Sosa. By 1200, the town is secured by the Marines. The 2nd Battalion takes a defensive stance to the right of the village's railroad, and across the tracks, the 3rd Battalion spreads out on Hill 123, north of the highway and east of the town. Meanwhile the 1st Battalion, 1st Marines dashes forward, still meeting little opposition on the division right. The 1st Battalion winds the day down by taking positions in the heights about two miles south of the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines. In other activity in the area to the left of the 5th Marines, the 1st Battalion, Korean Marines arrives to assist the 3rd Battalion, Korean Marines with the search of the Kumpo Peninsula. Colonel Puller's situation remains dangerous; the 3rd Battalion posted on Hill 123 sustains a severe Mortar bombardment at 1415. The incoming fire whacks the Marines relentlessly as the air observers and ground observers are unable to locate the origin of the deadly fire; thirty Marines sustain wounds within one hour. Later, at 1800, the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines comes under fire at its positions south of the road; fourteen more Marines are wounded there, including the commanding officer, Company E, Captain Albert Williams and the battalion supply officer, Warrant Officer Bartley Kent. In addition, the enemy has laid minefields along the highway north of Sosa to hinder the Marines' advance to Yongdungpo. In concert with the 1st Marines' assault to seize Sosa, Marine Aircraft (VMF-214) have flown close support mission to speed the advance; the pilots detail the destruction of various enemy supply areas concealed in various places on the sand spit between Yongdungpo and Seoul. Also, VMF-214 destroys two enemy tanks; four others avoid damage. Some of the town's buildings also sustain damage.

**September 19 1950 -(Pacific-Korea)** The Pusan Logistical Command is redesignated the 2nd Logistical Command. In other activity, the Philippine 10th Infantry Battalion Combat Team debarks at Pusan. In other activity, President Syngman Rhee speaks to a very large audience in Pusan and makes his intentions clear, concerning the South Korean goals. He states: "**WE HAVE TO ADVANCE AS FAR AS THE MANCHURIAN BORDER UNTIL NOT A SINGLE ENEMY SOLDIER IS LEFT IN OUR COUNTRY.**" Rhee also states that he does not expect the U.N. troops to halt at the 38th Parallel, but he insists that if they do halt the pursuit, the South Koreans will maintain the advance singlehandedly. **(Inchon-Seoul)** General Wright, acting upon direction from General MacArthur, dispatches a message to General Hickey (Acting Chief of Staff, FEC, Tokyo), instructing him to prepare Plan 100-C for execution. The plan calls for an amphibious landing at Kunsan, carried out by two U.S. divisions and one South Korean Division; the scheduled date is October 15th. In conjunction, the plan exhibits MacArthur's concerns that Eighth Army will be unable to successfully break out of the Pusan Perimeter. General Walker is against the plan. The 31st Regiment, 7th Division comes ashore at Inchon. Also, the USS *Missouri* which has been

operating off the east coast of Korea, arrives off Inchon to provide support fire for the newly arriving 7th Division, which will operate on the right flank. In conjunction, the USS *Rochester* and the USS *Toledo* have been providing long range cover fire on the left flank, bolstering the Marines and South Korean troops. However, the 1st and 5th Marines have both reached forward positions which are beyond the range of light cruisers and destroyers. In conjunction, between today and the 24th, the *Toledo* and the *Rochester* provide support fire for the 3rd Battalion, S.K. Marines, which is requested by Lt. Wayerski (Shore Fire Control Party Officer). The extra firepower comes in handy; during one patrol, operating slightly northwest of Kimpo, the S.K. Marines annihilate a company strength enemy contingent and they capture about 150 prisoners in close proximity to Chongdong on the south bank of the Han River. **In the 1st Marine Division sector**, TAC X Corps establishes headquarters at Kimpo airfield; it is followed by MTACS-2, MGCIS-1 and VMO-6. Cargo transports and other planes arrive at Kimpo airfield from Japan: a pair of planes from VMF-312 land at Kimpo and VMF-212, commanded by Lt. Colonel Richard Wyczawski, also arrives today. Lt. Colonel Max Volcansek and his Squadron (VMF(N)-542) depart Japan and land at Kimpo at 1830; the six fighters (F7F-3Ns) are the first planes of MAG-33 to arrive there; the squadron, composed of 54 officers and 274 enlisted men, contains only twenty trained night fighter pilots, the remainder being volunteer reservists, "qualified by a good experience level and a desire to become night fighters." In conjunction, the 1st MAW remains at Itami airbase in Japan. The 1st Marine Division command post moves from the Kimpo vicinity and relocates at Ocoso-ri, less than two miles southeast of Kimpo; it becomes operational at 1645. Also, at 0930, Marine General O.P. Smith confers with General Almond at Kimpo to finalize the selection of a crossing site at the Han. They discuss an equally important topic, the availability of bridging materials. In conjunction, the site in the vicinity of Haengju becomes the objective, provided it passes a visual inspection from a helicopter. Lt. Colonel Edward Rowny (X Corps Engineer Officer) informs General Smith that corps lacks bridging except for that transported by Lt. Col. Partridge's 1st Engineer Battalion (Marine). The problem is eased by Partridge who tells Smith that he will improvise by using one fifty-ton raft to support the ground Marines and that he will bring up another to bolster the effort. Partridge continues, stating that the rafts will be utilized to transport the tanks and other vehicles. Also, during the meeting, General Almond informs General Smith that the 32nd Regiment, 7th Division will deploy on the right flank of the 1st Marines. General Almond expedites its movement to the front to relieve the 1st Battalion, 1st Marines. **In the 5th Marines sector**, the 1st Battalion remains deeply rooted in the heights east of Kimpo airfield, but as usual, the Marines are about to begin another attack. During the previous night, Col. Newton received orders from Col. Murray to secure Hills 80 and 85, the keys to Yongdungpo, but first the battalion must level the resistance on Hill 118, the dominant feature standing between the airfield and Yongdungpo. However, before the 1st Battalion jumps off, it is attacked by a strong enemy force. About 500 North Koreans launch the assault at dawn in cadence with a barrage of mortar and small arms fire which jolts Company C, 1st Battalion into action. Many of the Communists are driving down the Yongdungpo-Kimpo Road, seemingly heading for the airfield, while one other contingent is advancing toward Company C's positions on the crest of Objective FOX to the front of Hill 118. The Communists are met by terrific return fire and their ranks diminish quickly. Despite the enemy counterattack, Company B, 1st Battalion, operating on schedule, lunges toward its objective, Hill 118, where yet other large concentrations of enemy troops have been detected. Company A holds tight to the rear of Objective EASY, poised to engage any enemy troops which reach the airfield approaches. Convincingly, Company C streams steady fire into the attackers, while Captain Fenton's Company B ascends Hill

118. By 1100, Fenton's troops gain the crest of Hill 118 and their firepower is then focused on the enemy attackers caught between Company C and Company B. It is a strong concoction of deadly fire; thanks to the effective Air strikes and artillery fire, Company B secures its objective without sustaining any casualties. Those live Communists, still stretched out between Companies A and B, are pummeled; the enemy sustains about three hundred killed, and the Marines capture an additional 100 troops. The surviving Reds flee the area, vanishing near the villages and fields in the vicinity of the Han. Subsequent to the battle, Company C advances to its designated positions on Hill 118; it sustains two killed and six wounded while turning back the attack. Once both Companies are on Hill 118, they regroup, but there is no pause in the action. Nearby Hill 80 is occupied by another huge enemy force and the Marines prepare to make another 1,000 yard dash. The assault will be augmented by artillery and air strikes as Captain Fenton requests the additional muscle. The planes score another bull's eye, whacking the enemy with horrific firepower that kills many and disperses the surviving remnants on Hill 80. More enemy troops are detected near the Kalchon Bridge which leads to Yongdungpo. Coincidentally, these Communists begin firing into the positions of Company B at about the same time as the Yanks spot their positions. Enemy machine gun fire and antitank fire strike at Company B, but Captain Fenton had already called for artillery and it outclasses the enemy fire. Ninety-six artillery shells arc toward the opposite side of the bridge and slap harshly at the enemy positions, quieting their guns, but the several minutes of devastating fire also inflicts severe damage to the bridge. At about 1430, Company C drives down the highway, moving toward Hills 80 and 85, but the Marines, operating on a tight schedule spend no time clearing the enemy still standing between the road and the river. With the assistance of planes and a platoon of Company A, tanks, Company C rolls forward. Company C's 3rd Platoon pivots from the road slightly after 1500 and strikes against Hill 80, while the 1st Platoon, led by Lt. Robert Corbet, maintains its pace and continues advancing along the road, closing on Hill 85. Both objectives fall near effortlessly by 1650, due in great part to the effectiveness of the planes and artillery. But the enemy retains its tenacity and Company C soon comes under severe fire. Enemy mortars, artillery and small arms combine to halt any further advance. Company C halts and establishes defensive positions on the reverse slopes of the heights to prepare for an anticipated enemy counterattack to regain Hills 80 and 85. In the meantime, the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines reduces the enemy resistance in the heights within its sector along the Han. The 5th Marines are to be relieved on its hill positions by the 1st Marines; however, the regiment arrives late. By dusk, the 5th Marines control the south bank of the Han in its zone. Also, at Kimpo, Col. Murray and other officers hold a staff meeting in the command post to prepare for the crossing of the Han. In conjunction, the South Korean Marines, which had begun departing Inchon on the previous day, deploy on the left flank of the 5th Marines, poised to cross the Han on the 20th with the U.S. Marines. A contingent of fourteen troops (mostly reconnaissance company) swims the Han at about 2000 to check the landing area on the opposite bank; the contingent is composed of Captain Kenneth J. Houghton (CO Reconnaissance Co.), Lt. Dana Cashion, two naval officers (Lt. Horace Underwood and Ensign John Seigle) and ten enlisted Marines. The detachment makes it to the opposite bank at about 2040 and encounters two Koreans; both are captured effortlessly. The captives claim they are escaping from Seoul. The group then discovers that the area can handle the nine LVTs which will carry the Company; four men, led by Lt. Cashio ascend Hill 125, but before reaching the summit, the detachment pulls back (without incident), thinking the objective unoccupied. Nevertheless, as the patrol returns to the beach, it comes under fire. In the meantime, the area near the north bank seems tranquil, and Captain Haughton orders the remainder of the

company to begin the crossing. The stillness of the night had been interrupted by the clanging noises of the amtracs which had traveled about five miles from Kimpo to the crossing site. Meanwhile the Communists prepare to fire. Eight of the vessels' tractors enter the water and they are immediately greeted by menacing machine gun and mortar fire. The enemy fire focuses on the amtracs and against the advance party on the north bank. The mission begins to get tangled. Four of the amtracs become grounded, jeopardizing the vehicles and the troops aboard them. To make matters worse, communications become poor. The 1st and 2nd Platoons, commanded by Lts. Kraince and Philip Shutler, are stuck in the muck. Orders direct them to debark from the LVTs and return to the south bank. In conjunction, the 3rd Platoon, led by Lt. Charles Puckett, (not yet in river) is to provide cover fire. While the grounded amtracs are attempting to return to the north bank, the advance team is attempting to swim out to the vessels. During the confusion, the two captured prisoners break for safety, but Marine fire kills both. Meanwhile, the advance party breaks for the north bank, coming under fire as the men begin swimming; some Marine mortar shells fall short and create additional havoc for the swimmers. Captain Haughton is knocked cold by the concussion of one of the Marine shells, but he regains consciousness and is taken to one of the grounded LVTs. Nevertheless, the remaining men of the advance team of swimmers returns to the south bank; one man, Private Alphonse Ledet, Jr., is missing and presumed dead, and two others in addition to Captain Haughton are wounded. In conjunction, the majority of reconnaissance troops on the stranded LVTs make it back to the north bank near Hill 131; from there, they are shipped back to Kimpo. Also, Gunnery Sgt. Ernest Fazio makes sure his casualties (swimmers) are cared for immediately, and then he and eight others search for Captain Haughton and discover him on one of the grounded LVTs. By about dawn (20th), Sgt. DeFazio is back at the 5th Marines CP giving a report and Haughton is en route to a hospital. In conjunction, two of the four stranded LVTS are brought back to the south bank. In the meantime, the Marines have learned another valuable lesson. Initially it was thought that the area was lightly defended; however, the reconnaissance company would have been facing about one battalion if it had landed during the night. A decision had been reached at about 0430 that the 3rd Battalion would cross at 0630. **In the 1st Marines sector**, the 2nd Battalion, 32nd Regiment, 7th Division USA, moves out of Inchon and relieves the 1st Battalion, 1st Marines at its positions in the high ground south of the highway on the right flank, effecting the linkup by noon. The relief force had arrived later than expected. In the meantime, Colonel Puller orders his 2nd and 3rd Battalions to initiate their attack at 1030, the former driving along the highway and the latter advancing on the left of the road. While the Marines push toward Yongdungp'o, the 7th Division protects their right flank. Colonel Puller's 2nd Battalion is bolstered by tanks, but the armor sustains damage after advancing about 500 yards. Enemy fire originating from the right front on Hill 72 in the zone of the 32nd Infantry pounds the advancing column of Company F. At the same time, the lead Company C tank strikes a mine and loses one of its tracks and two road wheels. Unable to easily advance, the trailing armor halts. The Marines return fire and they receive assistance from artillery and planes (VMF-214). Company F is joined by the remainder of the Battalion to ensure the demise of the blockage. Meanwhile, engineers (2nd Platoon, Company C) advance under fire and begin to detonate the mines which are scattered about the road. The engineers purposely avoid the mines on the shoulders to quicken the reentry of the tanks, and the units to the rear are informed of the lurking danger. Nonetheless, some vehicles are later lost on the shoulders because the troops fail to heed the warning. The enemy is thrown back by the three rifle companies, giving the engineers (Lt. George Gabe's 2nd Platoon) extra breathing room. Shortly thereafter, a 250-yard minefield is cleared. In the meantime,

Companies D and F grind forward and advance about one mile while under continual fire, most of which is coming from Hill 146, another feature in the zone of the 32nd Regiment to the right of the highway. Unable to await the arrival of the army regiment, Colonel Sutter continues the advance. Company D spins into the army zone and charges up the western spur of Hill 146 while VMF-214 planes bombard the summit in synchronization with the 11th Marines which streams shells across the entire 2nd Battalion front. While Company D is climbing to the summit, Company F captures a hill to the left. Meanwhile, the engineers are concluding the minefield-clearing operation. By 1300, the tanks roar forward to rejoin the ground Marines. The armor is off and running, but just as it nears the ground troops, another road blockage bars passage. Quickly, a bulldozer tank races to the obstacle and begins to clear the highway, but disaster strikes again as the Communists had placed mines under the debris. The tank hits a mine and is set afire. Again, the engineers speed to the front and begin clearing yet another minefield which extends about 75 yards. All the while, the ground Marines are driving forward, securing the terrain as they advance. By 1730, enemy resistance along the highway in the 2nd Battalion sector is reduced. The Marines capture many discarded weapons and one mine-laden truck. The day-long advance gains the 2nd Battalion about 4,800 yards by 1900; Colonel Sutter then orders the battalion to establish a night perimeter. The Communists lose 350 casualties to the 2nd Battalion during the day and an additional five Reds are captured. The Marines (2nd Battalion) sustains four Marines killed and eighteen wounded. **In the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines sector**, the attack also commences at 1030. Companies H and I, lacking tank support, drive forward on the left of the highway to secure the ridge network which stretches several miles before culminating to the front of Hill 118. The battalion's principal objective is Lookout Hill which will place the 3rd Battalion about 300 yards behind the 5th Marines positions on Hill 118. The attacking companies, led by Major Joseph Trompeter (Battalion S-3), burst through the enemy resistance, and they sweep the sheer ridges clean. The Communists' resistance is moderate, yet tenacious. At day's end, Lookout Hill falls to the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines; the action costs the battalion two Marines killed and fifteen wounded. Companies H and I peer west from the prize and easily see Yongdungp'o on the opposite side of the Kalchon River. In the meantime, the 1st Battalion, 1st Marines, subsequent to relief, advances from below Sosa (right flank) to relieve the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines on Hills 80, 85 and 118. Trucks transport the troops from Sosa to Wonjong-ni, but from there, the Marines debark and finish the journey moving by foot along a crude path. Company A, commanded by Captain Robert Barrow, sets a heavy pace to ensure reaching the summit of Hill 118 prior to nightfall; it arrives as scheduled and relieves Company B, 1st Battalion, 5th Marines there. But at dusk, Companies B and C (1st Marines) are still en route, prompting Col. Hawkins to change his plans. Hawkins confers momentarily with Colonel Murray (C.O. 5th Marines), then he directs Company C to join Company A on Hill 118. Hawkins then orders Company B to establish positions on a southern extension of Hill 118. The relief force is unable to complete the mission before dark, causing complications at Hills 80 and 85; the 5th Marines are compelled to pull out before the arrival of the 1st Marine contingents (at 2100), due to instructions to be at the Han at a specified time to make the crossing. The remainder of the 1st Marines arrives in the vicinity and halts at Kal-chon Creek, slightly west of the town, but Hills 80 and 85 are unoccupied. In other activity, in accordance with the imminent plan to cross the Han, the 1st Amphibious Tractor Battalion is ordered to discontinue its support of the 1st Marines; its LVTs return to Kimpo. In conjunction, the 1st Shore Party Battalion reverts to division control and moves to the area near Oeoso. In the meantime, the North Koreans are planning to regain Hills 80, 85 and 118, which they had lost to the 5th Marines, but they are unaware that the Marines have abandoned

Hills 80 and 85. The North Koreans are also planning another attack against the 1st Marines in synchronization with the planned counterattacks against the 5th Marines positions. In other activity, the leading elements of the N.K. 25th Brigade begin arriving in Seoul; the brigade, commanded by Major General Wol Ki Chan, has many experienced officers who have previously served with Chinese Communist forces. **Eighth Army:** By today, North Korean High Command issues orders to its primary forces (in South Korea) to initiate withdrawal; many of the units to the south had no knowledge of the Inchon Invasion until several days after the operation.

**September 20 1950 -(Pacific-Korea) (Inchon-Seoul)** The 7th Marines arrive off Inchon bringing the 1st Marine Division to a strength of three Regiments. At this time, 49,568 troops have come ashore at Inchon; 5,356 Vehicles and 22,222 tons of equipment and supplies have also been unloaded. Kimpo Airfield is utilized to gain Seoul; Corsairs fly the first sorties from Kimpo. At 0735, Planes of VMF(N)-542 execute the first combat mission from Kimpo by destroying two enemy locomotives; the four participating F7F-3Ns stream 3,000 rounds of 20-mm ammo toward the enemy during the attack. Squadrons VMF-212 and 312 also fly combat missions today. In conjunction, the planes which arrived at Kimpo on the previous day are compelled to use the gas remaining in their tanks, as there are no refueling operations yet established. The Marines are also unable to mechanically load the armaments; the bombs are loaded manually. **In the 1st Marine Division sector: In the 5th Marines sector,** there has been much discussion between General Craig, Colonel Murray and staff Officers concerning the crossing of the Han River. General Craig notes: "THE EYES OF THE WORLD WERE UPON US. IT WOULD HAVE LOOKED BAD FOR THE MARINES, OF ALL PEOPLE, TO REACH A RIVER AND NOT BE ABLE TO CROSS." During the early morning hours it had been decided that the 3rd Battalion would cross. The attack across the Han River begins at 0645. A fifteen-minute artillery barrage, commenced by the 1st and 4th Battalions, 11th Marines against Hill 125, precedes the attack, but many of the shells miss the mark, giving the ground Marines no advantage. The 5th Marines is bolstered by elements of the 1st Tank Battalion, the division reconnaissance company, elements of the 56th Amphibian Tractor Bn., USA; the attack is further augmented by the 1st Engineer Bn., 1st Shore Party Battalion, 1st Amphibious Tractor Bn. and the 11th Marines (provide artillery fire). Company I, 3rd Battalion spearheads the 5th Marines crossing, but it comes under heavy fire from Hill 125. Thanks to the armor plating, none of the ground Marines are hit, despite the Amtracs (first wave) sustaining about 200 hits; four crewmen are wounded. Company I reaches the north bank at 0650, and it is followed by Companies G and H. The enemy continues pouring fire into Company I as it debarks; however, the platoon leaders maintain discipline as they organize for the attack against Hill 125 (Objective ABLE). Lt. Stanley Carpenter deploys his platoon of amtracs to provide some cover fire for the 2nd and 3rd Platoons which are launching attacks from the left and right respectively. Soon after, the attacking Marines receive some additional help when four corsairs (VMF-214) arrive and blast the hill. Meanwhile, the attacking platoons continue to come under heavy fire as they grind forward. Lt. Peterson's 2nd Platoon is carried several hundred yards inland by LVTs, while Lt. William Sparks' 3rd Platoon is lunging forward along the key spur on the right. The Communists relentlessly pour fire upon the attackers. Another contingent of amtracs, commanded by Captain Joseph Irick, plows eastward to gain supporting positions. From there Irick's amtracs stream shells into the enemy positions. Severe casualties are sustained by the Marines by machine gun and small arms fire; menacing fire wipes out nearly an entire mortar section, and the Marines have advanced only about half way up the hill. Lt. Sparks (3rd Platoon) becomes wounded and the platoon is taken over by Lt. Williamson, but it requires reorganization. Meanwhile, Lt. Peterson's 2nd Platoon

continues to gnaw forward on the left, but his communications temporarily cease. Soon after, Lt. Peterson is spotted on the left. Captain McMullen orders the 1st Platoon (reserve) under Lt. Roy Krieger to rush forward and pass through the 3rd Platoon to give it time to pull back and reorganize. Meanwhile headquarters troops and engineers arrive to inflate the 3rd Platoon. McMullen orders the attack to gain the plateau. The enemy is struck from three sides and the plateau falls. However, casualties force another regrouping before the final thrust to the crest. Company I reinitiates the attack. Despite being wounded, Captain McMullen leads the way. The 1st and 3rd Platoons bolt toward the crest. Meanwhile, more corsairs arrive. Lt. Peterson (2nd Platoon) reports from his positions on the left that Communist troops are fleeing from the crest and racing toward the low ground to the north of the hill. In conjunction, the corsairs have detected the enemy in flight, and the pilots take measures to eliminate them. Company I gains the crest (Hill 125) by 0940. From the heights, the Marines begin picking off many of the Communists as they are attempting to rid themselves of their uniforms to don civilian clothing. The remainder of the 3rd Battalion meets little opposition during the crossing. Company H captures Hill 95 (Objective CHARLIE) and Company G seizes Hill 51 (Objective BAKER), giving the 3rd Battalion possession of all its objectives by 0940. By 0830, the Seoul-Kaesong Railroad is severed and a strategic road at the village of Nungdong is cut. The 3rd Battalion sustains a total of 43 casualties during the operation, and most have been suffered by Company I. In contrast, the Communists lose about 200 troops. Also, the Marines receive some bonuses! The two previously stranded LVTs are extricated from the mud and surprisingly, Private Ledet (one of the swimmers), believed killed on the previous night, is discovered alive. Ledet had been manning an advance outpost and he was inadvertently left behind when the swimmers returned to the south bank of the Han. Fortunately, he retained his discipline and avoided capture while being able to gather much intelligence on the enemy. The battalion retains its LVTS and continues the attack by curving southeast to follow the tracks into Seoul. Meanwhile, the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines fords the Han at 1000; it remains aboard the LVTs and moves through the 3rd Battalion to continue the attack. By 1445, the 2nd Battalion gains control of Objectives DOG and EASY, the heights on both sides of the Kaesong-Seoul Railroad, several miles east of Haengju; Company D digs in on Objective EASY, while Company E deploys on Objective DOG. Company F is ordered to deploy in the hole separating Companies D and E. In conjunction, army troops attached to the amtracs detect enemy presence on Objective EASY; they ring out several warning shots and soon after, about thirty enemy troops emerge from a cave and surrender. In other activity, the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines is ordered to cross the Han at 1330 and deploy near Hill 95 to await orders to attack toward Seoul; a contingent will be dispatched to Hill 125 to secure the landing area for the night. The 3rd Battalion, subsequent to seizing its objectives during the morning, moves to positions slightly north of Hill 95. The 5th Marines and twelve supporting tanks (Company A, 1st Tank Battalion) are on the north bank of the Han by dusk; the 2nd Platoon crosses at 1410, the 1st Platoon at 1600 and the 3rd Platoon of tanks makes it across the river during the latter part of the afternoon. In related activity, Col. Partridge's Engineers, as promised, deliver a completed six-float M4A2 raft within four hours; it became operational (across the Han) within six hours of the first crossing of the ground Marines. The crossing site is known as BAKER Ferry; it is manned by Company B, 1st Shore Party Battalion; Teams 1 and 2 remain on the south bank and Team 3 deploys on the north bank. The 2nd Battalion, S.K. Marines crosses with the Yanks, but their DUKWs are unable to navigate easily. They become stuck near the south bank; eventually, the Korean Marines are transferred to LVTs. Company A, 56th Amphibian Tank Battalion, USA and the S.K. Marines are directed to guard the rear of the 5th Marines. **In the 1st**

**Marines sector**, the enemy launches several simultaneous predawn attacks to regain the hills lost to 5th Marines on 20th. Some North Korean assault troops depart Yongdungp'o and move across the rice paddies to Kal-ch'on Creek (which flows north and swings around the western tip of the city into the Han) while one battalion exits the town and drives down the road. The enemy fords the creek and takes Hills 80 and 85 without incident, as the 5th Marines had evacuated both hills at 2100 (under orders to advance to the Han) on the previous night. In conjunction, 1st Marines have not yet occupied them. Part of the enemy force advances to Hill 118, but here the story is different as Companies A and C, bolstered by planes (VMF-223), raise a steadfast defense of the summit and repel the attacks. Now the 1st Marines must retake Hills 80 and 85. Meanwhile, the other enemy force, spearheaded by five tanks, advances down the Inchon Highway toward the positions of the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines. At about 0400, the faraway sounds of Armor are detected by Company F, which is posted to the front in the heights near Company D. The two Companies are deployed parallel to the Inchon Road and south of it. The distant clamor of the armor becomes more pronounced as the enemy column closes blindly toward the Marines' positions. By 0430, the clanking armor is through the positions of Companies D and F, encroaching Company E. Astonishingly, the lead vehicle is an ammunition truck which has found itself well in advance of the tanks. Private Oliver O'Neil, a machinegunner of Company E, stands to give challenge and the response is deadly as enemy fire quickly slays O'Neil. At this point, the pitch darkness is transformed into bright illumination. Two T-34 tanks pull up short of the Marines' positions and begin to fire blindly; their fire is met ten-fold. Companies D and F, entrenched in the heights, pour sheets of fire into the enemy. A raging iron-storm erupts as grenades, machine guns, mortars and other small arms begin to pummel the column in cadence with the weapons of Company E which is streaming more fire upon the North Koreans. The tanks jostle back and forth attempting to evade damage and escape, but the column is destined for destruction. The 11th Marines' artillery keeps the rear escape route closed, trapping the enemy battalion. In the meantime, the ammunition truck sustains a gargantuan hit and it explodes violently. The tanks continue to come under assault, and then one of the Marines, PFC Gonegan, takes it upon himself to move in closer. Gonegan destroys the lead T-34, then he singlehandedly moves against the second tank and destroys it. Gonegan takes aim on a third tank, which is attempting to reverse and escape, but before he can fire his 3.5 rocket, enemy fire slays him. The incessant hammering causes the enemy infantry to break for safety; they flee up the slopes; however, the guns of Companies D and F shred the ranks, barring escape. At dawn, when the battlefield becomes visible, the Marines peer to the front and see about 300 North Koreans; they are scattered along the road, on the slopes and in the ditches, but they are all deceased. Marine losses for the engagement are few, but the exact figures for the battle are unavailable. However, the 2nd Battalion's casualties for the entire day are (including the action subsequent to the enemy counterattack): four killed and 32 wounded. After vanquishing the enemy counterattack, the 2nd Battalion, operating on the regimental right, drives along the Inchon-Seoul Highway. At 0645, the battalion begins smashing through sporadic opposition and it reaches the bridge crossing at the western branch of the Kalchon River by 1230; it is about 2,000 yards from the 2nd span which crosses the eastern branch of the Kalchon into Yongdungpo. At that time, the 2nd battalion commander, Col. Allan Sutter, dispatches engineers to inspect the span; the engineers report that the damaged concrete bridge can bear the traffic of the tanks. Col. Sutter also takes serious note of some high ground to the right, which lies in the zone of the 32nd Regiment and remains loaded with enemy activity. Sutter requests authorization from the commanding officer of the 2nd Battalion, 32nd Regiment (Lt. Col. Charles Mount) to bombard the ridge to eliminate it as

a threat during the attack of the following day. Colonel Mount gives his permission to plaster the ridge at 1300; however, by the time word travels through the 7th Division to X Corps and then to the 1st Marine Division, it is past 2000 when the 11th Marines receive the order to fire the ridge. The barrage occurs, but darkness prevents observation of the damage inflicted on the enemy. **In the 1st Marines sector**, preparations are being outlined to attack Yongdungpo on the following day, but the first priority is to retake Hills 80 and 85; Colonel Puller designates the 1st Battalion, 1st Marines as the attacking unit. In conjunction, the 2nd Battalion is to drive to the two bridges which cross the Kalchon on the outskirts of Yongdungpo. The 3rd Battalion is ordered to remain on Lookout Hill; no casualties are sustained by it during the entire day. Within fifteen minutes after securing the heights, General Almond arrives to confer with Col. Puller. During the meeting, Almond authorizes the 1st Marines to bombard Yongdungpo. The Marines gladly oblige the general's order; aircraft and artillery units initiate a day-long barrage against Yongdungpo. Also, while the 1st Marines advance, the army's 32nd Regiment is to move forward to cover the Marines' right flank; the 32nd is to attack across a six mile front to capture Tongdok Mountain, south of the Main Supply Route and about two miles from Yongdungpo. Shortly after dawn, Colonel Hawkins, Commanding Officer 1st Battalion, 1st Marines establishes his outpost on the crest of Hill 118; his arrival occurs just as Companies A and C are confidently throwing back an attack which has emerged from the target hills. Company C, commanded by Captain Robert Wray, is ordered to seize both hills (80 and 85); it will be bolstered by the guns of Major William Bates' Weapons Company (1st Bn., 1st Marines). Company B, 1st Battalion, commanded by Captain Richard Bland, will seize Hill 55 and several villages on the bank of the Han River while Company C is engaged at Hills 80 and 85. The 2nd Platoon, Company C, led by Lt. John Guild, takes the point and moves toward a village which blocks the path to the hills, but after gaining about 500 yards, it is slowed by heavy enemy fire. Captain Wray immediately dispatches the remainder of Company C to augment the assault. The reinforcements split into two groups, move around the flanks of the stalled 2nd Platoon and then ram through the opposition. Fierce firefights develop, but the Marines prevail and the enemy survivors flee hurriedly toward Hill 80. Subsequent to extricating the 1st Platoon, Company C eases into the small village while simultaneously gaining control of the knoll. Still, some obstinate enemy troops remain in the area. A patrol is dispatched to eliminate the threat. During the latter part of the afternoon, Company C, supported by Weapons and Able Companies, resumes the attack to seize Hill 80. The 1st Platoon, led by Lt. William Craven, and the 3rd Platoon, commanded by Lt. Henry Commiskey, advance on the left and right respectively, executing a successful double envelopment which seizes Hill 80 effortlessly. The fall of Hill 80 occurs slightly before dusk, leaving little time to capture the next objective easily. Captain Robert Wray immediately takes steps to seize Hill 85 by ordering yet another double envelopment. Meanwhile, the enemy, expecting another envelopment attack, reform their lines by peeling back both flanks to prevent infiltration through the rear or sides. With support fire from the 1st Platoon and Company C's machine guns, the 2nd Platoon, led by Lt. Guild, advances from the left and drives forward through a sheet of fire, reaching the western slope of Hill 85. Simultaneously, on the right, the 3rd Platoon, led by Lt. Commiskey, drills directly toward the crest of Hill 85. The Communists raise defiant opposition and pound both attacking platoons. Heroism abounds as the Marines bolt toward the crest through a maze of enemy fire. Red machine guns cut down Lt. Guild, inflicting a mortal blow as he nears the summit, but he insists that the fight continue. Meanwhile, Lt. Commiskey is on the point; he leaps way out to the front of his platoon and hits the crest first. Armed only with his pistol, Commiskey dives into a machine gun nest and kills four of the five defenders. He holds

the fifth man down until the platoon catches up, and then he takes out the last defender in the nest. Singlehandedly, Commiskey then races forward singlehandedly assaults another nest, killing two more of the enemy. Finally, Commiskey leads the platoon to the rear of the hill and drives the remaining enemy from the slope. Lt. Henry Commiskey receives the Medal of Honor for his courage in the face of the enemy. Back with the 2nd Platoon, Lt. Guild's wound has not deterred the effort; his Marines continue the charge and reach the summit just after the 3rd Platoon. By this time, the Communists are sprinting down the eastern slopes and fleeing toward the Kalchon River. In conjunction, Lt. Guild, despite the severity of his wounds, continues to inspire his troops. Captain Wray advances to Guild who is astonishingly, still on his feet. Wray calls for a corpsman to aid Guild, but Guild tells Captain Wray that another wounded Marine "needs one (Corpsman) more than I do." Soon after, Lt. Guild succumbs during the morning, the Marines sustain some other casualties which are separate from the attacks to regain the targeted hills. When the 5th Marines had seized the hill on the previous day, no efforts were made to clear the enemy from the terrain that lies between the Kimpo Highway and the Han River. Now those enemy troops execute some nasty ambushes. A small contingent of the 1st Signal Battalion rolls along the highway, stringing wire in the 1st Marines zone; as it approaches the Kalchon Bridge, the Communists spring an ambush and kill or capture the Marines. The Marines on Hill 118 observe the grizzly incident, but they are unable to give aid. Soon after and still under the eyes of the 1st Battalion on Hill 118, another unsuspecting Marine vehicle, carrying four men, approaches the ambush site. Again in agony, the Marines on Hill 118 observe the engineers' truck heading into danger. But their positions are about 1,000 yards away, leaving few options. Captain Barrow, commanding officer, Company A, 1st Battalion, 1st Marines orders his troops to fire in front of the moving vehicle, hoping to force it to turn around. The engineers (Company A) keep advancing and run into a wall of enemy fire, forcing them to abandon the vehicle and break for safety. Three of the Marines make it safely to a rice paddy, but the fourth, PFC Clayton Edwards, becomes an easy prey. The ugly scene is viewed by the stunned Marines upon Hill 118, too far away to help their buddy. Edwards, wounded and lacking ammunition, is captured; one of the Gooks then moves closer and bayonets Edwards in the shoulder. The story does have a happy ending for the Yanks, as PFC Edwards outwits his captors and escapes from captivity while he is being transported aboard a POW train which is heading further north. **In the 7th Infantry Division sector:** The 31st Regiment arrives at Inchon; it deploys south of the 32nd Regiment. The 32nd Regiment, commanded by Col. Charles Beauchamp, launches an attack to seize Anyang-ni and sever the Seoul-Suwon Highway. The column, spearheaded by Tanks of Company A, 73rd Tank Battalion, encounters difficulty as it advances along a small dirt road heading toward the objectives. Three of the forward tanks become damaged when they strike mines and another mine blows up Col. Beauchamp's jeep, killing the driver and wounding the radio operator; Beauchamp dismounts the vehicle just before the accident and he is spared injury. Meanwhile, the road is blocked, hindering the operation. Nonetheless, the regiment continues the attack. Engineers extract about 150 mines from the road. By day's end, the 32nd Regiment seizes T'ongdok Mountain and the regiment also secures part of Copper Mine Hill. The advance costs the 32nd Regiment seven killed and 36 wounded. By dusk, the Regiment is deployed to the right of the Marines.

**September 21 1950 -(Pacific-Korea) (Inchon-Seoul)** Changes occur within the structure of the Marine Air Wing. VMF-214, VMF-323 and VMF(N)-513 are transferred from MAG-33 to MAG-12: the latter unit remains domiciled at Itazuke air base, Japan, and the former two units continue operating off the carriers USS *Sicily* and *Badoeng Strait*. In essence, other than the transfer to

MAG-33, the mission remains the same, to support the ground troops while the other squadrons complete their transfer from Japan to Kimpo. Also, VMF-212, VMF-312 and VMF(N)-542 are transferred from MAG-12 to MAG-33. **X Corps:** General Almond, Commanding Officer X Corps, establishes his command post at Inchon; he assumes control of all forces ashore at 1700. **In the 1st Marine Division sector:** The 3rd Rifle Regiment arrives; the 7th Marines, commanded by Colonel Litzenberg, begins debarking at Inchon; it will move up to the Han River. In conjunction, the 3rd Battalion, 11th Marines, commanded by Major Francis Parry, also arrives; it is attached to the 7th Marines. Colonel Litzenberg arrives at General O.P. Smith's headquarters and inquires about which unit to debark first. Smith replies: "AN INFANTRY BATTALION." Litzenberg then asks: "AND WHAT NEXT?" General Smith responds: "ANOTHER INFANTRY BATTALION." **In the 5th Marines sector:** The enemy mounts a morning counterattack against the Marines; the company size contingent is repelled prior to the Marines reinitiating the attack along the tracks and highway, toward Seoul. The 1st Battalion advances between the river and the rails, while the 3rd Battalion, to the right, moves through the lines of the 2nd Battalion and pushes forward along the railroad tracks. The 1st Battalion seizes several small hills located south of the highway and the railroad tracks that parallel the Han River; the prizes include Hills 96 and 68; the Marines dig in and hold Hill 68 throughout the night. The 1st Battalion reaches Sogang at the southern tip of the hills, placing it within three miles of the key railroad station (Yongsan) in Seoul. The 2nd Battalion remains in reserve several miles east of Haengju along the railroad tracks near Hill 51. The Marines of the 2nd Battalion discover a giant toy; Sgt. James Higgins and one other Marine commandeer an enemy locomotive, and after tinkering with it, the novice engineers actually get the engine running. The advancing train slowly comes to a halt near the regimental command post and it causes some excitement. The train's stack bellows huge puffs of smoke that can be seen for miles. Sergeant Higgins is emphatically instructed to get his toy back to the rear before the enemy guns use it as a marker to pound the area. Meanwhile, the 3rd Battalion drives through increasing resistance and gains about five and one-half miles to seize Hill 104, north of the tracks; S.K. Marines are then given responsibility to hold it. Following the fall of Hill 104, the 3rd Battalion pivots northeast and drives toward Hill 296, situated at the western fringe of Seoul. But the western approaches to the city are insulated by a chain of hills stretched along a north south line. By dark, the 3rd Battalion advances to Hill 216, located about six miles east of the ferry crossing and Hill 125. Also, during the night (21st-22nd) an enemy shell strikes the command post of the 5th Marines which is located in a house northwest of Seoul. The unexpected shell inflicts damage, including the severe wounding of the regimental executive officer, Lt. Colonel Lawrence Hays. In conjunction, Hays is evacuated, but Colonel Murray, only slightly wounded in the blast, orders the CP to be moved to a nearby cave on the opposite slope of a hill. **In the 1st Marines sector,** the attack to seize Yongdungp'o resumes at dawn. The night (20th-21st) has passed without action erupting between the ground forces, but Marine artillery has been serenading Yongdungp'o throughout the night with riveting fire that keeps the town aglow. At 0630, subsequent to the bombardment, the Marines advance. To the north, the 1st Battalion's Company B lunges from its positions and begins the attack, supported by tank fire and mortar and machine gun fire on Hill 85. The ground troops charge across the rickety bridge and reach the eastern bank. From there, the troops move to an undefended knob on the left which peers down on the Han River. Company B's advance then slows as the Communists have fortified the two dikes at the northern entrances to the city. The two obstacles are each manned by a company of troops; one dike stretches the length of the western fringe of the town and then joins the other which parallels the Han River north of Yongdungp'o at the Kalchon Bridge. Company B focuses on the

latter, giving its rear and left flank the protection of the river while it advances doggedly. Enemy fire takes a toll on Company B, but the Marines press eastward, gaining about 2,000 yards by about noon. At this point, the second dike, 500 yards to their front, becomes the priority, and the Marines ignite a furious exchange with the Reds. Nevertheless, the enemy fights the Marines to a deadly stalemate with both sides sustaining severe casualties. Marine support weapons continue to lend assistance, but some complications develop as the artillery becomes apprehensive about firing too close to the rear of Company B to strike the dike there. By late afternoon, the confusion is untangled and the southern barrier is hammered by the artillery and planes. The enemy takes the punishing blows without collapsing, and the attack remains stalled. By dusk, Company C and weapons company are dispatched over the bridge to augment Company B and to help establish a solid night perimeter. Meanwhile, the 2nd Battalion attacks simultaneously (0630), jumping off from its positions at the southern extremity of the line; Companies D and E lead the way across the first bridge, completing the trek without difficulty. The ground Marines spread out to assault the second bridge. Then they are suddenly, although not unexpectedly, brought under tenacious fire originating on a ridge to the right of the highway. Col. Sutter requests immediate artillery relief, but again there is a delay in getting a response. Sutter takes it on himself to alleviate the problem by ordering his attached mortars to ring the heights with fire. In the meantime, Company D advances on the left of the road inching toward a formidable dike to the front of the Kalchon's western branch. Companies E and F grind forward toward the high ground. The fighting becomes ferocious on both sides of the road. By noon, Company D reaches a point about 100 yards from the dike while Companies E and F continue to slug their way toward the crest. Casualties mount as the day progresses. Enemy fire keeps Company D at bay for the duration of the afternoon. Meanwhile Companies E and F make expensive progress. By evening, they reach positions near the crest, but at high cost. Close-quartered fighting on the summit fails to gain the ridge by nightfall, prompting Colonel Sutter to order both Companies to disengage and pull back to Company D's positions to establish a night perimeter there. The Marines are treated to some phenomenal flying by the pilots of the corsairs who cover the disengagement; the planes, coordinated by Lt. Norman Vining (air controller), rivet the area 100 yards to their front with rockets and bombs, and then the planes dazzle the Marines by indenting the ground with steel zippers about thirty yards beyond their noses to forestall any enemy advance during the withdrawal. The menacing enemy fire inflicts 85 casualties, including eleven dead on the 2nd Battalion today, increasing its losses to a danger point; since landing at Inchon, the battalion has sustained 28 killed and 226 Marines wounded in action. Colonel Puller, aware of the high casualties, orders the 3rd Battalion (at 1530) to advance from Lookout Hill to relieve the 2nd Battalion. Soon after, the 3rd Battalion darts from the hill and drives northeast to outflank the dike which is keeping Company D from making progress. Initially, the 3rd Battalion advances against minor opposition as it crosses the Kalchon, but the enemy raises fierce resistance, including murderous machine gun fire in front of the southwestern approaches to Yongdungp'o. Undaunted, the 3rd Battalion's machine guns stream fire into the enemy positions at the levees, quieting the obstinate enemy battery. The 3rd battalion maintains its attack and remains under severe effective fire as it nears the menacing dike. By dusk, and subsequent to a cost of eleven Marines killed and eighteen wounded, the dike falls to the 3rd Battalion which now stands north of the 2nd Battalion at the bridge leading to Yongdungp'o; a night perimeter is established on the same side (left) side of the highway as the 2nd Battalion. Basically, at nightfall, the North Koreans have fought the 1st and 2nd Battalions to a standstill in the northwest and southwest respectively. And there is a growing apprehension concerning the fate of another unit, Company

A, 1st Battalion, which departed its positions near Hill 80 during the morning to begin trudging through the rice paddies after Company B bogged down at the bridge. Company A, 1st Battalion, commanded by Capt. Robert Barrow, drives discreetly toward the dikes located in the rice paddies near the center of the enemy line. The contingent moves diligently but with caution. The 2nd and 3rd Platoons advance on the right and left respectively with the 1st Platoon trailing the 3rd Platoon. The staggered columns traverse in the shadows of some low hills taking a circuitous route to a point west of the primary portion of the city and near the center of the enemy line. Concealed behind a lofty dike, the men regroup, and then they move through the shoulder-high rice with its unique scent and beyond to the uninviting muddy Kal-ch'on Creek. Amazingly, the blazing battles at both ends of the line continue with such intensity that the mud Marines of Company A, reinforced, emerge on the opposite bank of the creek without detection. The troops take refuge behind yet another dike to reform before entering the city. Unembarrassed by their grimy uniforms and unsocial scent, the Marines enter the city. Surprisingly, there is no welcoming committee, but the Marines are not offended. They start their own tour, venturing directly through the heart of the town, picking up the distinct sounds of heavy fighting to their left and right. They are also able to spot Marine planes which are plastering the town. Instinctively, Capt. Barrow realizes that his command is in the middle of the enemy lines and cut off from the other Marine units. Undeterred by the situation, Barrow continues the advance. By noon, Company A advances several hundred yards, but still no enemy troops are discovered. A check of the buildings bears no fruit. Barrow radios Col. Jack Hawkins requesting instructions, and he is advised to continue the impertinent advance. Barrow senses trouble due to the activity occurring to the southwest; he orders Lt. McClelland's 1st Platoon to pivot and swing from the left side of the highway to the right. His instincts prove true. Enemy reinforcements are spotted on the road leading into town from the direction of Seoul. The enemy advance then comes to a succinct halt when Lt. John Sword's 3rd platoon pours withering fire into the column, wiping it out. At about the same time, both lead platoons begin spitting bullets toward small units and individual Communist troops in the eastern sector of the town. The blazing fire emerging from the barrels of the Marines' guns in the middle of the enemy lines nearly mesmerizes the Reds in the area. Totally dismayed, they break for safety. Other North Korean troops, further in the distance, spot the Marines, but fail to identify them. Wasting no time, the 3rd Platoon races through town on the left side of the road and once at the east side of town, it deploys defensively; Sword deploys his troops on both sides of a 30-foot high dike, which is connected by a road to the Inchon-Seoul road. The defensive positions give the Marines a commanding view of the giant sand spit which contains an airfield and some approaches to Seoul. Soon after, the 3rd Platoon detects another large enemy force advancing toward the spit. The Marines swing their light machine guns into position and begin to bludgeon the column. In the meantime, other Marines rush forward with heavy machine guns and add fuel to the fire. The Marines relentlessly maintain their fire, shredding the column on naked ground. The North Korean contingent sustains horrendous casualties, but some enemy troops manage to escape the whirlwind of fire. The 3rd Platoon is soon joined by the remainder of Company A, giving it a ringside seat in the midst of the enemy's fortress. For Company A, it has already been an incredible day and there is more to come. While the majority of the 1st and 2nd Battalions are exchanging blows with the enemy at the opposite end of the town, Company A is sitting atop the strategic road junction of the enemy. Company A digs in tightly while the enemy is totally occupied at the western portion of the town. A brief firefight then erupts between the Marines and a tiny detachment of North Koreans, who appear to be taking cover behind a colossal hill of coal on the other side of the road junction. One Marine hurls a grenade into the

midst of the enemy and surprises even himself; an earth shattering explosion follows the detonation of the grenade. The alleged pile of coal is actually stacked ammunition covered with camouflage. Company A, with the tossing of one grenade, has quickly informed the remainder of the 1st Marines where it is deployed. Although isolated, the men of Company A hold the key to the demise of the Yongdungp'o Garrison, providing they can hold throughout the night to await reinforcements. During the balance of the afternoon, the North Koreans unsuccessfully attempt to destroy the Devil Dogs at the intersection by sending repeated assault parties from the south. In the process of thwarting the attacks, the Marines have expended much of their ammunition. But while inspecting a multi-story building near the intersection, they discover large amounts of captured army equipment, medical supplies and heavy caliber ammunition. Although they are unable to utilize the ammunition, the plasma is most welcome. As dusk settles over the area, Company A deploys to defend a compact 100-yard patch of the levee, slightly north of the road junction. Barrow staggers his troops on the slopes of the macadam road there where it stretches about 25 feet above ground level. Barrow's BARmen and machinegunners bolster the riflemen by positioning themselves along the shoulders at the top in order to have the ability to swivel in any direction to place a line of fire. The 3rd Platoon fans out in a semi-circle at the northern end while the 2nd and 1st Platoons deploy on the east and west respectively; the men of the 60-mm mortars section, lacking ammunition after their afternoon's work, disperse into the foxholes and become infantry. About two hundred Marines have their fingers in the dike and they expect to see the colors in the morning. However, the North Koreans have a different attitude, and they are equally determined to expel Company A. Soon after daylight vanishes, the quaint noises of enemy armor is heard reverberating along the road; five T-34's, lacking Infantry, begin closing toward the roadblock, but they swerve left slightly before the blockage and run nose-to-tail along a road that parallels the imperiled dike. Suddenly, from a distance of about thirty yards, the enemy armor spews 85-mm shells and accompanying machine gun fire toward the Marines' positions. The troops are properly prepared; their foxholes are especially deep, saving them from harm as the shells shatter the earth harmlessly. The 3.5 rocket launcher teams, having little experience with the new weapons, spring from their holes and unleash their fire. The results are inspiring as the impertinent Marines demolish the lead Tank and observe the metal giant as it bursts into flames. Nevertheless, the trailing Armor maintain their advance, moving to the end of the perimeter. The T-34s run the course and pound the Marines' positions with resounding fire before sprinting away to initiate another trip, but to their dismay, the Marine rocket teams dispense some additional lethal medicine from their arsenal. Two more T-34's sustain hits during the charge, prompting both cripples to wobble away. The remaining two enemy tanks are less than inspired by the loss of their comrades, but they complete the circuit and then make one final pass before they vanish into the town. Subsequent to the departure of the enemy armor, the Marines shake the dust from their faces and check for casualties. Astoundingly, only one Marine becomes a casualty due to suffering a concussion. But the night is only beginning and the Marines expect even more punishing blows to occur. In the meantime, between 1900-2100, an aura of tranquility is in the air, except for some minor incursions; McClelland's 1st Platoon spots and kills several enemy troops who attempt to remove equipment from the multi-story building. The evening passes slowly, but slightly after 2100, the tempo begins to rise as the enemy becomes increasingly frustrated by the Marines' ability to withstand their attacks. The enemy strikes a hard blow against Lt. Sword's Platoon (3rd), but the northern semi-circle of the defense remains steadfast during the non-stop skirmish. After about fifteen minutes, the North Koreans disengage, seemingly to catch their breath. Meanwhile, the 3rd Platoon stands ready for the next assault. Within about thirty

minutes, the Communists again pound against the northern extension of the road junction, only to be humbled under fire as the Marines raise rock resistance, unaffected by the raucous screams of "Banzai." The defenders are equally unimpressed by the multi-colored flares, which seemingly paint an iridescent glow on the faces of the enemy as they succumb in front of the Marine positions. The enemy mounts several additional attacks, all futile. By midnight the 3rd Platoon, despite its depleting ammunition, has thrown back five assaults, each about Company strength. One Communist POW manages to escape from the clutches of Company A slightly before the fifth assault. While fleeing northward toward safety, an interpreter informs the Marines that the prisoner is repeatedly yelling, while he scampers away: "DON'T ATTACK ANYMORE!" "THEY'RE TOO STRONG FOR YOU!" As luck would have it, no additional assaults are mounted by the enemy to the delight of the Marines in Company A. The North Koreans, unable to gain access to their supplies, essentially relinquish Yongdungp'o to Puller's 1st Marines. Nevertheless, sporadic fighting breaks out during the remainder of the night. At dawn's first light, Company A begins to assess the battle; it counts 275 enemy bodies around its perimeter, the majority of them near the 3rd Platoon. Soon after, the four T-34 tanks that scampered back into town are discovered abandoned there. Company C, with a Herculean effort, retains its hold on the eastern edge of the city throughout the night. Meanwhile, the North Koreans (elements of the N.K. 18th Division and the N.K. 87th Regiment, N.K. 9th Division) which have been unable to eliminate the Americans at the rear door of Yongdungp'o, evacuate the city before dawn on the 22nd. At 0800 (22nd), the 1st and 2nd Battalions, 1st Marines attack and encounter only some trifling opposition as they advance into Yongdungp'o and occupy it, as well as hooking up with the isolated Company C, which is the sole occupant of the town when the bulk of the battalions arrive. The North Koreans sustain heavy casualties at Yongdungp'o; one battalion of the N.K. 87th Regiment suffers an 80 percent casualty rate. **In the 7th Marines zone:** Colonel Litzenberg establishes his command post at Wonjong-ni by 2200; the village is about two miles south of Kimpo airfield. In conjunction, H&S Company and the 3rd Battalion, commanded by Major Maurice Roach, deploy in assembly areas close to the command post. Lt. Colonel Thornton Hinkle's 2nd Battalion arrives at Hill 131, about one mile north of the airfield, at 0100 (22nd); it will protect the airfield and a nearby river crossing. Also, the 1st Battalion, commanded by Lt. Colonel Raymond Davis, remains at Inchon; it unloads the vessels in the convoy. **In the 7th Infantry Division sector:** The 32nd Regiment, operating on the right flank of the 1st Marines, makes good progress; its 1st Battalion captures the remainder of Copper Mine Hill, then seizes Hill 300 outside of Anyang-ni. In addition, elements of the 2nd Battalion, 32nd Regiment advance on the left of the army and adjacent to the Marines sector and seize the heights about two miles south of Yongdungp'o. Beauchamp's regiment is making excellent progress during its second day in the field. By 1430, the reconnaissance company of the 7th Division reaches Anyang-ni and soon after, it is ordered to swing south and attack the airfield below Suwon. By dusk, the 1st Battalion, 32nd Regiment holds the heights northeast of Anyang-ni and dominates the highway east of it. In conjunction, elements move north and make contact with the 2nd Battalion at Toksan-ni. The 2nd Battalion deploys along the Seoul-Suwon highway about two miles south of Anyang-ni. In the meantime, the reconnaissance company, 7th Division, augmented by tanks, drives toward the airfield at about 1400; however, the contingent has no maps to use as a guide. While the force is en route to the objective, naval planes precede its arrival and plaster Suwon, destroying a prominent wooden structure which sits upon the large stone wall above the entrance to the town; the rubble clogs the entrance, compelling the attacking unit and its tanks to seek another entrance route. The column then ventures into the city, joined in the meantime by one

platoon of engineers (Company B, 18th Engineer Combat Bn.). It is an eventful advance, with Lt. Col. Henry Hampton (G-3 7th Division), Major Irwin Edwards (G-2 7th Division) and two enlisted troops in the lead. Enemy troops throw up some resistance, but it is overcome. When the lead elements approach the center of Suwon, two N.K. Officers in a U.S. jeep attempt to escape, but Major Edwards rings out a shot and shoots the driver; the other N.K. officer, a major attached to the N.K. 105th Armored Division, apparently stimulated by the incident decides to surrender. Meanwhile, the column engages several groups of enemy troops as it drives through the town toward the airfield; thirty-seven North Koreans are captured. Subsequently, the column advances to a point about three miles south of Suwon, then discovers (the unit lacks a map) it is one mile beyond the airfield. As the night of the 21st begins to wind down, Colonel Hampton and the platoon of engineers head toward Suwon to make contact with the reconnaissance company; communications between the force at Suwon and Division have ceased. At division headquarters, concern continues to grow. At 2125, subsequent to an order by Major General David Barr, Task Force Hannum speeds toward Suwon. The armored TF, commanded by Lt. Col. Calvin Hannum, commanding officer of the 73rd Tank Battalion, is composed of Company B, 73rd Tank Bn, commanded by Capt. Harold R. Beavers, and the advance group of the battalion in addition to Company K, 32nd Regiment, Battery C, 48th FABn and a medical contingent. While the armored column is en route, Lt. Col. John W. Paddock (G-2 7th Div.), accompanying the relief force, makes radio contact with Major Edwards' command. Slightly before midnight, the armored column reaches Suwon, which is illuminated by a full moon. Similarly to the reconnaissance company, the force is compelled to bypass the destroyed East Gate and move in through another part of the aged stone wall. Although the reconnaissance company has cleared the town and taken prisoners. The tanks receive a deadly surprise when they enter the town. An enemy tank, concealed in a house, fires one round and knocks out the point tank, killing Capt. Harold Beavers (CO, Company B). A blazing exchange of fire then erupts and that Russian T-34 tank is destroyed; however, another T-34 escapes, losing the pursuing U.S. tanks at the town's exit. The U.S. tanks hold their positions until dawn to avoid any possibility of another enemy ambush. In the meantime, the reconnaissance company, which remains in position south of the town, detects (to the north) the conspicuous noise of rolling tanks rumbling forward in the darkness. Anticipating the arrival of the armored column and in response to a previous request, Jeeps move out to greet the column and lead it into the perimeter. One tank officer, Lt. Van Sant, believes the tanks have the distinct sounds of T-34s, but his theory is disregarded. Four jeeps move out. The lead vehicle is driven by Major Edwards; Col. Henry Hampton (7th Division G-3), grabs a ride in one of the other jeeps. Soon after, the approaching tanks come into view and Major Edwards signals the armor by blinking his headlights. At the same time, Col. Hampton begins walking toward the tanks to greet the Americans, but as Lt. Van Sant had suggested, the tanks are North Korean and they are advancing with their machine guns firing. Hampton continues walking forward, apparently still convinced that the tanks are American. He is quickly cut down by the rapid fire, and several other Americans are also killed during the incident. The charging tanks drive forward and one crashes into Captain Edwards' Jeep, but he evades injury and escapes; Edwards rejoins his command the following morning. While the four T-34s are speeding toward the lines of the reconnaissance company, one of the escaping troops races back to the perimeter, just ahead of the T-34s, and he sounds the alarm. Lt. Jesse Van Sant's tanks are close to the perimeter line and they immediately prepare to give the enemy armor a lethal kiss. The first two T-34 tanks reach the perimeter and stand about thirty yards from the Pershings when Van Sant issues the order to fire; both enemy tanks are decimated. The two trailing enemy

tanks halt their advance and make a hasty retreat toward Suwon. At the first sign of daylight, Major Edwards leads the reconnaissance company and the accompanying tanks back about one mile to the Suwon airfield.

**September 22 1950 -(Pacific-Korea)** The 65th Regimental Combat Team, composed primarily of the 65th Puerto Rican Infantry Regiment, debarks at Pusan. **(Inchon-Seoul)** By today, Eighth Army is making progress, prompting General MacArthur to scrap the proposed plan for an amphibious invasion at Kunsan, but Eighth Army is not yet aware that the enemy has begun a full withdrawal. U.S. Eighth Army Intelligence reports: "ALTHOUGH THE ENEMY IS APPARENTLY FALLING BACK IN ALL SECTORS, THERE ARE NO INDICATIONS OF AN OVER-ALL PLANNED DISENGAGEMENT AND WITHDRAWAL." **In the 1st Marine Division sector:** The 1st Marines enters abandoned Yongdungp'o during the morning and hooks up with Captain Barrow's Company C. Contingents of the 1st Marines, operating on the left, probe eastward and advance about two miles to reach the demolished bridges (rail and road) at the Han River. In other activity, the 1st Marine Division issues the order establishing its battle plan for the seizure of Seoul. The 1st Marines is to ford the Han River near Yongdungp'o and hook up with the 5th Marines at its positions north (Division right) of the city. In conjunction, the 7th Marines, which had arrived on the 21st at Inchon, moves out to deploy north of the 5th Marines, establishing a three regiment line with the 7th Marines in the center. Meanwhile, General Almond, X Corps Commander, alters General O.P. Smith's order; he adds the S.K. Marines and the S.K. 17th Regiment to the assault force. The 1st Marine Division had expected to capture the city with its own components. **In the 5th Marines sector,** the objective is to reduce the remaining hill to the front of Seoul. The North Korean defense line at the western fringes of Seoul from north to south begins at Hill 296, west of Seoul's Sodaemun Prison and slightly south of Kaesong highway. The line moves from the summit of Hill 296 arcing to the east and to the south following two spur ridges for a distance of about two and one-half miles to the Han River. The largest portion of this erratic ridge line is controlled by a trio of equally elevated hills (105 meters), each named Hills 105 (North, Center and South); Hills 105 North and Center are situated north of the highway and rail routes which shadow the northern bank of the Han River as they lead into Seoul; Hill 105 South sits between the Han and the road and railroad tracks. The two strategic hills dominate the road which runs across the saddle between Hills 105 Center and South into Seoul and the primary Rail Line ((Pusan-to-Manchuria Kyonggi). At 0700, the attack commences. The 1st and 3rd Battalions advance on the right and left respectively, while the 1st S.K. Marines drive up the center. Ironically, each moves against a separate Hill 105. The 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines advances from Hill 216 and strikes against Hill 296; by 0945, the battalion reports that its northern objective is secure, subsequent to eliminating moderate resistance. However, the report is premature as the bulk of the North Korean resistance is on the southern slopes of Hill 296, which have not yet been taken. And Hill 296 is bonded to Hills 56, 88 and 105 N, adding to the depth of the resistance in front of Seoul. Further complicating the task of the Marines, Hills 105 C, 72 and 105 S, which swing southward, are also heavily defended. The enemy mounts a determined counterattack against the 3rd Battalion, but the Marines, supported by tanks, force the North Koreans to pay a heavy price, including the capture of forty prisoners. During the afternoon, patrols of the 3rd Battalion encounter stiff resistance when they venture northeast of Hill 216. At the village of Nokpon-ni, a fierce firefight develops. The Marines lose two killed and eleven wounded before the fighting subsides at dark. At about that time, the 3rd Battalion receives orders to prepare to eliminate enemy infiltrators who are moving in from the south, southeast and the

northeast, as the Communists try to retake the lost terrain. The 1st Battalion, 5th Marines assaults Hill 105 South and it encounters heavy opposition, some of which is raised by a captured American Machine Gun. Company A advances through Company C to launch the assault, supported by fire from Company B, but just after the three assault Platoons of A Company become positioned, enemy fire forbids any immediate advance by them. Eventually the lower slopes of 105 south are seized by Company A; however, Lt. Schimmenti becomes seriously wounded, and Lt. Nathaniel Mann is killed. By about 1500, Company C concludes its wide sweep and it pounds the enemy's right flank. During the same time period, Company B slides through the positions of Company A and hammers the forward slopes. Later, a fierce Artillery and Mortar bombardment is called into the fight. MAG-33 commits its Planes to further loosen the resistance. At about 1720, the horrific Air and ground bombardment ceases; within fifteen additional minutes, Hill 105 South is seized by the 1st Battalion. The three attacking companies sustain a total of twelve men killed and thirty-one wounded. In conjunction, the support flights of VMF-212, VMF(N)-542, and VMF-323 greatly aid all three assault Battalions. Meanwhile, the 2nd Battalion, S.K. Marines launches its attack to secure Hill 105 center, but two preliminary objectives to its front must first be taken; these knolls are called Hills 66 and 88. This particular struggle is arduous. Enemy fire fiercely hits the South Koreans, inflicting serious casualties. Marine aircraft support the effort, but nonetheless, Hills 66 and 88 remain under enemy control. The South Koreans retire to their starting point, Hill 104, and reinitiate the attack on the following day. In conjunction, information subsequently gathered from enemy prisoners gives evidence that the crack N.K. 25th Brigade, commanded by Major General Wol Ki Chan and composed of 4,000-5,000 troops, sustains forty percent casualties today. Another enemy unit, the N.K. 78th Independent Regiment, commanded by Colonel Pak Han Lin, also takes high casualties. By about dusk, Colonel Murray, reacting to the lack of progress of the South Koreans, orders the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines to withdraw one Company to Hill 68; the two remaining companies hold Hill 105 South. **In the 7th Infantry Division sector:** At dawn, TF Hannum departs a deserted Suwon; it advances past the scene of the previous night's confrontation, discovering the American bodies; the column moves to the airfield and joins the reconnaissance company there. During the latter part of the morning, the 31st Regiment (minus 3rd Battalion) arrives at the Suwon Airfield to relieve TF Hannum, which then heads toward Anyang-ni to rejoin the 7th Division. With control of the Airfield acquired by U.S. troops, the U.N. now has another airfield from which to strike the enemy; it is located about twenty miles south of Seoul. In conjunction, subsequent to the arrival of Col. Richard Ovenshine's 31st Regiment, the reconnaissance company probes southward, grinding toward Osan. In other activity, the 31st Regiment, 7th Division runs into difficulty; Company B walks into an ambush about seven miles northeast of Anyang-ni. The company is unable to overcome the enemy. The commanding officer, 1st Battalion, Lt. Col. Don Faith, recalls the battered company, but the enemy initiates pursuit. Company B, somewhat disoriented, reaches the vicinity of Kwanmundong. It is bolstered by other elements of the 1st Battalion, which repel the enemy thrust. Meanwhile, the 2nd Battalion, 32nd Regiment, commanded by Lt. Col. Charles Mount, reinitiates its advance on the right flank of the 1st Marines; it captures several hills between one and two miles south of the highway and the rail bridges that span the Han River.

**September 23 1950 -(United States)** Congress overrides a Presidential veto, enabling the McCarran Internal Security Act to become law, mandating that all Communist organizations must open their membership records and disclose their finances; in addition, the act requires all members of the Communist Party (in U.S.) to register with the Justice Department. **(Pacific-Japan)** General

MacArthur, upon his return to Tokyo, sends a message to the Joint Chiefs of Staff in Washington, explaining that at the earliest opportunity, he is going to restore President Syngman Rhee, his cabinet and other government officials to power. **(Pacific-Korea)** The Swedish Red Cross field hospital contingent arrives at Pusan. **(Inchon-Seoul)** X Corps Headquarters relocates from Inchon to Ascom City. General Almond impatiently complains of what he considers a slow Marine advance. He suggests to General O.P. Smith that the 1st Marines should execute an envelopment attack by utilizing the terrain south of the Han River. In turn, General O.P. Smith rejects the idea, choosing not to divide the 1st and 5th Marines by a river. General Almond, determined to give MacArthur the city of Seoul, issues an ultimatum to Smith, giving him twenty-four hours to break through the stiff resistance or he would commit the 7th Infantry Division by ordering the 32nd Regiment to envelop the enemy positions in Seoul. In conjunction, Seoul, a strategic military objective, is becoming an equally important political prize, fraying the nerves on both sides of the argument. Meanwhile, three days of resolute enemy resistance at the city continues to forestall the capture of Seoul. **In the 1st Marine Division zone:** The 1st Marines Regiment advances nearly without incident to the Han River. The 3rd Battalion captures Hill 108, the strategic high ground that controls the now damaged bridges that span the river. Later, at 2200, headquarters issues an order instructing the 1st Marines to ford the Han River on the following morning; the order confirms an earlier verbal directive. **In the 5th Marines sector,** the 2nd Battalion, S.K. Marines resumes its attack toward Hill 105 Center, but the resistance on the two knolls (Hills 66 and 88), designated Hill 56 by the U.S. Marines, remains tenacious, and the South Koreans continue to take additional casualties without making any significant progress. At about 1300, Colonel Roise (2nd Battalion, 5th Marines) pushes his command post forward to the base of Hill 104. By the middle of the afternoon, upon authorization from Colonel Murray, Roise's 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines replaces the South Korean Marines and carries the fight. At this time, it is still not known to the Marines that they are encountering the enemy's Main Line of Resistance. Subsequent to a moderate artillery barrage, the 2nd Battalion advances, bolstered by one Platoon of Tanks. Companies D and F attack while Company E offers support fire from the eastern slopes of Hill 104. Company F, on the right, jumps off from its positions south of the railroad to capture the heights below the railroad tunnel. Meanwhile Company D, led by 1st Lt. H.J. Smith, advances along a sunken road moving toward Hill 56, north of the tunnel. Complications quickly develop when the assault troops begin crossing about 1,000 yards of rice paddies. The point tank, unable to pass through a huge ditch, becomes immobilized. Consequently, the four trailing tanks stall. Three tanks divert and shadow the railroad tracks, while a fourth remains in the paddy to shepherd the ground Marines. Meanwhile, Company F, led by Captain Peters, is incurring heavy casualties. A mortar section is ordered to move up to support Company F, but the instructions, according to Lt. Sansing, are not received on his radio. This snafu costs the company heavily as its three platoons lack 60-mm fire support while they ascend Hill 56 under sheets of heavy enemy fire. In the meantime, Company D, commanded by Lt. H.J. Smith, manages to successfully navigate the sunken road. It easily reaches its initial objective. However, the 1st Platoon, led by Lt. Heck, launches its attack on the primary objective, Smith's Ridge (dubbed Smith's Ridge in honor of Lt. H.J. Smith). The 1st Platoon swings to the left to lead the assault while the 2nd and 3rd Platoons move against the slopes of Hill 56. The 1st Platoon advances effortlessly until it reaches open ground about halfway from the objective. Suddenly, menacing layers of fire, originating from a huge knob on the southern slope of Smith's Ridge, crash violently upon the exposed Marines, slimming their numbers. The 1st Platoon contains less than half its strength after the several-minute ordeal. The platoon leader, Lt. Heck, receives a

mortal wound, and his top NCO, Sergeant T. Crowson, receives a severe wound. Lt. H.J. Smith enters the field of fire to personally extricate the beleaguered 1st Platoon. Meanwhile, the 2nd and 3rd Platoons (Company D) maintain their efforts to seize the northeastern slopes of Hill 56. Nevertheless, the enemy remains entrenched, giving little ground, and simultaneously, counterattacks are mounted. The 2nd Battalion repulses the enemy attacks, but it is unable to secure the enemy held ridges by dark. Company D's Commander, Lt. H.J. Smith, then directs his beleaguered command to establish night positions on the high ground; the unit is out of contact with friendly forces. On the eastern slopes, Company F also has spent the day in a wild slugfest. It doggedly advances against heavy resistance to seize the railroad tunnel (northeastern slopes Hill 56). The 1st Platoon, led by Lt. Anderson, attacks an enemy strong point near the tunnel, but ferocious enemy fire cuts the platoon down to twenty-seven men. Undaunted, the weary contingent forges ahead and engages the enemy at close-quarters, exchanging grenades and firing from point-blank range; the enemy force, estimated to be company strength, is annihilated. Subsequent to the fierce battle, a mere seven Marines of the 1st Platoon remain unscathed, the rest have been either killed or wounded. The survivors of the 1st Platoon receive orders to return to the company positions; all the wounded and most of the Marine dead are brought back. In conjunction, the troops of Anderson's 1st Platoon and Lt. Nolan's 2nd Platoon are consolidated as Company F establishes night positions, about fifty yards from the isolated 3rd Platoon of Lt. Albert Belbusti. Both Company D and Company F hold precarious positions and each is isolated, but anticipated enemy counterattacks never develop during the night (23rd-24th). It could be said that the incessant firing of the 11th Marines' howitzers throughout the night upon the enemy positions might have been the neutralizer. In the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines sector, enemy troop positions near Nokpon-ni come under effective bombardment as weapons company troops, poised on Hill 296, experiment and blast the troop formations with fire from a captured enemy howitzer. Also, Company H, augmented by tanks, engages the enemy throughout the day. The 1st Battalion, 5th Marines, similar to the 3rd Battalion, had been assigned defensive duties, but its positions on Hill 105 South remain under fire throughout the day. The opposition is especially effective; Companies B and C are unable to move about and the troops lack a resupply of ammo, food and water until after dusk. Nevertheless, the Marine air support, although hindered by enemy smoke pots, successfully carries out six missions including a stunning blow; planes (attached to VMF-214) led by Lt. Colonel Lischeid pummel an enemy troop concentration, thereby aborting a counterattack against Hill 105 South. In other activity, the recently arrived 7th Marines, commanded by Colonel Homer Litzenberg, receives orders to advance from Inchon to the Han River; it is to cross and deploy behind the 5th Marines headquarters (Regimental) and the 3rd Battalion ford the river during the latter part of the morning, and slightly after 1700, Col. Litzenberg establishes his command post on the north bank of the river. The 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines remains in position northwest of Kimpo; it will be relieved on the following day by an army unit. Meanwhile, the 1st Battalion, 7th Marines continues debarking at Inchon. **In the 7th Infantry Division area:** The 1st Battalion, 32nd Regiment secures Hill 290, located about three miles below the Han River and about seven miles southeast of Yongdungp'o; seizure of the hill gives the 7th Division strategic high ground which commands the southeastern approaches to the Han and to Seoul. Meanwhile, the 31st Regiment, operating about thirty miles south of Seoul, assumes responsibility for Suwon and its airfield; it is to secure the town and capture the heights south of the airfield. The reconnaissance company, which captures prisoners in Suwon, is informed by the POWs that the N.K. 105th Armored Division had been in Choch'iwon on the 18th en route to bolster the Seoul defenders. The 31st Regiment maintains a steady eye on the

southern approach routes to Suwon in search of the enemy armor.

**September 24 1950 -(Pacific-Korea-Inchon-Seoul)** The 3rd Battalion, 187th Airborne Regiment arrives at Kimpo airfield by air from Ashiya, Japan; the airborne troops take responsibility for the airfield. Also, the 17th Regiment, 7th Division arrives at Inchon from Pusan where it had been floating reserve, Eighth Army; the regiment debarks on the 25th and will be in action within four additional days. In enemy-held Seoul, the N.K. 18th Division, which had fought in the vicinity of Yongdungp'o, regroups and prepares to evacuate Seoul; it will depart Seoul on the 25th, heading north to Ch'orwon via the Uijongbu Road. **In the 1st Marine Division zone:** As usual, the Marine aviators are overtaxed. The 2nd Battalion receives much air support; VMF-214, commanded by Lt. Col. Lischeid, strikes enemy positions every two hours, committing five planes to each mission. In addition, VMF-212 establishes a record by executing twelve flights including forty-six sorties. **In the 5th Marines sector,** the North Koreans retain control of Hills 66 (Hill 56 by Marines) and 88 to the front of Hill 105 Center, having repulsed the S.K. Marines and the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines since the 22nd. According to OpnO 26-50, Hill 105-N is the final objective of the 2nd Battalion. However, Smith's Ridge and Hill 88 must also be taken by the beleaguered 2nd Battalion. Company D, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines drives against Hill 66 (56) in synchronization with contingents of the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines which attack from their positions on Hill 296 to strike the enemy's flank. Company D watched the previous night pass under relative calm. Company F, 2nd Battalion has been hit especially hard, and its three platoon leaders (Nolan, Anderson and Belbusti) have all been wounded. About 2,500 Communist troops stand in front of the two scheduled attacking companies. At 0610, the heavy guns of the 11th Marines signal the imminent attack, and planes (VMF-323) arrive to bolster the twenty-minute bombardment. At 0630, Company F drives from the eastern slope of Hill 56 (Lt. Harry Nolan has been evacuated). Lt. Belbusti leads about twenty troops toward the heights east of the railroad tunnel while Lt. Anderson jumps off with the able-bodied men of the 2nd and 3rd Platoons, now numbering about twenty men. The attack receives some added muscle when planes (VMF-323) zoom overhead at low levels, dropping bombs in close proximity to the charging Marines. The attack on the east slope succeeds, and F Company seizes high ground from which it gains the advantage. Later, planes attached to VMF-214 arrive to assure control of the area. Following the fierce firefights, both platoons are ordered to push forward toward a stone wall on the enemy's flank, giving the Marines targets at 300 yards distant. The Communists, caught naked in an open field, are quickly shredded, and the objective is taken. Meanwhile, Company D attacks under the cover of a thick mist and permeating smoke which hover over the burning dwellings; it advances toward the base of the Hill (56). Suddenly, as the Marines encroach their objective, enemy fire, originating on Smith's Ridge, creates a wall of fire, preventing any further progress. The incessant barrage includes artillery and mortar fire as well as automatic weapons. Marine armor roars forward to assist, but one vehicle strikes a mine and another sustains a direct hit by a mortar shell, disabling it. Casualties continue to mount as Company D attempts to break from its untenable positions. The company commander, Lt. H.J. Smith, commits every man in the outfit. Still, no advance occurs and the ammunition is rapidly being expended. Relentlessly, the enemy fire continues, answered with equal fervor by the stalled Marines. A donnybrook ensues during the stalemate. In some instances, the antagonists are within grenade-throwing distances and the Marines score more accurately with their tosses. A squad, led by Sergeant Robert Smith, moves around the southern flank of the hill to strike from the flank, but it encounters rock resistance. Nine men, including a corpsman, are slain; Sergeant Smith and two other wounded Marines survive. At about 1000, Colonel Roise receives word by radio that Lt. Smith's Company D is in dire need of

reinforcements, but the battalion commander is compelled to deny the request, stating that the reserve troops (Company E) must be retained for the assault against the ultimate objectives. Meanwhile, Col. Roise, the battalion commander, becomes wounded. Luckily it had only been an arm wound; subsequent to receiving medical attention, he returns to his headquarters to complete the mission. By about 1030, the fog and smoke vanish and the skies clear, providing the Marines with an opportunity. The artillery of the 11th Marines, the mortars of Lt. George Grimes' 81-mm section (2nd Battalion) and Marine planes arrive to bolster the ground troops. Initially, four corsairs of VMF-323 execute repeated low-level sweeps. Subsequently, additional Planes arrive; during two of the air attacks, enemy anti-aircraft fire damages five of ten attacking planes. Meanwhile, there is no lapse of enemy fire; mortars and automatic weapons turn up the heat. Undaunted, despite being held up for about two hours, the remnants of Company D, commanded by Lt. H.J. Smith, are determined to seize the hill. During the first part of the afternoon, the thirty remaining riflemen of Company D and fourteen other Marines (Weapons Platoon) form to attack and secure the summit. Marine aircraft again soar overhead and deposit bombs and napalm while strafing the objective. Soon after, a corsair executes two dry runs over the target, the latter signaling the commencement of the attack. The Marines find themselves advancing over and through large numbers of enemy bodies that have been slain in great part by the thunderous fire of the artillery and aircraft. The lunging Leathernecks spring toward the crest in awe of the astounding numbers of Communist dead, which explains the lack of fierce resistance. Short of the summit, Smith halts the attack to regroup for the final push. Shortly thereafter, thirty-two Marines, with Smith at the front, dart from their positions and sprint toward the crest, surprising the enemy with the brashness of their charge. Enemy fire pours down the slope, killing Lt. H.J. Smith. The remaining able-bodied Marines maintain the thrust, and twenty-six Marines place their clamps on the summit. The startled defenders react in various ways; some feign death while others gallop down the reverse slopes. Some others resist ferociously. Undaunted, despite the weary 100-yard dash up the treacherous slope, the Marines crush the resistance and secure the hill. The foxholes are corroded with layers of corpses and the rest of the summit is carpeted with other enemy dead; even the bunkers have been transformed into crypts. Meanwhile, eleven trailing Marines bring up the machine guns and ammunition to ensure retention of the bloody crest. The enemy survivors come under vicious fire as they dash down the slope. Meanwhile, more Company D troops arrive at the peak, bringing the defending force to fifty-six men; twenty-six Marines are wounded, but they refuse to be evacuated. At 1300, Lt. Karle Seydel, the lone unwounded officer of Company D, radios word to battalion headquarters that its objectives, including Hill 66 (56) are secure. The North Koreans mount a counterattack to retake Hill 66 (56), but it is repelled. At day's end, battle-weary Company D has sustained 176 casualties, including thirty-six killed and 116 wounded (and evacuated). The company's complement of 206 Marines now stands at twenty-six able-bodied men and the additional four wounded men who had remained on the crest. On the following day, the 2nd Battalion reinitiates the attack against Hill 105 Center. In other 2nd Battalion activity, Company E is restrained from attacking until the other two companies secure their objectives. Following the victories of Companies D and F, Company E strikes against Hill 105-N. At 1500, while en route to its objective, enemy fire rains upon Company E shortly after it passes Hill 56. The menacing mortar and automatic weapons fire hinders the advance and enemy mines also lay in wait. Five tanks (1st Platoon, Company B, 1st Tank Battalion) push forward to augment the assault, but they get snagged in a minefield; one tank is lost to mortar fire and another is destroyed after striking a mine. The remaining three tanks are stymied, unable to navigate through the minefield. Quick action

by one daring impetuous engineer, Sergeant Stanley McPherson (Company A, 1st Engineer Battalion), forestalls disaster; he ventures onto the blocked road and while under strong fire, he singlehandedly clears a path for the armor. The Tanks then speed forward and unleash their firepower, decimating a few machine gun strongholds and knocking out two antitank guns. However, the delay is costly as twilight begins to overtake the area, forcing a postponement against what appears to be the prominent obstacle facing Company E, Hill 72, straddled between Hills 105-N and 105-C. In the 3rd Battalion sector, the enemy launches two unsuccessful predawn assaults against Marine positions on Hill 296. The 3rd Battalion is scheduled to drive down the eastern spur of Hill 296 to execute a flanking attack and to supply cover fire for the 2nd Battalion. The 1st Battalion is to relieve the 3rd Battalion on Hills 216 and 296. Following the shattering of the predawn attacks, Company H remains engaged with the Communists on the eastern slopes of Hill 296, but at 1550, Company G swings out and smashes into the enemy's right flank in a coordinated attack with Company H, terminating the resistance there. The 3rd Battalion incurs five killed and thirty-three wounded today. By about 2000, the 1st Battalion completes the relief of Company I and various other 3rd Battalion troops on Hill 216. In other activity, the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines atop Hill 105 South guard the crossing site of the Han where the 1st Marines will cross. **In the 1st Marines sector**, dawn sparks the initiation of the crossing of the Han. Company C, 1st Engineer Battalion moves out and secures a crossing site at a point about 2,000 yards south of Hill 105-S, but it is an exhaustive ordeal as enemy mines permeate the crossing site. Nevertheless, elements of the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines begin the move from their positions near Yongdungp'o at about 0800. LVTs (Company A, 1st Tractor Bn.) speed the battalion across the river, completing the trek by about 0945. The 2nd Battalion sustains two men killed and nine wounded, due to unexpected fire from Hill 105-S, thought to have been previously reduced by the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines. Later, Colonel Sutter's troops establish contact with units of the 5th Marines on the north bank. Meanwhile, the 1st Battalion, commanded by Lt. Col Jack Hawkins, and regimental headquarters follow the 2nd Battalion across the Han. The 1st Battalion receives orders to drive east and jump through the 2nd Battalion, which is easier said than done, as the 2nd Battalion is sprinting toward Hill 79, the regimental objective. En route to the objective, at about 1300 unexpected enemy fire again erupts from concealed positions on Hill 105-S, inflicting four casualties on the 1st Battalion. At 1500, Col. Hawkins' Marines seize Hill 79 and decorate it with Old Glory, ensuring that the enemy troops located in the nearby railroad marshaling yards could clearly see that the Stars and Stripes had entered the southwest section of Seoul. In other activity, at 1515 the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, commanded by Lt. Col. Thomas Ridge, receives orders from division to relinquish its defense of Hill 108, south of the Han Bridges; it is to revert to regimental control and begin to cross the Han. Ridge's unit completes the crossing by 2000. Again, enemy fire zips into the newest occupants of the north bank of the Han; Ridge's Marines engage in a heated, but brief exchange of fire with the enemy on Hill 105-S; Company I is committed to permanently extinguish the nagging opposition. Ten Communist troops are taken prisoner, but the Marines lose one man killed and two wounded. The 1st and 2nd Battalions, 1st Marines relieve the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines and assume responsibility for the southern flank of the Marines' line along the western fringe of Seoul. The 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines settles down in an assembly area slightly to the rear. Meanwhile, the 2nd Battalion, 187th Airborne RCT relieves the 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines, permitting the Marine battalion to cross the Han and join the regiment. Also, the 1st Battalion, 7th Marines, having concluded debarkation at Inchon rejoins the regiment. The 7th Marines on the left flank of the 5th Marines is to sweep across the northern tip of Seoul to guard the north flank and the rear of the 5th

Marines. Simultaneously it is to block the escape routes to the north. **In the 7th Infantry Division sector:** General Almond arrives at division headquarters at 0930. He confers with Generals Barr and Henry Hodes, the commanding officer and assistant CO, respectively, and with Col. Louis Heath, the divisional chief of staff. The discussions include the possibility of a 7th Division attack into Seoul on the following day. Later, when Almond arrives back at his headquarters, he informs S.K. Colonel Paik to prepare for battle in case his S.K. 17th Regiment is attached to the 32nd Regiment for the attack into Seoul. In the meantime, General Almond decides that he will order the 7th Division to attack into Seoul. At 1400, army Generals Barr and Hodes, Marine General O.P. Smith and other officers, including Col. Forney USMC, X Corps Deputy Chief of Staff and Colonel Beauchamp, CO 32nd Regiment are informed by Almond during a meeting at Yongdungp'o Circle that the attack will commence at 0600 on the 25th. X Corps supplements the 7th Division, attaching the Marine 1st Amphibious Tractor Battalion (minus one company) and two platoons of Company A, 56th Amphibious Tank and Tractor Battalion to it. In addition, the S.K. 17th Regiment is attached to the 7th Division. The three main objectives of the 32nd Regiment's attack are to capture South Mountain and then to drive two miles east and secure Hill 120. Following these gains, it is to capture Hill 348, the dominating feature five miles east of Seoul. In other activity, the 2nd Battalion, 32nd Regiment launches a successful predawn attack against enemy positions on the south side of the Han River across from Seoul. The surprise attack becomes a deadly wake-up call for some sleeping North Koreans. The battalion easily reduces the opposition while it also seizes supplies and captures a regimental headquarters. The 2nd Battalion then continues the attack and secures the south bank of the Han at a bend in the river southeast of Seoul. In the meantime, the 31st Regiment is in the Suwon vicinity. The 2nd Battalion, 31st Regiment, deployed on Hill 142 about two miles south of the airfield, comes under severe attack at about 2300. Enemy Tanks storm the left flank along the Suwon-Osan road. The battalion holds tough and receives some strong assistance from both the 57th FABn and Battery B, 15th FABn; the attack is repelled and four T-34 tanks are destroyed.

**September 25 1950 - (Pacific-Korea)** On or about this date, the N.K. I Corps orders all units still south of Waegwan to retire northward. Today is the final day of action for the USS *Sicily* and VMF-214 during the Seoul-Inchon campaign. During the latter part of the day it will embark to receive required maintenance work; however, the USS *Badoeng Strait* and its VMF-323 assumes responsibility for further action in support of the ground troops. The commanding officer of the *Badoeng Strait*, once informed of the bad luck connected to the planes numbered 17, bans the number from the carrier. The first plane lost by the carrier on D-Day plus 2 was numbered 17. Two days later, a sergeant examining the new aircraft, also designated number 17 was mortally wounded when the guns accidentally fired. And then on September the 23rd, the ill-fated corsair (17) is again plagued when its pilot, Major Robert Floeck is killed. Today, plane Number 17 leaves the carrier and yet another life is lost, prompting Captain John Thatch to permanently banish the number 17 from the carrier. **(Inchon-Seoul) X Corps:** Slightly before dark, aerial observance detects enemy columns moving out of Seoul. General Almond places an urgent request for Far East Air Forces to illuminate the escape route with flares to aid Marine night fighters. A B-29 arrives and its crew obliges; it spends about three hours flying-time over the area to deposit the flares above the enemy. Meanwhile, two gigantic enemy columns receive some punishing blows from the Marine planes. In conjunction, X Corps Artillery units unleash their Guns, delivering an enfilade of blazing fire upon the closer portions of the retiring enemy. General Almond makes what some construe as a

premature proclamation slightly before midnight (25th); he proclaims the liberation of Seoul. The announcement is made precisely three months to the day that the city had been captured by the Communists, and coincidentally it is on the same day that Almond had promised General MacArthur that it would fall. **In the 1st Marine Division zone:** Today, all the division's regiments will be north of the Han River and linked together. At 0700 division commences the final phase of its attack to seize Seoul. According to OpnO 11-50, RCT 1 and the attached 2nd Korean Marine Battalion is to capture that portion of Seoul within its zone (South Mountain and Ducksoo Palace area). Following these seizures, it is to advance about six additional miles and seize Objective ABLE, the heights beyond the northeastern suburbs. RCT-5, its attached division reconnaissance company and the 1st Korean Marine Battalion are to secure the northwest sector of Seoul; following this gain, they are to capture Objective BAKER, the heights above the Seoul-Uijongbu Road, which lie about six miles outside the city. RCT-7 is to seize Objective Charlie, the heights above the Seoul-Kaesong Road near Chonsong-ni about six miles northwest of the city's center-point; the combat team is to simultaneously cover the division's left flank. In conjunction, the 3rd Battalion, 187th Airborne RCT is to remain under the control of the 1st Marine Division; it is to guard the left flank, both south and west of the Han River. Also, the attached South Korean Marine units are utilized for mop-up operations. The Korean Marine regiment (minus the 1st and 2nd Battalions) is to remain division reserve; subsequent to the recapture of the city it is to resume control of its detached battalions and occupy the capital. At 2040, the 1st Marine Division receives a somewhat confusing order directing it to launch an immediate attack. The X Corps order: "**X CORPS TACAir COMMANDER REPORTS ENEMY FLEEING CITY OF SEOUL ON ROAD NORTH...HE IS CONDUCTING HEAVY AIR ATTACK AND WILL CONTINUE SAME. YOU WILL ATTACK NOW TO THE LIMIT OF YOUR OBJECTIVE TO INSURE MAXIMUM DESTRUCTION OF ENEMY FORCES.**" But Col. Alpha Bowser, 1st Marine Division G-3, remains unconvinced that the Communists are abandoning the city; he inquires at X Corps headquarters and he is informed that the order, issued by General Almond, stands. General O.P. Smith is adamantly opposed to the order, and he too calls headquarters, only to receive a similar rebuff from the chief of staff, General Ruffner, who explains that General Almond insists on an immediate attack. At 2200, Smith reluctantly and against his instincts directs the 1st and 5th Marines, commanded by Colonels Puller and Murray respectively, to attack, but he stipulates that they move only along routes which can be easily identified in the dark. The 1st Marines receives the orders at 2205 and the 5th Marines is informed at 2215, the latter having just turned back an enemy attack about two hours earlier. In conjunction, both regiments take measures to prepare their exhausted troops to again attack, and the word is passed to the 7th and 11th Marines. Within minutes after the orders to attack are received, the 5th Marines is hit by an enemy counterattack. **In the 5th Marines sector,** The 1st Battalion, commanded by Col. Newton, having completed its relief of the 3rd Battalion units on Hills 216 and 296, is poised to advance on the left of the 3rd Battalion upon orders; the leftward shift by the 1st Battalion postures it to protect the steep entrances to both hills. Meanwhile, artillery and air strikes pummel the enemy line throughout the morning. The Marine air support (VMF-214) sustains another loss, its second in two days, when Lt. Colonel Lischeid is shot from the sky over the western portion of Seoul. Within about two additional hours, Lt. Cols. Wyczawski and Volcansek, the commanders of VMF-212 and VMF(N)-542 respectively, also are downed by enemy fire, but these two pilots survive. Subsequent to the preparatory barrages, the 3rd Battalion, under Taplett, drives down Hill 296 in concert with the 2nd Battalion, under Roise, which grinds toward Hill 105-N. The 3rd Battalion is to secure the two

southeastern knobs of Hill 296. The 2nd Battalion assault is bolstered by fire from the 3rd Battalion on Hill 296 and one Platoon of tanks. Company E spearheads the attack. Company D (less than full strength) on its left drives northward from Hill 66 (Smith's Ridge); it follows the ridge line that leans southwest from Hill 296. From there, Company D, led by Lt. Seydel, pivots southeast and continues its hard fought advance. At 1320, following a grueling contest, Hill 88 falls to Company D. Meanwhile, Company E, led by Captain Jaskilka, encounters fierce fire originating on enemy-held Hill 72. Despite the horrific fire and mounting casualties, the 1st Platoon, led by Lt. Deptula, silences the mortars and the automatic weapons fire; Hill 72 is secured at 1335. Company F, held in reserve, then advances to occupy Hill 72. During the ongoing melee, at 1310, air strikes are requested to thump the enemy positions on Hill 105-N to lessen the resistance against the final attack by the remaining two platoons of Company E. At 1325, the artillery roars to signal the imminent assault by the platoons of Lts. James Epley and Samuel Eddy. The attacking Marines relentlessly grind forward, and by 1545, Hill 105-N falls to the 2nd Battalion. Meanwhile, the 3rd Battalion gnaws forward. Like the 2nd Battalion, it too receives powerful blows from enemy artillery, as long-range interdiction fire arrives from Hill 105-N and from Hill 338 on its right and left respectively. After being temporarily held up by Col. Murray, while Hill 105-N is being secured by the 2nd Battalion, Companies G and H resume the attack at 1435 against extremely dense fire, originating on their left. The Marines plow forward, taking heavy casualties as they advance. Company H is hit especially hard as it grinds forward along the giant knob on the open left flank. Nevertheless, it reaches the objective, an intermediate peak by 1635. In the meantime, Company G secures an unnamed peak north of the 2nd Battalion's positions, but on the same ridge. Contact is quickly made between the two battalions. Following the seizures, Company I jumps off to continue the assault at about 1700; however, the enemy launches a counterattack and draws blood. The Communist attack is augmented by effective support fire which presses both Companies H and I. Undaunted, the Marines maintain their positions and pound the attacking Reds. Finally, by about dusk, the enemy losses climb to about 100 killed, compelling them to abort the assault. The beleaguered Marines then prepare for the next task. Company H reverts to battalion reserve. Company I assumes responsibility for the front lines, and it prepares to drive into Seoul on the following day. In related activity, other elements of the 2nd Battalion attack Hill 105 Center, reducing the resistance there by midafternoon. According to information ascertained from enemy prisoners, about 500 North Koreans are killed on Hill 105 Center. Consequently, the Marine advances have destroyed the western defenses of Seoul and inflicted severe casualties upon the enemy; 1,200 Communist dead are strewn about the hills and in the foxholes. The Marines estimate total enemy dead along the western defenses by all weaponry at 1,750. The 5th Marines enter the northwest sector of the city and advance toward Sodaemun Prison and Government House. A synchronized attack by the 1st and 5th Marines on the following day is planned by the two regiments during the evening of the 25th. But while the 5th Marine Regiment is preparing the attack, new corps orders arrive at slightly after 2200, directing an immediate attack by the 1st and 5th Marines into the city. However, the enemy strikes first and the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines is attacked by about 200 North Koreans. A savage night-long battle ensues, but the Marines repel it and terminate the action at 0445. While the fighting is raging between the Marines and the enemy, the 5th Marines also has patrols out attempting to establish contact with the 1st and 7th Marines. Contingents extending south and southeast fail to make contact with the 1st Marines, and the patrols to the north are unable to locate the 7th Marines. In conjunction, General O.P. Smith had directed the regiments to make contact before assaulting Seoul in the darkness. The divisional attack will

be postponed and the 5th Marines does not advance from its positions during the night, except for the Patrols. **In the 1st Marines sector**, the 1st Battalion maintains a blocking position at Hill 79 along the southern portion of Seoul during the morning, while it waits for the 3rd Battalion to alter its course of attack against Seoul. The 3rd Battalion, led by Lt. Col. Thomas Ridge, advances prior to dawn; it moves east through the positions of the 2nd Battalion in a column of companies, and then it pivots sharply and drives north toward the center of Seoul. In conjunction, at about the same time, the 1st Battalion shifts slightly backward from its positions, and then it too drives north operating on the right flank of the 3rd Battalion. The maneuver puts great strength against Seoul, but it creates a hole between the 1st and 5th Marines. Due to an unexpected crisis at Hill 105-S, the 1st Marines lack tank support. The tank column is expected to encounter mines along the route which parallels the rail lines leading into Seoul. Therefore, the two tank platoons of Company B (commanded by Captain Bruce Williams), 1st Tank Battalion are bolstered by engineers, and by one infantry platoon of Company F to safeguard its passage through the lines of the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines. Infantry take the point and the engineers are couched between the tanks; they advance through the gap in the lines without incident. But when the column reaches the midway point, an ambush is sprung. Enemy fire rings out from Hill 105-S, supposedly secured previously by the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines and swept clean by mop-up teams of the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines. The ambush, perpetrated by about 300 troops, catches the column off-guard and its ripping fire inflicts casualties. Lt. Babe, commanding officer 2nd Platoon, Company C, engineers is struck immediately. The debilitating wound prevents him from ordering the Infantry under Sergeant Farrington to strike the left flank of the enemy to eliminate the blockage. Soon after, Sergeant Paolino assumes command of Lt. Babe's engineers, but the enemy force appears much too powerful. Meanwhile, the commanding officer of the tanks, Captain Williams, ponders a withdrawal to avoid being overrun, but he decides to commit his equalizers. He sends out a flamethrower tank and an M-26 escort. By circuitous route, the raging armor maneuvers into position on the left flank of the infested slope, and they immediately roar into action. Bellowing bursts of napalm bounce along the entire string of enemy entrenchments, compelling the inhabitants to seek cooler ground. They flee directly into the menacing machine gun fire of Lt. Cummings' platoon; his tanks shred the fleeing enemy troops. All the while, the engineers and infantry are being reorganized along the rails and lower slopes by Sergeants Paolino and Farrington respectively. A sharp line of cover fire begins to emerge, but yet another hazard threatens the Marines. Nearby, enemy grenades begin to explode, activating the Marines' instinctive alarms. Sharp eyed Marines spot the problem, three primitive huts that sit on the slope just under the enemy trenches on the left flank. The Marines also discover that an enemy cave is concealed by the third hut. Sgt. Paolino receives permission from Capt. Williams to apply tank fire, and he wastes no time. Lt. Cummings, responding to a string of hefty bangs on his tank by Paolino, swivels his turret and pummels the trio of huts with several devastating 90-mm shells. While adjusting his fire to ring the newest target, Cummings and the others observe about ten enemy troops as they file out of the cave with their hands extended high above their heads. After this initial surrender, a steady stream of Communist troops pours out of the endangered cave; 131 North Koreans are captured, including two weapon-carrying women in uniform. About 150 enemy troops are killed. Hill 105-S, thought benign, is finally dormant. The column, outnumbered by its prisoners, reinitiates the march and pushes forward. In conjunction, the women prisoners had been searched to ensure that no additional Marines become casualties; they claim to be nurses, not soldiers, and they complain that they had not been treated fairly. The media fans the incident and the people in the States read some

"sensational stories." Nevertheless, the Marines treated them properly under the circumstances, and they even give them clothes that make them look more like women. At about 1200, the small armored task force reaches the positions of the 1st Marines and pulls up to the intersection where the rail tracks converge with the boulevard that leads into Seoul. Lt. Cummings reports to Colonel Puller, and then the push into the city begins. The Marines, spearheaded by tanks, grind forward, encountering roadblocks and fierce resistance. Antitank weapons, mortars and automatic weapons attempt to stall the advance. Nonetheless, the Marines gnaw forward, moving down both sides of the boulevard. Two of the lead tanks, including that of Cummings, strike mines, but both are saved. The 1st Marines advance doggedly, driving toward the main Seoul Railroad and several other key points including the American and Russian consulates, City Hall and the ancient Duk Soo Palace. By evening, the 1st and 3rd Battalions each penetrate about two thousand yards; the former halts in the heights to the right of the 3rd Battalion. The 3rd Battalion drills directly into the city and halts at positions next to the rail lines and on the western slope of Hill 97. Both units then converge and take up defensive positions on Hill 82 to prepare for the following day's attack. Engineers begin removing mines, previously set by them, to clear the path for the following day's attack. In conjunction, the 2nd Battalion (Reserve) deploys to the rear of the 1st Battalion to provide cover on the right flank and for the rear. Like the other Marine regiments, the 1st Marines receives orders at about 2200 instructing it to immediately launch an attack into Seoul. At about 0145, subsequent to a fifteen minute artillery barrage, the 1st Marines are poised to advance, but Colonel Puller, at about seven minutes before jump off, concludes that the bombardment is insufficient. He requests a repeat performance to bolster the assault. The attack is rescheduled for 0200, but the enemy nixes the attack by striking first. At 0153, an emergency message arrives proclaiming that a fierce enemy assault including Armor is pushing from the city, driving toward the 1st Marines positions to the southwest. The urgent news suggests that self-propelled guns are also with the attack units. Meanwhile, a 3rd Battalion patrol, led by Corporal Collins and composed of eight Marines and three South Korean natives, probes to establish contact with the 5th Marines, but instead, at about 0130, it encounters the surging enemy. A fire fight ensues about four hundred yards to the front of the 1st Marines' lines. Several men of the patrol make it back to their zone and give the alert. Corporal Collins is not among them, and it is thought that he has been killed. In the meantime, Major Edwin Simmons detects the absolute sounds of tracked vehicles, and they are not sporting Marine insignia; he receives word that two enemy tanks are encroaching George Company's roadblock which is bolstered with 3.5 rocket launchers, heavy machine guns and some hefty 75-mm recoilless rifles. Without hesitation, the enemy tanks are plastered with seething fire which knocks out one of the tanks and sends the other away in speedy retreat. The uninvited visitors derail the Marine assault scheduled for 0200; however, the two antagonists still gather in the darkness. The enemy attack force numbers about battalion strength and it is fortified by tanks. The enemy advance is intercepted by the dynamic combination of resounding 11th Marines' Artillery and by mortar fire. The enemy attack reaches its pinnacle at about 0230, but it falls prey to an iron hailstorm which virtually blows the attackers away and stalls the attack. Subsequent enemy infantry advances are totally ineffective; the surviving armor launches sporadic advances, but they too fail to cross through the blazing gauntlet. By dawn, the counterattack sizzles and the survivors disengage, retiring hurriedly. Marine fire slays the last two enemy T-34 tanks at 0630. Daylight emphasizes the horror of the killing grounds, which are permeated with the stench of death, the peculiar odor of scorched armor and the scores of mangled corpses. Luckily, Corporal Cummings is not among the deceased; he had disguised himself in Korean civilian garb, and he walks back into friendly

lines at about 0630. The N.K. 25th Brigade sustains grievous losses, including 475-500 killed and a great deal more wounded. In addition, 83 prisoners are collected by the 1st Marines. Interrogations of the POWs, coupled with the combing of the battlefield, determines that seven enemy tanks and two self-propelled guns were destroyed. In conjunction, if this 700 man enemy force was in the process of abandoning Seoul, as described by General Almond, it had apparently been retiring in the wrong direction. **In the 7th Marines sector**, the 1st Battalion sends out continuous reconnaissance patrols to maintain contact with RCT-5 and RCT-7 and to sweep the terrain lying between both units. The 2nd Battalion moves out at 0630 to secure Objective CHARLIE and takes it without incident at 1215. In the meantime, the 3rd Battalion remains in a defensive arc-like posture, protecting the highways and trails near the ferry-crossing site at Haengju. **In the 7th Infantry Division zone:** The 17th Regiment comes ashore to join the 7th Division as its third Regiment. In other activity, the scheduled attack by the 32nd Regiment, reinforced, is being prepared. The spearheading 2nd Battalion and the 96th FABn are deployed east of the town. The 1st and 3rd Battalions, deployed northwest of it, are commanded by Cols. Faith and Schumann respectively; both will trail Colonel Mount's 2nd Battalion across the Han. Company A, 56th Amphibian Tractor Battalion, USA and the Marine 1st Amphibian Tractor Battalion (minus Company B) had spent an exhaustive night to assure success. They were compelled to execute a 25-mile round trip to transport the troops to a jump-off site about 5,000 yards east of a rail bridge at Yongdungp'o. At 0600, a thirty-minute artillery barrage is initiated by the 48th FABn, and its thunderous roar is enjoined by heavy mortars which sizzle the bluffs that saturate the slopes beyond the river bank. At 0630, the 2nd Battalion, 32nd Regiment, spearheaded by Company F, begins crossing the river during a usual foggy morning, and it completes the trek without incident. The LVTs transport the troops inland about 200 yards; from here they dart across the tiny beach area and ascend the 30-60 foot bluffs bringing it to the slopes of South Mountain. Meanwhile, the sun emerges through the fog at about 0730. At about the same time, air strikes pound Hill 120 and South Mountain; the latter stands ominously on the north bank, leans northwest and extends backward directly into Seoul. By about noon, the 3rd Battalion brings up the rear, and soon after, it fords the river, tracing the steps of the 1st Battalion. It moves east, jumps through the 1st Battalion and occupies Hill 120. The 1st Battalion then deploys in positions between the 2nd and 3rd Battalions. In the meantime, the vanguard is swiftly ascending South Mountain, overcoming moderate resistance as it surges to the summit, claiming it by 1500; the 2nd Battalion immediately establishes a night defensive perimeter on the summit. The regiment is unable to proceed from the heights into the city because the movement might impede the ongoing operations of the 1st and 5th Marines. In conjunction, the ROKs cross behind the 3rd Battalion against heavy fire, but the LVTs safely deliver the S.K. 17th Regiment. The 32nd Regiment and the ROKs deploy within a zone of action from which they can expeditiously advance on the right flank of the Marines at the prescribed time. Meanwhile, Col. Mount deploys Company F on South Mountain's low eastern knob, and he places Company G on the more elevated western knob. During the night of the 25th-26th, while one enemy battalion is being vanquished by a night-long battle with the 1st Marines on the outskirts of Seoul, an enemy Battalion assaults the 2nd Battalion, 32nd Regiment. At 0500 (26th), the Communists pound the 2nd Battalion and make some short-lived progress. The troops holding the forward positions are temporarily shoved back, but then a galvanized counterattack ignites a fierce battle that regains the lost ground and thrashes the enemy. By about 0700, the lines are fully restored and the Reds are shoved off the ridge; 394 dead Communist troops are left on the battlefield and another 174 are taken prisoner. In conjunction, at 2150 the S.K. 17th Regiment, on the far right flank of the

32nd Regiment, jumps off at 2150 to seize Hill 348; the battle continues throughout the night (25th-26th). By midafternoon of the following day (26th), the South Koreans secure Hills 292 and 348.

**September 26 1950 -(Pacific-Japan)** At 1410, General MacArthur signs and publicizes United Nations Command Communique 9, which states that Seoul is liberated. Similarly to the announcement of General Almond, the proclamation is premature as bloody fighting still ensues throughout the city. By dusk, X Corps controls only about one-half of the city. The proclamation in part: "**SEOUL, THE CAPITAL OF THEE REPUBLIC OF KOREA, IS AGAIN IN FRIENDLY HANDS. UNITED NATIONS FORCES INCLUDING THE 17TH REGIMENT OF THE ROK ARMY AND ELEMENTS OF THE U.S. 7TH AND 1ST MARINE DIVISIONS, HAVE COMPLETED THE ENVELOPMENT AND SEIZURE OF THE CITY.**" Nonetheless, more of the enemy will have to be eliminated before the entire city is secure. In other activity, MacArthur's headquarters in Tokyo dispatches a radio message to X Corps in Korea, explaining that Eighth Army is closing on X Corps positions and contact should occur at any time. Identical messages are forwarded to NAVFE and to FAR East Air Forces. All parties are instructed to take every precaution to ensure that these advancing units are not brought under fire. In other activity, General Wright receives a memorandum from General Hickey (Deputy of chief of staff, FEC), informing him that MacArthur wants a plan developed which would incorporate X Corps as the amphibious invasion force to be committed at Wonsan. General Wright, (G-3) and head of JSPOG, has the plans forwarded to MacArthur within several hours. The plan, detailing the advance into North Korea, calls for X Corps to land at Wonsan (east coast) or "elsewhere," while Eighth Army concentrates to the west. The plan sparks controversy, as the action creates two separate field commands which will split the forces. In conjunction, Wonsan is a likely candidate for the invasion site; it has been the bloodline of Russian supplies being shipped by sea from Vladivostok, and its rail line leads directly north to Vladivostok. The east coast seaport of Wonsan also fills the bill of a geographic swivel, capable of catapulting troops to various strategic locations; these include the prime real estate at Hamhung-Hungnam, fifty miles north. A force also could easily be shot west across the peninsula to P'yongyang. **(Pacific-Korea) In Naval activity:** The destroyer USS *Brush* sustains damage by an enemy mine off the east coast of Korea. **(Inchon-Seoul) X Corps: In the 1st Marine Division zone:** Subsequent to daylight and following the suffocation by the Marines of the enemy counterattacks, the Marines execute the orders of the previous night. Division issues OpnO 12-50 at 1230. The directive mandates the resumption of the attack against Seoul, and it is slightly altered by committing the 7th Marines to the quest. Prior to the attack, the 1st Marine Division is deployed in a half-moon formation which stretches from the northwest to the south and encompasses the ground lying between the Kaesong Highway and Hill 82. The 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines, commanded by Col. Sutter, starts early and passes through the positions of the 3rd Battalion. Coming out of reserve, it drives down Ma-Po Boulevard to seize Seoul; Companies F and G, led by Baker Company tanks, sprint forward. But Lt. Cummings' tank strikes a mine (U.S. M-6) which the engineers had missed during a clearing operation the previous night. The detonation knocks out the tank and inflicts casualties to some ground Marines on both sides of the tank. Despite the incident, the advance continues, but the situation gets no better. The Communists have fabricated roadblocks that extend across the road; they are constructed about 300-400 yards apart and consist of rice-bags piled eight feet high and about five feet thick. The obstacles are augmented by overzealous defenders and anti-tank Guns. Nevertheless, the Marine infantry and armor plow forward. Engineers, covered by sharpshooters, move methodically to open a path. Once

the mines are eliminated the tanks burst through the barriers, followed by the infantry. As the Marines terminate the individual blockages, other North Koreans continue firing from nearby buildings. Seemingly, every rooftop, window and alley is launching shells at the charging Marines who must then defend against fire coming from all points. The progress is measured by yards, and the attack is hindered by even more unexpected obstacles such as groups of civilians, including women and children scattered along the line of advance. The tanks continue to crash through the bunkers and the ground troops drill deeper, disregarding the intense heat, smoke and flames emerging from the burning buildings. The battle rages furiously, and it includes suicidal missions by individuals, carrying demolition charges, who attack the armor. The first attempt succeeds when one North Korean dashes fearlessly toward a flamethrower tank which is shadowing two M-26s and damages it. However, the crew escapes the burning vehicle and nearby infantrymen cut down subsequent demolition-men well before they reach the armor. The dogged pace of the advance expends the ammunition and consumes the fuel at an alarming rate, forcing the vehicles to move to the rear to procure the necessary fuel and supplies. In the meantime, the infantry wisely pauses to await the return of the tanks before it jumps to the next blockade. Following the return of the armor, the Marines reinitiate the tedious drive into Seoul. Company F, led by Captain Groff, and Company E pound against the enemy resistance until dark and gain about 1,200 yards. At one key intersection, Company F encounters such stiff resistance that Company E, scheduled to peel off to the right, is compelled to throw its weight into the fight to ensure advancement. Meanwhile, the 1st Battalion, 1st Marines, operating on the right flank of the regimental sector, begins its descent from its positions on Hill 82. Companies A and B are to advance on the right and secure the promontory on the northwestern edge of South Mountain and the finger extending out below it. In conjunction, Company C's objective is the primary railroad station and the nearby slopes of South Mountain where the enemy remains active, slightly below (east) the sector of the 32nd Infantry Regiment. Marine planes plaster enemy positions, and a heavy artillery and mortar barrage commences prior to jump off. Upon cessation of the preparatory bombardments, Captain Wray's Company C spearheads the attack. It descends down the slope and regroups near a stream which runs alongside the railroad yard, and then it drives north after fording the river. The Marines encounter moderate resistance that is amplified due to the pesky positions; the Communists are intertwined in buildings and railcars. Nonetheless, the Marines grind forward yard by yard. The rail station is seized and its yard is secured. Once inside the station, the Marines discover some executed Korean women and children and a few dead Communist troops. By dusk, the area is secure. **In the 5th Marines sector**, during the early morning hours and following a heavy artillery and mortar barrage, the 3rd Battalion jumps off to finish clearing the remaining opposition from the Hill 296 group. The descent is rugged for both Companies; G Company departs its positions on a ridge above Hill 105-N to secure the low terrain to the right of Company I. Meanwhile, Company I is descending the huge spur on Hill 296 that leads to the center of Seoul. Both missions are eventful. Company G encounters tenacious opposition throughout the day. In one instance, while Company G is pinned down, PFC Eugene Obregon spots a wounded Marine. Disregarding the tenacious fire, he dashes out to rescue him. After he drags the wounded man to the side of the road, an enemy contingent closes on them. Obregon covers the wounded Marine with his body and he returns effective fire, but eventually he is fatally struck by a burst of enemy machine gun fire. PFC Obregon receives the Medal of Honor posthumously for his selfless heroism under fire. In conjunction, Company I, lacking support weapons, attacks. Its commanding officer, Captain McMullen, convinced that his organic weapons can suffice cancels the preparatory artillery. Almost immediately, the rugged advance by Company

I is met by ferocious resistance. The Marines attack down the slopes, but the resistance on the lower section of the slope is much stronger than anticipated. The lack of support weapons takes its toll. The Communists deliver sheets of fire against the two platoons of descending Marines and inflict casualties. The North Korean fire continues without pause, but the Marines push to a knob and seize it, despite both attacking platoon leaders being wounded. To bolster the assault, Captain McMullen throws in his reserve platoon to offset the losses sustained on the right by the 3rd Platoon, and then he takes personal command of the company attack. As Company I drills downward, it plows into an enemy labyrinth which contains about 200 troops. Close-quartered bloody fighting ensues, but when it concludes, the Marines evict the North Koreans and send them fleeing to lower positions on the slope. However, Company I is thoroughly drained of strength, unable to advance further. Company I takes a slight pause to rejuvenate itself, but the tranquility on the knob is short-lived. The Communists mount an unexpected counterattack to retake the positions. The exhausted company reaches inward for a second breath to thwart the assault, but ammunition is becoming scarce. The enemy pushes hard and the donnybrook intensifies as the situation becomes grave and the Marines are pushed to the brink as the casualty list, which includes Captain McMullen, soars. McMullen has just sustained his seventh wound including WWII and Korea; he is evacuated. To forestall disaster, a small but impetuous supply party, led by Lt. Williamson, arrives. It barrels into the inferno, and without missing a step, the ammunition is passed out. The infusion of supplies gives the Marines a B-12 shot, and the exhausted company then pours out the iron; it breaks up the assault and destroys the enemy defense system there. Fighting continues during the remainder of the day. The threat of being dislodged is terminated, but Company I is too weak to seize the peak of the knob before dark. In other activity, the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines operating south of the 3rd Battalion, spends the day mopping up. Also, the 1st KMC Battalion deploys between the reconnaissance company and the 3rd Battalion, the former holding the summit of Hill 296 in the northwest. Meanwhile, the 1st Battalion remains in regimental reserve. Due to the heavy resistance encountered today, the 5th Marines are unable to move into Seoul and establish contact with the 1st Marines. **In the 7th Marines sector:** The regiment receives orders to drive north of Seoul and secure the mountain pass. From there the 7th Marines are to sever the road running from Seoul to Uijongbu and Ch'orwon at a point about one mile beyond Government House. The 7th Marines is bolstered by the divisional recon company and the 5th S.K. Marine Battalion. The orders also specify that the regiment is to pinch out the 5th Marines there and begin an attack alongside the 1st Marines which is driving northeast. In the meantime, the 5th Marines is ordered to support the 7th Marines, until it is pinched out. At that point, the 5th Marines is to revert to divisional reserve and relieve units of the 7th Marines. The objectives of the 7th Marines: BAKER (Hill 171); DOG (northern half of 338); EASY (Hill 342); FOX (Hill 133) and George (Hill 343). The ground is nasty, ensuring a difficult task for the fresh regiment. The 1st Battalion, 7th Marines, commanded by Lt. Col. Raymond G. Davis, relieves the 2nd Battalion (minus Company D) and the 3rd Battalion at their northeastern positions along the Kaesong Highway during the morning, freeing both units for the attack on Seoul. Meanwhile at 0630, Colonel Homer Litzenberg orders Company D, 7th Marines to head southwest along the Kaesong Highway and establish contact with the 5th Marines at Seoul. Initially, the trip is uneventful and at times surprising. Throngs of seemingly happy Korean civilians bellow loud cheers of welcome; however, the unexpected string of greeters prevents the Marines from employing flank guards. The column effortlessly travels through Hoengjeoe, and by about 0900 the convoy nears Hills 338 and 296, two huge slopes on the left and right respectively. The ominous slim valley pass that splits the two overwhelming slopes also is in view. When the

column reaches a point slightly in front of Sodaemun Prison in the northwest sector of Seoul, the enemy strikes. Menacing machine guns pour their shells into the approaching convoy and inflict casualties. Among the wounded is the machine gun officer, Lt. Goggin. The Marines bolt from the vehicles and take cover to return fire. The target remains about 400 yards down the highway where the enemy is utilizing a huge tower to deliver their storm of fire. The Marines, lacking flank protection, are completely caught off-guard on flat terrain. Instinctively, they begin to return fire, but the enemy answers with more fire, some originating within 100 yards of the convoy. Both flanks are at risk, making the positions nearly untenable. The commanding officer, Captain Richard Breen, directs the 2nd Platoon, led by Lt. Seeburger, to assault the heights near the prison. In the meantime, two mortars are set up and although in naked positions, their 60-mm shells destroy one enemy machine gun position. However, return fire remains relentless. Undaunted, the mortar crews, led by Lt. Paul Sartwell, continue to exchange blows. Sartwell becomes wounded twice, but he continues fighting until he is struck by a third and debilitating wound. All the while, the 2nd Platoon closes on the prison and the 1st Platoon, led by Lt. Paul Mullaney, attacks on the left, climbing Hill 338 to break the pressure, but to no avail. Enemy fire forbids success. The struggling company is dangerously stretched out, and lacking armor and artillery, the convoy is guarded only by the 1st Platoon, led by Lt. James D. Hammond. Captain Breen, himself wounded, receives a call on his radio from Major Raymond Fridich (Regimental S-3). Fridich inquires as to how bad the situation has become, and Breen assures him that his beleaguered company will hold its ground. While the Marines seek solutions to extricate the isolated company, the Communists attempt to encircle the command. Enemy contingents rush to the rear of the trapped Marines to prevent rescue. A support column is rushed to the area, but the enemy roadblock forces it to return. The crisis becomes more grave as ammunition and supplies are being rapidly expended. Capt. Breen reels in his troops to gain more tenable positions and to prevent annihilation. In the meantime, Marine planes pound the enemy positions to alleviate some of the pressure. Company D (carrying all of its wounded and dead) relocates about 1,000 yards from where it was ambushed at a split in the road between the two towering enemy-infested slopes; the regrouping is complete by 1600. After taking the new positions, Captain Breen takes defensive measures to ensure that the unit makes it through the night. In conjunction, additional Marine planes arrive to successfully drop necessary supplies within the tiny perimeter. Two planes are damaged attempting to drop supplies, and one of them is forced to make an emergency landing at Kimpo. At about dawn on the following day, a rescue unit composed of the tanks and infantry rolls down the highway and extricates besieged Company D; it is transported back to Hoengjeoe-ri. In the meantime, the remainder of the 2nd Battalion had followed the steps of Company D, but as scheduled and unaware of the dilemma, the battalion swings to the left and moves into the hills at Hoengjeoe about one mile from where Company D is trapped. From its positions in the heights, the 2nd Battalion dispatches reconnaissance units to check the area above Hoengjeoe, but they too remain unaware of Company D's predicament. Then, at 1400, Companies E and F, 2nd Battalion drive east to capture Hill 343. The assault gains about 1,000 yards, but then enemy fire originating on Hill 338 plugs the hole and stalls the advance. Lt. Colonel Hinkle, to avoid the risk of losing his right flank, orders his men to halt and dig in for the night. Also, the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, led by Major Roach, concludes an eight-mile march and arrives in an assembly area to prepare to assault Hill 338 (north); Companies G and H strike out to seize it. At 1700, Company G, led by Captain Thomas Cooney, moves around the northern half of the objective, and then he dispatches two platoons to seize the summit; without opposition, Company G takes the northern summit of Hill 338. Meanwhile, Company H, led by Captain

Nicholas Shields, advances to the right of Company G, but as it reaches a draw, heavy fire prevents further advance. Shields, rather than risk his right flank to heavy fire, orders his company to establish defensive positions on the slopes for the night. **In the 7th Infantry Division zone:** During the mid-afternoon, Generals Walker and Partridge arrive at Suwon Airfield from Taegu to conduct an impromptu meeting with the 31st Regimental Staff. During the meeting, Walker informs those in attendance that the 1st Cavalry Division is advancing quickly and that it will apparently reach X Corps lines within about thirty-six hours. It is possible that, because of the arrival of Walker in Suwon and the warning messages that arrive in X Corps headquarters, an advance unit of the 1st Cavalry is spared annihilation during the later part of today; unannounced, it plunges into the 31st Regimental lines. **In the 31st Regimental sector,** the Commanding Officer, Colonel Ovenshine, orders the 2nd Battalion to secure the heights near Osan. The task force assigned to seize the high ground is composed of Companies E and F, reinforced by a contingent of Company G and two tank platoons. In conjunction, the 3rd Battalion is poised to bolster the attack, if required. Colonel Ovenshine also establishes another task force, composed of contingents of Companies G and H, and Company A, 73rd Tank Battalion; it is to drive south along the highway. The two task forces are to attack simultaneously on the following day. In other activity, an advance contingent of TF Lynch (1st Cavalry Div.) establishes contact with the 31st Regiment during the latter part of the night, but the encounter is not expected by the 31st Regiment. **In the 32nd Regimental zone:** having crossed the Han on the previous day, the regiment awaits a counterattack, but the night has passed somewhat quietly. Then at 0430, the silence is shattered. In the 2nd Battalion zone, automatic weapons fire is heard and the distinct noise of rumbling T-34s is also picked up. Within about one-half hour, the view to the front displays about 1,000 North Koreans moving toward the Yanks on South Mountain. A bloody contest begins as the enemy hordes speed up the pace and charge forward. The 2nd Battalion pours its firepower into the enemy ranks, but the advance continues. On the lower eastern knob of South Mountain, Company F is unable to withstand the onslaught and it is overcome, but to the west, Company G defiantly holds the knob; it repulses the enemy and inflicts heavy losses. Colonel Mount commits his entire reserve, and the attack is halted. Consequently, the unwavering resistance and stout-hearted fighting retake the lost terrain by 0700. The 32nd further bludgeons the attackers by clobbering them with everything available as they retreat down the crimson slopes. Company E, 2nd Battalion mops up the reverse slopes of South Mountain and the ground near its base by the river. The Regiment counts 394 dead Communists, including 110 who had been slain within the perimeter; another 134 enemy troops are captured. **In the 1st Battalion sector,** north of South Mountain, heavy firefights develop in the streets of Seoul. Following the 2nd Battalion's victory, the 1st Battalion encounters what apparently is a straggler contingent of the original attacking force against South Mountain. Eighty North Koreans are captured during the skirmish. In the meantime, at 0800, the 3rd Battalion drives four miles east from its positions on Hill 120 to seize Hill 106 (aka 348). En route an enemy column is detected as it attempts to evacuate Seoul. Unhesitatingly, Company L, commanded by Lt. Harry McCaffrey, attacks and it devastates a strongly defended fortification, while Company I moves to the base of the objective. Company L's attack captures a headquarters, seemingly that of a corps and possibly the primary enemy headquarters posted in Seoul. Planes arrive to hammer the retreating column just as the U.S. soldiers bolt into action. The startled enemy troops are bludgeoned and rocked into a state of shock. Meanwhile, Company I storms the crest of the hill. The combined effort of the planes and the 32nd Regiment demolishes five enemy tanks and destroys or captures about forty other vehicles. Additional prizes include seven machine guns, several artillery pieces and two

ammunition Depots. The enemy force loses about 500 killed. In other activity, the S.K. 17th Regiment controls Hills 292 and 348 following its night-long assault; the seized terrain commands the highway four miles east of Seoul. By day's end, all enemy resistance is cleared from the 32nd Regiment's sector, giving it an impressive record covering action over the past eight days: the 32nd has secured all of its assigned objectives, about 15% of the fortified portion of Seoul and South Mountain. Also, patrols of the 1st Marines probe the right flank and establish contact with Company E, 32nd Regiment at the western foundation of South Mountain. During today's fighting, the 32nd Regiment sustains six killed, 92 wounded and three MIAs.

**September 26-October 21 1950 -(Pacific-Korea)** Subsequent to the Eighth Army breakout from the Pusan Perimeter and up to October 1st, 1950, seven damage survey teams scour the area to attempt to arrive at accurate numbers concerning destroyed or captured enemy equipment. The information is required to offset what apparently have been inflated figures calculated from the units' daily records. The troops comb every primary route of transportation used by armor between the 38th Parallel and the Perimeter; In addition, the Kaesong-Sariwon-P'yong-yang road above the 38th Parallel is also scoured. The detachments discover sixty demolished U.S. tanks. Enemy equipment discovered: 239 enemy T-34s, either destroyed or abandoned, and 76 Self-propelled 76-mm guns. According to evidence at the scenes, it is concluded that the air force receives credit for sixty of the enemy tanks. U.S. tanks gain credit for killing thirty-nine enemy tanks and the rocket launcher teams receive credit for thirteen kills, but it is certain that the bazookas accounted for many more enemy tanks than the figures state. There is a high possibility that the air force receives credit for some tanks which had been taken out earlier by the bazookas. Nevertheless very few enemy tanks escape to North Korea. In conjunction, U.S. tank losses from all causes, since their introduction to the conflict in July through September, is 136. The most startling statistic is that nearly 100 (70%) of the tanks had been lost to enemy mines. The figure is in sharp contrast to the tank losses attributable to mines during WW II, which totaled 20 percent.

**September 27 1950 -(Pacific-Japan)** General MacArthur is informed by the Joint Chiefs of Staff that he is now authorized to cross the 38th Parallel to complete the destruction of the North Korean forces. The orders stipulate that no U.N. troops are to cross the Yalu River into Chinese or Soviet territory and mandate that only South Korean units should proceed to the border. In conjunction, the instructions also direct MacArthur, if feasible, to unite all of Korea under the leadership of Syngman Rhee; however, MacArthur is informed that this directive is subject to change, depending on the unfolding circumstances. The JCS mandate in their directive that MacArthur is to focus on the intentions of the Soviets and Chinese and inform them immediately if he concludes that they might be preparing to enter the conflict. General MacArthur is also ordered to dispatch his plan of operations concerning the crossing of the 38th Parallel to the JCS for their approval. MacArthur balks at the suggestion that he should seek approval; he requests authorization to cross the 38th Parallel if the North Koreans refuse to surrender. MacArthur receives an answer on the 29th.

**(Pacific-Korea) (Inchon-Seoul)** Seoul still contains an abundance of Snipers emplaced within the buildings and the remaining fortified blockades. Again, one-by-one, the roadblocks begin to crumble. The 1st Battalion, 1st Marines advances north through the city against fierce opposition. Enemy guns hold up Company C near the rail station. Tanks roll forward to take the brunt of the resistance and blow holes in the defenses. Flamethrowers and M-26s fire incessantly, but enemy fire knocks out one armored vehicle and a mine takes out another before the blockage is clear. Soon after, the attack grinds eastward to reduce the remaining opposition. Company E moves on the left

while Company A drives on the right, each eliminating the barricades that stand in their path. Meanwhile, the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines grinds down Ma-Po Boulevard against rigid opposition during the first phase of its assault; the unit drives to the French Consulate and captures it just prior to 1100. The Marines briskly propel Old Glory up the staff. The flag-raising event is the prelude to the recapture of the U.S. Embassy. During the steaming battle for the streets of Seoul, a pitched battle erupts at the city's primary intersection, and the arrival of Lt. Cummings' tanks is a welcome sight. Company D, under the umbrella of the armor, penetrates directly into the hornet's nest, defended by self-propelled Guns. Cummings' tank knocks two guns out of commission, but then his tank strikes a mine and becomes damaged. Meanwhile, one enemy truck, with a howitzer in tow, is destroyed by Sgt. McDonald's tank as it attempts escape. The advance maintains a steady pace, despite the inability of the 7th Marines to connect with the 1st Marines. By 1530, the Marines whip through the rugged urban streets and secure the Russian Consulate Embassy. Elements of Company E, 2nd Battalion, commanded by Capt. Charles D. Frederick, remove the Russian colors and replace it with the Stars and Stripes. Within less than ten additional minutes, the Marines dash another 350 yards to the U.S. Consulate, and at 1537, Old Glory is unfurled atop the nearby U.S. Embassy, which still contains a contingent of North Koreans manning a machine gun; they capitulate without firing a shot. In the meantime, Company D, operating south of the government compound, drives east, but severe incoming fire from three separate directions halts progress. The Marines take cover in the hellish buildings while corsairs zoom overhead and lace the street with deadly iron streamers that crash within one block of stalled Company D. In conjunction with the air strikes, the 1st Platoon, again covered by tank fire, jumps further ahead in the wake of each pass of the aircraft. The 1st Platoon then lunges forward, taking a wide leap to terminate the resistance; the riflemen and BARmen fire incessantly as they advance and crush the resistance by 1630. The city of Seoul belongs to the U.S. Marines. Although the battle is won, some remnant snipers and several small pockets of Communist troops still need to be eliminated. The Marines execute mop-up operations, but the task is also given to the S.K. Marines and the S.K. police. Subsequent to the termination of the organized opposition, the 1st and 2nd Battalions of Chesty Puller's 1st Marines ignore the lingering sniper fire and smartly march to the eastern sector of the city to establish night positions there. **In the 5th Marines sector**, at the northern part of Seoul, the enemy resistance finally dissipates, permitting a more rapid advance. Sodaemun surprisingly is seized without incident by Company E, but too late. Based on information offered by a Korean civilian, the Communists, anticipating the loss of Seoul, had recently removed about 400 American POWs and shipped them north. Meanwhile the primary attack of the 5th Marines occurs further south. At 0645, the 3rd Battalion advances to seize the eastern knob of Hill 296 and then its principal objective, Government House. All the while, huge spirals of smoke still ring upward from the charred and shattered city, half-choking the men of Companies G and I as they clear the heights. To their surprise, the Marines encounter no heavy fire; rather, the remnant defenders on the ridge offer only sporadic sniper fire. Once the high ground is secured, the Marines drive to seize their sector of Seoul. By about 0730, Companies G and I descend the heights and begin plowing through the streets in the western sector of the city. The ground Marines, with supporting engineers and tanks, encounter resistance; however, the defenders lack stout-heartedness. Individually, the obstacles along the streets are destroyed and within two hours, elements of Company G establish contact with the 1st Marines. Without pause, the 3rd Battalion presses forward, driving north. Prior to 1030, it secures Seoul Middle School and the heights (Hill 79), slightly north of the school. From here, the Marines lurch against Kwang Who Moon Circle which boasts the final enemy barricade that raises

organized resistance. The Marine tanks advance to crush the barrier. One tank, coincidentally a flamethrower, nudges close to the blockade at the intersection, and it unleashes steady bursts of flame, terminating the opposition. From the reduced plaza, Company G, 3rd Battalion moves without incident to Government House. At 1508, simultaneously, the Marines run down two North Korean flags which are flying on two separate poles at opposite ends of the building. In quick motion, twin U.S. flags are immediately catapulted to the top of the flagpoles, signaling the retaking of the capital. Unquestionably, the occupants of the Government House had not expected to be evicted; when Marines enter the unoccupied building, they discover warm food. Subsequent to vanquishing the organized resistance, the 3rd Battalion reverts to eliminating the remaining snipers and stragglers. Later, during the evening, the 3rd Battalion establishes its command post in Government House. In the meantime, the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines, which is trailing the 3rd Battalion, reaches the Seoul Middle School during the morning; from there it swings left and drives north toward another strategic target, Hill 338, situated about one mile northwest of Government House. The attack commences at 1300, following air strikes and an artillery and mortar barrage. Initially, the 1st Platoon, Company A surges forward and gains some high ground. Then the 2nd Platoon, led by Lt. Edward Collins, shoots around the left of a wall and climbs to seize the summit. But heavy enemy fire causes a temporary suspension of the advance to allow planes to arrive and soften the resistance. The Marine pilots roar over the area and plunder the enemy positions on the crest. This devastating fire is followed by a heavy concentration of mortars which provides ample cover fire. The Marines advance behind the whizzing shells and hammer the enemy. The 1st Platoon, led by Lt. Nicholas Trapnell, springs to a knoll just below the towering peak. In conjunction, the 2nd Platoon reinitiates its assault against the summit; it moves out, again advancing to the left of the wall. At about the same time, the 3rd Platoon, led by Sergeant George Bolkow, operating on the right, bolts to the front and becomes the vanguard. The 3rd Platoon bursts through the final resistance and secures the summit of Hill 338 at 1508, completing the mission of the 3rd Battalion. It now controls the Seoul-Pyongyang Highway at the northwest edge of Seoul. After dark, the bulk of the remaining enemy troops in Seoul abscond. **In the 7th Marines sector:** In the 1st Battalion zone near the area dubbed "Haengju Front," the enemy pops out of the northern hills at about 1200 and drives toward the old ferry crossing at Hill 125. En route, the Communists encounter Company A, commanded by Captain David Banks, the designated guardians of a roadblock at Ryokokyū. Soon after, Company C, commanded by Captain Richard Delamar III, is thrown into the fight to ensure the bridgehead. The heated exchange ensues without pause and causes the Marines to add more punch. One platoon of Company B bolsters the bridgehead, and the slugfest terminates; the enemy disengages and bolts for Kaesong. In the 2nd Battalion zone, a contingent including tanks, infantry and engineers, rolls down the Kaesong Highway and easily establishes contact with Company D; the battle-weary troops, isolated between Hills 238 and 296 since the 25th, are easily rescued. The column then returns to Hoengjeoe, again against no measurable resistance. At about the same time, the 3rd Battalion, supported by fire from the 2nd Battalion, jumps off to reduce the northern portion of Hill 338. The assault meets rigid resistance. Companies H and G advance on the left and right respectively. Company H then maneuvers through a precarious draw on the right of Company G while Company I advances on the left flank of G Company. And then, unexpected heavy fire pours down from the heights. One platoon (Company H), the 3rd, led by Lt. Paul Denny, shoots forward, but the 1st and 2nd remained stalled, forcing Captain Shields, the company commander to reel it back, rather than risk isolation. In the meantime, Company I temporarily shifts its positions to bolster Company H, but still the stiff

enemy fire prevents advance. Company I then reinitiates its original mission; it drives north to reduce the remaining obstinate resistance on the far-strung knobs of Hill 338. Later, Company G is ordered to depart from its ridge line position and strike against Hill 342 to the east. To bolster the assault, Colonel Litzenberg, during mid-morning, orders his 2nd Battalion to strike Hill 343, located about 2,500 yards north of its lines. Like the other on-going assaults, this too is a methodical advance against ferocious enemy fire and over nasty ground. Companies E and F, commanded by Captains Walter Phillips and Elmer Zorn respectively, launch the attack. Company F advances on the left while Company E to the right plows straight ahead. Following a tedious contest, the Marines take the objective; by dark, Company E commands the summit. Meanwhile, Company G, commanded by Captain Cooney, is heavily engaged at Hill 342. Initially, the advance progresses well. It safely passes through a complicated enemy minefield without incident, compliments of South Koreans who had marked the mines. However, upon reaching the objective, the Marines are greeted by sniper fire. The 1st Platoon advances to provide cover fire, while the 2nd and 3rd Platoons assault the objective. But the enemy fire bars the 1st Platoon from reaching its designated positions in the heights. Meanwhile, the other two platoons advance, but lacking cover fire, they too are unable to ascend from the low ground on the slope. Throughout the remainder of the day, the enemy on Hill 342 continues to hold the high ground. The 7th Marines have reduced Hill 343, but it still shares occupancy with the enemy on Hills 338 and 342. In conjunction, the 7th Marines covering the period 23rd-27th September report 375 enemy dead and 34 prisoners; in addition the regiment captures six rifles, four machine guns and about 600 Bayonets. **In the 7th Infantry Division zone:** At Suwon, the 31st Regiment prepares to initiate its assault to seize the heights at Osan. At about dawn, when the flanking force arrives at Osan, it is fired upon by a N.K. tank, but a bazooka team knocks it out. The contingent then passes through Osan and drives north toward the high ground. Simultaneously, the other task force begins to drive south, but it encounters resistance which as suspected is part of the 105th Armored Division. Enemy tanks and antitank guns bolster the ground troops. The combat that emerges along the highway continues to intensify as the day passes, but progress is slow. Toward the end of the grueling day, the 31st Regiment's two task forces converge near Hill 113 which contains the bulk of the enemy force, and it establishes a night perimeter. Despite the failure to make enormous gains during the two attacks, the enemy sustains the loss of 300 troops. In addition, fourteen enemy tanks, six antitank guns and a few mortars are destroyed. During the fierce engagement, both Lt. Col. Robert Summers, 2nd Battalion commanding officer, and Major Lester Olson, regimental S-3, become seriously wounded. **In the 32nd Regimental zone,** at South Mountain, the day remains relatively tranquil while the regiment awaits the arrival of the 1st Marines at the conclusion of its attack. Later in the day the Marines come abreast of the 32nd, facing east. In other activity, the 32nd Regiment reports its casualties for today as 32 killed, 33 wounded and nine MIAs; however, many of these had been sustained during the previous day's heavy fighting at South Mountain. **(See Also, 1st Cavalry Division, 7th Cavalry today).** In other activity, General Gay, commanding officer, 1st Cavalry Division arrives at Osan prior to noon. The 1st Cavalry's TF 777 does not participate in the ongoing attack of the 31st Regiment, but Gay, upon conferring with a 31st Regimental Battalion commander, offers to commit the 8th Cavalry to bolster the assault. Gay also agrees to commit the 77th and 99th FABns and one tank company; the battalion commander (31st Regiment), according to Gay, informs him that he will need authorization from higher authority. There is no confirmation of any conversations concerning 1st Cavalry participation, subsequent to Gay's suggestion, but the Cavalry is not called upon to assist.

**September 28 1950 -(Pacific-Korea-Inchon-Seoul)** Seoul falls to X Corps. The North Koreans are retreating north toward Uijongbu. However, prior to evacuating the city, the Communists wreak havoc on the suspected families of the S.K. troops, guerrillas and policemen; despicable atrocities occur. During the latter part of the day, Generals O.P. Smith and Edward Craig transfer the 1st Marine Division's CP from Oeoso-ri to Seoul. **In the 1st Marines sector:** The 1st and 2nd Battalions resume the attack at 0645 while the 3rd Battalion remains in reserve; it and the 2nd S.K. Marine Battalion execute mop-up missions in the rear. The 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines sweep the northeast section of Seoul; it overcomes mines and advances against light opposition. In contrast, the 1st Battalion encounters many mines and some solid opposition even though organized resistance has been shattered. Combined, the 1st and 2nd Battalions clear the remainder of Seoul. By dark, the 1st Marines advances to Hill 133, affording the regiment domination of the Seoul-Uijongbu-Ch'orwon Highway at the northeast fringe of Seoul. In conjunction, the 7th Marines' attack against Hill 224, about one mile further north, becomes stalled by fierce resistance. **In the 5th Marines sector:** Patrols are dispatched throughout the day, but all are without incident. The 5th Marines, subsequent to gaining its objectives, is pinched out by the 1st and 7th Marines; the regiment assembles near the Women's University in Seoul. Col. Murray establishes his headquarters with the perimeter of the university. **In the 7th Marines sector:** Elements of the 7th Marines drive down the main road and secure the heights between Seoul and Uijongbu. The enemy raises stiff resistance to protect their escape routes to Uijongbu. During the day's fighting, Lt. Col. Thornton Hinkle, commanding officer of the 2nd Battalion, becomes wounded, and he is evacuated; Major Sawyer replaces him. The day's prizes include about 75 tons of dynamite, all of it manufactured in the U.S. and thought to have been captured by the North Koreans from the ROKs during the initial stages of the invasion into the south. Colonel Litzenberg establishes his headquarters slightly west of Ducksoo Palace where Colonel Puller establishes the 1st Marines Headquarters. **In the 7th Infantry Division zone:** In the 31st Regimental sector, Naval air strikes are scheduled to hit enemy-held Hills 92 and 113 at about noon to crack the remaining resistance there. The infantry, as ordered, begins pulling back from its positions of the previous night at 0830, as a precaution against being bombed by mistake. The planes arrive on schedule and attack the targets, including a rail tunnel near Hill 92 for about fifty minutes. Subsequent to the cessation of the air strikes, artillery (57th and 92nd FABn) and mortar fire begins pounding the slopes until slightly before 1330. When the guns cease firing, Companies K and L drive against Hill 113; they overcome nominal resistance and seize it by 1515. Company K deploys on Hill 113 and it provides cover fire for Company L which drives to Hill 92; the objective is quickly seized, giving the regiment domination of both hills within one hour. Enemy survivors retire eastward. No casualties are sustained by the 31st Regiment during the mission which clears the highway between Suwon and Osan. In conjunction, the regiment buries more than 100 Communists troops. On the previous day, General Gay had offered to commit elements of the 1st Cavalry to bolster the 31st Regimental attack, but the 8th Cavalry remained out of the fight. Subsequently, General Barr, commanding officer, 7th Infantry Division states that he was never informed of General Gay's offer.

**September 29 1950 -(Pacific-Japan)** Today, subsequent to the recapture of Seoul, the capital of the Republic of Korea, General MacArthur receives a message from President Truman: **"I KNOW I SPEAK FOR THE ENTIRE AMERICAN PEOPLE WHEN I SEND YOU MY WARMEST CONGRATULATIONS ON THE VICTORY WHICH HAS BEEN ACHIEVED UNDER YOUR LEADERSHIP IN KOREA. FEW OPERATIONS IN MILITARY HISTORY CAN**

**MATCH EITHER THE DELAYING ACTION WHERE YOU TRADED SPACE FOR TIME IN WHICH TO BUILD UP YOUR FORCES, OR THE BRILLIANT MANEUVER (Marine Amphibious Landing) WHICH HAS NOW RESULTED IN THE LIBERATION OF SEOUL."** More praise for MacArthur and his command arrives from the JC S. President Truman also sends praise to the American commanders of the U.S. Air Force, Army and Navy: Lt. Generals George Stratemeyer and Walton H. Walker, respectively, and Vice Admiral Charles T. Joy. Personal congratulations to the troops of all nations fighting under the colors of the United Nations are also dispatched by Truman. Although the magnificent victory at Inchon has compressed the differences between MacArthur and Washington, they still exist. MacArthur believes firmly that the Communists will conquer Europe via Southeast Asia unless they are halted, and he would prefer more powerful forces in Southeast Asia. But Washington maintains that Europe must receive the bulk of U.S. troops to forestall a Soviet advance there; if this strategy is to continue, the Korean crisis must be held to a small-scale war. In other activity, General MacArthur receives a response to his message to the JCS on the 27th; he receives a confidential letter from General George C. Marshall, which in essence gives him full authority to cross the 38th Parallel. President Truman has approved Marshall's letter to MacArthur. In other activity, General MacArthur issues Operations Plan 9-50, which in effect gives the 1st Marine Division priority for embarkation at Inchon; the Marines again are the Amphibious Assault portion of X Corps. **(Pacific-Korea)** X Corps has requested that the 1st Marine Division provide a band and two honor guards for the ceremony in Seoul; however, the Marines had not brought their instruments from Japan. It is suggested that the Marines transport the instruments by air, but in the meantime, General MacArthur makes it clear that there will be no fanfare at the ceremony celebrating the liberation of Seoul. At 1000, General MacArthur, having traveled from Japan, lands at Kimpo Airfield to preside over the restoration of civilian government in Seoul. By the time MacArthur arrives at the airfield, his path of advance into the city has been swept free of resistance, but the enemy had been active during the early morning hours. Furthermore, the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines is posted along the route and the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines is deployed all around Government House. With many people, including politicians, citizens and Military representatives of the combat units, in attendance, MacArthur begins the ceremony at 1200. He unabashedly refers to God during his short speech, referring to "a merciful Providence" while he reestablishes Syngman Rhee's government. Upon completion of his speech, MacArthur leads the audience in saying the Lord's prayer. Also, President Syngman Rhee focuses on the American military personnel in the audience and remarks: "HOW CAN I EVER EXPLAIN TO YOU MY OWN UNDERLYING GRATITUDE AND THAT OF THE KOREAN PEOPLE?" General MacArthur departs Seoul immediately following the simple ceremony. His plane takes off from Kimpo Airfield at 1335, to the great relief of the Marines assigned to protect MacArthur and the other dignitaries. The Marines are quite aware that all the mines had not been extricated, and they remain concerned about snipers still in the area. It had been estimated by U.S. Intelligence that Seoul had been defended by about 8,000 Soldiers, and that another 5,000 were deployed in Yongdungp'o. In addition, about 7,000 reinforcements arrive in the area subsequent to the invasion of Inchon. This gives the enemy about 20,000 troops, but another 10,000-13,000 are spread out between the Han River and Osan. Intelligence also suggests that about 10,000 other troops had been in the area, but either they were not thrown into the fighting or they arrived too late to be utilized. In other activity, while in Korea General MacArthur confers with Generals Almond (X Corps), Stratemeyer (FEAF) and Walker (Eighth Army) and with Admiral Joy (NFFE) with regards to the Wonsan Operation. During the conference, MacArthur specifies October

20th as the date that the 1st Marine Division will land at Wonsan. Later in the day, General Almond confers with division commanders and various Staff members at X Corps headquarters in Ascom City, outside Inchon, to discuss the Wonsan Operation; at the meeting, it is decided that D-Day for the invasion will be tentatively scheduled for October 15th. Almond's decision to invade on the 15th is founded on the assumption that Eighth Army will complete relief of X Corps by October 3rd. In conjunction, the Marines in attendance, including General Shepherd, feel strongly that the schedule laid out by Almond is not feasible, especially in view of the fact that the Marines are still deeply involved with terminating the ongoing Seoul operation. **(Inchon-Seoul) X Corps:** All units are informed that there is a great probability that another amphibious invasion will be undertaken and that it will occur on the east coast of Korea. **In the 1st Marine Division zone:** At 2000, OpnO 13-50 is issued; it sets forth directions for securing the captured capital. The order specifies that the attack continue eastward while simultaneous reconnaissance patrols (in strength) probe north and northwest. In addition, the order stipulates that the 1st Marine Division relieve elements of the 7th Infantry Division which are posted north of the Han River and that it seize defined blocking positions. In conjunction, the 1st Marines will deploy to the northeast, the 5th Marines to the northwest and the 7th Marines to the north, essentially forming a semi-circle around the capital. Also, the Marines receive responsibility for the area north of the Han River and west of the Pukhan River. In the 1st Marines sector, the enemy mounts two counterattacks, each against the 2nd Battalion. A rifle platoon defending an outpost to the front of the MLR is struck at 0445, but the assault fails. Soon after the initiation of the first assault, the enemy strikes the left flank of the battalion, but here, too, the enemy is easily thwarted. Much of the fighting is close-quartered and enemy grenades inflict the bulk of Marine casualties. The Marines sustain four killed and 28 wounded. The Communists lose 48 killed. **In the 7th Marines sector:** At about 0600, the North Koreans strike against the positions of the 7th Marines, but the attack is quickly extinguished. Following the early action, the 7th Marines advances from its positions and gains the remainder of its assigned objectives by dusk. **In the 7th Infantry Division zone:** The 2nd Battalion, 17th Regiment, operating in the southeast section of Seoul, enters its first battle; it encounters a strong enemy force. The firefights continue beyond dusk, and the battalion sustains seventy-nine casualties. The enemy attempts to mount a new counterattack, but the guns of the 49th FABn enter the fight and commence a powerful bombardment, shattering it. The enemy losses during the engagement amount to more than 400. **In other activity,** South Korean Marines secure Yosu on the south coast.

**September 30 1950 -(Pacific-Japan)** General MacArthur dispatches a message to the Secretary of Defense: "**UNLESS AND UNTIL THE ENEMY CAPITULATES, I REGARD ALL OF KOREA OPEN FOR OUR MILITARY OPERATIONS.**" **(Pacific-Korea) X Corps:** Corps reports that 14,000 North Korean troops have been killed during the Inchon-Seoul operations, and that an additional 7,000 enemy troops have been captured. Estimates of enemy casualties inflicted by South Korean troops are not available. Also, there is no exact number of destroyed enemy tanks, but the losses are estimated to be between 45-50 in the vicinity of Inchon-Seoul-Yongdungp'o; enemy losses at Suwon-Osan amount to about fifteen tanks. In contrast, the U.S. Army (X Corps) has no tanks in action during the operation. The Marines lose no tanks to the enemy tank forces, but enemy ground forces cost the Marines several Tanks. **X Corps sector:** Engineers, with the strong support of the FEAF Combat Cargo Command, complete the fabrication of a pontoon bridge across the Han today, permitting traffic to cross; 3,034 Vehicles cross into Seoul today, and these are

followed by many more on a twenty-four hour basis during succeeding days. The air force flies the bridge in from Japan on C-119s, which make seventy-nine flights. The engineers are working on completing a second span across the river to open two-way traffic. **In the 1st Marine Division zone:** General O.P. Smith is informed of the probable X Corps invasion of Wonsan. The 1st Marine Division assumes responsibility for the 32nd Regiment sector in Seoul, permitting it to move back across the Han River to the south bank. Also, the 1st Marine Division reports that it has inflicted 13,666 casualties upon the enemy during the Inchon-Seoul operation, and it also states that 4,792 enemy troops have been captured. The Marines report that they have destroyed or seized nineteen 45-mm antitank guns, 56 heavy machine guns, 337 light and submachine guns, and twenty-three 120-mm mortars, as well as 59 14.5 antitank rifles and 7,453 enemy rifles. The 1st Marine Division sustains the heaviest losses of X Corps: the Marines sustain 366 killed, 49 who succumb to wounds, 2,029 wounded and six Marines listed as missing. In conjunction, Marine losses are most severe between September 21st-27th (Seoul) when 1,482 casualties are sustained; 285 of these occur on the 24th. Division issues OpnO 14-50 at 1500; it designates the missions of the regiments. The 1st Marines (RCT-1) takes responsibility for the right flank, and it is to establish blocking positions in the heights from two to five miles northeast of the capital. The 5th Marines (RCT-5) is ordered to maintain a strong Reconnaissance presence by dispatching a reinforced battalion to Suyuhyon to establish a blocking position, while also protecting the division's left flank. The order also stipulates that the 5th Marines is to (upon order) commit one reinforced rifle company for Task Force Kumpo. The attachment units are 1st Battalion, 11th Marines; one Battery 50th AAA Battalion, USA; Company A, 1st Tank Battalion; Company A, 1st Engineer Battalion and one Company of the 1st Motor Transport Battalion. The 7th Marines (RCT-7) is to speed to the area near Uijongbu and secure blocking positions there. The attachment contingents are 3rd Battalion, 11th Marines; one Battery 50th AAA Battalion, USA; Company D, 1st Tank Battalion and one Company of South Korean Marines. In conjunction, the order directs that the KMC Regiment (minus the 1st and 3rd Battalions and one Company of the 5th Battalion), augmented by one detachment of air and naval gunfire liaison company, is to proceed east to the confluence of the Han and Pukhan Rivers. Once there, it is to secure blocking positions along the road that stretches from Seoul. Also, Task Force Kumpo, when activated by division, is to be comprised of one reinforced rifle company, 5th Marines; the 3rd KMC Battalion; Battery C, 50th AAA Battalion, USA; and if necessary, a detachment of tanks will be attached. **In the 7th Infantry Division zone:** The 7th Division reports that its 32nd Regiment has killed about 3,000 enemy troops and captured 1,203. In conjunction, the 17th and 31st Regiments each inflict several hundred casualties upon the North Koreans. In contrast, the 7th Division sustains 572 battle casualties: 106 killed, 409 wounded and 57 MIA, but these casualty figures include 166 South Korean troops who had been attached to the 7th Division. In other activity, the 7th Division begins moving to Suwon and Ich'on, south and southeast respectively, to begin the laborious movement by land to Pusan. In conjunction, the division's tanks and heavy equipment will embark from Inch'on aboard ten LSTs which await the arrival of the 7th Division components.

**October 1 1950 -(Pacific-Korea)** The Commander-in-Chief of the North Korean Forces receives a call for surrender from General MacArthur: "**THE EARLY AND TOTAL DEFEAT AND COMPLETE DESTRUCTION OF YOUR ARMED FORCES AND WAR-MAKING POTENTIAL IS NOW INEVITABLE. IN ORDER THAT THE DECISION OF THE UNITED NATIONS MAY BE CARRIED OUT WITH A MINIMUM OF FURTHER LOSS**

**OF LIFE AND DESTRUCTION OF PROPERTY, I, AS THE UNITED NATIONS' COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF, CALL UPON YOU AND THE FORCES UNDER YOUR COMMAND, IN WHATEVER PART OF KOREA SITUATED, FORTHWITH TO LAY DOWN YOUR ARMS AND CEASE HOSTILITIES..."** The North Koreans are also informed that they should free all POWs and civilian prisoners. The broadcast receives no response. Subsequently, on October 9th, another surrender offer is delivered to the North Korean leader. In other activity: from September 1st until today, the U.N. has collected about 30,000 enemy prisoners

**X Corps:** Preliminary directions from GHQ, Far East Command, concerning the amphibious landing at Wonsan are delivered to Admiral Struble and General Almond; Joint TF 7 is reestablished; Struble is renamed the commanding officer. The objectives of JTF 7 are: 1.) to maintain a naval blockade of Korea's east coast, stretching from Ch'ongjin southward; 2.) to board and transport X Corps to the Wonsan area and simultaneously provide cover and support en route to the objective; 3.) to initiate the required pre-D-day naval operations; 4.) to launch (on D-day) an amphibious assault and seize, occupy and defend a beachhead in the vicinity of Wonsan; 5.) lastly, to provide naval gunfire, air and initial logistic support to X Corps in the same area. In conjunction, the North Koreans have maintained Wonsan as a naval base, but it was the Japanese who initially developed the city's naval capabilities. Also, off Wonsan, a helicopter, attached to the USS *Rochester* discovers enemy mines while conducting a reconnaissance mission; 61 mines are spotted.

**In the 1st Marine Division zone:** General O.P. Smith receives a memorandum directing him to submit a plan (by Oct. 3rd) for loading the 1st Marine Division at Inchon for the Wonsan invasion; however, at present, no ships have been designated for the operation, thus making it impossible for Smith to provide the requested information at the required time. **In the 1st Marines zone:** As scheduled, the regiment deploys at its assigned blocking positions northeast of the capital, and the day passes without major incident. Nevertheless several patrols encounter some light resistance.

**In the 5th Marines sector:** In the 2nd Battalion zone, patrols are dispatched along the P'yongyang Road stretching to Munsan-ni and the Imjin River. At 0600 the 3rd Battalion, bolstered by a detachment of engineers, one tank platoon and one battery of artillery, drives toward Suyuhyon. Its rear is guarded by the 1st Battalion's Company C which is to simultaneously protect the route of the returning vehicles. The column advances throughout the day, hindered primarily by two enemy roadblocks; they are both demolished. By dusk, the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines (reinforced) reaches the heights just shy of the objective; an enemy counterattack is sprung on the following morning. Meanwhile, the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines' patrols scan their wide area for the enemy. Contact with the enemy is made at about 1030 when about 150-200 North Korean troops are detected. The firefight is brief, thanks in great part to the timely arrival of planes and an effective mortar bombardment. The enemy is quickly routed; they leave thirty dead troops on the field. **In the 7th Marines sector:** The regiment moves out early. By 0630, the battalions advance with the 3rd Battalion acting as vanguard while the 2nd Battalion trails in reserve. Meanwhile, anticipating an enemy ambush about halfway to the objective, Col. Litzinberg dispatches the 1st Battalion, led by Lt. Colonel Raymond Davis, to take positions from which it can provide cover fire for the 3rd Battalion when it traverses through a treacherous passageway that is susceptible to heavy fire from concealed enemy positions on the sheer slopes that dominate the pass. The feint movement goes well for the 1st Battalion. Expeditiously, it deploys on both sides of the passageway and awaits the advancing 3rd Battalion. In the meantime, the 2nd Battalion becomes snarled when it encounters an enemy minefield. While the ground troops, tanks and artillery units are forced to halt, Engineers immediately begin eliminating the obstacles. During the day's march, one 3rd Battalion patrol

comes across a grizzly scene; the bodies of thirty executed civilian Koreans, including some women and one child, all of whom have their hands bound behind their backs. According to a Communist prisoner, the victims are relatives of South Korean Soldiers. While Major Roach's 2nd Battalion is struggling to clear the mines and resume the advance, the enemy and the 1st Battalion clash. As expected, the hills are infested with enemy troops. The accompanying artillery initiates a heavy series of barrages that strike both Marine battalions during the day. Aircraft arrive to pound the slopes to loosen resistance, but the enemy holds firmly. The Marines halt the advance for the night. In conjunction, the 7th Marines are reinforced by the 3rd Battalion, 11th Marines (Artillery), Company D, 1st Tank Battalion, Company D, 1st Engineer Battalion and one company of Korean Marines (Company C).

**October 2 1950 - (United Nations)** The Soviet Representative, seemingly unhappy with the success of the U.N. forces against the Communists in Korea, takes steps to halt the progress. The Soviets offer a plan to order a cease fire. The Russian proposal also calls for the withdrawal of all foreign troops from Korea. **(Pacific-Japan)** General MacArthur issues U.N. Command Operations Order 2, the order concerning the imminent attack into North Korea. The order stipulates specific instructions concerning U.N. operations above the 38th Parallel, and it clarifies the precise mission of X Corps and its plan of movement. In conjunction, X Corps is to revert to GHQ reserve when Eighth Army moves through it while advancing through Seoul. Also, the 1st Marine Division and X Corps Headquarters are to embark at Inchon; the 7th Infantry Division and the majority of X Corps troops are to move to Pusan and embark there. Subsequently, MacArthur concludes that the congestion at the port of Inchon, combined with the lousy tides, will definitely hinder the mission. He decides that some of the force will have to embark at Pusan to ensure that the operation remains on schedule. On the following day, Eighth Army issues its operation order to blueprint its portion of the attack into North Korea. **(Pacific-Korea)** Several conferences are held between today and October 4th concerning the Wonsan operation; Admiral Struble and staff officers decide to establish Advance JTF 7. The advance group, composed of twenty-one minesweepers, including eight Japanese, one South Korean and ten U.S. vessels, begins its clearing operation in Wonsan Harbor on the 10th. **X Corps:** Responsibility for Kumpo peninsula is transferred from Corps to the 1st Marine Division. In conjunction, both Kimpo and Kumpo are names used to designate the peninsula formed by the mouth of the Han River; Kimpo is the name of the airfield and Kumpo is the name of the principal town on the peninsula. Task Force Kumpo, composed of the 3rd Korean Marine Battalion, a unit of the 1st Signal Battalion, USMC, and C Battery, 50th AAA Battalion, USA, relieves elements of the 187th Airborne RCT and assumes responsibility for the operations there. However, no enemy activity is discovered on the peninsula after today. During the 187th's watch, the unit had been plagued with a lack of artillery, compelling it to depend on naval gunfire and the spot teams, led by Lieutenants Leo McMillan, USN and John E. Dolan, 7th Marines. Both officers and their respective teams remain with TF Kumpo. The 187th Airborne RCT had protected the Marines' right flank as they advanced to Seoul. **In the 5th Marines sector:** The enemy launches a company-sized assault against the Marines at 0230. It is met by tenacious machine gun fire and easily terminated. The Marines discover 67 enemy dead on the field at daybreak. At 0700 the march is resumed and without further incident, Suyuhyon is occupied. **In the 7th Marines sector,** The N.K. 31st Regiment, 31st Division still holds its bulwark positions in the heights along the Uijongbu Road near Nuwon-ni several miles south of Uijongbu. At 0630, the 1st and 3rd Battalions, commanded by Colonel Davis and Major Roach respectively, reinitiate the drive down the road to

fracture the resolute enemy entrenchments on the slopes above the defile. VMF-312 planes swarm over the area throughout the day, plastering the slopes to aid the eviction of the entrenched enemy. The 1st Battalion, commanded by Lt. Col. Davis, advances on the left (east) of the defile in conjunction with the 3rd Battalion which drives forward on the right (west). The 3rd Battalion, commanded by Major Roach, punches its way to the midpoint of the passageway, but again, enemy minefields slow the progress of the tanks and force the engineers to resume the tedious task of clearing the path while under incessant fire. Meanwhile, the enemy throws a roundhouse punch to break up the advance. The North Koreans launch a horrific barrage which includes devastating artillery fire and mortars. These supplement the ongoing small arms fire which is hammering both of the advancing battalions. The tanks of the 1st Platoon spring into action. They swivel their turrets toward two dingy huts which contain enemy troops. The guns roar and their thundering fire decimates the huts and kills about 35 North Korean troops. During the heated exchange, amazingly, the enemy manages to thread the needle by firing directly through the 105-mm gun tube of a dozer tank. The incredibly lucky shot wounds two Marine crewmen. In conjunction, the 1st Battalion, also bolstered by planes, continues its dogged advance. The battalion presses forward; it darts across the stream east of the passageway and then lunges into the nearby heights, gaining only about three hundred yards at day's end.

**October 3 1950- (United Nations)** The Indian delegate to the U.N., Sir Benegal Rau, makes it known that India is against sending U.N. troops across the 38th Parallel. In conjunction, Chinese Government officials have informed India's Ambassador to China that the Chinese will enter the war if U.N. troops enter North Korea. **(Pacific-Japan)** General MacArthur makes the first official statement concerning the U.N. crossing of the 38th Parallel. **(Pacific-Korea) (Inchon-Seoul)** X Corps orders the 1st Marine Division to begin moving to an assembly area at Inchon to prepare to embark for Wonsan. In contrast to Inchon, the town of Wonsan, located along the southwest tip of Yonghung Bay, is much more accessible and the indigenous tides are more easily conquerable. The port, considered one of the finest natural harbors in Korea, is strategically located about 80 miles north of the 38th Parallel. By 6 October, the 1st, 5th and 11th Marines are in position at Inchon; the 7th Marines arrive later. The 1st and 7th Marines are scheduled to assault Wonsan. Unlike Inchon, the invasion force will face neither unruly currents nor nasty seawalls blanketed by fog, thereby ensuring the landing craft a quick trek to the beaches. **In the 1st Marine Division zone:** The 1st and 5th Marine Regiments maintain their positions, but continue to send out patrols. The commandant, General Clifton Cates, arrives by helicopter at division headquarters. His party includes Generals Edwin Pollock and Clayton Jerome. After receiving a briefing, General Cates departs by helicopter to observe (from the air) the sectors of the 1st and 5th Marines. Afterward, Cates takes a jeep to the front lines of the 7th Marines to watch the regiment hammer its way to the objective. **In the 7th Marines sector,** the attack to seize the heights above the defile and to gain Uijongbu resumes. Roach's 3rd Battalion pushes along the west side of the road while the 1st Battalion, under Davis, drives along the east side, with each afforded heavy air and tank support. The armor throws its full weight into the battle, slamming the enemy with relentless firepower, expending 167 rounds of 90-mm shells and about 20,000 machine gun shells to bolster the attacks. The supporting air attacks by VMF-312, although effective, are extremely costly. An unending string of low level sorties blasts the North Korean-held slopes. Enemy small arms fire knocks out one plane piloted by First Lt. Robert Crocker; he dies shortly after the crash. Another pilot, Major Charles McLean, is also shot down. Luckily, he lands his plane on friendly terrain and survives.

During the day's fighting, the planes of VMF-312 also spot an enemy column of vehicles and immediately take it under fire. The swift action decimates seven vehicles, but one truck manages to evade destruction. The attackers gain ground and both battalions surge to the high ground on opposite sides of the road. To add more momentum, Colonel Litzenberg commits Major Webb D. Sawyer's 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines. It speeds through the passageway, aware that the 1st and 3rd Battalions dominate the east and west respectively. The attacking Marines welcome the buffer in the heights which provides them with extra stamina to burst through the remaining obstacles. The attack accelerates further when the 2nd Battalion discovers that the enemy artillery positions and supply centers have been hurriedly deserted. The 2nd Battalion storms down the highway heading straight for the objective, fully aware that the regiment has bludgeoned the resistance. Two damaged enemy tanks are captured during the assault, but seven tanks escape. Meanwhile, the Marine planes have also destroyed four additional supporting tanks. Three battalions of the N.K. 31st Regiment, one artillery battalion, augmented by contingents of the N.K. 17th Division and the Seoul Division, had staunchly blocked the 7th Marines. Nevertheless, subsequent to three brutal days of grueling combat, Colonel Litzenberg's RCT-7, the freshest regiment in the division, prevails. Today's advance of about three miles through strenuous terrain crushes the resistance. At 1700, the 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines under Major Webb Sawyer enters the abandoned town, taking uncontested control of Uijongbu which is reduced to charred debris by the air assaults. The splendid advance also severs the enemy's communications between the areas east and west of the captured town. The stunning victory for the Marines' newest regiment also provides X Corps with a vital blocking position along its final phase line. But the victory is not without pain; the regiment sustains thirteen killed and 111 wounded during the three-day fight for the town. The 7th Marines occupy the heights north of the prize and establish a line around the town as a night perimeter. The combat in the vicinity of Uijongbu during the 2nd-3rd is the final organized resistance raised against the 1st Marine Division during the Inchon-Seoul operations. From this point on, the Marines hold their blocking positions but continue to dispatch patrols to the front and along the flank. Orders arrive on October 5th directing the Marine Regiments to begin staging in Inchon. **Eighth Army:** Eighth Army issues its Operation Plan for the attack into North Korea. I Corps is ordered to seize a line north of the Imjin River, near the 38th Parallel; the minimum force to be committed is one Division.

**October 4 1950 - (Pacific-Japan)** During the early morning hours an urgent telegram for Ambassador Sebald arrives at the Embassy from Washington. The message documents a conversation between the Indian Ambassador to China, K. M. Pannikar, and Chou En-lai (Communist Foreign Minister) whereby Chou En-lai convincingly suggests that if U.N. troops cross the 38th Parallel, Chinese Combat troops will join the fight. At this point, it has already been determined that Chinese forces are involved (since August); this has been confirmed by anti-aircraft fire originating on the Chinese side of the Yalu River in Manchuria. Active Chinese participation has also been irrefutably verified by the capture of Chinese Soldiers. **(Pacific-Korea)** At Wonsan during the darkened hours, the Communists have been working tirelessly to lay an impenetrable minefield in the channel and on the beaches. Subsequent to the arrival of U.S. X Corps troops, it becomes known that thirty Russians had supervised the entire operation until today; the Russians evacuate the town due to the imminent approach of U.S. and S.K. troops. **X Corps:** Corps is less than jubilant when Far East Air Forces and the Fifth Air Force, pursuant to an order of July 8th, take control of all Marine Squadrons at Kimpo Airfield. Nonetheless, the Marines sustain no substantive losses as the FEAF orders the 1st Marine Air Wing to continue to support the X Corps. In other

activity, General Almond issues Corps order OpnO-4, which details the plan of operation for the Wonsan mission and specifies the missions of subordinate units. The plan directs the 1st Marine Division to seize a base of operations by initiating an amphibious assault to secure the airport. In conjunction, the 7th Division and the 92nd and 96th FABns receive orders to embark from Pusan and land at Wonsan (upon orders). In the meantime, the 7th Division is directed to attack west toward P'yopngyang and link up with the advancing Eighth Army there. In other activity, the fuel situation at Kimpo eases during October subsequent to the completion of a pipeline which carries aviation fuel from Inch'on to the airfield. **In the 1st Marine Division zone:** The 1st Cavalry Division passes through the lines of the 5th Marines (northwest of Seoul) as it moves toward Kaesong. Also, the S.K. II Corps begins to assemble in the sector of the 7th Marines in the vicinity of Uijongbu. **Eighth Army:** Army specifies which route the 7th Division (X Corps) is to use to advance from Inchon and Suwon to Pusan; division is to advance through Ch'ungju, Hamch'ang, Kumch'on Taegu and Kyongju; the troops are directed to board trains at Taegu to carry them on the last phase of the 350-mile journey. From Taegu, the trucks are to return to the departure areas and duplicate the trip with other troops.

**October 4-10 1950 - (Pacific-Korea)** Admiral Doyle gathers an array of Vessels off Inchon to accommodate the landing force for the Wonsan operation. The ships include some from the military sea transport service and LSTs, the latter manned by Japanese sailors. Transport Squadron One arrives on the 8th, bringing the complement to 71 Vessels. The force is composed of one AGC (Amphibious force flagship; eight APAs (Assault transports); two APs (Transports); ten AKAs (Assault cargo ships); five LSDs (Landing ship, dock); 36 LSTs (Landing ship, tank); three LSUs (Landing ship, utility) and one LSM (Landing ship, medium). The naval force also includes six commercial cargo ships ("Victory" and C-2 types).

**October 5 1950 - (Pacific-Korea)** Admiral Struble reinitiates JTF-7, again utilizing vessels from his Seventh Fleet. The units are: TF 95 (Advance Force), commanded by Rear Admiral Allen E. Smith; TG 95.2 (Covering and Support), commanded by Rear Admiral Charles Hartman; TG 95.6 (Minesweeping), commanded by Captain Richard Spofford; TF 90 (Attack Force), commanded by Rear Admiral James Doyle; TF 79 (Logistical Support Force, commanded by Captain Bernard Austin; TF 77 (Fast Carrier Force), commanded by Rear Admiral Edward Ewen; TG 96.8 (Escort Carrier Group), commanded by Rear Admiral Richard Ruble; TG 96.2 (Patrol & Reconnaissance), commanded by Rear Admiral George Henderson; TG 70.1 (Flagship Group), commanded by Captain Irving T. Duke. Admiral Struble's flag will fly aboard the recently arrived Battleship, the U.S.S. *Missouri*. Pursuant to Struble's order, the Fast Carrier Force and the Patrol Reconnaissance Force move to initiate search and attack missions prior to the landing of the ground forces at Wonsan. The cruisers, destroyers and minesweepers of the advance force will be simultaneously operating off Wonsan. These combined forces will coordinate their efforts to lessen enemy resistance and seize control of the seas off the objective. **(Inchon-Seoul) X Corps: In the 1st Marine Division zone:** As directed by OpnO 15-50, the final order issued by the 1st Marine Division during the Inchon Operation, the 5th Marines culminates its dogged 20 days on the fields of battle. It is to begin staging in Inchon at 1700. The exhausted Regiment moves back across the Han River and returns to Inchon where it prepares to move against Wonsan. In conjunction, the 11th Marines is scheduled to begin its staging at 1700 on the 6th, followed by the 1st Marines (prior to darkness on 6th). The 7th Marines' orders stipulate that it is to join the other regiments in Inchon during the afternoon of the 7th. In conjunction, the Korean Marine Regiment is to arrive in Inchon

prior to darkness on the 7th.

**October 6 1950 - (Pacific-Korea)** The 3rd Logistical Command (USN) assumes responsibility for all unloading operations at Inchon. In conjunction, X Corps uses its muscle to pull strings; it requests that all unloading unrelated to the X Corps mission be suspended to prevent the ongoing operation (Wonsan) from running behind schedule. It is estimated that unless X Corps retains total use of the port facilities, the operation would run six to twenty days behind schedule. **X Corps: In the 1st Marine Division sector:** The 1st Marines departs its positions near Uijongju and moves to Inchon to join the 5th Marines. Along the outskirts of Inchon where the Marines had established a cemetery, responsibility for it is transferred to the United Nations. The stirring ceremony includes an invocation by Chaplain R.M. Schwyhart (1st Marine Division). Following the prayers, General Almond, USA, gives his remarks and then he proceeds to lay a wreath on the grave of an unknown soldier. Following this, the graves of a Marine, soldier and an ROK trooper receive similar wreaths by General O.P. Smith, General Barr, USA, and S.K. Colonel Lee, respectively. The scene is spine-tingling, as Taps blows and erect riflemen fire volleys over the graves of their fallen brothers. The ceremony ends with the playing of the inspirational Star Spangled Banner and the Korean national anthem. In other activity, the attack force-landing force obtains the required intelligence and maps to enable staff officers to plan for the invasion of Wonsan, but the arrival is not timely. It soon becomes obvious that the tentative invasion date (October 15th) must be postponed. Nevertheless, General O.P. Smith orders the 1st Marine Division to embark on the 8th. The initial landing force contingents and accompanying weaponry will prematurely be placed aboard ships to await the conclusions of the planners with regards to the expected enemy resistance at Wonsan. **In the 7th Division sector:** The 7th Division continues moving toward Pusan, but remnant enemy forces raise havoc with elements of the 2nd Battalion, 31st Regiment. At 0200, the North Koreans spring an ambush from positions in the mountains near Mun'gyong and inflict nine casualties.

**October 7 1950 - (Pacific-Japan)** General Hickey receives a call from General Frank Allen (Asst. Commander, 1st Cavalry Div.); Allen, inquiring for General Walker, requests a date for A-day (crossing the 38th Parallel) and he receives the response: "YOUR A-Day WILL BE AT SUCH TIME AS YOU SEE IT READY." General Allen then informs General Hickey that Eighth Army is nearly ready to attack. In conjunction, Eighth Army, subsequent to relieving X Corps, deploys along the 38th Parallel; elements of the 1st Cavalry will cross on the 9th. **(Pacific-Korea)** Admiral Doyle, Commanding Officer of the JTF 7 Attack Force, suggests October 20th as the earliest date on which the Wonsan assault forces could meet for the purpose of invading Wonsan. Admirals Joy and Struble agree with Doyle; the recommended date of October 20th is then forwarded to General MacArthur. In turn, MacArthur accepts the tentative date for D-day, but he recommends that everything possible should be done to attempt to jump off on an earlier date. Necessary transport vessels for the invasion have arrived late, and they lack the promised supplies. Also contributing to the delay is the fact that Eighth Army's relief of X Corps has run four days behind schedule. **X Corps:** Corps relinquishes responsibility for the Inchon-Seoul area to Eighth Army at 1200 when elements of Eighth Army relieve the remaining troops of the 7th Marines at Uijongbu. X Corps then reverts to GHQ reserve as stipulated in prior orders. The 7th Marines move to Inchon to rejoin the division there. In other activity, the 31st and 32nd Regiments begin reaching Pusan. **In the 1st Marine Division sector,** the 7th Marines departs Uijongbu to join its division at Inchon. In conjunction, during the early morning hours, the 1st Marine Division command post departs Seoul and moves to an area slightly north of Ascom City. The Marine Corps, having concluded one of the

most daring and important amphibious invasions of its history, concludes the Seoul-Inchon operation successfully and without incident. At 0935, General O.P. Smith, acting upon orders (Corps OpnO 5), reports to Admiral Doyle to assume responsibility as commander of landing force for the expected invasion of Wonsan. The 1st Marine Division casualties for the entire operation (Inchon-Seoul) stands at 366 Marines killed; 49 others die of their wounds. In addition, 2,029 men are wounded and six others are listed as missing in action. In contrast, the Marine Corps records indicate that the 1st Marine Division accounts for the destruction of 44 enemy tanks (the figure is subsequently adjusted to 38 due to duplicated claims). At Kimpo airfield, squadrons of the 1st Marine Aircraft Wing remain in action for two additional days despite the relief of the ground Marines. The five Marine squadrons, in action since 7 September, terminate operations on October 7th, having flown 2,774 sorties. The bulk of the missions during the thirty-three day span consisted of close-support for the ground units. Marine aviation losses are: eleven planes shot down at a cost of six pilots killed; one crewman killed and two pilots wounded. Also, the flying angels of VMO-6 buzzed in and out of the furious battlefields with fearless resolve while defying constant danger to rescue downed pilots and evacuate wounded ground troops. These helicopters and observation planes flew 643 flights within a period of 515 hours. The gallant crews have extricated twelve downed pilots from behind enemy lines, and in addition, they evacuated 179 gravely wounded troops to receive medical aid at hospitals at sea and on shore. In conjunction, subsequent to the seizure of Seoul, General MacArthur in a report to the United Nations emphasizes the dedicated effort to prostrate the enemy strength. He states in part: **"EVENTS OF THE PAST TWO WEEKS HAVE BEEN DECISIVE...CAUGHT BETWEEN OUR NORTHERN AND SOUTHERN FORCES, BOTH OF WHICH ARE COMPLETELY SELF SUSTAINING BECAUSE OF OUR ABSOLUTE AIR AND NAVAL SUPREMACY, THE ENEMY IS THOROUGHLY SHATTERED THROUGH DISRUPTION OF HIS LOGISTICAL SUPPORT AND OUR COMBINED COMBAT ACTIVITIES...THE PROMPT ACTION OF OUR TWO FORCES IS DRAMATICALLY SYMBOLIC OF THIS COLLAPSE...A SUCCESSFUL FRONTAL ATTACK AND ENVELOPMENT HAS COMPLETELY CHANGED THE TIDE OF BATTLE IN SOUTH KOREA. THE BACKBONE OF THE NORTH KOREAN ARMY HAS BEEN BROKEN AND THEIR SCATTERED FORCES ARE BEING LIQUIDATED OR DRIVEN NORTH WITH MATERIAL LOSSES IN EQUIPMENT AND MEN CAPTURED."** **October 8 1950 - (Japan)** In anticipation of a premature seizure of Wonsan, General MacArthur has devised a supplementary plan which would incorporate a landing at Hungnam, about 50 miles north of the initial objective, Wonsan. But the modified plan of CinCFE Plan 9-50 issued today is not flawless. If implemented, Eighth Army's mission remains identical, but X Corps would be required to sever the enemy communications north of Wonsan and eliminate the resistance there. In conjunction, the landing at Hungnam by the 7th Infantry Division would greatly hinder its ability to quickly seize Pyongyang by overland march due to the distance involved. In addition, the usual shortages of landing craft make it implausible for the 7th Division to debark at Wonsan while the Marines are striking Hungnam. If two separate landings occur, the navy's overburdened minesweepers will be overwhelmed by the combined tasks of simultaneously clearing mines from both sites, but the option planners are not yet fully aware of the impending complications. Admirals Joy and Doyle, at their positions in Japan and Korea respectively, concur that there is not enough time to change the mission of X Corps, but Admiral Joy's attempts to change MacArthur's mind are unsuccessful. In related activity, Admiral Turner Joy directs Admiral Doyle and General O.P. Smith to implement his OpnPlan 113-50.

**October 9 1950 -(Pacific-Korea)** Admiral Struble issues his operation plan which blueprints the JTF 7 organization. It is listed as follows: 1.) 90-Attack Force, Rear Admiral James Doyle; 2.) 95-Advance Force, Rear Admiral Allan E. Smith; 3.) 95.2-Covering and Support Group, Rear Admiral Charles Hartman; 4.) 95.6-Minesweeping Group, Capt. Richard Spofford; 5.) 92-X Corps, Major General Edward Almond; 6.) 96.2-Patrol and Reconnaissance Group, Rear Admiral George Henderson; 7.) 96.8-Escort Carrier Group, Rear Admiral Richard Ruble; 8.) 77-Fast Carrier Force, Rear Admiral Edward Ewen; 9.) 70.1-Flagship Group (USS Missouri), Capt. Irving T. Duke; 10.) 79-Logistics Support, Captain Bernard L. Austin. **X Corps:** The loading activity at Inchon is not a longshoreman's delight and there are many reasons. There is a tremendous shortage of loading berths; the port contains only seven berths capable of loading beached LSTS or landing craft, and these can be used only during high tide. Furthermore, the staging area is scant and Inchon has only one pier where vehicles can be loaded into LCMs. The process becomes one of great improvisation. The Logistical Cargo Command personnel load many of the vehicles onto the top decks of LSTS which then transport the equipment out to the Ships in the Harbor; at that point, cranes are utilized to transfer the cargo to the APAs and AKAs. Other equipment is similarly loaded, unloaded and reloaded again as the dilemma seems never-ending. In related activity, some X Corps troops begin boarding ship today. **X Corps: In the 1st Marine Division sector:** General O.P. Smith is informed that the landing site for the Marines is about to be changed. Meanwhile, Admiral Joy maintains his argument (with MacArthur) that the proposed modified plans are not feasible. On the 10th, MacArthur relents and the original plan to land the entire X Corps at Wonsan is agreed upon.

**October 10 1950 -(Pacific-Japan)** General MacArthur orders that U.N. Operations Plan 2 be placed into effect superseding, all other tentative plans. In other activity, personnel monitoring the various radio broadcasts pick up a broadcast originating in P'yongyang; the speaker is Kim Il Sung, and he is rejecting MacArthur's call to surrender. **(Pacific-Korea)** In Naval Activity, TG 95.6 arrives off Wonsan to initiate mine-clearing operations. The big guns of the cruiser *Rochester* and the destroyers *Collett*, *Maddox*, *Swenson* and *Thomas* are operating in the vicinity of the minesweepers. In conjunction, a helicopter from the USS *Rochester* again spots enormous amounts of enemy mines. By the latter part of the afternoon, the minesweepers clear a 3,000 yard channel that extends from the 100-fathom curve to the thirty-fathom line, giving the navy high expectations that the job might be concluded sooner than expected. However, soon after, five more strings of mines are detected, dousing the enthusiasm. The discoveries seem to verify the intelligence reports that stated Russian assistance had been given to the North Korean Communists. Apparently, the Russians began helping the Reds at Wonsan, either during the latter part of July or the first days of August. The North Koreans, utilizing sampans, junks and barges, combined with Russian know-how, spread about 2,000 mines in the sea-approaches to Wonsan. **X Corps:** At Inchon, General O.P. Smith establishes his command post on the USS *Mount McKinley*. He issues OpnO 16-50 which culminates the planning at Inchon regarding the 1st Marine Division's participation at Wonsan; the chosen points of attack are Beaches Blue and Yellow on the eastern shore of Kalma Peninsula. The order specifies the particulars of the Wonsan assault, and it includes the blueprint of the duties expected of the subordinate units. Later in the day an alternate plan is issued, which directs (upon orders) the Marines to initiate an administrative landing on RED Beach, situated north of Wonsan, rather than the initial landing sites on Kalma Peninsula. The 1st and 3rd Battalions, 1st Marines board LSTS and await orders to land; it will be sixteen joyous days aboard the overcrowded ships before these Marines get to refamiliarize themselves with the ground. Once ashore, the

Marines are to secure ten objectives within the projected sweeping arc of the beachhead, and each is located in the high ground. The 5th Marines is to land and form west of the town to await instructions. The Korean 3rd and 5th Marine Battalions, attached to the 7th and 1st Marines respectively, are to land behind the U.S. Marines. In the meantime, the S.K. 3rd and Capital Divisions advance rapidly. At slightly after 0800 the South Koreans, who have punched their way overland, drive into Wonsan. By the latter part of the following day the port city is secure, and its nearby airfield is fully controlled. These seizures render the invasion of Wonsan unnecessary. In other activity, the 7th Division artillery units depart Ichon, completing the operation by 1700; it is the final major component to leave the town. Off Wonsan, a helicopter swoops over the channel and discovers that the thirty-fathom channel is saturated with mines. The plan to sweep the channel here is aborted, and the new designated target area is the 100-fathom curve in the Russian Hydropac Channel that passes between Yodo and the Hwangt'o-do Islands. Without delay, the Minesweepers begin to vacuum the harbor. By the 12th, the ships clear twenty-four miles to secure the channel to within ten miles of the inner harbor.

**October 11 1950 - (Pacific-Japan)** General MacArthur sends a radio message to General Walker informing him that Wonsan airfield is to be utilized for land-based Planes which will be under the command of X Corps. Additionally, the message informs Walker that the S.K. I Corps will be detached from Eighth Army and be attached to X Corps upon the latter's landing at Wonsan. **(Pacific-Korea)** X Corps closes its on-shore command post and transfers it to the USS *Mount McKinley*. In other activity, other X Corps troops begin moving by land to Pusan; engineers, medical personnel, ordnance troops, quartermaster, chemical and signal units are included. In conjunction, during the seven days of moving X Corps to Pusan, the vehicles transport 13,422 troops and 1,460 tons of supplies and equipment. The 52nd Truck Battalion and 7th Division vehicles handle the task. **Inchon: In the 1st Marine Division sector:** Colonel Murray, CO, 5th Marines (reserve Regiment for Wonsan), establishes his command post aboard the USS *Bayfield*; embarkation of 5th Marines is concluded. In conjunction, elements of the 1st and 7th Marines (reserve and administrative components) board their vessels early; however, the four assault battalions remain onshore until the 13th, awaiting available LSTs. In the meantime, South Korean forces take Wonsan; this prompts the scheduled air support for the invasion to be canceled. Elements of the 1st Marine Air Wing arrive at the Wonsan airfield on the 13th. **In the 7th Division sector,** the 27th Regiment, 25th Division (Eighth Army IX Corps) relieves the 1st Battalion, 17th Regiment, 7th Division in the mountains near Mun'gyong. In other activity, about 450 soldiers (7th Division) are airlifted from Kimpo airfield to Pusan.

**October 12 1950 - (Pacific-Korea) In Naval activity:** Minesweeping operations continue off Wonsan while other elements of JTF 7 bombard enemy positions along the east coast. The warships of TG 95.2 concentrate their fire on Songjin and Tanchon; the USS *Missouri* pounds the marshaling yards of the latter. The cruisers *Ceylon*, *Helena* and *Worcester* focus their fire on Chongjin. Captain Spofford attempts to streamline the minesweeping operation; he requests assistance from the carriers. Thirty-nine aircraft, attached to the carriers *Leyte Gulf* and *Philippine Sea*, arrive and drop about fifty tons of 1,000-pound bombs in the Russian Channel, but to no avail. The high-percussion explosions fail to detonate the mines. Similar efforts had been undertaken during WW II, concluding with identical results. Later three minesweepers proceed through the targeted area which had just been bombed. At 1209 the *Pirate* strikes an unexploded mine off Yo-do Island and sinks. Within a short while at 1215, the *Pledge* hits a mine and sinks. Instantaneously rescue

operations get underway, but enemy shore batteries remain cogent and hinder the missions. Both minesweepers sustain heavy casualties; twelve men are killed and one wounded man succumbs to his wounds. Exact figures for the wounded are not available, but the figure is estimated to be about 87. During the rescue operation, a third minesweeper, the USS *Incredible*, comes under severe fire. Still, it rescues twenty-seven sailors before bolting toward safer waters. In the meantime, the mines remain a serious problem. Captain Spofford deduces that depth charges might be the solution, prompting him to call for more naval craft. This improvised method also fails and proves only that the mines must be destroyed the old fashioned way, one at a time. The flying boats (*Mariners* and *Sunderlands*) resume the task of detecting and demolishing the mines with 50-caliber machine gun fire. Navy innovation soon eases the burdensome task; it implements the use of hydrographic office charts: the planes spot the targets on charts and drop them onto the minesweepers to give the crews a layout of the exact locations of hundreds of the floating death traps.

**October 13 1950 - (Pacific-Korea) Inchon:** LSTs, having completed ferrying operations off Inchon, arrive to receive the assault battalions of the 1st and 7th Marines. The boarding operation is completed during the early hours of the 15th. Major General Field Harris, CG 1st Marine Aircraft Wing and Tactical Air Command X Corps, arrives on the east coast at the Wonsan airfield to inspect the facility. He concludes that conditions are acceptable and that operations should be initiated immediately. By the following day Marine aviation units begin to arrive.

**October 14 1950 - (Pacific-Korea) X Corps sector:** At Pusan, work crews begin to load the supplies aboard ships for the 7th Division's Wonsan operation. The troops begin to board on the 16th, and the entire operation is completed on the 17th. In other activity General Almond flies to Wonsan to confer with the S.K. I Corps commander and inform him of the unfolding developments regarding his corps; it will come under Almond's jurisdiction, and it will be affected by the newest directive which stipulates that X Corps make an administrative landing. Once ashore X Corps is to initiate a speedy westward advance to hook up with Eighth Army. The drive is scheduled to move along the Wonsan-Pyongyang axis. **In the 1st Marine Division area:** General O.P. Smith, in accordance with X Corps orders, activates his alternate plan and orders an administrative landing on RED Beach; the Marines are ordered to seize an objective northeast of Pyongyang. Meanwhile Marine aviators take advantage of the South Korean seizure of Wonsan; Marine Fighter Squadron VMF-312 arrives at Wonsan from Kimpo. In addition, R5Ds (transport planes) deliver 210 men of the advance units of headquarters squadron (Hedron)-12, Service Squadron (SMS)-12 and VMF(N)-513, the all-weather night fighter squadron. Also, VMF(N)-513 initiates missions to deliver bombs and rockets to Wonsan, while naval transports embark from Kobe, Japan, carrying critical cargo for MAG-12. The captured airbase is further augmented as planes attached to combat cargo command arrive to begin ferrying the crucial aviation fuel that will be required to keep the show moving until the sea-blockade is broken. In conjunction, the two Marine squadrons operating from Wonsan remain dependent upon Air lifts until the ships can safely enter port. In the meantime the support crews are heavily burdened; only one jeep and eight trailers are available to transfer the bombs. And MAG-12 is presented with a new quandary due to the change in orders for the Marines to execute an administrative landing, rather than an assault landing. The new circumstances place MAG-12 under the control of Far East Air Forces, which operates under totally different procedures, not indigenous to Marine Corps close-air support tactics. Nonetheless, the Marine aviators try to conform with the new directives, including the requirement that all scheduled missions be received by headquarters (Fifth Air Force in Seoul) by 1800 on the previous day. Time

restrictions make it impossible for the Marines in Wonsan to receive clearance in a timely manner, but a meeting is soon called, and General Partridge (Fifth AF) and General Harris (USMC) agree on a pragmatic solution. Partridge gives Harris verbal permission to plan and execute missions while awaiting permission from headquarters. The agreement works satisfactorily, and later during November, General Harris receives permission in writing from Fifth Air Force.

**October 15 1950 - (Pacific-Wake Island)** President Truman arrives at Wake Island to confer with General MacArthur who has flown in from Japan. It is an apparent attempt to clarify misunderstandings between the commander-in-chief and the commanding general, as well as to scrutinize the battle plans for winning in Korea. The meeting ends amicably, but differences of opinion on how to conduct the war will reemerge. The friction between the general and his commander-in-chief shows no signs of easing. However, at present, it is common belief that the war in Korea is about to be terminated, and in accordance with this premise, agreements are reached during this meeting to alter troop movements to meet the changing situation. MacArthur is of the opinion that Russia is unable to muster forces soon enough to change the situation in Korea before winter, and he believes that Chinese intervention is, at best, a remote possibility; however, the possibility of Communist intervention is not totally discarded by him or by Washington. MacArthur remains convinced that the hostilities will cease by Thanksgiving Day and that Eighth Army should return to Japan by Christmas. He also believes that X Corps can retain stability within a united Korea until peace is fully restored. General MacArthur receives a Distinguished Service Medal (his fifth) from President Truman. In conjunction, the department of the army and the commander-in-chief, Far East, have agreed to embark the U.S. 2nd Division to the States or to Europe. Other participants at the Wake Island meeting include Frank Pace (Secretary of Army), General Omar Bradley, Admiral Arthur Radford (CinCPacFlt), General Courtney Whitney, assistant secretary of state Dean Rusk and Averell Harriman, secretary of state. **(Pacific-Korea)** Admiral Doyle, commander Amphibious Group One, issues OpnO 16-50 which calls for an assault landing at Wonsan. It is in contrast to the scheduled administrative landing about to be executed; however, for the navy, the movement of troops from ship to shore remains identical, regardless of the type of landing. In conjunction, on October 24th, division dispatches instructions canceling OpnOs 16 and 17, and it directs an administrative landing on Kalma Peninsula as ordered by CTF 90; the dispatch is sent at 1450. **X Corps:** The remnants of the N.K. 7th Division, which had escaped from South Korea, begin to reassemble above the 38th Parallel in the Inje-Yanggu vicinity; it has been reported that its commanding general had been killed during fighting near Kumch'on, while the division was fleeing north. In other activity, the Fifth Air Force Headquarters transfers from Japan to Seoul; the recent victories in Korea permit the air force to base their planes on Korean soil, enabling Fifth Air Force to get maximum time over targets. The bombers and fighters will also be afforded heavier bomb-loads and have the ability to plunge deeper into North Korea. Also, near Seoul, a group of guerrillas attacks a radio relay station less than five miles from the capital building; Guerrilla activity is ongoing behind U.N. lines, and the raids stretch as far south as Pusan. **In the 1st Marine Division area:** The navy LSTs receive the final elements of the 1st and 7th Marines, concluding the embarkation process. In conjunction, division had originally expected a speedy westward advance following the landing at Wonsan; therefore, each RCT is equipped with sixteen trucks, all laden with supplies. Sixteen additional trailers and three truck companies are also committed to the attacking regiments to enable them to have ammo dumps extended well to the front. By the latter part of the day the landing craft sail for the objective, and by evening the majority of the transports

also depart. However, the USS *Mount McKinley* and USS *Bayfield* embark on the 17th. In conjunction, the landing force and accompanying X Corps troops, which depart Inchon, number 1,902 officers and 28,287 enlisted men. Of these, 1,461 officers and 23,938 men are mustered on the rolls of the 1st Marine Division. Further breakdown of the numbers are Marine officers 1,119; Marine enlisted 20,597; navy officers 153; navy enlisted 1,002; U.S.A. & KMC officers attached 189; and USA & KMC enlisted attached 2,339. In other activity, MAG-12 initiates operations from Wonsan; these sorties continue until November 9th. There are some early restrictions due to the airfield's lack of lighting; VMF(N)-513 is unable to conduct night-missions until the latter part of October, but it does operate during daylight hours along with VMF-312 and the two fighter squadrons flying from the carriers. Refueling is not an easy task either, as the ground crews are compelled to hand-roll the cumbersome fifty gallon drums of fuel from the depot to the airfield, one mile away.

**October 16 1950 - (Pacific-Korea)** Elements of the Chinese 124th (CCF) Division cross the Yalu River into North Korea on or about this day, but they are not discovered. The units are later identified by prisoners. During the following ten days, elements of the two regiments move south and deploy near the Chosin Reservoir. **X Corps: In the 1st Marine Division area:** Wonsan begins to bustle with activity. Marine Fighter Squadrons VMF-214 and 323 arrive off Wonsan from Sasebo, Japan, to begin operations from the decks of the *Sicily* and the *Badoeng Strait*. The Marine pilots initiate sorties on the following day. During the latter part of the afternoon, Amphibious Group One and the LSTs, transporting the tractor group, embark from Inchon; these Ships will be followed by the main attack force which departs on the following day. Also, VMO-6 remains under the operational control of the 1st Marine Division, but it is controlled administratively by MAG-12; elements of VMO-6 (still at Kimpo) begin to arrive at Wonsan on the 23rd. In other activity, the 7th Division advance command post is established aboard the USS *Eldorado*. It will be sometime before it is transferred to shore; Wonsan Harbor is saturated with enemy mines, causing a two-week postponement of the convoys' arrival at the objective. In other activity, Lt. Col. William J. McCaffrey (Deputy Chief of Staff, X Corps) and the X Corps advance command post depart Kimpo airfield by plane and arrive at Wonsan; McCaffrey immediately makes contact with the commander of the offshore Minesweeping operation and with the ROK I Corps. Once contact is established with the South Koreans, McCaffrey's group initiates the task of discovering who had laid the minefields and, if possible, to determine where the remaining mines are stored. In conjunction, ROK Intelligence makes contact with a Korean civilian who had worked in the mine storage area; he leads a detachment to the place where the mines had been assembled. He also informs the party about the captain of a sampan who assisted with the dispersment of the mines. The meek Korean civilian and the other informer disclose that Russian troops had overseen the operation. Thirty-two small boats and their crews had placed about 3,000 mines in the waters off Wonsan and on the beaches. In related activity, South Korean troops have discovered and moved about 1,000 20-pound box-mines to a location at the northern sector of the harbor; six S.K. troops, including one officer, move about 200 yards away from the stacked explosives and seemingly decide to celebrate. The officer fires into the cache of explosives and the explosion that follows shatters nerves and windows for several miles around; the six soldiers are killed in the blast. Also, General Almond is directed to have X Corps attack west by driving along the Wonsan-P'yongyang axis, but these orders are modified on the following day.

**October 17 1950 - (United States)** President Truman, back in San Francisco from Wake Island,

gives General MacArthur high accolades: "**IT IS FORTUNATE FOR THE WORLD THAT WE HAD THE RIGHT MAN FOR THIS PURPOSE, A MAN WHO IS A VERY GREAT SOLDIER.**" The President, speaking further, notes that the only reason for being in Korea "**IS TO ESTABLISH PEACE AND INDEPENDENCE. WE SEEK NO TERRITORY OR SPECIAL PRIVILEGE-THE ONLY VICTORY WE SEEK IS THE VICTORY OF PEACE.**" Also, the President mentions the Soviet Union's incessant military buildup in Asia and Europe, which he then proclaims is threatening world peace. Truman states emphatically: "**THE FREE MEN OF THE WORLD HAVE BUT ONE CHOICE IF THEY ARE TO REMAIN FREE. THEY MUST OPPOSE STRENGTH WITH STRENGTH... WE (U.S.) HATE WAR, BUT WE LOVE OUR LIBERTIES. WE WILL NOT SEE THEM DESTROYED.**" (**Pacific-Japan**) General MacArthur issues UNC Operations Order 4; this removes the restriction specified in the previous order issued on September 27th, forbidding troops (other than South Korean) from advancing beyond a line extending from Ch'ongju on the west to Hamhung on the east coast. The new line is drawn along an axis thirty to forty miles south of the Manchurian border with North Korea. The order will be confirmed in a distributed message on the 19th. Also, the previous orders restricting Fifth Air Force planes from flying closer than fifty miles from the North Korean border at the Yalu River are somewhat relaxed, giving the Pilots some slack. (**Pacific-Korea**) By this time, the North Koreans have concluded that it would be futile to prepare a steadfast defense at P'yongyang and that such a plan would most probably cause the annihilation of the remaining North Korean troops. In conjunction, four South Korean divisions are rapidly racing toward the capital. The British contingent (27th Commonwealth Brigade) of the U.S. I Corps and the Americans are also closing fast. Ironically, MacArthur's initial flanking operation of Wonsan by X Corps is executed by the ROKs prior to the landing of X Corps. MacArthur informs General Almond that if Eighth Army takes P'yongyang prior to X Corps' landing, X Corps is to alter its plans and attack north. By the 19th the final order is received by Almond; it directs the attack to move north. In other activity, about 300 American soldiers, crammed aboard two enemy trains at P'yongyang, are taken north. Originally during September, when the Communists marched them from Seoul to P'yongyang, the captives numbered about 370 men. The death-trains move slowly as the tracks along the way must frequently be repaired, and their travel during daylight hours is especially dangerous due to U.S. planes. During the repair stops, some of the captive GIs manage to escape into the woods; however, many more do not survive the ordeal. About five to six soldiers die each day during the cruel voyage due to either starvation or dysentery; their bodies are callously removed from the trains by the Communists and left to rot in the woods. On the 20th, while American paratroopers are being dropped to attempt an interception of the trains and the rescue of the Americans, the Communists again exhibit their propensity for barbarism. **X Corps:** The 1st Marine Division embarks from Inchon aboard the Warships of JTF 7's Attack Force; at 0800 the armada heads for the Yellow Sea to begin the 830-mile journey to Wonsan on Korea's east coast. **In the 7th Division sector:** The loading operation at Pusan is concluded; both men and equipment are set for embarkation. Corps troops begin boarding the ships on the 19th.

**October 18 1950 - (Pacific-Korea) In Naval activity:** Minesweeping operations continue off Wonsan as the navy chisels out a safe channel passageway leading to the harbor. A successful conclusion seems near until a Japanese vessel (JMS-14) strikes a mine and plummets to the bottom. The tragedy sobers the optimism.

**October 19 1950 - (Pacific-Korea)** The UNC Operations Order 4, issued by MacArthur on the

17th, is confirmed today; the new line of operations for the U.N. troops (other than South Korean) runs from Sonch'on and extends through Koin-dong-P'yongwon-P'ungsan terminating at Songjin on the east coast. The new line remains within the original guidelines of the original JCS directive of September 27th, which is still in effect; it is about 100 miles from the Soviet Union. In conjunction the directives still permits only South Korean troops to operate in the provinces which border the Yalu River and neighboring Communist China. Soon after on the 24th, General MacArthur again changes the parameters of the operation in North Korea. This directive will create an even larger gap between Eight Army and X Corps. **X Corps:** Following his meeting with Admiral Struble aboard the *Missouri*, General Almond decides to move to Wonsan on the following day. **In the 1st Marine Division area:** Although it cannot be found in the official government records, the Marines aboard ship in the Yellow Sea slightly beyond the Wonsan Channel initiate what becomes known as Operation Yo-yo. The Marines, who had originally been scheduled to storm the beaches on the 20th, find themselves in a most uncomfortable position on the eve of their landing. Rather than facing D-Day and enemy resistance, the Marines face Z-day, as in zany. At about 1700 the colossal 250-vessel armada, which is steaming north, suddenly spins on a dime; it swings around, then heads south toward Pusan. The rumors begin as murmurs, but then they accelerate into great exhortation as the floating procession begins its southward course. The sounds of the Marines bellow across the decks: "**WAR'S OVER!**" "**THEY'RE TAKING US BACK TO PUSAN FOR EMBARKATION TO THE STATES.**" Nevertheless, if the Marines feel the surge of magnanimous surprise, they are in for another bombshell when dawn arrives on the following day.

**October 20 1950 - (Pacific-Korea)** General MacArthur has been keeping the 187th Airborne Regiment at Kimpo, preparing to unleash them to conduct a dangerous operation expected to rescue American POWS, suspected to be held captive on North Korean Trains that are heading further north. The mission is executed today. The airdrop is supplemented by the dropping of seventy-four tons of equipment; this is the first time heavy equipment will be airdropped in combat, and it is the initial use of C-19s in a combat parachute operation. The paratroopers will be followed to the earth by such items as 90-mm towed antitank guns, 105-mm howitzers, jeeps and a mobile radio transmission set. In conjunction, seven 105-mm howitzers of the 674th FABn and 1,125 shells are dropped. Six of the guns survive in operable condition, and only about ten percent of the shells are damaged; fortunately none explodes upon impact. In what is considered a usual practice for MacArthur, he and Generals Stratemeyer, Whitney and Wright have flown from Japan to observe the parachutists. At 0230 during another torrential downpour, the paratroopers fall-out for an early reveille. Subsequent to becoming soaked, the troops are treated to breakfast before they move to the airstrip to await a change in the weather. At about noon conditions improve and the flying warriors board their aircraft. About 2,800 men of the airborne cram into 113 planes to execute the first combat troop airdrop since WWII. And about 1,200 more paratroopers will follow on succeeding days; the total weight of the dropped equipment amounts to more than 600 tons. The C-19s and the C-47s of the 314th and 21st troop carrier squadrons respectively are scheduled to make two primary drops at positions about thirty miles north of P'yongyang. Prior to the arrival of the paratroopers, fighter planes arrive over the target areas to bomb and strafe the terrain. The commanding officer, Colonel Frank Bowen, Jr., is aboard the lead aircraft which is airborne at 1200. Once the remaining planes are in the air and assembled, they head toward Sukch'on and Sunch'on to intercept the targeted train. At about 1400, Colonel Bowen and 1,470 troops (1st Bn.,

Regimental Headquarters and headquarters company, medical personnel, engineers and service troops) jump from their planes over drop zone William (southeast of Sukch'on). They encounter only some Sniper fire; twenty-five troops are accidentally injured during this jump. In conjunction, one group misses the drop zone by about one and one-half miles; one man is killed by enemy fire while he is descending. The airborne troops of the 1st Battalion quickly seize Hill 97 and Hill 104, east and north of Sukch'on respectively; simultaneously they secure the town. The terrain to the immediate north of the town must also be seized to provide the paratroopers domination of the primary road that runs north of Sukch'on; it is cleared on the following day. Col. Bowen establishes his command post on Hill 97, and a roadblock is established near Hill 104. The 3rd Battalion, commanded by Colonel Delbert E. Munson, also lands in drop zone William, but it moves south and establishes roadblocks below the town at the highway and at the railroad. By 1700 its objectives are seized without sustaining any casualties; in turn, the enemy loses five troops killed and forty-two others captured. Trailing the first air-drop, at 1420 the 2nd Battalion, commanded by Col. William J. Boyle, jumps to begin its descent; it lands in drop zone Easy about two miles southwest of Sunch'on against no opposition; however, twenty paratroopers are injured during the jump. Following a quick assembly, the battalion quickly moves out and seizes all of its objectives by dusk. Roadblocks are established south and west of the town and manned by two companies, while another company moves to Sunch'on and makes contact with the S.K. 6th Division; the South Koreans are advancing from the southeast en route to the Ch'ongch'on River. Once all the paratroopers hit the ground, the entourage of brass departs the area; it flies to P'yongyang where MacArthur makes some comments to the waiting press. MacArthur claims that the airborne operation has caught the enemy by complete surprise and that about 30,000 enemy troops have been clamped between the paratroopers in the north and the claws of both the 1st Cavalry Division and the S.K. 1st Division, which are closing from the south. In addition, MacArthur claims that either the demise or capture of the trapped enemy is at hand. While at Sunch'on, the 2nd Battalion does not encounter much difficulty, as the S.K. 6th Division secures most of the town and the immediate vicinity. The successful operation does sever two key enemy escape routes that lead to Manchuria. In conjunction, one of the two death trains transporting the American POWs into the northernmost areas of North Korea pauses in a tunnel northwest of Sunch'on; during the evening, while the train is still halted, the Communists massacre the GIs. **X Corps:** Admiral Struble had decided on the previous day not to take unnecessary risks by landing Marines at Wonsan today. His decision had probably been influenced by the lack of pressure due to the earlier seizure of the town by South Korean troops and their subsequent advance to positions beyond the North Korean capital. General MacArthur and Admiral Joy concur with the decision. General Almond departs the USS *Missouri* by helicopter and arrives at Wonsan Airfield where he assumes command of the X Corps troops in the area north and east of the Taebaek Range; most of the X Corps is still at sea. **In the 1st Marine Division area:** Marines aboard the armada are again surprised as they experience the flotilla make another seagoing "about face" as it reinitiates its northward course and sails back toward Wonsan; the perplexed Marines and accompanying X Corps troops remain totally oblivious to the fact that their short respite was based on military strategy, rather than the cessation of hostilities. Meanwhile, the assault troops mark time aboard ship as they prepare for the landing; they reach the pinnacle of grumbling, one of the other things Marines are best known for besides fighting. The warships cruise northward, but after twelve hours and without notice, the vessels again suddenly swirl and retrace the southern course, giving the landing force another quick dose of mixed emotions. The armada takes on an aura of mystery and the Marines, seemingly on a string, dub the cruise to nowhere,

"Operation Yo Yo." Much to the dismay of the troops, many suffer from a variety of ailments due to the crowded conditions and prolonged duration of the unusual pattern, which automatically reverses course every twelve hours. Operation Yo Yo creates much more than boredom and anxiety. The transports and LSTs, anticipating a brief cruise, are ill-equipped for the arduous trek and unexpected complications emerge; smallpox breaks out on the *Bayfield* and everyone aboard receives urgent vaccinations. Other medical emergencies, such as dysentery and various stomach troubles take a high toll. The *Marine Phoenix*, a heavily-laden transport, is plagued with illness, despite all necessary medical precautions; its sick list soars to 750 men during the revolving north-south excursion, which continues until the 25th.

**October 21 1950 - (Pacific-Japan)** Continuing to speak with optimism, General MacArthur reiterates his praise of the previous day's airborne operation and notes that the "**WAR IS DEFINITELY COMING TO AN END SHORTLY.**" However, it is determined that the surprise airdrop is unable to isolate any large enemy units nor any high ranking North Korean Officers. Information gathered from civilians explains that the chief N.K. officials had departed P'yongyang on October 12th and moved toward Manp'ojin at the Yalu River. Contrasting intelligence indicates that the N.K. government officials had evacuated the capital and moved to the mountains at Kanggye, about twenty air-miles from Manp'ojin. **(Pacific-Korea)** General MacArthur arrives by air at P'yongyang Airfield to meet with Generals Walker and Stratemeyer. While there, MacArthur reviews Company F, 5th Cavalry, the first U.S. unit to enter the North Korean Capital. The 5th Cavalry which arrived in Korea on July 18th, less than 100 days ago, receives a request from General MacArthur; he asks that all troops of the company (nearly 200 men) that initially landed in Korea step forward. Five Cavalrymen advance, and of these, three men are wounded. In other activity, General Almond attempts to get one Marine regiment to immediately land at Kojo to relieve elements of the S.K. 3rd Division, but Admiral Struble (CO JTF7) responds in the negative, still refusing to permit the Marines to pass through the channel due to the minefields. Also, General O.P. Smith receives a message from Admiral Joy informing him that at the close of hostilities (anticipated to be in the near future), it will be recommended by Joy that the 1st Marine Division be returned to the U.S., with the exception of one RCT, which would be deployed in Japan.

**October 22 1950 - (Pacific-Korea) X Corps: In the 1st Marine Division area:** General O.P. Smith, USMC, issues a new plan to conform with the proposed X Corps boundaries. The Marines will deploy in the far southern portion of the corps zone (according to plan). X Corps is to extend from the Chongsanjangsi-Songjin line. In conjunction, Marine reconnaissance units come ashore on the 24th or 25th to select assembly areas, but the effort proves to be of no value as General MacArthur, on the 25th, cancels the restrictions and orders the forces to proceed to the Manchurian and Soviet borders. Information reaches General O.P. Smith that a dispatch (for the purpose of future planning) had been delivered to X Corps, indicating that the Americans would leave an occupation force in Korea, comprised of about one Division.. It also said that the X Corps commander would become commander of the forces; it is still thought that the final destruction of the enemy is close at hand.

**October 23 1950 - (Pacific-Korea) In naval activity:** The USS *Mount McKinley* ventures into the inner harbor of Wonsan, signaling that the minesweeping operation is finally nearing its welcome conclusion. Admiral Doyle directs the fleet to arrive on the 25th; the order terminates the dubious operation Yo Yo to the delight of the men aboard the ships. The Transport Group is to enter first, trailed by the Tractor Group. **X Corps:** The Advanced Group JTF 7 reports that the channel

leading into Wonsan is secure to Blue-Yellow Beach, but the report also indicates that the beach area must still be cleared. **In the 1st Marine Division area:** Two helicopters (VMO-6), piloted by Captain Wallace Blatt and Lt. Chester Ward, arrive at Wonsan from Kimpo. The bulk of the remainder of the squadron is en route by LST, but one Echelon unit, commanded by Captain Victor Armstrong, temporarily remains at Kimpo to assist in the evacuation of wounded men of the 187th Airborne task force, which is engaged in the vicinity of Sukchon. Fifth Air Force has requested the aid of the Marine helicopters.

**October 24 1950 - (Pacific-Japan)** In Korea the advance forces of the U.N. command are crossing the Ch'ongch'on River. General MacArthur issues a new order to his commanders in Korea, removing the previous restrictions on the northward advance to the Yalu. He directs all participating units to implement maximum force and drive to the Yalu River. In reaction, the JCS send a memorandum to MacArthur stipulating that his order is in direct conflict with the initial orders of September 27th, concerning the U.N. advance, but the message does not countermand MacArthur's order; it merely requests an explanation. MacArthur responds to the JCS on the following day. **(Pacific-Korea)** Off Wonsan a conference is held aboard the USS *Missouri* to decide when to debark the Marines. Admirals Struble and Doyle and General Almond conclude that the Marines will debark at YELLOW and BLUE Beaches as originally designed by Marine Division OpnO 16-50; the landing is scheduled for the morning of the 26th. It is also decided at the meeting that the Minesweepers, subsequent to securing the inner harbor at Wonsan, would proceed to Hungnam and clear the channels there. Apparently the task becomes much more difficult and more dangerous than anticipated; the inner harbor area is not fully secured by the minesweepers until November 4th. Wonsan is to be utilized as a supply base. In conjunction, the Hungnam mine-clearing operation, required to support X Corps in northeast Korea, is equally hazardous. Also, VMF-312, while operating out of Wonsan, detects a plump enemy column tramping along a road about 39 miles south of the airfield; the pilots display extraordinary skills as their planes dive and attack, spewing relentless fire upon the estimated 800-man contingent. The pounding is incessant and registers hit after hit while the Communists seek refuge from the hell-fire, but there is little chance for escape and no entrenchments to offer shelter. The planes dive in near-overlapping layers, ravaging the stunned enemy with cogent fire that decimates the ranks; the lightning-fast rapid fire disperses the remnants and speeds their retreat. In other activity, while the Marines at sea fare badly aboard the cramped ships, several special guests, including "Thanks For The Memories" Bob Hope and the USO, arrive at Wonsan by air to entertain the troops. Actually, Bob Hope's entourage beats the Marines to Wonsan, and much of his humor during the USO show is pointed to the seafaring Marines.

**October 25 1950 - (United States)** The Department of the Army informs General MacArthur that the scheduled transfer (October and November) of enlisted reserve Corps troops from the States to the Far East is to be canceled, but the dispatch of 17,000 NCOs will proceed as scheduled. **(Pacific-Japan)** General MacArthur, responding to the message from the JCS on the previous day, informs the JCS that the new directive ordering the advance to the northernmost border of Korea is of "Military necessity." MacArthur also explains that the South Koreans are incapable of carrying the mission by themselves, and that he believes that he has enough leeway in the present directives to issue the order extending the area of advance. General MacArthur also informs the JCS that the entire matter (advance to the Yalu) had been covered at the Wake Island Conference. Fifth Air Force is authorized to fly certain missions up to the Yalu River to afford ground troops close-

support, but the Planes are forbidden to bomb any targets within five miles of the border. Nonetheless, the missions encroaching the Manchurian border continue to come under close scrutiny; they must be overseen by a Tactical Air Control Party or a Mosquito Observer. **(Pacific-Korea) X Corps:** Corps issues OI (Operation Instructions) 13, but a copy of it does not reach General O.P. Smith until the 27th; the Marines area of operations stretches fifty miles wide and runs 300 miles north to south. **In the 1st Marine Division area:** Finally, after seven trying days of cruising up and down the Yellow Sea, the Transports move into Wonsan Harbor and drop anchor to the jubilation of the 1st Marine Division, which is anxious to set foot on ground. But the approaches are not totally secured until the latter part of the afternoon, causing many of the Marines to be treated to yet another day of Navy hospitality (and some seasickness); the main body debarks on the following day. During the evening (25th), five LSTs arrive at the beach (Kalma Peninsula). Contingents of Combat Service Group, Engineer and Shore Party debark; advance elements have been ashore for about nine days, using Korean laborers to prepare for the landing. Tonight, Shore Party Group C, commanded by Major George A. Smith, takes responsibility for YELLOW Beach. Shore Party Group B, commanded by Major Henry Brzezinski, takes control of BLUE Beach. The task of debarking X Corps is hefty and many of the expected heavy-laden Amphibious Craft are unable to pass through the shallow water, compelling the Shore Parties to fabricate ramps composed of sand-filled rice bags, which stretch about thirty feet into the water. X Corps directs the 1st Marine Division to relieve the South Korean units at the Chosin and Fusen Reservoirs and to deploy one RCT where it can focus on the Hamhung area, about 50-60 air miles south of the reservoirs. In other activity, Reconnaissance units, which had cleared the channel during the past several days, have selected various assembly areas for the Marine Regiments; one of the locations is the Saint Benedict Abbey, near Wonsan, which had been selected for the 7th Marines to give the unit a good jump-off spot for its drive north.

**October 26 1950 -(Pacific-Korea) X Corps:** At the first glimpse of daylight, the transports off Wonsan are especially animated as the Marines clog the decks and begin their long-awaited descent to the landing craft. Thirty nine waves are set to hit the beaches in an administrative landing on what has finally become D-Day, dubbed "Doyle Day" by General Almond. At 0730, tanks (1st Tank Battalion), adapted with deep water apparatus, burst from the bellies of LSUs, crash through the waves and come to rest on the beach. At about the same time, the 1st Amphibian Tractor Battalion moves onto the beachhead, delivering men and supplies. The seemingly unending line of landing craft continues to pour men and equipment on the beaches. At 0900, the 1st and 3rd Battalions, 1st Marines sprint from LSTs and land on YELLOW Beach, while Headquarters (1st Marines), aboard the USS *Noble*, arrives on other landing craft. Colonel Puller's 2nd Battalion (reserve), 1st Marines remains aboard ship until the 28th. The rifle units of the 1st Battalion, 1st Marines depart by train for Kojo (at 1200), a little seaport town about forty miles down the coast; it remains unscathed by the hostilities. Another train, transporting reinforcements and supplies will depart for Kojo on the following day. Upon arrival at Kojo, the Marines (1st Battalion, 1st Marines) begin to replace the South Korean troops and take responsibility for the supply depot. Unbeknownst to Lt. Col. Hawkins, the supplies have dwindled as the South Koreans have expended nearly everything in the depot. By 1700, the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines establishes its night positions near Wonsan. In other activity, Colonel Puller is informed by General O.P. Smith that he has been selected for promotion to brigadier general. While the 1st Marines are landing, advance contingents of the 5th Marines (reserve) begin landing at 0800 on YELLOW and BLUE Beaches; however, the majority of the regiment (minus 2nd Battalion and some reconnaissance units) comes ashore on the

following day. The 7th Marines lands on BLUE Beach and then advances north of Wonsan to assemble around Saint Benedict's Abbey, which was recently ravaged by the Communists during their retreat; Colonel Litzenberg establishes his command post there at 1300. Also, the 2nd Battalion, 11th Marines and some reconnaissance units of the regiment land today, but the majority of the artillery regiment debarks on the 27th. The remainder of the 11th Marines comes ashore on the following day. Later during the night, two Marines are instantly killed, when they attempt to pick up booby-trapped firewood on the beach; these are the only two marine casualties to occur on D-Day. According to its schedule, combat service group establishes its Class I, III, and V depots, but other supplies (Class II and IV) arrive on the beach. This causes an enormous mixup which hinders the operation; about 1,500-2,000 Korean laborers are hired daily to untangle the supplies and issue them to the various units.

**October 27 1950 -(Pacific-Korea) X Corps:** The 1st Marine Division closes its Command Post on the USS Mt. *McKinley* at 1000 and reopens it in a crusty Russian barracks about one mile north of Wonsan. General O.P. Smith receives his operational instructions (issued on 25th). The Marines are to secure the Wonsan beaches, relieve the South Koreans in the area and proceed north to the border with Manchuria. The instructions also direct the Marines to guard the Wonsan-Kojo-Majonni area while dispatching patrols on all roads heading west in the zone of operations. In addition, the Marines receive two orders; commit one engineering company to assist the South Koreans with repairs along the Yonghung-Hamhung railroad, and prepare a battalion landing team for debarkation at Chongjin upon orders. In other activity, the remainder of Colonel James Brower's 11th Marines (artillery) debarks at Wonsan; the 2nd Battalion, which had debarked on the previous day is assigned to the 1st Marines at 1715. The 1st and 3rd Battalions, 11th Marines remain in assembly and await orders. The ongoing operation to unload supplies continues under difficult circumstances. Many of the landing craft laden with heavy cargoes are unable to move into the beaches, compelling shore party personnel to fabricate piers that stretch about thirty feet from shore. Some other Vessels get hung up on a nuisance sandbar and must be towed, while others are unloaded by cranes operating on barges and the artificial piers. At Kojo, the South Korean troops, having been relieved on the previous day by elements of the 1st Battalion, 1st Marines, head north. Today, a second train departs Wonsan at 1330 to deliver reinforcements and supplies for the 1st Battalion, 1st Marines at Kojo; it arrives late in the afternoon, following an uneventful trip. In addition, a convoy, composed of vehicles from the 1st Battalion, the Motor Transport Battalion and Battery F, 2nd Battalion, 11th Marines arrive from Wonsan. The convoy is further bolstered by the 1st Platoon, Company C, 1st Engineer Battalion and a contingent of Company D, 1st Medical Battalion. The area around Kojo remains tranquil throughout the day, but only on the surface. The South Koreans confer with Lt. Col. Jack Hawkins concerning the perimeter which extends along a coastal plain for a distance of about 5,000 yards (diameter) and encompasses that terrain from the bay to a cluster of slight hills; Marines now assume responsibility for the perimeter. The Marines have been informed by the South Koreans that the enemy has confined its activity to sporadic raids to commandeer rice. Nevertheless, the 1st Battalion, commanded by LT. Col. Hawkins, takes extra precautions to secure the perimeter, including the vulnerable supply depot at the rail station which is poorly positioned just south of Kojo on dangerously low ground; the depot is susceptible to attack from every point. The bulk of the regiment deploys west of Kojo; however, Company B, commanded by Captain Wesley Noren, deploys south and southwest of Kojo atop several lumps of high ground amidst the rice paddies; extending east to west, the 1st Platoon holds the east slope of Hill 109, the 3rd Platoon takes positions in high ground south and west of the 1st Platoon, and

the 2nd Platoon deploys on Hill 185. Company C holds positions about one and one-half mile north of Company B; the 2nd, 3rd and 1st Platoons respectively spread out from west to east. About 250 yards east of Company C, Two platoons of Company A hold the ground; its 3rd Platoon spreads out on the crest of Hill 117. Col. Hawkins establishes his command post north of Company A's positions. The mortar platoon (4.2" Mortars), commanded by Lt. Kaufer, shares the slope with Hawkin's command post. While the Marines are establishing their positions, the valley southwest of Kojo becomes flooded with refugees who are attempting to reach the port. Darkness arrives and prevents the Marines from inspecting the refugees to weed out enemy infiltrators, but Colonel Hawkins funnels them toward the peninsula northeast of Kojo to keep them isolated until morning. However, it becomes apparent that some Communist troops have infiltrated the march to the sea. At about 1600, hostile fire strikes a detachment of Marines as they lay wire near Hill 185, and at about 1800, near Hill 109, enemy fire strikes a small detachment of Marines while they attempt to repair a stalled vehicle. The vehicles are abandoned, but at about 1900, another detachment retrieves the abandoned vehicles, despite it too coming under enemy fire. Aside from the minor skirmishes the day passes without any obvious signs of organized resistance, but once darkness arrives signs of the enemy emerge. The Marines also become acquainted with Korean cold weather. The heat of summer has faded and today, the Marines experience the first frost. The foxholes spaced around the perimeter of Company B each contain two men; one man attempts to get warm and rest, while the other keeps vigil with his rifle. Suddenly the calm is shattered when the enemy launches simultaneous attacks against opposite ends of Company B's positions. Slightly afterward, an equally devastating thrust is thrown against Company C. These well-organized assaults are sprung from grenade-throwing distance in lightning-quick fashion. During the engagement, the enemy attempts to be cunning by using English; they bellow: "COME THIS WAY...DON'T SHOOT! WE'RE FRIENDS." Shouts of warning fly from the foxholes nearly in cadence with the explosion of the hostile projectiles as the Marines begin to defend their positions. The 1st Platoon, Company B holding the eastern slope of Hill 109 is struck quickly and the position is overrun; seven Marines are slain before they get out of their sleeping bags. At about the same time, the command post and the 3rd Platoon come under severe attack at several locations. In response, Marines launch mortars, including 60-mm and 81s which closely pass over the defender's heads to rivet the paths of the attackers. The mortars seal the entranceway and hold the line for the 3rd Platoon, but the pressure against the 1st Platoon continues to build. Once the tenacious skirmish winds down it becomes clear that the 3rd Platoon and the command post has held. Later, the enemy mounts another fierce attack to dislodge Company B. Meanwhile, back on Hill 109, the enemy utilizes blaring whistles and brilliant flares as it methodically pounds the 1st Platoon's positions. About 160 Communists attack and isolate an outpost position and overwhelm a squad deployed on the right flank. All the while, the slugfest in the perimeter of Company C continues. The enemy having gained positions about ten feet from the perimeter lunges against the Marines' positions. The contingent pierces the lines, gains ground and isolates about twenty Marines. However, these Marines persist and eventually their actions throughout the night reunite them with their unit. Although Company C is pushed back, it is only temporary. The troops soon recover the momentum and regain the advantage, then for the remainder of the night, they repel every enemy attack. Although the horrendous night-long combat does isolate Companies B and C from the remainder of the battalion, the Marine's mortars incessantly pound the approaches and contribute greatly to keep the stabilize the situation. Undaunted, the Communists continue to press the attacks. At 2215, beleaguered Company B is the recipient of a repeat performance; the Reds again pound against the positions of

the 3rd Platoon, led by Sergeant Matthew Monk, on the heights to the south and west of the tenuous positions of the 1st Platoon. The 3rd Platoon, bolstered by mortars and machine gun fire, slashes the attackers and thwarts the assault. However the enemy, despite incurring severe casualties, presses relentlessly. Meanwhile, the 1st Platoon (Company B) is shoved from its positions on the eastern slopes of Hill 109; when the unit withdraws, thirty troops are missing. Sergeant Clayton Roberts makes the extrication possible by singlehandedly holding the ground and covering the evacuation with a light machine gun; the 1st Platoon evades annihilation, but Clayton is encircled and slain. And the donnybrook continues within the positions of the 3rd Platoon, which is struck by another multi-pronged assault. Its left rear and front are simultaneously stung heavily. Finally, at 2350, when it becomes inevitable that the positions are untenable, Captain Noren, CO Company B, requests permission from battalion to pull-back. Without hesitation, permission is granted. The three platoons are ordered to converge at a point where the railroad tracks meet the dike. At about midnight while Companies B and C are exchanging heavy blows with the Reds, artillery (Fox Battery) arrives in the vicinity of Kojo and establishes positions northeast of the town on the beach by about 0200. The three beleaguered platoons, each exhibiting heavy discipline, maneuver their way, one-by-one, yet speed to the point of convergence. By 0215 the 2nd Platoon, having fought its way from Hill 185, is the last to arrive at the dike. Here the three Company B Platoons regroup.. Captain Noren, lacking an operative radio, instinctively forms a defensive circle covering both sides of the railroad tracks at a point just south of Chonchon-ni to thwart an anticipated attack. Noren's instincts prove true, but in the meantime, the artillery of Fox Battery prepares for fire. Noren's men combine spare parts and reactivate a radio extending their chances of survival. The Reds strike from the east and from the west; however, Company B returns heated fire and firmly holds the line. By about 0300, radio contact is established between Noren and the mortar units, giving the mortarmen man-made night vision. Under the guidance of Capt. Noren, an avalanche of 61-mm fire disperses the enemy attack. Simultaneously, they deliver sheets of 81-mm mortar fire into Chongchon-ni. By 0330, the Communists disengage and retire northward toward Kojo. One Marine is killed and six others become wounded during the engagement. In conjunction, by about 0400, Fox Battery artillery registers, but its guns remain still as the battlefield, known as Company B's area, has become silent, and it remains quiet until dawn. **In the 7th Division sector:** Like the 1st Marine Division, the 7th Division has been stuck aboard ship and floating off Pusan for ten days; today it receives orders and departs for Iwon about 150 miles north of Wonsan. The initial plan of attack called for X Corps to drive west from Wonsan, but the situation has drastically changed and the attack will advance north toward the N.K. border at the Yalu River.

**October 28 1950 -(Pacific-Korea) X Corps: In the 1st Marine Division area:** Division orders direct RCT-5 (minus 2nd Bn.) under the temporary control RCT-1, responsibility for Munchon and Yonghung, and Company A, 1st Tank Battalion (attached to 5th Marines) receive responsibility for the three primary roads that converge on the MSR from the west. **In the 1st Battalion, 1st Marines sector,** the early morning hours remain hectic, but the bulk of enemy activity has subsided. At 0418 the 1st Battalion gets word by radio to the 7th Marines concerning the situation at Kojo, but communications remains poor. The 7th Marines in turn, informs 1st Marines, which finally gets information to the 1st Marine Division. Companies B and C, 1st Bn., 1st Marines each are greeted at dawn with a silent perimeter, but the Communists launch an assault against Hill 117, defended by Company A; one Platoon, led by Lt. John Swords, repulses the assault. Meanwhile, Company

B reinitiates its withdrawal from Hill 109, slowed somewhat by the evacuation of its wounded, however, Marines attached to Company A help carry the wounded through the deep and muddied rice paddies, which are coated by a slim layer of ice. The operation ensues without incident, but suddenly, a contingent of enemy troops emerges from Kojo and heads west. The Marines do not pause to determine whether the Reds are moving to attack or trying to escape. Rather, the artillery, joined by the weaponry of Companies A and B, commence firing and inflict high casualties, killing about 75 of the estimated 200 Communists. The survivors scatter, heading into the heights west of the town, hotly pursued by a contingent of C Company. Planes of VMF(N)-515 arrive at about 1035 to further terrorize the retreating enemy. Despite continuing poor communications between the aircraft and the forward air controller, the planes swoop in low and deliver a powerful dose of fire. In the meantime, the original distressing news concerning the 1st Battalion and one later report had been received by division. At 1238, another report received at division headquarters, describes the ordeal of the 1st Battalion. In part: **"Received determined attack from South North and West from sunset to sunrise by large enemy force. Estimated from 1,000 to 1,200...Civilian reports indicate possibly 3,000 enemy this immediate area. Have suffered 9 KIA, 39 WIA, 34 MIA, probably dead. Two positions overrun during night. If this position is to be held, a Regiment is required...Request immediate instructions. Send all available Helicopters for wounded..."** Instantly, a decision is made to hold Kojo. Orders are drawn which dispatch Colonel Puller's 1st Marines, and a reinforcing battalion. And to bolster the one offshore destroyer, a second destroyer is requested to be sent to Kojo, and in addition to one hospital ship for casualties, an LST is also requested to transport the tanks, which had been unable to make the land trip due to the poor roads and bridges. The LST 883 embarks with the tanks, but the vessel gets snagged by a sandbar and is unable to reach the area until the following day. Helicopters are also dispatched to Kojo to evacuate the wounded. During the day, things brighten somewhat when seventeen Marines, listed as missing, safely make it to their lines safely; several more are rescued later. By the 29th, accurate casualty figures become known. The 1st Battalion continues to assess the situation, and all intelligence points to a heavy attack, expected to be launched after dark. Fresh reports arrive at division at 1415 and 1840, each delivering urgent information. The first dispatch mentions the possibility of 7,000 enemy troops of the N.K. 5th Division being near Tongchon. The second report which arrives over the radio indicates more dire news. It exclaims that the enemy is on all sides except the sea, and that no reinforcements have arrived. Nevertheless, the 1st Marines hold the perimeter and then at 2230, reinforcements arrive on the first train to enter the area. But since 1000, there has been no action. A second Train, also transporting reinforcements, arrives within several additional hours. With the arrival of Colonel Sutter's 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines, and its supporting units, the 1st Battalion rests easier. The 2nd Battalion reinforcements establish their night positions at Hill 117 and bunk with the 1st Battalion. Puller informs division that the situation is well and that no further artillery should be required. Meanwhile the navy keeps the pressure on Kojo, initially with one destroyer, the USS *Hank* and then two when the USS *English* arrives and begins to plaster the town. Both vessels remain offshore throughout the night. In addition, the USS *Wantuck*, transporting medical personnel, rushes to the area, and VMO-6 dispatches six helicopters to the 1st Battalion positions. The LST 883, laden with ten Tanks of Company C, 1st Tank Battalion, departs Wonsan for Kojo; however, the vessel runs aground, postponing its arrival at Kojo until the following day. To keep the lid on the enemy, Marine Corps' planes pummel Tongchon throughout the day, reducing it to ashes. In other activity, at 0800, division issues OpnO 18-50, which designates the tasks of the regiments. The 1st Marine Division is delegated to cover

15,000 square miles and it is imperative to deploy troops at Majon-ni, situated along the Imjin River and at a key road junction that spins east to Wonsan, west to Pyongyang and south to Seoul. The 1st Marines is to relieve the South Korean troops in the vicinity of Wonsan-Kojo-Majon-ni, establish blocking positions and dispatch patrols. In conjunction, the situation at Kojo creates some problems at Wonsan when the 2nd Battalion is required to move out to support the 1st Battalion. Since the departure of the 3rd Battalion to Majon-ni to relieve South Korean troops there, no other 1st Marine units are available to patrol the roads or establish blocking positions at Anbyon. To remedy the situation, the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines and the 5th Korean Marine Battalion are attached to the 1st Marines and assigned the responsibility for patrol and blocking positions. The 1st Marines also receive additional muscle with the availability of the 1st Amphibious Tractor Battalion, Company B, 1st Armored Amphibian Tractor Battalion and the 1st Shore Party Battalion; each of these units can be utilized to protect the airfield and Wonsan Harbor area. The 1st Marines is to prepare to activate a battalion landing team to land at Chongjin. The 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines (reinforced), commanded by Lt. Col. Thomas Ridge, arrives at Majon-ni at 1600 to relieve elements of the 26th S.K. Regiment; the ROKs are transported to Wonsan in the vehicles that had brought the 3rd Battalion. The 3rd Battalion's mission is to establish defensive positions, keep the 28-mile highway to Wonsan open, dispatch patrols and prevent the enemy from using the roads there. The battalion is composed of the three rifle companies, H&S and weapons companies, but is bolstered by Battery D, 2nd Battalion, 11th Marines, 3rd Platoon, Company C, 1st Engineer Battalion, contingents of ANGLICO, 1st Signal Battalion, Company D, 1st Medical Battalion and H&S Company, 1st Marines. Although there are extra troops, the area is rough and the dominating ground is far from the town. It is decided by Ridge and his S-3, Major Joseph Thompson, that Company Outposts will be established only during daylight hours and that the Battalion perimeter, comprised of a circumference of 3,370 yards, will be heavily patrolled to maintain control of the three key highways. Col. Ridges' command post is established in the local schoolhouse. The responsibility for the three roadblocks falls to Major Edwin H. Simmons' weapons company. Along with containing the enemy, Simmons' troops also bear responsibility for sorting out the Communist troops that pose as civilians. In conjunction, the 5th Marines is to deploy to the rear of the 7th Marines (in the vicinity of the Hamhung-Chosin Reservoir Road), relieve contingents of the South Korean Army at the Fusen Reservoir and establish roadblocks. The 7th Marines is to relieve contingents of the S.K. I Corps along the Hamhung-Chosin Reservoir Road; once the relief is complete, it is to push elements to the northern edge of the reservoir and to Changjin. From these points, the 7th Marines is to prepare to drive to the northern border of Korea. This is a monumental and punishing task; the roads, except the key coastal route, are primitive mountain paths that are unable to handle either tanks or heavy vehicles. The 11th Marines (reinforced and minus detachments) is to assemble near Hamhung and await orders. Also, The 1st Marine Division gets its full complement of combat troops ashore by the end of today.

**October 29 1950 -(Pacific-Korea) X Corps:** OpnO 18-50, issued by 1st Marine Division on the previous day, is altered; the 1st Battalion, S.K. Marines is attached to the 5th Marines and the 5th Battalion, Korean Marines is attached to the 1st Marines. In conjunction, the security of Munchon and Yonghung, thirteen and thirty -two miles north of Wonsan respectively, is delegated to the 5th Marines (bolstered by Company A, 1st Tank Bn.). In the 1st Marines' area:h Helicopters in support of ground troops, initiate reconnaissance missions; several Marines, isolated by the previous fighting, are rescued by Lt. George Farish's patrols. During the afternoon, the undisturbed bodies of twelve Marines are discovered when a patrol, led by Captain Noren (Company B), arrives back

at its previous positions near Hill 109. Later, Noren's detachment probes further south and encounters enemy fire originating in the ruins of Tongchon. Marine planes arrive to assist; twenty Communist troops hurriedly flee their positions; however, there is little chance of escape. Noren's Patrol, bolstered by machine guns, shreds the enemy force, killing sixteen. In other activity, patrols of Companies D and F enter Kojo and see first-hand, the devastation inflicted by planes and naval surface vessel Guns. No enemy presence is found there. Nor does Company E's patrol encounter any enemy activity as it scours the terrain west of the town. Both General Craig and General Almond arrive at Kojo today, and they conclude that the situation is stable. Meanwhile, the LST 883 arrives at Kojo, but it again runs aground and must be nudged by a tug. Its cargo, ten tanks of Company C, 1st Tank Battalion, are no longer required, prompting the LST to return to Wonsan. The bodies of nineteen Marines and seventeen enemy prisoners are brought aboard and taken to Wonsan. Pilots of VMO-6 rush seven seriously wounded Marines from Kojo to a hospital transport vessel moored off Wonsan, and twenty-four other wounded Marines are transported from Kojo to Wonsan. Marine casualties for the mission are: 23 Killed, 47 wounded and four Marines missing in action. The estimates of Communist casualties are: 250 killed and an indeterminable number of wounded. Marine patrols count 165 enemy dead and capture 85 men. At Majon-ni, Ridge's 3rd Battalion maintains control of the roads. Civilians are halted and questioned at blockage points to weed out enemy troops. Today, 24 POWs are seized; this operation continues for seventeen days, and the average amount of prisoners taken is 82 per day. A supply convoy arrives to supplement the 3rd Battalion, but it is the last one to safely make the trip for one week. In related activity, 3rd Battalion patrols detect no enemy activity along the roads to Wonsan, Pyongyang, or Seoul. As a precaution, Major Simmons' weapons company continues to plaster suspected enemy positions, and the effort is coordinated with OYs, which are capable of spotting enemy targets and calling in air strikes. These missions, during the first four days, discover no enemy activity. However, prisoner interrogation sessions confirm the presence of the battered 15th N.K. Division and its components including the 45th, 48th and 50th Regiments. The enemy dDivision, commanded by Major General Pak Sun Chol, has been moving north from Seoul, under orders to initiate guerrilla activity in the Imjin Valley and attempt to dominate the area. In conjunction, Intelligence, based on prisoner information, estimates that about 11,000 enemy troops are in the area. **In the 7th Marines sector:** The regiment, having only received some of its winter gear, departs Wonsan by overland route for Hamhung and completes the trek by the 31st; the 7th Marines is scheduled to be the vanguard for the advance to the northern border of North Korea. The full amount of cold-weather gear is received by the 7th Marines when they reach Koto-ri. **In the 7th Division sector,** the 17th RCT, commanded by Colonel Herbert B. Powell, lands at Iwon without incident; the remainder of the division follows later. The entire division, except for the majority of its tanks, are ashore by November 8. Minesweeping operations prior to the landing discover no mines. The 7th Division is also scheduled to drive to the northern border of Korea. This day, the regiments 1st Battalion, the 49th FABn and Company A, 13th Engineer Bn. Move fifty miles from the beachhead and deploy at Cho-ri, from where the 7th Division is to begin its drive to the town of Hyesanjin at the border with Manchuria. In conjunction, the ROK I Corps, already on the move, is far ahead of other X Corps troops. The 3rd Infantry Division, due to arrive in Korea about the 8th of November, is to relieve the 1st Marine units deployed south of Hamhung, and then it is to advance to the Yalu.

**October 30 1950 -(Pacific-Korea) X Corps:** At Headquarters in Wonsan, General Almond briefs General Barr, 7th Division Commander. Almond makes it clear that the 7th Division will drive to Hyesanjin on the Yalu River while the Marines advance to the border via Chinhung-ni, Koto-ri and

Hagaru. The 3rd Infantry Division is to assume responsibility for the rear. General Almond, pointing to the map and referring to the surge to the border, optimistically states: **"WHEN WE HAVE CLEARED ALL THIS OUT, THE ROKs WILL TAKE OVER, AND WE WILL PULL OUR DIVISIONS OUT OF KOREA."** Major Henry J. Woessner, (S-3, 7th Marines) attends a portion of the briefing. Woessner makes a Reconnaissance flight over the route of advance (**See 7th Marines today**). **In the 1st Marine Division zone:** At Kojo, the 1st Marines continue to maintain Outposts across its front and it maintains probing Patrols. During the past several days, Marines have recovered various pieces of equipment which had been earlier abandoned. Much to their surprise, nearly all the equipment is still operable. Relief contingents arrive at Kojo on the following day. In other activity, Engineers, under 1st Lt. Leroy Duffy, continue working to complete an OY landing strip along the eastern perimeter, but the effort is tedious because the valley, which contains a rugged cliff is not genuinely suitable to accommodate Planes. **In the 7th Marines sector,** Major Henry Woessner takes an aerial surveillance flight aboard an air force plane and scrutinizes the expected route along which the 7th Marines will advance. The reconnaissance flight discovers no enemy forces, but it does reveal much rugged terrain that stretches along the MSR. Woessner informs Colonel Litzenberg of the various dangers that lurk along the route in the vicinity of Hamhung-Hagaru. Litzenberg then calls a briefing meeting to inform the officers and NCOs of what might occur because of their actions. He states that they might be initiating the opening battle of World War III. And Litzenberg then emphasizes the point to his 7th Marines. **"WE CAN EXPECT TO MEET CHINESE COMMUNIST TROOPS, AND IT IS IMPORTANT THAT WE WIN THE FIRST BATTLE. THE RESULTS OF THAT BATTLE WILL REVERBERATE AROUND THE WORLD, AND WE WANT TO MAKE SURE THAT THE OUTCOME HAS AN ADVERSE EFFECT IN MOSCOW AS WELL AS PEIPING."**

**October 31 1950 -(Pacific-Korea)** U.S. Aircraft are intercepted by Russian-made MIG-15s near Sinuiju, but these propeller driven craft engage and knock out several of the Communist jets. This is the first encounter between U.S. Planes and MIGs, but it is not determined whether the enemy planes are piloted by North Koreans or by what is described as possibly a "volunteer Air Force." In other activity, ships attached to CTF-90 move to Moji, Japan, to begin transporting the 3rd Infantry Division to Korea. The first contingents of the 65th RCT arrive on November 5th. Also, ComNavFE dissolves JTF-7. In conjunction, TG95.2 Support and Covering Group now comes under the jurisdiction of CTF-90, commanded by Admiral Doyle. **In the 1st Marine Division area:** Lt. General Lemuel Shepherd, Jr. arrives at Wonsan and meets with Admiral Struble, General O.P. Smith and General Almond at X Corps headquarters; it is ascertained at this meeting that Communist Chinese soldiers had been captured by South Korean troops near Hamhung. Information is also being gathered by the 1st Cavalry Division since it is encountering Chinese troops in Western Korea. Shepherd also moves by helicopter to Kojo to make an aerial inspection of the perimeter. At 1430 the LST 973 arrives at Kojo and debarks the 5th Battalion, KMC Regiment. On the following day, U.S. Marines begin moving to Wonsan. Also, General Smith orders Colonel Murray, CO 5th Marines, to dispatch one battalion to Chigyong, eight miles southwest of Hamhung; the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines moves out, but one company is diverted and instructed to relieve a contingent of the 7th Marines at the advance supply point at Yonpo Airfield, about five miles southwest of Hungnam. In conjunction, the 1st Tank Battalion (minus Company C, attached to 1st Marines) departs for Munchon; its Company A is already there. Also, the components of the 11th

Marines, excluding the battalions attached to the RCTs is deployed at Munpyong, about five miles northwest of Wonsan. **In the 7th Marines sector**, a small patrol, composed of three jeeps, moves out on a reconnaissance mission to aid the upcoming advance. The contingent, led by Captain Myron Wilcox, stops at the ROK 26th Regiment's command post. When the patrol reports back, it informs headquarters that it encountered one Chinese prisoner at the ROK 3rd Division lines. Actually, the South Korean 26th Regiment has captured sixteen Chinese prisoners to date. The 7th Marines are scheduled to relieve the South Korean 3rd Division at Sudong on November 2nd. In other activity, a patrol composed of five jeeps and twenty men moves toward Chigyong, but it encounters no enemy presence. Colonel Litzenberg believes he will be engaging Chinese forces soon. On the following day he again sends out patrols. **In the 7th Division area:** The 1st Battalion, 17th Regiment and Headquarters departs Cho-ri and moves 70 miles to P'ungsan about the midpoint between the landing site at Iwon and the ultimate objective, Hyeesanjin. The journey is relatively quiet as the 1st Regiment, S.K. Capital Division has already advanced there, clearing the resistance as it moved.

**November 1 1950 -(United States)** President Truman is temporarily residing in the Blair House. He survives an assassination attempt there when two Puerto Rican Nationalists spring their attack, but one is killed, and the other is apprehended before the president can be harmed. **(Pacific-Korea)** Marine Corps Planes initiate nightly strikes against Sinuiju situated at the mouth of the Yalu River. These raids ignite incessant fires, but according to reports from the pilots, enemy vehicle traffic continues to flow south through the town. Pilots of VMF(N)-542, on a nightly basis, detect convoys which originate in Antung, Manchuria. The air-strikes continue until November 9th and all intelligence information is passed to Division G-2 Officers. **In the 1st Marine Division zone**, the assistant division commander, General Craig, inspects the area at Hungnam where the division headquarters at Wonsan is to be transferred on November 4th. While there, Craig is taken to observe a ghastly scene, the bodies of about 200 civilians. The North Koreans had massacred them and left them lying along a knob in a perfectly straight line. **In the 1st Marines' zone**, the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines maintains its roadblocks and patrols at Majon-ni, but no enemy activity is noticed. Lt. Col. Ridge, concerned about resupply problems, requests a practice air-drop of supplies; the operation is a success and Ridge's instincts prove correct. On the following day a supply convoy is attacked and forced to return to Wonsan. In other activity, the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines remains at Kojo. Also, the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, at Anbyon, awaits relief by Korean units. Word of the heavy losses incurred by the 1st Cavalry Division while engaged against Chinese forces is received by the Marines, but their orders are not altered. The 7th Marines is still to drive to the border with Manchuria and the initial objective remains Koto-ri, about twenty-three miles north of Majon-dong. **In the 7th Marines' zone**, the regiment is transported by truck to an assembly area between Oro-ri and Majon-dong. Also a patrol, composed of twenty-one jeeps moves to the vicinity of Huksu-ri, about 45 miles northwest of Hamhung; this reconnaissance force is searching for Chinese. The convoy halts about 4,500 yards in front of the town and establishes a night perimeter. During the night, there is some sporadic exchanges of fire with North Korean guerrillas; however, the patrol reports that no contact was made with Chinese forces. The 1st Battalion, 7th Marines probes about four miles north and reaches the area of the ROK positions above Majon-dong. During the latter part of the afternoon, the 7th Marines establish a secure and stiff night perimeter to deter any surprises. The 7th Marines is bolstered by the 3rd Battalion, 11th Marines, commanded by Major Francis Parry, Company D, 1st Engineer Battalion, commanded by Captain Byron Turner,

the 1st Motor Transport Battalion, commanded by Lt. Colonel Olin Beall and the division reconnaissance company, commanded by 1st Lt. Ralph Crossman. Additionally, the 7th Marines are augmented by Company E, 1st Medical Battalion, commanded by Lt. Commander (USN) Charles K. Halloway, USN, contingents of the division military police company and components of the 1st Signal and 1st Service Battalion. When the 7th Marines advance to the border, its entire left flank will be exposed, with the exception of division reconnaissance company, scheduled to be relieved by RCT-1 shortly.

**November 2 1950 - (Pacific-Korea)** The U.N. Command believes about 16,500 Chinese are now in Korea and that about 450,000 more remain in Manchuria close to the Yalu River. **X Corps:** General Almond relocates his command post further north at Hamhung; the remainder of his headquarters arrives on the 10th. On the 14th, the USS *Mount Mc Kinley* arrives off Hungnam; Admiral Doyle and his staff can now coordinate with Almond. **In the 1st Marine Division sector:** Corps directs the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines to depart its positions near Kojo and return to Wonsan; the departure which occurs today, causes the X Corps boundary to be adjusted by moving it 70 miles further south. In conjunction, the Korean Marine Regiment, recently detached from the 1st Marine Division, is directed to assume responsibility for the corps' zone south of the 39th Parallel. In other activity, the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, positioned at Anbyon, about eight miles southeast of Wonsan, is relieved by Korean contingents; the 2nd Battalion departs by trucks to return to its regiment which is stationed further north. Also, following completion of mine-sweeping operations, the port facilities at Wonsan become operative today. During the next nine days, the combat service group will move nearly 4,000 tons of ammunition by rail from Wonsan to Hamhung. Meanwhile at Manjon-ni, 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines' patrols continue, but the enemy's inactivity ceases. A motorized patrol of Company H ventures along a slim road heading south from the village and gets ambushed about five miles out. Enemy fire pours down from each side of the heights and creates massive problems for the patrol as vehicles stall. Marines attempt to set up their mortars and machine guns to return fire, but their positions are poor, and the enemy is concealed, causing casualties to climb. A desperate message is sent by radio to headquarters: "WE'VE BEEN HIT. SEND HELP. SEND HELP." Enemy fire then takes out the radio. Two men defy the fire and race their jeep back to headquarters to get reinforcements. They arrive safely, but one of the tires had been blown by an enemy shell. Two rifle companies, and some 81-mm mortars rush to rescue the besieged patrol. One man in the relief force, PFC Jack Golden, transporting a heavy machine gun, ascends to a position atop the enemy. Communications between Majon-ni and Wonsan remain terrible, causing a delay in getting air support to the imperiled patrol. Meanwhile, Major Simmons convinces a pilot of an OY to take him to the battle scene from where he could observe the positions. Marine corsairs then arrive to assist and the enemy is forced from the heights. Rescue operations continue and the seriously wounded are evacuated by helicopters. One Marine dies during the night, but the other wounded are evacuated by three helicopter flights. In related activity, a 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines' supply convoy, escorted by a rifle platoon of Company G departs Wonsan heading for Manjon-ni. It is ambushed about seven miles outside of Wonsan. A withering storm of enemy fire strikes the column. The first two trucks escape harm and continue moving, but the third Vehicle, transporting diesel fuel and C-3 explosives burst in flames. The two lead trucks encounter an impassable road and turn back. At about the time they reach the ambush site, the other vehicles are attempting to turn around. During the dangerous maneuver, enemy fire continues to thrash the area. Two trucks fail to safely navigate the slim road and are lost. In the meantime, reinforcements race to the area and three corsairs attached to VMF-312 arrive and drive off several

hundred enemy troops. Riflemen aboard six trucks and five tanks including a dozer tank safely rescue the imperiled convoy and return it to Wonsan. Nine Marines are killed and fifteen are wounded during the ambush. But the 1st Marines at Majon-ni desperately need the ammunition. Lt. Colonel Ridge requests delivery by air and within several hours, C-47s of the air force soar overhead and deliver more than 150 parachutes each carrying supplies to the Majon-ni perimeter. Colonel Puller, concerned that his Marines would require more supplies and ammunition, schedules another truck convoy for November 4th. **In the 5th Marines sector**, the regiment is preparing to move to Hamhung. The 1st Marines now hold responsibility for the MSR stretching north to Munchon and the road from there to Chigyong, a distance of about 54-miles is to be guarded by the Special Operations Company, USA and some Korean agents. The 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines departs today after being released from the 1st Marines. **In the 7th Marines sector**, the 1st Battalion, 7th Marines, commanded by Lt. Colonel Raymond G. Davis, departs its assembly area and moves toward Majon-dong; it is closely followed by followed 2nd Battalion, commanded by Major Webb D. Sawyer. The columns are accompanied by VMF-312's corsairs that are on scene to aid reconnaissance and provide close-air support. The columns receive some long-range fire from Chinese units and incur a few casualties. The 2nd Battalion takes responsibility for the heights on both sides of the MSR, despite it being the trailing battalion. The artillery also is involved; Batteries G and H are pushed to the front before noon. Company I, also of the 3rd Battalion, 11th Marines commences firing at about noon with the initial barrage; the artillery executes 26 missions during the day. During the afternoon, Company D, 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines begins to climb the eastern slopes of Hill 698 to relieve the South Koreans that are unable to secure and hold the summit. Once the ROKs see the Marines, they abandon their positions and seek positions in the rear. Colonel Litzenberg continues to get his regiment organized to meet any threat in the valley. By about 1630, the regiment completes a 1,300 yard advance. The troops are susceptible to coming under fire from any direction. Litzenberg has directed that the columns be restricted to a minimum of 4,000 yards and a maximum of 6,000 yards to ensure that either close-artillery or inter-battalion infantry support can be utilized to fend off any opposing force. Colonel Litzenberg remains concerned about potential dangers that could emerge; he directs Colonel Roach to take a reconnaissance flight by helicopter to scrutinize the Sudong valley which abuts the smaller valley that the 7th Marines have occupied. Roach takes the excursion flight to the area below Oro-ri during the afternoon, but no Chinese presence is detected. Meanwhile, the 2nd Battalion pushes two Company D Platoons ahead; they drive up the steep slope against what starts as sporadic and culminates with mediocre fire from the summit. The attacking platoons are ordered to pause, while calls for air strikes are made. The planes appear within several minutes and the suspected positions are blasted. Despite an open field of about fifty yards, the Marines inch forward, sustaining casualties while they climb. The Marines finally take the summit, but enemy troops remain in well-concealed positions to continue firing against the exhausted Marines. Captain Milton Hull, concerned about the condition of his Marines after the stiff ascent and their ability to hold the summit, orders them to pull back and take positions on the eastern slope. Meanwhile Hull calls for support fire to keep heat on the enemy, but it never arrives. Company D, 2nd Battalion holds its positions, despite the lack of artillery fire. Company E moves to relieve Company D. At 2200, Company E passes through D Company and establishes a night perimeter at positions on a plateau that lies about 150 yards from the crest. Back in the valley earlier in the day, aircraft plaster the heights to provide some security for the regiment. The corsairs of VMF-312 and VMF (N)-513 continue their support missions; the former executes twelve missions and the latter contributes

several additional sorties. At about 1700, three Marines are wounded when an enemy shell strikes the regimental command post. By dusk, the regiment begins to forge a night-perimeter. While Company D is committed on the eastern slope of Hill 698, Company A, commanded by Captain David Banks, digs in along the right side of the MSR. Its three platoons stretch across Hill 532 to a spindle of Hill 727 and from there the line swerves and flows backward to cover the left flank. The line is bolstered by a 3.5 rocket squad, deployed to intercept any advancing armor. Mortars are placed in the vicinity of the company command post. Lieutenant Colonel Davis establishes his command post to the rear of Company A; it is protected by one platoon of Company C and the Battalion 81-mm mortars. Opposite Company A, to the left of the MSR, C Company establishes its line on the northeastern slopes of Hill 698; in the process of moving into position, the company receives some luck. The opposition raised against Company D, hinders the movement of C Company until dark, but the Chinese who have kept a constant vigil on Marine movement, fail to detect the deployment of Company D. To further the tightening of the perimeter, one platoon of Company B and headquarters deploys close and to the rear of Company A on a spindle of Hill 698; the remaining two platoons of B Company also deploy to the rear of Company A, but on the lower portion of Hill 727. The 2nd Battalion maneuvers to strengthen its perimeter, while its Company D and E are engaged on the slopes of Hill 698. Company D remains on the lower portion once it is relieved by E Company. Company F strings out along the precipitous Hill 727. The 2nd Battalion command post is established in a small glen, just under the positions of Company F; the CP is bolstered by contingents of the 7th Marines antitank company and some 4.2 mortar units. To close the loop, the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, commanded by Major Maurice Roach, deploys in such a way as to create a backup perimeter. Opposing ridges separated by the MSR are occupied by Companies I and H, on the right and left respectively; both are linked from the south by Company G, which stretches across the valley and hold the regiment's southernmost point; it is to guard the regiment's trains as well as the command post of Colonel Litzenberg. As the latter part of the day approaches, still there are no significant signs of concentrated Chinese presence. The perimeter does however, receive sporadic incoming mortar rounds. Later, toward midnight, the Chinese Communists make their presence known. Unbeknownst to the 7th Marines who are expecting some Chinese, there are two regiments lurking nearby. The 1st Battalion, 7th Marines reports at about 2300 that enemy forces are attacking its right flank defended by Company A. The pressure is actually a probing movement. However, at 2400, a heavier assault begins. In related activity, the 1st Marine Division's reconnaissance company moves toward Huksu-ri to probe for Chinese presence; the unit will return to the valley on the following day to assist against the Chinese attacks in the 7th Marines sector. **In the Army's Special Operations Company area**, enemy Guerrillas strike the MSR. A call is placed for support and the Marine 1st Tank Battalion speeds a patrol to the area west of Munchon. The guerrillas are driven off by the Marines. The Army contingent loses some equipment and one man is wounded. **In the 7th Division sector:** At P'ungsan, the 1st Battalion, 17th Regiment prepare to jump off and initiate an attack at 0800; however, in the meantime, the Northhhhhh Koreans launch an assault at 0700. The enemy strikes against the Americans and ROK lines with the strength of about one Regiment igniting a day-long slugfest. As the fighting ensues, other elements of the Regiment begin arriving to bolster the 1st Battalion and by the latter part of the day, all but one Company has arrived. By day's end, the 1st Regiment, Capital Division is relieved by elements of the 17th Regiment. The ROKs depart the area and join the Capital division which is driving along the coastal road. Meanwhile, back at the beachhead at Iwon, the debarkation continues, hindered by the weather. The unexpected slow pace keeps many

Vehicles from coming ashore and a crisis is in the works. **ROK area:** Having anticipated relief by the 7th Marines, the South Koreans have pulled back from their forward positions at Sudong and redeployed about four miles south of the village at a valley junction. At 0600, the South Koreans are struck by an enemy force comprised of about two platoons. The enemy attack subsides after about one-half hour. Later, elements of the 7th Marines approach and the South Koreans, immediately upon spotting the approaching Yanks, pull up stakes and stream toward the rear. In other activity: Within the Iron Triangle near P'yonggang, Communist Guerrillas numbering about 1,000 attack a work Train, but the ambush backfires as a 200-man contingent of the S.K. 17th Regiment is aboard as an armed guard. The Regimental unit repels the attackers, killing 40 and capturing 23. Upon interrogation, the captives reveal that about 4,000 guerrillas are in the area with the intent to strike all trains attempting to reach Wonsan. To meet the threat, the whole 27 S.K. Regiment moves to the area and later it is bolstered by units of the U.S. 25th Division to quell the enemy in the triangle.

**November 3 1950 - (Pacific-Korea) X Corps: In the 1st Marine Division sector:** The division accelerates its march to the north; this mandates that the Wonsan-Hungnam MSR be securely held. The 1st Marines and contingents of the 1st Tank Battalion guard the route from Wonsan to a northward point about fifteen miles. In conjunction, the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines protect the route from Hamhung south to Chigyeong. A 54-mile gap remains nearly totally undefended; the area stretching from Chigyeong to Munchon is protected only by Special Operations Company, USA and some patrols of Korean counter intelligence units. Both of these outfits are under X Corps control

**In the 1st Marine Division sector: In the 1st Marines' zone:** At Kojo, the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines initiates its overland march to Wonsan. En route, information arrives informing Colonel Sutter that Korean bandits, unaligned with either side, have blown the rail line at Anbyon. Colonel Sutter halts the march at Anbyon and he stops two small convoys (a train and a truck convoy) which had also departed Kojo, transporting supplies.. Another small contingent of the Battalion also pauses for the night at Anbyon. **In the 5th Marines' zone,** the regiment has been scouring the routes leading to the Fusen Reservoir, which is located east of the 7th Marines operations, but without incident. **In the 7th Marines' zone,** the Chinese had initiated small actions against the perimeter of Company A, 1st Battalion at 2300 on the previous night. At about the stroke of midnight (3rd-4th), the pressure begins to intensify as the Chinese 370th and 371st Regiments move to shred the 7th Marines. In conjunction, the 372nd Regiment, Chinese 124th Division establishes a defensive perimeter in the vicinity of Chinhung-ni, less than five miles north of Sudong. The 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines reports two enemy battalions on its left flank. The enemy fire continues to increase during the first hour, and by 0100, the Chinese that had silently navigated the ridge lines are poised to launch a full-scale assault against the left and right flanks. At the initial sound of many blaring bugles, the bright illumination of flares, and the howling of shrill whistles, two battalions of the Chinese 371st Regiment sprint down the respective slopes and plow into 1st and 2nd Battalion perimeters. Companies A and F on the east and Company B, deployed on the west are each struck; however, on Hill 698, C Company encounters no activity along its lines. The Chinese, brandishing grenades and submachineguns, show no signs of timidity. They descend the slopes with total disregard to the Marines' return fire. Close-quartered fighting erupts in the heights, and at times, the enemy detects holes in the line. When this opportunity arises, the Chinese bolt straight down to the lowest reaches of the slopes gaining positions within the Marine perimeter to carve a wedge between the battalions. Meanwhile, during the fighting, an enemy tank manages to move

down the MSR and effortlessly pass a roadblock as the guards believe it to be friendly. Soon after, a T-34 comes to a halt just to the front of Company A's command post. At about the same time that a Sergeant yells "Tank" as a warning, the T-34 commences firing, prompting the Marines to scramble for safer positions from which to return fire. But the tank roars back onto the road and speeds south toward the 1st Battalion, 7th Marines command post. The tank halts and bangs out some shells, but they overshoot and strike the heights to the rear of the CP. Nearby Marines return fire, but the rockets and recoilless rifles do not stop the tank. However, it moves back to the highway and comes within firing range of Company A's roadblock. This time the Marines are prepared. Their 3.5-inch rockets commence firing and the tank is hit by at least one shell, but the only apparent damage is that the sandbags that insulate the turret are set ablaze; however, the armor also sustains some inconspicuous damage. The simmering tank instantly gets off a round from about point-blank range. The solitary shell strikes a solid devastating blow that takes a very high toll on the antitank crew, nearly wiping it out. The enemy tank then disengages and moves back toward its lines, visible because of bouncing sparks and trail of flame that vanishes once the tank rounds the bend; it is abandoned on the following day. This loss brings the number of available enemy tanks down to four. However, the destruction of the tank does not provide a reprieve for the Marines in the heights. Instead, the enemy, dressed in sneakers, continues to creep and leap upon the Yanks. Company A, now perilously deployed and heavily outnumbered, continues to sustain high casualties while its 1st and 2nd Platoons attempt to throw back simultaneous assaults that are pressing from three separate directions. The combat expands from the heights and breaks out in the lower ground at the MSR. The 3rd Platoon, deployed at the beginning of the spur, begins to absorb the elements of the other two hard-hit platoons as they are forced back. Meanwhile, the enemy infiltration prevents some of the troops from completing the pull-back, forcing them to join with Company B, but here too, enemy pressure causes problems. The Communists tighten a vise on two of Company B's Platoons, compelling them to move to the low ground. In turn, the remaining platoon is also forced to pull-back. But, the enemy's occupation of Company B's ground is temporary; a do-or-die counterattack retakes the ground. In the meantime, west of the MSR, other contingents of Company B are engaged in hotly contested skirmishes to the rear and on the left flank against Chinese forces that bypass Company C on Hill 698. Reinforcements are thrown into the battle to thwart the attacks; the 1st Battalion Reserve, Company B's 2nd Platoon attempts to fill the gap on the left flank, but here too, the enemy infiltration curtails the aid. Enemy troops stretched along the river bed flood the MSR with fire that severs the relief route and halts the reserves before they can cross the MSR. Still in the heights and also besieged by infiltrating Chinese, Companies E and F, 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines maintain their steadfastness, giving no ground. Nevertheless, the Chinese numbers continue to multiply in all areas. By now, enemy contingents have bee-lined from the heights and grabbed positions along the MSR; other components are poised to inundate the valley and overwhelm the command posts of the AT Company, as well as both the 1st and 2nd Battalion CPs. Chinese who spotted even small gaps along the flanks of Companies E and F in the heights have gnawed their way to dominant ground at the principal curve in the MSR, thereby splitting the route between the 1st and 2nd Battalions. The main defending force at the curve is Battery I, but it occupies low ground and remains unaware that about one Company of Chinese has circumvented the Marine positions in the heights above it and has settled in for the kill. Meanwhile, more Communist troops flood the valley, overpowering the positions of the 4.2-inch mortar sections of the 7th Marines; one mortar tube is captured. The darkness factor does not favor the Marines. They realize that the Chinese have struck in force, but

the total damage to the perimeters will not be understood until the break of dawn when it is discovered that enemy forces hold ground that is unmistakably within the Marine perimeter in the valley that lies south of Sudong. During the course of the confusing night-fighting, the mortars and the howitzers of Batteries G and H bombard suspected enemy positions, but much is blind fire which probably scores little damage. The rising sun and the imminent arrival of Marine corsairs are eagerly awaited by the defenders as they attempt to hold Hills 698 and 727, as well as the ongoing contest in the valley. The Chinese have pushed, shoved, and thrown everything they have available to dislodge the 7th Marines, but to no avail. At the break of dawn, despite the intense pressure and the rising rate of casualties, the 7th Marines still hold. Colonel Litzenberg prepares to rectify a bad situation, particularly the weaknesses along his right flank. His tattered and exhausted regiment prepares to retake the ground and evict the Chinese. The end of the suppressing darkness brings mixed blessings. The enemy now seems herded in batches amidst and above the Marines. They had successfully conducted an elaborate and unrestrained night-long attacking maneuver which has them positioned to either celebrate the demise of the 7th Marines or at least act as a human guillotine to decapitate many of its components. The newly discovered irregular alignment of the enemy regiments seems to present an immense challenge to Litzenberg's strategy. Unwilling to capitulate to the odds against some of his isolated units, Litzenberg utilizes his unexpected defensive stand to regroup. The Marines' artillery, mortars, heavy machine guns and infantry fire, act in unison. As expected, corsairs arrive to stitch the ridges with steel seams. The planes of VMF-312 remain on scene. They scorch the squatted enemy formations that lie upon the naked ridges, but they also form a deadly sky-chain that delivers enormous sheets of fire toward Chinese artillery, trucks and an assortment of other vehicles. At 0910, VMF-312 is joined by four planes of VMF(N)-513. Together, they further shatter the stability of the enemy. Meanwhile, the ground Marines struggle to hook-up with Battery I at the key road bend along the MSR. By 1100, the Chinese are dispersed and Battery I is again holding tenable positions; it joins the other artillery units action by catapulting its supply of shells into the enemy lines. In addition, the 7th Marines continue to kill off infiltrators that remain within the respective sectors of the 1st and 2nd Battalions. The Chinese continue to raise tough opposition during the day, but now the Marines' firepower is far superior to that of the diminishing Chinese still in the valley. The 1st Battalion puts its heavy machine guns to work and they pay good dividends. By noon the low ground is under Marine control. And by late afternoon, more concentrated action evicts the Chinese from the valley. The Chinese attempt to depart the valley by heading north walking astride the railroad tracks. The 1st Battalion's weapons company rivets the column with machine gun shells, ravaging the scattering columns. The daylight retreat greatly increases enemy casualties. Six Hundred and Sixty-two enemy bodies are counted when the din of battle subsides. Nevertheless, other Chinese units are simultaneously engaging the Marines in the 2nd Battalion sector. The enemy still holds ground in the heights on a spur of Hill 727 above the MSR at its dominant curve. Consequently, some contingents of the 2nd Battalion remain isolated. To ensure availability of sufficient ammunition, Colonel Litzenberg requests that planes deliver supplies to his forward contingents. Company D, deployed at the base of Hill 698 and south of the roadblock is ordered to cross the river and eliminate the blockage. In conjunction, contingents of Company E advance up the slope against opposition, but by about 0800 the 2nd Platoon, led by Lt. John Yancey, gains positions about 50 yards from the summit, which is defended only by one Chinese soldier. Atop the summit, the defenders show no signs of relinquishing control. The 3rd Platoon, commanded by Lt. Robert Bey, moves through the 2nd Platoon and charges toward the crest, but an avalanche of grenades tumbles

down the slope forcing the 3rd Platoon to halt its attack. At about 1400, planes arrive to plaster the top of the mass and clear the way to the crest. Company E drives to the peak and discovers its 40 defenders, all of whom are deceased. In the meantime, the roadblock at the curve still exists. Company D's attempt to take out the enemy on the spur of Hill 727 hits obstacles. Passage through the valley had gone well, but at the water's edge, enemy fire bars a crossing, forcing the company to swing left to new positions near the slope of Hill 698. From here, the Marines face Chinese on the opposite side of the MSR. During the operation, Litzenberg improvises. He directs Lt. Delong, executive officer AT Company, to advance with a 75-mm recoilless rifle to join the fire of the attacking planes and artillery barrage that is pounding the obstacle. At about this time, the division's reconnaissance company returns from a night-patrol and forms near Litzenberg's command post; it too joins the battle, firing upon the enemy's rear positions. These reconnaissance troops climb into the heights atop the enemy positions, then they move north along the ridgeline to attack. All the while, Company D continues to destroy the remaining resistance on Hill 698, as it drives toward the blockage. The ground troops continue to receive support from the air and artillery, a combination that takes a high toll on the nerves of the defenders, prompting them to abandon the roadblock. Company D, subsequent to terminating the resistance on Hill 698 awaits the cessation of two air strikes, then mounts a stiff charge, but in the meantime, the Chinese are breaking for safer positions. The reconnaissance company troops spot the retreating Chinese as they scurry across open ground. Immediately, they call for air strikes to annihilate them, but the response is negative, as Captain Hull's Marines are too close and in fact directly in the target area. The MSR is resecured by 1810; however, the enemy does raise two counterattacks to oust Company D. Both fail. Twenty-eight dead Chinese are counted at the roadblock. With the route again open, Marine supply convoys begin rolling north from the regimental CP at about dusk to bolster the 1st and 2nd Battalions and to bring out the wounded. About 100 casualties are transported back to either the division hospital or to Hungnam to receive treatment at the 121st Army Evacuation Hospital. The Chinese resort to long-range harassment fire and a spattering of some light contact through the night of the 3rd-4th, but Marine artillery and mortars effortlessly negate the efforts. The sporadic night-contacts are deemed to be either Chinese patrols or Communist stragglers, not full-size contingents. The fighting initiated on the 2nd, continuing through November 4, has considerably thinned the ranks of both attacking regiments. The 371st Regiment's 1st and 3rd Battalions has sustained a combined loss of about five companies and the 370th Regiment's 3rd Battalion incurs the loss of about two companies. The dead count in the 370st Regiment alone stands at 793. Subsequent to the battering the two regiments have received at the hands of the 7th Marines, they move back to the lines of the 372nd Regiment to defend against the expected advance of the 7th Marines. In addition, aircraft spot various enemy columns moving south of the Chosin Reservoir; the reports estimate about three convoys that are moving in groups of about 15-20 Trucks in a column. Litzenberg absorbs the information and prepares to encounter more opposition on the following day. North of Chinhung-ni, the elements of the 124th Chinese Division trench themselves on gargantuan Hills 891 and 987. These dominant masses overlook the MSR at a point about two miles north of the town. The Chinese are unable to accommodate the remaining four tanks of the 344th N.K. Tank Regiment due to the inability of the slim roads to permit passage of armor; the pygmy force is compelled to dig-in deeply to conceal its fragile positions and await its fate at the village. Relative calm settles in for the night and the 7th Marines perimeter which had been unnaturally altered on the previous day is restored. One difference is that east of the roadblock, the heights are now possessed by Company D. At dawn, probing patrols will penetrate further north to set the tone for the advance. **In the 7th**

**Division area:** At Iwon, the 3rd Battalion, 31st Infantry Regiment debarks; the remainder of the Regiment comes ashore on the following day. Its mission will be to advance and deploy west of the 17th Regiment on its left flank in the vicinity of P'ungsan. In other activity, the 17th Regiment at P'ungsan requests an Airdrop of ammunition and supplies.

**November 4 1950 -(Pacific-Korea)** U.N. Minesweepers conclude the minesweeping operation to clear the inner harbor at Wonsan. Still mines remain in the channel. The minesweepers move to Hungnam to secure a thirty-two mile channel and also to sweep the inner harbor. **X Corps:** Special Operations Company, USA, operating between Chigyoung and Munchon, informs corps that it has spotted huge numbers of North Koreans descending into the area west of their positions. Also, corps informs the 1st Marine Division that mounted guerrillas had struck Kowan, about fifteen miles north of Munchon; the contingent fired upon the Railway Police. **In the 1st Marine Division area:** The 1st Marine Division command post is relocated from Wonsan to Hungnam in coordination with the assignments that direct the 5th and 7th Marines to initiate missions in the north. The 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, which has been under the operational control of the 1st Marines while performing patrolling details for the 1st Marines, is included in this movement. The 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines and two accompanying convoys arrive at Wonsan from Anbyon. General Smith arrives at Hungnam by helicopter and establishes the command post at 1100. At 2130, a train, transporting 160 officers and men of headquarters, also arrives from Wonsan. Enemy guerrilla fire strikes the train along the route, but no casualties are sustained. A defensive perimeter is established to fortify the CP; two outposts and eight machine gun positions are spread about to guard all probable approach routes. Unbeknownst to the Marines at the command post, three nearby connected-caves house about 250 tons of high-explosives. This dangerous material is discovered in about one week. A detachment of sixteen Marines guards it until it can be removed from the caves and detonated. In other activity, division issues OpnO 10-50; it directs the 1st Battalion, 1st Marines to prepare to move to Chonjin, located 220 air-miles from Wonsan; however, the order is rescinded by X Corps on November 9th. **In the 1st Marines sector:** At 1440, a heavily guarded thirty-four supply vehicle convoy departs Wonsan for Manjon-ni. A light observation plane is airborne and two corsairs are available to bolster the column, but no forward air controller makes the trip. Instead, a tactical air control party, placed toward the rear of the convoy, receives the information from the OY and transfers it to the VMF-12 corsairs. Company A, reinforced by one platoon of Company C Engineers, a mortar section and a contingent of recoilless rifles provides ground security for the convoy. The engineers act as vanguard to clear the path of obstacles. The column encounters four unprotected enemy roadblocks and the engineers effortlessly plug the craters, but the next obstacle is heavily fortified by troops in the heights that spring an ambush on the engineers. About eight miles out, a wall of fire cascades down from the high ground on both sides of the primitive road. Vehicles stall and clog the path, hindering the advance of the riflemen. The engineers take cover near their vehicles and return effective fire to forestall disaster. In the meantime, the corsairs arrive to assist, but the effort falls short due to the lack of the forward air controller and the approach of dusk. The convoy's commanding officer, Captain Barrow, attempts a return to Wonsan, rather than risk unnecessary casualties in the darkness. The vehicles reverse direction through a series of harrowing turns on a dangerous road where one false move could plunge a vehicle several hundred feet into the valley. Long-range artillery fire accelerates, prompting Barrow to order the convoy to proceed without lights. The besieged convoy makes it back, but along the route, one vehicle misses a turn and shoots off the path. Fortuitously the truck,

transporting twenty Marines, lands on a rare road shoulder and no fatalities occur. Other Marines pull the men to safety. Captain Barrow's force sustains eight men wounded, and sixteen injured. The convoy loses five vehicles. Barrow's reinforced Company A retraces the route on the following morning. In conjunction, Colonel Puller informs Barrow that the failure of the mission was due to the late start and the absence of a TAC, not his decision in the field. **In the 5th Marines zone:** the 5th Marines detaches its 1st Battalion to divisional control. In addition, its 3rd Battalion deploys near Oro-ri while the 2nd Battalion moves toward the Sinhung valley to relieve the S.K. 18th Regiment. The 2nd Marines effect the relief at about 1145 at positions which are about five miles north and fifteen miles east of the 7th Marines. Lt. Colonel Roise's 2nd Battalion is given the task of guarding the Sinhung corridor, while simultaneously assessing the enemy's positions and related strength. Additionally, the 2nd Marines is to inspect particular northerly paths to the Chosin and Fusen Reservoirs. Patrols will be initiated on the following day. **In the 7th Marines sector:** At about dawn, elements of the 1st Battalion advance through the valley floor moving toward Sudong. They reach the fringes of the town without incident, and then return to the perimeter, again without encountering resistance. Colonel Litzenberg directs the 2nd Battalion to hold in place in the heights on Hills 698 and 727 to provide cover fire for the advance. At about 0800 the column moves out, spearheaded by the 1st Platoon, Reconnaissance Company, trailed by the 1st and 3rd Battalions respectively. The 1st Platoon, Reconnaissance Company, transported by Jeeps, moves swiftly. Soon after, the 2nd and 3rd Platoons begin moving through the heights above the town, while the 1st Platoon enters the supposed unoccupied town. At a point midway through the town, the lead Jeeps swing around a turn and stun some lingering Chinese troops. A heated fire-fight erupts, but thirty minutes later, three Chinese are killed and twenty others are taken prisoner. Meanwhile the 7th Marines maintains its advance, shadowing the reconnaissance company. Following the interruption at Sudong, the 2nd Platoon replaces the 1st Platoon as vanguard. Later, the column reinitiates its drive toward Chinhung-ni, while the 1st Battalion, 7th Marines moves out from its positions south of Sudong, following the route taken through the low lands by the reconnaissance company. At the next objective, Chinhung-ni, there is a railroad connecting point that services Funchilin Pass with cable cars. The rail lines straddle the west side of the river opposite the highway, and the tracks enter the town by way of a bridge that crosses over a medium stream. At Samgo Station slightly beyond the town, a small contingent of Chinese soldiers are posted, but they seem not to notice the approaching jeeps of the reconnaissance company that are clearly visible on the highway on the opposite bank. Neither do the Marines detect the presence of the four T-34 that are lying in wait on their approach route, but suspicions are soon raised when conspicuous enemy tank tracks are discovered at a point about 2,000 yards in front of Chinhung-ni. Word of the tracks is sent back, but orders from Lt. Colonel Davis instruct the reconnaissance platoon to advance. The 2nd Platoon moves directly past the first Communist tank as it reaches the road that enters the town. Continuing for a short distance, the Marines glance across the river and spot the Chinese on the opposite bank, yet they fail to detect yet a second tank that is perilously close to them. Instinctively, the Marines fire upon the enemy ground troops, prompting the Chinese to hurriedly disperse, but not before many of them succumb to the effective fire. During the brief exchange, Lt. Sharon and his troops notice a strange pile of brush that conceals the second Tank. There are no visible signs of it being occupied. Sharon and two other Marines board the tank, but the mini-excursion surprises the Marines when suddenly the periscope begins to turn. Undaunted by the unexpected movement, Staff Sergeant Twohey and Corporal McDermott both move into action. McDermott breaks the glass, while Twohey quickly deposits a grenade into the tank. Immediately thereafter, Sharon, Twohey

and McDermott fly from the tank to take cover, just as it detonates. The grenade damages but does not kill the tank; it bolts forward, but the Marines are not intimidated, rather Twohey reboards the cantankerous vehicle and makes another deposit. In quick motion, a second grenade is flipped into the periscope, resulting in a big bang that terminates any further movement. Smoke emerges from the charred armor, but to be sure, more devastation is thrust upon the tank. Other troops begin catching up with the vanguard, including the recoilless rifles and Company C's 3.5 inch rocket crews. The recoilless rifles and rockets blast the Tank to assure oblivion. In the meantime, the first tank remains tranquil, but at the burst of fire, a third tank springs from its cover, a thatched hut. The Marines observe the collapse of the hut as the tank roars out of its hiding place. The enemy tank appears as the nearby valley is bursting with advancing vehicles and Marines and its turret is pointing toward the column preparing to unleash its 81-mm shells. A forward air observer, Lt. Elledge, radios for air support, while the recoilless rifles and rockets again commence firing. The tank is hit, but not fatally. It advances further and comes under attack from the air. One of the planes dives and delivers a killing blow with two 5-inch rockets that both strike the mark. instantly decimating the tank. Both VMF-312 and VMF(N)-513 are flying close-support missions; it is not determined which outfit scores the kill. Following the destruction of the second tank, Lt. Sharon and the reconnaissance Marines move forward, but prudently, expecting more trouble. And they find it. The landscape is again unnaturally bulging. The fourth tank is detected nestled just to their front and nudged alongside a hill. Meanwhile, the trailing Marines continue to advance, and at about the same time that the fourth tank is spotted by Lt. Sharon, the initial tank is discovered by other Marines. Tank number one, back near Chinhung-ni, is at the wrong place at the wrong time. Being located in the middle of the advancing Marine column spells disaster. The recoilless rifles and rockets hammer it with fire. The crew decides to abandon the tank and surrender. In the meantime, the final tank comes under attack by Sharon's men; its life span is held by a small stream. The antitank crews, led by Lt. Sharon, ford the stream and close on the armor, but before a shot is fired, the crew, which is outside and to the rear of the tank, capitulates without a struggle. The surrender of the crew culminates the demise of the 344th N.K. Tank Battalion. The abandoned tank is not spared; the recoilless rifles and the rockets are each used to destroy it. All the while, the trailing elements continue to arrive at Chinhung-ni. The 7th Marines gain about 6,000 yards by the middle of the afternoon and Colonel Litzenberg prepares to form his perimeter. By 1600, the 1st Battalion begins to dig-in, and reconnaissance company patrols are dispatched into Funchilin Pass to probe enemy strength and confirm earlier reports that have detected enemy troops across the canyon from Hill 987 on Hill 891. The units are to penetrate about 2,000 yards and establish an outpost on Hill 891's southern tip. The reconnaissance company's 3rd Platoon, led by Lt. Charles Puckett takes the point as the column rolls about one mile deep into the pass, reaching a point where the road swerves to the east and obstinate Hill 987 bulges on the west. The precarious highway moves dead east for about 1,000 yards before it takes a deep curve and then ascends on a coinciding route that heads back toward the initial point of the curve, but just before the point, it again changes direction and leads north astride the granite-like slopes of Hill 891. The road challenges all vehicles, with or without accompanying opposition. The patrol proceeds with prudence, expecting danger at any moment. At about 1630, immediately after rounding the steep curve, the Communists commence firing. To the left, shells descend from Hill 987, across the abyss. From the front on the slopes of Hill 891, more fire is poured upon the lead vehicles. And to the right, a Chinese patrol operating on the serpentine highway joins the attack. The riveting fire halts the patrol and compels it to remain pinned to the ground, leaving no alternatives, except to await help. Finally, through the combined

aid of Marine aircraft and darkness, the besieged column is able to extricate itself and return to the perimeter. Enemy fire inflicts two men killed and wounds five others in the patrol. Also, the two lead jeeps are also destroyed. The remainder of the night remains calm for the 7th Marines, but during the tranquility, Colonel Litzenberg establishes the blueprint for the following day's advance. In conjunction, the Marine night fighters of VMF(N)-513 receive little sleep; they execute sorties to bombard and strafe enemy convoys in the vicinity of the Chosin Reservoir to lessen resistance for the following day. **In the 7th Infantry Division zone:** The tardiness of the unloading operation at the beachhead at Iwon has created pressure on the 17th Regiment at P'ungsan. The regiment on the previous day had requested an airdrop with particular emphasis on the delivery of 4.2-inch, 60-mm and 81-mm mortar ammunition to ensure it has enough weaponry and supplies to meet any threat that might arise. The items are dropped this day. In other activity, patrols discover that the enemy to their front have vanished. Expecting no resistance, the 17th Regiment advances, feeling the chill of the 2 degree weather, to the Ungi River without incident. In the 31st Regiment sector at Iwon, the Regiment completes its debarkation and begins to initiate its movement to the high ground at the Pujon Reservoir where it will deploy west of the 17th Regiment to guard the left flank. It too will soon experience the Korean winter in the mountains. Also, this day, the 32nd Regiment begins to debark; it will advance southwest and drive along the coast, then after passing Hamhung, it pivots and heads northeast to deploy at Tangp'ang-ni, from where it will stage to participate in the upcoming offensive.

**November 4 1950 -(Pacific-Korea)** U.N. Minesweepers conclude the minesweeping operation to clear the inner harbor at Wonsan. Still mines remain in the channel. The minesweepers move to Hungnam to secure a thirty-two mile channel and also to sweep the inner harbor. **X Corps:** Special Operations Company, USA, operating between Chigyoung and Munchon, informs corps that it has spotted huge numbers of North Koreans descending into the area west of their positions. Also, corps informs the 1st Marine Division that mounted guerrillas had struck Kowan, about fifteen miles north of Munchon; the contingent fired upon the Railway Police. **In the 1st Marine Division area:** The 1st Marine Division command post is relocated from Wonsan to Hungnam in coordination with the assignments that direct the 5th and 7th Marines to initiate missions in the north. The 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, which has been under the operational control of the 1st Marines while performing patrolling details for the 1st Marines, is included in this movement. The 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines and two accompanying convoys arrive at Wonsan from Anbyon. General Smith arrives at Hungnam by helicopter and establishes the command post at 1100. At 2130, a train, transporting 160 officers and men of headquarters, also arrives from Wonsan. Enemy guerrilla fire strikes the train along the route, but no casualties are sustained. A defensive perimeter is established to fortify the CP; two outposts and eight machine gun positions are spread about to guard all probable approach routes. Unbeknownst to the Marines at the command post, three nearby connected-caves house about 250 tons of high-explosives. This dangerous material is discovered in about one week. A detachment of sixteen Marines guards it until it can be removed from the caves and detonated. In other activity, division issues OpnO 10-50; it directs the 1st Battalion, 1st Marines to prepare to move to Chonjin, located 220 air-miles from Wonsan; however, the order is rescinded by X Corps on November 9th. **In the 1st Marines sector:** At 1440, a heavily guarded thirty-four supply vehicle convoy departs Wonsan for Manjon-ni. A light observation plane is airborne and two corsairs are available to bolster the column, but no forward air controller makes the trip. Instead, a tactical air control party, placed toward the rear of the convoy, receives the

information from the OY and transfers it to the VMF-12 corsairs. Company A, reinforced by one platoon of Company C Engineers, a mortar section and a contingent of recoilless rifles provides ground security for the convoy. The engineers act as vanguard to clear the path of obstacles. The column encounters four unprotected enemy roadblocks and the engineers effortlessly plug the craters, but the next obstacle is heavily fortified by troops in the heights that spring an ambush on the engineers. About eight miles out, a wall of fire cascades down from the high ground on both sides of the primitive road. Vehicles stall and clog the path, hindering the advance of the riflemen. The engineers take cover near their vehicles and return effective fire to forestall disaster. In the meantime, the corsairs arrive to assist, but the effort falls short due to the lack of the forward air controller and the approach of dusk. The convoy's commanding officer, Captain Barrow, attempts a return to Wonsan, rather than risk unnecessary casualties in the darkness. The vehicles reverse direction through a series of harrowing turns on a dangerous road where one false move could plunge a vehicle several hundred feet into the valley. Long-range artillery fire accelerates, prompting Barrow to order the convoy to proceed without lights. The besieged convoy makes it back, but along the route, one vehicle misses a turn and shoots off the path. Fortuitously the truck, transporting twenty Marines, lands on a rare road shoulder and no fatalities occur. Other Marines pull the men to safety. Captain Barrow's force sustains eight men wounded, and sixteen injured. The convoy loses five vehicles. Barrow's reinforced Company A retraces the route on the following morning. In conjunction, Colonel Puller informs Barrow that the failure of the mission was due to the late start and the absence of a TAC, not his decision in the field. **In the 5th Marines zone:** the 5th Marines detaches its 1st Battalion to divisional control. In addition, its 3rd Battalion deploys near Oro-ri while the 2nd Battalion moves toward the Sinhung valley to relieve the S.K. 18th Regiment. The 2nd Marines effect the relief at about 1145 at positions which are about five miles north and fifteen miles east of the 7th Marines. Lt. Colonel Roise's 2nd Battalion is given the task of guarding the Sinhung corridor, while simultaneously assessing the enemy's positions and related strength. Additionally, the 2nd Marines is to inspect particular northerly paths to the Chosin and Fusen Reservoirs. Patrols will be initiated on the following day. **In the 7th Marines sector:** At about dawn, elements of the 1st Battalion advance through the valley floor moving toward Sudong. They reach the fringes of the town without incident, and then return to the perimeter, again without encountering resistance. Colonel Litzenberg directs the 2nd Battalion to hold in place in the heights on Hills 698 and 727 to provide cover fire for the advance. At about 0800 the column moves out, spearheaded by the 1st Platoon, Reconnaissance Company, trailed by the 1st and 3rd Battalions respectively. The 1st Platoon, Reconnaissance Company, transported by Jeeps, moves swiftly. Soon after, the 2nd and 3rd Platoons begin moving through the heights above the town, while the 1st Platoon enters the supposed unoccupied town. At a point midway through the town, the lead Jeeps swing around a turn and stun some lingering Chinese troops. A heated fire-fight erupts, but thirty minutes later, three Chinese are killed and twenty others are taken prisoner. Meanwhile the 7th Marines maintains its advance, shadowing the reconnaissance company. Following the interruption at Sudong, the 2nd Platoon replaces the 1st Platoon as vanguard. Later, the column reinitiates its drive toward Chinhung-ni, while the 1st Battalion, 7th Marines moves out from its positions south of Sudong, following the route taken through the low lands by the reconnaissance company. At the next objective, Chinhung-ni, there is a railroad connecting point that services Funchilin Pass with cable cars. The rail lines straddle the west side of the river opposite the highway, and the tracks enter the town by way of a bridge that crosses over a medium stream. At Samgo Station slightly beyond the town, a small contingent of Chinese soldiers are posted, but they seem not to notice the

approaching jeeps of the reconnaissance company that are clearly visible on the highway on the opposite bank. Neither do the Marines detect the presence of the four T-34 that are lying in wait on their approach route, but suspicions are soon raised when conspicuous enemy tank tracks are discovered at a point about 2,000 yards in front of Chinhung-ni. Word of the tracks is sent back, but orders from Lt. Colonel Davis instruct the reconnaissance platoon to advance. The 2nd Platoon moves directly past the first Communist tank as it reaches the road that enters the town. Continuing for a short distance, the Marines glance across the river and spot the Chinese on the opposite bank, yet they fail to detect yet a second tank that is perilously close to them. Instinctively, the Marines fire upon the enemy ground troops, prompting the Chinese to hurriedly disperse, but not before many of them succumb to the effective fire. During the brief exchange, Lt. Sharon and his troops notice a strange pile of brush that conceals the second Tank. There are no visible signs of it being occupied. Sharon and two other Marines board the tank, but the mini-excursion surprises the Marines when suddenly the periscope begins to turn. Undaunted by the unexpected movement, Staff Sergeant Twohey and Corporal McDermott both move into action. McDermott breaks the glass, while Twohey quickly deposits a grenade into the tank. Immediately thereafter, Sharon, Twohey and McDermott fly from the tank to take cover, just as it detonates. The grenade damages but does not kill the tank; it bolts forward, but the Marines are not intimidated, rather Twohey reboards the cantankerous vehicle and makes another deposit. In quick motion, a second grenade is flipped into the periscope, resulting in a big bang that terminates any further movement. Smoke emerges from the charred armor, but to be sure, more devastation is thrust upon the tank. Other troops begin catching up with the vanguard, including the recoilless rifles and Company C's 3.5 inch rocket crews. The recoilless rifles and rockets blast the Tank to assure oblivion. In the meantime, the first tank remains tranquil, but at the burst of fire, a third tank springs from its cover, a thatched hut. The Marines observe the collapse of the hut as the tank roars out of its hiding place. The enemy tank appears as the nearby valley is bursting with advancing vehicles and Marines and its turret is pointing toward the column preparing to unleash its 81-mm shells. A forward air observer, Lt. Elledge, radios for air support, while the recoilless rifles and rockets again commence firing. The tank is hit, but not fatally. It advances further and comes under attack from the air. One of the planes dives and delivers a killing blow with two 5-inch rockets that both strike the mark. instantly decimating the tank. Both VMF-312 and VMF(N)-513 are flying close-support missions; it is not determined which outfit scores the kill. Following the destruction of the second tank, Lt. Sharon and the reconnaissance Marines move forward, but prudently, expecting more trouble. And they find it. The landscape is again unnaturally bulging. The fourth tank is detected nestled just to their front and nudged alongside a hill. Meanwhile, the trailing Marines continue to advance, and at about the same time that the fourth tank is spotted by Lt. Sharon, the initial tank is discovered by other Marines. Tank number one, back near Chinhung-ni, is at the wrong place at the wrong time. Being located in the middle of the advancing Marine column spells disaster. The recoilless rifles and rockets hammer it with fire. The crew decides to abandon the tank and surrender. In the meantime, the final tank comes under attack by Sharon's men; its life span is held by a small stream. The antitank crews, led by Lt. Sharon, ford the stream and close on the armor, but before a shot is fired, the crew, which is outside and to the rear of the tank, capitulates without a struggle. The surrender of the crew culminates the demise of the 344th N.K. Tank Battalion. The abandoned tank is not spared; the recoilless rifles and the rockets are each used to destroy it. All the while, the trailing elements continue to arrive at Chinhung-ni. The 7th Marines gain about 6,000 yards by the middle of the afternoon and Colonel Litzenberg prepares to form his perimeter. By 1600, the 1st Battalion

begins to dig-in, and reconnaissance company patrols are dispatched into Funchilin Pass to probe enemy strength and confirm earlier reports that have detected enemy troops across the canyon from Hill 987 on Hill 891. The units are to penetrate about 2,000 yards and establish an outpost on Hill 891's southern tip. The reconnaissance company's 3rd Platoon, led by Lt. Charles Puckett takes the point as the column rolls about one mile deep into the pass, reaching a point where the road swerves to the east and obstinate Hill 987 bulges on the west. The precarious highway moves dead east for about 1,000 yards before it takes a deep curve and then ascends on a coinciding route that heads back toward the initial point of the curve, but just before the point, it again changes direction and leads north astride the granite-like slopes of Hill 891. The road challenges all vehicles, with or without accompanying opposition. The patrol proceeds with prudence, expecting danger at any moment. At about 1630, immediately after rounding the steep curve, the Communists commence firing. To the left, shells descend from Hill 987, across the abyss. From the front on the slopes of Hill 891, more fire is poured upon the lead vehicles. And to the right, a Chinese patrol operating on the serpentine highway joins the attack. The riveting fire halts the patrol and compels it to remain pinned to the ground, leaving no alternatives, except to await help. Finally, through the combined aid of Marine aircraft and darkness, the besieged column is able to extricate itself and return to the perimeter. Enemy fire inflicts two men killed and wounds five others in the patrol. Also, the two lead jeeps are also destroyed. The remainder of the night remains calm for the 7th Marines, but during the tranquility, Colonel Litzenberg establishes the blueprint for the following day's advance. In conjunction, the Marine night fighters of VMF(N)-513 receive little sleep; they execute sorties to bombard and strafe enemy convoys in the vicinity of the Chosin Reservoir to lessen resistance for the following day. **In the 7th Infantry Division zone:** The tardiness of the unloading operation at the beachhead at Iwon has created pressure on the 17th Regiment at P'ungsan. The regiment on the previous day had requested an airdrop with particular emphasis on the delivery of 4.2-inch, 60-mm and 81-mm mortar ammunition to ensure it has enough weaponry and supplies to meet any threat that might arise. The items are dropped this day. In other activity, patrols discover that the enemy to their front have vanished. Expecting no resistance, the 17th Regiment advances, feeling the chill of the 2 degree weather, to the Ungi River without incident. In the 31st Regiment sector at Iwon, the Regiment completes its debarkation and begins to initiate its movement to the high ground at the Pujon Reservoir where it will deploy west of the 17th Regiment to guard the left flank. It too will soon experience the Korean winter in the mountains. Also, this day, the 32nd Regiment begins to debark; it will advance southwest and drive along the coast, then after passing Hamhung, it pivots and heads northeast to deploy at Tangp'ang-ni, from where it will stage to participate in the upcoming offensive.

**November 5 1950 -(Pacific-Japan)** General MacArthur dispatches a crucial report to the United Nations which includes the particulars of Chinese participation in Korea.. He enumerates the complications developing because of their involvement. MacArthur has become concerned about the heavy infusion of Chinese Soldiers and their equipment into Korea; he orders the Air Force to bomb the Yalu River Bridges on the Korean side of the river to halt or at least lessen the abundance of ground forces entering Korea. The orders go out, but word reaches Washington, and the JCS immediately countermand the order. MacArthur argues vehemently that the destruction of the bridges is necessary and he implores the intervention of President Truman. Also, General Willoughby's intelligence summary makes it clear that the Chinese have the potential to commence a full-scale counter-offensive. **(Pacific-Korea) X Corps: In the 1st Marine Division sector: In the 1st Marines zone,** Captain Barrow again leads his convoy toward Majon-ni. It departs Wonsan

at 0830, providing plenty of daylight if the gooks intend to spring another ambush. Barrow also changes the rules. Anticipating that the enemy will hear the noisy lead vehicles, he sends out his infantry with orders to alternate the platoons, but maintain a pace that keeps them at least 1,000 yards in front of the vehicles. The modified plan produces excellent results. Apparently, the enemy is resting comfortably, enjoying breakfast while awaiting the roar of the vehicles. The vanguard platoon, led by 2nd Lt. Donald R. Jones, silently rounds a curve near the scene of the previous day's fighting and discovers an early morning picnic with about seventy participants. Without warning, the platoon commences firing and the lurking threat is instantly terminated. Some escape, but fifty-one of the Communists suddenly succumb and three others are taken prisoner. The Marines sustain no casualties, nor do they sustain any for the remainder of the trip. The convoy passes the ambush scene, unhindered by the enemy corpses and rolls into Manjon-ni without further incident slightly after lunch. It is jubilantly greeted by the 3rd Battalion defenders, especially because army intelligence has informed the battalion that the enemy is planning to attack the perimeter at 0100 on the 6th. With the arrival of the ammunition and supplies, coupled with Barrow's reinforced Company A, 1st Bn., 1st Marines, the 3rd Battalion initiates a search mission to discover the suspected 2,000-3,000 enemy troops expected to launch the attack. A strong force, composed of Companies G and I, bolstered by a contingent of weapons company advances about six miles along the Pyongyang Road to the suspected objective. Except for some distant sniper fire, the convoy encounters no resistance. Eighty-one enemy troops are encountered, but they choose to surrender without any prompting. Although it had not been necessary, the convoy was further buffered by artillery units in Manjon-ni. Nevertheless, army intelligence reports prove true. The Communists initiate an attack during the early morning of the 6th. **In the 5th Marines sector**, in the Sinhung Valley, the 2nd Battalion initiates reconnaissance patrols consisting of squads strength. Additionally, reinforced combat patrols are dispatched to augment the inspection of the routes leading to the reservoirs. These patrols continue until November 9th. Ultimately, these patrols discover that all southern routes to the Fusen and Chosin Reservoirs are not fitted for military traffic. However, it is found that the road leading northeast from Sinhung is capable of sustaining traffic to the sector of the 7th Division and beyond to the Manchurian border. Lt. Colonel Roise's regiment begins making contact with U.S. Army patrols on November 7th. **In the 7th Marines sector**, the reminder of the ambush on the previous day is fresh in the minds of the regiment as it plans to advance. Mortars and the artillery of the 3rd Battalion, 11th Marines are to remain in positions south of Sudong from where they can catapult support fire if opposition emerges from the heights in Funchilin Pass. At 0700, the 1st Platoon, reconnaissance company retraces the steps of the patrol that got snagged on the previous day. It drives down the highway guarding the right flank in concert with the 1st Battalion, also designated to protect the right flank. The 2nd Battalion trails the lead 1st Battalion toward the pass, but it is to pass through and take the lead to initiate the attack to secure the pass. However, the enemy remains tightly concealed and within impregnable positions to greet the vanguard. At precisely the identical location that Lt. Puckett's 3rd Platoon had been bushwhacked, the Chinese catch the 1st Platoon, led by Lt. Hargett. It too is unable to advance, nor is it able to immediately retire. But within minutes, the support fire arrives to cool the slopes. The artillery comes crashing down on the enemy positions and the planes of VMF-312 arrive on scene to blister the heights. During the enfilade of friendly fire, the 1st Platoon pulls back to safety. In the meantime, the 3rd Battalion, commanded by Major Roach, departs at 0800 to clear the obstacles. Company I drives toward Hill 987, while Company G, commanded by Captain Thomas Cooney, advances toward equally obstinate Hill 891. The enemy raises walls of fire that strike both

companies as they reach the vicious bend in the road, essentially severing the highway and forcing the Marines to hold where they stand. The Marines return fire as effectively as possible. Captain Coney is wounded twice during the day's fighting. Meanwhile, from about 1000 until the end of the day, the engagement leans toward the action of the planes, artillery and mortars which support the Marines against the long-range mortars of the enemy. During the course of the day's combat, General Smith pinpoints Koto-ri as the initial target, but the task becomes unattainable. The day-long ground skirmishes remain nearly stationary with no measurable gains. During the incessant bombardments, one of the enemy troops decides to call it a day; he jumps from his position and surrenders to Marines. Following his capture, the Chinese soldier outlines the positions of his comrades. The Yanks zero in on the two battalions on Hills 891 and 987 and the enemy battalion held in reserve on a knob between Hill 987 and 1304. The huge amount of firepower dispensed by the Yanks keeps the enemy at bay and scores much destruction to both men and equipment. Although the Chinese in the heights sustain heavy losses, and have watched many of their guns fall prey to the American air and artillery barrages, they maintain control of their positions when the fighting subsides at the fall of darkness. In the meantime, Marine pilots from VMF-312 pound enemy positions throughout the day, disrupting convoys running between Chinhung-ni and the Chosin Reservoir; twenty-one trucks are decimated. During the raids, the pilots report that the ridges are infested with Chinese; they also report that the air strikes have greatly diminished their numbers. In concert, the Planes of VMF(N)-513 execute 37 sorties that consume 90 hours of close-support missions. The roving aircraft blast an array of targets stretching from Koto-ri to the reservoir at Haguru, inflicting more losses of men, equipment and vehicles upon the enemy. Marine casualties for the day are extremely light, due as much to the nasty terrain as well as enemy fire. It becomes apparent that the Marines will need another day to take their objective. Colonel Litzenberg establishes a night perimeter and prepares to reinitiate the attack on the morning of the 6th. The 3rd Battalion will lead the attack. As darkness settles, the area at the pass again becomes peaceful as no enemy night-attack forms. Only a few minor encounters with the enemy occur along the perimeter throughout the night. **In the U.S. 3rd Infantry Division:** At Wonsan, the first units of the 3rd Division arrive. The 2nd Battalion, 65th RCT debarks; it is followed by the other units. The operation is completed on November 18th. The 65th Regiment is the first of the 3rd Division units to join X Corps. When the Regiment embarked from Puerto Rico its enlisted men complement was composed solely of Puerto Ricans, and 64 of the complement of 206 Officers are Puerto Rican. Now it is composed of white Puerto Ricans, Negroes from the Virgin Islands, Japanese-Americans, white Americans and a Negro Tank Company from the states; South Korean draftees also join the Regiment. **(ROK I Corps)** At Kilchu, following several days of fighting, the South Koreans have the town encircled before dawn. The North Koreans continue to resist, but by noon the town is captured by the S.K. 1st Regiment and the cavalry regiment. Corsairs attached to the 1st Marine Air Wing support the attacks and knock out 2 tanks, four pieces of artillery and they slay about 350 ground troops. On the following day when the toll is taken, the enemy has sustained a total of 530 killed. The South Koreans lose 21 killed and 91 wounded. Upon questioning POWs, it is determined that Kilchu had been defended by elements of the N.K. 57th Brigade. In addition to the destruction inflicted by the Marine aircraft, the South Koreans capture nine 45-mm antitank guns.

**November 6 1950 - (Pacific-Japan)** President MacArthur receives his answer from Washington concerning the bombing of the Yalu Bridges. As requested, Truman had been brought into the decision making process. The JCS inform MacArthur that he now has permission to bomb the bridges, but he is forbidden to strike the dams and power plants on the Yalu. MacArthur is further

restricted, receiving instructions not to violate Manchurian air space nor to strike any targets in Manchuria. Enemy planes blow across the border, strike targets at will, then they shoot back across the Yalu, aware that U.S. planes are forbidden to pursue; this practice remains in effect for the duration giving the enemy a great advantage. Nonetheless, during the course of the war, U.S. Planes despite the restrictions, shoot down the enemy at a ratio of fourteen-to-one, amplifying the skills of the American pilots over the Communists. **(Pacific-Korea)** The 65 RCT (minus one Battalion), subsequent to landing at Wonsan, is directed to relieve contingents of the 96th FABn at Yonghung; the artillery unit had only recently been deployed there. The other regimental battalion had been given a temporary assignment with the 1st Marine Division and is operating at Majon-ni. At Yonghung, the artillerymen come under attack during the early morning hours and lose equipment and ammunition to the enemy. The 2nd Battalion, 65th RCT which arrives later during the afternoon will be attacked on the 7th. **X Corps: In the 1st Marine Division sector:** Mine-clearing operations postpone troop movement by water from Wonsan to Hamhung, causing division to increase rail movements. During the afternoon, one train departing Hamhung is halted at Yonghung at 1700 due to reports of guerrilla activity. The first two trains that depart Wonsan complete the journey, but at dusk, a third train, protected by 38 enlisted Marines and one Lieutenant attached to the 1st Amphibious Tractor Battalion, encounters difficulty. It is halted at Kowon due to a break along the tracks. Korean guerrillas, taking advantage of darkness, strike the stalled train, firing upon it from all sides. The surprised Marines feel the bullets ripping through the wooden walls and drop to the floor, but grenades are then tossed into the car killing eight of ten men; two wounded men survive. The other twenty-nine Marines take positions about two hundred yards from the damaged train and attempt to fight off the guerrillas. Six men sustain wounds. The Marines then break off the firefight and make it to the lines of the 96th Field Artillery Battalion. On the following day, at about 1400, another supply train (fourth) is forced to stop south of Kowon because of a break in the rails due to sabotage. The Marine guard advances to examine the scene and comes upon the devastation of the previous day; the bodies are found and one ammunition car remains in flames. The damage is too bad to easily repair. Train service is postponed until 9 November. Also, the 1st Marine Engineering Battalion receive orders to improve the MSR to enable tanks to reach Koto-ri. **1st Marines zone:** At 0100, the expected time of an enemy attack, the perimeter at Majon-ni remains quiet. Nevertheless, the Marines keep a deep-seated vigil. Army intelligence information proves true. At 0130, conspicuous alarms go off. Booby traps explode in cadence with sudden illumination created by trip-wire flares. Despite the blasts and instant lighting, no enemy is seen. The engagement remains at long-distance, as the North Koreans fail to openly attack. At about 0500, during a thick fog, the battalion out post, located within the Company H zone is attacked. Marine wiremen, artillerymen and mortarmen raise stiff resistance, but lack of ammunition compels them to pull-back. Briefly, the enemy takes the abandoned outpost; however, the moment the fog dissipates, H&S Marines, led by Captain Thomas McCarthy, retake the position. Corsairs arrive overhead, terminating the skirmish at 0730, as the Communists head for the heights. The Marines sustain two wounded during the fighting. In other activity, Company A, which had brought in the supplies on the previous day, heads back for Wonsan, retracing the steps through "Ambush Alley." The convoy transports unusual cargo, 619 Communist prisoners who are jammed into the vehicles to be transferred to a stockade. Following the return of A COMPANY, Colonel Puller dispatches the 2nd Battalion to Munchon-ni, but there are only sufficient vehicles to carry one rifle company. It must also travel the treacherous Majon-ni Road to reach the village which sits near the crown of the highest pass within Ambush Alley. Less than five miles out, the convoy is ambushed. As the

final vehicle enters a curved portion of the road a steady stream of boulders cascades from the heights blocking passage. The trucks stall leaving the troops no options. To their right stand huge slopes, and to the immediate left there is a perpendicular drop. Meanwhile, heavy enemy fire rings down from the high ground. Instinctively, Company E's riflemen jump from the vehicles and begin to return the fire, but the enemy positions are well concealed. Rather than remain trapped, the Marines attack to clear the roadblock, manned by about 200 enemy troops. They burst through the enemy positions, but the attack is costly. The Marines sustain eight men killed, and thirty-eight wounded; six truck drivers are also wounded. Captain Charles Frederick, the Company E Commander and four other officers are also wounded. The most seriously wounded are evacuated by helicopter and the others are returned to Wonsan once Able Company arrives on scene. As the passage is cleared, the Marines count sixty-one enemy dead on the field. About 300 boxes of small arms cartridges and fifty containers of 120-mm shells are discovered and destroyed during the operation. By 1600, the balance of the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines, under Colonel Sutter and Company A converge on the roadblock from different directions. Company A then transports the wounded and its entourage of prisoners to Wonsan without incident. Meanwhile, as scheduled, Colonel Sutter's force moves to Munchon-ni. **In the 5th Marines zone**, patrols continue to inspect the routes near the Chosin and Fusen Reservoirs. **In the 7th Marines' sector**, Colonel Roach's 3rd Battalion prepares to attack through Funchilin Pass. Company I reinitiates its drive to secure Hill 987, while Company G supplies support-cover fire to the troops of Company H as they drive against the southeastern slopes of Hill 891. The craggy terrain causes horrendous problems. Company H begins its advance at 0800, but it takes about seven hours to advance to the jump-off point, the high ground slightly above Company G. In the meantime, Company I grinds forward only about 300 yards, but in the process it throws back a counterattack and continues to fend off fire from the heights above the MSR. Prior to H Company's attack, two corsairs pound the enemy positions in conjunction with barrages by the artillery and mortars. Then at about 1615, two platoons drive down the slopes and reform in the vicinity of the sharp curve in the road to strike from the southeast to secure Hill 891. When the ascent to the summit begins, the two platoons use separate but parallel paths, each destructive to the assault troops because of the precipitousness of the slope and the dogged soil. The Chinese raise resistance against one of the platoons, but the other encounters no opposition. The unopposed platoon, operating on the right makes it to a point where the two paths converge just below the crest. Meanwhile, the hard-pressed platoon led by Lt. Minard Newton joins with Lt. Reem's men. Lt. Harris, Company H, commander, who had climbed the slope with Newton's Platoon now directs Newton to lead Reem to the crest where they will divide. Reem is to swerve to the right and Newton to the left to overwhelm the opposition. The Chinese react determinedly by initiating a counterattack in concert with a wave of grenades to annihilate Newton's force. One man, Sgt. Foster, singlehandedly charges to interrupt the assault. His actions cost his life when he surges to the summit, but his intrepid gallantry inspires the other Marines to break up the attack. Meanwhile, on the left, Lt. Reem's group remains engaged in close-quartered fighting. During the skirmish, Reem calls his squad Leaders together to finalize the assault to gain the right portion of the crest, but an enemy grenade is flipped into their area. Instinctively, Lt. Reem blankets the grenade with his body and sacrifices his life to spare the other nearby Marines. Following the death of Reem, Sergeant Anthony Ricardi assumes command of the platoon. By this time it is dusk and Company H is overtired from the tedious climb and the incessant battle. Lt. Harris, at about 1800, informs the battalion commander, Major Roach, of the condition of his men. He reports eight casualties, including two dead and he mentions the platoons are running low on ammunition. In

conjunction, Colonel Litzenberg, upon notification of the situation orders Roach to withdraw the attacking platoons. Aware of remaining Chinese strength, support fire is commenced to provide an umbrella during the descent to the friendly lines of the 7th Marines. As the sun disappears, the enemy apparently decides to vacate the area. The darkness brings tranquility throughout the night and at dawn, there still are no visible signs of the enemy. The Chinese 124th Division had met and engaged the 7th Marines, but it had sustained heavy casualties. Colonel Litzenberg, who had informed his Marines of the importance of victory over the Chinese in the first battle had not been disappointed.

**November 7 1950 -(Pacific-Japan)** During a General Headquarters meeting, General Willoughby gives a brief detailed evaluation of Chinese units operating in North Korea. Based on additional intelligence, he specifies that individual reserve contingents are still in Manchuria, but they are nudging close to the Yalu River. During the meeting, Ambassador Sebald asks Willoughby if the information on "units and locations" was accurate. Willoughby responds: "AFFIRMATIVE."  
**(Pacific-Korea)** By today, pursuant to the recent FEC directives concerning the number of South Koreans serving with U.S. Divisions, 8,272 ROK troops have been detached and transferred back to ROK control; several thousand additional South Korean soldiers are close to being released from U.S. units. In other activity, the S.K. 2nd Division, which had been decimated during the early days of the conflict is reestablished today; it is initially composed of two Regiments, the 17th and the 38th, but within a week a third Regiment will be attached. **X Corps:** At Yonghung at about 0300 the recently arrived 65th RCT, 3rd Division is attacked by guerrillas; the combat team sustains six killed and fourteen wounded. The guerrilla elements, composed of between 500-800 men, also strike the 96th FABn and contingents of the 4th Signal Battalion, USA. A Marine tank of Company D, 1st Tank Bn. and one M-29 ("Weasel") move to the besieged troops to evacuate the wounded. An amtrac platoon, assigned to guard the empty train that had been stalled since the previous day also aids the evacuation mission. At 1400 the train is permitted to move to Wonsan, but about two miles down the track, the engine and six cars derail while passing a split in the rails. The accident costs one man killed and 14 injured. Also, General O.P. Smith meets with General Almond at Wonsan. General Almond decides to slow the pace of the troops sprinting to the border. General O.P. Smith, USMC suggests that the priority ground to hold is Hamhung, Hungnam and Wonsan. Almond is inclined to add Hagaru, but he concurs with Smith that the other three should get the most attention. It is decided that Wonsan supply trains will run only during daylight hours and that the complement of guards will be increased from 38 to 58 men. In conjunction, the 65th RCT, the 96th FABN and the S.K. 26th Regiment is temporarily assigned to the 1st Marine Division. Their responsibilities are to protect primary points and bridges. The South Koreans are to push the North Koreans toward the 65th RCT at Yonghung, but the mission never gets initiated. During their short tenure under Marine control, the S.K. units carry out security duties along the MSR. **In the 1st Marine Division sector:** In the 5th Marines' zone, patrols of Lt. Colonel Roise's 2nd Battalion encounter patrols attached to the U.S. Army units in the vicinity of the Fusen Reservoir. In other activity, the 1st Battalion's Companies A and B, led by Major Merlin Olson (executive officer), move toward Huksu-ri, an obstinate road junction west of Oro-ti. No enemy activity is discovered, but the Marines encounter an enemy force on the following day. **In the 7th Marines' zone,** following several days of battling the Marines near Sudung, the Chinese 124th Division has abandoned the area during the previous night. This disengagement by the enemy provides the Marines easy access to the southern slopes of Hills 891 and 987, both of which the Marines discover

unoccupied while they climb to the crest of Hill 891 against no resistance. The 7th Marines personnel ponder about the absence of the Chinese, but they continue to search. The Marines realign their forces along the MSR and simultaneously dispatch Patrols, but no enemy encounters occur.

**November 8 1950 -(Pacific-Korea)** Seventy-nine B-29s, supported by fighter planes, initiate the first bomber attack against the Yalu River Bridges at Sinuiju. Russian MIGs arrive at the scene to intercept and drive off the U.S. planes to protect the rail and highway connection that links China and Korea. This clash ignites the first air duel between Jet planes. A U.S. Air Force F-80, piloted by Lt. Russell J. Brown, knocks out a MIG-15, which plummets to the earth in blazing fire. Brown's elimination of the Soviet-made MIG-15 over Sinuiju gives him the first Jet air-to-air kill in Korea; the name and nationality of the downed Communist pilot remains unknown to the West. In conjunction, the air raids against the border bridges continue until the end of November, but pursuit of enemy planes terminates at the Yalu. **X Corps:** Some small enemy vessels are sighted by aircraft.

**In the 1st Marine Division area:** At Majon-ni the Communists bolster their forces, building opposition to about 250 troops. They maneuver toward the rear of an outpost defended by two squads, of Company H's second platoon, 1st Marines. To forestall encirclement of the squads and prevent further jeopardy, an I Company platoon and the remaining two platoons of H Company move out to engage the enemy. Supported by artillery fire and mortars, the enemy force is quickly dispersed, but not before sustaining heavy losses of about 100 troops. The Marines lose one man killed and ten wounded during the clean out operation. **In the 1st Marines' sector at Wonsan,** it is reported that some small enemy vessels have been spotted by aircraft. Colonel Puller is then informed that there have been two unidentified explosions. The level of concern at headquarters begins to raise as more information arrives stating that the enemy is launching an amphibious landing north of Wonsan. Supposedly, the force is being transported by between 500-1,000 boats. An armored patrol, attached to Company C, 1st Tank Battalion, speeds to the suspected target area, but no enemy is sighted. **In the 5th Marines' zone,** a skirmish develops when an enemy force is encountered, short of the objective of Marine Companies A & B. Orders arrive which direct the Marines to disengage and return to regimental lines. Headquarters has received word that a force of about 2,000 North Koreans is en route to the MSR. The 5th Marines are being reeled in to meet this potential threat. Meanwhile, Company D, reinforced, moves to a valley northwest of Sinhung and advances to within ten miles east of Koto-ri. During the overnight mission, a sleeping Chinese trooper is snagged and brought back to headquarters. Upon interrogation, the prisoner claims that he is attached to the Chinese 126th Division and he informs the Marines that China is prepared to throw twenty-four divisions into the conflict. **In the 7th Marines sector near Sudung,** identically to the previous day, patrols search in vain for Chinese Communists, while the remainder of the regiment advances along the MSR. At about 1200, a group of fifteen volunteers, attached to the 2nd Battalion, and led by Lt. William Goggin, probes through the ragged mountainous area west of the MSR. The patrol engages Chinese in one firefight; Lt. Goggin sustains a superficial wound, but no other Marines are hurt. The platoon reaches the plateau at the Chosin Reservoir at about 1400 on the 9th, finding no visible signs of the enemy at Koto-ri. In other activity, General Almond arrives in the 7th Marines sector. Upon being informed of the actions of Captain Cooney at Hill 891, now dubbed "How Hill," General Almond awards him a Silver Star, despite not having authentic citations with him. The General simply attaches a note to Cooney's uniform, complete with his signature, attesting to the award. **(7th Division)** The landing operation of the 7th Division at Iwon is completed. When the debarking operation is completed, 28,995 troops, 5,994 vehicles and about

30,116 short tons of supplies will have been brought ashore. In other activity, the 31st Regiment en route to the Pujon Reservoir encounters Chinese opposition, slightly more than ten miles from the southern end of the Pujon Reservoir, on the eastern slopes of Paeksan, a huge peak that rises to a height of 7,700 foot. This the initial battle for the 7th Division begins during the early afternoon in bitter cold weather and terminates prior to dusk. The Chinese unit, later found to be the Chinese 376th Regiment, 126th Division sustains about fifty killed prior to its disengagement. Also, a patrol encounters a U.S. Marine patrol about halfway between Hamhung and the Pujon Reservoir initiating the first contact between the 7th Division and the 1st Marine Division in northeast Korea.

**November 9 1950 - (Pacific-Korea) X Corps: In the 1st Marine Division sector: In the 1st Marines' zone at Wonsan,** again the supply trains begin to roll. Since the hold-up on the rails, about 95 cars have accumulated in the yards. **In the 5th Marines' zone:** The regiment is ordered to deploy along the MSR that leads to the Chosin Reservoir. Colonel Murray directs the 1st Battalion to defend it at Majon-dong, and he instructs the 3rd Battalion to spread out near Chinhung-ni. Some complications develop on the following day, causing the mission to take two days to complete. **In the 7th Marines zone,** Lt. Goggins' patrol reaches the vicinity of the Chosin Reservoir at 1400. Subsequent to finding Koto-ri unoccupied by the enemy, Goggin informs Colonel Litzenberg of the situation, then he leads the patrol back to the lines of the regiment's 3rd Battalion near Sudung. There is relative quiet within the lines throughout the night. In other activity, Lt. Colonel Randolph Lockwood relieves Major Webb Sawyer as commanding officer, 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines. Sawyer becomes executive officer on the 10th, succeeding Major Roland Carey.

**November 10, 1950 - (United States)** The Marine Corps celebrates its 175th birthday. **(Pacific-Korea)** A convoy of supplies and the 3rd Korean MC Battalion arrives at Majon-ni to fortify the area against increasing numbers of enemy troops. The Korean Marines deploy in the sector recently vacated by Company I, 1st Marines, which had recently departed for Wonsan. Later, during the afternoon, enemy troop concentrations are discovered less than five miles from Manjon-ni by an observation plane of VMO-6. Remedies are quickly sought. Through the assistance of aerial observers, the force of about 300 troops is scattered by effective artillery fire. Also, intelligence informs the 1st Marines that an attack against the perimeter by the N.K. 45th Regiment should be expected during the night of the 11th-12th. **X Corps: In the 1st Marine Division area: In the 5th Marines' zone,** an enemy force ambushes a Company C, 1st Battalion patrol. The patrol is extricated on the following day by an attack by the battalion. **In the 7th Marines zone,** the 1st Battalion begins its march at 0830. It passes through the 3rd Battalion lines and exits the Funchilin Pass, then occupies Koto-ri at about 1000. There is little contact with the enemy for the next several days; however the Marines, now entrenched in the mountains of northeastern Korea create a defensive perimeter around the village. A new terror enters the perimeter and the Marines are unprepared for it; another frigid Korean winter arrives with devastating results. The Marines sustain casualties due to the unexpected cold wave. **In the 3rd Division sector:** An advance contingent of the 3rd Division establishes Divisional Tactical Command Post at Wonsan. Elements begin arriving on the following day.

**November 11 1950 - (Pacific-Japan)** General MacArthur, apparently still anticipating a successful mission, suggests that X Corps offer assistance to Eighth Army to speed its march to the Yalu. MacArthur's request is delivered to X Corps by General Wright, G-3 of Far East Command. General Almond will reply on 15 November. **(Pacific-Korea) X Corps:** OpnO 6 directs an advance to the

border. The 1st Marine Division to establish blocking positions to the west in the villages of Huksu-ti and Yudam-ni, but it is to still continue its northern drive to the border. Corps issues OpnO 6 at 2400. The S.K. I Corps and the 1st Marine Division are to advance on the left and right respectively; the 7th Infantry Division is to proceed up the middle. The 3rd Infantry Division is to relieve contingents of the 1st Marine Division, then assume responsibility for the Wonsan-Hamhung vicinity. The S.K. 26th Regiment, attached to the 3rd Division will assist. The Marines are to establish blocking positions at Huksu-ri and Yudam-ni. The rear of the corps sector is held by elements of the 1st KMC Regiment, deployed south and west of Kojo. The various forces are widespread and resupply will be difficult, but the feeling remains that the Chinese will not pour into the conflict. **In the 1st Marine Division area:** The Marine zone of operations at the Yalu is about 40 miles in width. Two roads branching off from the Changjin area approach it; one terminates at Huchanggangu and the other ends at Singalpajin. From here the 7th Infantry zone leads east to Hyesanjin then leans sharply north before turning east again toward the vicinity of Hapsu. In conjunction, the South Korean I Corps picks up at the Hapsu-Chuchonhujang. It is to march north along the coastal route to secure Chongjin. **In the 1st Marines' sector,** near Manjon-ni, the 1st Marines continue to prepare for an anticipated attack against the perimeter. **In the 5th Marines' zone,** The 1st Battalion launches an assault to rescue a patrol of Company C which had been trapped since the previous day. Following the successful mission, the battalion departs for Majongdong. **In the 7th Marines' zone at Koto-ri,** an enemy force is encountered by Company C. Company C reports it sustains four killed and four wounded, while inflicting forty casualties upon the enemy. In other activity, Lt. Colonel William Harris (son of Major General Field Harris) succeeds Lt. Colonel Roach as CO, 3rd Battalion. Roach had become battalion S4 on the 10th. **In the 7th Infantry Division zone:** X Corps directs division to prepare to continue its northward drive. Kapsan below Hyesanjin and the south shore of the Pujon Reservoir are to be secured by the 17th and 32nd Regiments respectively. The other regiment, the 31st, is to drive forward on the left of the 17th Regiment. The 32nd then advances to the border at Hyesanjin on the Yalu; the mission is given to the 17th Regiment. In the 3rd Division zone, the 15th Regiment begins to debark at Wonsan. It is followed by the 7th Regiment which completes the operation on November 17th. The mission of the 3rd Division is to relieve the 1st Marine troops deployed in the vicinity of Wonsan and those stationed south of Hamhung. Additionally it is to control the primary highways in the southern portion of X Corps zone, eliminate any guerrilla activity and maintain the security of the Hungnam coastal strip. It is a Herculean task as the area handed over to it is ninety by thirty-five miles. Four regimental combat Teams are established with each having separate missions and separate sectors. Col. John S. Guthrie commands the 7th RCT which is held in reserve, with responsibility of controlling the area near the coast from Chong-dong to Hungnam. The 10th FABn will support the 7th RCT. Colonel Dennis M. Moore commands the 15th RCT, which assumes responsibility for the security of Wonsan and the area south and west of it, including the Wonsan-Majon-ni-Tongyang Road; it is supported by the 39th FABn.. The 65th RCT, commanded by Colonel William W. Harris, takes responsibility for the Division's west central zone north of the positions of the 15th RCT; it includes the Yonghung-Hadongsan-ni Road, the primary highway leading into the Regimental sector from the coast. It is supported by the the 58th Armored Artillery Battalion (Self-propelled Guns) and by Company C, 64th Heavy Tank Battalion. The fourth RCT, the ROK 26th Regiment, commanded by Colonel Rhee Chi Suh, is augmented by Battery A, 96th FABn; it is to control the area west of Hamhung, the northern portion of the Division zone; it will patrol the area stretching to the X Corps-Eighth Army boundary.

**November 12 1950 - (Pacific-Korea) X Corps: X Corps issues OpnO 6;** it stipulates that the 3rd Division is to relieve contingents of the 1st Marines. The 3rd Division would then be responsible for the security of the X Corps' left flank, but it is also to plan to launch a westwardly attack. Meanwhile, the 1st Marines are to prepare to move north. Also, planes attached to carriers, strike a Yalu River border town, Hyesanjin. These airstrikes thoroughly damage the area and destroy the military facility there, knocking out the warehouse and barracks by setting them afire. When elements of the 7th Division reach it on the twentieth, they observe a town in ruins. **In the 1st Marine Division sector:** General O.P. Smith, commanding general 1st Marine Division issues FragO at 2130. It directs the seizure of Hagaru and it orders the 5th Marines to dispatch a Battalion to Koto-ri. **In the 1st Marines' zone,** slightly after midnight, at 0130, the Communists initiate an attack against the Marines' perimeter at Manjon-ni. It fails to deliver any genuine punch. Several small probing attacks strike the lines, and these are followed by a weak attack against the Korean Marines. The Communists seem intimidated once they encounter a minefield that lies close to the perimeter. The lagging attacks cease by 0600, ending the final engagement at Majon-ni when the enemy disengages and pulls back. Casualties for friendly forces are two men killed and six wounded. Later in retrospect, General Ruffner, CoS, X Corps, states that the "MARINES HAD DONE A MASTERFUL JOB AT MAJON-NI." Ruffner further states that he believed the Marines broke up the remaining North Korean units that otherwise would have created much trouble at Wonsan. Following the disengagement at Majon-ni, the N.K. 15th Division concentrates on guerrilla operations in the Imjin Valley. At Majon-ni, the Marines and Korean Marines are to be relieved on the following day. At Wonsan, a large army convoy that includes thirty-six Marine supply vehicles departs for Majon-ni at 1030. The 1st Battalion, 13th Regiment, 3rd Division is the relief unit. The convoy proceeds past the Marine outposts held by elements of the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines, but soon after, a damaged bridge and several craters halt progress. Enemy guerrilla fire pounds the convoy. The action results in the deaths of two soldiers and the wounding of three more. A Marine Corps jeep and two Marine supply vehicles are also lost. The delay postpones the arrival of the army contingents at Majon-ni until the following day, as Lt. Colonel Robert Blanchard directs his 1st Battalion, 15th Regiment to establish a defensive perimeter while awaiting the repairs to be completed. **In the 7th Marines' zone,** there is no contact with the enemy at Koto-ri, but the Marines do spot Chinese forces. On the following day, the 7th Marines will set out for Hagaru. In the 3rd Division sector, the North Koreans initiate roadblocks along the main supply routes and they launch ambushes at various points to hinder the division's progress. These clashes continue until the end of the month and at times inflict heavy casualties. The 15th RCT sustains the heaviest casualties and at times great losses of equipment while operating west of Wonsan between Majon-ni and Tongyang. It appears as if the North Koreans are acting in concert with the Chinese troops that have entered Korea.

**November 13 1950 -(Pacific-Korea) X Corps: In the 1st Marine Division area:** Division issues OpnO 21-50. It directs the 1st Marines to secure Huksu-ri, while the 5th Marines deploy to guard the MSR, while simultaneously preparing to pass through the 7th Marines at Hagaru from where it will move to Changjin, about forty miles north. The 7th Marines are to capture Hagaru and await orders to move against Yudam-ni. In conjunction, the division reconnaissance company is to operate on the right flank in the Soyang-ni-Sinhung Valley as far as the division eastern boundary. **In the 1st Marines' zone at Majon-ni:** Relief troops, the 1st Battalion, 15th Regiment, 3rd Division arrive at 1530 and begins to assume responsibility for the Majon-ni area. The 1st Marines

prepares to move to Wonsan; it departs at 1015 on the following day. **In the 5th Marines' area**, the 2nd Battalion begins to depart the Sinhung Valley en route to relieve the 7th Marines at Koto-ri. The battalion under Colonel Roise had encountered little opposition during the mission. Nevertheless, it has captured thirteen prisoners, including one Chinese trooper. **In the 7th Marines' zone**, the regiment departs for Haguru, once contingents of the 5th Marines arrive at Koto-ri to relieve them. Additional relief elements of the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines will continue to arrive through the following day. Through verbal orders from the divisional commander, the 7th Marines is to establish blocking positions at Toktong Pass, midway between Hagaru and Yudam-ni, until more reinforcements could arrive. The regiment will encounter about 150-200 enemy troops, bolstered by machine guns, near the pass. Air power and artillery is called in to assist the Marines and the enemy is dispersed. General Smith remains concerned about full-scale Chinese intervention. At Koto-ri, an OY (Observation Plane) airstrip is completed today. At Hagaru, the necessary equipment to fabricate an Airstrip will require much heavier equipment. Lt. Colonel Partridge, CO 1st Engineering Bn. will be responsible; a sturdy road will have to be constructed to enable the heavy equipment and Armor to be transferred to Hagaru.

**November 14 1950 -(Pacific-Japan)** In Tokyo, General MacArthur and Ambassador Sebald discuss the Korean strategy from MacArthur's point of view. MacArthur specifies that it is his intention to decimate the Yalu River bridges, thereby severing supply routes and cutting off enemy forces between the Yalu and the U.N. forces. In conjunction, the Air Force and ground forces will devastate all fortified obstacles in these sectors as they drive the enemy across the Yalu; but he indicates that specific instructions will halt the U.N. troops at the Yalu. Ambassador Sebald further states that General MacArthur believes that if the offensive fails, the only viable alternative would be to make air strikes against strategic enemy targets in Manchuria. In conjunction, Lt. General Stratemeyer, commander Far East Air Forces, during a subsequent conversation with Ambassador Sebald states that he: **"COULD FLATTEN CHINA WITH HIS AIRPOWER IF AUTHORIZED TO DO SO."** Stratemeyer's opinion is not an isolated one among the military commanders. However, some Washington politicians and the United Nations feel otherwise. They seem somewhat intimidated by the thoughts of Russia and China combining their alleged force. **(Pacific-Korea) X Corps: In the 1st Marine Division sector: In the 1st Marines' zone**, seventeen days of operating at Majon-ni ceases for the 1st Marines. Having been received by army contingents of the 3rd Division, the Marines contingents depart for Wonsan. The mission accounts for 1,395 prisoners, the majority of whom have voluntarily surrendered. The Marines sustain 16 killed in action, four who die of their wounds and 45 wounded. Marine estimates of enemy casualties at Majon-ni are 525 killed, but numbers of their wounded are unknown. Regarding the Main Supply Route, Marine casualties amount to nine killed and eighty-one wounded while guarding convoys moving through Ambush Valley. In other activity, at 1820, RCT-1, 1st Battalion, 1st Marines arrives at Chigyong from Wonsan; it has arrived by Train. Other elements follow by truck convoy. Also, the ROK 3rd Korean Marine Corps Battalion arrives at Majon-ni from Wonsan; it advances about twelve air-miles and establishes a roadblock near Tongyang along the north-south road where it crosses the Wonsan-P'yongyang Road. **In the 7th Marines' zone**, Hagaru is seized without incident at 1400.

**November 15 1950 - (Pacific-Korea) X Corps:** General Almond responds to MacArthur's letter of 11 November. He seeks permission to continue the northern attack, but to also initiate an attack west of the Chosin Reservoir. Meanwhile MacArthur, prior to Almond's letter reaching him, decides

to instruct Almond to implement an alternate attack. By radio, he directs Almond to devise an attack plan (alternative to OpnO 6) to move his attack westward to seize Chanjin and sever the Chinese MSR (Manpojin-Kanggye-Huichon Road and Rail line). This changes the mission as CinCFE had during the latter part of October called for a drive to the border. The X Corps report indicates that the enemy's stiff challenge to Eighth Army's drive prompted the change in plans. **In the 1st Marine Division sector:** General O.P. Smith dispatches a letter to the commandant, General Clifton B. Cates. It indicates his opposing view to the ongoing optimism regarding the U.N. war efforts in Korea. Smith and his Staff anticipate the probability of Chinese intervention and initiate preparations for such an event. Smith emphasizes the eighty mile gap between the Eighth Army and the Marines. He also states **"SOMEONE IN HIGH AUTHORITY WILL HAVE TO MAKE UP HIS MIND AS TO WHAT IS OUR GOAL. MY MISSION IS STILL TO ADVANCE TO THE BORDER. THE EIGHTH ARMY WILL NOT ATTACK UNTIL THE 20TH. MANIFESTLY, WE SHOULD NOT PUSH ON WITHOUT REGARD TO EIGHTH ARMY. WE WOULD SIMPLY GET FURTHER OUT ON A LIMB..."** **"...I BELIEVE A WINTER CAMPAIGN IN THE MOUNTAINS OF NORTH KOREA IS TOO MUCH TO ASK OF THE AMERICAN SOLDIER OR MARINE, AND I DOUBT THE FEASIBILITY OF SUPPLYING TROOPS IN THIS AREA DURING THE WINTER OR PROVIDING FOR THE EVACUATION OF SICK AND WOUNDED..."** Smith's letter contains other thoughts and concerns including his **"WIDE OPEN LEFT FLANK"** and the deployment of one Marine Division scattered along a single mountain road from Hamhung to the border a distance of about 120 air miles. Subsequently, during 1956, General Almond comments on General Smith's letter. He states: **"I AM MINDFUL OF THE SKEPTICISM OF GENERAL SMITH IN ALL OF THE SUPPLY PLANS THAT X CORPS CONCEIVED AND I SYMPATHIZE WITH HIS VIEWPOINT VERY THOROUGHLY. HOWEVER, IN MY MIND THERE WAS ALWAYS THE ASSISTANCE TO BE GAINED BY AIR SUPPLY EITHER DROP OR LANDING THEM AND THE COUNTERPART OF THAT, THE EVACUATION TO BE EXPECTED BY PLANE FROM THE AIR FIELD THAT WE WERE TO BUILD."** **In the 1st Marines' zone,** the 3rd Battalion, 15th Infantry completes its relief of the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines, which had been deployed to block the enemy at Ambush Valley. Company D, 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines, deployed to the rear of Wonsan is also relieved by Army forces. The 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines prepares to move seventy miles to Chigyeong. Problems with the rails have also hindered a quick move. **In the 5th Marines' zone,** the 2nd Battalion is perched at Koto-ri. The 3rd Battalion is at Chinhung-ni, supported by Battery K, 4th Battalion, 11th Marines, a detachment of 1st Service Battalion and Company B (minus 3rd Platoon), 1st Engineer Battalion. In addition, the 1st Battalion and Company D, 1st Tank Battalion is deployed at Majon-dong. **In the 7th Marines' zone,** the Regiment stands at Hagaru, the entrance to the Chosin Reservoir. General Edward Craig, Asst. Division Commander arrives at Hagaru; he believes it should be the Marines' forward Base. **11th Marines:** Lt. Colonel Harvey Feehan assumes command of the 1st Battalion, 11th Marines, relieving Lt. Colonel Ransom M. Wood, whom had commanded the Battalion since its arrival in Korea on 2 August.

**November 16 1950 -(Pacific-Korea) X Corps:** General Almond in response to MacArthur's directive to devise an alternate plan of attack directs his Staff to produce a blueprint. The initial plan is given a negative by Almond, but a second plan is developed during the next four days. He accepts it, but does make some modifications. The third Draft is then taken to Tokyo to be presented to

General Headquarters. **In the 1st Marine Division sector:** The mine clearing operation at Hungnam is complete; the port is opened. **In the 1st Marines' zone,** the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines departs Wonsan by Rail heading for Chigyong. The 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines departs on the following day. **In the 7th Marines sector,** the regiment occupies Hagaru and discovers a new enemy, the weather. The temperature at Hagaru stands at four degrees below zero, indicating a vicious premature beginning of winter. Generals O.P. Smith and Field Harris arrive to inspect the area. General Harris, commander 1st Marine Aircraft Wing and Tactical Air Command X Corps had been asked by Almond to check out the site. Almond wants an airstrip long enough to handle R4Ds to enable evacuation and resupply missions to be carried out. A suitable site is discovered south of the village. **In the 7th Infantry Division sector:** The 17th Regiment, across the Ungi River, advances about eight miles, in contrast to the slow gains of the past several days. Information, reported by Observation Planes, reveals that the enemy units are separating into small contingents and retiring in the direction of Kapsan, the objective of both the 17th and the 32nd Regiments. Also, a Patrol of the 3rd Battalion, 31st Infantry moves from its positions east of the reservoir to reconnoiter the northern side of the Pujun Reservoir; it discovers and engages about 200 Chinese troops. Following a short firefight, the Chinese retire.

**November 17 1950 - (Pacific-Korea) X Corps:** **In the 1st Marine Division sector,** at Wonsan, the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines departs for Chigyong; the final components of RCT-1 also depart. The 1st Tank Battalion's headquarters and service companies begin operating at Soyang-ni, about eight miles northwest of Hamhung. The route from Chinhung-ni to Koto-ri still is unable to carry M-26 tanks, but engineers will continue to expand the width of the curves along the one way road. **In the 5th Marines' zone,** pursuant to Division OpnO 22-50, issued at 0800, the regiment receives instructions for its advance east of the Chosin Reservoir. The 5th Marines is to pass a minimum of one battalion through the 7th Marines at Hagaru, advance about seven miles up the east side of the reservoir to secure Sinhung-ni, northeast of Hagaru. Then upon orders the 5th Marines is to capture the a key road junction about twenty miles north of Hagaru at Kyolmul-ni. Lt. Colonel John W. Stevens, II, replaces Lt. Colonel George R. Newton as Commanding Officer, 1st Battalion, 5th Marines. **In the 7th Marines' zone,** today's Division OpnO 22-50 presents the regiment with multiple missions. It is to post at least one battalion to guard the division's left flank between Hagaru and Yudam-ni, while it also relieves contingents of the 5th Marines and assumes responsibility for the MSR in its area between Chinhung-ni, Hagaru and Koto-ri. In conjunction, the division reconnaissance company holds responsibility for the left flank of the MSR near Majong-dong, while the 11th Marines deploys its 4th Battalion in the same vicinity, while waiting for orders to advance north.

**November 18 1950 - (Pacific-Korea) X Corps:** The debarkation of the U.S. 3rd Infantry Division, commanded by Major General Robert H. Soule, at Wonsan is completed today. The arrival of the 3rd Division brings X Corps to its full strength of major units. X Corps now consists of the 1st Marine Division, the 3rd and 7th Infantry Divisions and the ROK I Corps. Each is assigned a zone, but the area for each is massive. The 65th Regiment, 3rd Division establishes its perimeter, but a huge gap that contains the Paeksan Pass, which reaches a height of 5,600 foot, exists between it and the S.K. 26th Regiment, posted to the north. Attempts are initiated by Company B, 65th Regiment to establish contact with the South Koreans. Between today and the 22nd, two separate engagements develop between the Communists and Company B, but the Americans can not penetrate the pass. And there are no roads capable of handling vehicles in the northern sector of the

3rd Division sector. In other activity, X Corps requests and receives permission to use the S.K. 26th Regiment to seize Huksu-ri. Subsequently, the 1st Marines are to relieve the Koreans, but these orders change on 21 November. **In the 1st Marine Division area:** At Majon-dong, Lt. Colonel Harry Milne, CO 1st Tank Battalion, has recently established a provisional tank platoon composed of two Sherman (M4A3) tanks attached to headquarters company and four Company D dozer-tanks. The improvised tank platoon departs for Hagaru and arrives without encountering any resistance. Thanks to the opening of the road to Hagaru to heavy traffic, the engineers begin constructing the airstrip. **In the 1st Marines sector,** the regiment, still hindered by poor rail and truck transportation is behind schedule getting to Chigyong. The final contingents are still en route. However, the mission is still to march westward to secure Huksu-ri. In the meantime, the S.K. 26th Regiment departs Chigyong during the early morning hours of the 19th to seize Huksu-ri.

**November 19 1950 - (Pacific-Korea) X Corps: In the 1st Marine Division area,** five huge dozers arrive to assist the engineers of Company D at Hagaru. The engineers must create the airstrip from a frozen piece of earth that stands like solid rock in a frozen wasteland. The runway is to be 3,200 feet, somewhat shorter than the engineer's manuals dictate, but the engineers hope it can suffice. Also, a supply regulating station is established at Hagaru to permit a resupply operation to function. Previously, the supply depots had been handled by the 1st Service and 1st Ordnance Battalions at Hamhung. The port operation at Hamhung is the responsibility of the 2nd Engineer Special Brigade, USA; Korean laborers are also utilized. Trains depart Hungnam for Chinhung-ni once the Marines put the line back into activity; the 1st Service Battalion gets the job; Korean civilians are used to operate the trains. Once at Chinhung-ni, the trains are unloaded and from there the supplies are trucked to Hagaru. The newly unfolding operations expect large casualties. The divisional hospital, expanded to 400 beds, remains at Hungnam, staffed by Companies A and B, 1st Medical Battalion and H&S personnel. In conjunction, the 1st, 5th and 7th Marines receive Companies D, C and E, 1st Medical Battalion respectively. Soon after, division anticipates the need of a hospital scenario at Hagaru; it is decided the in an emergency, medical detachments will be airlifted from Hungnam. To further bolster the operations, the hospital ship *USS Consolation* will embark from Wosan and take a position off Hungnam and heated railroad cars will be emplaced to handle the comfortable transporting of casualties along the 35-mile stretch of narrow gauge tracks from Chinhung-ni. In other activity, the 1st Motor Transport Battalion (minus detachments) comes under the control of the 1st Supply Regulating Detachment at Hagaru; this transition increases the productivity of supply movements for the Marines. Transportation units have been overwhelmed since the Wonsan landing; the 7th MT Battalion had earlier been moved to the operational control of X Corps, forcing the 1st Mountain Battalion to be attached to the 7th RCT.

**November 20 1950 - (Pacific-Japan)** General MacArthur receives a U.N. directive indicating that only minimum sized units will advance to the boundary of Korea and Manchuria. The order also states that no U.N. troops are permitted to leave or enter Korea by use of the Manchurian or Soviet borders. The directive insists that the international border be "meticulously preserved." The general belief is that the advance is occupational and will not incite confrontation with the Chinese.

**(Pacific-Korea) X Corps: In the 1st Marine Division sector,** the British 41st Independent Commando, Royal Marines arrives at Hungnam to serve with the U.S. Marines. The unit, commanded by Lieutenant Colonel Douglas B. Drysdale, is composed of fourteen officers and 221 enlisted men. It had been in Japan attached to ComNavFE and had requested to serve with the American Marines. General O.P. Smith during conversations with Admiral Doyle in the beginning

of November had consummated the agreement to have the British join the 1st Marine Division. General Smith will utilize the troops whom are greatly skilled in reconnaissance to guard the left flank of the Marines' advance. The British contingent also suffers from the lack of transportation; it is scheduled to move to Hagaru on the 28th, in conjunction with the transfer of the division CP to Hagaru. **In the 3rd Division sector: (Majon-ni)** The 1st Battalion, 15th Regiment, which had relieved the Marines on the 13th, is struck by an enemy assault during the night and the fighting continues into the early morning hours of the 21st. The enemy force, composed of about two hundred troops is repulsed; however, at a point, it succeeded in breaking through the perimeter line. **In the 7th Infantry Division sector:** In freezing cold weather and along ice-covered roads, the 17th Regiment reinitiates its march to the border at Hyesanjin. The 1st Battalion, acts as vanguard; it is trailed by the 3rd and 2nd Battalions. The columns trod slowly for nineteen miles as the troops cautiously walk along the treacherous mountain roads, encountering only sporadic light opposition raised by small enemy contingents. The march terminates only several miles from the objective where it establishes a night perimeter. Also, upon orders of General Barr, the 31st and 32nd Regiments advance to the vicinity of P'ungsan-Kapsn to take positions behind the 17th Regiment; however; contingents are left behind to keep secure the mountain passes that lead east. In conjunction. South Korean troops arrive at about midnight 20th-21st to relieve Company I, 32nd Regiment at Sillyong on the divisional right front, but mistaken identity by both parties ignites a firefight. The skirmish ends quickly, but five South Koreans are wounded during the accidental exchange. **(Eighth Army)** Intelligence estimates that the Chinese build-ups are emerging in Korea as well as in Manchuria. Nevertheless, Headquarters in Tokyo still seems convinced that the Chinese will not intervene in great strength.

**November 21 1950 -(Pacific-Korea) X Corps:** The U.S. 7th Division reaches the Manchurian border. The pending massive Chinese Communist assault is still unexpected. Up to this point, the Chinese remain intertwined with North Korean units under the guise of volunteers. X Corps informs the 1st Marine Division that the 1st Marines are relieved responsibility for Huku-ri; it is now placed under the 3rd Division with its modified boundary. In other activity, General Almond receives a request from Major General Robert H. Soule, 3rd Division, who wants Almond to realign the existing boundary between the 3rd Division and the 1st Marine Division. By modifying the line and extending the 3rd's perimeter northward by only several miles, it would give the division access to the Huku-ri-Sach'ang-ni Road and provide an easier method of resupplying the S.K. 26th Regiment. Soule receives an affirmative response on the following day. **(Majon-ni)** A Patrol, composed of two officers and 91 men of the 1st Battalion, 15th Regiment moves westward by vehicles to make contact with the 3rd Battalion, Korean Marines, holding the roadblock at Tongyang. En route at about the half-way point, while the convoy passes through an eight-mile gorge, disaster strikes. The column drives directly into a devastating ambush which costs the unit 28 men killed and the loss of nearly its entire complement of vehicles and its heavy weapons. The Communists mine the roads to impede the U.S. movement between Majon-ni and the South Korean Marines at Tongyang. With Majon-ni imperiled, reinforcements are rushed to bolster it. One company of infantry from the 2nd Battalion, accompanied by a contingent of tanks speed to the perimeter.

**November 22 1950 - (Pacific-Korea) X Corps:** Corps directs the 3rd Infantry Division to establish blocking positions at Yudam-ni. In other activity, the boundary separating the 1st Marine Division and the 3rd Infantry Division is changed to move the Huku-ri-Sach'ang-ni Road into the 3rd

Division's zone. In conjunction, the 26th S.K. Regiment receives orders from the 3rd Division to establish positions at Huku-ri and Sach'ang-ni. Following several successful skirmishes including one at Sach'ang-ni that costs the enemy more than 100 killed or captured, the order is carried out. Soon after, the South Koreans again initiate attacks northward and westward, gaining several additional miles beyond Sach'ang-ni. Also, General Almond offers his optimistic congratulations to the 7th Division for its success in reaching the border at Hyesanjin. In part: **"THE FACT THAT ONLY TWENTY DAYS AGO THIS DIVISION LANDED AMPHIBIOUSLY OVER THE BEACHES AT IWON AND ADVANCED 200 MILES OVER TORTUOUS MOUNTAIN TERRAIN AND FOUGHT SUCCESSFULLY AGAINST A DETERMINED FOE IN SUBZERO WEATHER WILL BE RECORDED IN HISTORY AS AN OUTSTANDING MILITARY ACHIEVEMENT."** **In the 1st Marine Division sector:** General Smith will begin to step up the advance now that he can utilize the 1st Marines to occupy rear positions on the MSR and dispatch the forward two regiments and the accompanying British contingent. **In the 7th Division sector,** despite frigid weather conditions and primitive mountain roads, elements of the 17th Regiment advance to Hyesanjin at the Yalu River, becoming the first American unit to reach the border. Ironically, it too is the only U.S. component to reach the border. News of this mission arrives throughout X Corps by the following day. The fact that no Chinese opposition is encountered expands the optimism of the troops and makes for a very happy Thanksgiving. The 32nd Regiment at Kapsan prepares to drive to Sin'galp'ajin to deploy to the left of the 17th Regiment which is at Hyesanjin. Task Force Kingston, commanded by 2nd Lt. Robert C. Kingston advances without incident to Samsu entering it by the middle of the afternoon. Later, the remainder of the 3rd Battalion (minus Company I) arrives there. It and the nearby 32nd Regiment are to hook up, but as the 17th Regiment initiates an attack, North Korean resistance prevents the hook-up. North Korean opposition continues to hinder the 17th Regiment in this area for the next week. **(Majon-ni)** A patrol supported by armor heads toward Tongyang to again attempt to establish contact with the ROK Marines, but it is compelled to abort the mission because the Communists had spent the night destroying the road and laying mines along the route. This action totally isolates the 3rd Korean Marine battalion at its roadblock positions and places the South Koreans in great jeopardy. Their only sure source of receiving supplies from this point on will be by airdrop.

**November 23 1950 - (Pacific-Korea)** It is Thursday, Thanksgiving Day, the eve of the U.N. offensive to be carried out primarily by U.S. troops. Most of the men believe they will be home by Christmas. The festive menu for today's meal throughout the various X Corps units as prescribed by corps: shrimp cocktail, roast turkey, cranberry sauce, candied sweet potatoes. For desert, the samplings include fruit salad, fruit cake, mince pie and coffee. This menu had been distributed from corps to subordinate commands on 18 November. **In the 1st Marine Division sector:** Division OpnO 2350 is issued at 0800. RCT 1 is to relieve contingents of the 7th Marines near Hagaru and Koto-ri and it is to guard the MSR at Chinhung-ni, Hagaru and Koto-ri. The 5th Marines is to capture Kyolmul-li which lies about twenty miles north of Hagaru. In addition, the 5th RCT is to ready to advance northwest to the village to seize Toksil-li; from here, upon orders, the RCT is to prepare to move northeast about fifteen additional miles to secure Tuan-di The 7th Marines is to march to Yudam-ni, secure it and maintain one battalion there. Additionally, the OpnO directs the Royal Marines to advance on the left flank as far as fifteen miles west of Koto-ri. The combined force of the division reconnaissance troops and the British might be in a position to discover and destroy Chinese forces that have been undiscovered by regular infantry patrols. The 1st Tank

Battalion is ordered to guard the MSR near Majon-dong and Soyang-ni. The 1st Engineer Battalion is ordered to augment division operations, but to primarily focus on the airstrip at Hagaru and the upkeep of the MSR. **In the 1st Marines' zone**, the regiment still suffers from lack of adequate transportation vehicles. The 1st Battalion, using 11th Marines' trucks arrives at Chinhung-ni and relieves the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines. **In the 7th Marines' zone**, pursuant to OpnO 23-50, the regiment advances to seize Yudam-ni. The 1st Battalion acts as vanguard. It will miss its Thanksgiving dinner. The route is sporadically blocked with a variety of minor obstacles, including abandoned roadblocks, that contain cunningly placed booby-traps. In addition, the regiment also encounters several detachments of enemy troops, but they too are overcome. **(Majon-ni)** For the third time in as many days, a contingent of the 15th Regiment moves out to establish contact with the South Korean Marines at Tongyang; it is forced to first repair the holes and clear the mines along the way. In conjunction, the South Korean Marines have been directed to dispatch a contingent to hook up with the advancing Americans. Initially all goes well as the convoy advances even through the site of the recent ambush; however once it advances about two miles beyond the ambush site, the Communists again strike from concealed positions. The patrol returns fire against the force of about 300 troops and during the heated skirmish, the South Koreans arrive from the opposite direction to partially foil the ambush. Nevertheless, the Communists continue to pound the positions of both the Americans and the South Koreans. Sixteen men of the regimental patrol sustain wounds and three others are missing in action. At about this time, the patrol and the Korean Marines break off the fight and retire to their respective lines. On the 25th, yet another attempt will be made to unplug the Communist blockage.

**November 24 1950 -(Pacific-Japan-Korea)** General MacArthur dispatches a special message to the U.N., concerning the Korean situation. The Eighth Army offensive begins at 0800. The message in part: **"THE UNITED NATIONS MASSIVE COMPRESSION IN NORTH KOREA AGAINST THE NEW RED ARMIES OPERATING THERE IS NOW APPROACHING ITS DECISIVE EFFORT...IF SUCCESSFUL THIS SHOULD FOR ALL PRACTICAL PURPOSES END THE WAR RESTORE PEACE AND UNITY TO KOREA, ENABLE THE PROMPT WITHDRAWAL OF U.N. MILITARY FORCES, AND PERMIT THE COMPLETE ASSUMPTION BY THE KOREAN PEOPLE AND NATION OF FULL SOVEREIGNTY AND INTERNATIONAL EQUALITY. IT IS THAT FOR WHICH WE FIGHT."** By this time, MacArthur's intelligence units and his troops in the field have determined that Chinese Communist contingents have been infiltrating North Korea. General MacArthur flies to Korea in essence to oversee the initiation of the planned offensive. On the following day, Communist forces swarm against Eighth Army's western positions and follow this attack with another gigantic assault on the 28th against the 1st Marine Division positions to the east, near the Chosin River. In other activity, X Corps G-3 Lt. Colonel Chiles delivers X Corps OpnPlan 8, Draft 3 to Headquarters in Tokyo; it is approved at United Nations Headquarters, but with some alteration; the proposed boundary separating X Corps and Eighth Army is moved further south and into the 1st Marine Division sector. **(Pacific-Korea)** With the authorization of General MacArthur, both Eighth Army and the X Corps, under Generals Walker and Almond respectively begin the final attack to gain the remainder of terrain between the UN forces and the northern border of Korea. The offensives operate independently. According to calculations the Americans, along with the South Koreans and other allies expect to encounter nearly 50,000 Chinese and North Korean troops as they advance the final 100 miles standing between them and northern border of Korea where it

primarily meets the Yalu River and Manchuria; however, at the northeastern border for a short distance it meets with Soviet territory. At this time it had been thought that the conflict would be terminated by Christmas Day. In conjunction, General Walker as of the previous day maintains logistical control of General Almond's X Corps, which had arrived in Korea during the previous September; however, X Corps operates as a separate totally separate command. **X Corps: In the 1st Marine Division sector: In the 1st Marines' zone**, the 2nd Battalion and 1st Marines headquarters initiates the relief of the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines at Koto-ri; the operation is completed on the following day. **In the 5th Marines' sector**, each of the three battalions are now operating east of the Chosin Reservoir. General Smith remains concerned about the situation and carefully watches the advance, while awaiting the supplies to increase at Hagaru. **In the 7th Marines' zone**, the advance toward Yudam-ni continues; the 1st Battalion pauses to celebrate Thanksgiving a day late. Their turkey dinner is savored, however at the time they don't realize this will be the last hot meal for seventeen days.

**November 25 1950 - (Pacific-Korea) X Corps:** Corps issues OpnO 7. It is tailored to conform with the plan presented to Tokyo on the 24th. Basically it directs the corps to supply more assistance to the ongoing Eighth Army offensive. The attack, primarily carried out by the Marines, 3rd and 7th Infantry Divisions and the S.K. I Corps, is to commence at 0800 on 27 November. The 1st Marine Division is to advance to the Yalu, seizing Mupyong-ni en route. The 3rd Division is to establish and maintain contact with Eighth Army's right flank, while simultaneously guarding the left flank of X Corps. In addition, upon order, the overtaxed 3rd Division is to bolster the 1st Marine Division while it also guards the Airfield and Harbor at Wonsan; meanwhile it is to seek and destroy any enemy guerrilla units operating in its sector. The 7th Division is directed to launch its assault from the east side of the Chosin Reservoir and advance to the Yalu River; it is also to cooperate with the S.K. I Corps and secure the terrain in the vicinity of Pungsan. According to the directive, the S.K. I Corps is to depart the areas of Hapsu and Chongjin and move to the border, eliminating the enemy within its sector. A briefing occurs at 1000. General Smith is informed that his division will now form the northern arm of the pincer movement, rather than launch the attack east of the Chosin Reservoir. In conjunction, the 7th Division will attack from east of the reservoir to reach the Yalu River. In related activity, the 1st Battalion, 7th Infantry relieves the S.K. 26th Regiment at Sach'ang-ni. **In the 1st Marine Division zone**, the boundary changes now thrusts the Marine lines across Korea to the area north of Eighth Army. The path for advance leads west about fifty-five miles stretching from Yudam-ni to Mupyong-ni; the rear boundary of the Marines also moved north to a point slightly south of Hagaru, listed as 3rd Division responsibility. However, General O.P. Smith aware that the 3rd Division is too overstretched to provide enough troops, requests permission to deploy garrisons at Koto-ri and Chinhung-ni. The response is affirmative. Now the 3rd Division retains responsible for the security of the MSR leading south from Sudong to Hamhung. The attack remains scheduled for the 27th with the 1st Marine Division acting as vanguard. **In the 5th Marines' sector**, Two tanks accompany a platoon-strength patrol that reaches the area near the end of the Chosin Reservoir. It encounters some enemy troops and a brief fight ensues. The chase nets one prisoner and five killed; in addition the Marines destroy an abandoned 75-mm gun. Neither this patrol, nor any others including a helicopter reconnaissance flight uncovers any large numbers of enemy troops. In addition, subsequent to relief by elements of the 32nd Regiment, the 5th Marines prepare to move against Mupyong-ni. **In the 7th Marines' zone**, Yudam-ni is seized by the 1st Battalion which encounters paltry resistance. The 3rd Battalion, 7th

Marines, contingents of the 3rd Battalion, 11th Marines and regimental headquarters arrive later.

**November 26th 1950 - (Pacific-Japan)** Reports indicating nearly a 100 percent increase in the estimated number of Chinese troops in Korea reach the Far East Command. Nonetheless, despite the fact that 100,000 Chinese troops are facing Eighth Army, the information gathered does not bring the Intelligence section to disagree with Eighth Army that the Chinese will initiate a major offensive. Rather it is thought by both General Willoughby in Japan and Walker in Korea, that the enemy will rely on defense and counterattack. At this time, Eighth Army still concludes that its offensive, although stalled will soon be reinitiated and it is thought that if the Chinese take the offensive in the valley, their effort will only stall the drive to the Yalu. These conclusions regarding the U.N. offensive are dispatched by headquarters to Washington. **(Pacific-China-Korea)** The S.K. 1st Division captures an important enemy document which specifies how the Chinese appraise the fighting ability of their American opponents. Subsequent to the Chinese 39th Army driving the U.N. forces from the vicinity of Unsan, the Chinese 66th Army headquarters issued a memorandum (on November 20th) based on the resistance raised by the 8th Cavalry Regiment. The memo states the potency of the U.S. mortars and artillery and emphasizes the terrific transportation network. It also underscores the accuracy of air strikes and long-range artillery. However, the Chinese depiction of American soldiers, once cut off is not very positive. It states in part: **"THEY ABANDON ALL THEIR HEAVY WEAPONS AND PLAY POSSUM...THEIR INFANTRYMEN ARE WEAK, AFRAID TO DIE, AND HAVEN'T THE COURAGE TO ATTACK OR DEFEND. THEY DEPEND ON THEIR PLANES, TANKS AND ARTILLERY. AT THE SAME TIME, THEY ARE AFRAID OF OUR FIRE POWER. THEY WILL CRINGE WHEN IF ON THE ADVANCE, THEY HEAR FIRING...THEY SPECIALIZE IN DAY FIGHTING. THEY ARE NOT FAMILIAR WITH NIGHT FIGHTING OR HAND TO HAND COMBAT...IF DEFEATED, THEY HAVE NO ORDERLY FORMATION. WITHOUT THE USE OF THEIR MORTARS, THEY BECOME COMPLETELY LOST...AT UNSAN, THEY WERE SURROUNDED FOR SEVERAL DAYS, YET THEY DID NOTHING. THEY ARE AFRAID WHEN THE REAR IS CUT OFF. WHEN TRANSPORTATION COMES TO A STANDSTILL, THE INFANTRY LOSES THE WILL TO FIGHT."** In conjunction, the document also states the goals of the Chinese against the Americans in the future; the terms include avoiding highways and level terrain to avoid the fire of tanks and artillery and night attacks. Also in part: **"AS A MAIN OBJECTIVE, ONE OF THE UNITS MUST FIGHT ITS WAY RAPIDLY AROUND THE ENEMY AND CUT OFF THEIR REAR...SMALL LEADING PATROL GROUPS ATTACK AND THEN SOUND THE BUGLE. A LARGE NUMBER WILL AT THAT TIME FOLLOW IN COLUMN."** The Chinese XIII Army Group will maintain its offensive and attack throughout the night of the 26th into the 27th, hitting most point excluding the Eighth Army west flank. **(X Corps): In the 1st Marine Division sector:** Division issues OpnO 24-50 at 0800. It orders the attack which is to commence at 0800 on the following day. General O.P. Smith moves by helicopter from Hungnam to Yudam-ni, observing the MSR en route. Among the units spotted south of Chinhung-ni is the 1st Tank Battalion, less the Provisional Armored Platoon at Hagaru and Company D's 2nd Platoon at Chinhung-ni. Upon General Smith's return to Hungnam, he is informed that the Communists have scored greatly against the S.K. II Corps which had been thrashed, endangering the right flank. This unexpected setback imperils both the U.S. 2nd Division and the Turkish brigade, exposing them to a flank attack. No enemy activity is discovered during the day and the night remains especially frigid, but inactive. **In the 1st**

**Marines' zone**, the vehicles previously used to transport the 1st and 2nd Battalions to their new positions have returned to Chigyong. They transport the 3rd Battalion, 1<sup>ST</sup> Marines (Minus George Company and elements of a Weapons Company) to Hagaru to relieve the 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines. Company G has remained at Chigyong due to lack of Trucks. When the attack (27th) is launched, the 1st Marines is to remain in Divisional Reserve to guard the MSR, Chinhung-ni, Hagaru and Koto-ri. Hagaru, located at the base of the Chosin Reservoir contains the Marines' sole airstrip and it is not yet completed. Nonetheless, Hagaru must hold or there is no way to regroup the scattered Division. The responsibility for Hagaru, surely a huge task, lies solely with Lt. Colonel Ridge's 3<sup>RD</sup> Battalion. **In the 5th Marines' zone**, the 5th Marines prepare to pass through the 7th Marines on the 27th by 0800 and to then seize the road junction at Yongnim-dong about twenty-seven miles west of Yudam-ni. The 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines completes its move from the reservoir to Yudam-ni by evening. The town, surrounded by five huge ridges is located in the middle of a giant valley. These massive ridges which each contain large numbers of nasty peaks, dangerous spurs and spooky draws exhibit a natural blueprint for potential disaster. The ridges, pinned with directional tags are named North, Northwest, South, Southeast and Southwest. The difficult terrain, matched with abominable weather, guarantees a grueling mission. Today's temperature plunges to zero degrees; however, this is nothing compared to what is coming. On the 27th, the weather in Korea breeds a temperature of 20 degrees below zero. The 2nd Battalion will be ordered to seize a pass about west of Yudam-ni; the attack will be assisted by the 7th Marines which will drive forward along two ridgelines. **In the 7th Marines' zone**, the regiment is to guard the SR from Yudam-ni to Sinhung-ni which lies about seven miles west of Hagaru. The division reconnaissance company is to act in conjunction with the 7th Marines; it is to operate north of Yudam-ni. The British Royal Commando unit will operate southwest of Yudam-ni to guard the Division's left flank. The 7th Regiment is deployed on four of the five ridges that encircle Yudam-ni. Companies D and E, attached to 1st Battalion are deployed on North Ridge. The 1st Battalion stands on both South and Southeast Ridges, while the 3rd Battalion is deployed on Southwest Ridge. These positions give the 7th Marines the heights that dominate the attack route of the 5th Marines. Later today, the 5th Marines receive a new objective, a pass about ten miles west of Yudam-ni. Contingents of the 7th Marines will grind forward along Northwest and Southwest Ridges to protect the 5th Marines flank. At 2200, the regimental officers meet to confer on the individual missions. The 3rd Battalion is to penetrate deeper along Southwest Ridge on the 27th, but it is also assigned the task of securing an objective on the opposite side of the MSR. It is to take Hill 1403 on Northwest Ridge to enable it to provide sufficient support for the 5th Marines. Companies D and E are assigned responsibility for running Patrols along the west coast of the reservoir and on North Ridge. In conjunction, the 1st Battalion is to scour South and Southeast Ridges with patrols, while focusing on the routes along the low ground. Stretching through the valley between the huge hills lays the primary road to Hagaru. In other activity, the regiment announces that it has captured three Chinese Soldiers attached to the Chinese 60th Division. Intelligence officers have discovered from the captors that the Chinese 58th, 59th and 60th Divisions had arrived in the vicinity of Yudam-ni on the 20th. This brings the total of identified Communist Chinese units in northeast Korea to six divisions. Nevertheless, it is still thought that the Chinese probably will not attack in strength. Rather it is thought that a westward withdrawal will be executed. The Marines anticipate engaging the Chinese in the mountains west of Yudam-ni. **In the 11th Marines' area**, the units deployed in the vicinity of Yudam-ni is to contribute support to the attacking elements.

**November 27 1950 -(Pacific-Korea) In X Corps area: In the 1st Marine Division sector: In the 1st Marines zone,** Hagaru, defended by the 3<sup>rd</sup> Battalion is under threat by the Chinese. Lt. Colonel Ridge, after scanning the terrain realizes that his battalion is insufficiently strong to withstand a major assault due to the length of the perimeter which extends about four miles. And this only includes protection of the two reverse slopes. Other areas would have to be covered by supporting fire. To add to the uncertainty, while the Marines anticipate an assault from either the hill east of the town or a draw that heads into the southwest end of the town, the Chinese could yet find another approach. Meanwhile, the Chinese who control the heights around the town are in position to observe the Marines as they fortify their positions. Also, a convoy (headquarters battalion) arrives at Hagaru to set up the divisional command post. While the Marines must evaluate the time and estimated strength of an assault, they are also under the gun to check a large amount of Koran civilians that are moving into the town after being halted and searched at a roadblock and then escorted to the local police station for interrogation. The day passes without an enemy attack being launched. **5th Marines' zone:** Meanwhile, the 1st the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines drives down the highway leading from Yudam-ni to seize its objectives. Company H moves to Toktong Pass; it is supported by the guns of Battery H, 3rd Battalion, 11th Marines which remains in Hagaru. The carved pygmy highway slithers along the valley and passes between the gargantuan walls of Southwest and Northwest Ridges. The vanguard, Company F, commanded by Captain Uel Peters, advances toward the first objective, an elongated knob on Northwest Ridge; this frozen rock-hard spur lies about 500 yards across a ravine from Hill 1403. At about 0935, Chinese holding positions on the knob commence long-range firing striking the Marines just as they approach the entry to the ravine. Meanwhile, an overhead spotter plane from VMO-6 detects enemy troops entrenched along the entire front. Company F pauses to reassess its situation. In the meantime, engineers speed to the front to demolish undefended roadblocks scattered along the MSR; nine such obstacles are unblocked. Company D, 2nd Battalion advances down the MSR while Company F had been on the slopes passing through the 7th Marines on Hill 1403. It too comes under heavy fire as it approaches the mouth of the ravine. Mortar units and recoilless rifles return fire pounding the slopes of the obstinate knob. By 1015, the guns of the 1st Battalion, 11th Marines begin to hammer the threatening slopes, easing the resistance. This is followed by the arrival at 1115 when the air strike of VMF-312 jolts the slopes. Following the deafening attack, Companies F and G resume the attack. Company F's 1st Platoon, led by Lt. Gerald McLaughlin, plows toward the knob's north flank. It is bolstered by cover fire from the remainder of the Company from positions on Hill 1403. The combined strength of the air strike, mortars and artillery has prompted many of the enemy to prematurely flee westward from the knob. The northern portion of the knob is seized by the 1st Platoon by 1300; three Chinese are captured. Following the collapse of the northern half, the southern half of the knob which is above the road is attacked. The 2nd Platoon, led by Lt. Donald Krabbe, moves through the 1st Platoon, encountering heavy machine gun fire as it advances. The menacing fire originates on another peak that lies about 1,000 yards to the west. While the advance continues in the heights, Company D is grinding forward along the road. It reaches a bend in the road effortlessly then drives toward a valley road junction several hundred yards in the distance. Meanwhile, the Chinese have constructed layers of defensive positions in the heights of the eastern slopes of Sakkat Mountain to stall the advance. The Chinese commence firing upon Company D. The blanket of fire compels Colonel Roise to terminate the attack. At 1440, Company D is directed to establish a defensive perimeter by extending across the MSR on a spur of Southwest Ridge. Fox Company is directed to establish positions on Northwest Ridge. The key attack gains 1,500 yards

with the successful seizure of the intended objective. Nevertheless, the attack is unable to gain the additional several miles expected. The lack of further success turns into a blessing. Further gains would have caused the Marines to become totally encircled. In other activity, the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines arrives from its positions east of the reservoir to Yudam-ni subsequent to dusk and establishes positions in the valley. The 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines under Lt. Colonel Taplett which had been on the east coast of the reservoir arrives at North Ridge at about noon; the troops deploy on an unoccupied spur that flows to Hill 1384. **In the 7<sup>th</sup> Marines zone**, the sun begins to rise at Yudam-ni, but it beams no heat. The scene at Yudam-ni at daybreak is bleak. Near-frozen men gather close to the fires to thaw their rations and de-ice their weapons for the dogged day that awaits them. The 5th Marines launch the primary assault. The 7th Marines remain high in the hills; Companies G and H, 3rd Battalion on Southwest Ridge move out at 0815. Company H, commanded by Captain Leroy Cooke, seizes Hill 1403 without incident. Cooke had become company commander on November 12th; Lieutenant H. Harris reverted to executive officer. Initially, G Company, commanded by Captain Thomas Cooney also makes good progress. It swiftly gains about 1,200 yards and secures Hill 1426, a dominating peak on Southwest Ridge by 0845; the advance encounters no opposition. However, the Chinese lurk in the near distance. Cooney's Marines resume the advance, but resistance rises almost immediately as another ridge about 500 yards distant is layered with Chinese. In other activity, a contingent of the 1st Service Battalion arrives to institute a system of resupply and to build a divisional depot. The regiments' rations are down to about three days' supply. A convoy, requested by the 7th Marines arrives well after dark. Additionally, Lt. Colonel Beall, CO, 1st Motor Transport Battalion commands a night-convoy from Yudam-ni to Hagaru, anticipating a return trip on the 28th with additional supplies. He takes all 5th and 7th Marines' organic vehicles except between 40-50 trucks. Unexplainably, although the Chinese have heavily infiltrated the area, the trucks reach Hagaru unmolested; however, there is no return trip. Also, four M-4 tanks (provisional tank platoon) depart from Hagaru for Yudam-ni, but all return after each slides off the road. Later, one M-26 succeeds in making it to Yudam-ni before the Chinese sever the road, preventing any others from arriving. **In the 7th Marines' zone:** The 3rd Battalion experiences difficulty making progress during the afternoon. Company G pushes forward to occupy a peak of Hill 1426 by 1500; the advance is costly. During the fighting, Captain Cooney, the CO, heads to the rear to bring up reinforcements, but he sustains a mortal wound. Captain Eric Haars becomes commanding officer, G Company 27 November. Similarly to the 5th Marines' predicament, the heavy fire originating on Sakkat Mountain hinders progress. Company G is compelled to withdraw from the crest. In conjunction, Company I, 3rd Battalion speeds from its positions in the heights above Yudam-ni to bolster the efforts of Company G. Meanwhile, at about 1230, Company B, 1st Battalion, 7th Marines diverts from its patrol duties in the valley between South and Southwest Ridges. It climbs to the sound of the guns in the high ground to offer its firepower. Chinese fire clamps the advancing company with a ring of fire, prompting Company C to lunge forward from its positions at Yudam-ni. Still the Chinese hold the dominating ground. In addition, while these elements of three Battalions (2/5, 1/7 and 3/7) slug it out on Southwest Ridge, more complications develop. A patrol of Company D, 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines encounters heavy resistance on the west coast of the reservoir at positions about 400 yards from Yudam-ni. Marine planes arrive to give support in this area to quiet the machine guns north and northeast on North Ridge. At 1645, the patrol disengages and extricates itself, but some casualties are sustained. By day's end, the battalion gains include about 1,200 yards on the crest of Southwest Ridge. About 2,000 yards is gained with Company H's seizure of Hill 1403; this too is in concert with the primary

assault launched by the 5th Marines; it gains about 1,500 yards. In the meantime, Company F, 2nd Battalion departs Hagaru at 1200; it is to advance seven miles and establish positions in the heights at the mid-point of Toktong Pass. In other activity, Colonel Litzenberg dispatches his S-4, Major Maurice Roach, to Hagaru to procure ammunition, petroleum items and rations. He requests five truckloads of each item. Toward the latter part of the day, the trucks arrive at Yudam-ni. These are the final truckloads of supplies that reach the perimeter. **The 1st Marine Division perimeter in the vicinity of Yudam-ni at dusk on the 27th:** The regimental CPs 5th and 7th Marines are within Yudam-ni, supported by their respective headquarters contingents; however, the 7th Marines' antitank company remains at Hagaru. In addition, the headquarters elements of the 2/7 and some sections of its weapons company also are at Hagaru. The majority of the artillery of the 11th Marines is at Yudam-ni, but few tanks support the division there. The 1st and 4th Battalions and Batteries G and I, 3rd Battalion are on scene. Battery K, 4th Battalion remains under the direction of the 1st Battalion until its parent unit arrives. The 3rd Battalion is deployed below the slopes of Hill 1240 (North Ridge); its 105s have provided support fire for the 7th Marines on the 26th and 27th. The 1st Battalion arrived earlier today to provide support for the 5th Marines operating in the valley between South and Southwest Ridges. The 4th Battalion arrives later during the day, but all three batteries will be in operation by 2300 on the lowlands separating South and Southeast Ridges. South of the town near South and Southeast Ridges along the lowland stands the howitzers, thirty 105-mm and eighteen 155-mm. To the north of these, the 75-mm recoilless rifles and the mortar companies of the 5th and 7th Marines. Nevertheless, these artillery and mortar units lack stockpiles of extra ammunition. Enemy fire harasses the artillery positions throughout the day, but few casualties occur due to the marksmanship of the enemy. The units of the 5th and 7th Marines that are scattered amidst the heights comprise ten rifle companies (all under full strength); two battalions of the 5th Marines are posted near the town in the valley; two additional rifle companies of the 7th Marines hold extended and isolated positions along the MSR. **North Ridge:** Companies D and E, 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines occupy Hills 1240 and 1282. The combined perimeter spans about one mile in width, but a gap of about 500 yards exists between the two units. The flanks of both units are naked; however the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines' units stationed below in the valley can provide support. The 1st Battalion holds positions in the valley just below Hills 1240 and 1282. The 3rd Battalion's perimeter is established at the foundation of North Ridge near Hill 1384. The 1/5, commanded by Lt. Colonel John W. Stevens, II and the 3/5, commanded by Lt. Colonel Taplett are in position to assist the 7th Marine units on Hills 1240 and 1282. **Northwest Ridge:** To the left of North Ridge stands Company H, 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines which is dug-in on the summit of Hill 1403, the terminal height of Northwest Ridge. Company E, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines holds positions in the wide ravine to the left of Northwest Ridge; its line stretches along the left side of the ravine and links with Company F. The latter unit had earlier captured its spur from the Chinese. Company F's left flank is above the road separating it from Southwest Ridge. **At Southwest Ridge:** Opposite Company F stands Company D which is deployed on a slim finger of Southwest Ridge. Further left stands the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines' Companies G and I. These two units hold the summit of Southwest Ridge. Behind these units on the same hill mass to their left stands Company A, 1st Battalion, 7th Marines which is deployed on Hill 1294, a terminal peak; it is above a wide valley that separates it from South Ridge. To hold the floor of the valley, one platoon of Company C, 1st Battalion, 7th Marines stands to protect the approaches to the Marine Artillery to the rear. **South Ridge:** Company B, 1st Battalion, 7th Marines is entrenched on the furthest point of the cone-shaped ridge that jets about 1,600 feet into the sky; its weapons are focused upon the deep and

slim gorge that lies between South and Southeast Ridges. **At Southeast Ridge:** Opposite South Ridge, Company C holds perilous positions on a finger of Southeast Ridge which lies about five miles from Yudam-ni; these positions guard a narrow portion of the MSR at a point where it sharply swerves east about three miles from Yudam-ni Valley and leads into Toktong Pass. Another unit is further left and separated from Company C by two miles of rugged mountain terrain. Company F, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines are deployed in Toktong Pass; it holds equally dangerous and greatly overextended positions; its mission, identically to Company C, 7th Marines is to protect the MSR between Hagaru and Yudam-ni.

**November 27 1950 - (Pacific-Korea) AFTER DUSK IN THE 1ST MARINE DIVISION AREA:** The Communist Chinese 9th Army Group, commanded by Sung Shin-lun, springs from its concealed positions in northeast Korea to conclude its mission. It expects to annihilate the 1st Marine Division. The Marines are aware of some Chinese presence, but the Communists have successfully concealed their overwhelming numbers by moving only at night. Now, the heretofore hidden hordes close against the Yudam-ni perimeter under cover of deep sable skies. Twilight quickly fades, leaving not even a glimpse of moonlight on the village as the sun slips behind Sakkat Mountain at 1630. It had been a grueling cold day; however, once the skies over Yudam-ni darken, the intolerable weather takes yet another turn for the worse. The frigid weather shows no mercy to either the troops or their equipment as the temperature in the pitch-dark village drops to twenty degrees below zero. The combination of bone chilling cold and eerie darkness stirs the imaginations of the guardians of the perimeter, each of whom look forward to a quiet night and the arrival of dawn.

The Marines' carbines and BARs, due to the extreme cold, instantly become susceptible to unreliability and in many cases fail to function as a weapon. However, the M-1 Rifles and the Browning machine guns split the difference between life and death for many of the Marines on the rugged ridges. Meanwhile, the troops remain unaware that the stark silence is about to be shattered by a massive attack against their northwest arch at North and Northwest Ridges. In synchronization with this powerful frontal blow by the Chinese 79th and 89th Divisions, another assault will be unleashed against the southern portion of the perimeter by the 59th Chinese Division. The Chinese 59th Division, having maneuvered to positions to the south will launch its attack to sever the MSR between Yudam-ni and Hagaru at South Ridge and Toktong Pass.

Meanwhile, the Marines hold their positions and attempt to avoid frostbite. Just before midnight, the Chinese announce their presence with the flair of whistles, sirens and blaring bugles. Screaming infantrymen, donned in rubber sneaks, recklessly charge under the cover of machine gun fire. These three Chinese Divisions crash against the 5th and 7th Marines to test the mettle of the two regiments.

The 5th and 7th Marines complain about the nasty weather, lack of sleep, cold food and just about everything else on this God-forsaken piece of frozen terrain, but as it has been for the past 175 years, the grumbling will cease at the first sizzling sound of gunfire. They will carry on the proud tradition that has been handed down from regiment to regiment by challenging the foe with great tenacity.

At about 2100 the pernicious trap against Northwest Ridge is sprung by elements of two units of the Chinese 89th Division, the 266th and the 267th Regiments.; however, about fifteen minutes earlier, Company I, 5th Marines had come under fire at its positions on the slopes of Southwest

Ridge by vanguard elements of the 237th Chinese Regiment. These sniper-type actions in the south continue sporadically while the attacks against North and Northwest Ridge unfold. The Chinese initiate several diversionary probing raids. While the Communists continue to silently inch closer to the perimeter of the 5th and 7th Marines' positions on Northwest Ridge, one enemy patrol jabs at the roadblock manned by Company D, 5th Marines. A quick flurry of soaring grenades exchanged by the two sides and it terminates with the death of two Chinese. Marine mortars join the skirmish, prompting an expeditious withdrawal by the enemy patrol. At about the same time, other enemy detachments poke annoyingly at Company F's perimeter on Northwest Ridge, but here too the contact is slick and quick. The enemy prods for awhile, then disappears into the bleak darkness. As the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines fends off the stinging actions against its mid-section, more enemy troops flood into the area. Northwest Ridge is permeated with Chinese troops, most within a couple hundred yards of the Marines, setting up a deadly confrontation that threatens Companies E and F, 5th Marines. Company H, 7th Marines, dug-in on Hill 1403 to the north is equally imperiled.

Suddenly, the piercing sounds of whistles blast their shrieking tones and the Chinese bugles blare, to signal the ominous charge and instigate a gruesome blood-filled confrontation between two half-frozen antagonists. These shrill sounds infuse the Marine defenders with a surge of adrenaline that prepares them for the imminent clash for survival. Meanwhile, more sinister sounds arrive when the thundering mortars streak through the bleak night air to plummet upon the Marine lines. This is followed by the roar of blazing submachine guns, coupled with the lightning crackle of grenades. Shortly thereafter, more vicious fire pours upon the Marine lines when the Chinese add some savage automatic weapons fire which originates from positions all along Northwest Ridge. This massive unanticipated wave of hellish fury, devised to crack the nerves and destroy the 5th and 7th Marines, transforms Northwest Ridge into a cauldron of death.

By 2125, the mortars begin to strike the rear positions of Companies E and F. Shortly thereafter, the machine gun fire subsides, only to be replaced by another round of shrill whistles and bellowing yells of charging columns of reckless Chinese troops. Boldly they encroach the steadfast Marine perimeter. Upon reaching grenade-throwing positions, the columns begin to flow into a ragged skirmish line. The Marines, initially surprised, now anxiously wait the signal to fire. Meanwhile, at nearly the same time, Company H, 7th Marines, deployed slightly north on Hill 1403, sustains a withering attack by these seemingly unending waves of enemy troops.

The machine gunners and riflemen of Companies E and F raise a solid wall of fire and create a horrid mountain of enemy dead all along their front, but for every enemy troop slain, seemingly five more appear. Eventually, the overwhelming numbers of Chinese force a crack in the thinly held gap. They flush through a point on the northern spur, exposing the Marines' flanks with this jagged wedge. During this lightning-fast incident, Company F's right side is penetrated and the enemy forces back a portion of one platoon, threatening a breakthrough in the fragile draw. Nearby, the 1st Platoon, Company E stands at the fringe of the penetration forming a small but cohesive line of defense against the onslaught. A detachment from the 1st Platoon, Company E, led by Lt. Jack Nolan, and a section of light machine guns races to the front to sew up the hole and bolster the 1st Platoon. In addition, the 81-mm howitzers of the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines interject, sending round-after-round into the enemy positions to lessen the pressure within the gap. The battlefield psychology works and the barrage validates the laws of physics; a howitzer shell and an enemy soldier cannot occupy the same space. The iron injections, strongly support Company E. It holds

firmly, forbidding any further enemy penetration and encroachment to its rear. Unable to crack through Company E, the Chinese maintain their pressure against the rear positions of a defiant Company F. Meanwhile, the 2nd Platoon, Company E, stretched thinly on the right front of the perimeter, scores a fortuitous round of shots. During the incessant donnybrook, its machine guns cascade upon a Korean hut and gain unexpected results; the succeeding explosion ignites a huge fire that propels spiraling arches of flame into the ebony sky. At about 2215, the enemy assault reaches its pinnacle, but by 2230, when the hut becomes a huge bonfire, the attack nears its culmination. The immense illumination creates a gargantuan natural spotlight that dispenses imminent doom for the enemy. The hovering radiance pinpoints the precise locations of the Chinese troops as they tramp through the slim corridor. Clusters of other enemy contingents dispersed along the adjoining slopes instantly discover that their concealed positions have become naked in the artificial sunlight. The Marines become jubilant, having discovered what appears to be the whole remains of the primary enemy assault force. A short while ago, while the attack was hitting high gear, Lt. Colonel Roise had been saddled with some pessimism, based on the tremendous odds facing his command; he ordered H&S Company, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines to form a defense around the CP; however, the challenge has been met and the threat forestalled. As the Marines react to their new-found prize, the gloom dissipates and the CP remains unscathed. The scant amount of Chinese who succeed in breaking through the lines ultimately encounter furious return fire, making their effort futile and fatal.

The Marines take complete advantage of the ongoing raging fire. Every available weapon is brought to bear on the Chinese that remain alive in the grilled corridor. Marine fire hammers the shattered attackers. The ruthless force of arms shreds the columns and scorches the corridor and its opposing slopes. The resounding enfilade terminates at 2400; at the conclusion, the grim result is that the primary attack force has been blown into oblivion. Nevertheless, the Communists still hold ground on the northern tip of the spur, which gives them tenable positions from which they can deliver a deluge of fire into the Marines' positions. In addition, Company F remains separated from Company E. Subsequent Patrols of Company E are unable to reestablish contact with the isolated unit. Lt. Colonel Roise pushes Company D's reserve Platoon to positions that fortify Company F's side of the perimeter to equalize what Company E had earlier done to plug the gap on its side. In essence, the reassignment keeps the defense in the gap more cohesive and forbids easy advance through the draw. The Communists, having sustained huge losses abort further attempts to reenter the draw.

In the meantime, at Company H, 7th Marines' isolated positions on Hill 1403, north of the 5th Marines' units, the Communists attack at 2135. They soon discover that the half-moon perimeter which stretches from the road to the crest of the hill is vulnerable to attack from all directions. The mission of the far-strung company is to safeguard the communications that link with Yudam-ni and the valley. Captain Cooke, the CO, posts his command post on the reverse slope. Subsequent to a series of quick stabbing raids, lasting about thirty minutes, the Chinese mount a fierce frontal strike against the right side which is held only by one Platoon, led by Lt. Elmer Krieg. This powerful blow quickly rips through the front line as the outnumbered platoon is unable to withstand the overwhelming numbers of assault troops. As the brittle right flank folds, communications also end between the platoon and the company command post. Lt. Krieg orders his troops to redeploy to the left to link with Lt. Paul Denny's platoon to form a tougher defense. The Chinese maintain the pressure; however, the command post makes an urgent request for supporting fire to strengthen the

line. The valley floor seemingly rises to a crescendo as the howitzers and mortars catapult shells toward the lost ground on the crest to subdue the enemy. In synchronization with the awesome support fire, Captain Cooke regroups his platoons and readies a counterattack. When the barrage lifts, Cooke leads a futile charge to regain the lost terrain from the newly entrenched Communists. The attack hits a solid wall of machine gun and small arms fire that terminates the charge and kills Captain Cooke, whom had been at the point of the assault. Lt. James Mitchell assumes temporary command of the beleaguered platoon. Company H, sustains heavy casualties, but the Chinese are unable to overrun its positions. By about midnight, Lt. H.H. Harris climbs the hill to relieve Lt. Mitchell discovers that Lt. Minard Newton is the sole unwounded company officer. Harris quickly redeploys Newton's platoon from the left flank to the right flank to give it more sturdiness. Newton's platoon counterattacks and recaptures some primary real estate to guarantee that the company locks its hold on the frozen hill, despite the high casualties sustained. During the fighting, a few troops somehow wind up at Lt. Colonel Taplett's 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines' CP at the foot of Southwest Ridge; they report that Chinese had overrun their mortar position on Hill 1403.

Undeterred, despite high losses, the Chinese bring in more reinforcements to break the impasse. Following about two hours of quietness, the enemy again advances toward the perimeter and strikes Companies E and F, 5th Marines and Company H, 7th Marines with ferocious fire. In the infamous draw about three hundred Chinese advance towards the center of the two-mile front, manned by Jaskilka's Company E. To the left, more Chinese close toward Company F and to the right, Company H, in the heights on Hill 1403 is struck along both flanks and the front. Blazing fire meets the threats at all points. At Company E's positions on the floor of the draw, several hundred Chinese fly into the incessant machine gun fire; most die suddenly. Trailing columns note the grim scene in the bloody corridor and choose to stop short and take cover. Most of the remaining action in Company E's zone is long range; however, some sporadic close-range action occurs on the flanks. In the meantime, about two hundred Chinese assault F Company. Company F sustains high casualties as it pours deadly fire into unending numbers of charging troops that plow into the center of the line. The enemy disregards their layers of dead as they tramp over them to break through. Eventually, two outnumbered machine gun positions are overwhelmed, but the Company holds. Throughout the remainder of the night both companies hold their ground. Back in the heights, Company H remains under tremendous siege for about one hour. Like the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, continuing ranks of Chinese pound the perimeter, but Harris' command catapults round-after-round into the attackers multiplying the corpses on Hill 1403. In conjunction, the roadblock in the valley defended by Sergeant William Vick (Company H, 7th) also holds firmly, giving no ground. Nevertheless, the beleaguered Company, out of touch with other units is ordered by Lt. Colonel Harris to pull-back at 0400 and redeploy to the rear of Company E, 5th Marines. By about 0600, Company H successfully disengages and fights its way back, but the situation deteriorates as the enemy gains the heights of the key hill and with it the means to strike the rear of the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines. The 2nd Battalion is threatened with isolation and those Marines on North and Southwest Ridges face a threat to their flanks and rear. In addition, by break of dawn, the Chinese are able to scrutinize the positions of about two thousand Marines still deployed down in the hazardous valley.

While the elements of the Chinese 89th Division pound the Marines on Northwest Ridge, contingents of the Chinese 79th Division seek to wipe out two isolated companies of the 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines at their lonely positions in the heights above Yudam-ni on North Ridge at

Hills 1240 and 1282. These attacks simultaneously threaten the command post of the 5th and 7th Marines in Yudam-ni. The Marines surmise that the village will become a target. Colonel Taplett, redeploys his 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines. He directs it to switch from its compact assembly area north of the village to form a wide defensive perimeter in the same vicinity to forestall any potential breakthrough from the slopes of Northwest Ridge; Companies H and I dig-in on Hill 1403 facing the ridge, while Company G spreads out at Southwest Ridge. Two platoons entrench themselves at the foundation of the ridge, while the third platoon disperses among the slopes to establish an outpost there. Meanwhile, Colonel Taplett establishes his 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines CP in the low ground at the foundation of Northwest Ridge between Hill 1282 and the knob of Hill 1384. Additionally, Taplett learns that the spur of Hill 1384 is undefended. He dispatches one platoon of Company I with orders to take positions about 300 yards up the slope. To the rear (about 300 yards) of Company I, a detachment of South Korean police manning machine guns holds a section of the spur that lies directly above the battalion CP. The enemy elements had maneuvered over the spine of North Ridge reaching positions near the 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines. The 1st Battalion, 235th Chinese Regiment is to overrun Hill 1240, but unexplainedly it receives no orders to capture Hill 1282. Inadvertently, while advancing in the bleak darkness, the 1st Battalion climbs a knob leading toward Hill 1282, still thinking it is the objective. Meanwhile, the 3rd Battalion, 236th Regiment operating to the left of the 1st Bn., 235th moves toward its objective, unoccupied Hill 1167. However, the tactical error rolls into its ranks causing the 3rd Battalion to end up at the foundation of the sheer slopes of Hill 1240. The terrain is in sharp contrast to the shallow rolling slopes of Hill 1167. The confusion stalls the attack of the 3rd Battalion for a few hours, but the equally confused 1st Battalion, 235th Regiment executes its attack at 2200. Convinced it is stalking a lone Marine Platoon on Hill 1240, the Chinese launch their assault against Company E, commanded by Captain W. D. Phillips, positioned on Hill 1282, about 1,000 yards west of Hill 1240. The Chinese 1st and Special Duty Companies initiate probing raids with the resounding sounds of their submachinegunners and grenadiers. The Marines commence firing and convincingly drive the attacks back. Within about two additional hours, the Communists lunge against Hill 1240. At 2345, Company D, 2nd Battalion informs headquarters of enemy infiltration on the hill. Both Company D and Company E begin to prepare for the inevitable. All patrols interacting between the two companies are postponed. Two platoons of Company E plant themselves on the crest, while the remaining platoon, under Lt. Bey deploys in the rear to the right of the line; it holds a spur on the eastern side that is above Yudam-ni. Company D diligently denies the freezing temperature on Hill 1240 to bolster its positions.

At midnight, amidst the howling winds and darkened crevices on the crest, the Chinese bugles bellow, dispensing the signal to attack. The shrill sounds of the whistles also reach the summit further cracking the silence. Instantly, these peculiar clamors are enjoined by the screaming chants of the night-assault troops who charge the perimeter's northeastern bow. They advance head-long into an intrepid sheet of gunfire provided by Lt. Yancey's platoon. Many of the chants cease and desist as the Squads are ripped to pieces. The Chinese attempt to sidestep the hurricane of fire by swerving eastward to breakthrough, but here too the Chinese face disaster as Lt. Bay's platoon holds an iron-grip on the jutting spur. His Marines fire incessantly and again thin the ranks of the Chinese. Undeterred, many more continue to charge, ignoring the layers of their dead comrades that are splattered along the ghastly perimeter. The remainder of the two attacking companies maintain their futile attack. By about 0200, the Chinese have been ravaged by Company E, compelling the assault to begin to fizzle out. The Marines of Company E also take high casualties, but remain rigid.

Marine machinegunners and riflemen aided by the timely tossing of grenades maintain the pressure. By about 0300, both enemy units are literally wiped out as fighting units, having sustained the loss of nearly every man in each unit. When the battle subsides, Hill 1282 remains in possession of battered Company E, 7th Marines; its frozen slopes are now cluttered with more than 200 recently deceased Chinese of the 1st Battalion, 235th Chinese Regiment. Reinforcements are struggling to reach the embattled U.S. command, but the Chinese show no signs of relenting. In a short while, the 3rd Company, 1st Battalion, 235th Regiment is thrown upon the fiery gauntlet to seize the obstinate crest; the scant surviving troops of the first attack are clamped into the unit bringing the attack force to about 125 men.

Meanwhile, back at Hill 1240 on North Ridge, the probing raids also begin at about midnight when elements of the 3rd Battalion, 236th Chinese Regiment explore the perimeter of Company D, 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines. These jabbing raids shift upward to a full attack just after 0100. Within the first thirty minutes of the initial attacks, some Chinese bolt through the saddle between Hills 1240 and 1282. They occupy positions in the high ground from where they commence firing upon the regimental (5th & 7th) command post in the village.

Actually, an outpost on Hill 1384, held by Company I, 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines had received incoming fire prior to 2100, becoming the first unit to come under fire. It is this outpost that gets badgered at 0145, about thirty minutes after the battalion goes on full alert. Once the enemy commits to the assault, Colonel Murray redeploys the 1st Battalion in anticipation of a second assault. The 1st Battalion, 5th Marines moves to positions to the rear of the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines. At 0100, the 1st Platoon, Company A, led by Lt. Nicholas Trapnell, begins to ascend the slippery slopes of Hill 1282 to bolster hard-hit Company E, but the trek takes longer than two hours. The abominable weather, having reached temperatures of twenty degrees below zero, makes the task unbearable. Shortly thereafter, Company A's third Platoon, commanded by Lt. Robert Snyder, makes the ascent, trailing the 1st Platoon. In the meantime, at 0145, Company I's platoon on the spur of Hill 1384 reports that it is coming under increasingly heavy fire from the heights above. Soon after, reliable word is spread from Company H, 7th Marines on Hill 1403 that Chinese are maneuvering around the hill to sever the MSR. By dawn, Company H is forced to withdraw from the hill, leaving it to the enemy. Some of these troops make it to the lines of the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, while others reach the positions of the 2nd Battalion, 5<sup>TH</sup> Marines. Meanwhile, within a short time later, at about 0218, Company I identifies enemy movement and commences firing to thwart a platoon-sized enemy contingent. The enemy unit retreats, but this incident is soon overshadowed by the advance of a larger force. Between one-two companies begin cascading down the slopes of Hill 1384. They sweep over the pygmy Company I Platoon and lunge nearly 300 yards toward the South Korean police. The Koreans, on the spur overlooking the CP dish out tenacious machine gun fire to momentarily halt the marauders, but the Korean platoon is unable to permanently hold. It is compelled to pull-back, leaving the heights to the swarming enemy. Down below in the draw, the CP becomes threatened. H&S and weapons companies return fire toward the heights, but the former is forced to pull back to the other side of the MSR. The weapons company, holding more tenable positions holds its ground, despite the avalanche of fire from above. All the while, the 3rd Battalion rifle companies remain unengaged. Nevertheless, the CP is standing nearly naked in the draw, since the pull-back of H&S Company. Taplett, informed of his precarious situation chooses to remain in the tent to maintain contact with his rifle companies. The Chinese, apparently thinking the tent is unoccupied, fail to direct their fire upon it, leaving Taplett the

opportunity to control his command. The battalion executive officer, Major John Canney, departs the tent, leaving the S-3, Major Thomas Durham, armed with only his pistol to guard Taplett. Canney moves to regroup H&S Company, but as he reaches the MSR, an enemy bullet kills him. In conjunction, outside the blackened CP tent, Taplett has one other guard, PFC Louis Swinson, whose radio has fallen prey to the elements. Swinson, poised with his rifle, keeps vigil on the approach routes to the CP. This harrowing incident, which lasts for about one hour goes unnoticed by the battalion's three rifle companies which are posted about 300 yards away. Luckily, the Chinese make no genuine effort to storm the CP; very few Chinese attempt to make the descent from the spur.

Back on Hill 1282, a second assault is thrown against Company E, while reinforcements are en route to the summit. The exhausted troops of Company E, repeatedly throw back the attackers, but at high costs including probable annihilation at any moment. Meanwhile, the 1st Platoon, Company A reaches the bloody peak slightly after 0300 and takes positions with Lt. Bey's platoon on the spur that bolts out from the eastern side of the ridge. The platoon arrives prior to the full velocity of the Chinese thrust. Subsequently, the haggard 3rd Platoon of Lt. Snyder arrives to reinforce the few survivors of the two besieged platoons. Snyder, unable to establish contact with the troops on the spur, directs his men to intertwine with the badly battered troops of E Company, but even more Chinese reach the crest to offset the arrival of reinforcements. The Oriental chants and screeching whistles increase the intensity, but now the sky bursts with illuminating flares and the profound reverberating sounds of multiple explosions that quiver the frozen earth. Brutalizing hand-to-hand combat and ferocious exchanges of grenades and gunfire erupt. The wild donnybrook inflicts horrifying numbers of casualties to both sides; however, the Marines' resources are quickly diminishing. Eventually, the Communists drive a wicked spear between the defenders holding the crest and those on the equally perilous spur. By 0400, the summit becomes infested with Chinese. They overrun the CP on the peak and begin to ramble in Chinese on the captured telephone. The sinister summit takes on the appearance of a slaughter house as the surviving men of Company E attempt to circle the rhetorical wagons for a final stand. Like falling dominoes, the remaining able-bodied Marine officers become casualties during this desperate struggle. During the instinctive regrouping, Lt. Yancey, a wounded platoon leader is again struck, as is Lt. William Schrier of the mortar section. And Lt. Leonard Clements, the other Company E platoon leader sustains a wound. The company commander, Captain Phillips, continues throwing grenades at the encroaching enemy until he is slain. Immediately, Lt. Raymond Ball (executive officer) assumes command of Company E, but he too has sustained multiple wounds. Yelling advice and encouragement from his prone position, Ball sustains several additional wounds that render him unconscious. He is rushed to the medics, but he succumbs to his wounds. Recently arrived Lt. Snyder (3rd Platoon, Company A, 5th Marines) assumes command of the dwindling company and his battered Platoon. The Chinese ignore their horrific casualty rate that has climbed to about 250, as opposed to the 150 sustained by the Marines on this contested Hill 1282 which now resembles a huge morgue. By 0500, the Chinese control the crest, but they remain convinced that their effort has given them Hill 1240. The enemy wedge has widely separated the Marine defenders. Snyder's survivors have been pushed to the reverse slope; the contingent stands at about one-half rifle platoon from Company E and about six able-bodied men of his 3rd Platoon. The combined casualties of the two Company A Platoons, since their ascent to the summit, stands at about forty killed and wounded. To the left, the remainder of Company E's riflemen, led by Lt. Bey and Lt. Trapnell's 1st Platoon, Company A retains a precarious hold on the summit of the rugged southeastern spur directly above Yudam-ni.

Meanwhile, the Chinese have also made some substantial gains at Hill 1240 against Company D, which had brushed back the initial probing strikes. At about 0105, elements of the 3rd Battalion, 236th Chinese Regiment uncork a full-blast assault against the perimeter igniting a furious slugfest. The enemy surge encounters a platoon led by Sergeant O.J. Reller when it slams into the northwestern sector and another platoon led by Lt. Seeburger which holds the eastern (right) side of the line. supporting machine gun sections hold the line to the front of Captain Hull's CP. Successive assaults are turned back by Reller's unit, but the Chinese intensify the effort, pouring unending amounts of troops into the battle. By 0230, the enemy breaks through the line on the left. Full-throttled pressure bars Seeburger from moving to assist Reller's platoon. Lt. Weber, a machine gun platoon leader attempts to stem the tide by rushing reinforcements, but the Chinese raise the pressure against the CP, compelling Weber to abort the attempt to fill the hole. Heavy fighting continues without pause. Nonetheless, by 0300, Captain Hull's CP is overwhelmed by Chinese. The remnants of the two platoons on the line and the reserve platoon, led by Lt. Anthony Sota, is directed by Captain Hull to form at the base of the hill. Hull, wounded, but determined to hold the hill, regroups his troops and leads a counterattack to regain the lost ground. The assault stuns the Chinese prompting them to give ground, but the weakened command finds itself in near untenable positions. The Chinese mount an attack, pounding the diminutive contingent at three separate points. The Marines hold steadfastly as they simultaneously defend their front, right flank and the right side of their rear. The cost is high, but as dawn approaches and the company is compacted like a squad, the remaining sixteen able-bodied Marines still hold their positions. However, the Chinese retain the heights to their front, the slopes to the rear and both flanks. The Communists' gains on Hill 1240, combined with the seizure of Hill 1282 add to the dilemma of holding Yudam-ni and preserving the firepower of the accompanying artillery units, especially the 3rd Battalion, under Major Parry and Battery K, 4th Battalion. The former is deployed just under the slopes of 1240 and the latter stands at positions just under the southeastern spur of Hill 1282.

While the 5th and 7th Marines were engulfed in bitter combat at North and Northwest Ridges, other Chinese contingents were beginning to whack the defenders at South Ridge. Company B, 7th Marines is heavily engaged with elements of the Chinese 59th Division at Hill 1419. By the arrival of dusk, the company has sustained serious casualties. Company C drives down the MSR and deploys across the road from Hill 1419 to support B Company. After the arrival of reinforcements, Company B brings out its wounded and returns to Yudam-ni with Lt. Colonel Davis who had brought in C Company (only two rifle companies), commanded by Captain Morris. He establishes positions on Hill 1419. His two platoons deploy in a half-moon perimeter along the lower slopes of the eastern spur; the 60-mm mortar section is also within the perimeter. In the distance is the ominous crest. At 0230 (28th), the slopes come alive with the usual notorious sounds of attacking Chinese. The right flank of the perimeter is heavily struck by large numbers of troops that spring from the heights. The defending platoon, commanded by Lt. Jack Chabek, sustains high casualties and the Chinese penetrate. The left flank then comes under a ferocious attack and the weakened platoon under Sergeant Earle Payne also is pummeled. One squad is deployed in higher ground, causing the Platoon to partially collapse and be pushed back; during the heavy fighting. This detachment becomes totally isolated and its fate remains unknown at dawn.

Captain Morris attempts to forestall disaster, He speeds reinforcements to both flanks, utilizing his headquarters and mortar personnel and the maneuver saves the command from being decimated. The Marines contend with the incessant attacks until dawn when the din of battle subsides and

artillery fire is turned against the enemy positions. Nonetheless, enemy fire continues to rain down on the beleaguered unit from every direction. The circumstances remain dire as the incessant combat had destroyed the radio and racked up high casualties. The pinned-down command, which has sustained about forty casualties also suffers from lack of air support due to the break-down of communications. Meanwhile, the Chinese have gained control of the MSR leading south toward Toktong Pass and to the north toward Yudam-ni. Attempts to contact the missing squad from Sgt. Payne's platoon are futile; one man, Corporal Kiesling voluntarily heads up the slope to locate it, but machine gun fire slays him. The daylight brings no solace to Company C, which becomes captive to the terrain and the enemy which is beginning to encircle it. The only option is to tighten the perimeter and hold until relief arrives, but their ammunition is running low as the besieged company regroups in hills east of the road. From this imperiled oasis, throughout the morning of the 28th, Captain Morris and his Marines await rescue. Meanwhile, they observe the Communists forming a deadly circle around the diminutive perimeter. **In Fox Company's zone,** Captain William Barber, 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines deploys his unit midway through Toktong Pass upon a sequestered hill lying slightly north of the MSR. The reinforced company, composed of 240 officers and men which includes heavy machine Guns and 81-mm mortars establishes positions. The machine guns are placed with the rifle platoons. The 1st Platoon, led by Lt. J. Dunne and the 2nd Platoon, commanded by Lt. Elmer Peterson take the right and left flanks respectively. With each leaning toward the MSR, the Platoons string down the hill, fortifying the 3rd Platoon under Lt. R. McCarthy which holds the crest and stares northward. At the foundation of the hill, Barber establishes his Headquarters; between it and the flanking platoons, the reverse slope is held by headquarters company and a rocket section and these are hooked to the flanking platoons. The night positions of Fox Company are under a full moon, creating a mixed blessing, but the temperatures become extremely hostile and challenge the minds of the Marines while simultaneously numbing body and soul. The area remains quiet throughout the night of the 27th and into the early part of the 28th, but concentration is difficult. The exceptions to the silence are the convoys transporting the 1st Bn., 5th Marines and the 4th Bn., 11th Marines back to Yudam-ni and the empty vehicles of Lt. Col. Beall that are en route to Hagaru. The 3rd Platoon stretches out along a hilltop position, linked to the other two which lean down the slopes pointing toward the MSR. Each of the Platoons is bolstered by machine gun units. Fox Company's positions remain unchallenged during the night of the 27th; however, this situation changes drastically during the early morning hours of the 28th. Under a bright moon, the 3rd Platoon waits apprehensively in anticipation of an attack, but they are hindered by the extreme cold which could dull their attentiveness. Lt. McCarthy zips through the positions a little after 0100 to make sure all are prepared for the inevitable and notices how the weather is adding to the problem. Nonetheless, he emphasizes the need to maintain a constant vigil. At about 0230, the Chinese announce their presence when a force estimated at about company strength plow into the positions of Company F. The enemy tries to open a gap between the lines of the 2nd and 3rd Platoons. The attack is met with ferocious fire that inflicts heavy casualties upon the enemy on the hills; however, the 3rd Platoon under McCarthy holding the crest is struck with an overwhelming blow that nearly eradicates two squads. Although McCarthy's Command loses fifteen killed and nine wounded, eight survivors make it back to the reserve squad's positions. Meanwhile, as the Chinese take this peak, the Marines steadfastly hold and otherwise prevent penetration, due in great part to the valor of several Marines who refused to accept defeat. These men, PFC Robert F. Benson, Private Hector A. Cafferatta (2nd Platoon) and PFC Gerald J. Smith, supported by Smith's fire team provide two enemy platoons with sudden death, eliminating these

contingents in their entirety. Fox Company remains engulfed in combat throughout the frigid night, but the Chinese who anticipated early and effortless victory are stunned by the riveting fire. Apparently, the attack had been expected to overrun two rifle platoons, but instead, these attackers bump into the main command post of Captain William Barber, which coincidentally also contains the mortars. Barber's troops fall back to more tenable positions, giving the enemy some running room, while the Marines climb higher to a cluster of trees that stand above an embankment along the MSR. Unwittingly, the Chinese give pursuit and find themselves unable to ascend the hill. On each attempt to ascend the embankment Marine fire cuts them down. Meanwhile, while they take measures to find safety behind the embankment, the Marines pull the pins on grenades and let them tumble directly upon the Chinese. The Chinese after concluding the Marine positions are impenetrable, attempt to retreat, but as they hit the open ground, more Marine fire eliminates more of them. The Chinese attack finally is deemed over at 0630 on the 28th, due to the extreme casualties they had sustained. By dawn, the Marines surely still control the ground, but they also have many uninvited corpses blanketing the area. About 100 dead Chinese are laid out to the front of the 1st Platoon and along the MSR at the foundation of the hill, while another 350 Chinese corpses are on view in front of the 2nd and 3rd platoon positions. These Marines at Toktong Pass essentially annihilate one Chinese battalion, while sustaining twenty killed and 54 wounded.

**November 28 1950 - (Pacific - Japan)** General MacArthur, following a conference with his staff and the field commanders in Korea, notifies the Joint Chiefs of Staff in Washington, D.C. that his command in Korea is preparing to cancel the offensive and take a defensive position. The joint chiefs concur; however, there is disagreement between them and MacArthur about the type of defensive lines to be established. MacArthur clings to the strategy of the ongoing separation of Eighth Army and X Corps under Generals Walker and Almond respectively. However, the joint chiefs are convinced that a line is required between P'yongyang and Wonsan, the latter on the east coast of Korea in the X Corps area. The major concern of Washington is that the gap between the two forces affords the Chinese an opportunity to drive a wedge between the two and outflank either or both. MacArthur contends that the purported line is neither supportable nor tenable due in part to the lack of roads in the mountains that divide the I and IX Corps. He further contends that the available forces under him are insufficient to retain P'yongyang. Nonetheless, he receives no encouraging words from the joint chiefs regarding reinforcements. **(Pacific-Korea)** Subsequent to receiving intelligence reports from Korea, it becomes apparent that the Chinese are heavily involved in Korea, something that had not been anticipated. General MacArthur sends additional information to the United Nations, concerning new players in the fighting: **"ENEMY REACTIONS DEVELOPED IN THE COURSE OF OUR ASSAULT OPERATIONS OF THE PAST FOUR DAYS DISCLOSE-CONTINENTAL ARMED FORCES IN ARMY, CORPS, AND DIVISIONAL ORGANIZATION OF AN AGGREGATE STRENGTH IS NOW ARRAYED AGAINST THE UNITED NATIONS FORCES IN NORTH KOREA...HEAVY REINFORCEMENTS ARE NOW CONCENTRATED WITHIN THE PRIVILEGED SANCTUARY NORTH OF THE INTERNATIONAL BOUNDARY AND CONSTANTLY MOVING FORWARD."** **Soon after MacArthur sends an alert: "WE FACE AN ENTIRELY NEW WAR."** Within several days, President Truman issues a statement which points the blame on the Soviets. Also, during the evening, General MacArthur summons Generals Walker and Almond to Tokyo, Japan to confer with them regarding the situation in Korea. Walker and Almond return to Korea during the following day. **X Corps: In the 7th Division sector;** Following a

week of heavy skirmishing with North Korean troops, Task Force Kingston, reinforced, commanded by 2nd Lt. Robert C. Kingston finally breaks through and reaches Sin'galp'ajin. **In the 1st Marine Division sector**, General Oliver P. Smith arrives at Hagaru from Hungnam and officially establishes headquarters at 1100. Staff and intelligence officers fill him in on the situation, while plans continue to prepare for an assault. Agents operating in the field report back later in the day and inform headquarters that they have actually conversed with enemy officers and were told that the Chinese boasted that they would seize Hagaru on this day after dark. Meanwhile, Lt. General Edward M. Almond, USA, arrives at Hagaru to discuss strategy with General Smith. Lt. Colonel Ridge continues to direct his 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines to prepare for an imminent attack. **In the 5th Marines' zone**, the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines executes an attack to lessen the pressure in its zone. Company C, which had recently deployed to reinforce the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines to hold the line in the valley comes under the jurisdiction of the 7th Marines to help stabilize the unsteady situation on Hills 1282 and 1240. Two platoons under Captain Jack R. Jones during the early morning hours begin to climb Hill 1282 to support Company E, 7th Marines. Meanwhile the other Company C platoon moves to Hill 1240 to bolster Company D, 7th Marines. As the contingent under Jones ascends the slope, many wounded Marines are descending and even from them it is impossible to determine what is actually occurring at the crest in the darkness. Nonetheless, the platoons maintain the slow advance in the bitter cold. By about 0430, enemy fire from the nearby crest alerts the Marines they are near the objective. Shortly thereafter it becomes clear that the situation is grim as it is learned that Company E, has lost its positions and about twenty survivors are in the process of regrouping to attempt an attack to regain the lost ground. Captain Jones aligns his two platoons and enjoins the beleaguered troops under Sgt. Murphy (Company E survivors). The Marines supported by mortars launch their attack just after the crack of dawn to attempt to dislodge the 235th Chinese Regiment's 3rd Company, 1st Battalion. Oblivious to the numbing cold, the Marines defy the onslaught of machine gun fire and a barrage of hand grenades. The Marines are absent artillery cover due to the close quarters of the opposing forces and the skies are clear of planes as the corsairs have not yet reached the target. Nevertheless, the charge gains speed and overwhelms the enemy defenders. Of the fifty or so Chinese troops only about five survive and among these is one officer who had made an early departure. Within a while, led by the officer who had survived the Marine attack, another platoon ascends the slope only this time it is dominated by Marines and their devastating fire again pummels the Chinese. Another Chinese platoon follows and it too is struck by riveting fire. The Marines repulse attack- after- attack and finally the company is reduced to seven survivors. Undaunted, the Chinese commander having only one company left to commit and it is down to one platoon. The Marines of Company C also greet this attack and it too amounts to nothing more than additional dead Chinese. Following the final attack by the remaining reserve squad, six of these Chinese remained standing, essentially witnessing the annihilation of their Battalion. The Chinese 1st Battalion, 235th Regiment loses about 400 men including nearly every one of the NCOs, platoon leaders and company commanders. The Marines sustain 15 killed and 67 wounded in Company C, 1st Battalion, 5th Marines and Company E, 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines suffer about 120 casualties including killed and wounded. The Marines following the early morning action attempt to rescue their wounded, some of whom are from Company E, in their foxholes on the slope of Hill 1282. The operation succeeds despite heavy enemy fire from enemy positions. By about noon, the Marines definitely maintain control of Hill 1282. **In the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines zone**, Lt. Colonel Roise's battalion at Northwest Ridge has been heavily involved against the Chinese. The enemy is able to gain some ground on the spur

and they overrun two machine Gun positions. However, the Marines succeed in repelling several major attacks in the draw and along the spur to the left of the 7th Marines' lines. The 5th Marines dominate in there area and the enemy dead continues to rise, but at about 0430, stragglers from Company H, 7th Marines which had held Hill 1403 arrive at his lines, making it clear that the Communists hold the hill and that his communications with the remainder of the 5th Marines at Yudam-ni are also in jeopardy. At one point during the early morning hours, fifteen Chinese troops penetrate the positions of Company F and all are eliminated. By about 0600 a counterattack is executed by Company E. It succeeds in pushing out the Chinese and the two machine guns that had earlier been seized. In the meantime, Company E, 5th Marines takes the offensive and engages a large Chinese force on the spur which is setting up an assault against the 2nd Battalion's right flank. At the termination of the night's combat in Roise's zone, the weather inflicts more casualties than the enemy. The Chinese, however suffer heavy casualties. Combined, Companies E and F sustain 60 casualties to the elements and seven killed. Also, 25 Marines are wounded. The Chinese sustain about 500 killed, but this figure does not include any Chinese killed at Hill 1403 as Company H had not made a body count. The 5th Marines under recent orders to launch an attack after dawn will be aborted following an assessment that the area now contains too many Chinese troops. The Marines switch to defensive positions. Later in the afternoon at about 1650, orders officially stopping the offensive arrive from General Oliver P. Smith's Headquarters. Instead, the 5th Marines will deploy where they can cooperate with the 7th Marines. By 2000, the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines complete a movement from Northwest Ridge to Southwest Ridge. In the meantime, Company I, 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines relieves contingents of the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines at Hill 1282 (North Ridge) and Companies G and H, 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines establish positions from where they can guard the northwest approaches to Yudam-ni. Also, the beleaguered remnants of Marines at Hill 1240 are relieved by Company B, 1st Battalion, 5th Marines. **In the 7th Marines zone**, at about 1015, Company A, 1st Battalion, acting as vanguard moves out to rescue Companies C and F, both of which are trapped and surrounded at their positions along the MSR that heads to Hagaru. The remaining troops of the 1st Battalion, led by Lt. Colonel Davis bring up the rear. The force mission encounters heavy enemy resistance particularly after it drives into the gorge between South and Southeast Ridges. The unit manages to reach a point about one mile from the besieged companies slightly after 1500; however, after it ascends to the high ground, the Chinese effectively halt the column. Meanwhile, Davis directs Company B to take a circuitous route and outflank the Chinese by advancing on the west side of the MSR to gain the heights. The operation, supported by mortar fire and planes, succeeds and combined, the relief force drives the Chinese from their positions. From the newly gained ground that directly overlooks the positions of Company C, the force deploys in a half-moon position and points towards the MSR to form a solid line of fire between the Chinese to the South and the once imperiled platoon. Although the trapped Marines of Company C have an umbrella of protection, Fox Company, which had been unable to extricate itself from the Toktong Pass is still jeopardized as darkness overtakes the area. Davis' relief force prepares to establish night positions, but Colonel Litzenberg, concludes that to permit the 1st Battalion to remain in its dangerous positions could also endanger the 1st Battalion. Davis is ordered to return to Yudam-ni to eliminate any possibility of being surrounded in the gorge. Shortly after receiving the directive, Davis moves out, bringing Company C and its 46 wounded Marines along. In the 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines' zone, Company F, remains in control its positions; however, the Chinese overnight attacks have inflicted casualties that total 54 wounded. After dawn, the Marines scrounge around the Chinese dead and seize many weapons including American Thompson submachine guns

and some springfield rifles. Attempts to relieve them through the day are unsuccessful, but some air support by Australian planes eases the pressure for awhile. In addition, Marine RFDs drop supplies, but the unit on Fox Hill sustains two casualties while retrieving them from the bottom of the hill. The besieged Marines remain surrounded and two separate rescue missions from Hagaru and Yudam-ni each fail to reach the lines. Undaunted, Fox Company prepares to hold the position. The situation on the hill remains tranquil through midnight, but during the early morning hours of the 29th, the Chinese attack. **In the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines' zone**, a counterattack is initiated against Hill 1384. Company G commits two platoons, while one remains in place at the outpost on Southwest Ridge. Both units move out simultaneously and push across the MSR and quickly rescue the imperiled command post of Lt. Colonel Taplett. Continuing, the Marines move into the draw and eliminate resistance essentially ensuring the safety of the weapons platoon (3rd Battalion, 5th Marines) still stuck there. From this point, the attacking platoons continue to advance through the stark darkness and reach the spur defended by about 25 Chinese. Subsequent to the eviction of the defenders, the Marines claim the spur and soon after, the Korean police platoon which had earlier abandoned the position, redeploy there. Once the ground is secured, the attack is halted to await sunrise. Soon after at the first glimpse of the sun, the attack is reinitiated by these two dogged platoons and to the amazement of the commanding officer, Colonel Taplett, the troops have clearly penetrated the enemy's lines and stand at the approach to the crest of Hill 1384. Taplett, aware that only the platoons of Lts John Cahill and Dana Cashion are on the offensive, immediately orders the attack to cease. Nonetheless, these platoons have alleviated the enormous pressure on the other Marines in the valley west of Yudam-ni and cleared a path for How Company, 7th Marines, permitting it to retire from their imperiled positions and join with the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines at the slopes of Hill 1403 at Northwest Ridge. Following orders to retire, Cashion and Cahill return to the recently captured spur. In Company D, 7th Marines' zone, the unit holding Hill 1240 has been under attack by the 3rd Battalion, 236th Chinese Regiment and it holds only a skimpy piece of the hill while defending against attacks from several sides. The 3rd Platoon, Company C, 5th Marines had earlier advanced to support it but the darkness and enemy resistance had impeded progress. As the sun rises, it becomes obvious to the Marines on Hill 1282 that their counterparts on 1240 are in trouble, but the distance of 1,000 yards is too much for an easy solution. With the light of the sun and the determination of Lt. Dawes' platoon, a hook-up finally occurs with Company D. However, by this time, the situation is getting more grave as the Chinese are massing on the reverse sides of Hills 1240 and 1282. The Marines are able to eliminate the enemy from Hill 1240, but they lack sufficient strength to hold off a major attack. In conjunction, all communications have ceased which forbids Dawes from informing headquarters of the imminent assault and eliminates any possibility of artillery support. At about 1100, the sirens blare and the Chinese send about two battalions against the diminutive force. Unable to totally withstand the attack, the Marines are compelled to pull-back, but they hold again about 150 yards to the rear and refuse to budge. Dawes' shattered platoon and about sixteen survivors of Company D, repel the remaining assaults. Relief finally arrives at about 1700. Company B, 5th Marines arrives at Hill 1240 and discovers the high casualties it cost to hold the ground. Only about one-half of Dawes' platoon still functions and most of Captain Hull's Company D, has been lost to the casualty list.

**November 29 1950 -(Pacific-Japan)** At a General Headquarters briefing, the mood is somber. The typhoon-like surge of the Communists had ravaged the center and west portion of the Eighth Army right wing, decimating the South Korean II Corps as it advanced, causing a total collapse of the right wing and creating great peril for the left wing. An instant pull back to the Chongchon River

is initiated to avoid a second catastrophe. Reports on the previous day had announced that more than 200,000 enemy troops are involved with the powerful offensive. Some estimates project the amount to be nearer 300,000. **(Korea) X Corps Area: In the 1st Marine Division sector,** Company F, 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines on Fox Hill come under an enemy mortar attack at about 0215. Shortly thereafter, a force of less than fifty Chinese having discovered what they believe to be a weak spot in the line initiate a charge and manage to push the Marines back a short distance, but the Marines still hold firmly at that point. Rather than risk unnecessary casualties in the dark, the Marines suspend further action, but once the sun rises, they bolt forward and drive the enemy from the hill. Once the regained positions are secured, the Marines, still entrapped, prepare for another long day, while awaiting relief. Various colored parachutes gathered from the air drops of the previous day are stretched out to provide the planes with a conspicuous spot for supplies to be delivered. As expected, about mid-morning, supplies including ammunition are dropped and soon after a helicopter from VMO-6 lands and delivers fresh batteries for the radios. Meanwhile, Chinese fire damages the helicopter, but its pilot, Lt. Floyd Englehardt, departs safely. No relief force is able to reach the beleaguered unit, but during the afternoon, more planes arrive to drop fresh ammunition. Despite the marker chutes, the deliveries sometimes misses the target and forces the Marines to brave enemy fire to retrieve the desperately needed mortar shells. A patrol moves out to gather the stray ammo, but effective fire prevents it from making it back to the lines. Consequently, the ammunition and the patrol are stranded about 500 yards from the main body. Lt. Elmer Peterson, the leader of the detachment sends the men back individually. In the meantime, a relief force composed of companies A (1st Battalion, 5th Marines) and Company B (1st Battalion, 7th Marines) G Company (3rd Battalion, 7th Marines) bolstered by mortars and a recoilless rifle detachment sets out to rescue the besieged unit, but shortly after it moves out at 0800, heavy resistance is encountered. Aircraft arrive to support the advance. The planes remain overhead, but after gaining about 4,500 yards, the ground troops are notified by the pilots flying cover that the Chinese hold strong positions on either side of the MSR and in the high ground. Headquarters at Yudam-ni is also notified of the situation, compelling Colonel Litzenberg to modify his orders. Rather than rescuing Fox Company and continuing forward to open the route to Hagaru, Major Warren Morris is directed to abort the plan to move to Hagaru and confine his actions to extricating Fox Company. Nevertheless, the Chinese strength is far superior to the composite battalion under Morris. By about 1315, the orders are again modified and the rescue force is ordered to return to Yudma-ni due to the possibility of it too being surrounded. Meanwhile, after dark, Captain Barber, Fox Company's commanding officer, dispatches another contingent and it succeeds in retrieving the supplies. All remains relatively quiet until the early morning hours of the following day.

**November 30 1950 -(United States)** President Harry Truman makes another statement. In part: "RECENT DEVELOPMENTS IN KOREA CONFRONT THE WORLD WITH A SERIOUS CRISIS. THE CHINESE COMMUNIST LEADERS HAVE SENT THEIR TROOPS FROM MANCHURIA TO LAUNCH A STRONG AND WELL-ORGANIZED ATTACK AGAINST THE UNITED NATIONS FORCES IN NORTH KOREA...BECAUSE OF THE HISTORIC FRIENDSHIP BETWEEN THE PEOPLE OF THE UNITED STATES AND CHINA, IT IS PARTICULARLY SHOCKING TO US THAT THE CHINESE ARE BEING FORCED INTO BATTLE AGAINST OUR TROOPS IN THE UNITED NATIONS COMMAND...IF AGGRESSION IS SUCCESSFUL IN KOREA, WE CAN EXPECT IT TO SPREAD THROUGH ASIA AND EUROPE TO THIS HEMISPHERE. WE ARE FIGHTING IN KOREA FOR OUR OWN NATIONAL SECURITY AND SURVIVAL. THIS COUNTRY IS THE KEYSTONE OF

THE HOPES OF MANKIND. **(Korea) X Corps:** The 1st air delivery platoon, domiciled at Wonsan airfield, has been involved with responsibility for 141 replenishment missions that consisted of 864 man-hours of flight, and the delivery by parachute of about 377 tons of supplies. **In the 1st Marine Division area,** the situation in Yudam-ni remained calm as only some sporadic skirmishes with the Chinese occurred. Nonetheless, the Marines again received little or no rest as attacks had been anticipated. **In the 7th Marines' zone,** Fox Company maintains its hold on Fox Hill despite the lack of reinforcements and continuing frigid weather. The previous night had been calm, but at 0200, the Marines are greeted by a curiously sounding Chinese soldier who pretends to pass himself off as an officer from the 11th Marines. Fox Company hears a plea that the Marines should surrender to the Chinese and in return they would be given clothes and fair treatment. The Marines, unable to see the benevolent messenger, respond by greeting him with illumination shells. Once the sky brightens, the Marines notice that the impostor is trailed by a large force of Chinese troops that are approaching them from the south. The Marines having refused surrender and the new clothes greet the attackers with hot steel as they maneuver across the valley. The Marines unleash a furious enfilade of fire including machine gun and mortars which devastates the enemy assault. By dawn, it is clear that the Marines still own the hill and when the corsairs soar overhead just after dawn, the success is validated. About three companies are wiped out. Fox Company sustains none killed and only one Marine wounded.

**December 1 1950 -(United States)** President Truman announces that the North Koreans have been supplied with weaponry by the Soviet Union; he also proclaims the Chinese are actively involved in the fighting: "AS THE UNITED NATIONS FORCES CONTINUED TO DEFEAT THE AGGRESSORS AND CONTINUED TO ADVANCE IN THEIR MISSION OF LIBERATION, CHINESE COMMUNISTS PARTICIPATION IN THE AGGRESSION BECAME MORE BLATANT...THE ONLY EXPLANATION IS THAT THESE CHINESE HAVE BEEN MISLED OR FORCED INTO THEIR RECKLESS ATTACK, AN ACT WHICH CAN ONLY BRING TRAGEDY TO THEMSELVES, TO FURTHER THE IMPERIALISTIC DESIGNS OF THE SOVIET UNION." In conjunction, the President notes that 53 nations are unified to halt the aggression and that in essence, the U.N. and each of these nations is under assault by the Communists. Meanwhile, General MacArthur is convinced that he must be permitted to use air power to strike across the Yalu against enemy positions in Manchuria to halt the offensive. The thought of retaliation across the Yalu caused trepidation within the United Nations, thinking it might trigger World War III. **(Korea)** Some U.S. forces and other U.N. troops continue to come under attack by enemy aircraft, which then quickly seek sanctuary across the Korean border in Manchuria. In air action over Korea, the U.S. fighter pilots outfight the Soviet Aircraft, including the superior MIGs, knocking them out at a ratio of fourteen to one. Rather than permit General MacArthur to authorize his forces to pursue across the Yalu River, the U.N. with the support of the U.S. State Department and the British Government, seeks to open peace negotiations with the Communists.

**December 2 1950 - (Korea) Eighth Army:** General Walker initiates a withdrawal from the Sukch'on-Sunch'on-Songch'on line after only just reaching it after withdrawing from Kunu-ri. P'yongyang is to be evacuated and the new line is to be drawn below the village. The forward units remain about thirty miles above the village and at a point about ten miles below that a cover force will set up to delay any Chinese forces trying to close on the retreating columns. The enemy meanwhile is continuing to close from the east, giving Walker yet another problem, the possibility

of the enemy getting into P'yongyang by swerving west, catching Eighth Army before it can pass through the town. The operation moves into high gear as troops are sped southward into P'yongyang to retrieve the supplies and others rush towards the port of Chinnamp'o to extricate equipment and supplies remaining there. Meanwhile, to protect the retreat, Walker dispatches contingents to guard the east flank from assault. Pontoon bridges that span the Taedong River are barred to civilian traffic and the 187th Airborne troops set up positions at each of the eight bridges to enforce the rule. Walker had received authorization from Far East Command to destroy all supplies and equipment that could not be brought out with army.

**December 3 1950 - (Japan)** General MacArthur informs Washington that he requires reinforcements in large numbers in order to beat back the challenge of the Chinese who have involved themselves in Korea. Based on his calculations, MacArthur believes that without additional troops, he will have few options, and be compelled to offer resistance while withdrawing southward in an effort to avoid the total devastation of the U.N. forces in Korea. **(Korea) Eighth Army area:** Preparations for a withdrawal from the P'yongyang area continue. Meanwhile, the Chinese withhold offensive action, but apparently they are making plans to close from several directions to snap a trap around P'yong-yang. Reports of enemy activity to the east and southeast of the town are scrutinized. Walker becomes more convinced that the enemy is poised to cut off the withdrawal routes near Sin'gye. The orders to retreat are to be executed on the following day. The new and temporary line is to be at a point about fifteen miles below the village of P'yongyang, with a secondary plan that calls for preparations to move from there to another line that drops the troops on the east about thirty miles and those on the west will pull back about fifty miles.

**December 5 1950 - (United States)** - The rift between General MacArthur and President continues to intensify as the president remains infuriated at certain public statements made by MacArthur. Truman this day issues a directive relating to all American officials stationed overseas including military leaders that any public statements be in concurrence with U.S. policies and that no statements or communications is to be made by these officials about foreign policy or military matters. This directive is particularly directed towards General MacArthur and essentially prohibits him from making statements to the press or the other media from the United States. In conjunction, there is great division between Washington and MacArthur on the way the conflict in Korea is being handled. And MacArthur has been defending his methods and strategy against the accusations that he is responsible for the failures of the U.N. Command to halt the Chinese. **(Pacific-Korea) Eighth Army area:** U.N. forces evacuate Pyongyang, the North Korean capital. The Americans and the allied units attached to Eighth Army continue to retire towards the new line about fifteen miles below the North Korean capital. During the morning large portions of the city are set afire and troops attached to IX Corps work to destroy all equipment and supplies not transported by the retiring forces. The rail yards are jammed and operations are underway to move out the wounded, however, there is a shortage of trains that are operable due to several reasons including damage from previous air strikes by allied air strikes. Prior to 0800, most sections of the city are afire and all pontoon bridges that span the Taedong River are blown by engineers. Lingering although unseen Chinese pressure forces a hurried retreat, which hinders the operation to destroy the equipment as there is a huge amount and little time. Consequently, although nearly all units are beyond the city during the day, the quagmire at the rail-yard prevents the evacuation of about fifteen M-46 tanks that are parked atop flat cars. At Chinnamp'o, the port has been active for the last several days in an effort to transport wounded and remove supplies and equipment and similarly to the activity at

P'yongyang, the operations continued without interference from the Chinese. Eighth Army utilizes U.S. naval vessels, Japanese commercial vessels and even Korean sailboats to help with the task. The forces there are loading equipment, but they also allow the boarding by throngs of civilians and captured enemy troops. It was for awhile thought that the prisoners should be left at the port, but after discussions it is decided that the retreating South Korean forces would probably liquidate them. By about 1700, the final vessels embark under the protection of U.S. destroyers offshore and a nearby British aircraft carrier that had been posted in the Yellow sea, providing cover during this last day of the evacuation of Chinnamp'o. Like P'yongyaang, engineers detonate the explosives to ensure the port town is of little value to the enemy. In conjunction, the vessels head towards either Inchon or Pusan, with the service troops and the supplies primarily going to the former and the wounded and POWs moving to the latter. In related activity, General Walker orders both corps to dispatch patrols to attempt to locate the enemy positions, but neither makes any contact. The absence of any prisoners makes it for the time being difficult to guess the next move of the Chinese.

**December 6 1950 - (United States)** The joint chiefs of staff forward the directive of President Truman regarding public statements by U.S. officials and military leaders regarding U.S. policy to General MacArthur in Japan. See also December 5th. **(Korea)** General Collins, army chief of staff, concludes a three-day stop in Korea during which he spent some time conferring with Generals Walker and Almond, the commanding officers of Eighth Army and X Corps, respectively. He returns to Japan to confer with General MacArthur. In conjunction, during his visit to the Far East, Collins gains the separate opinions of Walker and Almond. Walker believes Eighth Army must withdraw, while Almond is convinced his X Corps can draw a solid line at Hugnang and withstand the Chinese attacks. A strategy meeting will be held at Far East Headquarters on the following day to solidify a plan.

**December 7 1950 (Korea)** In the X Corps sector, at Hagaru, some Marine elements still remain, while the columns RCT-1, RCT-5 and RCT-7 continue to move towards Kotori. The front elements have already arrived, but the column in its entirety is stretched across about a twelve-mile run. Division train Number 1 had not been able to depart Hagaru until 1600 on the 6th. During the ongoing breakout from Hagaru, the remaining elements of the 7th Marines had entered Koto-ri by about 0700 this day. The 2nd Battalion arrived on the previous night.

During the latter part of the morning, units of the battalion move out to provide cover for trailing elements of the 1st Marine Division. In addition to establishing positions at points between Hill 1182 and Kotori along the MSR, another mission is assigned to the 2nd Battalion. Information had been passed to the ground troops that a group of British Marines had been spotted by aircraft on 4 December. The pilots that spotted the British contingents noticed that the word "help" was imprinted in the snow. Other planes airdropped food and supplies to ensure that the troops could hold out until the help they requested could arrive. The men had become isolated while Task Force Drysdale was under attack on the night of 29-30 November. The 2nd Battalion retrieves the entire group of twenty-two British Marines.

By 1700, the remaining units of RCT 7 arrive at Koto-ri. In the meantime, the divisional trains had begun their departure on the previous day and while en route, stiff Chinese opposition continues to impede progress. Artillerymen and others, including clerks and headquarters personnel, act as infantry to defend the convoys.

Also, the Division Headquarters Company convoy, which had departed Hagaru late on the previous day, again encounters stiff opposition at about 0130. Marine Corps Night-Fighter squadrons arrive to provide some air cover, while the Marines attempt to beat back the attack. The planes neutralize the Chinese until just prior to dawn. By that time, a contingent of about thirty Chinese close against the convoy, which also has a large contingent of Chinese POWs within the column.

As the MPs continue to keep vigil on the prisoners, while defending against the attack, the prisoners come under intentional fire from the attacking enemy forces. The Chinese prisoners who had been contained along the road immediately attempt to break, which places them in the sights of the Chinese and the Marines. Of the 160 POWs, 137 are killed. The wounded POWs had been left at Hagaru.

Soon after the fierce exchange, the convoy reinitiates its advance and upon entering the vicinity of Pusong-ni, a brief firefight develops as a small contingent of enemy troops, concealed in houses in the village, are captured.

The convoy, after reaching Hell Fire Valley at about dawn, halts progress. At the time, there is no enemy resistance; however, the troops receive the grim task of surveying the field where many of the members of Task Force Drysdale had died. A detail attempts to identify the bodies of the headquarters personnel and MPs there, to provide information for the contingents that later will arrive to remove the bodies.

Afterwards, the convoy rolls into Koto-ri at about 1000. Other units follow and by about 2300, the only units not yet at Koto-ri are the contingents of the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, the rear guard. The final elements depart at slightly after noon, just ahead of the major explosion detonated by the engineers that destroyed the town and prevented the Chinese from acquiring any supplies or ammunition still in the village.

The Marines at Koto-ri prepare for the next phase of the breakout, which commences on the following day. Meanwhile, planes attached to Combat Cargo Command arrive to deliver food and supplies, and when they depart, they evacuate the wounded. In addition, eight C-119s drop bridge sections to the troops to provide a means to cross a treacherous gorge with a depth of 1,500 feet. This is the first bridge to be delivered by air in the history of warfare. The bridges arrive by parachute. Some sections are damaged and one section lands within Chinese positions; however, the ingenuity of the engineers prevails and with some modifications, the engineers are prepared to erect the span. Still, the distance between the engineers at Koto-ri and where the bridge is to be erected stands several miles away.

Several Chinese strong points, including Hill 1328, a mass that stood south and southwest of the village and Hill 108j, another huge threat located a few miles north of the village, remain in the way. The drive to reduce the obstacles is scheduled for 8 December. Also, the operations at Yonpo Airfield are beginning to wind down. Marine Squadron VMF-214 returns to the USS *Sicily*. VMF-214 had moved to Itami on December 4, but by about 15 December, the squadron will operate from the USS *Bataan*. In conjunction, the 1st Marine Air Wing is commanded by Major General Field Harris.

**December 8 1950 (Korea)**-General Walker receives new orders (Order Number 5) that establish the guidelines for the withdrawal of Eighth Army and the incorporation of X Corps into Army. MacArthur's order sets up nine specific lines of defense. Walker begins to implement the plan. He switches from his original line to the one designated by Far East Command. The new line (Line B)

is nearly identical to Line A; however, as it stretches from east to west, according to MacArthur's directive, at Hwach'on the westward section swings southwest along the lower bank of the Imjin and Han Rivers, which shortens the line somewhat on that side, while it maintains the original eastward line from the village. The defense of Seoul is to be at this line. The various units are directed to initiate movement to their respective positions. *In the X Corps area*, the Marines of the 1st Division and attached forces at Koto-ri begin to depart en route to the coast at Hungnam. The Chinese remain in the area in great numbers, yet Koto-ri has not come under a major attack since the night of 28–29 November.

The town, however, remains surrounded and the breakout is not expected to be less difficult than the twelve miles the troops had already traveled from Hagaru. About ten thousand troops arrived at Koto-ri from Hagaru. The diminutive village, on 8 December, is crammed with more than 14,000 men, including the Marines and U.S. Army troops already there. The Marine garrison at Koto-ri amounts to 2,640 troops, bolstered by 1,535 U.S. Army troops and twenty-five British Royal Marine commandos. The new arrivals from Hagaru include 9,046 Marines, 818 U.S. Army, 125 British Royal Marine commandos and 25 ROK police (attached to the 5th Marines).

While the operation unfolds at Koto-ri, engineers widen the airstrip to provide access for larger planes to transport the wounded; however, the 1st Marine Division still must fight through the enemy forces. All those not seriously wounded continue with the breakout column.

In the meantime, the Chinese, pragmatic in their choices of direct attack against the Marines, continue to mount obstacles, including blowing bridges, but they mount no offensives against the main body of the 1st Marine Division at Koto-ri. Daybreak on 8 December brings yet another obstacle into the picture. A fresh snowstorm saturates the area.

At 0800, the Marines press forward to take out the opposition in the vicinity of Funchilin Pass, which dominates the route to Hungnam. The heights north of the pass are held by the Chinese. RCT-7 (reinforced) drives south toward the hill mass at Hill 1328. Two objectives stand at the hill, one southwest of the village and the other south, known as Objectives A and B respectively, held by elements of the CCF 60th Division. After reducing both, the 7th Marines are to sprint forward to the next objective, slightly less than three miles from Koto-ri.

In the meantime, RCT-5 drives towards another obstacle, Hill 1457, known as Objective D, at a point about two and one-half miles south of the village. Simultaneously, the 1st Battalion, 1st Marines, head north from Chinhung-ni to reduce Hill 1081, while the remainder of RCT-1 (reinforced) holds fast at Koto-ri to defend the trains (convoy). In the 1st Battalion zone, Company A, led by Captain Barrow, moves to gain the summit of Hill 1181, while Company C, under Captain Wray, drives against its southwestern tip.

Meanwhile, Company B, commanded by Captain Noren, presses against the enemy on the southern slope of Hill 1181. Baker Company strikes with surprise and gains an enemy command post, where the Chinese had apparently been preparing breakfast. The rice continues to boil as the exchange ensues. Although the 1st Battalion had not yet been engaged in a major battle during the period at the reservoir, its skills had not been dulled. The defenders at the southern slope are killed, except for those who flee. Company B sustains 3 killed and 6 wounded. Company A also uses the snow and the element of surprise to take out the defenders on the summit. One nasty machine gun blocks passage for a short while, but it is eliminated and afterwards, the remaining defenders in the bunker are immediately wiped out or killed as they attempt to flee from the crest. About sixty Chinese are

killed. Company A sustains 10 killed, primarily from the machine gun nest, and 11 wounded.

In the meantime, Company C holds at its objective on the southwestern tip of the mass, but Company A remains under pressure. At about midnight, the Chinese launch an attack against Company A, but it fails.

To the area south of Koto-ri, the Chinese raise tenacious resistance against RCT-7 and impede its progress. Despite using the reserves, Hill 1328 remains under Chinese control, while the 3rd Battalion regroups. The objective falls on the following day. Other elements of the 7th Marines, attacking in support of the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, encounter stiff resistance in the vicinity of Hill 1304. In conjunction, RCT-5, also attacking southward, seizes its initial objectives. The high ground near the northern entrance to Funchilin Pass is taken by the U.S. Army Provisional Battalion (attached to RCT-5) without opposition. From there, the provisional battalion jumps off and takes the ground at the northwestern tip of Hill 1457, against no opposition. By 1330, the battalion secures its sector and holds for the remainder of the day. The 1st Battalion, 5th Marines, holds at Koto-ri until about noon and then moves against Hill 1457. While Company C drives up the slopes, it joins with elements of the Army Provisional Battalion, and the two contingents combine their strength to clear the hill while Company B seizes the heights and provides cover fire for Company C's assault. By mid-afternoon, the objective is seized and by dusk, night positions are established as Companies B and C form with the provisional troops.

Meanwhile, Company A establishes a separate perimeter along the main supply route. The rear positions are covered by the British Royal Marines, who deploy in the high ground to protect against enemy infiltration from the rear of the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines. Darkness and more frigid temperatures overtake the area and the day ends without reaching the blown bridge. Nonetheless, the Chinese still resist launching a major assault against the 1st Marine Division.

Although there had been no major setbacks, the most grim part of the day at Koto-ri came about when there was no means of transporting the dead that had been brought in or retrieved from the field along the route from Hagaru. One hundred Marines, soldiers and Royal Marine commandos are interred at Koto-ri on this day.

The area surrounding Koto-ri also continues to be the gathering place for Korean civilians, intent on moving through the Communists to reach Hungnam. The civilians are not permitted to enter the perimeter due to the infiltration of Communist troops; however, some medical assistance is offered to the civilians who had lost everything except what they carried with them. One small incident of joy occurs as U.S. Navy personnel assist two pregnant women who give birth.

**December 10 1950 In the X Corps area**, the 1st Marine Division and attached units continue their withdraw from Koto-ri to Hungnam. The convoy had encountered some difficulty en route, but after the delays, traffic reinitiated its movement against sporadic opposition. The lead elements in the convoy arrive at Chinhung-ni at about 0830, on the heels of the vanguard of the 1st Battalion, 7th Marines, which had arrived about 0400. Chinese remain in the area in concealed positions, including the village of Sudong, and other Chinese troops in large numbers are spotted east of Hill 108; during the latter part of the morning.

Earlier, Company G, 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, came under attack on Hill 1328 (Objective A), but the assault was repulsed. Once the enemy sightings are confirmed, a massive artillery bombardment is initiated and it is supported by air strikes, which when combined, overwhelm and destroy large numbers of Chinese in the valley as they move southward, oblivious to the horrific numbers of slain

troops in their midst.

Meanwhile, at about 1300, Company B, 1st Battalion, 1st Marines, pounds against a Chinese stronghold near the railroad, located north of where the 1st Battalion was deployed. With the support of air cover, the area is reduced.

Task Force Dog (3rd Infantry Division) is posted at Chinhung-ni and other U.S. Army units attached to the 65th Infantry Regiment are deployed in the vicinity of Sudong and Madjong-dong, in an effort to keep the main supply route clear. The division trains and the 5th and 7th Marines move through Sudong without incident; however, subsequent to darkness, the Chinese block passage just outside Sudong. Elements of the 65th Infantry Regiment reduce the obstacle. Afterward, it is assumed that the road is open; however, by midnight, the Chinese bolt from their positions in the village of Sudong and stun the convoy. The initial moments inflict casualties on some of the drivers. The trucks attached to RCT-1, caught in the unusual ambush, are set afire, causing great confusion within the ranks.

Lieutenant Colonel John U.D. Page, USA, and Marine PFC Marvin L. Wasson move to the midst of the confusion and restore order, simultaneously eliminating about twenty Chinese at the head of the stalled column. Page is killed in the exchange; PFC Wasson returns to the fray wounded. Another U.S. Army officer, Lieutenant Colonel Waldon C. Winston, takes command and leads a counterattack with troops of the 52<sup>nd</sup> Transportation Truck Battalion, USA, and Marines. Wasson ignores his injuries and takes out an entire house with several rounds from a 75-mm recoilless rifle. The inhabitants that make it outside are then liquidated by machine gun fire.

Wasson's determination and his actions impress Lieutenant Colonel Winston, who nicknames Wasson "The Spirit of 76." Lt. Colonel Page is awarded the Medal of Honor posthumously for his extraordinary heroism during the period 29 November–10 December. Nevertheless, the MSR remains unpassable until dawn. The donnybrook had also cost RCT-1 nine vehicles and one armored personnel carrier. PFC Wasson, who had been wounded prior to destroying the enemy strong point, further aids the cause by pushing stalled vehicles off the road while their cargo of ammunition is exploding. **In the 3rd Battalion sector, 1st Marines zone**, the battalion abandons its positions at the Hill 1328 mass south of Koto-ri at about 2100 and descends to join the column. A column of tanks trails the regimental column in a change of strategy to ensure that if a tank stalls, it will not halt the column. However, with the tanks in the rear, other difficulties emerge, as the armor is just ahead of throngs of civilians, interlaced with Chinese troops who pose as refugees.

The forty tanks are protected only by a Marine Corps reconnaissance company. Slowly and cautiously, the tankers maneuver the serpentine paths that are layered with ice. The reconnaissance troops guard the flanks with extra vigil on the trailing civilians. While the lead elements continue to advance, problems develop in the rear when one of the tanks becomes a victim of the weather. Its brakes freeze. Thirty-one of the tanks are unaffected, but the stalled tank and the eight behind it remain stranded about two thousand yards from the temporary bridge at the pass. Pandemonium sets in when a small group of Chinese approaches the rear guard and pulls off a ruse, pretending to surrender, only to open fire from close-range amid the civilians. The platoon commander, Lieutenant

Hargett, attempts to check out the Chinese, and as they open fire, his carbine misfires due to the weather. Meanwhile, the encounter at close-range also includes enemy burp guns and grenades. Hargett uses his carbine as a club and beats one of the Chinese to death, but in the process, he is

wounded by grenade fragments. Corporal A.J. Amyotte, a BAR man, takes out the other four Chinese.

As the platoon withdraws, the last tank in the stalled column is abandoned to other Chinese troops and the next in line is also lost. As the reconnaissance troops move forward, they pass the other vacated tanks. Finally, the stalled tank is repaired and it and one other is salvaged. Both scurry toward the bridge. During the fighting an explosion knocked one Marine, PFC McDermott, unconscious, and it is assumed by the others nearby that he had been killed. The crewmen of the last two tanks in the column are lost and in addition, the reconnaissance platoon sustains three men MIA and twelve wounded. Two of the missing are later reported as killed; however, McDermott later regains consciousness and manages to use a bypass of the blown bridge with the civilians. Later he rejoins his unit. Once the two tanks clear the bridge, the engineers there (believing all able Marines have made the break) blow the bridge. The column completes the last phase of the move from Koto-ri at 1300 on 11 December, when the final elements arrive.

Also, VMF-311, the initial USMC jet squadron to participate in combat sorties, begins its support of the ongoing withdrawal of X Corps. Twelve F9Fs arrive at Yonpo, from where the squadrons operate until 14 December; afterwards they operate from Pusan.

**December 11 1950-** General MacArthur arrives in Korea from Japan to observe firsthand the situation and to confer with Generals Walker and Almond, commanders of the Eighth Army and X Corps respectively. X Corps in northeastern Korea becomes MacArthur's first stop. Following a conference with General Almond, he proceeds to General Walker's headquarters to hold a discussion on the Eighth Army plans to withdraw and on the importance of holding control of Seoul. In the X Corps area, the final elements of the 1st Marine Division and attached units arrive in the Hamhung–Hungnam sector to conclude the breakout from Hagaru. The 1st Marine Division casualties, since it departed Koto-ri on 8 December, amount to 51 killed (24 die of wounds), 16 missing and 256 wounded. The 1st Marine Division, upon its arrival at Hungnam, had reversed the Chinese plans. The overwhelming forces thrown into the region to surround the Marines and annihilate the division failed. Instead, the 1st Marine Division fought its way along a sixty-mile route, and through the support of air cover, devastated the Chinese forces it encountered.

The fighting withdrawal of the 1st Marine Division, which was at the time unaware that it had been written off by many in the United States, evolves as the greatest achievement of a trapped American fighting force in the history of the United States. Between six and eight Chinese divisions were planted to wipe out the Marines and they failed, while sustaining overwhelming casualties that greatly impeded their ability to mount a full scale invasion against Hungnam. The Chinese up to this point have not yet attempted to collapse the perimeter, which is defended by contingents of the U.S. 3rd Division and the U.S. 7th Division.

Enemy attacks are anticipated from three separate directions: along the coast from the northeast, from the Changjin Reservoir area, and from a southern point at Wonsan. Chinese advances had essentially severed any possible route back to South Korea over land. The evacuation is scheduled by sea and as long as possible, from the airfield at Hungnam. General Almond's evacuation plan calls for the 1st Marine Division to depart first, followed by the 7th and 3rd Infantry Divisions. It becomes a challenging operation to protect the perimeter while abandoning Hungnam. Also, the South Korean Marines (1st Korean Marine Corps Regiment), which had been attached to the U.S. 3rd Division, moves to the airfield at Yonpo, from where it will be evacuated by air. During the

operation, air cover is provided by the navy and Marine Corps and in addition, U.S. naval vessels offshore remain to provide protection if their guns are needed.

The Allied forces to be evacuated number more than 1,000,000 men and more than 18,000 vehicles. Endangered supplies weigh in at about 350,000 tons, placing a Herculean task upon Admiral Doyle. His transport group numbers about 125 ships, but the number is insufficient to handle the operation with only one visit to the port. Some vessels would be required to make additional trips to the port at Hungnam. The troops and the transports get additional protection as seven aircraft carriers move into the area to ensure nonstop air cover. The U.S. Navy also had moved one battleship, seven destroyers, two cruisers and several rocket ships into the area to form a line stretching from ten miles south of Hungnam to a point about ten miles north of the port.

**December 12 1950-Korea In the X Corps sector,** at Hungnam, the evacuation operation continues. By the following day, the 5th and 7th Marines begin to board the vessels. In other activity, Brigadier General Edward A. Craig, assistant division commander, and an advance party are flown from Hungnam to Masan to prepare it for the arrival of the 1st Marine Division, which is to assemble there. Masan is located on the Bay of Masan about forty miles west of Pusan. The Marines are familiar with Masan, as it is where the 1st Provisional Marine Brigade assembled at the Bean Patch following the Battle of the Naktong during the previous August. Also, Marine Corps reports that division casualties during the fighting at and after the Chosin Reservoir when the Marines broke out stands at between 3,000 and 3,300, including those missing in action. **In the Eighth Army area,** Eighth Army establishes a defensive perimeter north of Seoul to protect the capital. I Corps had withdrawn into Hamhung–Hungnam perimeter. General Walker continues to work out the details of the withdrawal lines. With Line B now established above Seoul, the new addition, Line C, is prepared. It will be initiated along the lower bank of the Han River and extend northeast to the village of Hongch'on and from there it will lead eastward to Wonpo-ri. In addition, Line D is drawn about fortyfive miles below Seoul, where it extends from the west coast running in a northeastwardly direction through several villages, including P'yongt'aek, Ansong and Wonju, before terminating at the east coast port of Wonpo-ri. These two lines are to give Eighth Army a buffer zone if they are compelled to relinquish Seoul, but Walker also believes these lines to be mandatory, due to his perception that the ROKs, who will bear responsibility for a large part of Eighth Army's eastern line, will give way once attacked in strength, thereby jeopardizing the Eighth Army forces still above Seoul.

Meanwhile, with the Chinese now facing Eighth Army and X Corps in great strength, all possibilities must be considered. Walker directs Eighth Army units in the north to head south, while he orders ROK units northward toward Line B. During the operation, which continues until December 22, the Chinese remain inconspicuous and only some North Korean troops contest the withdrawals. However, both corps, I and IX, experience difficulty with the unending lines of refugees that trail the columns and clog the roads. In conjunction, the U.S. 2nd Division continues to rebuild its strength, subsequent to the beating it took during the previous November. At this time it is unprepared for the field and is already below Seoul. Although the Chinese have yet to take the offensive, Walker has concluded that Seoul can be held only if the South Koreans don't fold, for if they do, much of Eighth Army will get caught above Seoul. However, Walker also anticipates the IX Corps' arrival, which will bolster his line and give Eighth Army the ability to hold the capital.

**December 13-Korea-**In the X Corps sector, the evacuation of Hungnam continues. At 1500, General Oliver P. Smith, USMC, attends the graveside services for the troops interred at the

cemetery there and afterwards, he moves aboard the USS *Bayfield*, where he reestablishes his command post for the 1st Marine Division. Elements of the division continue to board, while the U.S. 3rd and 7th Infantry Divisions maintain the perimeter. No Chinese attacks are mounted against the city. While the evacuation continues, Marine planes at Yonpo continue to strike Chinese positions.

**December 14 1950 Korea-In the X Corps sector**, USMC squadrons at Yonpo cease operations in conjunction with the final phase of the abandonment of Hungnam. The field there remains in operation to continue airlifting the wounded from the area. The Marine landbased fighters there move to Japan.—*In the United States*: In the United Nations, the General Assembly passes a resolution calling for a ceasefire in Korea. A contingent of representatives is selected to sit at a peace table with the leaders of the Communists. It is to be an enduring ordeal, as the Communists, when they do attend, are arrogant and unwilling to seek compromise. Rather, the Chinese Communists, under the wing of the Soviets, humiliate the Allies with a continuous string of unending obstacles as they maintain their quest to wrest South Korea from its liberty.

**December 15 Korea-In the X Corps sector**, the 1st Marine Division completes its boarding of vessels at Hungnam and embarks for Pusan. The Marines had arrived at Hungnam from Koto-ri on 11 December. Hungnam remains under the protection of the 3rd and 7th U.S. Infantry Divisions, which are also in the process of abandoning Hungnam. Some Marines remain there to assist with the final phases of the evacuation. The units include elements of the Air and Naval Gunfire Liaison Company and the 1st Amphibious Tractor Battalion. By this time, the 1st Marine Air Wing has been redeployed at Japan, Pusan and aboard carriers. In conjunction, the initial naval gunfire support at Hungnam commences with night harassing missions, executed by the USS *St. Paul* (CA 73). Also, air control is transferred from 1st Marine Air Wing Tactical Air Direction Center to the USS *Mt. McKinley* (AGC 7). The wing's command post transfers to Itami air force base, Japan. The Marine fighter squadrons and VMO-6 (helicopters and light fixed wing planes) play a dominant role in safely concluding the breakout. VMO-6, during the period 28 October to 15 December, executed 1,544 flights in support of the 1st Marine Division and at times, isolated Marine units had contact only with VMO-6.

Also, along the 3rd Division perimeter at Hungnam, Chinese forces mount attacks in the vicinity of Chigyong and Orori. The lines have already been thinned due to the loss of the 1st Korean Marine Corps Regiment, which had moved to Yonpo, from where it was to be airlifted to its new assembly area in South Korea.

The 3rd Division anticipated pulling back to the next line on the following day; however, the probing enemy assaults prompt General Soule to pull back during the afternoon of 15 December. *In the Eighth Army area*, General Walker orders the 1st Cavalry Division to advance to positions northeast of Seoul to establish a blockage in the event the Chinese attempt to move against the capital from the village of Chunchon.

Also, the bulk of army headquarters departs Seoul for Taegu. Meanwhile, Walker remains concerned about the forces west of Seoul, as their destiny depends greatly on the performance of the South Koreans along the eastern side of the line if an enemy attack commences. A small contingent of headquarters will remain in the capital.

**December 16 1950 Korea-In the X Corps sector**, the Chinese press against the perimeter at Hungnam. They strike heavily against the north and west portions of the defensive line, defended

by the U.S. 3rd Division. The probing action is carried out by elements of the Chinese 81st Division (Chinese 27th Army). While the military commanders continue to control the evacuation of the port and forestall enemy penetration of the perimeter, other problems develop as Korean refugees in large numbers flood into the area. The civilians create a huge problem, including the inevitability of enemy troops masquerading among the throngs entering the perimeter. Simultaneously with the withdrawal of the combat troops, the defensive line continues to thin out. The U.S. 7th Division began its embarkation on 14 December, beginning with the 31st Infantry Regiment and other units that had been at the Chosin Reservoir with the Marines. Other units that followed included the 1st Battalion, 32nd Infantry Regiment, and the 57th Field Artillery Battalion. In the meantime, the remainder of the 32nd Infantry forms a part of the protective line. The ROK I Corps, relieved by the 32nd Infantry, withdraws from the line still held by elements of the 3rd and 7th Divisions at the Songch'on River.

**In the 1st Marine Division zone**, the division command post is established at Masan. The 1st Marine Division is being placed into Eighth Army reserve from X Corps, effective 18 December. The transfer of all units, except VMO-6 and some smaller specialist units, from Hungnam to Masan will be completed by the following day. General O.P. Smith is concerned about his Marines, particularly since they had struggled during the Chosin Reservoir operation, which took a high toll on their physical strength. General Smith, soon after arriving at Masan, informs the commander of Naval Force Far East, Admiral Joy, that the Marines had only enjoyed fresh food on three days since they had arrived in Korea. Admiral Joy reacts quickly by dispatching a refrigeration vessel, which arrives at Masan with 50,000 rations of turkey.

**December 17 Korea-**At Hungnam, the ROK I Corps embarks for Samch'ok, where it is to redeploy as part of the defensive line of Eighth Army. Other units that depart include the majority of troops attached to X Corps headquarters, which embark for Kyongju, where an advance command post is to be established. The 3rd Division elements in the vicinity of the Yonpo airfield prepare to withdraw to the next line of defense, in conjunction with the abandonment of the airfield. Another temporary airstrip in close proximity to the harbor is used to transport the remaining wounded.

**December 18 Korea-**The 1st Marine Division, which sailed from Hungnam on 15 December, is assigned to Eighth Army. The orders from X Corps commander General Almond arrive at Masan at 2240. The Marines previously were assigned to X Corps. The Marines, after arriving in Pusan, had moved about 30 miles to Masan and assembled there while awaiting further orders. At Hungnam, the airfield at nearby Yonpo ceases operations. The final elements to depart are part of the Fifth Air Force. Marine squadrons based there had already moved to Pusan and to a base at Itami, Japan. While in operation during the abandonment of Hungnam, the transport planes there evacuated about

3,600 troops and managed to transport nearly two hundred vehicles. The airmen also evacuated several hundred civilians. Subsequent to the closing of Hamhung and the airfield at Yonpo, the U.S. Navy commences a thunderous ground shaking bombardment that plasters the entire front. Using a couple of cruisers, seven destroyers and several vessels that carry rockets, the navy propels 34,000 shells and 2,800 rockets as a farewell to any Chinese troops observing the withdrawal. At the tail end of the shelling, the USS *Missouri* chimes in with the other ships with its guns bringing finality to the bombardment by contributing 162 16-inch shells.

Meanwhile, along the Hungnam perimeter, relief operations continue as elements of the 3rd

Division take positions along the lower banks of the Songch'on River, while the 7th Division units there prepare to embark for Pusan. During the evacuation of Hungnam, the Chinese, this day intensify their attacks against the perimeter. The enemy contingents that launch the probing attacks are attached to the Chinese 79th Division; however, as the Chinese encroach, it is thought that two other divisions, the 80th and 81st, are also in close proximity. The attacks fail to inflict any severe damage to the lines, although some temporary gains are made against some isolated outposts.

Also, contingents of the ROK I Corps, transported by elements of Amphibious Task Force (TF 90), land without incident at Bukuko Ko in the vicinity of Samch'ok.

**December 19 1950 Korea-In the X Corps sector**, the remaining ground troops at the Hungnam perimeter pull back to the next line. The 3rd Division units initiate relief of the 1st and 32nd Regiments (7th Division). Meanwhile, enemy forces accelerate attacks against the perimeter as it shrinks. In addition to the presence of elements of the Chinese (CCF) 7th Army Group, North Korean units appear in the vicinity. All enemy incursions are turned back as the evacuation of Hungnam continues.

**December 20 1950 Korea-**At Hungnam, the enemy probing attacks of the past few days subside. Large numbers of Chinese remain also in the vicinity of the Changin Reservoir, but there, too, the 1st Marine Division passed earlier without a major confrontation. Within the perimeter, General Almond relocates his headquarters (X Corps) from the city to the USS *Mt. McKinley* in the harbor. The remaining troops along the perimeter covering the withdrawal are placed under the command of General Soule. The ROK I Corps, by this time, has been transported by sea from northeastern Korea to Pusan and in the vicinity of Samch'ok for its new assignment, attachment to Eighth Army. The operation to move the corps by sea places it in position to augment Eighth Army at its new line. The corps is attached to Army and then dispatched to its assigned position. It will complete the move within the next few days. Walker assigns the two divisions of ROK I Corps to the eastern end of the line. Also, elements of the U.S. 7th Division, commanded by Major General David G. Barr, begin to embark for Pusan and complete the operation by the following day. Also, at K-9 airfield, where Marine Squadron VMF-311 operates alongside and under the jurisdiction of Fifth Air Force, seventeen officers and fifty-one enlisted men arrive. The new arrivals increase the squadron to a complement of twenty-seven pilots and ninety-five enlisted men. The task of the jets of VMF-311 is to seek and destroy Chinese troop formations that are gathering for an expected offensive.

**December 21 1950 Korea-** The Chinese in the vicinity of Hungnam still do not mount a major assault against the perimeter as the evacuation continues. As on the previous day, there is no consequential activity by the enemy. Meanwhile, the U.S. 7th Infantry Division continues boarding the evacuation vessels in the harbor. The remaining ground troops further shrink the perimeter under an umbrella of air cover.

**December 22 1950 (Korea)-** By this date, the 1st Marine Division and the 7th Infantry Division have abandoned Hungnam, but the U.S. 3rd Division continues to hold the line against the enemy, which is closing at a slow pace. By the following day, the three regiments (7<sup>th</sup>, 15th and 65th) withdraw to their final line in preparation for evacuation. In the meantime, artillery units and other support contingents are boarding the evacuation transports. Despite the lack of a strong defensive line, the Chinese still initiate no major assaults. Nevertheless, some smaller scale assaults are launched against the line. Engineers work tirelessly to ensure the imminent destruction of everything that cannot be evacuated from Hungnam. The 1st Marine Air Wing units that operated

during the Hungnam redeployment operated from K-9 (VMF-311 Panther jets), an air force field near Pusan; and from Itazuke, Japan (VMF[N]-542 and VMF[N]513). The corsair squadrons operated from the USS *Bataan*, a light carrier (VMF-2;2), the light carrier *Sicily* (VMF-2;4) and the light carrier *Badeong Strait* (VMF-323). In addition, VMO-6 operated from various Seventh Fleet ships during the evacuation of Hungnam.

**December 23 1950 Korea- In the X Corps sector**, at Hungnam, the X Corps perimeter guards shrink the perimeter to the final phase line. Although only the U.S. 3<sup>rd</sup> Division holds the line, still the Chinese and North Koreans fail to mount a major offensive. Some isolated fire strikes the perimeter, but no damage is incurred. This is the final day in which the enemy fires upon the troops at Hungnam. **In the Eighth Army area**, the I Corps and the IX Corps by this time have reached their respective positions along the new line (B), above Seoul. Both corps are responsible for part of the western sector of the line, with I Corps deployed near the lower banks of the Han River and of the Imjin River. IX Corps takes responsibility for the sector covering Routes 3 and 33, in the vicinity of the 38th Parallel. The South Koreans, with responsibility for the eastern part of the line, have encountered heavy resistance as they attempt to advance to their new positions. In addition, the ROKs lack sufficient vehicles to transport the troops. Nevertheless, the five South Korean divisions, Three presently in central Korea and southern Korea and two others attached to the ROK II Corps, fail to reach their respective positions. Walker, aware of the dilemma, reaches deep and brings up the ROK III Corps and two divisions of the ROK II Corps to fill the gap. The ROK III Corps takes positions along the middle of the eastern sector of the line, north of Chunchon and just under Line B, along the 38th Parallel. Their positions terminate near the IX Corps.

Meanwhile, the ROK II Corps, up from South Korea, plugs a gap along Route 24 to prevent the enemy from drilling through central Korea and the Hongch'on River valley to move from there toward the capital. ROK I Corps, recently arrived from X Corps area in northeastern Korea, has also been assigned responsibility along the line. By this day, its two divisions are deployed on the far end of the eastern line, where they establish blocking positions along the east coast road and at several strategic mountain paths. The addition of the seven South Korean divisions on the line provides General Walker some protection on the eastern side of the line; however, he continues to be concerned about their ability to withstand an enemy onslaught. On 23 December, Lieutenant General Walton H. Walker is killed in a vehicular accident outside of Seoul. General Walker is succeeded by Lieutenant General Matthew Ridgway. In the interim, Major General Frank W. Milburn, I Corps' commanding officer, assumes temporary command of Eighth Army.

During the morning hours, General Walker's jeep after departing Seoul to check the situation at Uijongbu, about ten miles north of the capital, encountered a stalled column in the opposite lane heading south. While the driver attempted to pass the trucks, a vehicle being driven by a Korean civilian pulled out and while heading south, his truck wound up in the northbound lane. General Walker's driver made an attempt to evade the oncoming vehicle, but the truck and the jeep collided, causing Walker's jeep to roll over. Afterwards, General Walker and the others who had been thrown from the jeep were aided by the trailing vehicles in the column, but General Walker was declared dead at a nearby facility of the U.S. 24th Division.

**December 24 1950 (Korea)**-The evacuation at Hungnam comes to a close without a major enemy assault. The perimeter remains unmolested by enemy fire. The remnant units withdraw toward the wharfs, while less than ten platoons remain deployed as rear guards. The U.S. Navy provides its guns for added incentive to the enemy to hold fast. Admiral Doyle's warships plaster an area that

stretches inland for about one and one-half miles.

At about 1430, Army engineers and naval underwater demolition units detonate the port, which contains a combination of four hundred tons of ammunition and dynamite, the latter frozen. The gigantic explosion also includes hundreds of barrels of oil and gasoline, as well as about five hundred thousand-pound bombs. Despite the horrific circumstances of the evacuation of the entire X Corps, plagued by nature's elements as well as enemy forces, the operation concludes successfully.

The X Corps, composed of 105,000 troops at Hungnam, is fully evacuated without the loss of a single man to enemy fire. After hearing of the successful operation, President Truman sends a message to General Almond and Admiral Joy, expressing his gratitude:

“This saving of our men in this isolated beachhead is the best Christmas present I have ever had.”

As the final vessels depart, there is still quite a bit of high morale and a sense of sentimentality, as greetings of Merry Christmas are exchanged on this most memorable Christmas Eve. Only a short time ago, while the 1st Marine Division was en route to Hungnam, Christmas was on their minds. As reported by the Marine Corps, the optimistic message circulating through the ranks on one particular day had been: “Only fourteen more shooting days until Christmas.”

After the capture of Chinese prisoners during the following year, the question of why the Chinese did not mount serious opposition at Hungnam began to be answered. Intelligence gathered showed that the high casualties inflicted upon the 9th CCF Army Group by the 1st Marine Division during its withdrawal from northeastern Korea forbid a full-scale offensive. The damage inflicted eliminated a force of three corps of four divisions each, militarily non-effective for a minimum of three months. Unintended consequences, from a Chinese point of view, included the inability of the Chinese to funnel those troops to attack Eighth Army. Major General Oliver P. Smith later said of the 1st Marine Division: “With the knowledge of the determination, professional competence, heroism, devotion to duty and self sacrifice displayed by officers and men of this division, my feeling is one of humble pride. No division commander has ever been privileged to command a finer body of men.”

At Masan, Christmas Eve becomes a big event. The battle-hardened Marines are especially thankful to be alive for Christmas. A group from the 5th Marines appears at division headquarters and sings Christmas carols.

**December 25 1950 (Korea)**-The Americans anticipate a major attack against its positions on Christmas Day; however, it does not occur. By this day, X Corps' evacuation of North Korea is complete. All X Corps troops are either in South Korea or en route. In other activity, the Communists cross the 38th Parallel and re-enter South Korea. **In Japan:** General Matthew Ridgway arrives in Tokyo from the United States en route to assume command of Eighth Army in Korea at about midnight (25th-26th).

**December 26 1950 (Korea) 1950**-General Matthew Ridgway, the newly appointed successor to the late General Walker, arrives at Taegu at 1600 to take control of Eighth Army. General Ridgway starts his tour with disappointment after discovering that his staff (formerly Walker's staff) is so far in the rear. **In Japan:** At 0930 General Ridgway meets with General MacArthur in MacArthur's office in the Dai Ichi Building in Tokyo. The only other person in the meeting is Major General Doyle O. Hickey. MacArthur explains to Ridgway that according to previous

information from General Walker, the Chinese always avoid the roads and attack with terrific fire power during the night hours. The discussion also involved MacArthur's belief that an attack against China by forces already in Formosa (Taiwan) would ease the pressure against Korea, but that Washington opposes such action. Ridgway subsequently notes that General MacArthur displayed no animosity towards Washington for the decision to prohibit the attack. Ridgway also inquired of MacArthur if he had permission to launch an attack. McArthur's response: "The Eighth Army is yours Matt. Do with it what you want." After the private meeting, Ridgway confers with the chiefs of all the general headquarters general sta and two others, Vice Admiral C. Turner Joy (Naval Forces, Far East) and Lt. General George E. Stratemeyer (Far East Air Forces). By about noon, Ridgway departs for Korea.

**December 27 1950- (Korea)**-General Matthew Ridgway, subsequent to the untimely accidental death of Lt. General Walton H. Walker, assumes direct command of the U.S. Eighth Army. Ridgway is flown to Seoul, where he convenes a meeting with his sta and others there before departing to visit each division and corps to acquire first-hand information on the situation among the troops. One area is not on the list, the ROK Capitol Division sector in eastern Korea, as it is not thought to be under threat.

At Seoul, General Ridgway confers with Generals Milburn (I Corps) and Coulter. Ridgway arrived at Kimpo Airfield on a B-17 flying fortress, which followed a circuitous route from Japan and maintained a very low altitude to give Ridgway a good opportunity to observe the layout of the land prior to meeting with the Eighth Army officers (IX Corps) regarding the defensive positions at Seoul.

Ridgway directs the generals to establish a line above Seoul and to select specific contingents to control the heights in the event the Chinese launch an attack. Two divisions will be assigned to the bridgehead there. Nevertheless, precautions are taken to protect the Han River bridges below the city in the event evacuation becomes necessary. General Ridgway anticipates an imminent assault.

In the meantime, he is informed of North Korean activity along the eastern line at Chunchon. U.S. contingents are sped to hot spots to defend against penetration. The 2nd Division is ordered to deploy north of Ch'ungju at Wonju. Ridgway is aware that the 2nd Division had been hit hard recently at Ch'ongch'on, but his grave concern about an attack against a weak right flank compels him to push the 2nd to the limit rather than risk disaster.

Another of Ridgway's concerns is the defensive lines. He requests 30,000 civilian volunteers. By the following day, President Syngman Rhee provides 10,000 and within two additional days, Ridgway has 30,000. The Korean laborers using picks and shovels construct two defensive lines to bolster the defenses against Chinese attack. The line dug to the north is to act as a halting block, but the line south of the Han River is to become the final line, one which is to be held at all costs.

Also, General Ridgway is unimpressed with many of the Eighth Army unit commanders. Rules change immediately, as officers are directed to be at the front with the troops and if they have paper work to complete, it is to be done at night. Ridgway also concludes that the fighting men still have no answer to two basic questions, "Why are we here?" and "What are we fighting for?"

General Ridgway, this same night, pens a response. The message explains that the real estate is unimportant and he explains that the "issues are whether the power of Western Civilization, as God has permitted it to flower in our beloved lands, shall defy and defeat Communism...." He closes: "It has become and it continues to be, a fight for freedom, for our own survival, in an honorable,

independent national existence.” *In the X Corps area*, the U.S. 7th Division, which had abandoned Hungnam on 20–21 December, redeploys at Yongch’ on.

**December 28 1950 (Korea)**-The North Koreans continue to launch attacks against the ROK positions in the ROK II Corps sector. The attack initiated from Inje above the 38th Parallel on 26 December and the penetration continues towards Hongch’ on. At this time, General Ridgway continues to assess the situation by visiting the various defensive positions. Ridgway becomes concerned, not of the courage of the units, rather, of the spirit. Ridgway later describes his impressions, stating that at the time, “Eighth Army was bewildered.” Ridgway focuses on rebuilding a fighting spirit in his troops. Eighth Army is taking steps to prevent a breakthrough to the capital at Seoul. The X Corps is still completing its withdrawal from Hungnam after a prolonged fight and is not yet ready for offensive action. Some elements of X Corps have not yet debarked at Pusan.

*In the 1st Marine Division zone* at Masan, the Marines continue to train and rebuild their skills. At this time, they remain about two hundred miles from the front. The trek to the front, when called, will not include a lot of new vehicles. Only abandoned vehicles are replaced.

Unfortunately, the Marines, upon fighting their way from the Chosin Reservoir, brought out their equipment. Now while the other units that lost or abandoned their vehicles in the field receive new replacements, the Marines must use their bullet-riddled trucks.

Also, General O.P. Smith receives word that he is to journey to Kyongju on 30 December to participate in a X Corps conference. The 1st Marine Division on 27 December was returned to X Corps from Eighth Army reserve. **In Japan:** The first Bell helicopters arrive from the States. They are scheduled to be delivered to the Marine observation squadron in Korea. The Marines have initiated and completed the first “piggy-back” delivery of aircraft that had been flown around one-third of the world in RSDs.

**December 30 1950 (Korea)**-A plane transporting the body of Lt. General Walton Walker departs Haneda Airfield to return the fallen general to the United States. As the year comes to an end, the new Eighth Army commander, General Ridgway, completes a quick sweep of the Eighth Army area that over several days gives him an overview of the situation. Ridgway had concluded that an offensive was not possible. The recent clashes with the enemy had drained morale and the X Corps, including the 1st Marine Division, had just undergone a period of intense combat and was recuperating as temporary reserves. At this time, no accurate estimates of numbers or positions of the enemy is known; however, it is thought that six separate armies of the Chinese XIII Army Group are poised from where they can strike the Eighth Army lines. Defensive steps are taken to block suspected approach routes of the enemy.

The 2nd Division had, on the 27th, received orders to move to Wonju from Ch’ungju, to draw a line protecting an approach route from the northeast. Ridgway left little time for the X Corps to catch its breath. He directed X Corps to speed up its reassembly as portions of the 3rd Division were still in the process of debarking at Pusan. Nonetheless, it will be a while before X Corps in its entirety is redeployed for combat.

In the meantime, on the following day, the 1st Marine Division and the 3rd Infantry are assigned to army reserve. Also, the 23rd Regiment, 2nd Division, moves toward Hongch’ on, about twenty-five miles north of Wonju; however, the recent North Korean progress through the ROK sector places strong points in the path.

The Communists establish a road block in front of Hongch'on. At this time, the ROK 27th Regiment holds Hongch'on. The South Koreans and the U.S. 23rd Regiment combine efforts to eliminate the obstacle. In other activity, the U.S. 3rd Division, after completing unloading at Pusan, moves to a location south of Kyongju. **In the 1st Marine Division zone** at Masan, General O.P. Smith and a small party is flown from Masan to Kyongju to attend a conference at X Corps headquarters. General

Smith is informed that the 1st Marine Division is to redeploy above Taegu at Pohang-dong and prepare to operate in that region about sixty-five miles north of Pusan. However, on the following day, circumstances change and the division receives new instructions.

**December 31 1950 (Korea)**- The Communist Chinese Third Phase Offensive is launched. The enemy force includes at least seven Chinese armies, supported also by the NK I and V Corps. The attack force is estimated at about 74,000 Chinese and 60,000 North Koreans. The number of Communists either in Korea or in Manchuria, poised to enter Korea, is 740,000 troops.

In the area north of Seoul, the 2nd Division continues to form in the vicinity of Wonju to neutralize an ongoing North Korean offensive. The 23rd Regiment advances above Wonju against the North Koreans in front of Hongch'on. In the meantime, the ROK 27th Regiment closes on the roadblock from Hongch'on, assisted also by the ROK 5th Regiment. Progress is made against the obstacle, but it is not totally eliminated.

In related activity, the X Corps' U.S. 7th Division dispatches elements to Chech'on, below Wonju, in an attempt to lay the foundation for a supply system along Route 29. The remainder of the division is to follow and to coordinate with the 2nd Division. Other steps in the works include the two reserve X Corps divisions, the 1st Marine Division and the 3rd Infantry Division.

The Marines, as soon as possible, are to depart Masan and deploy in the region known as Youngch'on-Kyongju-Pohang-dong.

Meanwhile, the 3rd Infantry Division, once prepared is to redeploy south of Seoul, in the P'yongt'aek-Ansong region. General Ridgway's instincts regarding a full-scale attack prove correct. The arc (Bridgehead Line) above Seoul becomes threatened. The earlier North Korean attacks that slipped through the ROK defenses northwest of Hongch'on on the 26th are now being bolstered by Chinese forces, which penetrate the main line of the ROK and advance from the northeast towards Tokchong, through the center above Tokchong and Kap'yonng farther west.

Meanwhile, the Chinese attacks, which had started on the previous day, strike against the I and IX Corps lines, but the U.S. 25th Division does not come under assault and the U.S. 24th Division is met with only light enemy probing attacks. By about midnight, the Chinese attacks intensify against the ROK 1st and 6th Divisions of the I and IX Corps, respectively. As the New Year begins, the combined Chinese-North Korean force pushes towards Seoul **In the 1st Marine Division zone** at Masan, the division is again placed under the jurisdiction of Eighth Army, following only four days with X Corps. The Marines are directed to continue training and rebuilding until advised to move to the Ulchin-Yongju-Yechon axis or to assume responsibility for the primary defensive line. Nevertheless, in less than one hour, new orders arrive instructing the Marines to move to the Pohang-Andong region to halt any enemy intrusions there.

**January 1 1951 (Korea)**-*In the Eighth Army area*, a major Communist offensive begins at midnight (December 31 January 1) and crashes into both the I Corps and the IX Corps perimeters.

All units, except the U.S. 25th Division and the Turkish Brigade (extreme left) and the ROK Capital Division on the east coast, are struck. The attack is launched by elements of the Chinese 38th and 39th Armies, while other Communist forces crash against the ROK III Corps positions. Combined, the attacks stretch across a front of about forty-five miles in an attempt to collapse resistance along the 38th Parallel and then converge upon Seoul.

The Chinese offensive follows an earlier offensive initiated by North Korean units on 26 December. The Chinese intervention during the Chosin Reservoir Campaign threw large forces into the war unexpectedly; however, despite the huge amount of enemy troops engaged, the 1st Marine Division extricated itself at great cost to the Chinese. This offensive also involved a large force, initially about three divisions, with others in reserve. The United States, however, is not caught by surprise and General Ridgway has taken steps to ensure that the mistakes of the initial invasion of June 1950 and the later Chinese intervention does not cause the eviction of the UN from Korea.

By dawn, the enemy makes progress against the ROK 1st Division. The ROK 2nd Regiment is driven from its lines by the Chinese 116th Division. The gap is opened as the 11th and 15th ROK Regiments are unable to hold and they too fall back. Nearby, the ROK 6th Division is hit by elements of the 113th Division and elements of the 116th Division, but it only loses some ground and remains fixed. A U.S. artillery unit, Battery C, 9th Field Artillery Battalion, nearly gets wiped out after the collapse of the ROK 12th Regiment. The artillery troops attempt to reach American lines after the ROK unit flees, but they get snagged in an ambush. The troops relinquish four guns but escape capture or death.

In the meantime, General Ridgway is heading north while observing large numbers of vehicles crammed with ROK troops moving southward. Ridgway's attempt to halt the traffic is fruitless. Upon reaching the front, it turns out better than expected, as most of the 1st and 6th Division had not retreated. During the melee, the U.S. 24th Division is hit hard, but it holds, while the U.S. 25th Division receives only nominal opposition and also remains in place. Rather than risk unnecessary casualties, a counterattack is ruled out by Ridgway and the planned disciplined withdrawal is ordered. In related activity, the ground troops receive no coordinated air-ground support due to an explosion of requests that nearly strangle the system. Nonetheless, about 300 U.S.-U.N. fighter bombers (FEAF) are to strike enemy formations and other targets. Marine squadrons attached to Admiral Ruble's carriers about eighty miles south of Inchon participate in the attacks. VMF-323 strikes an enemy position at a village south of Imjin, while another group strikes enemy positions in front of the central sector of the line. Also, Marine Squadron VMF-212 strikes the enemy along the coastal highway on the east coast during the morning and later pounds enemy positions in the vicinity south of the Hwach'on Reservoir. Afterwards, VMF-212 is ordered to the west coast to support the other two squadrons operating there.

**January 3 1951 (Korea)-** Three Chinese armies now threaten Seoul with their nine divisions and another strong force composed of two additional divisions is nearby, waiting to push forward. General Ridgway directs the X Corps to deploy and assume responsibility for part of Line C (south bank of the Han River). Five divisions are to hold the positions in the vicinity of Route 29. The U.S. 2nd and 7th Divisions and the ROK 2nd, 5th and 8th Divisions spread out in an effort to prevent the enemy from attacking from the vicinity of Chunchon. In conjunction, the 1st Marine Division had been detached from X Corps, following the breakout from the Chosin Reservoir during mid December 1950. The Marine division at that time was attached to Eighth Army as reserve in the vicinity of Masan. While General Almond's X Corps deploys, the ROK III Corps is to stretch

eastward across the mountains towards the ROK I Corps sector. The ROK 3rd Division in the western part of Korea is ordered to move eastward and deploy in the ROK I Corps area near the Capital Division. **In the United States:** The Joint Chiefs of Staff authorize the Marine Corps to add three fighter squadrons to its force, which will bring its number of fighter squadrons to twenty-one.

**January 4 1951 (Korea) In the Eighth Army area,** Fragmentary Operations Plan 20 is issued as an order, which calls for a withdrawal to Line D (extending from the west coast at P'yongt'aek to Samch'ok, on the east coast. General Ridgway had not anticipated such a quick withdrawal; however, intelligence reveals that Communist forces have been converging at points between Suwon and Wonju, creating a threat based on the possibility that the enemy might be able to penetrate between the I and IX Corps forces and the X Corps units at Wonju. The move is initiated during the evening and is completed by 7 January.

**January 8 1951 (Korea)-In the Eighth Army area,** General Ridgway establishes two new lines, E and F, as the discussions about whether the UN forces, primarily the U.S., will abandon Korea. Line E is established about twenty-five miles below Line D, while Line F is drawn about sixty-five miles to the rear of Line D. The next line, known as the Raider Line, forms a semi-circle about twenty miles to the front of Seoul and the final line of defense is the Peter Line (previously Pusan Line).

General O.P. Smith, USMC, is called to Taegu to meet with General Ridgway. They discuss the possibility of attaching one Marine RCT to X Corps, but Ridgway does not insist. General Smith, reluctant to again serve with Almond (since his experience from the previous year), returns to Masan to discuss the subject; however, shortly after he returns, the idea is scrapped. A new plan is offered, suggesting the entire division move to prepare to defend the MSR in the Andong and Kyongju region. On 10 January, the 1st Marine Division departs Masan for Pohang.

**January 10 1951 (Korea) In the 1st Marines zone** at Masan, OpnO 2-51 is issued in conjunction with OpnO 1-51 of the previous day. The order authorizes the division's movement to Yongch'on by road and water, to be in position to plug the gap where the enemy had penetrated the ROK III Corps on the 2nd Division's right. At 0545, the vanguard of RCT-1 departs overland for the Pohang-Andong region.

The 1st Marine Division has replenished much of its equipment, but the division remains nearly 1,900 men short of its full complement. The shortage of Marines has been a concern of General O.P. Smith, but the Marine Corps and Navy speed the gears and scramble to fill the ranks. Marines are snatched from security detachments in Japan, the Philippines and other Pacific stations, while others are gathered at Camp LeJeune and Camp Pendleton. By 21 January, 1,000 replacements have joined the division and another 799 aboard the *General Darby* are about to debark at Pusan. The task of finding and relocating nearly 1,800 Marines and getting them to the 1st Marine Division had been a remarkable achievement and exhibited the extraordinary cooperation of the U.S. Air Force, Navy and Marines.

**January 11 1951 (Korea)-** The weather remains nasty, but improves slightly. Far East Air Forces and Fifth Air Force are able to resume air strikes against enemy positions in support of the ground troops. In the 1st Marines zone at Masan, the LSTs 898 and 914 embark with elements of the Tank Ordnance, Engineer and Service Battalions, as part of the operation to relocate the 1st Marine Division to the Pohang-Andong region. The operation is completed by 17 January.

**January 15 1951 (Korea)-** General Collins, USA, and General Hoyt S. Vandenberg arrive in Korea to confer with General MacArthur and inform him of the president's views regarding the evacuation

plans. MacArthur is told to stall as long as possible to protect Eighth Army and that in addition to evacuating the ROK Army, all South Korean government officials and the entire SK police force is to also be evacuated. After the conference, Collins and Vandenberg move to Korea to confer with General Ridgway at Taegu. General Collins, afterward, speaks to the press in an effort to quell rumors with regard to the possibility of abandoning Korea. He states: "As of now, we are going to stay and fight." **In the Eighth Army area**, since 1 December of the previous year to this day, Eighth Army has been compelled to relinquish about 200 miles. It is the largest surrender of ground in such a short period in the history of the United States. The results have devastated morale; however, General Ridgway remains convinced that the leadership problems, as well as the discipline of Eighth Army, can be restored to transform the troops into a victorious army. An exception is the 1st Marine Division. Ridgway concurs with General O.P. Smith that the Marines, despite a horrendous 13-day fighting withdrawal at the Chosin Reservoir, have high morale and that they have lost none of their fighting ability.

**January 16 1951 (Korea)**-Marine Fighter Squadron VMF-311, which has been experiencing mechanical and other problems, is grounded. The jets had been operating, but not adequately. VMF-311 is the solitary Marine jet squadron in Korea. Marine Fighter Squadrons 323 and 214, aboard the USS *Badoeng Strait* (CVE 116) and the USS *Sicily* (CVE 118) move to Itami, Japan. **In the 1st Marines zone** in the Pohang–Andong region, the division command post is established at Sinhung.

**January 18 1951 (Korea)**- In the Eighth Army area, *X Corps sector*, patrols continue to search for North Korean forces, but on this day, no complete contingents are encountered. The opposition is confined to small groups, signifying the effectiveness of the X Corps patrols. **In the 1st Marine Division sector**, the Marines move out from the Pohang-dong–Andong–Yongdok region on a search and destroy mission against the North Korean guerrillas and the N.K. 10th Division. The defensive

perimeter includes the town of Pohang, about 65 miles north of Pusan, along the western shore of Yongil Man, a bay within the defensive perimeter, about five miles above the command post at Sinhung. Pohang contains two jetties with ten feet of water alongside to provide a place for landing craft to debark troops and equipment. The line swings out from Pohang to Yongch'on and then begins to circle through Uihung, Ulsong and Andong, from where it swings back towards the coast at Yongok, north of Pohang. The primary task of the Marines is to keep the 75 mile stretch of the MSR from Pohang to Andong clear.

However, the new sector assigned to the 1st Marine Division encompasses 1,600 square miles, much of which is mountainous terrain. By this date, the N.K. 10th Division is within several miles of Andong and intelligence has ascertained that guerrilla operations are ongoing as far west as Tanyang and as far south as Taejon, which threatens the MSR of the I Corps. Nevertheless, the Marines search much terrain; however, up to this point, there is only sporadic contact with any considerable enemy forces.

In one instance on this day, a patrol of the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, comes upon a group of N.K. troops east of Andong, but the soldiers flee with Marines in pursuit. Most escape, but three are captured and identified as members of the N.K. 27th Infantry, 25th Division, which had been devastated during the Inchon operation of the previous September. Subsequent to its rehabilitation, the division, now led by Major General Lee Ban Nam, is engaged in guerrilla operations.

With the capture of the three enemy troops, the enemy division, which had been concealing its location, has been discovered. Consequently, the mission is terminated before a strike could be launched against the rear of X Corps.

**January 22 1951 (Korea)**-Marine Squadron VMF(N)-513, which had arrived from Japan to replace VMF-311 jet squadron, executes its initial combat mission from K-9 field. Squadron VMF(N)-513 had been based at Itazuke, Japan, until transferred to replace the jets at Pusan, which had engineering problems. **In the X Corps sector**, little contact is made with the North Koreans. In the 1st Marine Division sector, the situation is identical. The Marines' clearing operation continues for more than two weeks, but without any intense contact with the enemy. On this day, a patrol of the 1st Battalion, 1st Marines, discovers a guerrilla contingent attempting to conceal itself southeast of Andong, in the vicinity of Mukkye-dong. The Marines sustain no casualties during the engagement. The Communists vanish into the darkness. **In Japan:** The airfield at Bofu is prepared to begin operations. Lieutenant Colonel Paul J. Fontana, USMC, establishes the MAG-33 command post.

**January 23 1951 (Korea)**- *In the Eighth Army area*, General Henry I. Hodes, chief of staff to General Ridgway, directs General Almond to ensure that X Corps maintains contact with the IX Corps at Yoju to keep the pressure on the enemy and prevent them from operating south of the Yoju-Wonju Road. The directive is in conjunction with an offensive that is ordered by Ridgway, scheduled to be executed on 25 January. In other activity, the NK 10th Division (NK II Corps) is ordered by the corps commander, General Choe, to cease its offensive and attempt to retire toward P'yongch'ang. The order is issued with a stipulation that if the division is unable to backtrack, due to the X Corps' blocking its path northward and the 1st Marine Division scouring the area below, the unit is to initiate guerrilla tactics. The beleaguered North Koreans begin to move northward, faced with the task of evading both X Corps patrols and the Marines. On the following day, the remainder of the enemy corps also initiates a retreat. Intelligence reports that the majority of the enemy forces are located in the area below Seoul near Route 20 and farther north and east along the Han River. In related activity, VMF-212, aboard the light carrier USS *Bataan*, is the only Marine squadron operating at this time. While scouring the west coast and providing cover for the 1st Marine Division since the 16th, the squadron detects Chinese forces entrenched along the coast as far back as sixty miles from the lines. The discovery indicates that the enemy has learned lessons from Inchon, and exposes their apprehension about the Marines' ability to execute amphibious landings. Three of the planes had been hit by small arms fire on the third day of operations and one of the planes, piloted by Captain Russell G. Patterson, Jr., was downed. Patterson crashed behind enemy lines; however, a daring helicopter rescue saved his life. One other pilot, Lieutenant Alfred J. Ward, was shot down and killed on the following day. Marine Squadron VMF-312 is able this day to begin missions against Seoul from its refurbished field at Bofu, Japan.

**January 24 1951 (Korea)** **In the Eighth Army area**, General Partridge, acting as pilot, and General Ridgway initiate a reconnaissance flight. After two hours, the pair discover no large enemy formations in front of the I Corps, headquartered at Ch'onan. After the flight, Ridgway concludes that his forces will be able to take ground and hold what they have when an offensive begins on the following day. In other activity, the North Korean II Corps ceases its unsuccessful offensive and begins its withdrawal towards P'yongchang. The offensive had begun on 7 January and four divisions (2nd, 9th, 27th and 31st) had sustained more than about a fifty percent casualty rate, including those caused by the weather. In addition, the N.K. 10th Division, which had advanced

farther south toward Andong, also sustains extremely high casualties. Meanwhile, Eighth Army prepares for an offensive (Operation THUNDERBOLT), scheduled to commence on the following day. In the 1st Marine Division sector, Communist guerrillas that had been attempting to operate in the zones of the 1st and 5th Marines on this day venture southeast into the zone of the 7th Marines. During the afternoon, the positions of Company A and the 1st Battalion command post at Topyong-dong come under mortar fire. *In Naval Activity*, Rear Admiral I.N. Kiland (COMPHIBPAC) relieves Rear Admiral J. H. Doyle, commander Amphibious Group I, of the operational command of Amphibious Forces, Far East (TF 90). Also, Marine Corsairs remain in the air over two downed pilots to protect them until a rescue helicopter arrives. In Japan: The 1st Marine Air Wing increases activity at Bofu airfield. General Field Harris establishes his headquarters. Shortly thereafter, VMF-214 and VMF-323 arrive from Itami, Japan, to join with VMF 312, which had commenced operations on the previous day.

**January 25–April 2 1951-FOURTH DESIGNATED CAMPAIGN-FIRST U.N. COUNTEROFFENSIVE.**

**January 25 1951 (Korea)**-At K-9 field near Pusan, VMF(N)-513, which has been flying in support of Eighth Army, gets its first request to support the 1st Marine Division ground forces in the Pohang region. **In the 1st Marine Division sector**, one day following a mortar attack, the command post of the 1st Battalion, 7th Marines, is attacked by a contingent of about 100 guerrillas. The Communists lose seven killed after an exchange that lasts about one and one-half hours. **In the 7th Marines zone**, the 3rd Battalion, supported by a contingent of National Police, engage the enemy in the Chiso-dong area. Initially, nine of the enemy are killed, but as the battalion moves to take Chiso-dong, the resistance holds and the battalion is forced to halt for the night. In the meantime, artillery continues to pound the enemy positions. Marine squadrons VMF(N)-513 and VMF-323 receive calls to support the attack, but due to the inability to communicate with the forward air controller, the sorties are not effective. **In Japan** Marine Squadron VMF(N)-542 receives orders at Itazuke to support the Eighth Army advance. The F7F pilots of the squadron are directed to make the long flight of about 200 miles and after arriving, maintain non-stop patrols near the Han River to ensure the Communists cannot retire across the frozen river unobserved. The Marine aviators pound enemy formations and convoys; however, they report no large numbers of enemy troops attempting to retire across the river. While in support of the advance, the squadron gets tapped to spot targets for the U.S. and British cruisers that are bombarding Inchon.

**January 26 1951 (Korea)**-Marine Squadron VMF(N)-513 executes forty-nine combat missions between this day and 31 January. The missions include 110 sorties, but of these, only ten are in support of the 1st Marine Division. **In the 1st Marine Division sector**, the Marines continue to maintain patrols in search of an elusive enemy. The guerrillas do not hold the confidence of the Korean civilians and often when spotted by the villagers, the information is passed onto the Marines. In addition, the North Korean guerrillas are not properly equipped nor supplied to carry out an extensive guerrilla operation. The Marines, although not often calling for VMF squadrons for support on this type of mission, depend on VMO-6 to aid in the search for the Communists. The OY observation planes scour the hills and once an enemy contingent is spotted, helicopters are used to keep the Marines supplied while they give pursuit. **In the 1st Marines zone**, TF Puller, led by Colonel Lewis B. Puller, is dispatched to Chongja-dong, less than ten miles northeast of Uisong, in a rapid response to a Korean police report that several hundred enemy troops had taken the village. Artillery plasters the village prior to a planned assault set for 1500. Company A enters the

village, but discovers no enemy, only an abandoned village. In conjunction, on this same day, Colonel Puller is promoted to brigadier general. Colonel Francis M. McAlister succeeds him as commander, RCT 1. **In the 7th Marines zone**, the attack from the previous day is reinitiated to advance one more mile to seize Chiso-dong. Artillery and more effective air strikes support the Marines against the defending force of about 400 troops. Chiso-dong falls to the Marines by 1530. The air strikes led by VMF-323 (Captain Don H. Fisher and VMF(N)-513 (Captain Floyd K. Fulton) are the first flights to succeed with air to ground cooperation since the Chosin Reservoir Campaign of the previous year. In other activity, the 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines, seize Hapton-ni, about eight miles southeast of Topyong-dong. The Communists, after being evicted, mount a failed counterattack and for the day's action, sustain 161 casualties, either killed or captured.

**January 27 1951 (Korea)**- At airfield K-1, outside Pusan, Colonel Boelcer C. Batteton, USMC, establishes the MAG-12 command post, but the runway remains incomplete for about two additional weeks. In the meantime, the Marine squadrons of MAG-12 continue operating out of nearby K-9 airfield. **In the United States:** The Marine Corps decides to appoint about 500 master sergeants, warrant officers and commissioned warrant officers to the rank of temporary second lieutenant to bolster the Marine Corps leadership during the ongoing Korean conflict.

**January 28 1951 (Korea)**-By this date, all Marine tactical squadrons are in action for the first time since the previous December. The great majority of flights originating at Bofu in Japan and K-9 at Pusan are diverted from reconnaissance missions to support the ground troops. Marine Squadron VMF-3;2, out of Bofu, Japan, receives a message that enemy troops north of the Suwon had concealed themselves in a small village. Through the direction of a Mosquito plane, the Marines plaster the suspected location and destroy about forty structures.

**January 29 1951 (Korea)**-**In the 1st Marine Division sector**, a report of a large North Korean force spotted in the vicinity of Chachondong is received at the 5th Marines. A force is mounted to find and destroy the enemy; however, no contact is made. Additional information given to the Marines by South Korean police indicate that the guerrillas are planning to invade the village to confiscate food. In other activity, the 1st Korean Marine Corps Regiment, recently attached to the 1st Marine Division, establishes a command post at Yongdok, which is in the area covered by the 7th and 5th Marines. The South Koreans receive a new sector, F, which is created out of sectors C and D, held by the 7th and 5th Marines respectively. Their section of responsibility stretches along the Yongdok–Andong Road and includes the villages of Pongdok, Chaegok-tong and Chinandong. The 1st Battalion is assigned the western portion of Sector F, while the 1st Battalion deploys in the central sector and the 2nd Battalion is assigned the eastern portion of the sector. In conjunction, the 5th Battalion is attached to the 1st Marines and directed to deploy and patrol in the area around Andong. The regiment does not have a 4th Regiment due to the fact that the Korean word for 4th and death is identical and by the Koreans “4th” is considered a word associated with bad luck.

**January 30 1951 (Korea)**-**In the 1st Marine Division sector**, the Marines await a raid by North Korean guerrillas, expected to hit Chachon-dong in the 5th Marines zone. The Marines had been informed of the raid and had on the previous night set up an ambush by concealing themselves throughout the village. Nevertheless, at dawn, the enemy fails to arrive.

**January 31 1951 (Korea)**-*In the 1st Marine Division zone*, the search for the enemy continues, but with little success, as the North Korean guerrillas are less than anxious to engage the Marines. Meanwhile, the locals still provide no assistance to the Communists, which makes their task more

difficult and they are unable to easily acquire food. **In the 1st Marine Division zone**, the search for the enemy continues, but with little success, as the North Korean guerrillas are less than anxious to engage the Marines. Meanwhile, the locals still provide no assistance to the Communists, which makes their task more difficult and they are unable to easily acquire food.

**February 1–6 1951 (Korea)-In the 1st Marine Division sector**, information from the 7th Marines begins to circulate that the 5th Marines are to expect elements of the NK 25th and 27th Regiments, which are in flight in front of the 7th Marines. The 5th Marines prepare a welcome and deploy, while anticipating a decisive engagement to eliminate the foe during the early days of February; however, the North Koreans disappoint the 5th Marines. The guerrillas approach Topyong-dong and swing northward to evade the 5th Marines. The guerrillas move right into the waiting arms of the 1st Marines, specifically, the 2nd and 3rd Battalions. The Marines close the clamps tightly with the added support of the Korean Marines as the latter (2nd and 3rd Battalions) establishes blocking positions on the escape routes near Sango-ri and Paekcha-dong. The remnant enemy forces scatter and move only in small groups to avoid total destruction. On 5 February, the North Korean guerrillas encounter the Korean Marines southwest of Yongdok. The Korean Marines, commanded by Colonel Kim Sung Eun, at the request of the 7th Marines, establish blocking positions. One platoon of the 2nd Battalion, Korean Marine Regiment, encounters the Communists at their entrenched positions. The Koreans, after encountering enemy mortar fire and machine gun fire, begin an undisciplined retreat after abandoning their equipment and weapons. The Koreans lose 1 killed, 8 wounded and 24 missing in action. The missing troops later show up minus their weapons. No U.S. Marines participate in the action, which becomes the sole engagement that ends in a success for the guerrillas. On the following day, the Korean Marines attack in battalion strength with the support of four planes of Marine Squadron VMF(N)-513; however, again the guerrillas escape after raising some minor initial resistance.

**February 2 1951 (Korea)-In the 1st Marine Division sector**, the Marines continue to search for enemy forces while maintaining control of the MSR, with most of their focus on the stretch between Andong and Yongchon. Meanwhile, between shortages of food and supplies, combined with the relentless pressure of the Marines, the North Koreans continue to evade the Americans. Large groups of Communist forces are not encountered in the sector, but the patrols continue.

**February 3 1951 (Korea)-In the 1st Marine sector**, a patrol of RCT-7 unexpectedly encounters a North Korean 2nd lieutenant who surrenders, along with three of his men. The lieutenant offers information that exposes exactly how bad things have been going for the guerrillas and how the various units are seeking to survive rather than to engage the Americans. In addition, the officer explains that the North Korean commander of the guerrillas, Major General Lee Ban Nam, has been essentially a recluse, spending his time by himself in foxholes in the heights. On 23 January, another Communist had been captured and papers he was carrying instructed the North Koreans to attempt to break out of the encirclement and make it back to positions in the north. Meanwhile, conditions remain poor for those units unable to escape, particularly knowing they were on their own with no chance of resupply or reinforcements.

**February 4 1951 (Korea)-Air attacks** ordered by General Ridgway after four days achieve only nominal results against the enemy. In fact, by 5 February, a new Chinese division (114th) arrives in the IX Corps sector. **In the 1st Marine Division sector**, the 7th Marines receive some unusual assistance in their quest to catch and destroy or capture the North Korean guerrillas in their zone. An R4D aircraft, with an interpreter aboard, spots a large group of Koreans and through the use of

a loud speaker aboard the plane, the interpreter, speaking in Korean, urges them to surrender immediately or expect an attack. About 150 begin to surrender by walking with their hands in the air. Those who choose not to surrender are attacked. Marine squadron VMF-323 is called upon and soon after, the group is hit hard with bombs, rockets and napalm; however, it is soon determined that the Koreans had not been soldiers; rather, civilians, as they explain, who were swept up and used as forced laborers by the guerrillas. The plane had actually spotted them as they were in the process of escaping from the Communists.

**February 5 1951 (Korea)**-In the 1st Marine Division sector, General O.P. Smith has concluded that his Marines have completed the mission in the Pohang region. He responds to a request from General Ridgway as to the time in which the mission will be complete. General Smith informs General Ridgway that the 10th NK Division units in the Marine sector have been sliced down to a strength of about forty percent. He also states that the force is no longer capable of mounting a major attack and that the Marines' mission is essentially complete and awaiting a new assignment.

**February 6 1951 (Korea)**-General Thomas J. Cushman, USMC, assistant commanding general, 1st Marine Air Wing, advises the commanding officer, General Harris, that the K-1 airfield at Pusan is nearly complete and will be able to accommodate one squadron on 8 February and an additional one on each succeeding day. In conjunction, K-3, near Pohang, when completed, is scheduled to be the permanent base for MAG 33, but K-1 is to be used in the interim.

**February 8 1951 (Korea)** Marine Squadron VMF-323 arrives at K-1 from Japan. It will be followed by VMF-214 on the 9th and VMF-312 on 10th. The squadrons are scheduled to move again to K-3, near Pohang, once it is finished.

**February 11 1951 (Korea)**- General O.P. Smith, USMC, arrives in Taegu to confer with General Ridgway with regard to the next mission to be assigned to the Marines. Several possibilities are discussed and Ridgway proposes relieving the 24th Division at the Han River, at the Yoju corridor in the IX Corps sector, and redeploying on the east coast in the event an amphibious landing is required. No decision is reached. However, Ridgway makes it clear that he has confidence in the Marines' ability.

By day's end, the Chinese launch their offensive (fourth phase) in the 2nd Division sector, and by the following morning, as Ridgway had mentioned, the Marines find themselves being ordered to the center of the hornets' nest at the rear of IX Corps, where the brunt of the attack is being felt. The ongoing offensive, which has carried Eighth Army to the Han River and put the Chinese to flight, causes more complications in Washington. There are differences of opinion on whether to push beyond the 38th Parallel; however, the powers to be, including the Pentagon and the State Department, are in agreement with the British and French that the strategy should be to halt at the 38th Parallel and negotiate with the Communists to terminate the war. In contrast, General MacArthur believes it necessary to continue the attack and he is adamantly opposed to the UN policy of giving the Communists a free, untouchable sanctuary in Manchuria.

**February 12 1951 (Korea)**-The Chinese offensive that unfolded northeast of Wonju at about midnight continues to gather steam. In the 1st Marine Division sector, orders arrive from Eighth Army headquarters that instruct General O.P. Smith to prepare to move out of the Pohang-Andong region and redeploy in the rear sector of the IX Corps to galvanize the lines there where the Chinese are making their strongest thrust. General Smith is also directed to dispatch reconnaissance units to the Chungju region. In conjunction, the 1st Korean Marine Regiment is detached from the 1st

Marine Division and attached to the ROK Capital Division, which is deployed on the east coast at Samch'ok.

**February 13 1951 (Korea)**-General MacArthur arrives in Korea and confers with General Ridgway. It is decided that Chipyeong-ni in the X Corps sector will be held. It remains clear that the I and IX Corps are to hold the line at the Han River. In other activity, the 1st Marine Air Wing is nearing completion of its consolidation of all units to Korea. At K-1, near Pohang, Lieutenant Colonel Fontana establishes the MAG-33 command post. The squadrons temporarily at K-1 are directed to move to K-3. In the meantime, the support units are en route from Japan. Also, the jets (VMF-311) that had been grounded due to engineering problems during early January are back in operating condition and their arrival from Japan is imminent. Also, by the end of the month, the all weather Marine Squadron VMF(N)-542 will be based at K-1 near Pusan; however, VMF(N)-533 will operate from K-1. Another group, the Headquarters Squadron (photo pilots), is in the process of transferring from Japan to K-1. In the 1st Marine Division sector, departure orders arrive from Eighth Army that instruct the Marines to depart for Chunju, in the rear of the IX Corps on 15 February. **In Japan:** The Photographic Unit, 1st Marine Division, transfers from Itami Air Force Base to Bradshaw Air Force Base at Pusan. The photographic unit will work in conjunction with the 15th Troop Carrier Squadron.

**February 15 1951 (Korea)**- The Chinese continue their counterattack against the central front. They drive southeast in force from the IX Corps sector to the X Corps front and isolate the 23rd Infantry Regiment, 2nd Division. **In the IX Corps sector**, General Ridgway designates IX Corps with Operation KILLER, designed to eliminate the Chinese and terminate the counterattack. **In the X Corps sector**, the 5th Cavalry continues to move to rescue the isolated 23rd Regiment, 25th Division, at Chipyeong. Meanwhile, the defenders receive some unexpected help. Planes that could not come on the previous day had concluded their mission at Wonju and now arrive to support Colonel Freeman's exhausted troops. Marine and Navy planes plaster the enemy positions by executing more than 30 close-support sorties. Colonel Freeman, the commander of RCT 23, convinced that the threat is now under control, agrees to be airlifted out of the area. Colonel Chiles assumes command. More supplies arrive when transport planes from Japan drop the desperately needed ammunition. However, some of the parachutes drift into enemy territory. Subsequent attempts to extricate the supplies take a toll as enemy fire inflicts casualties. All the while, the Chinese hold strong positions in front of the advancing 5th Cavalry. Colonel Crombez concludes that his force will fail to reach Chipyeong before dusk. He decides to send armor with infantry atop, a controversial decision. At Chipyeong, Colonel Chiles urges Crombez to continue to advance even if it is impossible to bring the vehicles. The column moves out at 1545 and soon after, at Koksū, enemy fire halts the advance. The infantry (Company L, 3rd Battalion) bolts from the tanks to find safer positions, while the tanks work to silence the enemy.

Meanwhile, the tanks are ordered by Crombez to plow forward, but without informing the attached infantry. Chaos follows as the bewildered infantry troops watch tanks leave. Most are able to jump aboard, but others are left stranded. Later, about one mile up the road, the enemy again commences heavy fire and halts the column. The infantry repeats itself and jumps from the tanks to get out harm's way. Soon after, the infantry seeks cover, and the tanks again dash forward, leaving the infantry on its own. Those who are able jump aboard the armor, but a large number—including the 3rd Battalion commander, Colonel Edgar J. Treacy misses the ride.

Those who catch the train soon find themselves prime targets, as the Chinese continue to bring the armor under attack. The infantry, having only their uniforms as armor, cling haphazardly to the tanks as they charge through the fire. Finally, at about 1700, the battered armor and weary survivors of the infantry arrive at the perimeter, just about the time the 2nd Battalion, 23rd Infantry, 2nd Division, is launching a counterattack. The siege is lifted, but the cost is high.

Company L, which had been with the armor, stands at 23 men out of 160 that began the advance. Of the 23, 3 are wounded. One tank had been destroyed and only its driver survived (with serious burns). The stranded infantry had been told that the tanks would return for them, but no relief force is sent.

Later, many of the troops make it back to friendly lines; however, the cost remains high with 2 killed, 40 wounded and 9, including Colonel Treacy, missing. Colonel Crombez had refused Treacy permission to join the relief column, but Treacy jumped aboard anyway, refusing to let his troops undertake such a dangerous mission without him. It is later learned that Treacy had been captured and died from his wounds in captivity.

At Chipyong, the 23rd Regiment sustains 52 killed, 259 wounded and 42 missing. Charles Parziale replaces Treacy as commander, 3rd Battalion. **In the X Corps sector**, the U.S. 7th Division is ordered to speed a contingent (31st Infantry Regiment) from the vicinity of P'yongch'ang to the rear of the ROK 5<sup>th</sup> Division to bolster Chech'on, held by the 32nd Infantry Regiment. To further strengthen the line there, the 7th Infantry Regiment suspends its advance along Route 29 toward Wonju and deploys to the rear of the ROK 3rd Division.

In other activity, the British 27th Brigade continues to advance along Route 24 against nominal resistance, as it attempts to reach Chipyong. At Chipyong, RCT 23 continues to hold, but the Chinese maintain extraordinary pressure against the entire perimeter. The defenders had received supplies by air on the previous day, but again, the ammunition is nearly expended.

The Chinese, however, are unable to overwhelm the steadfast combat team. The most desperate sector is held by the 2nd Battalion, 23rd Regiment. A new counterattack is launched to restore the lost ground, but the strength of Company B, Freeman's last reserve, is insufficient. The attack fails to regain the ground. At about 1,200, Air Force and Marine planes arrive to strike the Chinese positions.

Later, the Chinese are compelled to disengage. At about 1630, while the planes and artillery maintain a constant attack, tanks are spotted by RCT 23's tanks and to their jubilation, it is a relief column under Colonel Crombez. As the tanks begin to converge, the enemy retires and the flight provides a large amount of targets for the U.S. Crombez's contingent sustains 3 killed and 4 wounded (armor) and Company L sustains 2 killed, 40 wounded and 19 missing. Chinese casualties, estimated by RCT 23, amount to more than 4,900. TF Crombez estimates about 500 casualties inflicted upon the Chinese during the trek to reach Chipyong-ni. The Chinese had committed elements from about six regiments to the unsuccessful assault to reduce Chipyong-ni. RCT 23 reports 52 killed, 259 wounded and 42 missing. **In the 1st Marine sector**, the operation in the Pohang-Andong region known as the guerrilla hunt officially terminates this day. The division begins to move to Chungju in the IX Corps sector; however, the 1st Marine Division remains under Eighth Army rather than IX Corps control. During the period covering the operation (18 January to 15 February) the Marines successfully complete all objectives, including keeping the MSR clear. For the same period, Marines sustain 19 killed in action, 149 wounded in action, 7

who later die of wounds, and 10 missing. In addition, the Marines sustain 1,751 other non-battle casualties, primarily frostbite.

The Marines had essentially knocked the 10th N.K. Division out of action and prevented it from achieving any success. The Marines count 120 enemy dead and another 84 are seized as prisoners, but no estimates are available for enemy wounded.

**February 18 1951 (Korea)-In the Eighth Army area,** General Ridgway during the latter part of this day declines a recommendation by his staff to hold in place and establish a defensive perimeter. Ridgway is unwilling to even consider canceling the offensive and affording the enemy an opportunity to retire in leisurely fashion. Eighth Army is ordered to remain on the offensive. During the meeting with his staff, Ridgway informs them that the 1st Marine Division will anchor the attack as part of IX Corps. **In the I Corps sector,** there is no contact with either the North Koreans or the Chinese. The 25th Division sees some action in support of the IX Corps drive. By day's end, it becomes apparent that the Chinese and the North Koreans are abandoning South Korea. It is a significant accomplishment for Ridgway, who, since he assumed command of Eighth Army, has believed his troops could prevail. The victory also proves the theory of Ridgway and others that the Communists could not drive Eighth Army from Korea. It is estimated that since the previous October, Eighth Army, including the 1st Marine Division and the supporting air and naval units, had decimated about fourteen Chinese divisions. And Ridgway had accomplished the tremendous turnaround in less than sixty days. In the IX Corps sector, at 0745, the I Corps commander, Major General Bryant E. Moore, informs General Ridgway that one of his regiments (5th Infantry, 24th Division) has reported its front, east of Mugam, to be wide open with no enemy in the way. All fortifications encountered had been abandoned; however, the enemy had apparently departed hurriedly, as many weapons remained, and they had also abandoned large amounts of cooking equipment. The reports are passed on to other units and warnings of a ruse are sent out, but similar encounters occur all across the line, indicating the enemy is in the process of a general withdrawal. Meanwhile, the 1st Cavalry Division, supported by the British 27th Brigade, and the ROK 6th Division advance towards the heights overlooking the Wonju-Seoul railroad line at a point several miles northwest of Chip'yong-ni. The troops are ordered to form a line to prevent the enemy from entering the Han River Valley. Reconnaissance probes on the previous night discovered that enemy resistance had begun to vanish except for an obstacle west of the river. The Chinese had evacuated their positions in the hills and apparently too fast to consider taking their dead along. The U.S. advance is effortless at the abandoned positions. About 600 dead remain on the field. Large amounts of ammunition and supplies had also been left behind.

The U.S. 24th Division expands the offensive and drives towards Hajin by pushing through the bridgehead, but the entire IX Corps had been ordered to attack by General Moore. The corps is also supported by elements of the I Corps. Its 25th Division advances through the western portion of the bridgehead. Great progress is made throughout the day. The Chinese raise only some sporadic resistance. Opposition throughout the central region dissipates. By 1800, the Han River, near Yongp'yong, is reached by elements of the 24th Division, while the 1st Cavalry arrives to deploy in the Hajin-Chipyong area.

Also, after being directed by General Ridgway to move from Pohang-dong, the 1st Marine Division (minus 7th Marines) arrives at Ch'ungju and prepares to spearhead the IX Corps drive when Operation KILLER commences. In conjunction, the Marines replace the 2nd Division and the 187th Airborne RCT in the vicinity of Wonju. The relief permits the U.S. Army units to rejoin X Corps

on the 21st, when the boundary is modified to bring Wonju into the IX Corps jurisdiction. In the X Corps sector, there is no contact with the Chinese or North Koreans.

**February 19 1951 (Korea)** *In the Eighth Army area*, General Ridgway arrives at IX Corps headquarters at Yoju to meet with General Bryant Moore and other staff officers, including Generals O.P. Smith and Lewis B. (Chesty) Puller, both of the 1st Marine Division. General Ridgway continues to work on Operation KILLER, scheduled to commence on the 21st. Ridgway is not totally sure of the combined strength of the Chinese and North Koreans, but best estimates from Intelligence place the opposition at about 6 to 7 new Chinese armies and four North Korean corps (plus, three armies and one corps in reserve). Also, during the conference in which X Corps attended, the 1st Marine Division learns it is being detached from X Corps and placed under IX Corps control. General O.P. Smith (1st Marine Division) had not been receptive to again serve under General Almond (X Corps), since his experience with him in the previous year during the Inchon–Chosin Reservoir campaign. The Marines also learn that two army units, the 74th Truck Company and the 92nd FABn, are being assigned to the 1st Marine Division for added support.

The Marines need no introduction to the 92nd FABn. Under the leadership of Lt. Colonel Leon F. Lavoie, its guns had provided welcome support during the Chosin Reservoir operations. Although the Marines will spearhead the attack, they will be supported by the entire IX Corps and X Corps, except for the 187th Airborne RCT. The Marines are directed to drive northeastwardly from Wonju and liquidate as many of the enemy as possible during Operation KILLER.

**February 20 1951 (Korea)**-General MacArthur arrives in Korea from Japan. He confers with General Ridgway in the X Corps sector at a forward command post near Wonju. Ridgway doesn't particularly appreciate the conference, as MacArthur's appearance acts as an automatic signal to the enemy that an offensive is underway. MacArthur announces that the offensive had been ordered by him, yet he had no part in it. **In the 1st Marines sector**, the focus is on last minute preparations for the advance by the 1st and 5th Marines scheduled for the following morning at 0800.

**February 21 1951 (Korea)**-By this date, the Communist salient at Chech'on is eliminated, which foils their attempt to turn the Allied flank. Operation KILLER commences. The offensive (IX and X Corps) moves against the enemy east of the Han River and south of Line Arizona, which runs from the vicinity of Yangp'yong stretching across Route 29 at a point several miles above Hoengsong and across Route 60, at a point about six miles above P'yongchang. In the IX Corps sector, the units advance up Route 29. **In the 1st Marine Division zone**, General Puller, the assistant division commander, concerned about the 5th Marines' possible delay in reaching the line of departure in time for the attack, contacts General O.P. Smith to inform him of the snarled traffic on the highway. Smith and General Bryant Moore (IX Corps) at the Marine command post at Wonju deliberate and conclude that the attack will commence on time, with whatever troops are on line. However, the delay causes the jumpoff time to be changed to 1000. The advance to seize the ridgeline several miles south of the heights that dominate Hoengsong is led by the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines. The elements provide most of the resistance as the Marines move under pesky rain, unending mud and slush, but no close range resistance. During the latter part of the afternoon, the enemy engages the Marines, but from great distance. After two fire fights, the enemy retires. The Marines sustain three men wounded. They establish night positions and spend a most uncomfortable night in water-drenched foxholes. During the early morning hours, the ground remains frozen; however, by afternoon it begins to thaw, causing havoc. In addition to the normal problems associated with nature, the thawed ground exposes land mines that become active and deadly once

the ice thaws. The 2nd Division, attacking on the right of the Marines, commences its assault on the 22nd.

**February 22 1951 (Korea)- In the Eighth Army area,** Operation KILLER continues against sporadic resistance. The offensive continues to be impeded by the elements. **In the IX Corps zone,** the 1st Marine Division continues its advance with the 1st Battalion, 1st Marines, acting as vanguard. Similarly to the previous day, again the elements become the primary problem impeding the attack. The enemy continues to retreat and raises opposition only from long range.

**February 23 1951 (Korea)-** Operation KILLER continues, but progress remains slow. The condition of the roads interrupts the supply system; however, planes bolster the drive and drop supplies to maintain the efficiency of the offensive. While the ground troops continue to advance in search of the enemy, engineers work tirelessly to repair the roads and the bridges that had been affected by the elements. About 800 sorties (Fifth Air Force) are flown in support of the advance. **In the IX Corps sector,** 1st Marine Division zone, the Marines finally encounter opposition. The 1st and 2nd Battalions, 1st Marines, advance together to seize two elevations along a ridge in front of the objective. Marine air support requested on the previous day to bolster the attack does not materialize; however, the artillery provides sufficient punch. The Marines eliminate the resistance and gain the first hill. During the afternoon, they move to evict a contingent of about battalion-strength from deeply entrenched positions on the remaining hill. The assault is augmented by two air strikes. The hill is seized and 61 enemy dead are counted. The Marines lose 1 killed and 21 wounded. **In the X Corps sector,** the 2nd and 7th Divisions encounter stiff resistance en route to Chipyeong-ni. Urgent calls for air support go out and soon after, the call receives a response. Planes, including Marine Squadron VMF-312, arrive and the Chinese positions are pounded during the afternoon raids.

**February 24 1951 (Korea)-In the IX Corps sector,** the helicopter transporting Major General Bryant E. Moore during Operation KILLER crashes in the Han River. General Moore and his pilot sustain no major injuries. However, less than one hour after the crash, General Moore suffers a heart attack and succumbs. General Moore had only recently assumed command of IX Corps. He is temporarily replaced by General Oliver P. Smith, USMC. Also, during the crossing of the Chech'on River, one of the tanks strikes a mine and a steel fragment strikes Colonel Cesidio Barberis, the commander of the 2nd Battalion, 9th Infantry Regiment. Although he isn't killed, Barberis is critically wounded and evacuated. He is replaced by Colonel Peter F. Bermingham. **In the 1st Marine Division zone,** the 1st and 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines, drive forward and seize the intended Phase 1 objectives. Following an artillery barrage and an air strike, an infantry patrol (1st Marines), supported by one tank, moves into Hoengsong. Afterwards, a platoon of tanks and Company C, 1st Battalion, 1st Marines, enters the village, but the Chinese in the nearby heights to the west initiate mortar and machine gun fire. Two tanks sustain slight yet damaging hits, as their antennae are severed. Nevertheless, the Marines modify their strategy and by the use of a runner, Captain Wray is able to coordinate the enemy's positions. They are soon eliminated by the tanks.

In the meantime, Chinese are spotted by an aerial observer who informs the battalion commander, Lt. Colonel Schmuck, that the Chinese are maneuvering to ambush the patrol as it begins to move deeper into the town. The patrol is ordered to withdraw. Planes are called upon to blast the Chinese as they attempt to set up the ambush. Captain Wray's contingent moves northwest of the village to a spot known as "Massacre Valley," the scene of a recent ambush of a U.S. Army truck convoy. The survivors are retrieved.

Later this day, enemy fire originating in the high ground northwest of Hoengsong causes problems and kills one Marine and wounds four others. The 2nd Battalion, 11th Marines, returns fire and terminates the enemy fire. By dusk, all divisional preliminary objectives are achieved.

In other activity, General Lewis B. Puller assumes command of the 1st Marine Division in place of General O.P. Smith, who receives temporary control of IX Corps.

**February 25 1951 (Korea)**-Operation KILLER continues; however, the main advance is suspended temporarily by General Ridgway to await resupply of ammunition and fuel as well as supplies. The entire operation is not halted, thanks to air drops of supplies. Once the supplies are at the front, the attack to the main objective, Phase Line Arizona, resumes. The IX and X Corps maintain the offensive, but the elements remain nasty. In other activity, General Ridgway issues orders for the second phase of Operation KILLER, to begin on 1 March. **In the IX Corps sector**, the ground Marines are disgruntled because they are receiving mostly Air Force support instead of their usual close-air support by Marine squadrons. The 1st Marine Air Wing is under Fifth Air Force jurisdiction and as the advance continues, the U.S. Army and the British units request Marine fighter squadrons. On Feb. 23, the third day of Operation KILLER, the Marine squadrons flew 101 of the 800 sorties. Marine pilots are known for flying support missions just above the helmets of the ground troops if necessary. Also, the weather impedes the advances of the 1st Cavalry Division and the 24th Division, each advancing on the Marines' left. The Commonwealth Brigade, which replaced the 7th Cavalry, hits severe resistance east of Chipyeong. Elements of the Australian and Canadian Battalions attempt to eliminate the obstacles, but the Chinese repel the attempt.

**February 26 1951 (Korea)** General Ridgway unfolds his plan known as Operation RIPPER during a meeting with the commanders of the I, IX and X Corps at Changhowon. The operation is to commence on 10 March; however, the date is later changed to 7 March. Although there had been much discussion in Washington on why Eighth Army should not attempt to cross the 38th Parallel, Ridgway's plan had been accepted by the Joint Chiefs of Staff. The operation is intended to liquidate as many Communists as possible to disrupt their plans, if any, about launching an offensive. Another part of the operation is to regain Seoul. Also, the Combat Cargo Command continues to overwork its crews and planes to deliver more than 600 tons of supplies and 1,193 passengers to keep the offensive moving. On the previous day, the planes had delivered nearly 500 tons of supplies and just over 1,000 passengers. **In the IX Corps sector**, the 1st Marine Division prepares for the next phase of the operation. While it holds its positions at Hoengsong, the next objective is within sight of the troops that observe the hills to the north of the village. The Marines face a river crossing, without the benefit of a bridge nor engineers to construct a bridge. They also must push their way forward to relieve the ROK 6th Division at the point prior to fording the river. Nevertheless, they improvise. Major (later General) Edwin H. Simmons (Weapons Company) pulls out a manual on how to construct a "Swiss bent bridge." Simmons hands the book to Sergeant Carmelo J. Randazzo. Randazzo becomes the engineering expert and by dark of the 28th, the bridge is complete in two parts. One length stretches 120 feet to a sandbar and from the sandbar to the opposite bank, the span stretches 60 feet.

**March 1 1951 (Korea)**- General Ridgway again holds a meeting with his corps commanders at Changhowon to update the plans for Operation RIPPER. The date is changed from 10 March to 6 March; however, the offensive actually commences on 7 March. Later this same day, the operation orders are officially issued. The designated lines are Albany, Buffalo, Cairo and Idaho. **In the IX Corps sector**, some units continue to advance to reach the Arizona Line, but they face no heavy

resistance. The Chinese 39th Army is deployed to the front of IX Corps. In the 1st Marine Division zone, the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, moves across the new bridge built by regular Marines under the supervision of Sergeant Randazzo. The attack force vanguard advances to the heights north of Hoengsong, with the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, trailing. The Marines' arrival on the west bank of the river had been announced by a tumultuous artillery bombardment. In addition, planes arrive, but behind schedule, to deliver air strikes. The 2nd and 3rd Battalions, 7th Marines, hit resistance. Initially the 2nd Battalion encounters small arms fire and afterward, both Battalions enter an area that is booby-trapped, which stalls the attack. The Chinese remain deeply entrenched and the artillery is unable to evict them. By the middle of the afternoon, it is decided to halt the drive until the following day. In related activity, the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines, east of the river seizes Hill 208 and afterwards, joins with the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines. In other activity, General Puller informs General Shepherd, commander, Fleet Marine Force Pacific, that Marine close-air support is non-existent and repeated requests go unanswered. He further explains that Navy and Air Force planes arrive and do a good job, but not the same as would be accomplished with Marine pilots. The message is sent in hope of getting back to direct Marine support rather than Joint Operations Center for Fifth Air Force.

**March 2 1951 (Korea)**-Although most of the IX and X Corps had reached the objectives along the Arizona Line, other units are continuing to advance towards it. **In the IX Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the advance continues, but while the Communists remain well entrenched in the heights, the Marines trek across rocky ground. The 11th Marines' artillery catapults streams of shells into the enemy positions, but they are not dislodged.

**March 3 1951 (Korea)**-In the IX Corps sector, the Marines close upon the Arizona Line. At dawn, the final objectives come into sight as the Marines gaze north towards the five enemy-held hills along Phase Line Arizona from west to east, Hills 536 and 533 in the path of the 7th Marines, and Hills 321, 335 and 20j in that of the 1st Marines. The 7th Marines attack is met with fierce resistance at Hills 536 and 333. The 1st Battalion is called upon to cover the left flank of the regiment and simultaneously support the assault against Hill 536. At Hill 333, the enemy holds steadfastly against the 3rd Battalion. At dusk, the summits of both hills remain in enemy hands. In the 1st Marines zone, at Hill 32j, the Chinese are abandoning their positions as the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, approach. The Marines overcome the resistance without much effort, but the unit still sustains casualties due to the trek across the nasty terrain. In the meantime, Hills 335 and 20j are secured. By the following day, the 1st Marines executes mop-up operations, while the 7th Marines prepares to mount another assault to take the summits of Hills 536 and 333.

**March 4 1951 (Korea)**-**In the IX Corps sector**, General William M. Hoge, USA, arrives at Yoju to assume command of IX Corps. On the following day, he replaces General O.P. Smith, USMC, the temporary commander. Smith returns to resume command of the 1st Marine Division. In turn, the temporary commander, General Puller, resumes his duties as assistant division commander. **In the 1st Marine Division zone**, subsequent to an artillery bombardment, the 7th Marines, at 0800, launches an attack to gain the crests of Hills 536 and 333. The only resistance encountered is the rear guard. The main body had evacuated the area during the night. The 1st Marine Division, having eliminated the five hills along the Phase Line Arizona, achieves its objectives to terminate its part of Operation KILLER by dusk. However, mop-up operations continue on the following day. The 1st Marine Division during the eight days of the operation sustains 48 killed, 345 wounded and 2 missing. The Marines are unable to count all of the enemy dead, because often, when time allows,

the Chinese bury their dead before abandoning the area. The Marines however, count 274 dead and they have seized 48 prisoners.

**March 5 1951 (Korea)**-The date for the commencement of Operation RIPPER is 6 March; however, there is concern that the ammunition supplies are not yet sufficient to ensure all units have ample amounts. The operation is postponed for one day in order to acquire more supplies. **In the IX Corps sector**, Major General William J. Hoge assumes command of the IX Corps succeeding the temporary commander, General Oliver P. Smith, USMC. General Joseph Swing, the initial selection by Ridgway, is unavailable. The U.S. Army refuses to release him from his post at the Army War College. General Ridgway had received heat from various sources for selecting General Smith to command an army corps, but he did not acquiesce. Nevertheless, General Smith did find some humor in the way the army rushed to find a permanent commander.

**March 6 1951 (Korea)**-**In the IX Corps sector**, all units by this time reach the Arizona Line or have advanced to positions close to it.

**March 7 1951 (Korea)**-By this day, Operation KILLER achieves only some of its objectives and falls short of liquidating all of the enemy forces below the Arizona line. Nevertheless, IX Corps reports 7,819 enemy killed, 1,469 wounded and 208 captured. In the meantime, the enemy continues to withdraw from its positions. Operation RIPPER commences at 0545 with a massive artillery barrage that rings enemy positions north of the Han River until about 0615, when the guns switch to targets deeper in the enemy's territory. The offensive is designed to continue to eliminate as many enemy forces as possible. The seizure of territory is not a primary part of the operation. Naval task forces have been bombarding enemy positions since the previous month and they continue to operate. In addition, the U.S. Navy has commenced several diversionary operations to feign an amphibious attack. The ultimate objective of the offensive is the Idaho Line to the east is along the Han River, less than ten miles from Seoul. From there, it stretches across a portion of the eastern sector of the I Corps sector until it reaches a point near the 38th Parallel.

The attack, which is also supported by Fifth Air Force, is planned to advance in phases to a group of lines, Albany, in the vicinity of Hongch'on, slightly more than ten miles in front of the I, IX and X Corps; Buffalo Line, in front of the I and IX Corps and the Cairo Line, which concerns only IX Corps and signified the gateway to Ch'unch'on.

As usual, General MacArthur arrives in Korea, but in line with the request of General Ridgway, his arrival occurs later in the morning, which permits the offensive to jump off without the enemy getting a premature signal from MacArthur's presence. While at Suwon, MacArthur, at a press conference, mentions the possibility of a stalemate in Korea. His remarks reflect his displeasure with Washington, which does not agree with his plans, including permitting the Nationalist Chinese to invade the China mainland and a huge number of U.S. reinforcements. **In the 1st Marines zone**, the initial objective is slightly more than five miles distant, just beyond Oum Mountain, but no map is required, as its towering peak is visible from the line of departure. During this offensive, the Marines are en route to reintroduce themselves to the Chinese 66th Army, commanded by General Show Shiu Kwai. The 7th Marines and the 1st Marines on the left and right respectively advance abreast against light resistance.

Meanwhile, the 5th Marines remains in reserve, confined to patrols in the vicinity of Hoengsong. The Hoengsong-Hongchon Road that curves through Kunsama Pass actually parallels the boundary separating the 7th and 5th Marines. During the advance, the Marines are jubilant; the sky is full of MAG-33 squadrons, which more than makes up for an unusual decrease in artillery support due to a shortage of shells. By day's end, all objectives are achieved. The Marines sustain 7 men wounded in action during the advance. Elements of the 2nd Division (X Corps) accompany the Marines and search for troops that had been killed during February (Operation ROUNDUP).

**March 8 1951 (Korea)-In the IX Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the 7th and 1st Marine Regiments resume the attack and again become jubilant when MAG-12 Marine squadrons are spotted overhead during the trek. The 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, accompanied by Company A, 1st Tank Battalion, encounters some stiff resistance, but it does not last too long. The 11th Marines pinpoint the area and initiate an artillery barrage that terminates the resistance, again raised by rear-guard troops entrenched mostly in log bunkers.

As the 7th Marines advance, Company A encounters fierce resistance originating on a hill mass to the left of Oum San, several hundred yards distant. Two men of the 2nd Platoon are killed and several others, including Lieutenant Clayton Bush, the platoon leader, are wounded when their positions sustain a direct hit from a high explosive shell. The 1st Platoon takes over and with the support of tanks, the enemy is evicted from the hill. The Marines' system to root them out seems to work well. Initially, the resistance is struck by napalm and then fire from the tanks' 90-mm shells, just prior to the close-quartered assault, when the Marines close and toss hand grenades into the bunkers. By dusk, the Marines reach their assigned zones.

**March 9 1951 (Korea)-In the IX Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the Marines suspend the advance to await the army units on the right to move up and come abreast. The 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines, establishes blocking positions, while the 1st and 7th Marines dispatch patrols on the flanks in search of the enemy.

**March 10 1951 (Korea)-** Operation RIPPER continues to push ahead against some enemy resistance, but it is compelled to frequently give ground. Large numbers of Chinese and North Koreans are converging on the area above the 38th Parallel. General Ridgway establishes a command post at Yaju. In addition, he directs Eighth Army headquarters to move from Taegu to Chongju, to conspicuously show the advance is permanent. **In the IX Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the Marines maintain patrols, but the advance remains on hold. In conjunction, to the rear, the Marine service moves up to the vicinity of Hoengsong.

**March 11 1951 (Korea)-** Enemy resistance, which has often been heavy since the opening of Operation RIPPER, diminishes. This permits huge gains all across the front. In the IX Corps sector, elements of the corps begin to arrive at the Albany Line. Other units follow during the next two days. The attack to reach the second line begins on 14 March. **In the 1st Marine Division zone,** the advance is resumed after the Reconnaissance Company, reinforced with a platoon of tanks, relieves the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines. The Communists continue to withdraw as the Marines move forward. Resistance in front of the advance remains light, but at Hill 549, a patrol from the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, unexpectedly comes under heavy fire. Tanks accompanying the patrol return fire from a distance of about fifty yards, while Marines gnaw forward and from close range, five enemy bunkers are blasted with hand grenades. The patrol, which initially loses one man killed and nine wounded, withdraws. The 11th Marines then plaster the hill to finish destroying any remaining bunkers.

**March 12 1951 (Korea)-In the Eighth Army area,** General Ridgway holds a press conference at his recently established command post at Yaju. Ridgway proclaims that an Eighth Army offensive to regain the 38th Parallel would be a momentous victory and would ensure that the Communists' thrust had been halted, essentially accomplishing the goal of the U.N.

Also, U.S. planes on reconnaissance missions observe large numbers of enemy troops as they move away from Seoul. Although it isn't a definite sign, it is thought by the Americans that the

Communists are preparing to abandon the South Korean capital without a fight. After dark, patrols from I Corps move across the Han River and discover some enemy positions along the river that have been abandoned. By dusk, the 1st Marine Division, the 1st Cavalry Division and the 24th Division are in positions along the Albany Line. **In the IX Corps sector**, the 1st Marine Division advances and in most instances merely occupies ground, as the enemy has retreated. Also, the recovery unit of the 2nd Division, which has been moving with the Marines since the 7th, has retrieved the remains of more than two hundred and fifty troops, primarily from Support Force 21. In addition, the troops recover five operable 155-mm howitzers, thought to have been destroyed by planes when the unit retired. The operation also recovers four of six tanks that had been lost and six M-5 tractors. General Ridgway had arrived in the Marines' sector during the morning and after departing, he had his pilot fly him over the recaptured area in Massacre Valley near Hoengsong where elements of the 2nd Division (Support Force 21) had been devastated the previous February.

**March 13 1951 (Korea)-In the IX Corps sector**, the 1st Marine Division continues to occupy positions against no resistance along the Albany Line. The IX Corps advance (First Phase, Operation RIPPER, March 7–March 13) reports enemy casualties as 6,413 killed in action and 216 captured. The IX Corps' casualties are reported as 158 killed, 965 wounded and 35 missing in action.

**March 14 1951 (Korea)-Operation RIPPER** initiates Phase Two. Eighth Army drives towards the second line, Buffalo. **In the IX Corps sector**, Hongchon becomes the objective of the 1st Cavalry Division and the 1st Marine Division. The town is secured on the following day and afterwards, the respective forces deploy along the Buffalo line outside the village in position to hold Route 29, which moves northwestwardly towards Chunchon and Route 24 through the Hongch'on River valley.

Also, the 1st Cavalry, operating on the west, moves against Hongchon, while the 1st Marine Division drives against it from the east through the treacherous Oum Mountains. The Marines reach a point several miles outside Hongchon, but after the exhausting trek, they establish night positions rather than continue the drive. Meanwhile, the 1st Cavalry had arrived at the river just west of the village by mid-afternoon. The enemy raises fierce resistance that continues into the 16th and beyond.

**March 15 1951 (Korea)-By this date**, the offensive has accounted for more than 7,100 enemy dead; however, the Chinese and North Koreans continue to withdraw, making it difficult to greatly increase the numbers and thoroughly liquidate the Communists forces. In other activity, the 1st Marine Air Wing by this time is authorized to fly forty sorties per day in close support missions for the 1st Marine Division. Also, Marine Squadron VMF(N)-542 is at about this time heading back to the Marine base, El Toro, California, to be transformed into an all-weather jet (F3D) squadron. Other changes include VMF(N)-3;2 relieving VMF-212 on the USS *Bataan*. Meanwhile, VMF-212 moves to K-3 at Pohang. General Ridgway, having Seoul back in the hands of the UN, decides to exploit the Communist retreat by expanding the offensive and moving farther north to the Imjin River. The I Corps plays a larger part in this operation, which becomes known as Operation COURAGEOUS in place of Operations KILLER and RIPPER. **In the IX Corps sector**, The Marines hit stiff resistance at a ridge slightly east of Hongchon. While the Marines eradicate the opposition, a contingent, the 1st Battalion, 7th Marines, seizes the town at about 200 without incident. The 1st Battalion commander, Major Webb D. Sawyer, dispatches a patrol through the demolished village in search of remnant Chinese forces, but none are found. The town was

unoccupied, however, bombs dropped earlier by planes of the Far East Air Force were set to detonate when touched. As the patrol moves back, one jeep is damaged when it detonates a "Butterfly" bomb. Later, while specialists (Company D, 1st Engineer Battalion) work to eliminate the bombs, the battalion moves through and deploys in the heights just northeast of the village. The bomb-clearing operation lasts for three days. The 1st Cavalry Division remains at the Hongchon River until the remainder of the Marine force moves beyond the opposition on the ridge to join it and reinitiate the advance. Later, General Milburn (I Corps) is directed by General Ridgway to deploy in the high ground just outside the city. Milburn chooses the heights about two miles west of the capital that stretch across the ridge containing Hill 348. Lincoln Line, links with the Buffalo Line in the sector held by the 25th Division. A section of the line is to be held by the 3rd Division; however, the larger part is held by the ROK 1st Division, with the South Koreans receiving responsibility for Seoul and the U.S. holding the lesser portion east of Seoul.

General Ridgway also instructs Milburn to not fortify with full strength; rather, to deploy one battalion, bolstered by some tanks. The South Koreans are instructed to deploy one regiment. Instructions are also delivered that insist that no attack be initiated. Ridgway explains that the present task is to shadow the enemy retreat. In other activity, the enemy raises fierce resistance east of Hongchon against the Marines. Following daylong fighting, the enemy abandons its positions after dark.

**March 16 1951 (Korea)-In the IX Corps sector**, the Marines prepare to eliminate the obstacles east of Hongchon that have impeded their progress. The enemy raises stiff resistance that lasts for the next two days. In the meantime, the 1st Marines encounter heavy resistance north of Hongchon. At 1230, the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines, drive against Hill 428, but at dusk, despite air strikes by VMF-214, the Chinese still control the hill and continue to fire from concealed mortar positions. After dark, the Chinese abandon the hill.

Meanwhile, the 7th Marines attack toward Hill 399. The 1st Battalion methodically moves from bunker to bunker eliminating the defenders by lobbing hand grenades into the entrenchments. Also, in the corps' western sector, the ROK 6th Division and the U.S. 24th Division encounter nominal resistance near the Hongchon River and the Chongp'yong Reservoir. In the 1st Cavalry area west of Hongchon, the enemy continues to hold and offer furious resistance. Nevertheless, the corps receives orders to advance. The ROK 6th Division is ordered to move to positions close to the 1st Cavalry to positions, which causes the Chinese to become concerned about their flank. The 1st Cavalry is directed to drive from the river to the Buster Line to place it near the 24th Division along the Buffalo Line. The new position stands about five miles distant. At the conclusion of the advance, the cavalry is aligned to the Marines who hold on the Buffalo Line, the right side of the corps' sector. The 24th Division is ordered to advance and cross the Pukham River on the left side.

**March 17 1951 (Korea)**-During the offensive (Operation RIPPER), General MacArthur arrives in Korea from Japan. He is met by General Ridgway at Suwon and from there they both fly to Wonju in the 1st Marine Division sector. MacArthur and Generals Ridgway and O.P. Smith, riding in a jeep, visit various units on the front. **In the IX Corps sector**, enemy resistance still impedes the 1st Cavalry Division in the region near the Hongchon River. The enemy defends strongly, but the Chinese also mount counterattacks. All units advance, but only the cavalry encounters heavy

resistance. The ROK forces and the Marines driving on the left hit only sporadic opposition.

**In the 1st Marine Division sector**, the 1st Battalion, 7th Marines, continues to mop up at Hill 399, which had fallen after a tough fight on the previous day. In other activity, MacArthur, while in Korea this day, arrives at the command post of the 7th Marines. Also, the 1st Marine Division receives orders to mount an attack toward Line Buffalo. The attack force is to be composed of the 5th Marines after the unit passes through the positions of the 7th Marines and the 1st Marines.

**March 18 1951 (Korea)**-General Ridgway maintains a close eye on the field operations during Operation RIPPER. After analyzing the accumulation of facts collected by intelligence, air observation and information from captives, Ridgway directs the I, IX and X Corps to dispatch reconnaissance patrols into the region between the Hwach'on Reservoir and the east coast. **In the IX Corps sector**, the entire corps advances. The 24th Division, which had crossed the Han, joins with the ROK 6th Division, the 1st Cavalry Division and the 1st Marine Division. The momentum swells, but the Chinese withdraw further. After assessing the situation, General Ridgway orders the IX Corps to maintain the attack and seize Chunchon. **In the 1st Marine Division zone**, the 5th and 1st Marines advance against only sporadic resistance and make good progress during the trek to the Buffalo Line.

**March 19 1951 (Korea)**-**In the IX Corps sector**, the ongoing advance continues to make excellent progress and by overwhelming scant rear-guard actions, the units reach the Buster-Buffero Line towards the latter part of the day. Meanwhile, the Chinese continue to pull back rather than raise concentrated resistance. The largest prize of the day falls to the ROK 6th Division. A contingent of the 2nd Battalion, 2nd Regiment, acting as the spearhead, surprises a battalion-sized unit just above the Hongchon River. The Chinese battalion sustains 232 killed after the ROKs launch a three-pronged attack. The Chinese also lose much equipment; however, only two of the enemy force are captured. In conjunction with General Ridgway's orders of the previous day, General Hoge directs his corps to advance to the next line, the Cairo Line. The drive will place the 1st Cavalry Division within striking distance of the objective, Chunchon. In the 1st Marine Division zone, the attack continues against minimum resistance, mostly some sniper fire and mortars, except in the path of the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines. As the 2nd Battalion advances, enemy fire originating on ridges west of Hill 330 compels Fox Company to halt. While the battalion pauses to prepare strategy to eliminate the fire, a tank platoon (Baker Company, 1st Tank Battalion) moves forward and directs their fire effectively. The Marines, using the tanks'90-mm shells as a diversion, scurry along the ridgeline and take out the bunkers with grenades so quickly that the Communists had not yet recovered from the tank fire. The Marines sustain no casualties. Afterward, they establish night positions on Hill 330.

**March 21 1951 (Korea)**- **In the IX Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the 1st Marines and the 5th Marines press forward on the right and left respectively, with the Korean Marines moving up the center. The enemy raises fierce resistance against the Korean Marines as they advance in an area that lacks roads. Airdrops keep the force supplied, and it receives outstanding artillery support, but still, it is a hard-fought advance that continues until the morning of the 24th.

**March 22 1955 (Korea)** **In the 1st Marine Division zone**, the 1st and 5th Marines encounter only light resistance, primarily by North Koreans who apparently are acting as rear guard for the Chinese 39th and 66th Armies, which continue to retreat ahead of the Marine attacks. In related activity, the 1st Korean Marine Regiment presses ahead against tenacious resistance at Hill 975.

**March 23 1955 (Korea)**-Eighth Army initiates a major offensive designed to advance to positions at the Imjin River. Washington had been sending mixed signals regarding a re-crossing of the 38th Parallel, including private reports not to cross due to diplomatic talks and public statements that the choice is up to MacArthur. MacArthur had confined movements, but on this day, he informs Ridgway to disregard his recent orders and to attack in force beyond the 38th Parallel. In other activity, General Ridgway modifies the Benton Line, stretching it to reach Chunchon, where the 1st Cavalry occupies a patrol base, and from there to the IX Corps' right, where the ground is held by the 1st Marine Division. The extension links the Benton Line with the Cairo Line. Ridgway has blueprinted the advance to include bringing I Corps from the Lincoln Line at Seoul to the Imjin River, which would stretch Eighth Army's line slightly less than ten miles from the 38th Parallel, from Munsan to Chunchon (west to east). **In the 1st Marine Division zone**, the units continue to come up on the Cairo Line, but the center of the advance handled by the Korean Marines' 2nd and 3rd Battalions continue to be blocked at Hill 975.

**March 24 1951 (Korea)**-General MacArthur arrives in Korea from Japan to confer with General Ridgway. Before departing for the meeting, MacArthur issues a statement indicating that he is willing to hold a conference with the Communists to initiate a cease-fire. The statement includes MacArthur's opinion that the Chinese were not going to prevail in Korea. His statement causes consternation in Washington. President Truman, awaiting information on the ongoing operation, had prepared a speech, timed to the U.S. drive to the 38th Parallel. The Communists accept MacArthur's statement with disdain. MacArthur's position pushes him farther from President Truman. Word arrives from the Joint Chiefs of Staff for MacArthur to report to them if he receives a response from the Chinese, but none is actually anticipated. In the meantime, Truman moves toward replacing MacArthur. General Ridgway extends the Cairo Line from its end in the right of the IX Corps sector, held by the 1st Marine Division, to the east coast at Chosan-ni. **In the IX Corps sector**, the 1st Korean Marine Regiment overcomes the resistance at Hill 975 and afterwards forms along the Cairo Line. Also, the 24th Division continues to advance to the right of the 25th Division (I Corps) en route to the 38th Parallel.

**March 25 1951 (Korea)**-General of the Army Douglas MacArthur authorizes the U.N. forces in Korea to cross the 38th Parallel, if it becomes necessary for tactical purposes.

**March 26 1951 (Korea)**-**In the IX Corps sector**, late in the day orders arrive instructing the corps to continue to advance to the Benton Line. **In the 1st Marine Division zone**, orders arrive to move to a new Cairo Line, but it actually an extension of the present line to the boundary between the IX and X Corps.

**March 29 1951 (Korea)**-I, IX and X Corps continue to advance to their final respective positions to bring Operation RIPPER to a conclusion. No major enemy resistance is encountered. The NK I Corps remains elusive while it withdraws to positions beyond the Yesong River.

**March 31 1951 (Korea)**- The U.S. crosses the 38th Parallel for the second time. Operation RIPPER is complete. The UN forces are on the Idaho Line and all geographical objectives have been gained. The offensive does not eliminate as many enemy troops as expected, because the Communists

continue to withdraw rather than engage in a major confrontation. Nonetheless, the advance, which gained a minimum of twenty-five miles, has brought the U.S. forces back to the 38th Parallel. The operation also regained the South Korean capital. From 7 March until this day, Eighth Army reports that 4,800 Chinese and North Koreans had been captured. In addition, it is reported that enemy casualties had been extremely high. Elements of the 5th Regiment (24th Division), formed as an infantry-armor contingent, encounter opposition and a brisk firefight ensues. The Communists sustain more than 30 killed during the confrontation.

**April 1-21 1951 (Korea)**- During this period, while the Chinese continue to mount their forces for an offensive, they string out troops along mountain tops to maintain a vigil for approaching planes. As part of the strategy, the Communist sentinels fire shots to signal the arrival of the aircraft. In addition, the Chinese plant dummy trucks and tanks near anti-aircraft guns. As the planes close to attack, they come under heavy fire. During this period, the Marine squadrons lose sixteen planes. Two of the pilots are able to survive by either crash landing or parachuting into friendly lines, but nine are killed and one other is captured. Three other Marine pilots are rescued behind enemy lines and one other crashes in enemy territory, but makes it back to friendly lines.

**April 1 1951 (Korea)**- Operations RUGGED and DAUNTLESS are initiated. The mission continues until 22 April. The offensive is designed to drive beyond the 38th Parallel and make inroads, while several possibilities about the next phases of the conflict linger. The U.S. and U.N. remain concerned that Russia will enter the conflict with supposed volunteers from Mongolia. Ridgway and MacArthur both conclude that the conflict will not terminate in total victory, rather, by stalemate. Consequently, the offensive is to push north to gain ground prior to a cease fire.

As Eighth Army prepares to launch the offensive, it is known that the Communists also are preparing to initiate an offensive, but intelligence is unable to determine exactly when. Precautions are taken to repel an offensive by redeploying various units to protect Seoul and other strategic targets. The primary objectives of the Eighth Army offensive are the towns of Ch'orwon and Kumhwa, located in the south, and the town of Pyongyang in the north. The layout of the three targets above the 38th Parallel forms a triangle and the area is soon dubbed the "Iron Triangle."

Ridgway designates the first phase line, Kansas. It is drawn in the west from the lower bank of the Imjin River and it stretches eastward passing over the routes to the objectives and continues beyond to the Hwach'on Reservoir. From the reservoir, the line is adjusted to shift northward to a point about ten miles from the 38th Parallel, before tailing off in a southeastwardly direction to terminate at the coast in the vicinity of Hwach'on. The advance is supported by large numbers of Korean reserves who transport supplies on their backs. About 5,000 reserves acting as porters are attached to the advance. **In the I and IX Corps sector**, I Corps is directed to work with IX Corps to gain and clear the area that stretches between the Imjin River to the western tip of the Hwach'on Reservoir. **In the 1st Marine Division zone (IX Corps)**, the orders change. Rather than reverting to reserve, the Marines are directed to continue the attack with two regiments, the 1st and 5th, and to relieve the 1st Cavalry Division (7th Marines attached).

**April 2 1951 (Korea)**-Eighth Army continues to prepare for the initiation of Operation RUGGED, designed to advance beyond the 38th Parallel to the Kansas Line, en route to what becomes known as the "Iron Triangle." After Eighth Army reaches the Kansas Line, General Ridgway has a blueprint in place to redeploy particular units to prepare against an enemy counterattack, while IX and X Corps (Operation DAUNTLESS) continue the advance to the primary objective, for the

purpose of disrupting the enemy rather than conquering the territory. The phase lines drawn for the operation are known as the Utah Line and the Wyoming Line. A secondary plan includes a pull-back by the two corps to the Kansas Line if the Communists launch a counterattack. The offensive commences this day; however, it doesn't actually accumulate full steam until 5 April. **In the IX Corps sector**, the 1st Marine Division is ordered to go into reserve in the vicinity of Hongchon; however, the 5th Marines and the 1st Korean Marine Regiment are directed to continue the attack.

**April 3 1951 (Korea)**-General MacArthur again arrives in Korea from Japan as Operation RUGGED (the advance to the Kansas Line) unfolds. The date for commencement had been moved up from 5 April to this day. MacArthur arrives on the east coast within the ROK I Corps zone. General Ridgway and MacArthur confer and concur that the Kansas Line should be held. On this visit, MacArthur moves north by jeep from Kangnung and crosses the 38th Parallel in the ROK 9th Division zone. It is MacArthur's strong opinion that at the conclusion of the operation, the conflict will be at a stalemate. The enemy forces that stand in opposition to the I and IX Corps are the Chinese 26th, 39th and 40th Armies. Also, the N.K. III Corps, which had evaded the advancing forces during Operation RIPPER, stand in front of X Corps and the ROK I and III Corps. The N.K. III Corps is composed of elements of the 1st, 15th and 45th Divisions, supported also by the 69th Brigade. In the IX Corps sector, the advance includes the 7th Marines, which is temporarily attached to the 1st Cavalry Division. The Marines under Colonel Litzenberg advance to the rear of the cavalry. In other activity, the 1st Marine Division sector, the 5th Marines and the 1st Korean Marine Regiment maintain the advance.

**April 5 1951 (Korea)**-**In the IX Corps sector**, subsequent to the eviction of the enemy on Kungmang Mountain, the British 27th Brigade, operating on the corps' left and stalled by fierce enemy fire, is able to reinitiate its advance. On the following day, the British move to the Kansas Line without incident. In the 1st Marine Division zone (IX Corps), a heated firefight erupts and some

Marines are wounded. An accompanying Navy corpsman, Richard D. Dewert, assists the wounded and himself becomes wounded, but he refuses treatment and continues to brave the heavy fire. On his third run he discovers one Marine had already died and he is wounded again; still, he refuses personal treatment. While attending to another wounded Marine, Corpsman Dewert is struck again, this time with a fatal wound. Hospital Corpsman Dewert is awarded the Medal of Honor posthumously for his extraordinary heroism and selfless sacrifice.

**April 6 1951 (Korea) IX Corps**-The 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, attached to the 1st Cavalry Division, encounters fierce resistance that originates on a ridge near the western end of the Hwach'on Reservoir. Unable to overcome the mortar and machine gun fire, the patrols also become jeopardized by hand grenades. An urgent call for air support is placed; however, all air traffic for the Marines remains under the control of the Joint Operations Center. The Marines are told help is on the way, but at one point, orders come down that state the 1st Marine Division is not eligible for air strikes until it comes out of reserve. And yet more bureaucracy emerges, but finally after six hours, U.S. Air Force planes arrive. In the meantime, Marine squadrons had been in operation supporting the ROKs and the 7th and 8th Cavalry. **In the 1st Marine Division zone**, orders arrive from Eighth Army to relieve the 1st Cavalry Division at Line Kansas and commence an attack toward Line Quantico above Hwach'on and about ten miles below the Iron Triangle.

**April 8 1951 (Korea)**-**In the IX Corps sector**, fierce resistance continues from the previous day

above Chunchon, as the 1st Cavalry drives toward the Kansas Line. During the latter part of this day, General Palmer issues orders to the two attacking regiments (7th and 8th) to form in tighter and greater strength on the following day. Both units are stalled, but the pressure against the 8th Cavalry forces it to pull back. To bolster the attack, the 5th Cavalry is plucked from reserve. In addition, General Palmer prepares the 2nd Battalion, 7th Cavalry, for the task of taking the Hwach'on dam. The attack is scheduled for 10 April. However, in the meantime, at about midnight (8th-9th), the enemy opens the floodgates to catch the cavalry by surprise and impede any progress. The attacking units had been forewarned of the possibility of the attempt to flood the route and the troops are prepared. The waters of the Pukham River rise high, but cause no casualties. The sweeping waters damage some bridges and force the Americans to remove some floating bridges. In related activity, the enemy forces that had impeded the cavalry advance withdraw to avoid being trapped by the flood waters, but some forces remain to hold the dam. The 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, attached to the 1st Cavalry Division, encounters fierce resistance that originates on a ridge near the western end of the Hwach'on Reservoir. Unable to overcome the mortar and machine gun fire, the patrols also become jeopardized by hand grenades. An urgent call for air support is placed; however, all air traffic for the Marines remains under the control of the Joint Operations Center. The Marines are told help is on the way, but at one point, orders come down that state the 1st Marine Division is not eligible for air strikes until it comes out of reserve. And yet more bureaucracy emerges, but finally after six hours, U.S. Air Force planes arrive. In the meantime, Marine squadrons had been in operation supporting the ROKs and the 7th and 8th Cavalry. In the 1st Marine Division zone, orders arrive from Eighth Army to relieve the 1st Cavalry Division at Line Kansas and commence an attack toward Line Quantico above Hwach'on and about ten miles below the Iron Triangle.

**April 9 1951 (Korea)**-Operation DAUNTLESS, ordered by General Ridgway in coordination with Operation RUGGED, is set with a commencement date of 11 April. **In the IX Corps sector**, the 7th and 8th Cavalry Regiments advance without resistance following two days of hitting tenacious opposition. The regiments arrive at the Kansas Line prior to noon. In related activity, the operation to seize the dam is initiated and General Palmer anticipates its seizure on this day to finalize the mission, prior to being relieved by the Marines on the following day. The 2nd Battalion, 7th Cavalry Regiment, jumps off slightly after noon, but the task becomes more difficult than anticipated. The approaches forbid the passage of tanks. The primitive path is too slim even for artillery, so much so that at points, even a jeep is hardly able to maneuver. Company F, 2nd Battalion, spearheads the assault to gain Hill 454, located above the dam and afterwards, the rangers that trail are to bolt to the dam and disable the gates. Enemy mortars pound the force and then, more fire pounds the company. Machine guns and small arms stall the advance and prevent Company E from gaining access to Hill 364 along the southern tip of the ridge. Meanwhile, the enemy holding Hill 364 pours fire upon the cavalymen to bring the attack to a halt. Division artillery to the north is too far from the target to provide accurate fire. An air strike is called upon to crack the resistance, but it fails to dislodge the enemy. The Chinese hold the dam. General Hoge, the corps commander, and General Palmer, 1st Cavalry commander, agree to commence another assault on the following day. Lt. Colonel John W. Callaway's 2nd Battalion again gets the task.

**April 10 1951 (Korea)****In the IX Corps sector**, the bulk of the 1st Cavalry Regiment initiates its movement from the Kansas Line; however, the 7th Cavalry remains in place to launch a second attack to seize the dam at the Hwach'on Reservoir. Company G (2nd Battalion, 7th Cavalry), jumps on and as on the previous day, enemy fire prevents progress. The troops have no room to maneuver

and they come under fire from the north and the northwest while they are stalled at the base of the diminutive road. The U.S. artillery remains too distant to support the assault and in the meantime, the weather deteriorates, which prevents the possibility of air strikes. General Hoge concludes that Calloway's 2nd Battalion had not attacked strongly and he decides to attempt yet another assault. General Hoge remains focused on securing the dam prior to withdrawing the 7th Cavalry; however, the 3rd Battalion is already withdrawing from the Kansas Line. Nevertheless, a third assault is planned for the following day. In related activity, the ROK 1st Division patrols, which had been encountering elements of the N.K. 8th Division near the far bank of the Imjin River, on this day find the enemy positions abandoned. Subsequent patrols advance to the old capital of Korea, Kaesong, more than ten miles above the Imjin River, without detecting enemy presence. **In the 1st Marine Division zone**, as the division prepares to advance from Line Kansas to the Quantico Line, it is directed to postpone its attack. The Marines are directed to confine their activity to patrols. **In the United States:** The Defense Department issues an order (effective 1 May) that lowers the intelligence standards for the Air Force, Navy, and Marine Corps. The adjustment brings the level equal to that of the Army. For the first time since World War II, the Marine Corps as well as the Air Force and the Navy will be accepting draftees.

**April 17 1951 (Korea)-In the IX Corps sector**, on the opposite side of the Hwach'on Reservoir from the X Corps positions, ongoing patrols of the 1st Marine Division and ROK 6th Division search for the enemy. All reports indicate that the Chinese continue to retire. Nevertheless, Eighth Army still anticipates an enemy offensive in the making. Also, the 1st Korean Marine Corps Regiment deploys elements in the high ground above the Pukham River, west of the dam at the Hwach'on Reservoir and on the ridge inside the Pukham loop, to prepare to evict the Chinese still holding the dam. The 7th Cavalry fails to seize it prior to being relieved by the Korean Marines.

**April 20 1951 (Korea)**-Two planes attached to Marine Squadron VMF-312 aboard the light carrier *Bataan* encounter and engage four enemy Yak fighters in the Pyongyang-Chinnamp'o area. Three of the enemy planes are destroyed; one escapes.

**April 21 1951 (Korea)**-Marine planes attached to a carrier encounter enemy aircraft for the first time over Korea. Two Yaks are downed by Captain Philip C. DeLong, while another Marine pilot, 1st Lieutenant Harold U. Daigh, downs one plane one plane and inflicts damage upon one other. **In the 1st Marine Division zone**, after a three-week delay, the division is directed to initiate its attack from the Kansas Line to Line Quantico. The attack is to begin the following day.

**April 22–July 8 1951. FIFTH DESIGNATED CAMPAIGN: CCF SPRING OFFENSIVE.**

**April 22 1951 (Korea)-In the IX Corps sector**, the advance continues without encountering any heavy resistance. Later in the day, the ROK 6th Division captures members of the Chinese 60th Division. Other Chinese are captured by the Turkish Brigade. Information gathered from the POWs indicates that an attack by the enemy would be launched subsequent to dusk. In the ROK 6th Division zone, the advance towards the Wyoming Line is halted by about 1600. The commanding officer, General Chang, disregards the advice of his KMAC advisor regarding the deployment of the division and deploys his reserve (7th Regiment) too close to the front, immediately **In the 1st Marine Division zone**, the 7th and 5th Marines advance on the left and center, with the 1st Korean Marine Regiment moving on the right. In conjunction, the 1st Marines are kept in reserve. During the day, the advance meets with little opposition. All the while, the enemy pours troops into the vacated positions of the ROK 6th Division. At 2130, word arrives that west of the division

positions, the ROK 6th Division is under strong pressure. Just after 2200, orders arrive instructing the Marines to cancel the scheduled resumption of the advance (at 0800 on the 23rd) and instead, consolidate their positions. At about the same time, the ROKs collapse, which creates a huge hole.

The Chinese plow through the gap and punch against the 7th Marines with the brunt of the assault, but the 5th Marines also come under attack. The 1st Battalion, 1st Marines, is called from reserve to move up and fill the gap on the division's left flank. Meanwhile, the retreat of the ROKs jams the roads and hinders the advance of the 1st Marines. Just before midnight, the Chinese strike the Korean Marines (2nd Battalion) at Hill 509 on the right and maneuver to partially surround the 1st Battalion. At the same time, the center of the perimeter, held by the 5th Marines, sustains a tenacious assault. At the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines' command post at Hwach'on, a contingent is immediately dispatched to gain Hill 313, the dominating point that controls the town. A bitter contest ensues as, the Marine platoon and the Chinese each covet the hill. The Marines lose 7 killed and 17 wounded. Reinforcements from the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, move to reinforce the 1st Battalion, but by dawn, the situation eases. The Marine platoon holds Hill 313; the Chinese had abandoned it during the night.

In the 7th Marines area along the division left, the 1st Battalion braces against the onslaught of about 2,000 troops of the 358th Regiment, 120th Division, Chinese 40th Army. Despite the overwhelming odds, the Marine 1st Battalion holds steadfastly, thanks in great part to the support of artillery. During the battle, PFC Herbert A. Littleton, Company A, 1st Battalion, is on guard when the attack is sprung. He alerts the forward observers and remains at his post to help guide the artillery, but just after more Marines rush to join him, the enemy tosses a grenade in their positions. Littleton spots the live grenade and blankets it with his body to save the others. His sacrifice spares the others and permits them to support the artillery. PFC Littleton is awarded the Medal of Honor posthumously for his selfless sacrifice.

The 1st Battalion, 1st Marines, move up in time to help hold the line west of Hwach'on. By dawn on the 23rd, the American and South Korean Marines had thrown back the attacks. The town of Hwach'on and the dam are preserved. No further attempts to gain it are made.

With the arrival of dawn on the 23rd, it is apparent that the Chinese fail to exploit the gap on the flanks, opened with the retreat of the ROK 6th Division. Only frontal attacks had been thrown against the Marines.

**April 23–27 1951 (Korea)**-The U.S. Marines engage and halt the Chinese Communist offensive and prevent them from turning the IX Corps' flank.

**April 23 1951 (Korea)**In the IX Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone, preparations are being completed for the advance to the Alabama Line, but by about 1100 on the following day, the operation is cancelled. The 1st Marine Division is ordered to form a line that extends from the dam at the Hwach'on Reservoir in a southwestwardly direction that traces the Pukham River. The line is designated Pendleton. The 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, are taken by truck from the village of Todun-ni along the west bank of the Pukham River to Hill 902, but the Chinese also are en route to gain the hill, aware that it controls the river where the 1st Marine Division would have to cross. The Chinese are unable to arrive first. Companies G, H and I, 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, occupy three separate ridge lines that straddle the path to the hill mass, with mortar and machine gun support to their respective immediate rears. By mid-day, the three Marine regiments complete the establishment of a line formed in what might be described as a fish hook, but some separations exist

between the regiments. Nonetheless, the Marines are prepared for an expected Chinese night assault. By day's end, it becomes evident that the ROK 6th Division remains unstable and disorganized, which places the Marines in further jeopardy. In conjunction, the 11th Marines (Marine Artillery) is deployed at Chich'on-ni. The 92nd FABn and the other units, including the 987th FABn, that were driven back subsequent to the retreat of the ROK 6th Division are directed to form in the vicinity of the 11th Marines.

During the operation to move to the Kansas Line, observation planes detect large numbers of Chinese moving through the vacated positions of the ROK 6th Division. The Marines conclude that these forward forces are en route to sever the supply line. At Horseshoe Ridge, defended by the 1st Battalion, 1st Marines, elements of the Chinese 120th Division launch an attack at about 2000. Several hundred Chinese rush in successive waves and compel a forward position of Company C to pull back under the relentless thrust, which includes machine gun and mortar fire and, from close-range, hundreds of grenades. The Marines, however, hold the ridge, despite about four hours of non-stop combat and a simultaneous eerie serenade of Chinese chants and yells. At about midnight, the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, is attacked, but Companies G, H and I receive the brunt of it. At Company G's outpost, the Communists overrun the small contingent and force it back.

A nearby contingent led by Tech Sergeant Harold E. Wilson attempts to return fire and cover the retirement. Wilson becomes wounded twice as he assists the survivors from the outpost. The heavy fire continues to pour down from the heights. Despite his wounds, Wilson refuses evacuation and maintains control over his contingent. Meanwhile, he is wounded twice more and incapacitated, unable to use his arms to fire. Undaunted, Wilson continues to hand ammunition and weapons to his fellow troops and in addition, he finds time to call for reinforcements. When they arrive, he also directs them against the enemy. Wilson continues in extreme pain, but he refuses to quit and his men follow suit. At dawn, the enemy has been repulsed and the ground remains under the control of C Company. Wilson becomes the recipient of the Medal of Honor for his outstanding leadership and courage in the face of the enemy.

Other units that come under attack include the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, and the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines. Nonetheless, by dawn, the Marines remain in place and the Chinese sustain a huge number of casualties. In other activity, the ROK 6th Division is expected to arrive at the Kansas Line; however, by the latter part of the afternoon, it remains in place, still unprepared to move. General Hoge, concerned about the absence of the ROKs on the Kansas Line, directs the British 27th Brigade to deploy and defend the Kap'yong River Valley to the rear of the South Koreans. Hoge wants to assure that the Chinese cannot sever Route 17 and take the village of Kap'yong. The blocking positions guard against intrusions along both valley approaches.

Elements of the Royal Australian Regiment deploy at Hill 504 and a contingent of the Princess Patricia's Canadian Light Infantry spreads out on Hill 677. The British positions are supported by U.S. contingents, including elements of the 72nd Tank Battalion, 2nd Chemical Mortar Battalion and the 74th Engineer Combat Battalion.

**April 24 1951 (Korea)-In the IX Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the 1st Marine Division withstands a night-long attack against its line and inflicts large numbers of casualties against elements of the Chinese 40th Army (359th and 360th Regiments, 120th Division) and the Chinese 39th Army (115th and 116th Divisions). After daybreak, the division withdraws from its Pendleton Line to the Kansas Line. During the final phase of the attack, the Chinese manage to get

behind the Marines to strike against the 92nd Armored Field Artillery Battalion as it is beginning to move out. The troops redeploy to defend and soon after, they are bolstered by Marine tanks. The enemy pays another steep price and fails to interrupt the withdrawal. The attacking force of between 200 and 300 troops is decimated. The 92nd sustains four killed and eleven wounded. The largest problem during the attacks seemed to have been maintaining an ammunition supply. Marines in some instances became runners to hand carry ammo to the front, after transporting wounded Marines to safety. One VMO-6 helicopter, piloted by Lt. Robert E. Matthewson, is downed during the morning while attempting to evacuate wounded. Although the helicopter is destroyed, he survives. Another helicopter arrives to lift him to safety, but he declines the offer and instead picks up an M-1 rifle to join the infantry as they withdraw.

In related activity, some enemy forces attempt to shadow the Marines as they move toward the Kansas Line, but the fighting withdrawal of the rear-guard receives support from planes and artillery. Forty-nine Marine Corsairs and forty Navy and Air Force Ads shepherd the Marine pullback. Three corsairs and one observation plane are downed by the Chinese during the operation. However, the pull-back is successful, so much so that by dawn on the 25th, the Marines' perimeter is free of major opposition. The 120th Division (40th Army) and the 39th Army's divisions fail to mount any future major attacks during the offensive. The move to the Kansas Line is necessitated primarily because the ROK 6th Division is still unable to move into position.

On this day, General Chang informs General Hoge that he is in the process of regrouping about four thousand to five thousand men in his command that converged on positions behind the Australians on Hill 504. At Hill 504, the Australians continue to hold against ferocious attacks. They have no artillery support, but still, they hold.

The commanding officers request reinforcements from British Brigadier Burke. The Australians lose a little ground, but from the new command post, some good fortune arrives. The New Zealanders have by this time regrouped and redeployed to provide artillery. The defenders on Hill 504 also are greeted by the sound of Marine corsairs. The combined fire of the Australians, the artillery and the corsairs shreds the attacking columns. Repeated assaults are repelled; however, during one of the air strikes, an Australian unit is inadvertently hit with napalm. The accident costs the lives of two men and it wounds several others. Despite the apparent success, the Australians on Hill 504 remain in peril due to a large hole between them and the Middlesex positions.

Prior to noon, Brigadier Burke orders the hill abandoned. The U.S. tanks (72nd Tank Battalion) on the island ridge transport Colonel Ferguson from his command post to Hill 504 to execute the withdrawal. The tanks bring out wounded and then they return across the field of fire to transport ammunition and supplies to the troops on the hill. Defying the odds, the tanks also pick up volunteers from Company B, 74th Engineer Battalion, and transport them to the abandoned positions of the mortar company that fled the previous night. The engineers, afterwards, are protected by the tanks as they gather some of the equipment that they had earlier abandoned.

In the meantime, the Australians move off Hill 504, while the tanks push to the north to block the ford and prevent the Chinese from moving through the Kap'yong Valley to overwhelm the Australians as they withdraw.

**April 25 1951 (Korea)-In the IX Corps sector, the 1st Marine Division** galvanizes its positions at the Kansas Line. On the previous day, subsequent to moving from the Pendleton Line, the Chinese entered Hwach'on and covered the area, including where the dam is located, but the

Marines retired unhindered by pursuers. On this day, the Marines' zone remains relatively tranquil. The casualties incurred by the 1st Marine Division on 24-25 April amount to 18 killed and 82 wounded, which brings the total casualties since 1 April to just under 300. The IX Corps instructs the 1st Marine Division to be prepared to move back to Chunchon on the 26th to deploy on the south bank of the Soyang River to guard the service units as they withdraw their respective supply depots. The Chinese assaults in the IX Corps zone had failed, but they change strategy and try to penetrate the I Corps to seize Seoul.

**April 26 1951 (Korea)-In the IX Corps sector,** a planned attack by the ROK 5th Division (X Corps) to regain Inje is aborted due to yet another debacle caused by the ROK 6th Division on the left part of the IX Corps sector on the previous day. The IX Corps, due to the I Corps' changes, modifies its lines to conform with the adjusted positions of the I Corps. In conjunction, the 1st Marine Division pulls away from the Kansas Line and redeploys along the Pukham River in the vicinity of the northern fringes of Chunchon and then the line curves along the lower bank of the Soyang River. The Marine zone remains quiet during the night of the 25th-26th except for several small probing assaults. Also, the 1st Marine Division commander, Major General O.P. Smith, is relieved by Major General Gerald C. Thomas.

**April 30 1951 (Korea)-**By this date, the 1st Marines become reserve, while the 5th Marines, 1st Korean Marine Regiment, and 7th Marines deploy along the No Name Line. In other activity, the 1st Marine Division is for the third time in eight months transferred to the operational control of X Corps. The division is to deploy in the western corps sector subsequent to its boundary with IX Corps being shifted slightly more than ten miles to the west. In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division comes under the operational control of X Corps, having passed from IX Corps. The 1st Marine Division and the 2nd Division (minus the reserve 65th Infantry Regiment) hold the corps' left to defend the Chunchon-Hongch'on region. The corps' right is held by the ROK 5th and 7th Divisions.

**May 3 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector,** the Marines continue to bolster their positions along the No Name Line; however, there is a lull in the combat as the enemy apparently prepares to launch the next phase of its spring offensive. The attack is anticipated along the eastern sector of the Eighth Army perimeter.

**May 4 1951 (Korea)-In the United States:** A bill that authorizes the Marine Corps to double its size to 400,000 is passed unanimously by the U.S. Senate. In addition, the commandant of the Marine Corps is to become a consultant to the joint chiefs of staff.

**May 12 1951 (Korea)-In the United States:** General O.P. Smith, recently transferred commander, 1st Marine Division, assumes command of Fleet Marine Force Pacific Troops and Marine Barracks, Camp Pendleton.

**May 16 1951 (Korea)-In the 1st Marine Division zone,** the perimeter is not tested by the Chinese. However, during the early morning hours of the following day, the Chinese make contact.

**May 17 1951 (Korea)-In the 1st Marine Division zone,** a contingent of Chinese, about regimental strength, manage to get through to the rear of a Korean Marine patrol base in an attempt to strike the 2nd Division; however, a recent move by elements of the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, puts them in position to greet the Chinese. At about dusk, the battalion completes a roadblock at the Morae-Kogae pass along the Chonchon road, and by midnight (17th-18th), it is reinforced by Company G, to place the entire regiment there. Although the Marines had not expected the Chinese,

it becomes apparent that the Chinese's thoughts of a free run to the 2nd Division are shattered by the fortuitous move of the 3rd Battalion. At the northern tip of the Marines' perimeter, the Chinese are welcomed by a surprised Company I, a platoon of Company D, tanks, and a weapons company platoon. The Chinese are caught completely off guard, but they return furious fire. The exchange transforms the area into a cauldron of fire. Two tanks are lost, and the Chinese attempt unsuccessfully to destroy another. The fight continues into the following day.

**May 18 1951 (Korea)**-General Van Fleet, after assessing the situation, makes a decision at about midnight (17th-18th) to bolster the eastern sector of the X Corps, due in great part to the inability of the South Koreans to hold their positions. The remaining 3rd Division contingents are directed to move eastward from Seoul and other units will follow, including the 7th RCT and the 65th RCT, which will redeploy on the 19th and 20th respectively. In conjunction, the 15th RCT is unaffected; it is to remain attached to the 2nd Division. Van Fleet also directs the I Corps, IX Corps and the 1st Marine Division to dispatch patrols and prepare to attack a phase line (Topeka). **In the IX Corps sector**, the 7th Marines are ordered to withdraw from blocking positions along Route 29 and relieve the 1st Marines at its positions on the right sector of the zone, along the No Name Line, to permit the 1st Marines to relieve the 9th Infantry Regiment (X Corps). On the division's left flank, the 5th Marines relieve the 38th Infantry Regiment (X Corps) after elements of the 7th Division (X Corps) redeploy in the 5th Marines sector. **In the X Corps zone**, a night-long battle at the Morae-Kongae pass ends successfully for the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines. The Chinese had mounted a tenacious assault, but a counterattack by Company I regains the ground and suppresses the assault, while other Marines and tanks bolstered by artillery maneuver to seal off the enemy's rear. By dawn (18th), the Chinese sustain a devastating defeat. Air support again arrives late at about 1030, but still there are plenty of enemy targets in the area. The Chinese lose 112 killed (counted) and 82 POWs. The U.S. loses 7 killed and 9 wounded.

In other activity, the 1st Marine Division, acting on Eighth Army orders, shrinks its perimeter to support the 2nd Division on the east. While the 1st Marines speed to relieve the 9th Infantry, 2nd Division, the 7th Marines pull back to the No Name Line to relieve the 1st Marines. In conjunction, the 5th Marines pull out of the division's left flank to relieve the 38th Infantry Regiment on the far right. In turn, the relief by the Marines allows the 2nd Division the flexibility to deploy from where the Chinese moving from the east can be engaged and halted.

**May 20 1951 (Korea)-Operation STRANGLE** commences. The operation is designed to destroy the enemy's rail and vehicle traffic where it can be caught in North Korea. The operation is unfolded primarily with air power, but the planes are not able to provide sufficient air power to the ground troops. Eighth Army for some time receives fewer than 100 sorties a day. Operation STRANGLE continues into September. Also, the I Corps and IX Corps initiate counterattacks (Operation DETONATE), while the X Corps continues to fend off the remaining attacks in its area. The Communists against X Corps continue to sustain extremely high casualties without making progress.

Also, by this date, the Communist offensive is halted, unable to gather any momentum against the galvanized Eighth Army. **In the IX Corps sector**, *In the 1st Marine Division zone*, the 1st Korean Marine Regiment attacks with the IX Corps; however, the three U.S. regiments remain in place. During the early morning hours, again the Chinese are surprised when they unexpectedly encounter Marine forces. At about 0445, a large contingent of about regimental strength encroaches the lines of the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines, expecting to occupy the positions, but not anticipating that the

Marines already hold it. The surprise is deadly and one-sided. By 0930, the Chinese are introduced to every available weapon of the 7th Marines. The Marines count 152 dead and collect fifteen prisoners. The Chinese survivors flee into the hills.

**May 22 1951 (Korea)**-The Marines attack toward Hill 1051, which had been seized by Chinese on 17 April. The 5th Marines while advancing and engaging rear-guard units of the Chinese 15th Army through some fortuitous luck, discover eleven 2nd Division troops that had been wounded and unable to reach friendly lines during the earlier Chinese attack.

**May 23 1951 (Korea)**-**In the X Corps sector**, the ROK III Corps sector is assumed by X Corps subsequent to the ROK III Corps being dissolved on the previous night by General Van Fleet. Also, the 1st Marine Division initiates its attack northward toward Yanggu at the eastern tip of the Hwachon Reservoir, to secure the road hub at the eastern tip of the reservoir. The advance is led by the 1st and 5th Marines. Meanwhile, the 7th Marines, after being relieved by a contingent of the 7th Infantry Division (IX Corps), moves to the east to operate on the division's right flank.

**May 24 1951 (Korea)**-The saga of a group of 18 Marines and one U.S. Army interpreter captured during the previous year ends at U.S. lines. The captives had been brought to the Communist lines near Ch'orwon, probably to be used as laborers during April. During an artillery barrage, the Chinese guards seek cover while the POWs flee. On the following day while concealed in the heights, the band fabricates a sign from wallpaper stripped from a nearby destroyed house, reading: "POW 19 RESCUE." A pilot in an observation plane spots the sign. On the 26th, several tanks roar to the area and rescue the men.

**May 25 1951 (Korea)**-**In the 1st Marine Division zone**, on the corps' right, the advance up Route 24, to the rear of TF Gerhardt, reaches the area around Yanggu, which is secured; however, the 7th Marines jumps o late, due to a vehicle shortage and enemy resistance. Consequently, the Marines end the day short of the objective, the high ground west of Umyang-ni. The 7th Marines maintain the move toward the Soyang River. In related activity, the 2nd and 3rd Battalions, 5th Marines, encounter heavy resistance as they advance toward their objective, several hills north of Han'gye. Hill 105 is spotted as the origin of the enemy fire. Artillery fire is requested to clear the hill. Shortly thereafter, the summit and the southeastern slopes are engulfed with fire that promptly evicts the Chinese, who flee northward. By about 1300, Hill 883 is gained by Company D. The Marines continue their advance and by midnight, Colonel Hayward, commanding officer, reports that the objective of the 5th Marines has been secured.

**May 26 1951 (Korea)**-In related activity, the 7th Marines advance on the west flank of the 23rd Infantry Regiment. The Chinese had been retiring in a northwesterly direction, but subsequent to the elimination of nearly the entire 106th Division, the retreating forces pivot and move to the northeast toward Yanggu. The 2nd Division is ordered to seize Inje to provide easy passage across the Soyang River and through the town to speed its pace to Kansong. **In the 1st Marine Division zone**, the advance toward Yanggu continues. **In the 7th Marines sector**, the 7th Marines close on the Soyang River. The 2nd Battalion crashes into an enemy ammunition dump and seizes the remnant forces there, 27 troops, some of whom are wounded and apparently left behind. The Marines also confiscate a huge amount of ammunition and supplies, including 100,000 rounds of small arms ammunition, 12,000 mortar rounds and 9,000 grenades. By dusk, the 7th Marines arrive at the south bank of the Soyang River.

**May 27 1951 (Korea)**-Major General Thomas J. Cushman succeeds General Harris as commander

1st Marine Air Wing. In conjunction, Brigadier General William O. Brice, recently arrived from the U.S., succeeds General Cushing as deputy commander. **In the 1st Marine Division zone**, the attack advances to a point slightly more than five miles from Inje. **In the X Corps sector**, the 1st Marine Division (5th and 7th Marines) continues its advance against a vanishing enemy.

**May 29 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector**, the 5th and 7th Marines each encounter tenacious enemy resistance. Calls are made to get immediate air support; however, the Marines still are not able to maintain direct support from the Marine squadrons. The Marines request 92 sorties and receive only 55. In addition, only 20 are handled by Marine corsairs or panther jets. Thirty-five sorties are executed by air force mustangs and jets. Marines who are accustomed to immediate and direct support are essentially left to clear the resistance from the ground. Most flights arrive between two and four hours late. In one incident within the 5th Marines zone, Company C, 1st Battalion, becomes heavily engaged near Kwagch'idong. A rifleman and scout, PFC Whitt L. Moreland, uses his skills to support the elimination of an obstinate position. Moreland afterward leads a detachment against a heavily fortified bunker. As the unit approaches the obstacle, enemy grenades land in their midst. Moreland shoves a few away, but one remains to endanger him and others nearby. He dives on it to save the lives of the others. PFC Moreland receives the Medal of Honor posthumously for his selfless sacrifice.

**May 31 1951 (Korea)-** According to reports, the enemy sustains more than 62,000 casualties during the U.S. counterattack, which began on 20 May. When the Chinese offensive is added, enemy casualties rise to more than 73,000 and include 44,705 killed, 19,753 wounded and 8,749 captured. Of the casualties, the 1st Marine Division reports 1,870 killed (counted) and 593 captured. Eighth Army estimates of enemy casualties for the last half of May include 17,000 killed (counted) and 17,000 POWs. Eighth Army reports 33,770 casualties for all of May, with most sustained by the South Koreans. American casualties amount to 745 killed, 4,218 wounded and 572 missing. In addition, Eighth Army sustains 6,758 non-battle casualties, mostly from disease. **In the IX Corps sector**, the casualties for May, including the Chinese offensive and the U.S. counterattack, amount to 341 killed, 2,011 wounded and 195 missing. **In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the 7th Marines encounter a treacherous pass that leads into Yanggu. The Marines atop the ridges that overlook the pass begin a slow and methodical descent to clear the enemy. General Van Fleet, who happens to be at the 7th Marines' positions, looks up at the towering ridges and in amazement asks: "How did you ever get the men up those cliffs?" Colonel Nickerson responds with a succinct answer: "They climbed." By dusk, the Marines complete their descent, evict the enemy and gain control of Yanggu and its airfield as well as the surrounding heights. In the meantime, the 5th Marines reaches positions about 6,000 yards northeast of Yanggu. During the month of May, the 1st Marine Division sustains 75 killed, 8 who die of their wounds, and 731 are wounded in action.

**June 11 1951 (Korea)-** Eighth Army issues orders to all corps to bolster the Kansas and Wyoming Lines. In conjunction with General Ridgway's recent instructions to General Van Fleet to suspend any major attacks toward the T'onch'on region, each corps is directed to initiate only limited attacks and strong reconnaissance missions in addition to their normal patrols. In an effort to further solidify the defensive line, all civilians are moved from an area five miles behind the Kansas line to a point above the line where forward patrol bases are located. The relocation of the civilians permits the troops to more easily deal with and identify the enemy, while the defenses are being more heavily fortified. The full-scale attack is scheduled to jump off in the I Corps area on 3 June. In the meantime, on this day the weather clears, but the enemy resistance continues to be

aggressive. **In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the 5th and 7th Marines launch an attack toward the Kansas Line. The 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, encounters fierce resistance at Hill 651, defended by about 200 North Koreans. The attacks by noon are still unable to dislodge the Communists, but air strikes are requested to quicken the eviction. Four Marine planes arrive and plaster the slopes with bombs and strafing runs, which succeed in cracking the defense wide open. The Marines afterward push forward and seize the hill. Also, 1st Marine Aircraft Wing initiates its plan of deploying one squadron at Hoengeong, which is located to the rear of the 1st Marine Division. **In the United States**-The 3rd Marine Brigade is activated at Camp Pendleton, California.

**June 2 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines, advances toward the Kansas Line. Intense enemy fire holds up the advance until tanks arrive to add some punch to the drive. The tanks pour fire into the log bunkers, providing time for the Marines to reach the forward slope of Hill 610. Meanwhile, the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, continues to drive along a parallel ridge. The enemy positions on Hill 610 are completely eliminated by 1945. Afterward, the 2nd Battalion jumps out and advances another 5,000 yards. Later, the enemy mounts a failed counterattack against Hill 610. In other activity, the 1st Marines prepares to relieve the 7th Marines as ordered the previous night. The 1st Marines arrives at the assembly area at 0630, but shortly thereafter, an enemy mortar strikes a gathering of officers, killing the artillery liaison officer and wounding four company commanders. More than thirty enlisted men are wounded. Lieutenant Colonel Homer E. Hire is unharmed. Nevertheless, the scheduled operation to pass through the 7th Marines and continue the attack is suspended until the following day.

**June 3 1951 (Korea)**-Operation PILE DRIVER commences. The I Corps launches its advance from the Kansas Line to the Wyoming Line. It encounters tenacious resistance as the Chinese anchor themselves to hold the Iron Triangle. Following a couple of clear days, the rains again descend upon Eighth Army sectors to further hamper the advance. **In the X Corps zone**, the 1st Marines, which had suspended the attack for one day, moves out to seize the objective, designated X-RAY. The 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines, drives toward Hill 516, while the 3rd Battalion advances along a parallel ridge. Planes attached to VMF-214 and VMF-323 support the advances and the objective is secure by 1900. Also, the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines, supported by air attacks, drives to seize Hill 680, which falls by about 1400. Then the Marines move against nearby Hill 692. Air support is requested after the attacking force is halted by intense enemy fire. However, fog sets in and delays the planes. At about 1600, the attack is resumed without air cover, but as the Marines approach the summit, the planes arrive to drop napalm. The Marines scatter to avoid becoming casualties of the friendly fire. While they run to seek cover, enemy fire inflicts some casualties. Once the planes complete their passes, Company A reinitiates the attack and gains Hill 692. The day's fighting terminates the Battle of Soyonggang, which had begun on 16 May. The Marines continue the offensive in their new zone of responsibility, east of the Hwach'on Reservoir.

**June 6-8 1951** The Chinese continue to resist in front of the Iron Triangle, but the I and IX Corps maintain pressure, which finally punctures the enemy lines on 8 June. *In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone*, the 1st Marines continue to advance against building resistance.

**June 6 1951 (Korea)**-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone, the advance to the Kansas Line continues. The Marines' objectives are five ridgelines that run northwest to southeast along the Kansas Line. At 1300, the 5th Marines moves out to seize Hill 729. Air support does not arrive until 1400 due to fog. Nevertheless, by 2100, the 2nd and 3rd Battalions, 5th Marines, regroup on

the first ridge and for the next ten days, they secure the four remaining ridges.

**June 8 1951 (Korea)**-The Communists' resistance cracks and the I and IX Corps increase the pace of their respective advances toward the Wyoming Line. **In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the Marines continue to advance toward the Kansas Line, but Major General Gerard C. Thomas becomes concerned about climbing casualties. He commits the greater part of the reserve 7th Marines to add more strength to the attack. Only the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, remains in division reserve.

**June 9 1951 (Korea)**- *In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone*, the reserves (7th Marines) join the advance to the Punch Bowl. Heavy resistance continues, but the Marines also face especially nasty terrain and lousy weather. The advance is hindered by many natural obstacles, including landslides that frequently block the routes and at times cause vehicles to veer off the roads. Frequent fog also creates problems by preventing air cover. In the 1st Marines zone, during the early morning hours as the 2nd Battalion prepares to advance, an enemy mortar barrage strikes the lines just prior to an enemy attack by a company-sized contingent of North Koreans. The attack is easily repelled and the North Koreans sustain heavy casualties. After eliminating the North Korean attackers, the advance jumps off on schedule and as the 1st and 2nd Battalions advance, the resistance continues to be heavy. Nonetheless, prior to noon, the Marines seize the first ridge and by 1600, with the support of elements of the regimental antitank company, the second ridge is gained. **In the 7th Marines zone**, the 1st Battalion advances along the ridgeline, while the 2nd Battalion punches forward through the valley to secure Hill 420. The North Koreans raise heavy resistance, primarily from mortars and artillery fire; however, the Marines secure the hill prior to dusk. The Marines count 85 N.K. dead and they capture sixteen others.

**June 10 1951 (Korea)**-**In the X Corps area**, The Marines, meanwhile, trudge across the rugged terrain against heavy resistance and make only slow progress. **In the 1st Marine Division zone**, enemy resistance prompts a change in strategy. General Almond confers with Colonel Wilbur S. Brown (Commander, 1st Marines) and afterward, by 1100, the entire 2nd Battalion is committed to bolster the assault. During the ferocious contest, Corporal Charles G. Abrell, Company E, 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines, participates in a charge against a fortified enemy gun position. Abrell, already wounded, closes on the position, but he is hit twice more while he is at the point within striking distance of the obstacle. Despite, or possibly because of, the three wounds, Abrell continues to advance, while he calls for the others to follow. With a grenade in his hand, Abrell pulls the pin and dives into the bunker. The entire enemy gun crew is killed and Corporal Abrell is mortally wounded. Corporal Abrell is awarded the Medal of Honor posthumously for his selfless courage in the face of the enemy. The Communists raise tenacious resistance throughout the day. By dusk, both battalions are short of their objectives and although many Communists had been liquidated by grenades and bayonets, they still hold steadfastly. The 11th Marines in support of the attack coordinate their fire and deliver a relentless barrage to soften the resistance. In addition, air strikes bolster the ground troops, but in the end, it is the infantry that finally evicts the defenders from their log bunkers. The Marines secure their final objective including Hill 802 prior to midnight (10th-11th). The Marine casualties for this attack include 14 killed in action and 114 wounded in action. The 1st Battalion, 1st Marines, which seized Hill 802, sustains 9 killed and 97 wounded. Colonel Brown moves to the front to observe the final assault. Later, he states: "It was a glorious spectacle, that last bayonet assault. In the last analysis, 2/1 had to take its objective with the bayonet and hand grenades, gnawing its way up the side of a mountain to get at the enemy. It was bloody work, the

hardest fighting I have ever seen.” In Naval Activity, two PB4Y-2 planes initiate action to assist the night operations. The aircraft drop flares to illuminate the target areas for Marine Squadron VMF-323.

**June 11 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps zone, 1st Marine Division sector,** the 1st Marines recuperates for only a short while following the tenacious battle on the previous day. The advance continues with the 3rd Battalion taking the lead; however, by this date, the North Koreans in front of the advancing 1st Marines are no longer able to raise strong resistance. By 14 June, the Marines reach the Brown Line, an extension of the Kansas Line.

**June 16 1951 (Korea)-**By this date, Eighth Army achieves its objectives, as elements of all units have arrived at their respective positions along the Wyoming-Kansas Line. **In the X Corps sector,** The 1st Marine Division reaches its objective, a line extending from the Hwach'on Reservoir to the Punch Bowl.

**June 17 1951 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector,** the Communists reoccupy P'yonggang. **In the X Corps sector,** the advance continues toward the Kansas Line. The 7th Marines, which had joined in the attack on the 9th, still lacks the 3rd Battalion, but it prepares to come out of reserve on the following day. The 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, is at this time the sole unit in division reserve.

**June 18 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the advance closes on the east-west hill that identifies the Brown Line. The terrain is too difficult to mount an attack except directly from the front. The enemy-held ridge is defended by the 1st Battalion, 41st Regiment, N.K. 12th Division. The Marines ascend the ridge and just as they approach the crest, the North Koreans, concealed on the opposite slope, launch an attack. Company G, 7th Marines holds solidly and repels five successive charges. Company I participates in the fifth enemy assault and it, too, refuses to budge. At about dusk, the brutal contest ends. The Marines establish night positions and prepare to resume the attack on the following morning.

**June 19 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the Marines prepare to complete the seizure of the ridge along the Brown Line, but the enemy absconded during the night (18th-19th).

**June 20 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the modified Kansas Line is completely secure by noon. Preparations to bolster the line are begun immediately.

**June 21 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the 1st Marines and the 1st Korean Marine Corps Regiment stretch their right and left flanks respectively. A squadron of F-86 Sabre jets prepares to take off for MIG Alley, which pinches out the 7th Marines. The 7th Marines revert to reserve.

**June 22 1951 (Korea)-**The 1st Marine Division, as of this date, terminates two months of continuous fighting against the Chinese spring offensive. The Marines are directed by Eighth Army to establish patrol bases on the Badger Line, but when General Almond arrives at the 1st Marine Division command post, it is decided that stretching out patrol bases while units are still in contact with the enemy is risky and the idea is shelved. However, on the following day, again orders arrive directing the patrol bases be set up.

**June 23 1951 (Korea)-**The 1st Marine Division is again instructed to establish patrol bases. The order is reluctantly carried out. The Marines are aware that each of the three battalion patrol bases

will become susceptible to enemy incursions and may be encircled and imperiled. In the United States: A hint of a possible cease fire in Korea is spoken by the Soviet representative to the U.N. during a broadcast (U.N. Price of Peace) in which Jacob Malik claims that the warfare in Korea is the fault of the United States. However, toward the end of the program, Malik slips in the proposition that the Soviet Union thinks that the war could be stopped by mutual agreement of both sides pulling back from the 38th Parallel. The U.S. shows no outward signs of accepting the suggestion as genuine, but steps are taken in the event that a cease fire might be in the works. Diplomatically, the U.S. probes to discern the credibility of Malik's remarks. Militarily, the joint chiefs of staff and Eighth Army assess the situation on the ground in Korea to determine where a dominating line should be drawn prior to any talks with the Communists.

**June 26 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** a contingent of Marines pushes out ahead of the perimeter and establishes a patrol base on Hill 761; however, the isolated battalion comes under heavy mortar fire and by the following day, it is ordered back to the main lines.

**June 30 1951 (Korea)-**A Marine tigercat squadron (VMF513) known as the Flying Nightmares engages and destroys a PO-2 above Seoul by the Han River. It is the first PO-2 downed by an F7F. The PO-2s are not constructed of metal and while they had been raiding the area around Seoul, the Marine squadrons had difficulty tracking them, as they avoided detection by radar. The strength of the Marine Corps on this date stands at 192,620 men.

**July 8 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** elements of the 1st Korean Marine Corps Regiment move out to establish a patrol base at Taeu-san at 1030, but little progress is made. Enemy mortar and machine gun fire halts the advance on the right, while the left section manages to reach Hill 1100, still short of Taeu-san.

**July 9–November 27 1951 (Korea)-** SIXTH DESIGNATED CAMPAIGN: THE U.N. SUMMER-FALL OFFENSIVE.

**July 9 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the Korean Marines reinstate the advance to establish a patrol base at Taeu-san. The full weight of the battalion pushes forward on the right, but similarly to the previous day, the enemy halts the advance. In the meantime, the troops that had reached Hill 1100 on the previous day are driven back. Hill 1001 is seized by the 1st Battalion, but it is apparent that Taeu-san can not be seized by the Korean Marines. During the operation, the Korean Marines sustain 222 casualties. Subsequently, the task is given to the 2nd Division. Taeu-san is designated Hill 1179.

**July 11 1951 (Korea)-In the United States-**The Marine Corps will accept 7,000 draftees to help bolster its force of 194,000 troops to bring it closer to its authorized strength of 204,000. This is the first time the Marines has drafted men since World War II.

**July 11–12 1951 (Korea)-** Operation CAVE DWELLER commences. The USS *New Jersey* (BB 62) and USS *Leonard F. Mason* (DD 852) combine their firepower to blast enemy positions, supply depots and troops formations in the vicinity of Kensong. Estimates of enemy casualties are 129 killed.

**July 12 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the Marines inform X Corps that the patrol base established by the 1st Korean Marine Regiment near Hill 1001 is to be considered the 1st Marine Division patrol base.

**July 13 1951 (Korea)**-A plane (VMF[N]-513) piloted by Captain Donald Fenton spots and destroys a PO-2 in the vicinity of Seoul. It is the second elusive non-metal biplane destroyed over Seoul.

**July 14 1951 (Korea)**-**In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, combat for the past two weeks has not been too heavy. Nonetheless, the casualties, including the Korean Marines (attached), amount to 55 killed, 360 wounded and 22 missing. In other activity, Marine squadrons (MAG ;2) at K-46 near Hoengsong abandon the field and move temporarily to K-1 near Seoul. Subsequently, MAG 12's new field will be K-18, on the east coast at Kangnung, about forty miles to the rear of the 1st Marine Division lines and just slightly below the 38th Parallel.

**July 15 1951 (Korea)**-**In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the 2nd Division completes its relief of the 1st Marine Division. The 2nd Division is then designated as the attack force to push the Kansas Line forward to the Punch Bowl. The 2nd Division is flanked by the ROK 5th and 7th Divisions on the east and west respectively.

**July 16 1951 (Korea)**-In the X Corps sector, the 1st Marine Division is in the process of moving to the rear of X Corps. The maneuver is completed by the following day.

**July 17–31 1951 (Korea)**- By this date, nearly all of the 1st Marine Division is in X Corps reserve. The exception is the 5th Marines, which is in the vicinity of Inje as "ready reserve," under the operational control of X Corps. Subsequently, the 3rd Battalion, 11th Marines, is attached to the operational control of the 2nd Division. In related activity, the 7th Marines and the division reconnaissance company move to the vicinity of Yanggu to participate in training and to support the building up of the fortifications there. Also, by about this time, General Almond is relieved as commander of X Corps by Major General Clovis E. Byers. General Almond returns to the States.

**July 21 1951 (Korea)**-A Marine patrol composed of three F4-U's is attacked by 15 MiGs at a point when the Marines' F9Fs are nearly out of fuel. The Marines fend off the MiGs, which show little aggressiveness, then head for cloud cover. One of the planes fails to return to base. The fate of the pilot, Lieutenant Richard Bell, is for a while unknown, but he is captured. Bell returns during the POW exchange in 1953.

**July 26 1951 (Korea)**-The maintenance crews of MAG 12 abandon K-46 at Hoengsong and join the squadrons at K-1. The airfield had been abandoned due to chronic maintenance problems caused by the primitive, rocky runway.

**July 27 (Korea)**-Major General Christian F. Schilt assumes command of the 1st Marine Aircraft Wing.

**July 30 1951 (Korea)**-A huge contingent of fighter bombers, composed of 354 Air Force and Marine Corps squadrons protected by ninety-one F-80s, strike enemy targets in the vicinity of Pyongyang.

**August 18–20 1951 (Korea)**- Typhoon Marge sweeps into the area. The 1st Marine Air Wing evacuates Korea for Japan. The air units return on 21 August.

**August 22 1951 (Korea)**-**In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the division is informed that it is to prepare for a return to offensive action.

**August 26 1951 (Korea)**-The 1st Marine Division informs all of its components that offensive actions are imminent. At this time, the division is deployed as follows: the 1st Marines at Chogutan, the 5th Marines in the vicinity of Inje, the 7th Marines near Yanggu and the 1st Korean Marine

Regiment at Hangye. The division command post and the service units are posted along the Hongchon–Hangye Road near Tundong-ni. In conjunction, the 11th Marines (minus) with the 196th FABn (11th Marine Regiment Group) is at this time an element of X Corps artillery. The 2nd Battalion, 11th Marines, is attached to the 1st Marine Division, while the 3rd Battalion is attached to the 2nd Infantry Division.

**August 27 1951 (Korea)-In the 1st Marine Division zone**, the 5th and 7th Marines are directed to move to the region south and west of the Punch Bowl to relieve U.S. Army and ROK units at Bloody Ridge. The 1st Korean Marine Regiment also moves with the other two regiments, but the 1st Marines is to remain in division reserve. Early on this day, the 7th Marines near Yanggu prepare to move to the Soyang River, but no trucks arrive until 2100. In conjunction, the 5th Marines at Inje are to trail the 7th Marines. Meanwhile, the troops are under a constant rain. The 3rd Battalion finally arrives at the 7th Marines command post at Sohvari at 0300 on the 28th.

**August 29 1951 (Korea)-X Corps orders a larger attack**, described as a “limited offensive.” The attack is to commence on 31 August. The advance is in conjunction with the ongoing battle to control Bloody Ridge in the 2nd Division zone. **In the 1st Marine Division zone**, the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, arrives at Sohvari at 0300, following a tedious day of waiting at the jump-off point until nearly midnight. After arriving, the Marines discover their bivouac area is flooded, which forces the troops to remain in the trucks to attempt to get a little rest. In addition, the assembly area is on the opposite bank of the Soyang River. The first contingent to attempt to cross is Company H, but the trek becomes so perilous that the remainder of the battalion must be carried by DUKWs. Nevertheless, both battalions, the 2nd and 3rd, are on the opposite (west) bank by mid afternoon to begin relief of the U.S. Army and ROK units. Also, two battalions of the 1st Korean Marine Regiment, to the left of the 7th Marines, assume responsibility for the area formerly held by contingents of the 2nd Infantry Division and the ROK 8th Division. The 1st Battalion, 7th Marines, on the west bank of the Soyang, relieve elements of the ROK 8th Division at a hill position about one and one-half miles north of Topyong. During the evening, enemy mortars strike the lines without harm.

**August 30 1951 (Korea)- In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the 1st and 3rd Battalions, 1st Korean Marine Regiment, are positioned to the rear of the line of departure on Hill 755. The Korean Marines make last minute preparations for the attack, scheduled to commence on the following morning. In conjunction, the 2nd Battalion holds at the regimental positions on the Kansas Line. In the meantime, the 2nd and 3rd Battalions, 7th Marines complete relief of the ROK 8th Division. Back on the opposite bank of the Soyang, the 1st Battalion, 7th Marines, had relieved elements of the ROK 8th Division on a hill position about one and one-half miles north of Topyong.

**August 31 1951 (Korea)-In the 1st Marine Division zone**, an attack is launched against the northern section of the Punch Bowl. The 7th Marines and the 1st Korean Marine Corps Regiment commence an attack at 0600 to seize the X Corps’ objective, designated Yoke, a ridgeline running west to Hill 924 to the east. In conjunction, the first objective, the hill mass northeast of Topyong, is presently occupied by the 1st Battalion, 7th Marines. Meanwhile, the sector of Yoke Ridge, east of Hill 924, lies in the path of the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines. Hills 924 and 1026 are to be secured by the Korean Marines. Also, the 1st Tank Battalion is ordered to prepare to support the attacking regiments. In related activity, the 5th Marines are to patrol the Kansas Line and the 1st Marines remain in X Corps reserve in the vicinity of Hongchon. The 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, initially encounters light resistance, but as the advance continues, the opposition becomes heated and the

slopes of Hill 702 are inundated with mines. The attack is suspended during the latter part of the afternoon. In conjunction, the Korean Marines also come to a halt. In other activity, Marine Transport Helicopter Squadron 16 arrives in Korea. The unit will get organized and begin to move to Airfield X-83, near Sowon-ri, where VMO-6 is stationed.

**September 1 1951 (Korea)-In the 1st Marine Division zone**, the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, and the 1st Korean Marine Corps Regiment reinitiate the attack to seize objective, Yoke. The 3rd Battalion, Korean Marine Regiment, passes through the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, and drives toward a ridge on the flank of the ridgeline objective. After a dogged fight, the Korean Marines encroach the crest of Hill 924 by 1700, yet the Communist North Koreans are able to hold until about 2100 before the objective is secured, only to be lost again by a furious counterattack at midnight (1st-2nd). In the meantime, the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, encounters tenacious North Korean resistance near Hill 702. The Communists launch five counterattacks against the 7th Marines on Hill 602 and some penetrate the lines of the 3rd Battalion. Patrols of the 1st Battalion, 7th Marines, operating on the opposite bank of the Soyang River, see the distress and call for air strikes to aid the 3rd Battalion. The 11th Marines also saturate the enemy positions with an avalanche of fire. The all-day engagement breaks off at dusk. In related activity, U.S. Air Force planes arrive to drop ammunition and supplies to the Korean Marines; however, of thirty-nine additional air drops in X Corps during the month of September, this is the only one that is delivered to the 1st Marine Division. All other supplies have to be delivered by Korean laborers.

**September 2 1951 (Korea)-In the 1st Marine Division zone**, the Marines again reinitiate the attack to seize objective Yoke. At Hill 924, the Korean Marines, who participated in a see-saw battle for control of the hill on the previous day, mount a furious assault at dawn. The 11th Marines support the advance and by noon, the objective is secured. Following the capture of Hill 924, the 2nd Battalion, 1st Korean Marine Regiment, moves through the 2nd and 3rd Battalions to lead the way to Hill 1026, to the west. In the meantime, the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, which had turned back at least five counterattacks on the previous day, is again struck before it can jump off to seize its objective. However, the Marines repulse the attack by 0700, and regroup to move against Hill 602. At about 0900, the attack commences. Supported by 11th Marines' artillery, the summit is secure by about 1100. The North Koreans mount several counterattacks to reclaim the hill, but all fail. At about 1500, the North Koreans disengage and retire.

**September 3 1951 (Korea)-In the 1st Marine Division zone**, the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, fortify their positions on Hill 602. The 1st Korean Marine Regiment reinitiates its attack to gain Hill 1026. In conjunction, the 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines, comes out of reserve and fills in a part of a new sector that occurred when the 7th Marines' zone was stretched to cut down the length of the Korean Marines' area. The North Koreans react tenaciously against the Korean Marines and mount a ferocious counterattack, but following a brutal contest that lasts more than three hours, the 1st Korean Marine Regiment prevails. Later, at 1230, the North Koreans again mount a strong attack to regain the hill, but they fail. By about 1430, the Communists disengage and retire. By 1800, all X Corps objectives of Ridge Yoke are accomplished and the 1st Marine Division holds the entire Hays Line, which is also the complete northern rim of the Punch Bowl. The North Korean defenders are victimized after four difficult days of combat; however, the cost of victory had been expensive. Casualties, including the Korean Marines, amounts to 109 killed and 494 wounded. The Communists lose 656 killed (counted) and 40 are captured.

**September 4 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the Marines

consolidate their positions along the Hays Line. In conjunction, patrols are dispatched northward in search of enemy units, while preparations are made to commence the next phase of the 1st Marine Division's attack. In the course of the operation to seize Ridge Yoke, it became apparent that the Communists had taken advantage of the lull in combat while peace talks were underway in Kaesong. The Communists' fire power during the recent Marine operation was almost equivalent to that of the 11th Marines and U.S. Army units that supported the Marines.

While the Communists managed to build their arsenal in Korea, the 1st Marine Division concludes that the next phase of the attack must be postponed until 9 September, to allow time to replenish artillery and mortar ammunition. The supply depot, Ammunition Supply Point (ASP) 60-B, is located about five miles to the rear of the guns and just under fifty miles from Hongch'on. Due to the extremely poor condition of the road, which for most of the distance is a slim serpentine path, the time required to make one round trip is about twenty-five hours. All the while, about fifty trucks will not be available for other division uses.

In related activity, during the daylight hours, patrols are unable to spot the enemy, but during the night (4th-5th), the North Koreans strike positions of the 5th Marines along the Kansas Line. Similarly, in the 7th Marines area, about five miles in front of the 5th Marines, patrols move out from the Hays Line without encountering the enemy. The Communists continue to strike the Marine perimeter with artillery; however, the locations of the guns are concealed.

**September 9 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, In the 1st Marine Division zone,** orders are issued that instruct the 7th Marines to prepare to commence an attack on 11 September to seize Objectives Able (Hill 673) and Baker (749). In other activity, the 1st Marines receives orders that detach the unit from X Corps reserve and place it under the 1st Marine Division, with orders to prepare to pass through the 7th Marines once the objectives are secured. Then they are to extend the attack against Objective Charlie, a ridgeline that stretches northeast from Hill 1052. One company of the 5th Marines is to remain on the Kansas Line, while the remainder of the regiment moves into 1st Marine Division reserve. Also, Marine Transport Helicopter Squadron 161 completes its transfer to Airfield X-83. The large transport helicopters will be used to drastically change combat supply tactics within three days. The squadron now consists of 15 HRS-1 Sikorsky helicopters. The helicopters are able to carry more troops (4 to 6 men in full gear) and can transport three to five casualties in litters.

**September 19-12 1951 (Korea)-In the 1st Marine Division zone,** the Advanced Echelon HMR 161 (Helicopter Transport Squadron) arrives at Nayhyon-Ri, from where it will support ground operations of the Marines.

**September 11 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector- In the 1st Marine Division zone,** the 7th Marines initiates the assault to gain Hills 673 and 749; however, the ground between the Marines and the objectives include three formidable and dominating enemy-held positions, Hills 812, 980 and 1052, on Kanmubong Ridge, about 4,000 rugged yards from the primary objectives. And yet, one other obstacle had to be taken first, Hill 602, just to the front of the spearhead of the attack, the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines. At just about dawn, Company H, 3rd Battalion, in the center, prepares to jump off, but inclement weather delays the assault. With the element of surprise lost, the ascent up the hill is easily detected. The Communists halt the advance at about the mid-way point. Company I moves up the southwest spur of the hill to divert attention and release some pressure from Company H, but while H Company is able to reach a point about fifty yards from the crest,

Company I somehow gets off course and ends up on the spur with H Company at about 1245. All the while, the North Koreans from their dug-in bunkers steadily pour machine gun and mortar fire into the Marine positions.

Before dark the North Koreans launch two counterattacks that succeeded in pushing the Marines back. Equally tenacious resistance is raised on Hill 673 (Objective Able), in the 1st Battalion zone, causing the 1st Battalion to also establish night positions short of the objective. During the darkness, the 2nd Battalion moves out and reaches positions behind the North Koreans on Hill 673 and prepares to strike from the rear.

**September 11 1951 (Korea)**-In the X Corps sector- *In the 1st Marine Division zone*, the 7th Marines initiates the assault to gain Hills 673 and 749; however, the ground between the Marines and the objectives include three formidable and dominating enemy-held positions, Hills 812, 980 and 1052, on Kanmubong Ridge, about 4,000 rugged yards from the primary objectives. And yet, one other obstacle had to be taken first, Hill 602, just to the front of the spearhead of the attack, the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines. At just about dawn, Company H, 3rd Battalion, in the center, prepares to jump off, but inclement weather delays the assault. With the element of surprise lost, the ascent up the hill is easily detected. The Communists halt the advance at about the mid-way point. Company I moves up the southwest spur of the hill to divert attention and release some pressure from Company H, but while H Company is able to reach a point about fifty yards from the crest, Company I somehow gets off course and ends up on the spur with H Company at about 1245. All the while, the North Koreans from their dug-in bunkers steadily pour machine gun and mortar fire into the Marine positions.

Before dark the North Koreans launch two counterattacks that succeeded in pushing the Marines back. Equally tenacious resistance is raised on Hill 673 (Objective Able), in the 1st Battalion zone, causing the 1st Battalion to also establish night positions short of the objective. During the darkness, the 2nd Battalion moves out and reaches positions behind the North Koreans on Hill 673 and prepares to strike from the rear.

**September 12 1951 (Korea)**-**In the 1st Marine Division zone**, the 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines, which had maneuvered behind the North Koreans on Hill 673 without being detected, springs from its positions at the first crack of sunlight. The attack catches the Communists totally off guard. Although the 1st Battalion is slowed tremendously by mines that pepper the slope, the troops complete the ascent by 1415. During the ascent, Company B halts due to a wall of fire. Sergeant Frederick W. Mausert III, an acting platoon leader, bolts from his cover to retrieve two wounded Marines. Mausert receives a head wound but he refuses evacuation. Within minutes, Mausert leads a bayonet charge and en route to the objective, he gets hit again. His helmet absorbs the shot. He is knocked down but otherwise okay.

Meanwhile, as the troops are ready to take the final objective, the crest, enemy fire again stalls the attack. Mausert refuses to halt. He jumps ahead, runs directly toward the enemy machine gun to draw fire away from the remainder of his command, and stops only when the fire cuts him down. Still, Mausert remains adamant about leading his men to the crest. He ignores his multiple wounds, bolts to the summit and destroys a machine gun nest before he is fatally wounded. Sergeant Mausert is awarded the Medal of Honor for his extraordinary courage in the face of the enemy.

In the meantime, the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, seize its objective, Hill 602, and all attacking units reach the summit by 1030. During the attack, Second Lieutenant George H. Ramer leads his 3rd

Platoon against a heavily fortified position. During the treacherous ascent, the bulk of his command becomes wounded.

Lieutenant Ramer, with the able bodied men of the platoon, continue the climb and once at the crest, Ramer singlehandedly destroys an obstinate bunker. Ramer and eight other Marines seize the summit. However, the positions become untenable. Ramer, having sustained two wounds, directs the remainder of his contingent to seek shelter, but he refuses evacuation and holds the crest until the enemy finally overwhelms him. Lieutenant George Ramer is awarded the Medal of Honor posthumously for his extraordinary courage under hostile fire.

Later, at slightly after 1710, the 2nd Battalion reports Hill 749 (Objective Baker) secure; however, the North Koreans retain positions on the slope and threaten the Marines. Later, when the 1st Marines begin to relieve the 7th Marines, the 2nd Battalion is too engaged and some units are isolated, making the change impossible.

Subsequently, a two-battalion surge secures the objective. Fox Company, 2nd Battalion, is not relieved by the 1st Marines until 1100 on the following day. During the two-day contest, the Marines sustain 22 killed and 245 wounded. Enemy killed are calculated only by actual count, which is, for the identical time period, 30 killed and 22 prisoners.

In other activity, during the night (12th-13th), the 1st Marines relieves the 7th Marines and assumes responsibility for the zones of the 1st and 3rd Battalions, which pass into reserve. The helicopters are able to carry only two wounded Marines per trip, prolonging the evacuation mission.

**September 13 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the 1st Marines jump off and advance at 0900, six hours late due to a lack of sufficient ammunition and supplies, as well as an ongoing evacuation mission to get wounded Marines to medical facilities. Company F, 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines, is relieved by the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines, south of Hill 749 (Objective Baker) at 1100. Afterward, the task of relieving the remaining two companies begins. The North Koreans are deeply entrenched in bunkers. The 7th Marines are on the opposite slope of Hill 749, about 400 yards from where the 1st Marines expected the troops to be, based on a report. In the meantime, the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, is unable to push closer to its objective, Hill 751, because of fire from enemy controlled Hill 749. Elements of the 2nd Battalion continue to hold. At 1600, the advancing 3rd Battalion remains several hundred yards short of the 2nd Battalion. Finally, at about 2025, the two units are joined. However, the night does not remain calm. The Marines are subjected to mortar attacks and several counterattacks. Hill 749 remains under Communist control throughout the night.

In other activity, the Marines have had difficulty getting re-supplied; however, on this date, the 1st Marines receive a bonus, dubbed Operation WINDMILL. Just prior to 1600, four choppers, transporting the landing point section (20 by 40 feet), and soon after, seven helicopters each transporting about 800 pounds of ammunition and twenty-eight flights, ends in a space of two and one-half hours. In addition, the Marines receive 18,848 pounds of supplies and 74 wounded are evacuated. The Marines had been working on such a transport system since 1947, but this is its first trial, one that changes military transport forever.

**September 14 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the attack to secure Hill 749 continues. At 0800, the 2nd and 3rd Battalions, 1st Marines, inch forward against artillery, mortar and machine gun fire to eliminate the North Koreans on the northern slope of the

hill. The concealed bunkers are slowly eliminated one by one. During the engagement, PFC Edward Gomez, an ammunition bearer, moves forward with a rifle squad to ensure his machine gun is supplied with ammunition. An enemy grenade is tossed into the area containing Gomez and other Marines of Company E, 2nd Battalion. To save the others, Gomez grabs the grenade and throws himself in the trench to take the full shock of the grenade. Gomez survives and becomes a recipient of the Medal of Honor for his actions, above and beyond the call of duty. While the 2nd Battalion gains only about 325 yards, it is sufficient to give the 3rd Battalion breathing room to surge to the crest of Hill 751. The day's grueling pace does not totally eliminate the resistance north of Hill 749.

**September 15 1951 (Korea)-** *In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone*, the 2nd and 3rd Battalions, 1st Marines, prepare again to knock out the resistance that continues to impede progress, but the North Koreans seem to have an endless supply of ammunition and countless concealed log bunkers. An artillery bombardment is requested to precede the assault of the 2nd Battalion, but the enemy guns are not silenced. Once again, the Marines advance at 1710, but they come under walls of fire. The crossfire is so intense, the Marines are forced to withdraw under cover fire of the 11th Marines' artillery. The enemy tactic (crossfire) is dubbed the "North Korean T Formation." In related activity, the 5th Marines move from the Hays Line into position to pass through the 3rd Battalion,

1st Marines, on the 16th. In the meantime, Company F, 2nd Battalion, engages a strong entrenched force on Hill 749. A forward platoon is hit with overwhelming strength and compelled to pull back. Corporal Joseph Vittori and two others, during the withdrawal, race through the retreating column to engage the advancing enemy. The trio encounters a force and in a close-quartered fight, the Marines prevail. At that time, an un-manned machine gun is covered by Vittori. He moves from point to point to cover the flanks and pours fire upon the enemy, while Marine casualties continue to climb. Nonetheless, Vittori, mortally wounded, holds his ground.

The 1st Korean Marine Regiment and the division recon company are to assume responsibility for the 5th Marines' vacated positions along the Hays Line. At midnight (15th-16th), the 2nd Battalion is nearly smothered by a forceful assault, but the Marines meet the attack with even more ferociousness. The battle continues into the daylight hours. Meanwhile, the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, near Hill 75; comes under a tenacious attack.

**September 16 1951 (Korea)-**General Van Fleet arrives in the 2nd Division sector and the 1st Marine Division sector to confer with the commanders and to check on the condition and morale of the units. At this time, Van Fleet instructs the respective corps commanders to "firm up his line by 20 September and to plan no further offensives after that date." **In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, at one minute after midnight (15th-16th), the Marines are alerted to another night without sleep as Communist artillery begins to ring the perimeter of the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines. The booming sounds of 76-mm, 105s and 122-mm shells are accompanied by mortar fire. The screeching sounds of North Korean whistles and blaring bugles signal the arrival of yet another night attack. The exhausted Marines, still able to fight despite their diminished numbers from casualties, become galvanized. The ground runs red as the Communists come against the lines in successive waves. The Communists penetrate, slightly against weaker parts of the line, but as the Marines there are compelled to give some ground, one man, Corporal Joseph Vittori, plows through the line of retreat to lead a counterattack. In addition, Vittori bolts from one foxhole to the next to man machine guns, while others there fall from wounds. Neither Vittoli, nor the other Marine are willing to become the vanquished. Every wave that strikes is shattered and by 0400, the North

Korean force, estimated at regimental strength, temporarily runs out of troops for the next wave. Corporal Vittoli is killed during the final minutes of the fight. When Corporal Vittori's body is recovered, more than 200 dead Communists are counted at his front. Corporal Vittori is awarded the Medal of Honor posthumously for his extraordinary courage in the face of the enemy.

The North Koreans also strike the 3rd Battalion positions at Hill 751. This attack also occurs slightly after midnight, but not with the same intensity. Nevertheless, the attacking force of about 50 troops is also repelled. Later, at 0830, the 1st Battalion, 1st Marines, moves out to pass through the 2nd Battalion to finish the fight. Enemy resistance along the ridge line running to Hill 749 still has a powerful punch. Nonetheless, the 1st Battalion plows forward in yet one more grueling day of combat. At 1800, it concludes. Hill 749 (Objective Baker) is secured. The Marines establish night positions with both Hill 749 and 751 in their possession. Lt. Colonel Horace E. Knapp had been wounded and evacuated on the previous day. He had been replaced on this day by Lt. Colonel John E. Gorman.

Also, during the first part of the afternoon, the 5th Marines commence an attack to seize Objective Dog, a hill mass about 1,000 yards distant. The attack is spearheaded by Company F, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, which drills forward on a path that runs between Hill 680 and 673 (Kanmubong Ridge) and leads directly into yet another enemy crossfire. The advance, short of the objective, is halted at 1700 to evacuate wounded and get a well-needed pause.

Another unit, Company, D, requests a signal to identify the positions of Company H. A white phosphorous grenade is used; however, planes on a mission to strike enemy-held Hill 980 on Kanmubong Ridge mistake the signal as a target location. Company H is struck by napalm and strafing machine gun fire. No casualties are incurred thanks to a last-minute recognition panel that is spotted in the nick of time. By this time, it is too late to reinitiate the attack. It is suspended until 0400 on the following day.

During the four-day contest to secure Objective Baker (Hill 749), the Marines sustain 90 killed, 714 wounded and 1 missing. The North Koreans lose 771 killed (counted) and 8 POWs; however the estimate of enemy killed is reported as more than twice the number counted. There will be no pause for relaxation for the Marines. In other activity, the Photo Unit, 1st Marine Aircraft Wing, relocates from Pusan to Yongil Man, Korea.

**September 17 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the 5th Marines reinitiate the attack to secure Hill 812. The attack, scheduled for 0400, is postponed until 0700. The vanguard again is Company F and the delay in jumping off, surprisingly, gives the Marines an advantage. The enemy is spotted while still eating breakfast. At about the same time, the positions are sent to the 11th Marines and an artillery bombardment prompts the Communists to abort the meal. The attacking unit advances swiftly until it gets caught in the expected crossfire. At about 0830, Company E leapfrogs ahead with one platoon of Company F. Air strikes are requested, but again no planes arrive. By 1100, progress remains extremely slow. Lt. Colonel Stiff concludes that it will take a full-powered push to win the prize. Bolstered by a preliminary artillery bombardment, the platoon from Company F lunges against the flank, while Company E plows straight ahead. The enemy is totally unprepared along the flank and the attack severs the resistance there. Within about thirty-six minutes, the Marines climb to the summit and following gruesome, close-quartered fighting, the Marines prevail. The quest for Hill 812 proves to be the spear that pierces the spine of the resistance.

From Hill 812, Company E bolts westward along the ridgeline that links with Hill 980 and prepares to seize it, but permission is denied because the North Koreans still hold Hill 1052 and from there, the new prize would be imperiled. Company E is directed to withdraw 600 yards toward Hill 680. In the meantime, while the Marines establish defensive positions, the enemy left at Hill 980 continues to shell the perimeter in conjunction with enemy-held Hill 1052. Company E holds along the ridgeline that leads to Hill 980, while Company F deploys around Hill 812. Meanwhile, the 1st Marines hold the area north of Hill 751, but the regiment is not linked to the 2nd Battalion.

**September 18–21 1951 (Korea)***In the X Corps area, 1st Marine Division sector*, pursuant to Operation Order 27–51, Hill 854 is to be secured, either by relief of the ROK 8th Division if it is in their hands or by attack, if still controlled by the Communists during the operation to relieve the South Koreans. The 1st Marine Division begins to stretch its line farther east to relieve the ROK 8th Division in a complex troop reformation. The ROK 8th Regiment, after being relieved, is to in turn relieve the ROK 5th Division on the far left. Afterward, the ROK 5th Division is to redeploy in a newly created zone to the left of the 1st Marine Division. The operation is completed by 21 September.

The North Koreans still control much of Hill 854, giving the Marines the task of clearing the remaining resistance there. On the 20th, the 1st Battalion, 1st Marines, relieves two battalions of the ROK 10th Regiment near Hill 854 without incident; however, eleven casualties are incurred due to friendly mines. The Marines move ahead using maps from the ROKs that fail to correctly identify where mines had been placed. In addition, the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines relieves two battalions of the 21st ROK Regiment. The 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, schedules an attack to clear the southwest ridgeline for the afternoon; however, it is postponed due to lack of expected air cover.

Slightly after 1700, the battalion jumps off and it also becomes victimized by friendly mines just as Company H reaches a point about fifty yards from the line of departure. One man is killed and another is wounded. Consequently, the attack is suspended to await engineers who can eliminate the problem. The attack is reinitiated on the following day. In the meantime, the Marines direct the ROKs to find the mines they planted and eliminate them.

**September 18 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, come under attack at 0430. Company E's positions are hit hard, compelling the unit to give some ground. The Communists launch another assault at 0840, but it fails. The North Koreans maintain constant artillery bombardments against the Marine positions throughout the day. The 1st Marine Division reports casualties for this day as 16 killed and 98 wounded. Most of the day's casualties are sustained by the 2nd Battalion. Other than the artillery fire, the day remains tranquil. The Marines also pass the night (18–19) with little activity. Nonetheless, at dawn, the Communists break the silence.

**September 19 1951 (Korea)-In the 1st Marine Division zone**, the enemy still controls Hills 980 and 1052. Between the two hills and the Marines stands "The Rock," a 12-foot-high granite knob on the ridgeline about 700 yards west of Hill 812. The North Koreans hold the western side, while the Marines hold the top and the eastern side. The northern slope is the only area able to provide some protection to the Marines. The 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, desperately need sand bags, barbed wire and other items. Thanks to new additions, in the afternoon the transport helicopter squadron has 10 helicopters execute 16 flights to deliver more than 12,000 pounds in about one hour.

In other activity, the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines, relieves the 1st and 2nd Battalions, 1st Marines,

then deploy to the right of the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines. The 1st Battalion's line extends eastward along the ridge toward the Soyang-gang. In conjunction, during the day, the Marines continue to fortify their positions, hindered primarily by long-range artillery fire.

In other activity, the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, reinitiates the mission to clear Hill 854. In what has become habitual, the requested planes, due to arrive at 0700, arrive overhead at 1040. The four Air Force F-15s strike their targets and leave the area. At 1220, subsequent to an artillery barrage, Company H again leads the way. Enemy resistance remains firm, prompting the vanguard to request another air strike; however, the Marine air wing is not in direct coordination with the Marines. Fifth Air Force planes never arrive. Absent the air strikes, the Marines call upon the artillery and mortars.

The advance remains sluggish against the ferocious resistance, but the Marines grind forward toward the peak. At 1745, word is passed back from Company H that the hill is under Marine control. The battle for Hill 854, which erupted on the previous day, cost the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, 64 casualties, including those affected by friendly mines and of the total, nine are killed. The Communists' dead, according to actual count at the hill, amounts to 159. The additional number of killed and wounded, estimated by the Marine Corps, stands at 150 and 225, respectively. Also, Marine Fighter Squadron 323 (VMF 323) departs the USS *Sicily* (CVE 118) en route to Kangnung, from where it will reinitiate land-based operations.

**September 20 1951 (Korea)**-This date marks a significant turning point in the war. The strategy for the remainder of the conflict changes from a war consumed with perpetual movement to a conflict based on position. It had long ago been decided in Washington, D.C., not to fight for complete victory and now as the Eighth Army has achieved extraordinary success and is beginning to peak, defensive lines become the new way of conducting the war. As of this day, X Corps is to cease offensive attacks and according to General Van Fleet's order of 18 September, to "firm up the existing line and to patrol vigorously in front of it." Meanwhile, the IX Corps remains engaged at Heartbreak Ridge. **In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, at 0315, the North Koreans strike the Marine positions on the eastern side of "The Rock" as part of a plan to regain Hill 812. The enemy initially pounds the area with artillery and mortar fire, but right after, the Communists close against a platoon of Company E, 2nd Battalion. The Marines ignore the fire of the burp guns and grenades and mount a counterattack, but the North Koreans push the platoon back. The Communists occupy the lost ground and take aim on Company E.

Another counterattack is mounted at 0500. Company E drives directly into the enemy's front while Company F duplicates its strategy at Hill 812 and strikes the enemy flank. An enemy bunker after being reduced by the 7th Marines. An enemy casualty is on the lower left. Also, the tree fragments are casualties of Marine artillery. Communists' flank. The North Koreans are caught off guard by 2nd Platoon's strike against their flank. The resistance vaporizes as the Communists bolt for their side (west) of The Rock. The North Koreans lose 60 killed.

By this date, the Marines, since the operation began on 11 September, have secured three of the four objectives; however, Objective Charlie, the ridgeline in the 1st Korean Marine Regiment zone, northwest of Hill 1052, still needs to be seized. As the Marines prepare to take the remaining objectives, everything changes and quite suddenly. Division Operation Order 26-51 places an immediate halt to offensive operations. As it turns out, the fight for The Rock becomes the final chapter in the nine-day battle and it is the last "action of mobility" for the Marines in Korea. In other activity, Marine Squadron VMF-323 arrives at Itami Air Base, Japan, from the USS *Sicily*.

The squadron will depart for Korea on the 24th and begin operation from Pusan.

**September 21 1951 (Korea)-Operation SUMMIT In the X Corps sector**, at Hill 884, the Marines introduce a new tactic of getting troops from an assembly area to the front. At 1030, after a one-half hour delay due to fog, a contingent of Marines attached to the 1st Shore Party Battalion is transported by helicopter to Hill 884 to clear two separate landing sites to receive what becomes the first fighting

force delivered by helicopter to a battlefield. Two helicopters, each transporting one team, hover over their respective landing sites, which stand about 100 yards from each other at a point on the hill several hundred yards from the crest. The Marines assigned to the task, using knotted ropes that dangle dangerously from the helicopters, slither about thirty feet down the ropes during high winds. The initial part of the operation succeeds within about forty minutes. These are the only two sites on the hill capable of handling such an operation. Each encompasses an area of about 50 square feet and both contain two sides of the landing space that terminate at a sheer cliff. Within minutes after the sites are cleared, the waiting helicopters of HMR-16j zoom into action at Field X-83. With the exception of some temporary minor communication problems between X-83 and the landing point team, the operation is flawless. Within three and one-half hours (flight time), 224 Marines and almost 18,000 pounds of supplies and equipment are transported about fourteen miles and delivered to the battlefield.

One contingent includes a heavy machine gun platoon from the 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines. The well oiled operation brings a helicopter above the respective landing sites every thirty seconds and the time spent there hovering averages about twenty seconds, while five Marines with full gear descend the ropes. The identical trip without the use of the helicopters would have taken fourteen hours and required supplies to be carried by laborers.

The final part of the mission, the task of laying a telephone line between the reconn company on Hill 854 and the 1st Marines command post about eight miles to the rear of the hill, is also a success. The time to lay each line takes about fifteen minutes.

General Byers, USA, X Corps commander, is among many who congratulate HMR-16j and the participants in the operation. Byers comments: "Your imaginative experiment with this kind of transport is certain to be of lasting value to all the services." Another commenting on the tremendous achievement is Major General Gerald C. Thomas, who remarks: "Operation SUMMIT, the first helicopter borne landing of a combat unit in history was an outstanding success. To all who took part, well done."

The team responsible for the blueprint that had to be created within a twenty-four hour period included Lieutenant Colonel George W. Herring (commanding officer of HMR-16j); Lt. Colonel William C. Mitchell (Herring's executive officer); Major Ephraim Kirby Smith (Reconn Company CO) and Lt. Richard C. Higgs (acting division embarkation officer). **In the 1st Marines zone**, an enemy force launches a probing assault against the lines of Company G, 3rd Battalion, during the early morning hours. The attack is repelled; however, during the fight, a grenade is tossed into a foxhole occupied by Corporal Jack Davenport and one other Marine. Davenport, in an effort to save the other Marine's life, takes the brunt of the explosion by covering the grenade with his body. Corporal Davenport is awarded the Medal of Honor posthumously for his courage under fire and his selfless sacrifice to save the life of another. *In Naval Activity*, Marine Squadron VMF-212 departs Itami Base, Japan, aboard the USS *Rendova*.

**September 23 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the Marine reconnaissance company deployed at Hill 884 is relieved by the 1st Marines. In other activity, Marines in forward observation posts place a call to the Navy and the USS *New Jersey* responds. Enemy positions that had been spotted by the observers are struck by the big 16-inch guns of the *New Jersey* (BB-62), which hits its targets more than twenty miles away. The 2,000-pound shells destroy ammunition depots, artillery positions and troop formations. The Marine patrols also receive hefty support from the artillery of the 1st Marine Division and U.S. Army units that are attached, which add extra punch to the patrols.

The North Koreans are greeted by the *New Jersey* a few additional times when called by the 1st and 3rd Battalions, 1st Marines, while on patrol through the end of the month. This is the first use of the Navy's guns in support of the 1st Marine Division since the latter part of 1950. The naval bombardments are sometimes able to break up counterattacks before they can be initiated. The Marines are appreciative of the naval fire power supporting them along their front, which is spread about thirteen miles in the mountains of the Korean wilderness and partly northwest of the Punch Bowl, where it linked with the ROK 5th Division.

**September 27 1951 (Korea)-**General Matthew Ridgway suggests (to the Chinese Communists) that site of cease fire talks be relocated from Kaesong to a site near the No-Man's Land village of Songhyon. **In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** helicopters again take combat troops to the front. A daytime exercise is initiated in preparation for a genuine movement after dark. Subsequent to dark, Operation BLACKBIRD commences. Six helicopters (HRS-1) lift Company E, 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines, from a dry stream bed in the vicinity of Hill 702 and transport the unit (more than 200 troops) to the northwestern rim of the Punch Bowl. The landing site, encompassing an area of 50 by 100 feet, is prepared by the 1st Shore Party Battalion. The entire operation, including a round-trip of 13 miles, takes place in less than two and one-half hours, despite traveling a circuitous route to prevent the enemy from observing the operation.

After the troops arrive and begin the one-mile march to the front, one Marine is wounded by a mine. Shortly thereafter, it is determined that the entire area is mined, causing the march to be aborted. The operation experienced other problems. The pilots had been temporarily blinded by the glare on their windshields and the trip through the mountain passes became dangerous due to the nasty terrain and the artillery flashes. After assessing the results, it was concluded that transferring troops during darkness would be restricted to friendly territory. Operation BLACKBIRD is the only time troops are lifted in the darkness during the entire conflict.

**September 29 1951 (Korea)-In the United States:** The draft numbers for the month of November are elevated on this day from 33,700 to 39,000. The Marines will take 10,000 for November and for the following month, 9000.

**September 30 1951 (Korea)-**General Van Fleet proclaims in a statement the reasoning for his strategy: "My basic mission during the past four months has been to destroy the enemy, so that the men of Eighth Army will not be destroyed." Van Fleet states that it is "imperative" to eliminate as many weapons as possible and "mandatory" that the high ground be controlled. By controlling the high ground at the cost of "losing a comparative few, we saved other thousands." Van Fleet notes that Eighth Army estimates of enemy casualties from 25 May through 25 September amounts to 188,237. At the close of his statement, General Van Fleet notes: "The Communist forces in Korea (as the Eighth Army autumn campaign begins) are not liquidated, but they are crippled." **In the X**

**Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the Marines have, since the 20th, been under orders to restrict their actions to patrols. However, from the 20th until this day, the Marines have exhibited no passiveness. Casualties for the period include 59 killed, 331 wounded and 1 missing. Enemy losses number 505 killed (counted) and 2327 prisoners. Marine casualties for September stand at 1,822, and the 1st Korean Marine Corps Regiment has sustained 594. North Korean losses for September stand at 2,799 killed (counted) and 557 prisoners.

**October 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, activity is limited to patrols. The activity for the entire month is greatly reduced from previous months, so much so that Division, rather than maintain a daily diary, merely splits the month into two parts. Nonetheless, while the enemy continues to evade, when contact is made, they are engaged. The ratio of casualties for October stands at 20 to 1 in favor of the Marines. During the previous month, the ratio had been 4 to 1.

**October 11 1951 (Korea)- In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone, Operation BUMBLEBEE** commences. At 1000, as part of the operation in which the 7th Marines at Won-tong-ni participate, the 3rd Battalion is lifted by helicopter and transported to the division's center along the front. The operation involves 156 flights by 12 helicopters. The distance from Field X-77 to the front lines is about 17 miles and the duration of time is about 10 to 12 minutes, with the helicopters landing at one-minute intervals and spending an average of seventeen seconds unloading the troops. The helicopters are beginning to play a much larger part in the war in Korea. In just under six hours, 959 fully equipped men and equipment are transported. The total amount of weight transported during the operation amounts to 229,920 pounds. In conjunction, the remainder of the 7th Marines (1st and 2nd Battalions) move by overland routes to the front to complete relief of the 5th Marines.

**October 13 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, from 1 October to this date, 87 North Korean troops surrender to the 1st Marine Division.

**October 14 1951 (Korea)- In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the Marines maintain only patrols through October 31; however, while the infantry penetrates further into enemy territory, other patrols include tanks and when necessary, all units receive artillery support and air cover.

**October 15 1951 (Korea)- In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, urgent calls for help arrive for a beleaguered ROK unit that had become surrounded while operating in the IX Corps sector. The ROKs had sustained casualties and had expended most of their ammunition. Marine helicopters are dispatched (Operation WEDGE) to assist the isolated contingent. Six helicopters (HRS-1) arrive with 19,000 pounds of ammunition and evacuate 24 wounded troops.

**October 16 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, a contingent of the 1st Battalion, 7th Marines, advances against North Korean fortifications in the high ground near Changhang. The Communists raise fierce resistance and pound the attacking force with artillery, mortars and machine gun fire, but to no avail. The objective is breached just prior to 1540. By 1700, all resistance is eliminated. The Marines withdraw after determining that the area is untenable due to booby traps and mines. They sustain three killed and 18 wounded. The Communists sustain 35 killed (counted).

**October 17 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, a contingent of the 1st Korean Marine Corps Regiment attacks separate Communist strongpoints in the area northwest

of Hill 75; and south of Hill 1052. The contingent, bolstered by tanks and artillery, eliminates twenty-five fortified bunkers. During the operation, 15 enemy troops are killed (counted) and three others are captured.

**October 22 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the Marines execute Operation BUSHBEATER to clear the enemy from the east flank of the division. A contingent of the 1st Battalion, 1st Marines, is airlifted by helicopters (HMR-161) to the target zone. The troops drive westwardly toward the Soyang-gang River in coordination with a simultaneous operation by the Marine reconnaissance company, which is closing from the opposite direction. Other similar operations are executed during October. One code-named HOUSEBURNER is carried out literally, as the Marines attempt to destroy as many huts as possible to ensure that the enemy is not able to use them during the frigid Korean winter.

**October 25 1951 (Korea)-In Naval Activity,** Marine planes attached to VMF-312 attack targets, including rails and locomotives near Myong-dong. A band of eight MiGs attack the corsairs, but the enemy pilots' poor marksmanship fails to do the Marines' F4U4Bs any harm. Afterward, the pilots spot another group of MiGs, numbering 16, but again are spared damage.

**October 27 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the 1st Marines dispatch a reconnaissance contingent to estimate the strength and positions of an enemy force detected north of the 1st Battalion's lines. The intelligence gathering continues for three days and on the following day, an attack is launched to eliminate the problem. Also, the 1st Marine Division initiates use of an airfield at Sokchori, located in the ROK I Corps sector.

**October 29 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the USS *New Jersey* and the USS *Toledo* support the actions during the last two weeks of October. By the end of the month, the *New Jersey* executes 11 missions and the *Toledo* participates in 41 missions. On this day, the USS *Toledo* receives a message from General Gerald Thomas: "Your accurate and effective fire during period 24-29 October made an important contribution to operations of this division. Many thanks and come again."

**October 30 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the 1st Battalion, 1st Marines, dispatches Company C, led by Captain John R. McMahon, to eliminate enemy positions on a ridge to its front. The contingent sweeps along the ridge destroying bunkers as it advances. The North Koreans manage to threaten the attack by pouring mortar and small arms fire; however, the Marines quickly find protective cover and pull back under the support fire of artillery fire, air strikes and heavy machine gun fire. The operation costs the company one man wounded. The Marines destroy about 40 enemy bunkers. The North Koreans lose 65 killed (counted).

**October 31 1951 (Korea)- In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, pursuant to orders from General Thomas, uses Communist tactics against the enemy. They initiate an artillery attack to signal a night assault; however, as the guns silence, the Marines use a North Korean bugle signal to trip up the Communists. The bunkers empty as the North Koreans answer the call to man the open trenches to prepare to defend. Instead of Marine infantry, the Communists are greeted by mortar and artillery fire. Estimated casualties amount to 47 killed and 48 wounded. In other activity, the 1st Marine Division, for the month of October, reports 50 killed, 2 missing and 2 missing in action. The figures include the Korean Marines. Enemy casualties are reported as 709 killed (counted) and an estimated count of 2,377 killed. The number of enemy wounded is estimated at 4,927. The Marines also capture 571. In other activity, the Air Defense

Section of the Marine Tactical Air Control Squadron 2 relocates to Pohang and is placed under the control of Marine Ground Control Interceptor Squadron 1. The squadron continues to operate as the Tactical Air Direction Section.

**November 1 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the Marines continue to remain active along their front, the eastern portion of the X Corps zone, but activity is restrained to patrols. Nevertheless, the Marines are aware that enemy units, including the 1st, 15th and 19th N.K. Divisions remain to their front. Throughout November, the Marines maintain responsibility for the eastern sector of X Corps zone in east central Korea.

**November 4 1951 (Korea)-In Air Force activity,** a large group of MiGs, composed of about 60 planes, attacks a formation of 34 F-86s in the skies near Sinanju. Following the air duels, two of the MiGs are downed and three others are damaged. The U.S. reports no losses. Captain William F. Guss, USMC, attached to the USAF 4th Fighter Squadron, knocks down one MiG to become the first Marine pilot to down a Chinese MiG.

**November 5 *In the United States-*** Lt. General Lemuel Shepherd (commander Fleet Marine Force, Pacific) is appointed on this day as commandant of the Marine Corps, scheduled to succeed General Clifton B. Cates. Shepherd assumes the position on 1 January 1952. General Cates does not retire upon the end of his term as commandant. He is appointed as commanding officer, Marine Corps Schools, Quantico.

**November 7–8 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the artillery of the 11th Marines is especially busy as they fire in coordination with the 90-mm rifles of the 1st Marine Tank Battalion in an effort to destroy enemy fortified positions. The two-day continuous bombardment pounds 34 known artillery positions and 25 bunkers. The attack also concentrates on 22 machine gun positions and several supply dumps. The two U.S. units aggressively pound the enemy positions throughout the month, but the Communists have actually been able to augment their fortified positions to make them less accessible to the artillery attacks.

**November 8 1951 (Japan)-** Marine Squadron VMF-214 departs Itami aboard the USS *Lenawee* (PA-195) at Kobe, Japan.

**November 9 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** preparations are made to celebrate the birthday of the Marine Corps, which falls on the following day. Orders (OP-NO 50-5j) arrive instructing the division to arrange for a massive bombardment of a particular position from where the enemy is able to observe Marine lines.

**November 10 1951 (Korea)- In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** enemy positions on Hill 1052 are greeted by a thunderous bombardment in celebration of the Marine Corps' Birthday, which is on this day. Eighty-three Marine planes in coordination with the 11th Marines' artillery and the division's tanks, mortars and machine guns light up Hill 1052 like a Christmas tree. The USS *Los Angeles* joins in the celebration and adds its big guns. The Marines, in the spirit of the day, deliver 50,000 leaflets to the hill, each extending an invitation for the enemy to join the Marines for their birthday dinner that evening. Twenty North Koreans surrender; however, it is uncertain whether the unusual invitations had anything to do with it.

**November 11 1951 (Korea)-*In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,*** along the Minnesota Line, the 5th Marines relieves the 1st Marines. This operation becomes the largest helicopter lift (Operation SWITCH) of troops since the inclusion of helicopters in the Marine operations. About

2,000 troops are moved by helicopters, which deliver 950 troops to Hill 884; another 952 Marines are transported from the hill to Field X-83. The entire operation is completed in about ten hours, another tactical historic first for the U.S. Marines. Hill 884 soon becomes known as “Helicopter Hill.”

**November 12 1951 (Korea)-In Japan,** Marine Fighter Squadron VMF 214 departs Japan en route to the U.S. and its base at El Toro (Marine Corps Air Station), California.

**November 28, 1951–April 30, 1952-SEVENTH DESIGNATED CAMPAIGN-SECOND KOREAN WINTER.**

**November 29 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** combat controls continue as they have for the entire month of November, with similar results. After dark 11 separate Marine ambush patrols operate in areas between 1,500 and 2,000 yards to the front of the MSR. At dawn on the following day, the combined contact with enemy forces amounts to one Communist killed and one POW seized. The Marines sustain four wounded.

**November 30 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** Marine casualties for the month of November amount to 34 killed and 250 wounded (including casualties of the 1st Korean Marine Regiment). Communist losses amount to 408 killed (counted) and 1,728 estimated killed and 2,235 wounded. Also, 104 enemy prisoners are seized.

**December 1 1951 (Korea)-**While peace talks continue at Panmunjom, Eighth Army continues to work on its defensive lines in preparation for yet another winter on the Korean peninsula; however, patrols are maintained. **In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** patrols are dispatched on a daily basis along the east-central portion of Korea. During the night hours, the Marines often establish positions known as “duck blinds.” Contact with the enemy is only sporadic and light during these aggressive patrols. In related activity, Communist guerrillas still operate behind the lines. These pesky threats are dealt with by helicopter patrols.

**December 18 1951 (Korea)-**During the peace talks, for the first time, some progress is made; however, not toward an armistice. A list of prisoners is exchanged, providing some accountability on the subject of missing and actually held prisoners. The list contains the names of 3,198 U.S. troops and of these, only 6; Marines (including 2 U.S. Navy corpsmen) are held. As the U.N. hands its list of Communist prisoners to the enemy representatives, the Chinese become disgruntled. The names have been changed into English, making it difficult for the translation back to the Oriental characters. The Chinese attempt in vain to retrieve their list. This transfer of names is the final one until 1953 at the time of the initial prisoner of war transfer (Operation LITTLE SWITCH). Names of some captured during October, November and December of this year are not included in the Communist list, creating anxiety in the States for some families, who are not aware of the respective captives until April 1953.

**December 19 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines, relieves the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, in Operation FAREWELL, the final mission for Lt. Colonel George W. Herring (commander HMR-1). Herring soon after departs for the States to become commander, Marine Helicopter Experimental Squadron at Quantico, Virginia. Lt. Colonel Mitchell remains as executive officer, but Colonel Keith B. McCutcheon succeeds Herring.

**December 24 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** nineteen patrols move out and return at dawn on Christmas Day. Enemy contact is made by only two patrols and in

each incident, short firefights erupted with enemy patrols. Meanwhile, the enemy has some long-range contact with the U.S. Navy. The guns of the USS *St. Paul*, a cruiser, blasts enemy positions and destroys 7 enemy bunkers.

**December 30 1951 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, is directed to prepare for a raid to be executed on the night of 1–2 January 1952. The unit delegated to initiate the raid is Company H.

**December 31 1951 (Korea)**-The year comes to an end with an armistice that is not actually an armistice, but it is in conjunction with a war that is not officially a war, at least if it is referred to by people not on the battlefield. In Korea, to the troops, it has been and continues to be a war; later it is often referred to as the “Forgotten War.” However, no serviceman who spends even one day in the Korean conflict, particularly during winter, will ever forget it. **In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, when the Marines first introduced the helicopter to the battlefield earlier this year, there had been much speculation about the vulnerability of the choppers. However, in addition to establishing the helicopter as the newest weapon on the front lines, the performance of the Marine pilots and their coordinators had been sterling. As 1951 phases out, not one helicopter pilot has been lost to enemy fire. Several planes, however, have been lost. During the month of December, Marine ground troops had requested air support 22 times, but the Marine pilots remain under Fifth Air Force control, restricting close-air support. Only five requests received air support. Also during December, despite the lack of any major combat operations, the Marines while on patrols sustain 24 killed (including the 1st Korean Marine Regiment), 139 wounded and 8 missing. The enemy sustains 246 killed (counted) and 56 captured. Also, at the stroke of midnight, the 11th Marines, a long way from Times Square, rings in the New Year by initiating a tumultuous bombardment of enemy positions

**January 1 1952 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, at this time, the attached units serving with the 1st Marine Division are the 1st Korean Marine Corps Regiment, the 1st Korean Artillery Battalion and the U.S. Army Searchlight Company. Another attached unit is Battery C, 1st 4.5 Rocket Battalion. Also, a patrol initiated on New Year’s Eve becomes the first Marine unit to engage the enemy during 1952. At slightly after midnight, the ambush patrol of Company B, 1st Battalion, 5th Marines, clad in white to blend in with the snow, waits patiently as an enemy patrol moves to within about five yards of its positions, then opens fire. Of the six-man enemy patrol, one is killed and it is estimated that four others are wounded, but due to the darkness, the enemy is able to vanish and prevent the capture of prisoners. The patrol sustains no casualties and returns to friendly lines at 0400. In other activity, during the night of 1–2 January, Company H, 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, clad in white suits, moves out in the snow from Hill 812 heading toward the first objective, only to find the bunkers vacated. Afterward, the unit closes upon the second objective at the Soyang-gang River. Soon after, twelve Marines pass through a suspected mined area, but the next man in line detonates a mine. Newly distributed thermal boots prevent the more serious wounds that usually occur.

An ambush is set in motion, but no enemy is encountered. The condition of the wounded Marine forces the unit to pull back rather than advance to the next objective. The contingent moves back in two separate groups on the chance that some prisoners might be gained. One of the columns does capture two North Korean troops. This raid takes place in the same area where heavy combat had ensued during the previous September.

Also, the Communists control the dominating ground near the left-central positions of the Marine perimeter, particularly the nasty terrain west of Hill 812, where distances of only about 100–150 yards separate the two forces. **In the United States**-General Lemuel C. Shepherd, Jr., is succeeded by Lieutenant General Franklin C. Hart as commander Fleet Marine Force, Pacific. Shepherd in turn becomes Commandant of the Marine Corps, succeeding General Clifton B. Cates, whose term ends.

**January 10 1952 (Korea)-** *In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone*, the 5th Marines is relieved by the 7th Marines. The 5th Marines reverts to reserve. In other activity, subsequent to several days of adapting to new techniques, Helicopter Squadron HMR-161 executes a new mission, Operation CHANGIECHANGIE, which transports a battalion to relieve another, but the troops (2nd Battalion, 7th Marines) are lifted to relieve the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines. The troops are delivered to the company perimeters rather than on a battalion level.

**January 11 1952 (Korea)- In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, Major General John T. Selden succeeds Major General Gerald C. Thomas as commander, 1st Marine Division. In other activity, Operation MOUSETRAP is initiated to test HMR-161's ability to quickly execute a mission against guerrillas. At 1000, the operation gets underway and shortly thereafter, 500 Marines are lifted to a landing site, pre-cleared by the Air Delivery Platoon. Several additional operations are executed during the following three days. The operations go well and experience only minor problems.

**January 13 1952 (Korea)-** Enemy positions on Amgak peninsula come under air and surface vessel attack. Marine planes attached to the USS *Badoeng Strait* (CVE 116) participate. In addition, the destroyer USS *Collett* (DD 730) and the USS *Rochester* (CA 124), attached to CTF-95, pound the positions from the sea.

**February 8 1952 (Korea)-** Marine Fighter Squadron 212 relocates its command post on the USS *Badoeng Strait* (CVE 116) to Itami, Japan.

**February 9–10 1952-** *In the X Corps zone, 1st Marine Division sector*, the 11th Marines initiates a massive artillery barrage to present the illusion of cover fire to support a withdrawal as part of Operation CLAM-UP, scheduled to commence on 10 February. More than 12,000 rounds are fired; however, other Eighth Army units across the front also carry out similar exercises to deceive the enemy.

**February 10 1952 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, all regiments on line, the 7th Marines, 5th Marines and the 1st Korean Marine Corps Regiment, from right to left, display an intent to withdraw, while the reserves, the 5th Marines at the rear, withdraw and await darkness to be returned to their positions by vehicles. Later this night, enemy patrols probe, but receive no return fire from the Marines.

**February 11 1952 (Korea)- In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, after dark, a North Korean patrol probes Marine lines near Hill 812. The Marines ignore the intrusion initially as Operation CLAM-UP continues. The Communists attack using white phosphorous grenades, prompting the Marines to acknowledge their presence. The enemy sustains 10 killed and two others, both wounded, are captured. **In Japan:** Elements of Marine Fighter Squadron VMF-115 arrive at Yokosuka, Japan, from the United States. Also, the command post, Marine Fighter Squadron 312, moves from Itami Air Base to the USS *Bairoko* (CVE 115), and Marine Fighter Squadron 212 departs Itami for Pusan, Korea.

**February 12 1952 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the Communists continue to probe the Marine perimeter, while the Marines continue the feint of a withdrawal. At

about dawn, the enemy attempts to probe deeper and encounters a rapid response from the 1st Marines. The short exchange costs the enemy 9 killed (counted) and 3 wounded. By this time, the Communists conclude that Eighth Army had not withdrawn.

**February 13 1952 (Korea) In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the Communists launch after dark raids against Hills 812 and 854, which reconfirms that Eighth Army had in fact not withdrawn. The enemy sustains heavy casualties.

**February 14 1952 (Korea)- In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the Communists repeat the attacks of the previous day by launching night raids against Hill 812 and 854, only to suffer similar results and high casualties. In the 2nd Division sector, a contingent engages an enemy force. The Americans and accompanying ROKs sustain some casualties.

**February 15 1952 (Korea)-Operation CLAM-UP** ceases following five days of attempting to convince the enemy a withdrawal had been made. The operation had not been too successful. Fewer prisoners had been seized than during the five-day period that preceded the operation. In addition, while the enemy patrols sustain heavy casualties after venturing into the trap, the other enemy lines had received a reprieve due to the silence of Eighth Army's artillery. **In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the Marines terminate their portion of Operation CLAM-UP and the results are satisfactory. The enemy losses in the zone amount to 56 killed (counted) and 54 wounded.

**February 21 1952 (Korea)**-A North Korean general officer (N.K. 24th Mechanized Artillery) defects. Brigadier General Lee II arrives at the island of Tae-do in Wonsan harbor aboard a confiscated sampan and surrenders to Marines. He brings along a wealth of information contained in his briefcase that details Communist top secrets, which include plans and tactics for pending attacks against selected Wonsan islands. Immediately after a debriefing, General Lee II is sped to Eighth Army headquarters to be debriefed by intelligence.

**February 22 1952 (Korea)**-A Marine plane attached to VMA-312 passes over Paengyong-do and a second aircraft follows dropping a message, apparently for the members of Task Element 95.15 who are inspecting the anti-aircraft weapons. The pilot drops the message, but inadvertently, he also drops a 500-pound bomb. The bomb hits slightly west of the command post. Although much damage is sustained, no fatalities occur.

**February 24 1952 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines, at Hill 884 is relieved by the 1st Battalion, 7th Marines. The relief operation is carried out by HMR-161, in what is the 5th major helicopter operation at the hill. Hill 884 is often referred to as Helicopter Hill.

**February 25 1952 (Korea)**-Marine Fighter Squadron 115 command post arrives at Pusan from Yokosuka, Japan. The unit joins Marine Air Group 33. Marine Photo Squadron VMJ-1 is established.

**February 28 1952 (Korea)**-*In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone*, HMR-161 Squadron is grounded due to repeated failures of the tail assembly, which had caused several helicopters to make emergency landings. The problem, discovered to have been caused by the extreme weather, is finally corrected by 14 March, when new modified tail assemblies arrive in Korea from the U.S.

In other activity, the month closes with an average of 13 patrols per day, 5 daylight reconnaissance and 8 night-patrols, most of which make no enemy contact. Only one of the night ambush patrols out of the last 185 reports enemy contact; only six contacts are reported by the reconnaissance

probes.

During the month of February, the Marine artillery commences 679 “observed” firing missions. The targets: 211 against troops, 175 against bunkers, 96 against enemy artillery positions and 75 on other type targets. Also, the 90-mm guns of the 1st Marine Tank Battalion make excellent use of their elevated positions, particularly at Hills 812 and 854. Aided by the 92nd U.S. Army Searchlight Company, the tankers are able to ring direct fire upon the enemy 24 hours a day. The searchlights provide illumination and simultaneously blind the enemy’s sight of the tanks. Throughout the entire winter period, the Communists fail to knock out any of the searchlights.

Marine casualties (including the 1st Korean Marine Corps Regiment) for the month of February, despite no heavy combat, amount to 23 killed, 102 wounded and 1 missing in action. February is the final month in which the Marines deploy in east Korea. During the following month, the 1st Marine Division redeploys in west Korea.

**February 28 1952 (Korea)**-*In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone*, HMR-161 Squadron is grounded due to repeated failures of the tail assembly, which had caused several helicopters to make emergency landings. The problem, discovered to have been caused by the extreme weather, is finally corrected by 14 March, when new modified tail assemblies arrive in Korea from the U.S.

In other activity, the month closes with an average of 13 patrols per day, 5 daylight reconnaissance and 8 night-patrols, most of which make no enemy contact. Only one of the night ambush patrols out of the last 185 reports enemy contact; only six contacts are reported by the reconnaissance probes.

During the month of February, the Marine artillery commences 679 “observed” firing missions. The targets: 211 against troops, 175 against bunkers, 96 against enemy artillery positions and 75 on other type targets. Also, the 90-mm guns of the 1st Marine Tank Battalion make excellent use of their elevated positions, particularly at Hills 812 and 854. Aided by the 92nd U.S. Army Searchlight Company, the tankers are able to ring direct fire upon the enemy 24 hours a day. The searchlights provide illumination and simultaneously blind the enemy’s sight of the tanks. Throughout the entire winter period, the Communists fail to knock out any of the searchlights.

Marine casualties (including the 1st Korean Marine Corps Regiment) for the month of February, despite no heavy combat, amount to 23 killed, 102 wounded and 1 missing in action. February is the final month in which the Marines deploy in east Korea. During the following month, the 1st Marine Division redeploys in west Korea.

**March 1 1952 (Korea)**-In other activity, Marine Fighter Squadron 312 is redesignated Marine Attack Squadron 312.

**March 4 1952 (Korea)**-*In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone*, the ground Marines receive an air drop of 260 tons of supplies and ammunition, compliments of fifty-one C-119s. It is the largest drop of the month in Korea.

**March 11 1952 (Korea)**-A swarm of enemy swept-wing jet fighters attacks two Marine photo planes (Banshee jets, F2H-2P). The two planes survive, but both sustain damage. *In the United States*-The Marine Corps announces it will halt accepting draftees on 30 June due to an increase in volunteers.

**March 12 1952 (Korea)**-*In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone*, General Van Fleet arrives at the division command post to announce a key command decision. It involves the Marines

being redeployed on the far left of Eighth Army area, where they are to relieve the 1st ROK Division

in the I Corps sector (West Korea). The Marines are to position themselves from where they hold responsibility to protect against intrusion along the primary and historic invasion route into the capital, Seoul. Pursuant to orders (OI 272) from Eighth Army, the move is to be completed by 1 April.

**March 15 1952 (Korea)**-In yet other activity, the Marines receive some new protective equipment. Marine Attack Squadron (VMA) 121, receives the first shipment of combat armor plating, which is to be mounted and tested.

**March 16 1952 (Korea)**-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone, the transport *General Gordon* arrives at Sokcho-ri with replacements (18th Replacement Draft). The fresh arrivals debark only to discover they are to ship out. While the 174 officers and 1,135 Marines prepare to join in the redeployment mission (I Corps, left flank of Eighth Army), the *Gordon* accepts 103 officers and 1,135 enlisted Marines for the voyage back to the States.

**March 17 1952 (Korea)**- **In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the U.S. 25th Infantry Regiment assumes responsibility for the Marine zone, while the Marines prepare to move to positions near Seoul in west Korea.

**March 18 1952 (Korea)**-**In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the 1st Marines receive orders to move from Camp Tripoli to its new positions near Munsan-ni. Also, the 1st Battalion, 11th Marines, and the 1st Korean Marine Corps Regiment arrive aboard LSTs at the Kimpo peninsula from Sokcho. They are transported by Amphibious Redeployment Group (TG 90.5). The operation is completed by the 24th.

**March 20 1952 (Korea)**-**In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the 7th Marines moves from Camp Tripoli to the new positions on Eighth Army's far left in West Korea. In conjunction, a contingent of the 8th ROK Division assumes responsibility for the 7th Marines' positions. Also, the 1st Tank Battalion and the antitank companies of the 1st, 5th and 7th Marines depart their positions in X Corps sector and move by sea to the new area in West Korea.

**March 22 1952 (Korea)**-**In The X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the 1st Marine Division establishes a command post near Tongji-ri. **In the United States**-The Marine Corps activates six additional battalions and establishes a new Marine air group on the west coast. The new units bring the corps up to its full strength of three divisions and three air wings by June 1952.

**March 23 1952 (Korea)**-**In the X Corps sector**, the 5th Marines moves overland to West Korea after being relieved by ROK troops. Also, Marine Transport Helicopter Squadron 161 relocates its command post to a site about four miles outside Munsan-ni. Also, Marine F3D Skyknights begin to provide protection for the B-29s and they also execute the normal interception patrols. The Marine aviators also commit a squadron of twin-engine F7Fs for the task of escorting the B-29s on their bombing missions.

**March 24 1952 (Korea)**-**In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the 1st Marine Air Wing units in support of Division VMO-6 and HMR-161 complete their respective moves from Airfield X-83 in the Punch Bowl area to a site (A-17) several miles below Munsan-ni. In conjunction, the rear echelon establishes positions at Ascom City. Although both helicopter squadrons are under the control of the 1st Marine Air Wing, they act under the operational control

of division. In other activity, a Communist force attacks a small contingent, composed of two squads of Korean Marines, on Ho-do Pando Island on the west coast. The assault is supported by guns and mortars on the mainland. The South Korean Marines sustain 33 killed, one wounded and one missing.

**March 25 1952 (Korea)**-*In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone*, the 5th Marines arrives near Munsan-ni from east Korea and deploy to the rear of the 7th Marines. Rather than revert to reserve, as scheduled, the 5th Marines is directed to deploy at positions between the 1st and 7th Marines, due to the need to bolster the overextended front lines. With the exception of some artillery, the entire 1st Marine Division by this date completes its movement from west Korea to east Korea, during the maneuver known as Operation MIXMASTER. On this day, the Chinese commence artillery fire against the Marine perimeter. One hundred and eighty-nine shells fall within the lines of the 1st and 5th Marines. Ten Marines are wounded. In other activity, a Chinese sniper kills one Marine in the 1st Marines zone. On the following day, another is mortally wounded. The Marines stay deployed along what remains the front lines for the duration of the conflict to hold the route to Seoul, which had been used for centuries by invading armies. The Marines' orders direct them to aggressively defend their sector of the Jamestown Line. The enemy in front of the Marines are the Chinese Communists. To the west of the perimeter stands the Chinese 65th Army and to the north, the Chinese 63rd Army. In addition, the Communists, while holding the strength of 15 infantry battalions, also have 10 artillery battalions with a combined number of 106 guns. The Marines are lacking their usual close-air support, as the Marine Air Wing remains under the control of Fifth Air Force, and orders restrict air support to 96 sorties per day along the entire 155-mile front of Eighth Army.

**March 25–31 1952 (Korea) In the I Corps sector**, a Chinese contingent of about 100 troops initiates probes against the 1st Marine Division lines, particularly against the 1st Korean Marine Corps Regiment, which holds responsibility for the point known as Freedom Gate on the left of the perimeter. It is the key bridge in a chain of three that span the Imjin River and lead to the capital. Five separate actions occur. For the Marines, the Freedom Gate bridge is the artery that maintains contact and provides resupply for the regiments north of the river. The other bridges, X-ray and Widgeon, are positioned farther east.

**March 27 1952 (Korea)**-*In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone*, Colonel Frederick P. Henderson becomes division artillery commanding officer, succeeding Colonel Bruce T. Hemphill. The artillery units are pressed heavily; the area to defend is too wide for the amount of units. In addition, Fifth Air Force continues to hold jurisdiction on Marine air squadrons, restricting their support for the Marine ground troops along the Jamestown Line, as well as two other back-up lines to the rear, the Wyoming Line and Kansas Line, both established prior to the arrival of the Marines. To the front of the MLR, the Marines must also maintain an outpost line of resistance, which further spreads the units across positions about 2,500 yards in front of the main line of resistance. Nevertheless, during these first days along the Jamestown Line, the majority of casualties occur from mines previously planted and poorly marked by the South Koreans.

**March 29 1952 (Korea)**-*In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone*, the administrative rear echelon arrives to complete the deployment of the 11th Marines' artillery regiment in west Korea. The Marines discover problems with their defenses, including an area far larger than the available manpower to defend it. Korean farmers working their lands on terrain separating the MLR from the Chinese create an obstacle. The Chinese, from their positions, also find the farmers just in front of

their positions. The Marines' positions are out of range of U.S. warship guns.

**March 30 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, ground contingents of the night-squadrons move from their east coast field to Field K-8 on the west coast, slightly more than 100 miles south of Seoul. VMF(N)-513 completes its redeployment there by 11 April.

**March 31 1952 (Korea)-** The 1st Marine Division activates the Kimpo Provisional Regiment to bring about more operational control of the Kimpo defense units.

**April 1952 (Korea)-**Fifth Air Force, since the previous May, has lost 243 aircraft during the interdiction to destroy the Communist transportation system. Enemy guns have damaged another 290. At this time, only 131 airplanes have been replaced. In other activity, elements of the 1st Amphibious Tractor Battalion (USMC) arrive at the Kansas Line. Units not included are Company A, at KPR, and Company B, at Pohang. Later, during July, the battalion relieves the reconnaissance company on the line. In turn, the reconnaissance company becomes part of headquarters battalion, 1st Marine Division.

**April 1 1952 (Korea)In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the Chinese, following an artillery bombardment of about thirty minutes, launch an attack against the lines of the 1st Korean Marine Regiment at 2200. Troops of the 1st Battalion, stationed at an outpost in front of the lines, are first to come under attack. The Communists penetrate at a point between two outposts and reach ground within 200 yards of the MLR and within arm's reach of the Freedom Gate. Another contingent drives against positions farther south, but here, progress is stymied. By about 2345, the Chinese abort the attack and return to their lines. Meanwhile, to the left of the 1st Battalion, the 3rd Battalion comes under a steady attack. By about midnight (1st-2nd), the Chinese force the 1st Battalion to give ground; however, soon after, a counterattack retakes the ground. At 0300 the Chinese launch a new assault, but it, too, is repelled. The Korean Marines sustain 2 killed and 10 wounded. The Chinese sustain 2 killed (counted) and another 10 estimated killed and 10 wounded. The stamina of the 1st Korean Marine Regiment prevents the Communists from gaining the key bridge that leads to the capital and preserves the western flank of the 1st Marine Division.

**April 2 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the Chinese, following their attacks of the previous night, begin to focus on defending their lines. Nevertheless, later on this day, the Chinese probe the positions of the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines. Two enemy patrols are detected in the Korean Marines sector. In other activity, the Marines record that 3,876 artillery shells and 118 mortar rounds strike the division positions this day. For the entire month of April, the Communists propel 5,000 rounds of artillery and 3,786 mortar rounds into the perimeter.

**April 4 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, a 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines patrol encounters and captures a Chinese soldier.

**April 5 1952 (Korea)-**A 5th Marines' patrol collects 34 civilians in the area between its lines and the Chinese. A wounded Chinese soldier is also seized. Also, Operation PRONTO is executed. The operation becomes the initial major troop movement by helicopters and trucks in the I Corps sector.

The helicopters (HMR-161) and vehicles transport 670 Marines (2nd Battalion, 7th Marines) and 10,000 pounds of rations from Munsan-ni to the Kimpo peninsula, across the Han River. Due to the "neutrality zone" created because of the talks at Panmunjom, a circuitous route is taken, which makes the round-trip helicopter flight a 57-mile route.

**April 11 1952 (Korea)-**Brigadier General Clayton C. Jerome, USMC, replaces Major General

Christian F. Schilt, USMC, as commander, 1st Marine Aircraft Wing. The change of command ceremony takes place at Field K-3.

**April 12 1952 (Korea) In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the Chinese launch an attack against the center of 5th Marines line, but it is repulsed.

**April 13 1952 (Korea) In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the Chinese for the second day in a row launch an attack against the 5th Marines; again it is repelled.

**April 14 1952 (Korea) In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the Communists by this date decrease the number of infantry probes; however, the Marines begin to receive more artillery assaults. Between this date and the end of the month, Kimpo air base is hit by 25 artillery shells, but up to this point in April, only four rounds had been fired into the area of Kimpo. In other activity, I Corps extends the front of the 1st Marine Division by 6,800 yards, which until now has been the responsibility of the 1st Commonwealth Brigade. The already overstretched line now runs a distance of thirty-five and one-half miles (including the Kimpo peninsula). The directive compels the Marines to modify their defenses. The outpost line is pulled back in order to permit the Marines to bolster their main line of defense. Also, although the Communists decrease their activity, the Marines accelerate their activity before the month ends with Operation CLOBBER, using a potent combination of tank fire and artillery rounds to pound the enemy positions. Company D, 1st Tank Battalion, adds its flame-throwing tanks to the 11th Marines' artillery. The tanks fire upon troop assembly areas as well as enemy observation posts and artillery and mortar positions. The attacks occur during darkness, therefore the results of the operation remain unknown.

**April 15 1952 (Korea) In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the Chinese launch an attack against Company E, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, at its positions on Outpost 3, a 400-foot hill manned by a reinforced platoon. The Marines are twice struck by artillery, during the afternoon and at dusk. At 2330, a green flare is spotted at Hill 67 and afterward, another artillery bombardment strikes the positions of Company E. About 10 minutes prior to midnight (15-16), another green flare is spotted and it apparently is the signal to cease fire, but only temporarily. The barrage is terminated, but in a few minutes, the artillery begins again, but to new positions west of the outpost.

Meanwhile, the Communists launch their assault, charging directly against the front of the defenses. Suddenly, the outpost is under assault from three sides. The Marines are compelled to pull back to consolidate their beleaguered positions. Nevertheless, from their imperiled positions, they are able to hold the ground and force the Communists to disengage without gaining the outpost. The Chinese regroup and launch yet another attack, only to gain the same results. The Marines hold and drive the Communists back, except for three who are captured. The Chinese greatly outnumber the defending company and they had also plastered the position with artillery, mortars, machine guns, hand grenades and recoilless rifles before meeting the Marines in hand-to-hand fighting, in which the Marines again prevail. The Communists sustain 25 killed (counted) and another 25 estimated killed, as well as 45 known wounded and three prisoners. The Marines sustain six killed, five missing and 25 wounded.

Communications between Chinese headquarters and the attack force during the assault are picked up by U.S. intelligence. After the order to withdraw is overheard, artillery units set up and commence firing toward all withdrawal routes. Nevertheless, the Chinese escape without further casualties. The attack to test the Marines' staying power is the final attack against Marine positions for the remainder of the month. However, the regimental commander, apparently pleased by the

courage of his platoon, concludes that the outpost is too large to be held by only a reinforced platoon.

**April 16 1952 (Korea)-In the 1st Marine Division sector, 1st Marines zone,** an enemy force launches a night attack against the positions of Company E, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, near Panmunjom. During the probing attack, a grenade lands in their midst among some wounded. Corporal Duane E. Dewey spots the hot missile, yells a warning, pulls a wounded medic from harm's way, then blankets the grenade with his body to save the others. Corporal Dewey survives and is awarded the Medal of Honor for his extraordinary courage and selfless sacrifice in the face of hostile fire.

**April 17 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the Chinese launch an early morning assault against the 1st Korean Marine Corps Regiment at 0100. The Korean Marines repel three separate attacks. All three are terminated by 0400. This is the final attack in the 1st Marine Division zone during April. In related activity, Marine patrols continue to operate and maintain a vigil on the terrain where the outposts had been withdrawn. The only sector in which tanks can participate is the area guarded by the 1st Korean Marine Corps Regiment. The remainder of the line is not suitable for armor.

**April 18 1952 (Korea)-**On 18–19 April, Marine carrier-based Squadron VMA-312 carries out 80 sorties in support of Eighth Army. The number of flights is a Korean record for carrier-based squadrons up to this date. **In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** Operation LEAPFROG commences. Helicopter Squadron HMR-161 transports one battalion of the 1st Korean Marine Corps Regiment to the Kimpo peninsula, a short trip of about six miles. The exercise is to test the feasibility of moving the Koreans over water to replace one unit with another, while experimenting with the language barriers between the crews and the troops. The operation goes smoothly and due to the interpreters, the language difference does not become a problem. The crews discover that instead of transporting five troops in full gear, they can move six Koreans on each helicopter, due to the difference in weight between the American Marines and the Korean Marines.

**April 19 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the 5th Marines receives instructions to form a rescue and recovery force. The unit is to be prepared, if necessary, to be able to move expeditiously to rescue the U.N. Truce Team at Panmunjom. In conjunction, the Everready Rescue Force deploys at Outpost 2, east of Panmunjom. To bolster the force, another unit, the Forward Covering Force, stands ready to expedite the movement of infantry by tanks to the high ground about one-half mile beyond Panmunjom. In the event a rescue becomes necessary, once the team is retrieved, the Pick Up Force, composed of elements of the 1st Tank Battalion, would take the representatives and speed them back to friendly lines. Along the route, yet another force, the Rear Covering Force, composed of a tank-infantry force, is to shadow the pickup force.

**April 20 1952 (Korea)-**By this date, the three Marine tactical squadrons of MAG-12 (VMF[N]-513, VMF-212 and VMF-323) complete their redeployment to the west coast of Korea. **In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** MAG-12 completes its redeployment from east Korea to its new base, K-6, located about thirty miles south of Seoul. Other Marine air support units are deployed at K-3, and yet others are based at Itami Air Force Base in Japan at Honshu. The Chinese sustain 36 killed (counted) and an estimated 46 wounded. The Korean Marines sustain 2 killed and 5 wounded.

**April 22 1952 (Korea)-** Planes of the three MAG-12 Marine squadrons participate in a Fifth Air

Force attack that sets a one-day record with 1,049 sorties flown.

**April 23 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** Operation CIRCUS commences. Helicopter Squadron HMR-16; transports the 7th Marines (minus two battalions) from its positions to new positions across the Imjin River to landing sites to the immediate rear of the Wyoming Forward Line, the secondary defensive line. The helicopters transport 1,185 troops in only 90 minutes.

**April 24 1952 (Korea)-**Two Marine F2H-2Ps (VMJ-1) piloted by Major Robert R. Road and 1st Lieutenant Lytton F. Blass, while on a mission, come under attack by a band of MiGs, but both planes complete the mission and return to base without harm. **In Japan:** Marine Squadron VMA-312 departs Itami Air Force Base to board the USS *Bataan*.

**April 26 1952 (Korea)-**All HRS-1 helicopters are grounded due to a problem with the tail rotors. The problem is solved by mid-May. These Marine helicopters had, only several days before, participated in a large troop transport maneuver.

**April 30 1952 (Korea)-**Marine Squadron VMO-6, during the month of April, dispatches its eleven fixed-wing aircraft (OE-1 observation planes) on 508 missions, including more than 275 for artillery spotting. Other missions include reconnaissance, photo reconnaissance and weather. In addition, the squadron's helicopters complete 248 flights, most over enemy territory. Also, Marine squadrons operating under Fifth Air Force also remain busy during April. Fifth Air Force dispatches 1,397 Marine planes on missions connected to the interdiction raids to disrupt the North Korean transportation operations. In addition, Marine squadrons fly only 47 missions in close-support of the 1st Marine Division; however, the Marines are also dispatched to other U.S.-U.N. forces and complete 547 sorties in that endeavor. Marine squadrons based at sea also support Eighth Army heavily during April. Also, another Marine unit, the recently created Marine Photographic Squadron 1 (VMJ-1), attached to MAG-33, is deeply involved with reconnaissance missions of Fifth Air Force. The specialty squadron is responsible for about one-third of the daylight photos. The squadron is composed of ten McDonnell Banshee F2H-2P planes, twin-engine aircraft capable of flying at high altitudes at a speed of 550 miles per hour. The aircraft are single-seat jets, each carrying three cameras. **In Marine Corps air activity,** a contingent of *Panther* jets (F9F-2), attached to Marine Fighter Squadron VMF-311, encounters and engage eight MiG-15s in the skies over Kunu-ri. One Marine plane sustains damage and it is reported that one MiG had been damaged by Captain W.E. Daniels. This is the initial air-to-air encounter of 1952.

**May 3 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the 1st Korean Marine Corps Regiment initiates a patrol at just after darkness to seek and capture enemy troops in the vicinity of Hill 34, located near the rail line of Kaesong and less than one mile west of the Sachon River. No prisoners are gained; however, during an early morning shoot out, the South Koreans prevail. They account for 12 enemy killed. The Korean Marines sustain one man wounded.

**May 4 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** a contingent of the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines, moves out on patrol at about dawn en route to an old position, Outpost 3, to occupy the high ground there. The patrol arrives at the objective at 0900, but at about the same time, word arrives that an enemy attack is imminent. Troops on a nearby elevation that were moving toward the patrol had been spotted by an aerial observer. A short artillery barrage precedes an attack by about 60-70 Communists. The enemy is greeted with small arms fire and shortly thereafter Marine Corsairs arrive to hammer the enemy mortar positions that had fired upon the patrol. The

attack is repelled with 14 Chinese killed. Later, the Chinese again come under attack at about 1330, when Corsairs return to pound the positions. Under the cover fire of the Corsairs, the patrol begins to move back to its lines, but en route, the troops encounter an uncharted minefield that kills two Marines who are carrying stretchers and wounds four others. Meanwhile, specialists eliminate the mines and with the support fire from other Marines on patrol from the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, the patrol reaches friendly lines and a medical aid station where vehicles are standing by to transport the seriously wounded to medical facilities. The patrol reports the deaths of 27 enemy troops, one of whom is shot into the air after a direct hit by an artillery shell.

**May 8 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, Operation Order 12-52 is issued. It directs the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines, to seize several objectives, designated S, V and X. The targets stand in front of Outpost 3 (Objective Y) and they are to be taken to prevent their use by the Chinese. At 0430, the 1st Platoon, Company A, moves toward a diminutive ridge west of OP 3, objective S. The platoon is shadowed by the 2nd Platoon, which moves to the right, while the remaining platoon protects the rear. The hill falls with little effort. Afterward, the 1st Platoon pivots and drives northward toward the remaining objectives, four peaks (V, X, Y and Z) stretching a distance of 1,399 yards. With the support of rocket fire, the Marines press ahead and take the first hill, V, and eliminate about 15 of the defenders and wound a similar number. At this time the Marines have sustained 5 wounded. In addition, one enemy soldier is seized. Meanwhile, the enemy initiates an artillery barrage against the attack force. One Marine is killed and three are wounded. While the main body of the patrol edges toward Objective X, the 1st Platoon continues toward OP 3, all under severe fire, while friendly fire continues to permeate the objectives. At intervals, the friendly fire creates an unnatural dust storm that temporarily and completely obscures the vision of the advancing infantry. At Objective X, the Chinese raise formidable fire and during the struggle the 1st Platoon repels a strong counterattack, but afterward, it becomes isolated and the remainder of the company comes under assault. Nevertheless, the Marines repulse the attack. At 1435, the 1st Platoon is ordered to rejoin the company; however, as it moves an intense artillery barrage pounds the withdrawal route. The barrage kills three Marines and wounds several others during the 5-minute thunderclap. By this time, three objectives have fallen, but the final one remains under enemy control. It is determined that the positions are untenable, prompting a withdrawal. Support fire comes into play and a nearby diversionary contingent in the vicinity of Objective S also provides protective fire. The patrol returns to friendly lines by about 1730 and the remainder of the battalion arrives shortly after. During the mission, intended to seize prisoners, 35 enemy soldiers are killed (counted) and 53 are wounded (counted); however, it is estimated that an additional 70 Chinese had been killed and another 105 wounded. The Marines sustain 7 killed and 66 are wounded.

**May 11 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the 7th Marines relieves the 5th Marines in the central sector of the Marine zone. With its responsibility for the peace corridor, the 7th Marines also assumes responsibility for the rescue of the UN truce representatives at Panmunjom. In conjunction, the 7th Marines replace the tanks in the force with M-39 personnel vehicles, a tracked personnel carrier designed by the U.S. Army. It resembles the USMC amphibious tractor. Also, the Marines retain a medium tank, a model that contains extra radios and becomes known as the “porcupine” because of a huge number of antennas.

**May 14 1952 (Korea)-In the 1st Marine Division zone**, logs arrive for the purpose of constructing bunkers. The project is dubbed Operation TIMBER.

**May 18 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** a platoon attached to the 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines, is ordered late in the day to return to the lines from an outpost position. Two of the squads are ordered to return to the main lines, while the platoon commander, 2nd Lieutenant Theodore H. Watson, with the remainder, is encircled by the enemy. Watson and the contingent engage the enemy unit, composed of about fifty troops. Artillery fire arrives to thwart the Communists, but they remain undaunted. Watson and the others seek cover in the bunkers and call in the artillery fire directly upon their positions. The bombardment breaks off the attack and the troops are able to return to their lines.

**May 19 1952 (Korea)**-The 1st Marine Air Wing commander, Major General Selden, finally persuades Fifth Air Force to modify its directives regarding close-air support for the Marines. The plan permits twelve close-air support missions per day, still not what the Marines desire for top performance, but better than they had been receiving. Marine pilots are accustomed to coming in at treetop level in support of their Marines on the ground, but the Air Force policy differs greatly. MAG-12 receives the task and it is to begin on 21 May. The order is to remain active for a thirty-day period, but it is extended. Later, during July, the number of sorties per day is increased to twenty, to the jubilation of the Marine ground troops.

**May 23 1952 (Korea)**-A rescue helicopter (H-19), oblivious to inclement weather, uses its instruments to successfully retrieve a Marine pilot after his AD-2 was downed. Also, B-29s are launched to complete a two-day mission to drop delayed-action bombs in the vicinity of Kijang-ni for the purpose of impeding the enemy repair efforts.

**May 28 1952 (Korea)-In the 1st Marine Division zone,** pursuant to Operation Plan 16-52, at 0300, the 1st Battalion, 7th Marines, commences an attack to seize Hill 104 (Objective j) and the Tuma-ri Ridge along the old outpost line of resistance. Again, the vanguard is Company A, which drives forward and at just about the time it reaches the base of the objective, a counterattack is launched. Nonetheless, the Marines quickly adjust by fixing their bayonets and charging to the summit. In answer to the attack and the heavy support fire, the Communists commence an artillery barrage against the Marines' positions on the summit.

In the meantime, Company C, to the left, is ordered to seize one of two enemy positions, though it had initially been ordered to only feint an attack. Company C, at 0554, moves against the hill and is met with heavy resistance. While the contingent is stalled by heavy fire, PFC John D. Kelly asks and receives permission to transfer his radio to another man, so he can participate in an attack to loosen the resistance. Kelly lunges forward and eliminates one strongpoint, then sprints to the next one a machine gun position. Kelly becomes wounded, but he destroys the nest. Without pause, he then charges a third. Although mortally wounded, Kelly makes it to the bunker, discovers the opening and fires from point-blank range. Kelly succumbs, but the other Marines, inspired by Kelly, seize the objective.

Meanwhile, at Company A's positions, the enemy raises equal opposition. Corporal David B. Champagne leads an attack against a heavily fortified bunker and succeeds in reducing it, but Champagne becomes seriously wounded. Soon after, the Communists launch a counterattack. Despite his wounds, Champagne refuses evacuation and continues to lead his fire team. Suddenly a grenade lands in the midst of the group. Champagne grabs it and lobs it back to the enemy, but at the instant it is leaving his hand, it detonates. Champagne loses one hand and gets blown right out of the trench, leaving him badly wounded and exposed to the immediate front of the

approaching enemy. Soon after, before he can even receive aid or be pulled back into safety, an enemy mortar lands and mortally wounds him. Although the fighting is fierce, the Marines prevail. By 0700, both of the objectives are under Marine control. Meanwhile, the Communists pour heavy fire upon the positions of Company C, and at Hill 104 Company A remains under severe enemy fire. Slightly after noon, the attack is recalled. By 1405, the troops arrive back at friendly lines. Still, the enemy artillery and mortar positions are able to operate at full speed despite air attacks and artillery fire intended to eliminate it. The Marines sustain 9 killed and of these, two receive the Medal of Honor posthumously—Corporal David B. Champagne and PFC John D. Kelly. The Marines inflict 40 killed and about 40 others wounded upon the enemy. During the battle the enemy propels 4,053 rounds into the Marines' positions.

**May 30 1952 (Korea)**- Navy and Marine carrier aircraft close out the month of May with a total of 3,100 rail cuts to impede the Communists' transportation system.

**June 7 1952 (Korea)**-During a night flight over the west coast of North Korea, Lieutenant John W. Andre, USMC, VMF(N) 513 Squadron, encounters and knocks out a Russian piston-driven Yak fighter. Andre, a Marine pilot, is flying a World War II vintage corsair, but his kill is the first in which a Russian plane of that type is blown from the skies during darkness by another aircraft. Lt. Andre, in addition to his record setting engagement, also becomes the first Marine night fighter ace of the Korean War. The ace status for Andre includes four kills during World War II. Two others who served in World War II also become aces when their kills from World War II added to the Korean War victories reach five. They are William E. Lamb, USN, and John W. Andre, USMC. Andre and Lamb are rarely listed in the names of Korean aces because it took both wars to reach five. Some aces from the subsequent Vietnam War attain the achievement when their kills from the Korean War are added to those in Vietnam.

**June 10 1952 (Korean)**-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone, Brigadier General Twining is succeeded by Brigadier General Robert O. Bare as assistant divisional commander of the 1st Marine Division. In other activity, Colonel Thomas C. Moore assumes command of the 7th Marines. He succeeds Colonel Russell E. Hornsowetz. In conjunction, Colonel Hornsowetz becomes assistant chief of staff, divisional G-3.

**June 21 1952 (Korea)**-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone, a patrol from the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, moves out to establish an ambush site; however, an enemy contingent is lying in wait and when the patrol approaches, it comes under heavy fire. The 16-man patrol is ordered to withdraw. One portion composed of ten men makes it back to the line of departure, while the others move toward a friendly outpost, but one man is reported missing. On the following day, the missing Marine is located. He had been killed by enemy mortar fire.

**June 22 1952 (Korea)**-The 1st Marine Division, as of this date, terminates two months of continuous fighting against the Chinese spring offensive. The Marines are directed by Eighth Army to establish patrol bases on the Badger Line, but when General Almond arrives at the 1st Marine Division command post, it is decided that stretching out patrol bases while units are still in contact with the enemy is risky and the idea is shelved. However, on the following day, again orders arrive directing the patrol bases be set up.

**June 23 1952 (Korea)**-The 1st Marine Division is again instructed to establish patrol bases. The order is reluctantly carried out. The Marines are aware that each of the three battalion patrol bases

will become susceptible to enemy incursions and may be encircled and imperiled. **In the United States-** A hint of a possible cease fire in Korea is spoken by the Soviet representative to the U.N. during a broadcast (U.N. Price of Peace) in which Jacob Malik claims that the warfare in Korea is the fault of the United States. However, toward the end of the program, Malik slips in the proposition that the Soviet Union thinks that the war could be stopped by mutual agreement of both sides pulling back from the 38th Parallel.

The U.S. shows no outward signs of accepting the suggestion as genuine, but steps are taken in the event that a cease fire might be in the works. Diplomatically, the U.S. probes to discern the credibility of Malik's remarks. Militarily, the joint chiefs of staff and Eighth Army assess the situation on the ground in Korea to determine where a dominating line should be drawn prior to any talks with the Communists.

**June 26 1952 (Korea)-In the X Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** a contingent of Marines pushes out ahead of the perimeter and establishes a patrol base on Hill 761; however, the isolated battalion comes under heavy mortar fire and by the following day, it is ordered back to the main lines.

**June 30 1952 (Korea)-** A Marine tigercat squadron (VMF 513) known as the Flying Nightmares engages and destroys a PO-2 above Seoul by the Han River. It is the first PO-2 downed by an F7F. The PO-2s are not constructed of metal and while they had been raiding the area around Seoul, the Marine squadrons had difficulty tracking them, as they avoided detection by radar. Also, the strength of the Marine Corps on this date stands at 192,620 men.

**July 1 1952 (Korea)-In the 1st Marine Division zone,** patrols are dispatched after dark and on the next two successive days, the patrol moves out under cover of darkness to gain prisoners

**July 2 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** Company G, 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines, initiates a night patrol of platoon strength, a prelude to a new attack at dawn. The contingent advances to Objective Yoke (Hill 159) without incident and establishes positions near there, from which it can offer support fire for the anticipated attack at dawn by another platoon.

In the 5th Marines sector to the right of the 7th Marines, a night-patrol is initiated against three enemy outposts. Company A, 1st Battalion, moves out and effortlessly seizes the first two objectives near Samichon, as they are unoccupied. Prior to moving against the final objective, during the early morning hours of the 3rd, the company is ordered to return to its lines.

**July 3 1952 (Korea)-In the 1st Marine Division zone,** the 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines, dispatches a platoon as the second part of a mission that began on the previous night. Unlike the other platoon that reached its objective without encountering enemy presence, the Chinese commence firing on the advancing platoon, halting progress. Suddenly, the platoon is up against a battalion at Hill 159 (Yoke). Despite the withering fire, it continues to push forward. Sergeant William E. Shuck, Jr., in charge of a machine gun squad, also assumes command of a rifle squad after its leader is taken out. Shuck, also wounded, leads an attack against the summit and he becomes wounded a second time, but still, he refuses to relent. Pressing forward, he attempts to gain the summit until ordered to withdraw. After making sure all the dead and wounded are coming out with the platoon, he begins a withdrawal. However, he is struck and killed by a sniper. Sergeant Shuck receives the Medal of Honor posthumously for his extraordinary heroism under fire. The Marines sustain four killed and forty wounded. The Chinese estimated losses stand at 50 killed and 150 wounded.

*In the 5th Marines sector,* on the right, one patrol (1st Battalion) dispatched the previous night returns during the early morning hours of this date without having made any enemy contact. After dawn, a patrol of the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, engages an enemy contingent and gains prisoners. As the patrol advances, a Marine

accidentally sets off an enemy mine that signals the Marines' presence.

Afterward, a tenacious one-hour skirmish develops. The Marines sustain 1 killed and 11 wounded, prior to withdrawing under the cover of artillery delivered smoke. Chinese casualties are unavailable. Later, a night patrol is dispatched by the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines. Just prior to midnight (3rd-4th), an enemy contingent encroaches the ambush. Six Chinese are killed and 8 are wounded. The Marines sustain no casualties and return to their lines by 00:5 on 4 July in time for a celebration.

In other activity, the 1st Korean Marine Regiment dispatches a patrol that engages and kills nine Chinese. Also, I Corps issues a directive in conjunction with an earlier order from Eighth Army; it orders a battalion-sized attack prior to 7 July. The 1st Marine Division commander attempts to persuade the corps commander to extend the date, explaining that more than 2,600 Marines are set to depart for the States and equally importantly, there is insufficient time to plan and prepare for such a large-scale assault (Code Name B2).

In addition, General Selden proclaims that the replacement Marines will not be in place until 11 July, and that a battalion-sized attack would weaken the division line that extends 35 miles. Nevertheless, I Corps ignores his plea and orders the attack to commence on schedule. Selden afterward sets the date for the Marine raid to commence on the night of the 6th-7th.

**July 4 1952 (Korea)**-Artillery units along the entire Eighth Army front celebrate the Fourth of July by initiating bombardments. **In the I Corps sector**, every available gun salutes Independence Day by firing voluminous rounds at designated times in Operation FIRECRACKER. The 11th Marines fire 3,202 rounds.

**July 6 1952 (Korea)**-**In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, Operation BUCKSHOT commences. At 2200, the 1st Battalion, 7th Marines reinforced, initiates its attack. Company C drives toward Objective Yoke. Meanwhile, Company B, which had moved out just after Company C, moves toward Combat Outpost (COP) Green and encounters no enemy presence. The vanguard of Company C, however, encounters heavy fire and it becomes isolated, but the resistance is overcome and the objective is seized at 0020 on the 5th.

On the left, Company A and its supporting tanks move out behind the other units at just before the stroke of midnight, en route to the heights southwest of Yoke as a diversionary tactic. The Communists continue to pound the attack force. At about 0200, elements of Company C encounter Company A, which has sustained casualties, including the company commander and other officers. By about 0310, both companies are authorized to return to the battalion lines, which are reached at slightly after 0830 on the 7th. The diversionary infantry-tank force arrives back at the lines about 0645. The operation gains no success and no prisoners. The Marines sustain 12 killed, 85 wounded and five missing. During 4-7 July, 22 Marines are killed and 268 are wounded during combat operations.

**July 27 1952 (Korea)**-**In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, relieves the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, and the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines, relieves the 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines, on the left and right respectively on the position known as Bunker Hill (Hill 122). The 1st Marines, composed of 3,603 Marines led by Colonel Walter F. Layer, stand across the terrain described as "No Man's Land" from two Chinese divisions. Another elevation, Hill 124, is located southwest of Bunker Hill, about 200 yards from the main line of resistance (Jamestown Line). The Hill 124-122 axis is referred to for tactical purposes as Bunker Ridge. Other defensive positions include Hill 56A (Samoa) on the right flank, which defends against the approaches to Bunker Hill and farther west, Hill 58A (Siberia), which is above a ravine that runs along the east sides of Hills 122 and enemy-held Hill 120, which stands northeast of Bunker Hill.

Also, the Chinese hold a position known as Taedok-san, which reaches a height of 800 feet, about twenty-three feet higher than the Marines' dominant position, Hill 201 at 660 feet.

Taedok-san, north of the Marines' positions, dominates the entire Bunker Hill area. The Chinese at this time are unable to launch their 60-mm mortars against Marine positions, because they do not hold positions to do so; however, one position held by the Marines, known as Siberia (Hill 58A), is suitable terrain. Nevertheless, the hill held by only a squad becomes an imminent objective and an attempt to seize it occurs on 9 August. The attempt ignites the BATTLE OF BUNKER HILL.

**August 2 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corp sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** General Selden delegates the 7th Marines (reserve) the task of bolstering the Kansas Line, the secondary line of defense behind the Jamestown Line.

**August 5 1952 (Korea)-**During a raid conducted by MAG-12, the commander, Colonel Galer, is shot down. As he attempts to abandon the plane, he gets snagged, probably by a shoulder strap. Galer, a previous recipient of the Medal of Honor, climbs back into the cockpit to free himself and then he jumps, but his spiraling plane clips him as he is descending. As he tumbles, he manages to pull the cord. He lands about ten feet from his crashed plane.

Immediately thereafter, a rescue operation goes into effect as Galer signals his position and then seeks safer ground. After changing positions and evading the enemy during some harrowing hours, during darkness, a helicopter passes over and then returns to the sound of his radio. Galer releases red smoke and seconds later, he is pulled aboard. The helicopter rescue parties are renowned for their heroism under fire to save others. En route back to a ship, the helicopter is hit several times by enemy fire, but it reaches the vessel safely at just about the time the fuel tank nears empty.

**August 6 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the 5th Marines, by day, man a trio of combat outposts (COPs) that run along a diagonal line from the southwest to the northeast, but the Chinese plan to eliminate them. The outposts, named Elmer, Hilda and Irene, become priorities for the enemy and rather than attempt to evict the Marines, they choose to occupy the outposts during the absence of the defenders. During the darkened hours of this day, the Chinese occupy Elmer, the outpost to the far southwest.

**August 7 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** a contingent of the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, moves toward COP Elmer to set up the usual day-long outpost, but the Marines are unable to reach the post because the Chinese had occupied it during the previous night. Two other COPS, Hilda and Irene, remain under Marine control, but the Chinese also covet them.

**August 9–17 1952 THE BATTLE OF BUNKER HILL** *In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,* at about 0100, the Chinese launch an attack to seize Hill 58A (Siberia) to gain ground from where they can strike Marine lines with 60-mm mortars. The defenders, one squad from Company E, is compelled to withdraw to the MLR. In the meantime, the Chinese move against other positions of Company E south of the outpost. The Marines there break up the assault with mortar fire. Afterward, plans are quickly developed to regain Siberia (Hill 58A).

The enemy contingent that had gained Siberia stands at about four squads, but Chinese guns also bolster the position. At 0400, following a five minute artillery barrage, a platoon moves from the MLR against the objective and reaches the base of the hill by about 0525. Progress is thwarted at that point when enemy artillery forces the contingent to pull back. Casualties incurred since the original attack against Siberia climbs to 32 wounded and one killed. At 0650, four Marine jet

fighters appear overhead and blast the enemy positions on Siberia, but no infantry attack follows. Later, Air Force F-84 Shooting Star jets strike the objective and afterward, the Marines launch another assault using a reinforced platoon to evict the Chinese. The attack force, composed of a contingent of Company A and one platoon of Company E, presses forward and again comes under extremely heavy fire. Nevertheless, the Marines drill forward, inching close enough to become recipients of enemy grenades and close-quartered fighting.

By 1103, the Marines regain the hill and immediately establish defenses to attempt to hold it. A support platoon of Company E arrives to bolster the position, but at about the same time, the Chinese initiate another artillery barrage that pummels the outpost position. The Chinese, in the attempt to conquer the hill, to this point expend 5,000 artillery rounds. The Marines initially seek shelter in bunkers, but the artillery barrage is overwhelming. Again, for the second time, they are compelled to abandon the hill during the middle of the afternoon because the casualty rate rises to about 75 percent.

A new attack is launched after Company E is replaced by Company A. Company C is brought up from the rear and moves out without any artillery support at 2245. The company reaches the enemy positions at the hill at slightly after 0100 on the 10th and immediately receives enemy fire. The Marines charge the positions and overwhelm the defenders. Some choose to resist and they are killed; however, most of the Chinese had abandoned the outpost at the first sign of the Marines. The hill, Siberia, is again under Marine control by 0116. After gaining the objective (Siberia Hill 58A), Company C commander Captain Casimir C. Ksycewski directs another platoon to initiate pursuit of the Chinese who fled to the opposite slope.

Meanwhile, the Chinese focus on yet another attempt to regain the hill. The Marines engage the Chinese on the opposite slope until about daybreak. At that time, a Chinese contingent of about company strength launches a counterattack and once again, the hill changes hands.

Since the initial attack against Siberia on the previous day, the Marine casualties have risen to 17 killed and 243 wounded. The 1st Marines, later on 10 August, convene a staff meeting and conclude that the Chinese positions at Bunker Hill (Hill 122) and on Hill 120 are the strategic enemy-held positions that are causing the casualties. The Marines decide to modify their strategy and focus upon Bunker Hill rather than Hill 58A. They determine that by eliminating Bunker Hill, they can bolster their MLR and deprive the Chinese of a key observation post. A diversionary attack against Siberia is planned by the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines, to keep the enemy offguard, while the primary assault to seize Bunker Hill is to be launched by the 1st Battalion on 11 August.

During the preparation period, fire is directed upon Hill 85A and Hill 122 by planes, artillery and tanks during the hours of daylight. Another part of the plan includes the 5th Marines, which is to commit its guns to support the diversionary attack against Hill 58A by pounding enemy targets in the Ungok region. The Marines on the ground will be supported by the 11th Marines' artillery during the long struggle to maintain control of Bunker Ridge.

The infantry and armor units also receive enormous support from the Fifth Air Force and the 1st Marine Air Wing. The artillery backs every attack and defensive move by the Marines except for the initial seizure of Bunker Hill and a diversionary attack against Siberia, both of which had been planned for execution without any artillery support to maintain the element of surprise.

On the 11th at dusk, the diversionary attack against Siberia gets underway when eight tanks attached to Company C, 1st Battalion, 1st Marines, drive toward the MLR, where they will head

north to divert attention from the primary assault, which is to unfold against Hill 122. Four of the tanks are armed with 90-mm guns and four are equipped as flamethrowers; the latter lead the way. Elements of the 1st Battalion participate in the attack.

Meanwhile, elements of the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines, move against the main objective. By about 2110, the armor with the attack against Siberia begins to fire its 90-mm rounds, while two of the flame throwers maneuver between Hill 56A (Samoa) and the main line of resistance, using flame to illuminate its path. Once at the objective, the flame throwers work their way up the slope of Hill 58A and from the crest, the tanks drive down the opposite slope and rake the terrain with machine gun fire. After completing the run, the tanks return, using the same method, lighting the way with flame.

Shortly after completing the run, the second set of two tanks runs an identical mission on the hill. The flame throwers return to friendly lines after completing their mission; however, the four other tanks (M-46s) with the 90-mm guns remain at the front to support the ground troops, 3rd Platoon, Company D. The 3rd Platoon evades the low ground used by the tanks and makes its way over the heights to Hill 56A (Samoa) slightly before 2300 and from there the platoon sprints toward Hill 58A. All the while, the tanks continue to maintain fire upon Hill 58A (Siberia), the diversionary target, and the primary objective, Hill 122 (Bunker Hill).

As the diversionary attack unfolds, the main assault commences shortly after Company D moves beyond Samoa. The primary attacking unit, Company B, which reverted to operational control of the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines, at 1800, departs the MLR and drives through the darkness toward Bunker Hill. The vanguard reaches the objective and by 2318, contingents begin ascending the slopes. Within about ten minutes, one platoon gains the crest, while another is at the base of the hill. Both units begin to sweep across the forward slope. As the attack moves north, enemy fire intensifies.

In the meantime, at Siberia, the 3rd Platoon, Company D, continues its attack and with the supporting fire, it is able to claim Hill 58A (Siberia) prior to 2330. Within about ten minutes, the Chinese launch a counterattack to regain Siberia, only to be repelled. The attack lasts only about ten minutes before the enemy disengages. However, as previously planned, once the Chinese retire, Company D also pulls back, having finished its part of the diversion.

Back on Bunker Hill, the Marines are struck by grenades. Nonetheless, the attack continues with close-quartered combat. On the east slope, the Chinese are forced to retreat up the hill, followed closely by pursuing Marines. The Marines give no quarter and by about 0300, the vicious fighting begins to subside. And then suddenly, as the Marines begin to establish defenses on Bunker Hill, a group of Chinese troops emerges from a sector overlooked during the struggle to gain the hill. The Marines attached to the 1st Platoon handle the unexpected enemy presence. At about 0345, they engage a contingent of Chinese that hold positions in a draw to the front of Bunker Hill, but no enemy counterattack is launched.

At dawn on 12 August, the Marines still hold Bunker Hill. The casualties incurred amount to 1 killed and 22 wounded. In addition, at Siberia (Hill 58A), the diversionary objective, 1 casualty had been sustained, a wounded platoon leader.

Nevertheless, the Chinese do not abandon their quest to reclaim Bunker Hill. During the morning of the 12th, the Marines continue to fortify their defenses. Responsibility for Bunker Hill falls to the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines. Later, about 1500, the Chinese commence an artillery and mortar

attack against the Marine positions, prompting the Marines to seek cover and drop their shovels in exchange for their weapons to meet an anticipated assault. The Chinese, however, delay the attack for more than one hour. In the meantime, the enemy barrage inflicts more casualties upon Company B, compelling the unit to pull back from the summit and redeploy on the reverse (eastern) slope.

At the time of the enemy bombardment, no radio communications exist between Company B and the 3rd Battalion, but as a precaution, Company I is dispatched to reinforce the troops at Bunker Hill. In the meantime, a force of about 350 Chinese probes Company B's positions on the hill in search of a hole. The Marines check the attack against the west portion of the perimeter and then against the northern sector. Nevertheless, the Chinese then focus on the southwest, but by this time, Company I reaches the beleaguered company.

By about 1715, the Chinese disengage and withdraw to positions on the north side of the hill, while the Marines maintain control of the reverse slope. Initial reports indicate that 58 Marines had been killed or wounded, but later reports change the figures to 34–35 killed and 29 wounded. The majority of casualties were incurred from artillery and mortar fire.

After the Chinese disengage, the Marines bolster the perimeter. Further steps include the movement of Company I, 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, to replace Company I, 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, along the MLR. The reconnaissance platoon of the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, deploys on Hill 1124, from where it can support Bunker Hill and the Jamestown Line. Other modifications occur throughout the 1st Marine Division sector. By the end of this day, all of the 7th Marines' mortars are placed under the control of the 1st Marines in the event they are needed. All available artillery is also directed to bolster Bunker Hill.

Other moves include the redeployment of two provisional platoons (118 Marines) of the 1st Battalion into the zone of the 3rd Battalion. At a strategic point of entry to the Marines' right flank on Bunker Hill, the draw between Bunker Hill and the MLR is held by tanks. Their 90-mm guns and flamethrowers make passage by the enemy a most difficult challenge.

At about 2300, the Chinese mount a feint against other positions; rather than launch a new attack against Bunker Hill. Slightly after 2300, a Chinese contingent stumbles upon a Korean Marine ambush site at the Sachon River, south of the Munsanni–Kaesong rail line, and ignites a ten-minute firefight. The Chinese quickly withdraw.

Another diversionary attack is launched against Hill 48A (Stromboli), located east of Bunker Hill, about 500 yards in front of the MLR. The Chinese launch their assault against Stromboli just after midnight (12th-13th). The attack is apparently part of a larger assault against the MLR. Just as the defenders on Hill 48A inform the 1st Marines headquarters of the ongoing attack, Company F, on the right sector of the 1st Marines, also comes under assault.

The Chinese make no inroads at the MLR nor at Hill 48A, defended only by one squad. Reinforcements from Company F speed to the besieged squad, but enemy fire forces the reinforcements to halt their mission and return to their lines. In the meantime, the positions of Company F continue to come under attack. There, too, the line holds, as it does across the entire Jamestown Line.

Back at Hill 48A (Stromboli), the Chinese continue unsuccessfully to evict the defending squad. At one point, the Chinese encircle the defenders and it is thought that the position had been overrun; however, a report arrives at headquarters that the Marines there continue to hold, but they are

encircled by a contingent of about platoon strength. At 0325, a rifle platoon is dispatched to rescue the squad on Hill 48A, but while the reinforcements are en route, the Chinese intensify their effort to dislodge the elements of Company F. Nevertheless, the Marines' thwart the Communists' attempts to seize Hill 48A with superior hand-to-hand combat.

All the while, the reinforcements pound their way through the resistance to reach the outpost and relieve the pressure. As the Chinese withdraw from Hill 48A, they focus again on Bunker Hill and mount a heavy attack at about 0400 on the 13th. At Bunker Hill, enemy mortar fire begins to hammer the Marine positions on the southern slope, just prior to 0100, and this is followed by an increase in artillery fire. The Marines place calls to the 11th Marines and request and receive "Box-Me-In" fire, a defensive barrage that affords some added cover to the troops on Bunker Hill as the Chinese mount their attack.

By 0130, the Marines in Company I, 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, spot a conspicuous line of Chinese attackers moving abreast toward the perimeter to strike the center and right parts of the line. The Marines are greeted with heavy machine gun fire as well as enemy rifle fire, but in return, the Chinese receive a thunderous response. All attempts to break through the front lines are repelled and afterward, the Chinese move to attack the rear, but here, too, the Marines prevail. The battle rages non-stop for about four hours, but the Chinese fail each time they try to penetrate. The Marines are ably supported by artillery, mortar, tank and rocket fire.

The Chinese also take a beating from the artillery and tank fire at various assembly points and other locations in the draw that leads to Bunker Hill. The tanks, using their special illumination lights, are able to pinpoint enemy movement as the Chinese maneuver to envelop the Marines on Bunker Hill. The savage fighting continues without pause, but the defenders hold steadfastly. In the meantime, Chinese reinforcements move toward Bunker Hill.

At 0330, the contest for domination of Bunker Hill rises to a crescendo and continues unabated for about one additional hour before the signs of victory begin to flash about the hill, when Chinese artillery fire intensifies in coordination with a decrease in their small arms fire, indicating a withdrawal, but some time passes before the Marines can claim victory.

The Marines have also sustained heavy casualties while holding on to the terrain and holes have to be plugged to maintain the security of the MLR. Company G, 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, is directed to move to Bunker Hill to assume responsibility for the contested hill. However, due extremely high casualties, two reinforced squads from Company I, 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, the closest unit, are sped to the hill prior to the arrival of Company G.

Just after dawn Company G arrives at Bunker Hill while the battle is still raging, but soon after, the initial signs of victory prove true as the Chinese disengage under an intensified artillery bombardment. The Chinese sweep the battlefield clean, taking all their casualties. A contingent of the Marines scours the battlefield just after the withdrawal and discovers no enemy dead; however, seven live Chinese are spotted, engaged and eliminated on the north slope of Bunker Hill before they can rejoin the main body.

By noon on the 13th, Company H, 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, arrives at Bunker Hill and completes its relief of the exhausted troops that held off the Communist attacks of the previous night and the early morning hours of this day. The relief troops, like those they replaced, are about to face the enemy and an extra adversary, the high heat and humidity of a Korean summer day.

By the latter part of the afternoon, the remainder of the 7th Marines of the 2nd and 3rd Battalions (minus Company H) who had played supporting roles at Bunker Hill are en route back to their respective reserve positions. During the actions of this day, Marine planes fly 94 daylight sorties in the vicinity of Bunker Hill, followed by four night missions.

The enemy onslaught included between 5,000 and 10,000 rounds that hit the 1st Marine Division zone between 1500 on the 12th and 0600 on the 13th. The effort kills 24 Marines and wounds 214 others. In the 2nd Battalion zone, the Marines lose 7 killed and 33 wounded while defending the outpost at Stromboli. Chinese casualties amount to 210 (counted) killed and an estimated additional 470 killed, plus an estimate of 625 wounded.

Still, the Communists intend to overrun Bunker Hill. Later on the 13th, at about sunset, the Chinese initiate an artillery attack against Company G's positions at an outpost near Panmunjom. Combat Outpost 2 is on a dominant elevation atop the peace corridor. The 90-minute bombardment inflicts several casualties. Another unit, Company H, to the rear of the outpost, receives incoming artillery toward the last part of the barrage against the outpost and some Chinese troops move toward the outpost, but no actual attack is initiated. Bunker Hill, which continues under artillery and mortar attacks, remains a priority and at 2100, the Communists launch yet another attack to evict the Marines. The new inhabitants, Company H, 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, have only begun to settle in at the positions and have no plans to relocate.

The Chinese work their way through the draw east of Hill 58A, while the Marines prepare to defend and receive additional artillery support with the ever-popular "Box-Me-In" defensive ring. The lines are struck in two places, to the center and the right flank, each by a platoon. Some of the enemy penetrates, but the intrusion is temporary, as they are liquidated by grenades and small arms fire. The Chinese maintain the assault for more than one hour, but they make no progress. By 2215, having gained only massive casualties, the Chinese withdraw after a fast sweep of the field to remove the dead and wounded. However, during this attack, the Chinese leave twenty bodies on the field.

The estimate of enemy killed is 175. Company H, while enduring the ground attack, is also struck by about 3,000 artillery shells. The company sustains 7 killed and 21 wounded, but none of the casualties are inflicted by the enemy attack force; rather, the artillery and mortars are the cause of the casualties.

Before the defenders can get a pause in the combat, the exhausted men of Company H are once again called to the sound of the enemy bugles, as yet another assault is launched at 0225 on the 14th. The defenders also find themselves under fire from Siberia, a nearby hill where the Chinese commence firing with a heavy machine gun. The men on Bunker Hill get an assist from tanks that illuminate the target and effortlessly blast the machine gun into instant silence. The Chinese return artillery fire against the U.S. tanks and wound one man, and one of the tank's searchlights is damaged.

The Marines conclude that the short attack had been unfolded more to reclaim enemy dead that had not been retrieved during the earlier engagement, particularly since it lasted less than five minutes. Nonetheless, the Marines find no time to rest, as they understand that the Chinese will again launch an attack. As dawn (14th) emerges, the Marines hold Bunker Hill. Helicopters await the arrival of the casualties to transport the most seriously wounded to hospital centers in the rear.

In the meantime, elements of Company E, 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines relieve Company A, 1st

Battalion, 1st Marines, and assume responsibility for the 2nd Battalion's MLR in what is known as the Siberia sector, which lies next to the area that contains Bunker Hill. Another move to bolster the defenses occurs when a reinforcing platoon from Company A, 1st Battalion, 1st Marines, arrives at Bunker Hill just prior to sunset on the 14th.

During the day's fighting, only four sorties are flown by Marine planes and none are executed after dark. The remainder of the night seems relatively quiet, possibly too quiet. A patrol is dispatched at about midnight (14th-15th) from Bunker Hill to probe the enemy, but the contingent returns and reports no contact. A short while later, a small incident is reported as unfolding on the left flank at Bunker Hill and another enemy contingent is spotted farther west.

The enemy detection initially signals a minor action; however, the Chinese have much larger plans and they explode across the entire Bunker Ridge at 0118 on the 15th. The Chinese attempt to penetrate, but once again, support fire rings the Marines' positions to buffer the perimeter and simultaneously the artillery shellacs the enemy assembly areas. Fortunately for the Marines on Bunker Hill, a tanker's searchlight illuminates a huge gathering of Chinese in the draw as they prepare to strike from the northeast. The spotlight ends all chances of a surprise attack.

The Chinese receive no time to recover from the exposure, as friendly artillery and mortar fire deliver a tornado of fire that is supplemented further by the tanks' 90-mm guns. The enfilade whacks the enemy formation and causes a hurried, disorderly flight to safer positions. The troops get an unexpected breather on Bunker Hill, but the pause is short.

By 0206, the usual bombardment commences and afterward, the Chinese continue to regroup to form for the attack. At 0315, the shelling begins to diminish as the Marines brace for the imminent assault, but still it does not materialize immediately. At 0400, the enemy guns become completely silent and still no assault is launched. Dawn on the 15th arrives and the Marines still hold Bunker Hill.

Since Company H ascended to defend the hill, the enemy has sustained about 350 killed, the great majority caused by artillery and mortars, but only forty are actually counted. Company H has sustained 35 casualties, including 7 killed. Upon relief by Company B, 1st Battalion, 1st Marines, Company H sustains four additional casualties inflicted by enemy mortars as the unit returns to the MLR.

At Bunker Hill, the Communists commence another attack at 1640 while the area is undergoing a strong rainstorm. They advance without the support of artillery. The Marines, despite receiving no warning signal of the enemy artillery, are prepared for the intruders and most do not reach the lines. Those that do succeed in encroaching the perimeter are eliminated. The Communists disengage at 1750, and again, uncharacteristically, they are unable or unwilling to remove all of their dead. Thirty-five Chinese troops are left on the field.

The Marines sustain four wounded. Five Marines are evacuated due to battle fatigue. The night of the 15th passes without any major incidents and as midnight arrives, the apprehension begins to build along the perimeter. The Marines await the next bugle call to signal one more long night of combat.

At 0040 on the 16th, the suspense ends. The bugles blare and the whistles blow, followed by a battalion-sized contingent that initiates a charge, supported by artillery and mortar fire. The defenders face attacks from the west and the north. The powerful thrust is able to make some

penetration, but no panic strikes the troops. A quick call for reinforcements brings a platoon from Company I, 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, to help extinguish the fire, but by the time the contingent departs the Jamestown Line, the Marines on Bunker Hill have already thwarted the assault. The enemy disengages by 0315. The Marines sustain 3 killed and 27 wounded during the early morning attack. The Chinese sustain an estimated 40 killed and 30 wounded.

Shortly thereafter, in the sector held by Company B, the Chinese ignite another firefight at about 0515, but it terminates within ten minutes and no infantry attack is launched. The Marines sustain no casualties. At dawn on the 16th, Bunker Hill still remains under the control of the Marines. Company B, however, comes under attack by the enemy three additional times before it is relieved at Bunker Hill during the morning of the 17th by Company C, 1st Battalion, 1st Marines.

Dawn on the 17th finds Bunker Hill under control of the Marines and on this day, the prolonged struggle for domination of the hill terminates. Nevertheless, during August, the Chinese continue their fruitless efforts to dislodge the Marines. The Communists launch seven separate attacks during August and each time, the Marines prevail. Of the seven assaults, the Communists only mount one attack that is considered a full-scale assault. It is unleashed on the night of 25th-26th and the results are identical to the other attacks, total failure.

**August 11 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, a patrol of the 5th Marines attempts to reach one of its COPs, Hilda, during the ongoing attack by the 1st Marines against Bunker Hill. The 5th Marines are acting in conjunction with the diversionary attack. Nevertheless, the Chinese are there, having occupied it first, giving the Chinese two of the 5th Marines' three combat outposts. The enemy had occupied Elmer on 6 August. The Marines, who had only occupied the forward outposts during the daylight hours, also lose the final one, Irene. On 17 August when the Marines attempt to reoccupy it, they find it is already held by the Chinese.

**August 13 1952 (Korea)-In the 1st Marine Division sector**, during the fighting at Bunker Hill, Hospital Corpsman John E. Kilmer on 13 August continues to move across the ranks to aid the wounded and direction evacuations. All the while, Kilmer is exposed to small arms, mortars and machine gun fire, but he disregards it. A mortar fragment eventually wounds Kilmer, but he insists on continuing to help the other wounded. Soon after, another mortar bombardment arrives and Kilmer shields a wounded Marine with his body. A fragment strikes and kills the corpsman. Corpsman Kilmer is awarded the Medal of Honor posthumously for his extraordinary actions on the field of battle in the face of the enemy.

Also, Marine artillery (11th Marines), subsequent to modified plans to coordinate with air strikes, begins to show good results. On this day, 124 sorties are flown by Marine pilots and no planes are hit by enemy fire. However, four sustain minor damage. Under the new standing operating procedure (SOP), artillery strikes enemy artillery positions in conjunction with the friendly air strikes, thereby impeding enemy reaction fire. The practice is soon after adopted by the other services. During a recent air strike, General Lamson Scribner, while observing, noted there had been no artillery fire against the antiaircraft positions of the enemy. It had been his brainstorm to modify the procedures during air strikes by implementing artillery flak suppression fires. After that, Marine plane losses, which had reached a high during the previous June, begin to decrease and never again rise to the previous limits.

**August 17 1958 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the struggle for Bunker Hill, which began on 9 August, ends. On this day at Bunker Hill, Company B, 1st Battalion, 1st

Marines, is relieved during the early morning hours by Company C, 1st Battalion, 1st Marines. The Marines continue to hold the hill. The enemy will probe the positions of Company C only once during the two days it is on post on the hill. During the same period, only a few artillery and mortar shells strike the area. In other activity, a patrol of Company F, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, comes under attack while it advances to establish an outpost. The enemy bombards the patrol with artillery and mortar fire and grenades. One of the enemy grenades flips into a trench occupied by some Marines attempting to avoid the bombardment. PFC Robert E. Simanek spots the grenade and to save the lives of the other Marines, he pounces on it and takes the full blast. Simanek becomes badly wounded, but he survives. He receives the Medal of Honor for his extraordinary heroism and selfless sacrifice.

**August 19 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** Operation RIPPLE commences on August 19–20. HMR-16j initiates a new combat tactic in an attempt to cut down damage and injury from enemy fire, which follows U.S. rocket fire flashes and return fire against the U.S. artillerymen. Helicopters transport elements of the 4.5 rocket battery to firing positions and after completing their volleys, the helicopters evacuate the artillery pieces to the next location before the enemy guns can pound the positions. The strategy changes the way artillery is used on the battlefield. In addition, with the use of helicopters, the guns can be moved much quicker and delivered to firing locations that could not be reached by other means. Also, Company D, 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines, relieves Company C at Bunker Hill.

**August 22 1952 (Korea)-**The Communists again use tactics to stall the talks at Panmunjom. The U.N. is accused of launching an air attack at Kaesong. The accusations are obviously false and set up with phony evidence, but the talks are postponed. **In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** two separate ambush patrols of the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, engage Chinese contingents after dusk. Both sides sustain serious casualties.

**August 23 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marines Division zone,** a small Chinese contingent of four troops maneuvers near Bunker Hill just prior to dawn. One of the enemy troops makes it to the top of the hill from where he fires upon the Marines and wounds one. The incursion is otherwise, short-lived, as another Marine, a sniper, takes him out.

**August 24 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** Company F, 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines, which had relieved Company D, receives some enemy fire at its positions on Bunker Hill (Hill ;22), but no assault is launched.

**August 25 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** following several days of non-action, the Chinese launch an attack against Company F at Bunker Hill. The Marines, led by Captain Clarence Moody, initially are struck by a small force, composed of about two squads, at about dusk. The enemy encroaches the right flank and commences a short burst of machine gun fire, accompanied by the tossing of a few grenades, but afterward, the enemy withdraws.

About one hour later, however, the Chinese mount a stronger assault, composed of about two companies and supported by artillery. The Marines holding the right center of the outposts become the recipients of the assault, but Captain Moody requests and receives some added muscle from the 11th Marines. Tanks within range of the enemy also commence firing to ensure the Marines' positions remain in place. During the initial fighting, the Marines withdraw from a forward outpost that had been utilized as a listening post. In the meantime, a contingent of the Chinese manage to slither through the maze of fire and penetrate the lines; however, by about the same time, midnight

(25th-26th), a reinforcing platoon that had departed the main defense line arrives and the enemy quickly retires, in conjunction with the cessation of the enemy guns.

Within about thirty minutes, the enemy fire subsides completely. Subsequent to the end of the contest, the Marines move out to reoccupy the abandoned listening post, but enemy fire prevents the contingent from reaching it. This action culminates the major attempts during August by the enemy to regain Bunker Hill. The Marines sustain 8 killed and 57 wounded. They estimate enemy casualties at 100 killed and 470 wounded (most coming from the artillery and tank fire).

**August 29 1952 (Korea)**-Pyongyang is struck by a massive air attack. According to Navy records, more than 1,000 planes, including Marine, Navy and Air Force units, participate. In addition, Australian and British aircraft participate. The Communists continue to try to intercept the bombing raids, but with little success. During the month of September, Fifth Air Force loses seven Sabre jets; however, the enemy loses sixty-four MiGs. **In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the USS *Tingey* (DD 535) moves up to target enemy mortar positions on the mainland that had begun firing on Song-do, held by friendly troops. The destroyer's guns terminate the enemy fire.

**Late August 1952 (Korea)**-**In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, a 58-man contingent of the 1st Amphibious Tractor Battalion arrives to bolster the ranks of the 1st Marines, which had sustained high casualties during the fight for Bunker Hill.

**August 31 1952 (Korea)**- During August the 1st Marine Air Wing sets a record for sorties flown during one month, with 5,869 sorties flown in support of Fifth Air Force missions, including close air-support for the 1st Marine Division.

**September 1 1952 (Korea)**-Major General Edwin A. Pollock assumes command of the 1st Marine Division. He succeeds Major General John T. Selden. Prior to assuming command of the 1st Marine Division, General Pollock had commanded the 2nd Marine Division at Camp Lejeune, North Carolina.

**September 4 1952 (Korea)**-*In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone*, the Marine positions in the 1st Marines sector at Bunker Hill had, since the night of August 25th-26th, been relatively quiet, but at this time, the Chinese again decide to probe the Marine defenses. Attacks are launched against Bunker Hill (Hill 122) and Stromboli (Hill 48A). The Chinese initiate an artillery bombardment upon Bunker Hill at 2030. About ten minutes later, the commanding officer of Company E, 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines, sends word to the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, that his positions are under attack by a platoon-sized contingent. Captain Stanley Moak directs his troops while they meet the challenge and turn the attack back. However, the Marines had only encountered the initial probe.

At about 0100 on the 5th, the enemy mounts a stronger assault beginning with a ferocious bombardment. Shortly afterward, the Chinese move directly toward the defenses on Bunker Hill, with an apparent attitude that they are about to effortlessly occupy the objective. Their presumption that the artillery had liquidated the defenders is quickly disproved when the Marines open fire on the Chinese as they encroach, walking upright. The Chinese hurriedly retire and begin to reform for another attack. During the second assault, the Marines hold steadfastly and inflict heavy casualties upon the Chinese; however, some of the enemy are able to penetrate the lines.

A group of Chinese attempting to outflank the positions at Bunker Hill instead find themselves straying from the objective and in the line of fire of troops on the main line of resistance. That

hapless group makes a speedy retreat, but their presence is unexpected by other Chinese, who mistake them for Marines and open fire upon them. At about this time, some of the group reach positions within the Marine lines, but here, too, their luck finds no fortune, as the Marines counterattack and clear the area. The Chinese battalion-sized attack fizzles out and a retreat is called. The estimate of Chinese casualties amounts to 70 killed and 305 wounded (high casualties caused mostly by the troops who strayed into the MLR and were hit by fire there, the troops of Company F and the Chinese).

The Marines of Company F sustain 12 killed and 40 wounded, with the greater number of casualties being inflicted by enemy artillery and mortars. Meanwhile, at Stromboli (Hill 48A), the Communists strike about five minutes after the attack begins against Bunker Hill. The Marines at the outpost return fire against a reinforced platoon to ignite a two hour contest. The Chinese, supported by machine guns on nearby Hill 104, plow against the outpost, but the Marines deliver streams of return fire that prevent the Communists from making any progress. In addition, the Marines receive artillery and mortar fire support, which apparently provides an advantage. The enemy guns on Hill 104 suddenly become silent after barrages strike the positions. At 0240, the Chinese disengage. The Marines sustain no casualties. Enemy casualties are unknown and no estimates are reported.

During fighting in the 3rd Battalion (5th Marines) zone, PFC Alford L. McLaughlin, Company L, works two machine guns as his area is hit by two enemy battalions. McLaughlin holds both guns and fires from the hip at the unending waves that plow against the positions. The guns become too hot and he places them on the ground, then uses his carbine and grenades to continue his one-man stand. More enemy troops advance and more fall. The Marines hold their ground and McLaughlin's actions play a primary role in turning back the assault and holding the outpost. He is credited with killing about 150 of the enemy and wounding about 50 more. PFC McLaughlin, despite standing in open ground to return fire, survives his wounds. He is awarded the Medal of Honor for his extraordinary courage in the face of overwhelming enemy force.

**September 5 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** fighting that began the previous day continues at Bunker Hill and more casualties occur. One corpsman, Edward C. Benfold, moves amidst the wounded following a night-attack. Benfold spots two Marines in a trench along a ridge and he makes his way to them to see if they require aid. As he arrives, enemy troops arrive. Two of the enemy charge the position and two others toss grenades into the trench. Benfold grabs the two grenades and bolts from the trench, then charges the enemy. He pushes a grenade into the chest of each attacker, killing both; however, Benfold is mortally wounded. He is awarded the Medal of Honor posthumously for his intrepid act of bravery above and beyond the call of duty.

In other activity, the positions of the 1st Korean Marine Corps Regiment, along the western flank of the three mainland 1st Marine Division regimental sectors, come under attack. At about sundown on this day, one of several positions, Outpost 37, is struck by an enemy barrage. The Chinese maintain their fire into the following day and increase their targets. Outpost 37, on the 5th, does not come under an infantry assault, but on the 6th, the Chinese launch attacks against it and Outpost 36 as well as the regimental observation post on Hill 155 (known also as Hill 167).

**September 6 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the 1st South Korean Marine Corps Regiment's positions continue to come under bombardment by Chinese forces.

However, unlike the previous day, the Chinese also launch ground attacks against several outposts. At 1605, Outpost 36 is struck by a barrage of short duration, but following a pause of about two hours, again the enemy guns commence firing against it and Outpost 37. The enemy bombardment also strikes the regimental outpost. In the meantime, the Communists form near the Sachon River and slightly after 1900, the Chinese ignite a charge at the sound of bugles and whistles. Outpost 36 and 37 are attacked, but the former faces the most severe challenge.

Outpost 36 repels the initial charge and afterward, another attack is repulsed. However, the Chinese remain relentless and mount a third attack, which unfolds at a speed that is too strong for the South Koreans to forestall. The communications on the outpost are severed during the third assault. One of the besieged squad leaders is able to make his way to the S.K. 10th Company with news that the position had been overrun.

Nevertheless, by about 2220, the severed communications line is reestablished and the remaining defenders are able to confirm that the position is again held by the S.K. Marines. The Chinese had in fact taken the hill, but at an expensive price, which apparently compels them to retire rather than attempt to hold the ground. The S.K. Marines at Outpost 36 lose nine killed and seven wounded. At Outpost 37, only four casualties are sustained. Meanwhile, at the regimental observation post, enemy artillery inflicts one fatality on the S.K. Marines and two others, U.S. Marines, are also killed. The Chinese losses are estimated at 110 killed or wounded. In conjunction, 33 Chinese dead are counted on the field near Outpost 36. **In the 5th Marines zone**, the Chinese launch a stiff attack in the 1st Marines' sector (Bunker Hill and Stromboli) during the early morning hours. However, at about the same time, the 5th Marines' perimeter also comes under attack. The five forward outposts—Allen, Bruce, Clarence, Felix and Gary, become targets of the Chinese. They strike Gary first, but the position on the right of the line receives only shelling.

No ground troops move against COP Gary; however, the remaining outposts come under artillery and infantry assaults. The Chinese artillery pummels the slopes. Initially, the defenders at Allen, Bruce and Clarence feel the thrust of the attack, but about thirty minutes later, the Chinese also pounce upon COP Felix. COP Bruce comes under fire about 0010 by heavy machine gun fire, artillery and mortars. The barrage lasts for slightly more than one-half hour and just after it subsides, a reinforced company-sized assault begins.

Meanwhile, the others are hit by squad-sized contingents. At Bruce, the Marines receive "Boxed-in-Fire," which quickly neutralizes the enemy thrust and compels the enemy to withdraw. Nonetheless, the 5th Marines repel all attacks. By 0420 the Chinese, after scouring the field for their dead and wounded, withdraw. The Marines sustain 32 casualties, including killed and wounded. No estimates of enemy dead are available. Nonetheless, the enemy undoubtedly sustains heavy casualties. At dawn, the Marines at Bruce inspect the field and discover that every bunker on the forward slope had been decimated by the enemy artillery. And on the reverse slope, the results had been nearly identical, as only two bunkers avoid destruction. In conjunction, during the action in the 5th Marines' sector, one Marine exhibits extraordinary heroism under fire. PFC Alford L. McLaughlin (Company I, 3rd Battalion) at COP Bruce utilizes two separate machine guns, grenades and a carbine to singlehandedly eliminate about two hundred enemy troops. McLaughlin becomes a recipient of the Medal of Honor. In addition, one other Marine, PFC Fernando Luis Garcia, sacrifices his life to save that of his sergeant by diving on a grenade. Garcia receives the Medal of Honor posthumously for his courage above and beyond the call of duty.

During the daylight hours, the Marines work under fire to rebuild the defenses. Marine and Air Force planes execute support missions of the 5th Marines by pounding enemy bunkers and enemy artillery positions. Later, the Chinese mount new attacks. COP Bruce is struck by artillery and mortars at 1915. By just about 2015, as the shelling subsides, enemy ground troops punch forward to penetrate the outpost, but it is handily repulsed. The Chinese mount new assaults. In the meantime, COP Allen comes under bombardment.

At Bruce, the Chinese fire inflicts high casualties and wrecks the defensive bunkers, but still, the Marines give no ground. Two additional assaults are launched with punishing results. Additional Marines continue to join the ever-growing casualty list, to a point in which nearly every man at Bruce has either been killed or wounded. But still, the Chinese are unable to dislodge the defenders. The Marines face the enemy on the forward slope, while another contingent works to encircle the Marines on the reverse slope. Nothing works for the Chinese as the wounded band of Marines holds firmly.

At 0400 on 7 September, the Chinese once again disengage. The Chinese failure terminates a 51-hour siege to liquidate the Marines at Outpost Bruce. The 5th Marines hold Bruce at a cost of 19 killed and 38 wounded. In the meantime, at the other secure outposts, the 5th Marines sustain an additional 5 killed and 32 wounded. They count 200 Chinese dead and estimate that in the final eight hours another 200 had been wounded.

**September 7 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** fighting continues from the previous day at the 5th Marines outposts.

**September 10 1952 (Korea)-**Marine pilots attached to the *USS Sicily*, while on a mission near the 39th Parallel in search of enemy troop formations, unexpectedly encounter two MiG-15s that attempt to ambush a contingent including two planes, one flown by Marine Captain Jesse G. Folmar and the other by Lt. Willie L. Daniels. Just after the MiGs appear, two other Russian jets arrive on scene. The Marines, in propeller-driven planes, face jets, but still Captain Folman is able to down one of them.

With the odds still greatly against them, the Marines afterward disengage and head for the carrier. It's the first time a propeller-driven aircraft shoots down a jet. With the MiGs in pursuit, the engagement continues and enemy fire seriously damages Daniels' plane, shooting off part of his left wing. Daniels is forced to abandon his plane, but Captain Folman remains overhead and once he concludes Daniels is okay in the water, he radios for a rescue team. Lt. Daniels is plucked from the water and returned safely to the *USS Sicily*.

**September 12 1952 (Korea)-**In the skies over Korea, 3 F4Us from Marine Squadron VMA-323 are attacked by four MiGs. A ten-minute air duel erupts, but neither side sustains any damage or shoot-downs. In addition, 2 F4Us from VMA-3j2 are also intercepted and attacked by MiGs.

**September 14 1952 (Korea)-** Marine Fighter Squadron VMA-121, led by recently appointed commander Lt. Colonel Wayne M. Cargill, completes its 5,000th combat sortie since its arrival in Korea during the previous October.

**September 15 1952 (Korea)-**The 1st Marine Air Wing establishes a new squadron (VMC-1). The squadron's missions are restricted to electronic countermeasures.

**September 17 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines, establishes an outpost on Hill 124 in the left sector of the regimental perimeter. The

Chinese are not receptive to the new inhabitants and promptly plan to evict the squad that holds the post.

**September 19 1952 (Korea)-In the 1st Marine Division zone,** the 1st South Korean Marine Corps Regiment, which holds the west flank of the division perimeter, again comes under attack by the Communists. At Outpost 36, a contingent of Chinese who had earlier crossed the Sachon River during daylight emerge from concealed positions and form to attack, while other supporting units move against Outposts 37, 33 and 31 in a diversionary move. Backed by artillery and tanks, the Chinese lunge against the outpost from the north, east and west. The Korean Marines aggressively return fire and by about 2000, the Chinese secure the hill, while the Korean Marines attempt to reform to take it back. At 0115 on the 20th, the Koreans press forward only to discover Chinese reinforcements coming from a distance of less than one mile. The Korean Marines abort the counterattack. Nevertheless, the Chinese remain on the offensive. The Chinese move swiftly and rather quietly to positions that encircle the Korean Marines. By 0520, the outpost is completely overrun. Many of the Korean Marines escape the entrapment and make it back to friendly lines. Those few unable to escape are captured and taken from the field when the Chinese later depart.

**September 20 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the Chinese move to eliminate a recently established outpost manned by one squad of the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines, on Hill 124. The Chinese launch the attack in conjunction with the appearance of two green flares that burst overhead at 0345. The illumination signals that the attack is imminent. The squad comes under assault by four separate groups, with the main thrust being executed by a contingent of about twenty troops.

The Marines receive incoming mortars, grenades and sub-machine gun fire, but dish out deadly doses of fire that slam into the attackers. The tenacious exchange lasts only about five minutes and nearly every man in the defending squad becomes wounded, but the Communists are unable to penetrate. The Chinese disengage and vanish into the darkness.

In other activity, the 1st Korean Marine Regiment, which surrendered Outpost 36 during fighting that began on the previous night, mount a new counterattack at 1400. Since retaking the hill, the Chinese have fortified their positions and those on the far side of the hill find themselves protected from the artillery of the 11th Marines. Nonetheless, the positions remain lucrative targets for the Marine air squadrons.

Prior to the counterattack, elements of three squadrons, VMA-323, 121 and 212, pound the positions in concert with the guns of the 11th Marines, softening the path for the Korean Marines. The bombardment works well. The Korean Marines, backed by artillery and tank fire, charge the positions against a frazzled group of Chinese who have been unable to recover properly from the thunderous barrage. The Communists are overrun, but they withdraw only a short distance to positions northwest of the hill. Following the recapture of the outpost, which culminates a 20-hour battle, the South Korean Marines hold it for the balance of the month with no new attempts by the Communists to retake it. In addition, by retaining control of the outpost, the Korean Marines are able to continue to fire upon Chinese positions. The South Korean Marines lose 16 killed, 47 wounded and 6 missing. The Chinese casualties are estimated at 150. The S.K Marines actually count 20 dead.

**September 22–26 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector,1st Marine Division zone,** Operation HAYLIFT commences. The 7th Marines becomes the recipient of HMR-16's latest project to test

the ability of re-supplying a combat regiment on the MLR. The helicopter squadron transports all Class I, III and V items, as well as items of Class II and IV that can be transported. All supplies, with the exception of valuable cargo (including mail), is to be carried in slings. The operation succeeds and it is determined that by using about 40 percent of a squadron's capabilities, it can sustain a combat regiment on the main line of resistance for about five days without difficulty.

**September 22 1952 (Korea)**-The 1st Marine Air Wing grounds 14 of its F9F-2s due to the discovery of cracks in some of the nose wheel spindles and in the socket and bushing assembly castings.

**September 28 1952 (Korea)**-Marine Major Alexander J. Gillis (VMF-311), attached to the US Air Force 335th Fighter Squadron (4th Fighter Group), while flying a sortie as part of a four-plane mission near the mouth of the Yalu River with one other plane, encounters then chases two MiG-15s. Gillis forces one of the planes to crash and later this same day, he encounters another MiG. Gillis damages the MiG and the pilot is forced to eject; however, Gillis' plane also becomes inoperable and he ejects into the Yellow Sea. Gillis is rescued. He is the second Marine pilot to score two kills in one day during the Korean War.

**Late September 1952 (Korea)**- *In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone*, the regimental area of the 1st Marines, which includes the Hill-124-122 axis, is probed by the Chinese, but they make no serious attempt to seize either outpost. The situation is basically the same in the remainder of the division zone. The 7th Marines, which had deployed in the divisional right on 7 September after relieving the 5th Marines, also sees no major challenges against its positions.

The 7th Marines holds responsibility for the right flank of the 1st Marine Division. The 7th Marines also assume seven outposts from the 5th Marines and two others, Frisco and Verdun, are established on the 14th and 26th, respectively. Verdun stands on the far eastern sector of the perimeter, near the boundary with the British 1st Commonwealth Brigade.

**October 1 1952 (Korea)**-**In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, certain changes of the enemy strategy become more plain at about this time. It had been noticed that enemy probes of Marine positions occurred much less often. For about the past two weeks, the enemy has not initiated any primary ground actions. While the infantry has remained quiet, the enemy artillery units are becoming much more active. On this date, the Chinese issue an ultimatum demanding that the 1st South Korean Marine Regiment on Outpost 86 surrender or the Chinese would obliterate the defenses there. The demand is ignored and as promised at 2000, the Chinese initiate a bombardment. The Koreans withstand 145 rounds during the next 20 hours.

**October 2 1952 (Korea)**-**In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the Chinese have apparently focused on four of the nine outposts of the 7th Marines—Detroit, Frisco, Seattle and Warsaw, all of which straddle ground that is somewhat lower than the outposts in the regiment's western sector.

The Chinese initiate a major artillery and mortar bombardment of Seattle and Warsaw at 1836. The barrages continue for precisely one hour and just as the fire subsides, the Chinese ground troops launch two separate attacks. While Warsaw's reinforced platoon defends against a force composed of about company strength, the Chinese also send a squad against Seattle.

During the ferocious fight at Warsaw, a grenade lands in the midst of five Marines. Private Jack William Kelso grabs the grenade and moves from the bunker to toss it back; however, it detonates

in his hands. Kelso, despite his wound, returns to the bunker and instructs the other Marines to head back to the MLR while he remains to cover their withdrawal. Kelso continues to fire against the advancing Communists until he is repeatedly hit and succumbs. Private Kelso becomes the recipient of the Medal of Honor posthumously.

After heavy fighting at Warsaw that lasts about 45 minutes, the Chinese take the outpost. Within about five minutes, the Chinese overrun Seattle. Immediately following the loss of the outposts, the Marines form to retake them. At Warsaw, one platoon from Company I, 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, leaves the MLR at 2047 and effortlessly regains the hill, which had been found abandoned. Meanwhile, the other outpost, Seattle, will be attacked during the early morning hours of the following day.

In other activity, the Chinese continue to bombard the positions of the S.K. Marines at Outpost 36. Later, following one of the artillery bombardments at 1915, the Communists mount a ground attack against Outpost 37. The Korean Marines defending the post are only at platoon strength; however, they repel the assault for more than one hour before the enemy's superior numbers compel the Koreans to abandon the post.

In the meantime, the Communists also attack Outposts 36 and 86. The defending S.K. Marines at OP 36 resist fiercely and repulse two assaults, but by dawn on the following day, the enemy strength forces the Koreans to abandon the hill, leaving it to the Chinese who quickly occupy it. At Outpost 86, the Chinese drive steadily against the defending platoon; however, they mount a battalion against it and prior to midnight, the hill is lost.

The Korean Marines continue to hold Outpost 37, but it, too, is a priority for the Communists and will come under stiff attack on the following day. Also, on the 3rd, the S.K. Marines mount a counterattack to regain Outpost 86.

**October 3 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marines Division zone,** at 0340, two squads attached to Company I, 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, depart the MLR to regain Outpost Seattle, which the Chinese had seized during the previous night. The contingent proves too weak in numbers to wrest the hill from the Chinese. The unit is recalled, but afterward, at about dusk, the enemy is struck heavily by an artillery barrage that precedes another assault by three squads. The Chinese artillery and grenades again prevent the Marines from gaining the hill. Casualties from the artillery had become extremely high. The attack is aborted.

At 2225, artillery again plasters the Chinese positions on Seattle, but once again, the Chinese are able to hold. A new assault is launched, but yet again, the enemy artillery and grenades inflict heavy casualties, which stalls the advance. The contests at Warsaw and Seattle have caused 101 casualties, including 13 killed. During the early morning hours of the 4th, the Chinese launch a counterattack to regain Warsaw.

In other activity, the South Korean Marines mount counterattacks to regain Outpost 37. The second charge gains the crest, but enemy fire forces the S.K. Marines to find safer positions on the reverse slope. The battle to secure the hill renews on the following day.

In other activity, the S.K. Marines stand by during the early morning hours while planes and artillery bombard Outpost 86, which the Chinese had seized on the previous night. The combined power of the strikes, coupled with a counterattack at 1015, compels the Chinese to abandon the post, but they only move a short distance until the artillery begins to pound them at their new

positions. Soon after, they are spotted scurrying away. Meanwhile, the S.K. Marines focus on fortifying the positions at the outpost in preparation for an anticipated assault, which occurs on 6 October.

**October 4 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the Chinese, who had on the previous night gained and later abandoned Outpost Warsaw in the 7th Marines zone, mounts a new assault at 0145. During the previous night, the defenders had been forced to abandon the hill, but after re-occupying it later that same night, the Chinese now face a stiffer defense. The Marines repel the attack and sustain no casualties.

In other activity, the battle for Outpost 37 rages within the zone on the 1st South Korean Marine Regiment, which has been fighting since the 2nd for control of the hill. On this day, and into the next, the gruesome struggle causes the contest to become a see-saw battle, with possession of the outpost changing hands four times. The final one leaves the hill in the possession of the Communists.

**October 5 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the Communists maintain their pressure against outposts held by the South Korean Marines, but they are less aggressive against the American Marines. Since October 1, the South Koreans have lost two outposts, but in the 1st Marines zone, none have been surrendered to the Chinese. However, late on this day, at 2230, the Chinese manage to ambush a 1st Marines patrol. The patrol gets snagged, but quickly returns fire in a fire fight that lasts about twenty minutes before the Marines make it to the reverse slope of the hill and request support. While mortars fly into the Communists' positions, the Marines are able to make their way back to friendly lines. The Marines sustain four casualties. The Chinese sustain 13 killed (counted). No estimates of Chinese wounded are available.

**In the 7th Marines zone,** the Chinese mount an attack against Outpost Frisco, but the contingent, estimated at the strength of a squad, is repelled. Later, due to the high casualties sustained over the past few days at the contested outposts, the 7th Marines take steps to reinforce the perimeter (MLR) in its sector.

At 1200, the zone held by the 3rd Battalion, which had sustained high casualties, is divided into two sectors. The 1st Battalion, 7th Marines, assumes responsibility for the extreme right, which includes Warsaw and Verdon. The modifications along the line place all three battalions at the front, beginning on the left with the 2nd, followed by the 3rd and 1st Battalions holding the far left.

**October 6 1952 (Korea)-In the 1st Marine Division zone,** the 7th Marines mounts an attack to retake Outpost Seattle, which the Chinese had seized on 2 October. The contingent, a reinforced platoon (Company C, 1st Battalion, 1st Marines), moves out at 0600, but enemy mortar and artillery fire prevent the detachment from reaching the objective. Shortly thereafter, reinforcements advance to support the attack, but still, the enemy firepower prevents the attack from gaining the hill. Air support arrives to bolster the ground assault, but the Chinese are not dislodged. Following about five hours of tenacious fighting, the Marines disengage at 1100. The mission costs the 1st Battalion 12 killed and 44 wounded. The enemy casualties are estimated at 44.

Later, at about dusk, the Chinese take the offensive by initiating an artillery and mortar bombardment that strikes five regimental outposts. The enemy also pounds two locations along the MLR. In conjunction with the massive shelling, the Communists launch ground attacks against all of the objectives that had been under artillery assault.

The land forces strike at 1930 while the artillery bombardment continues, and by midnight (6th-7th), about 4,500 rounds strike 7th Marines positions. At Warsaw, on the far right, the Marines receive punishing fire and for a while, communications are severed between the outpost and the MLR. However, by about 2000, the communications are restored. While under assault, friendly artillery delivers "Box-Me-In" fire to A 90-mm gun motor carriage in action at Hill 395 (White Horse) northwest of Ch'orwon during October, provide a buffer. The Marines, all the while, repel the attack and by about 2235, the Chinese disengage.

In the meantime, at Outpost Carson on the far left (west), the fighting subsides by 2050 as the Chinese disengage. The adjacent outpost to the east, Outpost Reno, holds off the attack, which ceases slightly before 2300. The cost of holding Reno and Carson climbs to 12 wounded and no fatal casualties.

Two other outposts, Detroit and Frisco, receive the brunt of the Chinese assaults. At the former, the Chinese attack at 1900 in company strength and fail to gain Detroit, but later at 2100, a new assault makes gains. Support fire arrives from the 11th Marines, but in the midst of the fighting at close quarters, the communications between the outpost and the MLR are cut off. Reinforcements rush to the beleaguered outpost, but enemy fire prevents the unit from reaching it. Meanwhile, the MLR comes under attack and at about the same time, distress calls requesting artillery (variable time fuse shells) are heard on the radio from the defenders at Detroit.

The Marine artillery, for a while, halts the attack, but other reinforcements are unable to reach Outpost Detroit due to intense enemy artillery fire. Suddenly, at 0115, the Chinese again pound against the outpost and once more are halted by friendly artillery. Nevertheless, the artillery fails to force a withdrawal.

Meanwhile, the communications picked up from the outpost are the voice of Chinese. A detachment is dispatched to reconnoiter the area and returns at 0355 with news that the outpost had fallen. The garrison, except for two wounded Marines who manage to escape, falls to the Communists. Following ten brutal hours of combat, the Marines disengage, leaving the outpost to the Chinese.

Meanwhile, the fighting continues at Frisco, manned by Company H, 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines. The enemy attacks at 2000 and advances to the trenches, but the Marines repel further progress. At 2130, a contingent of the enemy penetrates, but friendly artillery again arrives to push the Chinese back. At slightly after midnight (6th-7th), a third attempt to eliminate the outpost is launched and again, the trench-line is pierced. The first group of reinforcements are barred from reaching the outpost by artillery fire, but afterward, during the early morning hours of the 7th, elements of Company H and Company I rush to bolster the outpost and maintain a counterattack to ensure the Marines hold the hill. During the gruesome night fighting, a reserve company dispatches a reinforced platoon (Company I) and it tips the balance.

By 0715, all Chinese are driven from the area, giving the Marines control of Outpost Frisco. Nonetheless, victory at Frisco brings no jubilation. The position must be reinforced due to its present untenable positioning. Instead, during the afternoon of the 7th, it is decided to abandon the hill. During the two-day fight for the outposts, the 7th Marines sustains 10 killed, 105 wounded seriously and another 23 with superficial wounds. Also, 22 are reported missing (includes Outpost Detroit). The Marines estimate Chinese casualties at 200 killed and an unknown number of wounded.

In other activity, the Communists move against the third and final primary outpost manned by the

1st Korean Marine Corps Regiment. The assault is launched at 2200 and by midnight (6th-7th), the S.K. Marines lose the hill. The South Koreans regroup and mount a counterattack during the early morning hours of the following day and regain the hill prior to dawn. Nonetheless, the Chinese begin an artillery and mortar barrage that pushes the Marines from the hill.

In other activity, Major Alexander J. Gillis, the commanding officer of Marine Squadron VMF-311, ends his tour with a bang. While on a mission, the flight is intercepted by MiGs. Major Gillis downs two of the MiGs, but he, too, is shot down in the process. Gillis is rescued, but not until he spends four hours in the Yellow Sea.

**October 7 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** a prolonged battle for outposts in the 7th Marines sector closes this day with the Marines holding Frisco, but concluding that without reinforcements, the position is untenable. The outpost is abandoned. Since the beginning of October, the Communists have gained six outposts in the Marines' sector, OP 37, 36 and 86 (left flank) in the 1st South Korean Marine Corps Regiment sector and Outposts Detroit, Frisco and Seattle. The gains give the Chinese positions from which they can harass and threaten Jamestown Line and in the terrain east of the Sachon River, the Communists are able to carry out patrols without Marine interference.

The Communists inadvertently receive additional help from the U.N., as the Marines, as well as the remainder of Eighth Army, are forbidden from initiating any major offensives.

Also, during the fighting at Outpost Frisco during the night of the 6th-7th, while the Chinese banged against the 7th Marines, Sergeant Lewis G. Watkins, Company I, 3rd Battalion, while wounded and leading an attack against a machine gun nest, finds himself a recipient of an enemy grenade that drops in the midst of his contingent. Watkins grabs the grenade, but before he can toss it back, it explodes, killing him. Sergeant Watkins becomes a recipient of the Medal of Honor, posthumously, for his extraordinary courage saved the lives of his fellow Marines.

Also, the Communists' gain of the outposts activates their quest to gain even more. Those they pursue are located in the sector of the 7th Marines, the far right battalion along the division front. However, for a short while, another period of quiet overcomes the battlefield, while the Chinese prepare to strike with strength.

**October 12 1952 (Korea)-In the 1st Marine Division zone,** the 5th Marines relieves the 1st Marines and assumes responsibility for the center of the line, which includes Bunker Ridge. The 1st Marines moves into reserve.

**October 13 1952 (Korea)-**The Communists launch an air attack against Seoul and Cho-do Island. This is the first attack against the island on the west coast since it had been placed under command of the U.S. Marines nearly one year ago. No casualties are sustained. The air attacks, carried out by diminutive fabric-covered biplanes, are referred to as "Bedcheck Charlie" raids. **In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the 7th Marines establish Outpost East Berlin. It and Berlin are located in the forward position of the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines. On this day, Lt. Colonel Barrett assumes command of the 3rd Battalion, replacing Lt. Colonel Russell. Also, to the far left, Outpost Carson, Reno and Vegas stand in the sector of the 2nd Battalion about 1,000 yards to the front of the MLR. In the right, the 1st Battalion controls Outpost Warsaw and Verdon and on 16 October, a new outpost will be established in the 1st Battalion sector.

**October 16 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the 1st Battalion, 7th

Marines, establishes Outpost Ronson, part of a trio that includes Warsaw and Verdon, the latter being near the 1st Commonwealth Brigade boundary. The establishment of Ronson was necessitated by the recent loss of Outposts Seattle and Warsaw, which had been responsible for the protection of the area.

Outpost Ronson becomes a key position, as it is closest to the Hook, a primary defensive position of the Marines. The jagged Hook, although important, is also vulnerable as the J shaped terrain in the east flows northwest into the Communists positions. The Hook holds the dominant ground in the sector and holds the key to the Samichon Valley, from which the Chinese can emerge from the northeast on a direct line to Seoul. At Ronson, the Marines stand less than 300 yards from the Hook and only 200 yards southeast of the enemy on Seattle.

**October 19 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, the 1st British Commonwealth Division**, which recently assumed responsibility for the Hook, comes under attack at 1900. The enemy force, composed of about battalion strength, encounters elements of the Black Watch and Canadian units, which had relieved the U.S. Marines. Heavy fighting continues until 0430 on the following day, but the Chinese fail to make any gains. The British are supported by I Corps artillery and by the 11th Marines, the latter glad to reciprocate for the earlier help afforded the Marines by the British on 26–28 October. The Communists lose more than 100 killed.

**October 21 1952 (Korea)- In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, concern regarding artillery ammunition continues to accelerate in the 7th Marines sector. The quota allotted for the remainder of the month is placed at 20 rounds of HE (105-mm high explosive) and 4.3 rounds of ;55-mm high explosive for each tube. Lacking ammunition, the Marines revert back to machine guns, but it becomes evident to the enemy as they appear and receive no artillery fire.

**October 23 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, preparations are made to bolster the defenses at the Hook, by now determined to be the objective of the Chinese. Enemy artillery fire saturates the terrain containing the dug-in defenses and continues at such a devastating rate that the Marines are unable to make sufficient repairs. As one bunker is fixed, more shelling destroys another. Nonetheless, the 1st Battalion adapts to the conditions. Company A, 1st Battalion, assumes responsibility for the battalion's left sector, which includes the Hook. The commanding officer, Captain Frederick C. McLaughlin, deploys a reinforced platoon on Outpost Warsaw. At Ronson, a squad is deployed.

**October 24 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the Communists increase activity. Beginning at 1800, an artillery bombardment commences. More than 1,200 shells rock the 7th Marines' zone in a 24-hour period. In conjunction with the shelling, which includes mortars, the Marines detect large enemy troop movements west and northwest of the Hook. The areas hardest hit are Outposts Ronson and Warsaw, along with the portion of the MLR in the vicinity of the Hook. The shelling causes much damage, but more importantly, it becomes difficult to repair the defenses because of the enemy fire. It becomes apparent that the Chinese, who succeeded earlier in gaining outposts, now have their eyes set on the Hook. The Marines return fire, but it is shallow due to the ammunition shortages. The 7th Marines' positions are struck with nearly 3,000 rounds by 1800 on the 26th and the great majority of them fall into the area of the 1st Battalion.

**October 25 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the 7th Marines attempt to mount return fire against a continuing thunderous enemy bombardment, interpreted by

the Marines as the first signs of a massive attack. Although encumbered by shortages of artillery ammunition and strict quotas, Company A, 1st Tank Battalion, begins to pound enemy positions. The tanks fire against the enemy 54 times and on the following day, they fire nearly 175 rounds of high explosive shells. In concert, the 2nd Battalion, 11th Marines, fires 575 and 506 rounds on the 25th and 26th, respectively. The Marines also receive support fire from the 4th Battalion, 11th Marines, which fires just under 200 rounds on the 25th-26th.

Still, the Chinese artillery overshadows the U.S. guns. Other preparatory support fire arrives from rocket fire and air support, but the amount of planes is not overwhelming. Four planes of Marine Squadron VMF-323 strike a trench-line southwest of the Hook and on the following day, three other planes of the squadron attack enemy positions on an elevation about 1,000 yards southwest of the 1st Battalion, 7th Marines.

**October 26 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** work continues in the vicinity of the Hook to solidify the defenses in preparation for what is believed to be an imminent attack against the 7th Marines by the Chinese. Enemy artillery continues to relentlessly bombard the area. At 0410, Company C, led by Captain Paul B. Byrum, arrives to relieve Company A on the 1st Battalion's left sector at the Hook. Meanwhile, Company B, led by Captain Dexter E. Evans, protects the battalion's right flank of the main line. While the Marines prepare, the Chinese are not idle. During the early morning hours of this day, unknown to the U.S., Chinese forces move undetected from positions west of the Hook to an assembly area about one mile from there. The troops are in close proximity to where an air strike is delivered by VMF-323, but the concealed position of the enemy infantry (3rd Battalion, 357th Regiment) remains undiscovered. After dusk, an enemy contingent strikes the positions of the 11th Marines at a forward outpost. While the outpost is bludgeoned with artillery and mortar fire, ground troops close on the position.

Meanwhile, Lieutenant Sherrod E. Skinner, Jr., aware of the imperative need to keep the communications open with the MLR, takes action to preserve the position and the surviving defenders. Skinner continues to use the radio to call upon artillery to blast the approaching Communists, but his radio goes silent. He leaves his position to maintain order in the cramped perimeter and also directs the machine gunners. The ammunition begins to run out as the night progresses. Skinner is able, with the survivors, to forestall the enemy for about three hours before the overwhelming numbers of the enemy overrun the position. Skinner orders his troops to feign death and the ruse works. Enemy troops even search the imposter corpses. However, afterwards, one of the Communists tosses a grenade into the bunker. Lt. Skinner, the twin brother of another Marine officer, blankets the grenade with his body, which costs him his life, while he saves the lives of the others in the bunker. Two Marines survive and Lt. Skinner becomes the recipient of the Medal of Honor posthumously for his extraordinary heroism under fire.

**October 26–28 1952 BATTLE OF THE HOOK** -Throughout the 26th, the Chinese take measures to remain out of sight—until about 1800. At that time, the 7th Marines, one squad on Ronson, comes under attack from two sides. The diminutive force is overwhelmed. No one escapes. Shortly thereafter, Outpost Warsaw about 600 yards northeast of Ronson is besieged. The defenders come under assault from the east and west simultaneously. However, the Marines return a hurricane of fire and within minutes, artillery fire shatters the ground to their front, but the Chinese continue to advance through the ring of fire. The assault troops arrive in the midst of their own artillery, which causes some of them to die before they can be fired upon by the Marines.

Suddenly, it is the Marines themselves who are the only line of defense as Chinese charge the bunkers. The Marines respond desperately, but with great discipline, using their bayonets as well as the butts of their rifles to halt the invaders. As they swing their rifles, toss grenades and lunge their bayonets into the enemy, they are unable to eliminate the horde. A brutal gruesome three minutes passes when at 1907, the Marine radio man calls out: "We're being overrun." At that moment, the radio goes dead.

With Ronson gone and apparently, Warsaw, too, the situation along the 1st Battalion positions at the Hook appear grim. Nonetheless, the 7th Marines maintain discipline. All the while, the enemy artillery is increasing its already relentless fire on the Hook. This new acceleration forces the restrictions on Marine artillery fire to be lifted. At 1859, reinforcements (Company A) are rushed to the Hook to bolster Company C in its efforts to halt the attack. However, just after the first platoon departs, the Chinese strike the MLR at the Jamestown Line.

The initial assault is followed by a second wave that presses hard and builds great pressure against the line. The onslaught plows into the area slightly east of the 1st Battalion, 7th Marines, and at the Hook. The line becomes greatly imperiled as the momentum pushes the Chinese into the Marines' trenches and upon the crest of the ridge. Close-quartered fighting erupts as the Marines attempt to close the flood gates. However, the Chinese continue to pour into the area and force the Marines to pull back. Rear guard troops maintain a steady stream of cover fire to keep the Chinese from overwhelming the forces in retreat.

Meanwhile, back at Warsaw, all had not been lost. At 1944, radio reports are picked up that the Marines at Warsaw are still holding out and that the Chinese are right atop the beleaguered bunkers. Artillery fire is called upon by the Marines with instructions to strike their own positions. The 11th Marines immediately respond, to forestall disaster with the risk of blasting their fellow Marines. In the meantime, the main thrust of the Chinese attack continues to receive heavy artillery and mortar support as it drives forward to collapse the Jamestown Line in the 7th Marines zone.

While the Marines remain under pressure from the assault, some Chinese maneuver to positions about 400 yards south of the Hook and slither around the flanks and pierce the defenses of Company C, 1st Battalion. Here, Lt. John W. Meikle, 1st Platoon, forms a defensive perimeter close to the MLR, while other Marines form a defensive line near the crest, about 500 yards east of the Hook. Meikle's contingent is joined by the vanguard of Company A, which had set out just before the Chinese struck the MLR. The remainder of Company A is moving toward the crest of the east-west ridge to meet what is expected to be the point upon which the enemy places his main thrust. The entire area is engulfed with vicious combat, but by 2330, it is apparent that the defenders at Warsaw have fallen and there is no good news at any point along the line.

All units are battling to halt the attack, while simultaneously, they prepare to counterattack to regain all lost ground. At Warsaw, the 11th Marines open up with a huge barrage to make things uncomfortable for the Chinese there and to keep their momentum unstable in front of the outpost. Other steps taken include air support. Marine pilots are able to provide some assistance, as two planes on separate sorties at 2113 and 2306 blast enemy positions. The Marines defenses are also bolstered by tanks, which begin to fire upon the enemy's main line at about 1930.

Although the Chinese had initiated their attack, still other contingents remain in concealed positions, but Marine intelligence for some time had been anticipating the enemy offensive and concluded that the Chinese focus would fall upon the outposts of the 2nd Battalion rather than the

1st Battalion. The calculations and estimated plan of targets proves to be accurate as the combat continues to unfold across the area. Prior to 1800, the starting point of the enemy artillery, Marine artillery units had been redeployed to support the 2nd Battalion.

In addition, the usual night ambush contingent scheduled to deploy near Reno is given extra fire power by increasing it from a squad to a full platoon. The ambush platoon, drawn from Company E, moves from the MLR slightly after dusk and in a while establishes its hidden positions several hundred yards from Combat Outpost Reno.

While the Hook is under heavy attack, the invisible Marines hold their positions in absolute silence for the long wait that might snag an enemy patrol. Their patience is rewarded at midnight, but it takes a while longer for the extraordinary benefits derived from the mission to be realized.

The tranquil appearance on the darkened Korean terrain as Chinese forces approach Combat Outpost Reno to strike it from the rear is an illusion. The Communists had remained out of sight for the day and even as they approach to spring the attack, their presence goes unnoticed, until midnight. Nearby, the Marines holding camouflaged positions detect some slight noises in the distance, raising the possibility that an enemy patrol might be encroaching, but the Marines do not stir. Soon after, the noises pinpoint Chinese contingents that are slowly moving to form for an attack against Reno. The Marines hold quietly, but word of the enemy's presence is radioed to alert the defenders at Reno. Meanwhile, the Chinese remain under surveillance by the ambush platoon, which still refrains from firing.

Just as it appears that the Chinese are ready to strike, the Marines open fire. The sudden wall of fire pounds the Chinese and derails their concentration. The ambush platoon maintains a steady stream of deadly fire as the Chinese attempt to reorganize to take out the ambush platoon, but instead, the Chinese become lucrative targets for the two squads of Marines at Reno. The combined fire strikes like a Korean rainstorm. Unable to react with any type of counterattack, the disorganized Chinese finally are able to regroup after the pernicious ten-minute river of fire to escape further harm. The ambush platoon thwarts the two-company attack against Reno. Although the outpost is not hit with a major attack, before dawn on the 27th, the Chinese make another attempt.

At 0400 on the 27th, the Marines at Reno find themselves the recipients of a determined attack, one quite different from those previously executed by the Communists against the Marines since they arrived in West Korea. The first wave moves against them from the northeast, but it is just the vanguard of a series of rolling waves, one after the other, that pounds against the outpost. The Marines, however, react accordingly by increasing their fire to accommodate the enemy and crack the spinal column of the onslaught.

The first wave is shredded and the second receives equally heavy fire, but some Chinese are able to penetrate the wall of fire. The Marines are compelled to seek cover in the bunkers to regroup and call for artillery fire. Soon the sky is full of incoming artillery fire that descends ferociously on the Chinese just as they are on open ground. The cloudburst of shells drives the Chinese back and preserves the outpost. By 0440, the Chinese call it a day.

In the meantime, the menacing attack continues to threaten the Marine domination of the Hook. At slightly after midnight (26th-27th), Company A 2nd Battalion, which had been earlier dispatched, finally joins up with Company C at the Hook and passes through to protect the line from the crest of Hill 146. Just after passing Company C, the enemy commences fire against the vanguard, but it is followed right after by artillery and mortars that pound the remainder of Company A. The fire

is too intense to move farther.

The commander, Captain Fred C. McLaughlin, halts the attack temporarily to find a way to clear the obstacles. After a short halt, the attack is resumed, but yet again, intense enemy artillery fire prevents progress. The Marines suspend the attack and dig in to await support. The situation of the beleaguered company is relayed back to the regimental command post. Colonel Thomas Moore reaches into his final reserve unit, Company H, 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, and orders it to speed to the 1st Battalion's positions, report to the commander there and then move forward to relieve the pressure of Company A by hopping over it and maintaining the attack.

When the attack by Company H takes off, Lieutenant George H. O'Brien, Jr., is at the front. He bolts from his position as he yells to his troops to follow him, and they are right on his heels. As the detachment encroaches on the enemy positions, O'Brien is hit by automatic weapons fire from close range. Undaunted, he jumps up from his prone position and continues to lead his Marines straight into the enemy. O'Brien pauses briefly to aide one of his Marines then bolts to the bunker and begins to fire as he also throws grenades into the bunker. He drives against the enemy and in the process is interrupted three times from the concussion of enemy grenades. Still, O'Brien refuses medical aid. O'Brien and his command pound against the enemy for about four hours before he instructs his force to establish a defense to meet an anticipated counterattack.

Afterward, another contingent relieves O'Brien's force and resumes the attack. Meanwhile, the Chinese continue to penetrate at various spots along the line, particularly along the MLR, where it winds eastward from the Hook and along the ridge that leads toward Hill 146. The Chinese, by this time, control about one mile along the line. The penetrations also provide them with a pathway to the 3rd Battalion boundary southwest of the Hook.

During the incursion along the MLR, the Chinese overrun an outpost bunker in the sector of Battery F, 2nd Battalion, 11th Marines. The Marines in the bunker are ordered by Lieutenant Sherrod E. Skinner to feign death. Chinese troops inspect the bunker and are fooled by the ruse, which gains more time for the defenders and permits them to continue to call in artillery on the Chinese positions. Other Chinese follow and they, too, are fooled, but one soldier tosses a grenade into the midst of the Marines, causing casualties.

At 0505, after having been attached to the 1st Battalion, Company H (3rd Battalion) arrives at the 1st Battalion CP. Within about forty minutes, the unit advances to the positions of Company A, where its leader, Captain Bernard B. Belants, confers with Captain McLaughlin and afterward drives forward to reach the ridgeline and resume the assault. By 0800, Company H stands at the ridgeline and moves to drive to the salient from the summit of Hill 146. The attack commences as the Marines descend directly into the guns of the Chinese, who open up with small arms fire and mortars as the Marines advance to about two hundred yards from the jump off point on the crest. Captain Belants yells the order to attack.

In a flash, an Irish Texan, Lieutenant George H. O'Brien, bolts from his prone position and calls, "Follow me!" With O'Brien at the point, his platoon follows to keep the pace at full throttle, despite a lack of sleep. To the front of the enemy's main trench, an enemy shell strikes O'Brien and he instantly hits the ground, but in another instant, he is back on his feet and again on the charge, with hand grenades at the ready. He closes on the objective, but again, the enemy halts his progress by wounding one of his Marines. O'Brien stops to give aid to the wounded man and afterward, he

renews his charge.

Just as he is about to toss a grenade, Chinese fire again halts his progress. He changes to his carbine and liquidates the stumbling block and almost as an afterthought, releases the grenades. The bunker is silenced, but not O'Brien. He and his platoon lunge forward toward the Hook but run into yet another wall of artillery fire before the bunker can be overrun. The protective artillery fire of the Communists preserves the bunker, but the devastation inflicted by Company H is sufficient to disrupt the Chinese momentum. However, the Chinese artillery is undeterred. The troops of Company H come under a ferocious attack that compels them to withdraw. Lieutenant O'Brien becomes a recipient of the MofH for his exceptional gallantry and courage in the face of the enemy.

During daylight on the 27th, Marine air squadrons arrive overhead to support Company H and inflict some pain on the Chinese positions. Four planes of VMA-121 fly over enemy-held Outpost Seattle at 0840 and deliver a bountiful supply of bombs and napalm that interrupts the troops assembling there as they prepare to move to the Hook.

Another former Marine outpost, Irene, is also visited by Marine pilots. Four planes from VMA-323 arrive overhead at about 0940 and drop 4,000 pounds of napalm and more than 6,000 pounds of bombs on the Chinese assembled there. Other contingents of Chinese troops known to be moving against the Jamestown Line are caught by U.S. planes of VMA-212. The troops are bombed and strafed as they advance along the MSR. Later, 30 planes participate in eight separate strikes prior to dusk.

While the Marines continue to maneuver to regain the ground that had been lost and as they continue to halt the Chinese advance, they receive other support fire. Two tanks of Company A, 1st Tank Battalion, point their guns toward several enemy targets, including Seattle, where a 76-mm gun continues to impede Marine operations. The guns also pivot to pound enemy positions southwest of the Hook.

During one of the attacks by planes of VMA-312, the Marines, at 1440, observe first-hand the usual old fashioned delivery system of a Marine pilot flying close-air support. The pilot dives and unleashes the napalm from an elevation of fifty feet. Other support fire originates from the 2nd and 4th Battalions, 11th Marines, and from the rocket battery. While the enemy is overwhelmed by the artillery and air units, the Marines lay out the final plans for retaking the ground with a determined frontal assault.

By about noon, Company I's 1st Platoon (3rd Battalion, 1st Marines) passes through the command post of Company C and heads directly to the summit of the ridge from where the units initiate their attack, supported by fire from the 11th Marines and opposed by tenacious enemy artillery and a well entrenched contingent deployed along the perimeter of the Hook. Nonetheless, the Marines grind forward, slowly but methodically. The path is strewn with obstacles being thrown at the advancing Marines with great tenacity, but the Marines plod forward, taking casualties as they press ahead.

By about 1635, the Marines reach positions on the ridge at a forward artillery observation post bunker, but still short of the summit. All the while, enemy artillery continues to strike, but not only at the attacking force. It reaches as far to the rear as the command post, but still, the Marines persist and refuse to grant the ground to the Communists. By about 1700, the vanguard reaches the trenches and halts to await troops still trailing.

The Chinese continue to monitor the advance and as the Marines pause, yet another barrage strikes the trenches, prompting the troops to seek more tenable positions. The small group of Marines, unwilling to remain targets, bolts for the reverse slope with the remainder of the platoon. Nearby, about 250 yards to the right, the main body of the company holds on the reverse slope, waiting for a pause in the bombardment for the opportunity to break for the final run to evict the Chinese from the Jamestown Line and repossess their lost ground. While they wait, the enemy artillery continues to pound the positions, yet no move is made to retreat.

In the meantime, another unit is en route to augment the repossession mission, but the trek is dangerous even without the enemy artillery, as the moon is completely obscured, and in the total darkness, it is difficult to notice the countless shell holes that permeate the route.

Elements of Company B, 1st Battalion, 7th Marines, arrive at positions near Company I at about midnight (27th-28th). The first unit to position itself for attack is the vanguard of the 1st Platoon; however, the 3rd Platoon also closes on its position. Just after midnight, at 0019, the Chinese along the trench line (Hook) on the part of the Jamestown Line they had seized on the 26th, are greeted with the unwelcome sounds of Marines' rifles, machine guns and grenades. As the Marines nudge forward, more of the enemy positions are silenced, but always, more take their

place. The main objectives at the trenchline remain obstinate and the defenders pour punishing fire toward the Marines. Although the moon is obscured, the night sky over the Hook is constantly illuminated by streaks of tracer fire and the burst of artillery shells, amidst the constant clack-clack of the machine guns and rifle fire. After about 90 minutes of grueling combat, the Marines halt the attack, move back somewhat and call for some heavy fire to plaster the ridgeline's pinpointed obstacles. While the guns and mortars hammer the selected positions, the guns also layer the approach routes that pass Outposts Ronson and Warsaw, to keep the passage free of enemy reinforcements.

While the Marines remain in place, the Communists receive volley after volley, until about 0340, when Company B springs from its positions and commences a charge to reach and seize the ridgeline. Again, the Chinese raise horrific resistance, but it lacks the substance to halt the assault. Company B plows into the enemy positions and again, close-quartered fighting erupts. When it terminates at 0600, the Hook, once again, belongs to the U.S. Marines.

Work still remains. The Chinese still possess the former Marine COPs Ronson and Warsaw. Without further pause, the 7th Marines complete the mission. By 0630, Ronson is secured and by 0845, the Marines retake Warsaw to regain the dominant ground and prevent further use by the Chinese. The victors, despite the seizure, receive no time to relax. The positions must be immediately fortified, but with dawn, the Marines also receive a natural obstacle, as the Hook is overwhelmed by a dense fog that impedes the tasks.

Company B assumes responsibility for the major portion of the Hook; however, the line of the 7th Marines, south of the Hook, remains under the protection of Company A and Company C, both of the 1st Battalion, 7th Marines. A platoon from each company is deployed there. Following the cessation of the battle, elements of Company B scour the area, with the exception of the collapsed bunkers and trenches, in search of enemy killed, but none are discovered. While the inspection of the battlefield continues and the defenses are repaired and augmented, the two platoons of Company A and C are relieved, permitting both units to return to their respective companies.

The Communist losses climb to more than one third of an entire battalion. The Marines count 274 killed and 73 wounded, but the estimates of casualties are 494 killed and 370 wounded. The figures include 22 killed (counted) at Reno, due in great part to the ambush platoon.

The Marines also sustain high casualties, particularly with regard to missing Marines. The Chinese at times had moved right through their own artillery as it pounded the Marines, which caught some of the outposts by surprise. The Marines sustain 70 killed and 386 wounded. Of the wounded, 286 are evacuated for medical treatment. In addition, 37 are reported missing and of these, it is later learned that 27 had been captured. The loss of the 37 Marines, most of whom had been seized during the initial attacks against the outposts, becomes the second highest number of Marines seized during the Korean War.

Earlier, during November 1950, more than 40 Marines had been captured when participating in the operation of Task Force Drysdale. At COP Reno, 9 other Marines had been killed and 49 Marines had been wounded (29 are evacuated) during the Chinese diversion operation.

In the aftermath of the struggle, the Marines learn some lessons from the new tactics that had been implemented by the Chinese during the unsuccessful bid to claim the Hook. They used layers of troops by having reserves on the heels of the opening waves, which enabled them to send the first wave and immediately thereafter, send the second to move beyond the first, but the tactic didn't prove valuable too often, according to Marine reports, due to the poor leadership of the units involved.

But more importantly, the Marines now realize that non-stop efforts to curtail their flow of supplies has not succeeded. The Chinese continue to control inexhaustible supplies of artillery shells. In addition, it is discovered that Chinese speaking fluent English would stand at a bunker and instruct any Marines inside to surrender and when no response was forthcoming, the Chinese dropped satchel charges and bangalore torpedoes to destroy them and seal the entrances.

Also, the Marines receive additional help during the contest when the British provide tanks and artillery support fire. In turn, during mid-November, the British come under attack at the Hook and the 11th Marines reciprocate by providing artillery support to help the British thwart the assault.

**October 27 1952 (Korea)**-Planes flown by Navy and Marine pilots of TF-77 carry out 1,122 sorties on this day.

**November 1 1952 (Korea)**- *In Naval Activity*, enemy shore gun batteries near Sinuong fire upon the USS *Vammen* (DE 644). No damage is sustained; however, a shell fragment injures one man. Marine Squadron VMF(N)-513 receives 12 of the new F3D-2 aircraft to bring the squadron to its full complement. The Fifth Air Force puts the pilots to work without delay. The night squadron's skyknights begin to escort B-29s on the bombing runs into North Korea. The enemy planes that had been attacking the bombers begin to evade the Marines' jets. The enemy starts to send one plane across the front of the formation to tease and incite pursuit, while other MiGs wait to ambush the Marines.

Nevertheless, the Marines' aircraft contain tail warning radar, which foils the MiGs before they can come from the rear to attack without warning. The new Douglas skyknights perform admirably and by 31 January, the squadron knocks out five enemy jets and one piston-operated plane without sustaining any losses. The first night kill occurs on 3 November.

In other activity, Marine Helicopter Squadron VMO-6 receives congratulations from the

commanding officer, 1st Marine Air Wing, for completing 20,000 combat flights since its arrival in Korea.

**November 3 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the 1st Battalion, 7th Marines, are relieved on the Hook by the 1st Battalion, Black Watch, 29th Infantry Brigade. The transfer of responsibility terminates Marine deployment at that part of the Jamestown Line. In other activity, a sergeant on a night mission picks up an apparent enemy aircraft on his intercept radar. He

loses contact, but afterward, regains it. The sergeant passes the information to the pilot, who in turn spots the exhaust stream of the plane. Soon after receiving the okay, he pulls the trigger and a short volley of 20-mm shells hits the aircraft. The enemy plane explodes and crashes on Sinuiju Airfield. The pilot, Major William T. Stratton, Jr., and Master Sergeant H.C. Hoglund receive credit for the initial enemy jet downed by airborne intercept radar. Major Stratton had been flying one of the new Douglas skyknights. In other activity, a Marine pilot flying an F3D engages and downs a Yak-15 Jet.

**November 5 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** Colonel Thomas C. Moore is succeeded by Colonel Loren E. Hanner as commanding officer, 7th Marines.

**November 10 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** Marines here and across the globe celebrate the service's 177th Birthday. Also, the 1st Marines relieves the 7th Marines on the Jamestown Line. In other activity, 22 Panthers of VMF-115 (MAG-33) work to ease the pressure on the ground Marines' celebration by attacking enemy supply depots and troop formations. These planes each carry four 500-pound napalm tanks, the initial time a tank that large is dropped by a fighter.

**November 16 1952 (Korea)-**Twenty-one planes of Marine Squadrons VMA-121 and VMF-212 (MAG-12) strike a hydroelectric plant about 25 miles south of Wonsan. The 1st Marine Air Wing actually flies 98 sorties against enemy targets on this day.

**November 18-19 1952(Korea)-**The Chinese launch unsuccessful attacks against the Hook, now defended by the British who had recently relieved the 1st Battalion, 7th Marines. During the attacks, the 11th Marines support the 1st Battalion, Black Watch, 29th British Infantry Brigade, by propelling more than 2,000 rounds into the enemy positions.

**November 21 1952 (Korea)- In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** Colonel Walter F. Lauer is succeeded by Colonel Hewitt D. Adams as commander of the 1st Marines Regiment.

**November 22 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the 1st Marines, which had recently relieved the 7th Marines at the front, initiates Operation WAKEUP, a raid designed to strike enemy positions to the front of COPS Reno and Vegas. Company D, 2nd Battalion, advances prior to dawn in an attempt to seize prisoners. The mission encounters no enemy artillery fire; however, the Chinese react with mortars and machine gun fire. No prisoners are captured, but the raid is deemed a success due to the information gained regarding the enemy's defenses in the area.

**November 29 1962 (Korea)-**President-elect Dwight D. Eisenhower departs by plane for Korea to fulfill a campaign pledge. He spends three days in the country and visits various military units. Eisenhower also spends time with Generals Mark Clark and James Van Fleet. Eisenhower's visit to Korea changes nothing with regard to bringing an end to the war, but the general feeling in the

U.S. remains focused on bringing about a truce. After concluding his visit, Eisenhower embarks by sea for Hawaii. Also, while Eisenhower is overseas, General MacArthur announces that he has a blueprint for ending the war. Subsequent to Eisenhower's return, he meets with MacArthur at John Foster Dulles' residence to discuss the plan, a call to the Soviet Union to demand the unification of North and South Korea and the unification of Germany under the supervision of the U.S. and the Soviet Union. MacArthur's proposal includes the use of atomic weapons against enemy installations. MacArthur's plan receives no serious consideration. However, subsequent to a test of a nuclear weapon during January 1953, the possibility of using atomic weapons in Korea to terminate the war is considered.

**December 1, 1952–April 30, 1953-** NINTH DESIGNATED CAMPAIGN: THIRD KOREAN WINTER.

**December 3 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps Sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the Marines receive a large group of VIPs who arrive at the division command post and receive a briefing by Major General E.A. Pollock, the commanding officer of the 1st Marine Division. The dignitaries include General Dwight D. Eisenhower (president elect), General Omar Bradley (chairman, Joint Chiefs of Staff), General Mark W. Clark (commander in chief, Far East), General James A. Van Fleet (commanding general, EUSAK), and Lieutenant General Paul W. Kendall (commanding general, I Corps). Others include Charles E. Wilson, secretary of defense–designate, and Major General Parsons, (retired), special assistant to Eisenhower.

**December 10 1952 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** Colonel Lewis W. Walt succeeds Colonel Eustace R. Smoak as commanding officer, 5th Marines. Also, on this day, 1st Lieutenant J.A. Corvi and Master Sergeant D.R. George, both USMC, receive credit for the first enemy plane destroyed by a Marine plane through use of lock-on-radar gear. The two Marine aviators, attached to the 1st Marine Aircraft Wing all-weather squadron, down an enemy PO-2 aircraft in the vicinity of Korea. In yet other activity, it becomes known that Marines in Korea are testing armored shorts.

**December 31 1952 (Korea)-** In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone, the Archbishop of New York, Cardinal Francis Spellman, who also is the vicar for Catholic Chaplains of the Armed Forces, visits the 1st Marine Air Wing at K-3 in Pohang. While at the airfield, he takes the time to shake hands with about 1,000 Marines. The cardinal had also visited the 1st Marine Division command post, where he celebrated Christmas Mass. Subsequently, the Marines at K-3 are also visited by the Episcopal Bishop of Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania, Bishop Austin Pardue. Also, from 1 December to this day, Marine Squadron VMF-115 carries out 726 sorties as part of Fifth Air Force.

**January 8 1953 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** a patrol of the 7th Marines engages a Chinese force composed of about 80 troops near Hill 134 near COP 2. In other activity, Marine Major General Vernon E. Megee succeeds Major General Clayton C. Jerome as commanding officer of the 1st Marine Air Wing. Also, MAG-12 flies more than 28 sorties in support of the 1st Marine Division. The strikes, executed by planes of VMA 121, VMA-212 and VMA-325, concentrate on the Panmunjom corridor.

**January 9 1953 (Korea)-**A joint operation of the USAF and the USMC is initiated in an attempt to destroy the enemy rails at two specific targets: Sinanju, slightly less than fifty miles north of Pyongyang; and at Yongmi-dong, beyond the Ch'ongch'on and Taedong Rivers in northwestern Korea. The first target, Sinanju, is hit by seventeen B-29s. Other targets include antiaircraft

positions in the vicinity of Sinanju and the two marshaling yards at Yongmi-dong and Maenjung-dong. The air strikes continue until 14 January with excellent results. The mission knocks out the two rail systems for about 16 days.

**January 18 1953 (Korea)**-*In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone*, the 1st and 7th Marines initiate Operation BIMBO, designed to feint an attack and draw the Chinese from their positions. Elements of the 1st and 7th Marines, supported by artillery and air cover, move out at 0630. Meanwhile, the artillery pounds enemy positions and planes deliver napalm. The Chinese react by returning fire against approach routes thought to be used by the Marines. However, the Chinese fail to send out large forces. Some troop formations are located and struck by the artillery. The mission is completed by about 0800.

**January 24 1953 (Korea)**-**In the I Corps sector**, Marine fighter planes fly close-support missions in support of the Marines on the ground.

**January 28 1953 (Korea)**-The escort fighters (Douglas F3D-2 skyknights) flown by Marine pilots are equipped with radar, which the Marines use this day. One of the enemy's planes is downed. The kill is the first enemy jet knocked out by a radar-equipped jet fighter plane.

**February 1 1953 (Korea)**-*In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone*, the Marines initiate the final rehearsal in advance of a major raid (Operation CLAMBAKE) against Hill 31 and 31A. The 5th Marines have been practicing for five weeks and the Marine air squadrons also have been involved with preparations. The two objectives are located north of the 5th Marines zone in the Ungok Hill mass. The assault, including a feint against three other targets—Hill 104, Kumgok Hill and Red Hill is scheduled for 3 February.

**February 3 1953 (Korea)**-Operation CLAMBAKE In the I Corps sector, the 5th Marines initiate an operation that includes the entire regiment either directly or by support of the attack force. The raid focuses on Hills 31 and 31A, but other contingents press against Hill 104, Kumgok and Red Hill in a diversion mission. At just after the break of dawn, the operation gets underway when tanks and infantry feint an assault against the diversionary targets.

Meanwhile, the main force encounters opposition as the two contingents move against Hill 31 and 31A. Tanks from Company A, 1st Tank Battalion, pivot and move from the diversionary part of the assault to cross the rice paddies, still frozen from the Korean winter, to block the left flank of the attacking infantry (Company A, reinforced, 1st Battalion). With the support of air cover, artillery and tanks, the assault advances against intense enemy fire at the respective objectives. Chinese on Hill 31 and at 31A mount counterattacks, but they are quickly neutralized by the Marines.

During the fight, a detachment of Company A, led by Lieutenant Raymond G. Murphy, advances to clean out an enemy blocking point. Murphy, although wounded, refuses treatment and continues to assist with other wounded. He moves against the fire to direct teams to evacuate the wounded. Once the mission is accomplished, the contingent moves down to the base of the hill and in the process Murphy is again wounded. Nonetheless, he moves back up the hill under fire to sweep for any wounded Marines that might have been left behind. Lieutenant Murphy becomes a recipient of the Medal of Honor for his extraordinary heroism in the face of hostile fire.

The Chinese sustain about 390 casualties, including 90 killed (counted). The Marines sustain 14 killed and 91 wounded. In addition, the Chinese destroy one flame-thrower tank.

**February 4 1953 (Korea)**-A band of six MiGs attack a 4-plane contingent of Corsairs (VMA-312)

piloted by Marines in the skies over Sokto. The presence of the MiGs signals an elevation of the quality of the Communists' radar stations north of the Taedong-gang estuary. The MiGs initiate the duel, but no corsairs sustain any damage. The Communists sustain damage to one plane.

**February 12 1953 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the area held by the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, is hit by a Chinese probe at COP Hedy (Hill 124). The enemy patrol, composed of about platoon strength, is supported by artillery. The enemy activity rolls into the early morning of the 13th; however, the Marines hold all ground.

**February 13 1953 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the 1st South Korean Marine Corps Regiment dispatches a patrol against enemy-held Hill 240, located along the Sachon River's west bank, several miles north of the mouth of the river. At this time during the conflict, both sides dispatch raiding parties against the opponent's defenses.

**February 14 1953 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, a patrol of the 7th Marines moves out to establish positions from which to wait in ambush for enemy patrols. En route to the selected area, the Chinese instead ambush the patrol. The Marines react and return fire, while reinforcements from the MLR speed to the scene. The Chinese abandon the area.

**February 16 1953 (Korea)-Marine Captain Ted Williams**, following a mission to attack enemy positions in North Korea, crash lands at a forward base. Captain Williams survives. Other than being known as a Marine officer, Captain Williams is known as a Boston Red Sox star outfielder.

**February 19 1953 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the 1st South Korean Marine Corps Regiment zone is probed by a Chinese contingent composed of about two platoons. Guards posted to the front of COP 33 encounter and engage the enemy contingent and afterward move back to the outpost. Friendly artillery is called upon and the combination of the artillery and mortars inflicts casualties, compelling the enemy to hurriedly withdraw.

**February 22 1953 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the 5th Marines dispatch elements of Company H, 3rd Battalion, during the morning to attack enemy-held Hill 35A, located southeast of the Ungok mass. As the Marines advance toward the initial trenches, the vanguard uses flamethrowers to more quickly terminate the possibility of interfering grenades emerging from the bunkers.

After dusk, the 7th Marines send out a probing patrol with some additional muscle. The attack force, composed of a reinforced platoon bolstered by four M-46 tanks, moves out at 2137 en route to enemy-held Hill-159 (Yoke), located slightly north of Freedom Gate Bridge and in the vicinity of the peace corridor. The force moves toward the objective; however, the Chinese foil the attack. An enemy ambush emerges as the force composed of Company B, 1st Battalion, reaches Hill 90. The column is hit on three sides and within minutes, the exchange becomes a close-quartered battle as the Marines slug it out with the Chinese, who attack with company strength. The donnybrook continues for about thirty minutes, while reinforcements rush from the MLR. By 0138, the Chinese disengage and withdraw.

Enemy losses stand at 45 killed (counted) and another 33 estimated killed. In addition, the estimate of enemy wounded is 33. The Marines sustain 5 killed and 22 wounded.

**February 23 1953 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, Operation HAYLIFT II commences. It is a more complicated mission than a similar test (HAYLIFT I) that had been carried out during the previous September, when helicopters were used to resupply a

frontline regiment. During this operation, helicopters are used to resupply two regiments, the 5th and 7th Marines. The operation is twice interrupted by fog; however, despite the elements and some other difficulties, the operation after five days is completed and the two regiments receive 1,600,406 pounds of equipment and supplies.

No members of HMR-161 are injured during the operation, which terminates on 27 February. HMR-161, commanded by Lt. Colonel John F. Carey, logs a total of 765 combat hours composed of 575 combat flights in February, out of a total 1,183 flights (1,275.5 hours).

**February 25 1953 (Korea)**-The 5th Marines initiates an offensive designed after the recent Operation CLAMBAKE. The new mission, dubbed Operation CHARLIE, focuses on Hill 15 (Detroit), which stands about two miles east of Hills 31 and 31A, the objectives of CLAMBAKE. Company F, 2nd Battalion, initiates the raid to destroy enemy positions and if possible, capture prisoners. The weather, prior to dawn, is inclement, as it had been on the previous day. The bad weather prevents air cover for the attack. The raid, however, succeeds in reaching the hill, where it is discovered that the enemy bunkers and defensive positions had apparently remained unscathed, despite a prolonged period of long range artillery attacks and air raids.

**March 3 1953 (Korea)**-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone, there is little activity during the early part of March; however, on this day, the South Korean Marine Corps Regiment dispatches one of its probing patrols. The patrol does not encounter any major opposition. The U.S. Marine patrols also seldom come into contact with enemy contingents of any large size.

**March 5 1953 (Soviet Union)**-In the Soviet Union-Premier Joseph Stalin succumbs.

**March 8 1953 (Korea)**-Colonel Lewis B. Robertshaw, USMC, commander of MAG-33, flies a mission aboard his F9F panther and bombs an enemy ammunition area with six 250-pound bombs. The mission is the first Marine jet night MPQ (ground radar controlled bombing) mission.

**March 15 1953 (Korea)**-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone, Colonel Owen A. Chambers assumes command of HMR-161 (Marine Transport Helicopter Squadron). He succeeds Lt. Colonel Frank F. Carey.

**March 16 1953 (Korea)**-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone, two separate but minor skirmishes occur in the 5th Marines zone. A Chinese contingent briefly engages the defenders at COP Reno and in another firefight, a contingent of the 5th Marines on patrol skirmishes with a Chinese patrol near COP Carson.

**March 17 1953 (Korea)**- In the I Corps sector, 2nd Division zone, the 2nd Division comes under attack by the Chinese. Just east of the 1st Marine Division, the Communists strike against Hill 355, known as Little Gibraltar. The 2nd Division had relieved the British Commonwealth Division at the hill on 30 January. Elements of the 2nd Division had earlier, on 1 March, repulsed an attack; however, this assault is made by a stronger force, an entire battalion.

The Communists strike from the north and northeast and remain oblivious to the minefields and barbed wire. They are able to penetrate and reach the trenches atop the crest. The 2nd Division defenders are forced from the summit; however, two platoons holding blocking positions surge forward and plug the hole to halt further penetration, while the remainder of the force on the slopes engages in ferocious fighting that includes point-blank range firing and hand-to-hand combat. The struggle ensues throughout the night, but by dawn, American reinforcements arrive to augment the position and the Chinese are driven off. While the Chinese disengage and retire, U.S. artillery and

mortar fire continue to pound the retreating troops. During the latter part of the month (23rd), the Chinese launch other assaults against I Corps positions. **In the 1st Marine Division zone**, a Chinese contingent of about platoon-size sets up an ambush post in the area traversed by Marine patrols operating near COP Vegas. The Chinese snare a patrol, but only momentarily, as the Marines evict the ambush party. The Chinese retire quickly.

**March 19 1953 (Korea)**-*In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone*, the Chinese launch simultaneous company-sized attacks against two outposts manned by the 1st Marines. COP Hedy and Esther are separated by about one and one-half miles. A reconnaissance patrol operating in front of COP Esther detects the enemy movement and scurries back to the outpost to prepare for the assault. The Marines at both outposts repulse the assaults. COP Hedy is the first to force a disengagement, but it had only been brushed, as the Chinese company continued directly into the Jamestown Line, only to be greeted by heavy doses of artillery and mortar fire.

At Esther, the Chinese continue to attack for several hours but are forced to retire without gaining the outpost. During the unsuccessful attempt to seize the ground, the Chinese along the MLR and at both outposts become the recipients of 2,400 rounds of artillery and mortar shells.

In other activity, a patrol of the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines, composed of Company B, moves out during the early morning hours and raids enemy-held Hill 31A. The raid (Operation ITEM) is the first against the objective since February, when it and another target, Hill 31, were raided. Following air strikes and an artillery bombardment, two platoons move out at 0518. The raid nets no prisoners, due in part because the preliminary strikes prompted the Communists to seek cover on the reverse slope; however, enemy artillery strikes heavily and the Marines disengage and withdraw to the MLR at 0700.

**March 20 1953 (Korea)**-*In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone*, HMR-161 initiates a four-day operation to resupply ammunition by helicopter for the entire Division.

**March 25 1953 (Korea)**-*In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone*, the Chinese, after failing in two attempts on the 23rd to gain COPS Hedy or Esther (Vegas Outposts), focus upon other outposts in the zone defended by the 1st Marines during the latter part of the night. No progress is made by the enemy, but on the following day, after dusk, the Chinese resume the assault against COP Dagmar, an engagement that proves to be the preliminary exchange prior to a large-scale attack.

**March 26–31 1953 THE BATTLE FOR VEGAS** *In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone*, the recent series of raids against outposts have not gone unnoticed by the Marines. Although they have been restrained, along with the rest of Eighth Army, since the previous year when the peace talks began, the intelligence units have been working at full strength. With the first days of spring upon them and knowledge of past Communist actions considered, a major attack is not out of the question. The U.S. troops and the other U.N. forces have now completed three winters in Korea and if history repeats itself, the roads will flood, the bridges will become imperiled, and the mud will greatly impede overland operation by vehicles.

During the winter, some modifications along the Jamestown Line shortened the Marine sector, but not much. The Marines continue to be responsible for a 33-mile stretch of the line and still, they are the major obstacle standing between the Communists and the South Korean capital, Seoul. Following a couple of early morning skirmishes, the front lines of the 1st Marine Division remain tranquil throughout the day; however, a keen vigil is kept in the event the Chinese maintain their

tradition of launching a spring offensive. The Marines pay particular attention with the realization that the Chinese would like an opportunity to avenge their failure at the Hook during the previous October. While the winter passed, none of the Chinese initiatives gained any genuine progress, other than the seizure of a few outposts.

Had they scored some major successes or moved to position from which they could be staring at the capture of Seoul, the U.N. might have been pressured into bending to some of the more ludicrous demands by the Communists at the talks in Panmunjom; however, the ongoing stalemate is not working to their advantage. Nevertheless, the Marines are aware that if they falter along their perimeter, the situation at Panmunjom could change, particularly because the Chinese had gained Old Baldy on the 23rd in the U.S. 7th Division zone and on this day, the 7th Division abandons the hill. Eighth Army intuition regarding the attack comes to fruition at 1900, when the Chinese launch a full-scale assault against the Marine positions.

The vanguard of the defense, the 120 or so Marines at Carson-Reno-Vegas, senses the imminent approach of the Chinese as enemy positions on Hills 44, 40, 35 and 33 commence firing with small arms and machine guns that essentially plunder the ground all along the entire 5th Marines' line. The 5th Marines perimeter becomes a cauldron of fire as the non-stop shelling pulverizes some command posts and severs communications with the strung out outposts.

The defenders at the outposts do not require further signs of attack. The thunderclap shakes the earth just as the sun retreats over the horizon. While enemy artillery rings the area in synchronization with mortar fire, the shelling extends even to the rear areas, transforming what had been a rather ordinary day into the beginning of a hellish night. While the enemy bombardment propels a steady stream of shells into the 5th Marine positions in the left and center, an enemy contingent on another nearby position, Hill 44, rakes the Marine zone with heavy machine gun fire and rifle fire.

Meanwhile, outposts Carson, Reno and Vegas, each renamed from their previous designation of Allen, Bruce and Clarence, come under artillery and mortar fire. The outposts stand in the western (left) zone of the 5th Marines' line, which is defended by the 1st Battalion, but the three hills are each defended by only about forty-fifty Marines, assisted by two Navy corpsmen.

At the same time, other outposts come under attack, including Berlin and East Berlin in the 3rd Battalion's zone. Farther along the line, the Chinese pound 1st Marines' positions, including COPS Hedy, Bunker, Esther and Dagmar, which are spread across the center of the regimental line. They had come under bombardment several minutes prior to the primary artillery assault that commenced at 1900 as part of a Chinese diversion. In conjunction with the artillery assault in the 1st Marines' zone, small contingents begin to probe the defenses.

The defenders at Hedy, Esther and Dagmar are struck by units ranging from squads to platoons, while other units are detected advancing against the MLR positions farther west, defended by the 1st Korean Marine Corps Regiment. The enemy thrust begins as a powerful blow, and within minutes after the attack is ignited, it becomes more potent. At Hedy, Bunker, Esther and Dagmar, the assault begins at just about the same time as the artillery fire.

The ground troops, at about company-size, are supported by machine gun fire on Hills 44, 114 and 116 and additional support is provided by riflemen on Hill 108. The defenders hold steadfastly against the superior numbers and methodically mow them down at each of the outposts, but at Dagmar, the Chinese are able to make some penetration against the defending group of only 27

Marines who revert to close-quartered fighting to remove the intruders from the trenches.

For about two hours, the Marines use every tool in their arsenal from rifles to bare knuckles and bayonets to defend their positions. Reinforcements from Company I, 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, arrive from the MLR and efficiently clear the remaining Chinese from the trenches. By 2120, Dagmar is secure, as the Chinese abandon the assault. During this diversionary attack, the Chinese sustain 10 known killed and an estimated additional 20 killed. The Marines in this sector sustain 4 killed and 16 wounded.

In the meantime, by 1910, the 358th Regiment, 120th Division, attached to the 40th Chinese Army, unleashes about 3,500 troops that flow profusely from four points—Ungok, Arrowhead, Hill 25A and Hill 190—and drive directly into the 5th Marines' positions. Contingents of 6 companies, pulled from three separate battalions, swoop upon the perimeter from several directions to smash through the outposts.

At Carson, where about 1,200 mortar rounds hit by 1920, the defending platoon is struck by two platoons that had advanced rapidly from Ungok. At the same time, Reno and Vegas are each pounded by a company-sized contingent. The Chinese from Arrowhead and from Hill 29 (3rd Company, 1st Battalion), sprint across the Seoul Road and launch a frontal attack, while elements of the 7th Company, 3rd Battalion, which descend from Hill 190, maneuver from the north to surround the outpost and strike from the rear.

The third spearhead of the attack is composed of the 8th Company, 3rd Battalion, and units from the 9th Company, which slither along the ridgeline and move about 500 yards south of Hill 25A and Hill 155, north of Vegas, from where they smash against the frontal defenses. With the combined strength of the three outposts standing at about 120 Marines, the Chinese hold an advantage of about 20-to-1.

The defenders receive some extra muscle due to the division's anticipation of the assault. Artillery and tanks had already prepared by registering their fire on suspected approach routes and for protective "Box-Me-In" fire. U.S. artillery and tanks had begun to return fire at the first sounds of the guns. Protective fire is thrown around the outposts and the approach routes are also stung with voluminous volleys; however, the overwhelming numbers of Chinese and their uncanny trait of ignoring even direct hits as they advance are not strong enough to halt the tide. The outposts are essentially isolated as they attempt to hold against insurmountable odds.

The Marines at Carson and Reno resist ferociously; however, their numbers are too small to plug every hole. By 1935, some Chinese are able to penetrate the lower trenches of both outposts, but still, they are unable to overwhelm the defenders. The struggle turns to close-quartered brutal fighting as the Chinese press harder, only to discover that the Marines refuse to capitulate.

At Carson, the initial force numbers only 54 Marines, but following one hour of relentless combat, the post had not been taken. The Marines had reverted to their knives, bayonets, rifle butts, boots and fists to retain their ground. All the while, reinforcements are heading to augment the Marines, but by the time the two reinforced squads from Company C and D are about to move to the besieged post, the Chinese, at 2000, suddenly released the pressure against Carson. It had held. The fighting tails off and by 2135, the Chinese withdraw and join in the attack to seize Reno and Vegas. The Marines continue to receive mortar and artillery fire until about midnight, but no further attacks are launched against the position, even on the following day.

While, Carson, Reno and Vegas resist the Chinese assaults, two other outposts, Berlin and East Berlin, in the far reaches of the 5th Marines sector (right flank), also come under assault and the strength there is close to the bare minimum. Each outpost is defended only by a reinforced squad from Company G, 3rd Battalion. Nevertheless, the Chinese concentrate less strength against both of the posts and the defenders are able to turn back the attacks and preserve both Berlin and East Berlin, which had come under assault by three platoons, one against East Berlin and the others against Berlin. For a short period, communications with headquarters are lost and reinforcements are dispatched. By 2115, the Chinese abort the attacks and retire. However, at Reno and Vegas, the situation had become more grim.

The defenders at Reno are initially struck by two companies that bang against the front and rear simultaneously and penetrate the trenches. Like Carson, an abundance of friendly artillery fire is poured upon the approaches, but the Chinese continue to advance through the whirlwind of fire. The Marines continue to mow down the intruders, but seemingly, for every enemy soldier eliminated, a few more appear.

The overwhelming numbers compress the Marines into a small defensive position, due to the absence of a sufficient number of bunkers and defensive trenches. Unrelenting fire by the Chinese shreds the numbers of the defenders. Of forty Marines that had met the initial charge, only 7 are able to continue the struggle after a tenacious exchange that lasts about one-half hour. While the Chinese continue to smother the resistance, the Marines hold out in a cave, but here, too, the Chinese hold the advantage, as all entrances are sealed by the enemy, choking off the air supply.

Desperate calls are made by the surviving troops of Company C at 2000, explaining that their air supply had been cut. Artillery units propel illumination shells to expose the enemy, while tanks stationed to the rear of the beleaguered outpost take advantage of the artificial light and pound the enemy, but still the Chinese hammer the defiant hold-outs in the cave. In the meantime, a flare plane arrives to provide more illumination for the support fire.

Reinforcements from the MLR move to Reno within fifteen minutes of the urgent calls for help, but en route, by way of the Reno Block, an enemy contingent waits in ambush near Hill 47 at about 2115. The contingent, elements of Company F, 2nd Battalion, returns fire and is able to make it to the blocking position. Another relief column, composed of troops from Company C, 1st Battalion, is moving behind the initial group by about fifteen minutes, but it, too, is intercepted before it can advance one-half mile. Artillery fire showers the 2nd column, forcing a temporary halt. After a pause, it renews the advance, only to be hit again as it nears Hill 47.

The unit fights its way past the obstacle; however, more enemy troops await them. Two platoons prevent quick passage and continue to inflict casualties upon the reinforcements. By the time the group encounters the third obstacle, 10 Marines have been wounded seriously and evacuated.

The situation at Vegas is similar to that at Reno. The defenders come under horrific bombardment and like the Marines at Reno, friendly artillery mounts return fire to pummel the approach routes and lay out a protective ring of "Box-Me-In" fire to bolster the defenses. However, the overwhelming waves force the Marines to seek cover in a cave to give them more tenable positions and afford some protection from the friendly fire.

Reinforcements, composed of elements of Company D, 2nd Battalion rush to bolster Vegas, but the troops are intercepted at the Block. A fierce exchange erupts, but as the two opposing forces face each other at close range, the Marines prevail in the hand-to-hand combat and push the Chinese

back. Although the Marines are unable to break through, they are able to prevent the Chinese from dominating the position. While Company C trades blows with the Chinese, yet another relief force, drawn from Company F, 2nd Battalion, is quickly attached to the 1st Battalion and ordered to join the relief column at the Reno Block to strengthen the attack of Company C, 1st Battalion.

Company F, 2nd Battalion (attached to 1st Battalion), drives through unrelenting artillery and mortar fire in an attempt to hook up with the troops at the Block. The first contingent leads the way at 2227, with another platoon about 400 yards to the rear. The entire trek is executed under a tumultuous firestorm, but it is unable to halt the column. Casualties mount quickly, even at the first steps of the advance; however, the Marines endure, aware that the advance relief force and the survivors at Reno face a more desperate situation. One of the platoons of Company F sustains a casualty rate of 70 percent before it finally reaches the advance elements of Company C at the Block. All the while, the few remaining defenders at Reno continue to hold, but at last report, only seven Marines had been able bodied and the string of attackers continues to be endless and other units continue to pour from the hills.

The Chinese unleash fresh troops from positions to the rear of Chogum-ni and from Hills 31 and 31D, to replace the ones that had fallen and to bolster the respective assaults. One of the enemy groups is spotted in the vicinity of Chogum-ni at 2100, but it is not able to easily join the offensive. U.S. tanks and artillery pulverize the position and cause the Chinese to disperse before they can launch their assault. All along the chaotic battlefield, there is a constant clash of shells and bayonets, grenades and raw knuckles as the Marines galvanize to halt the onslaught. The relief column of Company F, 2nd Battalion, fights its way to the positions of Company C, 1st Battalion, at the Block, where it joins with the battered force. The Chinese maintain effective fire on the position, but as the two groups combine their firepower, they are able to either liquidate or chase the Communists who had entered the trenches there from the north and south.

Meanwhile, at Reno, the defenders report at 2145 that the position is still active, but the report details how the Chinese are attempting to dig their way into the cave. A faint sounding radio message is received at about 2300 from the cave at Reno, but it is unintelligible. It is the last message sent.

Like the reinforcements en route to Reno, the same circumstances had befallen Company D, 2nd Battalion. It, too, is stalled at the Block, unable to break through to the diminishing number of defenders at Reno. In an attempt to wipe out the relief forces, the Chinese crash against the Block at 2157 with two platoons. Within about twenty minutes, two additional platoons plow against the relief forces, while the area is also plastered by mortars and artillery. The Marines resist with extraordinary tenacity and repulse three separate attacks in the Block by 2300. Within the following hour, another large force of about company strength prepares to lunge from Reno to pounce upon the Block.

While the Marines brace for yet another assault, they receive effective interference, as artillery and 90-mm guns of some tanks score repeated direct hits to eliminate the threat and buy time for the beleaguered troops in the Block to regroup for a thrust against Reno.

Back at the MLR, at 2323, another relief force, a platoon from Company E, 2nd Battalion, is sped to the Vegas Block to bolster Company D. However, Chinese resistance refuses to falter. Enemy fire accelerates and more fresh troops are funneled into the fight. The 5th Marines continues to raise ferocious resistance, but the regiment is exhausting its reserve in the process.

In the meantime, at 2300, the Chinese throw a huge number of fresh troops against the Block to crush the Marine relief columns and by midnight (26th-27th), the situation becomes more grim as communications with Vegas are completely severed. The reinforcements for Reno and Vegas remain pinned at the Block and yet even more enemy troops are pouring into the region, while the Chinese artillery continues to lambaste 5th Marines' positions. At the Block, the troops, despite the enfilade fire, regroup to make another attempt at reaching Reno, but it is unable to execute the attack.

While the Marines maintain their attacks to regain Vegas, the Chinese threaten another outpost, Kate, in the 1st Marines' zone. The defenders there spot about two platoons near the barbed wire and engage the force. Following about a 15-minute firefight, the Chinese retire, but shortly thereafter, at midnight, the Chinese begin to probe Outposts Dagmar and Esther. The Marines had anticipated the encounter, as both had been probed on the previous night.

At Dagmar, the Marines of Company I, 1st Marines, call upon artillery support and head for the reverse slope to await the termination of the bombardment. Afterward, the defenders reoccupy the positions, supported by artillery and mortars. The Marines exchange fire and clash at close-quarters in the trenches with the Communists for about two hours and at the cessation of the fight, the Marines hold sole possession of the trenches and the outpost, as the Chinese, unable to make gains, withdraw. Slightly afterward, Outpost Hedy and Outpost Bunker also come under attack by a small enemy contingent. At both positions, the enemy is stymied and thrown back by the 1st Marines.

Back at the Vegas Block, by about 0145 on the 27th, the reinforcements under Captain Ralph L. Walz are whittled down to one platoon, yet he rallies the force and within an hour, they spring into an attack three times. During one skirmish, the Marines slug it out for one-half hour of give-no-quarter combat. Following the donnybrook, the troops reorganize and evacuate the wounded.

Nevertheless, the Chinese still retain Reno and Vegas and by this time, the enemy is able to open a valve and pour fresh troops against the Block. At about 0246, while under severe mortar attack, a new wave of Chinese is spotted as it flows toward the Reno Block from the direction of Reno. The 1st Battalion immediately orders the artillery to plant a picket fence of shells upon the advancing force, while simultaneously directing Captain Walz to break off the engagement and move back to the MLR with the elements of Company C, 1st Battalion, 5th Marines, and Company F, 2nd Battalion (attached to 1st Battalion), 5th Marines.

In the meantime, fighting at Vegas, which also had come under control of the Chinese by midnight (26th-27th), continues into the early morning hours of the 27th, as Company D, 2nd Battalion, and Company C, 1st Battalion, 5th Marines, attempt to penetrate beyond the communication trench of the outpost, a point about 400 yards from Vegas. Meanwhile, the Chinese continue to pour fresh troops into battle as if they are being created on a conveyor belt.

During the first hours of the 27th, the Chinese send a new layer against the Marines, who resist savagely. A reinforcing unit, composed of elements of Company F, 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines, is rushed to bolster the forces trying to rescue Vegas, but the move is in vain. At 0300, the first relief platoon advances to within 200 yards of the outpost, but dismal news overshadows the advance. It is learned the Vegas as well as Reno had fallen to the Chinese, giving them some progress in this early stage of their offensive.

By about 0400, the relief units are under orders to postpone an attack and return to the MLR. Shortly thereafter, the contingents—composed of Companies D and E, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines,

Company C, 1st Battalion, 5th Marines, and Company F, 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines—disengage, return to the MLR and prepare to mount a new assault during the daylight hours of the 27th. In conjunction, the relief force for Reno arrives back at its lines at 0440, followed by the reinforcements for Vegas, which arrive at 0530.

The first eight hours of the struggle for Carson-Reno-Vegas terminates with the Chinese temporarily holding a better hand, with control of two outposts, Reno and Vegas. Nonetheless, there is no aura of despair hovering over the 5th Marines' perimeter, rather, a more galvanized determination to return and evict the new occupants. However, other priorities have to first be handled. The defenders inflicted heavy casualties upon the Chinese, compelling them to pay an exorbitant price for the real estate. The Marines, too sustain high casualties. In the 1st and 3rd Battalion zones, stretchers, ambulances, vehicles and helicopters are all engaged in moving and evacuating the wounded. During the course of the battle for the outposts, the two regiments had sustained 150 casualties (excludes relief force casualties), while inflicting about 600 casualties upon the Chinese. Many of the wounded

Marines, after being treated, return to the field to assist in the evacuation of others. The more seriously injured are transported by helicopters (VMO-6 and HMR-161) to Inchon, where two hospital ships, the USS *Haven* and USS *Consolation*, are anchored. The helicopters also transport supplies of blood for those who require transfusions and deliver them to various medical aid stations along the lines.

While the 5th Marines prepare the day's battle plans, the 11th Marines concentrate their guns upon Reno, Vegas and other enemy-held positions to soften them for the attack and also to repay them in kind for the 14,000 artillery and mortar shells that whacked the 5th Marines during the ghastly eight-hour donnybrook. In turn, the Marine artillery returned more than 10,000 rounds during that same period. Chinese artillery positions also come under attack by Marine planes of VMF(N)-513, which soar overhead and pummel targets in the vicinity of Hills 190 and 98. The Marines piloting the jets use radar controlled bombs and strike before the arrival of other planes, subsequent to dawn.

The Chinese discover at dawn that the 5th Marines are not yet re-knocking on the gates of Reno and Vegas, but unknown to the enemy, the delay had not been due to timidity of the 5th Marines; rather, a slight postponement occurs until a Marine squadron arrives. At precisely 0650, as the Chinese and the Marines glance toward the sky, it is apparent that the attack is imminent. The panther jets from VMF-115 arrive to join with the artillery that is riveting the enemy's positions. The panthers strike at Reno and Vegas.

The ground attack, rescheduled for 0900, is again suspended due to some communication difficulties. In the meantime, the Marine pilots remain extremely busy as more planes, attached to VMF-311, arrive. Without the interference of the 5th Marines, they take the opportunity to revisit the target repeatedly. Four separate strikes, each by six aircraft, blanket the area. In addition, U.S. Air Force thunderbird (T-33) jets arrive and deliver more punishment. All the while, the artillery and the 1st Tank Battalion maintain their fire. The tankers (Company A) spot two contingents of Chinese involved with moving logs in an apparent step to bolster the bunkers, but the 90-mm guns disrupt the process. One of the contingents is annihilated; however the other group makes it through the streams of fire.

At 1120, the attack is commenced, with the selected target being Vegas, leaving Reno for a subsequent attack, but in the process of regaining Vegas, Reno remains under the guns of the

artillery and mortar to fire to isolate it from the main assault force. While Vegas is bludgeoned with air strikes as well as fire from the 11th Marines and the 1st Tank Battalion, Company D, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, moves up and passes the line of departure at 1120. Chinese return fire immediately crashes into the path of the advancing column. The vanguard presses forward without any relief from the enemy small arms and artillery, making the trek most difficult. Shells are flying inbound from several locations, stalling the advance. Soon after, the attack continues, only to again be halted by artillery.

By slightly after 1200, the vanguard, the 1st Platoon, is nearly totally eliminated. Only nine Marines remain able-bodied. Nevertheless, the advance troops refuse to stall. The forward nine press ahead, moving through soggy swollen rice paddies toward the slopes of the Vegas Hills. At about the time the thinning spearhead reaches a point about 200 yards from the MSR, enemy reinforcements are spotted as they rush from Hill 143 to augment Vegas. In the meantime, the enemy guns continue to hammer the approaches and maintain a wall of fire in front of the objective. The combined fire of the opposing forces creates unbearable noise, at times making it difficult to communicate on the ground, and the unending streams of shells descend upon the area like a horrific iron hailstorm. Vegas, begins to resemble a fortress atop an erupting volcano and the Marines of Company D are plodding through the intense fire, at times becoming frozen in place due to the impenetrable walls of fire.

While the Marines work to find a way to take the crest, Marine squadrons join with the ongoing bombardment and add to the intensity of the conflagration. Vegas is now heavily reinforced and supporting guns are on the nearby slopes. While the vicious fire staggers the advance, it is unable to immobilize the troops. They have come to stay and reclaim the ground where their fellow Marines fell the previous night. But, now, there are many more defenders. Between noon and 1300, four additional contingents arrive at Vegas from Hill 153. By 1315, another contingent of about company-size arrives. And still others are en route, one group from Reno and another from Hill 21B. The Chinese plan an all-out effort to deprive the Marines of their prize.

In the meantime, the Marines of Company D, get some additional support from the sky, as the planes of three squadrons are overhead criss-crossing the hills and byways in search of prey. The Douglas skyknights of VMA-112; blend perfectly with the fighter jets of MAG-33 Squadrons VMF-115 and 311. The planes strike swiftly and devastate the landscape, particularly that which is determined to contain troops formations, bunkers, artillery positions and trenches.

All the while, Company D grinds toward the slopes. Reinforcements are en route from the MLR to assist in the struggle. The Provisional Company, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, jumps o> just after 1200 and in a short while, it is trailed by Company E, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines. By 1305, just about the time the objective receives a large amount of fresh troops, Company D, initiates a determined push to take the outpost. From the lower slopes of the hill, riflemen engage the enemy using everything in their arsenal, including BARs, M-1s, grenades and carbines; they gnaw forward through the fire storm coming from the upper slopes and supporting guns of the nearby hills.

After a period of about two hours of facing horrific resistance, four Marines lead the way as they scramble out of the trenches. Soon after, by 1322, while still braving small arms, mortar and artillery fire as the shells explode all around them, they creep from the trenches.

In the meantime, Company E, 2nd Battalion, arrives from the MLR and is directed to pass through Company D, retrieve and evacuate the wounded and take over the task to seize the summit of

Vegas. The commander of Company E leads his command forward and they Company D; however, the enemy fire remains intense despite the day-long bombardments and air strikes. The reinforcing unit is unable to advance beyond the positions of Company D. Slightly afterward, elements of Company D advance to positions at the finger of Vegas, but here, too, a wall of artillery and mortar fire prevents passage to the crest. Another reinforcing contingent, Company F, 2nd Battalion, which departs the MLR at 1530, arrives within an hour at the positions of Company D. Upon its arrival, Company D heads back to its line of departure.

Company F assumes the point to spearhead the assault, but the enemy pinpoints its positions and at 1730. It is besieged with an enfilade of crushing fire that disrupts the jump-off. The troops are compelled to gnaw forward, while support fire from the 11th Marines and planes of VMF-323 try to extinguish the origin points of the seemingly inexhaustible enemy fire. While the attacking elements creep forward slowly, soaring aircraft swoop toward targets on Hills 190 and 139, providing close-combat support by diving low and delivering their respective munitions upon the slopes. While the hills explode and giant fireballs ascend, the planes again dive to deliver more punishing blows.

While the enemy attempts to find cover, tanks along the MLR inject their 90-mm rifles into the fight and plaster the northern crest of Vegas, the obstinate stronghold of the Chinese. While the bombardment continues, Company H reinitiates its attack at 1800 from a point about 400 yards from the crest of Vegas. By this time, elements of Company E, 2nd Battalion, join with Company F, led by Captain Ralph F. Estey, placing the attack force at three platoons.

As the Marines lunge forward, they reclaim a piece of the objective and ignite another close-quartered savage duel in the lower trenches that terminates after about one and one-half hours of grueling combat. Company E moves to the right of the outpost and begins to regroup by 1930. Meanwhile, a contingent of Company F, composed of two platoons, maneuvers to reach positions within 50 yards of the summit by about 2000; however, they stall as the Chinese fire intensifies. Company F is compelled to pull back due to ferocious mortar and machine gun fire originating at the left (Able) gate of Vegas.

By this time, the struggle for control of Vegas has been ongoing for more than 24 hours and neither side shows any outward signs of backing down. While the Marines prepare to spend another sleepless night, the Chinese continue to fortify their positions and bring in fresh troops from Reno, the other outpost they had overrun on the previous night.

The Chinese waste no time in trying to push the Marines from the outpost. At 1830, they launch the first of three counterattacks. The outnumbered Marines are unable to remain on the crest, but they repulse each of the night assaults convincingly and in addition, as the night passes, the Marines engage in various firefights. In addition to their failure to dislodge the Marines, the Chinese also are compelled to tolerate a night sky permeated with Marine squadrons that illuminate the slopes controlled by the enemy by dropping more than 50,000 pounds of explosives. Night fighter planes attached to VMF(N)-513 and aircraft attached to MAG-12 (VMA-212 and VMA-323) participate in the support of the ground Marines and execute nine strikes (radar controlled bombing) between 1830 and 0115 (28th).

By midnight, the attack forces of Companies E and F, 2nd Battalion, are beyond exhaustion, having continued the fight begun by Company D and clawing their way to Vegas for about ten hours, but there is little time for rest. Some relief is gained after midnight, when the heavy guns of the Chinese

turn from Vegas and initiate a barrage against the MLR, but the early hours of the 28th are not tranquil. Enemy troops posted on Hills 57A, Detroit and Frisco rise up sporadically and pepper the Marine positions with small arms fire.

Nonetheless, the Marines, having paid little attention to the constant shelling of the mortars and artillery, pay even less attention to the harassing infantry fire while they prepare to launch another assault to reclaim the northern summit of Vegas. While the Marines prepare to ascend to the summit, the artillerymen of the 11th Marines are also overactive, focusing on the targets of the day, the troop assembly areas at Vegas and the mortar positions.

At 0355, the 1st, 2nd and 4th Battalions, 11th Marines, fire in unison and unleash a ravaging series of volleys that crash into the northern slopes of Vegas with a thunderous roar and devastating impact, showering the Chinese with 2,326 rounds of 105-mm and 155-mm shells. As the enemy attempts to react to the withering fire, Company F is already on the move and within thirty minutes, the Marines gain enough ground to reach positions from which they can throw grenades. The attack, however, once again becomes stalled; the Chinese return fire remains tenacious and impenetrable. The first assault group is forced to pull back to the south slopes, but only for a while.

As the Marines form for another assault, they again receive extra support to keep the Chinese off balance. Planes streak across the sky and descend upon the enemy positions and strike swiftly, while the guns of the 11th Marines again begin to bellow and propel more artillery shells into the enemy, all in concert with other units that pound the slopes with mortars in concert with the tanks that pummel the positions with their 90-mm rifles. The Chinese, however, seem to be able to replace the guns as soon as they are destroyed. At sunrise, the Chinese still control the hill and are still able to raise fierce resistance.

A short while after the sun peeks over the horizon, an F4U corsair from VMA-213 is spotted as it approaches the area and about one-half hour later, another corsair (VMA-323) arrives. The two planes set the stage for an upcoming series of air strikes by laying a smoke screen that hovers over an area stretching three miles from Arrowhead to the extreme boundary between the Marines and the Army.

After Vegas is blanketed by smoke, a swarm of jets from VMA-121 arrive to land the first blow of the new day. Eight jets dive and unleash yet another devastating blow upon the enemy positions that so far refuse to yield. However, more planes will return. The Chinese will have to contend with the troops on the ground and the five squadrons who bomb and strafe their positions throughout the entire day.

At 0600, Company F resumes its attack, but it fails to penetrate the rock solid defenses. Captain Estey orders his troops to withdraw to regroup for yet another assault. While Company F prepares to resume the assault, the support units and the Marine squadrons spring to action. At 0920, the guns roar and the planes soar above the targets and descend again to pummel the defenses. The pulverizing close-air support strikes continue until 1315. Meanwhile, Company F drives toward the crest and by 1015, the troops reach positions less than twenty yards from the trench line of the left finger of Vegas and encounter another wall of fire. The Marines slug it out for 22 minutes.

During the intense fire fight, an enemy machine gun shell wounds one Marine. A corpsman rushes to give aid and pull him to safety, but the machine gun prevents the corpsman from dragging the wounded man to safety and keeps the squad pinned tightly to the ground. Sergeant Daniel P. Matthews, the squad leader, spots the imperiled twosome, assesses the situation and moves to

outflank the position. He bolts on top of the rock formation protecting the gun and takes the crew from the rear by surprise. Singlehandedly, he rushes the Chinese and despite receiving a grievous wound, he continues his charge, kills two on the crew, and causes another to flee, leaving the machine gun to him. Matthews destroys the gun. The heroism displayed by Matthews inspires the squad to push further, but he succumbs to his wounds before aid can reach him. The wounded man, however, is pulled to safety.

As the contest continues, reinforcements are moving up to relieve Company F, which by this time stands at less than forty-five effective troops. By 1300, Company E, 2nd Battalion, led by Captain Lorence, takes the lead, while Estey's Company F, having launched six counterattacks since the previous day, leaves the line. The vanguard of Company E advances to within 150 yards of the summit by 1245. As the troops encroach the crest, the U.S. artillery begins to lift the barrage and shift directions, turning the power toward the supporting positions of the enemy, Hills 150, 153 and 190. During the transition, the spearhead inches closer and at 1130, the final charge is mounted. The Marines, led by Staff Sergeant John J. Williams, leap upon the crest, defying intense fire, and tear into the defenses to extricate the dug-in Chinese and either liquidate them or drag them from their bunkers. The overwhelming assault to vanquish the defenders lasts about six devastating minutes. At 1307, the Marines claim the crest and secure Vegas to bring it back under Marine control.

With Vegas back in the hands of the 5th Marines, another unit that had moved up to bolster the attack, Company D, 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines, is ordered back to its lines. In the meantime, the Chinese move to retake the outpost. Enemy fire begins to hammer the new occupants of the crest and at 1320, the Chinese counterattack. Reaction by the 11th Marines is fast and fierce. The guns of the artillery, bolstered by friendly mortars and the tanks of the 1st Tank Battalion, commence firing and essentially seal off the outpost with steel that deters further advance by the enemy. The thrust of the counterattack begins to immediately diminish, while Company E continues its mop-up operations. Finally, at 1401, Vegas, except for one hot spot, the topographical crest (northernmost tip), is secure. During the day's fighting, only two prisoners are taken.

After securing the objective, the Marines reestablish defensive positions and begin an immediate resupply to ensure that all is prepared when the Chinese return. The attack is expected to begin at any time, allowing no relaxation for Company E nor the supporting units. Initially, only five squads, composed of 58 Marines from Company E, and 8 from Company F, 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines, hold the position. Later in the afternoon, Company F, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, led by Captain Walz, deploys to hold the rear trenches, while Company E digs deeply at the outpost to ensure they are not evicted when the next wave strikes. With the rear supported by 150 Marines of Company F, Vegas is defended by slightly more than 200 Marines, commanded by Major Benjamin G. Lee, a sergeant major during World War II and a veteran of Guadalcanal. In addition to the artillery, the defenders are also supported by Marine squadrons that maintain a flying protective umbrella over the area.

While the Marines strengthen their defenses, the Chinese toil to form for attack, but patiently, they await sunset before attempting to smash into the Marines' positions. Then, at 1955, the first of several attempts at retaking the outpost commences. Vegas lights up like a Christmas tree as artillery, mortars and even 3.5-inch rockets arc skyward and then plunge upon the outpost. All the while, a force composed of about battalion strength departs enemy-held Reno en route to clear Vegas; however, the movement is not inconspicuous. The column is immediately brought under severe fire. Two light and one heavy artillery battalions of the 11th Marines are joined by the 623rd

Artillery Battalion of the U.S. Army. The combined power of the artillery propels 4,670 rounds into the attack force, and they are further pounded by the 4.5-inch rocket battery. The Chinese are inundated with descending shells that bring a succinct halt to the attack.

Meanwhile, the enemy ignites a fire fight on the right flank at 2023. The tenacious exchange continues for twenty minutes before the Chinese disengage. However, pressure against Vegas continues for about one hour. Nevertheless, despite the threats from the ground and the bombardment, the Marines hold steadfastly. While the Marines at Vegas withstand the attempts to push them from the outpost, activity against Outpost Carson develops, ending the tranquility there since the defenders threw back the Chinese during the initial hours of the battle on 26 March. The enemy threats against Carson continue into the early morning hours of the 29th, but the Chinese fail to penetrate and retire.

Back at Vegas, the ominous night air breeds some apprehension among the Marine defenders, who continue to brace for the inevitable: the next attack. At about 2230, the Marines react to an approaching force closing from Hill 153. Riflemen deployed about twenty-five yards below the summit intend to fend off the attackers, but the initial thrust gives the Chinese a temporary hold on the crest. Shortly thereafter, the battling Marines retake it, but at nearly the same time, the enemy sparks a vicious fire fight that quickly tails off for about an hour.

At 2300, the Chinese burst upon the outpost in their third try to dislodge the Marines and retake Vegas. Suddenly, a force composed of about two companies slams into the outpost, igniting a huge conflagration. Blistering fire is exchanged as the Marines maintain a steady stream of fire to forestall a calamity. In the meantime, artillery fire erupts as the 11th Marines propel another series of volleys that slam into the enemy and provide a protective buffer for the Americans on Vegas. Still, the Chinese keep pressing, oblivious to the bombardment that makes the slopes quiver.

Just before midnight (27th-28th), the Chinese become the recipients of 6,108 rounds. Nonetheless, about two hundred enemy troops squeeze through the enfilade and gain positions above the Marines, but no penetration is accomplished. Much of the devastation is observed, as flare planes swarm across the night-sky and illuminate the targets.

The Marines become encircled by about 0045, but the artillery and mortar fire keep the enemy from breaking through the defensive ring. Reinforcements rush to Vegas to support the defense, while the Chinese continue to take a beating from the big guns, which by 0130 convince the Chinese to abort the attack. Vegas is held, due in great part to the combination of the tenacity of the Marines and the overwhelming support of the artillery, tanks and planes. During the Chinese retreat, enemy troops at Reno commence firing with small arms and bazookas; however, the 5th Marines, having thrown back three attacks by the combined strength of two battalions, remain unintimidated.

As the Chinese attempt their disengagement, reinforcements from Company E, 7th Marines, barge through the enemy line that had encircled Vegas and hook up with the original defenders, Companies E and F. Together, they initiate a charge and drive the remaining Chinese from the outpost, except for one remaining strongpoint, the topographical crest (northern peak) of the hill. However, the peak does not offer sanctuary for too long.

Company E, fresh on the attack, drives up the heights and moves through Company F, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, at the rear trenches to replace Company F, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines. All the while, artillery continues to stream fire toward the enemy positions on Reno and other points of interest.

In addition, Marine air squadrons swarm overhead and strike selected targets. The friendly fire creates a protective shield around Vegas for the next two hours, while the Chinese on Reno sustain ten air strikes until 0459.

Meanwhile, the 11th Marines, for a two-hour period alone, propel 4,225 rounds of artillery shells that further pock the landscape of Reno and restrain any thoughts by the enemy of mounting an offensive against Vegas. At 0450, just after the last air strike of the morning, Company E bolts from its positions, sprints to the topographic crest and wrests the summit from the Chinese to culminate the blood-filled struggle for control of Vegas.

Many of the officers and NCOs had been either killed or wounded during the siege, including Major Benjamin G. Lee, who steadfastly led his troops and repulsed many of the enemy's counterattacks during the final phase of the battle. Lee is killed along with Captain Walz (Company F, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines) just prior to the conquest of the hill, when an enemy mortar shell scores a direct hit and instantly kills both. Another prominent officer at Vegas during the initial siege and re-conquest was Lieutenant John S. Gray, who as a member of the 11th Marines remained at Vegas as an artillery observer to coordinate the strikes. He was fatally wounded by a mortar round while trying to reposition himself during the early morning hours of the 29th to attain a better point of observation.

Subsequent to dawn, the exhausted, battered victors of Company F, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, and Company E, 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines, regroup and consolidate their defensive positions on the costly outpost. They finish the task by about 0830, uninhibited by the enemy. The troops, composed of three platoons, spread out and deploy, with two platoons holding the primary sector and the remaining contingent taking the heights. The operation is shrouded by a blanket of smoke, but while regrouping, only a very few enemy troops are spotted.

For the rest of the morning, a resupply operation is underway while the trenches and bunkers are being repaired. The Marines also devote time to the evacuation of wounded and bringing in replacements to solidify the outpost for the next attack. The day's operations, although unhindered in any major way by the enemy, is pestered by rain that saturates the troops and transforms the shell-pockets into pools of mud.

While the enemy encounters the same nasty weather, they are also compelled to tolerate a day-long series of strikes, coordinated by air observers who pinpoint assembly areas and supply centers. The operation ceases at dusk, when the rain is joined by snow, prompting the air observers to return to their bases.

As daylight begins to fade, the Chinese begin to emerge from their positions. Not unexpectedly, enemy guns bellow. Under the protection of darkness, the assault begins as three companies charge Vegas from their positions on Hill 153 and from Reno, banging against both flanks. However, the darkness suddenly is transformed into daylight as the sky overhead is greatly brightened by illuminating shells as part of the Marines' response. Within about ten minutes after the attack commences, five U.S. artillery battalions initiate another earth shattering bombardment. The Chinese are inundated with flying shells; 6,404 rounds plow into the assault troops and the approaches to the coveted Vegas, inflicting extremely high casualties.

The Chinese are also struck by streaming rockets and by the heavy mortars of a fresh U.S. Army unit, the 461st Infantry Battalion (Companies A and C), which just arrived in the 5th Marines' zone to augment the 11th Marines, which are also supported by the 8-inch howitzers of Company C,

424th FABn, assigned this day to the 17th FABN. The blistering combination of artillery, mortars and rockets strikes with such enormous magnitude that the attack falters, then collapses as the formations hurriedly seek cover by withdrawing. Nonetheless, the Chinese continue to have fresh troops to commit and later at 2045, another attempt to reclaim Vegas is made, only to receive the identical result—failure.

Toward midnight (29th-30th), things begin to stir at the right finger of Hill 153 when Chinese movement is detected to the rear of the finger. The column is immediately brought under fire. Streams of artillery, mortar and rocket fire converge on the target, riveting the area. The Chinese halt the advance within ten minutes. However, the night's combat is not terminated, as the Chinese mount yet another assault to gain Vegas.

During the early part of the morning, again initially under the cover of darkness, the Chinese descend from Reno and Hill 153 in battalion strength in a determined effort to dislodge the Marines and claim domination of the outpost. Like their previous assaults, the Chinese maneuver in an attempt to encircle the Marines; however, the Marine support weapons also react in identical fashion. Round after round of artillery streaks through the night air, accompanied by mortars and rockets that descend rapidly and powerfully amid the attacking forces.

Meanwhile, at Vegas, the Marines prepare to defend the hill, but during what turns out to be the final major attack, the Chinese never make it to the objective. By 0215 on the morning of the 30th, the Chinese abandon their final attack and relinquish their claim to Vegas. Following four grim and blood-filled nights of unabated ferocious combat, the Marines prevail.

At dawn on the 30th at Vegas, the Marines are greeted with clear skies, a good sign, as the skies will be occupied with overprotective observation planes and fighters as work is reinitiated to stabilize the defenses of the outpost and repair the massive damage to the bunkers and trenches. Nearby at the enemy positions, the planes take advantage of the clear weather and devote a lot of time to bombing and strafing to inflict destruction and rattle the ground forces to keep them from organizing a major offensive. At Hill 21A, a primary source of trouble near Reno, planes from VMA-212 and VMA-323 strike during the morning. Prior to noon, Hill 25A is struck by eight F4U corsairs, making the task of repairing the defenses difficult.

Aircraft strike targets in the afternoon, including 21B at Reno. While the enemy is preoccupied with the Marine air squadrons, at Vegas, Company G, 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines, arrives and resumes responsibility for Vegas after relieving Company E, 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines. The outpost comes under no major threat during the daylight hours; however, a small enemy contingent of five troops approaches the perimeter about one hour before noon, walking as if preparing to surrender. The Marines maintain a wary watch as they come close. The five Chinese begin to toss grenades and fire their automatic weapons. Just as suddenly, the Marines open fire. Three Chinese die suddenly and the other two are seized. One of the captured prisoners later succumbs.

On this same day, 30 March, a message for General Pollock from General Shepherd, the Marine commandant, arrives at the 1st Marine Division headquarters, expressing the sentiments of the commandant: "The stubborn and heroic defense of Vegas, Reno and Carson Hills, coupled with the superb offensive spirit which characterized the several counterattacks are a source of reassurance and satisfaction to your fellow Marines everywhere...."

As dusk settles over the outpost, there is a stark silence in the nearby enemy-held position at Reno and the other nearby hills. The Marines make preparations to defend against an attack, while the

giant long-reaching searchlights of the U.S. Army's 2nd Platoon, 61st Artillery Battalion, light up the potential battlefield and focus upon routes that might be used by the enemy for withdrawal. All the while, the defenders wait for the sound of the Chinese buglers and the shrill sounds of the whistles that usually accompany the preliminary artillery attack. Nevertheless, they wait in vain. The Chinese apparently concluded that another attack would prove fruitless. The fifth night at Vegas remains uneventful, to the jubilation of the Marines.

Subsequent to vanquishing the Chinese at Vegas, the Marines, both on the line and in the reserve units that had participated in the conflagration, summarized the battle in terms common to battle tested Marines, referring to the summit of Vegas as "the highest damn beachhead in Korea."

During the morning of the 31st, Companies D and F, 5th Marines, move from Vegas to the MLR. At 0800, the 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines, returns to control of the 7th Marines. During the remainder of the day, fresh units relieve others at other outposts, including Corinne, Dagmar, Hedy and Bunker.

During the five-day battle for control of Vegas, the Marines sustain 1,015 casualties, seventy percent of the casualties sustained by the entire 1st Marine Division during March. The casualties include 116 killed and 801 wounded. Of the wounded, 441 are evacuated. In addition, 98 Marines are reported missing and of these it is learned for certain that 19 had been captured. Marine positions, including the attack and counterattack movements, sustained 45,000 rounds of artillery, mortar and rocket fire.

The Chinese 358th Regiment is decimated and eliminated as an effective fighting unit. Enemy losses, with estimates considered conservative by the 1st Marine Division, include 536 killed (counted), another 654 estimated killed, 174 wounded (counted) and another 853 estimated wounded. Also, four Chinese are captured. The Chinese 358th Regiment initially numbered between 3,000 and 3,500 troops.

During the fierce fighting, two corpsmen and one Marine exhibit extraordinary heroism above and beyond the call of duty and become recipients of the Medal of Honor. They are Hospital Corpsman Francis C. Hammond (posthumously), Hospital Corpsman William R. Charette, and Sergeant Daniel P. Matthews, Company F, 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines.

**March 27 1953 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the Marines ground all HRS-2 helicopters with more than 200 hours of flight time. Tests in the U.S. had determined a flaw in the main rotor blades. New rotor blades are sped from the States and the helicopters are back into action by 2 April.

**March 28 1953 (Korea)-**The UN is informed by the Communists that they are now willing to discuss the proposals offered by the U.N. representatives regarding the exchange of sick and wounded prisoners. The Communists had received the proposals during December 1951. It does not go unnoticed by the U.N. and Eighth Army that on this day, the Chinese are heavily engaged for the third successive day against the U.S. Marines at Vegas in the Eighth Army, I Corps, sector. In addition, the sudden willingness to talk follows the recent death of Joseph Stalin. The talks resume on 6 April.

**March 31 1953 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the Marines at Vegas clean up following a five-day battle at Carson-Reno-Vegas (Nevada Cities Outposts). During the contest, which included two days of bad weather and restricted air operations, the 1st Marine Air

Wing executed 218 combat missions in support of the Marines. The participating squadrons are VMAs 121, 212 and 323; VMFs 115 and 311 and VMF(N)-513. The figure amounted to 63 percent of the month's total of 346 close-air-support missions. (*See also, March 26–31, 1953 THE BATTLE FOR VEGAS.*) Also, Marine pilots had been greatly restricted during March, due to 19 days of nasty weather. Nevertheless, the Marine aviators execute 917 close air support sorties during the month. In addition, Marine pilots of VMF(N)-513, assigned to escort the B-29s during night-missions, report that no B-29s were lost during March. The Marines had been assigned the escort duty during the latter part of 1952 and since that time, while protecting the bombers, they have downed one Yak-15 and three MiG-15s. When the flights of the Marines and those of the U.S. Navy are combined, the total of sorties for March amount to 9,062. The pilots, during the same period, deposit 6,671 tons of bombs, 2,041 rockets and 1,100,000 rounds of ammunition in the course of executing 14,100 firing runs.

**April 4 1953 (Korea)**-*In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone*, the 5th Marines culminates 64 days on the line and reverts to division reserve. The regiment initiates its move to Camp Rose and completes the redeployment on the following day. In its place, the 7th Marines comes on line. The 7th Marines sector includes the right sector of the MLR. Meanwhile, the 1st Marines control the center portion of Jamestown and defend the MLR there, as well as 12 outposts, one of which is COP-2 near the Panmunjom peace corridor.

**April 5 1953 (Korea)**-In preparation for the resumption of talks regarding a prisoner exchange with the Communists, the Munsan-ni Provisional Command is established. It is placed near the 1st Marine Division railhead at Munsan-ni. The new command is responsible for preparing to receive U.N. prisoners and is to be led by Colonel Raymond W. Beggs, USA, assisted by another U.S. Army officer, a Marine officer and one South Korean representative.

Colonel Wallace M. Nelson, USMC, assumes command of the U.N. Personnel and Medical Processing Unit. In addition to preparing for the arrival of U.N. prisoners, the new unit begins to construct a temporary camp to hold Communist prisoners during the transition. At this time, the Communists are being held at facilities at Koje, Cheju, and Yongcho Islands and at a hospital in the vicinity of Pusan. In preparation for the upcoming exchange, security regulations at Panmunjom and Munsan-ni, about ten miles southeast, are strictly enforced. Both locations are off limits to Eighth Army personnel, except those involved with the operation.

Marine engineers initiate Operation RAINBOW, which involves the construction of what becomes known as Freedom Village. The entire facility is built by fewer than one hundred Marines in 31 working hours. The units involved with the construction include Company A, 1st Shore Party Battalion; elements of Headquarters and Service Companies; and a platoon of Company D, 1st Engineer Battalion. Work begins on this Sunday at 0800 and continues until 0100 on the 6th, when a pause of five hours occurs. At 0600 on the 6th, work resumes and the village is finished by 2000.

**April 6 1953 (Korea)**-At Munsan-ni, the Marines complete the construction of Freedom Village, the facility that will hold and process the returning POWs. The facility is divided into three parts and holds 35,500 square feet of hospital tent space, 84 squad tents and 5 wall tents. Three miles of combat standard roads are constructed. The site also includes reserved areas for ambulances, landing strips for helicopters and an abundance of signs written in both English and Korean, underscored with five 50-foot flagpoles.

**April 9 1953 (Korea)**-*In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone*, the Chinese commence

a 2-hour artillery bombardment against Outpost Carson, one of the outposts they failed to gain during the attack in late March. The barrage sends about 2,000 shells into the outpost positions. Then at 0345, the Chinese launch an attack with a force composed of about 300 troops that close from Reno ridgeline and from Arrowhead to the north.

The outpost is defended by a contingent from the 1st Battalion, 7th Marines. When the enemy encroaches at about 0345, it is met by the defenders' weapons as they reach the trenches. At a few spots, some of the enemy are able to penetrate the barbed wire; however, the attack comes under heavy fire. The heated, close-quartered fire fight lasts for about one and one-half hours. A contingent of reinforcements (2nd Battalion, 7th Marines) moves toward Carson at 0545, but as it reaches Elko, a recently established outpost following the loss of Reno, enemy fire stalls the advance.

In the meantime, a contingent of tanks from Company A, 1st Tank Battalion, and two other tanks from the 7th Marines' armored platoon commence fire. Their 90-mm rifles, combined with the mortars from Carson, inflict much damage to the attackers. The enemy force also comes under attack by artillery of the 2nd Battalion, 11th Marines. By 0700, the Chinese withdraw from the vicinity of Carson. The attempt to take the outpost fails. Another contingent (Company E, 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines) arrives to bolster the outpost. The Marine defenders lose 14 killed and 44 wounded and evacuated. Another 22 are wounded but not seriously. In addition, 4 Marines are reported missing. The Chinese sustain 60 dead (counted) and another 90 estimated killed, as well as an estimated 70 wounded.

Within about fifteen minutes after the enemy is driven off, planes from Squadrons VMA-212 and VMA-323 arrive on scene and begin to strike Chinese positions. They are joined by Corsairs from VMA-121. The three squadrons linger in the area until the middle of the afternoon and deliver a combined total of more than 140,000 pounds of bombs on targets north of Carson.

After dark, the Chinese, who had hurriedly departed the area at Carson, attempt to return and recover killed troops left on the field. The endeavor proves fatal. The Marines at Carson detect the enemy at a destroyed and unoccupied bunker and immediately initiate action to eliminate the intruders. The Chinese sustain 15 dead (counted) and an additional estimated 15 killed. Also, the Chinese sustain 7 wounded (for certain) and another 27 estimated wounded.

**April 10 1953 (Korea)-In the I Corp sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines (reserve), moves to the Kansas Line to begin a two-day training exercise. The training is later transformed into a construction problem, as the spring rains have devastated much of the line's defenses, including the bunkers. Other parts of the regiment also undergo training, including an amphibious operation (MARLEX 5), conducted by the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines. Other exercises conducted by the Marines during April include a joint operation with ROKs, U.S. Army units, and the British Commonwealth Division, when a four-day exercise called EVERREADY GEORGE begins near Seoul on 20 April.

In other activity, Marine Panther jets arrive over Carson in the 7th Marines' zone to resume air attacks, which had been flown on the previous day by other squadrons against Chinese positions, following a failed attack against the outpost. The planes are from VMF squadrons 311 and 115, but unlike the previous day's strikes, no enemy troops are spotted. Nonetheless, after dark, other planes attached to VMA-121 and VMF(N)-513 execute ground control radar bombing runs.

**April 11 1953 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** a small contingent of

about 30 Chinese troops approaches Elko, the outpost established the previous month to replace Reno. The early morning encounter occurs on the reverse slope; however, it is a short exchange. Artillery is called upon and immediately thereafter, the popular “Box-Me-In” fire arrives to provide a buffer while the defenders handle the intrusion. The Chinese retire shortly after their arrival. Later, planes from the Marine squadrons again appear overhead to renew air strikes against enemy gun positions and other targets of opportunity.

The Chinese, who have tried and failed several times to take Carson since the 26th of March, launch another attack slightly after 2100. Chinese move from Ungok to the west ridge of the Marines’ perimeter. The Marines engage the force composed of about 70 troops and within ten minutes of artillery, mortar and small arms fire, and tank fire, the enemy loses about 20 killed and wounded. The attack is aborted.

**April 12 1953 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the Chinese, for the fourth successive day, probe the area of Carson-Elko-Vegas. On the three previous nights, the Chinese gained little except casualties. On this day, subsequent to dusk, a group of about the strength of only two squads approaches Elko. The enemy exchanges fire with the Marine defenders for about fifteen minutes, but again, they are repulsed and forced to withdraw.

In other activity, after a period of testing, a new tactic is employed with regard to the Marine squadrons’ close-air support missions. The Marines on the ground in the 7th Marines’ sector use two or more 24-inch searchlights from strategic positions along the MLR during the night-attacks. The searchlights, which create an artificial horizon, guide the pilots and allow them to operate with great accuracy regardless of the depth of darkness. The pencil-shaped beams are adaptable for either target location or illumination. Air observers operating in VMO-6 light liaison aircraft maintain control over the missions and from the air, the observers direct the units operating the searchlights.

On this first night of operations with the new tactic, two missions are flown by F7F tigercats piloted by Major Charles L. Sachroeder and 2nd Lt. Thomas F. St. Denis. The Marines continue to use the tactics until the 1st Marine Division is pulled from the line at the end of May. In the meantime, the ground crews and the pilots rave about the system, as the searchlights, according to reports forwarded to the commandant, are a huge success: “results ... exceeded all expectations.”

**April 13 1953 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the area encompassing Carson-Elko-Vegas is especially quiet during the hours after sunset. As the days begin to pass, enemy activity tails off even more. However, during early May, after the Marines transfer the area to the U.S. 25th Division, the Chinese become reinvigorated and activity rapidly increases.

**April 16 1953 (Korea)-**A contingent of troops, including U.S. Marines and South Korean Marines, are formed as a raiding party. The group, supported by the destroyer USS *Owen* (DD 536), moves ashore in rubber boats and succeeds in damaging a stretch of rails. The mission is carried out without incident and afterward, the men safely return to the ship.

**April 17 1953 (Korea)-**On this day, the combined missions of Marine planes of MAG-12 and MAG-33 fly 262 sorties against enemy targets. The air strikes drop more than 228 tons of bombs and expend 28,385 rounds of ammunition. In conjunction, the 3rd and 7th U.S. Divisions, between 0410 and 2030, receive close-air support by VMF-311 and VMF-115. All targets are selected by Fifth Air Force on this record-setting date for Marine sorties.

**April 18 1953 (Korea)-**Marine helicopters of HMR 161, supported by the 1st Marine Air Delivery

Platoon, FMF, transport rocket launchers and ammunition to the Waya-dong area. Once there, the launchers are positioned and a salvo is soon after en route to the target. The firing site is then expeditiously vacated within three minutes after the first salvo, before the enemy can pinpoint the weapons and return fire.

**April 28 1953 (Korea)**-On this day, the U.N. changes the names of the MLR (main line of resistance), which until now was known by various names in separate sectors; such as Jamestown in the I Corps sector and Missouri, Duluth, Minnesota and Cat in others. The entire line now becomes known as "Main Line of Resistance." Another modification includes the elimination of the word "Korea" with regard to the acronym "EUSAK" (Eighth U.S. Army in Korea). From this date forward, it becomes simply, "Eighth U.S. Army."

**In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, all remains quiet and the trend continues until the end of the month. Marine patrols scour the terrain and find it difficult to detect enemy contingents. Even the incoming artillery has greatly diminished. The Marines are preparing to transfer the area to the 25th Division. The 1st Marine Division is reluctant to relinquish hold, but Eighth Army insists on the change. The Marines make it clear they are moving into reserve under protest of Marine commanders. Although it at times seems as if an armistice is near, there is a belief among the Marines that they will have to return to the area if the Chinese make an unexpected lunge against Carson-Elko-Vegas, a strategic blocking point in front of Seoul.

**April 30 1953 (Korea)**-During April, the combined total of flights by Navy and Marine pilots amount to 9,458 sorties, which include 5,600 firing runs on targets. The pilots expended 7,052 tons of bombs, 2,874 rockets and 1,500,000 rounds of ammunition.

**May 1–July 27 1953. TENTH DESIGNATED CAMPAIGN: KOREAN SUMMER 1953.**

**May 1 1953 (Korea)**-**In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, the 25th Division begins to replace the 1st Marine Division on line. The operation is completed on 5 May, when the 25th Division assumes responsibility for the zone, which stretches thirty-three miles.

**May 5 1953 (Korea)**-The U.S. 25th Division, which had been deployed in the IX Corps sector, assumes responsibility at precisely 1120 for the far right coastal area of the I Corps. It replaces the 1st Marine Division, which moves to Camp Casey and reverts to I Corps reserve. However, the 11th Marines and the Marine armor units remain to support the 25th Division under control of I Corps. Camp Casey is constructed by Marine engineers about 15 miles east of the Marines' positions on the MLR. While in reserve, the Marines continue to train to remain prepared. Exercises include amphibious landings (MARLEX 1 on 13 May).

**May 15 1953 (Korea)**-**In the I corps sector**, not too long after midnight (14th-15th) and not yet two weeks since the 25th Division relieved the Marines and assumed responsibility of Carson-Elko-Vegas, the Chinese decide to test the mettle of the new defenders of the line. Two enemy battalions descend upon a string of outposts, including Berlin and East Berlin. One battalion surges toward Carson-Elko-Vegas while the other drives against Berlin–East Berlin.

The outposts, defended by the Turkish brigade, receive support from Turkish artillery units and the 11th Marines, as well as the tanks of Company C (USMC). The attack is repulsed and the enemy sustains high casualties, estimated at 200 killed and 100 wounded. Later, during daylight, planes arrive to bomb and strafe. Combined, the 11th Marines and the 25th Division expend 11,527 rounds of artillery. Enemy artillery fires about 10,000 rounds.

In other activity, the 1st Marine Air Wing undergoes some changes. VMF(N)-513 is transferred to MAG-12 from MAG-33. The squadron, equipped with new twin-engine jet fighters (F3D-2s) redeploys at K-6 (Pyongtaek). The squadron had been operating at K-8 (Kunsan).

**May 28 1953 (Korea)**-*In the I Corps sector*, in the Nevada Cities Outposts, following several days of probing and active enemy artillery positions, a large portion of the line explodes in raucous fashion at 1800. In concert with a thunderous artillery barrage that crashes into the I Corps sector, the Chinese unleash a full-scale assault force that encompasses a distance of more than 17,000 yards. The force extends eastward from COP-2 across the Carson-Elko-Vegas sector to the Berlin-East Berlin area, and beyond into the sector protected by the British Commonwealth Division. The Chinese, who had been repeatedly blocked by the Marines from breaking through to Seoul, make another attempt. Primary elements of the Chinese 120th Division are committed against the 25th Division and its attached units. The sounds of the guns, the screeches of the whistles and the blare of the bugles accompany the enemy battalions as they swarm from their positions and crash toward their respective objectives, to seek and find points of penetration. The attacking ground forces simultaneously plow against the line and against the outposts defended by the Turks. One battalion pounds against Carson and Elko, while another hammers Vegas. On the right flank, a third enemy battalion drives into Berlin and East Berlin.

The Turks at Carson and Elko resist tenaciously and exchange violent blows for three hours. But, the Chinese continue to use relentless pressure and advance to the point that hand-to-hand combat erupts, while the Turks continue to try to turn back the attack. The gallant stand of the two Turkish platoons is unable to repel the assault. Carson falls. Meanwhile, at nearby Elko, the Turks are still holding, but here, too, the pressure is building too high for the solitary platoon to hold without reinforcements. Orders arrive at Elko that instruct the defenders to abandon the post and make it back to the MLR.

Since the beginning of the onslaught, the 25th Division artillery and the 11th Marines artillery have pounded the enemy with repeated volleys that plunge into and around the columns, as they attempt to collapse the outposts. Marine tanks form along the line in the sector held by the Turks. Initially, 15 tanks of the 1st Marine Tank Battalion are in place in support of the Turks. As the enemy approaches their 90-mm rifles unleash a steady stream of fire to crush the columns, but still the Chinese advance. As the attacks build momentum, even more tanks arrive to further punish the attack forces. Eventually, 33 Marine tanks are on the line. They propel round after round into the enemy columns. Despite the heavy artillery and the tanks, the Chinese maintain the assault.

While the Chinese are overrunning Carson and Elko, the defenders at Vegas, numbering 140 troops, dish out punishing fire from their positions and prevent the Chinese from seizing the outposts. Other positions along the line also hold their ground. On the far right, in what turns out to be a diversion, the Turks at Berlin and East Berlin retain both outposts, as the Chinese break off the attacks.

Back at COP-2, held by the 35th U.S. Infantry Regiment, the Chinese are unable to penetrate. The regiment forces a withdrawal by midnight (28th-29th). The wide-ranging assault does not leave the British Commonwealth sector unscathed. The Chinese pound against Outposts Ronson and Warsaw. The British resist tenaciously and like the Turks, receive support from the 25th Division and the 11th Marines. In addition, the 4.5 inch rocket battery (USMC) is deployed at the Hook in support of the British.

The Chinese maintain the pressure into the following day. All across the line, the troops of the 25th

Division are hammered and the outposts become endangered. At the Nevada Cities Outposts (Carson-Elko-Vegas) area, the combat remains vicious throughout the day at Vegas, with control changing hands several times, as neither the Chinese nor the Turks relent, but in the end, the Chinese prevail. And, in the meantime, a counterattack regains Elko.

By about noon, in addition to the massive artillery and tank support, Marine air squadrons arrive and also pummel the enemy at every opportunity. The Chinese come under attack by VMA Squadrons 212, 121 and 323 repeatedly throughout the day, as seven four-plane strikes pound the troops and cause the ground under them to quiver. Afterward, more Marine planes arrive to execute ground controlled radar bombing strikes. During the early part of the day, the 1st Marine Division, in reserve at Camp Casey, receives orders to prepare to return to the line. At 1315, the 1st Marines, commanded by Colonel Wallace M. Nelson, is transferred to the operational control of the I Corps. About two hours later, the 1st Marines, along with its antitank and heavy mortar companies, stand ready at the Kansas Line in the 25th Division zone on hold, awaiting the order to attack.

Another Marine unit, the 1st Division Reconnaissance Company, is ordered to the Imjin River to relieve a reserve company of the 14th Regiment. Although the Marines arrive and prepare to take on the attackers, the order does not arrive. They spend the remainder of the day waiting orders.

At 2300, with the Chinese holding Carson and Vegas, the 14th Regiment (reserve), which participated in the counterattack to regain Elko, is informed that the positions are untenable. It is ordered to abandon the outpost. In addition, the Turkish elements at Vegas are also ordered to abandon their positions and retire to the MLR. The withdrawal continues the rest of the night and into the following morning. By dawn, the Turks and U.S. troops of the 14th Regiment complete the retreat to the MLR.

At dawn on the 30th, the Nevada Cities Outposts, which the Chinese had not been able to take from the 1st Marine Division earlier, are under Chinese control. The sun is obscured as inclement weather casts an ominous aura over the lost outposts. The day passes without ground attacks to regain the lost terrain and the rain dominates the region. In the meantime, the elements of the 1st Marines remain under the control of I Corps and hold in place, in case the regiment is needed to regain the lost ground. The Marines are released from I Corps control on 5 June, the day Eighth Army concludes that the three hills are no longer considered strategically important. Eighth Army also decides that the lost territory will remain under Chinese control and that no new attacks would be mounted to regain the ground, which only a short time ago was indeed critical and strategic.

On March 26, the Chinese launched a five-day assault to gain the coveted hills and failed, costing them extremely high casualties. The Marines, during the struggle to hold the hills, sacrificed 116 killed and sustained 801 wounded, while eliminating the Chinese 358th Regiment as a fighting unit. The 25th Division reports estimated enemy casualties for the period May 28–30 as 2,200 killed and 1,057 wounded. The Turks, during the same period, while defending the outposts, sustain 104 killed, 324 wounded and 47 missing.

**Late May 1953 (Korea)**-By this time, while the 1st Marine Air Wing continues to phase out the F7F tigercats in Night Fighter Squadron 513, the 24 new F3D-2 twin jets are further bolstered by four more that arrive from the carrier USS *Lake Champlain*. The squadron begins its initial primary nightfighter mission since the outbreak of the Korean War. The new skyknights continue to carry out the task of escorting the U.S. Air Force B-29s on night missions, a task assigned to the 1st Marine Air Wing during the latter part of 1952. Since the Marines' tigercats began escorting the

bombers, none had been lost to enemy planes since 29 January 1953. The skyknights also have retained a sterling record while protecting the flights.

**May 31 1953 In Japan**-Marine Squadron VMA-332 arrives at Itami Air Base from Florida.

**June 10 1953 (Korea)**-From today until 17 June, the combined flights of U.S. Air Force, Navy and Marine planes amount to 8,359 sorties against enemy targets in support of the ROKs, who are being pummeled by the Chinese. The Marine squadrons execute 1,156 of the sorties and for the entire month of June, Marine pilots fly 3,276 sorties, although impeded on 23 days due to inclement weather. On this day, 68 planes of VMF-115 and VMF-311 pass over enemy targets in the vicinity of Chaeryong and deliver napalm that splatters about a troop complex composed of 333 structures. Subsequently, aerial photos of the area are obtained and it is determined by count that 230 buildings were reduced to debris and another 40 were damaged.

**June 11 1953 (Korea)**-Between February 27, 1952, and this date, the pilots of the 1st Marine Air Wing have completed more than 80,000 combat sorties in support of the divisions of the United Nations Command.

**June 13-18 1953 (Korea)**-The massive campaign to destroy and damage airfields in North Korea continues. During this period U.S. Air Force and Marine Corps planes combine to destroy the dams at Namsi and Taechon. The targets come under attack by B-29s, F-84s and Marine F4U Corsair fighter bombers; however, the dams hold. It had been intended to crack the dams to cause flooding of both airfields.

**June 15 1953 (Korea)**-Planes operating from the USS *Princeton* fly 184 combat sorties, which set a record for the most sorties flown from a carrier on a single day. The combined sorties for the Navy and Marine Corps this day totals 910, a record for a single day. In other activity, in response to the enormous gains by the Chinese against the ROK forces, the Far East Air Forces, including U.S. Air Force, Navy and Marine Corps squadrons, unleash what becomes the highest number of strikes of the entire conflict. The planes fly 2,143 sorties.

**June 18 1953 (Korea)**-U.S. Marines assist in preventing anti-Communist POWs from escaping from a U.N. prison camp in the vicinity of Inchon.

**June 24-30 1953 (Korea)**-The 1st Marine Division remains in reserve; however, the Marine artillery units remain on the line and MAG-12 and MAG-33 squadrons remain extremely active in support of Eighth Army units. As part of Fifth Air Force, Marine pilots fly constant support missions. On 30 June, the Marines execute 301 sorties. In other activity, during the same time period, the Communists look to enlist "a few good men" by propelling propaganda leaflets into the U.S. Marine lines.

**June 25 1953 (Korea)**-This day marks the third anniversary of the North Korean invasion of South Korea. Also, the Chinese, who had attacked ROK forces in the IX Corps sector on the previous day, launch a new attack, this time against the I Corps. A separate enemy division strikes the ROK 1st Division at its positions to the right of the British Commonwealth Division, along the left flank of the I Corps. In related activity, the 7th Marines, still in reserve with the entire 1st Marine Division, receives word that it has been placed on standby in the event it is needed to help quell the Chinese attacks.

**June 26 1953 (Korea)**-In the I Corps sector, by this time, the Chinese attacks against the ROK 1st Division, which began on the previous day, gain several forward outpost positions. The 7th

Marines had been placed on standby the previous day, in the event that it was needed to support the ROKs; however, this day, it reverts back to reserve. Instead, the 1st South Korean Marine Corps Regiment, KMC/RCT (minus its 3rd Battalion), is ordered to stand by for possible action. The KMC/RCT afterward moves from its area at Arrowhead to the left part of the ROK 1st Division's sector. In related activity, the Marine 1st 4.5 inch rocket battery is directed to move from its positions in the I Corps to positions about 20 miles east to bolster the ROKs. The Marine contingent remains in the sector until 30 June to provide support fire. All the while, as the Chinese pound the ROKs, the 25th Division sector remains quiet.

**June 30 1953 (Korea)**-U.S. Navy and Marine pilots, during the month of June, execute 9,238 sorties. For the same time period, the British aviators execute 864 sorties. **In the United States:** At this time, Marine Corps strength stands at 249,219 men.

**July 1953 (Korea)**-*In the Eighth Army area*, the estimated casualties of the Chinese against Eighth Army for the month of July 1953 amount to 72,000, including 25,000 killed—the equivalent of seven divisions in the attacks against the IX Corps and the ROK II Corps. **In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, during July 1953, the final month of the Korean War, the Marines sustain 181 infantry killed in action, but with the wounded, total casualties rises to 1,661 men. Chinese losses against the Marines amount to 405 killed (counted), 761 estimated killed, 1,988 estimated wounded and 1 prisoner, to bring the total casualties to 3,155. During the final ten days of the war, the assault against the MLR on 25 July had been the heaviest. The Chinese, during the final ten days, strike I Corps 25 separate times, eight against Marine positions, five against the British 1st Commonwealth, six in the 1st ROK area and six in the U.S. 7th Infantry Division zone.

**July 1 1953 (Korea)**- The 1st Marine Division, held in reserve since early May, prepares to return to its former lines in West Korea to relieve the 25th Division, which assumed responsibility for the area on 5 May.

**July 6 1953 (Korea)**-The 1st Marine Division initiates relief of the U.S. 25th Division in the right sector of the I Corps. It redeploys where it had been prior to 5 May. However, since the departure of the Marines, the Nevada Cities Outposts (Carson-Elko-Vegas) and another large portion of the line are now occupied by the Chinese. The 7th Marines relieves the U.S. 14th Regiment and the Turkish forces (TAFC) deploy to hold the right regimental sector. The 5th Marines assumes responsibility for the center portion of the MLR. In conjunction, the 1st Marines reverts to regimental reserve. The 11th Marines and other units, including the armor, are already on line in support of the 25th Division's efforts against the Chinese.

**July 7–9 1953 THE BATTLE FOR BERLIN–EAST BERLIN** On this day, one day after the 1st Marine Division regiments began to relieve the 25th Division in the I Corps sector, the Chinese launch an attack while the relief is still in progress and before the Marines can fully establish stiff defensive positions. The Chinese have recently mauled the ROKs all along the line and they have also seized key outposts (Nevada Cities) in the sector taken over by the 25th Division when the Marines had been taken from the line and placed into reserve.

At Berlin and East Berlin, where the Turks have not yet been totally replaced by the Marines, the artillery and mortars begin to strike during the initial moments of the attack. In concert, the Chinese swarm upon the two outposts from their newly won positions in the heights at Vegas. Berlin and East Berlin, at this time, are each defended by one platoon (2nd Battalion, 7th Marines).

Two separate reinforced battalions, attached to the Chinese 407th Regiment, 136th Division, charge

Berlin and East Berlin in successive waves to collapse the resistance. However, the brutal forces are slowed by heavy return fire. Nonetheless, the tidal wave of Chinese crashes into the lines despite the walls of fire. By about 15 minutes before midnight (7th-8th), the besieged defenders are face-to-face with the Chinese and engaged in savage close-quartered combat. The Marines at both posts desperately fight to throw back the assault.

At Berlin, some Turks had not yet departed when the Chinese attack slams into the post. A nearby contingent of Marines from Company F, a reinforced squad, operating at an ambush site, is able to bolster Berlin to build a more formidable shield of resistance. However, at East Berlin, they receive no reinforcements and are compelled to fight alone until some reinforcements can arrive. Here, too, nasty hand-to-hand combat ensues as the Marines are fired upon from point-blank range. The isolated platoon, which receives artillery and mortar support, is unable to stem the tide. The outpost is overwhelmed by the building momentum of the battalion. Nonetheless, vicious fighting continues. The Marines refuse to capitulate; by midnight, radio communications from East Berlin cease.

While the outnumbered survivors at Berlin and East Berlin continues to resist, steps are taken to get reinforcements to them from the MLR, only 325 yards away, but Chinese artillery and small arms fire stand in the path. Nevertheless, the Marines prepare a counterattack. In the meantime, while communications at East Berlin had been severed, headquarters is aware that at Berlin, the defenders still hold steadfastly.

By 0130, the situation at Berlin becomes uncertain. All radio reports from there cease. Meanwhile, the regiment moves at full throttle to reinforce the main line in the event the Chinese are able to collapse the outposts and move against the MLR. At 0355, a reinforced squad from Company F moves out without the protection of artillery fire to launch a surprise attack at 0445. The Chinese stop the assault and prevent further advance. Shortly thereafter, a second counterattack is launched at about 0445, but again the Chinese intercept it with artillery fire. Fifteen Marines become casualties, but the enemy artillery fails to halt the advance. The reinforcements continue to drive forward, but within about one hour, prior to reaching the objective, orders arrive that direct the contingent to halt and return to its lines.

It had been decided instead to unleash another artillery attack and send fresh troops into the battle. At the time the counterattack is aborted, it remains unknown whether there are any survivors at either outpost. By 0630 on the 8th, grim news arrives. East Berlin has fallen and still there is no news regarding the defenders at Berlin 500 yards west.

At dawn on the 8th, preparations continue for a counterattack to regain East Berlin and if need be, Berlin; however, Berlin had survived the onslaught and the Marines and Turkish elements still hold there. The enemy battalion had not been able to fold the defenses. But, the situation remains grave. Only 18 defenders are able-bodied. Size restraints at the outpost prevent a large force from being dispatched to reinforce. Consequently, an 18-man contingent (reinforced) from the 2nd Battalion speeds toward the battered outpost, while a more potent detachment of reinforcements prepares to take East Berlin back from the Chinese.

Under an artillery barrage of the 11th Marines, Turkish artillery and mortar fire, a two-platoon (reinforced) contingent drawn from Companies G and H, 3rd Battalion, jumps off at 1000. The advance encounters fierce enemy artillery fire, and it strikes just as the contingent from Company H gets snagged by the friendly barbed wire of the Marine defenses.

The Company H platoon gets pounded while it is trapped within the wire. The unit is suddenly reduced to only twenty troops. In the meantime, Company G squeezes through the positions of Company H and maintains the attack. Just prior to 1130, the platoon arrives in close proximity to the Chinese and a violent fire fight breaks out. Both sides exchange grenades during the savage encounter at the main trench line at East Berlin.

While the counterattack hammers the Chinese at the trenches, artillery and tanks continue to catapult rounds into the defending positions at East Berlin. The positions are plastered. Both the forward and reverse slopes become inundated with a whirlwind of fire, but the crest, too, is pounded. The Chinese seek cover from the devastating artillery and mortar fire; however, more deadly fire strikes the trenches and bunkers from the 90-mm rifles of the Marines' tanks. The bombardment is methodical and at times dangerous even to the Marines, particularly when the fire zooms directly over the heads of the attacking Marines to strike just to their front.

During the mission to re-secure the outpost, the weather remains horrible, which inhibits the air support. While the Marines push forward, the observers adjust the fire to maintain a shield to their immediate front, almost as if they are advancing in cadence with the rounds of the long-guns. The dogged advance continues as the Marines maintain the attack and engage the enemy at close-quarters for about one additional hour, while they ascend to the crest.

At about noon, four panthers penetrate the nasty weather that has brought about poor visibility and come in from the north to bomb and strafe enemy reinforcements and bunkers to soften the resistance. The planes contribute and distribute more than 10,000 pounds of bombs as they pass over the Chinese positions.

The Chinese raise fierce resistance against the Marines, but still, the obstacles are eliminated one by one as they climb the slope and remain focused on the main objective, the summit. The climb up the treacherous path ends and the Marines pounce upon the crest. The Chinese defenders are then quickly dispatched, with some actually being thrown down the reverse slope. At 1233, East Berlin is back under the belt of the Marines. The Chinese are again vanquished, but until reinforcements arrive, control of the hill remains in the hands of only twenty able-bodied Marines who still stand at the outpost.

Although the 7th Marines had been engulfed in a brutal fight to regain East Berlin, other operations also continue. At 1300, just after retaking the outpost, the 7th Marines completes the relief of the remaining Turkish forces at Berlin, giving the 7th Marines control of both outposts. Within two additional hours, at 1500, the entire sector is transferred from the 25th Division to the 1st Marine Division, but still, some units of the 25th are not fully relieved. As the transfer takes place, the Kimpo Provisional Regiment and the division reconnaissance company are rejoined under the 1st Marine Division.

Operations continue in the Marine zone during the afternoon, but few enemy troops are detected. Nevertheless, it remains clear that the enemy artillery positions remain active. During the period of the 7th-8th, the enemy battalions of artillery, numbering about 17, propel about 19,000 rounds into the Marine perimeter. However, the Marine and U.S. Army battalions rapidly return fire to neutralize the enemy and impede the Chinese from launching a major assault.

By about dusk, an enemy contingent is detected as it moves near Frisco, en route to the Berlin–East Berlin positions. The formation is pounded by artillery, which stymies a further advance. Later, under darkened skies, the Chinese form for another attack, but it is not launched until after midnight

(8th-9th). At 0104 (9th), a Chinese contingent, estimated at the size of a reinforced company, swings down from Vegas and moves toward Berlin. The force strikes solidly, but the weakened defenses suffice and the Marines return tenacious fire. In the meantime, the Chinese bounce over Berlin and plow into East Berlin, but here, too, the Marines resist ferociously. At the first sounds of the enemy guns the darkness of the night becomes a brightly illuminated sky, when the Army's massive searchlights scour the enemy paths to produce lucrative targets for the tanks, artillery and mortar crews, as well as the defending Marines at the outposts.

While the opposing artillery exchange blows and the Marine tanks pound the slopes, the brunt of the fighting remains with the ground Marines, who by this time are heavily engaged and intertwined with the enemy, clashing in hand-to-hand combat at both outposts. The grueling, close-quartered battle continues for about two hours. Supporting "Box-Me-In" fire rivets the area to the front of the respective outposts and provides some added protection, while the Marines revert to hand grenades and bayonets to fend off the intruders. By 0315, the Chinese abort the attacks and retire.

By dawn on the 9th, the Marines again regroup and organize the perimeter in preparation for yet another attack. Reinforcements arrive to augment the outposts. The unsuccessful attempt to seize the Berlin-East Berlin outposts cost the Chinese 30 killed (counted) and an estimated 200 more killed. The estimate of Chinese wounded is 400. The 7th Marines sustain 9 killed, 12 missing and 126 wounded and evacuated. Another 14 Marines sustain minor wounds.

The Chinese, following their defeat, sink back into inactivity for about the next ten days, which permits the Marines to repair the defenses, complete the relief of the 25th Division units still in the zone and initiate active patrols. However, in addition to dealing with the Chinese, the Marines find that another adversary has come back to plague their operations, the spring rains of Korea. Torrential rains had continued without pause during the battle from 5 July through 8 July and more is on the way.

**July 7 1953 (Korea)**-Spring rains continue to disrupt operations all across the front. The storms cause the roads to flood, inflicting extensive damage. On this day, the Spoonbill bridge (formerly X-Ray) in the 1st Marine Division zone becomes submerged under 11 feet of water and it collapses under the pressure. **In the I Corps sector**, at 0300, the 5th Marines, commanded by Colonel Harvey C. Tschirgi, begins to assume responsibility for the eastern half of the MLR when the 3rd Battalion relieves elements of the U.S. 35th Regiment. In the afternoon, the 2nd Battalion and antitank personnel are on line in the western sector of the battalion. Also, at 0445, the 7th Marines, commanded by Colonel Glen C. Funk, assumes responsibility for the right regimental sector. It replaces the 4th Regiment, 25th Division, and the Turkish contingent. In addition, the first elements of the 1st Marines, commanded by Colonel Wallace M. Nelson, deploy near the Imjin River by 1300 and assume responsibility for two bridges there, Spoonbill and Libby.

The view from the Marines' positions is identical to what it had been on 5 May, when the 1st Marine Division had reluctantly moved from the line after having fought to hold the ground. Although the landscape and landmarks remain in place, there is a substantial difference. Three of the outposts held by the Marines are now occupied by the Chinese. In addition, those particular landmark outposts, Carson, Elko and Vegas, had stood in dominant positions to block enemy approaches. In particular, the loss of Vegas now imperils Berlin and East Berlin, which are again defended by the Marines as well as another remaining outpost, Ava. The Chinese, aware of the return of the Marines, choose to launch a strike before the Marines can settle into their positions.

The Communists strike at 2100.

**July 12 1953 (Korea)-** *In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone*, the Marines recently came upon an area that contains a previously unknown minefield. Teams have been working to disarm them, but they are of a new type of Russian-made mine that have both pull and tension fuses. On this date, the uncharted mines cause casualties. Four Marines are killed after accidentally detonating mines and another eight are wounded. **In other activity**, Marine patrols encounter enemy forces. A contingent of the 5th Marines, on a reconnaissance mission near COP Esther, engage in a short fire fight while another patrol (platoon) of the 7th Marines engages an enemy contingent in the vicinity of COP Elko. Other Chinese contingents are detected by elements of the 11th Marines. The Chinese make no major moves against the Marines; however, in the areas controlled by ROK forces, activity is heavy. The Chinese press against the South Koreans at various spots along the center and eastern part of Eighth Army's line.

**July 16 1953 (Korea)-In the 1st Marine Division zone**, similarly to 12 July, Marine patrols encounter Chinese forces near outposts. Chinese propagandists on this day broadcast warnings to the Marines, instructing them not to move from their positions. The warning: "Not to go on patrols or be killed." Just prior to 2300, a 13-man patrol (5th Marines) encounters and engages a force near Hedy, in a brisk exchange that lasts for less than ten minutes. The Marines sustain no casualties. The Chinese sustain one killed and two wounded. At midnight (16th-17th), another 5th Marines contingent from the 2nd Battalion gets snagged in an ambush near enemy-held Hill 90. About 30 to 40 Chinese, deployed in concealed positions with a V formation, catch the 15-man patrol and blast away. The patrol immediately returns fire and calls for reinforcements and artillery support. The two sides clash for about two hours before the Chinese disengage. The Chinese, during the ambush, press repeatedly in an attempt to capture Marines. Seven Marines are unaccounted for when the battle terminates. During the night of the 17th, a patrol moves out and covers the area of the ambush. The patrol discovers six of the seven missing men and retrieves their bodies. The Chinese sustain 10 killed (counted) and an additional estimated nine killed and three wounded.

**July 17 1953 (Korea)-In the United States-** The 3rd Marine Division receives word that it is to prepare to ship out to reinforce the UN command in the Far East.

**July 17 1953 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone**, a patrol from the 7th Marines, one of several Marine contingents dispatched on the night of the 16th, is struck by ambush at 0045, shortly after departing the Ava Gate, located about 250 yards northwest of the main part of the outpost. The 30-man patrol from Company A suddenly comes under attack from three sides when they arrive at the ambush site, but the Marines immediately return fire. The explosive exchange between the patrol and about 40–50 Chinese continues for about fifteen minutes. By 0050, friendly artillery is propelled into the enemy positions and surrounding area. During the fight, while they defend their positions, the Marines lose radio contact, and no reinforcements move from the main body of Company A; however, the Chinese disengage at about 0100. The patrol returns to base, but upon arriving, it discovers that four men from the patrol are not among them. A contingent then moves out to try to locate the missing troops. Three of the missing are located and their bodies are retrieved. Meanwhile, the search for the remaining Marine continues into the daylight hours, assisted by smoke to help protect the searchers, but at 0545, the search is discontinued. The Marines sustain 3 killed, 1 missing and 9 wounded and evacuated. Another two Marines suffer minor wounds.

**July 18 1953 (Korea)- In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the Chinese shift their focus from U.S. Marine positions and probe the 1st Korean Marine Corps Regiment lines (KMC/RCT). The Korean Marines engage in four separate fire fights, all of brief duration. **In the 7th Marines zone,** a night-patrol that moved out on the 17th advances to positions in close proximity to the Chinese trenches at Ungok without being detected. At 0112, the 36-man contingent (Company C) opens the attack, first by firing a white phosphorous grenade straight into a Chinese machine gun position that had been menacing Marine lines to ignite a heated 20-minute fire fight with about 15 Chinese defenders. After striking the machine gun position and taking on the defenders, the Marines move back to the base; however, in an apparent response to the recent broadcasts by the Chinese telling the Marines to remain at their posts or be killed, the Marines leave a message for the Chinese. Before pulling back, the Marines deposit a Marine Corps recruiting poster.

**July 19–20 1953 THE SECOND BATTLE FOR THE BERLIN–EAST BERLIN OUTPOSTS-**The Marines, since their return to the line on 6 July, have worked on building the defenses along the MLR and at the outposts; however, much of the strategic ground in place when the Marines were taken from the line during early May had been surrendered in their absence. Key posts, the Nevada Cities Outposts, remain under Chinese control. The Chinese recently attempted to take ground from the Marines, but the outposts Berlin and East Berlin, following a prolonged fight, remain in Marine hands. At Berlin, a detachment of fewer than fifty men holds the position.

On this day, at 2200, the Chinese unleash a strong attack. A reinforced battalion acts as the component of the first waves. Enemy artillery and mortars soar in the air and pound into both outposts. Marine support units reciprocate and unleash a whirlwind of fire, with some rounds zooming toward the enemy columns. Simultaneously, friendly fire blankets the posts with “Box-Me-In” fire. The enemy bombardment also takes the 3rd Battalion MLR under heavy fire.

Although Berlin and East Berlin appear to be the primary objective, the Chinese also strike against 5th Marine positions at Outposts Ingrid and Dagmar. Both of these outposts also come under heavy artillery, mortar and small arms fire. But, Outpost Dagmar is struck only by troops. The 5th Marines’ contingent at Dagmar repels the assault.

Meanwhile, back at Berlin and East Berlin, by 2230, swarms of enemy ground forces ascend the slopes of the respective outposts against ferocious fire. While the defenders maintain stiff opposition, more Chinese descend from Detroit, Jersey and Hill 139 to the north and converge upon the outposts; however, with only a combined total of 74 Marines and no space for more, the situation becomes more grave for the elements of Company I, who stand alone.

Tanks of Company C bolster the artillery and mortar fire, but still, more Chinese advance. The slopes are permeated with Communists. At Berlin, by 2000, the enemy reaches the halfway point to the crest. Turkish artillery units stream fire into the enemy, too, but the massive shelling is unable to thwart the advance. All the while, the defenders continue to pour fire upon the attackers. By midnight (19th-20th), while the Chinese inch closer, the situation at both outposts moves beyond critical. Soon after, following non-stop fighting at Berlin and East Berlin, the defenders are no longer able to halt the onslaught. At 0146, both outposts are declared lost and under Communist control.

Once again, the Chinese are able to overwhelm slimly garrisoned Marine outposts; however, work begins immediately to take the lost ground back. The artillery and mortar fire, supplemented by the

tanks, intensify the fire and hammer the enemy-held positions while the Marines organize a counterattack. Elements of the 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines (reserve), are placed on 30-minute standby. Meanwhile, Companies D, E and F are under operational control of the 3rd Battalion.

Lieutenant Colonel Paul M. Jones, at 0400, issues an order (Battalion Operation Order 2-53) for an attack to commence at 0730 to retake the outposts. The troops prepare to launch the counterattack, but at 0700, the Marines are ordered by I Corps to abort the attack.

Meanwhile, the Chinese continue to push for more terrain to devalue the bargaining power of the U.N. at the peace talks in Panmunjom. I Corps concludes that the two posts, Berlin and East Berlin, even if retaken by the Marines, cannot hold if the Chinese mount strong attacks to retake them. It is decided this same day to totally devastate both positions with artillery and air power.

The loss of Berlin and East Berlin provides the Chinese with another stepping stone, but a major concern is Hill 119 (Boulder City) to the rear of the Berlin outposts and under the responsibility of the 1st Marine Division. While the artillery and air power spends the day reducing the two hills that contain Berlin and East Berlin, the ground Marines work to bolster Hill 119.

While the artillery and tanks maintain a day-long barrage against Berlin, East Berlin and positions at Vegas, the skies are crowded with air observers who coordinate the attacks. The observation planes remain airborne from 0830 until after dusk. The MAG-12 Marine Squadrons (VMA-12; and VMA-212) streak overhead to deliver their first of nine close-air support strikes at 1145. Nearly 20,000 pounds of bombs are dropped on East Berlin during the initial attack; however, throughout the day, until 1930, Berlin, East Berlin and other enemy-held positions remain under air attack. The 35 participating aircraft drop more than 145,000 pounds of bombs, while the pilots also expend 6,500 rounds of 20-mm ammunition. As the Chinese seek cover from the planes, they are still under attack by the artillery and armor, which maintain a non-stop bombardment.

By dusk, the enemy positions are struck by 3,600 rounds from six battalions under the 11th Marines. More firepower is added by the armor that pummels the enemy with 200 rounds of HE and WP shells, along with 6,170 rounds of machine gun fire. And not to be left out, the 1st 4.5-inch rocket battery sends repeated volleys against the outposts. The once formidable positions at Berlin and East Berlin are reduced to debris, a combination of decimated bunkers and collapsed trenches.

For the outposts that are no longer considered tenable positions, the Marines sustain 6 killed and 56

missing. Another 86 sustain serious wounds and are evacuated, while 32 others are less seriously wounded. The Chinese casualties, estimated by the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, are 75 killed and 300 wounded.

The total strength at Berlin and East Berlin amounted to 81 Marines. Following the battle, it had been determined that the Marine defenders and the supporting units had mauled the enemy so badly that it had become ineffective and that for the Chinese to hold the positions, they would have to bring in another battalion.

The I Corps commander, Lieutenant Bruce C. Clarke, remarks in a letter to the commandant of the Marine Corps, regarding his opinion on Berlin and East Berlin: "The outposts in front of the MLR (main line of resistance) had gradually lost their value in my opinion because, between the MLR and the outposts, minefields, tactical wire, etc. had made their reinforcement and counterattacks very costly ... holding poor real estate for sentimental reasons is a poor excuse for undue casualties."

**July 20 1953 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the 1st Marines initiate relief of the 7th Marines, the latter due off the line on 26 July. The 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines, commanded by Lt. Colonel Frank A. Long, comes under operational control of the 7th Marines. Company F is immediately directed to bolster Hill 119 (Boulder City) due to I Corps' order not to attack to retake Berlin and East Berlin, lost to the Chinese on the night of 19th-20th. As the relief of the 7th Marines begins, the activity against the two surrendered hills is extensive. While artillery and air strikes hammer the enemy positions, the Chinese continue to bombard the Marines' positions.

The Chinese artillery, between 1800 on the 19th and 1800 on the 20th, propel 4,900 artillery and mortar rounds into the sector of the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines. Also, as other elements of the 1st Marines initiate relief, contingents of the 3rd Battalion, led by Lt. Colonel Roy D. Miller, join with the 2nd Battalion to bolster Hill 119 (Boulder City) and Hill 111.

**July 21 1953 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** the front remains relatively quiet since the clash of the 19th-20th, in which the Chinese had gained Berlin-East Berlin. The Marines continue to work to bolster the lines at Hill 119 (Boulder City) and Hill 111. It is believed that the Chinese plan a strike to gain the strongpoints to cut off access to parts of the Imjin River, once the armistice is signed. **In other activity,** at Outposts Hedy and Dagmar, defended by the 5th Marines, preparations are made in anticipation of a full-scale attack by the Chinese, but it does not occur. However, at Hedy, the defenders detect a small group of Chinese, each wearing burlap bags, as they encroach the perimeter. Marine riflemen greet the intruders and three of the Chinese drop suddenly. The remainder of the party hurriedly departs.

**July 23 1953 (Korea)-In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** while the relief of the 7th Marines by the 1st Marines continues, the defenders are deployed in a three-battalion sector rather than the usual two battalion sector. The front line sectors are left, center and right by the 1st Battalion, 7th Marines, 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines, and 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines.

**July 24 1953 (Korea)-BATTLE OF BOULDER CITY OUTPOST In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division zone,** Company G, 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, led by 1st Lieutenant Oral R. Swigaet, Jr., moves into position and relieves Company G, 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, at Hill 119 (Boulder City). Precautions continue to be taken due to an expected assault against Boulder City. At about 1940, soon after enemy troops are detected to the rear of Hill 139, the formation is brought under fire. The forward observers pin the columns, about regiment-strength, at a point about 700 yards northwest of Berlin. Less than one hour later, the enemy artillery erupts, followed by an enemy surge in the right sector of the line.

Hill 111, to the right of Boulder City at the extreme right of the sector, is the first position to be stung by the two-battalion assault. At this time, the 1st Marines are still in the process of relieving the 7th Marines' units there. The enemy pounds against Hill 111, just as Companies H and I, 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines, are exchanging places with Companies H and I, 7th Marines. The enemy, using the blackness of the night and the poor weather, penetrates at Hill 111. The nasty weather prohibits air strikes and the lack of air observers also impedes the artillery. Nonetheless, the defenders at Hill 111 hold, in what turns out to be only a diversion, while the primary objective remains Hill 119. The Chinese disengage slightly before 2130.

Meanwhile, at Boulder City, the defenders have been in a non-stop battle to hold the positions against ever-increasing numbers of Chinese. Following the initial waves that crash into the

positions, other reinforcements continue to flow from East Berlin and the Jersey Ridge, where most of the columns converge upon the Berlin Gate, the most direct path to Hill 119. The targeted hill is held by Company G, 1st Marines. The superior number of enemy troops is unable to collapse the defense, but the Marines' numbers continue to diminish, as the clash remains close-quartered and vicious. The Marines maintain their firing at a rapid pace, but more enemy troops continue to advance.

The beleaguered company is struck by a second powerful assault at 2100. Still, the men of Company G hold the line, despite the fact that their casualties continue to dangerously climb. Friendly artillery opens the spigot and streaks round after round into the charging enemy to stem the tide, but the attackers remain oblivious to the cloudburst that rains steel upon them. To add even more muscle, the 1st 4.5 rocket battery delivers successive blows into the enemy positions.

By about 2200, the entire length of the trench-line (700 yards) becomes a close-quartered shoot out intertwined with hand-to-hand combat. Bayonets, rifle butts and fists rattle the ditches. The Chinese are unable to claim the trenches, but as the conflagration intensifies, Marine casualties soar. Two corpsmen are killed prior to midnight and of the other six with the unit, nearly all are wounded, making it difficult to aid the fallen Marines or evacuate the more seriously wounded.

By midnight (24th-25th) the overwhelming pressure by the Chinese against the perimeter finally forces the line, held by beleaguered Company G, to falter. The left and right flanks are driven back to the reverse slope, yet the Marines refuse to relent. Horrific combat continues by those Marines still standing. The Chinese pour more force against the staggered company and still the Communists are unable to roll them over, despite having inflicted a casualty rate of seventy-five percent.

At about fifteen minutes after midnight, the able-bodied defenders resist as if they have the Chinese outnumbered, and though their ranks have been cut drastically, there is no despair. Word arrives that Company I is en route and about to bolster the line, which brings a thunderous cheer that reverberates through the trench-line.

While Company I speeds to extricate Company G and galvanize the line to extinguish the enemy fire, the unit is struck on the reverse slope of Boulder City by enemy mortar and artillery fire. The Chinese had picked up a coded message in time to swivel some of its gun barrels and pinpoint the Marines' positions, inflicting 35 casualties. Nevertheless, Company I presses forward and joins the surviving defenders to help cut the odds.

In the meantime, the Communists are able to penetrate the ever-thinning frontal position and for a while, they actually gain the crest; however, the Marines, who only recently lost a hill and on the following day, were ordered not to take it back, seem determined to take it right away rather than risk having the Chinese retain it by default.

At 0130, Captain Louis J. Sarror leads Companies G and I in a relentless charge that barges directly into the Chinese and slams them back to begin to re-stabilize the conditions at Hill 119. The Marines strike menacing blows and give no quarter as they plow through the enemy in a dogged two-hour bloodbath. At 0330, the MLR is totally restored to order with the Marines back in control. Sarror's Marines ensure that at dawn, they will not have to launch another counterattack to re-secure the ground. By 0550, Boulder City belongs to the Marines. The victors become ecstatic upon the appearance of four additional platoons, drawn from Company E, 1st Marines, and Company E, 7th Marines.

During the struggle, an outpost guarded by elements of Company F, 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines, comes under a strong attack by about two battalions. The company gets pinned down. While the men try to extricate themselves, Sergeant Ambrosio Guillen attempts to maintain discipline and direct the defense. Guillen is able to rally the troops and they meet the enemy head-on in hand-to-hand combat.

Again Guillen takes responsibility and his Marines pound the Chinese sufficiently to beat them back and cause them to abort the attack. Sergeant Guillen had become seriously wounded during the fight and refused medical attention in order to ensure his men would be the victors. Sergeant Guillen's platoon prevails, but he dies of his wounds. Sergeant Guillen is awarded the Medal of Honor posthumously for his extraordinary leadership, courage and heroism in the face of an overwhelming enemy force.

Meanwhile, Boulder City and Hill 111 had not been the only recipients of the Chinese attacks. The 5th Marines' positions at Esther and Dagmar come under attack at 2115. However, the Chinese, soon after striking both outposts, only give Dagmar a light blow before focusing on Esther. The enemy, like in the 1st Marines' zone, is supported by mortars and artillery. Heavy fighting continues until after midnight and beyond in a tight-fisted, close-quartered raging battle. Company H, the defending unit, is pushed hard by the superior numbered force, estimated at the size of a reinforced battalion. The enemy thrust eventually gains ground in the forward trenches. Nevertheless, the Marines return fire relentlessly and although imperiled, they surrender no ground in either of the rear trenches.

The Chinese maneuver to isolate the Marines at Esther, but to no avail. Long-distance help is accelerated to forestall disaster. The artillery and mortar fire is rapidly increased and several tanks commit their 90-mm rifles against the Communists. In addition, the Chinese still face the Marine riflemen, machine gunners and some testy flamethrowers. By 0640, the Chinese disengage, having failed to seize Esther. The Marines sustain 12 killed and 98 wounded (35 evacuated). The Chinese sustain 85 killed (counted) and an additional 110 estimated killed, along with an estimated 250 wounded.

During the previous night into the morning of the 25th, the Chinese commit 3,000 troops against the outposts. In addition to the Marines on the ground, the several thousand enemy troops are showered with just under 24,000 rounds by the 11th Marines in the same period, between 2200 and 0400. The 11th Marines and ten battalions under its operational control include units of the 25th Division, I Corps and the British 1st Commonwealth Division. The attackers at Esther were the recipients of 7,057 rounds in support of the 5th Marines and 6,668 rounds to bolster the 1st Marines at Boulder City.

The Chinese, however, again make an offensive move in yet another chance to dislodge the Marines and increase their bargaining positions at the peace talks. At 0820, Boulder City (Hill 119) is again struck. The Marines meet the new threat with devastating fire and inflict severe casualties upon the enemy. Still, the Chinese probe and for the balance of the morning into the early afternoon, the opposing sides exchange blows, but at 1335, the last of the Chinese on Boulder City are evicted from the forward slope.

In the meantime, the 1st Marines continue with relief of the 7th Marines. At 1100, Boulder City comes under control of the 1st Marines. At Hill 111, mop-up operations continue as elements of Company H, 1st Marines, and of Company H, 7th Marines, root out remaining enemy troops still

in and around the trench-works. Later, at 1815, the 1st Marines complete relief of Company H, 7th Marines, along the MLR.

As the day winds down, the temporary period of tranquility is again shattered at Hill 119, when the Chinese mount yet another assault at 2130 to reduce the Marine resistance. The 1st Marines and the 7th Marines are each struck by a contingent estimated at two-company strength. They receive instant support fire from the 11th Marines. The artillerymen are joined by the tankers. The combined strength of the ground troops and the support units force the Chinese to abort the assault.

And still, they refuse to quit. Later, at 0130, Boulder City and Hill 111 are again besieged. During this latest attack, the Communists are able to advance in some places to the trenches, but again, only to be driven back out by the persistence of the defenders. By dawn on the 26th, Boulder City complex, including Hill 111, remains under Marine control. The Marines sustain 19 killed and 125 wounded. The Chinese sustain 30 killed (counted) and an additional estimated 84 killed, along with an estimated 310 wounded.

Subsequently, even more enemy contingents attempt to test the lines, but they are each met with riveting fire by Marine riflemen and machine gunners. The effective impenetrable fire halts the Chinese in their tracks. Meanwhile, the Communists realize the armistice is imminent and decide to mount yet another attack in a desperate effort to gain the Boulder City complex to impede U.N. access to the Imjin River. Picking a usual time, at 2130, the Chinese initiate the charge. By this time, the 1st Marines retain responsibility for the area, having completed the transfer at 1330. Marines on the line are led by Captain Esmond E. Harper, commanding officer, Company E, 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines. Harper had assumed command after Major Thurston had been seriously wounded.

The Chinese attack is shattered. Still, they refuse to quit. At a few minutes after midnight (25th-26th), another platoon rushes the defenses and receives the same fate as the former, in what becomes the final assault to take Boulder City. The platoon is handily repulsed. Later, Hill 111 comes under assault when yet another Communist force of about platoon strength barges against its defenses at 0045. The Chinese engage the Marines until about 0205 and after failing to make any gains and receiving a battering blow, the attack is aborted.

This last attack against Hill 111, on 26 July, is the final action of the Marines in Korea. The Chinese make no further attempt to test the mettle of the Marines. The armistice is signed on the following day at Panmunjom.

**July 25 1953-In the United States:** President Eisenhower announces that the 3rd Marine Division (and the 3rd Marine Aircraft Wing), commanded by Major General Robert H. Pepper, is to be sent to the Far East to bolster the forces under General Mark Clark's Far East Command.

**July 27 1953 (Korea)-ARMISTICE** At 1000, in Panmunjom, the Communists and the U.N. representatives sign the armistice to bring an end to the Korean War, often referred to as the Korean Police Action. Lieutenant General William K. Harrison, Jr., signs on behalf of the U.N. Chinese General Nam II signs on behalf of the Communists. Subsequently, General Mark Clark (for the UN), General Kim II (for the North Koreans) and General Peng Teh-Huai (for the Chinese) also sign the papers. The truce becomes effective at 2200. No treaty is ever signed; however, the truce remains in effect. Since the conflict erupted with a Communist invasion of South Korea on 25 June, 1950, the war is finally terminated after three years, two months and two days, but not until 2200. In the meantime, both sides clash throughout the day. *In the I Corps sector, 1st Marine Division*

zone, a message goes around that instructs the Marines, all 26,000, that there shall be “no celebrating fire related in any way to the advent of the armistice.” In addition, no defensive fire is to be commenced after 2145, unless an infantry attack is launched against the positions. Nonetheless, in Korea, it is an awfully long time between 1000 and 2200. Following the fighting at Boulder City, during the early morning hours, the artillery of the 11th Marines remains active. At about dusk, when the Chinese launch a barrage, the 11th Marines return fire rapidly, bringing the total of rounds fired for July to 75,910, including 102 on this day, with the final round being fired at 2135, ten minutes prior to the armistice becoming effective. Also, the Marine squadrons remain active during the final day of combat. The 1st Marine Air Wing executes 202 sorties. The final jet flight of the squadron is flown by Captain William I. Armagost (VMF-311), who lands a devastating blow (four 500-pounders) on a Chinese supply depot at 1835. The final flight is completed by Captain William J. Foster, Jr., who delivers two 2000-pounders against enemy positions at 2135 in support of U.N. troops.

Not to be outdone, at sea off Wonsan, on the final day of the seventeen month siege, U.S. and British naval ships bombard Wonsan. The ships await 2200 and simultaneously turn on their lights. The armistice, which was not assured, occurs at 2200. For about an hour prior to the truce, Chinese troops, who had been conspicuous along their lines, increase in number by about 2100. Many of the enemy troops, apparently having confidence that they wouldn't be picked off, light candles. Others light flashlights and yet others wave banners while they search for their dead and wounded. Some Chinese actually walk up to a Marine outpost and request water while they attempt to strike up a friendly conversation.

Another group of Chinese walks up to outpost Ava and delivers gifts, then invites the Marines to a party. The Marines love a party as much as anyone; however, the Chinese receive no verbal response. The Marines peer intently at the Chinese, but they remain absolutely silent. All the while, the wait continues as the Marines remain skeptical.

A solitary enemy volley of five mortar rounds strikes Korean Outpost Camel at 2152, but no fire is returned. Eight minutes later, while the Marines stand at the ready, scanning the ground to their front, a white cluster shell bursts in the sky, and then another burst is seen, followed by more and then more, until the entire sky that stretches from the Yellow Sea to the Sea of Japan, a distance of 155 miles, is filled with brilliant illumination.

The war ends.

The Marines during the conflict lose 4,262 killed and 26,038 wounded. More than forty Marines become recipients of the Medal of Honor and of those, 26 are posthumous awards. Also, since August 1950, when the first Marine was captured, until the termination of the war, 221 were captured. About 90 percent of the Marine POWs are returned.

**July 28 1953 (Korea)-In the 1st Marine Division zone**, which includes the prisoner release point at Panmunjom, the Marines play a primary role in the exchange of prisoners; however, other responsibilities include the establishment of a new line (Post Armistice Battle Positions). In addition, they are directed to create a “No-Pass Line” at a point about 200 yards short of the boundary of the

Demilitarized Zone. A military demarcation line (MDL) is established between the U.N. and Communist positions, in conjunction with the opposing battle lines at the time the conflict was terminated. The opposing sides each withdraw 2,000 yards to create a 4,000-yard buffer zone.

Although a truce had been signed on the previous day, the Marines remain battle-ready in the event the Chinese attempt to break the truce. Meanwhile, activity at Freedom Village is renewed as the Marines prepare to receive the arriving prisoners (Operation BIG SWITCH).

At Munsan, the former Freedom Village is too small to handle the large amount of expected prisoners, about 400 per day for an entire month. A new receiving center is constructed. Also, the U.N. forces initiate a salvage operation. Outposts and fortifications are reduced and equipment and ammunition is collected and transported back to various depots.

**August 1 1953 (Korea)- In the 3rd Marine Division zone,** the ongoing operation to redeploy at the new main battle position (MBT) located south of the Demilitarized Zone is completed by 0900.

**August 5–September 6 1953-** Operation BIG SWITCH At 0855, five minutes prior to the official designated time for the exchange to commence, three Russian-made jeeps, each transporting one Chinese officer and two North Korean officers, lead a convoy from the Communists' sector of the peace corridor. Following closely, a convoy of trucks and ambulances head for the Provisional Command Receipt and Control contingent at Panmunjom. A large column of rising dust signals the approach of a convoy and alerts the Marine sentinels. Between this day and 6 September, 3,597 U.S.

POWs are returned from captivity. The figure includes 157 Marines (42 officers and 115 enlisted men), of which 28 are aviators. In addition, the figure includes 947 British, 228 Turks, smaller numbers of Australians, Filipinos, Canadians and 7,848 South Koreans.

The U.N., during this time, returns 75,799 POWs (5,640 Chinese and 70,159 North Koreans). The Communists return a total of 12,737 POWs. During the entire conflict, 7,140 Americans had been captured and of these, 4,418 are returned; however, 2,701 succumb while in Communist captivity.

The major difficulty to evolve (besides the behavior of many Communist prisoners as they are repatriated) is caused by South Korean president Syngman Rhee, who refuses to allow any Indian troops to land on South Korean soil. The U.N. had designated the Indian troops responsibility for overseeing the Communist POWs who did not wish to be repatriated. Consequently, the entire contingent (6,000 troops) aboard ships had to be airlifted from carriers off Inchon and transported by helicopter to the Demilitarized Zone. Out of the total number of Americans seized as prisoners, 192 are subsequently found guilty of either misconduct against fellow prisoners or cooperating with the enemy. None were Marines. One Marine is disciplined for cooperating with the enemy, by penning an article for a pro-Communist magazine. Twenty-one Americans (no Marines) and one British soldier defect.

A total of 22,000 Communists refuse repatriation. One other Englishman, a diplomat (George Blake), who was seized in Seoul during 1950, had been won over by the Communists, but he is not immediately discovered. About ten years later, he is found to have become a Russian spy. Most of the American turncoats later return to the U.S.

**August 6 1953- In the United States-**The Marine Corps extends its tours of duty for Marines in Korea from 11 to 14 months.

**August 30 1953 (Korea)-**Although the armistice was signed July 27 between the U.N. and the Communists, the U.S. forces in Korea continue to receive elements of the 3rd Marine Division. Its final contingents arrive in Japan on this day.

**15 January 1954 Taiwan-In Taiwan,** the 3rd Battalion, 4th Marines serve as guards aboard ships

transporting 14,500 Chinese prisoners of war who rejected going back to China after the Korean War. All of them requested citizenship from Nationalist China.

**21 January 1954 (Korea)**- A U.S. landing craft is rammed by a ship transporting 1,000 anti-Communist POWs to Formosa. Company H, 4th Marines and two naval corpsmen drown during the incident.

**13 April-12 May 1954 (SE Asia)**-Pilots attached to Marine Attack Squadron 324, Marine Aircraft Group 12 depart the USS Saipan for Touraine, Indo China to transfer the aircraft to the French. A maintenance unit serves ashore until 10 May.

**6 May-3 October 1954 (North Carolina)**-The 1st Battalion, 6th Marines depart Morehead City, North Carolina to become the landing force of the Sixth Fleet in the Mediterranean.

**June 1954 (Caribbean)**-The 2nd Battalion, 8th Marines are stationed aboard the USS Mellett off Guatemala are positioned to evacuate U.S. nationals and to protect American interests. In conjunction, Castillo Armas is leading an invasion force to overthrow the regime of President Jacobo Arbenz Guzman, which was a Communist sympathizing government.

**June 30 1954 (United States)**-Marine Corps strength stands at 223,868 men including officers.

**July 1954 (Central America)**-Planes of the 2nd Marine Aircraft Wing are ordered to be prepared to land security forces if it becomes necessary.

**12 July-17 July 1954 (Japan)**-The 3rd Marine Division is placed on a 48-hour alert. They are to move to the support of the French in Indo China; however, the order is cancelled on the 17th.

**30 June 1954 (United States)**-Marine Corps strength stands at 223,868 men including officers.

**2 August 1954 (Vietnam)**-The first U.S. Marine, Colonel Victor J. Croizat arrives at Vietnam. He is assigned to the U.S. Military Assistance Advisory Group.

**17-18 August 1954 (Vietnam)**-About 200,000 people are evacuated from Hanoi and Haiphong by the United States. They are taken to South Vietnam.

**11 October 1954 (Vietnam)**-The Viet Minh regime takes control of North Vietnam and makes Hanoi its capital.

**24 October 1954 (Vietnam)**-The president of the U.S., Dwight D. Eisenhower states in a letter to the president of South Vietnam that American assistance would be given directly to South Vietnam rather than the French authorities.

**31 October 1954 (United States)**-At this time, the strength of the U. S. Marine Corps stands at 221,3552 men.

**10 November 1954 (United States)**-The statue of Iwo Jima is dedicated in Arlington, Virginia on the 179th anniversary of the Marine Corps. It is located near Arlington Cemetery across the Potomac River from Washington, D.C. The figures in the statue are 32 feet tall and the flagpole is 60 feet high. All major Marine Corps engagements of the Marine Corps are listed on the base of the statue.

**December 1954 (United States)**-The rank of sergeant major is created to take precedence over the rank of first sergeant. In conjunction, first sergeant is placed above master sergeant.

**20 December 1954 (Korea)**-The 1st Marine Division is ordered to depart Korea for California. An army division based in Japan will replace it.

**1 January 1955 (Vietnam)**-The U.S. initiates direct assistance to South Vietnam.

**7 January-26 May 1955 (Mediterranean)**-The 3rd Battalion, 6th Marines depart Camp Lejeune, N.C., for the Mediterranean to become the landing force of the Sixth Fleet.

**27 January-3 February 1955 (Algeria)**-The 3rd Battalion, 6th Marines take part in a training exercise in Algeria.

**4 February 1955 (Hawaii)**-The 4th Marines (Reinforced) arrives at Okinawa from Japan to initiate its new duty station.

**February 8 1955 (Vietnam)**-The amount of refugees (300,000), 68,000 tons of cargo and about 8,000 vehicles are flown from North Vietnam to South Vietnam by units of the 3rd Marine Division.

**February 12 1955 (Vietnam)**-MAAG (Military Advisory Assistance Group) assumes control over the training of the South Vietnamese army. This follows the French relinquishing their command authority.

**February 19 1955 (Vietnam)**-The Seato (Southeast Asia Collective Defense Treaty) covering Vietnam, Cambodia, and Laos goes into force.

**5 April 1955 (United States)**-General Lemuel C. Shepherd appears before a Congressional subcommittee and states that a cutback in Marine Corps strength from 215,000 to 193,000 would not affect some of the reinforcing combat and logistical units. The House of Representatives passes the cut on 12 May.

**25 May 1955 (Korea)**-The last elements of the 1st Marine Division depart from Korea en route for Camp Pendleton, California.

**31 May 1955 (United States)**-Marine Aircraft Group 33 arrive at El Torro from Far East. The unit had served five years in the Far East.

**2 June 1955 (Okinawa)**-The 9th Marines (Reinforced) transfer from Japan to Okinawa for their new duty station.

**20 June 1955 (United States)**-The U.S. Senate votes to keep the strength of the Marine Corps at 215,000. It had rejected a bill from the House that cut the Marine Corps strength.

**30 June 1955 (United States)**-Marine Corps strength stands at 205,000 men including officers.

**July 1 1955 (Hawaii)**-The 1st Provisional Marine Air/Ground Task Force (4th Marines and MAG 13) assume permanent duty at Kaneohe Bay.

**July 7 1955 (China)**-Red China publicizes that an agreement to aid the North Vietnamese government.

**18 July (Soviet Union) 1955**-The Soviets make public an agreement with North Vietnam.

**18 August 1955 (United States)**-Following Hurricane Diane, helicopters from HMR-261 and 262, plus those out of Quantico, Virginia assist in the evacuation of civilians in Connecticut and Pennsylvania. Marine reserve units assist with the ground operations.

**8 September 1955 (Pacific)**-Lt. General William O. Brice assumes command of Fleet Marine Force, Pacific. He is the first aviator commanding general in ten years.

**10 September 1955 (United States)**-The Marine Corps Team takes the National Trophy Rifle

matches. It wins the National Trophy, the Pershing Trophy, the Daniel Boone Trophy, the Rattle Snake Trophy and the Infantry Trophy.

**17 October 1955 (United States)**-Lt. General Randolph McCall Pate is chosen to succeed General Lemuel C. Shepherd as commandant of the Marine Corps. The command change takes effect on 1 January 1956.

**14 November 1955 (United States)**-Major General Vernon E. Megee is named assistant commandant and chief-of-staff of the U. S. Marine Corps. The change becomes effective in January 1956.

**25 December-27 December 1955 (United States)**-Marine Transport Squadrons 152 and 352 fly from El Torro, California to northern California to deliver clothing, food and medical supplies to the survivors of a flood.

**1 January 1956 (United States)**-Lt. General Randolph McCall Pate becomes the 21st commandant of the Marine Corps. General Lemuel C. Shepherd, the commandant had retired on the previous day.

**6-14 March 1956 Okinawa)**-The 3rd Shore Party Battalion and the 3rd Motor Transport Battalion move from Japan to Okinawa to report their new duty station.

**8 April 1956 (United States)**-At Parris Island, North Carolina an unauthorized disciplinary measure directed by Staff Sergeant Matthew C. McKeon cost the lives of six recruits who drown.

**29 April 1956 (Okinawa)**-The 4th Battalion, 12th Marines departs Japan for its new duty station, Okinawa.

**30 June 1956 (United States)**-At present the Marine Corps strength stands at 200,780 including 17,809 officers.

**5 July 1956 (Korea)**-The 1<sup>st</sup> Marine Air Wing departs Korea for Japan, its new duty base.

**216 July-4 August 1956 (United States)**-The court-martial of Staff Sergeant Matthew C. McKeon is held at Parris Island, North Carolina. McKeown, a drill instructor, is acquitted of charges of manslaughter and oppression of troops, but he is found guilty of negligent homicide and drinking on duty. McKeown marched Platoon 71 into Ribbon Creek a swampy creek with fast currents. The six Marine recruits who died by drowning were: Thomas Curtis Hardeman, 20, of Vidalia, Ga.; Charles Francis Reilly, 18, of Clyde, N.Y.; Jerry Lamonte Thomas, 17, of Alexandria, Va., Leroy Thompson, 18 of Brooklyn, N.Y.; Norman Alfred Wood, 17, of Bay Shore, N.Y.; and Donald Francis O'Shea, 18, of Brooklyn, N.Y. Sgt. McKeonis to be reduced to private and given a dishonorable discharge, but the ruling is objected to by a higher command and McKeon is reduced to a private and able to stay in the Corps.

**22 August 1956 (United States)**-The 3rd Battalion, 2nd Marines depart Camp LeJeune, North Carolina to become the landing force for the Sixth Fleet in the Mediterranean.

**29 October 1956-30 January 1957-(Morocco)**-The Marines of Company E, 2<sup>nd</sup> Marines is flown to Port Lyautey, Morocco to reinforce the Naval Air Station during a period of turbulence between the Moroccans and the French.

**1-2 November 1956 (Egypt and Gaza)**-Battalion Landing Team 3/2 the Nelm battalion afloat with the Sixth Fleet evacuates more than 1,500 people, primarily U.S. nationals from Alexandria, Egypt. They also evacuate United Nations personnel from Gaza, Haifa.

**February 1 1957 (United States)**-Twenty-nine Palms in California is activated as a Marine Corps base. It is commanded by Brigadier General Thomas G. McFarland.

**14 February 1957 (Indonesia)**-The 3rd Marines bolstered by Marine Helicopter Transport Squadron 162 takes up station 550 miles northeast of Sumatra in the event they are needed to intervene to protect U.S. nationals during the Indonesian revolt.

**13 March 1957 (Okinawa)**-The 1st Battalion, 12th Marines depart Japan for Okinawa and arrive there to report for duty.

**17 March 1957 (Philippines)**-Choppers attached to Marine Light Helicopter Squadron 162 support evacuation operations after a flight carrying Philippine President Ramon Magsay and twenty-four others crashed on a flight from Cebu to Manila. President Magsay is killed.

**26-30 April 1957 (United States)**-Company D, 2nd Battalion, 2nd Marines is put on alert. They are to fly to Amman, Jordan to protect American interests there, but they are not deployed.

**18 May 1 October 1957 (Morocco)**-Company D, 2nd Battalion, 2nd Marines lands at Port Lyautey, Morocco to relieve Company H, 3rd Battalion, 6th Marines.

**19 June 1957 (United States)**-The 1st Reconnaissance Company is established at Camp Pendleton by re-designating the 1st Amphibious Reconnaissance Company.

**30 June 1957 (United States)**-Marine Corps strength at this time stands at 200,861 men including officers.

**10 July 1957 (United States)**-A Marine guard composed of 2 officers and 61 enlisted men is activated. The men will serve aboard the USS Ranger (CVA-64).

**16 July 1957 (United States)**-Major John H. Glenn, USMC, breaks the transcontinental speed record. He flew to Floyd Bennett Field, New York from Los Alamitos, California in three hours and 23 minutes in a crusader plane.

**30 August 1957 (United States)**-The 6th Marines (reinforced) depart Morehead City, North Carolina to serve with the U.S. 6th Fleet (Mediterranean). The 1st Battalion, 6<sup>th</sup> Marines stays with the fleet until 6 February 1958.

**24 September 1957 (Okinawa)**-The 3rd Tank Battalion transfers from Japan to Okinawa, its new duty station.

**16 October 1957 (United States)**-Marines attached to HMR (L)-162 aid flood victims at Valencia, Spain. The helicopters take off from the USS Lake Champlain to evacuate victims and deliver supplies.

**1 December 1957 (United States)**-The Assistant Commandant and Chief-of-Staff are separated into two different positions. Both are held by Lt. Generals.

**8 December 1957 (Indonesia)**-The 3rd Marine Division is put on alert for the purpose of evacuating U.S. nationals from Indonesia.

**18 December 1957-6 January 1958 (Southeast Asia)**-The 1st Marine Expeditionary Force is deployed to Indonesia to protect U.S. interests.

**26 December 1957 (Ceylon)**-The USS Princeton carries 20 helicopters that were scheduled to move to Indonesia, but orders arrive for the ship to change course and go to Ceylon to aid flood victims.

**31 December 1957 (Japan)**- The Marines assume command of Naval Air Station Iwakuni.

**10 January-5 October 1958 (Mediterranean)**-Battalion Landing Team 1/8 based at Camp Lejeune, North Carolina departs to join the Sixth Fleet as Landing Force Mediterranean.

**16 January 1958 (Okinawa)**-The 3rd Anti-Tank Battalion is activated at Camp Hansen.

**21-28 January 1958 (Venezuela)**-The USS Des Moines embarks from Cuba transporting a provisional company drawn from Marine Barracks, Guantanamo, Cuba to protect U.S. interests. At the time, there is a move to overthrow the dictator, President Perez Jimenez. The Marines remain off Venezuela but they do not land.

**14 February 1958 (United States)**-At Scranton, Pennsylvania, the 6th Truck Company, USMCR supported the rescue operations on the Pennsylvania Turnpike, caused by a severe blizzard.

**9-30 March 1958 (Indonesia)**-The Marines (Company C, 1st Battalion, 3rd Marines, Marine Light Helicopter Squadron 163, elements of VMO-2 and units of the 7th Fleet) are ferried off the coast of Indonesia where they remain in the event they are needed to protect U.S. interests.

**23 April 1958 (United States)**-The commandant, General Randolph McCall Pate orders the creation of 12 Marine air reserve helicopter squadrons so they can train in the new vertical assault combat doctrine of the regular corps.

**25 April 1958 (United States)**-Marines (Company M, 2nd Battalion, 2nd Marines) assist in fighting fires which burned nearly 10,000 acres in Hyde County, North Carolina.

**1 May-17 October 1958 (Mediterranean)**-Battalion Landing Team 2/2 (Reinforced) and Marine Light Helicopter Squadron 262 depart Camp LeJeune, North Carolina to act as Landing Force Mediterranean.

**13 May 1958 (Venezuela)**-A naval task force including the 1st Battalion, 6th Marines (Reinforced), and elements of MAG-26 stand off Venezuela to protect President Nixon and those accompanying him.

**14 May 1958 (Mediterranean)**-The situation is deteriorating in Lebanon. The 1st Battalion, 8th Marines is supposed to be relieved by the 2nd Battalion, 2nd Marines as the Landing Force Mediterranean, but instead, both battalions are to remain in the region.

**26 June-15 December 1958 (Mediterranean)**-The 3/6 (Reinforced) and one detachment of Marine Light Helicopter Squadron 262, are deployed as the Landing Force Mediterranean.

**27 June-18 July 1958 (Cuba)**-Cuban rebel forces capture a group of sailors and Marines while they are returning from liberty. They are detained in the hills until released.

**30 June 1958 (United States)**-Marine Corps strength at this time stands at 189,495 men including officers.

**1 July 1958 (United States)**-The Marines close the Miami Marine Corps Air Station.

**12 July 1958 (United States)**-Marine (1,500) from Camp Pendleton join with Forest Service personnel to fight brush fires in the Cleveland National Forest in California.

**14-15 July 1958 (Lebanon)**- The turmoil in Lebanon began when President Nasser became president of Egypt in 1954. He made an arms deal with the Soviets and soon after, the Syrians did the same. Meanwhile Iraq and Jordan sided with the Western powers. During July 1956, President Nasser nationalized the Suez Canal and France, Great Britain, and Israel fielded an expeditionary

force to retake the canal, but the U.S. and the U.N. prevented action to be taken. Lebanon, with its divided population of Moslems and Christians tries to stay neutral but it can not. On the 14th of July, the president of Lebanon, Camille Chamoun, urgently requests the U.S. and Great Britain to send troops within 48 hours to halt Syrian infiltrators and to prevent strife between Moslems and Christians. On the same day. President Eisenhower orders three reinforced battalions (2nd Marine Division) with the 6th Fleet into Lebanon. On the following day, the 2nd Battalion, 2nd Marines commanded by Colonel Harry Hadd lands at Beirut. In conjunction, Brigadier General Sydney S. Wade, USMC is named commander. The 2nd Battalion, 8th Marines (800 men) are airlifted from Cherry Point, N.C. in 26 transport planes on the 15th. Also, the 2nd Marine Division (-) at Camp Lejeune is alerted for a move to Beirut, but it does not deploy.

**16-19 July 1958 (Lebanon)**-The 3rd Battalion, 6th Marines aboard the LSD Fort Sterling, lands at Beirut on the 16th. They are directed by General Wade to move into Beirut, but Ambassador McClintock and General Fouad Chehab are fearful that the Lebanon army might try to stop them. The ambassador requests that Wade stop the Marines from entering the city, but General Wade refused. Afterward, the ambassador and President Chamoun confer with General; Wade ans soon after the Marines had permisssion to enter Beirut. At 1100, the Marines move directly into the city and halt in the front of the Lebanon Army units which had been blocking the road about one mile from the airport. The lead vehicles in the convoy are objects of the Lebanese guns, but the ambassador takes the lead in his car and the convoy presses on without interruption. The Lebanese Army begins to cooperate with the Marines as time passes. Two days later, Battalion Landing Team 1/8 lands. On the 19th, an army reinforcing element (24th Airborne Brigade), commanded by Brigadier General Gray USA. By 23 October, a new government is established and the final U.S. troops depart Lebanon.

**19 July-15 August 1958 (Lebanon)**-Landing Team 2/8 (-) and Marine Squadron 252 land in Lebanon. They were baased at Camp Lejeune and Cherry Point, N.C.

21 July 1957 (Lebanon)-Battalion Landing Team 3/3 is deployed from Okinawa to Lebanon, however, it does not land.

**26 July 1958 (Lebanon)**-Major General Paul DeWitt Adams relieves Brigadier General Sydney S. Wade as Commander American Land Forces.

**July-October 1958 (Lebanon)**-Marines who landed in Lebanon in July and moved into Beirut. Patrols were instituted on a daily basis and on one particular day, the jeep and its Marines were captured and taken into their neighborhood around the Basta (Moslem section of Beirut). Ambassador Robert McClintock commandeers a tank and has it park with its turret pointed directly into the Basta. An interpreter, with the tank and using a loudspeaker, made it clear that unless the jeep, weapons and Marines were immediately returned, the tank would fire beginning in three minutes.

The Marines and their jeep were released in three minutes. Cat Brown, the admiral of the 5th Fleet was taken back, as the use of a tank would have been the last thing he would have used. Reportedly, he inquired of the ambassador if he would have ordered the tank to fire into the Basta and he received the reply, "Of course."

Another incident that occurred was the commandeering of a ship at the request of Ambassador McClintock. The ship then proceeded to Tripoli to rescue missionaries. The captain was unfamiliar with the route and when he approached Tripoli, the ship dropped its anchor. On shore, light were

blinking. The lights belonged to cars that were owned by the missionaries, about twelve of them. The missionaries requested to go back with the ship, but they admitted that others had driven the distance. They said there was no danger in making the trip,

**14 August 1958 (Lebanon)**-The 2nd Battalion, 2nd Marines is withdrawn from Lebanon due to the reduction of tension in the region. However, the battalion remains in the Mediterranean as part of the 6th Fleet's landing force until it can be relieved by another Landing Team.

**8 September 1958 (Taiwan)**-Marine Aircraft Group 11 moves its base of operations from Japan to Taiwan as the Chinese Communists who have begun a bombardment of Quemoy and Little Quemoy in the harbor of Amoy.

**10 September-17 December 1958(Mediterranean)**-The 2nd Battalion 6th Marines (Reinforced) and Headquarters 6th Marines transfer from Camp Lejeune to the 6th Fleet to support the landing force in the Mediterranean.

**15 September 1958 (Lebanon)**-The 1st and 2nd Battalions, 8th Marines are withdrawn from Lebanon. They return to the U.S.

**29 September 1958 (Lebanon)**-RLT-6 (BLT 2/6 and a regimental headquarters staff) is debarked at Beirut, Lebanon.

**30 September 1958 (Lebanon)**-The final Marine of BLT 3/6 boards ship and the RLT staff completes the relief of Brigadier General Wade's staff. This allows the Marines to return to the States after nearly spending three months in the Mediterranean.

**9 October 1958 (United States)**-The 9th Motor Transport Battalion departs Camp Pendleton for Okinawa to report for duty with the 3rd Marine Division.

**15 October-3 November 1958 (United States)**-Marine Attack Squadron 211 deploys at the Naval Air Station at Leeward Point, Cuba. The squadron was at Beaufort, N.C.

**18 October 1958 (Lebanon)**-BLT-6 departs Lebanon.

**30 October-6 December 1958 Cuba)**-Marine BLT-6 departs Lebanon.

**2 December 1958 (United States)**-A forest fire breaks out in the vicinity of Malibu, California. About 650 Marines (2nd Battalion, 8th Marines) from Camp Pendleton, California aid the firefighters.

**6 December 1958 (United States)**-About 64 Marines (3rd Battalion, 8th Marines) help fight a fire in near Pungo Lake, North Carolina. 3,000 acres on of California.

**14 December 1958 (United States)**-About 700 Marines (2nd Infantry Training Regiment) at Camp Pendleton assist in fighting a fire in the San Juan Capistrano area of California.

**30 December 1958 (United States)**-Marine Corps strength at this time stands at 187,741 men, including officers.

**1 January 1959 (United States)**-Marines attached to the 1st Battalion, 1st Marines and Marines (1st Force Service Regiment) assist local firefighters in fighting fires in the Topanga Canyon region located about ten miles north of Santa Monica, California. Also, the Marine Corps Auxiliary Air Station in Edenton, N. C. is deactivated. In other activity, the Marines declare Cuban territory off limits. They increase the security of the fences to the U.S. Naval Station at Guantanamo. Also the

rank of lance corporal is made a permanent rank and the ranks of Gunnery Sergeant and Master Sergeant are revived.

**12 February 1959 (Caribbean)**-The Marine Corps training camp at Vieques, Puerto Rico is named for 1st Class Fernando Luis Garcia (Medal of Honor recipient) who was born in Puerto Rico.

**25 February-23 August 1959 (Mediterranean)**-Marine (Battalion Landing Team 3/2) attached to Camp Lejeune moves to the 6th Fleet to report for duty as Landing Force Mediterranean.

**10 April 1959 (United States)**-Marine Lt. Colonel John B. Glenn is chosen for space training. He is one of seven pilots chosen.

**4 May 1959 (USMC)**-Two A4D skyhawk attack bombers of 2nd Marine Air Wing fly non-stop from Argentina, Newfoundland to Rota, Spain a distance of 2,270 miles. It is the first time single-engine jets to move across the ocean using the “buddy system” of in-flight refueling.

**8 May 1959 (United States)**-Elements of the 8th Marines assist the North Carolina Forest Service in fighting a fire in Camden County.

**19 May-4 June 1959 (United States)**-The Battalion Landing Team 1/2 and Marine Light Helicopter Squadron 262 are both put on alert for movement to Berlin, but they do not deploy.

**3 June 1959 (United States)**-The 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines (Reinforced) depart Camp Pendleton for duty as the replacement element of the 3rd Division (Okinawa).

**14 June 1959 (United States)**-About 100 plus Marines from 2nd and 6th Marines aid the North Carolina Forestry personnel in fighting a fire in Camp Lejeune.

**30 June 1959 (United States)**-Marine Corps strength at this time stands at 175,571, including officers.

**July 1959 (Cuba)**-Fidel Castro declares himself in favor of the Marxist government. He begins to jail and execute the Cuban people.

**6 July 1959 (Okinawa-Japan)**-The Marines publicize the opening of a Marine Corps air facility at Futema, Okinawa on or about the first of the year. Marine planes and helicopters will move from Oppama, Japan to the new location.

**30 July 1959-8 February 1960 (Mediterranean)**-Battalion Landing Force 3rd Battalion, 8th Marines and Marine Attack Squadron 225, and a unit of Marine Light Helicopter Squadron 262 attached to Camp Lejeune, Cherry Point and New River, North Carolina deploy as Landing Marine Force Mediterranean.

**12 August 1959 (United States)**-General Randolph McCall Pate is to be replaced as commandant by Major General David M. Shoup, effective 1 January 1960.

**20 August 1959 (Okinawa)**-The 1st Battalion, 5th Marines (Reinforced) depart Camp Pendleton to become a replacement battalion of the 3rd Marine Division.

**5 September 1959 (SE Asia)**-The 3rd Marine Expeditionary Force (9th Marines (Reinforced) and part of MAG 16) depart Okinawa to become the 7th Fleet’s Landing Force.

**10 September 1959 (United States)**-The title Marine Gunner is retained by those Marines who hold the title, but otherwise it is eliminated.

**2 November 1959 (Okinawa)**-The 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines (Reinforced) departs Camp Pendleton en route to Okinawa to become a replacement battalion of the 3rd Marine Division.

**5 November 1959 (United States)**-The 5th Marines (About 200) aid the Camp Pendleton firemen forest service personnel and others in fighting a fire in the Roblan Canyon of the Cleveland National Forest, California.

**20 November 1959 (United States)**-About 300 Marines attached to the 1st Infantry Training Battalion, 5th Marines and the 7th Marines from Camp Pendleton, California aid civilian firefighters in fighting fires in Las Pulgas and Alisco Canyon in California.

**20 November 1959-15 February 1960 (Cuba)**-Marines, about 100, stationed at Camp Lejeune disembark at Guantanamo Bay to reinforce the troops already at the Naval Base.

**1 December 1959 (Okinawa)**-Marine Headquarters announces that it will activate a Marine Barracks on or about 4 January 1961. It will be posted at the naval facility, Naha, Okinawa and will include 3 officers and 52 enlisted Marines.

**31 December 1959 (United States)**-General Commandant Randolph McCall Pate retires. He is succeeded by Lt. General David M. Shoup, effective 1/1/ 1960.

**13-14 January 1960 (Mediterranean)**-At Camp Lejeune and Cherry Point, North Carolina, respectively, Battalion Landing Team 1/6 and a detachment of Light Helicopter Squadron 262 deploy to the 6th Fleet to become Landing Force Mediterranean.

**21 January 1960 (United States)**-Helicopters (MAG-26) assist in the recovery of the nose cone of the 4th space shot of Project Me from Wallops Island, Virginia.

**30 January 1960 (Okinawa)**-The 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines depart Camp Pendleton and become a replacement battalion of the 3rd Marine Division.

**10 February 1960 (Cuba)**-Marine Fighter Squadron 122, based at Beaufort, South Carolina deploys at Leeward Point, Cuba.

**12 February-10 March 1960 (Cuba)**-Marine Squadron 312, based at Beaufort, S.C., deploy at the naval air station at Leeward Point, Cuba.

**15 February 1960 (Okinawa)**-The fifth transplacement battalion, 3/5 aboard the USS General J. C. Breckinridge disembark at Okinawa.

**1 March 1960 (Morocco)**-Marines (Marine Barracks, Port Lyautey) support the relief operations subsequent to an earthquake at Agadir.

**April 1960 (United States)**-The Marine Corps is the first branch of the Armed Forces to have a helicopter-carried electronic air defense system, which will fire split-second Terrier and Hawk guided missile batteries.

**1 April 1960 (Okinawa)**-The 1st Battalion, 7th Marines departs Camp Pendleton to act as a transplacement battalion for the 1st Battalion, 1st Marines of the 3rd Marine Division.

**2 May 1960 (United States)**-The Marine Corps activates the 1st Light Antiaircraft Missile Battalion at 29 Palms, California.

**5 May 1960 (Vietnam)**-The U.S. announce that the military assistance and advisory group is to be increased by the end of the year. It will go from 327 to 685 members.

**17 May-29 November 1960 (Mediterranean)**-The 1st Battalion, 8th Marines (Reinforced) becomes the Landing Force of the 6th Fleet. The battalion is supported by Sub Unit 1 Marine Light Helicopter Squadron 262 and Marine Attack Squadron 224 from Camp Lejeune, Cherry Point And

New River, North Carolina respectively.

**10 June 1960 (Japan)**-Ambassador Douglas MacArthur II (Nephew of General Douglas MacArthur), and White House Press Secretary James C. Haggerty are besieged by people who throw stones at them for about one hour. They are saved by a Marine Corps helicopter who swoops in and rescues them from their car.

**21 June 1960 (Okinawa)**-The 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines embark for Okinawa. The battalion is to replace the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines.

**30 June 1960 (United States)**-Marine Corps strength at this time stands at 170,621 including officers.

**9 July 1960 (Africa)**-A detachment of Marine Light Helicopter Squadron 261 accompanies Company L, 3rd Battalion, 2nd Marine aboard the USS Wasp deploy in the Congo.

**16 July 1960 (Okinawa)**-The 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines aboard the USS Henrico disembark at Okinawa to replace the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines.

**9 August-12 September 1960 (Cuba)**-Marine Attack Squadron 225 deploys at Leeward Point's Naval Station.

**2 September 1960 (Okinawa)**-The 1st Battalion, 1st Marines (Reinforced) departs Camp Pendleton, California to become a replacement battalion of the 3rd Marine Division.

**2 October-28 November 1960 (SE Asia)**-Battalion Landing Team 3/5 and a unit of Marine Helicopter Squadron 163 based in Okinawa deploy as the Afloat Landing Force of the 7th Fleet.

**12 October 1960 (Okinawa)**-Sub Unit 1 (1st Force Reconnaissance Company) is activated at Camp Pendleton. It will embark for Okinawa in five weeks to become part of the 3rd Marine Division.

**2 November 1960-17 June 1961 (Mediterranean)**-Battalion Landing Team 1/2 (Reinforced) and a helicopter unit attached to HMR-262 from Camp Lejeune are deployed with the 6th Fleet as Landing Force Mediterranean.

**15 November 1960 (United States)**-At Cherry Point, N.C. the 24th Marine Expeditionary Force is organized. It is composed of a battalion of infantry drawn from the 2nd Marine Division and a Provisional MAG (light helicopter transport squadron and an ordnance-laden attack or fighter section).

**19 November 1960 (Okinawa)**-The 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines (Reinforced) departs Camp Pendleton, California en route for Okinawa to become a replacement battalion of the 3rd Marine Division.

**December 1960 (USMC)**-The Marines provide security guards for 93 embassies consulates and legations.

**2 December 1960 (Okinawa)**-The 1st Battalion, 9th Marines depart Sukiran, Okinawa for duty aboard the 7th Fleet.

**2-9 December 1960**-Battalion Landing Team 3/2 (3rd Battalion, 2nd Marines) are alerted at Camp Lejeune for movement to Guantanamo Bay, Cuba.

**11 December 1960 (Okinawa)**-The USS McGoffin delivers elements of the 2nd Battalion, 9th Marines to Okinawa. The battalion is to replace the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines.

**23 December 1960-** The first Marine Corps F8U-2N supersonic aircraft (crusader) is delivered to El Torro and released to VMF-334.

**3 January 1961 (United States)-**The U.S. ends diplomatic relations with Cuba. Other following day, President Eisenhower makes it clear that there will be no changes of the naval air station at Guantanamo Bay.

**18 January 1961 (United States)-**The Marines appoint Sergeant Major Bertha L. Peters, the first woman to the top non-commissioned officer post of sergeant major.

**20 January 1961 (United States)-**The 2nd Battalion, 8th Marines accompanied by a 150-women Company and the Marine Band and Drum and Bugle Corps participate in the inaugural parade for President John F. Kennedy. **Also**, about 400 Marines attached to the 1st Marine Division support civilian firefighters fight fires in southern Orange County.

**31 January 1961 (Vietnam)-**Marine active duty strength for the women Marines stands at 1,496 enlisted women and 124 officers.

**31 January-15 May 1961-**Marine Attack Squadron 225 is deployed aboard the USS Shangri-La (CVA-38) as part of the 6th Fleet's Landing Force Mediterranean. It is the first 2nd MAW squadron to be supplied with the new A4D-2N planes.

**1-8 February 1961 (Okinawa)-**The 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines (Reinforced) depart Camp Pendleton to become a replacement battalion of the 3rd Marine Division on Okinawa.

**1 February 1961 (Africa)-**HMR(L)-264 (Sub-Unit 1) aboard the USS Hermitage participate in the evacuation of U.N. troops (Guineans) from Matadi, Congo. The U.N. troops depart on 2 February en route to Conakry, Guinea aboard the LSD-34 and arrive at the destination on 8 February.

**7 February 1961 (Okinawa)-**The 3rd Battalion, 9th Marines (Reinforced) and HMR-163 depart Okinawa to join the 7th Fleet's Landing Force in the waters of the Far East.

**1 March 1961 (USMC)-**The 3rd Marine Aircraft Wing's VMR-352 becomes the first Marine Corp's in-flight refueling squadron as it receives its initial GV-1 Hercules areal tanker.

**18 March 1961 (Japan)-**The first Marine Corps squadron (VMA-311) to fly jet planes in combat leaves its base at El Torro, California to join the 1st Marine Air Wing in Japan.

**12 April 1961 (Mediterranean)-**The Headquarters, 16th Marine Expeditionary Brigade and BLT 3/6 attached to Camp Lejeune, N. C. deploy with the 6th Fleet to become the Landing Force Mediterranean.

**14 April 1961 (Okinawa)-**The 1st Battalion, 5th Marines (Reinforced) depart Camp Pendleton, California en route to Okinawa to become a replacement battalion of the 3rd Marine Division.

**17 April 1961 (Cuba)-**An invasion of Cuba takes place by anti-Fidel Castro. It failed and is known as The Bay of Pigs Invasion. Security is tightened at the naval air station at Guantanamo.

**30 April 1961 (United States)-**At El Torro, California, VMS-343 is deactivated.

**3 May 1961 (Okinawa)-**The 1st Battalion, 9th Marines departs Okinawa aboard the USS Breckinridge. It arrives in San Diego on 18 May.

**5 May 1961 (United States)-**President John F. Kennedy, while speaking at a press conference, states that U.S. armed forces will be sent to South Vietnam if it become necessary to support South Vietnam forces resist Communist aggression. **Also**, 1st Lieutenants Wayne E. Koons (Pilot) and

George F. Fox (Co-pilot) retrieve Astronaut Commander, Alan B. Shepherd and his capsule. They place him and the capsule on the deck of the USS Lake Champlain.

**15 May-12 June 1961 (SE Asia)**-Battalion Landing Team 3/9 and Marine Light Helicopter Squadron 162 deploys as the Special Afloat Landing Force of the 7th Fleet.

**12 June 1961 (United States)**-President John F. Kennedy proclaims that the U.S. flag would be flown day and night at the Iwo Jima Memorial outside Arlington Cemetery in Arlington, Virginia. Also, Battalion Landing Team 1/3 is deployed as Special Afloat Landing Force of the 7th Fleet.

**19 June 1961 (Okinawa)**-The 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines (Reinforced) depart from Camp Pendleton, California en route to Okinawa to become a transplacement battalion of the 3rd Marine Division.

**30 June 1961 (United States)**-Marine Corps strength at this time stands at 176,909 including officers.

**13 July 1961 (Okinawa)**-The 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines aboard the USS Pickaway arrive in Okinawa to replace the 2nd Battalion, 9th Marines. On the following day, the 2nd Battalion, 9th Marines depart for home.

**31 July 1961 (United States)**-General Randolph McCall Pate (21st Commandant) dies.

**1 August 1961 (United States)**-Marine Helicopter Squadron 362, which departed from El Torro in July arrives in Okinawa to join MAG -16 for duty in the Far East.

**2 August 1961 (United States)**-President John F. Kennedy makes it clear that the U.S. will do everything it can to save South Vietnam from the Communists.

**10 August 1961 (SE Asia)**-The 2nd Battalion, 3rd Marines (Reinforced) departs Okinawa and joins HMR-261 as the landing force of the 7th Fleet.

**16 August 1961 (Okinawa)**-The 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines (Reinforced) departs Camp Pendleton to become a transplacement battalion of the 3rd Marine Division.

**18 August 1961 (East Germany)**-The East German construct a 5-foot high concrete barrier at the East-West border crossing in Berlin at the Potsdam Platz. The wall is continued and topped with barbed wire. It becomes known as the Berlin Wall.

**1 September 1961 (United States)**-At Santa Anna, California Marine Helicopter Squadron 364 is activated.

**12 September 1961**-Hurricane Carla had struck Texas and Louisiana. Marines, about 400, attached to the 2nd Marine Division and MAG-26 assisted in rescue operations. **Also**, the 3rd Battalion, 2nd Marine (Reinforced) departs Morehead City, N.C. and becomes the landing force of the 6th Fleet in the Mediterranean.

**18 September 1961 (United States)**-The USS General J. C. Breckinridge arrives in San Diego, California bringing about 1,100 Marines (BLT-3/5) to end their tour in the Far East.

**2 October 1961 ((Okinawa))**-The 3rd Battalion, 3rd Marines departs from Okinawa to join the 7th Fleet as the landing force in the Far East.

**11-13 October 1961 (Mediterranean)**-BLT 3/6 arrives back at Camp Lejeune following its tour of duty as the landing force of the 6th Fleet.

**16 October 1961 (Okinawa)**-The 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines (Reinforced) departs Camp Pendleton to become a transplacement battalion of the 3rd Marine Division.

**25 October-5 November 1961 (Hawaii)**-The first major amphibious landing since WWII on the island of Maui takes place.

**1 November 1961 (United States)**-Marine Aircraft Group 31 is reactivated at the Marine Corps Air Station in Beaufort, S. C.

**1-17 November 1961 (Central America)**-Marines attached to HMR-264 (MAG-26) on the USS *Antietam* (aircraft carrier) support the victims of Hurricane Hattie after it hit British Honduras.

**28 November 1961 (Mediterranean)**-The 2nd Battalion, 2nd Marines (Reinforced) depart Morehead City, N. C. en route to join the 6th Fleet as the landing force Mediterranean.

**November 1961 (Dominican Republic)**-The Marines, ordered to the vicinity of the Dominican Republic to discourage a coup de etat by the followers of Raphael Trujillo.

**1 December 1961 (Cuba)**-Fidel Castro declares that he is a Marxist-Leninist.

**11 December 1961 (Vietnam)**-Two helicopter squadrons (U.S. Army) arrive in South Vietnam. It is in response to a visit by Vice President Lyndon Johnson visit to the country in the spring of 1961. **31 December 1961**-Marine Corps strength at this time stands at 190,708.

**17 January 1962 (United States)**-The 3rd Battalion, 8th Marines (Reinforced) departs from Morehead, N. C. To join the 6th Fleet as the landing force Mediterranean.

**24 January 1962 (Okinawa)**-The 3rd Battalion, 3rd Marines embarks from Okinawa heading for Camp Pendleton, as it ends its tour of a transplacement battalion. The battalion, before it embarked, traded colors with the 1st Battalion, 1st Marines which arrived aboard the USS *Mitchell*.

**February 1962 (Vietnam)**-Snipers began to focus on the U.S. advisors with the South Vietnamese armed forces. The president (John F. Kennedy) had authorized the advisors to return fire.

**5 February 1962 (USMC)**-Captain L. K. Keck USMC and Lt. R. W. Crafton, U.S. Navy fly a Sikorski SH3A jet-powered helicopter at a speed of 210.6 miles per hour over a 19 kilometer course to set a world record.

**6 February 1962 (Mediterranean)**-BLT 3/8 begins duty as the landing force of the 6th Fleet at Porto Scudo, Sardinia. The battalion relieves BLT-3/2.

**8 February 1962 (Vietnam)**-The U.S. Military Assistance Command, Vietnam commanded by General Paul D. Harkins USA is established. It has a mission to support the Republic of Vietnam's military effort and to assist in the economic development and the political situation of the republic. Also, the U.S. Army's Ryukyus Islands Support Group (Provisional) is organized to provide logistical and administrative to the units presently in South Vietnam.

**20 February 1962 (United States)**-Lt. Col. John H. Glenn Jr., USMC orbits the world three times in the first manned American space capsule.

**21 February 1962 (Mediterranean)**-The 3rd Battalion, 2nd Marines (Reinforced) arrives at Camp Lejeune from the 6th Fleet in the Mediterranean.

**28 February 1962 (Caribbean)**-About 1,600 troops of the 2nd Battalion(Reinforced), 8th Marines depart Morehead City, North Carolina en route to the Mediterranean. The unit becomes the ground element of the 34th Marine Expeditionary Unit.

**8 March 1962 (United States)**-Helicopters of Marine Medium Helicopter Squadron 263 is involved with the rescue operations in the Outer Banks of North Carolina subsequent to a nasty storm.

**10 March 1962 ((Okinawa))**-The 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines (Reinforced) depart Camp Pendleton en route to Okinawa to become a transplacement battalion (1/9) for the 3rd Marine Division.

**4 April 1962 (United States)**-The 2nd Marine Division helps civilian firefighters when about 400 Marines from the division battle fires in the vicinity of Jacksonville, North Carolina.

**9 April 1962 (Vietnam)**-Marines begin landing in the republic of South Vietnam. Aviation units (Marine Task Unit 79.3.5) fly into Soc Trang an abandoned airstrip in Viet Cong territory. The unit is to provide support for the Army of the Republic of Vietnam. Also, Force in Readiness, narrated by Jack Webb, is a Marine Corps documentary that wins an Oscar.

**10 April 1962 (USMC)**-Four hundred and nineteen enlisted men and 19 officers arrive at San Diego aboard the USS General Mann from the Far East. While there, they served as 1st Battalion, 9th Marines. The men assume the designation of 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines when they get back to Camp Pendleton.

**15 April 1962 (Okinawa)**-The 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines (Reinforced) depart Camp Pendleton to become a transplacement battalion (2/9) of the 3rd Marine Division.

**28 April 1962 (United States)**- Camp Pendleton's Dave York breaks the world record by jumping 16' 2" at Walnut California (Mt. San Antonia Relays).

**1 May 1962 (Okinawa)**-The 3rd Battalion, 9th Marines (Reinforced) depart Okinawa to become the landing force of the 7th Fleet.

**6 May-27 May 1962 (SE Asia)**-The Communist in Laos drive the government forces from the northern part of the country. The troops about 2,000 and their commander flee into Thailand.

**12 May 1962 (SE Asia)**-President John F. Kennedy orders the U. S. Navy, including 1,800 Marines to move toward the Indochinese peninsula to counter the pro-Communist gains in Laos.

**17 May 1962 (Thailand)**-The 3rd Battalion, 9th Marines (Reinforced), HMR-261 and VMA-332 (3rd Marine Expeditionary Unit) land in Thailand. The force supports Laotians against the Communists.

**24 May 1962 (Mediterranean)**-The 2nd Battalion, 6th Marines (Reinforced) depart Morehead City, North Carolina to join the 6th Fleet as the landing force.

**1 June 1962 (United States)**-The 1st Battalion, 22nd Marines is reactivated at Camp Lejeune, North Carolina. This is done to provide a Headquarters and Service Company for other FMF units.

**2 June 1962 (Spain)**-The 2nd Battalion, 6th Marines begins duties of the landing team of the Sixth Fleet. It replaces the 3rd Battalion, 8th Marines.

**10 June 1962 (Okinawa)**-The 1st Battalion, 5th Marines (Reinforced) departs Camp Pendleton to become a transplacement battalion (3/9) of the 3rd Marine Division.

**15 June 1962 (United States)**-The 3rd Battalion (Reinforced), 8th Marines arrives back at Camp Lejeune following a 6-month tour as the amphibious landing force of the 6th Fleet in the Mediterranean.

**25 June 1962 (United States)**-The 4th Battalion, 11 Marines attached to Camp Pendleton moves

to its new duty station, 29 Palms.

**30 June 1962 (USMC)**-Marine Corps strength at this time stands at 190,962.

**1 July-7 August 1962 (Thailand)**-President John F. Kennedy orders 1,000 Marines of the Marine forces in Thailand to return to their ships. On the 27th, the final 1,800 Marines are ordered withdrawn from Thailand. By the 30th of July the 5,000 Marines ordered to Thailand are withdrawn.

Brigadier General Ormond R. Simpson, USMC, the 3rd Marine commander and his staff arrive back at Kadena, Okinawa completing the redeployment of the Marines who went to Thailand.

**25 August 1962 (United States)**-More than 500 Marines, attached to the 3rd Battalion, 9th Marines, arrive at Camp Pendleton from Thailand. They arrived at Long Beach aboard the USS Navarro. Once they are at Pendleton they assume the designation of 1/5.

**1 September 1962 (United States)**-The 1st Marine Division re-designates its four battalions; the 3/7 becomes 2/5. The unit moves from Camp Los Pulgas to Camp Margarita and it fills the vacancy created by the former 2/5 transplacement to the Far East. The 1/7 becomes 2/7 and the 2/7 becomes the 3/7; 1/7 was formed from Sub Unit 1 of 3/5 subsequent to the battalion being transplaced during October.

**7 September 1962 (Okinawa)**-The 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines (Reinforced) departs Camp Pendleton to become a transplacement battalion (1/3) of the 3rd Marine Division.

**18 September 1962 (Mediterranean)**-The 1st Battalion, 2nd Marines (Reinforced) departs Morehead City, N. C. It becomes the landing force of the 6th Fleet.

**24 September 1962 (Okinawa)**-The 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines aboard the USS General W. A. Mann, disembark at Naha Port. It becomes the transplacement battalion for the 1st Battalion, 3rd Marines.

**October 1962 (Cuba)**-At Guantanamo Naval Base, a Ground Force Command is activated. General William R. Collins, USMC is named as commander.

**1 October 1962 (USMC)**-Marine Medium Helicopter Squadron 265 is commissioned at New River Air Facility, North Carolina.

**4 October 1962 (Mediterranean)**-Battalion Landing Team 1/2 becomes the landing force of the 6th Fleet. It relieves the 2nd Battalion, 6th Marines at Pollensa, Spain.

**8 October 1962 (Vietnam)**-The U. S. publishes American casualties from December 31 1961 to 1 October 1962. They are 46 Americans killed and another 46 sick or wounded.

**11 October 1962 (United States)**-The 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines, who used the designation 1/3 while in the Far East arrives at Camp Pendleton arrives in San Diego aboard the USS *General Mann*.

**19 October 1962 (Cuba)**-The 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines receive orders to be ready to ship out to Cuba. The unit heads for El Torro on the following day and is flown to Guantanamo by jet planes.

**21 October 1962 (Cuba)**-At Guantanamo, elements of the 1st and 2nd Marine Divisions arrive and reinforce the defenders of the U.S. Naval Station.

**22 October 1962 (United States)**-More than 11,000 Marines of the 5th Expeditionary Brigade is on board ships at San Diego. They are waiting for orders to embark for Cuba. **Also**, at Guantanamo,

dependents are evacuated from the Naval Base. It ships out on 28 October.

**23 October 1962 (United States)**-Robert S. McNamara (Secretary of Defense) announces that U.S. forces throughout the world are on alert. Tours of duty for all naval and Marine Corps personnel are extended until further notice.

**28 October 1962 (United States)**-The 2nd Marine Division, minus a small rear echelon, MAG-14, MAG-26, Mag-32 and squadrons are deployed at Key West, Florida or in the Caribbean waters. They remain there for the duration of the Cuban Crisis.

**29 October 1962 (Okinawa)**-The 1st Battalion, 9th Marines departs from Okinawa en route to join the 7th Fleet and become its landing force.

**October 1962 (USMC)**-The Marine Corps has 15 skyhawk jets fly the first non-stop flight by a squadron (VMF-225) from Bermuda to Europe.

**2 November 1962 (United States)**-At Quantico, Virginia, the First Marine Aviation Force Veterans Association presents the initial Cunningham Trophy to John H. Glenn Jr. For being the outstanding Marine pilot.

**13 November 1962 (Guam)**-About 400 Marines attached to the 3rd Battalion, 4th Marines fly from Hawaii to Guam to assist in the salvage operations and to provide security. Guam had been hit by a nasty typhoon.

**20 November 1962 (Cuba)**-The U. S. Naval blockade of Cuba ends. Soviet Premier Khrushchev pledges to withdraw all Soviet missiles in Cuba within thirty days.

**21 November 1962 (USMC)**-The pentagon rescinds the involuntary duty extension of Navy and Marine Corps personnel due to the end of the Cuban Crisis.

**8 December 1962 (Okinawa)**-The 1st Battalion, 9th Marines embarks from White Beach, Okinawa to become the 3rd Marine Division's battalion landing team.

**27 December 1962 (Okinawa)**-The 1st Battalion, 7th Marines (Reinforced) departs Camp Pendleton to become a transplacement battalion for the 3rd Marine Division.

**31 December 1962 (United States)**-Marine Corps strength at this time stands at 189,165.

**8-29 January 1963 (United States)**-Marines attached to 8th and I Barracks in Washington, D. C. assist the Secret Service in protecting the "Mona Lisa" painting by da Vinci, while it is on display at the National Gallery of Art.

**13 January 1963 (Okinawa)**-The 1st Battalion, 7th Marines arrives aboard the USS *General J. C. Breckinridge* at Naha Port from Camp Pendleton to become a transplacement battalion 2/3 at Camp Schwab, Okinawa.

**21 January 1963 (United States-Okinawa)**-The 1st Battalion, 7th Marines departs San Diego, California aboard the USS *General W. A. Mann* for Okinawa to become a transplacement battalion for the 3rd Marine Division.

**February 1963 (United States)**-President John F. Kennedy, using President Theodore Roosevelt's 1908 Executive Order that directed Marine Corps officers serving in Washington, D. C. complete the 50-mile hike within 20 hours over a three day period.

**2 February 1963 (Okinawa)**-The 2nd Battalion, 9th Marines embarks from White Beach in Okinawa to join with the 3rd Marine Division to become the division's landing team.

**4 February 1963 (United States)**-The 2nd Battalion, 3rd Marines (more than 1,000 men) aboard the USS General J.C. Breckinridge arrive in San Diego and is redesignated 1/7. The battalion is assigned to Camp Pulgas at Camp Pendleton.

**6 February 1963 (United States)**-Twenty Marine officers at Camp Lejeune take the challenge of President Kennedy (invoking President Theodore Roosevelt's Executive Order of 1908) to take a 50-mile hike. See also February 1963.

**8 February 1963 (Okinawa)**-The 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines aboard the USS General W. A. Mann arrive at Naha Point, Okinawa from Camp Pendleton to be a transplacement battalion. It is designated 3/3 at Camp Zschwab.

**10 February 1963 (Okinawa)**-Battalion Landing Team 1/9 arrives back at Okinawa after completing a two-month tour as the Force in Readiness of the 7th Fleet.

**20 February 1963 (Haiti)**-Haiti's government requests the recall of Colonel Robert D. Heinl, Jr. USMC, the U. S. Naval Mission Chief.

**21 February 1963 (Mediterranean)**-Battalion Landing Team 2/8 deploys as the landing force for the 6th Fleet.

**24 February 1963 (United States)**-The new 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines aboard the USS General Mann arrives back in the U.S. from the Far East, culminating a 13-month tour as a placement battalion with the designation of 3/3.

**6 March 1963 (Vietnam)**-The U. S. reports that the Vietnamese Navy has taken over patrol of the South Vietnam coast from the 7th Fleet.

**28 March 1963 (Okinawa)**-The 3rd Battalion, 9th Marines becomes the afloat battalion of the 7th Fleet. It relieves the 2nd Battalion, 9th Marines.

**29 March 1963 (USMC)**-The Marine Corps deactivates Transport Squadron 353 at Cherry Point, N. C.

**1 April 1963 (Okinawa)**-The 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines arrive at Okinawa from Camp Pendleton. At Camp Hansen, it becomes a transplacement battalion for the 1st Battalion, 9th Marines, which returns to Camp Las Pulgas in California.

**22 April 1963 (United States)**-President John F. Kennedy orders units of the 7th Fleet to Thailand due to the crisis which is developing in Laos.

**30 April 1963 (Haiti)**-The U. S. Marines training mission to Haiti withdraws at the request of the Haitian government.

**1 May 1963 (Okinawa)**-At Camp Hansen, the 3rd Pioneer Battalion undergoes a change in its name. It becomes the 3rd Engineer Battalion.

**4 May 1963 (Haiti)**-Battalion Landing Team 2/2 is deployed aboard ship off Haiti for a period of five days when the situation in Haiti deteriorated.

**8 May 1963 (Mediterranean)**-The 1st Battalion, 6th Marines departs Morehead City, N. C. To join with the 6th Fleet as the amphibious landing force. A unit attached to Marine Squadron 262 joined the battalion.

**17 May 1963 (United States)**-A new 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines is established at Camp Pendleton.

**20 May 1963 (Okinawa)**-The 1st Battalion, 1st Marines arrives at Okinawa aboard the USS

General Mitchell to become a transplacement battalion for the 2nd Battalion, 9th Marines.

**1 June 1963 (USMC)**-At Quantico, the Marine Corps Schools Training and Test Regiment (Quantico) is redesignated as the Officer Candidate School.

**6 June 1963 (United States)**-President John F. Kennedy visits the Marine Corps Recruit Depot in San Diego, California.

**30 June 1963 (United States-Okinawa)**-The 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines boards the USS *Patrick Henry* at San Diego, California for the voyage to Okinawa where it becomes a transplacement battalion for the 3rd Battalion, 9th Marines. Also, Marine Corps strength at this stands at 189,683.

**19 July 1963 (Okinawa)**-The 2nd Battalion, 3rd Marines (3rd Marine Division's landing team) embarks from Naha en route to join the Special Landing Force of the 7th Fleet.

**1 August 1963 (USMC)**-Marine All-Weather Fighter Squadrons assigned the F4B Phantom aircraft are re-designated as Marine Fighter/Attack Squadrons. The affected squadrons are VMF(AW)-314, -513, and -513.

**3 August 1963 (Haiti)**-The U.S. halts all aid to Haiti, concurrent with the withdrawal of the aid mission. Also, at Seattle, Washington, Marine Transport Squadron 353 is brought back into service with the Marine Air Reserve Training Detachment.

**8 August 1963 (United States)**-The USS *General High J. Gaffey* arrives at San Diego carrying about 1,000 Marines of a transplacement battalion. The unit was known as the 3/9 while serving with the 3rd Marine Division, but it assumes the designation of 2/1 when it arrives at Camp Pendleton.

**August 1963 (Mediterranean)**-Battalion Landing Team 3/2 embarks for duty in the Mediterranean.

**2 September 1963 (United States)**-President John F. Kennedy declares in a TV interview that the U.S. was prepared to continue to assist South Vietnam "but I don't think that the war can be won unless the people support the effort and in my opinion, in the last two months, the Government has gotten out of touch with the people."

**5 September 1963 (United States-Okinawa)**-The 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines depart San Diego aboard the USS *General Mann* en route for Okinawa to become a transplacement battalion.

**21 September 1963 (Okinawa)**-The 2nd Battalion, 3rd Marines arrives back at Okinawa following a two-month tour as the 7th Fleet's ground element of the Special Landing Force.

**September 1963 (United States)**-President John F. Kennedy names Lt. General Wallace M. Greene, Jr. As commandant of the U.S. Marine Corps effective 1 January 1964.

**5 October 1963 (Mediterranean)**-Battalion Landing Team 3/2 relieves BLT-1/6 as landing team of the 6th Fleet at Rota, Spain.

**11 October 1963 (United States)**-The 1st Battalion, 3rd Marines a transplacement battalion arrives aboard the USS *General Mann* (AP-112) at San Diego. The unit goes to San Mateo (Camp Pendleton) and assumes the designation of 3/1.

**15 October 1963 (United States)**-Headquarters Marine Corps announce the name of the aviator of the year, Colonel Michael R. Yanuck. He receives the Alfred A. Cunningham Award.

**20 October 1963 (Haiti)**-Marine Medium Helicopter Squadron 162 (MAG-126) arrives at Port au Prince Bay aboard the USS *Tueh's Bay* to deliver food and supplies subsequent to a nasty hurricane

that struck Haiti's southern peninsula.

**1 November 1963 (United States)**-The 1st Explosive Ordnance Disposal Company is disbanded. **Also**, in Vietnam, a military coup takes place in Saigon. It was organized by key generals and led to the assassination of President Ngo Dinh Diem and his brother, Ngo Dinh Nhu.

**2 November 1963 (Vietnam)**-A provisional government is established in Saigon. It is headed by the former vice president Nguyen Ngoc Tho who becomes president. In conjunction, the Constitution is suspended and the National Assembly is dissolved.

**7 November 1963 (Okinawa)**-The 1st Battalion, 5th Marines departs Camp Pendleton to become a transplacement battalion of the 3rd Marine Division. The battalion embarks on the following day en route to its new duty station, Camp Schwab where it assumes the designation of 2/3.

**15 November 1963 (Vietnam)**-The U. S. Spokesman in Saigon says that 1,000 U.S. servicemen of the 16,575 are going to be withdrawn from South Vietnam because of the progress being made in the training of the South Vietnamese. The withdrawal begins on 3 December. **Also**, it is announced that Lt. Colonel Barbara J. Bishop is to succeed the director of woman Marines, Colonel Margaret M. Henderson, effective 2 January 1964.

**22 November 1963 (United States)**-The president, John F. Kennedy is assassinated by Lee Harvey Oswald in Dallas, Texas. Vice President Lyndon Johnson is sworn in as the 36th 24 November president on the same day.

**24 November 1963 (United States)**-President Lyndon B. Johnson confirms that the U.S. intends to continue its military and economic support of South Vietnam against the Communist Viet Cong.

**3 December (United States-South Vietnam)**-The U.S. begins its withdrawal from South Vietnam, as 220 men depart for the United States.

**8 December 1963 (Okinawa)**-The 3rd Battalion, 3rd Marines arrive back on White Beach, Okinawa. It had finished a three-month tour with the 7th Fleet.

**12 December 1963 (United States)**-The 1st Battalion, 5th Marines arrives at San Diego aboard the USS Breckinridge to complete a 13-month tour as a transplacement battalion in the Far East.

**31 December 1963 (United States)**-General David M. Shoup retires as the 22nd commandant of the U.S. Marine Corps.

**1 January 1964 (United States)**-General Wallace M. Greene becomes the 23rd commandant of the Marine Corps. He succeeds General David M. Shoup.

**3 January 1964 (United States)**-Colonel Barbara J. Bishop becomes Director of Woman Marines.

**8 January 1964 (United States-Okinawa)**-The 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines embarks aboard the USS *General William Mitchell* from San Diego en route to Okinawa to become a transplacement battalion for the 3rd Marine Division.

**23 January-18 June 1964 (Mediterranean)**-The 1st Battalion, 8th Marines (Reinforced) from Camp Lejeune embark from Morehead City, N.C. to join the 6th Fleet in the Mediterranean. The battalion relieves the 3rd Battalion, 2nd Marines.

**29 January 1964 (Okinawa)**-The 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines arrive at Naha Port aboard the USS *General William Mitchell* and it assumes the designation of 3/3

**6 February 1964 (Cuba)**-Cuba retaliates against the U.S. naval base in Guantanamo because of

the arrest of 36 Cubans who were fishing in Florida waters by shutting down the water supply. Also, the 1st Battalion, 8th Marines relieves the 3rd Battalion 2nd Marines in the Mediterranean. The 3rd Battalion, 2nd Marines return to the U.S. and arrive on 26 February.

**12 February 1964 (United States)**-The Pentagon decides that dependents of those serving in the military and civilians will no longer be sent to Guantanamo.

**13 February 1964 (SE Asisa)**-The 2nd Battalion, 9th Marines becomes the new battalion afloat in the 7th Fleet's Amphibious Ready Group. It relieves the 1st Battalion, 9th Marines.

**15 February 1964 (United States)**-About 1,000 Marines who toured with the 3rd Marine Division as 3rd Battalion 3rd Marines arrive back at San Diego aboard the USS General Mitchell. The unit assumes the designation of 2/5 when it arrives at Camp Pendleton.

**Spring 1964 (Cuba)**-Cuba complains to the U.S. that the Marines sentries at Guantanamo destroyed the Cuban guardhouse at the northeast gate and they also claim that the Marines had taken down the Cuban flag and threw it on the ground.

**23 March 1964 (Okinawa)**-The 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines arrive at Naha aboard the USS *General Mann*. It assumes the designation of 1/9 as a transplacement battalion.

**26 March 1964 (USMC)**-The commandant, General Wallace M. Greene states that the Marine Corps reached its best state of readiness in many years and that its strength of 190,000 men was adequate to perform the missions assigned to them.

**7 April 1964 (Okinawa)**-The 3rd Battalion, 9th Marines relieves the 2nd Battalion, 9th Marines and assumes the duty of the 3rd Marine Division afloat battalion. The 2nd Battalion returns to Camp Hansen, Okinawa.

**25 April 1964 (Vietnam)**-Lt. General William Westmoreland is named by President Lyndon Johnson as the successor to General Paul D. Harkins, Commander-in-Chief, U.S. Military Command in south Vietnam.

**April 1964 (Okinawa)**-The 1st and 2nd Battalions, 12th Marines at Camp Sukiran, Okinawa receive 12 new artillery pieces (107mm mortar, M-98, known as the "Howtar.")

**20 May 1964 (Okinawa)**-The 1st Battalion, 7th Marines begins a 13-month tour as it arrives at Naha Port, Okinawa and assumes the designation of 2/9.

**28 May 1964 (Mediterranean)**-Battalion Landing Team 2/6 embarks to join the 6th Fleet. It relieves the 1/8.

**6 June 1964 (United States)**-The 2nd Battalion, 9th Marines arrives back at San Diego following a 14-month tour of duty in the Far East. When it arrives at Camp Pendleton it assumes the designation of 1/7.

**12 June 1964 (Okinawa)**-The 1st Battalion, 3rd Marines board the ships of the 7th Fleet at White Beach, Okinawa to become the Special Landing Force (Part of the Amphibious Ready Group. It replaces the 3rd Battalion, 9th Marines.

**18 June 1964 (United States)**-The 1st Battalion, 8th Marines after being relieved by the 2nd Battalion, 6th Marines arrives at Morehead City, North Carolina to finish a tour of duty in the Mediterranean as the landing force of the 6th Fleet.

**20 June 1964 (Vietnam)**-General William C. Westmoreland succeeds General Paul D. Harkins as

U.S. commander in South Vietnam.

**23 June 1964 (Vietnam)**-President Lyndon B. Johnson accepts the resignation of Henry Cabot Lodge as ambassador to South Vietnam. He appoints General Maxwell D. Taylor as his successor.

**28 June (Far East)**-Marine Fighter Squadron 531 arrives in the Far East from Cherry Point, North Carolina.

**30 June 1964 (United States)**-Marine Corps strength at this time stands at 189,777.

**1 July 1964 (United States)**-At Camp Lejeune, the 2nd Shore Party Battalion, deactivated in October 1958, is activated.

**20 July 1964 (Okinawa)**-The 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines arrives at Naha Port, Okinawa to become a transplacement battalion for the 3rd Battalion, 9th Marines.

**27 July 1964 (Cuba)**-The Cuban government charges that Marine sentries had fired six shots and wounded a Cuban guard twice.

**28 July 1964 (Vietnam)**-The U.S. declares that it is sending 5,000 additional men to South Vietnam.

**30 July 1964 (Cuba)**-The U.S. dedicates a fresh water plant at Guantanamo Bay. It will supply water to the naval base.

**2 August 1964 (Gulf of Tonkin)**-The destroyer USS Maddox while on patrol in the gulf (international waters) comes under attack by three PT boats (135th Torpedo Squadron). The Maddox and four U. S. Aircraft were able to drive them off by returning fire. On the same day, President Lyndon Johnson orders the U.S. Navy to shoot and destroy any future attack on U.S. ships in the Gulf of Tonkin.

**4 August 1964 (Gulf of Tonkin)**-The Communist Viet Cong attack the destroyer USS Maddox and a second destroyer, the USS Turner Joy, neither are damaged. The destroyers return fire and destroy or damage a few of the attacking PT boats.

**5 August 1964 (Vietnam)**-As told by Secretary of Defense, U. S. planes bomb an oil storage facility, naval craft and naval bases. The raids destroy or damage 25 North Vietnamese patrol boats and they destroy the oil depot.

**6 August 1964 (United States)**-The 3rd Battalion, 9th Marines arrives at San Diego from Okinawa, completing a 13-month tour with the 3rd Division. Once it returns to Camp Pendleton, it assumes the designation of 2nd Battalion, 3rd Marines.

**11 August 1964 (United States)**-President Lyndon B. Johnson signs the Gulf of Tonkin Resolution (Southeast Asia Resolution), which was passed by both Houses of Congress on 7 August.

**13 August 1964 (Gulf of Tonkin)**-The Department of Defense states that the U.S. Navy's patrolling of the gulf has been terminated. The two destroyers that had been patrolling the region return to the 7th Fleet.

**21 August 1964 (United States)**-Camp Calvin B. Matthews, the weapons training camp for 46 years is ended. As of October of this year, the camp will become the San Diego campus for the University of California.

**4 September 1964 (Okinawa)**-The 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines embark from San Diego aboard the USS *General Mann* to become a transplacement battalion in the Far East.

**13 October 1964 (United States)**-The 1st Battalion, 3rd Marines arrives at the Las Pulgas area from Okinawa and assumes the designation of 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines.

**14 October 1964 (Japan)**-Lieutenant Billy Mills, USMC, of Coffeyville, Kansas wins a gold medal in Tokyo during the 10,000 meter event (Olympic Track and Field events).

**16 October 1964 (United States)**-Headquarters Marines awards the Alfred A. Cunningham Award to the Aviator of the Year, Colonel Thomas J. Ross.

**3 November 1964 (Mediterranean)**-Battalion Landing Team 1 /2 becomes the landing force of the 6th Fleet. It relieves the 2nd Battalion, 6th Marines at Huelva, Spain.

**7 November 1964 (Okinawa)**-The 1st Battalion 1st Marines embark from San Diego aboard the USS General Mann en route for Okinawa to become a transplacement battalion for the 3rd Marine Division. The battalion assumes the designation of 2/3 while it is on the tour.

**13-15 November 1964 (United States)**-Battalion Landing Team 2/6 arrives at Camp Lejeune. The battalion was relieved by the Battalion Landing Team 1/2 as the landing force of the 6th Fleet.

**23 November 1964 (Vietnam)**-Marine Medium Helicopter Squadron 365, attached to the USS Princeton evacuated about 1,700 flood victims. Also, Marine Medium Helicopter Squadron 162 delivers about 900 tons of supplies to the stricken areas of South Vietnam. In other activity, the 1st Battalion 1st Marines arrives at Naha Port, Okinawa from Camp Pendleton. It becomes a transplacement battalion for the 2nd Battalion, 3rd Marines.

**11 December 1964 (United States)**-The pilots and crews of two helicopters (VMO-1) who participated in the rescue of 11 sick, injured or wounded Peruvian engineers in the jungles of the Amazon near Iquitos in northern Peru during the summer of 1964 are congratulated for their dedication.

**19 December 1964 (Vietnam)**-South Vietnam's military leaders dissolve the High National Council, the legislature and they arrest some government officials.

**31 December 1964 (United States)**-Marine Corps strength at this time stands at 188,505.

**7 January 1965 (U. S.-Okinawa)**-The 2nd Battalion 1st Marines embarks from San Diego for Okinawa as a transplacement battalion for the 3rd Battalion, 3rd Marines (3rd Marine Division).

**9-12 January 1965 (Vietnam)**-Communist Viet Cong fire upon Marine helicopters transporting South Vietnamese to the northern coastal sector, but Marines gunners return fire. The helicopters sustain no damage.

**19 January 1965 (United States)**-The Battalion Landing Team 3/8 departs from Camp Lejeune for the Caribbean to replace the 3rd Battalion, 2nd Marines. The 3/8 is to spend 3-months in the Caribbean.

**8 February 1965 (Vietnam)**-President Lyndon B. Johnson, following attacks against U. S. Forces and installations orders the first 1st Light Anti-Aircraft Missile Battalion (LAMM) to the Da Nang region.

**14 February 1965 (Vietnam)**-Two battalions are stationed off the coast of South Vietnam in the event the Viet Cong launch any new attacks against U. S. Installations.

**15-16 February 1965 (Vietnam)**-Eighty-eight Viet Cong are killed by Army and Marine Corps gunners in several localities, Binh Dinh, Vinh Binh, Quang Tin and Quang Nam.

**6 March 1965 (Vietnam)**-The government at Saigon announces that 2 battalions of Marines are to be deployed in South Vietnam.

**7 March 1965 (United States)**-Dean Rusk, Secretary of State, declares that the Marines who are deployed in Vietnam would shoot back if they are shot at, but their main mission is the security of the Da Nang air base.

**8 March 1965 (Vietnam)**-Elements (3rd Battalion, 9th Marines, 3rd Marine Division) of the 9th Marine Expeditionary Brigade, commanded by Brigadier General Frederick L. March arrives at Da Nang to become the first U. S. Ground troops to deploy in South Vietnam.

**20 March 1965 (U.S.-Mediterranean)**-The 2nd Battalion, 8th Marines (BLT 2/8) arrives in the Mediterranean from Camp Lejeune to relieve the 1st Battalion, 2nd Marines as the landing force of the 6th Fleet.

**29 March 1965 (Vietnam)**-The Marines who provide security for the embassy in Saigon do an excellent job in restoring order subsequent to a bomb exploding outside the embassy, which caused damage and high casualties.

**2 April 1965 (United States)**-Sergeant Major Herbert J. Sweet is named to succeed Sergeant Major Thomas J. McHugh as sergeant major of the Marine Corps. Sweet is the fourth man elevated to the senior position in the Corps.

**11 April 1965 (Vietnam)**-The 2nd Battalion 3rd Marines (BLT 2/3) which had been participating in Exercise JUNGLE DRUM III in Thailand lands at Red Beach Two at Da Nang.

**12 April 1965 (Vietnam)**-The 2nd Battalion 3rd Marines sends a reinforced battalion to Phu Bai the airport and a communications facility is located.

**14 April 1965 (Vietnam)**-The 3rd Battalion, 4th Marines arrives from Hawaii and lands at Hue/Phu Bai and relieves a reinforced company of the 2nd Battalion, 3rd Marines.

**17 April 1965 (Vietnam)**-Marine Composite Reconnaissance Squadron, which had operated in support of the 7th Fleet and the 2nd Air Force's 2nd Air Division arrives at Da Nang.

**22 April 1965 (Vietnam)**-A Marine patrol is attacked twice by Communist guerrillas close to the Da Nang airbase during their 8-hour patrol. The attacks are the first time that the Marines are landed in helicopters in the Republic of South Vietnam.

**25 April 1965 (Dominican Republic)**-President Reid Cabral had resigned and army rebels had attempted to restate ex-president Juan Bosch. The turn of events causes the air force and the navy to engage in fighting with the pro-Bosch supporters.

**26 April 1965 (Dominican Republic)**-Six U. S. Ships led by the USS *Boxer* arrive off the Dominican coast. They are transporting 1,500 Marines (6th Marine Expeditionary Unit)

**27 April 1965 (Dominican Republic)**-American citizens (556 people) are evacuated in Haina by helicopters (HMM-264), which transport them to the USS *Boxer* and the USS *Raleigh*. Also, 620 additional people (U.S. citizens) board ships at the docks of Haina.

**28 April 1965 (Dominican Republic)**-Dominican Air Force and Navy officers establish a military junta against the pro-Bosch supporters and they promise free elections in the upcoming autumn. Also, The USS *Boxer*'s helicopters land the 3rd Battalion, 6th Marines just west of the Hotel Ebajador in Santo Domingo. Its instructions are to provide security for the U. S. Embassy and to

protect U. S. citizens.

**29 April 1965 (Dominican Republic)**-The JCS order the landing of 500 additional troops in Santo Domingo. Afterward, the JCS authorize the remaining units of the 6th MEU.

**30 April 1965 (Dominican Republic)**-Marines set up roadblocks near the embassy in Santo Domingo. The area of the city had been hit by sniper fire on the previous night. Also, there are 1,700 Marines and 2,500 soldiers in the Dominican Republic at this time. Two Marines were killed during an operation to establish an international safety zone within the city.

**1 May 1965 (Dominican Republic)**-The 4th Marine Expeditionary Force is deployed by air and sea in the Dominican Republic. Also, 1 Marine is killed and three others are wounded when rebels open fire as the Marines are preparing to move out from Checkpoint Charles, San Domingo.

**3 May 1965 (Vietnam)**-Major General William R. Collins, USMC, commanding general of the 3rd Marine Division arrives in Da Nang. Three days later the III Marine Expeditionary Force is established as the senior Marine echelon. In conjunction, on the same day, the 9th Marine Expeditionary Brigade was deactivated.

**3-6 May 1965 (Dominican Republic)**-Marines attached to the USS **Newport News** debark to occupy the University of Santo Domingo. This was the first ship's detachment deployed under arms since 1945. The Marine detachment is attached to the 1st Battalion, 6th Marines.

**6 May 1965 (Dominican Republic)**-Rebel machine gun fire kills 4 Marines and wounds one other Marine when the rebels ambush a medical convoy in downtown Santo Domingo. Also, two Marines are captured, but they are later released.

**7 May 1965 (Vietnam)**-The III Marine Expeditionary Force is re-designated the III Marine Amphibious Force. Also, The 3rd Marine Expeditionary Brigade is also re-designated the 3rd Marine Amphibious Brigade; the 3rd MAB lands at Chu Lai.

**11 May 1965 (Vietnam)**-Three companies of the 2nd Battalion, 3rd Marines search the Le My complex, which is about eight miles northwest of Da Nang.

**12 May 1965 (Vietnam)**-Battalion Landing Team 3/3 lands at Chu Lai, ending the amphibious operation. The 3rd Marine Amphibious Brigade is dissolved; its units join III MAF.

**17 May 1965 (Dominican Republic)**-At the present time there are 15,000 Army personnel, 5,500 Marines and 1,000 Air Force personnel in the Dominican Republic.

**24 May 1965 (United States)**-The 17th Commandant of the Marine Corps, General Thomas Holcomb dies at New Castle, Delaware.

**25 May 1965 (Dominican Republic)**-The major crisis of the Dominican Republic comes to an end, following a meeting between McGeorge Bundy (Presidential Assistant for National Security Affairs) and rebel leaders.

**30 May 1965 (Vietnam)**-Marine major general Lewis W. Walt arrives at Da Nang and relieves Major General William R. Collins as the commanding general of the III MAF and the 3rd Marine Division.

**1 June 1965 (Vietnam)**-Marines utilize a new airstrip at Chu Lai. It is a short airstrip used for tactical support.

**3 June 1965 (Dominican Republic)**-President Lyndon B. Johnson orders the withdrawal of all

Marines in the country.

**4 June 1965 (Vietnam)**-Fighting erupts between Marines and the Viet Cong in the areas of Da Nang and Phu Bai. Planes support the activity and the Marines kill 79 Viet Cong. The Marines sustain 2 killed and 19 wounded.

**5 June 1965 (USMC)**-Marine Corps casualties caused from actions from hostile forces from 1 January 1961 until 5 June 1965 are 29 killed, 156 wounded and 3 missing. Also, there were 20 dead from causes other than hostile forces.

**6 June 1965 (Dominican Republic)**-The Marines begin arriving at Camp Lejeune from the Dominican Republic. Nine Marines were killed and another 30 were wounded while serving there..

**7 June 1965 (Vietnam)**-At the present time there are more than 16,500 Marines in Vietnam out of a total number of military personnel of more than 50,000.

**8 June 1965 (Vietnam)**-The U. S. Military command is authorized to send American troops into combat with Vietnamese troops if requested by South Vietnam.

**9 June 1965 (United States)**-The 1st Battalion, 6th Marines arrives at Camp Lejeune following its duty in the Dominican Republic. The arrival of the battalion completes the return of the principal units of the 2d Marine Division.

**17 June 1965 (Vietnam)**-The 1st Battalion, 9th Marines arrives in Da Nang. It relieves the 3rd Battalion, 9th Marines, which embark for Okinawa.

**25 June 1965 (United States)**-A military transport plane takes off from El Torro, California bound for Vietnam, but it crashes in the Santa Ana Mountains killing 72 Marines.

**8 July 1965 (Vietnam)**-Marines begin to land from naval ships at Da Nang and Qui Nhon. By the following week, 4,600 Marines are landed.

**11 July 1965 (Vietnam)**-Two Marines are killed when Viet Cong snipers ambush a patrol about ten miles from Da Nang air base.

**13 July 1965 (Vietnam)**-Marines operating a sweep several miles southwest of Da Nang exchange fire with about 200 Viet Cong. Two Marines are killed and 17 are wounded. The Viet Cong sustain 48 killed.

**28 July 1965 (Vietnam)**-President Lyndon B. Johnson declares that 50,000 U. S. Troops are to be sent to Vietnam, bringing the total of U. S. Troops to 125,000.

**1 August 1965 (Vietnam)**-At Phu Bai, the Joint Action Company is formed. It is comprised of four South Vietnamese Popular Force platoons, each reinforced by a U. S. Marine infantry squad.

**3 August 1965 (Vietnam)**-Company D, 1st Battalion, 9th Marines initiates a one-day operation near Cam Ne, south of Da Nang. The operation was filmed by a CBS television crew, which televised and put on the night's news a Marine setting fire to a thatched house. The incident leads to a debate in the press regarding U. S. Tactics in the Vietnamese villages.

**10 August 1965 (Vietnam)**-The U.S. Marine Corps is authorized to add 30,000 men bringing its total strength to 223,100 Marines. The increase will add 3 new battalions and 2 helicopter training squadrons.

**14 August 1965 (Vietnam)**-The 1st Marine Division's Regimental Landing Team 7, lands in South Vietnam.

**15 August 1965 (United States)**-The 1st Marine Division(main body including about 15,000 men) departs Camp Pendleton for duty if the Far East. Another 1,100 Marines depart Camp Pendleton on 2 September, leaving about 4,000 men in the division at Camp Pendleton.

**18-23 August 1965 (Vietnam)**-The 1st Viet Cong Regiment, composed of 2,000 troops had moved into the Van Tuong peninsula. Consequently, the III MAF began Operation STARLITE on 18 August, the first regimental-sized battle since the Korean War. The Marines completed airborne and amphibious landings and maneuver to trap the Viet Cong. At the end of the battle, more than 700 Viet Cong had been killed.

**September 1 1965 (United States)**-The Marine Corps reduces the time of training from 12 weeks to 8 weeks in an effort to process the additional 30,000 troops. Also, the 9th Marines begin Operation FLEECE, designed to protect the rice harvest from getting into the Viet Cong's possession. The Marines set up cordons and establish night ambushes and using small patrols.

**2 September 1965 (Vietnam)**-About 1,400 Marines attached to MAG-36 begin landing at Chu Lai; it reinforces the troops already there and includes a heavy helicopter unit, three medium helicopter units and observation aircraft. Also, Major General Francis M. McAlister, USMC, who commanded the Marine Barracks at Pearl Harbor during the attack (1941) dies. He participated in seven campaigns during WW II and was wounded in Korea.

**7 September 1965 (USMC)**-The Marine Corps announces that in January 1966, it would have to start drafting men in January due to the commitment in South Vietnam. **Also, in Vietnam,** Operation PIRANHA begins on the Batangan peninsula. The 2nd Battalion7th Marines, commanded by Lt. Colonel Leon Utter, uses gas masks after using tear gas to remove South Vietnamese from caves in which they were hiding because the Viet Vong told them that the U. S. Marines would commit atrocities. Also, the Marines and South Vietnamese Marines defeat a large band of Viet Cong during the three-day battle. The Marines kill 183 Viet Cong and 66 are killed by the South Vietnamese Marines during Operation PIRANNA

**15 September 1965 (United States)**-BLT-1/2 departs Camp Lejeune to relieve BLT 2/6 in the Caribbean. The battalion spends 3-months in the region.

**22 September 1965 (Vietnam)**-Navy Medical Officers claim that the rate for Marines in S. Vietnam is much lower than in previous wars. The battle casualty rate is below expectations and disease is also lower.

**25-26 September 1965 (Vietnam)**-Operation DAGGER THRUSTI begins on a peninsula that lies south of Qui Nhon. The 7th Fleet is offshore and the men, helicopters and amphibious vehicles are landed. The Marines destroy bunkers and tunnels before returning to their respective ships.

**30 September 1965 (Vietnam)**=The 1st Battalion, 1st Marines begin using portable generators to force the Communists out of their underground caves and tunnels. The generators force non-toxic smoke into the tunnels and caves and pinpoint possible escape routes.

**4 October 1965 (Far East-Vietnam)**-Marines from the 7th Fleet engage in heavy fighting with Communist guerrillas . The Marines landed three days before, during Operation DAGGER THRUST III and they drive the Viet Cong from a peninsula about 60 miles northwest of Qui Nhon. About 28 of the enemy are killed during the operation. Also, a Marine patrol is ambushed close to Da Nang. Only three men of the 13-man patrol are unscathed. One of the survivors reports that the enemy placed live ducks over their heads as camouflage.

**5 October 1965 (United States)**-The 3rd Battalion, 2nd Marines depart Camp Lejeune and board ships at Morehead City, North Carolina for a 5-month tour in the Mediterranean.

**14 October 1965 (United States)**-The Department of Defense calls for the draft to be for 45,224; the Marine Corps is to receive 5,024 men.

**4 November 1965 (Vietnam)**-Marines on a patrol during Operation Black Ferret near Chu Lai in Quang Ngai Province encounter a trip-wire booby-trap, which is kicked by a lieutenant. The booby-trap consisted of a mortar shell that had a grenade attached to it. Dickey Chapelle, a war correspondent and a photographer is hit in the neck by a piece of shrapnel. It severed her carotid artery and she died shortly afterward. She covered the Marines on Iwo Jima in World War II and also the Battle for Okinawa. She is the first correspondent killed in Vietnam and she receives a full Marine burial.

**7 November 1965 (Vietnam)**-Battalion Landing Team 2/7 embarks ships of Task Group 76.3 at Qui Nhon to participate in Operation BLUE MARLIN. The battalion had been under control of the Army II CTZ, returns to its parent organization, the 7th Marines.

**9 November 1965 (USMC)**-Defense Secretary of Defense, Robert S. McNamara barred anyone under the age of 18 from serving in Vietnam. The Marines requested the action.

**10 November 1965 (United States)**-The Marine Corps cancelled its December draft call because of an increase in enlistments. The Marines had been scheduled to receive 5,024 men. Also, Operation BLUE MARLIN begins north of Chu Lai. It is the first operation that combined U. S. And S. Vietnamese Marines in an amphibious landing against Communist forces.

**28 November 1965 (Vietnam)**-General Lewis W. Walt, USMC, meets with Secretary of Defense McNamara and requests that the number of Marine infantry battalions should be increased from 12 to 18 and he also requested that the fighter/attack squadrons should be increased to eight.

**3 December 1965 (United States)**-The Marine Corps is to receive 8,980 men from the January draft call of 38,280 men.

**5 December 1965 (Vietnam)**-Marines participate in Operation DAGGER THRUST V. Marines land from the 7th Fleet about 30 miles north of Qui Nhon in an attempt to destroy the source of major Communist attacks in the past. During the landing 14 enemy troops are killed and enemy fortifications are destroyed.

**8 December 1965 (Vietnam)**-Thousands of Marines participate in Operation Harvest Moon which begins in the region between Da Nang and Chu Lai. During the week-long operation, Marines kill about 300 Viet Cong and they capture 50 tons of rice.

**27 December 1965 (Vietnam)**-Following a short truce, Marines skirmish with the Viet Cong near the Da Nang airbase and they sustain only light casualties.

**30 December 1965 (Vietnam)**-The Viet Cong had overrun Marine positions on the night of 16 December. Today, three Marines and eight S. Vietnamese bodies are located in shallow graves. They were executed.

**January 1966 (U. S.-Vietnam)**-The 1st Marine Division deploys to S. Vietnam.

**1 January 1966 (Vietnam)**-Of the 181,000 U. S. Troops in S. Vietnam, Marines number about 38,500. The total Marine Corps strength stands at 214,500.

**15 January 1966 (Vietnam)**-The 2nd Battalion, 8th Marines deploys in Guantanamo Bay Naval base to become the center point of the ground force there.

**20 January 1966 (USMC)**-President Lyndon B. Johnson requests funds to give the Marine Corps another division which would bring it up to four divisions.

**27 January 1966 (United States)**-A draft call is made for 22,900 men in March. The Marine Corps is to receive 5,000 men.

**28 January 1966 (Vietnam)**-Marine Fighter Squadron 314 deploys in Da Nang.

**28 January-17 February 1966 (Vietnam)**-Operation DOUBLE EAGLE, a search and destroy mission begins. The 4th Marines operates south of Da Nang. The operation is the largest amphibious invasion of the Korean war to date.

**31 January 1966 (Vietnam)**-Colonel Margaret M. Henderson, director of women Marines, retires at the Recruit Depot, San Diego, California.

**7 February 1966 (Vietnam)**-The House Armed Services Committee holds a closed session in which General Wallace M. Greene, Jr. Says that Marine Corps draftees are “making first rate Marines.”

**21 February 1966 (United States)**-President Lyndon B. Johnson increases the number of lieutenant generals in the Marine Corps by one to make it seven.

**27 February 3 March 1966 (Vietnam)**-The 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines goes to support a Vietnamese Army Battalion that is being attacked by the Viet Cong (Operation NEW YORK). The Marines kill 122 men of the Viet Cong during the operation.

**March 1 1966 (Vietnam-Operation Double EAGLE II)**-The Marines kill 23 Viet Cong and they capture 9. In addition, they capture a large cache of weapons of the Viet Cong at a location about 17 miles north of Chu Lai. Also, in the United States, Secretary of Defense McNamara orders the reactivation of the 5th Marine Division at Camp Pendleton; the division reactivates the 26th Marines. It expects to be fully manned by March of the following year. Also, at Camp Pendleton, Headquarters, Regimental Landing Team 26 is activated at Camp Pendleton.

**4-7 March 1966 (Vietnam)**-Operation UTAH begins southwest of Chu Lai when Marine helicopters land the ARVN 1st Airborne Battalion. Americans also join with them; the 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines, 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines and the 2nd Battalion, 4th Marines. Together, they defeat a North Vietnamese infantry regiment (21st North Vietnamese Army) during the 4-day battle.

**6 March 1966 (United States)**-Battalion Landing Team 1/8 departs from Camp Lejeune, North Carolina and replaces BLT3/2 to become the landing force of the 6th Fleet.

**10 March 1966 (Vietnam)**-Marine helicopters evacuate Special Forces and ARVN troops at a camp at A Shaw, which was encircled by Viet Cong. Also, Force Logistics Command is activated at Da Nang to increase the needs of III MAF.

**10 March 30 June 1966 (Vietnam)**-Lt. General Nguyen Chanh Thi, commander of the Vietnamese I Corps, is dismissed. His dismissal by the National Leadership Committee causes a major political crisis. Riots erupt, but the U. S. Marines avoid a major clash with the Vietnamese. Political normalcy does not return to the I Corps area remains unstable until the end of June. In related activity, the Viet Cong infiltration increases during this period.

**20-23 March 1966 (Vietnam)**-Operation Texas is ongoing; Marines kill 149 Viet Cong while they sweep through the region north of Quang Ngai.

**26 March-7 April 1966 (Vietnam-Operation JACKSTAY)**-A surface and helicopter assault by the 7th Fleet is launched against the Viet Cong, who are operating in the vicinity of the Rung Sat Special Zone. The Viet Cong are threatening to mine a ship to block the channel to Saigon. It is the initial USMC operation in the III CTZ (Corps Tactical Zone).

**29 March 1966 (Vietnam)**-Major General Lewis J. Fields establishes Headquarters of the 1st Marine Division.

**30 March 1966 (Vietnam)**-The U. S. Marine billet at Da Nang is surrounded by 2,000 S. Vietnamese, primarily students, who charged that Marines after an accident involving a U. S. truck and a bus, beat several students. Witnesses said that the Marines did not beat anyone.

**31 March 1966 (Vietnam)**-Six sweep and destroy missions around Chu Lai and Phu Bai during the month of March have concluded with the death of 1,382 Viet Cong. The Marines sustain only light casualties. Also, the 1st Marine Division has joined other American units in S. Vietnam; headquarters for division is established at Chu Lai. The Marine Corps, for the first time since WWII, has two divisions, the 1st and 3rd engaged in a war zone. In the United States, Battalion Landing Team 3/2 arrives back at Camp Lejeune, terminating as the landing force of the 6th Fleet. The battalion was relieved by the BLT 1/8.

**1 April 1966 (Vietnam)**-The Marines following slightly more than one year in Vietnam have been awarded 5,000 Purple Hearts. The Marine aviation have been awarded nearly 10,000 air medals. Marines total more than 45,000 in Vietnam. In the United States, the recently activated 26th Marines is re-activated; it begins training at Camp Pendleton, California.

**5 April 1966 (United States)**-Headquarters, 13th Marines is re-activated at Camp Pendleton. It is an artillery regiment.

**11 April 1966 (Vietnam-Operation ORANGE)**-An 11-day search and destroy mission ends about 25 miles south of Da Nang. Fifty-seven Viet Cong are killed and another 6 are captured.

**12-17 April 1966 (Vietnam-Operation Nevada)**-The 7th Marines close a 6-day operation about 23 miles south of Chu Lai on the Cape Batangan peninsula. More than 50 Viet Cong are killed and another 6 are captured.

**21-23 April 1966 (Vietnam-Operation HOT SPRINGS)**-The operation, which began on 17 April ends for the 7th Marines about six miles northwest of Quang Ngai. They kill more than 140 Viet Cong during the 3-day operation.

**10 May 1966 (Vietnam-Operation GEORGIA)**-The 20-day search and destroy mission terminated south of Da Nang. Marine casualties are nominal, but they kill 103 Viet Cong.

**11 May 1966 (Vietnam)**-Pilots from Marine Squadron 311 launches 4 Sjukyhawk jets from Chu Lai. It is the first time in history that jets have been launched from land-based catapults during combat. They are airborne within 1,400 feet of the 8,000 foot runway.

**12 May 1966 (United States)**-The 2nd Battalion, 8th Marines, following a 4-month deployment at Guantanamo Bay return to Camp Lejeune. Also, the 2nd Battalion, 2nd Marines depart Camp Lejeune later this week to deploy at Guantanamo.

**21 May 1966 (Cuba)**-A Marine guard at the naval base at Guantanamo shoots a Cuban soldier. The

Marine fires a warning shot and afterward the Marine fired again, killing the soldier as he climbed the fence.

**25 May 1966 (Cuba)**-Cuban soldiers (five) enter the U. S. Naval base at Guantanamo, but Marines quickly drive them out.

**June 1966 (Vietnam)**-Operations APACHE, ATHENS, BEAVER, DODGE, JAY, OAKLAND and RENO run through the month of June. They account for a combined total of 1,233 Viet Cong killed.

**1 June 1966 (United States)**-At Camp Pendleton, the 5th Division Headquarters is activated. Also, the 2nd Battalion, and the 3rd Battalion, 27th Marines is reactivated and attached to the 5th Marine Division. Also, in Hawaii, the 1st Battalion, 27th Marines is reactivated at the Marine Corps Air Station, Kaneohe Bay; it is part of the 1st Marine Brigade.

**4 June 1966 (Vietnam)**-During the month of May, the 1st Marine Aircraft Wing flew 26,829 sorties. They destroyed 707 enemy structures and killed approximately 75 Viet Cong.

**9 June 1966 (Vietnam)**-In the city of Hue, Buddhists pull off demonstrations that hold up two Marine battalions for four hours and prevent them from getting to the jump-off point on time. The Buddhists are finally cleared by Vietnamese authorities.

**14-16 June 1966 (Vietnam)**-The Viet Cong, about 250 strong, attack an outpost in the vicinity of Chu Lai. The outpost was held by only fifteen Marines and two Navy corpsmen led by Staff Sergeant Jimmie E. Howard. The small outpost had been detecting the movements of the North Vietnamese for several days and the commanding officer of the battalion, A. J. Sullivan sensed that it was becoming dangerous. He offered to pull the Marines out, but Sergeant Jimmie Howard was sure that he could hold for one additional day. He requested to remain for the additional time.

Meanwhile, the North Vietnamese are moving towards Hill 488 the night of the 15th and it is too late to pull the Marines out. The attack came at 2200 and according to orders the Marines pull back to a small position on the crest of the hill. With a diameter of only 20 yards the Marines formed a tight circle and fought bravely, but everyone in the command was wounded and a few were dead. The attack was repulsed and Sgt. Howard grabbed the radio and told his commander "You have to get us out of here," but that was impossible. A relief force could not reach them until the following morning. At about the same time, the North Koreans began to yell at the Marines, "Marines, you die in an hour."

One of the Marines quipped, "Can we yell back at them" and received the answer, "Sure. Yell anything you like." They do and their taunts are answered by gun shots. Then the Marines, in spite of their precarious situation, begin to laugh at the North Koreans. Suddenly, the shooting stopped. Sgt. Howard later said "They were shooting at us and when we started laughing...there was complete silence. I think it had a chilling effect on them. They must have known we were terribly outnumbered, but we were laughing at them."

The Marines knew it would not last forever. The Marines had expended all of their grenades, repulsing the first attack, but Sergeant Howard issued an unusual order. He ordered his Marines to toss rocks at the North Koreans. The North Koreans made their way through the high grass to probe the perimeter and the rocks were misidentified by the enemy. They jumped quickly into the open and were picked off by Marines who made every shot count.

The Marines continue to fend off probes, both small and full-scale. At times there is hand-to-hand

fighting. It is so close to the Marines' positions that Sergeant Howard called in aerial support that pounded the area within thirty-feet of his position.

At 0300, while Colonel Sullivan at Chu Lai listened to Sergeant Howard on the phone, it went dead. Sergeant Howard was not dead, but he was shot in the back and could not move his legs. There was a sense of panic in Chu Lai, believing that the position was overrun and the Marines who were there were dead. However, Howard was still encouraging his Marines, telling them that they had to hold until daybreak and then additional Marines would come to their aid.

At dawn, a helicopter approached the hill, but it was shot down and the pilot was killed. At about the same time, a Marine company was en route to the crest of the hill to rescue the remainder of Sergeant Howard's platoon. Two Marines are killed during the trek. The relief force makes it to the crest of Hill 488 by about noon, where they discover five Marines had been killed.

Gunnery Sergeant (Promoted) Jimmie Howard receives the Medal of Honor for his heroism on 21 August 1967 at the White House.

**18 June 1966 (Vietnam-Operation DECKHOUSE I )**-The 7th Fleet's Special Landing Force storms ashore about 25 miles south of Qui Nhon. The Marines and the Army combine for the operation and meet only minimal resistance. Two Viet Cong are captured.

**25 June 1966 (United States)**-Battalion Team 1/26 (Reinforced) embark for the Western Pacific.

**25 June-2 July 1966 (Vietnam-Operation JAY)**- The operation begins about 13 miles northwest of Hue with the landing of elements of the 2nd Battalion, 4th Marines. The North Vietnamese 812th Main Force Battalion get boxed in when the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines are airlifted into positions about four miles south of Hue. The Marines defeat the Viet Cong in the eight-day battle and kill about 80 of the enemy.

**26 June 1966 (Vietnam)**-Two Marines, Sergeant James S. Dodson and Lance Corporal Walter Eckes, who had been captured near Da Nang in early May are able to overpower their guards and escape. Following a four-day journey, the Marines make contact with other Marines at An Hoa.

**30 June 1966 (United States-Mediterranean)**-Battalion Landing Team 2/6, relieves the BLT-1/8 after moving to the 6th Fleet to begin a training deployment.

**4 July-27 October 1966 (Vietnam-Operation MACON )**-The Americans begin a search and destroy mission southwest of Da Nang at An Hoa in Quang Nam Province. It was divided into three phases and it resulted in the killing of 380 Viet Cong. The American Marines lost 24.

**7 July-4 August 1966 (Vietnam-Operation HASTINGS)**-The Marines initiate the Corps' largest multi-battalion operation (2nd Battalion, 1st Marines, 1st Battalion, 3rd Marines, 2nd Battalion, 4th Marines and the 3rd Battalion, 4th Marines and an artillery battalion 3rd Battalion, 12th Marines. Other support troops also participated) of the war. The 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines joined the attack on 16 July. At the end of the operation, the enemy sustained 882 killed and 15 captured. The Marines sustain moderate casualties. Captain (Later, Major) Robert J. Modrzejewski, Company K, 3rd Battalion, 4th Marines and Staff Sergeant (Later 2nd Lt.) John J. McGinty III, also of Company K, 4th Marines each receive the Medal of Honor for their actions above and beyond the call of duty during the fighting. The Medals are awarded on 12 March, 1968.

**17 July 1966 (Vietnam-Operation HASTINGS)**-One thousand Marines land on the beach and set up a blocking force designed to destroy a North Vietnamese division which had crossed the DMZ.

**24 July 1966 (Vietnam)**-Lance Corporal (Later Sergeant) Richard A. Pittman Company I, 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines while operating with his patrol hears Marines in the front call for more firepower. He changes his rifle for a machine gun and speeds to the front. He immediately comes under heavy fire as he advances. Undeterred, he continues and returns fire, eliminating the enemy as he moves forward. Suddenly he is attacked by 30-40 enemy troops just as he reaches his fallen buddies. He sets up a position in the middle of the path and continues to fire. His machine gun jams, but he grabs a sub-machine gun from one of the fallen Marines and a pistol to continue the fight. The enemy withdraws as his ammunition was being exhausted, except for one grenade, that he tossed at the retreating enemy. Pittman then rejoins his platoon, but his actions save many of his wounded Marines. He is awarded the Medal of Honor on 14 May 1968.

**25 July 1966 (Vietnam)**-The 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines' Company I is ambushed slightly south of the DMZ and Company K is also ambushed about 1,000 yards from where Company I's position. Nevertheless, both companies are able to link up and fight their way out of the trap.

**27 July 1966 (United States)**-The Department of Defense lists the armed forces at a strength of 3,093,356 men. Of that, the Marine Corps stands at 261,659.

**31 July 1966 (Vietnam)**-Marines, during the month of May kill 1,611 Viet Cong, primarily due to Operations HASTINGS and MACON. Also, Marine jets logged 5,789 missions during the same month.

**8-9 August 1966 (Vietnam)**A platoon of Company E, 2nd Battalion, 4th Marines is encircled by the North Koreans near Cam Lo. Major Howard Vincent Lee, the company commander, aware that the platoon is taking casualties and under heavy attack takes 7 Marines and flies to their position by helicopter. He and two men disembark from the chopper and Major Lee moves from man-to-man inside the perimeter directing them despite their circumstances. He becomes wounded while engaged in encouraging his exhausted men. A grenade had exploded and wounded him in various places including his eye, but despite his wounds, Major Lee continued to lead his men who were then defending against a full-scale attack. On the morning of the 9th, Major Lee collapsed and he is forced to surrender the command. Lee's actions "saved his men from capture, minimized the loss of lives and dealt the enemy a severe defeat." Major Lee is awarded the Medal of Honor for his intrepid actions. It is awarded on 25 October, 1967.

**12 August 1966 (Vietnam)**-Marine pilots raid Haiphong as part of a combined-service attack. The attack destroys four oil depots.

**16-29 August 1966 (Vietnam)**-More than 2,000 Marines (5th Marine Division) land 100 miles east of Saigon in participation of Operation DECKHOUSE III. The Marines intend to trap North Vietnamese troops that are forming in the area of BinhTuy province.

**20 August 1966 (Okinawa)**-The Headquarters Regimental Landing Team 26 arrive at Okinawa to become part of the 9th Marine Amphibious Brigade. Also, Operation ALLEGHENY begins about 15 miles southwest of Da Nang in Quang Nam province.

**24 August 1966 (Vietnam)**-Marine pilots participate in raids that strike the vicinities of Dong Hoi, Vinh and Thanh Hoa, all near Hanoi and they destroy or damage communication centers and oil facilities.

**1 September 1966 (Vietnam-Operation Allegheny)**-The 5th Marine Division is in combat for the first time since WW II. The 2nd Battalion, 26th Marines clash with the North Vietnamese southwest

of Da Nang.

**2 September 1966 (Vietnam)**-Battalion Landing Team 3/26 depart from San Diego for the western Pacific.

**6 September 1966 (Far East)**-Women Marines are requested for service in the Far East. By February 1969 there are about 100 women Marines based in Japan, Okinawa and South Vietnam.

**13 September 1966 (United States)**-Battalion Landing Team 3/2 with Marine Helicopter Squadron 365 departs Camp Lejeune for the Caribbean Sea. The battalion relieves BLT 3/6.

**15-17 September 1966 (Vietnam-Operation DECKHOUSE IV)**-The operation begins on the 15th and lasts until the 17th. BLT-1/26 and HMM-363 attack in Quang Tri province. The Marines kill 83 and capture 11 weapons.

**17-27 September 1966 (Vietnam)**-Marines initiate Operation GOLDEN FLEECE, which is designed to protect the rice crop in Quang Ngai province. They capture 727 tons of Viet Cong Rice, while protecting 7,620 tons of S. Vietnamese rice.

**17 September 1966 (USMC)**-The Marine Corps decides to defer resignations and retirement requests of some pilots and key maintenance officers. It affects about 500 of the 21,500 active duty officers.

**1 November 1966 (Vietnam)**-A new fixed-wing aircraft, the A-6A "Intruder" arrives in Vietnam with the arrival of VMA (AW)-242. It is introduced and works effectively regardless of weather conditions enabling it to drop its ordnance on moving targets during the night or in inclement weather. Also, in the United States, four Marines die while the Marines fight a brush fire in the Pedro de Lumbré Canyon area.

**4 November 1966 (United States-Mediterranean)**-Battalion Landing Team 3/8 departs Camp Lejeune en route to the Mediterranean to relieve BLT 2/6.

**12 November 1966 (Vietnam)**-The Marine Corps had established 40 Command Action Platoons (Marine squad and one platoon of S. Vietnamese) in the I Corps area. These had been so successful that Lt. General Lewis W. Walt plans to increase the number to 75 by the end of the year.

**14 November 1966 (Vietnam)**-Viet Cong snipers shoot down two Marine helicopters, which kills 5 crewmen and wounds two others.

**28 November 1966 (United States-Caribbean)**-Battalion Landing Team 3/8 departs Camp Lejeune to relieve BLT-2/6 in the Mediterranean.

**29 November 1966 (Vietnam)**-The Marines at Khe Sanh establish a one-battalion base close to the Special Forces camp in Quang Tri province.

**6 December 1966 (United States)**-Sergeant Robert Emmet O'Malley Company I, attached to the 3/3 leads successive attacks against the Viet Cong. O'Malley is the first Marine to receive the Medal of Honor since WW II.

**11 December 1966 (Vietnam)**-The 3rd Battalion, 25th Marines lands in Vietnam. It is attached to the operational control of the 4th Marines.

**13-16 December 1966 (Vietnam-Operation CHINOOK)**-The 2nd Battalion and the 3rd Battalion, 20th Marines begins the operation (13th), intended to block the Viet Cong access from the mountains to Hue. The operation comes to a close on the 16th.

**23 December 1966 (Vietnam)**-Heavy fighting breaks out in northern Vietnam prior to a 2-day truce for Christmas. The skirmish lasts about 50 minutes; 8 of the enemy are killed. Marine casualties are reported as light.

**31 December 1966 (United States)**-The Marine Corps accepted 14,980 draftees during 1966. Also Marine Corps strength stands at 22,709 officers and 258,835 enlisted men for a total of 281,709 men.

**3-11 January 1967 (Vietnam)**-Marine commandant, General Wallace M. Greene, Jr., following his visit to the Far East states that almost 25 % of the Marine forces in Vietnam is involved in combat.

**5-15 January 1967 (Vietnam-Operation DECKHOUSE V)**-The 7th Fleet's Special Landing Force (BLT-1/9) lands in the Kien Hoa province, Mekong Delta about 62 miles south of Saigon. It is supported by Marine Medium Helicopter Squadron 362 and two S. Vietnamese Marine Divisions. The target is known by the Viet Cong as the Thanh Phu Secret Zone. At the end of the operation, 21 Viet Cong are killed. The Marines sustain 7 killed.

**6 January 1967 (United States-Caribbean)**-The 1st Battalion departs Camp Lejeune to relieve the 1st Battalion, 2nd Marines at Guantanamo. It becomes part of the naval base's defense system.

**12 January 1967 (United States)**-General Holland M. Smith, the father of modern amphibious warfare, dies at Balboa Naval Hospital, San Diego. He led the V Corps amphibious invasions of the Gilberts, Marshalls and the Marianas in WW II.

**17 January 1967 (United States)**-The 28th Marines is reactivated as part of the 5th Marine Division at Camp Pendleton, California.

**18 January 1967 (Vietnam)**-Marine Helicopter Squadron 363 replaces Marine Helicopter Squadron 362 as an element of the 7th Fleet Special Landing Force. The Squadron 362 moves to Ky Ha air facility in Chu Lai.

**25 January 1967 (Vietnam)**-BLT-1/4 replaces BLT-1/9 as the Seventh Fleet Special Landing Force. The 1st Battalion, 9th Marines relieves BLT-1/3 at Phu Bai, S. Vietnam and the BLT-1/3 moves to Okinawa on 8 February.

**31 January 1967 (Vietnam-Operation PRAIRIE I)**-The operation, which began on 3 August 1966, in Quang Tri province with the 4th Marines ends. It is the longest battle of the Vietnam War up to this point. The Marines sustain 275 killed and 1,159 wounded. The North Vietnamese sustain 1,397 killed and 27 captured. Also, the Secretary of the Navy, Paul H. Nitze awards the Medal of Honor posthumously to 1st Lt. Frank S. Reasoner. On 12 July 1965, Sergeant Reasoner (3rd Recon Battalion), led an 18-man patrol southwest of Da Nang, which came under heavy fire. His radioman was hit and Reasoner immediately laid down cover fire, killing two Viet Cong and interrupting enemy machine gun fire. Sergeant Reasoner was about to give first aid to his radioman when he was mortally wounded.

**1 February 1967 (Vietnam-Operation Prairie II)**-The operation begins in Quang Tri province by units of the 3rd Marine Division. It lasts for 46-days and ends on 18 March. Ninety-three Marines are killed. The Viet Cong lose 693 killed.

**7 February 1967 (United States)**-Navy Under Secretary Robert B. Baldwin awards the Medal of Honor posthumously to Lance Corporal Joe C. Paul for his heroic actions during Operation STARLIGHT in August 1965. As a Fire Team leader (Company H, 2nd Battalion, 4th Marines,

3rd Marine Division) near Chu Lai, on 18 August 1965, enemy fire had pinned down his company. Lance Corporal Paul disregards his own safety and races through the rice paddies and delivers effective suppressive fire to allow the casualties to be evacuated. He was wounded, but refuses to leave his position until he collapsed. He is then evacuated, but he dies of his wound on the following day.

**8-12 February 1967 (Vietnam)**-All offensive operations are stopped during Tet, the Lunar New Year Holiday which was approved by the U.S. and the Viet Cong. During the alleged truce, the Marines count 141 truce violations. The violations included everything from sniper fire to mortar barrages.

**12-22 February 1967 (Vietnam-Operation STONE)**-The 1st Marines begin the operation in Quang Nam province on the 12th and they destroy Viet Cong bunkers, caves and tunnels. The Marines encircle the enemy in the village of La Haun. The operation ends on the 22nd. The Marines kill 291 Viet Cong, while sustaining only 9 killed.

**16 February 1967 (Vietnam-Operation Chinook I)**-The operation which began on 19 December 1966, comes to a close. It ends northwest of Hue. The 4th Marines supported by elements of the 9th Marines and 26th Marines. The Marines sustain 4 killed and 73 wounded. The Viet Cong lose 179 killed and five are captured.

**21 February 28 1967 (Vietnam)**-Company F, 2nd Battalion, 3rd Marines, 3rd Marine Division is on the advance through the jungle outside of Cam Lo in search of a heavily besieged reconnaissance patrol when it is suddenly caught by small arms and automatic weapons fire after it reaches only about 215 yards from the starting line. The Marines react quickly, moving into the thick terrain and returning fire. Private 1st Class, James Anderson Jr., is in the thick of the battle when a grenade is tossed into the small perimeter. It lands close to his head, and he grabs it and pulls it close to his body, then he curled around it as it exploded. Several Marines are wounded, but his actions saved many more. He receives the Medal of Honor posthumously for his selfless act of heroism. It is awarded to him on 21 August 1968. **Also**, during Operation CHINOOK II, Dr. Bernard B. Fall, an author and authority on Vietnam is killed, while on patrol with a Marine unit (1st Battalion, 9th Marines). He steps on a mine northwest of Hue.

**25 February 1967 (Vietnam)**-The III MAF is given authority to fire artillery into the DMZ and it also receives the authority to fire into the southern sector of North Vietnam.

**27 February 1967 (Vietnam)**- 1st Lt. Harvey C. Barnum (later captain) Company H, 2nd Battalion, 9th Marines 3rd Marine Division received the Medal of Honor for his actions on 18 December 1965. His company was pinned down by effective enemy fire and was separated from the main body of the battalion. Lt. Barnum quickly made a reconnaissance of the area seeking targets for his artillery. He discovers the company commander mortally wounded and the radio operator killed. He, ignoring his own safety, gave aid to the commander then he removed the radio from the dead operator and strapped it to himself. At about the same time he assumed command of the company. He moved immediately towards the heavy fire, while rallying the company and reorganizing them to replace the loss of key personnel. Then he moves through enemy fire to control the air attack of two helicopters and he directs a platoon in a successful counterattack. Having thus cleared a small area, he requested and directed the landing of 2 transport helicopters for the evacuation of the dead and wounded. He then assisted in the mopping up and final seizure of the battalion's objective. His gallant initiative and heroic conduct reflected great credit upon himself and were in keeping with

the highest traditions of the Marine Corps and the U.S. Naval Service.

**3 March 1967 (Vietnam-Operation DECKHOUSE VI)**-The operation which began on 16 February, 1967 comes to an end southeast of Ngai City. Special Landing Force (BLT-1/4 and HMN-363) have killed 280 Viet Cong. The Marines sustain 8 killed and 80 wounded.

**17 March 1967 (Vietnam)**-The 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines land at Phuoc Bien, which is south of Chu Lai. Eight tanks also land in what is probably the first time tanks had landed from an LST since WW II.

**18 March 1967 (Vietnam-Operation Prairie II)**-The operation, which began on 1 February sent the 3rd Marine Division into the DMZ area in Quang Tri province. It ends on the 18th of March. The Viet Cong lose 695 killed and the Marines lose 129 killed. Also, Master Sergeant Barbara J. Dulinsky arrives in Saigon. She is the first woman ordered into a combat zone. Shortly afterward, she is joined by six other women Marines.

**22 March 1967 (Vietnam-Operation NEW CASTLE)**-The operation lasts three-days and focuses on search and destroy in Quang Man province by the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines. The Marines kill 118 Viet Cong during the operation.

**24 March 1967 (Hawaii)**-Elements of the 5th Shore Party Battalion and the 5th Motor Transport Battalion arrive at Kaneohe Bay to reinforce the 1st Battalion, 27th Marines. **Also, in Vietnam,** Company A, 1st Battalion, 9th Marines was part of Operation PRAIRIE III. This day the company comes under intense fire by the enemy in the Gio Linh district, Quang Tri Province. Sergeant Singleton leads an attack against the enemy and kills eight and drives the remainder away, but he was cut down and mortally wounded in the process. Sergeant Walter K. Singleton was awarded the Medal of Honor for his selfless courage which saved many of his Marines from death. He receives the Medal of Honor posthumously on 5 September, 1968

**26 March 1967 (Vietnam-Operation Beacon Hill I )**-The operation which began on 20 March, has the 3rd Marine Division engaged in clearing the Communists from Quang Tri province. On this day, PFC Douglas E. Dickey, 2nd Platoon, Company B, 1st Battalion heads toward the area where he was to replace a radio operator, but as he gets there a grenade is thrown in the midst of a group of Marines that included the wounded radio operator. He immediately throws himself on the grenade, saving the lives of the other Marines. He receives the Medal of Honor posthumously for his act of selfless heroism on 16 April, 1968.

**30 March 1967-(Vietnam)**-Company I, 3rd Battalion, 9th Marines is establishing night ambush sites in Quang Tri province when North Koreans open up with automatic weapons and mortar fire. Second Lt. John P. Bobo quickly organizes a defense then moves from man-to-man encouraging the outnumbered Marines. He recovers a rocket launcher from his casualties and reorganizes a new rocket launcher team. He directs their fire toward the enemy machine gun positions. Suddenly a mortar round explodes and severs his right leg below the knee. He refuses evacuation and stays to command a firing position to deliver devastating fire into the enemy who were attempting to overrun the Marines. Lt. Bobo is again wounded but this time it is a mortal wound. He receives the Medal of Honor posthumously for his courage and superb leadership on 27 August, 1968.

**7 April 1967 (Vietnam-Operation DESOTO)**-The operation which began on 26 January by elements of the 7th, Marines ends southwest of Quang Ngai. Marines killed 383 of the enemy. They also captured more than 100 tons of rice. The Marines sustain 69 killed and 556 are wounded.

**12 April 1967 (United States)**-General Wallace M. Greene, Jr., the commandant of the Marine Corps reports to a Congressional committee that in order to do the job right in Vietnam, he will need 40,000 additional Marines.

**15 April 1967 (Vietnam)**-At the request of the S. Vietnamese government, Marines start to clear an area near the DMZ. They lay mines and radar units set to detect the movement of people and they string barbed wire. The Marines believe that it will make the invasion of the Viet Cong into S. Vietnam too costly.

**17 April 1967 (Vietnam)**-Four thousand Army troops assume pacification duties at Chu Lai, which frees up U. S. Marines to move further north to reinforce the area of the DMZ.

**20 April 1967 (Okinawa-Vietnam)**-Regimental Landing Team 26 departs Okinawa for the Republic of S. Vietnam.

**21 April 1967 (Vietnam)**-The Marines, Company F, 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines, 1st Marine Division, during Operation Union was conducting offensive operations at Binh Son. They discovered an entrenched enemy position and reacted immediately. The Marines charged the positions and when they came in close they were hit by small arms, grenades, automatic weapons and mortar fire. Private First Class Gary Wayne Martini crawled to a dike and tossed grenades that killed a few of the enemy troops. Afterward, he returns to his platoon. He notices several wounded Marines from his new position. He speeds to the Marines and drags one of them back, then he returns despite receiving a wound during the first attempt. The trek is dangerous and as he is getting back with another wounded Marine. He is hit with a mortal wound. He was able to see some of the Marines were about to come out and assist him, but he warned them to remain under cover. Still he manages to drag the wounded man to safety, just before he succumbs to his wounds. He receives the Medal of Honor posthumously for his unyielding heroism on 22 October 1968.

**22 April-15 May 1967 (Vietnam-Operation SHAWNEE)**-Three battalions of Marines begin the operation in Thua Thien province. By the middle of May, two of the battalions are shifted to the north to reinforce the DMZ. The operation name is changed to CHOCTAW on 22 May, because only one battalion is in the area.

**24 April-2 May 1967 (Vietnam)**-Marines launch an attack against Hill 861 and Hill 881, both near Khe Sanh in Quang Tri province. On 28 April, the 2nd and 3rd Battalions, 3rd Marines occupy Hill 861. They were supported by planes and artillery. On 30 April, the 2nd Battalion and 3rd Battalion, 3rd Marines attack Hill 881 North and Hill 881 South. The Marines capture Hill 881 South in three days, thereby preventing the Viet Cong from gaining the high ground and attacking Khe Sanh from there.

**8 May 1967 (Vietnam)**-The North Vietnamese attack along the DMZ in an attempt to seize the base camp at Con Thien. The Marines sustain 35 killed and 99 wounded during the fighting. The North Vietnamese sustain 179 killed. A mortar exploded within fifteen feet of Lt. General Lewis W. Walt, while he is visiting the battle site, but he is unhurt.

**11-13 May 1967 (Vietnam)**-The battle for Hill 881 North and Hill 881 South ends. The 3rd Marines after the fight move to Dong Ha and the 26th Marines go to Khe Sanh. The Marines lose 155 killed and the North Vietnamese lose 940 killed.

**12 May 1967 (Vietnam-Operation BEACON STAR)**-The operation which began on 22 April by units of the 3rd Marines ends. The Marines had landed from amphibious craft and helicopters in the

area northwest of Hue. The North Vietnamese sustain 469 killed. The Marines sustain 24 killed.

**14 May 1967 (Vietnam-Operation Beaver Cage)**-The operation began on 28 April by BLT-1/3 and HMM-263. The Marines kill 181 North Vietnamese and they capture 66. They also capture 11 weapons.

**17 May 1967 (Vietnam-Operation Union)**-The 1st and 5th Marines, which began the operation on 28 April ends in Quang Nam and Quang Tin provinces. The Marines kill 865 North Vietnamese during the operation.

**18-27 May 1967 (Vietnam-Operation Hickory)**-The Marines (2/9, 3/9, 2/3, 2/4 and 2/26) initiate the operation in the area of Con Thien. It halts on the 27th of May. The Marines had engaged the 328 NVA division. The Marines sustain 142 killed and 896 wounded. The North Vietnamese sustain 304 killed and 30 captured.

**21 May 1967 (Vietnam-Operation SHAWNEE)**-The operation ends near Phu Bai. The Marines who participated were the 4th Marines and they had accounted for 117 confirmed deaths of the Viet Cong.

**22 May 1967 (United States-Vietnam)**-Congressman James J. Howard of New Jersey states to the house of Representatives that the M-16 rifles are jamming. A letter from an unidentified Marine was read to the House, explaining that the rifles that jammed while the Marines attacked Hill 881 North caused the deaths of many Marines.

**26 May 1967 (Vietnam-Operation UNION II)**-The 5th Marines, supported by the 1st Ranger Group (ARVN) launch the operation in Quang Nam and Quang Tin provinces. On the following day, heavy fighting erupts and 28 North Vietnamese and 28 Marines are killed. The operation ends on 6 June. The North Vietnamese sustains 701 killed. The 5th marines sustains 110 killed and 241 wounded.

**26 May-6 June 1967 (Vietnam-Operation Union II)**-The operation began on 26 May by the 1st and 3rd Battalions, 5th Marines, supported by elements of the Republic of Vietnam (ARVN) intended to flush out the Viet Cong. Company F, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines reinforces the 1st Battalion. Companies L and M, 3rd Battalion reinforce the 1st Battalion,, when they engage he enemy at LZ Eagle near Lui Loc Son (May 26) . The Marines sustain 38 killed and 82 wounded. On 29 May Company F, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines lands by helicopter and engages the enemy at Vinh Huy. In eight hours of ferocious fighting the company sustains 54 killed and 73 wounded. On the morning of 2 June, Company D, 1st Battalion, 5th Marines and Company F, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines advanced toward Objective Foxtrot, near Vinh Nuy. By 1200, Company F approached a horse-shoe shaped rice paddy, which had hills on either side (Hill A and Hill B) and each one was covered in dense foliage preventing the companies from making visual contact with each other.

Suddenly as three platoons and headquarter group got well inside the rice paddy, the 3rd NVA Regiment opened up on the Americans. The fire was coming from all sides. The Marines bolted for cover to the rear of the dikes, the 1st and 2nd Platoons were taking high casualties, but the third Platoon, to the rear of the first two was not in the line of fire. Meanwhile, Captain James A. Graham, Company F's commander seemed to be everywhere. He re-organized his headquarters group and attacked through the 2nd Platoon's positions. The Marines knocked out several machine gun positions.

Afterward, the Marines moved some of their wounded to more protected areas of the rice paddy.

Captain Graham ordered the others to the rear and although he was twice wounded, he refused to leave a wounded Marine. His position is overrun by about 25 North Vietnamese. Captain Graham was killed while repulsing the enemy; he is responsible for killing 15 of the enemy. He is awarded the Medal of Honor posthumously.

Meanwhile, Sergeant Melvin Long leads his squad against Hill A and succeeds in getting his Marines to the crest. They pour fire into the enemy machine gun emplacements. One of the heroes of the Marines was an enemy soldier, named Kinh, who had defected. He singlehandedly killed 25-30 NVA troops who were concealed in spider holes, which were covered with mats. Later in the afternoon, Company D, 1st Battalion 7th Marines arrived to reinforce the Marines already there. U. S. Air support also arrived with additional troops. Their arrival caused the NVA to break contact.

The 3rd of June, a truce was agreed upon by both sides. Both sides searched the tall grass for the bodies of their respective forces. After the North Koreans retrieved their casualties, they absconded from the area of Vinh Huy. The operation ended on 6 June with 701 North Vietnamese dead. The Marines sustain 110 killed and 241 wounded.

**31 May 1967 (Vietnam)**-Lt. General Lewis W. Walt is succeeded in Vietnam by Lt. General Robert E. Cushman as commander of the Marines in Vietnam.

**2 June 1967 (Vietnam)**-During Operation Union II, the 2nd Platoon of Company F, 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines, 1st Marine Division gets pinned down by enemy fire as it passes through a rice paddy. Captain James A. Graham, commanding officer of Company F, forms an assault unit and storms through the enemy fire, coming from 2 concealed enemy machine guns. The first position is forced to abandon their position, relieving pressure on the 2nd Platoon. Captain Graham continues the attack and sustains two wounds while killing about 15 of the enemy. Graham makes successive attempts to take the position, but all fail. He orders the men to return to their original positions after their ammunition runs out and he stays with a wounded Marine. A final message from Graham states that he was under assault by about 25 of the enemy. He dies while protecting the wounded Marine. He receives the Medal of Honor posthumously on October 29 1968.

**23 June 1967 (United States)**-A helicopter (HU-18) crashes into a Sea Stallion (CH-53A) helicopter at Camp Lejeune killing 20 Marines.

**1 July 1967 (United States)**-Lt. General Chapman, Jr. becomes assistant commandant of the Marine Corps.

**2 July 1967 (Vietnam-Operation Buffalo)**-The operation begins on this day when an enemy force composed of about 5 battalions attack the 1st Battalion, 9th Marines several miles northeast of Con Thien. Heavy fighting breaks out in the initial days of the operation. Eighty-four Marines are killed. The operation ends on 14 July. The North Vietnamese lose 1,301 killed and the Marines sustain 110 killed and 290 wounded.

**3-4 July 1967 (Vietnam)**-The North Vietnamese attack an outpost within the perimeter of Nong Son and kill four of the five defending Marines. PFC Melvn E. Newlin, the only survivor props himself against his machine gun and pours devastating fire into the charging Viet Cong. Repeatedly hit by small arms fire he twice repulsed the enemy. During a third attempt he was knocked unconscious by a grenade that wounded him. The Viet Cong thought him to be dead and they continued their assault on the main force. Meanwhile, Newlin regained consciousness and crawled back to his machine gun and again begins to fire on the enemy. He spotted the Viet Cong attempting

to bring a captured 106 recoilless weapon to bear on the other Marine positions, he shifted his gun and began firing on the enemy. He actually stopped the attack, but then they focused on him and he fights off two more attacks. He is then mortally wounded, but his courage gave the other Marines the time they needed to organize and fight off the second attack. PFC Melvin Newlin receives the Medal of Honor posthumously on 9 March 1969.

**9 July 1967 (Vietnam-Operation CHOCTAW)**-The operation began on May 21 1967. It was run by the 4th Marines and concluded with the death of 160 North Vietnamese killed.

**14-16 July 1967 (Vietnam-Operation Hickory II)**-The enemy attacked the Marines on the second day of the operation south of the DMZ and they killed one Marine and wounded 30 others. The Marines kill 25 enemy troops during the battle which lasted all day.

**24 July 1967 (Vietnam)**-Marine Corps jets pound the Thai Nguyen power plant located in North Vietnam about thirty miles from Hanoi.

**1 August 1967 (Vietnam)**-At the present time there are 78,000 Marines in Vietnam.

**11 August 1967 (Vietnam)**-The Marines of the First Platoon Company K, 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines were operating in Quang Nam province when Lance Corporal Roy M. Wheat, who was assigned with two other Marines to provide security for the Seabees' crew who was working in the vicinity of Liberty Road. He reconnoitered the area and when he was close to his lines he tripped a concealed antipersonnel mine. Lance Corporal Wheat throws himself on the exploding device and absorbs the full impact. His act of selfless bravery saves the lives of the other two Marines. He is awarded the Medal of Honor posthumously on 23 September, 1968.

**13 August 1967 (Vietnam-Operation KINGFISHER)**-Two companies attached to the 3rd Battalion, 26th Marines are transferred to the 9th Marines for their participation in Operation KINGFISHER. The operation, which began on 16 July, ends on 31 October. The operation occurred in the southern portion of the DMZ and it has the same objective as Operation Buffalo and HICKORY II, to block the entrance of North Vietnamese into Quang Tri Province. The operation saw only minor contact with the enemy up to July 27, but on the 28th of July the situation began to change. The 2nd Battalion, 9th Marines moved up the road, Provincial Route 606, supported by a platoon of M48s, 3 LVTEs and 3 M50 Ontos (Tank destroyers). No contact with the enemy was made. The Marines established night positions close to the Ben Hai River.

On the following morning (29th), a mine exploded wounding 5 Marines. At nearly the same time, the NVA opened fire with small arms and mortars, plus they attacked the armored vehicles with RPGs. The Marines and the NVA were so close together that air support was of no use. The Marine column broke into several separate fire fights. After dark the isolated Marine companies established night positions and on the 30th of July, they were relieved by the 3rd Battalion, 4th Marines.

The 3rd Battalion, 4th Marines operating south of Con Thien encounter a North Vietnamese force and trap them between two Marine companies. The Marines kill 38 and they capture 1, but they lose 6 dead and 46 wounded.

The Marines, 3/6 on 7 September supported by M-48s engage a North Vietnamese unit south of Con Thien. After the battle, the enemy lost 51 killed and the Marines lost 14 killed. Later on the 10th, the North Vietnamese (812th NVA Regiment), some of which were wearing Marine helmets and flak jackets attacks Marine lines of the 3/6. The North Vietnamese are unable to break through the lines, due in great part to the U. S. artillery. By 2030, the North Vietnamese pull . On the following

morning the Marines find 140 enemy bodies. The Marines lose 34 dead and 192 wounded.

The North Vietnamese attack the northeastern sector of Con Thien, on the morning of the 13th September, but again they fail to break through the lines of the Marines. They repulse the enemy with artillery and small arms fire.

On 21 September elements of the 2nd Battalion, 4th Marines sweep the area east of Con Thien. The 3-company attack comes under heavy fire, Company F is hit with the most fire and Company E, racing down from the Trace also encounters heavy fire. Lance Corporal Jedh Colby, a machine gunner for Company F, is wounded when his company is fired upon, but disregarding his wound, he remains in the open and pours effective fire upon the enemy. The North Koreans intending to annihilate the Marines focus first on him and he is again wounded, making the use of his machine gun impossible. An enemy grenade is thrown amongst his Marines and without hesitation, he throws himself on the exploding grenade. Afterward, he is able to crawl toward a wounded Marine that he gives first aid and then he succumbed. Lance Corporal Jedh Colby receives the Medal of Honor posthumously for his heroism.

Company G, initially the blocking force of the other two Companies attempts to outflank the North Vietnamese, but they are repulsed. The three companies of Marines halt their fighting to allow artillery and planes to throw their support to the attack. Company H comes up to recover some of the bodies and the wounded. In addition, they destroy the equipment left in the field.

On 14 October, the 2nd Battalion, 4th Marines operating near the Washout Bridge was hit with an artillery barrage just as a North Vietnamese unit was approaching the bridge. At about the same time, Marine snipers spot the NVA forming in front of Company H, and preparing to attack. The snipers open fire and it is followed by tank fire and machine gun fire. The North Vietnamese, due to the American fire are compelled to attack prematurely, but the attack fails to penetrate the company wire. It is forced to pull back.

Company G is attacked at 0230 (14th). They take out 2 machine gun positions with RPGs and follow that by breaking through the wire and overrun the command post. The commander, Captain Jack W. Phillips was killed along with his forward observer and three platoon leaders. Another officer, Captain James W. McCarter (new company commander) was killed before he could reach the command post. During the fighting, Sgt. Paul Hellstrom is directing fire on the North Vietnamese when a grenade lands in his position. He immediately throws his armored vest atop the grenade and then he placed his body on top of it, taking the full impact of the grenade, saving the lives of 5 other Marines who were at his position. He receives the Medal of Honor posthumously for his actions. Finally Company F is ordered to support Company G. They, supported by AC-47s drive the North Koreans out by 0430.

The 2/4 Marines began a sweep of the area north of Route 561 on 25 October, and although there was no enemy contact, the undergrowth was heavy causing the Marines to establish night positions. North Vietnamese rockets sting the positions of the 2/4 and kill the executive officer, Major John Lawendowski. The commanding officer, Lt. Col. John Hammond and two others are wounded and evacuated by helicopter. Lt. John C. Studt is flown in to assume command of the battalion.

On 26 October, the 2nd Battalion, 4th Marines, minus Company F, heads north and secures the objective by 13:00. Then the North Koreans open up with mortar fire and small arms. Two helicopters are called to pick up casualties, but the first was shot down and the latter was compelled to make a forced landing.

Lt. Colonel John C. Studt calls for reinforcements and Company F speeds to the line and two companies from 3/3 are called upon. Marines reach the positions of the 2/4 by dusk. The North Vietnamese then withdraw at about 02:00 on the 27th. The North Vietnamese sustain more than 1,100 killed and 5 captured. The Marines sustain 340 killed and 1,461 wounded during Operation KINGFISHER.

**18 August 1967 (United States-Mediterranean)**-Battalion Landing Team 1/2 (1st Battalion, 2nd Marines) departs Camp Lejeune to serve six months with the 6th Fleet.

**19 August 1967 (Vietnam)**-Captain (later major) Stephen W. Press while operating as part of Marine Observation Squadron 6 on an escort mission, gets an urgent call to assist four American soldiers that were being attacked by a North Vietnamese force while they are stranded on a beach. Press flies to the beach in his helicopter and spots the enemy bayoneting some of the soldiers. He unleashes a devastating amount of fire power that drives the enemy back. He then directs his helicopter to land between the wounded men and the enemy. He repeatedly beats back the enemy and succeeds in rescuing the wounded. Press gets off and settles in the water 4 times due to overcrowding before his skills get the helicopter in the air. He receives the Medal of Honor for his bravery above and beyond the call of duty on 16 January 1969. Press later dies in a motorcycle accident on 20 July 1969.

**19-27 August 1967 (Vietnam)**-The North Vietnamese initiate a large attack by artillery fire on Con Thien. They fire more than 3,000 rounds of heavy artillery, mortar and rockets. The U. S. returns more than 12,000 rounds. In addition, the navy gun ships fire more than 6,000 rounds and fighter planes fly 5,200 missions against the North Vietnamese positions.

**28 August 1967 (Vietnam)**-Dong Ha is struck by about 150 artillery and rocket rounds that destroy 2 planes and damage 24 others.

**30 August 1967 (Vietnam)**-Enemy mortar rounds strike Phu Bai and cause great damage. Three Marines are killed and 54 more are wounded. In addition 18 helicopters are damaged.

**3 September 1967 (Vietnam)**-At Khe Sahn, the final elements of the 3rd Battalion, 26th Marines depart the city en route to eastern Quang Tri province.

**4-15 September 1967 (Vietnam-Operation Swift)**-The operation continues for 11-days. It is a search and destroy mission by the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines. At 0430 on the 4th, the North Koreans attack Company D, but their fire had been inaccurate and only four Marines were wounded. The enemy continued the attack and by 0830, the Marines had lost 14 killed in action and another 15 had been wounded. Company D is being pressed badly and assistance is badly needed. Company B had left the battalion command post before 0700 and arrived near the village of Dong Son. Just after 0700, helicopters arrive and deliver 40mm rockets into the enemy positions which are slightly more than 50 yards from the Marines. At nearly the same time, an aerial observer fling overhead directs an artillery attack against the North Koreans. The combination of the air and artillery attacks succeeds in slowing down the attacks, but not for long. The 1st NVA Regiment's seems hell-bent on destroying the Marines.

By about mid-morning, the 1st Battalion commander, Lt. Col. Peter Hilgartner urgently requests reinforcements. Companies K and M are sent. They arrive before the day is over. Lt. Vincent R. Capodanno, a Catholic priest, and chaplain of the Marines' 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines was at the command post when he heard that one platoon of M Company was about to be overrun. He departed

the command post and rushed to the site. He saw a corpsman who had been wounded badly and exposed his body to protect the wounded corpsman from enemy fire. Lt. Capodanno, known as the "Grunt Padre" is killed. He receives the Medal of Honor posthumously.

During the early afternoon of 6 September, Lt. Col. Hilgartner orders his Marines to attack the village of Chau Lam, which lies slightly east of the original battlefield. Company B, 1st Battalion, 5th Marines and Company D, 1st Battalion 1st Marines attack the frontal positions against heavy sniper fire. While Company B is taking heavy fire, Company D tries to outflank the enemy, but as they reach the line of departure they are hit with mortar and small arms fire. The Marines consolidate their lines, but the North Koreans attempt to infiltrate. A few of the enemy get within about 10 yards of the perimeter, but they are killed.

The Marines make constant contact with the North Vietnamese for the next few days and engage in running battles as the North Vietnamese begin to flee from the villages. On 15 September, the operation concludes at 1600 northwest of Tam Ky. The Marines' Battalion (Reinforced) had devastated the 1st NVA Regiment and elements of the 3rd and 21st NVA Regiments. The North Vietnamese lose 571 killed during the operation. The Marines sustain 129 killed and 352 wounded.

**6 September 1967 (United States)**-The 3rd Battalion 2nd Marines departs Camp Lejeune to relieve the 3rd Battalion, 6th Marines at Guantanamo, Cuba and become part of the defense force there. **Also, in Vietnam**, Sergeant Rodney M. Davis, 2nd Platoon, Company B, 1st Battalion, 5th Marines, 1st Marine Division receives the Medal of Honor posthumously for his selfless actions. His platoon was pinned down by a superior numbered force of North Koreans. He threw himself on a thrown grenade and saved the lives of his fellow Marines. He receives the award on 26 March, 1969..

**13 September 1967 (Vietnam)**-The North Vietnamese attack Con Thien to eliminate the Marine positions which were blocking an invasion from the north. The Marines sustain six killed and 109 wounded, but they hold the position.

**18 September 1967 (Vietnam)**-At Con Thien and Cam Lo, both outposts, the situation is becoming worse because monsoon rains have begun earlier than usual. Flooding is occurring all along the DMZ. The Marines lose ten men to the flood waters and at the outposts, they are stranded in their foxholes in waist-high water. The Marines are faced with the dilemma of re-supplying the outposts.

**21 September 1967 (Vietnam)**-Lance Corporal Jedh Barker's squad is hit by surprise and forced to deploy in a combat formation and advance to a fortified position, which again fires on them. Barker is wounded during the initial firing, but he ignores his wound and pours devastating fire on the enemy position. The enemy pinpoint their fire on him and he is again wounded. Suddenly, an enemy grenade is tossed into their midst and Barker throws himself on the grenade taking the full impact. Still, he manages to crawl to a wounded Marine to administer first aid. Lance Corporal Jedh C. Barker is awarded the Medal of Honor posthumously on 31 October 1969.

**25-27 September 1967 (Vietnam)**-Con Thien is rocked by about 1,000 rockets and artillery fire on the 25th, which kills 2 Marines and wounds 202 others. The North Koreans again attack Con Thien on the 27th.

**4 October 1967 (Vietnam)** -The Army's 1st Cavalry Division arrives at Quang Tin and Quang Ngai and relieves the Marines. The Marines move north to reinforce other Marines along the DMZ. Also, it is reported that at Con Thien it is estimated that the North Vietnamese have suffered three thousand casualties, about three times the number sustained by Marines.

**5 October 1967 (United States)**-Major Clifton C. Williams, USMC, is killed when his T-38 jet trainer crashes at Tallahassee, Florida. Also in Vietnam, the 1st Marines at Da Nang move to Quang Tri in preparation to begin Operation MEDINA on the 11th.

**11-20 October 1967 (Vietnam-Operation MEDINA)**-Two battalions of the 1st Marine Regiment venture into the Hai Lang Forest, which extends from the Central Highlands to the Laotian border. The operation begins with the 1st Battalion, 1st Marines and the 2nd Battalion, 3rd Marines are landed by helicopter in the forest. They immediately clear the area around the LZ Dove and afterward they move to the northeast. At 0330 on the 11th, Company C, 1st Battalion, 3rd Marines are besieged by rocket and small arm, while they are holding blocking positions to the east. A ground attack against them is initiated, but it is repulsed.

On the following day (12th), both battalions continue the search to the southwest, but Company C, holds its positions. By about 1515, Company C, 1st Marines, while moving through the dense jungle, is attacked by 10 NVA soldiers. The Marines pull back to a small clearing and order the evacuation by helicopter to evacuate the wounded.

The North Vietnamese attack Company C, just after the evacuation mission was finished. They are attacked from 2 sides and it escalated. The use of grenades was implemented and in the course of the fighting, one landed in the command post. Corporal William T. Perkins, a combat photographer, with total disregard for his own safety throws himself on the grenade and he takes the full brunt of the explosion. He receives the Medal of Honor posthumously for his selfless courage on 20 June 1969.

Company D reinforces Company C and together they drive the enemy force away. At dawn on the 13th, the Marines discover 40 enemy dead in the vicinity of their positions. The Marines sustain 8 killed and some wounded.

The enemy avoids contact after the fighting, but the Marines still trek through the dense jungle in search of the enemy. The Marines capture more than four tons of rice, 16 weapons and a large amount of ammunition.

**October 14 1967 (Vietnam)**-During the defense of the area between Con Thien to Cam Lo, the Marines suddenly come under a sharp attack. The enemy throws a grenade into the positions of Sergeant Paul H. Foster and five other Marines (Company H, 3rd Battalion, 12th Marines, 3rd Marine Division). Foster while he was directing fire against the attackers, sees the grenade and throws his armored vest on top of it, then he jumps on it and takes the full impact. He is mortally wounded. He receives the Medal of Honor posthumously for his selfless courage on 20 June, 1969.

**24 October 1967 (Vietnam)**-Marine jets participate in the bombing of Phuc Yen airfield with Navy and Air Force planes. It is the control center of the North Vietnamese air defenses. The air raid destroys 10 MIGs.

**27 October 1967 (United States)**-The Department of Defense plans to increase the number of Negro officers within two years. At this time, there are 155 Negro officers in the Marine Corps.

**1 November 1967 (Vietnam-Operation SCOTLAND)**-Battalion Landing Team 1/26 reinforces the defenders at Khe Sanh. The operation ends on 31 March 1968.

**10 November 1967 (United States)**-President Lyndon B. Johnson celebrates the 192nd Birthday of the Marine Corps by visiting the base at Camp Pendleton, California. He is the first president to visit the base since 1942 when President Franklin D. Roosevelt visited.

**14 November 1967 (Vietnam)**-Major General Bruno A. Hochmuth, commander of the 3rd Marine Division, while en route to Dong Ha in a helicopter, dies when his helicopter explodes and crashes northwest of Hue. Major General Rathvon McC Tompkins is named to succeed him.

**5 December 1967 (United States-Caribbean)**-Battalion Landing Team 1/8 departs Camp Lejeune, N.C. for the Caribbean to relieve BLT 2/6 and become part of the Caribbean Ready Force. Marine Helicopter Squadron 365 moves from New River, N. C. to provide support for the 1st Battalion, 8th Marines.

**7 December 1967 (United States)**-Lt. General Lewis W. Walt is named as the Assistant Commandant effective 1 January 1968.

**13 November 1967 (Vietnam)**-Battalion Landing Team 3/26 is ordered to Khe Sanh to reinforce the Marines already there.

**20-21 December 1967 (Vietnam)**-Corporal Larry E. Smedley leads his 6-man squad toward an ambush site at the mouth of Happy Valley, near Phouc Ninh (2). Later that night, an enemy force of about 100 Viet Cong and North Korean regulars are spotted moving toward Hill 41. Smedley, realizing this was a move designed to attack Da Nang, he radioed for a reaction team, then moved to a more advantageous position and he leads an attack on the force. He is wounded by a grenade that explodes near him. Disregarding his wounds he leads yet another charge using his rifle and tossing grenades until he is again hit. Nevertheless, he stands and singlehandedly charges and destroys a machine gun position, but he is hit in the chest and is mortally wounded. Corporal Larry E., Smedley receives the Medal of Honor posthumously for his selfless courage on 20 June 1969.

**23 December 1967 (Vietnam)**-The number of American forces in Vietnam is 478,000. Of that number, 78,000 are Marines.

**26 December 1967 (Vietnam)**-Marine planes from Da Nang and Chu Lai strike targets near Dong Hoi and Hanoi in North Vietnam. Marine planes from other locations strike targets north of Gio Linh.

**1 January 1968 (United States)**-General Leonard F. Chapman Jr. becomes the 24th commandant of the U. S. Marine Corps. Also, at this time there are 298,498 Marines in the Corps and of those, 81,249 are in Vietnam.

**3 January 1968 (Vietnam-Operation Auburn)**-The operation, which started on 28 December by the 5th Marines terminates. The operation began when Companies I and M of the 3rd Battalion 5th Marines followed Company E, 3rd Marines (under control of the 5th Marines) onto Go Noi Island. The 5th Marines focused on the area southwest of Hoi An. It concluded with the deaths of about 37 of the enemy being killed.

**4 January 1968 (United States-Mediterranean)**-Battalion Landing Team 2/2 heads to the Mediterranean from Camp Lejeune to relieve BLT 1 /2 and to become part of the Mediterranean Landing Force.

**8 January 1968 (Vietnam)**-A CR-53 helicopter (USMC) crashes in Vietnam. The crew of 5 is killed, along with 36 passengers.

**11 January 1968 (Vietnam)**-The 5th Marines are transferred to the area south of DaNang. It is sent to the northernmost sector where it is reported that about 25,000 North Vietnamese are threatening.

**21 January-15 April 1968 (Vietnam)**-The North Vietnamese begin to shell the city of Khe Sanh and the supporting positions in the nearby positions.

**16 January 1968 (Vietnam)**-The 26th Marines complete their transfer to Khe Sanh. Also, in the United States, the 2nd Battalion, 8th Marines departs Camp Lejeune en route to Guantanamo, Cuba. The 26th Marines relieve the 3rd Battalion, 8th Marines.

**17 January 1968 (Vietnam)**-At Phu Bai, the 1st Battalion, 5th Cavalry, 1st Cavalry Division arrives. It relieves Marine units in the northern I Corps sector. The Marines, upon being relieved are able to move north.

**19 January 1968 (Vietnam)**-At Khe Sanh, about 25 North Vietnamese soldiers attack the 26th Marines, less than one week after they arrived in Khe Sanh. Two platoons from Company M, 3rd Battalion 26th Marines are taken by helicopters to Hill 881 South to reinforce those Marines already there.

**20 January 1968 (Vietnam)**-The 2nd Battle of Khe Sahn begins when the 3rd Battalion, 26th Marines attacks a North Vietnam battalion between Hills 881 South and Hill 881 North. About 100 of the enemy are killed.

**22-23 January 1968 (Vietnam)**-Corporal Stephen D. Nelson and Lance Corporal Michael R. Rohn, both Marines, escape from the enemy at a prison camp north of DaNang where they were captured on 7 January. They move through the jungle terrain on primitive paths until they come upon the perimeter of the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines.

**23 January 1968 (North Korea)**-The USS Pueblo is seized in the Sea of Japan in international waters by the North Koreans. The crew of 82 men, including two Marines, was held for eleven months before being freed on 22 December 1968. The ship's commander, Lloyd Boucher was nearly court-martialed for not firing back when his ship was captured, but the charges were dropped. The ship remains in North Korea and is on display at Pyongyang. **Also, at Khe Sanh**, the enemy moves closer to the base perimeter and Marine patrols in the area kill 61 of the enemy without incurring any casualties themselves.

**25 January 1968 (Vietnam)**-The North Koreans have massed about 35,000 troops within 10 to 20 miles of Khe Sanh.

**30 January 1968 (Vietnam)**-South Vietnam's president, Nguyen Van Thieu cancels the Tet truce. He lames it on the North Vietnamese and Viet Cong violations of the truce.

**30 January-28 February 1968 (Vietnam)**- The Communist forces ignore the Tet Offensive and launch an offensive across the entire country of S. Vietnam. The primary units attack Da Nang. The Marine 1st Division and the Americal Division join and engage the enemy in the Da Nang sector. Ultimately, the Communists lose the battle.

**31 January 1968 (Vietnam)**-The city of Hue is taken, except for small pockets of resistance, by the North Vietnamese. The

**31 January -4 February 1969 (Vietnam)**-Sergeant Alfredo Gonzalez leads his platoon of Marines after the enemy began to fire on their convoy along Route 1 near Hue. He went to the assistance of a wounded Marine and became wounded while taking him to safety. Afterward, Gonzalez seeing his platoon halted because of a machine gun positioned on the opposite side of the road. He discounts the heavy enemy fire and charges the position and he destroyed it with a hand grenade. On 4 February, his platoon is again attacked and halted. Gonzalez using anti-tank weapons moves from position-to-position firing at the emplacements. He does knock one rock-position out, but he is mortally wounded. Sergeant Gonzalez is awarded the Medal of Honor posthumously for his

selfless courage. He is awarded the Medal on 31 October 1969.

**1 February 1968 (Vietnam)**-The Marines (Units of the 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines and the 1st Battalion, 1st Marines attack the city of Hue at a point south of the Perfume River to clear it of the enemy.

**2 February 1968 (United States-Mediterranean)**-Battalion Landing Team 2/2 relieves BLT 1/2 and becomes the landing force in the Mediterranean. The former arrives back at Camp Lejeune, N. C. On this day.

**4-9 February 1968 (Vietnam)**-The Marines begin a house-to-house search in the city of Hue. By the 9th, the final resistance in the city south of the Pearl River ends.

**5 February 1968 (Vietnam)**-Company E, 2nd Battalion, 26th Marines halts a North Vietnamese battalion attack on Hill 861 A by mounting a counterattack. The enemy loses 109 killed. The Marines sustain 7 killed.

**6 February 1968 (Vietnam)**-The Special Forces camp at Lang Vei, about 6 miles from Khe Sanh is overrun by the 66th NVA Regiment, 304th Division. Marine helicopters are able to rescue 20 Green Berets and more than 70 Vietnamese who were in the camp. Also, the fighting in Hue brings the Marines to the provincial headquarters building where they tear down the Communist flag and replace it with the Stars and Stripes.

**10 February 1968 (United States)**-General Harry Schmidt, USMC (retired) dies at San Diego, California. He was the commander of the 4th Marine Division during the Marshall Islands and the Saipan campaigns. He also commanded the V Corps at Tinian and Iwo Jima.

**12 February 1968 (Vietnam)**-The 1st Battalion, 5th Marines join the forces already in Vietnam. They arrive in the city of Hue by landing craft and helicopters. Also, the 27th Marines are ordered to deploy in Da Nang to reinforce the U. S. Forces already there.

**13 February 1968 (United States)**-The Women Marines celebrate their 25 Anniversary. Also, in Hue, the fighting continues. The Marine command states that the Marines have killed 1,078 North Vietnamese and 52 Viet Cong in the past two weeks.

**February 16 1968 (Vietnam)**-Second Lt. Terrance C. Graves while leading his 8-man patrol suddenly sees 7 enemy soldiers approaching their position. Graves immediately deploys his squad and fires upon them. Afterward, he and two other Marines search the area and they suddenly come under hostile small arms and automatic weapon fire and one man is hit. Graves braves the fire in an open area and gets to his radio to request air support. He also directs the artillery and helicopter fire upon the enemy. Afterward, he returns with one other Marine to the earlier battle scene. Finding some of the enemy still alive, he leads a dogged attack and eliminates them. He then leads his squad to a landing zone, but the unit again comes under attack in which Graves and 2 more Marines are wounded. Graves disregards his wounds and leads his men to another landing site. Graves guides the helicopters into the landing site then he boards his men, but one of them is wounded and Graves remains behind with another Marine with the wounded man. A second helicopter arrived and it was hit as it took off and all aboard the helicopter were killed. 2nd Lt. Terrance C. Graves receives the Medal of Honor posthumously on 2 December 1969.

**17 February 1968 (United States-Vietnam)**-The 27th Marines and the 2nd Battalion, 13th Marines depart from El Torro, California en route to Vietnam to reinforce the Marines already there.

**23 February 1968 (Vietnam)**-The 1st Battalion, 27th Marines arrive at Da Nang to support the troops who are trying to halt the Tet offensive. Also, the Communists fire more than 1,300 rounds of rocket and artillery fire into Khe Sanh. During the month of February, Khe Sanh receives about 4,404 rounds.

**24 February 1968 (Vietnam)**-Following a 25-day battle, the city of Hue is secure. The combined forces of the Marines, Army, and South Vietnamese killed more than 4,500 of the enemy.

**25 February 1968 (Vietnam)**-Marines attached to Company B, 1st Battalion, 26th Marines are ambushed while on a patrol outside Khe Sanh. They lose 23 Marines killed. Patrols are halted from going out after the ambush.

**1-7 March 1968 (Vietnam)**-Heavy fighting erupts in several places in the DMZ and fighting also breaks out at Con Thien and close to Cua Viet on the South China Sea. At Khe Sanh, the enemy begins digging trenches near the lines of the 26th Marines.

**2 March 1968 (Vietnam)**-The city of Hue is secured. Elements of the 1st Marine Division, 1st ARVN Division and the 1st Air Cavalry Division fought house-to-house for about a month to resecure the city.

**3 March 1968 (Vietnam)**-Units of the 3rd Marines, supported by air and artillery support in a battle north of Con Thien kill 136 North Vietnamese soldiers.

**6 March 1968 (Vietnam)**-General William Westmoreland publicly announces his great admiration for the Marines. At Khe Sanh, a U. S. Air Force C-123 Provider is shot down near the runway. The crew of 4 is killed and 43 Marines and 1 sailor are also killed.

**8 March 1968 (Vietnam)**-The Marines, according to statistics have been doing most of the heavy fighting in Vietnam. The Army stands at 330,000 and the Marines at 80,000. The Marines sustained three men killed for every five soldiers killed. They have had three men wounded for every four soldiers wounded. At Hue and Khe Sanh, the Marines during the month of February the Marines sustained 449 killed and 4,000 wounded.

**10 March 1968 (Vietnam)**-The Provisional Corps, Vietnam is activated in the III Corps area. It receives the operational control of the 3rd Marine Division, 1st Cavalry Division, the 101st Airborne Division. The move replaces the MACV Forward. Also, the 1st Marine Aircraft fixed-wing strike aircraft is placed under the command of General William Momyer, 7th Air Force.

**15-22 March 1968 (Vietnam)**-The Communists halt their fighting throughout S. Vietnam, supposedly because they are reorganizing after sustaining severe casualties during the Tet offensive.

**23 March 1968 (Vietnam)**-Khe Sanh is struck by about 625 mortar, rocket and artillery rounds. The Marines report casualties as light.

**30 March 1968 (Vietnam)**-Marines have sustained 6,893 combat deaths in Vietnam from January 1st 1961 to date.

**31 March 1968 (Vietnam-Operation Scotland)**-The operation run by the 26th Marines reinforced by units of the 9th Marines comes to a close in Quang Tri province. It had begun on 1 November 1967. The Communists lose 1,561 killed and the Marines sustain 204 killed. Also, in Vietnam, Lt. General Robert Cushman, USMC, the commanding general of III MAF in I Corps, commands a total of 163,000 troops, making him the Marine general who has commanded the most troops in U. S. History.

**April 1968 (United States)**- Forty-eight thousand men are drafted in April. Of these 4,000 are sent to the Marine Corps.

**1-8 April 1968 (Vietnam-Operation Pegasus)**-The U. S. Army launches the operation with the 1st Cavalry Division. The unit relieves the Marines at Khe Sanh. The operation closes on 8 April at 0800 and terminates the siege of Khe Sang. The enemy by this time had chosen to withdraw from Khe Sanh, rather than take on the Americans.

**14 April 1968 (Vietnam)**-The 26th Marines attack the enemy who had retreated from Khe Sanh and relocated on Hill 881 North. The hill is declared secure

**16 April 1968 (Vietnam)**-The Marine squadrons in Quang Tri are formed into Provisional MAG-39.

**18 April 1968 (Vietnam)**-The 26th Marines are relieved at Khe Sanh. They move to Dong Ha and Camp Carroll. Also, the BLT 3/8 departs Camp Lejeune en route to the Mediterranean to relieve the BLT 2/2 and become the landing force of the 6th Fleet.

**30 April 1968 (Vietnam)**-The Viet Cong has killed more than 1,000 South Vietnamese in the city of Hue during the Tet offensive. The murders included government workers, Catholic priests and women.

**1 May 1968 (Vietnam)**-Captain Peter A. Kruger, USMC flies (A-4 Skyhawk) his 500th combat sortie, which sets a new Marine Corps jet combat record in Vietnam.

**3 May 1968 (United States)**-President Lyndon B. Johnson makes it known that N. Vietnamis prepared to meet in Paris with U. S. representatives in an effort to seek peace.

**4 May 1968 (Vietnam-Operation ALLEN BROOK)**-The operation is launched by Major General Don J. Robertson, commander of the 1st Marine Division orders the 7th Marines into Go Noi Island to prevent the North Koreans from staging an offensive. The 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines moves across the Crossing Liberty Bridge at 0500 and evacuates about 220 civilians (mostly old men, women and children) to Dai Loc. For a couple of days, the Marines attack east and meet only with sporadic resistance.

On 7 May, Company K, Third Battalion reinforces the 2nd Battalion and Company A, 1st Battalion, 7th Marines is relieved by Company G. On 8 May, the Marines kill about 88 enemy troops. The Marines sustain 9 killed and 57 wounded. On the following day the Marines are struck with heavy mortar and small arms fire outside of the hamlet of Xuuan Dai. The Marines sustain 1 killed and 11 wounded, but they withdraw and call for air support and artillery fire. One-half hour after the last air strike, the Marines operating west of the railroad tracks push into the hamlet of Xuan Dai and secure it.

During the next four days, the Marines encounter no NVA forces and they encounter only light resistance. General Robertson reinforces the 2nd Battalion. He sends in Company I, 3rd Battalion, 27th Marines, which is airlifted to a landing zone in the Que Son Mountains, south of Go Noi Island from where the Marines could look down upon the island. On the following day, the Marines from Company I, moved to blocking positions close to the Ba Ren River. It is joined there by the three other companies which are advancing west. The 2nd Battalion, and its attached tanks arrive back at Liberty Bridge on the 15th at 1400 and on the march back they had received the same type of harassing fire that they received on the initial march.

On the 15th, at 1800, Company E, with the command group of the 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines are airlifted out of the operational area. Lt. Colonel Roger H. Barnard, commander of the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, orders the elements still in Allen Brook to cross Liberty Bridge to give the enemy the impression that the operation is being closed. Nevertheless, at about midnight of the 15th-16th, elements of the 2nd and 3rd Battalions re-cross the Thu Bon River under cover of darkness.

At 0900 on the 16th, the 3rd Battalion, comes upon an NV battalion in the hamlet of Phu Dong, which is west of Xuan Dai. Two companies come under machine gun fire and the Marines are unable to break through. But by evening, more than 50 air strikes get the job done. The Marines then are able to push the enemy from their bunkers and trenches. The NVA lose 130 killed at the hamlet. The Marines sustain 25 killed and 38 wounded.

At dawn on the following morning the battalion jumps off slightly north of Le Bac and advances to the south. The North Vietnamese are waiting in ambush near the hamlet of Le Nam which is above route 537. One Marine, Private 1st Class Robert C. Burke, realizing his company (Company I, 3rd Battalion, 27th Marines) was being held up, he singlehandedly, attacked the enemy fortifications with his machine gun. As he moved he encountered an automatic weapons position and attacked it, killing three North Vietnamese troops as they fled. He continued to move forward, giving the other Marines the chance of moving the wounded to safer positions. But then his weapon jammed. He grabbed a weapon from one of the wounded Marine and continued his one-man wrecking crew until he was mortally wounded. Burke is awarded the Medal of Honor posthumously. The Marines had been stymied, but finally at about 1500, helicopters got the relief battalion into An Tam southeast of Lan Tam, where it was greeted with mortar and long-range weapons fire. Two companies move north, ignoring the fire, to hook up with the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines. Company K, 27th Marines breaks through the enemy positions to join with Company I at about 1930. At about the same time, as night approached, the North Vietnamese begin to withdraw from the area.

On the night of the 17th, the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines and the 3rd Battalion, 27th Marines remain in radio contact, but they hold separate positions at Cu Ban and An Tam. Later that night, Colonel Barnard, of the 7th Marines turns over Company I to Lt. Colonel Tullis Woodham, commanding officer of the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines and prepares to move back on the morning of the 18th for Liberty Bridge, ending the operation for the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines, which are replaced by the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines.

At morning on the 18th, Lt. Colonel Woodham expands the perimeter around Le Nam and at 0930, the enemy snipers at Le Bac open fire. Companies K and L are sent to destroy the snipers, but as it turns out there is a formidable North Vietnamese force that compels the Marines to suspend the attack. The enemy fire causes the Marines to become isolated.

Lt. Colonel Woodham sends an urgent call for air strikes and artillery but it was ineffective because the Marines and the enemy were so close. Company K took the brunt of the casualties. The heat of the day also claimed many casualties.

During the final days in May, the 1st Marine Division brings fresh units into the Allen Brook sector of operations and by the end of May, the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines leaves Go Noi Island to become the 1st Marine Division reserve.

At the beginning of June, III MAF kept at least two battalions in the sector of Allen Brook. The 1st Battalion, 26th Marines and the 1st Battalion, 27th Marines get the duty. On 1 June, nine Lockheed

C-130s went on what is known as the “inferno mission, which dropped 55 gallon drums (31,000 gallons) with igniters attached, but a thunderstorm came into the area and diminished the results. Meanwhile, the two battalions continue to trek westward to clear the island of North Koreans.

By mid-morning on the 5th, the two battalions were approaching the hamlet of Chu Ban, and Company D, 26th Marines comes under ferocious fire from North Koreans firing from concealed positions in their trenches. About 550 yards to the east, Company B, 26th Marines also comes under heavy fire. One of its platoon’s is caught in the open.

Lt. Colonel Greenwood, commander 1st Battalion, 27th Marines orders Company C, 26th Marines to swing southward and hook up with the northern most flank of Company B, 26th Marines then to swing east and attack the North Korean positions. Enemy mortars begin to fire on the attacking company and the commander, Captain Farmer with his second in command were hit and wounded by mortar fragments. The attack then was halted.

Casualties continued to mount and air support is of no value because the Marines are too close to the enemy. Later in the day, 2 helicopters fly in to evacuate the wounded and both sustain damage, but they complete their missions. During the afternoon, Company A, 27th Marines, accompanied by three tanks depart from Liberty Bridge to join the fight. The marines supported by air strikes and artillery support they drive forward and overpower the enemy.

On 6 June, the 2nd Battalion, 26th Marines are relieved by the 1st Engineer Battalion, which brings in the equipment to raise Go Noi Island. The mission calls for the 27th Marines to provide support the engineering battalion and to protect it while it eliminate the fortifications and harbor sites in the vicinity of Chu Ban. The demolition job was not easy as the North Koreans had camouflaged the bunkers and trenches. Meanwhile, the ground troops maintained their “search and destroy” operation. However, no real contact is made between the infantry until 15 June.

On that day, at 0330 the North Koreans attack Company B’ positions which are close to the National Railroad. The Marines return fire including anti-tank rockets and they place a call for artillery support. Company B, resists tenaciously and the North Koreans break off the engagement. They flee, but the Marines pursue with a deadly vengeance. By the following day, the Marines of Company B count 21 of the enemy killed. The Marines sustain only three wounded.

On 19 June, the 1st Marine Division orders its forces to move east of the National Railroad. The two companies, B and D encounters an enemy force near Bac Dong Ban. The Marines call for air and artillery support, while an ad hoc company rushes to their aid. The battle continues for about nine hours, with no signs of victory for either side.

At about 1800, Company A, and a platoon from Company C arrive and attack from the west, while Companies B and D provide cover fire for them. The fight ends with victory by the Marines when the enemy force is overrun. Bac Dong Ban is the final fight of the 1st Battalion during Operation Allen Brook. The battalion sweeps the eastern sector of Go Noi Island and depart from it on 23 June after being relieved by the 2nd Battalion, 27th Marines. The battalion did not have to wait too long for the North Vietnamese to welcome them to Go Noi Island. The Communists send 60 rounds of rocket fire into the positions of Companies E, F and H.

The 2nd Battalion met only light resistance while continuing with Operation ALLEN BROOK. The 2nd Battalion, 27th Marines departs Go Noi Island on 16 July after being relieved by the 3rd Battalion, 27th Marines, which continues to search and destroy and to protect the engineers.

The 1st Marine Division requests reinforcements. Battalion Landing Team 2/7 launched Operation SWIFT PLAY on 23 July. It is designed to complement Operation ALLEN BROOK. The battalion lands by helicopter in the mountain area about 6 miles south of Go Noi Island. The battalion moves north toward Chien Song and discovers many caches and a training center concealed in the mountains. Afterward, the battalion crosses the Chiem Son River and arrives at Go Noi Island where it relieves the 3rd Battalion, 27th Marines.

Three days later, the 27th Marines terminated its participation in the operation and passed it to the 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines, which only recently had been relieved near Phu Bai by the 26th Marines.

The operation continues and on 23 August the North Koreans launch their third invasion. The 1st Marine Division ends Operation ALLEN BROOK, to ensure that it had sufficient power to battle the North Vietnamese who are threatening Da Nang.

BLT 2/7, except Company E, which remains behind to protect the engineers until they reach the Liberty Bridge, depart from the area on helicopters. On the following day, Company E, escorts the convoy carrying the engineers and the earth-moving equipment on its westward trek to the Liberty Bridge. It is harassed along the route by light sniper fire.

The operation lasted more than three months and accounted for the deaths of 917 enemy soldiers and 11 captured. Two others swung over to the Government of Vietnam. The Marines sustain 170 Marines killed and 124 wounded. The elements caused more casualties; Marines fell to the heat and disease, accidents and even snake bites.

**16 May 1968 (Vietnam)**-Operational control of ALLEN BROOK shifts from the 7th Marines to the 27th Marines.

**19 May 1968 (Vietnam)**-The North Koreans attack the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines southeast of Khe Sanh. The North Koreans lose 109 killed and the Marines lose only 8 killed and 42 wounded.

**30 May 1968 (Vietnam-Operation ALLEN BROOK)**-The 3rd Battalion, 27th Marines initiates the search and destroy mission SOUTH OF Da Nang.

**4 June 1968 (Vietnam)**-Brigadier General Carl W. Hoffman, USMC, states that the North Vietnamese are still wanting Khe Sanh and that the Marines in the area had already killed about 1,300 of them.

**6 June 1968 (Vietnam)**-On this day, the North Koreans shoot down a helicopter near Khe Sanh in Quang Tri province. Thirteen passengers were killed including Lance Corporal William Elwood Hannings, Company C, 1st Battalion, 4th Marines, 3rd Marine Division. Hannings was a mortarman.

**7 June 1968 (Vietnam)**-Elements of the 1st Battalion, 26th Marines are attacked by a large enemy force northeast of An Hoa, but they are repulsed. The Marines, with air and artillery support are able to inflict high casualties upon the enemy force.

**15 June 1968 (Vietnam)**-The 4th Marines engage the enemy near Khe Sanh and with the support of air (Helicopters) and artillery, they are able to drive them away.

**26 June 1968 (Vietnam)**-It is announced that the Khe Sanh combat base is to be abandoned and that other bases further east are to be built up. They are: Landing Zone Stud and Camp Cates, Camp Hawk, and Camp Mike.

**5 July 1968 (Vietnam)**-The 1st Marines and the 11th Engineer Battalion finalize the dismantling of Khe Sanh. A truck convoy transports about 3,500 Marines out of the base as soon as the last bunkers are destroyed. The closure of the base is more symbolic than because of its lack of military value.

**8 July 1968 (Vietnam)**-The Marines have been engaged for four days against the North Vietnamese in the eastern sector of the DMZ, primarily at Gio Linh. With the support of artillery, planes and warships, the Marines killed 201 enemy troops. The Marines sustain 10 killed and 81 wounded.

**28 July 1968 (Vietnam)**-Near Da Nang, elements of the 1st Marine Division are ambushed by North Vietnamese who are concealed in their positions. A ferocious battle ensues and reinforcements are sped to the area. The Marines lose 19 killed and 32 wounded.

**15 August 1968 (Vietnam)**-Two platoons of Company A, 3rd Tank Battalion again crossed into the DMZ to support a S. Vietnamese attack on an enemy battalion. It supports a S. Vietnamese attack that kills 421 North Vietnamese.

**24 August 1968 (Vietnam)**-Operation ALLEN BROOK ends. The enemy loses 1,017 killed and the Marines sustain 172 killed and 1,124 wounded. See also May 4 1968.

**31 August 1968 (Vietnam)**-As of this date, 9,186 Marines have died in the war in Vietnam.

**September 1968 (Vietnam)**-Marine Fighter Attack Squadron 334 delivers more than 800 tons of ordnance on enemy targets north and south of the DMZ.

**2 September-11 September 1968 (Vietnam)**-The 3rd Marines, 3rd Marine Division seize Mutter's Ridge, north of the Rockpile and afterward they seize Hill 461

**9 September 1968 (Vietnam-operation Sussex Bay)**-The operation comes to a close as the 5th Marines end their operation west of Hoi An. The North Vietnamese lose 65 killed and the Marines sustain 12 killed and 24 wounded. Also, the 9th Marines seize Dong Tien Mountain, northwest of the Rockpile from the North Korean forces. Meanwhile, the 3rd Division prevents the 320 NVA Division from crossing the DMZ.

**10 September 1968 (Vietnam)**-The first unit (3rd Battalion) of the 27th Marines departs from Vietnam en route to Camp Pendleton. The battalion is the first Marine is the first American unit to depart from Vietnam since the build-up in 1965. The regiment completes its redeployment by the 16 September.

**13 September 1968 (Vietnam)**-Company A, 3rd Tank Battalion, returns to the DMZ to support S. Vietnamese troops of the 2nd ARVN Regiment. With the support from the tanks, the S. Vietnamese are able to seize their objective.

**16 September 1968 (Vietnam)**-Elements of the 26th Marines are hit by mortar rounds when the North Vietnamese fire about 200 mortar rounds into the Marine positions near the Rockpile artillery base. Twenty-five Marines are killed and 126 are wounded.

**17 September 1968 (Vietnam)**-Brigadier General William C. Chip is directing a sweep by Task Force Hotel in the vicinity of the DMZ, but his helicopter crashed. He suffers a fractured spine and he is evacuated to a U. S. Hospital ship.

**18-19 September (Vietnam)**-Elements of the 3rd Marine Division succeed in seizing more than 33 tons of North Korean ammunition and weapons, plus they seized 4 tons of rice near the DMZ in Quang Tri province.

**29 September 1968 (Vietnam)**-The Marines establish Fire Base Sandy in an effort to slow the North Vietnamese infiltration of the DMZ. The fire base is on a peak 2,100 feet, the highest wartime military position in Vietnam.

**3 October 1968 (Vietnam)**-The Department of Defense announces the 17,500 men would be drafted in December and of that number, 2,500 would go into the Marine Corps.

**5 October 1968 (Vietnam)**-The amount of American armed forces in Vietnam reaches 540,000 and of that number, 84,000 are U. S. Marines.

**19 October 1968 (Vietnam-Operation MAUI PEAK)**-The operation which began on 11 October ends on this day about 11 miles northwest of An Hoa. The 1st Marine Division set out to relieve the Green Beret camp at Thuong Duc. The Communists lose about 203 killed. The Marines sustain 28 killed and 148 wounded.

**23 October 1968 (Vietnam)**-Operation MAMELUKE THRUST began on 19 May and concludes this day about 25 miles southwest of Da Nang. It was conducted by elements of the 1st Marine Division and the 26th Marines. The operation accounts for 2,730 enemy soldiers. The Marines sustain 296 killed.

**26 October 1968 (United States)**-The Marines name Major Daavid L. Althoff as Marine aviator of the year. His service in Vietnam included 1,000 combat or combat-supported missions and included 3 Silver Stars, 3 Distinguished Flying Crosses and 50 Air Medals. He is the recipient of the Alfred A. Cunningham Award.

**31 October 1968 (Vietnam)**-President Lyndon B. Johnson announces that all air, naval and artillery bombardments in Vietnam would cease, at 0800 hours on 1 November.

**5 November 1968 (United States)**-President Richard M. Nixon is elected president of the U. S.

**16 November 1968 (Vietnam-Operation GARRARD BAY)**-elements of the 26th Marines spot North Vietnamese troops within the DMZ. They (2nd Battalion, 26th Marines) will enter the DMZ to clear them out. The operation ends with 19 of the enemy killed and 1,761 suspects put under arrest.

**25 November 1968 (Vietnam)**-Marines enter the DMZ after they spot North Vietnamese troop concentrations there. The raid kills three enemy troops. The Marines sustain no fatal casualties.

**28 November 1968 (Vietnam-Operation DAWSON RIVER)**-The 9th Marines launch the operation in Quang Tri province.

**7 December 1968 (Vietnam-Operation TAYLOR COMMON)**- The 1st Marine Division launches a multi-battalion (six battalions) search and destroy operation 10 miles west of An Hoa. The operation clears the area of the 2nd NVA Division which had been encamped there.

**8 December 1968 (Vietnam)**-A Marine gets himself killed by a tiger, when a squad of Marines went on a tiger hunt in November. The hunt is cancelled after the accident during the three-day hunt. No tigers are sighted during the hunt near the Laotian border.

**December 9 1968 (Vietnam-Operation NAPOLEON/SALINE)**-The 3rd Marine Division ends the operation (NAPOLEON) that began on 5 November 1967 and combines with operation SALINE which began on 26 January 1968. The operation ended with the deaths of 3,495 North Koreans killed, 106 POWs and a cache of many weapons that were captured. The Marines sustain 95 killed and 306 wounded.

**23 December 1968 (North Korea)**-The crew of the USS Pueblo is freed by the North Koreans. Two Marines were among the captured, Staff Sergeant Robert J. Hammond and Sergeant Robert J. Chicca.

**28 December 1968 (Vietnam)**-Camp Carroll a primary Marine combat base located in Quang Tri province is deactivated.

**5 January 1969 (Vietnam-Operation VALIANT HUNT)**-The operation which started 21 days ago comes to an end in Quang Tri province. The North Vietnamese lose 33 killed. The Marines sustain 2 killed and 14 wounded.

**6 January 1969 (Vietnam)**-Several miles south of the DMZ, the Marines discover 5,500 rounds of heavy gun ammunition, 250 tons of TNT and 12 tons of rice.

**22 January-18 March 1969 (Vietnam-Operation DEWEY CANYON)**-The 9th Marines launch the operation in the A Shau valley on 22 January when they are air-lifted from Quang Tri. The enemy loses more than 1,200 killed, when the operation closes. The Marines also discover more than 500 tons of weapons.

**27 January 1969 (Vietnam-Operation DAWSON RIVER)**-The 9th Marines, with the support of the artillery of the 12th Marines close the operation which began about two months ago when the units moved into Quang Tri province to relieve the 1st Cavalry Division.

**February 1969 (United States)**-The Defense Department calls for a draft of 33,100 in March. The Marine Corps is scheduled to receive 1,500 men.

**8 February 1969 (Vietnam)**-The American armed forces in Vietnam stands at 539,500. Of these 81,000 are U. S. Marines.

**27 February 1969 (Vietnam-Operation DEWEY CANYON)**-The 9th Marines while operating in the A Shau valley discover the largest single haul of arms and ammunition to date in the Vietnam War. The cache is so big that other Marines are called upon to destroy the weapons and ammunition.

**28 February 1969 (Vietnam-Operation Scotland II and Operation Kentucky)**-The operations begun by the 3rd Marine Division are ended. Operation Scotland II, more than 3,300 North Korean troops are killed. Marine losses stand at 463 killed. Operation KENTUCKY is recorded as 3,921 enemy troops killed while the U. S. sustains 520 killed.

**9 March 1969 (Vietnam-Operation TAYLOR COMMON)**-The search and destroy operation, which began on 7 December 1968 with Task Force Yankee (1st Marine Division), ends 10 miles south of An Hoa. The Communists lose 1,398 killed and 610 captured. The Marines lose 156 killed and 1,327 wounded.

**10 March 1969 (Vietnam-Laos)**-Several Marine companies cross into Laos from Vietnam to cover the flank that extends into Laos. It is during Operation DEWEY CANYON.

**21 March 1969 (Vietnam)**-VMFA-314 is given the Robert M. Hanson Award for being the most outstanding Marine fighter squadron of the year 1968. The squadron participated in nearly every one of the major Marine operations in Vietnam during 1968.

**26 March 1969 (United States-Vietnam)**-Lt. General Robert E. Cushman is succeeded by Lt. General Herman Nickerson as commander of III MAF. Lt. General Cushman is named deputy Director of the CIA.

**20 April 1969 (Vietnam-Operation MUSKOGEE MEADOW)**-The operation which began on 7 April, by the 1st Marine Division comes to an end about five miles north of An Hoa. During the operation, 162 of the Communists are killed. The Marines suffer 16 killed and 121 are wounded.

**2 May 1969 (Vietnam-Operation Maine CRAG)**-The operation which began on 15 March, 1969, by the 3rd Marines ends this day six miles south of Khe Sanh. The North Koreans lose 157 killed. The Marines suffer the loss of 21 killed and 134 wounded.

**8 May (Vietnam-Operation PURPLE MARTIN)**-The 3rd Marine Division initiated the operation on 23 February and they end it on this day northwest of Khe Sanh. The Marines had killed 252 enemy troops during the operation.

**9-19 May 1969 (Vietnam)**-The 1st Marine Division has made small unit contact in Vietnam that is responsible for more than 600 North Korean deaths. It is thought that these contacts had stopped two large ground actions against U. S. and S. Vietnamese installations.

**29 May 1969 (Vietnam-Operation OKLAHOMA HILLS)**-The operation, which was run by the 7th Marines started on 31 March, 1969. It was a multi-battalion search and clear operation that ends this day south of Da Nang. North Korean lose 596 killed. The American losses are 53 killed and 487 wounded.

**31 May 1969 (Vietnam)**-The American forces in Vietnam stands at 538,500 and of this number, 81,000 are U. S. Marines.

**7 June 1969 (Vietnam-Operation APACHE SNOW)**-The 9th Marines initiated this operation on 10 May and they close it about 30 miles southwest of Hue on this day. The North Koreans lose 735 men killed and they lose a large cache of weapons.

**7-12 June 1969 (Vietnam)**-The 1st Battalion, 9th Marines engage the North Koreans three separate times. The Marines supported by air strikes and artillery are responsible for the deaths of 270 enemy soldiers.

**8 June 1969 (Vietnam)**-President Richard M. Nixon calls for a redeployment of U. S. Troops in Vietnam. By August, 1969, 25,000 troops are to be withdrawn. The Marine 9th Regimental Landing Team is the first Marine unit to redeploy.

**12 June 1969 (Vietnam-Operation UTAH MESA)**-The operation was a joint American and S. Vietnamese search and destroy mission, controlled by the 3rd Marine Division. During the first week of the operation, the enemy loses 160 troops killed. The 9th Marines would be among the first troops to be withdrawn from Vietnam.

**23 June 1969 (Vietnam-Operation CAMERON FALLS)**-The operation which began on 29 May, was a multi-battalion search and clear operation that ends on this day, about 20 miles from Quang Tri. The operation was controlled by the 9th Marines. The operation cost the North Koreans 120 killed. In addition, a large enemy cache of weapons are seized.

**30 June 1969 (Vietnam)**-The strength of the Marines in Vietnam is 82,000 out of the 93,000 Marines in the Far East.

**9 July 1969 (Vietnam-Operation UTAH MESA)**-The operation was initiated by the 9th Marines and the 1st Brigade, 5th Infantry Division on 12 June and it terminates on this day. The operation that was operating in the area northwest of Khe Sanh killed 309 of the enemy. The U. S. Forces lost 35 killed and 178 wounded. The 9th Marines finished their last mission here, then they moved to

Okinawa.

**10 July 1969 (Vietnam-Operation Mighty Play)**-The 26th Marines initiate the operation when they land by helicopter and joined the S. Korean Marines about seven miles south of Da Nang. During the first week of the operation, the enemy loses 21 killed. The operation comes to a close on 20 July.

**14 July 1969 (Vietnam)**-The 1st Battalion, 9th Marines embarks from Vietnam en route to Okinawa.

**16 July 1969 (Vietnam-Operation VIRGINIA RIDGE)**-The operation, which began on 1 May, ends this day. It focused on the area north of the Rockpile and was designed to discover and destroy enemy facilities and troops. The 3rd Marines is responsible for the killing of 560 enemy troops. The Marines sustain 106 killed and 490 wounded.

**20 July 1969 (United States)**-Racial riots break out at Camp Lejeune, North Carolina. One Marine is killed and one other is seriously wounded.

**21 July 1969 (Vietnam-Operation PIPESTONE CANYON)**-The operation which began on 14 June focuses on destroying enemy forces in Quang Nam province. The 1st and 2nd Battalions, 1st Marines supported by S. Korean Marines and South Vietnamese troops tried to clear the areas of 9 battalions and reopen Route 4 (from Dai Loc to Dien Ban). Joint Army and Marine landing clearing companies cleared 250 acres at a time to a depth of 6 inches which destroyed the area by the enemy. The operation kills 852 enemy troops and captures 58. The U. S. Loses 71 killed and 498 wounded, primarily by mines. **Also, Operation RUSSELL BEACH**, which was a joint army, navy, Marine and ARVN operation in the Batangan Peninsula, about 20 miles southeast of Chu Lai. It focused on the removal of Vietnamese civilian refugees from the area. Afterward, the units pushed forward to destroy enemy fortifications and kill enemy troops. The 26th Marines were involved with the operation that ended with 158 of the enemy killed. Friendly casualties were 56 killed and 268 wounded.

**13 August 1969 (Vietnam)**-Marine Squadron 165 departs from Vietnam aboard the USS *Valley Forge* en route to Okinawa as part of the troop reduction of President Nixon.

**14 August 1969 (Vietnam)**-Regimental Landing Team 9 completes its redeployment from Vietnam as the 3rd Battalion, 9th Marines embarks Da Nang aboard the USS *Paul Revere* en route for Okinawa. It arrives on the 17th.

**26-28 August 1969 (Vietnam)**-Marine Fighter Attack Squadron 334 is redeployed from Chu Lai to Iwakuni, Japan.

**28 August 1969 (Vietnam)**-At this time, there are 72,600 Marines in Vietnam.

**15 September 1969 (Vietnam)**-Battalion Landing Team 1/26 land on Barrier Island, south of Da Nang. They search the island for Viet Cong and other North Vietnamese troops.

**17 September 21 1969 (Vietnam)**-As part of the troop redeployment, the Marines are further reduced by 18,547 men.

**18 September 1969 (Vietnam)**-The U. S. Military Assistance Command, Vietnam announces that the remainder of the 3rd Marine Division and the supporting elements of the 1st Marine Air Wing would be redeployed

**10 October 1969 (Vietnam)**-By this time, about 26,500 Marines have departed from Vietnam for

their new duty stations.

**19 October 1969 (Vietnam)**-At Da Nang and Cua Viet, Battalion Landing Team 1/4 embark aboard the ships of the 7th Fleet en route to Okinawa. The final elements of the 4th Marines depart from Vietnam by the 25th of October, ending four years in the country.

**25 October 1969 (Vietnam)**-The Alfred A. Cunningham Award for the Marines' aviator of the year is awarded to Lt. Colonel Paul W. Niesson, Marine Helicopter Squadron 161 at Quang Tri.

**6 November 1969 (Vietnam)**-American forces in Vietnam stand at about 490,700 and of these 61,400 are Marines.

**7 November 1969 (Vietnam)**-The 3rd Marine Division for the most part has left Vietnam and this day, 2,300 of the Marine Division depart for Okinawa. Also, Operation PIPESTONE, which began on 26 May is terminated. The operation was under the control of the 1st Marines. The enemy loses more than 480 men killed during the operation.

**26 November 1969 (United States)**-The 5th Marine Division is deactivated for the second time. The 5th Marines Expeditionary force is activated.

**30 November 1969 (USMC)**-Marine Corps strength at this time is 300,860.

**25 December 1969 (Vietnam)**-At this time, there are 55,300 Marines in the Republic of S. Vietnam.

**9 March 1970 (Vietnam)**-III MAF transferred command of its U. S. Units in I Corps to XXIV Corps.

**1 October 1970 (Vietnam)**-The 7th Marines depart from Vietnam.

**25 March 1971 (Vietnam)**-The 5th Marines depart from Vietnam.

**14 April 1971 (Vietnam)**-The III MAF headquarters, the 1st Marine Division headquarters and the 1st MAW headquarters depart Vietnam. The 3rd Marine Amphibious Brigade replaces III MAF at Da Nang. This is the final Marine command adjustment before the departure of the Marines from Vietnam.

**11 May 1971 (Vietnam)**-The Combines Action Group is deactivated, ending the Marine Corps pacification and civic action campaigns in Vietnam. .

**27 June 1971 (Vietnam)**-The 3rd Marine Amphibious Brigade is deactivated. The deactivation of the 3rd Marine Amphibious Brigade ends the major participation of the Vietnam War, except for several exceptions. Marine advisors will continue to be assigned to the S. Vietnamese Marine Corps and the Marines of Subunit 1.

**1 January 1972 (United States)**-General Robert E. Cushman becomes the 25th Commandant of the Marine Corps.

**30 March-27 June 1972 (Vietnam)**-The North Vietnamese launch the Nguyen-Hue offensive (also known in the U. S. as the Easter Offensive. The enemy inflicts large losses in I Corps. The S. Vietnamese are able to stabilize their lines at the My Chanh River, north of the city of Hue. On 6 April, MAG-15 is deployed at Da Nang and later on 16 May, MAG-12 is deployed at Bien Hoa in III Corps. The 7th Air Force controls both of the Marines in the later part of the war, but MAG-15 redeploys to Nam Phong, Thailand on 16 May and continues to support operations against the Communist forces in Vietnam and Cambodia. MAG-12 remains at Bien Hoa until February 1973.

Also, the 9th Marine Amphibious Brigade will arrive in the Gulf of Tonkin during April with the 7th Fleet, but the Marines will not be committed.

**14 March 1973 (Vietnam)**-The Paris Peace Accord was signed in January 1973 between the U. S. and Vietnam leaving Subunit 1, 1st ANGLICO, which departs from Vietnam this day; it is the final Marine tactical unit to depart from Vietnam.,

**14 August 1973 (United States)**-The U. S. Congress ceases funding of the military actions in Southeast Asia. It also halts combat air operations from Thailand.

**12 April 1975 (Cambodia)**-The 9th MAB (Marines) initiate Operation Eagle Pull designed to evacuate American and foreign nationals from Phnom Penh, Camodia before the city falls to the Khmer Rouge (Communists). The operation ends U. S. support of the regime of Lon Nol.

**29 April 1975 (Vietnam)**-The 9th MAB initiate Operation FREQUENT WIND. It evacuates from Saigon, Americans, foreign nationals and some Vietnamese officials and takes them to the 7th Fleet. This is the last involvement of the Marines during the Vietnam War.

**30 April 1975 (Vietnam)**-The last helicopter out of Saigon is depicted by the television as a haphazard operation. The North Vietnamese stormed the city of Saigon and the helicopter was seen leaving in chaotic fashion, but the television cameras did not show that all combat troops had left the country since June of 1972.

**12-15 May 1975 (Gulf of Thailand)**-On 12 May, a Khmer Rouge gunboat captures an American vessel, the USS Mayaguez. Its crew is detained. Two days later, on the 14th, BLT-29 were flown by USAF helicopters to Koh Tang Island where the crew was being held (It was thought). The Marines Company D, 1st Battalion, 4th Marines board the Mayaguez and discover it abandoned. The crew had been released by the Khmer Rouge and they were picked up by a U. S. Destroyer. On 15May, with the ship recaptured and the crew rejoined with the American forces, the Marines withdrew from Koh Tang Island. The U. S. sustain 15 killed, 3 missing (declared dead at a later date), 49 wounded. The Americans also lose 23 men in a helicopter crash. The casualties sustained by the Khmer Rouge remain unknown. The incident finalizes the combat operation of the U. S. in the former French Indochina.

**7 June 1982 (Lebanon)**-The U. S. Embassy in Beirut is attacked by rockets and machine gun fire. It causes only slight damage and only one Marine is wounded by shrapnel.

**23-24 June 1982 (Lebanon)**-The U. S. Embassy in Beirut begins its initial evacuation on the 23rd. The Marine security guard detachment provides security. On the following day, the embassy is abandoned and the personnel are relocated to the ambassador's residence in the city of Yarze. Nine Marines provide security during the move.

**30 June 1982 (United States)**-The strength of the Marine Corps stands at 193,399.

**25 August- 10 September 1982 (Lebanon)**-About 800 Marines (32nd Marine Amphibious Unit) commanded by Colonel James Mead go ashore in Beirut. They join with about 400 French and 800 Italian military personnel to form the peace keeping force. The force is to maintain a safe and orderly departure of the Palestine Liberation Organization forces from the country. The Marines are withdrawn on the 10th of September.

**20 September 1982 (United States)**-The president, Ronald Reagan, announces that the Marines will again join the peace-keeping force in Lebanon. Reagan's decision was brought on by the

massacre of hundreds of Muslim Palestinians supposedly by Lebanese Christian militiamen in two separate Beirut refugee camps, Sabra and Shatila.

**29 September 1982 (Lebanon)**-The Marines, 1,200 strong (32nd Marine Amphibious Unit) again land at Beirut as part of the peace-keeping force.

**30 September (United States)**-The strength of the Marine Corps stands at 195,715. Also, in Beirut, Lebanon, Corporal David Reagan, USMC and three other Marines are killed as they attempt to defuse an ordnance piece. The Marines are part of the peace-keeping force.

**29 October 1982 (Lebanon)**-The 24th Marine Amphibious Unit, commanded by Colonel Thomas M. Stokes, Jr., replaces the 32nd MAU as part of the peace-keeping force in Beirut.

**13 December 1982 (Lebanon)**-U. S. Marines begin training a special unit of the Lebanese Army in Beirut. About 75 soldiers joined a company of 220 Marines. They meet at the American camp close to Beirut and undergo training for 21 days that include helicopter assaults and infantry training.

**2 February 1983 (Lebanon)**-A confrontation occurs between the Americans and Israelis when Captain Charles B. Johnson, USMC, drew his loaded pistol while blocking three Israel tanks from passing through a checkpoint. It is one of about six reported incidents between the Israelis and the Americans while the peace-keeping force was in Lebanon.

**12 May 1983 (USMC)**-Lt. General John K. Davis is raised to the rank of full general and assigned as Asst. Commandant of the Marine Corps by President Reagan.

**27 May 1983 (Peru)**-The American Embassy at Lima is struck by two explosions. There were no injuries to the Marines or other personnel.

**30 May 1983 (Lebanon)**-The 24th Marine Amphibious Unit, commanded by Colonel Timothy J. Geraghty, replaces the 22nd MAU Marines and takes over the peace-keeping duties of Beirut.

**14 June 1983 (Argentina)**-On the first anniversary of Argentina's surrender to Great Britain (Falklands War), a bomb is detonated under a van outside the building where the Marines are living in Buenos Aires. The van is damaged but there are no other injuries.

**28 June 1983 (United States)**-In front of about 3,400 Marines and President Ronald Reagan, the commander-in-chief, General Paul X. Kelley receives the official battle color of the Marine Corps at the Marine Barracks, Washington, D. C.. He succeeds General Robert H. Barrow as commandant of the Marine Corps.

**30 June 1983 (USMC)**-The strength of the Marine Corps stands at 193,993.

**11 July 1983 (USMC)**-The U. S. Marine Corps band celebrates its 185th Birthday. It is the oldest active military musical organization in the country. The commandant, General Paul X. Kelley and President Ronald Reagan are in attendance at the Kennedy Center the Performing Arts

**22 July 1983 (Lebanon)**-The Beirut International Airport comes under attack by an unknown source. A Marine is hit by flying shrapnel and receives a slight wound.

**31 July 1983 (Lebanon)**-U. S. Marines stationed in Beirut are fired upon as they jogged in their encampment near the airport. No Marines are injured.

**10 August 1983 (Lebanon)**-Rockets fired by the Druze militia in the mountains is the opening of a day-long battle between Muslim militiamen and the government of Lebanon. The Marines on duty

at the International Airport are on high alert.

**16-17 August 1983 (Lebanon)**-The commandant of the Marine Corps, General P. X. Kelley, its with the Marines (24th Marine Amphibious Unit) in Beirut. The commandant told them that “threats from the Druze gunmen would not intimidate the 1,200 Marines in Lebanon.”

**28 August 1983 (Lebanon)**-In Beirut, the Marines battle with militiamen, thought to be Shiite Muslims for about 90 minutes. This is the initial time that the Marines have been in combat since their arrival in Beirut. The Marines, about 30 strong and Lebanese army troops manned the outpost east of the airport. There were no Marine casualties.

**29 August 1983 (Lebanon)**-The U. S. Marines (24th Marines Amphibious Unit)are bombarded by mortars, rockets, and artillery rounds hit the eastern side of the Beirut International Airport and kill two Marines and wound 14.

**2 September 1983 (Lebanon)**-President Ronald Reagan orders another 1,800 Marines (31st MAU) to reinforce the 24th MAU in Lebanon. The 31st is not to land, but to stand offshore inn the event they are needed.

**6 September 1983 (Lebanon)**-Marines are heavily engaged in fighting close to their positions to the airfield. Two Marines are wounded and two others are killed when the international airport is struck with mortars.

**8 September 1983 (Lebanon)**-The U. S. *Bowen* pounds the position of a Druze militia battery that had shelled the Beirut International Airport. Lt. General John H. Miller and Lt. General Alfred Gray were visiting the Marine positions when the shelling began. The Marines join with the navy’s fire and send six rounds from a 155 mm howitzer.

**14 September 1983 (Lebanon)**-The USS *Tarawa* arrives off the coast of Lebanon, carrying an additional 1,800 Marines (31st Marine Amphibious Unit), commanded by Colonel James H. Curd. The Marines and sailors total 14,000 either on shore or aboard ships in the area of Lebanon.

**17 September 1983 (Lebanon)**- The U. S. Warships off Beirut, Lebanon open fire and strike the Syrian-controlled parts of Lebanon. It was the first time that the U. S. Had attacked targets other than the Marine positions at the airport.

**19-20 September 1983 (Lebanon)**-U. S. Navy warships for the first time since the Vietnam War, fire upon Syrian-backed Druze positions in the hills around Beirut for about 15 minutes.

**26 September 1983 (Lebanon)**-A cease fire is announced by Saudi Arabian and Syrian officials in Damascus. The Druze force’s leader also announced that his troops are committed to the cease fire agreement.

**27 September 1983 (Lebanon)**-An AH-1T Cobra helicopter crashes at sea about eight miles from the beach near the International Airport of Beirut. The crash was accidental and not due to hostile fire. The USS *Tarawa*, offshore Beirut in a rescue attempt picks up the two injured Marine pilots soon after the accident.

**28-29 September 1983 (United States)**-The House of Representatives voted to allow the Reagan Administration to keep Marines in Lebanon for as many of 18 months and the Senate votes on the 29th. This is the first time that Congress has sought to invoke the War Powers Act (Passed in 1973) after the U. S. Troops were withdrawn from Vietnam.

**1 October 1983 (United States)**-The Pentagon announces that about 2,000 U. S. Marines aboard

three U. S. Ships en route to the Strait of Hormoz, the entrance to the Persian Gulf. It is thought that this movement of Marines is because Iran is threatening to blockade the strait to cut off oil tankers.

**14 October 1983 (Lebanon)**-Beirut's International Airport is attacked by small-arms fire. The Marines exchange fire with the Muslim militiamen for about three hours. One Marine is killed during the exchange and one other is wounded. The man who is killed is the first Marine killed since the cease-fire began.

**16 October 1983 (Lebanon)**-At Beirut, Muslim militiamen continue to fire at the peacekeeping troops. The Marines return fire and strike a Muslim slum. One Marine is killed and three others are wounded.

**21 October 1983 (Grenada)**-A task force of ten ships is transporting 1,900 Marines (22nd Marine Amphibious Unit) is ordered to move to Grenada from its position in the Caribbean. The Marines until they received new orders were on the way to Lebanon.

**23 October 1983 (Lebanon)**-At Beirut, a suicide bomber with a truck loaded with explosives blows up the headquarters of the 1st Battalion, 8th Marines in Beirut. The explosion kills 220 and wounds about 70 more. Eighteen navy and 3 Army personnel are also killed in the blast.

**25 October 1983 (West Germany)**-General Paul Kelley the commandant visits with the seriously wounded Marines from the terrorist bombing in Beirut. He awards 16 Purple Hearts to the wounded. **Also, in Grenada**, a U. S. Marine force of 1,900 (22nd Marine Amphibious Unit) and Army Rangers invade the nation of Grenada to rescue the students of an American-run college (medical school) and other U. S. residents of the country. The Americans seize two airfields and the campus, where the American students were attending college. The airborne units were joined by six other nations from nearby Caribbean states that had requested the U. S. to restore order from the newly established leftist government and President Ronald Reagan had affirmed and ordered the invasion.

**29 October 1983 (United States)**-The bodies of 14 Marines and one sailor killed in the Islamist terrorist bombing in Beirut, Lebanon on 23 October arrive at Dover Air Base. They join are joined with seven soldiers and Marine who were killed in Grenada. The coffins are each draped with an American flag and placed in a row inside of an aircraft hanger, which is transferred into a funeral-chapel. The ceremony is attended by the grieving families and various military leaders, including the commandant, General Paul X. Kelley.

**1 November 1983 (Carriacou,)**The U. S. Marines, about 300 strong (22nd Marine Amphibious Unit) land at Carricou about 15 miles from Grenada's principle island in search of Cubam military installations or personnel. No Cubans are detected, but 17 Grenada troops were captured and the marines discover arms ammunition and training sites. The Marines arrive on the island by an amphibious landing and by helicopters.

**2 November 1983 (Caribbean)**The Marines (22nd Marine Amphibious Unit) sail from the Caribbean en route to Lebanon where it is to replace the 24th MAU.

**4 November 1983 (United States)**-A memorial service is held at Camp Lejeune, North Carolina for the Americans killed at Lebanon and Grenada. More than 5,000 people attend including President and Mrs. Ronald Reagan and the commandant, General Paul X. Kelley..

**10 November 1983 (USMC)**-The Marine Corps celebrates its 208th anniversary. The commandant, General Paul X. Kelly says: "If there is a word which more accurately describes pride than any other. That word is Marine."

**4 December 1983 (Lebanon)**-Syrian positions in Beirut fire upon American positions and kill eight Marines. The U. S. Navy responds by firing into Syrian positions. And earlier on this day, 28 planes departed on their initial combat mission in Lebanon. They attack the Syrian positions in the mountains east of Beirut. This was the first time U. S. Aircraft are used in Lebanon.

**14 December 1983(Kuwait)**-The U. S. Embassy is attacked by a bomb-laden truck that crashes through the gate. It explodes and the embassy sustains damage, but there are no American casualties, however 5 people were killed and 37 were injured.

**15 December 1983 (Lebanon)**-The USS New Jersey opens fire upon Syrian positions southeast of Beirut. The New Jersey is joined by two other smaller ships.

**23-27 1983 (Lebanon)**-Bob Hope brings his Christmas show to the Marines in Lebanon. This is the first show overseas since the Vietnam War and it is full of Hollywood stars and good looking women. The Hope party goes from ship-to-ship off the coast of Lebanon and he performs again on Christmas Day for the Marines at the International Airport in Beirut.

**31 December 1983 (USMC)**-The strength of the Marine Corps stands at 193,858.

**8 January 1984 (Lebanon)**-Unidentified gunmen fire upon a helicopter unloading troops at the temporary American Embassy on Beirut's waterfront. One Marine is killed.

**15 January 1984 (Lebanon)**-U. S. warships fire into the high ground to put a stop to a rocket and mortar attack on Marine positions at the International Airport in Beirut. Marines join the USS New Jersey and the destroyer USS Tatnall by firing small arms and mortars, plus tank fire. No Americans sustain any harm.

**30 January 1984 (Lebanon)**-Muslim gunners are suspected in an attack against Marine positions in Beirut. Marines return fire and suffer no casualties.

**3 February 1984 ((United States)**-The Challenger, a space shuttle, lifts off this day. It was commanded by Vance D. Brand, who was a Marine pilot from 1953-1957. Commander Brand also commands the fifth shuttle flight in November 1982.

**7 February 1984 (United States)**-President Ronald Reagan announces that the Marines will be withdrawn to the ships off Beirut.

**8-9 February 1984 (Lebanon)**-The USS *New Jersey* strikes Syrian positions and its Lebanese allies in the eastern and central mountains in what becomes the heaviest since the Marines arrived in Lebanon.

**10 February 1984 (Lebanon)**-The U. S. Begins a voluntary evacuation of American citizens from Beirut, Lebanon. U. S. and British helicopters airlift hundreds of Americans and other foreign nationals to ships offshore.

**21 February 1984 (Lebanon)**-The Marines (22nd Amphibious Unit) begin their withdrawal from Lebanon and move to the 6th Fleet's ships offshore.

**14 March 1984 (Lebanon)**-A shot fired by an unidentified person, thought to be a sniper, wounded an off duty Marine in Beirut.

**31 July 1984 (Lebanon)**-The final Marines Corps combat troops withdraw from Beirut. They depart and move to the ships of the 6th Fleet. The embassy is moved from west Beirut to a more safe east Beirut. Nine Marines remain behind to guard the embassy.

**3 August 1984 Soviet Union)**-A Leningrad, a U. S. Marine, Sergeant Donald Campbell, on guard duty at the U. S. Consulate in Leningrad is dragged into a car by Soviet policemen and an unidentified man and he is held at a local police station for about two hours. The U. S. Protests the action. Campbell is finally released, but he sustains black eyes and bruises. He was not hospitalized.

**20 September 1984 (Lebanon)**-A suicide terrorist driving a van passes the barricades and explodes at the U. S. Embassy in East Beirut. Twenty-three people are killed and many others including Ambassador Reginald Bartholomew and 4 Marine guards. The Islamic Holy War takes credit for the explosion and it had taken responsibility for the embassy bombing in April of the previous year. They also took credit for the bombing of the Marine garrison of the previous year.

**10 November 1984 (United States)**-The commandant of the Marine Corps, General Paul X. Kelley, on the 209th Birthday of the Marine Corps states: "The name Marine known neither defeat nor dishonor. It knows only pride and professionalism."

**25 November 1984 (Portugal)**-The American Embassy in Lisbon, is attacked by a leftist guerrilla group. No casualties are incurred.

**31 December 1984 (USMC)**-The strength of the Marine Corps stands at 197,795.

**6 May 1985 (Japan)**-A helicopter from the Marine Heavy Squadron 462 (CH-53D Sea Stallion) crashes off the island of Yakushima. All 17 Marines aboard are killed.

**15 May 1985 (United States)**-Colonel Gail M. Reals, USMC is promoted to brigadier general. She is the first woman selected by a promotion board.

**17 June 1985 (United States-Lebanon)**-Since the American TWA's flight 847 was hijacked on 14 June, the U. S. Sends 7 warships carrying 100 combat planes and helicopters plus 1,800 Marines (24th Marine Amphibious Unit) toward Lebanon. The hijackers have 37 passengers held hostage in separate locations in Lebanon.

**19 June 1985 (El Salvador)**-Two American businessmen and four off-duty Marines are among 13 people killed during an attack by terrorists who open fire at an outdoor café in San Salvadore. The Marines were wearing civilian clothes when the attack occurred.

**30 June 1985 (United States)**-The strength of the Marine Corps stands at 198,241.

**15 October 1985 (United States)**-The USS Guadalcanal launches helicopters, and one crashes and sinks in Oslow Bay off the North Carolina coast. Fifteen of 19 troops on board are killed, 14 Marines (26th Marine Amphibious Unit) and one navy chaplain.

**31 October 1985 (Afghanistan)**-A Soviet soldier who is armed enters the U. S. Embassy at Kabul, but the Marine security guard quickly disarms him and holds him under guard for five days. The Marines also have to contend with the embassy being encircled by Soviet and Afghanistan troops. The soldier was simply home-sick and wanted to go home.

**31 December 1985 (USMC)**-The total strength of the Marine Corps stands at 197,171.

**14 April 1986 (Libya)**-U. S. warplanes bomb Libyan terrorist headquarters, after it is learned that Libya was responsible for recent attacks against the Americans. The planes from England and navy carriers in the Mediterranean Sea also strike the port cities of Tripoli and Benghazi.

**1 May 1986 (California)**-Marine Barracks, Vallejo located on Mare Island in northern California is deactivated. It was active since 1862. A Marine unit will remain on the island.

**30 June 1986 (USMC)**-The strength of the Marine Corps stands at 196,225.

**29 August 1986 (Norway)**-A CH-46 "Sea Knight" helicopter crashes off Norway during Exercise Northern Wedding soon after take-off. Eight Marines are killed and 13 others were injured.

**10 November 1986 (United States)**-The Marines celebrate the 211th Birthday of the Corps. The commandant, General Paul X. Kelley, asked "all Marines to embrace those inspirational words from our own hymn...first to fight for right and freedom and to keep our honor clean, we are proud to claim the title of United States Marine."

**31 December 1986 (USMC)**-The total strength of the Marine Corps stands at 198,245.

**14 January 1987 (United States)**-The Navy Attack Squadron 128 based at Naval Air Station , Whidbey Island, Washington loses one of its A-6E "Intruders" as it crashes near El Centro, California. A Marine officer was killed and one other was injured.

**17 January 1987 (Mediterranean)**-On the 17th, an A-6E "Intruder," attached to Marine All-Weather Attack Squadron 533, crashed while taking off from the carrier USS John F. Kennedy. Two Marine officers are killed.

**January 27 1987 (Soviet Union)**-Sergeant Clayton J. Lonetree, the son of a Winnebago father and Navajo mother was a security guard at the American Embassy was arrested in December 1986 and charged with sexual involvement with a Soviet woman, Violetta Seina. Also, at her request, he permitted unauthorized personnel access to restricted areas of the embassy. Sergeant Lonetree, the first US Marine to be convicted of spying against the United States. He confessed in January 1987 to selling documents to the Soviet Union. He was tried in a military court in Quantico, Virginia on 24 August, 1987 and he was convicted of espionage. On 20 October, the conviction of Lonetree was reduced by five years to 25 years for his cooperation with U. S. counterintelligence agents.

**30 January 1987 (Soviet Union)**-The entire 28-man Marine Corps guard detachment at the U. S. Embassy in Moscow is recalled by the State Department. The recall is due to the arrest of Sergeant Clayton J. Lonetree (See also, January 27 1987). The recall is precautionary and those Marines other than Sergeant Lonetree are not involved in the espionage.

**28 June 1987 (United States)**-General Alfred M. Gray, Jr., receives the colors of the Marine Corps and becomes the 29th commandant of the Marine Corps. He succeeds General Paul X. Kelley. Vice President George Bush is among the attendees and about 4,000 Marines. At the ceremony, General Paul X. Kelley is honored after 37 years service. General Gray assumes the position of commandant on 1 July.

**30 June 1987 (United States)**-The 27th Marines based at 29 Palms retires its colors. Its deactivation permits the Corps to return to its traditional nine active duty infantry regiments. The 27th Marines were initially activated in January 1944. It was deactivated at the end of World War II. In June 1966, the unit was activated for duty in Vietnam and was deactivated in October 1969. The 27th Marines Headquarters was activated during December 1981 as the ground element for the 7th Marine Amphibious Brigade. During this time period the 27th Marines was the only permanently organized mechanized combined arms task force regiment in the Marine Corps. **Also**, the strength of the Marine Corps stands at 198,555.

**12 August 1987 (United States)**-A TAV-8A Harrier attached to Marine Attack Training Squadron 203 crashes in a field in the vicinity of Bayboro, NC while on a training mission. Two pilots are killed.

**26 October 1987 (United States)**-At the Naval Academy in Annapolis, MD, Marines replace civilian guards at the three gates. The Marines had guarded the gates until 1898, when they were recalled to duty in the Spanish American War.

**16 November 1987 (United States)**-An F/A -18 "Hornet" attached to Fighter Attack Squadron 531, El Torro, California crashes in the Pacific Ocean near San Clemente. The pilot bailed out and was not injured.

**31 December 1987 (USMC)**-The total strength of the Marine Corps stands at 198,437.

**11 January 1988 (United States)**-Gregory "Pappy" Boyington the leader of the Black Sheep Squadron (Squadron 214) of WW II, dies at the age of 75 from cancer.

**24 March 1988 (United States)**-Lt. Colonel Oliver L. North, USMC, Rear Admiral John M. Poindexter and two arms dealers appear in court and plead not guilty to the charge of conspiracy, fraud and theft in the Iran-contra affair. The four defendants were accused on 16 March of a 23-count indictment of defrauding the United States by supplying rebels in Nicaragua the profits from the sale of American weapons to Iran.

**15 May 1988 (Persian Gulf)**-The bodies of two Marine Corps helicopter pilots were recovered in the Persian Gulf. They had participated in the attack against Iran on April 18. They are Captain Stephen C. Leslie and Captain Kenneth W. Hill. The pilots were credited with the destruction of an anti-aircraft gun which was firing upon helicopters transporting Marines to an Iranian-operated oil platform.

**25 June 1988 (Japan)**-A CHD-53D helicopter, attached to Marine Medium Helicopter Squadron 462 crashes into a ridgeline on Shikoku Island during some severe weather patterns. Seven Marines die from the accident.

**30 June 1988 (USMC)**-The strength of the Marine Corps stands at 198,668.

**10 September 1988-(United States)**-Marines from Camp Pendleton are ordered by President Ronald Reagan to move to Yellowstone National Park to assist firefighters with blazes that have been taking place throughout the summer. The 1st and 3rd Battalions, 5th Marines the command element of the 5th Marines and the Combat Service Support Detachment 12 of the 1st Force Service Support Group make up Marine Air Ground Task Force 5. The task force joins about 6,500 civilian and Army firefighters who are already at the park.

**31 October 1988 (Okinawa)**-Two CH-46 Sea Knight helicopters attached to Marine Medium Helicopter Squadron 262, crashed into one another, the first goes down in remote mountainous terrain and the second returns to the Marine Corps Air Station, Futenma. Four Marines are killed.

**10 November 1988 (United States)**-Two Marine FA-18 Hornets collide in the Arizona desert. A pilot in the first plane dies when his aircraft crashes and the second plane, although seriously damaged makes it back to the base in Yuma. The planes and personnel were attached to Marine Fighter Attack Squadron 312, based at Marine Corps Air Station in Beaufort, South Carolina. They were on a training mission when the accident occurred.

**31 December 1988 (USMC)**-The strength of the Marine Corps stands at 195,027.

**20 January 1989 (United States)**-President George H. Bush is inaugurated as the 41st president of the United States. The Marine Corps Band, which has performed in every inauguration since 1801 when it performed for President Thomas Jefferson performed at President Bush's too.

**17-20 March 1989 (S. Korea)**-Two helicopter crashes in three days leave 23 servicemen dead and many were injured during Exercise Team Spirit 89. Four Marines aboard a CH-46E (Marine Medium Helicopter Squadron 161) die when their helicopter crashes on the 17th near the village of Tok Sok Ri. Three days later, on the 20th, a CH-53D attached to Marine Heavy Helicopter Squadron 363 crashes close to the port of Pohang and of the 34 men on board, 18 Marines and 1 navy corpsman are killed.

**3 May 1989 (France)**-A UH-1N Huey helicopter crashes during routine night-flight training near Toulon at Camp de Canjeuers. The helicopter strikes power lines while participating in Exercise Tranch II, with French troops. Five U. S. Marines are killed.

**4 May 1989 (United States)**-Lt. Colonel Oliver L. North, USMC, retired, former White House aide, is convicted by a federal court jury (3 felony counts of obstructing Congress, unlawfully mutilating government documents and taking an illegal gratuity from one of his Confederates). North, contends that he was only doing the work of the president.

**27 May 1989 (United States)**-A CH-46E helicopter collides with another helicopter during a routine training flight. Two women Marines Sergeant Brenda L. Schroeder and Corporal Lisa Tutt were both killed, but no crew members of either helicopter were hurt.

**30 May 1989 (Okinawa)**-A CH-46 Sea Knight helicopter crashes off the coast of Okinawa. Of 22 servicemen on the helicopter, 13 Marines and 1 Navy Corpsman are killed.

**30 June 1989 (USMC)**-The strength of the Marine Corps stands at 195,107.

**7 August 1989 (United States)**-General Alfred Gray, commandant of the Marine Corps, speaks to Major Robin Higgins to tell her that her husband was killed by Middle East terrorists. He was seized on 17 February 17, 1988, while serving as chief of the United Nations observer group. The exact date of Colonel Higgins' death remains unknown, but his body was discovered on television two years later during December 1991, when he was seen on television hanging by the neck.

**24 August 1989 (United States)**-An OV-10A aircraft crashes in Banning Pass, California. Two Marines are killed.

**31 December 1989 (USMC)**-The strength of the Marine Corps stands at 197,102.

**31 January 1990 (Panama)**-Operation Just Cause, initiated on 20 December, 1989 is terminated. It was initiated to protect American lives in Panama and to preserve the integrity of the Panama Canal Treaty. The Marines sustain 1 Marine killed, Corporal Garreth C. Isaak and three others were wounded during the operation.

**5-23 February 1990 (Soviet Union)**-The Marine band tours the Soviet Union. It is the first military band to tour the Soviet Union on its 18-day tour.

**30 June 1990 (USMC)**-The strength of the Marine Corps stands at 195,559

**5 August 1990 (Liberia)**-Two-hundred and thirty-seven Marines (22nd Marine Expeditionary Unit) are flown into the U. S. Embassy in Monrovia to reinforce security and to evacuate the American personnel. By the end of the month, more than 1,700 foreign nationals including 139 Americans are evacuated.

**7 August 1990 ((United States)**-President Bush orders troops to Saudi Arabia to defend it against an Iraqi invasion (Operation Desert Shield).

**15 August 1990 (United States)**-Headquarters, USMC announces that it will send 45,000 Marines to the Persian Gulf area. The units will comprise elements of the 1st Marine Division and the 1st Force Service Support Group, 3rd Marine Aircraft Wing and the 7th Marine Expeditionary Brigade. Also, units of the 4th MEB including outfits from the 2nd Marine Division and the 2nd FSSG and 2nd MAW.

**24 August 1990 (Kuwait)**-The U. S. Closes its embassy in Kuwait. Officials and citizens numbering about 1,00 with security guards are transferred to the U. S. Embassy in Baghdad, Iraq by the Iraqi government. About 1,000 Americans are being held hostage in Iraq.

**8 October 1990 (Arabian Sea)**-Operation Desert Shield claims its first fatalities. Two Huey helicopters crash into the North Arabian Sea during a night training mission. It takes the lives of eight Marines attached to the Marine Medium Helicopter Squadron 164. Also, in the United States, President Herbert Walker Bush announces that he plans to add 200,000 U. S. Troops to those already deployed in Operation Desert Shield.

**22 November 1990 (Saudi Arabia)**- President Herbert Walker Bush addresses American and British servicemen (about 3,000) and states that he is committed to seeing that Saddam Hussein is ousted from Kuwait. Afterward, the president and Mrs. Barbara Bush proceeded to join the Marines for a Thanksgiving meal.

**31 December 1990 (USMC)**-The strength of the Marine Corps stands at 197,764.

**12 January 1991 (United States)**-Congress votes President H. W. Bush the authority to go to war against Iraq if Iraq does not pull out of Kuwait by 15 January.

**29 January 1991 (Saudi Arabia)**-Operation Desert Storm gets its initial ground fighting when Iraqi troops launch an attack into Saudi Arabia along a 40-mile front. The Saudis and Qatari troops, supported by artillery and attack helicopters of the 1st Marine Division oppose the move towards the deserted port city of Khafi. The town originally lost is recaptured two days later. Eleven U. S. Marines are killed when their light armored vehicles are destroyed during a clash with Iraqi armored. It is determined at a later date that the Marines were killed by friendly fire.

**13 February 1991 (Iraq-Kuwait)**-Allied planes have flown more than 65,000 sorties. The allies lost 28 planes, 19 from the United States.

**14 February 1991 (USMC)**-Marine Corps strength at this time stands at 200,248. The figure includes reservists who are on active duty.

**15 February 1991 (Kuwait)**-Thirty percent of Iraq's armor, 35 % of its artillery and 27% of its armored vehicles have been destroyed in Kuwait during the war.

**24 February 1991 (Operation Desert Storm)**-Coalition forces including the I Marine Expeditionary Force begins a ground assault on Iraqi defenses. The 1st and 2nd Marine Divisions advance toward the defenses of the Iraqi defenses and the defenders believed it was the main allied attack. Meanwhile, other allied forces attacked from the rear. At the same time, Marines of the 4th and 5th Marine Expeditionary Brigades who were afloat in the Persian Gulf kept the Iraqi troops pinned down because the Iraqi troops were expecting an amphibious landing. The U. S. And its allies defeated the Iraqi forces in 100 hours.

**28 February 1991 Operation Desert Storm)**-The operation ended when President Herbert Walker Bush declares a cease-fire. The operation began on January 16th and during that time, 23 Marines

were killed or died of their injuries.

**1 June 1991 (USMC)**-The strength of the Marine Corps stands at 199,356.

**28 June 1991 (USMC)**-During a change of command, the commandant General Alfred M. Gray, presents the battle color of the Marine Corps to General Carl E. Mundy. General Mundy becomes the 30th commandant of the Marine Corps; he assumes command on 1 July.

**15 July 1991 (Iraq)**-All allied forces leave northern Iraq. They had been there giving humanitarian and security assistance to other Kurdish refugees since April.

**27 August 1991 (Persian Gulf)**-The final Desert Storm participants, about 5,000 Marines and sailors return to the United States.

**1 October 1991 (Cuba)**-About 300 Marines depart from Camp Lejeune, North Carolina en route to Guantanamo, Cuba from where it is situated to assist in the evacuation of U. S. Citizens from Haiti. Haiti is riddled with turbulence since 30 June when the military planned to oust President Jean-Bertrand Aristide. He was ousted on 30 September and the military installed a military junta.

**16 October 1991 (United States)**-A UH-1 Huey crashes during a training mission near Calpatria, California. The crew was attached to Marine Light Attack Helicopter Squadron 169; four Marines die.

**16 December 1991 (Cuba)**-Approximately 300 Marines attached to the 8th Marines (Camp Lejeune) arrive at Guantanamo, to join 400 other military personnel prepared to offer assistance to 6,000 refugees in Haiti.

**30 December 1991 (United States)**-The bodies of Colonel William R. Higgins and William F. Buckley, the former part of the U. N. Peacekeeping force in Lebanon and the latter, a former Central Intelligence Agency station chief in Beirut arrive at Andrews Air Force Base. Both men had been killed by their kidnappers. Higgins was killed in 1989 and Buckley was killed in 1987. Major Higgins and William Buckley were interred in Arlington National Cemetery on separate days.

**31 December 1991 (USMC)**-The strength of the Marine Corps stands at 193,060.

**1 January 1992 (USMC)**-The strength of the Marine Corps stands at 183,563.

**12 January 1993 (Somalia)**-A gun battle breaks out after five weeks of ground operations near the airport in Mogadishu. A Marine is killed, the first U. S. Combat death during the delivery of food to the famine-stricken country.

**18 January 1993 (Somalia)**-About 850 Marines attached to the 3rd Battalion, 9th Marines depart from Somalia. Later, towards the end of the month, about 1,900 Marines (1st Force Service Support Group and Marine Aircraft Group 16) depart from the country.

**20 January 1993 (United States)**-President Bill Clinton is inaugurated as the country's 42nd president.

**19 May 1993 (United States)**-Four Marines are killed when a VH-60N helicopter from Marine Helicopter Squadron (HMX) 1 crashes near Quantico, Virginia in an unpopulated area.

**20 June 1993 (Somalia)**- The 24th Marine Expeditionary Unit returns to Mogadishu to reinforce the UN's forces already in the war-torn country.

**19 July 1993 (United States)**-President Clinton announces the new policy regarding homosexual conduct in the armed forces. It is known as "Don't ask, don't tell, don't pursue." The policy

becomes effective on 1 October, 1993.

**7 October 1993 (United States)**-Following the deaths of 14 U. S. Soldiers, President Clinton announces that additional troops would be sent to Somalia. He also announces that an aircraft carrier and the 13th and 22nd Marine Expeditionary Units would go to positions off the Somali coasts.

**18 October 1993 (Cuba)**-About 600 Marines (Marine Forces Caribbean) deploy at Guantanamo Bay. They are to act as a standby force to support the U. N.s naval embargo of Haiti.

**23 October 1993 (United States)**-The 10th anniversary of the terrorist bombing of the Marine Barracks in Beirut, Lebanon is commemorated at Camp Lejeune and at Arlington National Cemetery. The bombing claimed 241 American servicemen, 220 of whom were Marines.

**31 December 1993 (USMC)**-The strength of the Marine Corps stands at 176,613.

**11 January 1994 (United States)**-The last survivor of the servicemen who raised the flag on Iwo Jima, John Bradley dies at the age of 70 in Antigo, Wisconsin. Bradley was a pharmacist mate in the U. S. Navy who helped five Marines raise Old Glory on Mount Suribachi on 23 February, 1945.

**31 December 1994 (USMC)**-The strength of the Marine Corps stands at 174,507.

**10 January 1995 (United States)**-The Pentagon announces that 2,600 Marines are to be deployed in Somalia for Operation United Shield to support the withdrawal of United Nations peace-keeping troops. The final withdrawal date is scheduled for 31 March.

**14 March 1995 (United States)**-Lt. General Charles C. Krulak is nominated to become the 31st commandant of the Marine Corps. Subsequent to Senate confirmation, General Krulak will replace General Carl E. Mundy.

**19 April 1995 (United States)**-The Alfred P. Murrah Federal Office Building in Oklahoma City, Oklahoma is bombed by a Ryder truck loaded with explosives. The actors were Timothy McVeigh and Terry Lynn Nichols, his accomplice. Two Marines, Captain Randolph A. Guzman and Sergeant Benjamin L. Davis, working their recruiting station were killed and four other Marines are wounded.

**8 May 1995 (United States)**-Marines and sailors from Marine Forces Reserve arrive in New Orleans to assist in the evacuation of 2,500 civilians. The city had been hit with a terrible storm that had not been equaled in more than 200 years.

**30 June 1995 (United States)**-General Charles C. Krulak becomes the country's 31st commandant of the Marine Corps. He succeeds General Carl E. Mundy.

**31 December 1995 (USMC)**-The strength of the Marine Corps stands at 174,049.

**17 April 1996 (Haiti)**-The final U. S. troops of the United Nations peace-keeping mission depart from Haiti. This operation ends the military's role in Haiti which began 17 months ago.

**20 April 1996 (Liberia)**-The 22nd Marine Expeditionary Unit is airlifted into Monrovia to provide security and assist the Marine guard in the evacuation of American citizens and other foreign nationals from Liberia. About 2,100 people are flown from the embassy to nearby countries. Many others are assisted in leaving the country by ship.

**10 May 1996 (United States)**-A CH-46E Sea Knight transport helicopter and an AH-1W Super Cobra helicopter collide over Camp Lejeune , North Carolina. Fourteen U. S.servicemen (12

Marines, one sailor and one soldier die in the accident. The accident occurred during Combined Joint Task Force Exercise 96.

**12 June 1996 (Bosnia)**-The U. S. Marine Corps deploys its first full aviation squadron to Bosnia-Herzegovina in support of Task Force Eagle.

**10 November 1996 (USMC)**-On the 221st Birthday of the Marine Corps, the commandant, General Charles C. Krulak states: "As we bring to close another year in the illustrious history of our Corps, we face the future unafraid and undaunted by the challenges ahead."

**2 December 1996 (Japan)**-The U. S. and Japanese officials sign an agreement to reduce the size of American military presence on the island of Okinawa. The Marines give up more than 12,000 acres of land of which 97% is used by the Marines. The turnover is to take place by 2008.

**31 December 1996 (USMC)**-The total strength of the Marine Corps stands at 174,873.

**20 January 1997 (United States)**-The Marine Corps Band, "The President's Own," performed its 50th inaugural for President William Jefferson Clinton, who took the office for a second term.

**18 February 1997 (United States)**-An AV-8B Harrier attached to Marine Attack Squadron 203 crashes at Brogue Field, North Carolina. The pilot was medevaced to a local hospital for treatment. Nine days later, two Marine Lieutenants are killed when their Turbo-Mentor crashed northeast of El Torro.

**10 May 1997 (United States)**-Marine Medium Helicopter Squadron 164, loses one CH-46E Sea Knight helicopter as it crashes off the southern California coast. Four Marines are presumed dead after an extensive search.

**30 May 1997 (Zaire)**-The 22nd Marine Expeditionary Unit moves from standby status for a rescue and evacuation of Americans from Kinshasa, Zaire to Freetown, the capital of Sierra Leone. Three evacuations take place within five days during a period of near anarchy.

**21 July 1997 (United States)**-The USS Constitution, the oldest warship afloat celebrates her 200th Birthday by sailing through the water under wind power alone for the first time in 116 years. She sailed close to Marblehead, Massachusetts and was guarded by 52 Marines, the exact amount of Marines when she first set sail 200 years ago.

**31 December 1997 (USMC)**-The strength of the Marine Corps stands at 171,637.

**6 June 1998 (Eritrea)**-Two Marine C-130 Hercules aircraft fly 172 people (105 Americans) from the airport in Asmara to safety in Amman, Jordan. The evacuation was a precautionary move because of recent border conflicts escalated between the East African countries of Eritrea and Ethiopia.

**2 July 1998 (United States)**-CNN retracted its story that the military had used nerve gas during the 1970 Operation Tailwind in Laos. It apologizes for "serious faults" in its reporting. The story of using gas to kill American defectors, which it ran in its NewsStand report with time magazine. The report is disputed by hundreds of veterans and military officials could not be supported.

**7 August 1998 (East Africa)**-A bomb explodes near the U. S. Embassy in Nairobi, Kenya. It kills 247 people including 12 U. S. citizens, one of which was Sergeant Jesse N. Aliganga, USMC, a security of the embassy. At Dares Salaam, Tanzania another bomb explodes and kills 9 people, but no Americans are hurt.

**20 August 1998 (Afghanistan-Sudan)**-The American military strikes targets both countries to retaliate against the terrorists believed responsible for the attacks of 7 August. The attacks centered on a primary terrorist training center in Afghanistan and a chemical weapons building in the Sudan.

**16 December 1998 (Iraq)**-The U. S. and Great Britain retaliate against Iraq for obstructing U. N. personnel from performing inspections of weapons of mass destruction

**31 December 1998 (USMC)**-The strength of the Marine Corps stands at 171,265.

**30 April 1999 (Albania)-Marines** attached to the 26th Marine Expeditionary Unit go ashore in Albania to provide security for the displaced Kosovar Albanians.

**20 May 1999 (Hungary)**-Two squadrons attached to Marine Aircraft Group 31 are deployed to Tazar; they begin flying combat missions to support Operation Allied Force, which wages war on the Yugoslavian government since May.

**10 June 1999 (Greece)**-About 2,000 Marines and sailors attached to the 26th Marine Expeditionary Unit lands in Litohoro en route to Macedonia to act as Kosovo peace-keepers.

**20 June 1999 (NATO)**- NATO officially ends its war against Yugoslavia subsequent to Serbian forces complete their withdrawal from Kosovo. The U. S. and NATO planes flew more than 34,000 sorties during Operation Allied Force, a 79-day air campaign that began on March 24th.

**30 June 1999 (United States)**-General James Jones becomes the 32nd commandant of the Marine Corps. He succeeds General Charles C. Krulak.

**6 July 1999 (Yugoslavia)**-The 26th Marine Expeditionary Unit begins to turn over to the U. S. Army's 1st Infantry Division in Kosovo.

**19 August 1999 (Spain-Turkey)**-Three ships of the 6th Fleet are ordered from Spanish ports to Istanbul, Turkey to transport about 2,100 Marines attached to the 26th Marine Expeditionary Unit. The Marines are to assist in the aftermath of an earthquake that occurred two days earlier.

**15-16 September 1999 (United States)**-Hurricane Floyd strikes the Carolinas and sends the military personnel to seek higher ground. About 7,000 recruits from Parris Island, South Carolina deployed on the 14th to the Marine Corps Logistics base in Albany, Georgia.

**22 September 1999 (United States)**-George C. Scott, the Hollywood actor who played General George S. Patton and won an Oscar for the role dies in Los Angeles. He was a Staff Sergeant in the USMC and was in the Marines starting in 1945 for four years. He was interred at Arlington National Cemetery.

**22 November 1999 (Panama)**-Company B, 1st Battalion, 6th Marines is the final unit of the Marine Corps to depart from Panama. It closes another chapter in the 96 year history of U. S. Military presence in Central America.

**9 December 1999 (United States)**-A CH-46 "Sea Knight" helicopter attached to Marine Helicopter Squadron 166 crashes about 14 miles off the coast of Point Loma, California. Six Marines and one sailor were killed and eleven Marines were rescued.

**31 December 1999 (USMC)**-The strength of the Marine Corps stands at 171,154.

**5 August 2000 (United States)**-More than 500 Marines arrive in Salmon-Challis national Forest, Idaho and join with army units to help battle forest fires that burn more than 156,000 acres. The Marines stay in the area fighting the fires for four weeks.

**13 September 2000 (United States)**-The bodies of two Marine Corps aviators were recovered after an F/A-18D Hornet that collided with another Hornet over Yuma, Arizona. The Marines were conducting an aerial combat maneuver training mission.

**14-16 September 2000 (East Timor)**-More than 600 Marines, attached to the 13th Marine Expeditionary Unit and Tarawa Amphibious Ready Group arrive in East Timor to assist in the medical, dental and logistic

**12 October 2000 (Yemen)**-The USS Cole (DDG-67) was bombed by terrorists while refueling in the harbor of Aden. Seventeen sailors were killed and another 39 were injured.

**31 December 2000 (USMC)**-The strength of the Marine Corps stands at 171,676.

**20 January 2001 (United States)**-President George W. Bush is inaugurated as the 43rd president of the United States.

**3 February 2001 (United States)**-Two marines are killed when their TAV-8B Harrier II trainer crashes at MCAS Cherry Point, North Carolina. The Marines who were killed: Major Todd S. Denson and Captain Jason K. Meiners.

**9-11 April 2001(East Timor)**-The 11th Marine Expeditionary Ready Group assist the country of East Timor an island nation that has been undergoing turmoil since it declared independence from Indonesia about two years ago. The Marines help in the area of construction projects and they provide medical and dental care.

**9 July 2001 (United States)**-Marine Medium Helicopter Squadron 365 loses a CH-46 Sea Knight helicopter when it crashes near MCAS New River, North Carolina. Two Marines are killed in the incident.

**22 August 2001 (United States)**-Captain Jacob Wiebe, Fighter Attack Squadron 115 is killed when his F/A-18A Hornet jet crashes near Yuma, Arizona.

**11 September 2001 (United States)**-Islamist terrorists (19) have hijacked four planes, one of them (American Airlines Flight 11) crashes into the North Tower World Trade Center in New York City killing many people including first responders and 92 people on board the flight. A second flight (United Airlines Flight 175) with 65 people on board strikes the South World Trade Center. A total of 2,823, including the airlines passengers are killed. A third plane (American Airlines Flight 175) strikes the Pentagon and 189 men, women and children were killed. The fourth plane (United Airlines Flight 93) crashes in western Pennsylvania outside of Pittsburgh in an unoccupied area. The passengers on the flight were all killed (44 people killed).

**18 October 2001 (Afghanistan)**-The first Marines to engage in combat in Afghanistan are pilots attached to Marine Fighter Squadron 251 who were part of Operation Enduring Freedom. The Marine pilots take off from the carrier USS Theodore Roosevelt in their Hornets

**20 October 2001 (Pakistan)**-Two CH-53 Super Stallion helicopters (15th Marine Expeditionary Unit) are sent on a recovery mission to salvage a U. S. Army Black Hawk helicopter that had crashed on the night before, killing two Army Rangers, while it attacked a Taliban compound. The Black Hawk helicopter was abandoned on the return trip when the Super Stallions came under fire while refueling. Marines return to the site and recover the Black Hawk on 24 October.

**3 November 2001 (Arabian Sea-Afghanistan)**-The 15th Marine Expeditionary Unit flies its first bombing mission in support of Operation Enduring Freedom. The pilots drop 500 pound MK-82

bombs on Al Qaida and Taliban facilities in southern Afghanistan.

**22-24 November 2001 (Arabian Sea)**-The 26th Marine Expeditionary Unit arrives in the Arabian Sea aboard the USS *Bataan*. The arrival of the *Bataan* increases the strength of the Marines in the region. It joins the *Peleliu*, which has the 15th Marine Expeditionary Unit aboard. Together, they have about 4,000 Marines in the region.

**25 November 2001 (Afghanistan)**-The 15th MEU arrives in Afghanistan. It becomes the first team of U. S. Ground troops in Afghanistan. The Marines establish a base, Camp Rhino at the airport slightly south of Kandahar. The mission is code-named Swift Freedom. It is designed to seal off the city of Kandahar from the Taliban and cutting off incoming supplies and escape routes. The Marines after securing the abandoned airstrip, join with the Navy and attack an enemy armored convoy of 15 vehicles outside the base. The attack is carried out by Marine Cobra helicopters and Navy F-14s.

**28 November 2001 (Afghanistan)**-The first American killed in action inside Afghanistan is recovered at a prison compound. Former Marine Mike Spann of McLean, Virginia is recovered. He was a paramilitary trooper with the Central Intelligence Agency. He was interrogating Taliban and Al-Qaida prisoners when the prisoners rioted on the previous Sunday. They took over the compound and held it until it was halted by northern alliance fighters and U. S. air strikes.

**1 December 2001 (United States)**-The 213 MEU departs from Camp Pendleton aboard the USS Bonhomme Richard en route to the Arabian Sea. About 2,200 Marines are on board. They are to join or relieve the Marines of the 15th MEU, who are on the ground in Afghanistan.

**4 December 2001 ((Afghanistan)**-Elements of the 26th MEU land in Afghanistan to reinforce the 15th MEU at Camp Rhino.

**7 December 2001 (Afghanistan)**- Marines attached to the 15th MEU are involved in combat. They had established a roadblock along the roads leaving Kandahar. A firefright erupts when the lead vehicle of a seven-vehicle convoy tries to run the roadblock. It was restricted by concertina wire. The passengers fire upon the Marines while they approached the vehicle. The other vehicles in the convoy changed direction, but air strikes were called upon to stop them. The Marines sustain no casualties, but the enemy suffered between 50 and 150 casualties.

**16 December 2001 (Afghanistan)**-The Marines while on patrol in Kandahar detonate a land mine. Corporal Chris Chandler is wounded and loses his foot. Two other Marines were wounded.

**17 December 2001 (Afghanistan)**-Marines reopen the American Embassy in Kabul. It is the first reopening since the embassy was closed on 31 January 1989.

**1 January 2002 (USMC)**-The strength of the Marine Corps stands at 173,372.

**9 January 2002 (Pakistan)**-A KC-130R (Marine Aerial Refueler Transport Squadron 352) crashes near a forward operating base at Shamsi, Pakistan, killing all seven crewmen. Hostile fire is not considered in the crash.

**10 January 2002 (Afghanistan)**-A C-17 transport plane carrying 20 prisoners to Camp X-Ray in Guantanamo, Cuba takes off and shortly thereafter, Marines from the 26th MEU and other U. S. Forces take up defensive positions to return fire at the Kandahar International Airport subsequent to shots being fired near the northern perimeter. The 20 prisoners arrive at Camp X-Ray on 15 January, with protection to provide security by the 1st Battalion, 2nd Marines.

**18 January 2002 (Afghanistan)**-The Marines transfer control of the base at the Kandahar International Airport to the 101st Airborne Division, USA.

**20 January 2002 (Afghanistan)**-A CH-53E Super Stallion helicopter, attached to Marine Heavy Squadron 361, transporting San Diego-based Marines crashes near Kabul. Two Marines are killed and five others are wounded. The helicopter was on a resupply mission when it crashed in the mountains, due to a mechanical failure.

**6 February 2002 (United States)**-A five-ton truck overturns during a nighttime artillery exercise at Camp Pendleton. Three Marines are killed and four others and a Navy corpsman are injured.

**3 March 2002 (Afghanistan-United States)**-Marines (15th MEU) returned home after spending 7 months on the ground in Afghanistan. It was the first unit in Afghanistan and it established Camp Rhino outside of Kandahar.

**15 April 2002 (Kyrgyzstan)**-The Marine All-Weather Fighter Attack Squadron 121 is the first to arrive at the coalition air base in Kyrgyzstan when 6 FA-18D Hornets arrive. It is to fly missions in support of Operation Enduring Freedom. The country of Kyrgyzstan was a part of the old Soviet Union.

**14 June 2002 (Pakistan)**-A car bomb is detonated outside of the U. S. Consulate in Karachi. One Marine is injured.

**5 July 2002 (Afghanistan)**-AV-8B Harrier planes assigned to Marine Medium Helicopter Squadron 261 fly their first combat mission over Afghanistan when the pilots take off from the USS Wasp to conduct a reconnaissance mission. Also, Ted Williams, a baseball legend, who served in both WWII and the Korean War dies of heart failure. He said: “the two things he was proudest of was being a Marine and being in the Baseball Hall of Fame.

**15 August 2002 (United States)**-Twenty-two Marines move into the recently demolished E Ring offices that was destroyed by terrorists in the hijacked plane on 11 September, 2001. They are the first Marines to move back.

**6 September 2002 (United States)**-President George W. Bush nominates Lt. General Michael Hagee as the 33rd commandant of the Marine Corps

**11 September 2002 (United States)**-At Marine Corps bases around the world the flags were lowered to half-staff in honor of those killed at the World Trade Center and the Pentagon on September 11, 2001.

**1 October 2002 (United States)**-The Senate affirms the nomination of Lt. General Hagee as the 33rd commandant of the Marine Corps.

**8 October 2002 (Kuwait)**-Two Marines are killed and wounded. Lance Corporal Antonio L. Sledd is killed and Lance Corporal George R. Simpson is wounded when two Kuwaiti nationals in a pick-up truck open fire on Company L, 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines who stopped during a training exercise (Eager Mace) to take a break. Afterward, the two assailants drove to another group of Marines and they open fire again. The Marines at the second incident return fire. No Marines were harmed, but both of the assailments are killed.

**14 December 2002 (United States)**-The 11th MEU arrives back at Camp Pendleton following a six-month tour of the *Belleau Wood* ARG comes to an end.. The unit does not see any combat but it did lose three Marines, one was killed in a terrorist attack in Kuwait and another was presumed

dead after falling from the flight deck of the USS *Belleau Wood* on 2 December. One other Marine died from an apparent suicide.

**15 December 2002 (Georgia)**-The Army Special Forces transfers the training of the former Soviet republic of Georgia troops to the Marine Corps, subsequent to the first graduation class. The Marines pick up the next class that begins in February 2003.

**23 December 2002 (United States)**-The Marine Corps forms a new 86-man commando unit. It has a 22-man headquarters, 30 reconnaissance Marines, 28 intelligence specialists and a six-person team to provide fire power. The new outfit will begin to train in June 2003 and be ready to deploy in 2004.

**27 December 2002 (Middle East)**-About 700 Marines, attached to the 2nd Force Service Support Group deploy to an unknown destination, but it is thought that it was going to the Mediterranean Sea region or the Middle East.

**31 December 2002 (USMC)**-The strength of the Marine Corps stands at 174,018.

**1 January 2003 (United States)**-Joe Foss, a former Marine, WWII ace and Medal of Honor recipient Joe Foss dies in Arizona at the age of 87. He was credited with 26 downings of enemy planes.

**11 January 2003 (Horn of Africa)**-About 300 Marines depart for Djibouti to reinforce Combined Joint Task Force Horn of Africa. They are disrupt and defeat terrorism in and around the Horn of Africa. Other Marines deployed with the task force are the 4th Air Wing, 4th Service Support Group and the 4th Marine Division.

**13 January 2003 (United States)**-General Michael W. Hagee becomes the 33rd commandant of the Marine Corps. He succeeds General James L. Jones. General Jones is the first commandant to not retire in 40 years; He becomes the first Marine to assume command as the head of the U. S. European Command on 16 January 2003 and on the following day, he assumes the position of Supreme Allied Commander, Europe.

**22 January 2003 (United States)**-Two AH-1W Super Cobra helicopters, attached to Marine Light Attack Helicopter Squadron 775, were part of a night reconnaissance operation searching for drug runners in the vicinity of Zapata, Texas. They collided and four Marine Corps Reserve aviators were killed.

**1 February 2003 (Georgia)**-Marines deploy in the country of Georgia for more than one year. They are scheduled to train four battalions to help the country to form its own anti-terrorist units against militants suspected to be linked to the Al-Qaida organization. The militants are thought to be holding positions in the border region near Russia's republic of Chechnya.

**12 February 2003 (Kuwait)**-About 2,000 additional Marines arrive in Kuwait (15th MEU).

**16 February 2003 (Kuwait)**-About 7,000 Marines attached to the 2nd Marine Expeditionary Brigade land at Kuwait, bringing the strength of the Marine Corps in Kuwait to more than 40,000. They have entered Kuwait in preparation for war with Iraq.

**24 February 2002 (Kuwait)**-About 6,000 Marines (Amphibious Task Force West) arrive in Kuwait, bringing the Marine force into full strength.

**1 April 2003 (Iraq)**-Marines launch a diversionary attack near An Nasiriyah in support of U. S. Special Forces in the rescue of a U. S. Army prisoner of war who was held in a hospital since her

capture 10 days earlier. The bodies of a few soldiers killed in the same firefight were also recovered from the grounds of the hospital.

**2 April 2003 (Iraq)**-Elements of the 1st Marine Division cross the Tigris River southeast of Baghdad. They destroy the Baghdad Division (Iraqi Republican Guard) near Kut.

**3 April 2003 (Afghanistan)**-Marine Harrier jets support a major attack on a Taliban camp north of Spin Boldak.

**4 April 2003 (Iraq)**-The 1st Marine Division fights its way into the southeastern fringes of Baghdad and it encounters the Al Nida Division (Republican Guard).

**5 April 2003 (Iraq)**-U. S. Forces move into Baghdad. The Marines move to the eastern edge of the city to secure the primary roads that lead out of the city.

**7 April 2003 (Iraq)**-British forces secure the city of Basra. The Marines link up with the Army V Corps troops and attack along the Diyala River to isolate the city of Baghdad.

**8 April 2003 (Iraq)**-Units of the 1st Marine Division expand a bridgehead over the Diyala River and they capture the Rashid military airport on the eastern side of Baghdad.

**9 April 2003 (Iraq)**-U. S. Forces collapse Iraqi resistance in Baghdad. The Marines topple a large statue of Saddam Hussein in Fidaus Square.

**13 April 2003 (Iraq)**-Marines (Task Force Tripoli) take control of Tikrit, the hometown of Saddam Hussein. It is the final city held by Saddam's regime. Also, the Marines who were sent to Samarra, about 75 miles north of Baghdad to keep enemy forces from interfering with Task Force Tripoli is given intelligence about the location of seven U. S. Prisoners. Acting on the information, the Marines raid the location and free the soldiers.

**14 April 2003 (Iraq)**-It is announced by the Pentagon some fighting continues in Iraq, but that major military operations had ended.

**15 April 2003 (Iraq)**-Units of the 26th MEU move into northern Iraq to control Mosul, which was liberated by the Kurds a few days earlier.

**20 April 2003 (Iraq)**-I MEF redeploys forces in central and northern Iraq. The new mission is for security, humanitarian assistance and reconstruction.

**22 April 2003 (Iraq)**-The 24th MEU begins moving back toward its ships. The unit is the first to depart from Iraq.

**29 April 2003 (Iraq)**-The Marines of the 15th MEU return to the USS *Tarawa*.

**1 May 2003 (United States)**-President George W. Bush lands on the aircraft carrier USS Abraham Lincoln off the coast of San Diego and declares victory in Iraq. Also, the 26th MEU departs from Mosul en route to its ships in the Mediterranean Sea.

**3 May 2003 (Iceland)**-The Marines having been in Iceland since 7 July 1941 depart from the country.

**4-6 May 2003 (Iraq)**-The 15th MeU completes its move to the USS *Tarawa* on the 4th. The 2nd MEB completes its backload to the USS *Kearsarge* on the 6th.

**13 June 2003 (USMC)**-Marines en route to the U. S. after the war in Iraq aboard the USS *Kearsarge* receive new orders-to move to Liberia for the purpose of evacuating U. S. Citizens if necessary. Some Marines are landed to help secure the embassy, but they quickly returned to their

ship. In mid August, a Fast Company arrived and the 26 MEU arrives in Liberia to replace them. A peace agreement between factions permitted the Marines to depart from Liberia by 1 October.

**22 June 2003 (Djibouti)**-A U. S. Air Force B-52 bomber accidentally dropped bombs during a training exercise in Djibouti a diminutive country located between the western side of the Gulf of Aden and the entrance to the Red Sea. A Marine helicopter pilot is killed and 8 others are injured.

**July 2003 (USMC)**-Lance Corporal Antoine D. Boykins is scheduled for a general court martial for his role in a parachute sabotage case in which 13 parachutes were intentionally damaged before a jump at Camp Lejeune in September 2002. However, he reaches a plea bargain days before the trial. Later, he is sentenced to 20 years in prison, forfeiture of all pay and allowances, reduction in rank to private and he was dishonorably discharged.

**2 July 2003 (Iraq)**-One Marine is killed and three others are injured while they are clearing mines near Karbala, Iraq.

**27 July 2003 (United States)**-Bob Hope, the friend of the GI dies at the age of 100. Mr. Hope was a USO performer who first started to entertain the troops in 1941. He first entered a combat zone in 1943 and continued to serve the nations military for the next fifty years.

**September 2003 (United States-Liberia)**-Marines attached to the 26th MEU who had landed in Liberia in West Africa are diagnosed with malaria. Many are hospitalized with the strain of the mosquito-born illness. The Marines all recover from the illness.

**October 2003 (Iraq)**-Two Marines are charged with negligent homicide after the death of an Iraqi prisoner found dead in June 2003 at a prisoner camp operated by the 1st Marine Division. Six other Marines are charged with abusing prisoners and lying about it to military investigators. All eight Marines are reservists, attached to the 2nd Battalion, 25th Marines.

**13 October 2003 (Iraq)**-Marines attached to the 13th MEU arrive in southern Iraq and establish positions on the Al-Faw peninsula. The 13th MEU is under the British-led Multinational Division (Southeast) and is tasked with disrupting illegal activities such as smuggling. They are also involved with providing humanitarian assistance.

**5 November 2003 (Iraq)**-Donald Rumsfeld, the Secretary of Defense announces that Marine Corps units will return to Iraq as part of the troop rotation.

**23 November 2003 (United States-Afghanistan)**-The 2nd Battalion, 8th Marines leave Camp Lejeune en route to Afghanistan.

**28 November 2003 (Afghanistan)**-The 2nd Battalion, 8th Marines joins the coalition forces of Combined Joint Task Force 180. They are to pursue al-Qaida and Taliban forces in Afghanistan.

**13 December 2003 (Iraq)**-U. S. Soldiers capture former Iraqi president Saddam Hussein. He was hiding in an underground burrow close to his home in Tikrit, Iraq.

**31 December 2003 (United States)**-The strength of the Marine Corps stands at 177,030.

**22 January 2003 (United States)**-Four Marines from Camp Pendleton who had recently returned home safely following tours in Iraq are killed when their UH-1N Huey helicopter crashes in Talega Canyon. The helicopter was involved in a nighttime training mission in California.

**20 February 2004 (Kuwait)**-Marines land in Kuwait (IMEF). They are the advance troops, which set the groundwork for the remainder of the unit which is scheduled to arrive within a few weeks.

**23 February 2004 (Haiti)**-Fifty Marines from a detachment of the 4th Marine Expeditionary Brigade land in Port-au-Prince to secure the U. S. Embassy and evacuate U. S. Citizens from the country. Six days later the Haitian president, Jean-Bertrand Aristide resigns. President George W. Bush orders more Marines into Haiti to become the leading element of a multinational force.

**1 March 2004 (Haiti)**-Marines from Camp Lejeune along with other peace-keeping forces land in Port-au-Prince (Operation Secure Tomorrow). Six days later, U. S. Marines use their weapons when a sniper opens fire into a crowd of mostly peaceful demonstrators.

**10 March 2004 (United States)**-A UC-53D transport jet crashes while on an instrument landing approach to Marine Corps Air Station in Miramar, California. Four Marines are killed.

**17-18 March 2004 (Iraq)**-Three Marines become the Marine Corps first casualties during its second Operation Iraqi Freedom rotation when enemy forces in Al Anbar province.

**20 March 2004 (Iraq)**-Major General James N. Mattis, commander of the 1st Marine Division assumes responsibility for Al-Anbar and Northern Babil provinces. The Marines relieve the U. S. Army's 82nd Airborne Division. The Marines inherit the Sunni Triangle north and west of Baghdad where U. S. Forces have been under attack from insurgents. In addition, the Marines have a new mission, to help the Iraqi security forces and to continue to build upon the humanitarian efforts of the U. S. Army.

**23 March 2004 (Iraq)**-Company C, 1st Battalion 2nd Marines engages Iraqi insurgents in a heated battle while they attempt to secure two bridges in An Nasiriyah. A Marine air controller called upon A-10 Air Force jets to strike the enemy's positions in the city of An Nasiriyah. The strikes ended up killing 10 Marines. The Marines lose 18 killed and 17 wounded while trying to secure the bridges.

**5 April 2004 (Iraq)**-Elements of the 2nd Battalion, 1st Marines and the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines close access to the city of Fallujah to isolate and seek out insurgents following the murder of four American contractors. The Marines are ordered to scale-down their attacks and to withdraw from the city before an all out offensive could be launched. A cease fire is called in Fallujah, but a cleric-backed militia was beginning to spread the violence to the other cities, including part of Baghdad, Karbala, Kut and Najaf.

**14 April 2004 (Iraq)** The 22nd MEU completes its move into Afghanistan.

**17 April 2004 (Afghanistan)**-Three Marines attached to the 22nd MEU are killed when a roadside bomb explodes alongside their convoy close to the town of Daylanor, Kandahar province.

**26-28 April 2004 (Afghanistan)**-Insurgents fire upon the Marines in Fallujah and Najaf and a Marine patrol is ambushed. The insurgents were mostly members of the rebellious cleric, Moqtada Sadr Mahdi Army, who were using mosques as hideouts. Planes and helicopters were called upon to destroy strongholds that were not sacred sites.

**7 May 2004 (Afghanistan)**-Corporal Ronald R. Payne becomes the first casualty in Afghanistan since Operation Enduring Freedom began in October 2001. It occurred south of Kabul and was carried out by Taliban militia.

**5 June 2004 (United States)**-President Ronald Reagan, the 40th president of the U. S. dies at the age of 93 in his home at Bel Air, California. His body is carried by plane to Washington D.C. for funeral services and afterward, his body is flown back to California where he is interred at the

Ronald Reagan Presidential Library and Museum.

**12 June 2004 (Afghanistan)**-Marines kill more than 80 insurgents during a three-week attack against the Taliban in southern Afghanistan. Two Marines are wounded during the fierce firefights. Later, after less than two weeks, the Taliban ambush a patrol in the eastern Afghanistan close to the Pakistan. Two Marines are killed and one other is wounded.

**25 June 2004 (Haiti)**-About 2,000 Marines, primarily from the 3rd Battalion, 8th Marines, along with its regimental staff end their peacekeeping mission in Haiti. They arrive back in the States in late February.

**26 June (United States)**-Captain Franklin R. Hooks, attached to Marine Fighter Squadron 115 crashes into the eastern Atlantic. He is declared missing.

**28 June 2004 (Iraq)**-The U. S. Coalition transfers sovereignty to the interim Iraqi government. Two days later, the Marines raise Old Glory over the new U. S. Embassy in Baghdad.

**1 July 2004 (United States-Lebanon)**- The Department of Defense announces the status of a U. S. Marine, Corporal Wassef A. Hassoun, who has been missing since 19 June. He is assumed captured. He was seen in a video tape being held against his wishes by captors who are wearing masks who threaten to behead him. Three weeks later, Corporal Hassoun shows up at the U. S. Embassy in Lebanon, his home state.

**9 July 2004 (Iraq)**-The 3rd Battalion, 4th Marines depart from Iraq and return to the United States. Other units also return home. They are the 1st Battalion, 5th Marines and the 3rd Marine Air Wing.

**21 July 2004 (United States)**-Two F/A-18 Hornets collide during a training exercise in northern Oregon. The two pilots killed are Major Gary R. Fullerton and Captain Jeffrey L. Ross who were flying a two seat version of the jet. The pilot of the single seat version of the plane survived the crash.

**22 July 2004 (Afghanistan)**-The Marines (22 MEU) complete a successful operation since the start of Operation Enduring Freedom. The Marines have been in the militant-controlled region for about four months and are expected to be back in Camp Lejeune by mid-September.

**31 July 2004 (Afghanistan)**-The 11th MEU out of Camp Pendleton assume operational control of the An Najaf and Al Qadisiyah provinces. The Marines originally worked under the authority Polish-led Multi National Division Central South, but they are quickly transferred to the 1st MEF on 8 August. Also, the final elements of the 24th MEU arrive in Iraq. The units begin operations in North Babil province, Iraq.

**August 2004 (Iraq)**-Aviation units begin to arrive home from Iraq. They include Marine Heavy Helicopter Squadron 466, Marine Attack Squadron 214, Marine Air Control Squadron 2, Marine Wing Support Squadron 273, Marine Medium Helicopter Squadron 261 and Marine Unmanned Aerial Vehicle Squadron 2.

**5 August 2004 (Iraq)**-A cease fire that was signed in June between the Iraqi government and the Shiite cleric Muqtada al-Sadr's Muqtada Militia comes to an end. The militia launches attacks from the Imam Ali-Shrine and a neighboring cemetery against the Marines (11th MEU) and Iraqi forces in Najaf. The Marines have the situation under control by surrounding the captured mosques. The Marines finally end the fighting in the city of Najaf on 28 August.

**17 August 2004 (Okinawa Middle East)**-The 31st MEU, receive orders to deploy to the Middle

East in support of Operation Iraqi Freedom. The MEU includes the 1st Battalion, 3rd Marines and HMM-265 departs from Okinawa in less than one week.

**24 August 2004 (United States)**-Marine Aerial Refueler Transport Squadron 452 departs from Newburgh, NY to supportt Operation Iraqi Freedom. Marine Light Attack Helicopter Squadron 168 also returns to Iraq to support the scheduled rotation of forces there.

**11 September 2004 (Kuwait)**-The 31st MEU arrives at the Kuwait Naval Beach. The force includes 1st Battalion, 3rd Marines, Marine Medium Helicopter Squadron 265 and MEU Service Support Group 31. Also Marines attached to Company A, 2nd Light Armored Reconnaissance Battalion and 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines wll depart for Iraq by early September.

**5 October 2004 (Iraq)**-The 24th MEU and Iraqi troops launch an offensive in the southern approaches to Baghdad and they take control of a bridge that spans the Euphrates River. Weapons caches aere discovered and about 35,000 pounds of various explosives are destroyed.

**7 October 2004 (Afghanistan)**-The final Marine Reserve infantry battalion, 3rd Battalion, 25th Marines from Brook Park, Ohio is ordered to deploy in Iraq. The unit is to move in early 2005.

**9 July 2004 (Afghanistan)**-The poople of Afghanistan turn out to vote in massive numbers in the country's first democratic election.

**14 October 2004 (Afghanistan)**-Marines, both air and ground troops launch attacks against Fallujah after peace-talks were suspended. The peace-talks collapsed over the demand that the insurgent Abu Musab al-Zarqawi and other foreign fighters are to handed over to the authorities. On 30 October, severe fighting in the sector costs the lives of 8 marines; 9 others are wounded.

**31 October 2004 (Hawaii)**-The 3rd Battalion, 3rd Marines, based at Kaneohu Bay, sends an advance party of Marines to Afghanistan. The remainder of the battalion follow within several weeks.. They replace the 3rd Battalion, 6th Marines.

**6 November 2004 (United States)**-The Marine Band performed following a wreath-laying ceremony at the grave site of John Philip Sousa. It was in honor of the 150th anniversary of the famous Marine Corps bandmaster's Birthday.

**8 November 2004 (Iraq)**-The largest military operation since the beginning days of Operation Iraqi Freedom begins just after sundown. Thousands of U. S. And Iraqi troops advance into rebel-held Fallujah. 10 November 2004 (Afghanistan)-It's the Marine Corps Birthday, but in Fallujah the Marines of the 1st Battalion, 3rd Marines do not get a piece of cake. Instead, they battle Iraqi insurgents.

**14 November 2004 (Iraq)**-Marines and Iraqi forces overrun the final rebel resistance in the southernmost sector of the city of Fallujah. Marines lose 83 Marines killed and one Navy Corpsman is also killed during the November fighting in the city.

**20 November 2004 (United States)**-Marine attach Squadron 542 arrives back at Msarine Corps Air Station Cherry Point, N. C. The squadron flew about 150 sorties each week in support of the ground troops operating near Fallujah and Ramadi.

**23 November 2004 (Iraq)**-Marines, British and Iraqi forces launch an offensive (Operation Plymouth Rock) to gain control of northern Babil province, just south of Baghdad.

**30 November 2004 (Iraq)**-Marines (11th MEU) transfars control to Iraqi security forces subsequent to three months of relative quiet. The Marines also transfer operational control of

Qadisiyah province to the Polish-led Multi-National Division Central South.

**1 December 2004 (Iraq)**-Approximately 40 Marines come under mortar fire while they are hunting weapons and militants along the Euphrates River outside of Baghdad. Marine helicopters and one tank support the ground troops and the mortar fire stops. One Marine is wounded. **Also**, in the United States, the Pentagon announces that the number of U. S. Troops in Iraq would be increased to 150,000 from 138,000. The increase is required because of the added security for the national elections, which are scheduled for January 2005.

**31 December 2004 (USMC)**-The strength of the Marine Corps stands at 177,207.

**January 2005 (Asia)**-The tsunami that devastates Asia in early December of 2004 causes the 15 Marine Expeditionary Unit to be diverted from the Western Pacific to the areas subjected to the storm. The Marines remain in the area for about six weeks.

**January 11-12 2005 (United States)**-Marine All-Weather Fighter Attack Squadron 224 departs from Marine Corps Air Station Beaufort, S. C. duty in Iraq in support of Operation Iraqi Freedom.

**20 January 2005 (Iraq)**-About 700 Marines and sailors attached to the 3rd Battalion, 4th Marines in support of Operation Iraqi Freedom redeploy to Baghdad for the third time. They establish camp close to Fallujah. Also, in the United States, President George W. Bush is inaugurated for the second time as the president of the United States.

**26 January 2005 (Iraq)**-A CH-53 Super Stallion helicopter (3rd Marine Aircraft Wing, while transporting troops during a security mission near Ruthbah crashes in Al-Anbar province. Thirty of the troops are Marines and one sailor who are killed in the accident. Twenty-seven of the Marines are attached to the 1st Battalion, 3rd Marines based in Kaneohe Bay, Hawaii.

**28-30 January (United States)**-The 1st Battalion, 8th Marines return to Camp Lejeune from Iraq.

**7 February 2005 (Afghanistan)**-Marines attached to the 3rd Battalion, 3rd Marines end the Operation Spur. They were inserted into various parts of the snow-covered Korangai Valley to search for terrorists in several houses. Also, the Afghans are provided with medical care and supplies.

**14-16 February 2005 (Kuwait)**-The 15 MEU arrives in the Persian Gulf. Marines debark and begin unloading equipment. Later, the 3rd Battalion, 2nd Marines and the 2nd Force Service Support Group deploys to the region. The 1st Battalion, 5th Marines follow. They depart on 27 February, 2005.

**18 February 2005 (United States)**-The 2nd Battalion, 10th Marines, after a tour of seven-months begin to return to Camp Lejeune. Also, Marine Aerial Refueler Transport Squadron 452 will return from Iraq on February 25th.

**20 February 2005 (Iraq)**-Elements of the 1st Marine Division and Iraqi forces launch Operation River Blitz in the Al Anbar province to target insurgents in the cities along the Euphrates River.

**6 March 2005 (Iraq-Okinawa)**-The 31st MEU begins arriving back at Okinawa from Iraq. The air component of the unit returns about one month later on 1-2 April. The outfit loses 50 Marines killed and 221 wounded during their stay in Iraq.

**7 March 2005 (Iraq)**-The 3rd Marine Aircraft Wing completes its longest deployment in its 62-year history. It starts to return to the U. S. After spending 13 months in Iraq. The unit loses 8 Marines and 222 wounded during its deployment.

**12 March 2005 (Afghanistan)**-Anti-coalition troops ambush a patrol north of Jalabad. Two Marines are wounded. About two weeks later, elements of the 3rd Battalion, 3rd Marines end Operation Mavericks. They had successfully captured suspected insurgents and they captured a few weapons caches in the snow-covered mountains.

**27 March 2005 (Iraq)**-The II MEF relieves the I MEF in Fallujah. The I MEF begins to arrive at Camp Pendleton on the following day.

**31 March 2005 (United States)**-The marine Corps announces that Marines would stop being sentries at Annapolis (Naval Academy) at the end of 2005. They had been guards at the school since 1851, but the necessity for additional active duty troops compelled the change.

**2 April 2005 (Iraq)**-The prison Abu Ghraib, in Iraq is attacked by about 40-60 insurgents. U. S. Soldiers and Marines who were using the prison as a military base repulsed the attack. No U. S. Fatalities are sustained, but 44 U. S. Troops are wounded. Also, 13 Iraqi detainees are wounded. The attack included two-car bombs, small arms and mortar fire and rocket-propelled grenades.

**8-9 April 2005 (Iraq-United States)**-The 2nd Battalion, 24th Marines begins to arrive home from Iraq. The unit loses 12 Marines during its seven month deployment in the Sunni Triangle.

**11 April 2005 (Iraq)**-The camp at Husaybayh on the Syrian border is attacked by insurgents. They used suicide car bombs and a fire truck that is loaded with explosives. The Marines repulse the attack. Three Marines are wounded

**26 April 2005 (Iraq-Hawaii)**-The 1st Battalion, 3rd Marines arrive back in Kaneohe Bay Hawaii. They had completed a 10-month deployment in Iraq. The unit lost 46 Marines, 27 were killed in a helicopter accident on 26 January 2005.

**2 May 2005 (Iraq)**-Two planes (Marine Fighter Attack Squadron 323) that were launched from the deck of the USS Carl Vinson collide. Both pilots are killed.

**7-14 May 2005 (Iraq)**-Marines lead the coalition offensive (Operation Matador) close to the Syria-Iraq border. About 1,000 troops are involved and they are backed by helicopter gunships and planes. The operation continues until the 14th and ends successfully. Nine Marines are killed and 40 others are wounded.

**9 May 2005 (Afghanistan)**-A band of insurgents operating out of Laghman about 60 miles from Kabul engage Marines for about five hours. Two Marines die and 23 rebels are killed during the operation.

**25 May 2005 (Iraq)**-Marines in support of other troops move into Haditha to engage insurgents who were responsible for a primary assault on Haditha about three weeks ago.

**15 June 2005 (United States)**-A Marine Harrier jet while returning to base after a training exercise crashes into a residential neighborhood in Yuma, Arizona about one mile from Marine Corps Air Station. It was carrying four 500-pound bombs at the time of the accident. About 1,300 people are evacuated from their homes. The pilot and the people are unscathed.

**17-22 June (Iraq)**-Marines lead the 3rd major offensive in Al Anbar province in western Iraq. During the operation (Operation Spear) the Marines attack the insurgent stronghold of Karabilah, which is close to the Syrian border. Marines rescue 4 Iraqi men who were being held in a torture chamber. They also discover bomb factories and weapons caches.

**21 June 2005 (United States)**-The final elements of the 3rd Battalion, 3rd Marines return home to

Hawaii from Afghanistan following an 8-month tour in Afghanistan. The Marines from Marine Air Control Squadron 2 had returned about one week ago. The 2nd Radio Battalion also arrived home from Afghanistan.

**23 June 2005 (Iraq)**-Insurgents attack a convoy in Fallujah by running a suicide car into it. The attack is the worst to strike females. Five Marines are killed, three males and two females and one female sailor is also killed. Thirteen others, including 11 Females were wounded. Law forbids females from combat areas, but sensitivity prohibited males from searching female Iraqis, which compelled the U. S. to include females in the combat zones for performing such searches.

**7 July 2005 (Iraq)**-Marines and Iraqi forces launch the sixth offensive (Operation Scimitar) since May to end insurgent strongholds in Al Anbar province. The troops attack the village of Zaidan about 20 miles southeast of Fallujah. More than 22 suspected insurgent are detained.

**22 July 2005 (Iraq)**-Marine Tactical Electronic Warfare Squadron 4 (Seahawks) begins its return home to North Carolina following a six month tour in Iraq.

**29-31 July 2005 (Iraq)**-Elements (more than 800 Marines and sailors) of the 3rd Battalion, 4th Marines return home after completing three deployments.

**7 February 2006 (Iraq)**-The 1st Marine Logistics Group deploys in Iraq. Marines from the identical unit arrive later in the month (19th).

**9 February 2006 (United States)**-Marines attached to the Marine Aircraft Group 26 arrive back at New River, N. C. Also, Marines attached to Marine Fighter Attack Squadron 332 and Marine Squadron Logistics Squadron 31 arrive back home at Beaufort, South Carolina.

**10 February 2006 (United States)**-About 900 Marines attached to the 2nd Battalion, 2nd Marines arrives at Camp Lejeune, N. C. The unit was deployed in Iraq for seven months.

**17 February 2006 (Gulf of Aden)**-Two CH-53E helicopters crash during a training exercise close to the coastal town of Ras Siyyan in Djibouti. Eight Marines, attached to Marine Heavy Helicopter Squadron 464 and two airmen are killed. Two Marines survive the crash.

**19 February 2006 (Philippines)**-About 300 Marines attached to the 31st MEU deploys to the Philippines from Okinawa to assist with the mudslide that occurred in the country two days earlier. Also, about 3,000 Marines attached to the 13th MEU arrive at Camp Lejeune, California following a seven-months tour in Afghanistan.

**27-28 February 2006 (Iraq-United States)**-The 3rd Radio Battalion arrives back in Hawaii following a tour in Iraq on 27 February. Also, on the following day, Marines attached to the 2nd Marine Division begin to arrive at Camp Lejeune after their tour in Iraq.

**28 February 2006 (Iraq)**-I MEF assumes responsibility for Al Anbar province. It relieves II MEF.

**March 2006 (Iraq)**-Marine Light Attack Helicopter Squadron 167 arrives back at New River, N. C. following a seven-month deployment in Iraq on 1 March. Marine Medium Helicopter Squadron 266 returns to New River on the 6th and Marine Wing Support Squadron 272 starts to come home on the 14th.

**6 March 2006 (Iraq)**-The 3rd Battalion, 8th Marines, for the third time deploys to Iraq.

**11-12 March 2006 (Iraq)**-The 3rd Battalion, 3rd Marines deploy at Al Anbar province. The battalion had just completed a seven-month tour in Afghanistan less than a year ago.

**April 2006 (Iraq)**-Marines attached to the 1st Battalion, 25th Marines assume control of most of Fallujah and will train Iraqi security forces. The marines will also conduct counter-insurgency operations for the army's RCT 5.

**3 April 2006 (United States)**-Marine Reservists attached to Headquarters Battery, 5th Battalion, 14th Marines arrive back in Seal Beach, California. The unit was on a six month tour. The unit's 125 Marines return without sustaining any casualties.

**7 April 2006 (Iraq)**-The battalion commander of the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines and two company commanders are relieved of command. It was done as part of the ongoing investigation whether Marines from the battalion had killed some Iraqi citizens in Haditha the night of 19 November, 2005.

**12 April 2006 (United States)**-About 900 Marines and sailors attached to the 2nd Battalion, 6th Marines arrive at Camp Lejeune. The unit had just completed a seven-month tour in Iraq.

**15 April 2006 (Pakistan)**-On October 8th, 2005, Pakistan is struck by a devastating earthquake. U. S. Assistance during this devastation is wrapped up this day. It is the "longest disaster assistance effort in U. S. military history."

**17 April 2006 (Iraq)**-Sunni Arab insurgents attack Marines in Ramadi, striking a coordinated attack against the main government building and two observation posts. but it is repelled. The Marines sustain no casualties during the 90-minute attack.

**18 May 2006 (United States)**-The Marine Corps announces its plan to pull out most of its troops in Afghanistan. Marines were the first ground units that went into Afghanistan subsequent to the terrorist attack of 11 September, 2001. The U. S. Army and NATO's forces are to assume the defense of the Afghan government. Also, the 1st Battalion, 3rd Marines begin to arrive back at Hawaii after completing a five-month tour. While deployed in Afghanistan, the unit sustained the loss of three Marines and one U. S. Navy corpsman.

**24 May 2006 (United States)**-General Michael W. Hagee, commandant of the Marine Corps announces that the Marines would face criminal charges for the deaths of more than two-dozen Afghan citizens in Haditha on 19 November 19th, 2005. The names of the Marines are withheld, but they are attached to the 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines from Camp Pendleton.

**28 May 2006 (Indonesia)**- An earthquake that recently struck Indonesia causes the Marines and sailors attached to III MEF to deploy in country to distribute aid.

**10-13 2006 (Iraq)**-Company I, 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines engages insurgents in two firefights over a three-day period. The battles were near Camp Habbaniyah at Observation Post Bears. The Marines sustained no fatalities but a few Marines were wounded.

**13 June 2006 (United States)**-President George H. Bush nominates Lt. General James T. Conway as the commandant of the Marine Corps. He is confirmed by the U. S. Senate as the 34th commandant on August 2nd.

**21 June 2006 (United States)**-The Marine Corps announces that seven Marines and one corpsman would face charges of murder for the death of an Iraqi man killed in the village of Hamandiyah in April. All of the men are attached to the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines.

**15 July 2006 (Iraq)**-The 3rd Battalion, 2nd Marines arrives at Camp Habbaniyah. They replace the 3rd Battalion, 5th Marines.

**16 July 2006 (Lebanon)**-Israel and Hezbollah continues to deteriorate. The U. S. begins to evacuate U. S. Citizens by helicopters and by sea. Marines (24th MEU) speed to the area for the first time in 20 years to assist in the evacuations of U. S. Citizens. The evacuation end of 26 July. The U. S. Military switches their efforts to humanitarian aid. The Marines complete their mission during late August.

**24 July 2006 (Iraq)**-During Operation Spotlight, Marines attached to the 1st Battalion, 25th Marines rescue three Iraqi hostages close to Fuhuylat. The Marines are supported by Iraqi army soldiers. The operation also discovers a vehicle-borne IED and many other types of munitions.

**15 August 2006 (United States)**-The 11th MEU return to Camp Pendleton following a six month deployment to the Western Pacific and the Persian Gulf.

**21-25 August 2006 (Iraq)**-The 9th Engineer Support Battalion departs from Camp Hansen, Okinawa en route to Iraq.

**23 August 2006 (Iraq)**-The 2nd Battalion, 3rd Marines begins deploying to Iraq. The outfit moves from Kaneohe Bay, Hawaii. The battalion had previously deployed in Afghanistan in June 2005, but this is the battalion's first deployment that support Operation Iraqi Freedom.

**31 August 2006 (Iraq)**-The 3rd Battalion, 4th Marines begins to deploy in Iraq for their fourth tour.

**6 September 2006 (United States)**-Marine Wing Support Squadron 374 begins to arrive back at 29 Palms, California. The battalion just completed a seven-month deployment in Iraq.

**13 September 2006 (Hawaii-Iraq)**-The 2nd Battalion, 3rd Marines begins to depart from Kaneohe Bay en route to Iraq to start a seven-month tour. The Marines attached to Marine Heavy Helicopter Squadron 463 and the 3rd Battalion, 3rd Marines begin to arrive back in Hawaii in two days, following a six-month deployment in Iraq. Also, the 15 MEU begins a six-month deployment to the Persian Gulf and the Western Pacific regions.

**21 September 2006 (Afghanistan)**-The 24th MEU's AV-8B Harrier component finishes a shortened stint in support of Operation Enduring Freedom. Marines attached to HMM-365 fly 136 combat missions in Afghanistan in 13 days. The 24th MEU is stationed in the Arabian Sea as part of the Iwo Jima ESG.

**25 September 2006 (Iraq)**-The April 2006 kidnaping and murder of the Iraqi man in Hamandiya brings about court-martials for the three enlisted Marines. The court-martials are ordered by Lt. General James N. Mattis, the commanding officer of Marine Forces Central Command. Four other Marines and a naval corpsman will undergo preliminary hearings to determine if they too will have to face court-martial.

**2 October 2006 (United States)**-The 3rd Battalion, 8th Marines arrives back at Camp Lejeune after completing a seven-month tour in Iraq. The battalion lost 17 Marines while in Iraq.

**5 October 2006 (Hawaii)**-The 3rd Battalion, 3rd Marines arrives back in Hawaii after completing nearly seven-months in the Iraqi province of Al Anbar. The battalion lost 11 Marines while in Iraq.

**26 October 2006 (Iraq)**-A Marine, PFC John Jodka is the first of eight defendants to admit that he participated in the killing of an Iraqi civilian in September 2006. He pled guilty to aggravated assault and conspiracy to obstruct justice. It was part of a plea bargain that required him to testify against the other Marines that were still awaiting trial. Lance Corporal Tyler A. Jackson, another Marine pled to lesser charges in exchange for his testimony.

**10 November 2006 (United States)**-It is the Marine Corps 231st Birthday. The National Museum of the Marine Corps located in Triangle, Virginia is dedicated. President George W. Bush, General Michael W. Hagee, the commandant of the Marine Corps and General Peter Pace, the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff are in attendance. Also, President George W. Bush announces that Corporal Jason L. Dunham who died in April 2004 was going to be the first Marine to receive the Medal of Honor for giving his life by diving on a grenade to protect other men of his outfit. He receives the Medal posthumously on 11 January. 2007 at the White House.

**13 November 2006 (United States)**-General Michael W. Hagee, the 34th, commandant of the Marine Corps retires. He is replaced by General James T. Conway who becomes the 35th commandant. Also, in Iraq, a third Marine charged with the murder and kidnaping of an Iraqi civilian in Hamandiya, Lance Corporal Jerry E. Shumate Jr. pled on a lesser charge of aggravated assault and conspiracy to obstruct justice on 21 November. And another Marine, PFC John Judka III also pled to lesser charges. He was sentenced to 18 months on 15 November. The following day, Lance Corporal Tyler A. Jackson who had also pled to lesser charges was sentenced to 21 months. The three Marines were all dismissed from the Marine Corps. Still, there are four additional Marines that must stand court-martials.

**16 November 2006 (Iraq)**-About 2,200 Marines attached to the 15th MEU are deployed aboard ships in the Persian Gulf. They are preparing to deploy in Al Anbar province in Iraq. The Marines are being sent into Iraq for their third deployment.

**6 December 2006 (Iraq)**-A roadside bomb explodes near Ramadi, which kills Major Megan McClung, the first officer of the Marines to be killed in Iraq and the fifth woman Marine killed there.

**21 December 2006 (Iraq)**-Eight Marines are charged in the murders of 24 Iraqi civilians in Haditha in November 2005. Four officers, not present during the incident, are accused of dereliction of duty for failing to investigate and report the deaths and four enlisted Marines are charged with unpremeditated murder.

**26 December 2006 (United States)**-Former President Gerald Ford dies while at his home in Rancho Mirage, California.

**31 December 2006 (USMC)**-The strength of the Marine Corps stands at 178,477.

**10 January 2007 (United States)**-President George W. Bush announces that the strength of the U. S. Army and the Marine Corps is to increase. On the following day, Secretary of Defense, Robert M. Gates proposes the addition of 65,000 men to the army and 27,000 to the Marines. The increases are to be added over the next ten years.

**15 January 15 2007 (Iraq)**-The 3rd Battalion, 4th Marines complete an 18-day operation in Al Anbar. The operation seizes 15 weapons and munitions caches and 9 explosive devices.

**23 January 2007 (United States)**-Marines attached to Marine Tactical Electronic Warfare Squadron 3 arrive back in Cherry Point, N.C. following a six-month deployment in Iraq. The 7th Marines begin arriving back home in California four days later following a one-year deployment in Iraq. The 7th Marines were part of RCT-7.

**24 January 2007 (Iraq)**-Marine Medium Helicopter 262 takes over responsibility for the combat assault transportation mission in Western Iraq. It is the first time the squadron is deployed in a combat deployment since it had deployed in Vietnam.

**30 January 2007 (Iraq)**-The 1st Marine Logistics Group transfers responsibility of the logistics combat element in Al Anbar province to the 2nd MLG. The 1st MLG lost 18 Marines, while in Iraq.

**31 January 2007 (United States-Iraq)**-Marine Aircraft Group 29 based at MCAS in New River, N. C. Begins to deploy in Iraq.

**February 2007 (United States)**-The 2nd Low Altitude Air Defense Battalion and some from Marine Air Control Squadron 2's Alpha Detachment depart from Cherry Point, N. C. on 7 February. On the 9th of February, the 1st Stinger Battery departs from Okinawa for a deployment in Iraq. Later in the month, on the 28th, Marine Wing Support Squadron 371 departs for deployment in Iraq.

**7 February 2007 (Iraq)**-A Marine CH-46 Sea Knight helicopter is shot down by insurgents about 20 miles northwest of Baghdad. It is the fifth helicopter shot down in a three-week period. Five Marines and 2 sailors are killed. Also, the 3rd Battalion, 2nd Marines arrive back at Camp Lejeune following a seven-month deployment in Iraq.

**9 February 2007 (Iraq)**-I MEF transfers command of Multi-National Force West to MEF II in Al Anbar province. The final elements of MEF I return to Camp Pendleton by 15 February.

**12 February 2007 (United States)**-About 100 Marines and sailors attached to the 3rd Marine Aircraft Wing arrive back in Miramar, California after completing a deployment at Al Asad Air Base in Iraq.

**17 February (Iraq)**-Lance Corporal Robert Pennington, subsequent to pleading guilty to kidnaping and conspiracy in the death of an Iraqi man in the village of Hamandiya on 26 April 2006, is sentenced to serve only 8 years. He received credit for time already served.

**4 March 2007 (Afghanistan)**-Marines, attached to the Marine Corps Forces Special Operations Command fire upon and kill 8 Afghan civilians in eastern Afghanistan. The Marines claim they were returning fire in an ambush. The unit is expelled by the U. S. Army general in charge later in the month.

**17 March 2007 (Iraq-United States)**-Marine Light Attack Helicopter Squadron 167 arrives back at New River, N. C. After a seven-month deployment in Iraq. On the 26th of March the Yuma-based Marine Attack Squadron 211 return to the U. S. Both of the squadrons were based at Asad Air Base.

**18 March 2007 (United States)**-The 1st Battalion, 3rd Marines begin to depart for Iraq to its second tour which is to last seven-months in Al Anbar province. The 2nd Battalion, 3rd Marines and the Marine Heavy Helicopter Squadron 363 begin to arrive back in the United States following their respective deployments in Iraq.

**23 March 2007 (Okinawa)**-Marine Wing Support Group 17 and the 9th Engineer Support Battalion, following deployments in Iraq, return to Okinawa.

**1 April (USMC)**-The Marine Corps orders that Marines cease getting tattoos on their lower arms and legs.

**2 April 2007 (Iraq)**-The charges are dropped against a sergeant accused of killing 5 civilians in Haditha on 19 November 2005. He was given testimonial immunity. Later, in three days, three officers and a few enlisted men are offered immunity for their testimony in cases against the four officers and three enlisted men whose court-martials are still pending.

**19-30 May 2007 (United States)**-About 300 Marines attached to the 1st Battalion, 6th Marines arrive back at Camp Lejeune on 19 May, after a 9-month deployment in Al Anbar province. The

battalion lost 12 Marines during its time in Iraq. Also, the 15th MEU arrives back at Camp Pendleton following a 9-month deployment in Al Anbar province.

**24 June 2007 (United States)**-Charles W. Lindberg, the last survivor of the Marines who raised Old Glory on Mt. Suribchi in Iwo Jima dies at the age of 86.

**5-8 July (Iraq)**-BLT 3rd Battalion, 1st Marines launch Operation China Shop II in Al Anbar province. The operation is designed to carry out weapons sweeps and conduct census surveys.

**9 July 2007 (Iraq)**-Corporal Trent D. Thomas begins his court-martial for the 26 April, 2006 murder of an unarmed Iraqi civilian in Hamandiya. He is acquitted of premeditated murder, but he is found guilty of kidnaping and conspiracy on 18 July. Thomas is sentenced to a reduction in rank and he receives a bad-conduct discharge, but he does not receive any prison sentence. On 24 July, the court-martials for the final two Marines that are facing charges in the murder of the Iraqi civilian in Hamandiya.

**14 July 2007 (Iraq)**-RCT-2 launches Operation Mawtini in towns along the Euphrates River. The operation included more than 9,000 U. S. and Iraqi troops who were attempting to get control in the remote areas of western Al Anbar.

**1 August 2007 (Iraq)**-Corporal Marshall Magincaldrá is found guilty of conspiracy to murder in the killing of an Iraqi in Hamandiya on the 26th of April, 2007, but he is acquitted of premeditated murder. Magincaldrá was sentenced to the 448 days already spent in prison and was reduced in rank to private. On the following day, Sergeant Lawrence G. Hutchins III is convicted by a separate jury of several charges including unpremeditated murder and he was sentenced to 15-years in prison, a reduction of rank to private and a dishonorable discharge from the Marine Corps. On 6 May, 2008 his sentence is reduced by 4

**7 August 2007 (Iraq)**-Private Tyler A. Jackson and Private Jerry E. Shumate Jr., are ordered released by Lt. General James N. Mattis, commanding general of Marine Corps Forces Central Command. They were being held for about nine-months of their 21-month sentence. Three days later, Private Robert Pennington, still being held for the murder following his guilty plea was also granted an early release.

**9 August 2007 (Iraq)**-Lt. General N. Mattis dismisses all charges against Lance Corporal Sharratt who was one of four enlisted Marines who faced murder and other charges in the deaths of several Iraqi citizens in Haditha on 19 November 2005. Captain Randy W. Stone, a military lawyer who is accused of improperly investigating the killings has the charges dismissed.

**16 August 2007 (Iraq)**-A former Marine sergeant (Company K, is charged in federal court in Los Angeles for his role in the murders of unarmed Iraqi prisoners during the battle for Fallujah (November 2004) Later, (four days) the Marine Corps announces that it was charging another Marine of the same company with charges of the identical incident. Also, in the United States, the 3rd Battalion, 6th Marines begin arriving back in North Carolina after serving a seven-month tour in Iraq. -Also, the 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines arrive back in California following their tour in Iraq.

**22 August 2007 (Iraq-United States)**-Sergeant Jerrod M. Glass is arraigned on 244 counts of abusing the members of his 60-man platoon (Platoon 2167) over the period December 23rd 2006 to February 10th 2007. Four other officers were relieved of duty and two drill instructors face court-martials in regards to the case. Sergeant Glass is convicted on 14 November, 2007 and he was sentenced the next day to six months in the brig, a reduction in rank to private and a bad conduct

discharge.

**4 September 2007 (Iraq)**-Marine Light Attack Helicopter Squadron 773 deploys to Al Anbar province.

**5 September 2007 (Iraq)**-The Marine Corps announces that three officers do not meet the high standards expected of senior leadership with regards to the killing of Iraqi civilians in Haditha. They are Major General Richard A. Huck, former commanding general of the 2nd Marine Division, Colonel Stephen W. Dacvis, former commanding officer of RCT-2 and Colonel Robert G. Sokoloski, former chief of staff of the 2nd Marine Division. The three of them receive letters of the censure from the Secretary of the Navy.

**7 September 2007 (Iraq-United States)**-The 2nd Battalion, 10th Marines arrives back at Camp Lejeune following a 7-month deployment in Iraq.

**10 September 2007 (Iraq)**-1st Lt. Andrew Grayson, one of the four officers charged with failing to properly investigate the Haditha incident (killing of civilians) rejects a plea deal to dismiss the charges faced by him in exchange for the admission that he covered up the killings of the civilians. Two days later, Captain Lucas McConnell was completely exonerated. He is the second officer to have all charges dropped.

**23 September 2007 (Iraq)**-Marine Light Attack Helicopter Squadron 269 arrives back in New River, N. C. after a deployment in Iraq.

**30 September 2007 (United States)**-Marine Fighter Squadron 232 which had deployed on the USS Nimitz and had operated in Iraq and Afghanistan arrives back in California.

**October 2007 (United States)**-Marine Corps units returning to the U. S. are: 5th Naval Air Naval Gunfire Liaison Company returns on 2 October; 1st Battalion, 12th Marines return on 3 October; Wing Support Squadron 271 returns on 5 October; 2nd Battalion, 5th Marines return on 8 October; Marine Unmanned Aerial Vehicle Squadron 2 returned on 14 October 1st Battalion, 3rd Marines return on 16 October and the 2nd Battalion, 6th Marines return on the 22nd of October.

**4 October 2007 (Iraq)**-Staff Sergeant Frank Wuterich is to be tried on negligent homicide rather than the more serious charge of unpremeditated homicide in the deaths of Iraqi civilians in Haditha. The change in charges was made by the investigating official, Lt. Colonel Paul Ware.

**10 October 2007 (Afghanistan)**-Lt. General James N. Mattis orders that a court of inquiry be convened to investigate the actions of a Marine Corps special operations company in which several civilians were killed and wounded.

**19 October 2007 (Iraq)**-Lt. General James N. Mattis dismisses murder and negligent homicide charges against Lance Corporal Stephen Tatum, but he is ordered to stand trial in a court-martial for charges of aggravated assault and involuntary manslaughter regarding the Haditha incident. He also orders criminal charges be against Jeffrey R. Chessani, former battalion commander of the 3rd Battalion, 4th Marines for failing to accurately report and investigate the identical incident.

**2 November 2007 (Iraq)**-Task Force National Capital Region, which is composed of more than Marines from the Washington, D. C. area deploy in Iraq for 7-months.

**10 November 2007 (USMC)**-The Marine Corps celebrates its 232nd Birthday.

**17 November 2007 (United States)**-The 13th MEU, Marines and sailors, return to Camp Pendleton after completing a 7-month deployment in the Persian Gulf. The unit was stationed aboard the USS

Bonhomme Richard and it included a combat tour in Iraq. Also, the 1st Special Operations Battalion returns to Camp Pendleton. The unit while deployed operated in the Philippines and Afghanistan.

**21-22 November 2007 (Iraq-United States)**-About 650 Marines attached to the 3rd Battalion, 7th Marines arrives back in California following a deployment in Iraq. The unit while in Iraq served in Ramadi in western Al Anbar province.

**13 December 2007 (Iraq)**-Lance Corporal Delano Holmes, a reservist is found guilty of the death of an Iraqi soldier, Private Munther Jasem Muhammed, who was stabbed to death on 31 December 2006. Lance Corporal Holmes claimed self defense, but he was convicted and sentenced to time served (10 months), reduction in rank to private and a bad conduct discharge.

**14 December 2007 (United States)**-A San Diego drill instructor, Sergeant Brian Wendel, the second DI involved with the recruit abuse from December 23 to February 10 2007 at MCRD, San Diego. He is found guilty of failing to report abuses committed by others and he is reprimanded and reduced in rank, but he does not serve any time in the brig.

**16 December 2007 (United States)**-Marine Fighter Attack Squadron 251 begins arriving back in the U. S. At Beaufort, S. C., following a 6-month deployment aboard the USS Enterprise. The unit while deployed saw action in Iraq and Afghanistan..

**31 December 2007 (USMC)**-The strength of the Marine Corps stands at 186,342.

**11 January 2008 (United States)**-Sergeant Robert Hankins, a third DI, involved with the abuse of recruits from 23 December 2006 to February 10 2007 is sentenced to 90 days hard labor and he was reduced in rank.

**15 January 2008 (Afghanistan)**-About 3,200 Marines and sailors with the 24th Marine Expeditionary Unit are to deploy in Afghanistan in the spring.

**22 January 2008 (Iraq)**-RCT-5 assumes operational control of a big part of western Al Anbar province. The combat team replaced RCT-2, which returns to Camp Lejeune, N. C. by the end of the month.

**26 January 2008 (Iraq)**-The 3rd Marine Aircraft Wing deploys to Iraq. It is part of a bigger troop rotation to replace II Marine Expeditionary Force units with units from I MEF. On the following day, RCT-6 transfers its area of operations in Iraq to RCT-1.

**7 February 2008 (Afghanistan)**-The 2nd Marine Logistics Group transfers responsibility for combat logistics in Al Anbar province to the 1st MLG. The 1st MLG (Marines and sailors) returns to Camp Lejeune following a 13-month deployment in three days.

**12 February 2008 (United States)**-The 1st Battalion, 1st Marines begin to arrive at Camp Pendleton following a 7-month deployment in Iraq. Towards the latter part of the month, the 3rd Battalion, 3rd Marines return to Hawaii on the 26th of February.

**14 February 2008 (Iraq)**-The 1st Battalion, 7th Marines transfer responsibility for protecting Hit, Iraq to Iraqi security forces. The Marines redeploy outside the city, but they are close enough to respond if the insurgents attack the Iraqi security forces.

**16 February 2008 (Iraq)**-The 3rd Battalion, 23rd Marines, 3rd Light Armored Reconnaissance Battalion supported by Iraqi security forces launch a joint-heliborne operation in the Al Anbar province to destroy insurgents strongholds and to gain intelligence.

**22 February 2008 (United States-Iraq)**-Marine Fighter Squadron 115 and Marine Aviation Logistics Squadron 31 depart from Beaufort, S. C. En route to Iraq. They will deploy for 7-months. Combat Logistics Battalion 6 departs from Camp Lejeune one week later.

**9 March 2008 (United States)**-A Marine is killed and 22 others are injured in an accident at Fort Rucker, Alabama. They are all reservists attached to Company E, Anti-Terrorism Battalion, 4th Marine Division. The bus they were in turned over. The civilian driver is charged with reckless driving.

**13 March 2008 (Iraq)**-The 1st Air Naval Gunfire Liaison Company departs from Camp Pendleton en route to Iraq where it deploys for 7-months.

**17 March 2008 (Afghanistan)**-The 24th MEU begins arriving in Afghanistan to begin its 7-month deployment in southern Afghanistan at Kandahar province.

**28 March 2008(Iraq)**- Lance Corporal Stephen Tatum, the third of the originally charged Marines with the killing of civilians in Haditha in 2005, has all charges dropped.

**4-14 April 2008 (United States)**-About 200 Marines attached to the 3rd Low Altitude Air Defense Battalion arrive at Camp Pendleton following a 7-month deployment in Djibouti, Horn of Africa. Also, on the 14th the 3rd Battalion, 23rd Marines arrive back at Camp Lejeune after a 7-month deployment.

**21 April 2008 (United States)**-The 2nd Battalion, 2nd Marines departs from Camp Lejeune en route to Al Anbar province where it will deploy.

**29 April 2008 (Afghanistan)**- About 1,000 Marines attached to the 24th MEU attack Gagsar, the Taliban stronghold in southern Afghanistan. It is the first major U. S. Operation in southern Afghanistan in years. The Marines encounter only light resistance, but they do discover rockets and bomb-making material during the operation.

**6 May 2008 (United States)**-Task Force National Capital Region return from Iraq to Quantico, Virginia following its 7-month deployment in that country.

**11 May 2008 (United States)**-The 3rd Battalion, 2nd Marines begin to return to Camp Lejeune after completing a 7-month deployment to Iraq. The 2nd Battalion, 8th Marines arrives back at the same camp following their 7-month deployment in 8-days.

**23 May 2008 (Afghanistan)**-Lt. General Samuel T. Hellandn commander of the USMC Forces Central Command decides to drop charges against two officers whose unit was accused of killing about 19 Iraqi civilians in March 2007.

**1 June 2008 (Afghanistan)**-The 24th MEU and Task Force Helmand (British) launch a new offensive in Helmand province. The British drive south from a forward operating bases to secure routes west of the Marine positions. The movement of the British permits the Marines to advance into new areas that were previously held by insurgents.

**2 June 2008 (United States)**-General James N. Mattis gives testimony at Camp Pendleton that he did not seek nor did he receive advice from an assistant whose counsel would have contaminated the military's case against the troops involved with the killings of the civilians in Haditha, Iraq. Also, General Mattis denied any conflict of interest in his decision to court-martial Lt. Colonel Jeffrey Chessani for failing to properly investigate the Haditha incident. Nonetheless, Lt. Chessani has all charges dropped by the military officer in charge because General Mattis was improperly

influenced. On the 4th of June, 1st Lt. Andrew A. Grayson was acquitted of all charges with regard to his involvement in the killings of the Iraqi civilians in Haditha.

**7 June 2008 (United States)**-Marines and sailors attached to the 26th MEU assist state and local authorities in central Indiana after it is hit with rainfall that was not seen in the region since 1913.

**26-27 July 2008 (United States-Iraq)**-The 1st Battalion, 2nd Marines depart from Camp Lejeune for a 7-month deployment in Al Anbar, Iraq.

**August 2008 (Afghanistan)**-The 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines are ordered to extend their stay in Afghanistan an extra 30-days. The unit is in Afghanistan training Afghan security forces. The tour of duty was also extended for thirty-days for the 24th MEU. It happened one month earlier.

**8 August 2008 (Iraq)**-Lt. General Samuel T. Helland, commander of USMC Forces, Central Command, orders the court-martial of Sergeant Ryan Weemer for dereliction of duty in the killings of unarmed prisoners in Fallujah, Iraq on 9 November, 2004. Two other Marines are facing similar charges.

**14 August 2008 (United States)**-The 2nd Battalion, 3rd Marines begins to return to Hawaii. The unit will complete its return to Hawaii by the end of the month after it completes its 7-month deployment in Iraq. On the 15th, the 2nd Battalion, 24th Marines begins arriving back at Twenty-nine Palms, California following its deployment in Iraq.

**26 August 2008 (United States)**-A civilian jury acquits Marine Sergeant Jose Nazario Jr., is acquitted of all charges in connection with the deaths of unarmed Iraqis in Fallujah in November 2004. Also, the leaders of the Iraqi security forces sign the Command and Control Memorandum of Understanding at the Al Anbar Governance Center in Al Anbar province.

**1 September 2008 (Iraq)**-Iraqi security forces assume control of Al Anbar province. Marines remain in the area to show support and to help train the security forces.

**5 September 2008 (United States)**-The 3rd Battalion, 4th Marines and the Combat Logistics Battalion 7 arrive at Twenty-nine Palms, California after their deployment in Iraq.

**8 September 2008 (Afghanistan)**-Marines attached to the 24th MEU turn over responsibility in Garmser in Helmand province to the Afghans and the British. Marines had taken the town from Taliban insurgents in an operation earlier in the year.

**15 September 2008 (United States)**-The final elements of CLB-6, more than 700 Marines and sailors, return to Camp Lejeune, N. C.

**16 September 2008 (Iraq)**-Marine Fighter Attack Squadron 115 and Marine Aviation Logistics Squadron 31 begin to return home in Beaufort, S. C. After their 7-month deployment in Iraq.

**23 September 2008 (Iraq)**-The 2nd Battalion, 9th Marines deploy in Al Anbar province.

**9 October 2008 (United States)**-The 2nd Light Armored Reconnaissance Battalion begins to arrive back at Camp Lejeune after its 7-month deployment. The unit completes its return later in the week.

**13 October 2008 (Afghanistan)**-The 24th MEU, following an 8-month deployment, begins to arrive back in the U. S.

**30 October 2008 (United States)**-General Robert H. Barrow, former commandant of the Marine Corps dies at the age of 86.

**November 2008 ((United States)**-The 2nd Battalion, 7th Marines begin to return to the U. S. after

a deployment to Afghanistan. The unit was expected to arrive in Iraq, but it received orders in April to change destinations. The unit completes its return in early December.

**2 November 2008 (United States)**-Marine Light Attack Helicopter Squadron 369 begins to depart from Camp Lejeune en route to Iraq for another 7-month deployment.

**4 November 2008 (United States)**-Barack Hussein Obama is elected the 44th president of the United States. He is the son of a black Kenyan father and a white mother from Kansas. He is inaugurated on 20 January 2009.

**14 November 2008 (Iraq)**-About 3,000 Marines are redeployed from Fallujah, Iraq. The Marines are pulled out of the city and they are expected to turn responsibility for it to the Iraqi security forces.

**3 December 2008 (Iraq)**-Marines attached to RCT-5 demilitarizes the Haditha Dam along the Euphrates River in Iraq. The security for the area is turned over to the Iraqi government.

**8 December 2008 (United States)**-An F/A-18 D Hornet jet crashes into a San Diego neighborhood about two miles from the landing strip in MCAS Miramar, California. The crash kills 4 people, all women. The pilot is unhurt. It was later determined that the crash was mechanical, rather than pilot error.

**31 December 2008 (USMC)**-The strength of the Marine Corps stands at 198,902.

**February 2009 (Afghanistan)**-President Barack Hussein Obama announces a new plan for Afghanistan and Pakistan. He intends to send an additional 4,000 troops to train the Afghan army and the police.

**December 2009 (United States)**-President Barack Hussein Obama announces that 30,000 U. S. troops, including U.S. Marines are to be sent to Afghanistan. He also states that America will be beginning to bring its forces home by 2011.

**December 29 2009 (Afghanistan)**-An Al-Qaeda insurgent launches a suicide-attack against a U. S. Base in Khost and kills 7 CIA agents.

**October 22 2010 United States** - General James F. Amos becomes the 35th Commandant of the Marine Corps. He serves until 17 October 2014.

**November 21 2010 (Afghanistan)**-The U. S. Marines were attacked by a Taliban group in a small village nicknamed Shadier that was situated between two villages that were also nicknamed Shady and Shadiest. The enemy tossed three grenades one of which landed on the rooftop where Lance Corporal William "Kyle" Carpenter was stationed along with one other Marine. Lance Corporal Carpenter threw his body onto the grenade to save the life of the other Marine. On 19 June, 2014, Corporal Carpenter is awarded the Medal of Honor for his heroism above and beyond the call of duty. Corporal Carpenter lost one eye and multiple facial injuries, a skull fracture, a collapsed lung, some multiple fragment injuries and the loss of one-third of his lower jaw.

**May 1 2011 (Pakistan)** -U.S. Special Forces launch a raid that kills the top Al-Qaeda leader, Osama Bin Laden in Abbottabad, Pakistan. It was mid-afternoon on 2 May in Pakistan.

**22 June 2011 (United States)**-President Barack Hussein Obama announces that the war in Afghanistan which has gone on for nearly ten years is going to be drawing down and he intends to bring home more than 30,000 troops by the following summer.

**12 July 2011 (Afghanistan)**- President Karzai' half-brother, Ahmad Wali Karzai, the governor of Kandahar is killed by the Sardar Mohammad.

**19 October 2011 (Afghanistan)**-General John Allen, USMC, launches a new offensive against one of the country's militant networks, the Haqqani network, which is able to maintain a safe haven across Afghanistan's southeastern border in North Waziristan, Pakistan.

**24 February 2012 (United States)**-President Barack Hussein Obama formally apologizes for the burning of the Korans at a U. S. Airbase in Afghanistan. The Afghans have been taking part in protests that have killed 14 people, including two U. S. Soldiers.

**12 June 2012 (Afghanistan)**-President Karzai of Afghanistan declares that NATO can no longer fire at Afghani homes no matter what the circumstances are.

**20 September 2012 (Afghanistan)**-The U. S. Announces that the last of the U. S. Surge troops have departed from Afghanistan. There are still about 68,000 troops in the country.

**11 February 2013 (Afghanistan)**-The U. S. Begins its withdrawal from Afghanistan. It ships the first of what will be tens of thousands of containers back to the U. S. They use a recently opened road through Pakistan that was blocked by the Pakistani government. The shipments are suspended on 3 December by the U. S. They cited protests that were a risk to the truck drivers.

**12 February 2013 (United States)**-President Barack Hussein Obama in his state of the Union address said that the first 34,000 troops will begin to leave Afghanistan within a year.

**18 June 2013 (Afghanistan)**-The Afghan army takes control of the military and the security operations in the country. Also, the U. S. Announces that it will hold talks with the Taliban in Qatar. President Karzai of Afghanistan suspends talks with the U. S. Due to the public announcement that it will hold talks with the Taliban. President Karzai insists on talking with the Taliban with his government, rather than the U. S.

**14 December 2013 (India)**-President Hamid Karzai, while visiting New Delhi said that he "no longer trusts" the U.S.. He claims that they say one thing, then they do another.

**October 18 2014 (United States)**-General Joseph F. Dunford becomes the 35th Commandant of the Marine Corps. He succeeds General James F. Amos.

**September 24 2015 (United States)**-General Robert Neller becomes the 36th Commandant of the Marine Corps. He succeeds General Joseph F, Dunford who moves to the position of Chairman of the Joint Chief of Staff..